

• BECOME THE DOCTOR YOU WANT TO BE •

OXFORD HANDBOOK OF CLINICAL MEDICINE

Murray Longmore | Ian B. Wilkinson
Andrew Baldwin | Elizabeth Wallin



Index to emergency topics

🌀 **'Don't go so fast: we're in a hurry!'**—*Talleyrand to his coachman.*

- Abdominal aortic aneurysm 656
Acute abdomen 608
Acute kidney injury (acute renal failure) 848
Addisonian crisis 846
Anaphylaxis 806
Aneurysm, abdominal aortic 656
Antidotes, poisoning 854
Arrhythmias, broad complex 122, 816
 narrow complex 120, 818
 see also back inside cover
Asthma 820
Asystole *back inside cover*
Bacterial shock 804
Blast injury 862
Bleeding, aneurysm 656
 extradural/intracranial 482, 486
 gastrointestinal 252, 830
 rectal 631
 variceal 254, 830
Blood loss 804
Blue patient 178–81
Bradycardia 118
Burns 858
Cardiac arrest *back inside cover*
Cardiogenic shock/tamponade 814
Cardioversion, DC 784
Cauda equina compression 470, 545
Central line insertion (CVP line) 788
Cerebral malaria 397
Cerebral oedema 840
Chest drain 780
Coma 800
Cord compression 470, 545
Cranial arteritis 558
Cricothyrotomy 786
Cyanosis 178–81
Cut-down 775
Defibrillation 784, *back inside cover*
Diabetes emergencies 842–4
Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC) 346
Disaster, major 862
Dissecting aneurysm 656
Embolism, leg 658
 pulmonary 828
Encephalitis 834
Endotoxic shock 804
Epilepsy, status 836
Extradural haemorrhage 486
Fits, unending 836
Fluids, IV 680, 804
Haematemesis 252–5
Haemorrhage 804
 see also under Bleeding above
Hyperthermia 804, 850
Hypoglycaemia 206, 844
Hypothermia 860
Intracranial pressure, raised 840
Ketoacidosis, diabetic 842
Lassa fever 388
Left ventricular failure 812
Major disaster 862
Malaria 394
Malignant hyperpyrexia 574
Malignant hypertension 134
Meningitis 832
Meningococcaemia 832
Myocardial infarction 808
Needle pericardiocentesis 787
Neutropenic sepsis 346
Obstructive uropathy 645
Oncological emergencies 526
Opiate poisoning 854
Overdose 850–7
Pacemaker, temporary 790
Pericardiocentesis 787
Pheochromocytoma 846
Pneumonia 826
Pneumothorax 824
Poisoning 850–7
Potassium, hyperkalaemia 688, 849
 hypokalaemia 688
Pulmonary embolism 828
Pulseless, altogether *back inside cover*
 in a leg 658
Respiratory arrest *back inside cover*
Respiratory failure 180
Resuscitation *back inside cover*
Rheumatological emergencies 540
Shock 804
Smoke inhalation 859
Sodium, hypernatraemia 686
 hyponatraemia 686
Spinal cord compression 470, 545
Status asthmaticus 820
Status epilepticus 836
Superior vena cava obstruction 526
Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) 818
Tachycardia, ventricular 122, 816
Thrombolysis, myocardial infarct 808
 stroke 475
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) 308
Thyroid storm 844
Torted testis 654
Transfusion reaction 343
Varices, bleeding 254, 830
Vasculitis, acute systemic 558
Ventricular arrhythmias 122, 816
Ventricular failure, left 812
Ventricular fibrillation *back inside cover*
Ventricular tachycardia 122, 816
Waterhouse-Friderichsen 728
Wheeze 796, 820–3

Common haematology values *If outside this range, consult:*

Haemoglobin	men:	130–180g/L	p318
	women:	115–160g/L	p318
Mean cell volume, MCV		76–96fL	†p320; †p326
Platelets		150–400 × 10 ⁹ /L	p358
White cells (total)		4–11 × 10 ⁹ /L	p324
neutrophils		40–75%	p324
lymphocytes		20–45%	p324
eosinophils		1–6%	p324

Blood gases

pH		7.35–7.45	p684
P _a O ₂		>10.6kPa (75–100mmHg)	p684
P _a CO ₂		4.7–6kPa (35–45mmHg)	p684
Base excess		±2mmol/L	p684

U&Es (urea and electrolytes) *If outside this range, consult:*

Sodium		135–145mmol/L	p686
Potassium		3.5–5mmol/L	p688
Creatinine		70–150µmol/L	p298–301
Urea		2.5–6.7mmol/L	p298–301
eGFR		>90	p683

LFTs (liver function tests)

Bilirubin		3–17µmol/L	p250, p258
Alanine aminotransferase, ALT		5–35iu/L	p250, p258
Aspartate transaminase, AST		5–35iu/L	p250, p258
Alkaline phosphatase, ALP		30–150iu/L (non-pregnant adults)	p250, p258
Albumin		35–50g/L	p700
Protein (total)		60–80g/L	p700

Cardiac enzymes

Troponin T		<0.1µg/L	p113
Creatine kinase		25–195iu/L	p113
Lactate dehydrogenase, LDH		70–250iu/L	p113

Lipids and other biochemical values

Cholesterol		<5mmol/L <i>desired</i>	p704
Triglycerides		0.5–1.9mmol/L	p704
Amylase		0–180 <i>Somogyi</i> u/dL	p638
C-reactive protein, CRP		<10mg/L	p700
Calcium (total)		2.12–2.65mmol/L	p690
Glucose, fasting		3.5–5.5mmol/L	p198
Prostate-specific antigen, PSA		0–4ng/mL	p538
T ₄ (total thyroxine)		70–140mmol/L	p208
Thyroid stimulating hormone, TSH		0.5–5.7mu/L	p208

For all other reference intervals, see p769–71

He moved N. 48

all the brightest gems N. 24

faster and faster towards the N. 18

ever-growing bucket of lost hopes;
had there been just one more year N. 14

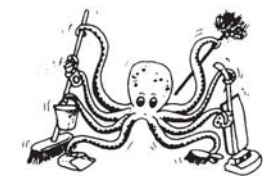
of peace the battalion would have made
a floating system of perpetual drainage. N. 12

A silent fall of immense snow came near oily
remains of the recently eaten supper on the table. N. 10

We drove on in our old sunless walnut. Presently
classical eggs ticked in the new afternoon shadows. N. 8

We were instructed by my cousin Jasper not to exercise by country
house visiting unless accompanied by thirteen geese or gangsters. N. 6

The modern American did not prevail over the pair of redundant bronze puppies.
The worn-out principle is a bad omen which I am never glad to ransom in August. N. 5



Reading tests Hold this chart (well-illuminated) 30cm away, and record the smallest type read (eg N12 left eye, N6 right eye, spectacles worn) or object named accurately.

OXFORD
HANDBOOK
OF CLINICAL
MEDICINE

This page intentionally left blank

OXFORD HANDBOOK OF CLINICAL MEDICINE

NINTH EDITION

MURRAY LONGMORE
IAN B. WILKINSON
ANDREW BALDWIN
ELIZABETH WALLIN

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in: Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto. *With offices in:*
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

Published in the United States by Oxford University Press Inc., New York

© Oxford University Press, 2014

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 1985

(RA Hope & JM Longmore)

Fifth edition 2001

(JM Longmore & IB Wilkinson)

Translations:

Second edition 1989

Sixth edition 2004

Chinese Indonesian

Third edition 1993

Seventh edition 2007

Czech Italian

Fourth edition 1998

Eighth edition 2010

Estonian Polish

Ninth edition 2014

French Portuguese

German Romanian

Greek Russian

Hungarian Spanish

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above.

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Data available

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Data available

Typeset by GreenGate Publishing Services, Tonbridge, UK; printed in China by C&C Offset Printing Co. Ltd.

ISBN 978-0-19-960962-8

Drugs

Except where otherwise stated, recommendations are for the **non-pregnant adult** who is **not breastfeeding** and who has reasonable **renal and hepatic function**. To avoid excessive doses in obese patients it may be best to calculate doses on the basis of ideal body weight (IBW): see p621.

We have made every effort to check this text, but it is still possible that drug or other errors have been missed. OUP makes no representation, express or implied, that doses are correct. Readers are urged to check with the most up to date product information, codes of conduct, and safety regulations. The authors and the publishers do not accept responsibility or legal liability for any errors in the text, or for the misuse or misapplication of material in this work.

For updates/corrections, see <http://www.oup.co.uk/academic/series/oxhmed/updates/>

Contents

Each chapter's contents are detailed on its first page

Index to emergency topics *front endpapers*

Common reference intervals *front endpapers*

From the preface to the first edition vi

Preface to the ninth edition vi

Acknowledgements vii

Symbols and abbreviations viii

How to conduct ourselves when juggling with symbols x

1	Thinking about medicine	0
2	History and examination	18
3	Cardiovascular medicine	86
4	Chest medicine	154
5	Endocrinology	196
6	Gastroenterology	234
7	Renal medicine	284
8	Haematology	316
9	Infectious diseases	372
10	Neurology	448
11	Oncology and palliative care	522
12	Rheumatology	540
13	Surgery	566
14	Epidemiology	664
15	Clinical chemistry	676
16	Eponymous syndromes	708
17	Radiology	732
18	Reference intervals, etc.	764
19	Practical procedures	772
20	Emergencies	792

Index 864

Useful doses for the new doctor 902

▶▶ Cardiorespiratory arrest *endmatter*

Life support algorithms *back endpapers*

We wrote this book not because we know so much, but because we know we remember so little...the problem is not simply the quantity of information, but the diversity of places from which it is dispensed. Trailing eagerly behind the surgeon, the student is admonished never to forget alcohol withdrawal as a cause of post-operative confusion. The scrap of paper on which this is written spends a month in the pocket before being lost for ever in the laundry. At different times, and in inconvenient places, a number of other causes may be presented to the student. Not only are these causes and aphorisms never brought together, but when, as a surgical house officer, the former student faces a confused patient, none is to hand.

We aim to encourage the doctor to enjoy his patients: in doing so we believe he will prosper in the practice of medicine. For a long time now, house officers have been encouraged to adopt monstrous proportions in order to straddle the diverse pinnacles of clinical science and clinical experience. We hope that this book will make this endeavour a little easier by moving a cumulative memory burden from the mind into the pocket, and by removing some of the fears that are naturally felt when starting a career in medicine, thereby freely allowing the doctor's clinical acumen to grow by the slow accretion of many, many days and nights.

From the 1st edition
Preface RAH & JML 1985

Preface to the ninth edition

As medicine becomes more and more specialized, and moves further and further from the general physician, becoming increasingly subspecialized, it can be difficult to know where we fit in to the general scheme of things. What ties a public health physician to a neurosurgeon? Why does a dermatologist require the same early training as a gastroenterologist? What makes an academic nephrologist similar to a general practitioner? To answer these questions we need to go back to the definition of a physician. The word physician comes from the Greek *physica*, or natural science, and the Latin *physicus*, or one who undertakes the study of nature. A physician therefore is one who has studied nature and natural sciences, although the word has been adapted to mean one who has studied healing and medicine. We can think also about the word medicine, originally from the Latin stem *med*, to think or reflect on. A medical person, or *medicus*, originally meant someone who knew the best course of action for a disease, having spent time thinking or reflecting on the problem in front of them.

As physicians, we continue to specialize in ever more diverse conditions, complex scientific mechanisms, external interests ranging from academia to education, from public health and government policy to managerial posts. At the heart of this we should remember that all physicians enter into medicine with a shared goal, to understand the human body, what makes it go wrong, and how to treat that disease. We all study natural science, and must have a good evidence base for what we do, for without evidence, and knowledge, how are we to reflect on the patient and the problem they bring to us, and therefore understand the best course of action to take? This is not always a drug or an operation; we must work holistically and treat the whole patient, not just the problem they present with; for this reason we need psychiatrists as much as cardiothoracic surgeons, public health physicians as much as intensive care physicians. For each problem, and each patient, the best and most appropriate course of action will be different. It is no longer possible to be a true general physician, there is too much to know, too much detail, too many treatments and options. Strive instead to be the best medic that you can, knowing enough to understand the best course of action, whether that be to reassure, to treat, to refer or to palliate.

In this book, we join the minds of an academic clinical pharmacologist, a general practitioner, a nephrologist, and a GP registrar. Four physicians, each very different in their interests and approaches, and yet each bringing their own knowledge and expertise, which, combined with that of our specialist readers, we hope creates a book that is greater than the sum of its parts.

Acknowledgements

Heart-felt thanks to our advisers on specific sections—each is acknowledged on the chapter's first page. We especially thank Dr Judith Collier and Dr Ahmad Mafi for reading the entire text, and also Rev. Gary Bevans for his kind permission to use the image on p225, from his beautiful Sistine Chapel sequences reproduced on the ceiling of the Church of the English Martyrs, Goring-by-Sea. IBW would like to acknowledge his clinical mentors Jim Holt and John Cockcroft and EFW her clinical and literary mentor Dr John Firth. We thank the Department of Radiology at both the Leeds Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust and the Norfolk and Norwich University Hospital for their kind help in providing many images, particularly Dr Edmund Godfrey, whose tireless hunt for perfect images has improved so many chapters.

Readers' comments These have formed a vital part of our endeavour to provide an accurate, comprehensive, and up-to-date text. We sincerely thank the many students, doctors and other health professionals who have found the time and the generosity to write to us on our Reader's Comments Cards, in editions past, or, in more recent times, via the web. These have now become so numerous for past editions that they cannot all be listed. See www.oup.com/uk/academic/series/oxhmed/links for a full list, and our very heart-felt tokens of thanks.

3rd-party web addresses We disclaim any responsibility for 3rd-party content.

Symbols and abbreviations

▶.....this fact or idea is important	CMV.....cytomegalovirus
▶.....don't dawdle!—prompt action saves lives	CNS.....central nervous system
☛.....incendiary (controversial) topic	COC.....combined oral contraceptive pill
[].....non-BNF drug dose	COPD.....chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
!.....reference available on our website www.oup.com/uk/ohcm9refs	CPAP.....continuous positive airways pressure
♂:♀.....male-to-female ratio. ♂:♀=2:1 means twice as common in males	CPR.....cardiopulmonary resuscitation
@12.....search Medline (pubmed.gov) with '12..' to get an abstract (omit '@')	CRD.....chronic renal disease
.. on account of	CRP.....c-reactive protein
∴.....therefore	CSF.....cerebrospinal fluid
~.....approximately	CT.....computer tomography
-ve.....negative (+ve is positive)	CVA.....cerebrovascular accident
↑.....increased or decreased (eg serum level)	CVP.....central venous pressure
↔.....normal (eg serum level)	CVS.....cardiovascular system
Δ.....diagnosis	CXR.....chest x-ray
ΔΔ.....differential diagnosis (list of possibilities)	d.....day(s); also expressed as /7; months are /12
■.....deprecated term	DC.....direct current
A2.....aortic component of the 2 nd heart sound	DIC.....disseminated intravascular coagulation
A2A.....angiotensin-2 receptor antagonist (p309; = AT-2, A2R, and AIIR)	DIP.....distal interphalangeal
Ab.....antibody	dL.....decilitre
ABC.....airway, breathing, and circulation: basic life support (see inside back cover)	DoH.....(or DH) Department of Health (UK)
ABG.....arterial blood gas: P_{O_2} , $P_{\text{a}}\text{CO}_2$, pH, HCO_3^-	DM.....diabetes mellitus
ABPA.....allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis	DU.....duodenal ulcer
ac.....ante cibum (before food)	D&V.....diarrhoea and vomiting
ACE-i.....angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor	DVT.....deep venous thrombosis
ACS.....acute coronary syndrome	DXT.....deep radiotherapy
ACTH.....adrenocorticotrophic hormone	EBM.....evidence-based medicine and its journal published by the BMA
ADH.....antidiuretic hormone	EBV.....Epstein-Barr virus
ad lib.....as much/as often as wanted	ECG.....electrocardiogram
AF.....atrial fibrillation	Echo.....echocardiogram
AFB.....acid-fast bacillus	ED.....emergency department
AFP.....(or α-FP) alpha-fetoprotein	EDTA.....ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid (anticoagulant coating, eg in FBC bottles)
Ag.....antigen	EEG.....electroencephalogram
AIDS.....acquired immunodeficiency syndrome	eGFR.....estimated glomerular filtration rate (GFR; mL/min/1.73m ² —see p683)
AKI.....acute kidney injury	ELISA.....enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
alk phos.....alkaline phosphatase (also ALP)	EM.....electron microscope
ALL.....acute lymphoblastic leukaemia	EMG.....electromyogram
AMA.....antimitochondrial antibody	ENT.....ear, nose, and throat
AMP.....adenosine monophosphate	ERCP.....endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; see also MRCP
ANA.....antinuclear antibody	ESR.....erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ANCA.....antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody	ESRF.....end-stage renal failure
APTT.....activated partial thromboplastin time	EUA.....examination under anaesthesia
AR.....aortic regurgitation	FB.....foreign body
ARA(b).....angiotensin receptor antagonist (p309; also AT-2, A2R, and AIIR)	FBC.....full blood count
ARDS.....acute respiratory distress syndrome	FDP.....fibrin degradation products
ARF.....acute renal failure = AKI	FEV ₁forced expiratory volume in 1 st sec
AS.....aortic stenosis	F _{O2}partial pressure of O ₂ in inspired air
ASD.....atrial septal defect	FFP.....fresh frozen plasma
ASO.....antistreptolysin O (titre)	FSH.....follicle-stimulating hormone
AST.....aspartate transaminase	FVC.....forced vital capacity
AT-2.....angiotensin-2 receptor blocker (p309; also AT-2, A2R, and AIIR)	g.....gram
ATN.....acute tubular necrosis	GA.....general anaesthetic
ATP.....adenosine triphosphate	GAT..... <i>Sanford Guide to Antimicrobial Therapy 43ed</i>
AV.....atrioventricular	GB.....gallbladder
AVM.....arteriovenous malformation(s)	GC.....gonococcus
AXR.....abdominal x-ray (plain)	GCS.....Glasgow coma scale
Ba.....barium	GFR.....glomerular filtration rate eGFR, p683
BAL.....bronchoalveolar lavage	GGT.....gamma-glutamyl transferase
bd.....bis die (Latin for twice a day)	GH.....growth hormone
BKA.....below-knee amputation	GI.....gastrointestinal
BMA.....British Medical Association	GP.....general practitioner
BMJ..... <i>British Medical Journal</i>	G6PD.....glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
BNF..... <i>British National Formulary</i>	GTN.....glyceryl trinitrate
BP.....blood pressure	GTT.....glucose tolerance test (oGTT: oral GTT)
BPH.....benign prostatic hyperplasia	GU(M).....genitourinary (medicine)
bpm.....beats per minute (eg pulse)	h.....hour
ca.....cancer	HAV.....hepatitis A virus
CABG.....coronary artery bypass graft	Hb.....haemoglobin
CAD.....coronary heart disease	HbAg.....hepatitis B surface antigen
CAMP.....cyclic adenosine monophosphate (AMP)	HBV.....hepatitis B virus
CAPD.....continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis	HCC.....hepatocellular cancer
CBD.....common bile duct, cortico-basal degeneration	HCM.....hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
CC.....creatinine clearance (also CrCl)	Hct.....haematocrit
CCF.....congestive cardiac failure (ie left and right heart failure)	HCV.....hepatitis C virus
CCU.....coronary care unit	HDV.....hepatitis D virus
CHB.....complete heart block	HDL.....high-density lipoprotein, p704
CHD.....coronary heart disease (related to ischaemia and atheroma)	HHT.....hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia
CI.....contraindications	HIDA.....hepatic immunodiacetic acid
CK.....creatinine (phospho)kinase (also CPK)	HIV.....human immunodeficiency virus
CKD.....chronic kidney disease	HONK.....hyperosmolar non-ketotic (diabetic coma)
CLL.....chronic lymphocytic leukaemia	HRT.....hormone replacement therapy
CML.....chronic myeloid leukaemia	HSV.....herpes simplex virus
	IBD.....inflammatory bowel disease
	IBW.....ideal body weight, p446
	ICD.....implantable cardiac defibrillator
	ICP.....intracranial pressure
	ICU.....intensive care unit
	IDA.....iron-deficiency anaemia
	IDDM.....insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus

IFN- α ... interferon alpha	PCR polymerase chain reaction (DNA diagnosis)
IE infective endocarditis	PCV packed cell volume
Ig immunoglobulin	PE pulmonary embolism
IHD ischaemic heart disease	PEEP positive end-expiratory pressure
IM intramuscular	PEF(R) ... peak expiratory flow (rate)
INR international normalized ratio (prothrombin)	PERLA ... pupils equal and reactive to light and accommodation
IP interphalangeal	PET positron emission tomography
IPPV intermittent positive pressure ventilation	PID pelvic inflammatory disease
ITP idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	PIP proximal interphalangeal (joint)
IU/U international unit	PMH past medical history
ivc inferior vena cava	PND paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea
IV(i) ... intravenous (infusion)	PO per os (by mouth)
IVU intravenous urography	PPF purified plasma fraction (albumin)
JAMA <i>Journal of the American Medical Association</i>	PPI proton pump inhibitor, eg omeprazole
JVP jugular venous pressure	PR per rectum (by the rectum)
K potassium	PRL prolactin
KCCT kaolin cephalin clotting time	PRN pro re nata (Latin for as required)
kg kilogram	PRV polycythaemia rubra vera
KPa kilopascal	PSA prostate-specific antigen
L litre	PTH parathyroid hormone
LAD left axis deviation on the ECG; also left anterior descending coronary artery; left anterior hemiblock	PTT prothrombin time
LBBB left bundle branch block	PUO pyrexia of unknown origin
LDH lactate dehydrogenase	PV per vaginam (by the vagina, eg pessary)
LDL low-density lipoprotein, p704	PVD peripheral vascular disease
LBW lean body weight, p434	qds quater die sumendus; take 4 times daily
LFT liver function test	qqh quarta quaque hora: take every 4h
LH luteinizing hormone	R right
LIF left iliac fossa	RA rheumatoid arthritis
LKKS liver, kidney (R), kidney (L), spleen	RAD right axis deviation on the ECG
LMN lower motor neuron	RBBB right bundle branch block
LOC loss of consciousness	RBC red blood cell
LP lumbar puncture	RCT randomized control trial
LUQ left upper quadrant	RFT respiratory function tests
LV left ventricle of the heart	Rh Rh; a contraction, not an abbreviation: derived from the rhesus monkey
LVF left ventricular failure	RIF right iliac fossa
LVH left ventricular hypertrophy	RUQ right upper quadrant
μ g microgram	RV right ventricle of heart
MAI <i>Mycobacterium avium intracellulare</i>	RVF right ventricular failure
mane ... morning (from Latin)	RVH right ventricular hypertrophy
MAOI ... monoamine oxidase inhibitor	R _x recipe (Latin for treat with)
MAP mean arterial pressure	s/sec second(s)
MC&S ... microscopy, culture and sensitivity	S1, S2 ... first and second heart sounds
MCP metacarpophalangeal	SBE subacute bacterial endocarditis (IE is any infective endocarditis)
MCV mean cell volume	SC subcutaneous
MDMA 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine	SD standard deviation
ME myalgic encephalomyelitis	SE side-effect(s)
MET meta-analysis	SL sublingual
mg milligram	SLE systemic lupus erythematosus
MI myocardial infarction	SOB short of breath
min(s) minute(s)	SOBE short of breath on exercise
mL millilitre	SPC summary of product characteristics, www.medicines.org.uk
mmHg millimetres of mercury	SpO ₂ ... peripheral oxygen saturation (%)
MND motor neuron disease	SR slow-release (also MR, modified-release)
MRCP ... magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography/ member of Royal College of Physicians	Stat statim (immediately; as initial dose)
MRI magnetic resonance imaging	STD/I ... sexually transmitted disease/infection
MRSA methicillin-resistant <i>Staph. aureus</i>	SVC superior vena cava
MS multiple sclerosis (mitral stenosis)	SVT supraventricular tachycardia
MSU midstream urine	Sy(n) ... syndrome
NAD nothing abnormal detected	T° temperature
NBM nil by mouth	T½ biological half-life
ND notifiable disease	T ₃ ; T ₄ ... tri-iodothyronine; T ₄ is thyroxine
NEJM ... <i>New England Journal of Medicine</i>	TB tuberculosis
ng nanogram	tds ter die sumendus (take 3 times a day)
NG(T) ... nasogastric (tube)	TFT thyroid function test (eg TSH)
NHS ... National Health Service (UK)	TIA transient ischaemic attack
NICE ... National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, www.nice.org.uk	TIBC total iron-binding capacity
NIDDM ... non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus	tid ter in die (Latin for 3 times a day)
NMDA ... N-methyl-D-aspartate	TPR temperature, pulse and respirations count
NNT number needed to treat, for 1 extra satisfactory result (p671)	TRH thyroid-releasing hormone
Nocte ... at night	TSH thyroid-stimulating hormone
NR normal range (=reference interval)	U units
NSAID ... non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug	UC ulcerative colitis
N&V nausea and/or vomiting	U&E urea and electrolytes and creatinine—in plasma, unless stated otherwise
od omni die (Latin for once daily)	UMN upper motor neuron
OD overdose	URT(i) ... upper respiratory tract (infection)
OGD oesophagogastroduodenoscopy	US(S) ... ultrasound (scan)
OGS oxogenic steroids	UTI urinary tract infection
OGTT oral glucose tolerance test	VDRL ... Venereal Diseases Research Laboratory
OHCS ... <i>Oxford Handbook of Clinical Specialties 9e</i>	VE ventricular extrasystole
om omni mane (in the morning)	VF ventricular fibrillation
on omni nocte (at night)	VMA vanillyl mandelic acid (HMAA)
OPD outpatients department	V/Q ventilation/perfusion ratio
ORh ... blood group O, Rh negative	VSD ventriculo-septal defect
OT occupational therapist	VT ventricular tachycardia
OTM ... <i>Oxford Textbook of Medicine 5e</i> (OUP)	WBC white blood cell
P ₂ pulmonary component of 2 nd heart sound	WCC white blood cell count
P _a CO ₂ ... partial pressure of CO ₂ in arterial blood	wk(s) ... week(s)
PAN polyarteritis nodosa	WR Wassermann reaction (syphilis serology)
P _a O ₂ ... partial pressure of O ₂ in arterial blood	yr(s) ... year(s)
PBC primary biliary cirrhosis	ZN Ziehl-Neelsen stain, eg for mycobacteria
PCP <i>Pneumocystis carinii</i> (<i>jiroveci</i>) pneumonia	

How to conduct ourselves when juggling with symbols

The great conductors (Herbert von Karajan, Claudio Abbado, and Leonard Bernstein, for example) always seem to know instinctively what is important (►), when to hurry up (*PRESTO!* ►►), and when to slow down (⊙). The symbols on the previous page (*Symbols & abbreviations*) perpetuate the myth that these instructions are easy to follow and to understand. When we first experience life on the ward or in consulting rooms, we marvel at how efficiently senior doctors dispatch their business. How will we ever aspire to this efficiency?—we ask ourselves, without pausing to ask what all this efficiency is *for*. We should be efficient so that we can canter through straightforward consultations, then slow down and spend time when we can make a real difference—to our patient's wellbeing, mental health, social functioning, or life in general. Too often, doctors remember the bit about cantering (or galloping) and forget the bit about slowing down. Every day we should dawdle, dilly-dally, and play—with each other and with our patients. This way we can pick up cues about what is really important to our fellows, and we can think up ingenious non-reductionist ways out of seemingly impossible muddles. The spiral is our symbol for this (⊙) because it comes from infinity and drills down to the infinitesimal. We need to enjoy juggling with both aspects, and move seamlessly from one to the other.



Fig 1. Juggling with symbols

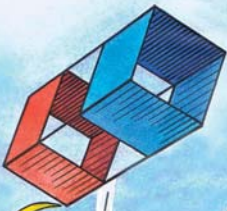
Almost whenever we ask colleagues about the management of certain diseases we get a mouthful of drugs and then a full stop. But really we should *start* with the full stop—to indicate a pause—hence our ⋈ symbol—before launching into dangerous and sometimes unwanted drugs. These ideas can be rolled into a comprehensive treatment plan. This comes naturally to some doctors, although we were surprised to hear one such physician mutter “BASTARD!” under his breath when confronted by a difficult patient—surprised until he told us what he meant was “avoid doctor dependency”—ie Buy stuff over the counter; take Advice from grandma^{et al}; use Self-made remedies such as lemon-and-honey or sensible complementary therapies; Team up with other people with the same condition for mutual support; Augment your own mental health and resilience so that symptoms are less intrusive; Rest (or exercise); and eat a sensible Diet.



Fig 2. Antidotes to doctor dependency

Two people may have the same symptom (backache, migraine, indigestion, etc): by adopting the principles above, one may shrug off his symptom and his doctor, while the other gets stuck in a cycle of prescription medicines, side-effects, and complications. To coin a phrase, we could describe this dependency on medicines as *medlock*. Have you freed anyone from medlock today? To do so, be it medlock or wedlock, think: “bastard”.

The foregoing is a little bit too neat. It suggests that two people can have identical symptoms, eg indigestion. This is as absurd as suggesting that two people can wear the same hat—*identically* the same hat. There is only room for one inside my pain. In the end, it's not so much the symptom that matters, or the exact hat, but the nonchalance with which we wear it. And on the tip of the coiled tongue inside our little symbol ⋈ we can taste a hint of the jaunty insouciance we so admire in our long-suffering and indomitable patients.



JUDITH — JOHANNA —
TIL HOGGERS — MIRIAM —
TOM THURSTON — TONY HOPE —
AHMAD MAJI — ALEXANDER FOULKES —
EDWARD THORNTON —
ANTHONY RAGGION —
CHIE KAY CHEUNG —
SIOBHAN MCMANUS —
CLARE WOOD — ALUM —



RAE HOSS — ANDY WINGERS —
PUNET BANPAKHA —
ESTEE TOKOK —
ALISON — HELEN —
PHILIPPA —
JANET —
TIL D —
GEORGE —
SAFFRON —



JANET —
RAE —
PETE —
ALEX —
EMILY — HONOR —
FLORENCE —
ANDREW —



1 Thinking about medicine



Contents

The Hippocratic oath	1
Ideals	2
The bedside manner	3
Asking questions	4
Finding narrative answers	5
Death	6
Facing and managing death	7
Prescribing drugs	8
Surviving life on the wards	9
Resource allocation	10
Psychiatry on the wards	11
The elderly patient in hospital	12
The art of diagnosing	13
On being busy	14
Health and medical ethics	15
Troubled, troubling, and troublesome patients	16
Medicine, art, and the humanities	17



Fig 1. Hippocrates sits under his famous tree, dispensing, in equal measure, the fruits of reductionist medicine (on his right) and those of integrative medicine (on his left).

A new Hippocratic oath ~2013AD

I will make my patient my first concern. I will treat all my patients as individuals, and respect their dignity and right to confidentiality.

I will do my best to help anyone in medical need and ensure the health of patients and the public are protected and promoted.

I will use my medical knowledge to benefit people's health. I will be honest, respectful, and compassionate to all.

I will provide a good standard of care, uninfluenced by political or religious pressure, or the age, race, sexual orientation, social class or wealth of my patient.

I will listen to patients and respond to their concerns. I will give patients information they want or need in a way they can understand.

I will help patients reach decisions about their treatment and care and will respect decisions of informed and competent patients, even if treatment is refused.

I will recognize the limits of my knowledge and competence, and seek advice when needed. I will keep my knowledge and skills up to date, and ensure poor standards or bad practices are exposed without delay to those who can improve them.

I will show respect for all those with whom I work, and will work with colleagues in a way that best serves the interest of my patients. I will be ready to share my knowledge by teaching others.

I recognize the special value of human life, but I also know that prolonging life is not the only aim of health care.

I will promote fair use of health resources and try to influence positively those whose policies harm public health.

I recognize that I have responsibilities to humankind that transcend dictates and orders of States, and which no legislature can countermand. I will oppose health policies that breach internationally accepted standards of human rights.

I will learn from my mistakes and seek help from colleagues to promote patient safety. While keeping within this framework, I will not be discouraged by failure, and will try to continue in a spirit of practical and rational optimism.

Where should we keep this oath? Not in the dusty confines of a book, but in our limbic system (p448), where it has every chance of influencing unconscious action, before our subverting cerebral cortex comes up with brilliant and convenient excuses as to why, in this case, the oath does not apply.

See also the BMA's *Revised Hippocratic Oath* and the GMC's *Duties of a Doctor*
We thank our Junior Reader Mathuranayagham Niroshan for his contribution.

I swear by Apollo the physician, and Aesculapius and Health and All-heal, and all the gods and goddesses, that, according to my ability and judgement, I will keep this oath and stipulation—to reckon him who taught me this Art equally dear to me as my parents, to share my substance with him, and relieve his necessities if required; to look upon his offspring in the same footing as my own brothers, and to teach them this Art, if they shall wish to learn it, without fee or stipulation, and that by percept, lecture, and every other mode of instruction, I will impart a knowledge of the Art to my own sons, and those of my teachers, and to disciples bound by a stipulation and oath according to the law of medicine, but to none other.

I will follow that system of regimen, which, according to my ability and judgement, I consider for the benefit of my patients, and abstain from whatever is deleterious and mischievous.

I will give no deadly medicine to anyone if asked, nor suggest any such counsel; and in like manner I will not give to a woman a pessary to produce abortion. With purity and with holiness I will pass my life and practise my Art.

I will not cut persons labouring under the stone, but will leave this work to be done by men who are practitioners of this work.

Into whatever houses I enter, I will go into them for the benefit of the sick, and I will abstain from every voluntary act of mischief and corruption; and, further, from the seduction of females, or males, of freemen or slaves.

Whatever, in connection with my professional practice, I see or hear, in the life of men, which ought not to be spoken of abroad, I will not divulge, as reckoning that all such should be kept secret.

While I continue to keep this oath unviolated, may it be granted to me to enjoy life and practise this Art, respected by all men, in all times. Should I violate this Oath, may the reverse be my lot.

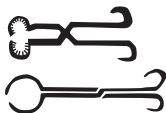


Fig 2. Ever since Hippocrates banned surgery for bladder stones and inaugurated the turf war between barber-surgeons and physicians, doctors of all sorts have been keen to have a go: after all, what is forbidden holds a special fascination. Albucasis (930-1013AD) developed this

charming and delicate implement to insert through his patient's perineum and into the bladder. As we listen to him saying "just a small prick coming...you won't feel a thing..." we hear an echo of our own bedside manner, and feel the admonishing hand of Hippocrates on our shoulder.

Image courtesy of Rabie E Abdel-Halim

When your back is to the wall

Addressed to gods we do not recognize, and entreating us to abhor operations for stones we never felt any compulsion to remove, we spent the first years of our training thinking that Hippocrates was merely quaint, until one day we took up work in a new hospital on the outskirts of a small but quite well-known city in the middle of the country. There were carpets on the floor and all signs to the Labour Ward had been removed and replaced with ones to the 'Delivery Suite'. Everything was perfect and painless. There was even time for an introductory tour by the proud Administrator. As he droned on, our eyes roamed over the carpets, to the pictures on the walls, and settled on the ceiling, where there were undeniable squiggles of arterial blood. How had it got up there? And so soon after opening? Pain and calamity were seeping into that hospital even before the paint was dry. As our work unfolded, backs frequently to the wall, floored by vicious circumstances, and with ceilings caving in, Hippocrates seemed even further away, on his dark blue island of Cos,¹ under his famous tree (fig 1). No floors, no walls, and no ceilings. Then all became clear. What Hippocrates had at his back was no man-made wall but the bark of our living family tree, that most rooted of all our collective medical memories. Now, when our back is to the wall, we can sometimes hypnotize ourselves into feeling the rough contour of that supporting trunk; and now, when we look up, through the blood, we see sky.



2 Ideals

Decision and *intervention* are the essence of action: *reflection* and *conjecture* are the essence of thought: the essence of medicine is combining these in the service of others. We offer our ideals to stimulate thought and action: like the stars, ideals are hard to reach, but they serve for navigation during the night. We choose Orion (fig 1) as our emblem for this navigation as he had miraculous sight (a gift from his immortal lover, Eos, to help him in his task of hunting down all dangerous things)—and, as his constellation is visible in the northern *and* the southern hemispheres (being at the celestial equator), he links our readers everywhere.

- ★ Do not blame the sick for being sick.
- ★ If the patient's wishes are known, comply with them.
- ★ Work for your patients, not your consultant.
- ★ Ward staff are usually right; respect their opinions.
- ★ Treat the whole patient, not the disease, or the nurses.
- ★ Admit people—not 'strokes', 'infarcts', or 'crumble'.
- ★ Spend time with the bereaved; help them to shed tears.
- ★ Give the patient (and yourself) time: time for questions, to reflect, to allow healing, and time to gain autonomy.
- ★ Give patients the benefit of the doubt. Be optimistic. Optimistic patients who feel in charge live longer.²
- ★ Use ward rounds to boost patients' morale, not your own.
- ★ Be kind to yourself: you are not an inexhaustible resource.
- ★ Question your conscience—however strongly it tells you to act.

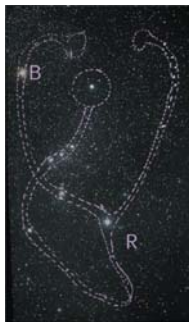


Fig 1. The constellation of Orion has 3 superb stars: *Belatrix* (the stethoscope's bell), *Betelgeuse* (B) and *Rigel* (R). The 3 stars at the crossover (Orion's Belt) are Alnitak, Alnilam, and Mintaka. ©JML & David Malin

Ideal and less than ideal methods of care

Sleepwalking with our head in the clouds, we see neither the dozen stars above our head nor the tripwires at our feet, so we are frequently surprised to find ourselves falling head-over-heels in love with the idea that we are doing quite well. The great beauty of clinical medicine is that we are all levelled by our patients and their carers, whether we are students or professors, as this story shows: A man cut his hand and went round to his neighbour for help. This neighbour happened to be a doctor, but it was not the doctor but his 3-year-old daughter who opened the door. Seeing that he was hurt and bleeding, she took him in, pressed her handkerchief over his wound, and reclined him, feet up, in the best chair. She stroked his head and patted his hand, and told him about her flowers, and then about her frogs, and, after some time, was starting to tell him about her father—when he eventually appeared. He quickly turned the neighbour into a patient, and then into a bleeding biohazard, and then dispatched him to A&E 'for suturing'. (The neighbour had no idea what this was.) He waited 3 hours in A&E, had 2 desultory stitches, and an interview, with a medical student who suggested a tetanus vaccination (to which he was allergic). He returned to the doctor next door a few days later, praising his young carer, but not the doctor (who had turned him into a patient), nor the hospital (who had turned him into an item on a conveyor belt), nor the student who turned him into a question mark (does a 50-year-old with a full series of tetanus vaccinations need a booster at the time of injury?).

It was the 3-year-old who was his true physician, who took him in, cared for him, and gave him time and dignity. Question her instinct for care as you will: point out that it could have led to harm; that it was not evidence-based; and that the hospital was just a victim of its own success. But remember that the story shows *there is*, as TS Eliot said, *at best, only a limited value in the knowledge derived from experience*, eg the knowledge encompassed in this book. The child had the innate understanding and the natural compassion that we all too easily lose amid the science, the knowledge, and our stainless-steel universe of organized health care.

The bedside manner and communication skills

On opening a window to ventilate a stuffy consulting room, one of the authors overheard some candid feedback from the previous patient whose husband had asked how the consultation had gone: "I suppose he got it right... pity about the bedside manner." The window was quickly closed again! The point of this page is to slowly re-open the window on the understanding that few doctors have special gifts in this area, and most have a rich catalogue of errors to draw on.

Our bedside manner matters as it shows patients if they can *trust* us. Where there is no trust there is little healing. A good bedside manner is not static. It develops in the light of patients' needs. And it is grounded in the timeless virtues of honesty, humour, and humility in the presence of human weakness and suffering.

Doctors tend to write pompously about the bedside manner as if they were paragons, and patients may write with anger about it, without grasping the constraints (excuses?) which lead to our poor bedside manner. So let us start with *doctors who are patients*. You cannot get better than this doctor's report on her physician: "I felt he understood me: he asked all about how my illness interfered with my work and what I felt about it. He even seemed to remember parts of our previous consultation."

It is simple to understand that words we use at the bedside are often misinterpreted: for example, 10% of patients say that jaundice means yellow vomit and remission is often taken to mean 'cure'. When we analyse doctors who have become patients we realize there is an impasse in communication which no lexicon can remedy. Time itself flows differently for doctors and patients. "Just wait here and the radiographer will be with you right away" may presage a wait of 1 hour, which seems an age to the patient. "We will get the result soon" means weeks to doctors, and before lunch to patients.³ If, when assessing risk, doctors who become patients tend to invert the meaning of "good" and "bad", is there any hope that we can communicate well with our less rational patients?⁴ Maybe these rules will help: •Give the most important details first •Check on retention and understanding •Be specific. "Drink 6 cups of water a day" is better than "Drink more fluids" •Give written material with easy readability. ►Don't assume everyone can read: naming the pictures but not the words on our test chart (see inside front cover) reveals this tactfully.

Ensure harmony between your view of what must be done and your patient's. We talk of *compliance* with our regimens, when what we should talk of is *concordance*, which recognizes the central role of patient participation in all good care plans.

Anxiety reduction or intensification A simple explanation of what you are going to do often defuses what can be a highly charged affair. With children, try more subtle techniques, such as examining the abdomen using the child's own hands, or examining their teddy bear first.

Pain reduction or intensification Compare: "I'm going to press your stomach. If it hurts, cry out" with "I'm going to touch your stomach; let me know what you feel" and "I'll lay a hand on your stomach. Sing out if you feel anything." We can sound frightening, neutral, or joyful, and the patient will relax or tense up accordingly.

The tactful or clumsy invasion of personal space During ophthalmoscopy we must get much nearer to the patient than is acceptable in normal social intercourse. Both doctor and patient may end up holding their breath, which helps neither the patient keep his eyes perfectly still, nor the doctor to carry out a full examination. Simply explain "I need to get very close to your eyes for this." (Not "We need to get very close for this"—one of the authors was kissed repeatedly while conducting ophthalmoscopy by a patient with frontal lobe signs.)

In summary Our bedside manner must allow our patients to trust us, and enable the consultation to be a healing event in its own right. But it shouldn't be so delightful as to cause endless queues of eager, doctor-dependent patients. As another patient said: "All this babble...is it worth it? Your predecessor Dr W. would have cleared this waiting room in 1 hour, maximum, and then we could all go home."



4 Asking questions

We can all attend communications courses on how to make good use of focused and open-ended questions, ask fewer leading questions, and respond to patient cues. Does this influence what we do back at work? Randomized trials say "Yes!"⁵; also, additional skills, not apparent at 3 months after courses, become evident, with 80% fewer interruptions, for example.⁶ One reason for this acceleration of our skills is that good communication makes our work interesting, richer, and deeper. Tactful psychosocial probing is also evident.⁷ But empathy may dry up over time⁶ (one reason to refresh ourselves as often as possible).

Leading questions On seeing a bloodstained handkerchief you ask: "How long have you been coughing up blood?" "6 weeks, doctor", so you assume haemoptysis for 6 weeks. In fact, the stain could be due to a cut finger, or a nose bleed. On finding this out later (perhaps after expensive and unpleasant tests), you will be annoyed with your patient for misleading you, but he was trying to be polite by giving the sort of answer you were expecting. Leading questions permit no opportunity to deny assumptions. "Is your chest pain sharp or dull?" is a common and commonly misleading question. It's as helpful as speaking to your patient in the wrong language.⁸ Try "Tell me more about what you are feeling ... what's it really like?" (p89).

Questions suggesting the answer "Was the vomit red, yellow, or black—like coffee grounds?"—the classic description of vomited blood. "Yes, like coffee grounds, doctor." The doctor's expectations and hurry to get the evidence into a pre-decided format have so tarnished the story as to make it useless (see also p13).

Open questions The most open question is "How are you?" The direction a patient chooses offers valuable information during this first 'golden' minute in which you are silent. Other examples are gentle imperatives such as "Tell me about the vomit" "It was dark" "How dark?" "Dark bits in it" "Like...?" "Like bits of soil in it." This information is gold, although it is not cast in the form of 'coffee grounds'.

Patient-centred questions In order to consider your patient's viewpoint, learn to weave between finding out about the disease and their illness. Try to understand the patient's unique experience and any effect on their life. What are their *ideas*? "What do you think is wrong?" Explore their *concerns*: "What other things are on your mind? How does having this affect you? What is the worst thing? It makes you feel..." (The doctor is silent.) What are their *expectations*? "What can we do about this?"⁹ Share management plans. ▶ Unless you become patient-centred your patient may never be fully satisfied with you, or fully cooperative.

Casting your questions over the whole family This is most useful in revealing if symptoms are caused or perpetuated by psychological mechanisms. They probe the network of causes and enabling conditions which allow nebulous symptoms to flourish in family life. "Who else is important in your life? Are they worried about you? Who really understands you?" Until this sort of question is asked, illness may resist treatment. Eg "Who is present when your headache starts? Who notices it first—you or your wife? Who worries about it most (or least)? What does your wife do when (or before) you get it?" Think to yourself: *Who* is his headache? We note with fascination research showing that in clusters of hard-to-diagnose symptoms, it is the spouse's view of them that is the best predictor of outcome: if the spouse is determined that symptoms must be physical, the outcome is worse than if the spouse allows that some symptoms may be psychological.

Echoes Try repeating the last words said as a route to new intimacies, otherwise inaccessible, as you fade into the distance, and the patient soliloquizes "...I've always been suspicious of my wife." "Wife ..." "My wife ... and her father together." "Together..." "I've never trusted them together." "Trusted them together..." "No, well, I've always felt I've known who my son's real father was... I can never trust those two together." Without any questions you may unearth the unexpected, important clue which throws a new light on the history.

▶ *If you only ask questions, you will only receive answers in reply.* If you interrogate a robin, he will fly away: treelike silence may bring him to your hand.

What is the mechanism? Finding narrative answers

Like toddlers, we should always be asking “*Why?*”—not just to find ultimate causes, nor to keep in step with our itineraries of veracity (although there is a place for this), but to enable us to find the simplest level for intervention. Some simple change early on in a chain of events may be sufficient to bring about a cure, but later on, such opportunities may not arise. For example, it is not enough for you to diagnose heart failure in your breathless patient. Ask: “*Why is there heart failure?*” If you don’t, you may be satisfied by giving the patient an antifailure drug—and any side-effects from this, such as uraemia or incontinence from diuretic-associated polyuria, will be attributed to an unavoidable consequence of necessary therapy.

If only you had asked “*What is the mechanism of the heart failure?*” you might have found a cause, eg anaemia coupled with ischaemic heart disease. You cannot cure the latter, but treating the anaemia may be all that is required to cure the patient’s breathlessness. But do not stop there. Ask: “*What is the mechanism of the anaemia?*” You find a low MCV and a correspondingly low serum ferritin (p320)—and you might be tempted to say to yourself, I have the prime cause.

Wrong! Put aside the idea of prime causes, and go on asking “*What is the mechanism?*” Retaking the history (often the best ‘investigation’) shows a very poor diet. “*Why is the patient eating a poor diet?*” Is he ignorant or too poor to eat properly? You may find the patient’s wife died a year ago, he is sinking into a depression, and cannot be bothered to eat. He would not care if he died tomorrow.

You come to realize that simply treating the patient’s anaemia may not be of much help—so go on asking “*Why?*”: “*Why did you bother to go to the doctor if you aren’t interested in getting better?*” It turns out he only went to see you to please his daughter. He is unlikely to take your drugs unless you really get to the bottom of what he cares about. His daughter is what matters and, unless you include her, all your initiatives may fail. Talk to her, offer help for the depression, teach her about iron-rich foods and, with luck, your patient’s breathlessness may gradually begin to disappear. Even if it does *not* start to disappear, you are learning to stand in your patient’s shoes and you may discover what will enable him to accept help. And this dialogue may help you to be a kinder doctor, particularly if you are worn out by endless lists of technical tasks, which you must somehow fit into impossibly overcrowded days and nights.

You never really know a man until you stand in his shoes and walk around in them. Harper Lee; *To Kill a Mockingbird*

Constructing imaginative narratives yielding new meanings Doctors are often thought of as being reductionist or mechanistic—but the above shows that asking “*Why?*” can enlarge the scope of our enquires into holistic realms. Another way to do this is to ask “*What does this symptom mean?*”—for this person, his family, and our world. A limp might mean a neuropathy, or falling behind with the mortgage, if you are a dancer; or it may represent a medically unexplained symptom which subtly alters family hierarchies both literally (on family walks) and metaphorically. Science is about clarity, objectivity, and theory in modelling reality. But there is another way of modelling the external world, which involves subjectivity, emotion, ambiguity, and arcane relationships between apparently unrelated phenomena. The medical humanities (p17) explore this—and have burgeoned recently¹⁰—leading to the existence of two camps: humanities and science. If while reading this you are getting impatient to get to the real nuts and bolts of technological medicine, you are in the latter camp. We are not suggesting that you leave it, only that you learn to operate out of both. If you do not, your professional life will be full of failures, which you may deny or remain in ignorance of. If you *do* straddle both camps, there will also be failures, but you will realize what these failures *mean*, and you will know how to *transform* them. This transformation happens through dialogue and reflection. We would achieve more if we did less: every hospital should have a department of reflection and it should be visited as often as the radiology department. In fact every hospital has many such departments, carved out of our own minds—it’s just that their entrances are blocked by piles of events, tasks and happenings.

We all labour against our own cure; for death is the cure of all diseases. Thomas Browne, *Religio Medici*, 1642

Compared with being born, death should be straightforward. But nothing you can say to your patient can ever be relied upon to tame death's mystery, and preparing people for death is more than control of terminal symptoms (see p7).

Death is nature's master stroke, albeit a cruel one, because it allows genotypes space to try on new phenotypes. The time comes in the life of any organ or person when it is better to start from scratch rather than carry on with the weight and muddle of endless accretions. Our bodies and minds are these perishable phenotypes—the froth, that always turns to scum, on the wave of our genes. These genes are not really *our* genes. It is we who belong to them for a few decades. It is one of nature's great insults that she should prefer to put *all* her eggs in the basket of a defenceless, incompetent neonate rather than in the tried and tested custody of our own superb minds. But as our neurofibrils begin to tangle, and that neonate walks to a wisdom that eludes us, we are forced to give nature credit for her daring idea. Of course, nature, in her careless way, can get it wrong: people often die in the wrong order (one of our chief roles is to prevent this mis-ordering of deaths, not the phenomenon of death itself). So we must admit that, on reflection, dying is a brilliant idea, and one that it is most unlikely we could ever have thought of ourselves.

Diagnosis of death Although death is a process, there is a need to name the moment of death. This has long been identified by the simultaneous onset of apnoea, unconsciousness and absence of the circulation, yet there is no standardized criteria for *when* death should be confirmed (irrespective of whether the heart has stopped beating of its own accord, treatment has been withdrawn, or resuscitation attempts have failed).¹ Royal College guidance suggests that cardiorespiratory death can be diagnosed after 5 minutes of observed asystole (by the absence of a central pulse and heart sounds \pm absence of activity on continuous ECG or echocardiogram). After 5 minutes of continued arrest, irreversible damage to the brainstem will have occurred and the absence of pupillary responses to light, corneal reflex and motor response to supra-orbital pressure should be confirmed. The time of death is said to be the time when these criteria are met.^{11,12}

Diagnosis of death by CNS criteria (brainstem death) If the brainstem is irreversibly damaged, but the heart is still beating, death has occurred and the heart will inevitably stop beating on withdrawal of support. *UK brain death criteria* (USA criteria differ) have 3 components: **1** The patient must suffer from a condition that has led to irreversible brain damage **2** Potentially reversible causes have been adequately excluded (in particular: depressant drugs; hypothermia; metabolic or endocrine disturbances; or reversible causes of apnoea) **3** Coma, apnoea and the absence of brainstem reflexes are formally demonstrated. **Tests:** All brainstem reflexes must be absent: •Pupils unresponsive to light •Corneal reflex absent (no blink to cotton-wool touch) •Absent oculo-vestibular reflexes (no eye movements on instillation of ice-cold water into the external auditory meatus—visualize the tympanic membrane first) •Stimulation in the cranial nerve distributions produces no motor response •There is no gag reflex (on touching the palate) or cough reflex (to bronchial stimulation) •The apnoea test (performed last) demonstrates no respiratory response to an acidemic respiratory stimulus: ventilation rate is reduced without inducing hypoxia, P_{CO_2} is allowed to rise ≥ 6.0 kPa with pH ≤ 7.40 .^{11,12}

Diagnosis is made by 2 doctors competent in the procedure (registered for >5 years, one of whom is a consultant). Testing should be undertaken by the doctors together and must always be performed completely and successfully on two occasions.

Organ donation: Diagnosis of brain death allows organs to be donated and removed with as little hypoxic damage as possible. Non-heartbeating organ donation is increasing in practice. Don't avoid the topic with relatives. Many are glad to help.

After death See the relatives. Inform the GP and consultant. Inform the Coroner/Procurator Fiscal (if required). Sign death certificates promptly.

1 Make full & extensive attempts to reverse any contributing causes (hypoglycaemia, acidosis, hypothermia or drug intoxication). Patient's wishes via an advanced decision to refuse treatment must be respected.



Facing and managing death

When you might raise death with your patient and you find yourself thinking it is better for them not to know, suspect that you mean: it is easier for me not to tell.

► Most patients are told less than they want.¹³

Acceptance Accepting death may involve passing through stages on a path. It helps to know where your patient is on this journey (but progress is rarely orderly and is not always forwards). At first there may be *shock* and *numbness*, then *denial* (which reduces anxiety), then *anger*, then *grief* and then, perhaps, *acceptance*.¹⁴ Finally, there may be intense longing for death, as your patient moves beyond the reach of worldly cares.¹ *JS Bach*
Ich habe genug

Hope A dilemma when working with terminally ill patients is to avoid collusion and yet sustain hope. In doing this we need to understand what hope is, and why it can remain hope even when it may sound like despair. Hope nurtures within it the belief that what is hoped for may be realized. Initially this may be hope for recovery, or at least that death is long delayed. Yet for hope to continue developing it may have to move beyond an insistence on recovery and require facing or exploring the possibility of dying. Patients who contemplate dying as part of their hope may find the social support that once buoyed for a hope of recovery works against them—lack of support at this stage can result in resignation and despair. Hope beyond recovery is a more varied hope: the patient may simply hope to die with dignity, or for the continuing success of their children, or that a partner will find the support they need. For most people, such a hope becomes possible, but few find a meaningful hope which they are allowed to affirm.¹⁵ Hope beyond recovery may accept death (rather than life at any cost) and find a sense of ultimate meaning in a life lived, or hope in life after death (as a contingency of faith). ► In patients who are terminally ill, psychosocial and spiritual needs are as important as symptom control.

The active management of death Death may be regarded as a medical failure rather than an inevitable consequence of life. But when medical treatments can no longer offer a cure and a patient enters the last days and weeks of life, the active management of death is vital. In the UK there are 10,000 deaths/week¹⁶ and few hospice beds, so the chances are that a death will be happening near you soon, and nobody will be in charge. Have courage and take charge. Find out about your patient's wishes, and comply with them. ► *Get help promptly from palliative care teams*. Take into account GMC guidance¹⁷ and current thinking expressed in the Gold Standards Framework.¹⁸ If a *living will* or *advance directive* is in existence, comply with it and promote your patient's autonomy. ► *At the end of life, autonomy trumps all else*.² Take strength from this clarity. Talk to the patient, relatives, and staff to get (and document³) consensus on what the patient's priority is (eg relief of suffering). Make sure pain relief is adequate, not to cause death, but to leave no opportunity for pain and distress to re-emerge (if that is the patient's implied or stated wish). A good death is one that is appropriate and requested for by a particular patient. It is wrong to assume that everyone's wish is the same. Some patients may choose to 'rage against the dying of the light'⁴ and may never accept their end calmly.¹⁹ Whatever a patient's wishes, ensure that the resources and skills are available to meet their needs. ► See pages 536–9 for practical advice on symptom control in those who are dying.

¹ Bach's cantata in contemplation of death *Ich habe genug* (I've had enough) expresses contempt for worldly life and a yearning for death and the life beyond. Inspired by Simeon's prayer *Nunc Dimittis*, it surrounds Simeon's encounter with Christ. Simeon had been told he would not see death until he had seen the Lord.

² Provided our humanity remains intact (NB: good palliative care will, in general, *enhance* humanity).

³ Establish & document that: ► The patient is dying and has initiated the request ► You have discussed drug doses with an experienced Dr ► Dose increases are proportionate and needed for symptom control.

⁴ *Do not go gentle into that good night* was written by Dylan Thomas for his dying father.

8 Prescribing drugs

► Consult the *BNF* or *BNF for Children* or similar before giving any drug with which you are not thoroughly familiar; check interactions meticulously.

Before prescribing, ask if the patient is allergic to anything. The answer is often "yes"—but do not stop here. Characterize the reaction, or else you risk denying a life-saving, and safe, drug such as penicillin because of a mild reaction, eg nausea. Is the reaction a **true allergy** (anaphylaxis, p806, or a rash?), a **toxic effect** (eg ataxia is inevitable if given large doses of phenytoin), a **predictable adverse reaction** (eg GI bleeding from aspirin), or an **idiosyncratic (unpredictable) reaction**?

Remember *primum non nocere*: first do no harm. The more minor the illness, the more weight this carries. The more serious the illness, the more its antithesis comes into play: *nothing ventured, nothing gained*. These **ten commandments** should be written on every tablet:

- 1 Explore alternatives to drugs—which often lead to doctor-dependency (p xi), paternalism, and medicalization of life. Drugs are also expensive (£ billions/yr^{UK}) and prices increase faster than general inflation. There are 3 places to look:
 - **The larder**: eg lemon and honey for sore throats, rather than penicillin.
 - **The blackboard**: eg education about the self-inflicted causes of oesophagitis. Rather than giving expensive drugs, advise raising the head of the bed, and avoiding tight garments, too many big meals, smoking, and alcohol excess.
 - **Lastly, look to yourself**: giving a piece of yourself, some *real* sympathy, is worth more than all the drugs in your pharmacopoeia to those who are frightened, bereaved, or weary of life. One of us (JML) for many years looked after a paranoid lady: monthly visits comprised an injection and a hug, no doubt always chaperoned, until one day mental health nurses took over her care. She was seen by a different nurse each month. They didn't know about hugging, so after a while she stopped cooperating, and soon it fell to us to certify her death.
- 2 Are you prescribing for a minor illness because you want to solve all problems, or perhaps because it makes *you* feel better? Patients may be happy just to know the illness *is* minor. Knowing this may make it acceptable. Some people do not believe in drugs, and you must find this out.
- 3 Decide if the patient is responsible. If he now swallows *all* the quinine pills you have so attentively prescribed for his cramps, death will be swift.
- 4 Know of other ways your prescription may be misused. Perhaps the patient whose 'insomnia' you so kindly treated is even now selling it on the black market or grinding up your prescription prior to injecting himself, desperate for a fix. Will you be suspicious when he returns to say he has lost his drugs?
- 5 Address these questions when prescribing off the ward:
 - How many daily doses are there? 1-2 is *much* better than 4. Good doctors spend much time harmonizing complex regimens. One reason for 'failure' of HIV drugs, for example, is that regimens are too complex. Drug companies know this, so keep abreast of new modified release (MR) preparations.
 - The bottle/box: can the patient read the instructions—and can he open it?
 - How will you know if the patient forgets to return for follow-up?
 - If the patient agrees, enlist help (eg spouse/carer) to ensure he remembers to take the pills, or suggest blister packs that organize tablets by time and day.
- 6 Discuss side-effects and risk of allergy. We may downplay risk, but our drugs cause 1 million NHS admissions/yr (£1-2 billion/yr). Most drug deaths are avoidable.²⁰
- 7 Use computerized decision support whenever you can. If the patient is on 7 drugs and has 5 complaints, the computer will help you find which of the drugs are possible culprits.²¹ Computers also warn about drug interactions.
- 8 Agree with the patient on the risk : benefit ratio's favourability. Try to ensure there is true concordance (p3) between you and your patient.
- 9 Record how you will review the patient's need for each drug and progress towards agreed goals, eg pulse rate to mark degree of β -blockade.
- 10 List benefits of *this* drug to *this* patient for *all* drugs taken. Specify what each drug is for.

Prescribing in renal failure and liver failure: p301 & p259.



Surviving life on the wards

At the end of every day, with the going down of the sun (which we never see at the coalface of clinical medicine), we can momentarily cheer ourselves up by the thought that we are one day nearer to the end of life on earth—and our responsibility for the unending tide of illness that floods into our corridors and seeps into our wards and consulting rooms. Of course you may have many other quiet satisfactions, but if not, read on and wink with us as we hear some fool or visionary telling us that our aim should be to produce the greatest health and happiness for the greatest number.

When we hear this, we don't expect cheering from the tattered ranks of midnight on-call junior doctors: rather, our ears are detecting a decimated groan, because these men and women know that there is something at stake in on-call doctoring far more elemental than health or happiness: namely survival. Within the first weeks, however brightly your armour shone, it will now be smeared and splattered if not with blood, then with the fallout from very many decisions that were taken without sufficient care and attention. Not that you were lazy, but *force majeure* on the part of Nature and the exigencies of ward life have, we are suddenly stunned to realize, taught us to be second-rate: for to insist on being first-rate in all areas is to sign a death warrant for our patients, and for ourselves. Perfectionism cannot survive in our clinical world. To cope with this fact, or, to put it less depressingly, to flourish in this new world, don't keep re-polishing your armour (what are the 10 causes of atrial fibrillation—or are there 11?), rather furnish your mind—and nourish your body. Regular food makes those midnight groans of yours less intrusive. Drink plenty: doctors are more likely to be oliguric than their patients.²² Don't voluntarily deny yourself the restorative power of sleep. A good nap is the order of the day—and for the nights, sleep for as long as possible. Remember that sleep is our natural state, in which we were first created, and we only wake to feed our dreams.

We cannot prepare you for finding out that you are not at ease with the person you are becoming, and neither would we dream of imposing on our readers a recommended regimen of exercise, diet, and mental fitness. Finding out what can lead you through adversity is the art of living.

Junior doctors' first jobs are not just a phase to get through and to enjoy where possible (there are often *many* such possibilities); they are also the anvil on which we are beaten into a new and perhaps uncomfortable shape. Luckily not all of us are made of iron so there is a fair chance that one day we will spring back into something resembling our normal shape, and realize that it was our weaknesses, not our strengths, which served us best. The jobs of junior doctors encompass huge swings in energy, motivation, and mood, which can be precipitated by small events. If you are depressed for more than a day, speak to a sympathetic friend, partner, or counsellor. ► *When in doubt, communicate.* And use an integrative philosophy of medicine, as described in this next section, to reclaim yourself.

Integrative medicine: beyond biopsychosocial models The biopsychosocial model is the medical teacher's Grand Theory of Everything. It's like a game of 'stones, scissors and paper': the patient presents with a physical symptom, and the clever doctor trumps you, who had taken the symptom at face value, by revealing the social background that allowed the symptom to flourish. If the problem is social (eg poor housing), the clever doctor reveals the hidden asthma that this is causing, and if the symptom is purely psychological, the doctor reveals and manages the social effects of this for the patient's family. It's a powerful game,²³ and much good comes from it.²⁴ But like all orthodoxy it needs challenging.²⁵ Let us consider Mr B, the builder, who comes to A&E having nailed his testicle to a plank. Everybody gathers round, but the clever doctor is annoyed that nobody is listening to his biopsychosocial diagnosis. The nail is removed; the testicle is repaired, but Mr B does not go on his way rejoicing. A nurse, a better listener than our doctor, uses an individually tailored *moral-symbolic-existential* approach to reveal that the injury was self-inflicted. A *spiritual-cultural-ritualistic* model may be needed for his care.²⁶

As the author of the biopsychosocial model knew, there is more to medicine than stones, scissors, and paper, or *any* triad that does not integrate a rethinking of the task of medicine with infrastructure of relationships and beliefs.



Resource allocation: who gets what Resource allocation is about cutting the health cake—whose size is *given*. What slice should go to transplants, new joints, and services for dementia? Cynics would say that this depends on how vociferous each group of patients (or doctors) is. Others try to find a rational way to allocate resources. Health economists (econocrats) have invented the QALY for this purpose. NB: focusing on how to cut the cake diverts attention from how large the cake should be (is it better to spend money on space exploration or incontinence pads?).

How much is a life worth? Some countries will spend \$2-10 million to find a man on a life-raft; others will spend nothing ("he's just one more mouth to feed").^{29,30} Totalitarian capitalist states (eg China) will take a different view to liberal democracies. In France, one life is worth a hundred cherry trees, if the blossom is fine.³¹

What is a QALY? 1 year of healthy life expectancy is worth 1 'quality adjusted life year'. 1 year of unhealthy life expectancy is worth <1 QALY (its value is lower the poorer health is)³². If you are likely to live for 8yrs in perfect health on an old drug, you gain 8 QALYs; if a new drug would give you 16yrs but at a quality of life you rate at only 25% of the maximum, you would gain only 4 QALYs. The dream of a health economist is to buy the most QALYs for his budget. Health assessment organizations (eg NICE) keep arbitrary figures in their head (~£30,000/QALY—not evidence-based). If an intervention costs more than this, reasons for recommending it have to be all the more explicit or approval may be refused (the drug may be effective, but the cost is not). QALYs can be recalculated (on very dubious grounds)³³ after weighting for age and disease-seriousness³⁴ to give the politically correct answer, for example in granting extra value to prolonging the last months of life.

QALYs do help in rationing, but problems include pricing and invidiousness in choosing between people; a snag is that if we accept that the quality of our life is the quality of our relationships (Anthony Robins), and that this value is unquantifiable (1 wife is good, but 2 wives are not *exactly* twice as good);¹ then we can see why bodies such as NICE get excoriated over issues such as dementia drugs, when seemingly small improvements can cause disproportionate joy, as when a demented man becomes able to recall his wife's name.^{35,36} Should spouses put their own QALYs into the sum?

The inverse care law & distributive justice

'Availability of good medical care varies inversely with the need for it in the population served. This operates more completely where medical care is exposed to market forces... The market distribution of medical care exaggerates maldistribution of medical resources.'

There is much evidence in support of this famous thesis formulated by Tudor Hart.³⁷ Premature death and long-term limiting illness are both strongly associated with deprivation.³⁸ It is not just availability of care but access to services that matters. Those who need healthcare the least use services more, and more effectively, than those with the greatest need.³⁹ Distributive justice is the fair distribution of health resources, based on the premise that all are equal in terms of healthcare provision (see also p15). Ideally, sufficient healthcare would be provided to all, but the health cake isn't big enough for this. So, resources should preferably be distributed in relation to need, within a society that has equal access. In the UK, medical care does exist in deprived areas, but this does not ensure that services are accessed, or that they are of good quality.⁴⁰

There is no doubt that if one wants to make a positive contribution to health, it is no good just discovering pathways, blocking receptors, and inventing drugs. The more this is done, the more urgent the need for distributive justice—that unyielding and perpetually problematic benchmark against which we are all judged.

If those who shout loudest get heard first, we need to know when to train our ears to be deaf.

1 This is an example of a **non-parametric quantity**, ie a quantity where simple ordering *may* be valid, but not operations such as addition or multiplication. Most medical statistics are assumed to be parametric; this is often false, invalidating much research.



► Psychopathology is common in colleagues, patients, and relatives. ► Seek help for your own problems. Find a sympathetic GP and register with him or her. You are not the best person to plan your assessment, treatment, and referral.

Assessing mental state Move gently through her thoughts, as one might explore a new garden'. ^{Ian McEwan} ^{Atonement} What is in bloom now? Where do those paths lead? What is under that stone? **Focus on:** Appearance (dress, cleanliness, physical condition); behaviour (eye contact, rapport, anxious? suspicious?); speech (volume, rate & tone); mood (subjective & objective); perception (hallucinations); thought form & content (formal thought disorder? delusions? obsessions? plan to harm self/others?); cognition (concentration, orientation, memory). Note insight (are his experiences the result of illness?). Non-verbal behaviour often gives more valid clues than words, *OHCS* p324.

Depression This is common, and often ignored, at great cost to wellbeing. Thinking "I would be depressed in his shoes" may sap our will to help, and as biological features (early waking, ↓appetite, ↓weight, loss of interest in sex/hobbies) are common on all wards, we may not realize just how bad things have got. The central clinical features of depression can be assessed by asking: ⁴¹ "Have you been bothered by feeling down, depressed, or hopeless in the last month?" If so, "Have you been bothered by lack of interest or pleasure in doing things?" If "yes", depression is likely. There may also be guilt and feelings of worthlessness. ► *Don't think it's not your job to treat depression.* It is as important as pain. Try to arrange activities to boost the patient's morale and confidence. Share your thoughts with other team members, as well as relatives, if the patient wishes. Among these, your patient may find a kindred spirit who can give insight and support. ► If in doubt, try an antidepressant. For *SSRIs* (eg *citalopram*, 20mg/24h), see *OHCS* p340. Cognitive interventions are just as important as drugs (*OHCS* p370), so liaise with the patient's GP pre-discharge.

The violent patient Recognize early warning signs: visible distress, tachypnoea, clenched fists, shouting, chanting, restlessness, repetitive movements, pacing, gesticulations. Your own intuition may be helpful here. ► At the first hint of violence, get help. If alone, make sure you are nearer the door than the patient.

- Do not be alone with the patient; summon security or the police if needed.
- Try calming and talking with the patient. Do not touch him. Use your body language to reassure (sitting back, open palms, attentive).
- Get his consent; if unforthcoming, emergency treatment can still be given to save life, or serious deterioration (under *common law* 'necessity' in England): You are acting *against* your patient's wishes but in order to adequately carry out your *duty of care*. Enlist the help of nurses who know the patient.
- Use minimum force to achieve his welfare (but this may entail 6 strong men).

Causes: *Anger* (long waiting times^{46%}, dissatisfaction with treatment^{15%}, *disagreement with the physician*^{10%}), ⁴² *alcohol/alcohol withdrawal* (a common cause of problems on the ward; p282), *drugs* (recreational; prescribed), *hypoglycaemia*, *delirium* (p488), *psychosis*, *psychopathy*. Check blood glucose. Before further tests, haloperidol may be needed: 2-10mg IM (allow 30mins for effect; max. 18mg/24h; monitor pulse, temp., and BP every 15min for 1h then every 30mins until ambulatory).

After a violent event: Attend to your own and others' wounds (get help as needed); report the event. Flashbacks, depression, insomnia, and need for time off are common.⁴³

Capacity If a rational adult refuses vital treatment, it may be as well to respect this decision, provided the patient has 'capacity'. A person lacks capacity if they are **unable** to: • Make a decision because of a permanent or temporary impairment of, or disturbance in, the functioning of the mind, **and** are **unable** to: (≥1 of) • Understand the information relevant to the decision • Retain that information long enough to make a decision • Weigh up the information to make a decision, or • Communicate the decision. Capacity is decision and time specific and is rarely all or nothing, so don't hesitate to get the opinion of others. See p571 for the principles of capacity.

Mental Health Acts Familiarize yourself with local procedures and laws pertaining to your country before your period of duty starts (*OHCS* p402).



► Ageing reflects the cumulative effects of stressors (eg free radicals) and mechanisms for dealing with them. For most of human history, life expectancy was <40yrs. *An ageing population is a sign of successful social and economic policies.*⁴⁴

Healthy ageing Health isn't just 'complete mental and physical wellbeing' (WHO) but also 'a process of adaptation, to changing environments, to growing up and ageing, to healing when damaged, to suffering, and death. Health embraces the future so includes anguish and the inner resources to live with it.' *Ivan Illich 1974 Medical Nemesis*

So healthy ageing is not a contradiction. ► Contrary to stereotype, most old people are fit and at the happiest stage in their lives.⁴⁵ 80% of those over 85yrs live at home; 70% can manage stairs. Any deterioration in an elderly patient is from treatable disease *until proved otherwise*. Find the cause; don't think: *this is simply ageing*. Old age is associated with disease but doesn't cause it *per se*.⁴⁶ Do not restrict treatment because of age—age alone is a poor predictor of outcome.⁴⁷

Differences of emphasis in the approach to old people⁴⁸

1 Multiple pathology: Several diseases may coincide (eg cataract + arthritis = falls).

2 Multiple causes: One problem may have several causes. Treating each alone may do little good; treating all may be of great benefit.⁴⁹

3 Non-specific presentations: The 'geriatric giants'⁵⁰ of incontinence (p650);⁵¹ immobility; instability (falls); and dementia/confusion (p488) are common and any disease may present with these. Typical signs and symptoms may be absent (eg MI without chest pain; pneumonia, but no cough, fever, or sputum).

4 Rapid worsening if treatment is delayed: Complications are common.

5 More time is required for recovery: There is less 'physiological reserve'.

6 Impaired metabolism and excretion of drugs: ∴ drug doses may need lowering.

7 Rehabilitation: Helps maximize independence, eg improving mobility and balance.

8 Social factors: These are central in aiding recovery and return to home.

Special points Take a biopsychosocial approach (p9)⁵² (look for and manage interactions between physical, psychological and social aspects of a person's life).

- Drug concordance (p3): How many different tablets can he cope with? Probably not many more than 2. So which are the most important drugs? If difficulty in managing medicines, consider prescribing blister packs.
- Social network: Are family and friends nearby? Do they visit regularly?
- Care details: Are carers needed? Can meals be delivered? Are District nurses involved?
- Make a holistic **care plan**. Include nutrition. If food is dumped beside a blind man and no one helps cut it up, he may starve. A passing doctor may arrange a CT 'for cachexia', when what he needs is food and cataract surgery.

Discharge planning ► *Start planning discharge from day 1.* A very common question on ward rounds is: "Will this patient get on OK at home?" In answering this, take into account: • Does the patient live alone? • Does any carer have support? • Is your patient in fact a carer for someone even more frail? • Is the accommodation suitable? Stairs? Toilet on the same floor? (If not, can he transfer from chair to commode?) • Is the family supportive—in practice as well as in theory? • Are social services and community services well integrated? *Proper case management programmes really can help and save money (~20%).*⁵³

UK NHS national service framework (NSF) for old age: 8 care-standards

Person-centred care: Enabling older people to make choices about their own care.

Intermediate care: Promoting independence by providing intermediate care.

Hospital care: Delivering specialist care by staff who have the right set of skills.

Rooting out age discrimination: Providing services regardless of age.

Stroke: Treatment and rehabilitation of stroke patients by a specialist service.

Falls: Falls and fracture prevention through a specialist falls service.

Promotion of mental health: Ensuring effective diagnosis, treatment & support.

Promotion of health and active life in older age.

1 A big study (n=28,000) found the odds of being happy increased 5% with each decade. Contentment entails being socially active and accepting: "It's fine I was a schoolteacher, not a Nobel prize winner".

Solving diagnostic puzzles

Penny-dropping moments (PDMs) All pleasures are sensory—apart from those to be had by doing crosswords and diagnostics: both can give us delicious *penny-dropping moments* which come from combining logic with intuition (PDMs, [fig 1](#), p672). With over 14,000 diseases to choose from,⁵⁴ finding the diagnosis is a challenge (often thwarted by unconscious forces, see [BOX](#)). The process of *how* we diagnose receives little attention—it is assumed (wrongly) to entail collating information, which is then forced through a surgical sieve,¹ which somehow leaves the correct diagnosis clinging to its sides.

Diagnosing by recognition For students, this is the most irritating method. You spend an hour asking all the wrong questions, and in waltzes a doctor who names the disease and sorts it out before you have even finished taking the pulse. This doctor has simply recognized the illness like he recognizes an old friend (or enemy).

Diagnosing by probability Over our clinical lives we unconsciously build up a personal database of diagnoses and outcomes, and associated pitfalls. We unconsciously run each new 'case' through this continuously developing probabilistic algorithm—eventually with amazing speed and effortlessness.

Diagnosing by reasoning Like Sherlock Holmes, we must exclude each differential diagnosis, then, whatever is left, however unlikely, *must be* the culprit. This process presupposes that your differential does include the culprit, and that we have methods for *absolutely* excluding diseases. All tests are statistical rather than absolute, which is why this method is, at best, fictional.

Diagnosing by watching and waiting Some doctors need to know immediately and definitively what the diagnosis is, while others can tolerate more uncertainty. The dangers and expense of exhaustive tests can be obviated by the skilful use of time.

Diagnosing by selective doubting Traditionally, patients are 'unreliable' and signs are objective, and tests virtually perfect. When diagnosis is difficult, try inverting this hierarchy. You will soon realize there are no hard signs or perfect tests. But the game of medicine is unplayable if you doubt everything: so doubt selectively.

Diagnosis by iteration and reiteration A brief history suggests looking for a few signs, which leads to further questions and a few tests. The process of taking a history never ends on this view, and as the process reiterates, various diagnostic possibilities crop up, and receive more or less confirmation. For example, when assessing a patient with atrial fibrillation (p124) you notice finger clubbing and make a note to do a chest x-ray for signs of cancer. This leads you to ask about smoking, and then alcohol, which elicits excessive drinking due to recent redundancy.

Thinking about thinking ⁵⁵⁻⁵⁷

The rapid decision-making that is often required of doctors can be aided by *heuristics*—rules for cognitive shortcuts to quick decisions (conscious or unconscious) which are made without full information or analysis. Understanding how we use heuristics (ie by considering how a decision is made) can help us make effective choices, but there are pitfalls. Failed heuristics (biases) interfere with judgement and can lead to diagnostic error. Important examples include:

Anchoring: A significant feature in the history is 'anchored' onto too early in the diagnostic process and is not adjusted for in light of later information. Adjusting probability by incorporating new information can help you become an intuitive thinker. Anchoring can be compounded by *confirmation bias*—the tendency to look for, notice and remember information that fits with pre-existing expectations.

Availability: This explains our tendency to judge something more likely if it readily comes to mind. A recent experience with a disease increases the likelihood of it being diagnosed—problematic if the disease is rare, or has not been seen for a while.

Representativeness: If diagnosis is driven by the extent to which a patient resembles a classic case of a disease, atypical variants will tend to be missed.

1 When your mind goes blank, calm yourself by reciting the *surgical sieve*: The heart, the lung, the blood, the guts / The liver kidney spleen / The brain, the bones, the skin, the nodes / The bits that's in between.

"I work much better in chaos." Francis Bacon⁵⁸ Chaos is not always an enemy: certainly there is no shortage of it in hospitals, consulting rooms, and other battle-grounds. Can we prepare ourselves to use chaos well? Being forewarned allows us to be forearmed, enabling us to adapt to being busy, or at least to wink at each other as we slide down the cascade of long hours→excessive paperwork→too few beds→effort-reward imbalance→compromised care from too few resources→trouble with superiors→difficult patients→too many deaths⁵⁹→failure to reconcile personal and family life with professional roles.⁶⁰ Logistic regression shows that our consequent problems are predicted by 5 stressors: **1** Lack of recognition of own contribution by others. **2** Too much responsibility. **3** Difficulties keeping up to date. **4** Making the right decision alone. **5** Effects of stress on personal/family life.⁶¹

We may think that it is modern medicine that makes us ever busier, but doctors have always been busy. Sir James Paget, for example, would regularly see over 60 patients each day, sometimes travelling many miles, on his horse, to their bedsides. Sir Dominic Corrigan was so busy 180 years ago that he had a secret door made in his consulting room to escape the ever-growing queue of eager patients.⁶²

We are all familiar with the phenomenon of being hopelessly over-stretched, and of wanting Corrigan's secret door. Competing, urgent, and simultaneous demands make carrying out any task all but impossible: the junior doctor is trying to gain IV access on a shocked patient when his 'bleep' sounds. On his way to the phone a patient is falling out of bed, being held in, apparently, only by his visibly lengthening catheter (which had taken the doctor an hour to insert). He knows he should stop to help but, instead, as he picks up the phone, he starts to tell Sister about "this man dangling from his catheter" (knowing in his heart that the worst will have already happened). But he is interrupted by a thud coming from the bed of the lady who has just had a below knee amputation for non-healing leg ulcers: however, it is not her, but her visiting husband who has collapsed. In despair, he turns to the nurse and groans: "There must be some way out of here!" At times like this we all need Corrigan to take us by the shadow of our hand, and walk with us through a metaphorical secret door into a calm inner world. To enable this to happen, make things as easy as possible for yourself—as follows.

First, however lonely you feel, you are not usually alone. Do not pride yourself on not asking for help. If a decision is a hard one, share it with a colleague. Second, take any chance you get to sit down and rest. Have a cup of coffee with other members of staff, or with a friendly patient (patients are sources of renewal, not just devourers of your energies). Third, do not miss meals. If there is no time to go to the canteen, ensure that food is put aside for you to eat when you can: hard work and sleeplessness are twice as bad when you are hungry. Fourth, avoid making work for yourself. It is too easy for junior doctors, trapped in their image of excessive work and blackmailed by misplaced guilt, to remain on the wards reclerking patients, rewriting notes, or rechecking results at an hour when the priority should be caring for themselves. Fifth, when a bad part of the rota is looming, plan a good time for when you are off duty, to look forward to during the long nights.

However busy the 'on take', your period of duty will end. For you, as for Macbeth:

Come what come may,

time and the hour runs through the roughest day.

Riding the wave In *Macbeth*, toil and trouble go hand in hand, but sometimes we work best when we are busy. This is recognized in the aphorism that *if you want a job done quickly, give it to a busy (wo)man*. Observe your colleagues and yourself during a busy day. Sometimes our energy achieves nothing but our own inundation. At other times, by jettisoning everything non-essential, we get airborne and accomplish marvellous feats. As with any sport, we have to break into a sweat before we can get into the zone, where every action meets its mark.

But note that what keeps us riding the wave of a busy day is not what we jettison but what we retain: humour, courtesy, a recognition of the work of others, and an ability to twinkle. A smile causes no delays, and reaches far beyond our lips.

Health and medical ethics

In our public medical personas, we often act as though morality consisted only in following society's conventions: we do this not so much out of laziness but because we recognize that it is better that the public think of doctors as old-fashioned or stupid, than that they should think us evil. But in the silences of our consultations, when it is we ourselves who are under the microscope, then, wriggle as we may, we cannot escape our destiny, which is to lead as often as to follow, in the sphere of ethics. To do this, we need to return to first principles, and not go with the flow of society's expectations. To give us courage in this enterprise, we can recall the aviator's and the seagull's law: it is only by *facing* the prevailing wind that we can become airborne, and achieve a new vantage point from which to survey our world.

Our analysis starts with our aim: to do good by making people healthy. *Good*¹ is the most general term of commendation, and entails four cardinal duties:

- 1 Not doing harm. We owe this duty to all people, not just our patients.⁶³
- 2 Doing good by positive actions. We particularly owe this to our patients.
- 3 Promoting justice—ie distributing scarce resources fairly (p10) and respecting rights: legal rights, rights to confidentiality, rights to be informed, to be offered all the options, and to be told the truth.
- 4 Promoting autonomy. This is not universally recognized; in some cultures facing starvation, for example, it may be irrelevant, or even be considered subversive.

Health entails being sound in body and mind, and having powers of growth, development, healing, and regeneration. *How many people have you made healthy (or at least healthier) today? And in achieving this, how many cardinal duties have you ignored?* We cannot spend long on the wards or in our surgeries trying to 'make people healthy' before we have breached every cardinal duty—particularly (3) and (4). Does it matter? What is the point of having principles if they are regularly ignored? The point of having them is to provide a context for our negotiations with patients to form, where possible, a beneficial synthesis.

Synthesis When we must act in the face of two conflicting duties, *one is not a duty*. How do we tell which one? Trying to find out involves getting to know our patient.

- Are the patient's wishes being complied with?
- What do your colleagues think? What do the relatives think? Have they his or her best interests at heart? Ask the patient's permission first.
- Is it desirable that the reason for an action be universalizable? (That is, if I say this person is too old for such-and-such an operation, am I happy to make this a general rule for everyone?—Kant's 'law'.)²
- If an investigative journalist were to sit on a sulcus of mine, having full knowledge of my thoughts and actions, would she be bored or would she be composing vitriol for tomorrow's newspapers? If so, can I answer her, point for point? Am I happy with my answers? Or are they merely tactical devices?
- What would a patient's representative think, eg the elected chairman of a patient's participation group (OHCS p496)? These opinions are valid and readily available (if a local group exists) and they can stop decision-making from being too medicalized.

Red flags on your wigwag For each patient use a check-list to avoid skating over ethical issues. If a red flag pertains, ethical aspects are likely to be very important.

- 🚩 **W**ishes of the patient are unknown (find out if a living will is in existence).
- 🚩 **I**ssues regarding confidentiality/disclosure (eg HIV+ve but partner unaware).
- 🚩 **G**oals of care: are these confused and contradictory in any way?
- 🚩 **W**ants to discharge himself against advice. Is he fully informed and competent?
- 🚩 **A**rguments among relatives as how best to proceed: have you listened to all sides?
- 🚩 **M**oney problems relating to cost of care or earnings lost through illness.⁶⁴

¹ Don't think of good and evil as forever opposite; good can come out of evil, and vice versa: this fundamental mix-up explains why we learn more from our dissolute patients than we do from saints.⁶³

² There are problems with universalizability: only intuition can suggest how to resolve conflicts between competing universalizable principles. Also, there is a sense in which all ethical dilemmas are unique, so no moral rules are possible or required—so they *cannot* be universal (Sartre, Nietzsche).⁶⁴

"Unless both the doctor and the patient become a problem to each other, no solution is found." Jung's aphorism⁶⁷ is untrue for half our waking lives: for an anaesthetist there is no need for the patient to become a problem in order for the anaesthetic to work. But, as with all the best aphorisms, being untrue is the least of the problems they cause us. Great aphorisms signify because they unsettle. Our settled and smug satisfaction at finishing a period of duty without any problems is so often a sign of failure. We have kept the chaos at bay, whereas, if we were greater men or women, we would have embraced it. Half our waking professional lives we spend as if asleep, on automatic, following protocols or guidelines to some trite destination—or else we are dreaming of what we could do if we had more time, proper resources, and perhaps a different set of colleagues. But if we had Jung in our pockets he would be shaking us awake, derailing our guidelines, and saluting our attempts to risk genuine interactions with our patients, however much of a mess we make of it, and however much pain we cause and receive. (Pain, after all, is the inevitable companion to lives led authentically.)¹ To the unreflective doctor, and to all average minds, this interaction is anathema, to be avoided at all costs, because it leads us away from anaesthesia, to the unpredictable, and to destinations that are unknown.

After proposing that 'deep Thinking' can only be attained by someone capable of 'deep Feeling', Samuel Taylor Coleridge, in 1801, went on to calculate on the back of a jocular envelope that 'the Souls of 500 Sir Isaac Newtons would go to the making up of a Shakespeare or a Milton...Mind in his system is always passive...and there is ground for suspicion that any system built on the passiveness of the mind must be a false system'⁶⁸ Newtonian models of the consultation in which the doctor remains unmoved are all tainted by this falsity. So when you find yourself being irritated, moved, or provoked by your patient, be half-glad, because these feelings welcome you to Shakespeare's and Coleridge's world where the imagination (p315) is the Prime Mover in the task of bringing about change in our patients.

So, every so often, be pleased with your difficult patients: those who question you, those who do not respond to your treatments, or who complain when these treatments *do* work. Often, it will seem that whatever you say is wrong, misunderstood, misquoted, and mangled by the mind you are confronting, perhaps because of fear, loneliness, or past experiences that you can only guess at. If this is happening, *shut up*—but don't *give up*. Stick with your patient. Listen to what he or she is saying and not saying. And when you have understood your patient a bit more, negotiate, cajole, and even argue—but don't bully or blackmail ("If you do not let your son have the operation he needs, I'll tell him just what sort of a mother you are..."). When you find yourself turning to walk away from your patient, turn back and say "This is not going very well, is it? Can we start again?" Don't hesitate to call in your colleagues' help: not to win by force of numbers, but to see if a different approach might bear fruit. By this process, and by addressing the psychosomatic factors perpetuating your patient's illnesses, you and your patient may grow in stature. You may even end up with a truly satisfied patient. And a satisfied patient is worth a thousand protocols.

We all seek the reason for our own existence, and as we sit beside troubled, troubling, and troublesome patients we may dimly comprehend part of the reason, albeit in the background of our minds—even if, in the foreground, we are wondering why on earth this difficult patient has to exist, especially now when we are so busy and so stressed. The patient is likely to have their own unspoken metaphysical questions, for which you can be the midwife: "Why me?" "Why now?" Don't strangle these questions at birth: give them space to breathe, and who knows?

1 "Some say that the world is a vale of tears. I say it is a place of soul making"—John Keats, the first medical student to formulate these ideas about pain. They did not do him much good, as he died shortly after uttering them. But his ideas can do us good. Perhaps if each day we try at least once for authentic interactions with a patient, unencumbered by professionalism, research interests, defensive medicine, a wish to show off to our peers, or a wish to get through the day without fuss.

If only we could live long enough to suffer from every disease, then we doctors could be of real service to our patients. There would be no need for medical humanities, as we would understand angina from the inside, and the fire of zoster's pain would no longer mystify us. We could die a thousand deaths for our patients. But still death would be untamed, and our self-anecdotal knowledge of disease would be irrelevant to patients from foreign lands. All patients inhabit foreign lands, and even our own hearts are alien to us unless melted by narrative streams. It is only through the humanities that, prude or peasant, prince or prostitute, we can extend our horizons and universalize anecdotal experience, so that nothing human is foreign to us.

Doctors' and artists' methodologies overlap, as we both create new realities: artists do this by bewitchment and by suspending reality. Doctors do it by listening and suspending judgement. A patient of ours had been trapped in an abusive marriage for 52 years. She had tried telling one other person, who had not believed her. The relief of being believed and listened to shone through her tears, as we collaborated over plans to bring change to her life. It is good to aim to listen to our patients with as rapt attention as we display when reading a good book. While reading, there is no point in dissembling. We confront our subject with a steady eye because we believe that, while reading to ourselves, we cannot be judged. Then, suddenly, when we are at our most open and *defenceless*, literature takes us by the throat, and that eye, which was so steady and confident a few minutes ago, is now misting over, or our heart is missing a beat, or our skin is covered in a goose-flesh more immediate than ever a Siberian winter produced. As the decades go by, not much in our mundane world sends shivers down our spines, but the power of art to do this ever grows, and sensitizes us to our patients' narratives, and shows us there are many valid routes to knowledge other than the strictly objective.

The reason for the ascendancy of art over science is simple. We scientists, when we are not adopting our listening role, are only interested in explaining reality. Artists are good at explaining reality too: but they also *create* it. Our most powerful impressions are produced in our minds not by simple sensations but by the association of ideas. It is a pre-eminent feature of the human mind that it revels in seeing something as, or through, something else: life refracted through experience, light refracted through jewels, or a walk through the woods transmuted into a Pastoral Symphony. Ours is a world of metaphor, fantasy, and deceit.

What has all this to do with the day-to-day practice of medicine? The answer lies in the word 'defenceless' above. When we read alone and for pleasure, our defences are down—and we hide nothing from the great characters of fiction. In our consulting rooms, and on the ward, we so often do our best to hide everything beneath our avuncular bedside manner. So often, a professional detachment is all that is left after all those years inured to the foibles, fallacies, and frictions of our patients' tragic lives. It is at the point where art and medicine collide that doctors can re-attach themselves to the human race and re-feel those emotions that motivate or terrify our patients. We all have an Achilles heel: that part of our inner self which was not rendered invulnerable when we were dipped in the waters of our first disillusion. Art and literature may enable this Achilles heel to be the means of our survival as thinking and feeling human beings.

If it is true that all the great novels, songs, and drama defy any single interpretation it is all the more true for the patient sitting in front of us. If we are not getting very far it is because we are using light when we could be using shade—or harmony in place of disharmony, or we are only offering a monologue when what we should be risking is dialogue—and the forging of new meanings.

The American approach is to create Professors of Literature-in-Medicine and to conjure with concepts such as *the patient as text*, and most American medical schools do courses in literature in an attempt to inculcate ethical reasoning and speculation. Here, we simply intend to demonstrate, albeit imperfectly, in our writings and in our practice of medicine, that *every* contact with patients has an ethical and artistic dimension, as well as a technical one.



Contents

Taking a history 20
 Functional enquiry 22
 Physical examination 24
 Symptoms 26
 Signs 28
 Examination of the hands 30–32

Cardiovascular system:

History 34
 Examination 36–38
 The JVP 40
 Pulses 40
 The heart sounds 42
 Cardiac murmurs 44
 Peripheral vascular examination 46
 Arterial and venous 47

Respiratory system:

History 48
 Examination 50–52
 Important presentations 54

Gastrointestinal system:

History 56
 Gastrointestinal symptoms 58
 Examination of the abdomen 60
 The gastrointestinal system: examination 62

Genitourinary system:

History 64

The breast:

History 66
 Examination 67

The thyroid:

Examination 68

Neurological system:

History 70
 Neurological examination of the upper limb 72
 Neurological examination of the lower limb 74
 Cranial nerve examination 76
 Cranial nerve lesions of the eye 78
 Speech and higher mental function 80
 Psychiatric assessment 82
 Method and order for routine examination 84
 The T_{YM} (Test Your Memory) test 85

Other relevant pages: acute abdomen (p608); lumps (p596–p606); hernias (p614–p616); varicose veins (p660); urine (p286); peripheral nerves (p456); dermatomes (p458).

In OHCS: Vaginal examination (OHCS p242); abdominal examination in pregnancy (OHCS p40); the history and examination in children and neonates (OHCS p100–p102); examination of the eye (OHCS p412); visual acuity (OHCS p414); eye movements (OHCS p422); ear, nose, and throat examination (OHCS p536); skin examination (OHCS p584); examination of joints—see the contents page to *Orthopaedics and trauma* (OHCS p656).



Fig 1. William Osler (1849–1919) was a great medical educationalist who loved practical jokes. He introduced many novelties to the classroom, including, on one occasion, a gaggle of geese. We can all identify with his geese, because these birds show exceptional learning ability and resilience.

Osler did not agree with gavage, a method whereby geese (and medical students) are forcibly stuffed by funnel to fatten them for the delight of gluttons. We are too familiar with the 3 Rs of medical education: Ram→Remember→Regurgitate, a sequence that turns once-bright medical students into tearful wrecks. Luckily in the realm of History & Examination we can flee the library and alight at the bedside, bearing in mind another of Osler's aphorisms: "He who studies medicine without books sails an uncharted sea, but he who studies medicine without patients does not go to sea at all."

A number of images are taken from the Oxford Handbook of Clinical Examination and Practical Skills (OHCEPS), which gives an even more detailed account of this subject. Our thanks to Dr James Thomas and Dr Tanya Monaghan for their kind permission. We thank Junior Reader Shahzad Arain for his contribution.

Advice and experience

- 1 The way to learn physical signs is at the bedside, with guidance from a senior doctor or an experienced colleague. This chapter is not a substitute for this process: it is simply an aide-mémoire both on the wards and when preparing for exams.
- 2 We ask questions to get information to help with differential diagnosis. But we also ask questions to find out about the lives our patients live so that we can respect them as individuals. The patient is likely to notice and reciprocate this respect, and the rapport that you build with your patient in this way is a key component to diagnosing and managing their disease.
- 3 Patients (and diseases) rarely read the textbook, so don't be surprised that some symptoms are ambiguous, and others are meaningless. Get good at recognizing patterns, but not so good that you create them when none is there. We all fall into this trap!
- 4 Signs can be easy to detect, or subtle. Some will be found by all the new medical students, others require experienced ears or eyes. Remember, *you can be a fine doctor without being able to elicit every sign*.¹ However, finding signs and putting together the clues they give us to find a diagnosis is one of the best parts of being a doctor. It is also essential that we learn those signs that highlight diseases we should never miss. However, in an exam, if you cannot find a sign, never be tempted to make up something you think should be there. If the examiner is pushing you to describe something you cannot see, be honest and admit you cannot see it. Learning is a lifelong process, and nobody becomes a consultant overnight.

Handover and advice

With increasing targets, shift patterns and the move towards more and more specialist services, patients can be bounced around from team to team many times during their admission. The Royal College of Physicians in the UK has recognized this and produced guidance on how best to approach handover.¹

Both written and verbal communications are key to effective handover; although a written note explaining who is unwell, what the plan is, and who to call if things deteriorate is essential, nothing substitutes for face to face handover. Discussion of patients is important for safety as well as learning and good practice. Make a point of handing over weekend and evening plans, and patients you are worried about. Take advantage of the experience and knowledge of the person you are handing over to. Can they offer advice on what you could have done differently?

Make sure senior colleagues know who is unwell and who you would like help with. Senior doctors would far rather see someone before they deteriorate, putting together an action plan for what to do next, than be called to an acutely unwell patient who may need escalation to ICU when a few early interventions could have prevented deterioration. There is no shame in asking for help, but remember you should do what you can first; never call without knowing your patient or having examined them. See p23 for key things to know before calling for advice. Ultimately we are all there for the patient, so if they are deteriorating despite your best efforts, call for advice.



¹ <http://www.rcplondon.ac.uk/resources/acute-care-toolkit-1-handover>



Taking (or receiving) histories is what most of us spend most of our professional life doing, and it is worth doing well. A good history is the biggest step towards correct diagnosis. Try to put the patient at ease: a good rapport may relieve distress. Introduce yourself and check whether the patient is comfortable. Be conversational rather than interrogative in tone. Start with open questions, allow the patient to tell their story, but if they stray off topic, try to gently steer them back towards the important points.

Presenting complaint (PC) Open questions: "Why have you come to see me today?" Record the patient's own words rather than medical terms.

History of presenting complaint (HPC) When did it start? What was the first thing noticed? Progress since then. Ever had it before? '**SOCRATES**' questions: **s**ite; **o**nset (gradual, sudden); **c**haracter; **r**adiation; **a**ssociations (eg nausea, sweating); **t**iming of pain/duration; **e**xacerbating and alleviating factors; **s**everity (eg scale of 1-10, compared with worst ever previous pain). **Direct questioning** (to narrow list of possible diagnoses). Specific or 'closed' questions about the differential diagnoses you have in mind (+risk factors, eg travel—p388) and a review of the relevant system.

Past medical history (PMH) Ever in hospital? Illnesses? Operations? Ask specifically about **MIJTHREADS**: **MI**, jaundice, **TB**, high BP, **r**heumatic fever, **e**pilepsy, **a**sthma, **d**iabetes, **s**troke, anaesthetic problems.

Drug history (DH) Any tablets, injections, 'over-the-counter' drugs, herbal remedies, oral contraceptives? Ask about **allergies** and what the patient experienced, eg may be an intolerance (nausea, diarrhoea), or may have been a minor reaction of sensitization (eg rash and wheeze) before full-blown anaphylaxis.

Social history (SH) Probe without prying. "Who else is there at home?" Job. Marital status. Spouse's job and health. Housing—any stairs at home? Who visits—relatives, neighbours, GP, nurse? Are there any dependents at home? Mobility—any walking aids needed? Who does the cooking and shopping? What can the patient not do because of the illness?

The social history is all too often seen as a dispensable adjunct, eg while the patient is being rushed to theatre, but vital clues may be missed about the quality of life and it is too late to ask when the surgeon's hand is deep in the belly and they are wondering how radical a procedure to perform. It is worth asking a few searching questions of the GP if they are calling to arrange admission. They may have known the patient and/or family for decades. He or she may even hold a 'living will' or advance directive to reveal your patient's wishes if they cannot speak for themselves.

As part of the social history, tactfully ask about **alcohol, tobacco & recreational drugs**. How much? How long? When stopped? The CAGE questionnaire is useful as a screening test for alcoholism (p282). Quantify smoking in terms of **pack-years**: 20 cigarettes/day for 1 year equals 1 pack-year. We all like to present ourselves well, so be inclined to double stated quantities (Holt's 'law').

Family history (FH) Areas of the family history may need detailed questioning, eg to determine if there is a significant family history of heart disease you need to ask about the health of the patient's grandfathers and male siblings, smoking, tendency to hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, and claudication before they were 60 years old, as well as ascertaining the cause of death. Ask about TB, diabetes, and other relevant diseases. Draw a family tree (see BOX). ► **Be tactful when asking about a family history of malignancy.**

Functional enquiry (p22) helps uncover undeclared symptoms. Some of this may already have been incorporated into the history.

- Always enquire if your patient has any *ideas* of what the problem might be, if he/she has any particular *concerns* or *expectations*, and give him/her an opportunity to *ask you questions* or *tell you anything you may have missed*.
- Don't hesitate to review the history later: recollections change (as you will find, often on the post-take ward round when the Consultant is asking the questions!).



Drawing family trees to reveal dominantly inherited disease¹

Advances in genetics are touching all branches of medicine. It is increasingly important for doctors to identify patients at high risk of genetic disease, and to make appropriate referrals. The key skill is drawing a family tree to help you structure a family history as follows:

- 1 Start with your patient. Draw a square for a male and a circle for a female. Add a small arrow (see below) to show that this person is the *propositus* (the person through whom the family tree is ascertained).
- 2 Add your patient's parents, brothers, and sisters. Record basic information only, eg age, and if alive and well (a&w). If dead, note age and cause of death, and pass an oblique stroke through that person's symbol.
- 3 Ask the key question "Has anybody else in your family had a similar problem as yourself?", eg heart attack/angina/stroke/cancer. Ask only about the family of diseases that relate to your patient's main problem. Do not record a potted medical history for each family member: time is too short.
- 4 Extend the family tree upwards to include grandparents. If you haven't revealed a problem by now, **go no further**—you are unlikely to miss important familial disease. If your patient is elderly it may be impossible to obtain good information about grandparents. If so, fill out the family tree with your patient's uncles and aunts on both the mother's and father's sides.
- 5 Shade those in the family tree affected by the disease. ■ = an affected female; ■ = an affected male. This helps to show any genetic problem and, if there is one, will help demonstrate the pattern of inheritance.
- 6 If you have identified a familial susceptibility, or your patient has a recognized genetic disease, extend the family tree down to include children, to identify others who may be at risk and who may benefit from screening. ► You should find out who is pregnant in the family, or may soon be, and arrange appropriate genetic counselling (OHCS p154). Refer for genetics opinion.

The family tree (fig 1) shows these ideas at work and indicates that there is evidence for genetic risk of colon cancer, meriting referral to a geneticist.

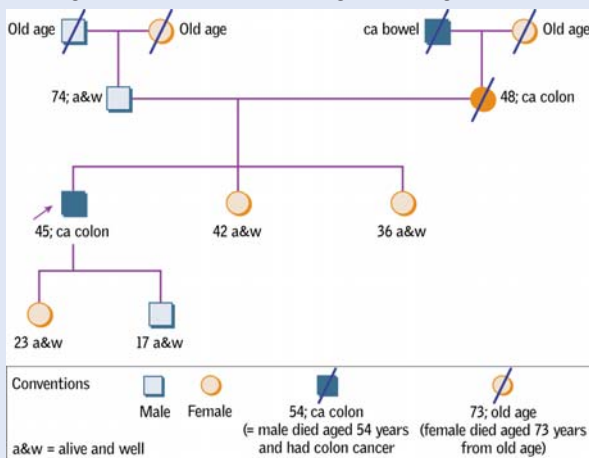


Fig 1. Genetic risk of colon cancer in a family tree.

¹ Use a different approach in paediatrics, and for autosomal or sex-linked disease. Ask if parents are related (consanguinity risk of recessive diseases). This page owes much to Dr Helen Firth, who we thank.



Just as skilled acrobats are happy to work without safety nets, so experienced clinicians may operate without the functional enquiry. But to do this you must be experienced enough to understand all the nuances of the presenting complaint.

General questions

May be the most significant, eg in TB, endocrine problems, or cancer: • Weight loss • Night sweats • Any lumps • Fatigue/malaise/lethargy • Sleeping pattern¹ • Appetite • Fevers • Itch or rash • Recent trauma.

Cardiorespiratory symptoms

- Chest pain (p88).
- Exertional dyspnoea (=breathlessness): quantify exercise tolerance and how it has changed, eg stairs climbed, or distance walked, before onset of breathlessness.
- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND). Orthopnoea, ie breathlessness on lying flat (a symptom of left ventricular failure): quantify in terms of number of pillows the patient must sleep on to prevent dyspnoea.
- Oedema: ankles, legs, lower back (dependent areas).
- Palpitations (awareness of heartbeats): can they tap out the rhythm?
- Cough: sputum, haemoptysis (coughing up blood).
- Wheeze.

Gastrointestinal symptoms

- Abdominal pain (constant or colicky, sharp or dull; site; radiation; duration; onset; severity; relationship to eating and bowel action; alleviating or exacerbating, or associated features).
- Other questions—think of symptoms throughout the GI tract, from mouth to anus:
 - Swallowing (p240)
 - Stool:
 - Indigestion (p242)
 - colour, consistency, blood, mucus
 - Nausea/vomiting (p240)
 - difficulty flushing away (p280)
 - Bowel habit (p246 & p248)
 - tenesmus or urgency.
- Tenesmus is the feeling of incomplete evacuation of the bowels (eg due to a tumour or irritable bowel syndrome).
- Haematemesis is vomiting blood.
- Melaena is altered (black) blood passed PR (p252), with a characteristic smell.

Genitourinary symptoms

- Incontinence (stress or urge, p650).
- Dysuria (painful micturition).
- Urinary abnormalities: colour? Haematuria (streaks or pink urine?) Frothy?
- Nocturia (needing to micturate at night).
- Frequency (frequent micturition) or polyuria (the frequent passing of large volumes of urine).
- Hesitancy (difficulty starting micturition).
- Terminal dribbling.
- Vaginal discharge (p418).
- Menses: frequency, regularity, heavy or light, duration, painful? First day of last menstrual period (LMP). Number of pregnancies and births. Menarche. Menopause. Any chance of pregnancy now?

Neurological symptoms

- *Special senses*: Sight, hearing, smell, and taste.
- Seizures, faints, 'funny turns'.
- Headache.
- 'Pins and needles' (paraesthesiae) or numbness.
- Limb weakness ("Are your arms and legs weaker than normal?"), poor balance.
- Speech problems (p80).
- Sphincter disturbance.
- Higher mental function and psychiatric symptoms (p80–p83). The important thing is to assess function: what the patient can and cannot do at home, work, etc.

1 Too sleepy? Think of myxoedema or narcolepsy. Early waking? Think of depression. Being woken by pain is always a serious sign. ► For the significance of the other questions listed here, see Chapter 3.

Musculoskeletal symptoms

- Pain, stiffness, swelling of joints.
- Diurnal variation in symptoms (ie worse mornings).
- Functional deficit.
- Signs of systemic disease: rashes, mouth ulcers, nasal stuffiness, malaise and constitutional symptoms.

Thyroid symptoms

- **Hyperthyroidism:** Prefers cold weather, bad tempered, sweaty, diarrhoea, oligomenorrhoea, weight↓ (though often ~~t~~appetite), tremor, palpitations, visual problems.
 - **Hypothyroidism:** Depressed, slow, tired, thin hair, croaky voice, heavy periods, constipation, dry skin, prefers warm weather.
- History-taking may seem deceptively easy, as if the patient knew the hard facts and the only problem was extracting them; but what a patient says is a mixture of hearsay ("She said I looked very pale"), innuendo ("You know, doctor, *down below*"), legend ("I suppose I bit my tongue; it was a real fit, you know"), exaggeration ("I didn't sleep a wink"), and improbabilities ("The Pope put a transmitter in my brain"). The great skill (and pleasure) in taking a history lies not in ignoring these garbled messages, but in making sense of them.



The physical examination is not so much an extension of the history, but more of the first investigation, to confirm, exclude, define, or show the progress of the provisional diagnosis as revealed in the history. Even in the emergency department where the history may be brief, eg "trauma", the examination is to confirm a fracture, or to decide that a fracture is less likely. The examination sheds further light on the history. As you get better, your physical examination gets briefer. Establish your own routine—practice is the key.

End of the bed

- Look at the patient—are they well or in extremis? What makes you think this? Are they in pain? If so, does it make them lie still (eg peritonitis) or writhe about (eg colic). What is the pattern of breathing: laboured; rapid; shallow; irregular; distressed? Are they obese or cachectic? Is their behaviour appropriate? Can you detect any unusual *smell*, eg hepatic fetor (p258), cigarettes, alcohol?
- Also take a moment to look around the bed for other clues, eg inhalers, insulin administration kit, walking aids, etc.

Face and body habitus

- Does the patient's appearance suggest any particular diseases, eg acromegaly, thyrotoxicosis, myxoedema, Cushing's syndrome, or hypopituitarism? See p196.
- Is there an abnormal distribution of body hair (eg bearded ♀, or hairless ♂) suggestive of endocrine disease?
- Is there anything about the patient to trigger thoughts about Paget's disease, Marfan's, myotonia, or Parkinson's syndrome? Look for rashes, eg the malar flush of mitral disease and the butterfly rash of SLE.

Peripheral stigmata of disease

Specific signs are associated with different diseases: consider the nails (koilonychia = iron deficiency), subcutaneous nodules (rheumatoid, neurofibroma?), and look for lymph nodes (cervical, axillary, inguinal). See specific systems for features to assess for, but for all systems consider:

Skin colour:

- Blue/purple = cyanosis (can also be central only, p28).
- Yellow = jaundice (yellow skin can also be caused by uraemia, pernicious anaemia, carotenaemia—check the sclera: if they are also yellow it is jaundice).
- Pallor: this is non-specific; anaemia is assessed from the palmar skin creases (when spread) and conjunctivae (**fig 1**, p319)—usually pale if Hb <80–90g/L: you cannot conclude anything from normal conjunctival colour, but if they are pale, the patient is probably anaemic.
- Hyperpigmentation: Addison's, haemochromatosis (slate-grey) and amiodarone, gold, silver, and minocycline therapy.

Charts:

- Temperature: varies during the day; a morning oral temperature >37.2°C or evening >37.7°C constitutes a fever.² Rectal temperatures are generally 0.6°C above oral temperatures. Remember that temperatures are generally lower in elderly patients and therefore fevers may not be as pronounced.³ A core temperature <35°C indicates hypothermia; special low-reading thermometers may be required.
- Blood pressure and pulse—trends are more important than one-off values; repeat if concerned.
- Urine: check urinalysis and input/output charts if available.

Fluid status

When admitting an unwell patient, don't forget to assess their degree of hydration, check skin turgor and mucous membranes, look for sunken eyes, and check capillary refill (if well perfused <2s) and JVP.



Unexplained signs and symptoms: How to refer for an opinion

► *When you don't know: ask. If you are wondering if you should ask: ask.*

Frequently, the skills needed for diagnosis or treatment will lie beyond the team you are working for, so, during ward rounds, agree who should be asked for an opinion. You will be left with the job of making the arrangements, so check before your senior leaves exactly what their question is. Don't be intimidated: but follow these simple rules:

- Know the history and examination findings (ideally your own), and have the patient's notes, observations, recent test results and drug charts to hand.
- At the outset, state if you are just looking for advice or if you are asking if the patient could be seen. Make it clear exactly what the question is that you want addressed, allowing the listener to focus their thoughts and ask relevant questions.
- Give the patient's age and run through a brief history including relevant past medical history. If you would like the patient to be seen, give warning if they will be leaving the ward for a test at a particular time.
- The visiting doctor may be unfamiliar with your ward. When he or she arrives introduce yourself, get the notes and charts, and give your contact details in case they have further questions.

The following table may be useful to bear in mind, as you will be asked!

Team	Key questions
Anaesthetics	Previous anaesthetic? Reaction? Last ate/drank?
Cardiology	Known IHD? BP? ECG findings? Echo findings? Murmurs? Troponin? Temperature/possibility of endocarditis? (ESR, microscopic haematuria etc. p144)
Dermatology	Site, onset and appearance of rash? Drugs? Systemic disease? History of atopy?
Endocrinology	Diabetes: blood glucose, usual insulin regimen, complications. Other: blood results? Stable/unstable—eg Addisonian crisis. Usual steroid dose?
Gastroenterology/ Hepatology	Bleeding: Rockall score (p253)? Shock? Diarrhoea: Blood? Foreign travel? Frequency per day? Liver disease: signs of decompensation (p258)? Ascites? Encephalopathy grade?
Gynaecology/ Obstetrics	LMP? Possibility of pregnancy? Previous pregnancies? Vaginal discharge? Hormonal contraceptives? STIs?
Haematology	Blood results? Splenomegaly? Fever? Lymphadenopathy? Bleeding: Anticoagulants? Clotting results?
Infectious diseases/ Microbiology	Possible source? Antibiotics (current/recent/previous)? Foreign travel? Risk factors for HIV?
Nephrology	Creatinine (current, old)? Clotting? Urine output? Potassium? BP? Fluid status? Drugs? Known renal disease?
Neurology/Stroke	Neurological examination? CT/MRI scan findings?
Radiology	See p734. Contrast or not? Creatinine? Clotting? Cannula <i>in situ</i> ? Metallic implants?
Respiratory	O ₂ sats? Respiratory rate? ABG? CXR? Inhalers/nebs? Home O ₂ ? Respiratory support, eg NIV/CPAP?
Surgery (general)	Pain? Scan findings? Acutely unwell? Clotting?
Urology	History of LUTS (lower urinary tract symptoms) p644? Catheter? Haematuria? History of stones? Scan findings (ultrasound, CT)?

1 You would be amazed at how many people refer to neurology/stroke without having done a neurological examination! Don't be one of them...

Symptoms are features which patients report. **Physical signs** are elicited at the bedside. Together, they constitute the features of the condition in that patient. Their evolution over time and interaction with the physical, psychological, and social spheres comprise the natural history of any disease. Throughout this chapter, we discuss symptoms in isolation and attempt to classify them into a 'system' or present them below as 'non-specific'. This is unnatural but a good first step in learning how to diagnose. All doctors have to know about symptoms and their relief: this is what doctors are for. Part of becoming a good doctor is learning to link symptoms together, to identify those that may be normal, and those that are worrying. There are many online tools and books that can help with this, but there is no substitute for experience. If you aren't sure, ask a specialist in that area for advice.

The following are common 'non-specific' presentations

Itch

Itching (pruritus) is common and, if chronic, most unpleasant.

Local causes:

Eczema, atopy, urticaria

Scabies

Lichen planus

Dermatitis herpetiformis

Spinal cord tumours (rare)⁴

Systemic: (Do FBC, ESR, glucose, LFT, U&E, ferritin, TFT)

Liver disease (bile salts, eg PBC) Old age; pregnancy

Uraemia (eg CKD)

Malignancy (eg lymphoma)

Polycythaemia rubra vera

Iron deficiency anaemia

Drugs (eg morphine)

Diabetes mellitus

Thyroid disease

HIV infection

Questions: Wheals (urticaria)? Worse at night? Others affected (scabies)? What provokes it? After a bath \approx polycythaemia rubra vera (p360). Exposure, eg to animals (atopy?) or fibre glass (irritant eczema?).

Look for **local causes**: Scabies burrows in finger webs, lice on hair shafts, knee and elbow blisters (dermatitis herpetiformis). **Systemic**: Splenomegaly, nodes, jaundice, flushed face or thyroid signs? **R**: Treat causes; try soothing bland emollients, eg E45[®], \pm emollient bath oils \pm sedative antihistamines at night, eg chlorphenamine 4mg PO.

'Off-legs'—falls and difficulty walking

Common causes of admission in the elderly, and can lead to loss of confidence and independence. Causes are often multifactorial:

Intrinsic: typically osteo- or rheumatoid arthritis, but remember fractured neck of femur, CNS disease, vision⁴, cognitive impairment, depression, postural hypotension, peripheral neuropathy, medication (eg antihypertensives, sedatives), pain, eg arthritis, parkinsonism (eg drugs: prochlorperazine, neuroleptics, metoclopramide), muscle weakness (consider vitamin D deficiency), incontinence, UTI, pneumonia, anaemia, hypothyroidism, renal impairment, hypothermia and alcohol.

Environment: Poor lighting, uneven walking surface. Treatment includes addressing injuries, reducing risk factors, and reducing the risk of injury, eg treat osteoporosis (p696). A multidisciplinary multifactorial approach alongside occupational therapists and physiotherapists is likely to be beneficial.⁵ See **gait disturbance**, p471.

If there is ataxia, the cause is not always alcohol: other chemicals may be involved (eg cannabis or prescribed sedatives). There may be a metastatic or non-metastatic manifestation of malignancy, or a cerebellar lesion.

► Bilateral weak legs may suggest a cord lesion: see p470. If there is associated urinary or faecal incontinence \pm saddle anaesthesia or lower limb sensory loss, urgent imaging (MRI) and treatment for cord compression may well be needed.



Fatigue

So common that it is a variant of normality. Only 1 in 400 episodes of fatigue leads to visiting the doctor. ▶ Don't miss depression (p11). Even if depressed, still rule out common treatable causes—eg anaemia, hypothyroidism, diabetes. After history and examination: FBC, ESR, U&E, plasma glucose, TFT, \pm CXR. Follow up to see what develops, and to address emotional problems. Take a sleep history.

Fevers, rigors, sweats

While some night sweating is common in anxiety, drenching sweats requiring changes of night-clothes are a more ominous symptom associated with infection (eg TB, brucellosis), lymphoproliferative disease, or other malignancies. Patterns of fever may be relevant (see p386).

Rigors are uncontrolled paroxysms of shivering which occur as a patient's temperature rises rapidly. See p386.

Sweating excessively (hyperhidrosis) may be primary (eg hidradenitis suppurativa may be very distressing to the patient)—or secondary to fever, pain or anxiety (cold & sweaty) or a systemic condition: the menopause, hyperthyroidism (warm & sweaty), acromegaly, malignancy, phaeochromocytoma, amyloidosis, or neuroleptic malignant syndrome (+hyperthermia). Or it may reflect gabapentin or opiate withdrawal, or a cholinergic or parasympathomimetic side-effect (amitriptyline, bethanechol, distigmine, spider bites)—also hormonal drugs, eg levothyroxine, gonadorelin or somatostatin analogues, vasopressin, and ephedrine. Also amiodarone, ciprofloxacin, L-dopa, lisinopril, rivastigmine, ritonavir, pioglitazone, venlafaxine. At the bedside: Ask about all drugs, examine all over for nodes; any signs of hyperthyroidism? Any splenomegaly? Test the urine; do T°, ESR, TSH, FBC & blood culture. R: Antiperspirants (aluminium chloride 20%=Driclor®), sympathectomy, or iontophoresis may be tried.

Insomnia

This is trivial—until we ourselves have a few sleepless nights. Then sleep becomes the most desirable thing imaginable, and bestowing it the best thing we can do, like relieving pain. But don't give drugs without looking for a cause.

- **Self-limiting:** Jet lag; stress; shift work; in hospital. We need less sleep as we age.
- **Psychic:** Depression; anxiety; mania; grief; psychomotor agitation/psychosis.
- **Organic:** Drugs (many; eg caffeine; mefloquine; nicotine withdrawal); nocturia; alcohol; pain (eg acid reflux—worse on lying down); itch; tinnitus; asthma; dystonias; obstructive sleep apnoea (p194); dementia; restless leg syndrome (p712, check ferritin). Rarer: encephalitis (eg West Nile virus) and encephalopathy (Whipple's; pellagra; HIV; prion diseases, eg CJD, p710, and fatal familial insomnia).

R: Sleep hygiene: No daytime naps; don't turn in till you feel sleepy; regular bedtime routines. Keep a room for sleep; don't eat or work in it (not viable for much of the world). Less caffeine, nicotine, late exercise (but sexual activity may give excellent torpor!) and alcohol (its abuse causes paradoxical pro-adrenergic tremor and insomnia).⁶ Try monitoring quality with a sleep diary (unless already over-obsessive). Music and relaxation may make sleep more restorative and augment personal resources.⁷

Hypnotic drugs: give for a few nights only (addictive and cause daytime somnolence \pm rebound insomnia on stopping). Warn about driving/machine use. Example: zopiclone 3.75–7.5mg. **Obstructive sleep apnoea:** p194. **Parasomnias, sleep paralysis,** etc.: OHCS p392. **Narcolepsy:** p714.



Over 80% of diagnoses should be made on history alone, with the signs you elicit adding an extra 10% and tests only giving the final 5% or so.⁸ Do not rely on signs or investigations for your diagnosis, but use them rather to confirm what you suspected from the history. The following signs are not specific to a particular system:

Cyanosis

Dusky blue skin (*peripheral*—of the fingers) or mucosae (*central*—of the tongue), representing 50g/L of Hb in its reduced (hence hypoxic) form, it occurs more readily in polycythaemia than anaemia. **Causes:**

- **Lung disease** with inadequate oxygen transfer, eg luminal obstruction, asthma, COPD, pneumonia, PE, pulmonary oedema—may be correctable by ↑ inspired O₂.
- **Congenital cyanotic heart disease**, where there is admixture, eg transposition of the great arteries or right-to-left shunt (eg VSD with Eisenmenger's syndrome; see p150)—cyanosis is *not* reversed by increasing inspired oxygen.
- **Rare causes:** methaemoglobinaemia, a congenital or acquired red cell disorder.

▶ Acute cyanosis is an emergency. Is there asthma, an inhaled foreign body, a pneumothorax (p763, fig 1) or pulmonary oedema? See p824.

Peripheral cyanosis will occur in causes of central cyanosis, but may also be induced by changes in the peripheral and cutaneous vascular systems in patients with normal oxygen saturations. It occurs in the cold, in hypovolaemia, and in arterial disease, and is therefore not a specific sign.

Pallor

May be racial or familial—or from anaemia, shock/faints, Stokes-Adams attack (p464, pale first, then flushing), hypothyroidism, hypopituitarism, and albinism.

▶▶ If it's just one limb or digit, think of emboli. **Anaemia** is haemoglobin concentration below the normal range (p318). It may be assessed from the conjunctivae and skin creases. Koilonychia and stomatitis (p24) suggest iron deficiency. Anaemia with jaundice suggests haemolysis.

Skin discolouration

Generalized hyperpigmentation may be genetic (racial) or due to radiation; ↑ACTH (cross-reacts with melanin receptors, eg Addison's disease (p218), Nelson's syndrome (p32), ectopic ACTH in bronchial carcinoma); chronic kidney disease (↑urea, p294); malabsorption; chloasma (seen in pregnancy or with the oral contraceptive pill); biliary cirrhosis; haemochromatosis ('bronzed diabetes'); carotenaemia; or drugs (eg chlorpromazine, busulfan, amiodarone, gold).

Obesity

(see OHCS p530)

This is defined by the World Health Organization as a BMI of over 30kg/m². A higher waist to hip ratio, indicating central fat distribution, is commoner in ♂ and is associated with greater health risks, which include type 2 diabetes mellitus, IHD, dyslipidaemia, TBP, osteoarthritis of weight-bearing joints, and cancer (breast and bowel); see p199. The majority of cases are not due to specific metabolic disorders. Lifestyle change is key to treatment, to increase energy expenditure and reduce intake (p236). Medication ± surgery may be considered if the patient fulfils strict criteria. Conditions associated with obesity include: genetic (Prader-Willi syndrome, Lawrence-Moon syndrome), hypothyroidism, Cushing's syndrome and hypothalamic damage (eg tumour or trauma → damage to satiety regions).

Lymphadenopathy

Causes of lymphadenopathy are either reactive or infiltrative:

Reactive

Infective

- **Bacterial:** eg pyogenic, TB, brucella, syphilis.
- **Viral:** EBV, HIV, CMV, infectious hepatitis.
- **Others:** toxoplasmosis, trypanosomiasis.

Non-infective: sarcoidosis, amyloidosis, berylliosis, connective tissue disease (eg rheumatoid, SLE), dermatological (eczema, psoriasis), drugs (eg phenytoin).

Infiltrative

Benign histiocytosis—OHCS p644, lipidoses.

Malignant

- **Haematological:** lymphoma or leukaemia: ALL, CLL, AML (p350).
- **Metastatic carcinoma:** from breast, lung, bowel, prostate, kidney, or head and neck cancers.

Oedema

(see p580)

Pitting oedema: Fluid can either be squeezed out of the veins (increased hydrostatic pressure, eg DVT, right heart failure) or diffuse out because of reduced oncotic pressure (low plasma proteins, eg cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, protein losing enteropathy) leading to an osmotic gradient with the tissues (fig 4 p36, p580). The cause of oedema is still not completely understood.⁹

Periorbital oedema: Oedema around the face has a very different differential; The eyelid skin is very thin so periorbital oedema is usually the first sign—think of allergies (contact dermatitis, eg from eye make-up, stings), angioedema (can be hereditary), infection (▶orbital cellulitis can be life threatening, refer to hospital immediately if concerned, other infections include EBV and sinusitis); if there is proptosis (p211) think Graves' disease, connective tissue diseases (eg dermatomyositis, SLE, sarcoid, amyloid); and many others. Assess for systemic disease before putting it down to allergies.

Non-pitting oedema: ie non-indentable, is lymphoedema due to poor lymphatic drainage. Can be due to radiotherapy, malignant infiltration, infection, filariasis or rarely primary lymphoedema (Milroy's syndrome p720).

Weight loss

This is a feature of chronic disease and depression; also of malnutrition, malignancy, chronic infections (eg TB, HIV/enteropathic AIDS), diabetes mellitus and hyperthyroidism (typically in the presence of increased appetite). Severe generalized muscle wasting is also seen as part of a number of degenerative neurological diseases and in cardiac failure (cardiac cachexia), although in the latter, right heart failure may not make weight loss a major complaint. Do not forget anorexia nervosa (OHCS p348) as an underlying cause of weight loss.

Rule out treatable causes, eg diabetes is easy to diagnose—TB can be very hard. For example, the CXR may look like cancer so don't forget to send bronchoscopy samples for ZN stain and TB culture. Unintentional weight loss should always ring alarm bells, so assess patients carefully.

Cachexia

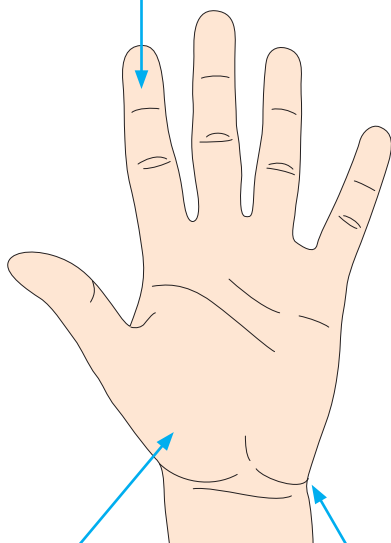
General muscle wasting from famine, or **feating** (dementia; stroke; MND, p510; anorexia nervosa), **malabsorption** (enteropathic AIDS/slim disease/*Cryptosporidium*; Whipple's) or **metabolism** (neoplasia; CCF; TB; chronic kidney disease; leptint).¹⁰

As with any examination routine, begin by introducing yourself, obtaining consent to examine the patient and position them appropriately. Expose the arms, then ask the patient to rest their hands on a pillow. Always ask about pain or tender areas. With the hands, particularly in acute arthritis, the standard joint examination routine of "look, feel, move" is better amended to "look, ask the patient to move, then feel" to avoid causing pain.

1 Skin

On both the palm and the dorsum start by inspecting the skin for:

- 1 Colour**—pigmentation of creases, jaundice, palmar erythema
- 2 Consistency**—tight (sclerodactyly), thick (DM, acromegaly)
- 3 Characteristic lesions**—pulp infarcts, rashes, purpura, spider naevi, telangiectasia, tophi, scars (eg carpal tunnel release)



2 Muscles

Examine the muscles for wasting and fasciculations; on the palm look particularly at the thenar and hypothenar eminences.

- Thenar wasting = median nerve lesion
- Generalized wasting, particularly of the interossei on the dorsum, but sparing of the thenar eminence = ulnar nerve lesion

Also look for *Dupuytren's* contracture and perform *Tinel's test* (percuss over the distal skin crease of the wrist—tingling suggests carpal tunnel syndrome).

3 Joints

Examine for acute inflammation (swollen, red joints) as well as the characteristic deformities of chronic arthritis:

- Ulnar deviation at the wrist
- Z deformity of the thumb

1 Skin and nails

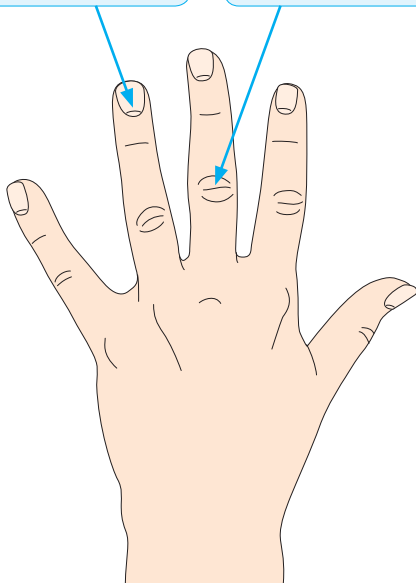
On the dorsum, look for the same skin changes as the palm, plus tendon xanthomata, plaques and joint replacement scars, and examine the nails for:

- Pitting and onycholysis (p32)
- Clubbing (p33)
- Nail fold infarcts and splinter haemorrhages
- Other lesions, eg Beau's lines (**fig 1**, p32), koilonychia, leuconychia

2 Joints and muscles

Again, look for muscle wasting, particularly of the dorsal interossei. Examine the joints for characteristic deformities:

- Swan-neck (flexed DIP, hyperextended PIP—**fig 2**, p540)
- Boutonnière (hyperextended DIP, flexed PIP)
- Heberden's nodes (DIP joints, p32)
- Bouchard's nodes (PIP joints)



Move and feel

By this point, you should know the likely diagnosis, so assess neurological function looking at power, function and sensation:

- **Wrist and forearm:** Extension (prayer position) and flexion (reverse prayer), supination and pronation. Look at the elbows
- **Small muscles:** Pincer grip, power grip (squeeze my two fingers), abduction of the thumb, abduction (spread your fingers) and adduction (grip this piece of paper between your fingers) of the fingers. NB *Froment's sign* = flexion of the thumb during grip as ulnar nerve lesion prevents adduction (p456)
- **Function:** Write a sentence, undo a button, pick up a coin
- **Sensation:** Test little finger (ulnar), index finger (median) and anatomical snuff-box (radial) using light touch/pinprick

When you have clinched the diagnosis and functional status, examine each joint, palpating for tenderness, effusions and crepitus. Test sensation (see p73) and examine the elbows. Consider examination of upper limbs and face.

Top tips

- Cross your fingers before the patient grips them, it hurts less!
- Don't forget to palpate the radial pulse
- Don't forget to look at the elbows for plaques of psoriasis and rheumatoid nodules





The hands can give you a wealth of information about a patient, even without needing to examine them directly. Shaking hands can tell you about thyroid disease (warm, sweaty, tremor), anxiety (cold, sweaty), and neurological disease (myotonic dystrophy patients have difficulty relaxing their grip, a weak grip may suggest muscle wasting or peripheral neuropathy), but remember that some patients are not comfortable with physical contact; be guided by your patient. Looking at the nails and skin can give information about systemic disease:

Nail abnormalities

- **Koilonychia** (spoon-shaped nails) suggests iron deficiency, haemochromatosis, infection (eg fungal), endocrine disorders (eg acromegaly, hypothyroidism), or malnutrition.
- **Onycholysis** (detachment of the nail from the nail-bed) is seen with hyperthyroidism, fungal infection, and psoriasis (fig 2, p553).
- **Beau's lines** (fig 1) are transverse furrows from temporary arrest of nail growth at times of biological stress: severe infection, eg malaria, typhus, rheumatic fever, Kawasaki disease, myocardial infarction, chemotherapy, trauma, high-altitude climbing, and deep sea diving.¹¹ As nails grow at $\sim 0.1\text{mm/d}$, the furrow's distance from the cuticle allows dating of the stress.
- **Mees' lines** are single white transverse bands classically seen in arsenic poisoning but also in chronic kidney disease and carbon monoxide poisoning amongst others.
- **Muehrcke's lines** are paired white parallel transverse bands (without furrowing of the nail itself, distinguishing them from Beau's lines)¹² seen, eg, in chronic hypoalbuminaemia, Hodgkin's disease, pellagra (p278), chronic kidney disease.
- **Terry's nails**: Proximal portion of nail is white/pink, nail tip is red/brown (causes include cirrhosis, chronic kidney disease, congestive cardiac failure).
- **Pitting** is seen in psoriasis and alopecia areata.
- **Splinter haemorrhages** are fine longitudinal haemorrhagic streaks (under the nails), which in the febrile patient may suggest infective endocarditis. They may be microemboli, or be normal—being caused, by, for example, gardening.
- **Nail-fold infarcts** are embolic phenomena characteristically seen in vasculitic disorders (OHCS, p414).
- **Clubbing** of the nails occurs with many disorders (p33). There is an exaggerated longitudinal curvature and loss of the angle between nail and nail fold (ie no dip). Also the nail feels 'boggy'. The cause is unknown but may be due to increased blood flow through multiple arteriovenous shunts in the distal phalanges.
- **Chronic paronychia** is a chronic infection of the nail-fold and presents as a painful swollen nail with intermittent discharge.



Fig 1. Beau's lines, here due to chemotherapy, a new line is seen with each cycle. See p529.

Skin changes

- **Palmar erythema** is associated with cirrhosis and other conditions (see BOX 2).
- **Pallor** of the palmar creases suggests anaemia.
- **Pigmentation** of the palmar creases is normal in people of African-Caribbean or Asian origin but is also seen in Addison's disease and Nelson's syndrome (increased ACTH after removal of the adrenal glands in Cushing's disease).¹³
- **Gottron's papules** (purple rash on the knuckles) with dilated end-capillary loops at the nail fold suggests dermatomyositis (p554).

Nodules and contractures

- Dupuytren's contracture (fibrosis and contracture of palmar fascia, p712) is seen in liver disease, trauma, epilepsy, and ageing.¹⁴
- Look for Heberden's (DIP) fig 2 and Bouchard's (PIP) 'nodes'—osteophytes (bone over-growth at a joint) seen with osteoarthritis.



Fig 2. Heberden's node.

Clubbing

Fingernails (\pm toenails) have increased curvature in all directions and loss of the angle between nail and nail fold (figs 3, 4). The nail fold feels boggy. The exact mechanism of clubbing is unclear; however, the platelet theory, developed in 1987,¹⁵ has increasing evidence behind it. Megakaryocytes are normally fragmented into platelets in the lungs, and the original theory was that any disruption to normal pulmonary circulation (inflammation, cancer, cardiac right-to-left shunting) would allow large megakaryocytes into the systemic circulation. They become lodged in the capillaries of the fingers and toes, releasing platelet-derived growth factor and vascular endothelial growth factor,¹⁶ both of which lead to tissue growth, vascular permeability (leading to the 'boggy' oedematous feel) and recruitment of inflammatory cells. This theory has been supported by necropsy evidence showing platelet microthrombi in clubbed fingers, and high levels of PDGF and VEGF in patients with hypertrophic osteoarthropathy,¹⁷ and hypoxia may increase levels. However, this does not explain all of the changes, particularly in patients with unilateral clubbing, usually seen in neurological disorders. The jury is still out on the true pathogenesis.

Causes

Thoracic:

- Bronchial cancer (clubbing is twice as common in women); usually *not* small cell cancer¹⁸
- Chronic lung suppuration
 - empyema, abscess
 - bronchiectasis
 - cystic fibrosis
- Fibrosing alveolitis
- Mesothelioma
- TB

GI:

- Inflammatory bowel disease (especially Crohn's)
 - Cirrhosis
 - GI lymphoma
 - Malabsorption, eg coeliac
- Rare:**
- Familial
 - Thyroid acropachy (p564)

Cardiovascular:

- Cyanotic congenital heart disease
- Endocarditis
- Atrial myxoma
- Aneurysms
- Infected grafts

Unilateral clubbing:

- Hemiplegia
- Vascular lesions, eg upper-limb artery aneurysm, Takayasu's arteritis, brachial arteriovenous malformations (including iatrogenic—haemodialysis fistulas)



Fig 3. Finger clubbing.

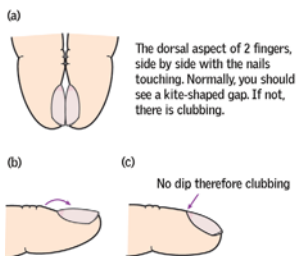


Fig 4. Testing for finger clubbing.

Palmar erythema

Causes: 'High output' states: Pregnancy, hyperthyroidism, rheumatoid arthritis, polycythaemia; also chronic liver disease—via inactivation of vasoactive endotoxins by the liver. Also chemotherapy-induced palmar/plantar erythrodysesthesia.¹⁹

History (see also p88) Ask about age, occupation, hobbies, sport, exercise and ethnic origin.

Presenting symptoms

Chest pain

(see p88–9 and p798)

Direct questions

Site? Central?

Onset? (sudden? What was the patient doing?)

Character? Ask patient to describe pain (crushing? heavy?)

Radiation? Ask specifically if moves to arm, neck or jaw?

Associations? Ask specifically about shortness of breath, nausea, sweating.

Timing? Duration?

Exacerbating and alleviating factors? Worse with respiration or movement (less likely to be angina)? Relieved by GTN? Worse on inspiration and better when sitting forwards (pericarditis)?

Severity: out of 10?

Also ask if patient is known to have angina or chest pain in the past; better/worse/same as usual pain; is it more frequent? Decreasing exercise tolerance?

NB: 'heartburn' more likely if 'burning', onset after eating/drinking, worse lying flat, or associated with dysphagia.

Palpitations

(see BOX 1 & 2)

'Ever aware of your own heartbeat'? When and how did it start/stop? Duration? Onset sudden/gradual? Associated with blackout (how long)? Fast/slow? Regular/irregular? Ask patient to tap out the rhythm. Related to eating/drinking (especially coffee, tea, wine, or chocolate)?

Dyspnoea

(see BOX 3, p52, and p796)

Duration? At rest? On exertion? Determine exercise tolerance (and any other reason for limitation, eg arthritis). NYHA classification (p131)? Worse when lying flat, how many pillows does the patient sleep with (orthopnoea)? Does the patient ever wake up in the night gasping for breath (paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea), and how often? Any ankle swelling?

Dizziness/blackouts

(see BOX 3 and p464–7)

Did patient lose consciousness, and for how long (short duration suggests cardiac while longer duration suggests a neurological cause)? Any warning (pre-syncope)? What was patient doing at the time? Sudden/gradual? Associated symptoms? Any residual symptoms? How long did it take for patient to return to 'normal'? Any tongue biting (p464–5), seizure, incontinence? Witnessed?

Claudication

SOCRATES? Specifically foot/calf/thigh/buttock? Quantify 'claudication distance', ie how long can patient walk before onset of pain? Rest pain?

(Screen for presenting symptoms before proceeding to past history.)

Past history Ask specifically about: angina, any previous heart attack or stroke, rheumatic fever, diabetes, hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia, previous tests/procedures (ECG, angiograms, angioplasty/stents, echocardiogram, cardiac scintigraphy, coronary artery bypass grafts (CABG)).

Drug history Particularly note aspirin/GTN/ β -blocker/diuretic/ACE-i/digoxin/statin use.

Family history Enquire specifically if any 1st-degree relatives having cardiovascular events (especially if <60yrs).

Social history Smoking, impact of symptoms on daily life.

Ischaemic heart disease risk factors

- Smoking
- Diabetes mellitus/raised BMI
- Family history (1st-degree relative <60yrs old with IHD)
- Hypertension
- Hyperlipidaemia
- Renal disease
- Deprivation



Palpitations

An awareness of the heartbeat. Have the patient tap out the rate and rhythm of the palpitations.

- Irregular fast palpitations are likely to be paroxysmal AF, or atrial flutter with variable block.
- Regular fast palpitations may reflect paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) or ventricular tachycardia (VT).
- Dropped or missed beats related to rest, recumbency, or eating are likely to be atrial or ventricular ectopics.
- Regular pounding may be due to anxiety.
- Slow palpitations are likely to be due to drugs such as β -blockers, or bigeminy (fig 1, p122).

Ask about associated chest pain, dyspnoea, and faints, suggesting haemodynamic compromise. Ask when it occurs: anxious people may be aware of their own heartbeat at night. Reassurance is vital and can often be therapeutic. Check a TSH and consider a 24h ECG (Holter monitor, p102). An event recorder, if available, is better than 24h ECGs, which miss some attacks.

Palpitations, Russian roulette, loose blood, and hypochondriasis

At night on my pillow the syncopated stagger
Of the pulse in my ear. Russian roulette:
Every heartbeat a fresh throw of the dice . . .
Hypochondria walked, holding my arm
Like a nurse, her fingers over my pulse . . .
The sudden lapping at my throat of loose blood.

Ted Hughes, *Birthday Letters*.
Faber & Faber, by kind permission.

Dizziness

Dizziness is a loose term, so try to clarify if your patient means:

- **Vertigo** (p466), the illusion of rotation of either the patient or their surroundings \pm difficulty walking/standing, patients may fall over.
- **Imbalance**, a difficulty in walking straight but without vertigo, from peripheral nerve, posterior column, cerebellar, or other central pathway failure.
- **Faintness**, ie 'light-headedness', seen in anaemia, \downarrow BP, postural hypotension, hypoglycaemia, carotid sinus hypersensitivity, and epilepsy.

As with any examination routine, begin by introducing yourself, obtaining consent to examine the patient and position them appropriately: for the cardiovascular system, lying on a bed but sitting up at 45°. Expose them to the waist (for female patients, delay this until examining the praecordium). Explain what you are doing throughout.

5 Neck

- **JVP:** ask patient to turn head to the left and look at the supra-clavicular fossa (see **fig 1** and p40). Comment on the height of the JVP and waveform. Press on the abdomen to check the abdomino-jugular reflex.
- **Carotid pulse:** inspect (visible carotid = *Corrigan's sign* of aortic regurgitation), and palpate volume and character on one side then the other.



Fig 1. The JVP.

4 Blood pressure

- Hyper or hypotensive?
- Pulse pressure (wide = aortic regurgitation, narrow = aortic stenosis)

3 Radial and brachial pulses

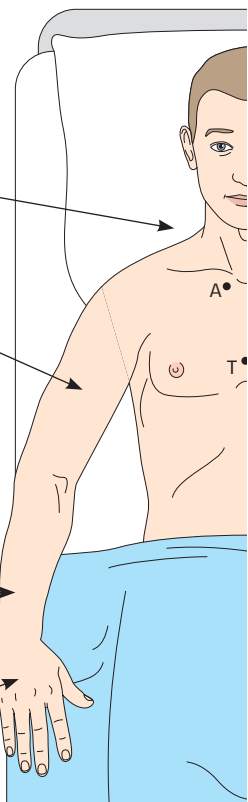
- **Radial:** rate, rhythm; radio-radial delay (palpate pulse bilaterally simultaneously), radiofemoral delay (palpate ipsilateral pulses simultaneously), collapsing pulse (hold pulse with fingers of one hand, wrap the fingers of other hand around forearm, check "any pain in arm/shoulder?", lift arm up straight collapsing pulse, felt as 'waterhammer' pulsation in forearm).
- **Brachial:** (just medial to tendonous insertion of biceps). Waveform character.

2 Hands

- **Temperature:** capillary refill time
- **Inspect:**
 - Skin:** tobacco staining, peripheral cyanosis, tendon xanthomata, *Jane-way lesions*, *Osler's nodes* (signs of infective endocarditis)
 - Nails:** clubbing, splinter haemorrhages, nailbed pulsation (*Quinke's sign* of aortic regurgitation)

1 General inspection

- Assess general state (ill/well)
- Look for clues (oxygen, GTN spray)
- Colour (pale, cyanosed, flushed)
- Short of breath?
- Scars on chest wall?



A = Aortic T = Tricuspid
P = Pulmonary M = Mitral

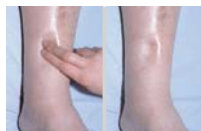


Fig 3. Pitting oedema, apply firm pressure for a few seconds.

6 Face

- **Colour:** pale, flushed, central cyanosis
- **Features:** corneal arcus (**fig 2**), xanthelasma
- Pallor of the conjunctiva (anaemia)
- Malar flush (mitral stenosis)
- Dental hygiene



Fig 2. Corneal arcus.

7 The praecordium

Inspect

- **Scars:** midline sternotomy, lateral thoractomy (mitral stenosis valvotomy).

Palpate

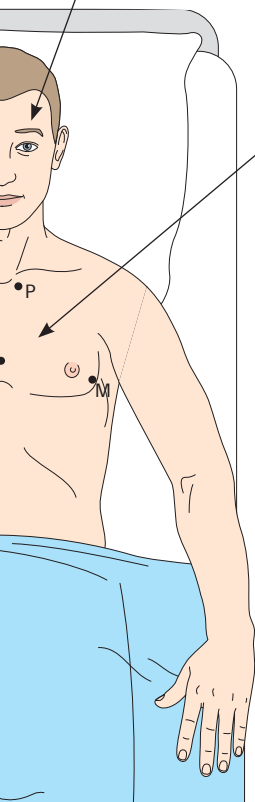
- **Apex beat (lowermost lateral pulsation):** usually 5th intercostal space in mid-clavicular line; measure position by counting intercostal spaces (sternal notch = 2nd intercostal space). Undisplaced/displaced? **Character:** impalpable (?dextrocardia/COPD), tapping (palpable S₁), double impulse, sustained/strong. Count rate if pulse irregular (AF, p124).
- **Heaves' and 'thrills':** place the heel of the hand flat on chest to left then right of sternum. **Heave:** sustained, thrusting usually felt at left sternal edge (= right ventricular enlargement). **Thrill:** palpable murmur felt as a vibration beneath your hand.

Auscultate (palpate carotid pulse at the same time)

- **Apex (mitral area):** Listen with bell and diaphragm. Identify 1st and 2nd **heart sounds:** are they normal? Listen for **added sounds** (p42) and **murmurs** (p44); with the diaphragm listen for a **pansystolic murmur** radiating to the axilla—**mitral regurgitation**.
- At apex with bell, ask the patient to "Roll over onto your left side, breathe out, and hold it there" (*a rumbling mid-diastolic murmur*—**mitral stenosis**).
- **Lower left sternal edge (tricuspid area)** and pulmonary area (left of manubrium in the 2nd intercostal space): if suspect right-sided murmur, listen with patient's breath held in inspiration.
- **Right of manubrium in 2nd intercostal space (aortic area)** **ejection systolic murmur** radiating to the carotids—**aortic stenosis**.
- Sit the patient up and listen at the lower left sternal edge with patient held in expiration (*early diastolic murmur*: **aortic regurgitation?**).

8 To complete the examination

- Palpate for **sacral and ankle oedema** (**Fig 3**).
- Auscultate the **lung bases** for inspiratory crackles.
- Examine the abdomen for a **pulsatile liver** and **aortic aneurysm**.
- Check peripheral pulses, observation chart for temperature and O₂ sats, dip urine, perform fundoscopy.



Top tips

The hand can be used as a manometer to estimate JVP/CVP if you cannot see the neck properly (eg central line in situ). Hold the hand palm down below the level of the heart until the veins dilate (patient must be warm!), then lift slowly, keeping the arm horizontal. The veins should empty as the hand is raised. Empty veins below the level of the heart suggests a low CVP, if they remain full it suggests a normal/high CVP.



General inspection Ill or well? In pain? Dyspnoeic? Are they pale, cold, and clammy? Can you hear the click of a prosthetic valve? Inspect for *scars*: median sternotomy (CABG; valve replacement; congenital heart disease). Inspect for any pacemakers. Look around the bed for oxygen and GTN spray.

Hands Finger clubbing occurs in congenital cyanotic heart disease and endocarditis. Splinter haemorrhages, Osler's nodes (tender nodules, eg in finger pulps) and Janeway lesions (red macules on palms, **fig 3**, p145) are signs of infective endocarditis. If found, examine the fundi for Roth's spots (retinal infarcts, p386, **fig 1**). Are there nail fold infarcts (vasculitis, p558) or nailbed capillary pulsation (Quincke's sign in aortic regurgitation)? Is there arachnodactyly (Marfan's) or polydactyly (ASD)? Are there tendon xanthomata (**fig 3**, p36; hyperlipidaemia)?

Pulse See p42. Feel for *radio-femoral delay* (coarctation of the aorta) and *radio-radial delay* (eg from aortic arch aneurysm).

Blood pressure (see BOX) Systolic BP is the pressure at which the pulse is first heard as on cuff deflation (Korotkov sounds); the diastolic is when the heart sounds disappear or become muffled (eg in the young). The *pulse pressure* is the difference between systolic and diastolic pressures. It is narrow in aortic stenosis and hypovolaemia, and wide in aortic regurgitation and septic shock. Defining hypertension is problematic: see p132. Examine the fundi for hypertensive changes (p133). Shock may occur if systolic <90mmHg (p804). *Postural hypotension* is defined as a drop in systolic >20mmHg or diastolic >10mmHg on standing (see BOX).

Face Is there corneal arcus (**fig 2**, p37) or xanthelasma (**fig 1**, p705, signifying dyslipidaemia, p704)? Is there a malar flush (mitral stenosis, low cardiac output)? Are there signs of Graves' disease, eg bulging eyes (exophthalmos) or goitre—p210)? Is the face dysmorphic, eg Down's syndrome, Marfan's syndrome (p720)—or Turner's, Noonan's, or William's syndromes (p143)?

Carotid pulse (p40) and **jugular venous pressure** (p41).

Praecordium Palpate the *apex beat*. Normal position: 5th intercostal space in the mid-clavicular line. Is it displaced laterally? Is it abnormal in nature: *heaving* (caused by outflow obstruction, eg aortic stenosis or systemic hypertension), *thrusting* (caused by volume overload, eg mitral or aortic incompetence), *tapping* (mitral stenosis, essentially a palpable 1st heart sound), *diffuse* (LV failure, dilated cardiomyopathy) or *double impulse* (HOCM, p146)? Is there dextrocardia? Feel for *left parasternal heave* (RV enlargement, eg in pulmonary stenosis, cor pulmonale, ASD) or *thrills* (transmitted murmurs).

Auscultating the heart Also auscultate for *bruits* over the carotids and elsewhere, particularly if there is inequality between pulses or absence of a pulse. Causes: atherosclerosis (elderly), vasculitis (young, p558).

Lungs Examine the bases for creps & pleural effusions, indicative of cardiac failure.

Oedema Examine the ankles, legs, sacrum, and torso for pitting oedema. (You may prefer to examine ankles whilst standing at the foot of the bed as it is a good early clue that there may be further pathology to be found.)

Abdomen Hepatomegaly and ascites in right-sided heart failure; pulsatile hepatomegaly with tricuspid regurgitation; splenomegaly with infective endocarditis.

Fundoscopy Roth spots (infective endocarditis).

Urine dipstick Haematuria.

Presenting your findings:

- i Signs of heart failure?
- ii Clinical evidence of infective endocarditis?
- iii Sinus/abnormal rhythm?
- iv Heart sounds normal, abnormal or additional?
- v Murmurs?



An unusual BP measurement

Don't interpret a BP value in isolation (p132). We cannot diagnose hypertension (or hypotension) on one BP reading. Take into account pain, the 'white coat' effect, and equipment used.²⁰ Getting cuff size right is vital, as too small will give too high a reading, and too large will give a low reading. ▶ **Optimal cuff width is 40% of the arm circumference.** If you suspect a BP reading to be anomalous, check the equipment and review the observation chart for previous readings and other vital signs. Consider taking a manual reading with a different set yourself.

Often a quiet chat will bring the BP down (yours and your patient's: keep your ears open, and the patient may reveal some new tangential but vital fact that the official history glossed over). Many things affect BP readings from background noise to how much you touch the patient. If BP ↑, eg ≥150/90, check both arms. If the systolic difference is >10mmHg, consider peripheral vascular disease;²¹ and if the patient could have a thoracic aortic aneurysm or coarctation (rare)? NB: right arm diastolic is normally 2.4–5mmHg higher than left.²²

Postural hypotension

This is an important cause of falls and faints in the elderly. It is defined as a drop in systolic BP >20mmHg or diastolic >10mmHg after standing for 3min vs lying.²³

Causes: Hypovolaemia (early sign); drugs, eg nitrates, diuretics, antihypertensives; antipsychotics; Addison's (p218); hypopituitarism (↓ACTH), autonomic neuropathy (p509, DM, multisystem atrophy, p498), after a marathon run (peripheral resistance is low for some hours); idiopathic.

Treatment:

- Lie down if feeling faint.
- Stand slowly (with escape route: don't move away from the chair too soon!).
- Consider referral to a 'falls clinic', where special equipment is available for monitoring patient under various tilts.
- Manage autonomic neuropathy, p509.
- ↑Water and salt ingestion can help (eg 150mmol Na⁺/d), but Na⁺ has its problems.
- Physical measures: leg crossing, squatting, elastic compression stockings (check dorsalis pedis pulse is present), and careful exercise may help.
- If post-prandial dizziness, eat little and often; ↓carbohydrate and alcohol intake.
- Head-up tilt of the bed at night trenin release, so ↓fluid loss and ↑standing BP.
- 1st-line drugs: fludrocortisone (retains fluid) 50µg/d; go up to 300µg/24h PO only if tolerated. Monitor weight; beware if CCF, renal impairment or ↓albumin as fludrocortisone worsens oedema.^{24,25}
- 2nd-line: sympathomimetics, eg midodrine (not always available) or ephedrine;²³ pyridostigmine (eg if detrusor under-activity too).²⁶
- If these fail, turn things on their head and ask: *is this really supine hypertension?*

Xanthomata

Localized deposits of fat under the skin, occurring over joints (fig 3, p36), tendons, hands, and feet. They are a sign of dyslipidaemia (p704). *Xanthelasma* refers to xanthoma on the eyelid (p705, fig 1). *Corneal arcus* (fig 2, p37) is a crescentic-shaped opacity at the periphery of the cornea. Common in those over 60yrs, can be normal, but may represent hyperlipidaemia, especially in those under this age.

The internal jugular vein acts as a capricious manometer of right atrial pressure. Observe 2 features: the **height** (jugular venous pressure, JVP) and the **waveform** of the pulse. JVP observations are often difficult. Do not be downhearted if the skill seems to elude you. Keep on watching necks, and the patterns you see may slowly start to make sense—see **fig 2** for the local venous anatomy. Relating the waveform to the arterial pulse (by concomitant palpation) will help to decipher patterns.

The height Observe the patient at 45°, with his head turned slightly to the left. Good lighting and correct positioning makes the examination a lot easier. Look for the right internal jugular vein as it passes just medial to the clavicular head of the sternocleidomastoid up behind the angle of the jaw to the earlobes. The JVP is the vertical height of the pulse above the sternal angle (measured from the angle of Louis to the upper part of the JVP pulsation). It is raised if >4cm. Pressing on the abdomen normally produces a transient rise in the JVP. If the rise persists throughout a 15s compression, it is a **positive abdominojugular reflux sign**.¹ This is a sign of right ventricular failure, reflecting inability to eject the increased venous return.²⁷ If you cannot see the JVP at all, lie the patient flat then slowly sit up until the JVP disappears to check height of waveform.

The waveform See BOX 1.

Abnormalities of the JVP

- **Raised JVP with normal waveform:** Fluid overload, right heart failure.
- **Fixed raised JVP with absent pulsation:** svc obstruction (p526).
- **Large a wave:** Pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary stenosis.
- **Cannon a wave:** When the right atrium contracts against a closed tricuspid valve, large 'cannon' a waves result. **Causes:** complete heart block, single chamber ventricular pacing, ventricular arrhythmias/ectopics.
- **Absent a wave:** Atrial fibrillation.
- **Large v waves:** Tricuspid regurgitation—look for earlobe movement.
- **Constrictive pericarditis:** High plateau of JVP (which rises on inspiration—Kussmaul's sign) with deep x and y descents.
- **Absent JVP:** When lying flat, the jugular vein should be filled. If there is reduced circulatory volume (eg dehydration, haemorrhage) the JVP may be absent.

Pulses

► Assess the radial pulse to determine rate and rhythm. **Character and volume** are best assessed at the brachial or carotid arteries. A **collapsing pulse** may also be felt at the radial artery when the patient's arm is elevated above his head. See **fig 3**.

Rate Is the pulse fast (≥ 100 bpm, p120) or slow (≤ 60 bpm, p118)?

Rhythm An irregularly irregular pulse occurs in AF or multiple ectopics. A regularly irregular pulse occurs in 2° heart block and ventricular bigeminus.

Character and volume

- **Bounding pulses** are caused by CO₂ retention, liver failure, and sepsis.
- **Small volume pulses** occur in aortic stenosis, shock, and pericardial effusion.
- **Collapsing ('waterhammer') pulses** are caused by aortic incompetence, AV malformations, and a patent ductus arteriosus.
- **Anacrotic (slow-rising) pulses** occur in aortic stenosis.
- **Bisferiens pulses** occur in combined aortic stenosis and regurgitation.
- **Pulsus alternans** (alternating strong and weak beats) suggests LVF, cardiomyopathy, or aortic stenosis.
- **Jerky pulses** occur in H(O)CM.
- **Pulsus paradoxus** (systolic pressure weakens in inspiration by >10mmHg) occurs in severe asthma, pericardial constriction, or cardiac tamponade.

Peripheral pulses (See p34.) See p785 for arterial blood gas (ABG) sampling.

¹ This sign was first described by Pasteur in 1885 in the context of tricuspid incompetence.

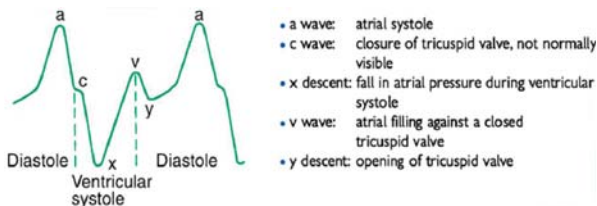


Fig 1. The jugular venous pressure wave. The JVP drops as the x descent during ventricular systole because the right atrium is no longer contracting. This means that the pressure in the right atrium is dropping and this is reflected by the JVP.

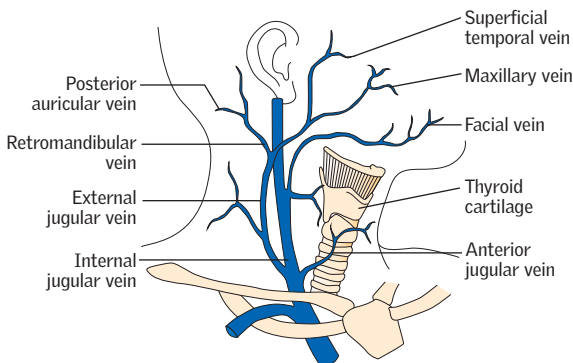


Fig 2. The jugular venous system.

Is a pulse arterial or venous?

A venous pulse:

- Is not usually palpable.
- Is obliterated by finger pressure on the vessel.
- Rises transiently with pressure on abdomen (abdominojugular reflux) or on liver (hepatojugular reflux).
- Alters with posture and respiration.
- Usually has a double pulse for every arterial pulse.

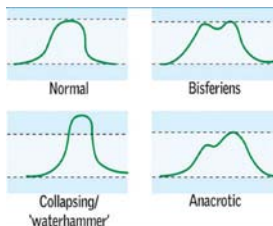


Fig 3. Arterial pulse waveforms.

Waterhammer pulse

The waterhammer was a popular toy that consisted of a vacuum tube half-filled with water. On inversion, the whoosh of water produced an intriguing hammer-blow as it rushed from end to end. This is the alternative name for Corrigan's collapsing pulse—ie one in which the upstroke is abrupt and steep, whose peak is reached early and with abnormal force—before a rapid downstroke (as blood whooshes back into the left ventricle through an incompetent aortic valve).



► Listen systematically: sounds then murmurs. While listening, palpate the carotid artery: S_1 is synchronous with the upstroke.

Heart sounds The 1st and 2nd sounds are usually clear. Confident pronouncements about other sounds and soft murmurs may be difficult. Even senior colleagues disagree with one another about the more difficult sounds and murmurs. See [fig 1](#).

The 1st heart sound (S_1) represents closure of mitral (M_1) and tricuspid (T_1) valves. Splitting in inspiration may be heard and is normal.

- **Loud S_1** In mitral stenosis, because the narrowed valve orifice limits ventricular filling, there is no gradual decrease in flow towards the end of diastole. The valves are therefore at their maximum excursion at the end of diastole, and so shut rapidly leading to a loud S_1 (the 'tapping' apex). S_1 is also loud if diastolic filling time is shortened, eg if the PR interval is short, and in tachycardia.

- **Soft S_1** occurs if the diastolic filling time is prolonged, eg prolonged PR interval, or if the mitral valve leaflets fail to close properly (ie mitral incompetence).

The intensity of S_1 is variable in AV block, AF, and nodal or ventricular tachycardia.

The 2nd heart sound (S_2) represents aortic (A_2) and pulmonary valve (P_2) closure. The most important abnormality of A_2 is softening in aortic stenosis.

- **A_2** is said to be loud in tachycardia, hypertension, and transposition, but this is probably not a useful clinical entity.

- **P_2** is loud in pulmonary hypertension and soft in pulmonary stenosis.

- **Splitting of S_2** in inspiration is normal and is mainly due to the variation of right heart venous return with respiration, delaying the pulmonary component.

- **Wide splitting** occurs in right bundle branch block (BBB), pulmonary stenosis, deep inspiration, mitral regurgitation, and VSD.

- **Wide fixed splitting** occurs in ASD.

- **Reversed splitting** (ie A_2 following P_2 , with splitting increasing on expiration) occurs in left bundle branch block, aortic stenosis, PDA (patent ductus arteriosus), and right ventricular pacing.

- A single S_2 occurs in Fallot's tetralogy, severe aortic or pulmonary stenosis, pulmonary atresia, Eisenmenger's syndrome (p150), large VSD, or hypertension.

NB: splitting and P_2 are heard best in the pulmonary area.

Additional sounds

A 3rd heart sound (S_3) may occur just after S_2 . It is low pitched and best heard with the bell of the stethoscope. S_3 is pathological over the age of 30yrs. A loud S_3 occurs in a dilated left ventricle with rapid ventricular filling (mitral regurgitation, VSD) or poor LV function (post MI, dilated cardiomyopathy). In constrictive pericarditis or restrictive cardiomyopathy it occurs early and is more high pitched ('pericardial knock').

A 4th heart sound (S_4) occurs just before S_1 . Always abnormal, it represents atrial contraction against a ventricle made stiff by any cause, eg aortic stenosis or hypertensive heart disease.

Triple and gallop rhythms A 3rd or 4th heart sound occurring with a sinus tachycardia may give the impression of galloping hooves. An S_3 gallop has the same rhythm as 'Ken-tucky', whereas an S_4 gallop has the same rhythm as 'Tenne-ssee'. When S_3 and S_4 occur in a tachycardia, eg with pulmonary embolism, they may summate and appear as a single sound, a summation gallop.

An ejection systolic click is heard early in systole with bicuspid aortic valves, and if BPT. The right heart equivalent lesions may also cause clicks.

Mid-systolic clicks occur in mitral valve prolapse (p138).

An opening snap precedes the mid-diastolic murmur of mitral (and tricuspid) stenosis. It indicates a pliable (non-calcified) valve.

Prosthetic sounds are caused by non-biological valves, on opening and closing: **rumbling sounds** \approx ball and cage valves (eg Starr-Edwards); **single clicks** \approx tilting disc valve (eg single disc: Bjork Shiley; bileaflet: St Jude—often quieter). Prosthetic mitral valve clicks occur in time with S_1 , aortic valve clicks in time with S_2 .

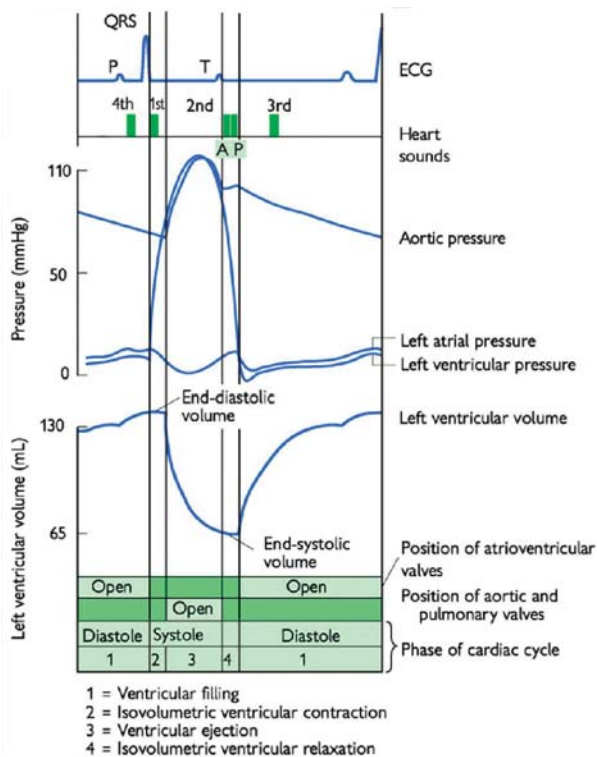


Fig 1. The cardiac cycle.



- ▶ Always consider other symptoms and signs before auscultation and think: "What do I expect to hear?" But don't let your expectations determine what you hear.
- ▶ Use the stethoscope correctly: remember that the bell is good for low-pitched sounds (eg mitral stenosis) and should be applied **gently**. The diaphragm filters out low pitches, making higher-pitched murmurs easier to detect (eg aortic regurgitation). NB: a bell applied tightly to the skin becomes a diaphragm.
- ▶ Consider any murmur in terms of **character, timing, loudness, area where loudest, radiation, and accentuating manoeuvres**.
- ▶ When in doubt, rely on echocardiography rather than disputed sounds. (But still enjoy trying to figure out the clinical conundrum!)

Character and timing (see fig 1)

- **An ejection-systolic murmur (ESM)**, crescendo-decrescendo) usually originates from the outflow tract and waxes and wanes with the intraventricular pressures. ESMs may be innocent and are common in children and high-output states (eg tachycardia, pregnancy). Organic causes include aortic stenosis and sclerosis, pulmonary stenosis, and H(O)CM.
- **A pansystolic murmur (PSM)** is of uniform intensity and merges with S_2 . It is usually organic and occurs in mitral or tricuspid regurgitation (S_1 may also be soft in these), or a ventricular septal defect (p150). Mitral valve prolapse may produce a late systolic murmur \pm midsystolic click.
- **Early diastolic murmurs (EDM)** are high pitched and easily missed: listen for the 'absence of silence' in early diastole. An EDM occurs in aortic and, though rare, pulmonary regurgitation. If the pulmonary regurgitation is secondary to pulmonary hypertension resulting from mitral stenosis, then the EDM is called a Graham Steell murmur.
- **Mid-diastolic murmurs (MDM)** are low pitched and rumbling. They occur in mitral stenosis (accentuated presystolically if heart still in sinus rhythm), rheumatic fever (Carey Coombs' murmur: due to thickening of the mitral valve leaflets), and aortic regurgitation (Austin Flint murmur: due to the fluttering of the anterior mitral valve cusp caused by the regurgitant stream).

Intensity All murmurs are graded on a scale of 1–6 (see TABLE), though in practice diastolic murmurs, being less loud, are only graded 1–4. Intensity is a poor guide to the severity of a lesion—an ESM may be inaudible in severe aortic stenosis.

Area where loudest Though an unreliable sign, mitral murmurs tend to be loudest over the apex, in contrast to the area of greatest intensity from lesions of the aortic (right 2nd intercostal space), pulmonary (left 2nd intercostal space) and tricuspid (lower left sternal edge) valves.

Radiation The ESM of aortic stenosis classically radiates to the carotids, in contrast to the PSM of mitral regurgitation, which radiates to the axilla.

Accentuating manoeuvres

- **Movements** that bring the relevant part of the heart closer to the stethoscope accentuate murmurs (eg leaning forward for aortic regurgitation, left lateral position for mitral stenosis).
 - **Expiration** increases blood flow to the left side of the heart and therefore accentuates left-sided murmurs. **Inspiration** has the opposite effect.
 - **Valsalva manoeuvre** (forced expiration against a closed glottis) decreases systemic venous return, accentuating mitral valve prolapse and H(O)CM, but softening mitral regurgitation and aortic stenosis. **Squatting** has exactly the opposite effect.
- Exercise** accentuates the murmur of mitral stenosis.

Non-valvular murmurs A **pericardial friction rub** may be heard in pericarditis. It is a superficial scratching sound, not confined to systole or diastole. **Continuous murmurs** are present throughout the cardiac cycle and may occur with a patent ductus arteriosus, arteriovenous fistula, or ruptured sinus of Valsalva.

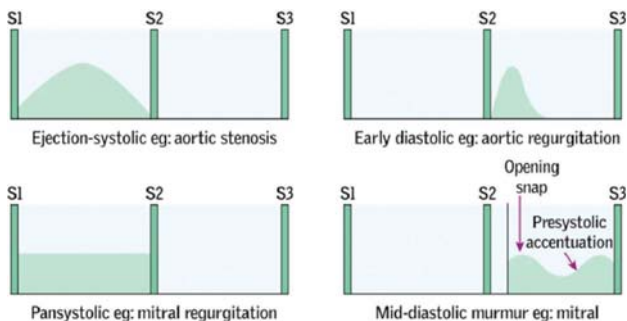


Fig 1. Typical waveforms of common heart murmurs.

Grading intensity of heart murmurs

► The following grading is commonly used for murmurs—systolic murmurs from 1 to 6 and diastolic murmurs from 1 to 4, never being clinically >4/6.

Grade Description

1/6	Very soft, only heard after listening for a while
2/6	Soft, but detectable immediately
3/6	Clearly audible, but no thrill palpable
4/6	Clearly audible, palpable thrill
5/6	Audible with stethoscope only partially touching chest
6/6	Can be heard without placing stethoscope on chest

Prosthetic valve murmurs

Prosthetic aortic valves All types produce a degree of outflow obstruction and thus have an ESM. Tilting single disc (eg Bjork Shiley) and bileaflet (eg St Jude) valves do not completely close and allow a regurgitant stream during diastole; hence they have a low-intensity diastolic murmur. The intensity of this murmur increases as the valve fails. Ball and cage valves (eg Starr-Edwards) and tissue valves do close completely in diastole and so any diastolic murmur implies valve failure.

Prosthetic mitral valves Ball and cage valves project into the left ventricle and can cause a low-intensity ESM as they interfere with the ejected stream. Tissue valves and bileaflet valves can have a low-intensity diastolic murmur. Consider any systolic murmur of loud intensity to be a sign of regurgitation and \therefore failure.

Eponymous signs of aortic regurgitation

- de Musset's sign—head nodding in time with the pulse
- Muller's sign—systolic pulsations of the uvula
- Corrigan's sign—visible carotid pulsations
- Quincke's sign—capillary nailbed pulsation in the fingers
- Traube's sign—'pistol shot' femorals, a booming sound heard over the femorals
- Duroziez's sign—to and fro diastolic murmur heard when compressing the femorals proximally with the stethoscope

Arterial

►► If limb is **p**ale, **p**ulseless, **p**ainful, **p**aralysed, **p**araesthetic, and **'p**erishingly cold' this is acute ischaemia and is a surgical emergency (see p597 and p659).

1 Inspection Look for scars of previous surgery and signs of peripheral arterial disease; loss of hair, pallor, shiny skin, cyanosis, dry skin, scaling, deformed toenails, ulcers, gangrene. Be sure to inspect the pressure points, ie between the toes and under the heel.

2 Palpation Skin temperature will be low in peripheral arterial disease. Is there a level above which it is warm? Delayed capillary refill (>2s) also indicates arterial disease. Are peripheral pulses palpable or not? 'If you cannot count it, you are not feeling it.' Note down on a quick stick-man diagram where they become palpable. Check for atrial fibrillation or other arrhythmias, as these can be the cause of embolic disease. Palpate for an enlarged abdominal aorta and attempt to assess size. (Though don't press too firmly!) ►► An expansile pulsatile mass in the presence of abdominal symptoms is a ruptured aneurysm until proven otherwise.

3 Auscultation The presence of bruits suggests arterial disease. Listen over the major arteries—carotids, abdominal aorta, renal arteries, femorals.

4 Special tests *Buerger's angle* is that above the horizontal plane which leads to development of pallor (<20° indicates severe ischaemia). *Buerger's sign* is the sequential change in colour from white to pink, upon return to the dependent position; if the limbs become flushed red (reactive hyperaemia) this is indicative of more severe disease.

5 Complete your examination by measuring the ABPI (p658), US Doppler assessment for presence of pulses that were not palpable, and a neurological examination of the lower limbs.

Venous (see also p660)

1 Inspection Look for any varicosities and decide whether they are the long saphenous vein (medial), short saphenous vein (posterior, below the knee), or from the calf perforators (usually few varicosities but commonly show skin changes). Ulcers around the medial malleolus are more suggestive of venous disease, whereas those at the pressure points suggest arterial pathology. Brown haemosiderin deposits result from venous hypertension. There may also be atrophy and loss of skin elasticity (lipodermatosclerosis) in venous disease.

2 Palpation Warm varicose veins may indicate infection. Are they tender? Firm, tender varicosities suggests thrombosis. Palpate the saphenofemoral junction (SFJ) for a saphena varix which displays a cough impulse. Similarly, incompetence at the saphenopopliteal junction (SPJ) may be felt as a cough impulse. If ulceration is present, it is prudent to palpate the arterial pulses to rule out arterial disease.

3 Tap test A transmitted percussion impulse from the lower limit of the varicose vein to the saphenofemoral junction demonstrates incompetence of superficial valves.

4 Auscultation Bruits over the varicosities means there is an arteriovenous malformation.

5 Doppler Test for the level of reflux. On squeezing the leg distal to placement of the probe you should only hear one 'whoosh' if the valves are competent at the level of probe placement.

6 Tourniquet test This is the more 'classical' test for the level of reflux. If the varicosities are controlled by the tourniquet then the level of incompetence is above the tourniquet. Note that all veins will refill eventually via the arterial system but rapid refill signifies superficial reflux. (Also *Trendelenburg's test* and *Perthes' test*, p661.)

7 Complete examination by examining the abdomen, pelvis in females and external genitalia in males (for masses).



Arterial

1 General inspection Introduction, consent, patient sitting back at 45°. Inspect skin (hair loss, etc.). Look between toes and lift up heels to inspect for ulcers.

2 Palpation

- **Temperature** bilaterally in thighs, legs, and feet.
- **Capillary refill:** Press/squeeze great toe until blanches, release, and measure time for colour to return (normal <2s).
- **Peripheral pulses:** Radial, brachial, carotid, femoral (mid-inguinal point), popliteal (flex patient's knees slightly and press into centre of popliteal fossa; **fig 1**), posterior tibial (just posterior & inferior to medial malleolus) and **dorsalis pedis** (between bases of 1st & 2nd metatarsals); assess whether palpable bilaterally. Detect rate and rhythm. For brachial and carotid determine volume and character.
- **Abdominal aorta:** Palpate midline above umbilicus; position fingers either side of outermost palpable margins (**fig 2**).



Fig 1. Peripheral pulses: popliteal.

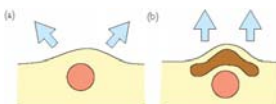


Fig 2. Pulses: abdominal aorta. **a)** Expansile (aneurysm?) **b)** transmitted.

Figures 1 and 2 reproduced with permission from *Oxford Handbook of Clinical Examination and Practical Skills*.

3 Auscultation for carotid, femoral, renal and aortic bruits.

4 Special tests

Buerger's test: Lift both legs to 45° above the horizontal, supporting at heels. Allow a minute for legs to become pale. If they do, ask patient to sit up and swing around to lower legs to ground—observe colour change.

5 Complete examination

Doppler probe to detect pulses and measure ankle-brachial pressure index; conduct neurological examination of lower limbs.

Venous

1 Inspection Introduction, consent, patient sitting back at 45°. Inspect for varicosities and skin changes.

2 Palpation • **Temperature** of varicosities • Ask patient to cough while you palpate for impulse at SFJ and SPJ.

3 Tap test Percuss lower limit of varicosity and feel for impulse at SFJ.

4 Auscultation Listen for bruits over any varicosities.

5 Doppler Place probe over SFJ, squeeze calf and listen. Repeat with probe at SPJ.

6 Tourniquet test Elevate leg and massage veins to empty varicosities. Apply tourniquet to upper thigh. Ask patient to stand. If not controlled, repeat, placing tourniquet below knee.

7 Finish with examinations of abdomen; rectum; pelvis (♀); genitals (♂).



History Age, race, occupation (the latter is essential for respiratory disease).

Presenting symptoms **Direct questions**

- **Cough** (see BOX)
Duration? Character (eg barking/hollow/dry)? Nocturnal (≈asthma, ask about other atopic symptoms, ie eczema, hayfever)? Exacerbating factors? Sputum (colour? How much?) Any blood/haemoptysis?
- **Haemoptysis** (see BOX)
Always think about TB (recent foreign travel?) and malignancy (weight loss?). Mixed with sputum? (Blood not mixed with sputum suggests pulmonary embolism, trauma, or bleeding into a lung cavity.²⁸) Melaena? (Occurs if enough coughed-up blood is swallowed.)
- **Dyspnoea** (see BOX and p796)
Duration? Steps climbed/distance walked before onset? NYHA classification (p131)? Diurnal variation (≈asthma)? Ask specifically about circumstances in which dyspnoea occurs (eg occupational allergen exposure).
Eg due to laryngitis, recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy, Singer's nodules, or laryngeal tumour.
- **Hoarseness** (OHCS p568)
- **Wheeze** (p50)
- **Fever/night sweats** (p27)
- **Chest pain** (p88 & p798) **SOCRATES** (see p34), usually 'pleuritic' if respiratory (ie worse on inspiration?).
- **Stridor** (see BOX 1)

(Screen for presenting symptoms before proceeding to past history.)

Past history Ask about: pneumonia/bronchitis; TB; atopy¹ (asthma/eczema/hay fever); previous CXR abnormalities; lung surgery; myopathy; neurological disorders. Connective tissue disorders, eg rheumatoid, SLE.

Drug history Respiratory drugs (eg steroids, bronchodilators)? Any other drugs, especially with respiratory SE (eg ACE inhibitors, cytotoxics, β -blockers, amiodarone)?

Family history Atopy?¹ Emphysema? TB?

Social history Quantify smoking in 'pack-years' (20 cigarettes/day for 1 year = 1 pack-year). Occupational exposure (farming, mining, asbestos) has possible compensatory implications. Pets at home (eg birds)? Recent travel/TB contacts?

Stridor

Inspiratory sound due to partial obstruction of upper airways. Obstruction may be due to something *within the lumen* (eg foreign body, tumour, bilateral vocal cord palsy), *within the wall* (eg oedema from anaphylaxis, laryngospasm, tumour, croup, acute epiglottitis, amyloidosis), or *extrinsic* (eg goitre, oesophagus, lymphadenopathy, post-op stridor, after neck surgery). It's an emergency (▶▶p786) if gas exchange is compromised. NB: wheeze is an *expiratory* sound.

Characteristic coughs

Coughing is relatively non-specific, resulting from irritation anywhere from the pharynx to the lungs. The character of a cough may, however, give clues as to the underlying cause:

- **Loud, brassy coughing** suggests pressure on the trachea, eg by a tumour.
- **Hollow, 'bovine' coughing** is associated with recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy.
- **Barking coughs** occur in croup.
- **Chronic cough**: Think of pertussis, TB, foreign body, asthma (eg nocturnal).
- **Dry, chronic coughing** may occur following acid irritation of the lungs in oesophageal reflux, and as a side-effect of ACE inhibitors.

▶ Do not ignore a change in character of a chronic cough; it may signify a new problem, eg infection, malignancy.

1 Atopy implies predisposition to, or concurrence of, asthma, hay fever and eczema with production of specific IgE on exposure to common allergens (eg house dust mite, grass, cats).



Haemoptysis

Blood is *coughed up*, eg frothy, *alkaline*, and bright red, often in a context of known chest disease (*vomited* blood is acidic and dark).

Respiratory causes:

1 Infective

TB; bronchiectasis; bronchitis; pneumonia; lung abscess; COPD; fungi (eg aspergillosis); viruses (from pneumonitis, cryoglobulinaemia, eg with hepatitis viruses, HIV-associated pneumocystosis, or MAI, p411). Helminths: paragonimiasis (p445); hydatid (p444); schistosomiasis.²⁹

Primary or secondary.

2 Neoplastic

3 Vascular

Lung infarction (PE); vasculitis (ANCA-associated; RA; SLE); hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia; AV malformation; capillaritis.

4 Parenchymal

Diffuse interstitial fibrosis; sarcoidosis; haemosiderosis; Goodpasture's syndrome; cystic fibrosis.

5 Pulmonary hypertension

Idiopathic, thromboembolic, congenital cyanotic heart disease (p150), pulmonary fibrosis, bronchiectasis.

6 Coagulopathies

Any—eg thrombocytopenia, p338; DIC; warfarin excess.

7 Trauma/foreign body

Eg post-intubation, or an eroding implanted defibrillator.

8 Pseudo-haemoptysis

Munchausen's (p720); aspirated haematemesis; red pigment (prodigiosin) from *Serratia marcescens* in sputum.³⁰

Rare causes refuse to be classified neatly: vascular causes may have infective origins, eg hydatid cyst may count as a foreign body, *and* infection, *and* vascular if it fistulates with the aorta;³¹ ditto for infected (mycotic) aneurysm rupture,³² or TB aortitis. Infective causes entailing coagulopathy: dengue; leptospirosis.³³ In monthly haemoptysis, think of lung endometriosis.

R Haemoptysis may need treating in its own right, if massive (eg trauma, TB, hydatid cyst, cancer, AV malformation): call chest team, consider interventional radiology input (danger is drowning: lobe resection, endobronchial tamponade, or arterial embolization may be needed). Set up IVI, do CXR, blood gases, FBC, INR/APTT, crossmatch. If distressing, give *prompt* IV morphine, eg if inoperable malignancy.³⁴

Dyspnoea

(see also p796)

Subjective sensation of shortness of breath, often exacerbated by exertion.

- **Lung**—airway and interstitial disease. May be hard to separate from cardiac causes; asthma may wake patient, and cause early morning dyspnoea & wheeze.
- **Cardiac**—eg ischaemic heart disease or left ventricular failure (LVF), mitral stenosis, of any cause. LVF is associated with *orthopnoea* (dyspnoea worse on lying; "How many pillows?") and *paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea* (PND; dyspnoea waking one up). Other features include ankle oedema, lung crepitations and \uparrow JVP.
- **Anatomical**—eg diseases of the chest wall, muscles, pleura. Ascites can cause breathlessness by splinting the diaphragm, restricting its movement.
- **Others** ▶ Any shocked patient may also be dyspnoeic (p804 & p609)—dyspnoea may be shock's presenting feature. Also anaemia or metabolic acidosis causing respiratory compensation, eg ketoacidosis, aspirin poisoning. Look for other clues—dyspnoea at rest *unassociated with exertion*, may be psychogenic: prolonged hyperventilation causes respiratory alkalosis. This causes a fall in ionized calcium leading to apparent hypocalcaemia. Features include peripheral and perioral paraesthesiae \pm carpopedal spasm. Speed of onset helps diagnosis:

Acute	Subacute	Chronic
Foreign body	Asthma	COPD and chronic parenchymal diseases
Pneumothorax (p763, fig 1)	Parenchymal disease, eg alveolitis pneumonia	Non-respiratory causes, eg cardiac failure
Pulmonary embolus	Effusion	anaemia
Acute pulmonary oedema		

As with any examination routine, begin by introducing yourself, obtaining consent to examine the patient and position them appropriately: for the respiratory system, lying on a bed but sitting up at 45°. Expose them to the waist (for female patients, delay this until examining the chest itself). Explain what you are doing throughout.

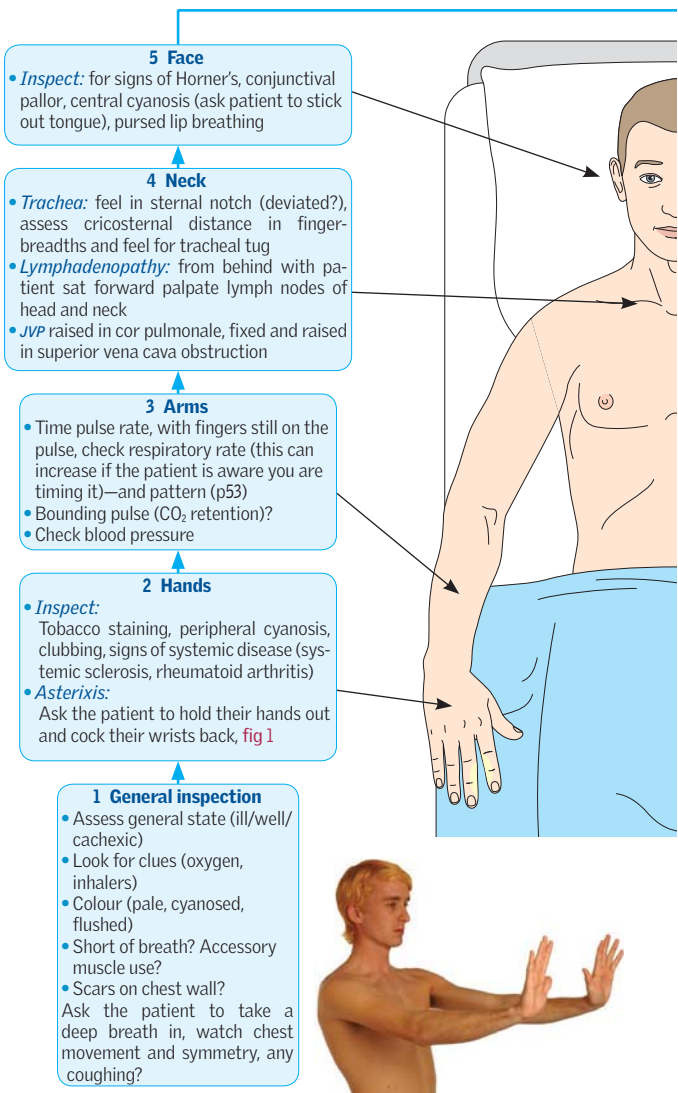


Fig 1. Asterixis.

Fig 2. Placement of the hands for testing chest expansion: anchor with the fingers and leave the thumbs free-floating.

Figures 1-2 reproduced with permission from *Oxford Handbook of Clinical Examination and Practical Skills*.



6 Front of chest

- **Apex beat.**
- **Expansion:** Ask patient to "breathe all the way out", place hands as in **fig 2**, "now a deep breath in", and note distance of thumbs to midline, is expansion equal? Repeat with hands laid on upper chest, equal?
- **Tactile vocal fremitus:** Ask patient to repeat "99" each time they feel your hand while palpating the chest wall with your fingertips. This is rarely used as more information can be gained from vocal resonance.
- **Percussion:** Percuss over different respiratory segments, comparing right and left.
- **Auscultation:** Ask patient to "take steady breaths in and out through your mouth" and listen with diaphragm from apices to bases, comparing right and left.
- **Vocal resonance:** Repeat auscultation, asking patient to repeat "99" each time they feel the stethoscope. If marked ↑ resonance heard, repeat with asking patient to whisper "99"; if clearly heard this is termed 'whispering pectoriloquy' and is a sensitive sign for consolidation. Outside of exams, the choice of vocal resonance or tactile vocal fremitus is a personal preference. Many clinicians prefer vocal resonance as it is an easier skill to master and provides more information than tactile vocal fremitus.

7 Back of chest

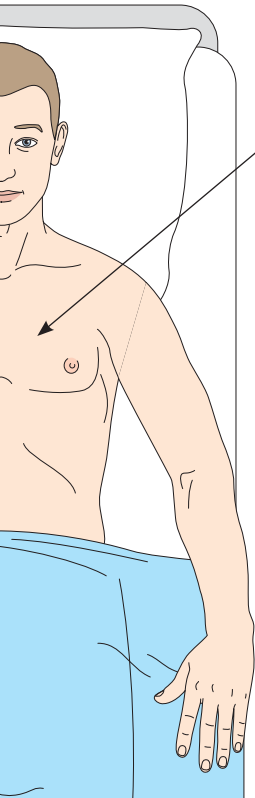
- **Expansion**
- **Tactile vocal fremitus**
- **Percussion**
- **Auscultation**
- **Vocal resonance**

8 To complete the examination

- Palpate for **sacral and ankle oedema**
- Check peripheral pulses, observation chart for temperature and O₂ sats
- Examine the sputum pot and check PEFR

Top tips

- Whispering pectoriloquy is a classic sign of consolidation and is specific, so worth picking up
- If you don't adequately expose the chest you may miss small scars eg from video thoracoscopy
- If you see Horner's syndrome, check for wasting of the small muscles of the hand; see p716 and p722



General inspection

"Comfortable at rest" or unwell? Cachectic? Respiratory distress? (see MINIBOX; occurs if high negative intrathoracic pressures are needed to generate air entry). Stridor? Respiratory rate, breathing pattern (see BOX). Look for chest wall and spine deformities (see p55). Inspect for scars of past surgery, chest drains, or radiotherapy (skin thickening, tattoos for radiotherapy). Chest wall movement: symmetrical? (if not, pathology on restricted side). Paradoxical respiration? (abdomen sucked in with inspiration; seen in diaphragmatic paralysis, see p506).

Signs of respiratory distress

- Tachypnoea
- Nasal flaring
- Tracheal tug (pulling of thyroid cartilage towards sternal notch in inspiration)
- Use of accessory muscles (sternocleidomastoid, platysma, infrahyoid)
- Intercostal, subcostal and sternal recession
- Pulsus paradoxus (p40)

Hands

Clubbing, peripheral cyanosis, tar stains, fine tremor (β -agonist use), wasting of intrinsic muscles (T1 lesions, eg Pancoast's tumour, p722). Tender wrists (hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy—cancer). Asterixis (CO₂ retention). Pulse: paradoxical (respiratory distress), bounding (CO₂ retention).

Face

Ptosis and constricted pupil (Horner's syndrome, eg Pancoast's tumour, p722)? Bluish tongue and lips (central cyanosis, p28)? Conjunctival pallor (anaemia)?

Neck

Trachea: Central or displaced? (towards collapse or away from large pleural effusion/tension pneumothorax; slight deviation to right is normal). Cricosternal distance <3cm is hyperexpansion. **Tracheal tug:** descent of trachea with inspiration (severe airflow limitation). **Lymphadenopathy:** TB/Ca? **JVP:** \uparrow in cor pulmonale.

Examining the chest:

Palpation Apex beat: impalpable?(COPD/pleural effusion/dextrocardia?) **Expansion:** <5cm on deep inspiration is abnormal. Symmetry? **Tactile vocal fremitus:** \uparrow implies consolidation (< sensitive than vocal resonance).

Percussion Dull percussion note: collapse, consolidation, fibrosis, pleural thickening, or pleural effusion (classically 'stony dull'). **Cardiac dullness** usually detectable over the left side. **Liver dullness** usually extends up to 5th rib, right mid-clavicular line; below this, resonant chest is a sign of lung hyperexpansion (eg asthma, COPD). **Hyperresonant percussion note:** pneumothorax or hyperinflation (COPD).

Auscultation Normal 'vesicular' breath sounds have a rustling quality. **Bronchial breathing:** Harsh with a gap between inspiration and expiration, occurs where lung tissue has become firm/solid, eg consolidation, localized fibrosis, above a pleural effusion, or large pericardial effusion (Ewart's sign, p148). May be associated with increased **vocal resonance** and whispering pectoriloquy. **Diminished breath sounds:** Pleural effusions, pleural thickening, pneumothorax, bronchial obstruction, asthma, or COPD. **Silent chest:** In life-threatening asthma severe bronchospasm prevents adequate air entry. **Added sounds:** Wheezes (rhonchi): caused by air expired through narrowed airways. May be monophonic (single note, signifying a partial obstruction of one airway, eg tumour) or polyphonic (multiple notes, signifying widespread narrowing of airways of differing calibre, eg asthma, COPD). Wheeze is also heard in LVF ('cardiac asthma'). Crackles (crepitations): caused by re-opening, during inspiration, of small airways which have become occluded during expiration. May be fine and late in inspiration if coming from distal air spaces (eg pulmonary oedema, fibrosing alveolitis) or coarse and mid-inspiratory if they originate more proximally (eg bronchiectasis). Early inspiratory crackles suggest small airways disease (eg COPD), whereas late/pan-inspiratory crackles suggest disease confined to alveoli. Crackles disappearing on coughing are insignificant. **Pleural rubs:** caused by movement of visceral pleura over parietal pleura, when both surfaces roughened, eg by inflammatory exudate. Causes include adjacent pneumonia or pulmonary infarction.

Pneumothorax click: produced by shallow left pneumothorax between layers of parietal pleura overlying heart, heard during cardiac systole.

Further examination *Sputum* (see BOX), *temperature charts*, *O₂ sats*, *PEFR*.

Breathing patterns

Hyperventilation may be *fast* (tachypnoea, ie >20 breaths/min) or *deep* (hyperpnoea, ie tidal volume ↑). Hyperpnoea is not unpleasant, unlike dyspnoea. It may cause respiratory alkalosis, hence paraesthesiae ± muscle spasm (Ca²⁺ ↓). The main cause is anxiety: there is associated dizziness, chest tightness/pain, palpitations, and panic. Rare causes: response to metabolic acidosis; brainstem lesions.

- **Kussmaul respiration** is deep, sighing breaths in severe metabolic acidosis (it helps to blow off CO₂), eg diabetic or alcoholic ketoacidosis,³⁵ renal impairment.
- **Neurogenic hyperventilation** is produced by pontine lesions.
- The **hyperventilation syndrome** involves panic attacks associated with hyperventilation, palpitations, dizziness, faintness, tinnitus, alarming chest pain/tightness,³⁶ perioral and peripheral tingling (plasma Ca²⁺ ↓). Treatment: relaxation techniques and breathing into a paper bag (↑ inspired CO₂ corrects the alkalosis).
- NB: the anxious patient in A&E with hyperventilation and a respiratory alkalosis may actually be presenting with an aspirin overdose (p856).

Cheyne-Stokes breathing Breaths get deeper and deeper, then shallower (± episodic apnoea) in cycles. **Causes:** Brainstem lesions or compression (stroke, ICP ↑). If the cycle is long (eg 3min), the cause may be a long lung-to-brain circulation time (eg in chronic pulmonary oedema or ↓cardiac output). It is enhanced by opioids.

Sputum examination

Always inspect any sputum produced, however unpleasant this task may be. Send suspicious sputum for microscopy (Gram stain and auramine/ZN stain, if indicated), culture, and cytology.

- **Black carbon specks** in the sputum suggests smoking, the most common cause of increased sputum production.
- **Yellow/green sputum** suggests infection, eg bronchiectasis, pneumonia.
- **Pink frothy sputum** suggests pulmonary oedema.
- **Bloody sputum (haemoptysis)** may be due to malignancy, TB, infection, or trauma, and requires investigation for these causes. See p49.
- **Clear sputum** is probably saliva.

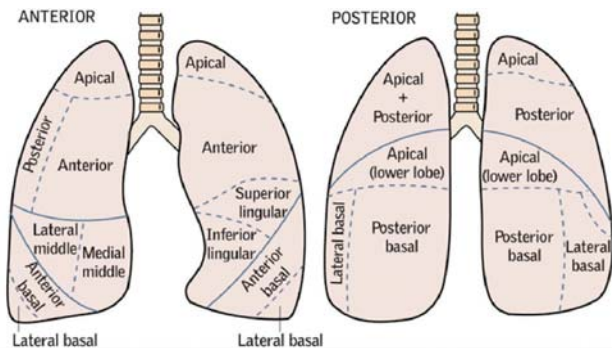
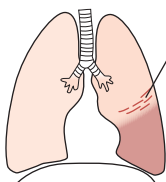


Fig 1. The respiratory segments supplied by the segmental bronchi.

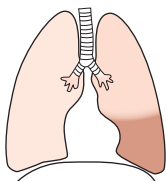
Some physical signs



(There may be bronchial breathing at the top of an effusion)

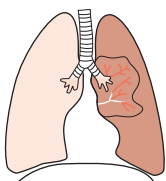
Expansion: ↓
Percussion: ↓ (Stony dull)
Air entry: ↓
Vocal resonance: ↓
Trachea + mediastinum central
(shift away from affected side only with massive effusions ≥1000ml)

PLEURAL EFFUSION



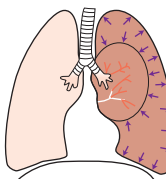
Expansion ↓
Percussion note ↓
Vocal resonance ↑
Bronchial breathing ± coarse crackles (with whispering pectoriloquy)
Trachea + mediastinum central

CONSOLIDATION



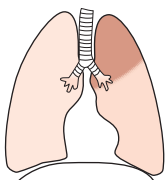
Expansion ↓
Percussion note ↑
Breath sounds ↓
Trachea + mediastinum shift towards the affected side

SPONTANEOUS PNEUMOTHORAX/
EXTENSIVE COLLAPSE
(ΔΔ LOBECTOMY/
PNEUMONECTOMY)



Expansion ↓
Percussion note ↑
Breath sounds ↓
Trachea + mediastinum shift towards the affected side

TENSION PNEUMOTHORAX
(See fig 1 p763 for chest X-ray image)



Expansion ↓
Percussion note ↓
Breath sounds bronchial ± crackles
Trachea + mediastinum central or pulled towards the area of fibrosis

FIBROSIS

Fig 1. Physical signs on chest examination.

Chest deformities

- **Barrel chest:** AP diameter ↑, tracheal descent and chest expansion ↓, seen in chronic hyperinflation (eg asthma/COPD).
- **Pigeon chest (*pectus carinatum*):** See fig 2.
- **Funnel chest (*pectus excavatum*):** Developmental defect involving local sternum depression (lower end). See fig 3.
- **Kyphosis:** 'Humpback' from ↑ AP thoracic spine curvature.
- **Scoliosis:** Lateral curvature (OHCS p672); all of these may cause a restrictive ventilatory defect.



Fig 2. *Pectus carinatum* (pigeon chest). Prominent sternum, from lung hyperinflation while the bony thorax is still developing, eg in chronic childhood asthma. Often seen with **Harrison's sulcus**, a groove deformity caused by indrawing of lower ribs at the diaphragm attachment site. This usually has little functional significance in terms of respiration but can have significant psychological effects: see BOX.



Fig 3. *Pectus excavatum*; the term for funnel or sunken chest. It is often asymptomatic, but may cause displacement of the heart to the left, and restricted ventilatory capacity ± mild air-trapping. Associations: scoliosis; Marfan's; Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

Images courtesy of Prof Eric Fonkalsrud.

Herr Minty and his pigeon chest

Chest wall deformities such as *pectus excavatum* are quite common, often appearing during adolescent growth spurts. Exercise intolerance is the main symptom (from heart compression—consider CXR/CT).³⁷ Indications for surgical correction (rarely needed): ≥2 of: a severe, symptomatic deformity; progression of deformity; paradoxical respiratory chest wall motion; pectus index >3.25 on CT; cardiac or lung compression; restrictive spirometry; cardiac pathology that might be from compression of the heart.

Psychological effects are interesting and not to be dismissed as their effects may be greater than any physical effects.³⁸ Because these people hate exposing their chests they may become introverted, and never learn to swim, so don't let them sink without trace. Be sympathetic, and remember Herr Minty, who inaugurated Graham Greene's **theory of compensation**: wherever a defect exists we must look for a compensating perfection to account for how the defect survives. In Minty's case, although "crooked and yellow and pigeon-chested he had his deep refuge, the inexhaustible ingenuity of his mind."

"England Made Me"

Presenting symptoms*Abdominal pain* (see BOX 2 and p608)*Distension* (see BOX 3)*Nausea, vomiting* (see BOX 1)*Haematemesis* (p252-4)*Dysphagia* (p240)*Indigestion/dyspepsia/reflux* (p242)*Recent change in bowel habit**Diarrhoea* (p246), *constipation* (p248)*Rectal bleeding* (p631) or
melaena (p252)*Appetite, weight change**Jaundice* (p250)

(Screen for all above presenting symptoms before proceeding to past history.)

Past history Peptic ulcer disease, carcinoma, jaundice, hepatitis, blood transfusions, tattoos, previous operations, last menstrual period (LMP), dietary changes.**Drug history** Especially steroids, NSAIDs, antibiotics.**Family history** Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), peptic ulcer disease, polyps, cancer, jaundice.**Social history** Smoking, alcohol, recreational drug use, overseas travel, tropical illnesses, contact with jaundiced persons, occupational exposures, high-risk sexual behaviour.**Direct questions**

'SOCRATES' (p34)

Timing? Relation to meals? Amount? Content (liquid, solid, bile, blood)? Frequency? Fresh (bright red)/dark/'coffee grounds'? Consider neoplasia (weight loss, dysphagia, pain, melaena?), NSAIDs/warfarin? Surgery? Smoking?

Level? Onset? Intermittent? Progressive? Painful swallow (*odynophagia*)? Timing (relation to meals)?

Consider neoplasia (weight loss, dysphagia, pain, melaena?)

Pain on defecation? Mucus? Fresh/dark/black? Mixed with stool/on surface/on paper/in the pan?

Intentional? Quantify. Dysphagia? Pain?

Pruritus? Dark urine? Pale stools?

Vomiting

History is vital. Associated symptoms and past medical history often indicate cause. Examine for dehydration, distension, tenderness, abdominal mass, succussion splash in children (pyloric stenosis), or tinkling bowel sounds (intestinal obstruction).

<i>Gastrointestinal</i>	<i>CNS</i>	<i>Metabolic/endocrine</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gastroenteritis • Peptic ulceration • Pyloric stenosis • Intestinal obstruction • Paralytic ileus • Acute cholecystitis • Acute pancreatitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meningitis/encephalitis • Migraine • ↑Intracranial pressure • Brainstem lesions • Motion sickness • Ménière's disease • Labyrinthitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Uraemia • Hypercalcaemia • Hyponatraemia • Pregnancy • Diabetic ketoacidosis • Addison's disease
<i>Alcohol and drugs</i>	<i>Psychiatric</i>	<i>Others¹</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Antibiotics • Opiates • Cytotoxics • Digoxin 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Self-induced • Psychogenic • Bulimia nervosa 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Myocardial infarction • Autonomic neuropathy • Sepsis (UTI; meningitis)

1 How to remember the chief non-GI causes of vomiting? Try **ABCDEFGHI**: **A**cute kidney injury **A**dison's disease; **B**rain (eg T1CP); **C**ardiac (myocardial infarct); **D**iabetic ketoacidosis; **E**ars (eg labyrinthitis, Ménière's disease); **F**oreign substances (alcohol; drugs, eg opiates); **G**ravidity (eg hyperemesis gravidarum); **H**ypercalcaemia/**H**yponatraemia; **I**nfection (eg UTI, meningitis).



Abdominal pain

Varies depending on the underlying cause. Examples: irritation of the mucosa (acute gastritis), smooth muscle spasm (acute enterocolitis), capsular stretching (liver congestion in ccf), peritoneal inflammation (acute appendicitis) and direct splanchnic nerve stimulation (retroperitoneal extension of tumour). The *character* (constant or colicky, sharp or dull), *duration*, and *frequency* depend on the mechanism of production. The *location* and *distribution* of referred pain depend on the anatomical site. *Time of occurrence* and *aggravating or relieving factors* such as meals, defecation, and sleep also have special significance related to the underlying disease process. The site of the pain may provide a clue:

- **Epigastric** Pancreatitis, gastritis/duodenitis, peptic ulcer, gallbladder disease, aortic aneurysm.
- **Left upper quadrant** Peptic ulcer, gastric or colonic (splenic flexure) cancer, splenic rupture, subphrenic or perinephric abscess, renal (colic, pyelonephritis).
- **Right upper quadrant** Cholecystitis, biliary colic, hepatitis, peptic ulcer, colonic cancer (hepatic flexure), renal (colic, pyelonephritis), subphrenic/perinephric abscess.
- **Loin** (lateral 1/3 of back between thorax and pelvis—merges with the flank, p567) Renal colic, pyelonephritis, renal tumour, perinephric abscess, pain referred from vertebral column. Causes of *flank pain* are similar (see index for fuller list).
- **Left iliac fossa** Diverticulitis, volvulus, colon cancer, pelvic abscess, inflammatory bowel disease, hip pathology, renal colic, urinary tract infection (UTI), cancer in undescended testis; zoster—wait for the rash! (p458). *Gynae*: Torsion of ovarian cyst, salpingitis, ectopic pregnancy.
- **Right iliac fossa pain** All causes of left iliac fossa pain plus appendicitis and Crohn's ileitis, but usually excluding diverticulitis.
- **Pelvic** *Urological*: UTI, retention, stones. *Gynae*: Menstruation, pregnancy, endometriosis (*OHCS* p288), salpingitis, endometritis (*OHCS* p274), ovarian cyst torsion.
- **Generalized** Gastroenteritis, irritable bowel syndrome, peritonitis, constipation.
- **Central** Mesenteric ischaemia, abdominal aneurysm, pancreatitis.

Remember referred pain: Myocardial infarct → epigastrium; pleural pathology.

Abdominal distension (masses and the 'famous five' Fs)

Enid Blyton's Famous Five characters can generally solve any crime or diagnostic problem using 1950s methodologies steeped in endless school holidays, copious confection-laden midnight feasts, and lashings of homemade ginger beer.

Let's give them the problem of abdominal distension. The sweets and drinks used by the Famous Five actually contribute to the distension itself: **f**at, **f**luid, **f**aeces, **f**latus, and **f**etus. If you think it far-fetched to implicate ginger beer in the genesis of fetuses, note that because it was homemade, like the fun, there was no limit to its intoxicating powers in those long-gone vintage summers. The point is to think to ask "When was your last period?" *whenever* confronted by a distended abdomen.

Flatulence will be resonant on percussion. Fluid will be dull, and can be from ascites (eg from malignancy or cirrhosis: look for shifting dullness), distended bladder (cannot get below it) or an aortic aneurysm (expansile). Masses can be pelvic (think of uterine fibroids or ovarian pathology) or tumours from colon, stomach, pancreas, liver, or kidney. Also see causes of *ascites with portal hypertension* (p606), *hepatomegaly* (p63), *splenomegaly*, and *other abdominal masses* (p606).

Faecal incontinence

This is common in the elderly. Do your best to help, and get social services involved if concerned. Continence depends on many factors—mental function, stool (volume and consistency), anatomy (sphincter function, rectal distensibility, anorectal sensation and reflexes). Defects in any area can cause loss of faecal continence.

Causes: often multifactorial. Is it passive faecal soiling or urgency-related stool loss? Consider the following:

- **Sphincter dysfunction:**

- Vaginal delivery is the commonest cause due to sphincter tears or pudendal nerve damage.
- Surgical trauma, eg following procedures for fistulas, haemorrhoids, fissures.

- **Impaired sensation:** diabetes, MS, dementia, any spinal cord lesions (▶▶ consider cord compression if acute faecal incontinence).

- **Faecal impaction:** overflow diarrhoea, extremely common, especially in the elderly, and very easily treated.

- **Idiopathic:** although there is often no clear cause found, especially in elderly women, this is usually multifactorial, including a combination of poor sphincter tone and pudendal damage leading to poor sensation.

Assessment

▶ Do PR (overflow incontinence? poor tone?) and assess neurological function of legs, particularly checking sensation.

Refer to a specialist (esp. if rectal prolapse, anal sphincter injury, lumbar disc disease, or alarm symptoms for Ca. colon exist). Consider anorectal manometry, pelvic ultrasound or MRI, and pudendal nerve testing may be needed.³⁹

Treat according to cause and to promote dignity: ▶ Never let your own embarrassment stop you from offering help. Knowledge and behaviour are key factors:

- Ensure toilet is in easy reach. Plan trips away in the knowledge of toilet locations.
- Obey call-to-stool impulses (esp. after meal, ie the gastro-colic reflex).
- Ensure access to latest continence aids and advice on use, refer to continence nurse specialist for assessment.
- Pelvic floor rehabilitation: for example can help faecal incontinence, squeeze pressure, and maximal tolerated volume.⁴⁰
- Loperamide 2–4mg 45min before social engagements may prevent accidents outside home.⁴¹ An anal cotton plug may help isolated internal sphincter weakness. Skin care. Support agencies.⁴⁰⁷

If all sensible measures fail, try a brake-and-accelerator approach: enemas to empty the rectum (twice weekly) and codeine phosphate, eg 15mg/12h, on non-enema days to constipate. It's not a cure, but makes the incontinence manageable.

Flatulence

Normally, 400–1300mL of gas is expelled PR in 8–20 discrete (or indiscrete) episodes per day. If this, with any eructation (belching) or distension, seems excessive to the patient, they may complain of flatulence. Eructation occurs in hiatus hernia—but most patients with 'flatulence' have no GI disease. Air swallowing (aerophagy) is the main cause of flatus; here N₂ is the chief gas. If flatus is mostly methane, H₂ and CO₂, then fermentation by bowel bacteria is the cause,⁴² and reducing carbohydrate intake (eg less lactose and wheat) may help.⁴³

Tenesmus

This is a sensation in the rectum of incomplete emptying *after* defecation. It's common in irritable bowel syndrome (p276), but can be caused by tumours.

Regurgitation

Gastric and oesophageal contents are regurgitated effortlessly into the mouth—without contraction of abdominal muscles and diaphragm (so distinguishing it from true vomiting). It may be worse on lying flat, and can cause cough and nocturnal asthma. Regurgitation is rarely preceded by nausea, and when due to gastro-oesophageal reflux, it is often associated with heartburn. An oesophageal pouch may cause regurgitation. Very high GI obstructions (eg gastric volvulus, p613) cause non-productive retching rather than true regurgitation.

Steatorrhoea

These are pale stools that are difficult to flush, and are caused by malabsorption of fat in the small intestine and hence greater fat content in the stool. **Causes:** Ileal disease (eg Crohn's or ileal resection), pancreatic disease, and obstructive jaundice (due to excretion of bile salts from the gallbladder).

Dyspepsia

Dyspepsia and indigestion (p242) are broad terms. Dyspepsia is defined as one or more of post-prandial fullness, early satiety (unable to finish meal) and/or epigastric or retrosternal pain or burning. "Indigestion" reported by the patient can refer to dyspepsia, bloating, nausea and vomiting.⁴⁴ Try to find out exactly what your patient means and when these symptoms occur in relation to meals, for example, the classic symptoms of peptic ulcers occur 2–5 hours after a meal and on an empty stomach. Look for alarm symptoms (see p256); these have high negative predictive value. If all patients with dyspepsia undergo endoscopy, <33% have clinically significant findings.⁴⁵ Myocardial infarction may present as 'indigestion'.

Halitosis

Halitosis (feter oris, oral malodour) results from gingivitis (rarely severe enough to cause Vincent's angina, p726), metabolic activity of bacteria in plaque, or sulfide-yielding food putrefaction, eg in gingival pockets and tonsillar crypts.⁴⁶ Patients can often be anxious and convinced of halitosis when it is not present (and vice versa!). **Contributory factors:** Smoking, drugs (disulfiram; isosorbide), lung disease, hangovers.

R: Try to eliminate anaerobes:

- Good dental hygiene, dental floss, tongue scraping.
- 0.2% aqueous chlorhexidine gluconate.

The very common halitosis arising from the tongue's dorsum is secondary to overpopulated volatile sulfur compound-producing bacteria. Locally retained bacteria metabolize sulfur-containing amino acids to yield volatile (∴ smelly) hydrogen sulfide and methylmercaptane, which perpetuate periodontal disease. At night and between meals conditions are optimal for odour production—so eating regularly may help. Treat by mechanical cleansing/scraping using tongue brushes or scrapes plus mouthwashes. Oral care products containing metal ions, especially Zn, inhibit odour formation, it is thought, because of affinity of the metal ion to sulfur. It is possible to measure the level of volatile sulfur-containing compounds in the air in the mouth directly by means of a portable sulfide monitor.

As with any examination routine, begin by introducing yourself, obtaining consent to examine the patient and position them appropriately. To examine the abdomen, lie the patient down as flat as possible, ideally exposing from 'nipples to knees' although in practice keep the groin covered and examine separately for hernias, etc.

5 Face

- **Skin and eyes:** jaundice, conjunctival pallor, Kayser-Fleischer rings, xanthelasma, sunken eyes (dehydration)
- **Mouth:** angular stomatitis, pigmentation, telangiectasia, ulcers, glossitis

4 Neck

- Examine cervical and supraclavicular lymph nodes (see **fig 1**)
- **JVP** raised in fluid overload (renal dysfunction, liver dysfunction), tricuspid regurgitation (may cause pulsatile hepatomegaly)
- Scars from tunnelled haemodialysis lines (see p295) or other central venous access



- A= Supraclavicular
- B= Posterior triangle
- C= Jugular chain
- D= Preauricular
- E= Postauricular
- F= Submandibular
- G= Submental
- H= Occipital

Fig 1. Cervical and supraclavicular nodes.

3 Arms

- Check pulse and blood pressure
- Look in the distribution of the svc (arms, upper chest, upper back) for spider naevi
- Check for track marks, bruising, pigmentation, scratch marks, arteriovenous fistulae (see p295 for signs seen in patients with chronic kidney disease)

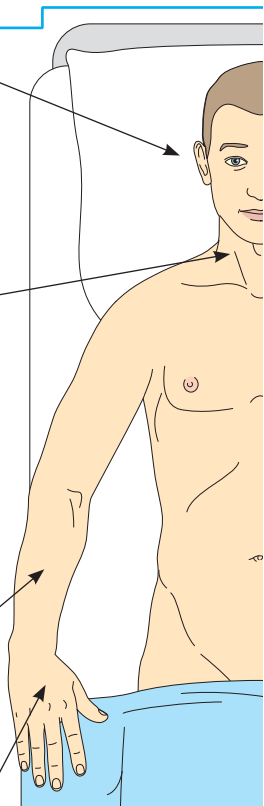
2 Hands

- **Inspect:** clubbing, koilonychia, leuconychia, Muehrcke's lines, palmar erythema, Dupuytren's contracture, pigmentation of the palmer creases
- **Asterixis:** (see **fig 1**, p50)

1 General inspection

- Assess general state (ill/well/cachexic)
- Look for clues (vomit bowl, stoma bags)
- Colour (pale, jaundiced, uraemic)
- Body mass index?
- Scars on the abdomen? Stomas?

Ask the patient to lift their head off the bed, or cough, looking for bulges, distension or pain



6 Abdomen

Inspection

- Scars—previous surgery, transplant, stoma
- Visible masses, hernias or pulsation of AAA
- Visible veins suggesting portal hypertension
- Gynaecomastia, hair loss, acanthosis nigricans

Palpation

Squat by the bed so that the patient's abdomen is at your eye level. Ask if there is any pain and examine this part last. Watch the patient's face for signs of discomfort. Palpate the entire abdomen (see p567):

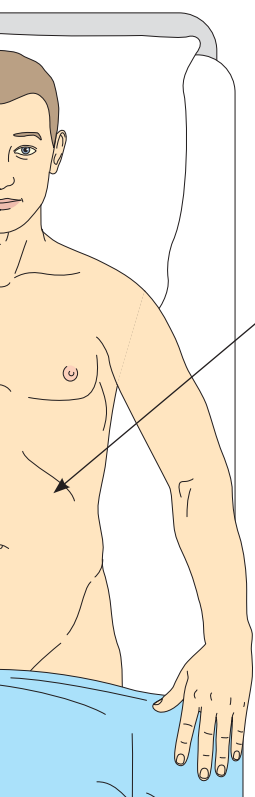
- **Light palpation:** If this elicits pain, check for *rebound tenderness*. Any involuntary tension in muscles ('guarding')? See p608.
- **Deep palpation:** To detect masses.
- **Liver:** Using the radial border of the index finger aligned with the costal margin start palpation from the RIF. Press down and ask patient to take a deep breath. Continue upwards towards the costal margin until you feel the liver edge.
- **Spleen:** Start palpation from the RIF and work towards the left costal margin asking the patient to take a deep breath in and feeling for the edge of the spleen—much like palpating the liver.
- **Kidneys:** For each kidney: place one hand behind patient at the loin, press down on the abdomen with your other hand and 'flick' the kidney up with your lower hand against your upper hand (see [fig 1](#), p63).
- **Aorta:** Palpate midline above umbilicus, is it expansile? ([fig 2](#), p47).

Percussion

- **Liver:** Percuss to map upper & lower border of liver.
- **Spleen:** Percuss from border of spleen as palpated, around to mid-axillary line.
- **Bladder:** If enlarged, suprapubic region will be dull.
- **Ascites:** **Shifting dullness:** Percuss centrally to laterally until dull, keep your finger at the dull spot and ask patient to lean onto opposite side. If the dullness was fluid, this will now have moved by gravity and the previously dull area will be resonant.

Auscultation

- **Bowel sounds:** Listen just below the umbilicus.
- **Bruits:** Listen over aorta and renal arteries (either side of midline above umbilicus)



7 To complete the examination

- Palpate for *ankle oedema*, examine the *hernial orifices*, *external genitalia* and perform a rectal examination
- Check the observation chart for temperature and dipstick the urine

Top tips

- If you think there is a spleen tip, roll the patient onto their right side and feel again. This tips the spleen forward and allows you to percuss around to the back (try to do this at the same time as shifting dullness to look super slick)
- Don't forget to check the back for spider naevi, even if the chest appears clear, you can miss a valuable sign (look for nephrectomy scars as you do this)
- Light palpation really should be light, a quick check for tenderness and very large masses, watching the patient's face throughout

Inspection

Does your patient appear comfortable or in distress? Look for abnormal contours/distension. Tattoos? Cushingoid appearance may suggest steroid use post-transplant or IBD. **Inspect** (and smell) for signs of chronic liver disease:

- Hepatic fetor on breath (p258)
- Gynaecomastia
- Clubbing (rare)
- Purpura (purple-stained skin, p338)
- Scratch marks
- Muscle wasting
- Spider naevi (**fig 1**, p261)
- Palmar erythema
- Jaundice
- Asterixis

Look for signs of malignancy (cachexia, masses), anaemia, jaundice, Virchow's node. From the end of the bed inspect the abdomen for:

- Visible pulsation (aneurysm, p656)
- Peristalsis
- Scars
- Masses
- Striae (stretch marks, eg pregnancy)
- Distension
- Genitalia
- Herniae

If abdominal wall veins look dilated, assess **direction of flow**. In inferior vena caval (IVC) obstruction, below the umbilicus blood flows up; in portal hypertension (*caput medusae*), flow radiates out from the umbilicus.

The cough test: While looking at the face, ask the patient to cough. If this causes abdominal pain, flinching, or a protective movement of hands towards the abdomen, suspect peritonitis.

Hands

Clubbing, **leuconychia** (whitening of the nails due to hypoalbuminaemia), **koilonychia** ('spooning' of the nails due to iron, B₁₂, or folate deficiency), **Muehrcke's lines** (transverse white lines due to hypoalbuminaemia), **blue lanulae** (bluish discolouration seen in Wilson's disease). **Palmar erythema** (chronic liver disease, pregnancy), **Dupuytren's contracture** (thickening and fibrous contraction of palmar fascia (see **fig 1**, p173; alcoholic liver disease)). **Hepatic flap/asterixis** (hepatic encephalopathy, uraemia from renal disease), check pulse (and respiratory rate) (infection/sepsis?), palpate for arteriovenous fistulae in the forearm (access for haemodialysis in end-stage renal failure).

Face

Assess for jaundice, anaemia, xanthelasma (PBC, chronic obstruction), **Kayser-Fleischer rings** (green-yellow ring at corneal margin seen in Wilson's disease). Inspect mouth for angular stomatitis (thiamine, B₁₂, iron deficiency), pigmentation (Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, p723, **fig 4**), telangiectasia (Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome/hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia, p723, **fig 2**), ulcers (IBD), glossitis (iron, B₁₂, or folate deficiency).

Cervical lymph nodes

Palpate for enlarged left supraclavicular lymph node (**Virchow's node/Troisier's sign**) (gastric carcinoma?).

Abdomen

Inspect: Look around to the flanks for nephrectomy scars.

Palpate: Note any masses, tenderness, guarding (involuntary tensing of abdominal muscles—pain or fear of it), or rebound tenderness (greater pain on removing hand than on gently depressing abdomen—peritoneal inflammation); Rovsing's sign (appendicitis, p610); Murphy's sign (cholecystitis, p636). **Palpating the liver:** Assess size (see **Box**), regularity, smoothness, and tenderness. Pulsatile (tricuspid regurgitation)? **The scratch test** is another way to find the lower liver edge (if it is below the costal margin): start with diaphragm of stethoscope at right costal margin. Gently scratch the abdominal wall, starting in the right lower quadrant, working towards the liver edge. A sharp increase in transmission of the scratch is heard when the border of the liver is reached. **Palpating the spleen:** If suspect splenomegaly but cannot detect it, assess patient in the right lateral position with your left hand pulling forwards from behind the rib cage. **Palpating the kidneys:** see **fig 1**. Enlarged? Nodular? **Palpating the aorta:** Normally palpable transmitted pulsation in thin individuals.

Percussion

Confirm the lower border and define the upper border of the liver and spleen (dull in the mid-axillary line in the 10th intercostal space). Percuss all regions of abdomen. If this induces pain, there may be peritoneal inflammation below (eg an inflamed appendix).⁴⁷ Some experts percuss first, before palpation, because even anxious patients do not expect this to hurt—so, if it does hurt, this is a very valuable sign. Percuss for the shifting dullness of ascites (p61 & p606) but ultrasound is a more reliable way of detecting ascites.

Auscultation

Bowel sounds: absence implies ileus; they are enhanced and tinkling in bowel obstruction. Listen for bruits in the aorta, renal and femoral arteries.

Further examination

Check for hernias (p614), perform a PR examination (p633).



Fig1. Ballottement of the kidneys.

Reproduced with permission from
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Examination and Practical Skills.

Causes of hepatomegaly

(For hepatosplenomegaly, see p606)

- **Malignancy:** Metastatic or primary (usually craggy, irregular edge).
- **Hepatic congestion:** Right heart failure—may be pulsatile in tricuspid incompetence, hepatic vein thrombosis (Budd-Chiari syndrome, p710).
- **Anatomical:** Riedel's lobe (normal variant).
- **Infection:** Infectious mononucleosis (glandular fever), hepatitis viruses, malaria, schistosomiasis, amoebic abscess, hydatid cyst.
- **Haematological:** Leukaemia, lymphoma, myeloproliferative disorders (eg myelofibrosis), sickle-cell disease, haemolytic anaemias.
- **Others:** Fatty liver, porphyria, amyloidosis, glycogen storage disorders.

Splenomegaly

Abnormally large spleen. **Causes:** See p606. If massive, think of: chronic myeloid leukaemia, myelofibrosis, malaria (or leishmaniasis).

Features of the spleen differentiating it from an enlarged kidney

- Cannot get above it (ribs overlie the upper border of the spleen).
- Dull to percussion (kidney is usually resonant because of overlying bowel).
- Moves towards RIF with inspiration (kidney tends to move downwards).
- May have palpable notch on its medial side.

Presenting symptoms*Dysuria* (see BOX 1)*Lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS)**Loin/scrotal pain**Haematuria* (p285 and p649)*Urethral/vaginal discharge* (p418)*Sex problems; painful intercourse/dyspareunia* (OHCS p310)*Menses* (OHCS p250)**Direct questions**Pain: **SOCRATES** (p34). Fever? Sexual history. Abnormal looking urine? Previous problems.

Must rule out testicular torsion (p654).

Ask about menarche, menopause, length of periods, amount, pain? Intermenstrual loss? 1st day of last menstrual period (LMP)?**Detecting outflow obstruction** (see BOX 5) eg prostatic hyperplasia; stricture; stone). Ask about **LUTS** (lower urinary tract symptoms)

- On trying to pass water, is there delay before you start? (**Hesitancy**)
- Does the flow stop and start? Do you go on dribbling when you think you've stopped? (**Terminal dribbling**)
- Is your stream getting weaker? (**Poor stream**)
- Is your stream painful and slow/'drop-by-drop'? (**Strangury**, eg from bladder stone)
- Do you feel the bladder is not empty after passing water?ⁱ
- Do you ever pass water when you do not want to? (**Incontinence**—p650)
- On feeling an urge to pass water, do you have to go at once? (**Urgency**)ⁱ
- Do you urinate often at night? (**Nocturia**)ⁱ In the day? (**Frequency**)ⁱ How often?

ⁱ = irritative (or 'filling') symptoms: they can be caused by, for example, UTI, as well as obstructions.**Past history** Renal colic, urinary tract infection, diabetes, BPT, gout, analgesic use (p306), previous operations.**Drug history** Anticholinergics.**Family history** Prostate carcinoma? Renal disease?**Social history** Smoking, sexual history.**Dysuria**

Be sure you mean the same as your patient and colleagues, as dysuria refers to both painful micturition ('**uralgia**'⁴⁸) and difficult micturition (**voiding difficulty**, p65). Uralgia is typically from urethral, bladder or vaginal inflammation (UTI; per-fumed bath products, spermicides, urethral syndrome, p292). If postmenopausal, look for a urethral caruncle—fleshy outgrowth of distal urethral mucosa, ≤ 1 cm, typically originating from the posterior urethral lip. Also think of prostatitis, STI/urethritis (p418), vaginitis, and vulvitis, **Rare causes**: Stones, urethral lesions (eg carcinoma, lymphoma,⁴⁹ papilloma⁵⁰), post-partum complications (eg retained products of conception).

Voiding difficulty is a sign of outflow obstruction, eg from an enlarged prostate, or urethral stricture (commonly post-traumatic, post-gonococcal). Other features: straining to void, poor stream, urinary retention, and incontinence. **Strangury** is urethral pain, usually referred from the bladder base, causing a constant distressing desire to urinate even if there is little urine to void. **Causes**: Stones, catheters, cystitis, prostatitis, bladder neoplasia, rarely: bladder endometriosis,⁵¹ schistosomiasis.⁵²

Frequency

Aim to differentiate turine production (eg diabetes mellitus and insipidus, polydipsia, diuretics, alcohol, renal tubular disease, adrenal insufficiency) from frequent passage of small amounts of urine (eg in cystitis, urethritis, neurogenic bladder), or bladder compression or outflow obstruction (pregnancy, bladder tumour, enlarged prostate).

Oliguria/anuria

Oliguria is defined as a urine output of $<400\text{mL}/24\text{h}$ or $<0.5\text{mL}/\text{kg}/\text{hour}$ and can be a sign of shock (eg post-op, p578) or acute kidney injury: causes: p290. **Anuria** is defined as $<50\text{mL}/24\text{h}$. In a catheterized patient with sudden anuria consider catheter blockage, with slow decline of oliguria to anuria renal dysfunction is more likely.

Polyuria

Increased urine volume, eg $>3\text{L}/24\text{h}$. **Causes:** Over-enthusiastic IV fluid therapy; diabetes mellitus & insipidus (diabetes is Greek for fountain); $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$; psychogenic polydipsia/PIIP syndrome (p232); polyuric phase of recovering acute tubular necrosis.

Irritative or obstructive bladder symptoms

(see also p644)

Symptoms of prostate enlargement are miscalled 'prostatism'; it is better to talk about *irritative* or *obstructive bladder* symptoms, as bladder neck obstruction or a stricture may be the cause. 1 **Irritative bladder symptoms:** Urgency, dysuria, frequency, nocturia¹ (the last two are also associated with causes of **polyuria**). 2 **Obstructive symptoms:** Reduced size and force of urinary stream, hesitancy and interruption of stream during voiding and terminal dribbling—the usual cause is enlargement of the prostate (prostatic hyperplasia), but other causes include a urethral stricture, tumour, urethral valves, or bladder neck contracture. The maximum flow rate of urine is normally $\sim 18\text{--}30\text{mL}/\text{s}$.

Terminal dribbling

Dribbling at the end of urination, often seen in conjunction with incontinence following incomplete urination, associated with prostatism.

Urinary changes

Cloudy urine suggests pus (UTI) but is often normal phosphate precipitation in an alkaline urine. *Pneumaturia* (bubbles in urine as it is passed) occurs with UTI due to gas-forming organisms or may signal an enterovesical (bowel-bladder) fistula from diverticulitis, Crohn's disease or neoplastic disease of the bowel. *Nocturia* occurs with 'irritative bladder', diabetes mellitus, UTI, and reversed diurnal rhythm (seen in renal and cardiac failure). *Haematuria* (RBC in urine) is due to neoplasia or glomerulonephritis (p300) until proven otherwise.

Voiding difficulty

This includes poor flow, straining to void, hesitancy, intermittent stream, incontinence (eg overflow), retention (acute or chronic), incomplete emptying (\pm UTI from residual urine). ► *Remember faecal impaction as a cause of retention with overflow.* **Causes: Obstructive:** Prostatic hyperplasia, early oedema after bladder neck repair, uterine prolapse, retroverted gravid uterus, fibroids, ovarian cysts, urethral foreign body, ectopic ureterocele, bladder polyp, or cancer. **Bladder overdistension**—eg after epidural for childbirth. **Detrusor weakness or myopathy** causes incomplete emptying + dribbling overflow incontinence (do cystometry/electromyography,⁵³ causes include neurological disease and interstitial cystitis (OHCS p306); it may lead to a contracted bladder, eg requiring substitution enterocystoplasty).⁵⁴ **Drugs:** Epidural anaesthesia; tricyclics, anticholinergics. **CNS:** Suprapontine (stroke); cord lesions (cord injury, multiple sclerosis); peripheral nerve (prolapsed disc, diabetic or other neuropathy); or reflex, due to pain (eg with herpes infections).

¹ In the elderly, nocturia (1–2/night) may be 'normal' because of: i) loss of ability to concentrate urine; ii) peripheral oedema fluid returns to the circulation at night; iii) circadian rhythms may be lost; iv) less sleep is needed and waking may be interpreted as a need to void (a conditioned Pavlovian response).

Presenting symptoms*Breast lump**Breast pain* (see BOX 1)*Nipple discharge* (see BOX 2)

(Screen for all above presenting symptoms before proceeding to past history.)

Past history Any previous lumps and/or malignancies. Previous mammograms, clinical examinations of the breast, USS, fine-needle aspirate (FNA)/core biopsies.

Drug history Ask specifically about HRT and the Pill.

Family history See p524.

Social history Try to gain an impression of support network if suspect malignancy.

Direct questions

Previous lumps? Family history? Pain? Nipple discharge? Nipple inversion? Skin changes? Change in size related to menstrual cycle? Number of pregnancies? First/last/latest period? Postnatal? Breast feeding? Drugs (eg HRT)? Consider metastatic disease (weight loss, breathlessness, back pain, abdominal mass?)

SOCRATES (p34). Bilateral/unilateral? Rule out cardiac chest pain (p88 & p798). History of trauma? Any mass? Related to menstrual cycle?

Amount? Nature (colour? consistency? any blood?)

Breast pain

Is it premenstrual (*cyclical mastalgia*, *OHCS* p254)? Breast cancer (refer, eg, for mammography if needed)? If non-malignant and non-cyclical, think of:

- Tietze's syndrome¹
- Angina
- Lung disease
- Oestrogens/HRT
- Bornholm disease²
- Gallstones
- Thoracic outlet syndrome

If none of the above, wearing a firm bra all day may help, as may NSAIDs.

Nipple discharge

Causes: Duct ectasia (green/brown/red, often multiple ducts and bilateral), intra-ductal papilloma/adenoma/carcinoma (bloody discharge, often single duct), lactation. **Management:** Diagnose the cause (mammogram, ultrasound, ductogram); then treat appropriately. Cessation of smoking reduces discharge from duct ectasia. Microdochectomy/total duct excision can be considered if other measures fail, though may give no improvement in symptoms.

1 Tietze's syndrome is costochondritis plus swelling of the costal cartilage.

2 Bornholm disease (Devil's grip) is due to Coxsackie B virus, causing chest and abdominal pain, which may be mistaken for cardiac pain or an acute surgical abdomen. It resolves within ~2 weeks.

The breast: examination

- 1 Inspection** Assess size and shape of any masses as well as overlying surface. Which quadrant (see **fig 2**)? Note skin involvement; ulceration, dimpling (*peau d'orange*), and nipple inversion/discharge.
- 2 Palpation of the breast** Confirm size, and shape of any lump. Is it fixed/tethered to skin or underlying structures (see **BOX**)? Is it fluctuant/compressible/hard? Temperature? Tender? Mobile (more likely to be fibroadenoma)?
- 3 Palpation of the axilla for lymph nodes** Metastatic spread? Ipsilateral/bilateral? Matted? Fixed?
- 4 Further examination** Examine abdomen for hepatomegaly, spine for tenderness, lungs (metastatic spread).

1 General inspection

► Always have a chaperone present when examining the breast.

Introduction, consent, position patient sitting at edge of bed with hands by her side, expose to waist. Inspect both breasts for obvious masses, contour anomalies, asymmetry, scars, ulceration, skin changes, eg *peau d'orange* (orange peel appearance resulting from oedema). Look for nipple inversion and nipple discharge. Ask her to "press hands on hips" and then "hands on head" to accentuate any asymmetrical changes. Whilst patient has her hands raised inspect axillae for any masses as well as inspecting under the breasts.

2 Palpation of the breast

Position patient sitting back at 45° with hand behind head (ie right hand behind head when examining the right breast—see **fig 1**). Ask patient if she has any pain or discharge. Examine painful areas last and then ask her to express any discharge. Examine each breast with the 'normal' side first. Examine each quadrant in turn as well as the axillary tail of Spence (**fig 2**) or use a concentric spiral method (**fig 3**) using a flat hand to roll breast against underlying chest wall. Define any lumps/lumpy areas. If you discover a lump, to examine for fixity to the pectoral muscles ask the patient to push against your hand with her arm outstretched.

3 Palpation of the axilla

Examine both axillae. When examining right axilla, hold the patient's right arm with your right hand and examine axilla with left hand.

5 sets of axillary nodes:

- i) apical (palpate against glenohumeral joint)
- ii) anterior (palpate against pectoralis major)
- iii) central (palpate against lateral chest wall)
- iv) posterior (palpate against latissimus dorsi)
- v) medial (palpate against humerus)

4 Further examination

Complete examination by palpating down spine for tenderness, examining abdomen for hepatomegaly, and lungs for signs of metastases. Thank patient and wash hands.



Fig 1. Correct patient position for breast examination.

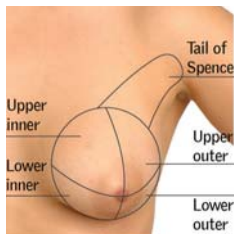


Fig 2. The quadrants of the breast with the axillary tail of Spence.



Fig 3. Methods for systematic breast palpation.

Figs 1–3 with permission from *OHCEPS*.

For symptoms of thyroid disease see p210 & p212. See also lumps in the neck, p600–2.

- 1 Inspection** The key questions to ask oneself when presented with a lump in the neck are: Is this lump thyroid related or not? What is the patient's thyroid status? Inspect the neck; the normal thyroid is usually neither visible nor palpable. A midline swelling should raise your suspicion of thyroid pathology. Look for scars (eg collar incision from previous thyroid surgery). Examine the face for signs of hypothyroidism (puffiness, pallor, dry flaky skin, xanthelasma, corneal arcus, balding) as well as overall body habitus. Assess the patient's demeanour; do they appear anxious, nervous, agitated, fidgety (hyperthyroid)? Or slow and lethargic (hypothyroid)?
- 2 Swallow test** Only goitres (p602), thyroglossal cysts (p600) and in some cases lymph nodes should move up on swallowing.
- 3 Tongue protrusion test** A thyroglossal cyst will move up on tongue protrusion.
- 4 Palpation** (By this stage of the examination if the evidence is in favour of the lump not rising from the thyroid it is acceptable to examine the lump like any other (p596); assess site, size, shape, smoothness (consistency), surface (contour/edge/colour), and surroundings, as well as transillumination, fixation/tethering, fluctuance/compressibility, temperature, tenderness and whether it is pulsatile.) If a thyroid mass is suspected, standing behind the patient provides an opportunity to check for any proptosis (hyperthyroidism). Proceed to palpate each lobe, attempting to decide whether any lump is *solitary or multiple, nodular or smooth/diffuse* as well as site, size, etc. Repeating the swallow test whilst palpating allows you to confirm the early finding, but also attempt to 'get below the lump'. If there is a distinct inferior border under which you can place your hand with the entire lump above it then the goitre is unlikely to have retrosternal extension. Examining for 'spread' to the lymph nodes is particularly important if you suspect a thyroid malignancy (p602). Complete palpation by assessing if the presence of the lump has caused the trachea to deviate from the midline.
- 5 Percussion** A retrosternal goitre will produce a dull percussion note when the sternum is percussed.
- 6 Auscultation** A bruit in a smooth thyroid goitre is suggestive of Graves' disease (p210).

The next stages of the exam are to examine the systemic signs of thyroid status.

- 7 Hands** Clubbing ('thyroid acropachy') is seen in Graves' disease. Palmar erythema and a fine tremor are also signs of thyrotoxicosis. Assess temperature (warm peripheries if hyperthyroid) and the radial pulse; tachycardia and atrial fibrillation are seen in hyperthyroidism, while bradycardia is seen in hypothyroidism).
- 8 Eyes** The 'normal' upper eyelid should always cover the upper eye such that the white sclera is not visible between the lid and the iris. In hyperthyroidism with exophthalmus there is proptosis as well as lid retraction and 'lid lag' may also be detected. If the patient reports double vision when eye movements are being tested this indicates ophthalmoplegia of hyperthyroidism.
- 9** Asking the patient to stand allows you to assess whether there is any proximal myopathy (hypothyroidism). Look for pretibial myxoedema (brown swelling of the lower leg above the lateral malleoli in Graves' disease). Finally, test the reflexes; these will be slow relaxing in hypothyroidism and brisk in hyperthyroidism.
- 10** Thank the patient and consider whether the lump is a goitre, and if so whether it is single/multiple, diffuse/nodular, as well as the patient's thyroid status. Decide on a diagnosis (p602).

1 Inspection

Introduction, consent, position patient sitting on a chair (with space behind), adequately expose neck. Inspect from front and sides for any obvious goitres or swellings, scars, signs of hypo-/hyperthyroidism.

2 Swallow test

Standing in front of the patient ask them to "sip water...hold in your mouth ...and swallow" to see if any midline swelling moves up on swallowing.

3 Tongue protrusion test

Ask patient to "stick out your tongue". Does the lump move up?

If evidence favours lump not arising from thyroid, examine lump like any other (p596)

4 Palpation

Stand behind the patient.

- **Proptosis:** (p211) whilst standing behind the patient ask them to tilt their head back slightly; this will give you a better view to assess any proptosis than when assessing the other aspects of eye pathology from front on, as in **8**)
- **The thyroid gland:** ask the patient "any pain?" Place middle 3 fingers of either hand along midline below chin and 'walk down' to thyroid. Assess any enlargement/ nodules
- **Swallow test:** repeat as before, now palpating; attempt to 'get under' the lump
- **Lymph nodes:** examine lymph nodes of head and neck (p60). Stand in front of the patient
- **Trachea:** palpate for tracheal deviation from the midline.

5 Percussion

Percuss the sternum for dullness of retrosternal extension of a goitre.

6 Auscultation

Listen over the goitre for a bruit.

7 Hands

- **Inspect:** for thyroid acropachy (clubbing) and palmar erythema
- **Temperature**
- **Pulse:** rate and rhythm
- **Fine tremor:** ask patient to "hold hands out", place sheet of paper over outstretched hands to help.

8 Eyes

- **Exophthalmos:** inspect for lid retraction and proptosis (p211)
- **Lid lag:** ask patient to "look down following finger" as you move your finger from a point above the eye to below
- **Eye movements:** Ask patient to follow your finger, keeping their head still, as you make an 'H' shape. Any double vision?

9 Completion

Ask patient to stand up from the chair to assess for proximal myopathy, look for pretibial myxoedema, test ankle reflexes (ask patient to face away from you with knee resting on chair). Thank patient and wash hands.



History This should be taken from the patient and if possible from a close friend or relative as well for corroboration/discrepancies. The patient's memory, perception, or speech may be affected by the disorder, making the history difficult to obtain. Note the progression of the symptoms and signs: gradual deterioration (eg tumour) vs intermittent exacerbations (eg multiple sclerosis) vs rapid onset (eg stroke). Ask about age, occupation and ethnic origin. Right- or left-hand dominant?

Presenting symptoms

- **Headache:** (p460 & p794) Different to usual headaches? Acute/chronic? Speed of onset? Single/recurrent? Unilateral/bilateral? Associated symptoms (eg aura with migraine, p462)? Any meningism (p832)? Worse on waking (TICP)? Decreased conscious level? ▶ Take a 'worst-ever' headache very seriously. (See p763)
- **Muscle weakness:** (p470) Speed of onset? Muscle groups affected? Sensory loss? Any sphincter disturbance? Loss of balance? Associated spinal/root pain?
- **Visual disturbance:** (OHCS p410) eg blurring, double vision (diplopia), photophobia, visual loss. Speed of onset? Any preceding symptoms? Pain in eye?
- **Change in other senses:** Hearing (p468), smell, taste? Abnormalities are not always due to neurological disease, consider ENT disease.
- **Dizziness:** (p466) Illusion of surroundings moving (vertigo)? Hearing loss/tinnitus? Any loss of consciousness? Positional?
- **Speech disturbance:** (p80) Difficulty in expression, articulation, or comprehension (can be difficult to determine)? Sudden onset or gradual?
- **Dysphagia:** (p240) Solids and/or liquids? Intermittent or constant? Difficulty in coordination? Painful (odynophagia)?
- **Fits/faints/funny turns/involuntary movements:** (p472) Frequency? Duration? Mode of onset? Preceding aura? Loss of consciousness? Tongue biting? Incontinence? Any residual weakness/confusion? Family history?
- **Abnormal sensations:** eg numbness, 'pins & needles' (paraesthesiae), pain, odd sensations. Distribution? Speed of onset? Associated weakness?
- **Tremor:** (p71) Rapid or slow? Present at rest? Worse on deliberate movement? Taking β -agonists? Any thyroid problems? Any family history? Fasciculations?

Cognitive state If there is any doubt about the patient's cognition, an objective measure is a cognitive test—guessing has been shown to be inaccurate!⁵⁴ See TYM, p65. The following 10 questions comprise the Abbreviated Mental Test Score (AMTS), a commonly used screening questionnaire for cognitive impairment:⁵⁵

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Tell patient an address to recall at the end (eg 42 West Street) | A score of ≤ 6 suggests poor cognition, acute (delirium), or chronic (dementia). AMTS correlates well with the more detailed Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE TM), though recent copyright means that its use has become more restricted. ⁵⁶ NB: deaf, dysphasic, depressed, and uncooperative patients, as well as those who do not understand English, will also get low scores ⁵⁷ (TYM test: see p85). |
| 2 Age | |
| 3 Time (to nearest hour) | |
| 4 What year is it? | |
| 5 Recognize 2 people (eg doctor & nurse) | |
| 6 Date of birth | |
| 7 Dates of the Second World War | |
| 8 Name of current monarch/prime minister | |
| 9 Where are you now? (Which hospital?) | |
| 10 Count backwards from 20 to 1 | |

Past medical history Ask about meningitis/encephalitis, head/spine trauma, seizures, previous operations, risk factors for vascular disease (p474, AF, hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, diabetes, smoking), and recent travel, especially exotic destinations. Is there any chance that the patient is pregnant (eclampsia, OHCS p48)?

Drug history Any anticonvulsant/antipsychotic/antidepressant medication? Any psychotropic drugs (eg ecstasy)? Any medication with neurological side-effects (eg isoniazid which can cause a peripheral neuropathy)?

Social and family history What can the patient do and not do, ie activities of daily living (ADLs)? What is the Barthel Index score?⁵⁸ Any neurological or psychiatric disease in the family? Any consanguinity? Consider sexual history, eg syphilis.

Cramp

This is painful muscle spasm. Leg cramps are common at night or after heavy exercise, and in patients with renal impairment or on dialysis.⁵⁹ Cramp can signify salt depletion, and rarely: muscle ischaemia (claudication, DM), myopathy (McArdle, p718), or dystonia (writer's cramp, p473). Forearm cramps suggest motor neuron disease. Night cramps may respond to quinine bisulfate 300mg at night po.

Drugs causing cramp: Diuretics (? from K^+), domperidone, salbutamol/terbutaline IVI, ACE-i, telmisartan, celecoxib, lacidipine, ergot alkaloids, levothyroxine.

Paraesthesiae

'Pins and needles', numbness/tingling, which can hurt or 'burn' (dysaesthesia). **Causes:** **Metabolic:** Ca^{2+} (perioral); P_aCO_2 ↑; myxoedema; neurotoxins (tick bite; sting). **Vascular:** ▶▶ Arterial emboli; Raynaud's; DVT; high plasma viscosity. **Antibody-mediated:** Paraneoplastic;⁶⁰ SLE; ITP. **Infection:** Rare: Lyme;⁶¹ rabies. **Drugs:** ACE-i. **Brain:** Thalamic/parietal lesions. **Cord:** MS; myelitis/HIV; B_{12} ↓; ▶▶ lumbar fracture.⁶² **Plexopathy/mononeuropathy:** p506, cervical rib;⁶³ carpal tunnel; sciatica. **Peripheral neuropathy** (glove & stocking, p508, eg DM; CKD). If **paroxysmal:** Migraine;⁶⁴ epilepsy;⁶⁵ pheochromocytoma. If **wandering:** take travel history, consider infection, eg strongyloides.

Tremor

Tremor is rhythmic oscillation of limbs, trunk, head, or tongue. 3 types:

- 1 Resting tremor**—worst at rest—eg from parkinsonism (\pm bradykinesia and rigidity; tremor is more resistant to treatment than other symptoms). It is usually a slow tremor (frequency of 3–5Hz), typically 'pill-rolling' of the thumb over a finger.
- 2 Postural tremor**—worst if arms are outstretched. Typically **rapid** (8–12Hz). May be exaggerated physiological tremor (eg anxiety, hyperthyroidism, alcohol, drugs), due to brain damage (eg Wilson's disease, syphilis) or **benign essential tremor** (BET). This is often familial (autosomal dominant) tremor of arms and head presenting at any age. Cogwheeling may occur;⁶⁶ but there is no bradykinesia. It is suppressed by alcohol, and patients may self-medicate rather than admit problems. Rarely progressive (unless onset is unilateral). Propranolol (40–80mg/8–12h po) can help, but not in all patients.
- 3 Intention tremor**—worst on movement, seen in cerebellar disease, with past-pointing and dysidiadochokinesis (see p503). No effective drug has been found.

Facial pain

CNS causes: Migraine, trigeminal or glossopharyngeal neuralgia, (p461) or from any other pain-sensitive structure in the head or neck. **Post-herpetic neuralgia:** nasty burning-and-stabbing pain involves dermatomal areas affected by shingles (p400); it may affect cranial nerves V and VII in the face. It all too often becomes chronic and intractable (skin affected is exquisitely sensitive). Treatment is hard. Always give strong psychological support. Transcutaneous nerve stimulation, capsaicin ointment, and infiltrating local anaesthetic are tried. Neuropathic pain agents, such as amitriptyline, eg 10–25mg/24h at night, or gabapentin (p508) may help. NB: famciclovir or valaciclovir given in acute shingles may ↓ duration of neuralgia.⁶⁷

Vascular and non-neurological causes:

Neck	Cervical disc pathology
Bone/sinuses	Sinusitis; neoplasia
Eye	Glaucoma; iritis; orbital cellulitis; eye strain; AVM
Temporomandibular joint	Arthritis or idiopathic dysfunction (common)
Teeth/gums	Caries; broken teeth; abscess; malocclusion
Ear	Otitis media; otitis externa
Vascular/vasculitis	Arteriovenous fistula; ⁶⁸ aneurysm; or AVM at the cerebellopontine angle; ⁶⁹ giant cell arteritis; SLE ⁷⁰

► The neurological system is usually the most daunting examination, so learn at the bedside from a senior colleague, preferably a neurologist. Keep practising. Be aware that books present ideal situations: often one or more signs are equivocal or even contrary to expectation; consider signs in the context of the history and try re-examining the patient, as signs may evolve over time. The only essential point is to distinguish whether weakness is upper (UMN) or lower (LMN) motor neuron (p451). Position the patient comfortably, sitting up at 45° and with arms exposed. The general order of examination should be Tone, Reflexes, Power, Coordination, Sensation.

3 Power

Direct patient to adopt each position and follow commands while you as the examiner stabilise the joint above and resist movements as appropriate to grade power see **fig 1** (p451). Test each muscle group bilaterally before moving on to the next position.

- "Shrug your shoulders and don't let me push down; push your arms out to the side against me; try to pull them back in"
- "Hold your arms up like this and pull me towards you, now push me away"
- "Hold your hand out flat, don't let me push it down; now don't let me push it up"
- Offer the patient two of your fingers and ask them to "squeeze my fingers"
- Ask patient to "spread your fingers and stop me pushing them back together", then hand the patient a piece of paper to grip between two fingers. You as the examiner should grip the paper with your corresponding fingers whilst asking patient to "grip the paper and don't let me pull it away".



Fig 1 Testing limb power.

2 Tone

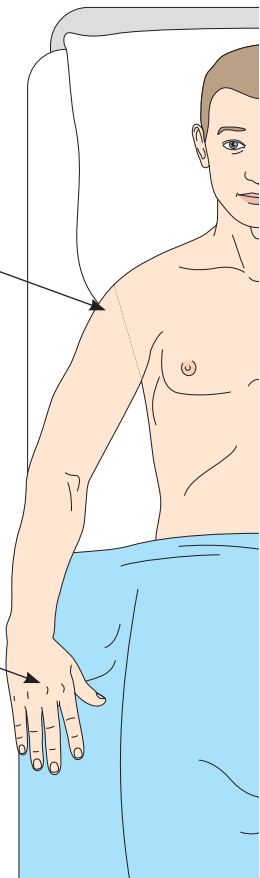
Ask patient to "relax/go floppy like a rag-doll". Ask if patient has any pain in hands/arm/shoulder before passively flexing and extending limb while also pronating and supinating the forearm. Any spasticity or rigidity?



Fig 2 Testing tone.

1 General inspection

Abnormal posturing, asymmetry, abnormal movements (fasciculation/tremor/dystonia/athetosis), muscle wasting (especially small muscles of the hand)—symmetrical/asymmetrical? Local/general?



4 Reflexes

For each reflex, test right, then left and compare. If absent, attempt to elicit with 'reinforcement' by asking patient to clench their teeth on a count of 3 at which time you strike. Decide whether reflexes are absent/present (with reinforcement)/normal/brisk/exaggerated. •**Biceps:** (C5,6) •**Triceps:** (C7) •**Supinator:** (C6). See below.

5 Coordination

- Holding your finger in front of the patient instruct "touch my finger then your nose...as fast as you can". Look for intention tremor and 'past pointing'.
- **Test for dysdiadokokinesis:** Ask patient to repeatedly pronate and supinate forearm, clapping the hands each time. Test both limbs. You may have to demonstrate. Failure to perform rapidly alternating movements is dysdiadokokinesis.
- **Test for pronator drift:** with patient's eyes closed and arms outstretched tap down on their up-facing palms and look for a failure to maintain supination.



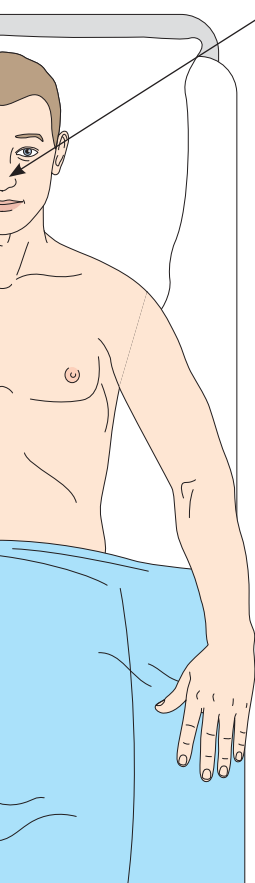
Fig 3. Testing tendon reflexes in biceps.

6 Sensation

- **Light touch:** Use cotton wool, touch it to sternum first—"this is what it should feel like, tell me where you feel it and if it feels different". Proceed to test with cotton wool in all dermatomes (see p458), comparing left and right.
- **Pin prick:** Repeat as above using a neurological pin, asking patient to tell you if it feels sharp or dull.
- **Temperature:** Repeat as above, alternating hot and cold probes. Can the patient tell hot from cold?
- **Vibration:** Using a 128Hz tuning fork confirm with patient that they "can feel a buzzing" when you place the tuning fork on their sternum. Proceed to test at the most distal bony prominence and move proximally by placing the buzzing fork on the bony prominence, then stopping it with your fingers. Ask the patient to tell you when the buzzing stops.
- **Proprioception:** With the patient's eyes closed grasp distal phalanx of the index finger at the sides. Stabilize the rest of the finger. Flex and extend the joint, stopping at intervals to ask whether the finger tip is up or down.

Top tips

- Use the tendon hammer like a pendulum, let it drop, don't grip it too tightly
- Ensure you are testing light touch, not stroke sensation



If the patient is able to walk, the best way to begin your examination is to ask the patient to remove their lower garments down to underwear, and to walk across the room. Gait analysis (p471) gives you more information than any other test. If they aren't able to walk, start with them lying down, legs fully exposed. The general routine should be Gait, Tone, Reflexes, Power, Coordination, Sensation.

3 Reflexes

For each reflex, test right, then left and compare. If absent, attempt to elicit with 'reinforcement'. Decide whether reflexes are absent/present (with reinforcement)/normal/brisk/exaggerated.

- **Knee:** (L3,4) Strike on the patella tendon, just below the patella.
- **Ankle:** (L5,S1) Several accepted methods; ideally ask the patient to slightly bend the knee, then drop it laterally, grasp the foot and dorsiflex, then strike the Achilles tendon. If hip pain limits mobility, dorsiflex the foot with a straight leg and strike your hand, feeling for an ankle jerk.
- **Plantar reflexes:** (L5, S1, S2) Stroke the patient's sole with an orange stick or similar. The normal reflex is downward movement of the great toe. **Babinski's sign** is positive if there is dorsiflexion of the great toe (this is abnormal (upper motor neuron lesion) if patient age >6 months).

2 Tone

Ask patient to "relax/go floppy like a rag-doll". Ask if they have any pain in feet/legs/hips before passively flexing and extending each limb while also internally and externally rotating. Hold the patient's knee and roll it from side to side. Put your hand behind the knee and raise it quickly. The heel should lift slightly from the bed if tone is normal. Any spasticity/rigidity?



Fig 1. Ankle tone: testing for clonus.

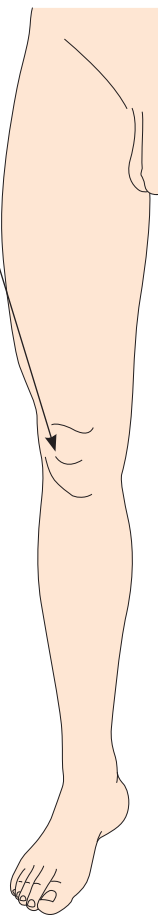
Clonus (fig 1) Plantar flex the foot then quickly dorsiflex and hold. More than 5 'beats' of plantar flexion is sustained clonus and is abnormal. Hypertonia and clonus suggest an upper motor neuron lesion.

1 General inspection and gait

Gait: Ask patient to walk a few metres, turn and walk back to you. Note use of walking aids, symmetry, size of paces, arm swing. Ask patient to "walk heel-to-toe as if on a tightrope" to exaggerate any instability. Ask patient to walk on tiptoes, then on heels. Inability to walk on tiptoes indicates S1 or gastrocnemius lesion. Inability to walk on heels indicates L4,5 lesion or foot drop.

Romberg's test: Ask patient to stand unaided with arms by their sides and close their eyes (be ready to support them). If they sway/lose balance the test is positive and indicates posterior column disease/sensory ataxia.

Inspect: Abnormal posturing, muscle wasting, fasciculation (LMN lesion?), deformities of the foot (eg pes cavus of *Friedreich's ataxia* or *Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease*). Is one leg smaller than the other (*old polio, infantile hemiplegia*)?



4 Power

Direct patient to adopt position and follow commands below while you as the examiner resist movements as appropriate to grade power (p451). Test each muscle group bilaterally before moving on to the next position.

- **Hip flexion:** "Keeping your leg straight, can you lift your leg off the bed, don't let me push it down"
- **Hip extension:** "And now using your leg, push my hand into the bed"
- **Hip abduction:** Position hands on outer thighs—"push your legs out to the sides"
- **Hip adduction:** Position hands on inner thighs—"and push your legs together"
- **Knee flexion and extension:** "Bend your knee and bring your heel to your bottom, don't let me pull it away... and now kick out against me and push me away"
- **Ankle plantar flexion:** With your hand on the underside of the patient's foot ask them to "bend your foot down, pushing my hand away"
- **Ankle dorsiflexion:** Put your hand on the dorsum of the foot and ask them to "lift up your foot, point your toes at the ceiling, don't let me push your foot down"

5 Coordination

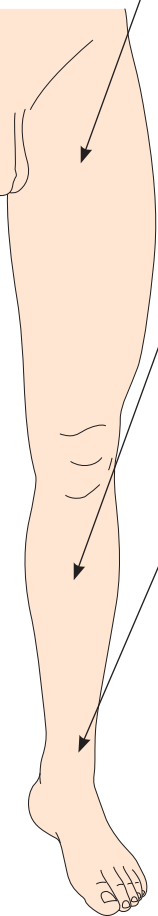
Heel-shin test: Using your finger on the patient's shin to demonstrate, instruct patient to "put your heel just below your knee then run it smoothly down your shin, lift it up and place it back on your knee, now run it down again", etc. Repeat on the other side.

6 Sensation As upper limbs (p73)

- **Light touch:** Lower limb dermatomes (p458)
- **Pin prick**
- **Temperature**
- **Vibration**
- **Joint position sense:** With the patient's eyes closed grasp distal phalanx of the great toe at the sides. Stabilize the rest of the toe. Move the joint up and tell patient "this is up", and down, saying "this is down". Flex and extend the joint, stopping at intervals to ask whether the toe is up or down.

Top tips

- If you are limited for time, gait is the most useful test to start with
- Make sure you test each muscle group individually by stabilising above the joint you are testing
- Test vibration by putting a buzzing tuning fork on the bony part of a joint with the patient's eyes closed then ask them to tell you when the buzzing stops (pinch the tuning fork to stop it) to distinguish vibration from pressure sensation



Approach to examining the cranial nerves Where is the lesion? Think systematically. Is it in the brainstem (eg MS) or outside, pressing on the brainstem? Is it the neuromuscular junction (myasthenia) or the muscles (eg a dystrophy)? Cranial nerves may be affected singly or in groups. ►Face the patient (helps spot asymmetry). For causes of lesions see BOX.

I Smell: Test ability of each nostril to distinguish familiar smells, eg coffee.

II Acuity: Test each eye separately, and its correctability with glasses or pin-hole; use Snellen chart if possible, or the one inside the cover of this book. **Visual fields:** Compare with your own fields or formally via perimetry testing. Any losses/inattention? Sites of lesions: *OHCS* p428. **Pupils:** (p79) Size, shape, symmetry, reaction to light (direct and consensual) or accommodation. Swinging light test for relative afferent pupillary defect. **Ophthalmoscopy:** (*OHCS*, p412) This is best learnt from an ophthalmologist. Darken the room, warn the patient you will need to get close to their face. Focus the lens on the optic disc (pale? swollen?). Follow vessels outwards to view each quadrant. If the view is obscured, examine the red reflex, with your focus on the margin of the pupil, to look for a cataract. Try to get a view of the fovea by asking the patient to look directly at the ophthalmoscope ►Pathology here needs prompt ophthalmic review. If in doubt, ask for slit lamp examination or photography of the retina.

III^o, IV & VI Eye movements. **IIIrd nerve palsy:** Ptosis, large pupil, eye down and out. **IVth nerve palsy:** Diplopia on looking down and in (often noticed on descending stairs)—head tilting compensates for this (ocular torticollis). **VIth nerve palsy:** Horizontal diplopia on looking out. **Nystagmus** is involuntary, often jerky, eye oscillations. Horizontal nystagmus is often due to a vestibular lesion (acute: nystagmus away from lesion; chronic: towards lesion), or cerebellar lesion (unilateral lesions cause nystagmus towards the affected side). If it is more in whichever eye is abducting, MS may be the cause (internuclear ophthalmoplegia, p78). If also deafness/tinnitus, suspect a peripheral cause (eg VIIIth nerve lesion, barotrauma, Ménière's, p466). If it varies with head position, suspect benign positional vertigo (p466). If it is up-and-down, ask a neurologist to review—upbeat nystagmus classically occurs with lesions in the midbrain or at the base of the 4th ventricle, downbeat nystagmus in foramen magnum lesions. Nystagmus lasting ≤2 beats is normal, as is nystagmus at the extremes of gaze.

V Motor palsy: "Open your mouth": jaw deviates to side of lesion.

Sensory: Check all 3 divisions. Consider corneal reflex (lost first).

VII^o Facial nerve lesions cause droop and weakness. As the forehead has bilateral representation in the brain, only the lower two-thirds is affected in UMN lesions, but all of one side of the face in LMN lesions. Ask to "raise your eyebrows", "show me your teeth", "puff out your cheeks". Test taste with salt/sweet solutions.

VIII Hearing: p468. Ask to repeat a number whispered in an ear while you block the other. Perform Weber's and Rinne's tests (p468). **Balance/vertigo:** p466.

IX^o & X^o Gag reflex: Ask the patient to say "Ah". Xth nerve lesions also cause the palate to be pulled to the normal side on saying "Ah". Ask them to swallow a sip of water. Consider gag reflex—touch the back of the soft palate with an orange stick. The afferent arm of the reflex involves IX; the efferent arm involves X.

XI Trapezi: "Shrug your shoulders" against resistance.

Sternocleidomastoid: "Turn your head to the left/right" against resistance.

XII Tongue movement: The tongue deviates to the side of the lesion.

Cranial nerve names

I	olfactory
II	optic
III	oculomotor
IV	trochlear
V	trigeminal
V₁	ophthalmic division
V₂	maxillary division
V₃	mandibular division
VI	abducens
VII	facial
VIII	vestibulocochlear
IX	glossopharyngeal
X	vagus
XI	accessory
XII	hypoglossal



Causes of cranial nerve lesions

Any cranial nerve may be affected by diabetes mellitus; stroke; MS; tumours; sarcoidosis; vasculitis, p558, eg PAN (p558), SLE (p556); syphilis. Chronic meningitis (malignant, TB, or fungal) tends to pick off the lower cranial nerves one by one.

I Trauma; respiratory tract infection; meningitis; frontal lobe tumour.

II Field defects may start as small areas of visual loss (scotomas, eg in glaucoma). **Monocular blindness:** Lesions of one eye or optic nerve eg MS, giant cell arteritis. **Bilateral blindness:**¹ Any cause of mononeuritis, eg diabetes, MS; rarely methanol, neurosyphilis. **Field defects—Bitemporal hemianopia:** Optic chiasm compression, eg pituitary adenoma, craniopharyngioma, internal carotid artery aneurysm (fig 1, p452). **Homonymous hemianopia:** Affects half the visual field contralateral to the lesion in each eye. Lesions lie beyond the chiasm in the tracts, radiation, or occipital cortex, eg stroke, abscess, tumour.

Optic neuritis (pain on moving eye, loss of central vision, relative afferent pupillary defect, disc swelling from papillitis²). **Causes:** Demyelination (eg MS); rarely sinusitis, syphilis, collagen vascular disorders.

Ischaemic papillopathy: Swelling of optic disc due to stenosis of the posterior ciliary artery (eg in giant cell arteritis).

Papilloedema (bilaterally swollen discs, fig 3, p562): most commonly **tICP** (tumour, abscess, encephalitis, hydrocephalus, idiopathic intracranial hypertension); rarer: retro-orbital lesion (eg cavernous sinus thrombosis, p484).

Optic atrophy (pale optic discs and reduced acuity): MS; frontal tumours; Friedreich's ataxia; retinitis pigmentosa; syphilis; glaucoma; Leber's optic atrophy; chronic optic nerve compression.⁷¹

III^c alone: 'Medical' causes (pupillary sparing): diabetes; HTN; giant cell arteritis; syphilis; idiopathic. 'Surgical' causes (early pupil involvement due to external compression of nerve damaging parasympathetic fibres): posterior communicating artery aneurysm (+ surgery);⁷² **tICP** (if uncus herniation through the tentorium compresses the nerve); tumours.

IV^c alone: Rare and usually due to trauma to the orbit.⁷³

V^c alone: MS, Wernicke's encephalopathy, false localizing sign in **tICP**, pontine stroke (presents with fixed small pupils ± quadriparesis).⁷⁴

VI^c Sensory: Trigeminal neuralgia (pain but no sensory loss, p461); herpes zoster, nasopharyngeal cancer, acoustic neuroma (p466). **Motor:** Rare.

VII LMN: Bell's palsy (p504), polio, otitis media, skull fracture; cerebello-pontine angle tumours, eg acoustic neuroma, malignant parotid tumours, herpes zoster (Ramsay Hunt syndrome p505, **OHCS** p652). **UMN:** (sparing the forehead, because of its bilateral cortical representation) Stroke, tumour.

VIII (p466 & p468) Noise damage, Paget's disease, Ménière's disease, herpes zoster, acoustic neuroma, brainstem CVA, drugs (eg aminoglycosides).

IX, X, XI Trauma, brainstem lesions, neck tumours.⁷⁵

XII Rare. Polio, syringomyelia, tumour, stroke, bulbar palsy, trauma, TB.

Groups of cranial nerves VIII, then **V, VI, IX & X:** Cerebellopontine angle tumours, eg acoustic neuroma (p466; facial weakness is not a prominent sign). **III, IV & VI:** Stroke, tumours, Wernicke's encephalopathy; aneurysms, MS.⁷⁶ **III, IV, V_a & VI:** Cavernous sinus thrombosis, superior orbital fissure lesions (Tolosa-Hunt syndrome, **OHCS** p654). **IX, X & XI:** Jugular foramen lesion. **ΔΔ:** Myasthenia gravis, muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, mononeuritis multiplex (p506).

Headache

If the patient is able to shake their head, there is no meningism.

1 Remember the commonest cause of monocular or binocular blindness is not a cranial nerve lesion but a problem with the eye itself (cataracts, retinal problems). Neurological disorders more commonly cause loss of part of the visual field.

2 Unilateral disc swelling = papillitis, bilateral papillitis/disc swelling = papilloedema. Check both eyes! **c** = structures passing through the cavernous sinus; see BOX, p83. NB: **V_a** is the only division of **V** to do so.

P = Remember that these cranial nerves carry parasympathetic fibres. Sympathetic fibres originate from the thoracic chain and run with the arterial supply to distribute about the body (see also **OHCS**, fig 1, p629).

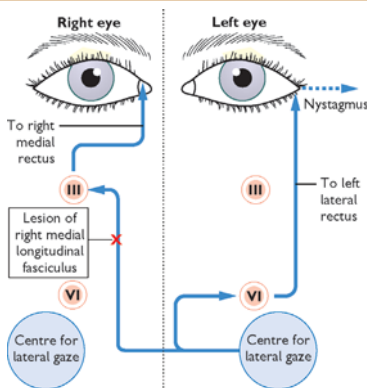


Fig 1. Internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO) and its causes. To produce synchronous eye movements, cranial nerves III, IV, and VI communicate through medial longitudinal fasciculus in midbrain. In INO, a lesion disrupts communication, causing weakness in adduction of the ipsilateral eye with nystagmus of the contralateral eye *only when abducting*. There may be incomplete or slow abduction of the ipsilateral eye during lateral gaze. Convergence is preserved. **Causes:** MS or vascular (rarely: HIV; syphilis; Lyme disease; brainstem tumours; phenothiazine toxicity).

Ptosis

Drooping of the upper eyelid. Best observed with patient sitting up, with head held by examiner. Oculomotor nerve (CN III) innervates main muscle concerned (levator palpebrae), but nerves from the cervical sympathetic chain innervate superior tarsal muscle, and a lesion of these nerves causes mild ptosis which can be overcome on looking up. **Causes:** 1 CN III lesions cause unilateral *complete* ptosis: look for other evidence of a CN III lesion: ophthalmoplegia with 'down and out' deviation of the eye, pupil dilated and unreactive to light or accommodation. If eye pain too, suspect infiltration (eg by lymphoma or sarcoidosis). If T⁺ or consciousness ↓, suspect infection (any tick bites?) 2 Sympathetic paralysis usually causes unilateral partial ptosis. Look for other evidence of a sympathetic lesion, as in Horner's syndrome (p716): constricted pupil = *miosis*, lack of sweating on same side of the face (= *anhidrosis*). 3 Myopathy, eg dystrophia myotonica, myasthenia gravis (cause bilateral partial ptosis). 4 Congenital; usually partial and without other CNS signs.

Visual loss

- ▶ Get ophthalmology help. See OHCS p434–p455. Consider:
 - Is the eye red? (*glaucoma, uveitis* p563)
 - Pain? *Giant cell arteritis*: severe temporal headache, jaw claudication, scalp tenderness, ↑ESR: ▶ urgent steroids (p558). *Optic neuritis*: eg in MS.
 - Is the cornea cloudy: *corneal ulcer* (OHCS p432), *glaucoma* (OHCS p430)?
 - Is there a contact lens problem (*infection*)?
 - Any flashes/floaters? (*TIA, migraine, retinal detachment*)?
 - Is there a visual field problem (*stroke, space-occupying lesion, glaucoma*)?
 - Are there any focal CNS signs?
 - Any valvular heart disease/carotid bruits (*emboli*)? Hyperlipidaemia (p704)?
 - Is there a relative afferent pupillary defect (p79)?
 - Any past history of trauma, migraine, hypertension, cerebrovascular disease, MS, diabetes or connective tissue disease?
 - Any distant signs: eg *HIV* (causes retinitis), *SLE, sarcoidosis*?

Sudden • Acute glaucoma • Retinal detachment • Vitreous haemorrhage (eg in diabetic proliferative retinopathy) • Central retinal artery or vein occlusion • Migraine • CNS: TIA (amaurosis fugax), stroke, space-occupying lesion • Optic neuritis (eg MS) • Temporal arteritis • Drugs: quinine/methanol • Pituitary apoplexy.

Gradual • Optic atrophy • Chronic glaucoma • Cataracts • Macular degeneration • Tobacco amblyopia.

Pupillary abnormalities

Key questions: • Equal, central, circular, dilated, or constricted? • React to light, directly and consensually? • Constrict normally on convergence/accommodation?

Irregular pupils: Anterior uveitis (iritis), trauma to the eye, syphilis.

Dilated pupils: CN III lesions (► inc. tICP, p840) and mydriatic drugs. *Always ask: is this pupil dilated, or is it the other that is constricted?*

Constricted pupils: Old age, sympathetic nerve damage (Horner's, p716, and ptosis, p78), opiates, miotics (pilocarpine drops for glaucoma), pontine damage.

Unequal pupils (anisocoria) may be due to unilateral lesion, eye-drops, eye surgery, syphilis, or Holmes-Adie pupil. Some inequality is normal.

Light reaction: Test: cover one eye and shine light into the other obliquely. Both pupils should constrict, one by direct, other by consensual light reflex (fig 2). The lesion site is deduced by knowing the pathway: from the retina the message passes up the optic nerve (CNII) to the superior colliculus (midbrain) and thence to the CNIII nuclei on both sides. The IIIrd cranial nerve causes pupillary constriction. If a light in one eye causes only contralateral constriction, the defect is 'efferent', as the afferent pathways from the retina being stimulated must be intact. Test for **relative afferent pupillary defect**: move torch quickly from pupil to pupil. If there has been incomplete damage to the afferent pathway, the affected pupil will paradoxically dilate when light is moved from the normal eye to the abnormal eye. This is because, in the face of reduced afferent input from the affected eye, the consensual pupillary relaxation response from the normal eye predominates. This is the **Marcus Gunn sign**, and may occur after apparent complete recovery from the initial lesion.

Reaction to accommodation/convergence: If the patient first looks at a distant object and then at the examiner's finger held a few inches away, the eyes will converge and the pupils constrict. Afferent fibres in each optic nerve pass to the lateral geniculate bodies. Impulses then pass to the pre-tectal nucleus and then to the parasympathetic nuclei of the IIIrd cranial nerves, causing pupillary constriction.

• **Holmes-Adie (myotonic) pupil:** The affected pupil is normally moderately dilated and is poorly reactive to light, if at all. It is slowly reactive to accommodation; wait and watch carefully: it may eventually constrict more than a normal pupil. It is often associated with diminished or absent ankle and knee reflexes, in which case the Holmes-Adie syndrome is present. Usually a benign incidental finding. Rare causes: Lyme disease, syphilis, parvovirus B19, HSV, autoimmunity. ♀ > ♂.

• **Argyll Robertson pupil:** This occurs in neurosyphilis. The pupil is constricted and unreactive to light, but reacts to accommodation. Other possible causes: Lyme disease; HIV;⁷⁷ zoster; diabetes mellitus; sarcoidosis;⁷⁸ MS; paraneoplastic; B12⁺.⁷⁹ The iris may be patchily atrophied, irregular, and depigmented. The lesion site is not *always* near the Edinger-Westphal nucleus or even in the midbrain.⁸⁰ Pseudo-Argyll Robertson pupils occur in Parinaud's syndrome (p722).

• **Hutchinson pupil:** This is the sequence of events resulting from rapidly rising unilateral intracranial pressure (eg in intracerebral haemorrhage). The pupil on the side of the lesion first constricts then widely dilates. The other pupil then goes through the same sequence. ► See p840.

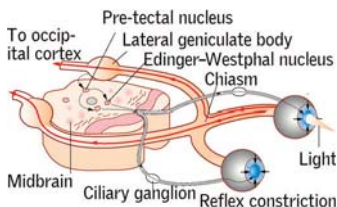


Fig 2. Light reflex. Action potentials go along optic nerve (red), traversing optic chiasm, passing synapses at pre-tectal nucleus, *en route* to Edinger-Westphal nuclei of CNIII. These send fibres to *both* irises' ciliary muscles (so *both* pupils constrict) via ciliary ganglion (also relays accommodation and corneal sensation, and gets sympathetic roots from C8-T2, carrying fibres to dilate pupil).



► Have mercy on those with dysphasia: it is one of the most debilitating neurological conditions, and the more frustrating when cognitive function is intact.

Dysphasia (Impairment of language caused by brain damage)

Assessment:

- 1 If speech is fluent, grammatical and meaningful, dysphasia is unlikely.
- 2 **Comprehension:** Can the patient follow one, two, and several step commands? (touch your ear, stand up, then close the door).
- 3 **Repetition:** Can the patient repeat a sentence?
- 4 **Naming:** Can they name common and uncommon things (eg parts of a watch)?
- 5 **Reading and writing:** Normal? They are usually affected like speech in dysphasia. If normal, the patient is unlikely to be aphasic—could they be mute?

Classification:

- **Broca's (expressive) anterior dysphasia:** Non-fluent speech produced with effort and frustration with malformed words, eg 'spoot' for 'spoon' (or 'that thing'). Reading and writing are impaired but comprehension is relatively intact. Patients understand questions and attempt to convey meaningful answers. **Site of lesion:** infero-lateral dominant frontal lobe (see BOX).
 - **Wernicke's (receptive) posterior dysphasia:** Empty, fluent speech, like talking ragtime with phonemic ('flush' for 'brush') and semantic ('comb' for 'brush') paraphasias/neologisms (may be mistaken for psychotic speech). The patient is oblivious of errors. Reading, writing, and comprehension are impaired (replies are inappropriate). **Site of lesion:** posterior superior dominant temporal lobe.
 - **Conduction aphasia:** (Traffic between Broca's and Wernicke's area is interrupted.) Repetition is impaired; comprehension and fluency less so.
 - **Nominal dysphasia:** Naming is affected in all dysphasias, but in nominal dysphasia, objects cannot be named but other aspects of speech are normal. This occurs with posterior dominant temporoparietal lesions.
- Mixed dysphasias are common. Discriminating features take time to emerge after an acute brain injury. Speech therapy is important, but may not help.

Dysarthria Difficulty with articulation due to incoordination or weakness of the musculature of speech. Language is normal (see above).

- **Assessment:** Ask to repeat 'British constitution' or 'baby hippopotamus'.
- **Cerebellar disease:** Ataxia speech muscles cause slurring (as if drunk) and speech irregular in volume and staccato in quality (see MINIBOX).
- **Extrapyramidal disease:** Soft, indistinct, and monotonous speech.
- **Pseudobulbar palsy:** (p511) Spastic dysarthria (**upper motor neuron**). Speech is slow, indistinct, nasal and effortful ('hot potato' voice from bilateral hemispheric lesions, MND (p510), or severe MS).
- **Bulbar palsy:** **Lower motor neuron** (eg facial nerve palsy, Guillain-Barré, MND, p510)—any associated palatal paralysis gives speech a nasal character.

Dysphonia Difficulty with speech volume due to weakness of respiratory muscles or vocal cords (myasthenia, p516; Guillain-Barré syndrome, p716). It may be precipitated in myasthenia by asking the patient to count to 100. Parkinson's gives a mixed picture of dysarthria and dysphonia.

Dyspraxia Poor performance of complex movements despite ability to do each individual component. Test by asking the patient to copy unfamiliar hand positions, or mime an object's use, eg a comb. The term 'dyspraxia' is used in 3 other ways:

- **Dressing dyspraxia:** The patient is unsure of the orientation of clothes on his body. Test by pulling one sleeve of a sweater inside out before asking the patient to put it back on (mostly non-dominant hemisphere lesions).
- **Constructional dyspraxia:** Difficulty in assembling objects or drawing, eg a 5-pointed star (non-dominant hemisphere lesions, hepatic encephalopathy).
- **Gait dyspraxia:** More common in the elderly; seen with bilateral frontal lesions, lesions in the posterior temporal region, and hydrocephalus.

Assessing higher mental function: a practical guide

Start by having a conversation with the patient, asking questions they need to phrase an answer to (ie not just yes/no) as this tests fluency and reception, understanding, and allows assessment of articulation. Eg How did you travel here today? I came by bus. Then assess dysphasia by asking: What is this eg pen (tests for nominal dysphasia), repeat British Constitution (tests for conduction dysphasia and dysarthria). Then ask patient to follow one, two and three step commands ensuring these 'cross the midline' eg make a fist with your right hand then extend your right index finger and touch your left ear.

Problems with classifying dysphasias

The classical model of language comprehension occurring in Wernicke's area and language expression in Broca's area is too simple. Functional MRI studies show old ideas that processing of abstract words is confined to the left hemisphere whereas concrete words are processed on the right are too simplistic.¹ It may be better to think of a mosaic of language centres in the brain with more or less specialized functions. There is evidence that tool-naming is handled differently and in a different area to fruit-naming.⁸¹ There are also individual differences in the anatomy of these mosaics.⁸² This is depressing for those who want a rigid classification of aphasia, but a source of hope to those who have had a stroke: recovery may be better than neuroimaging leads us to believe.⁸³

Symptoms of movement disorders

Athetosis is due to a lesion in the putamen, causing slow sinuous writhing movements in the hands, which are present at rest. **Pseudoathetosis** refers to athetoid movements in patients with severe proprioceptive loss.

Chorea means *dance* (hence 'choreography')—a flow of jerky movements, flitting from one limb to another (each seemingly a fragment of a normal movement). Distinguish from athetosis/pseudoathetosis (above), and hemiballismus (p472). **Causes:** basal ganglia lesion (stroke, Huntington's, p716); streptococci (Sydenham's chorea; St Vitus' dance, p136); SLE (p556); Wilson's (p269); neonatal kernicterus; polycythaemia (p360); neuroacanthocytosis (genetic, with acanthocytes in peripheral blood, chorea, oro-facial dyskinesia, and axonal neuropathy); hyperthyroidism (p210); drugs (levodopa, oral contraceptives/HRT, chlorpromazine, cocaine—'crack dancing'). The early stages of chorea may be detected by feeling fluctuations in muscle tension while the patient grips your finger. **R:** Dopamine antagonists, eg tetrabenazine 12.5mg/12h (/24h if elderly) PO; increase, eg to 25mg/8h PO; max 200mg/d.

Hemiballismus is uncontrolled unilateral flailing movements of proximal limb joints caused by contralateral subthalamic lesions. See p472.

Cerebellar signs

- **Speech:** Slurred/ataxic/staccato
- **Eye movements:** Nystagmus
- **Tone and power:** Hypotonia and reduced power
- **Coordination:** Finger-to-nose test; test for dysdiadochokinesis, p503
- **Gait:** Broad based, patients fall to the side of the lesion. **Romberg's test:** ask patient to stand with eyes closed. If he loses balance, the test is positive and a sign of posterior column disease. Cerebellar disease is Romberg negative. (Remember **DASHING:** **D**ysdiadochokinesis, **A**taxia, **S**lurred speech, **H**ypotonia and reduced power, **I**ntention tremor, **N**ystagmus, broad based **G**ait).

1 While abstract words activate a sub-region of the left inferior frontal gyrus more strongly than concrete words, specific activity for concrete words can also be observed in the left basal temporal cortex.



Introduce yourself, ask a few factual questions (precise name, age, job, and who is at home). These may help your patient to relax, but be careful that you do not touch on a nerve, eg if job recently lost, marriage recently ended so living alone.

Presenting problem Ask for the main problems that have led to this consultation. Sit back and listen. Don't worry whether the information is in a convenient form or not—this is an opportunity for the patient to come out with worries, ideas, and preoccupations unsullied by your expectations. After >3–5 min it is often good to aim to have a list of all the problems (each sketched only briefly). Read them back to the patient and ask if there are any more. Then ask about:

History of presenting problem For each problem obtain details, both current state and history of onset, precipitating factors, and effects on life.

Check of major psychiatric symptoms Check those that have not yet been covered: **depression**—low mood, anhedonia (inability to feel pleasure), thoughts of worthlessness/hopelessness, sleep disturbance with early morning waking, loss of weight and appetite. Ask specifically about **suicidal thoughts and plans**: "Have you ever been so low that you thought of harming yourself?", "What thoughts have you had?" **Hallucinations** ("Have you ever heard voices or seen things when there hasn't been anyone or anything there?") and **delusions** ("Have you ever had any thoughts or beliefs that have struck you afterwards as bizarre?"); **anxiety** and **avoidance behaviour** (eg avoiding shopping because of anxiety or phobias); **obsessional thoughts** and **compulsive behaviour**, eating disorders, alcohol (see p283 for alcohol screening tests) and other drugs.

Present circumstances Housing, finance, work, relationships, friends.

Family history Ask about health, personality, and occupation of parents and siblings, and the family's medical and psychiatric history.

Background history Try to understand the context of the presenting problem.

- **Biography**: relationships with family and peers as a child; school and work record; sexual relationships and current relationships; and family. Previous ways of dealing with stress and whether there have been problems and symptoms similar to the presenting ones.
- **Premorbid personality**: mood, character, hobbies, attitudes, and beliefs.

Past medical and psychiatric history

Mental state examination This is the state now, at the time of interview.

- **Appearance**: Clothing, glasses, headwear? Unkempt/normal/meticulous?
- **Observable behaviour**: Eg excessive slowness, signs of anxiety, gesture, gaze or avoiding gaze, tears, laughter, pauses (while listening to voices?), attitude (eg withdrawn).
- **Mode of speech**: Include the rate of speech, eg retarded or gabbling (pressure of speech). Note its content. Flight of ideas? Knight's move thinking? (See box)
- **Mood**: Note thoughts about harming self or others. Gauge your own responses to the patient. The laughter and grand ideas of manic patients are contagious, as to a lesser extent is the expression of thoughts from a depressed person.
- **Beliefs**: Eg about himself, his own body, about other people, and the future. Note abnormal beliefs (delusions), eg that thoughts are overheard, and abnormal ideas (eg persecutory, grandiose).
- **Unusual experiences or hallucinations**: Note modality, eg visual, auditory.
- **Orientation**: In time, place, and person. What is the date? What time of day is it? Where are you? What is your name?
- **Short-term memory**: Give a name and address and test recall after 5 min. Make sure that he has got the address clear in his head before waiting the 5 min.
- **Long-term memory**: Current affairs recall. Name of current political leaders (p70 & p85). This tests many other CNS functions, not just memory.
- **Concentration**: Months of the year backwards.
- Note the degree of your **rapport** and the patient's **insight** into his current state.



Psychiatric symptoms

There are many different ways to think about psychiatric symptoms. One simple approach can be to consider negative and positive symptoms. *Negative symptoms* involve the absence of a behaviour, thought, feeling or sensation (eg lack of appetite, apathy, and blunted emotions in depression), whereas *positive symptoms* involve their presence when not normally expected (eg thought insertion, ie "Someone is putting thoughts into my head"). Understanding the difference between psychosis and neurosis is vital. *Psychosis* entails a thought disorder (eg thought insertion, thought broadcasting) ± delusions (abnormal beliefs which are held to despite all reasoning, and which run counter to the patient's cultural background) and abnormal perceptions (eg hallucinations). *Neurosis* entails insight—if there are intrusive ideas or odd experiential phenomena, the person knows that they are false or illusory (and may be triggered by stress, etc.).

Interesting abnormalities of speech include *flight of ideas*, in which the speech races through themes, switching whimsically or through associations, eg 'clang' association: "Yesterday I went down to the local shop. I didn't hop (*clang*), but I walked. Kangaroos hop, don't they? My friend Joey wasn't there, though ...". *Knight's move* is an unexpected change in the direction of speech or conversation (akin to the lateral component of the move of the knight's piece in chess) and *neologism* is the formation of new words. They may be normal or indicate an organic brain condition or a psychosis.

Many psychiatric symptoms in isolation, to a lesser degree of severity, or even in a different culture, may well be considered part of 'normal' behaviour. For example, a vision from a religious figure may be considered normal, whereas one from an alien may not. Consider your patient in their cultural and religious context. As with so many aspects of medicine, in psychiatry there is a vast spectrum of behaviour, thought and perception, at least one extreme of which is considered to be 'abnormal'. It is in part our challenge to attempt to interpret these symptoms with relevance, insight and impartiality so that we may best benefit our patients and not form opinions that are set in stone. On acute medical wards psychiatric symptoms are often due to stress, drug or alcohol withdrawal, u&e imbalance, or medication. When in doubt, ask a psychiatrist to help.

► Beware of simplistic formulations, eg *If you talk to God, you are praying. If God talks to you, you have schizophrenia* (Dr Thomas Szasz). It is not the auditory phenomenon that makes the diagnosis of psychosis: what matters is what the patient believes about the phenomenon, and whether they are associated with a thought disorder or a delusion.

- 1 Look at the patient. Healthy, unwell, or *in extremis*? This vital skill improves with practice. ► **Beware those who are sicker than they look**, eg cardiogenic shock; cord compression; non-accidental injury.
- 2 Pulse, BP, O₂ sats, T°.
- 3 Examine nails, hands, conjunctivae (anaemia), and sclerae (jaundice). Consider: Paget's, acromegaly, endocrine disease (thyroid, pituitary, or adrenal hypo- or hyper-function), body hair, abnormal pigmentation, skin.
- 4 Examine mouth and tongue (cyanosed; smooth; furred; beefy, eg rhomboid area denuded of papillae by *Candida*, after prolonged steroid inhaler use).
- 5 Examine the neck from behind: lymph nodes, goitre.
- 6 Make sure the patient is at 45° to begin cvs examination in the neck: JVP; feel for character and volume of carotid pulse.
- 7 The praecordium. Look for abnormal pulsations. Feel the apex beat (character; position). Any parasternal heave or thrill? Auscultate (bell and diaphragm) apex in the left lateral position, then the other 3 areas (p39) and carotids. Sit the patient forward: listen during expiration.
- 8 Whilst sitting forward, look for sacral oedema.
- 9 Begin the respiratory examination with the patient at 90°. Observe (and count) respirations; note posterior chest wall movement. Assess expansion, then percuss and auscultate the chest.
- 10 Sit the patient back. Feel the trachea. Inspect again. Assess expansion of the anterior chest. Percuss and auscultate again.
- 11 Examine axillae and breasts, if indicated (+chaperone for *all* intimate examinations).
- 12 Lie patient flat (1 pillow) to inspect, palpate, percuss, and auscultate abdomen.
- 13 Look at the legs: any swellings, perfusion, pulses, or oedema?
- 14 CNS exam: **Cranial nerves**: pupil responses; fundi; visual fields; visual acuity. Consider corneal reflexes. "Open your mouth; stick your tongue out; screw up your eyes; show me your teeth; raise your eyebrows." **Limbs (most signs are due to central not peripheral nerve lesions)**: Look for wasting and fasciculation. Test tone in all limbs. "Hold your hands out with your palms towards the ceiling and fingers wide. Now shut your eyes." Watch for pronator drift. "Keep your eyes shut and touch your nose with each index finger." "Lift your leg straight in the air. Keep it there. Put your heel on the opposite knee (eyes shut) and run it up your own shin." You have now tested power, coordination, and joint position sense. Tuning fork on toes and index fingers to assess vibration sense.
- 15 Examine gait and speech. Any abnormalities of higher mental function to pursue?
- 16 Consider rectal and vaginal examination.
- 17 Examine the urine with dipstick if appropriate (p383).

► In general, go into detail where you find (or suspect) something to be wrong.

So now we have a template for the all-important history and examination, but it is no more than a rough guide, you must flesh it out with your own learning. We start out nervous of missing some question or sign, but what we should really be nervous about is losing our humanity in the hurly-burly of a time-pressed interview. Here is how one student put some flesh on the bones—for a man in a wheelchair: she asked all about the presenting complaint, and how it fitted in with his CNS condition and life at home—and then found out that his daughter had had a nervous breakdown at the start of his illness, 5 years ago. "How is she now?" she asked "Fine—I've got two lovely grandchildren...Jim is just learning to walk..." "Oh...you must be so *busy*!" the student said with a joyful smile. This man had not been busy for 5 years, and was fed up with his passive dependency. The thought of being busy again made his face light up—and when the student left he rose up out of his wheelchair to shake her by the hand, a movement we doctors thought was impossible. Jim and his grandfather were learning to walk, but this student was up and running—far ahead of her teachers.

The TYM (Test Your Memory) test

Please write your full name	[2]	Please name these items:	[5]
.....			
Today isday	[1]		
Today's date is the:	[3]		
..... of (month) 20...			
How old are you? years	[1]		
On what date were you born?	[3]		
...../..... (month) / 19....		Please join the circles together to form a letter.	[3]
Please copy the following sentence	[2]	Please draw in a clock face, put in the numbers 1 - 12, and put the hands at 9:20.	
Good citizens always wear stout shoes			
.....			
.....			
Please read the sentence again and try to remember it.			
Who is the Prime Minister?	[2]		[4]
.....			
What year did the 1 st World War start?	[1]		
.....			
Sums	[4]		
20 - 4 = 8 × 6 =			
16 + 17 = 5 + 15 - 17 =			
Please list 4 creatures beginning with 'S'		Without turning the page, please write down the sentence you copied earlier.	[5]
(eg Shark) ^[4]		
1. S.....		
2. S.....			
3. S.....			
4. S.....			
Why is a carrot like a potato?	[2]		
.....			
Why is a lion like a wolf?	[2]		
.....		For the TYM tester: help given?	[5]
		None ⁵ /trial ⁴ /minor ³ /moderate ² /major ¹	
Remember:			
Good citizens always wear stout shoes			max score 50

©Dr Jeremy Brown. *BMJ* 2009;338:b2030www.bmj.com/cgi/data/bmj.b2030/dc1/1

(tfold here)

In one preliminary study,¹ the controls' average score was 47/50. Those with Alzheimer's disease (AD) scored an average of 33/50. The TYM score correlates highly with other standard tests, but, uniquely, it is quick and can be self-administered. A score of <42/50 had a sensitivity of 93% and specificity of 86% for AD. TYM is more sensitive at detecting AD than the mini-mental exam (MMSE), detecting 93% of patients compared with 52% for MMSE. Negative and positive predictive values (p674) of TYM with a cut-off of 42 were 99% and 42% (if prevalence of AD is 10%). If non-Alzheimer dementia, score was 39/50 (mean). This new test should not *make* any diagnosis—but it may suggest when further referral might help.

Animals beginning with 'S': 'Shark' and mythical creatures not allowed. **Carrot/potato:** Reasonable but less precise answer than "...vegetables...", eg "food", scores 1 point. 2 such statements score 2, eg "grows in ground...fierce" or "...food...4 legs..." scores 2 in total. **Jacket-naming:** Answers are collar, lapel, tie, pocket, button. 1 point each. Shirt is acceptable for item 1; jacket or blazer is OK for 2 or 4 (but not both). **Circles task:** 1 point if all circles joined even if not a letter W. **Clockface:** All numbers OK 1; correct number position 1; correct hands 1. **Sentence:** 1 point for each word remembered up to a maximum of 5.



Contents

Cardiovascular health 87

At the bedside (see 34):

Cardiovascular symptoms 88

Investigations:

ECG—a methodical approach 90

ECG—abnormalities 92

ECG—additional points 94

Exercise ECG testing 102

Ambulatory ECG monitoring 102

Cardiac catheterization 104

Echocardiography 106

Drugs and the heart:

Cardiovascular drugs 108

Statins 109

How to start ACE-inhibitors 109

Diseases and conditions:

Angina pectoris 110

Acute coronary syndromes (ACS) 112

Management of ACS 114

Complications of MI 116

Arrhythmias 118

Bradycardia 119

Narrow complex tachycardia 120

Broad complex tachycardia 122

Atrial fibrillation and flutter 124

Pacemakers 126

Heart failure—basic concepts 128

Heart failure—management 130

Hypertension 132

Hypertension—management 134

Rheumatic fever 136

Mitral valve disease 138

Aortic valve disease 140

Right heart valve disease 142

Cardiac surgery 142

The heart in various, mostly rare,
systemic diseases 143

Infective endocarditis (IE) 144

Diseases of heart muscle 146

Pericardial diseases 148

Congenital heart disease: Fallot's tetralogy, etc. 150

Driving and the heart 152

Other relevant pages: Emergencies: MI (p808); pulmonary oedema (p812); cardiac shock (p814); broad & narrow complex tachycardias (p816 & p818); **cardiac arrest:** see inside back cover. cvs examination (p38); carotid bruit (p38); cyanosis (p28); dyspnoea (p49); haemoptysis (p49); oedema (p29); palpitations (p35); aneurysms (p656); dyslipidaemia (p704); risk factor analysis (p664); nuclear cardiology^{et al} (p754).



Fig 1. Stephen Hales (1677-1761) A clergyman and scientist, most famous for his work on the circulation of plants and animals, and campaigned against the gin trade. In 1733 he was the first person to measure blood pressure, by inserting a brass cannula attached to a long glass tube into the carotid artery of a horse, and noting that the blood rose up the tube to a height of 8 feet 3 inches (186mmHg). He later repeated the experiment in a range of animals, and roughly estimated the pressure in man. However, it took until the early 20th Century before a simple non-invasive method was introduced for measuring blood pressure—the mercury sphygmomanometer; and even longer before the importance of elevated blood pressure was recognized.

Cardiovascular health

Ischaemic heart disease (IHD) is the most common cause of death worldwide. Encouraging cardiovascular health is not *only* about preventing IHD: health entails the ability to *exercise*, and enjoying vigorous activity (within reason!) is one of the best ways of achieving health, not just because the heart likes it (BPL, 'good' high-density lipoprotein, HDL⁺)—it can prevent osteoporosis, improve glucose tolerance, and augment immune function (eg in cancer and if HIV+ve). People who improve *and maintain* their fitness live longer: ▶ *age-adjusted mortality from all causes is reduced by >40%*. Avoiding obesity helps too, but weight loss *per se* is only useful in reducing cardiovascular risk and the risk of developing diabetes when combined with regular exercise. Moderate alcohol drinking may also promote cardiovascular health.

Smoking is the chief risk factor for cardiovascular mortality. You can help people give up, and giving up does undo much of the harm of smoking. *Simple advice works*. Most smokers want to give up (unlike eaters of unhealthy diets who are mostly wedded to them by habit and the pleasures of the palate). Just because smoking advice does *not always* work, do not stop giving it. Ask about smoking in consultations—especially those concerned with smoking-related diseases.

- Ensure advice is congruent with the patient's beliefs about smoking.
- Getting patients to enumerate the advantages of giving up increases motivation.
- Invite the patient to choose a date (when there will be few stresses) on which he or she will become a non-smoker.
- Suggest throwing away all accessories (cigarettes, pipes, ash trays, lighters, matches) in advance; inform friends of the new change; practise saying 'no' to their offers of 'just one little cigarette'.
- **Nicotine gum**, chewed intermittently to limit nicotine release: \geq ten 2mg sticks may be needed/day. **Transdermal nicotine patches** may be easier. A dose increase at 1wk can help. Written advice offers no added benefit to advice from nurses. Always offer follow-up.
- **Varenicline** is an oral selective nicotine receptor partial agonist. Start 1wk before target stop date: initially 0.5mg/24h po for 3 days, then 0.5mg/12h for 4 days, then 1mg/12h for 11wks (\downarrow to 0.5mg/12h if not tolerated). *SEs*: appetite change; dry mouth; taste disturbance; headache; drowsiness; dizziness; sleep disorders; abnormal dreams; depression; suicidal thoughts; panic; dysarthria.
- **Bupropion** (=amfebutamone, p455) is said to \uparrow quit rate to 30% at 1yr vs 16% with patches and 15.6% for placebo (patches + bupropion: 35.5%):¹ consider if the above fails. Dose: 150mg/24h po (while still smoking; quit within 2wks); dose may be twice daily from day 7; stop after 7–9wks. **Warn of SEs**: Seizures (risk $<1:1000$), insomnia, headache.

Lipids and BP (p704 & p132) are the other major *modifiable* risk factors. To calculate how risk factors interact, see *risk equation*, p664—and its caveats. NICE recommends a Framingham score with risk multiplied by 1.4 for South Asian men, but this doesn't cater for: • Asian diversity (eg multiply by 1.7 in Bangladeshi men) • Asian women • Deprivation effects • Double-counting problems if adjustment is made for ethnicity *and* family history. QRISK2 is better in UK patients.²

▶ Apply preventive measures such as healthy eating (p236) *early* in life to maximize impact, when there are most years to save, and before bad habits get ingrained.

The randomized trial

Cardiovascular medicine has an unrivalled treasure house of randomized trials. One of the chief pleasures of cardiovascular medicine lies in integrating these with clinical reasoning in a humane way. After a cardiac event, a protocol may 'mandate' statins, aspirin, β -blockers, ACE-i (p109), and a target BP and LDL cholesterol that makes your patient feel dreadful. What to do? Inform, negotiate, and compromise. Never reject your patient because of lack of compliance with your over-exacting regimens. Keep smiling, keep communicating, and keep up-to-date: the latest data may show that your patient was right all along.³



Chest pain ► Cardiac-sounding chest pain may have no serious cause, but always think “*Could this be a myocardial infarction (MI), dissecting aortic aneurysm, pericarditis, or pulmonary embolism?*”

Character: *Constricting* suggests angina, oesophageal spasm, or anxiety; a *sharp* pain may be from the pleura or pericardium. A prolonged (>½h), dull, central crushing pain or pressure suggests MI.

Radiation: To shoulder, either or both arms, or neck/jaw suggests cardiac ischaemia. The pain of aortic dissection (p656) is classically instantaneous, tearing, and interscapular, but may be retrosternal. Epigastric pain may be cardiac.

Precipitants: Pain associated with cold, exercise, palpitations, or emotion suggests cardiac pain or anxiety; if brought on by food, lying flat, hot drinks, or alcohol, consider oesophageal spasm/disease (but meals *can* cause angina).

Relieving factors: If pain is relieved *within minutes* by rest or glyceryl trinitrate (GTN), suspect angina (GTN relieves oesophageal spasm more slowly). If antacids help, suspect GI causes. Pericarditic pain improves on leaning forward.

Associations: Dyspnoea occurs with cardiac pain, pulmonary emboli, pleurisy, or anxiety. MI may cause nausea, vomiting, or sweating. Angina is caused by coronary artery disease—and also by aortic stenosis, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM), paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)—and can be exacerbated by anaemia. Chest pain with *tenderness* suggests self-limiting Tietze's syndrome.¹

Pleuritic pain (ie exacerbated by inspiration) implies inflammation of the pleura from pulmonary infection, inflammation, or infarction. It causes us to ‘catch our breath’. ΔΔ: Musculoskeletal pain;¹ fractured rib (pain on respiration, exacerbated by gentle pressure on the sternum); subdiaphragmatic pathology (eg gallstones).

Acutely ill patients: • Admit to hospital • Check pulse, BP in both arms ►► (unequal in aortic dissection p656), JVP, heart sounds; examine legs for DVT • Give O₂ by mask • IV line • Relieve pain (eg morphine 5–10mg IV slowly (2mg/min) + an antiemetic) • Cardiac monitor • 12-lead ECG • CXR • Arterial blood gas (ABG). **Famous traps:** Aortic dissection; zoster (p400); ruptured oesophagus; cardiac tamponade (shock with JVP↑); opiate addiction.

Dyspnoea may be from LVF, pulmonary embolism, any respiratory cause, or anxiety.

Severity: ►► Emergency presentations: p796. Ask about shortness of breath at rest or on exertion, exercise tolerance, and in daily tasks. Is it episodic and triggered by lying flat (PND, p49)? **Associations:** Specific symptoms associated with heart failure are orthopnoea (ask about number of pillows used at night), paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (waking up at night gasping for breath), and peripheral oedema. Pulmonary embolism is associated with acute onset of dyspnoea and pleuritic chest pain; ask about risk factors for DVT.

Palpitation(s) may be due to ectopics, AF, SVT and ventricular tachycardia (VT), thyrotoxicosis, anxiety, and rarely phaeochromocytoma. See p35. **History:** Ask about previous episodes, precipitating/relieving factors, duration of symptoms, associated chest pain, dyspnoea, or dizziness. *Did the patient check his pulse?*

Syncope may reflect cardiac or CNS events. Vasovagal ‘faints’ are common (pulse↓, pupils dilated). The history from an observer is invaluable in diagnosis. **Prodromal symptoms:** Chest pain, palpitations, or dyspnoea point to a cardiac cause, eg arrhythmia. Aura, headache, dysarthria, and limb weakness indicate CNS causes. **During the episode:** Was there a pulse? Limb jerking, tongue biting, or urinary incontinence? NB: hypoxia from lack of cerebral perfusion may cause seizures. **Recovery:** Was this rapid (arrhythmia) or prolonged, with drowsiness (seizure)?

1 25% of non-cardiac chest pain is musculoskeletal: look for pain on specific postures or activity. Aim to reproduce the pain by movement and, sometimes, palpation over the structure causing it.⁴ Focal injection of local anaesthetic helps diagnostically and is therapeutic.⁵ **Tietze's syndrome:** self-limiting costochondritis ± costosternal joint swelling. Causes: idiopathic; microtrauma; infection; psoriatic/rheumatoid arthritis. **R:** NSAIDs or steroid injections.⁶ Tenderness is also caused by: fibrositis, lymphoma, chondrosarcoma, myeloma, metastases, rib TB.⁷ Imaging: bone scintigraphy;⁸ CT.⁹



How patients communicate ischaemic cardiac sensations

On emergency wards we are always hearing questions such as "Is your pain sharp or dull?", followed by an equivocal answer. The doctor goes on "Sharp like a knife—or dull and crushing?" The doctor is getting irritated because the patient must know the answer but is not saying it. A true story paves the way to being less inquisitorial and having a more creative understanding of the nature of symptoms. A patient came to one of us (JML) saying "Last night I dreamed I had a pain in my chest. Now I've woken up, and I'm not sure—have I got chest pain, doctor? What do you think?" How odd it is to find oneself examining a patient to exclude a symptom, not a disease. (It turned out that she *did* have serious chest pathology.) Odd, until one realizes that symptoms are often half-formed, and it is our role to give them a local habitation and a name. Dialogue can transform a symptom from 'airy nothingness' to a fact.¹ Patients often avoid using the word 'pain' to describe ischaemia: 'wind', 'tightening', 'pressure', 'burning', or 'a lump in the throat' (angina means to choke) may be used. He may say "sharp" to communicate severity, and not character. So be as vague in your questioning as your patient is in his answers. "Tell me some more about what you are feeling (long pause) ... as if someone was doing *what* to you?" "Sitting on me" or "like a hotness" might be the response (suggesting cardiac ischaemia). Do not ask "Does it go into your left arm". Try "Is there anything else about it?" (pause) ... "Does it go anywhere?" Note down your patient's exact words.

Note also non-verbal clues: the clenched fist placed over the sternum is a telling feature of cardiac pain (Levine-sign positive).

A good history, taking account of these features, is the best way to stratify patients likely to have cardiac pain. If the history is non-specific, and there are no risk factors for cardiovascular diseases, and ECG and plasma troponin T (p112) are normal ($<0.2\mu\text{g/L}$) 6–12h after the onset of pain, discharge will probably be OK.¹⁰ When in doubt, get help. Features making cardiac pain unlikely:

- Stabbing, shooting pain.
- Pain lasting $<30\text{s}$, however intense.
- Well-localized, left sub-mammary pain ("In my heart, doctor").
- Pains of continually varying location.
- Youth.

Do not feel that you must diagnose every pain. *Chest pain with no cause* is common, even after extensive tests. Do not reject these patients: explain your findings to them. Some have a 'chronic pain syndrome' which responds to a tricyclic, eg imipramine 50mg at night (this dose does not imply any depression). It is similar to post-herpetic neuralgia.

¹ Dialogue-transformed symptoms explain one of the junior doctor's main vexations: when patients re-tell symptoms to a consultant in the light of day, they bear no resemblance to what you originally heard. But do not be vexed: your dialogue may have helped the patient far more than any ward round.

- ▶ First confirm the patient's name and age, and the ECG date. Then (see **fig 1**):
- **Rate:** At usual speed (25mm/s) each 'big square' is 0.2s; each 'small square' is 0.04s. To calculate the rate, divide 300 by the number of big squares per R-R interval (p91).
- **Rhythm:** If cycles are not clearly regular, use the 'card method': lay a card along ECG, marking positions of 3 successive R waves. Slide the card to and fro to check that all intervals are equal. If not, note if: slight but regular lengthening and then shortening (with respiration)—*sinus arrhythmia* common in the young; are different rates multiples of each other—*varying block*; or is it 100% irregular—*atrial fibrillation* (AF) or *ventricular fibrillation* (VF)? *Sinus rhythm* is characterized by a P wave (upright in II, III, & aVF; inverted in aVR) followed by a QRS complex. AF has no discernible P waves and QRS complexes are irregularly irregular. *Atrial flutter* (p125, **fig 1** p119) has a 'sawtooth' baseline of atrial depolarization (~300/min) and regular QRS complexes. *Nodal rhythm* has a normal QRS complex but P waves are absent or occur just before or within QRS complexes. *Ventricular rhythm* has QRS complexes >0.12s with P waves following them (**ECG 6**, p100).
- **Axis:** The mean frontal axis is the sum of all the ventricular forces during ventricular depolarization. The axis lies at 90° to the isoelectric complex (ie the one in which positive and negative deflections are equal). See **BOX 2**. *Normal axis* is between -30° and +90°. As a simple rule of thumb, if the complexes in leads I and II are both 'positive', the axis is normal. *Left axis deviation* (LAD) is -30° to -90°. Causes: LVH, left anterior hemiblock, inferior MI, VT from LV focus, Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome (some types). *Right axis deviation* (RAD) is +90° to +180°. Causes: RVH, PE, anterolateral MI, left posterior hemiblock (rare), WPW syndrome (some types). See **BOX 3**.
- **P wave:** Normally precedes each QRS complex, and upright in II, III, & aVF but inverted in aVR. *Absent P wave:* AF, sinoatrial block, junctional (AV nodal) rhythm. Dissociation between P waves and QRS complexes indicates complete heart block. *P mitrale:* bifid P wave, indicates left atrial hypertrophy. *P pulmonale:* peaked P wave, indicates right atrial hypertrophy. Pseudo-P-pulmonale seen if K⁺↓.
- **PR interval:** Measure from start of P wave to start of QRS. *Normal range:* 0.12–0.2s (3–5 small squares). A *prolonged PR interval* implies delayed AV conduction (1st degree heart block). A *short PR interval* implies unusually fast AV conduction down an accessory pathway, eg WPW p120 (see **fig 1**, p125).
- **QRS complex:** *Normal duration:* <0.12s. If ≥0.12s this suggests ventricular conduction defects, eg a bundle branch block (p94 & p119). Large QRS complexes suggest *ventricular hypertrophy* (p94). *Normal Q wave* <0.04s wide and <2mm deep. They are often seen in leads V₅ and V₆, aVL and I, and reflect normal septal depolarization, which usually occurs from left to right. *Pathological Q waves* may occur within a few hours of an acute MI.
- **QT interval:** Measure from start of QRS to end of T wave. It varies with rate. Calculate *corrected QT interval* (QT^c) by dividing the measured QT interval by the square root of the cycle length, ie $QT^c = QT / \sqrt{RR}$. Normal QT^c: 0.38–0.42s. *Prolonged QT interval:* acute myocardial ischaemia, myocarditis, bradycardia (eg AV block), head injury, hypothermia, U&E imbalance (K⁺↓, Ca²⁺↓, Mg²⁺↓), congenital (Romano-Ward and Jervell-Lange-Nielson syndromes, p724); sotalol, quinidine, antihistamines, macrolides (eg erythromycin), amiodarone, phenothiazines, tricyclics.
- **ST segment:** Usually isoelectric. Planar elevation (>1mm) or depression (>0.5mm) usually implies infarction (p113, **ECGs 3&4**, p97–8) or ischaemia (p103), respectively.
- **T wave:** Normally inverted in aVR, V₁ and occasionally V₂. Abnormal if inverted in I, II, and V₄–V₆. Peaked in hyperkalaemia (**ECG 9**, p689) and flattened in hypokalaemia.
- **J wave:** see p861. Seen in hypothermia, subarachnoid haemorrhage and hypercalcaemia.

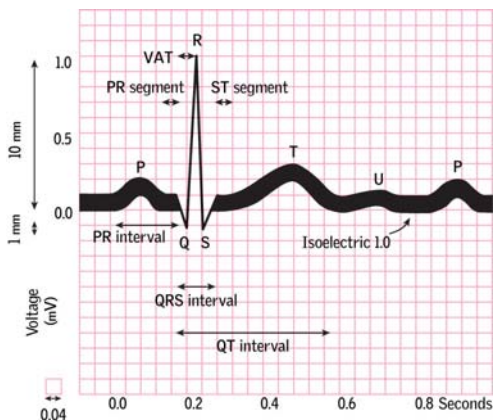


Fig 1. Schematic diagram of a normal ECG trace.

Calculating the R-R interval

To calculate the rate, divide 300 by the number of big squares per R-R interval—if the UK standard ECG speed of 25mm/s is used (elsewhere, 50mm/s may be used: don't be confused!)

R-R duration (s)	Big squares	Rate (per min)
0.2	1	300
0.4	2	150
0.6	3	100
0.8	4	75
1.0	5	60
1.2	6	50
1.4	7	43

Determining the ECG axis (fig 2)

- The axis lies at 90° to the isoelectric complex (the one in which positive and negative deflections are equal in size).
- If the complexes in I and II are both predominantly positive, the axis is normal.

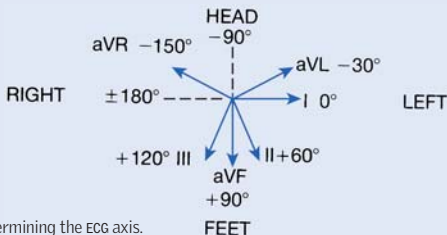


Fig 2. Determining the ECG axis.

Causes of LAD (left axis deviation)

Left anterior hemiblock
Inferior MI
VT from LV focus
WPW syndrome p120
LVH

Causes of RAD (right axis deviation)

RVH
Pulmonary embolism
Anterolateral MI
WPW syndrome
Left posterior hemiblock (rare)



Sinus tachycardia: Rate >100. Causes: Anaemia, anxiety, exercise, pain, $\uparrow T^{\circ}$, sepsis, hypovolaemia, heart failure, pulmonary embolism, pregnancy, thyrotoxicosis, beri beri, CO_2 retention, autonomic neuropathy, sympathomimetics, eg caffeine, adrenaline, and nicotine (may produce abrupt changes in sinus rate, or other arrhythmia).

Sinus bradycardia: Rate <60. Causes: Physical fitness, vasovagal attacks, sick sinus syndrome, acute MI (esp. inferior), drugs (β -blockers, digoxin, amiodarone, verapamil), hypothyroidism, hypothermia, intracranial pressure, cholestasis. See p116

AF: (ECG p119) *Common causes:* IHD, thyrotoxicosis, hypertension. See p124.

1st and 2nd degree (Mobitz I/II) heart block: Causes: Normal variant, athletes, sick sinus syndrome, IHD, acute myocarditis, drugs (digoxin, β -blockers). ECGs p119.

3rd degree AV (complete heart) block: Causes: IHD, idiopathic (fibrosis), congenital, aortic valve calcification, cardiac surgery/trauma, digoxin toxicity, infiltration (abscesses, granulomas, tumours, parasites). **ECG 5**, p99.

Q waves: Pathological Q waves are usually >0.04s wide and >2mm deep. Usually as sign of infarction, and may occur within a few hours of an acute MI. Non-pathological Q waves may occur in V5 and V6, aVL and I.

ST elevation: Normal variant (high take-off), acute MI, Prinzmetal's angina (p722), acute pericarditis (saddle-shaped), left ventricular aneurysm.

ST depression: Normal variant (upward sloping), digoxin (downward sloping), ischaemic (horizontal): angina, acute posterior MI.

T inversion: In V₁-V₃: normal (black patients and children), right bundle branch block (RBBB), pulmonary embolism. In V₂-V₅: subendocardial MI, HCM, subarachnoid haemorrhage, lithium. In V₄-V₆ and aVL: ischaemia, LVH, associated with left bundle branch block (LBBB).

NB: ST and T wave changes are often non-specific, and must be interpreted in the light of the clinical context.

Myocardial infarction: (fig 1, p113)

- Within hours, the T wave may become peaked and ST segments may begin to rise.
- Within 24h, the T wave inverts, as ST segment elevation begins to resolve. ST elevation rarely persists, unless a left ventricular aneurysm develops. T wave inversion may or may not persist.
- Within a few days, pathological Q waves begin to form. Q waves usually persist, but may resolve in 10% of patients.
- The leads affected reflect the site of the infarct: inferior (II, III, aVF), anteroseptal (V₁₋₄), anterolateral (V₄₋₆, I, aVL), posterior (tall R and ST \downarrow in V₁₋₂), and thus the occluded vessel: left anterior descending (anteroseptal), right coronary (inferior or right ventricular), circumflex (posterior, and, in 20%, inferior termed 'left dominance').

► 'Non-Q wave infarcts' (formerly called subendocardial infarcts) have ST and T changes without Q waves.

Pulmonary embolism: Sinus tachycardia is commonest. There may be RAD, RBBB (p91), *right ventricular strain pattern* (R-axis deviation. Dominant R wave and T wave inversion/ST depression in V₁ and V₂. Leads II, III and aVF may show similar changes). Rarely, the 's_IQ_{III}T_{III}' pattern occurs: deep S waves in I, pathological Q waves in III, inverted T waves in III.

Metabolic abnormalities: **Digoxin effect:** ST depression and inverted T wave in V₅₋₆ ('reversed tick'). In digoxin toxicity, any arrhythmia may occur (ventricular ectopics and nodal bradycardia are common). **Hyperkalaemia:** tall, tented T wave, widened QRS, absent P waves, 'sine wave' appearance (**ECG 9**, p689). **Hypokalaemia:** Small T waves, prominent U waves. **Hypercalcaemia:** Short QT interval. **Hypocalcaemia:** long QT interval, small T waves.

This page intentionally left blank

Where to place the chest leads (See [fig 1](#).)

Note $C_1 = V_1$ etc.

V1: right sternal edge, 4th intercostal space

V2: left sternal edge, 4th intercostal space

V3: half-way between V_2 and V_4

V4: 5th intercostal space, mid-clavicular line; all subsequent leads are in the same horizontal plane as V_4

V5: anterior axillary line

V6: mid-axillary line (V_7 : posterior axillary line)

Good skin preparation (clean with non-alcoholic wipe, shave if hairy, etc.) will improve ECG quality. Finish 12-lead ECGs with a long rhythm strip in lead II.

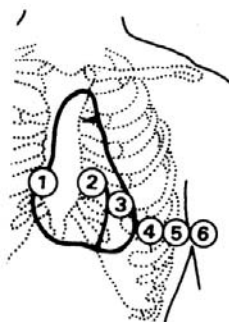


Fig 1. Placement of ECG leads.

Disorders of ventricular conduction

Bundle branch block (p95–6, [ECGs 1 & 2](#)) Delayed conduction is evidenced by prolongation of QRS >0.12 s. Abnormal conduction patterns lasting <0.12 s are incomplete blocks. The area that would have been reached by the blocked bundle depolarizes slowly and late. Taking V_1 as an example, right ventricular depolarization is normally +ve and left ventricular depolarization is normally -ve.

In RBBB, the following pattern is seen: QRS >0.12 s, 'M' pattern in V_1 , dominant R in V_1 , inverted T waves in V_1 – V_3 or V_4 , deep wide S wave in V_6 . Causes: normal variant (isolated RBBB), pulmonary embolism, cor pulmonale.

In LBBB, the following pattern is seen: QRS >0.12 s, 'M' pattern in V_5 , no septal Q waves, inverted T waves in I, aVL, V_5 – V_6 . Causes: IHD, hypertension, cardiomyopathy, idiopathic fibrosis. ▶NB: if there is LBBB, no comment can be made on the ST segment or T wave.

Bifascicular block is the combination of RBBB and left bundle hemiblock, manifest as an axis deviation, eg LAD in the case of left anterior hemiblock.

Trifascicular block is the combination of bifascicular block and 1st degree heart block. ▶Is pacing required? (p126)

Ventricular hypertrophy There is no single marker of ventricular hypertrophy: electrical axis, voltage, and ST wave changes should all be taken into consideration. Relying on a single marker such as voltage may be unreliable as a thin chest wall may result in large voltage whereas a thick chest wall may mask it.

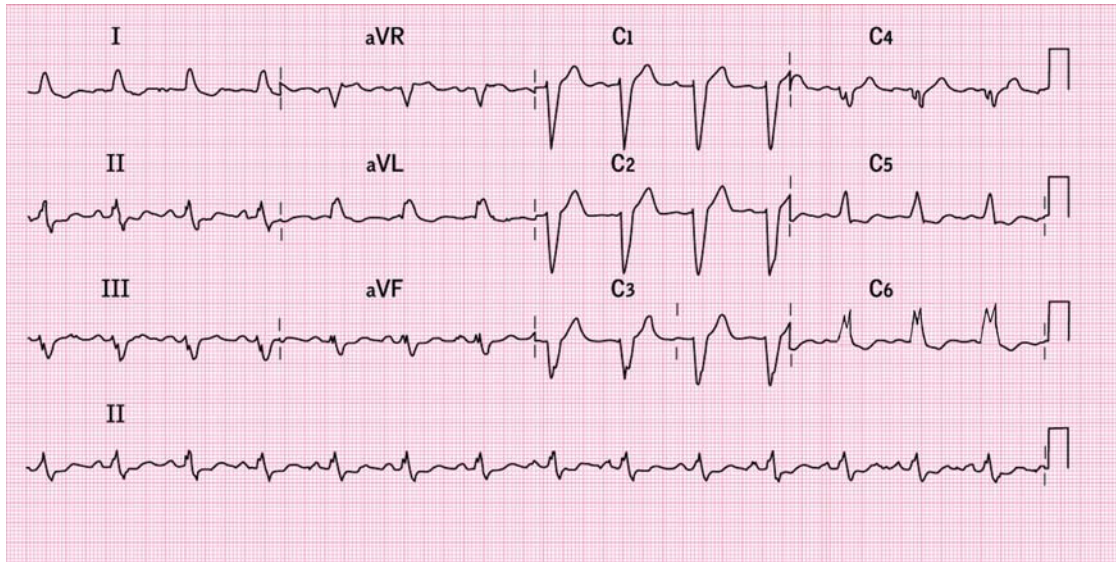
Suspect **left ventricular hypertrophy** (LVH) if the R wave in V_6 is >25 mm or the sum of the S wave in V_1 and the R wave in V_6 is >35 mm ([ECG 8](#) on p135).

Suspect **right ventricular hypertrophy** (RVH) if dominant R wave in V_1 , T wave inversion in V_1 – V_3 or V_4 , deep S wave in V_6 , RAD.

Other causes of **dominant R wave in V_1** : RBBB, posterior MI, some types of WPW syndrome (p120).

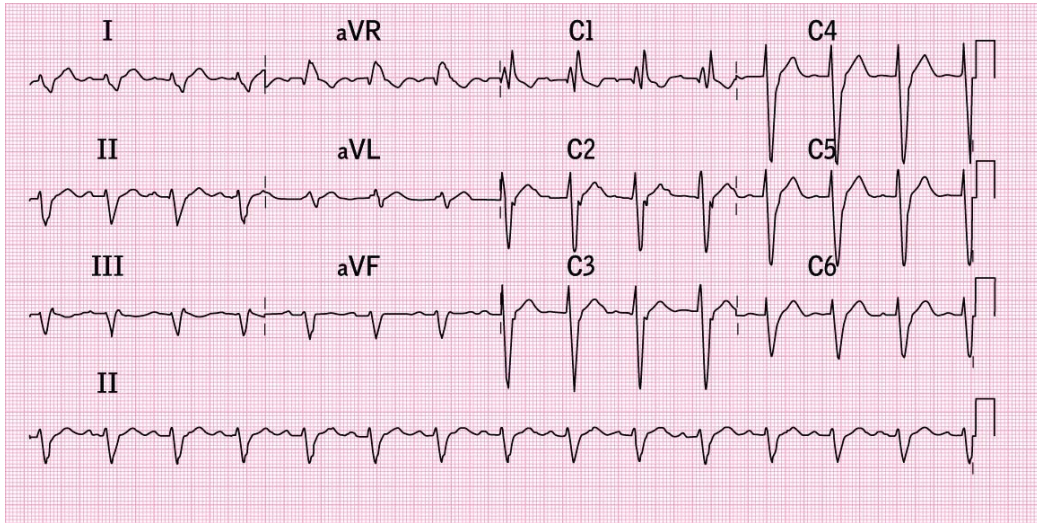
Causes of low voltage QRS complex: (QRS <5 mm in all limb leads) Hypothyroidism, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), thaematocrit (intra-cardiac blood resistivity is related to haematocrit), changes in chest wall impedance (eg in renal failure, subcutaneous emphysema but *not* obesity), pulmonary embolism, bundle branch block, carcinoid heart disease, myocarditis, cardiac amyloid, adriamycin cardiotoxicity, and other heart muscle diseases, pericardial effusion, pericarditis.¹¹

See <http://homepages.enterprise.net/djenkins/ecghome.html> for MRCP-ish examples of ECGs.

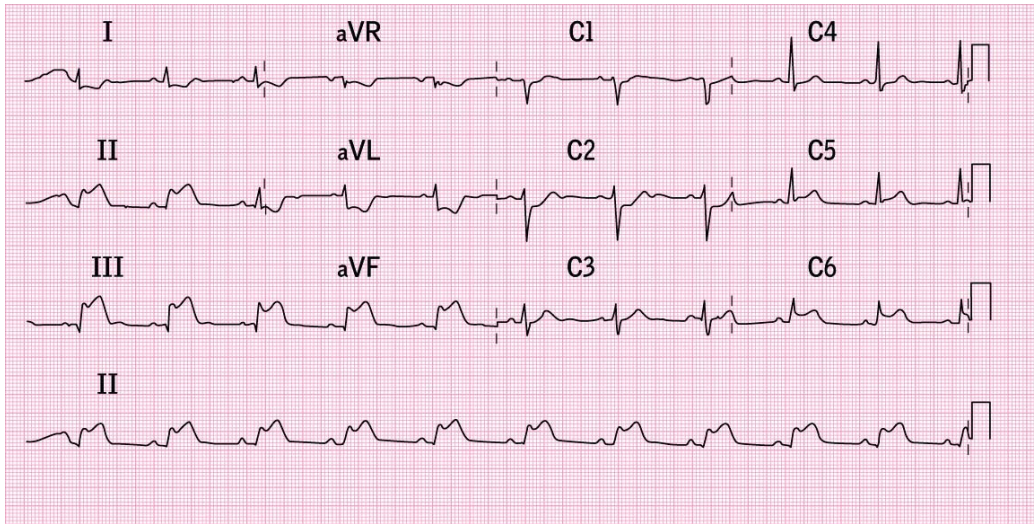


ECG 1—Left bundle branch block: note the W pattern in C1 (=v₁) and the M pattern in C6 (=v₆).



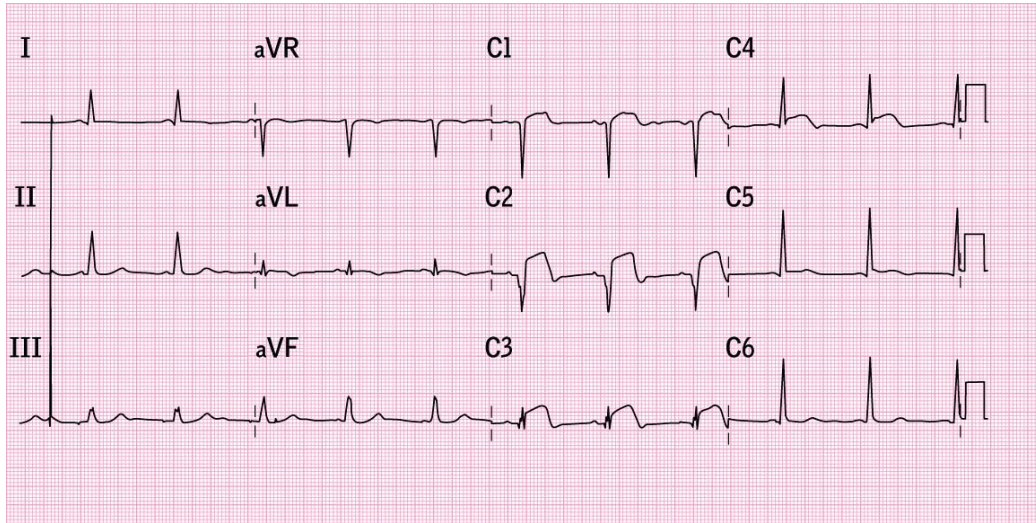


ECG 2—Right bundle branch block—M pattern in C1 and W pattern in C5.

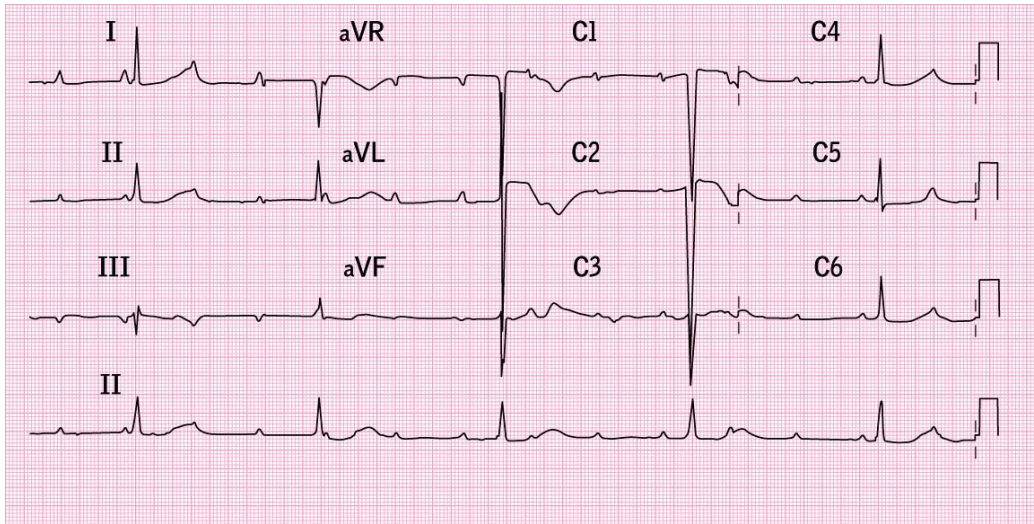


ECG 3—Acute infero-lateral myocardial infarction: marked ST elevation in the inferior leads (II, III, aVF), but also in C5 and C6, indicating lateral involvement as well. There is also 'reciprocal change', ie ST-segment depression in leads I and aVL. The latter is often seen with a large myocardial infarction.



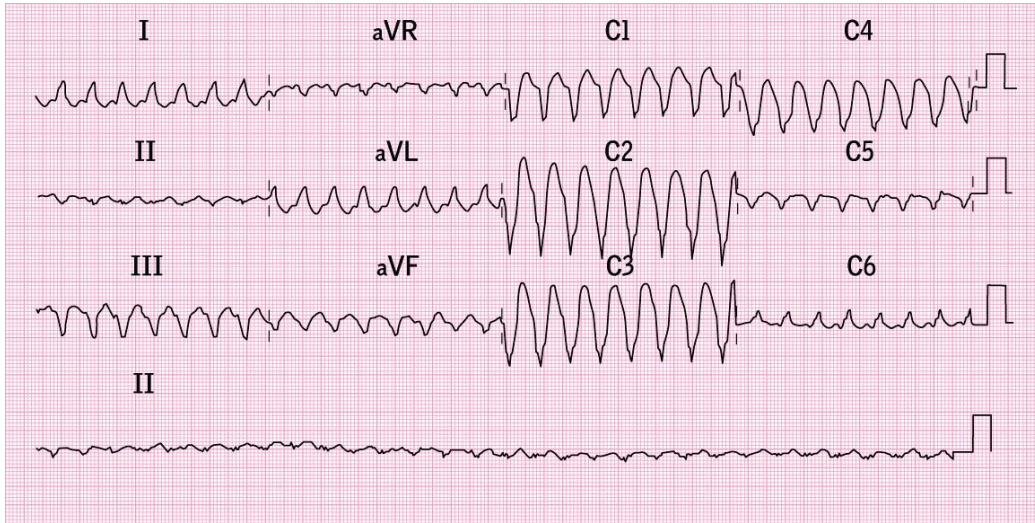


ECG 4—Acute anterior myocardial infarction—ST segment elevation and evolving Q waves in leads C1–C4.

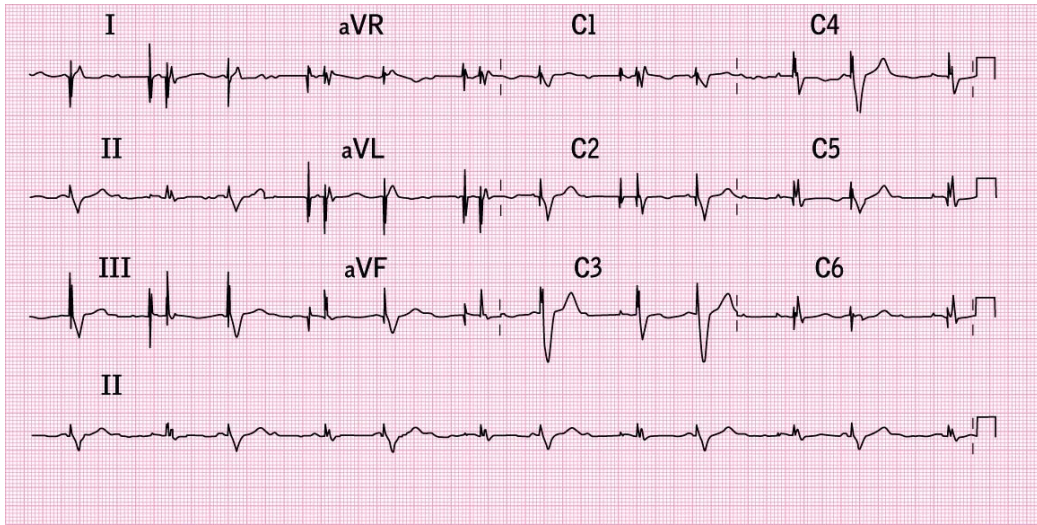


ECG 5—Complete heart block. Dissociation between the P waves and the QRS complexes. QRS complexes are relatively narrow, indicating that there is a ventricular rhythm originating from the conducting pathway.





ECG 6—Ventricular tachycardia—regular broad complexes indicating a ventricular origin for the rhythm.



ECG 7—Dual chamber pacemaker. Pacing spikes occur before some of the P waves, and the QRS complexes.



The patient undergoes a graduated, treadmill exercise test, with continuous 12-lead ECG (fig 1) and blood pressure monitoring. There are numerous treadmill protocols; the 'Bruce protocol' is the most widely used.

Indications:

- To help confirm a suspected diagnosis of IHD. NICE suggests that this should only be used when there is diagnostic uncertainty in people with known CAD (eg previous MI or angioplasty), and not to make a primary diagnosis.¹²
- Assessment of exercise-induced arrhythmias.

Contraindications:

- Recent Q wave MI (<5 days ago) or unstable angina
- Severe aortic stenosis
- Uncontrolled arrhythmia, hypertension, or heart failure
- Acute myocarditis or pericarditis
- Acute aortic dissection, acute pulmonary embolism

Be cautious about arranging tests that will be hard to perform or interpret:

- Complete heart block, LBBB
- Pacemaker patients, digoxin use
- Osteoarthritis, COPD, stroke, or other limitations to exercise

Stop the test if:

- Chest pain, dyspnoea, cyanosis or pallor occurs.
- The patient feels faint, exhausted, or is in danger of falling.
- ST↑ >1mm in leads without diagnostic Q waves (with or without chest pain).
- Atrial or ventricular arrhythmia (not just ectopics).
- Fall in blood pressure >10mmHg from baseline, failure of heart rate or blood pressure to rise with effort, SBP >230mmHg and/or DBP >115mmHg.
- Development of AV block or LBBB.
- 90% maximal heart rate for age is achieved: $[(220 - \text{age}) \pm 10]$.

Interpreting the test: A positive test only allows one to assess the *probability* that the patient has IHD. 75% of people with significant coronary artery disease have a positive test, but so do 5% of people with normal arteries (the false-positive rate is even higher in middle-aged women, eg 20%). The more positive the result, the higher the predictive accuracy. Down-sloping ST depression is much more significant than up-sloping, eg 1mm J-point depression with down-sloping ST segment is 99% predictive of 2–3 vessel disease.

Morbidity: 24 in 100,000. **Mortality:** 10 in 100,000.

Ambulatory ECG monitoring (eg Holter monitor)

Continuous ECG monitoring for 24h may be used to try to pick up paroxysmal arrhythmias. However, >70% of patients will not have symptoms during the period of monitoring. ~20% will have a normal ECG during symptoms and only up to 10% will have an arrhythmia coinciding with symptoms. Give these patients a recorder they can activate themselves during an episode. Recorders may be programmed to detect ST segment depression, either symptomatic (to prove angina) or to reveal 'silent' ischaemia (predictive of re-infarction or death soon after MI).

'Loop' recorders record only when activated by the patient—they cleverly save a small amount of ECG data *before* the event—useful if the arrhythmia causes loss of consciousness: the patient can press the button when they wake up. They are more expensive but also more cost-effective than Holter monitors, as the pick-up rate of significant disease is higher.¹³ These may also be implanted just under the skin (eg Reveal Device), and are especially useful in patients with infrequent episodes.





Each complex is taken from sample ECGs (lead C5) recorded at 1min intervals during exercise (top line) and recovery (bottom line). At maximum ST depression, the ST segment is almost horizontal. This is a positive exercise test.



This is an exercise ECG in the same format. It is negative because although the J point is depressed, the ensuing ST segment is steeply up-sloping.

Fig 1. Exercise ECG testing. The J-point is the point at which the QRS complex meets the ST segment.



This involves the insertion of a catheter into the heart via the femoral or radial artery or venous system, and manipulating it within the heart and great vessels to:

- Sample blood to assess oxygen saturation and measure pressures (see BOX).
- Inject radiopaque contrast medium to image cardiac anatomy and blood flow.
- Perform angioplasty (\pm stenting), valvuloplasty, and cardiac biopsies, or to do procedures, eg transcatheter ASD closure.
- Perform intravascular ultrasound or echocardiography.

During the procedure, ECG and arterial pressures are monitored continuously. In the UK, the majority are performed as day-case procedures. See BOX.

Indications:

- *Coronary artery disease:* diagnostic (assessment of coronary vessels and graft patency); therapeutic (angioplasty, stent insertion).
- *Valvular disease:* diagnostic (to assess severity); therapeutic valvuloplasty (if the patient is too ill or declines valve surgery). See BOX.
- *Congenital heart disease:* diagnostic (assessment of severity of lesions); therapeutic (balloon dilatation or septostomy).
- *Other:* cardiomyopathy; pericardial disease; endomyocardial biopsy.

Pre-procedure checks:

- Brief history/examination; NB: peripheral pulses, bruits, aneurysms.
- Investigations: FBC, U&E, LFT, clotting screen, CXR, ECG.
- Consent for angiogram \pm angioplasty \pm stent \pm CABG. Explain reason for procedure and possible complications (below).
- IV access, ideally in the left hand.
- Patient should be nil by mouth (NBM) from 6h before the procedure.
- Patients should take all their morning drugs (and pre-medication if needed)—but withhold oral hypoglycaemics.

Post-procedure checks:

- Pulse, blood pressure, arterial puncture site (for bruising or swelling?), foot pulses.
- Investigations: FBC and clotting (if suspected blood loss), ECG.

Complications:

- *Haemorrhage:* Apply firm pressure over puncture site. If you suspect a false aneurysm, ultrasound the swelling and consider surgical repair.
- *Contrast reaction:* This is usually mild with modern contrast agents.
- *Loss of peripheral pulse:* May be due to dissection, thrombosis, or arterial spasm. Occurs in <1% of brachial catheterizations. Rare with femoral catheterization.
- *Angina:* May occur during or after cardiac catheterization. Usually responds to sublingual GTN; if not give analgesia and IV nitrates.
- *Arrhythmias:* Usually transient. Manage along standard lines.
- *Pericardial tamponade:* Rare, but should be suspected if the patient becomes hypotensive and anuric.
- *Infection:* Post-catheter pyrexia is usually due to a contrast reaction. If it persists for >24h, take blood cultures before giving antibiotics.

Mortality: <1 in 1000 patients, in most centres.

Intra-cardiac electrophysiology This catheter technique can determine types and origins of arrhythmias, and locate (and ablate) aberrant pathways (eg causing atrial flutter or ventricular tachycardia). Arrhythmias may be induced, and the effectiveness of control by drugs assessed. Radiofrequency ablation may be used to destroy aberrant pathways or to prevent AF.

CT angiography

CT angiogram permits contrast-enhanced imaging of coronary arteries during a single breath hold. It can diagnose significant (>50%) stenosis in CAD with an accuracy of 89%. Its negative predictive value is >99%, which makes it an effective non-invasive alternative to routine coronary angiography to rule out CAD.¹⁴

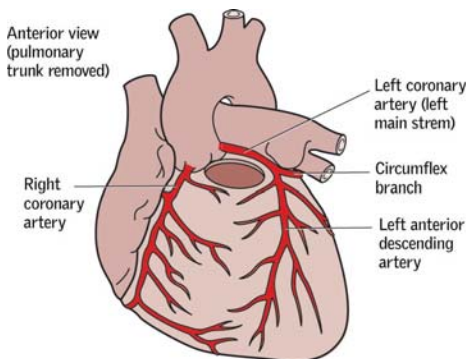


Fig 1. Coronary artery anatomy.

Normal values for intracardiac pressures and saturations

Location	Pressure (mmHg)		Saturation (%)
	Mean	Range	
Inferior vena cava			76
Superior vena cava			70
Right atrium	4	0-8	74
Right ventricle			74
Systolic	25	15-30	
End-diastolic	4	0-8	
Pulmonary artery			74
Systolic	25	15-30	
Diastolic	10	5-15	
Mean	15	10-20	
Pulmonary artery	a	3-12	74
Wedge pressure	v	3-15	
Left ventricle			
Systolic	110	80-140	98
End-diastolic	8	≤12	
Aorta			
Systolic	110	80-140	98
Diastolic	73	60-90	
Mean	85	70-105	
Brachial			
Systolic	120	90-140	98
Diastolic	72	60-90	
Mean	83	70-105	

Gradients across stenotic valves

Valve	Normal gradient (mmHg)	Stenotic gradient (mmHg)		
		Mild	Moderate	Severe
Aortic	0	<30	30-50	>50
Mitral	0	<5	5-15	>15
Prosthetic	5-10			

This non-invasive technique uses the differing ability of various structures within the heart to reflect ultrasound waves. It not only demonstrates anatomy but also provides a continuous display of the functioning heart throughout its cycle. There are various types of scan:

M-mode (motion mode): A single-dimension (time) image. See [fig 1](#).

2-dimensional (real time): A 2D, fan-shaped image of a segment of the heart is produced on the screen, which may be 'frozen'. Several views are possible and the 4 commonest are: long axis, short axis, 4-chamber, and subcostal. 2D echocardiography is good for visualizing conditions such as: congenital heart disease, LV aneurysm, mural thrombus, LA myxoma, septal defects.

3D echocardiography is now possible with matrix array probes, and is termed 4D (3D + time) if the images are moving.

Doppler and colour-flow echocardiography: Different coloured jets illustrate flow and gradients across valves and septal defects (p150) (Doppler effect, p750).

Tissue Doppler imaging: This employs Doppler ultrasound to measure the velocity of myocardial segments over the cardiac cycle. It is particularly useful for assessing longitudinal motion—and hence long-axis ventricular function, which is a sensitive marker of systolic and diastolic heart failure.

Trans-oesophageal echocardiography (TOE) is more sensitive than transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) as the transducer is nearer to the heart. Indications: diagnosing aortic dissections; assessing prosthetic valves; finding cardiac source of emboli, and IE/SBE. Don't do if oesophageal disease or cervical spine instability.

Stress echocardiography is used to evaluate ventricular function, ejection fraction, myocardial thickening, regional wall motion pre- and post-exercise, and to characterize valvular lesions. Dobutamine or dipyridamole may be used if the patient cannot exercise. Inexpensive and as sensitive/specific as a thallium scan (p755).

Uses of echocardiography

Quantification of global LV function: Heart failure may be due to systolic or diastolic ventricular impairment (or both). Echo helps by measuring end-diastolic volume. If this is large, systolic dysfunction is the likely cause. If small, diastolic. Pure forms of diastolic dysfunction are rare. Differentiation is important; as vasodilators are less useful in diastolic dysfunction as a high ventricular filling pressure is required.

Echo is also useful for detecting focal and global hypokinesia, LV aneurysm, mural thrombus, and LVH (echo is 5–10 times more sensitive than ECG in detecting this).

Estimating right heart haemodynamics: Doppler studies of pulmonary artery flow and tricuspid regurgitation allow evaluation of RV function and pressures.

Valve disease: The technique of choice for measuring pressure gradients and valve orifice areas in stenotic lesions. Detecting valvular regurgitation and estimating its significance is less accurate. Evaluating function of prosthetic valves is another role.

Congenital heart disease: Establishing the presence of lesions, and significance.

Endocarditis: Vegetations may not be seen if <2mm in size. TTE with colour Doppler is best for aortic regurgitation (AR). TOE is useful for visualizing mitral valve vegetations, leaflet perforation, or looking for an aortic root abscess.

Pericardial effusion is best diagnosed by echo. Fluid may first accumulate between the posterior pericardium and the left ventricle, then anterior to both ventricles and anterior and lateral to the right atrium. There may be paradoxical septal motion.

HCM (p146): Echo features include asymmetrical septal hypertrophy, small LV cavity, dilated left atrium, and systolic anterior motion of the mitral valve.

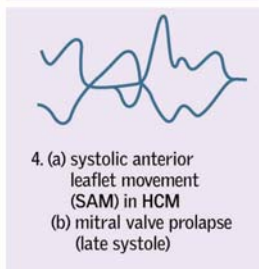
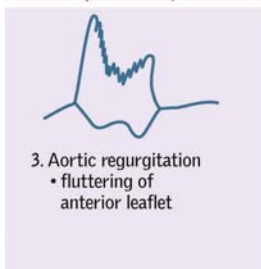
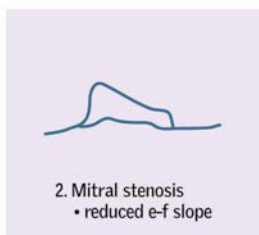
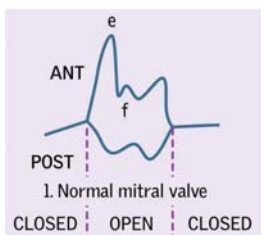
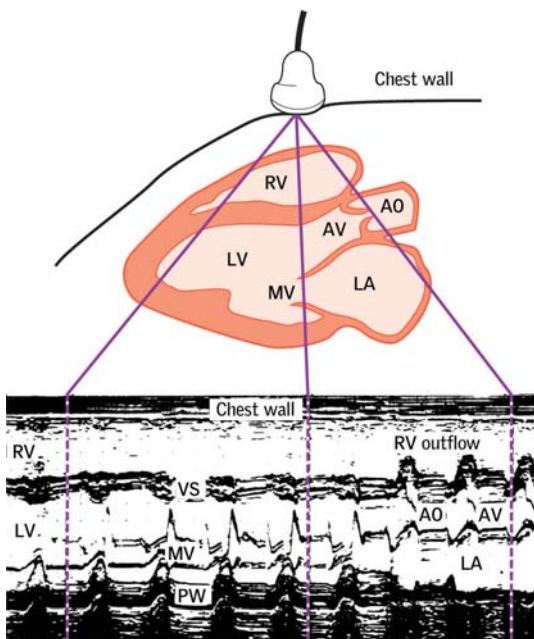


Fig 1. Normal M-mode echocardiogram (RV=right ventricle; LV=left ventricle; AO=aorta; AV=aortic valve; LA=left atrium; MV=mitral valve; PW=posterior wall of LV; VS=interventricular septum). Adapted from R Hall *Med International* 17 774.

Antiplatelet drugs Aspirin irreversibly acetylates cyclo-oxygenase, preventing production of thromboxane A_2 , thereby inhibiting platelet aggregation. Used in low dose (eg 75mg/24h PO) for secondary prevention following MI, TIA/stroke, and for patients with angina or peripheral vascular disease. May have a role in primary prevention.¹⁵ ADP receptor antagonists (eg clopidogrel, prasugrel) also block platelet aggregation, but may cause less gastric irritation. They have a role if truly intolerant of aspirin, and with aspirin, after coronary stent insertion, and in acute coronary syndrome. Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa antagonists (eg tirofiban) have a role in unstable angina/MI.¹⁶

Anticoagulants¹⁷ Warfarin (p344) is mainly used in AF, and with mechanical valves. Newer, oral agents, eg Xa inhibitors (eg apixaban) and direct thrombin inhibitors (dabigatran) may ultimately replace it as they don't require therapeutic monitoring and may have a better risk:benefit ratio. LMW heparin (p344) is used in ACS (p114). Alternatives are parental fondaparinux (Xa inhibitor) or bivalirudin (thrombin inhibitor).

β -blockers Block β -adrenoceptors, thus antagonizing the sympathetic nervous system. Blocking β_1 -receptors is negatively inotropic and chronotropic (pulse↓ by ↓firing of sinoatrial node), and β_2 -receptors induce peripheral vasoconstriction and bronchoconstriction. Drugs vary in their β_1/β_2 selectivity (eg propranolol is non-selective, and bisoprolol relatively β_1 selective), but this does not seem to alter their clinical efficacy. *Uses:* Angina, hypertension, antidysrhythmic, post MI (↓mortality), heart failure (with caution). *CI:* Asthma/COPD, heart block. *Caution:* Heart failure (but see carvedilol, p130). *SE:* Lethargy, erectile dysfunction, *joie de vivre*↑, nightmares, headache.

Diuretics Loop diuretics (eg *furosemide*) are used in heart failure, and inhibit the Na/2Cl/K co-transporter. Thiazides are used in hypertension and inhibit Na/Cl co-transporter. *SE:* Loop: dehydration, ↓K⁺, ↓Ca²⁺, ototoxic; *thiazides:* ↓K⁺, ↑Ca²⁺, ↓Mg²⁺, urate (±gout), impotence (NB: small doses, eg chlortalidone 25mg/24h rarely cause significant SEs); *Amiloride:* ↑K⁺, GI upset.

Vasodilators Used in heart failure, IHD, and hypertension. Nitrates preferentially dilate veins and the large arteries, ↓ filling pressure (pre-load), while hydralazine (often used with nitrates) primarily dilates the resistance vessels, thus ↓ BP (after-load). Prazosin (an α -blocker) dilates arteries and veins.

Calcium antagonists These ↓ cell entry of Ca²⁺ via voltage-sensitive channels in smooth muscle, thereby promoting coronary and peripheral vasodilatation and reducing myocardial oxygen consumption. All current drugs block L-type Ca²⁺ channels. However, their effects differ because of differential binding properties. The *dihydropyridines*, eg nifedipine, amlodipine, are mainly peripheral vasodilators (also dilate coronary arteries) and cause a reflex tachycardia, so are often used with a β -blocker. They are used mainly in hypertension and angina. The *non-dihydropyridines*—verapamil and diltiazem—also slow conduction at the AV and SA nodes and may be used to treat hypertension, angina, and dysrhythmias. Don't give verapamil with β -blockers (risk of severe bradycardia ± LVF). *SE:* Flushes, headache, oedema (diuretic unresponsive), LV function↓, gingival hypertrophy. *CI:* Heart block.

Digoxin^{18,19} Blocks the Na⁺/K⁺ pump. It is used to slow the pulse in fast AF (p124; aim for ≤100). As it is a weak +ve inotrope, its role in heart failure in sinus rhythm may be best reserved if symptomatic despite optimal ACE-i therapy (p109);¹⁸ here there is little benefit *vis-à-vis* mortality (but admissions for worsening CCF are ↓ by ~25%).¹⁹ Old people are at ↑risk of toxicity: use lower doses. Do plasma levels >6h post-dose (p766). Typical dose: 500µg stat PO, repeated after 12h, then 125µg (if elderly) to 375µg/d PO (62.5µg/d is almost never enough). IV dose: 0.75–1mg in 0.9% NaCl over 2h. Toxicity risk↑ if: K⁺↓, Mg²⁺↓, or Ca²⁺↑. $t_{1/2}$ ≈ 36h. If on digoxin, use less energy in cardioversion (start at 5J). ▶ If on amiodarone, halve the dose of digoxin. *SE:* Any arrhythmia (supraventricular tachycardia with AV block is suggestive), nausea, appetite↓, yellow vision, confusion, gynaecomastia. In toxicity, stop digoxin; check K⁺; treat arrhythmias; consider DigiFab® by IVI (p854). *CI:* HCM; WPW syndrome (p120).

ACE-inhibitors p109; **Nitrates** p110; **Antihypertensives** p134.



Statins

(see also hyperlipidaemia, p704 and p705, fig 1)

Statins (eg simvastatin, p704) inhibit the enzyme HMG-CoA reductase, which causes *de novo* synthesis of cholesterol in the liver. This increases LDL receptor expression by hepatocytes leading to ↓ circulating LDL cholesterol. More effective if given at night, but optimum dose and target plasma cholesterol are unknown. SE: muscle aches, abdominal discomfort, ↑transaminases (eg ALT), ↑CK, myositis, rarely rhabdomyolysis (more common if used with fibrates). Statins are generally well tolerated. There are currently ~3 million people taking statins in England, which saves ~10,000 lives a year.

How to start ACE-inhibitors

Check that there are no contraindications/cautions:

- Renal failure (serum creatinine >200μmol/L; but not an absolute CI)
- Hyperkalaemia: $K^+ > 5.5 \text{ mmol/L}$
- Hyponatraemia: caution if <130mmol/L (relates to a poorer prognosis)
- Hypovolaemia or hypotension (systolic BP <90mmHg)
- Aortic stenosis or LV outflow tract obstruction
- Pregnancy or lactation
- Severe COPD or cor pulmonale (not an absolute CI)
- Renal artery stenosis¹ (suspect if arteriopathic, eg cerebrovascular disease, IHD, peripheral vascular disease. ACE-i ↓GFR and may precipitate acute renal failure)

Warn the patient about possible side-effects:

- Dry cough (1:10)
- Hypotension, especially with 1st dose if CCF (so start at night)
- Taste disturbance
- Hyperkalaemia
- Renal impairment; this commonly co-exists with heart failure (atheroma is the reason for both, usually)—and is worsened by ACE-i (see below)
- Urticaria and angioneurotic oedema (<1:1,000)
- Rarely: proteinuria, leucopenia, fatigue

Starting ACE-inhibitors: ► Delay if intercurrent illness (esp. if dehydrated/D&V^{etc}). Most patients can be safely started on ACE-i as outpatients. 1st-dose hypotension can be avoided by taking the 1st dose on going to bed. Use a long-acting ACE-i, eg lisinopril 10mg/d PO, 2.5mg/d in the elderly (or eGFR <30). Increase dose every 2wks until at target dose (equivalent of 30–40mg lisinopril a day if eGFR >30) or side-effects supervene (↓BP, ↑creatinine). Review in ~1–2 wks; check U&E regularly. Patients on high doses of diuretics (>80mg furosemide a day) may need a reduction in their diuretic dose first. Before and after, check U&E. Expect a rise in creatinine (<20%; GFR ↓ by <15%²⁰) in ~2 wks after starting an ACE-i; a larger change may indicate underlying renal artery stenosis. Repeat U&E and ask a specialist's advice. Plasma K^+ may also rise. If >6mmol/L, ensure no NSAID is being taken, stop or reduce dose of K^+ -sparing diuretics, and recheck U&E. The dose of loop diuretic may also need to be reduced (if there is no congestion). If $\uparrow K^+$ persists, ACE-i (or ARB) may need to be stopped.²¹

NB: the same cautions are needed when starting ARBs (eg candesartan). In patients with cardiac disease who are unable to tolerate ACE-i, an ARB can be used.

¹ If renovascular disease precludes the use of ACE-i and furosemide is providing no answer, consider maximal vasodilatation with nitrates and hydralazine: seek expert advice.

This is due to myocardial ischaemia and presents as a central chest tightness or heaviness, which is brought on by exertion and relieved by rest. It may radiate to one or both arms, the neck, jaw or teeth. **Other precipitants:** Emotion, cold weather, and heavy meals. **Associated symptoms:** Dyspnoea, nausea, sweatiness, faintness.

Causes Mostly atheroma. Rarely: anaemia, AS; tachyarrhythmias; HCM; arteritis/small vessel disease (microvascular angina/cardiac syndrome X).

Types of angina *Stable angina:* induced by effort, relieved by rest. *Unstable (crescendo) angina:* angina of increasing frequency or severity; occurs on minimal exertion or at rest; associated with ↑risk of MI. *Decubitus angina:* precipitated by lying flat. *Variant (Prinzmetal's) angina* (see BOX 3): caused by coronary artery spasm (rare; may co-exist with fixed stenoses).

Tests ECG: usually normal, but may show ST depression; flat or inverted T waves; signs of past MI. See BOX 2 for other investigations. Exclude precipitating factors: anaemia, diabetes, hyperlipidaemia, thyrotoxicosis, temporal arteritis.

Management

Modify risk factors: stop smoking, encourage exercise, weight loss. Control hypertension, diabetes, etc., p87. If total cholesterol >4mmol/L give a statin—see p704.

Aspirin (75–150mg/24h) reduces mortality by 34%.

β-blockers, eg atenolol 50–100mg/24h PO, reduce symptoms unless contraindicated (asthma, COPD, LVF, bradycardia, coronary artery spasm).

Nitrates: for symptoms, give GTN spray or sublingual tabs, up to every ½h. Prophylaxis: give regular oral nitrate, eg isosorbide mononitrate 20–40mg PO bd (have an 8h nitrate-free period to prevent tolerance) or slow-release nitrate (eg Imdur® 60mg/24h). Alternatives: adhesive nitrate skin patches or buccal pills. SE: headaches, BPL.

Long-acting calcium antagonists: amlodipine 10mg/24h; diltiazem-MR 90–180mg/12h PO. They are particularly useful if there is a contraindication to β-blockers.

K⁺ channel activator, eg nicorandil 10–30mg/12h PO, if still not controlled.

Others: ivabradine inhibits the pacemaker ('funny') current in the SA node and thus reduces heart rate. Useful in those who cannot take a β-blocker, having similar efficacy. Trimetazidine inhibits fatty acid oxidation, leading the myocardium to use glucose, which is more efficient. Ranolazine inhibits the late Na⁺ current.

► Unstable angina requires admission and urgent treatment: *emergencies*, p810.

Indications for referral Diagnostic uncertainty; new angina of sudden onset; recurrent angina if past MI or CABG (see BOX); angina uncontrolled by drugs; unstable angina. Some units routinely do exercise tolerance tests on those <70yrs old, but age alone is a poor way to stratify patients.

Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) involves balloon dilatation of the stenotic vessel(s). **Indications:** poor response or intolerance to medical therapy; refractory angina in patients not suitable for CABG; previous CABG; post-thrombolysis in patients with severe stenoses, symptoms, or positive stress tests. Comparisons of PTCA vs drugs alone show that PTCA may control symptoms better but with more frequent early cardiac events (eg MI and need for CABG)²² and little effect on mortality. However, early intervention may benefit high risk patients presenting with non-ST-segment elevation MI (p112).²³ Stenting reduces restenosis rates and the need for bailout CABG compared with angioplasty. **Complications:** Restenosis (20–30% within 6 months); emergency CABG (<3%); MI (<2%); death (<0.5%).

NICE recommends that >70% of angioplasties be accompanied by stenting. Antiplatelet agents, eg clopidogrel, reduce the risk of stent thrombosis, and IV glycoproteins IIb/IIIa-inhibitors (eg eptifibatide) reduce procedure-related ischaemic events. Drug-coated stents reduce restenosis rates, but at the risk of increased late in-stent thrombosis. Long-term treatment with aspirin and clopidogrel may reduce this risk.

Investigating patients with ? stable angina

If the patient has an acute coronary syndrome, eg unstable angina, emergency admission is indicated. In those patients with stable chest pain which might be cardiac who do not require emergency admission, a number of options exist. NICE suggests stratifying based on whether there is known CAD, and the likelihood of CAD.^{12,24}

Known CAD and pain typical, no further investigation. If atypical pain, either exercise testing or functional imaging (myocardial perfusion scintigraphy, stress echo, or MRI).

Unknown CAD stratify of likelihood of CAD

- >90% treat as known CAD
- 61-90% angiography, or functional imaging if inappropriate
- 30-60% functional imaging
- 10-29% coronary artery calcification score¹ with CT
- <10% reconsider diagnosis.

Calculating the likelihood of CAD (percentages)^{12, 1, 12}

Age (yrs)	Non-anginal chest pain				Atypical angina				Typical angina			
	Men		Women		Men		Women		Men		Women	
	Lo	Hi	Lo	Hi	Lo	Hi	Lo	Hi	Lo	Hi	Lo	Hi
35	3	35	1	19	8	59	2	39	30	88	10	78
45	9	47	2	22	21	70	5	43	51	92	20	79
55	23	59	4	25	45	79	10	47	80	95	38	82
65	49	69	9	29	71	86	20	51	93	97	56	84

Values are percent of people at each mid-decade with significant coronary artery disease (CAD).

Hi = High risk = diabetes, smoking, and hyperlipidaemia (total cholesterol >6.47mmol/L). Lo = Low risk = none of these three.

The shaded area represents people with symptoms of non-anginal chest pain, who would not be investigated for stable angina routinely.

For men older than 70 with atypical or typical symptoms, assume an estimate >90%. For women older than 70, assume estimate of 61-90% EXCEPT women at high risk AND with typical symptoms, where a risk of >90% should be assumed.

Note: these results are likely to overestimate CAD in primary care populations.

If there are resting ECG ST-T changes or Q waves, the likelihood of CAD is higher in each cell of the table.

NICE (2010) CG95 *Chest pain of recent onset: assessment and diagnosis of recent onset chest pain and discomfort of suspected cardiac origin*. London: NICE. Available from www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg95. Reproduced with permission.

Prinzmetal angina

This is due to coronary artery spasm, which can occur even in normal coronary arteries. Pain usually occurs during rest (rather than during activity). ECG during pain shows ST segment elevation, which resolves as the pain subsides. Patients usually do not have the standard risk factors for atherosclerosis. **Treatment:** Calcium channel blockers ± long-acting nitrates. Aspirin can **aggravate** the ischaemic attacks in these patients. β-blockers (esp non-selective) should also be **avoided** as they can increase vasospasm. Prognosis is usually very good.

¹ The calcium score derived from CT images is a summation of all calcified lesions in the coronary arteries. It reflects the presence of plaques. The reported score is an individual's score, allowing for age and sex.²⁵

Definitions ACS includes unstable angina and evolving MI, which share a common underlying pathology—plaque rupture, thrombosis, and inflammation. However, ACS may rarely be due to emboli or coronary spasm in normal coronary arteries, or vasculitis (p558). Usually divided into *ACS with ST-segment elevation* or new onset LBBB—what most of us mean by acute MI; and *ACS without ST-segment elevation*—the ECG may show ST depression, T wave inversion, non-specific changes, or be normal (includes non-Q wave or subendocardial MI). The degree of irreversible myocyte death varies, and significant necrosis can occur without ST elevation.

Risk factors *Non-modifiable*: age, ♂ gender, family history of IHD (MI in 1st degree relative <55yrs). *Modifiable*: smoking, hypertension, DM, hyperlipidaemia, obesity, sedentary lifestyle, cocaine use. *Controversial* risk factors include: stress, type A personality, LVH, fibrinogen, hyperinsulinaemia, homocysteine level, ACE genotype.

Incidence 5/1000 per annum (UK) for ST-segment elevation (declining in UK and USA).

Diagnosis Acute MI is defined by several criteria.²⁶ The commonest is ant and then a ↓ in cardiac biomarkers (eg troponin) and either: symptoms of ischaemia, ECG changes of new ischaemia, development of pathological Q waves, or loss of myocardium on imaging.

Symptoms Acute central chest pain, lasting >20min, often associated with nausea, sweatiness, dyspnoea, palpitations. May present without chest pain ('silent' infarct), eg in the elderly or diabetics. In such patients, presentations may include: syncope, pulmonary oedema, epigastric pain and vomiting, post-operative hypotension or oliguria, acute confusional state, stroke, and diabetic hyperglycaemic states.

Signs Distress, anxiety, pallor, sweatiness, pulse ↑ or ↓, BP ↑ or ↓, 4th heart sound. There may be signs of heart failure (↑ JVP, 3rd heart sound, basal crepitations) or a pansystolic murmur (papillary muscle dysfunction/rupture, VSD). Low-grade fever may be present. Later, a pericardial friction rub or peripheral oedema may develop.

Tests **ECG** (see fig 1): Classically, hyperacute (tall) T waves, ST elevation or new LBBB occur within hours of transmural infarction. T wave inversion and development of pathological Q waves follow over hours to days (p92). In other ACS: ST depression, T wave inversion, non-specific changes, or normal. ▶ *In 20% of MI, the ECG may be normal initially.* **CXR**: Look for cardiomegaly, pulmonary oedema, or a widened mediastinum (aortic rupture). Don't routinely delay treatment whilst waiting for a CXR.

Blood: FBC, U&E, glucose, lipids.

Cardiac enzymes (see fig 2): **Cardiac troponin** levels (T and I) are the most sensitive and specific markers of myocardial necrosis. Serum levels ↑ within 3–12h from the onset of chest pain, peak at 24–48h, and ↓ to baseline over 5–14 days. If normal ≥6h after onset of pain, and ECG normal, risk of missing MI is tiny (0.3%).²⁷ Peak levels also help risk stratification.²⁸ **Creatine kinase** comprises 3 isoenzymes: CK-MM (found mainly in skeletal muscle; ↑ after trauma (falls, seizures); prolonged exercise; myositis; African-Caribbeans; hypothyroidism); CK-BB (predominantly in the brain); and CK-MB mainly in the heart. CK-MB levels ↑ within 3–12h of onset of chest pain, reach peak values within 24h, and return to baseline after 48–72h. Levels peak earlier if reperfusion occurs. Sensitivity is ~95%, with high specificity. **Myoglobin** levels rise within 1–4h from the onset of pain. They are highly sensitive but not specific.

Differential diagnosis (p88) Angina, pericarditis, myocarditis, aortic dissection (p656), pulmonary embolism, and oesophageal reflux/spasm.

Management See *emergencies*, p810. The management of ACS with and without ST-segment elevation varies. Likewise, if there is no ST elevation and symptoms settle without a rise in cardiac troponin, then no myocardial damage has occurred, the prognosis is good, and patients can be discharged. Therefore, the two key questions are: is there ST-segment elevation? Is there a rise in troponin?

Mortality 50% of deaths occur within 2h of onset of symptoms. Up to 7% die before discharge. Worse prognosis if: elderly, LV failure, and ST changes.²⁹

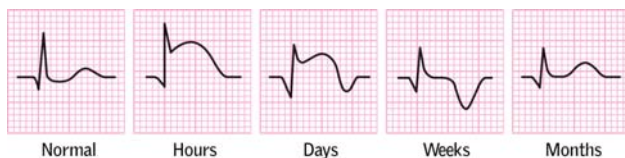


Fig 1. Sequential ECG changes following acute MI.

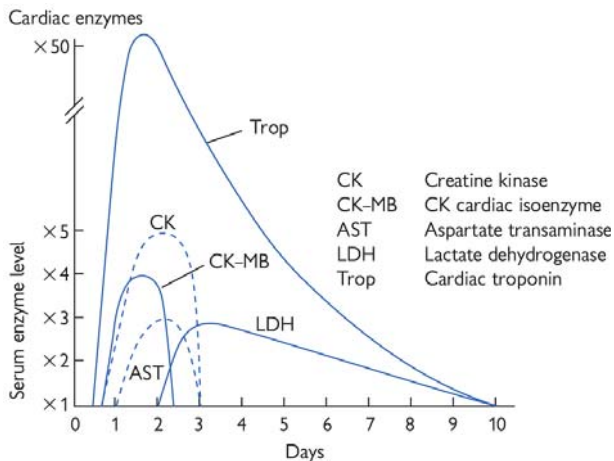


Fig 2. Enzyme changes following acute MI.



Pre-hospital Arrange emergency ambulance. Aspirin 300mg chewed³¹ (if no *absolute* CI) and GTN sublingual. Analgesia, eg morphine 5–10mg IV + metoclopramide 10mg IV (not IM because of risk of bleeding with thrombolysis).

In hospital O₂, IVI, morphine, aspirin ►► p808–810.

Then the key question for subsequent management of ACS is whether there is ST-segment elevation (includes new onset LBBB or a true posterior MI). See **fig 1**.

ST-segment elevation

- **Primary angioplasty** or thrombolysis, if no contraindication ►► p808.
- **β -blocker**, eg atenolol 5mg IV unless contraindicated, eg asthma.
- **ACE-inhibitor**: Consider starting ACE-i (eg lisinopril 2.5mg) in all normotensive patients (systolic ≥ 120 mm/Hg) within 24h of acute MI, especially if there is clinical evidence of heart failure or echo evidence of LV dysfunction.
- Consider clopidogrel 300mg loading followed by 75mg/day for 30 days.³²

ACS without ST-segment elevation³³

- **β -blocker**, eg atenolol 5mg IV and nitrates IV unless contraindicated.
- **Antithrombotic** fondaparinux if low bleeding risk and no angiography planned for 24h, otherwise consider *low molecular weight heparin* (eg enoxaparin 1mg/kg/12h sc for 2–8 days)
- Assess risk, eg GRACE SCORE.
- High-risk patients (persistent or recurrent ischaemia, ST \uparrow , diabetes, \uparrow troponin): **GPIIb/IIIa antagonist** (eg tirofiban),³⁴ or bivalirudin, and angiography within 96h. Clopidogrel, in addition to aspirin, should be considered for up to 12 months.³⁰
- Low-risk (eg no further pain, flat or inverted T-waves, or normal ECG, and negative troponin): clopidogrel if risk 1.5–3%/yr. Discharge if a repeat troponin is negative. Treat medically and arrange further investigation if recurrent ischaemia.

Subsequent management

- **Bed rest for 48h**; continuous ECG monitoring.
- **Daily examination**: heart, lungs, and legs for complications (p116); 12-lead ECG, U&E.
- **Prophylaxis against thromboembolism**: until fully mobile. If large anterior MI, consider warfarin for 3 months as prophylaxis against systemic embolism from LV mural thrombus.
- **Aspirin** (eg 75mg) \downarrow vascular events (MI, stroke, or vascular death) by 29%.
- Long-term **β -blockade** \downarrow mortality from all causes by $\sim 25\%$ in patients who have had a previous MI (eg bisoprolol 2.5–5mg/d enough to decrease the pulse to ≤ 60 ; continue for at least 1yr). If contraindicated, consider verapamil or diltiazem.
- **Continue ACE-i** in all patients. ACE-i in those with evidence of heart failure reduces 2yr mortality by 25–30%.
- **Start a statin**, eg simvastatin 40mg.³⁵ Cholesterol reduction post-MI has been shown to be of benefit in patients with both elevated and normal cholesterol levels.
- **Address modifiable risk factors**: Discourage smoking (p87). Encourage exercise. Identify and treat diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and hyperlipidaemia.
- **Assess LV function** in all patients post-MI.
- **General advice**: If uncomplicated, discharge after 5–7 days. **Work**: Patient may return to work after 2 months. A few occupations should not be restarted post-MI: airline pilots; air traffic controllers; divers. Drivers of public service or heavy goods vehicles may be permitted to return to work if they meet certain criteria.³⁶ Patients undertaking heavy manual labour should be advised to seek a lighter job. **Diet**: A diet high in oily fish, fruit, vegetables, and fibre, and low in saturated fats should be encouraged. **Exercise**: Encourage regular daily exercise. **Sex**: Intercourse is best avoided for 1 month. **Travel**: Avoid air travel for 2 months. Refer for structured rehabilitation programme.
- **Review at 5wks post-MI to review symptoms**: Angina? dyspnoea? palpitations? If angina recurs, treat conventionally, and consider coronary angiography.
- **Review at 3 months**: Check fasting lipids.

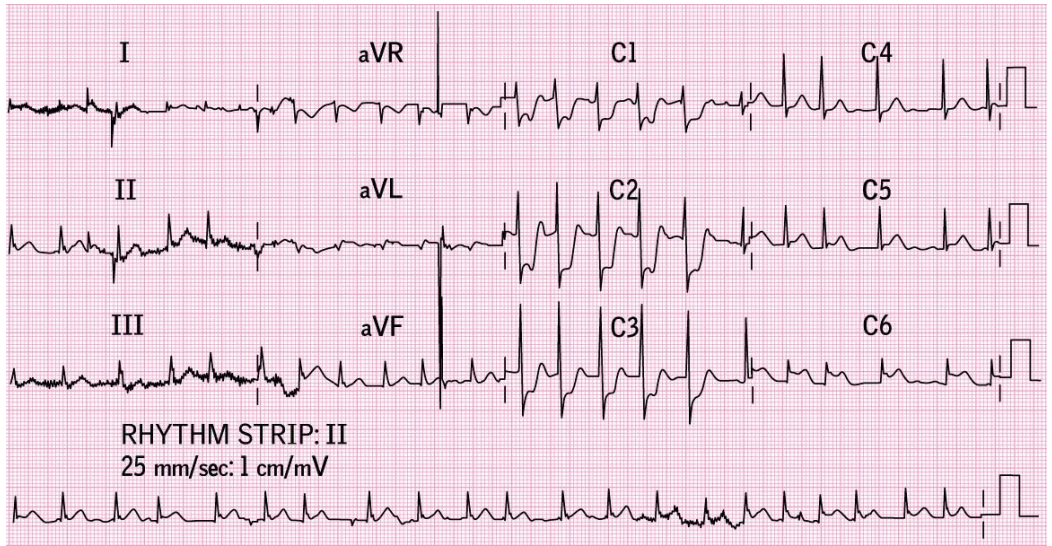


Fig 1. Acute postero-lateral MI.



Cardiac arrest (inside back cover); **cardiogenic shock** (p814); LVF (p812).

Unstable angina: Manage along standard lines (p810) and refer to a cardiologist.

Bradycardias or heart block: **Sinus bradycardia:** treat with atropine 0.6-1.2mg IV. Consider temporary cardiac pacing if no response or poorly tolerated by the patient. **4BP** which is not responsive to atropine in patients with inferior MI may be due to RV infarction. **1st degree AV block:** Most commonly seen in inferior MI. Observe closely, as approximately 40% develop higher degrees of AV block (in which case calcium channel blockers and β -blockers should be stopped). **Wenckebach (Mobitz type I; ECG, p119) block:** does not require pacing unless poorly tolerated. **Mobitz type II block:** carries a high risk of developing sudden complete AV block; should be paced. **Complete AV block (ECG, p90):** usually resolves within a few days. Insert pacemaker (may not be necessary after inferior MI if narrow QRS and reasonably stable and pulse $\geq 40-50$). **Bundle branch block:** MI complicated by trifascicular block or non-adjacent bifascicular disease (p126) should be paced.

Tachyarrhythmias: NB: K^+ , hypoxia and acidosis all predispose to arrhythmias and should be corrected. **Sinus tachycardia** can \uparrow myocardial O_2 demand. Pain and hypoxia are common causes (give O_2 , analgesic). **SVT:** p120. **AF or flutter:** If compromised, DC cardioversion. Otherwise, control rate with digoxin (load with 500 μ g/12h PO for 2-3 doses; maintenance: 125-250 μ g/24h) \pm β -blocker. In atrial flutter or intermittent AF, try amiodarone or sotalol (details p124). **Frequent PVCs** (premature ventricular contractions) are common after acute MI. They usually do not result in VF, and prophylactic antidysrhythmics are not recommended (\uparrow death). **Non-sustained VT** (≥ 3 consecutive PVCs >100 bpm and lasting <30 s): if it happens at <48 h after MI, antidysrhythmics are not recommended. However, if it happens >48 h, risk of sudden cardiac death is \uparrow and electrophysiological studies should be considered. **Sustained VT** (≥ 3 consecutive PVCs >100 bpm and lasting >30 s): if compromised, give DC shock. If stable, treat with amiodarone. Recurrent VT may need pacing. **Ventricular fibrillation:** 80% occurs within 12h. If occur >48 h, usually indicates pump failure or cardiogenic shock. **R_s:** DC shock.

Consider implantable cardiac defibrillator if ejection fraction $<35\%$ and VT.³⁷

Right ventricular failure (RVF)/infarction: Presents with low cardiac output and JVP \uparrow . Consider a Swan-Ganz catheter to measure right-sided pressures and guide fluid replacement. If BP remains low, give inotropes.

Pericarditis: Central chest pain, relieved by sitting forwards. ECG: saddle-shaped ST elevation. Treatment: NSAIDs. Echo to check for effusion.

DVT & PE: Patients are at risk of developing DVT & PE and should be prophylactically heparinized (enoxaparin) until fully mobile.

Systemic embolism: May arise from LV mural thrombus. After large anterior MI, consider anticoagulation with warfarin for 3 months.

Cardiac tamponade: (p814) Presents with low cardiac output, pulsus paradoxus, JVP \uparrow , muffled heart sounds. Diagnosis: Echo. Treatment: Pericardial aspiration (provides temporary relief, \blacktriangleright see p787 for technique), surgery.

Mitral regurgitation: May be mild (minor papillary muscle dysfunction) or severe (chordal or papillary muscle rupture or ischaemia). Presentation: Pulmonary oedema. Treat LVF (p812) and consider valve replacement.

Ventricular septal defect: Presents with pansystolic murmur, JVP \uparrow , cardiac failure. Diagnosis: echo. Treatment: surgery. 50% mortality in first week.

Late malignant ventricular arrhythmias: Occur 1-3wks post-MI and are the cardiologist's nightmare. Avoid hypokalaemia, the most easily avoidable cause. Consider 24h ECG monitoring prior to discharge if large MI.

Dressler's syndrome: (p712) Recurrent pericarditis, pleural effusions, fever, anaemia and ESR \uparrow 1-3wks post-MI. Treatment: may consider NSAIDs; steroids if severe.

Left ventricular aneurysm: This occurs late (4-6 weeks post-MI), and presents with LVF, angina, recurrent VT, or systemic embolism. ECG: persistent ST-segment elevation. Treatment: anticoagulate, consider excision.



Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)

CABG is performed in left main stem disease, multi-vessel disease; multiple severe stenoses; patients unsuitable for angioplasty; failed angioplasty; refractory angina.

Indications for CABG: to improve survival

- Left main stem disease
- Triple vessel disease involving proximal part of the left anterior descending

To relieve symptoms

- Angina unresponsive to drugs
- Unstable angina (sometimes)
- If angioplasty is unsuccessful

NB: when CABG and percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI, eg angioplasty) are both clinically valid options, NICE recommends that the availability of new stent technology should push the decision towards PCI. In practice, patients with single-vessel CAD and normal LV function usually undergo PCI, and those with triple-vessel disease and abnormal LV function more often undergo CABG.³⁸

Compared with PCI, CABG results in longer recovery time and length of inpatient stay. Recent RCTs indicate that early procedural mortality rates and 5-year survival rates are similar after PCI and CABG. Compared with PCI, CABG probably provides more complete long-term relief of angina in patients, and less repeated revascularization. However, it is associated with ↑ risk of stroke.³⁹

Procedure: The heart is usually stopped and blood pumped artificially by a machine outside the body (cardiac bypass). Minimally invasive thoracotomies not requiring this are well described,⁴⁰ but randomized trials are few. The patient's own saphenous vein or internal mammary artery is used as the graft. Several grafts may be placed. >50% of vein grafts close in 10yrs (low-dose aspirin helps prevent this). Internal mammary artery grafts last longer (but may cause chest-wall numbness).

On-pump or off-pump?

Seems to make little difference.⁴¹

After CABG: If angina persists or recurs (from poor graft run-off, distal disease, new atheroma, or graft occlusion) restart anti-anginal drugs, and consider angioplasty. Mood, sex, and intellectual problems⁴² are common early. Rehabilitation helps:

- Exercise: walk→cycle→swim→jog
- Drive at 1 month: no need to tell DVLA if non-HGV licences, p152
- Get back to work, eg at 3 months
- Attend to: smoking; BP; lipids
- Aspirin 75mg/24h PO forever; consider clopidogrel if aspirin CI

Disturbances of cardiac rhythm or arrhythmias are:

- Common
- Often benign (but may reflect underlying heart disease)
- Often intermittent, causing diagnostic difficulty
- Occasionally severe, causing cardiac compromise.

Causes *Cardiac*: MI, coronary artery disease, LV aneurysm, mitral valve disease, cardiomyopathy, pericarditis, myocarditis, aberrant conduction pathways. *Non-cardiac*: Caffeine, smoking, alcohol, pneumonia, drugs (β_2 -agonists, digoxin, L-dopa, tricyclics, doxorubicin), metabolic imbalance (K^+ , Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , hypoxia, hypercapnia, metabolic acidosis, thyroid disease), and pheochromocytoma.

Presentation is with palpitation, chest pain, presyncope/syncope, hypotension, or pulmonary oedema. Some arrhythmias may be asymptomatic and incidental, eg AF.

History Take a detailed history of palpitations (p35). Ask about precipitating factors, onset/offset, nature (fast or slow, regular or irregular), duration, associated symptoms (chest pain, dyspnoea, collapse). Review drug history. Ask about past medical history and family history of cardiac disease.

Tests FBC, U&E, glucose, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , TSH. ECG (see BOX): Look for signs of IHD, AF, short PR interval (WPW syndrome), long QT interval (metabolic imbalance, drugs, congenital), U waves (hypokalaemia). 24h ECG monitoring; several recordings may be needed. Echo: Any structural heart disease, eg mitral stenosis, HCM? Provocation tests: Exercise ECG, cardiac catheterization \pm electrophysiological studies may be needed.

Treatment If the ECG is normal during palpitations, reassure the patient. Otherwise, treatment depends on the type of arrhythmia.

Bradycardia: (p119) If asymptomatic and rate >40 bpm, no treatment is required. Look for a cause (drugs, sick sinus syndrome, hypothyroidism) and stop any drugs that may be contributing (β -blocker, digoxin). If rate <40 bpm or patient is symptomatic, give atropine 0.6–1.2mg IV (up to maximum of 3mg). If no response, insert a temporary pacing wire (p814). If necessary, start an isoprenaline infusion or use external cardiac pacing.

Sick sinus syndrome: Sinus node dysfunction causes bradycardia \pm arrest, sinoatrial block or SVT alternating with bradycardia/asystole (tachy-brady syndrome). AF and thromboembolism may occur. Pace if symptomatic.

SVT: (p120) Narrow complex tachycardia (rate >100 bpm, QRS width <120 ms). Acute management: vagotonic manoeuvres followed by IV adenosine or verapamil (if not on β -blocker); DC shock if compromised. Maintenance therapy: β -blockers or verapamil.

AF/flutter: (p124) May be incidental finding. Control ventricular rate with β -blocker, or verapamil. Alternatives: digoxin: loading dose ($\sim 500\mu\text{g}/12\text{h} \times 2-3$) followed by maintenance dose ($0.125-0.25\mu\text{g}/24\text{h}$), or amiodarone. Flecainide for pre-excited AF (caution if structural heart disease). DC shock if compromised (p784).

VT: (p122 and **ECG 6** p100) Broad complex tachycardia (rate >100 bpm, QRS duration >120 ms). Acute management: IV amiodarone or IV lidocaine, if no response or if compromised DC shock. Oral therapy: amiodarone loading dose ($200\text{mg}/8\text{h}$ po for 7d, then $200\text{mg}/12\text{h}$ for 7d) followed by maintenance therapy ($200\text{mg}/24\text{h}$). SE: Corneal deposits, photosensitivity, hepatitis, pneumonitis, lung fibrosis, nightmares, INR \uparrow (warfarin potentiation), $T_4\uparrow$, $T_3\downarrow$. Monitor LFT and TFT.

► Finally, permanent pacing may be used to overdrive tachyarrhythmias, to treat bradyarrhythmias, or prophylactically in conduction disturbances (p126). Implanted automatic defibrillators can save lives.





First degree AV block. P-R interval = 0.28s



Mobitz type I (Wenckebach) AV block. With each successive QRS, the P-R interval increases-until there is a non-conducted P wave.



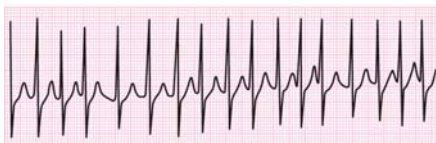
Mobitz type II AV block. Ratio of AV conduction varies from 2:1 to 3:1



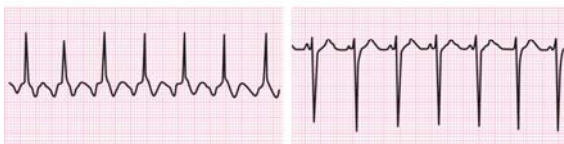
Complete AV block with narrow ventricular complex. There is no relation between atrial and the slower ventricular activity.



Atrial fibrillation



Atrial fibrillation with a rapid ventricular response. Diagnosis is based on the totally irregular ventricular rhythm.



Atrial flutter with 2:1 AV block. Lead aVF (on left) shows the characteristic saw-tooth baseline whereas lead V1 (on right) shows discrete atrial activity, alternate 'F' waves being superimposed on ventricular T waves.

Fig 1. ECG diagnosis of bradycardias, AV block, and atrial fibrillation



Definition ECG shows rate of >100bpm and QRS complex duration of <120ms.

Differential diagnosis

- Sinus tachycardia: normal P wave followed by normal QRS.
- Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT): P wave absent or inverted after QRS.
- AF: absent P wave, irregular QRS complexes.
- Atrial flutter: atrial rate usually 300bpm giving 'flutter waves' or 'sawtooth' baseline (p119), ventricular rate often 150bpm (2:1 block).
- Atrial tachycardia: abnormally shaped P waves, may outnumber QRS.
- Multifocal atrial tachycardia: 3 or more P wave morphologies, irregular QRS complexes.
- Junctional tachycardia: rate 150–250bpm, P wave either buried in QRS complex or occurring after QRS complex.

Principles of management See p818.

- If the patient is compromised, use DC cardioversion (p784).
- Otherwise, identify the underlying rhythm and treat accordingly.
- Vagal manoeuvres (carotid sinus massage, Valsalva manoeuvre) transiently increase AV block, and may unmask an underlying atrial rhythm.
- If unsuccessful, give adenosine which causes transient AV block. It has a short $t_{1/2}$ (10–15s) and works in 2 ways: by transiently slowing ventricles to show underlying atrial rhythm and by cardioverting a junctional tachycardia to sinus rhythm.

Adenosine dose: Give 6mg IV bolus (2s) into a big vein; follow by saline flush, while recording a rhythm strip; if unsuccessful, after 1–2min, give 12mg, then 12mg again, unless on dipyridamole or post cardiac transplantation (change dose, see *BNF*). Warn of SE: transient chest tightness, dyspnoea, headache, flushing. CI: asthma, 2nd/3rd degree AV block, or sinoatrial disease (unless pacemaker). Drug interactions: potentiated by dipyridamole, antagonized by theophylline. Transplanted hearts are very sensitive; use a smaller dose.

Specific management Sinus tachycardia Identify and treat the cause (p92).

SVT: Vagal manoeuvres (breath-holding, valsalva manoeuvre, carotid massage) are 1st line treatments if haemodynamically stable. IV adenosine is the drug of choice. If adenosine fails, use verapamil 5mg IV over 2min, or over 3min if elderly (▶not if already on β -blocker). If no response, give further dose of 5mg IV after 5–10min. Alternatives: atenolol 2.5mg IV at 1mg/min repeated at 5min intervals to a maximum of 10mg or sotalol 20–60mg (if eGFR >60) IV over 10min. If no good, use DC cardioversion.

AF/flutter: Manage along standard lines (p124).

Atrial tachycardia: Rare. If due to digoxin toxicity, stop digoxin; consider digoxin-specific antibody fragments (p854). Maintain K^+ at 4–5mmol/L.

Multifocal atrial tachycardia: Most commonly occurs in COPD. There are at least 3 morphologically distinct P waves with irregular P-P intervals. Correct hypoxia and hypercapnia. Consider verapamil or a β -blocker if rate remains >110bpm.

Junctional tachycardia: There are 3 types of junctional tachycardia: AV nodal re-entry tachycardia (AVNRT), AV re-entry tachycardia (AVRT), and His bundle tachycardia. Where anterograde conduction through the AV node occurs, vagal manoeuvres are worth trying. Adenosine will usually cardiovert a junctional rhythm to sinus rhythm. If it recurs, treat with a β -blocker or amiodarone. Radiofrequency ablation is increasingly being used in AVRT and in many patients with symptomatic AVNRT.⁴³

WPW syndrome (Wolff-Parkinson-White; ECG p125) Caused by congenital accessory conduction pathway between atria and ventricles. Resting ECG shows short PR interval, wide QRS complex (due to slurred upstroke or 'delta wave') and ST-T changes. 2 types: WPW type A (+ve δ wave in V_1), WPW type B (–ve δ wave in V_1). Patients present with SVT which may be due to an AVRT, pre-excited AF, or pre-excited atrial flutter. Refer to cardiologist for electrophysiology and ablation of accessory pathway.

Holiday heart syndrome^{44,45}

Binge drinking in a person *without* any clinical evidence of heart disease may result in acute cardiac rhythm and/or conduction disturbances, which is called holiday heart syndrome (note that recreational use of marijuana may have similar effects). The most common rhythm disorder is supraventricular tachyarrhythmia, and particularly AF (consider this diagnosis in patients without structural heart disease who present with new-onset AF).

The prognosis is excellent, especially in young patients without structural heart disease. As holiday heart syndrome resolves rapidly by abstinence from alcohol use, advise all patients against the excessive use of alcohol in future.



ECG shows rate of >100 and QRS complexes $>120\text{ms}$ (>3 small squares, p90). If no clear QRS complexes, it is VF or asystole, p766.

Principles of management

- Identify the underlying rhythm and treat accordingly.
- If in doubt, treat as ventricular tachycardia (VT)—the commonest cause.

Differential diagnosis

- VT; includes *torsade de pointes*, below, and **figs 3–5**.
- Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) with aberrant conduction, eg AF, atrial flutter.

(NB: ventricular ectopics should not cause confusion when occurring singly; but if >3 together at rate of >120 , this constitutes VT.)

Identification of the underlying rhythm may be difficult; seek expert help. Diagnosis is based on the history (IHD increases the likelihood of a ventricular arrhythmia), a 12-lead ECG, and the lack of response to IV adenosine (p120). ECG findings in favour of VT:

- Positive QRS concordance in chest leads
- Marked left axis deviation
- AV dissociation (occurs in 25%) or 2:1 or 3:1 AV block
- Fusion beats or capture beats (**fig 2**)
- Also bear in mind the hard-to-remember QRS Brugada criteria (see BOX)

Concordance means QRS complexes are all +ve or -ve. A **fusion beat** is when a 'normal beat' fuses with a VT complex to create an unusual complex, and a **capture beat** is a normal QRS between abnormal beats (see **fig 1**).

Management Connect to a cardiac monitor; have a defibrillator to hand.

Ventricular fibrillation (VF) Pulseless or unstable VT ►► Use asynchronized DC shock (p784); see also the European Resuscitation Guidelines (see inside back cover).

Stable VT:

- Give high-flow oxygen by face mask.
- Obtain IV access. Send U&E, cardiac enzymes, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} . Correct low K^{+} or Mg^{2+} .
- Obtain 12-lead ECG.
- ABG (if evidence of pulmonary oedema, reduced conscious level, sepsis).
- Amiodarone IVI as on page 124. Phlebitis may result if peripheral line used, especially if concentration $>2\text{mg/mL}$. Rarely, lidocaine 50mg over 2min instead, followed by infusion; see *BNF*.
- If polymorphic (*torsade de pointes*) magnesium sulphate 2g over 5min.
- If this fails, or if cardiac arrest, use DC shock (p806 and inside back cover).
- After correction of VT, establish the cause from history/investigations.
- Maintenance antiarrhythmic therapy may be required, eg amiodarone.
- Prevention of recurrent VT: implantation of automatic defibrillators (ICD) may help. In refractory cases radiofrequency ventricular tachycardia ablation may be tried.

Ventricular extrasystoles (ectopics) are the commonest post-MI arrhythmia; they are also seen in health ($\geq 10/\text{h}$). Post-MI they suggest electrical instability, and the risk is VF if the 'R on T' pattern (ie no gap before the T wave) is seen (see **fig 1**). If frequent ($>10/\text{min}$), consider amiodarone IV as above. Otherwise, just observe patient.

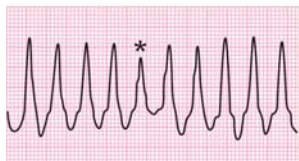
Torsade de pointes: Looks like VF but is VT with varying axis (see **fig 4**). It is due to QT interval (an SE of antiarrhythmics, so consider stopping). R : magnesium sulphate, 2g IV over 10min \pm overdrive pacing.

Fig 1. Ventricular extrasystoles may be intermittent, or have a fixed association with the preceding normal beat, ie 1:2 (bigeminy, as here) or 1:3 (trigeminy).





(a) A capture beat (*).



(b) A fusion beat (*).

Fig 2. Fusion and capture beats.

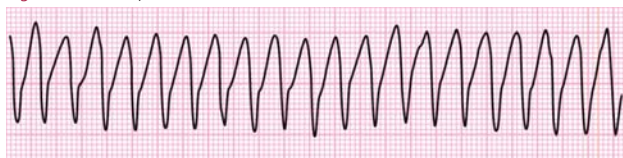


Fig 3. VT with a rate of 235/min.

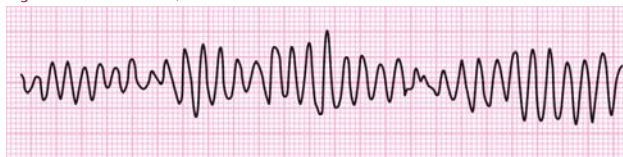


Fig 4. VF (p806).

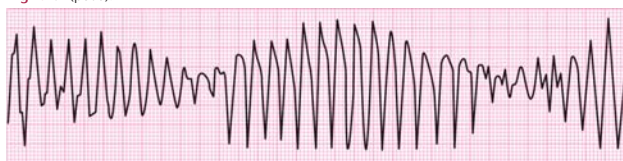


Fig 5. Torsade de pointes tachycardia.

The Brugada criteria may help differentiate SVT from VT...⁴⁶

Broad complexes + RBBB-like QRS

Lead V_1 :

- Monophasic R or QR or RS favours VT
- Triphasic RSR favours SVT

Lead V_6 :

- R to S ratio <1 (R wave $<$ S wave) favours VT
- QS or QR favours VT
- Monophasic R favours VT
- Triphasic favours SVT
- R to S ratio >1 (R wave $>$ S wave) favours SVT

Broad complexes + LBBB-like QRS

Lead V_1 or V_2 :

Any of these:

- R >30 ms
- >60 ms to nadir S
- Notched S favours VT

Lead V_6 :

- Presence of any Q wave, QR or QS favours VT
- No Q wave in lead V_6 favours SVT

A chaotic, irregular atrial rhythm at 300–600bpm; the AV node responds intermittently, hence an irregular ventricular rate. Cardiac output drops by 10–20% as the ventricles aren't primed reliably by the atria. AF is common in the elderly ($\leq 9\%$). The main risk is embolic stroke. Warfarin reduces this to 1%/yr from 4%. So, *do an ECG on everyone with an irregular pulse* (± 24 h ECG if dizzy, faints, palpitations, etc.).

Causes Heart failure/ischaemia; hypertension; MI (seen in 22%);⁴⁸ PE; mitral valve disease; pneumonia; hyperthyroidism; caffeine; alcohol; post-op; K^+ ↓; Mg^{2+} ↓.⁴⁹ **Rare causes:** Cardiomyopathy; constrictive pericarditis; sick sinus syndrome; lung ca.; atrial myxoma; endocarditis; haemochromatosis; sarcoid. 'Lone' AF means no cause found.

Symptoms May be asymptomatic or cause chest pain, palpitations, dyspnoea, or faintness. **Signs** *Irregularly irregular pulse*, the apical pulse rate is greater than the radial rate and the 1st heart sound is of variable intensity; signs of LVF (p812).

► Examine the whole patient: AF is *often* associated with non-cardiac disease.

Tests ECG shows absent P waves, irregular QRS complexes. **Blood tests:** U&E, cardiac enzymes, thyroid function tests. Consider echo to look for left atrial enlargement, mitral valve disease, poor LV function, and other structural abnormalities.

Acute AF (≤ 48 h)

If *very ill* or *haemodynamically unstable*: ► O_2 ► U&E ► Emergency cardioversion; if unavailable try IV amiodarone. Do not delay treatment in order to start anticoagulation. Treat associated illnesses (eg MI, pneumonia). Control ventricular rate: 1st-line verapamil (40–120mg/8h po) or bisoprolol (2.5–5.0mg/d po). 2nd-line: digoxin or amiodarone. Start full anticoagulation with LMWH, to keep options open for cardioversion even if the 48h time limit is running out.⁵⁰ If the 48h period has elapsed, cardioversion is OK if transoesophageal echo thrombus-free.

Cardioversion regimen: ► O_2 ► ITU/CCU ► GA or IV sedation, monophasic ► 200J ► 360J ► 360J (biphasic; 200J). Relapses back into AF are common. **Drug cardioversion** is often preferred: amiodarone IV (5mg/kg over 1h then ~900mg over 24h via a central line) or po (200mg/8h for 1wk, 200mg/12h for 1wk, 100–200mg/24h maintenance). Alternative (if stable and no known IHD or WPW p120): flecainide (a strong negative inotrope) 2mg/kg IV over 10–30min, max 150mg (or 300mg po stat); monitor ECG.

Chronic AF

Main goals in managing permanent AF are *rate control* and *anticoagulation*. Rate control is at least as good as rhythm control,⁵¹ but rhythm control may be appropriate if • symptomatic or CCF • younger • presenting for 1st time with lone AF • AF from a corrected precipitant (eg U&Et↓). **Anticoagulation** see BOX 1.

Rate control β -blocker or rate-limiting Ca^{2+} blocker are 1st choice. If this fails, add digoxin (p108), then consider amiodarone. Digoxin as monotherapy in chronic AF is only OK in sedentary patients. ► *Don't give β -blockers with diltiazem or verapamil without expert advice* (bradycardia risk). Don't get fixated on a single figure to aim at: dialogue with patients tells what works best and allows desired exercise levels, eg <90 at rest and on exertion 200–age (yrs) if ambulatory.

Rhythm control If cardioversion is chosen, do echo 1st; pre-treat for ≥ 4 wks with sotalol or amiodarone if there is risk of cardioversion failure (past failure, or past recurrence). Pharmacological cardioversion: flecainide is 1st choice if no structural heart disease (IV amiodarone if structural heart disease). AV node ablation, maze procedure, pacing, and pulmonary vein ablation are options to ask about.⁵²

Paroxysmal AF 'pill in the pocket' (eg sotalol or flecainide PRN) may be tried if: infrequent AF, BP >100mmHg systolic, no past LV dysfunction. Anticoagulate (BOX 1).

Atrial flutter ECG: continuous atrial depolarization (eg ~300/min, but very variable) produces a sawtooth baseline $\pm 2 : 1$ AV block (as if SVT at, eg 150bpm). Carotid sinus massage and IV adenosine transiently block the AV node and may unmask flutter waves.

Treatment: Cardioversion may be indicated (anticoagulate before, see p125). Anti-AF drugs may not work—but consider amiodarone to restore sinus rhythm, and amiodarone or sotalol to maintain it. Aim to control rate as above; if the IV route is needed, a β -blocker is preferred (eg p819). Rarely, cavotricuspid isthmus ablation.⁵



Anticoagulation and AF

Acute AF: Use *heparin* until a full risk assessment for emboli (see below) is made—eg AF started <48h ago and elective cardioversion is being planned (if >48h, ensure ≥ 3 wks of therapeutic anticoagulation before elective cardioversion; NB trans-oesophageal-guided cardioversion is also an option here). Use *warfarin* (target INR: 2.5; range 2–3) if risk of emboli **high** (past ischaemic stroke, TIA or emboli; ≥ 75 yrs with BPT, DM; coronary or peripheral arterial disease; evidence of valve disease or \downarrow LV function/ccf—only do echo if unsure).⁵³ Use *no anticoagulation* if **stable** sinus rhythm has been restored and no risk factors for emboli, and AF recurrence unlikely (ie no failed cardioversions, no structural heart disease, no previous recurrences, no sustained AF for >1yr).

Chronic AF: Anticoagulate with *warfarin* and aim for an INR of 2–3.⁵⁴ Less good alternative is *aspirin* ~ 300 mg/d PO—eg if warfarin contraindicated or at very low risk of emboli (<65yrs, and no hypertension, diabetes, LV dysfunction, \uparrow LA size, rheumatic valve disease, MI, or past TIA). *CI to warfarin in AF:*⁵⁵ Bleeding diathesis; platelets $< 50 \times 10^9/L$; BP $> 160/90$ (consistently); compliance issues around dosing or INR monitoring; patient choice, after risks discussed. Factors such as age ≥ 75 –80yrs old, frequent falls, on NSAIDs, past intracranial bleeds, Hb \downarrow , and polypharmacy may be considered *CI* but are less evidence-based. Risk of major bleeds is $\sim 13/100$ -person-yrs if ≥ 80 yrs old (4 if <80yrs).^{56,57} **►** Discuss with patient: let him decide. The CHA₂DS₂-VASc⁵⁸ score quantifies risk of stroke and may help in decision making. **Dabigatran:** This is a direct thrombin inhibitor which doesn't need regular lab monitoring and dose adjustment. Despite its expense, it may be an alternative to warfarin (eg if warfarin is declined or has SE/CI, or monitoring INR is intrusive). In one trial, 110mg/12h PO was as good as warfarin in preventing stroke and emboli in AF, and it caused fewer bleeding problems.⁵⁹ *CI:* severe renal/liver impairment; active bleeding; lesion at risk of bleeding; \downarrow clotting factors. Warn to report signs of bleeding. Interactions: heparin, clopidogrel, NSAIDs, GPIIb/IIIa antagonists, p-glycoprotein inhibitors (verapamil, amiodarone, clarithromycin), etc. \downarrow Dose if eGFR < 50 (avoid if < 30).

CHA₂DS₂-VASc SCORE⁵⁸

- Score 1 point for each of: heart failure, diabetes, hypertension, vascular disease, aged > 65 , female; AND 2 points for: age ≥ 75 , or prior TIA, stroke/thromboembolism. A score of 2 = an annual stroke risk of $\sim 2.2\%$.
- If the score is 1 or more (or 2 or more if older) consider oral anticoagulation.

Bleeding risk can also be calculated, eg HEMORR2HAGES or HAS-BLED scores. See also CHADS₂ score (p477)



Fig 1. Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome. ECG of WPW syndrome (p120) in 1st and 4th beats; compared with the other beats, it can be seen how the delta wave both broadens the ventricular complex and shortens the PR interval. **►** If WPW is the underlying cause of AF, avoid AV node blockers such as diltiazem, verapamil and digoxin—but flecainide may be used.

Pacemakers supply electrical initiation to myocardial contraction. The pacemaker lies subcutaneously where it may be programmed through the skin as necessary. Pacemakers usually last 5–10yrs, but usually only the box needs replacing.

Indications for temporary cardiac pacing

- Symptomatic bradycardia, unresponsive to atropine.
 - After acute *anterior* MI, prophylactic pacing is required in:
 - Complete AV block
 - Mobitz type I AV block (Wenckebach)
 - Mobitz type II AV block
 - Non-adjacent bifascicular,¹ or trifascicular block (p94).
 - After *inferior* MI, pacing may not be needed in complete AV block if reasonably stable, rate is >40–50, and QRS complexes are narrow.
 - Suppression of drug-resistant tachyarrhythmias, eg SVT, VT.
 - Special situations: During general anaesthesia; during cardiac surgery; during electrophysiological studies; drug overdose (eg digoxin, β -blockers, verapamil).
- ▶ See p790 for further details and insertion technique.

Indications for a permanent pacemaker

- Complete AV block (Stokes–Adams attacks, asymptomatic, congenital)
- Mobitz type II AV block (p119)
- Persistent AV block after anterior MI
- Symptomatic bradycardias (eg sick sinus syndrome, p118)
- Heart failure (cardiac resynchronization)
- Drug-resistant tachyarrhythmias

Some say persistent bifascicular block after MI requires a permanent system: this remains controversial.

Pre-operative assessment: FBC, clotting screen, hepatitis B status. Insert IV cannula. Consent for procedure under local anaesthetic. Consider pre-medication. Give anti-biotic cover (eg flucloxacillin 500mg IM and benzylpenicillin 600mg IM) 20min before, and 1 and 6h after.

Post-op management: Prior to discharge, check wound for bleeding or haematoma; check position on CXR; check pacemaker function. During 1st week, inspect for wound haematoma or dehiscence. Count apical rate (p37): if this is ≥ 6 bpm below the rate quoted for the pacemaker, suspect malfunction. Other problems: lead fracture; pacemaker interference (eg from patient's muscles). Driving rules: p152.

Pacemaker letter codes These enable pacemaker identification (min is 3 letters):

- 1st letter the chamber paced (A=atria, V=ventricles, D=dual chamber).
- 2nd letter the chamber sensed (A=atria, V=ventricles, D=dual chamber, O=none).
- 3rd letter the pacemaker response (T=triggered, I=inhibited, D=dual, R=reverse).
- 4th letter, P=programmable; M=multiprogrammable.
- 5th letter, P means that in tachycardia the pacemaker will pace the patient. S means that in tachycardia the pacemaker shocks the patient. D=dual ability to pace and shock. O=neither of these.
- VVI pacemakers are the most frequently used in the UK. DDD pacemakers are the only pacemakers that sense and pace both chambers.

Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT)⁶⁰ improves the synchronization of cardiac contraction and reduces mortality⁶¹ in people with symptomatic heart failure who have an ejection fraction <35% and a QRS duration >120ms. It involves biventricular pacing (both septal and lateral walls of the LV) and if required also an atrial lead. It may be combined with a defibrillator.

ECG of paced rhythm: (ECG 7 p101, and fig 1 for rhythm strip) If the system is on 'demand' of 60bpm, a pacing spike is only seen if the intrinsic rate is <60. If seen at a higher rate, the sensing mode is malfunctioning. If it is not pacing at lower rates, the pacing mode is malfunctioning, eg lead dislodged, or faulty. If you see spikes but no capture (ie no systole), suspect dislodgement.

¹ Non-adjacent = RBBB + L posterior hemiblock, or alternating bundle branch block (p94).



Fig 1. ECG of paced rhythm.

Some confusing pacemaker terms

Fusion beat: Union of native depolarization and pacemaker impulse.

Pseudofusion: The pacemaker impulse occurs just after cardiac depolarization, so it is ineffective, but it distorts the QRS morphology.

Pseudopseudofusion beat: If a DVI pacemaker gives an atrial spike within a native QRS complex, the atrial output is non-contributory.

Pacemaker syndrome: In single-chamber pacing, retrograde conduction to the atria, which then contract during ventricular systole. This leads to retrograde flow in pulmonary veins, and ↓cardiac output, dyspnoea, palpitations, malaise, and even syncope.

Pacemaker tachycardia: In dual-chamber pacing, a short-circuit loop goes between the electrodes, causing an artificial WPW-like syndrome. Solution: Single-chamber pacing. For ECG images, see www.monroecc.edu/depts/pstc/backup/paracar6.htm



Definition Cardiac output is inadequate for the body's requirements. Prognosis is poor with ~25–50% of patients dying within 5yrs of diagnosis.

Prevalence 1–3% of the general population; ~10% among elderly patients.⁶⁴

Systolic versus diastolic failure *Systolic failure*: inability of the ventricle to contract normally, resulting in ↓cardiac output. Ejection fraction (EF) is <40%. Causes: IHD, MI, cardiomyopathy. *Diastolic failure*: inability of the ventricle to relax and fill normally, causing ↑filling pressures. EF is >50%. Causes: constrictive pericarditis, tamponade, restrictive cardiomyopathy, hypertension. NB: systolic and diastolic failure usually coexist.

Left-sided versus right-sided failure *Left ventricular failure* (LVF) and *right ventricular failure* (RVF) may occur independently, or together as *congestive cardiac failure* (CCF).

Left ventricular failure: Symptoms: Dyspnoea, poor exercise tolerance, fatigue, orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND), nocturnal cough (±pink frothy sputum), wheeze (cardiac 'asthma'), nocturia, cold peripheries, weight loss, muscle wasting.

Right ventricular failure: Causes: LVF, pulmonary stenosis, lung disease. Symptoms: Peripheral oedema (up to thighs, sacrum, abdominal wall), ascites, nausea, anorexia, facial engorgement, pulsation in neck and face (tricuspid regurgitation), epistaxis.

Acute versus chronic heart failure *Acute heart failure* is often used exclusively to mean new onset acute or decompensation of chronic heart failure characterized by pulmonary and/or peripheral oedema with or without signs of peripheral hypoperfusion. *Chronic heart failure* develops or progresses slowly. Venous congestion is common but arterial pressure is well maintained until very late.

Low-output versus high-output failure *Low-output heart failure*: Cardiac output is ↓ and fails to ↑normally with exertion. **Causes**: *Pump failure*: Systolic and/or diastolic HF (see above), ↓heart rate (eg β-blockers, heart block, post MI), negatively inotropic drugs (eg most antiarrhythmic agents). *Excessive preload*: eg mitral regurgitation or fluid overload (eg NSAID causing fluid retention). Fluid overload may cause LVF in a normal heart if renal excretion is impaired or big volumes are involved (eg IVI running too fast). More common if there is simultaneous compromise of cardiac function, and in the elderly. *Chronic excessive afterload*: eg aortic stenosis, hypertension.

High-output heart failure: This is rare. Here, output is normal or increased in the face of ↑needs. Failure occurs when cardiac output fails to meet these needs. It will occur with a normal heart, but even earlier if there is heart disease. **Causes**: Anaemia, pregnancy, hyperthyroidism, Paget's disease, arteriovenous malformation, beri beri. **Consequences**: Initially features of RVF; later LVF becomes evident.

Signs To diagnose there should be symptoms of failure and objective evidence of cardiac dysfunction (at rest). Diagnosis can be made using *Framingham* criteria (see BOX).⁶⁵ Other signs: exhaustion, cool peripheries, cyanosis, ↓BP, narrow pulse pressure, pulsus alternans, displaced apex (LV dilatation), RV heave (pulmonary hypertension), murmurs of mitral or aortic valve disease, wheeze (cardiac asthma).

Investigations According to NICE,⁶² if ECG and B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP; p131) are normal, heart failure is unlikely, and an alternative diagnosis should be considered; if either is abnormal, then echocardiography (p106) is required.

Tests: FBC; U&E; BNP; CXR: cardiomegaly (cardiothoracic ratio >50%), prominent upper lobe veins (upper lobe diversion), peribronchial cuffing, diffuse interstitial or alveolar shadowing, classical perihilar 'bat's wing' shadowing, fluid in the fissures, pleural effusions, septal (formerly called 'Kerley B') lines (variously attributed to interstitial oedema⁶⁶ and engorged peripheral lymphatics⁶⁷). ECG may indicate cause (look for evidence of ischaemia, MI, or ventricular hypertrophy). It is rare to get a completely normal ECG in chronic heart failure. *Echocardiography* is the key investigation.⁶⁸ It may indicate the cause (MI, valvular heart disease) and can confirm the presence or absence of LV dysfunction. *Endomyocardial biopsy* is rarely needed.

Prognosis If admission is needed, 5yr mortality ~75%. Don't be dogmatic: in one study, 54% of those dying in the next 72h had been expected to live for >6months.⁶⁹



Framingham criteria for congestive cardiac failure (ccf)

Diagnosis of ccf requires the simultaneous presence of at least 2 major criteria or 1 major criterion in conjunction with 2 minor criteria.

Major criteria

- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea
- Neck vein distention
- Crepitations
- Acute pulmonary oedema
- S₃ gallop
- Hepatojugular reflux
- Cardiomegaly (cardiothoracic ratio >50% on chest radiography)
- Increased central venous pressure (>16cmH₂O at right atrium)
- Weight loss >4.5kg in 5 days in response to treatment

Minor criteria

- Bilateral ankle oedema
- Nocturnal cough
- Dyspnoea on ordinary exertion
- Hepatomegaly
- Tachycardia (heart rate >120/min)
- Pleural effusion
- Decrease in vital capacity by 1/3 from maximum recorded

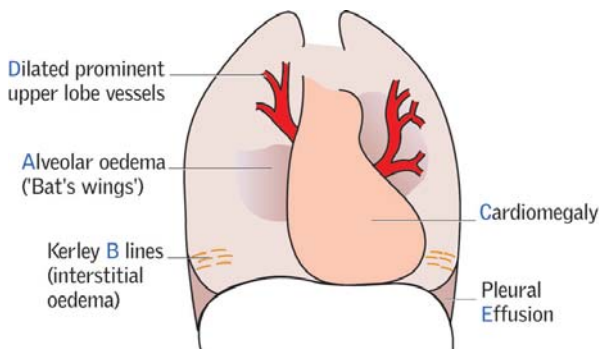


Fig 1. The CXR in left ventricular failure. These features can be remembered as **A B C D E**. See also **Fig 2** p737.

Acute heart failure ►► This is a medical emergency (p812).

Chronic heart failure ► Stop smoking. Eat less salt. Optimize weight & nutrition.

- Treat the cause (eg if dysrhythmias; valve disease).
- Treat exacerbating factors (anaemia, thyroid disease, infection, ↑BP).
- Avoid exacerbating factors, eg NSAIDs (fluid retention) and verapamil (–ve inotrope).
- Drugs: the following are used:

1 Diuretics: Diuretics can reduce the risk of death and worsening heart failure.⁷⁰ Give loop diuretics to relieve symptoms, eg **furosemide** 40mg/24h po or **bumetanide** 1–2mg/24h po. Increase dose as necessary. SE: K⁺↓, renal impairment. Monitor u&e and add K⁺-sparing diuretic (eg **spironolactone**) if K⁺ <3.2mmol/L, predisposition to arrhythmias, concurrent digoxin therapy (↓K⁺ increases risk of digoxin toxicity), or pre-existing K⁺-losing conditions. If refractory oedema, consider adding a thiazide, eg **metolazone** 5–20mg/24h po.

2 ACE-i: Consider in all those with left ventricular systolic dysfunction; improves symptoms and prolongs life (see p108). If cough is a problem, an **angiotensin receptor blocker** (ARB) may be substituted (eg **candesartan** 4mg/d; max 32mg po). SE: ↑K⁺.

3 β-blockers (eg **carvedilol**) decrease mortality in heart failure.⁷¹ These benefits appear to be additional to those of ACE-i in patients with heart failure due to LV dysfunction.⁷² Initiate after diuretic and ACE-i. Use with caution: 'start low and go slow'; if in doubt seek specialist advice first (eg **carvedilol** 3.125mg/12h → 25–50mg/12h); wait ≥2weeks between each dose increment. Beta-blocker therapy in patients hospitalized with decompensated heart failure is associated with lower post-discharge mortality risk and improved treatment rates.⁷³

4 Spironolactone: Spironolactone (25mg/24h po) ↓mortality by 30% when added to conventional therapy.⁷⁴ Use in those still symptomatic despite optimal therapy as listed above. Spironolactone is K⁺-sparing, but there is little risk of significant hyperkalaemia, even when given with ACE-i.

5 Digoxin helps symptoms even in those with sinus rhythm,⁷⁵ and should be considered for patients with LV systolic dysfunction who have signs or symptoms of heart failure while receiving standard therapy, including ACE-i and β-blockers, or in patients with AF. Dose example: 125µg/24h po if sinus rhythm. Monitor u&e; maintain K⁺ at 4–5mmol/L. Digoxin levels: p766. Other inotropes are unhelpful in terms of outcome.

6 Vasodilators: The combination of **hydralazine** (SE: drug-induced lupus) and **isosorbide dinitrate** should be used if intolerant of ACE-i and ARBs as it reduces mortality. It also reduces mortality when added to standard therapy (including ACE-i) in Black patients with heart failure.⁷⁶

Intractable heart failure Reassess the cause. Are they taking the drugs?—at maximum dose? Switching furosemide to **bumetanide** (one 5mg tab≈200mg furosemide) might help: absorption may be better.⁷⁷ Consider admitting for:

- Strict bed rest ± Na⁺ & fluid restriction (≤1.5L/24h po).^{78,79}
- Metolazone (as above) and IV furosemide (p812).
- Opiates and IV nitrates may relieve symptoms (p812).
- Weigh daily. Do frequent u&e (beware K⁺↓).
- Give DVT prophylaxis: heparin + TED stockings (p580).

In extremis, try IV inotropes (p814; it may be difficult to wean patients off them).

Consider cardiac resynchronization (p126), LV assist device, or transplantation.

Palliative care Treat/prevent comorbidities (eg flu vaccination). Good nutrition (allow alcohol!). Involve GP: continuity of care and discussion of prognosis is much appreciated.⁸⁰ Dyspnoea, pain (from liver capsule stretching), nausea, constipation, and ↓mood all need tackling.⁸¹ Opiates help pain and dyspnoea. O₂ may help.



New York classification of heart failure: summary

- I** Heart disease present, but no undue dyspnoea from ordinary activity.
- II** Comfortable at rest; dyspnoea on ordinary activities.
- III** Less than ordinary activity causes dyspnoea, which is limiting.
- IV** Dyspnoea present at rest; all activity causes discomfort.

Natriuretic peptides

Secretory granules have long been known to exist in the atria, and if homogenized atrial tissue is injected into rats, their urine volume (and Na^+ excretion) rises. This is evidence of endocrine action via the effects of atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP). BNP is a similar hormone originally identified from pig brain (hence the B), but most BNP is secreted from ventricular myocardium. Plasma BNP is closely related to LV pressure. In MI and LV dysfunction, these hormones can be released in large quantities. Secretion is also increased by tachycardia, glucocorticoids, and thyroid hormones. Vasoactive peptides (endothelin-1, angiotensin II) also influence secretion. ANP and BNP both increase GFR and decrease renal Na^+ resorption; they also decrease preload by relaxing smooth muscle. ANP partly blocks secretion of renin and aldosterone.

BNP as a biomarker of heart failure ^{82,83,84} As plasma BNP reflects myocyte stretch, BNP is used to diagnose heart failure. \uparrow BNP distinguishes heart failure from other causes of dyspnoea more accurately than LV ejection fraction, ANP, and N-terminal ANP (sensitivity: $>90\%$; specificity: $80\text{--}90\%$). BNP is highest in decompensated heart failure, intermediate in left ventricular dysfunction but no acute heart failure exacerbation, and lowest if no heart failure or LV dysfunction.

What BNP threshold for diagnosing heart failure? If $\text{BNP} >100\text{ng/L}$, this 'diagnoses' heart failure better than other clinical variables or clinical judgement (history, examination, and CXR). BNP can be used to 'rule out' heart failure if $<50\text{ng/L}$ —negative predictive value (PV) 96% , ie the chance of BNP being $<50\text{ng/L}$ given that heart failure is absent in 96% , see p672.

In those with heart failure, BNP is higher in systolic dysfunction than in isolated diastolic dysfunction (eg hypertrophic or dilated cardiomyopathy), and is highest in those with systolic *and* diastolic dysfunction. BNP also increases in proportion to right ventricular dysfunction, eg in primary pulmonary hypertension, cor pulmonale, PE, and congenital heart disease, but rises are less than in left ventricular disorders.

Prognosis in heart failure: The higher the BNP, the higher the cardiovascular and all-cause mortality (independent of age, NYHA class, previous MI and LV ejection fraction). \uparrow BNP in heart failure is also associated with sudden death. Serial testing may be important: persistently \uparrow BNP despite vigorous antifailure treatment predicts adverse outcomes. In one study, those with heart failure randomized to get N-terminal BNP-guided (rather than symptom-guided) therapy had \downarrow adverse events.

Prognosis in angina and MI: BNP has some prognostic value here (adverse left ventricular remodelling; LV dysfunction; death post-MI).⁸⁵

Cautions with BNP: A $\text{BNP} >50\text{ng/L}$ does not exclude other co-existing diseases such as pneumonia. Also, assays vary, so liaise with your lab.



Hypertension⁸⁶ is a major risk factor for stroke and MI. It is usually asymptomatic, and regular screening (eg 3-yrly) is a *vital* primary care task. It causes ~50% of all vascular deaths (8×10^6 /yr). Most preventable deaths are in areas without universal screening.⁸⁷

Defining hypertension Blood pressure has a skewed normal distribution (p765) within the population, and risk is continuously related to blood pressure, so it is impossible to define 'hypertension'.⁸⁸ We choose to select a value above which risk is significantly increased and the benefit of treatment is clear cut, see below. Assess BP over a period of time (don't rely on a single reading). The 'observation' period depends on the BP and the presence of other risk factors or end-organ damage.

Whom to treat All with BP $\geq 160/100$ mmHg (sustained; p133). For those $\geq 140/90$, the decision depends on the risk of coronary events, presence of diabetes or end-organ damage; see **fig 1**. The recent HYVET study showed that there is even substantial benefit in treating the over-80s.⁸⁹

Isolated systolic hypertension (ISH): The most common form of hypertension in the UK—affects >50% of the over-60s, and results from stiffening of the large arteries (arteriosclerosis). It is not benign: doubles risk of MI, triples risk of CVA. Treatment reduces this excess risk and is as, if not more, effective than treating moderate hypertension in middle-aged patients.

'Malignant' or accelerated phase hypertension: Refers to a rapid rise in BP leading to vascular damage (pathological hallmark is fibrinoid necrosis). Usually there is severe hypertension (eg systolic >200, diastolic >130 mmHg) + bilateral retinal haemorrhages and exudates; papilloedema may or may not be present. Symptoms are common, eg headache \pm visual disturbance. Alone it requires urgent treatment. It may also precipitate acute renal failure, heart failure, or encephalopathy, which are hypertensive emergencies. Untreated, 90% die in 1 yr; treated, 70% survive 5 yrs. It is more common in younger patients and in black patients. Look hard for any underlying cause.

Essential hypertension (primary, cause unknown). ~95% of cases.

Secondary hypertension ~5% of cases. Causes include:

- **Renal disease:** The most common secondary cause. 75% are from *intrinsic renal disease*: glomerulonephritis, polyarteritis nodosa (PAN), systemic sclerosis, chronic pyelonephritis, or polycystic kidneys. 25% are due to *renovascular disease*, most frequently atheromatous (elderly σ cigarette smokers, eg with peripheral vascular disease) or rarely fibromuscular dysplasia (young σ).
- **Endocrine disease:** Cushing's (p216) and Conn's syndromes (p220), pheochromocytoma (p220), acromegaly, hyperparathyroidism.
- **Others:** Coarctation (p150), pregnancy (OHCS p48), steroids, MAOI, 'the Pill'.

Signs & symptoms Usually asymptomatic (except malignant hypertension, above). Headache is no more common than in the general population. Always examine the CVS fully and check for retinopathy. Are there features of an underlying cause (pheochromocytoma, p220, etc.), signs of renal disease, radiofemoral delay, or weak femoral pulses (coarctation), renal bruits, palpable kidneys, or Cushing's syndrome? Look for end-organ damage: LVH, retinopathy and proteinuria—indicates severity and duration of hypertension and associated with a poorer prognosis.

Tests To help quantify overall risk: Fasting glucose; cholesterol. **To look for end-organ damage:** ECG (any LV hypertrophy? past MI?); urine analysis (protein, blood). **To 'exclude' secondary causes:** U&E (eg K^+ \downarrow in Conn's); Ca^{2+} (\uparrow in hyperparathyroidism). **Special tests:** Renal ultrasound/arteriography (renal artery stenosis); 24h urinary metanephrines (p220); urinary free cortisol (p217); renin; aldosterone; MR aorta (coarctation). **24h ambulatory BP monitoring** (ABPM) may help sometimes, eg in 'white coat' or borderline hypertension, and is now recommended for all newly diagnosed hypertensive. Ambulatory readings are always lower; add on 10/5 mmHg (but NICE suggests simply 5/5) to 'convert' to clinic pressures for decision-making. **Echocardiography** may be useful to assess end-organ damage (LV hypertrophy)

Grading hypertensive retinopathy

- I** Tortuous arteries with thick shiny walls (silver or copper wiring, p562, **fig 1**)
- II** A-v nipping (narrowing where arteries cross veins, p562, **fig 2**)
- III** Flame haemorrhages and cotton-wool spots
- IV** Papilloedema, p562, **fig 3**.

Measuring BP with a sphygmomanometer

- Use the correct size cuff. The cuff width should be >40% of the arm circumference. The bladder should be centred over the brachial artery, and the cuff applied snugly. Support the arm in a horizontal position at mid-sternal level.
- Inflate the cuff while palpating the brachial artery, until the pulse disappears. This provides an estimate of systolic pressure.
- Inflate the cuff until 30mmHg above systolic pressure, then place stethoscope over the brachial artery. Deflate the cuff at 2mmHg/s.
- *Systolic pressure*: appearance of sustained repetitive tapping sounds (Korotkoff I).
- *Diastolic pressure*: usually the disappearance of sounds (Korotkoff V). However, in some individuals (eg pregnant women) sounds are present until the zero point. In this case, the muffling of sounds, Korotkoff IV, should be used. State which is used for a given reading. For children, see *OHCS* p156.
- For advice on using automated sphygmomanometers and a list of validated devices see http://www.bhsoc.org/how_to_measure_blood_pressure.stm.

Managing suspected hypertension⁸⁶

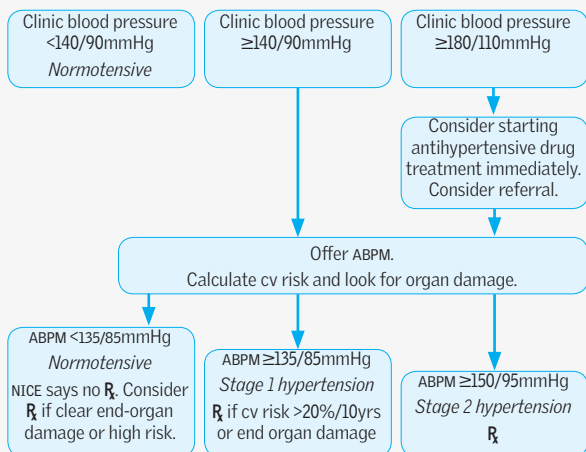


Fig 1. Managing suspected hypertension.

Target pressure is <140/90mmHg (150/90 if aged >80), but in diabetes mellitus aim for <130/80mmHg, and <125/75 if proteinuria. To quantify cv risk, see www.bhsoc.org. NB: CV threshold of 20% ≈ 15% for CHD alone. Examples of target (end-organ) damage: • LVH • PMH of MI or angina • PMH of stroke/TIA • Peripheral vascular disease • Renal failure.

Adapted from NICE CG127, 2011, with permission.

Look for and treat underlying causes⁸⁶ (eg renal disease, alcohol: see p132). Drug therapy reduces the risk of cardiovascular disease and death. Almost any adult over 50 would benefit from the antihypertensives below, *whatever their starting BP*.⁹⁰ Treatment is especially important if: BP is persistently $\geq 160/100$ mmHg or cardiovascular risk \uparrow (10yr risk of vascular disease $\geq 20\%$) or existing vascular disease or target organ damage (eg brain, kidney, heart, retina) with BP $>140/90$ mmHg. Essential hypertension is not 'curable' and long-term treatment is needed.

Treatment goal $<140/90$ mmHg ($<130/80$ in diabetes, $150/90$ if aged >80). Reduce blood pressure *slowly*; rapid reduction can be fatal, especially in the context of an acute stroke.

Lifestyle changes \downarrow Concomitant risk factors: stop smoking; low-fat diet. Reduce alcohol and salt intake; increase exercise; reduce weight if obese.

Drugs The ALLHAT study suggests that adequate BP reduction is more important than the specific drug used.⁹¹ However, β -blockers seem to be less effective than a comparator drug at reducing major cardiovascular events, particularly stroke. β -blockers and thiazides may increase the risk of new onset diabetes, Ca^{2+} channel blockers appear neutral, and ACE-i or ARB may reduce the risk.⁹²

Monotherapy If ≥ 55 yrs, and in Black patients of any age, 1st choice is a Ca^{2+} channel blocker or thiazide. If <55 , 1st choice is ACE-i (or ARB if ACE-i intolerant, eg cough). β -blockers are not 1st-line for hypertension, but consider in younger people, particularly: if intolerance or contraindication to ACE-i/ARB (angiotensin receptor blockers) exists, or she is a woman of child-bearing potential, or there is sympathetic drive.

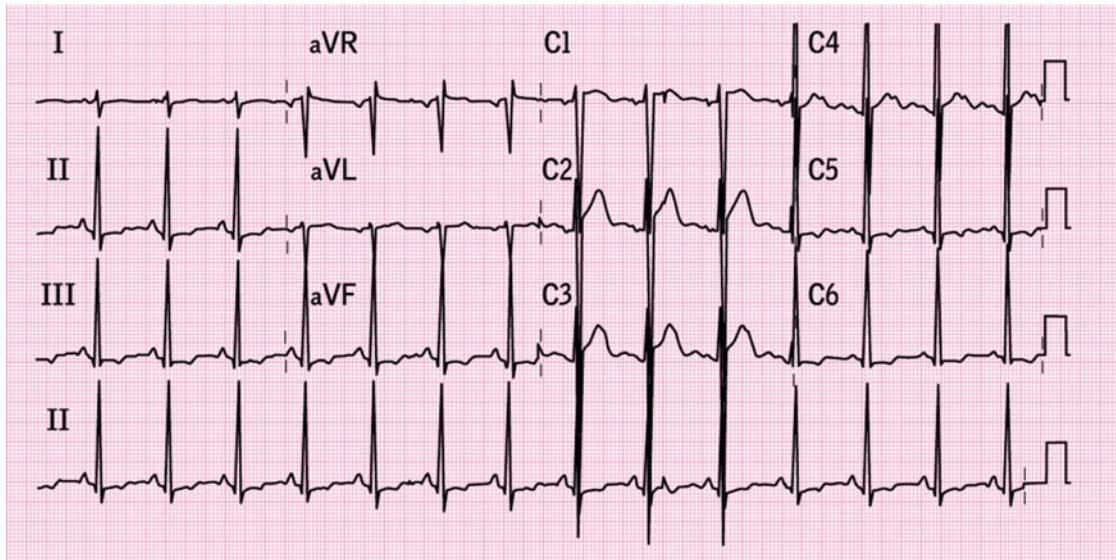
Combination therapy ACE-i + a Ca^{2+} -channel blocker or diuretic is logical, and has been commonly done in trials. There is little evidence on using 3 drugs so the recommendation is based on the most straightforward option:⁹² try ACE-i, Ca^{2+} -channel blocker and thiazide. If BP still uncontrolled on adequate doses of 3 drugs, add a 4th (consider: higher-dose thiazide, or another diuretic, eg spironolactone (monitor U&E), or β -blockers, or selective α -blockers) and get help. If only on a β -blocker and a 2nd drug is needed, add a Ca^{2+} blocker, not a thiazide, to \downarrow risk of developing diabetes.

Dose examples **Thiazides:** eg chlorthalidone 25–50mg/24h PO *mane*. SE: K^+ \downarrow , Na^+ \downarrow , impotence. CI: gout. **Ca^{2+} -channel blockers:** eg nifedipine MR, 30–60mg/24h PO. SE: flushes, fatigue, gum hyperplasia, ankle oedema; avoid short-acting form. **ACE-i:** eg lisinopril 10–40mg/24h PO (max 40mg/d). ACE-i may be 1st choice if co-existing LVF, or in diabetics (esp. if microalbuminuria, p309) or proteinuria. **SE:** cough, K^+ , renal failure, angio-oedema. CI: bilateral renal artery or aortic valve stenosis; p109. **ARB:** Candesartan (8–32mg/d); caution if valve disease or cardiomyopathy; monitor K^+ . SE: vertigo, urticaria, pruritus. **Direct renin inhibitors:** aliskiren (150–300mg/d); monitor K^+ . SE: diarrhoea, rash, $\uparrow \text{K}^+$. Avoid in CRF, DM, and with ACE-i or ARB. **β -blockers:** eg bisoprolol 2.5–5mg/24h PO. SE: bronchospasm, heart failure, cold peripheries, lethargy, impotence. CI: asthma; caution in heart failure. Consider **aspirin** when BP controlled, if aged >55 yrs. Add a **statin** (p704, esp. if other risk factors). \blacktriangleright Most drugs take 4–8wks to gain maximum effect: don't assess efficacy with just one BP measurement.

Malignant hypertension In general, use oral therapy, unless there is encephalopathy or ccf. The aim is for a controlled reduction in blood pressure over days, not hours. Avoid sudden drops in BP as cerebral autoregulation is poor (so stroke risk \uparrow). Bed rest; there is no ideal hypotensive, but atenolol or long-acting Ca^{2+} blockers may be used PO.

Encephalopathy (headache, focal CNS signs, seizures, coma): aim to reduce BP to ~ 110 mmHg diastolic over 4h. Admit to monitored area. Insert intra-arterial line for pressure monitoring. Furosemide 40–80mg IV; then either IV labetalol (eg 50mg IV over 1min, repeated every 5min, max 200mg) or sodium nitroprusside infusion (0.5 μ g/kg/min IVI titrated up to 8 μ g/kg/min, eg 50mg in 1L glucose 5%; expect to give 100–200mL/h for a few hours only, to avoid cyanide risk).

\blacktriangleright Never use sublingual nifedipine to reduce BP (\therefore big drop in BP and stroke risk).⁹³



ECG 8—Left ventricular hypertrophy—this is from a patient with malignant hypertension—note the sum of the s-wave in C2 and r-wave in C6 is greater than 35mm.



This systemic infection is still common in developing countries but increasingly rare in the West. Peak incidence: 5–15yrs. Tends to recur unless prevented. Pharyngeal infection with Lancefield group A β -haemolytic streptococci triggers rheumatic fever 2–4wks later, in the susceptible 2% of the population. An antibody to the carbohydrate cell wall of the streptococcus cross-reacts with valve tissue (antigenic mimicry) and may cause permanent damage to the heart valves.

Diagnosis Use the revised Jones criteria (may be over-rigorous). There must be evidence of recent strep infection plus 2 major criteria, or 1 major + 2 minor.

Evidence of group A β -haemolytic streptococcal infection:

- Positive throat culture (but this is usually negative by the time symptoms of rheumatic fever appear)
- Rapid streptococcal antigen test +ve
- Elevated or rising streptococcal antibody titre (eg ASO or DNase B titre)
- Recent scarlet fever

Major criteria:

- **Carditis:** Tachycardia, murmurs (mitral or aortic regurgitation, Carey Coombs' murmur, p44), pericardial rub, ccf, cardiomegaly, conduction defects (45–70%). An apical systolic murmur may be the only sign.⁹⁴
- **Arthritis:** A migratory, 'flitting' polyarthritis; usually affects larger joints (75%).
- **Subcutaneous nodules:** Small, mobile, painless nodules on extensor surfaces of joints and spine (2–20%).
- **Erythema marginatum:** (fig 1) Geographical-type rash with red, raised edges and clear centre; occurs mainly on trunk, thighs and arms in 2–10% (p564).
- **Sydenham's chorea (St Vitus' dance):** Occurs late in 10%. Unilateral or bilateral involuntary semi-purposeful movements. May be preceded by emotional lability and uncharacteristic behaviour.

Minor criteria:

- Fever
- Raised ESR or CRP
- Arthralgia (but not if arthritis is one of the major criteria)
- Prolonged PR interval (but not if carditis is major criterion)
- Previous rheumatic fever

Management

- Bed rest until CRP normal for 2wks (may be 3 months).
- Benzylpenicillin 0.6–1.2g IV stat, then penicillin V 250–500mg 4 times daily PO for 10 days (if allergic to penicillin, give erythromycin or azithromycin for 10 days).
- Analgesia for carditis/arthritis: aspirin 100mg/kg/d PO in divided doses (max 4–8g/d) for 2d, then 70mg/kg/d for 6wks. Monitor salicylate level. Toxicity causes tinnitus, hyperventilation, and metabolic acidosis. Alternative: NSAIDs (p548). If moderate-to-severe carditis is present (cardiomegaly, CCF, or 3rd-degree heart block), add oral prednisolone to salicylate therapy. In case of heart failure, treat appropriately (p130)
- Immobilize joints in severe arthritis.
- Haloperidol (0.5mg/8h PO) or diazepam for the chorea.

Prognosis 60% with carditis develop chronic rheumatic heart disease. This correlates with the severity of the carditis.⁹⁵ Acute attacks last an average of 3 months. Recurrence may be precipitated by further streptococcal infections, pregnancy, or use of the Pill. Cardiac sequelae affect mitral (70%), aortic (40%), tricuspid (10%), and pulmonary (2%) valves. Incompetent lesions develop during the attack, stenoses years later.

Secondary prophylaxis Penicillin V 250mg/12h PO. Alternatives: sulfadiazine 1g daily (0.5g if <30kg) or erythromycin 250mg twice daily (if penicillin allergic). **Duration:** If carditis+persistent valvular disease, continue at least until age of 40 (sometimes lifelong). If carditis but no valvular disease, continue for 10 yrs. If there is no carditis, 5 yrs prophylaxis (until age of 21) is sufficient.



Fig 1. Erythema marginatum.

Image courtesy of Dr Maria Angelica Binotto.



Mitral stenosis *Causes:* Rheumatic, congenital, mucopolysaccharidoses, endocardial fibroelastosis, malignant carcinoid (p278; rare), prosthetic valve.

Presentation: Normal mitral valve orifice area is $\sim 4\text{--}6\text{cm}^2$. Symptoms usually begin when the orifice becomes $<2\text{cm}^2$: dyspnoea; fatigue; palpitations; chest pain; systemic emboli; haemoptysis; chronic bronchitis-like picture \pm complications (below).

Signs: Malar flush on cheeks (due to \downarrow cardiac output); low-volume pulse; AF common; tapping, non-displaced, apex beat (palpable S_1). On auscultation: loud S_1 ; opening snap (pliable valve); rumbling mid-diastolic murmur (heard best in expiration, with patient on left side). Graham Steell murmur (p44) may occur. *Severity:* The more severe the stenosis, the longer the diastolic murmur, and the closer the opening snap is to S_2 .

Tests: ECG: AF; P-mitral if in sinus rhythm; RVH; progressive RAD. CXR: left atrial enlargement (double shadow in right cardiac silhouette); pulmonary oedema; mitral valve calcification. *Echocardiography* is diagnostic. Significant stenosis exists if the valve orifice is $<1\text{cm}^2/\text{m}^2$ body surface area. Indications for *cardiac catheterization*: previous valvotomy; signs of other valve disease; angina; severe pulmonary hypertension; calcified mitral valve.

Management: If in AF, *rate control* (p124) is *crucial*; anticoagulate with warfarin (p345). Diuretics \downarrow preload and pulmonary venous congestion. If this fails to control symptoms, balloon valvuloplasty (if pliable, non-calcified valve), open mitral valvotomy or valve replacement. SBE/IE prophylaxis for GI/GU infected procedures (p144). Oral penicillin as prophylaxis against recurrent rheumatic fever (p136).

Complications: Pulmonary hypertension, emboli, pressure from large LA on local structures, eg hoarseness (recurrent laryngeal nerve), dysphagia (oesophagus), bronchial obstruction; infective endocarditis (rare).

Mitral regurgitation *Causes:* Functional (LV dilatation); annular calcification (elderly); rheumatic fever, infective endocarditis, mitral valve prolapse, ruptured chordae tendinae; papillary muscle dysfunction/rupture; connective tissue disorders (Ehlers-Danlos, Marfan's); cardiomyopathy; congenital (may be associated with other defects, eg ASD, AV canal); appetite suppressants (eg fenfluramine, phentermine).

Symptoms: Dyspnoea; fatigue; palpitations; infective endocarditis. *Signs:* AF; displaced, hyperdynamic apex; RV heave; soft S_1 ; split S_2 ; loud P_2 (pulmonary hypertension) pansystolic murmur at apex radiating to axilla. *Severity:* The more severe, the larger the left ventricle.

Tests: ECG: AF \pm P-mitral if in sinus rhythm (may mean left atrial size); LVH. CXR: big LA & LV; mitral valve calcification; pulmonary oedema.

Echocardiogram to assess LV function and aetiology (trans-oesophageal to assess severity and suitability for repair rather than replacement). *Doppler echo* to assess size and site of regurgitant jet. *Cardiac catheterization* to confirm diagnosis, exclude other valve disease, assess coronary artery disease.

Management: Control rate if fast AF. Anticoagulate if: AF; history of embolism; prosthetic valve; additional mitral stenosis. Diuretics improve symptoms. Surgery for deteriorating symptoms; aim to repair or replace the valve before LV irreversibly impaired. SBE/IE prophylaxis for GI/GU infected procedures.

Mitral valve prolapse is the most common valvular abnormality (prevalence: $\sim 5\%$). Occurs alone or with: ASD, patent ductus arteriosus, cardiomyopathy, Turner's syndrome, Marfan's syndrome, osteogenesis imperfecta, pseudoxanthoma elasticum, WPW (p120). *Symptoms:* Asymptomatic—or atypical chest pain and palpitations. Some patients have symptoms of autonomic dysfunction (anxiety, panic attack, syncope). *Signs:* Mid-systolic click and/or a late systolic murmur. *Complications:* Mitral regurgitation, cerebral emboli, arrhythmias, sudden death. *Tests:* *Echocardiography* is diagnostic. ECG may show inferior T wave inversion. *R:* β -blockers may help palpitations and chest pain. In case of severe mitral regurgitation, surgery is needed.

This page intentionally left blank

Aortic stenosis (AS) Causes: Senile calcification is the commonest.⁹⁶ Others: congenital (bicuspid valve, William's syndrome, p143), rheumatic heart disease.

Presentation: Think of AS in any elderly person with chest pain, exertional dyspnoea or syncope. The classic triad includes angina, syncope, and heart failure (usually after age 60). Also: dyspnoea; dizziness; faints; systemic emboli if infective endocarditis; sudden death. **Signs:** Slow rising pulse with narrow pulse pressure (feel for diminished and delayed carotid upstroke—*parvus et tardus*); heaving, non-displaced apex beat; LV heave; aortic thrill; ejection systolic murmur (heard at the base, left sternal edge and the aortic area, radiates to the carotids). S_1 is usually normal. As stenosis worsens, A_2 is increasingly delayed, giving first a single S_2 and then reversed splitting. But this sign is rare. More common is a quiet A_2 . In severe AS, A_2 may be inaudible (calcified valve). There may be an ejection click (pliable valve) or an S_4 (said to occur more often with bicuspid valves, but not in all populations).

Tests: ECG: P-mitrale, LVH with strain pattern; LAD (left anterior hemiblock); poor R wave progression; LBBB or complete AV block (calcified ring). CXR: LVH; calcified aortic valve (fig 1); post-stenotic dilatation of ascending aorta. Echo: diagnostic (p106). Doppler echo can estimate the gradient across valves: severe stenosis if peak gradient ≥ 50 mmHg and valve area < 1 cm². If the aortic jet velocity is > 4 m/s (or is increasing by > 0.3 m/s per yr) risk of complications is increased.⁹⁶ Cardiac catheter can assess: valve gradient; LV function; coronary artery disease; but risks emboli.

Differential diagnosis: Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM, p146).

Management: If symptomatic, prognosis is poor without surgery: 2-3yr survival if angina/syncope; 1-2yr if cardiac failure. If moderate-to-severe and treated medically, mortality can be as high as 50% at 2yrs, therefore prompt valve replacement (p142) is usually recommended. In asymptomatic patients with severe AS and a deteriorating ECG, valve replacement is also recommended. If the patient is not medically fit for surgery, percutaneous valvuloplasty/replacement (TAVI = transcatheter aortic valve implantation) may be attempted.

Aortic sclerosis is senile degeneration of the valve. There is an ejection systolic murmur, no carotid radiation, and normal pulse (character and volume) and S_2 .

Aortic regurgitation (AR) Acute: Infective endocarditis, ascending aortic dissection, chest trauma. **Chronic:** Congenital, connective tissue disorders (Marfan's syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos), rheumatic fever, Takayasu arteritis, rheumatoid arthritis, SLE; pseudoxanthoma elasticum, appetite suppressants (eg fenfluramine, phentermine), seronegative arthritides (ankylosing spondylitis, Reiter's syndrome, psoriatic arthropathy), hypertension, osteogenesis imperfecta, syphilitic aortitis.

Symptoms: Exertional dyspnoea, orthopnoea, and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea. Also: palpitations, angina, syncope, ccf. **Signs:** Collapsing (water-hammer) pulse (p40); wide pulse pressure; displaced, hyperdynamic apex beat; high-pitched early diastolic murmur (heard best in expiration, with patient sitting forward). Eponyms: Corrigan's sign: carotid pulsation; de Musset's sign: head nodding with each heart beat; Quincke's sign: capillary pulsations in nail beds; Duroziez's sign: in the groin, a finger compressing the femoral artery 2cm proximal to the stethoscope gives a systolic murmur; if 2cm distal, it gives a diastolic murmur as blood flows backwards; Traube's sign: 'pistol shot' sound: over femoral arteries; an Austin Flint murmur (p44) denotes severe AR.

Tests: ECG: LVH. CXR: cardiomegaly; dilated ascending aorta; pulmonary oedema. Echocardiography is diagnostic. Cardiac catheterization to assess: severity of lesion; anatomy of aortic root; LV function; CAD; other valve disease.

Management: The main goal of medical therapy is to reduce systolic hypertension. ACE-i are helpful. Echo every 6-12 months to monitor. Indications for surgery: increasing symptoms; enlarging heart on CXR/echo; ECG deterioration (T-wave inversion in lateral leads); IE refractory to medical therapy. Aim to replace the valve before significant LV dysfunction occurs. Predictors of poor post-operative survival: ejection fraction $< 50\%$, NYHA class III or IV (p131), duration of ccf > 12 months.



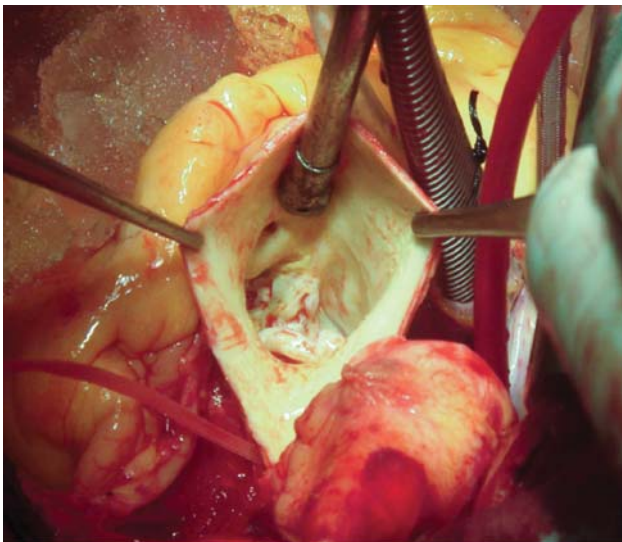


Fig 1. Severely calcified aortic valve.

Reproduced with permission from Hamid Reza Taghipour.





Tricuspid regurgitation *Causes:* Functional (RV dilatation; eg due to pulmonary hypertension induced by LV failure); rheumatic fever; infective endocarditis (IV drug abuser¹); carcinoid syndrome; congenital (eg ASD, AV canal, Ebstein's anomaly, ie downward displacement of the tricuspid valve—see *OHCS* p642); drugs (eg ergot-derived dopamine agonists, p498, fenfluramine). *Symptoms:* Fatigue; hepatic pain on exertion; ascites; oedema and also dyspnoea and orthopnoea if the cause is LV dysfunction. *Signs:* Giant *v* waves and prominent *y* descent in JVP (p41); RV heave; pansystolic murmur, heard best at lower sternal edge in inspiration; pulsatile hepatomegaly; jaundice; ascites. *Management:* Treat underlying cause. Drugs: diuretics, digoxin, ACE-i. Valve replacement (~10% 30-day mortality). Tricuspid regurgitation resulting from myocardial dysfunction or dilatation has a mortality of up to 50% at 5 yrs.

Tricuspid stenosis *Causes:* Main cause is rheumatic fever, which almost always occurs with mitral or aortic valve disease. Also: congenital, infective endocarditis. *Symptoms:* Fatigue, ascites, oedema. *Signs:* Giant *a* wave and slow *y* descent in JVP (p41); opening snap, early diastolic murmur heard at the left sternal edge in inspiration. AF can also occur. *Diagnosis:* Echo. *Treatment:* Diuretics; surgical repair.

Pulmonary stenosis *Causes:* Usually congenital (Turner's syndrome, Noonan's syndrome, William's syndrome, Fallot's tetralogy, rubella). Acquired causes: rheumatic fever, carcinoid syndrome. *Symptoms:* Dyspnoea; fatigue; oedema; ascites. *Signs:* Dysmorphic facies (congenital causes); prominent *a* wave in JVP; RV heave. In mild stenosis, there is an ejection click, ejection systolic murmur (which radiates to the left shoulder); widely split *S*₂. In severe stenosis, the murmur becomes longer and obscures *A*₂. *P*₂ becomes softer and may be inaudible. *Tests:* ECG: RAD, P-pulmonale, RVH, RBBB. echo/TOE (p106). *CXR:* Prominent main, right, or left pulmonary arteries caused by post-stenotic dilatation. Cardiac catheterization is diagnostic. *Treatment:* Pulmonary valvuloplasty or valvotomy.

Pulmonary regurgitation is caused by any cause of pulmonary hypertension (p194). A decrescendo murmur is heard in early diastole at the left sternal edge (the Graham Steell murmur if associated with mitral stenosis and pulmonary hypertension).

Cardiac surgery

Valvuloplasty can be used in mitral or pulmonary stenosis (pliable, non-calcified valve, no regurgitation). A balloon catheter is inserted across the valve and inflated.

Valvotomy Closed valvotomy is rarely performed now. Open valvotomy is performed under cardiopulmonary bypass through a median sternotomy.

Valve replacements *Mechanical valves* may be of the ball-cage (Starr-Edwards), tilting disc (Bjork-Shiley), or double tilting disc (St Jude) type. These valves are very durable but the risk of thromboembolism is high; patients require lifelong anticoagulation. *Xenografts* are made from porcine valves or pericardium. These valves are less durable and may require replacement at 8–10yrs. Anticoagulation is not required unless there is AF. *Homografts* are cadaveric valves. They are particularly useful in young patients and in the replacement of infected valves. *Complications of prosthetic valves:* systemic embolism, infective endocarditis, haemolysis, structural valve failure, arrhythmias.

CABG See p104.

Cardiac transplantation Consider this when cardiac disease is *severely* curtailing quality of life, and survival is not expected beyond 6–12 months. Refer to a specialist centre.

1 This list is easier to remember once we recall that it is the tricuspid valve which is the valve most vulnerable to events arriving by vein, eg pathogens from IV drug abusers reach the tricuspid valve first; likewise for drugs and toxins from distal carcinoid tumours.



The heart in various, mostly rare, systemic diseases

This list reminds us to look at the heart *and* the whole patient, not just in exams (where those with odd syndromes congregate), but always.

Acromegaly: (p230) BPT; LVH; hypertrophic cardiomyopathy; high output cardiac failure; coronary artery disease.

Amyloidosis: (p364) Restrictive cardiomyopathy. Bright myocardium on echo.

Ankylosing spondylitis: Conduction defects; AV block; AR.

Behçet's disease: (p708) Aortic regurgitation; arterial \pm venous thrombi.

Cushing's syndrome: (p216) Hypertension.

Down's syndrome: (OHCS p152) ASD; VSD; mitral regurgitation.

Ehlers-Danlos syndrome: (OHCS p642) Mitral valve prolapse + hyperelastic skin \pm aneurysms and GI bleeds. Joints are loose and hypermobile; mutations exist, eg in genes for procollagen (COL3A1); there are 6 types.

Friedreich's ataxia: (p712) Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, dilatation over time.

Haemochromatosis: (p262) AF; cardiomyopathy.

Holt-Oram syndrome: ASD or VSD with upper limb defects.⁹⁷

Human immunodeficiency virus: (p408) Myocarditis; dilated cardiomyopathy; effusion; ventricular arrhythmias; SBE/IE; non-infective thrombotic (marantic) endocarditis; RVF (pulmonary hypertension); metastatic Kaposi's sarcoma.

Hypothyroidism: (p212) Sinus bradycardia; low pulse pressure; pericardial effusion; coronary artery disease; low voltage ECG.

Kawasaki disease: (OHCS p646) Coronary arteritis similar to PAN; commoner than rheumatic fever (p136) as a cause of acquired heart disease.

Klinefelter's syndrome:⁹⁸ (OHCS p646) ASD. Psychopathy; learning difficulties; libido \downarrow ; gynaecomastia; sparse facial hair and small firm testes. XXY.

Marfan's syndrome: (p720) Mitral valve prolapse; AR; aortic dissection. Look for long fingers and a high-arched palate.

Noonan's syndrome: (OHCS p650) ASD; pulmonary stenosis \pm low-set ears.

PAN: (p558) Small and medium vessel vasculitis + angina; MI; arrhythmias; CCF; pericarditis and conduction defects.

Rheumatoid arthritis: Conduction defects; pericarditis; LV dysfunction; aortic regurgitation; coronary arteritis. Look for arthritis signs, p548.

Sarcoidosis: (p186) Infiltrating granulomas may cause complete AV block; ventricular or supraventricular tachycardia; myocarditis; CCF; restrictive cardiomyopathy. ECG may show Q waves.

Syphilis: (p431) Myocarditis; ascending aortic aneurysm.

Systemic lupus erythematosus: (p556) Pericarditis/effusion; myocarditis; Libman-Sacks endocarditis; mitral valve prolapse; coronary arteritis.

Systemic sclerosis: (p554) Pericarditis; pericardial effusion; myocardial fibrosis; myocardial ischaemia; conduction defects; cardiomyopathy.

Thyrotoxicosis: (p210) Pulset; AF \pm emboli; wide pulse pressure; hyperdynamic apex; loud heart sounds; ejection systolic murmur; pleuropericardial rub; angina; high-output cardiac failure.

Turner's syndrome:⁹⁹ Coarctation of aorta. Look for webbed neck. XO.

William's syndrome: Supravalvular aortic stenosis (visuospatial IQ \downarrow).

► Fever + new murmur = endocarditis until proven otherwise. Any fever lasting >1wk in those known to be at risk¹ must prompt blood cultures.⁹⁸ Classification: 50% of all endocarditis occurs on *normal valves*. It follows an **acute course**, and presents with acute heart failure ± emboli. Chief cause:⁹⁹ *S. aureus*. Risk factors: dermatitis; IV injections; renal failure; organ transplantation; DM; post-op wounds. Entry is usually via the skin. Mortality: 5–50% (related to age and embolic events). Endocarditis on *abnormal valves* tends to run a **subacute course**. Risk factors: aortic or mitral valve disease; tricuspid valves in IV drug users; coarctation; patent ductus arteriosus; VSD; prosthetic valves. Endocarditis on prosthetic valves may be 'early' (during surgery, poor prognosis) or 'late' (haematogenous).

Causes Bacteraemia: This is occurring all the time, eg when we chew (not just when we have dentistry or medical interventions—which is why routine prophylaxis for such procedures does not make sense).⁹⁸ *Strep viridans* is common cause (>35%). Others: enterococci; *Staph aureus/epidermidis*; diphtheroids; microaerophilic streps. Rarely: **HACEK** Gram -ve bacteria (*Haemophilus-Actinobacillus-Cardiobacterium-Eikenella-Kingella*); *Coxiella burnetii*; *Chlamydia*. **Fungi:** *Candida*; *Aspergillus*; *Histoplasma*. **Other causes:** SLE (Libman-Sacks endocarditis); malignancy.

Signs Septic signs: Fever, rigors, night sweats, malaise, weight loss, anaemia, splenomegaly, and clubbing (fig 1). **Cardiac lesions:** Any new murmur, or a changing pre-existing murmur, should raise the suspicion of endocarditis. Vegetations may cause valve destruction and severe regurgitation, or valve obstruction. An aortic root abscess causes prolongation of the PR interval, and may lead to complete AV block. LVF is a common cause of death. **Immune complex deposition:** Vasculitis (p558) may affect any vessel. Microscopic haematuria is common; glomerulonephritis and acute renal failure may occur. Roth spots (boat-shaped retinal haemorrhage with pale centre; p386 fig 1); splinter haemorrhages (fig 2); Osler's nodes (painful pulp infarcts in fingers or toes). **Embolic phenomena:** Emboli may cause abscesses in the relevant organ, eg brain, heart, kidney, spleen, gut (or lung if right-sided IE) or skin: termed Janeway lesions (fig 3; painless palmar or plantar macules), which, together with Osler's nodes, are pathognomonic.

Diagnosis Use the *Duke criteria* (BOX 1).¹⁰⁰ **Blood cultures:** Do 3 sets at different times from different sites at peak of fever. 85–90% are diagnosed from the 1st 2 sets; 10% are culture-negative. **Blood tests:** Normochromic, normocytic anaemia, neutrophilia, high ESR/CRP. Also check U&E, Mg²⁺, LFT. **Urinalysis** for microscopic haematuria. **CXR** (cardiomegaly). **ECG** (long PR interval) at regular intervals. **Echocardiogram** TTE (p106) may show vegetations, but only if >2mm. TOE (p106) is more sensitive, and better for visualizing mitral lesions and possible development of aortic root abscess.

R: Liaise early with microbiologist and cardiologists. Antibiotics: see BOX 2. **Consider surgery if:** heart failure, valvular obstruction; repeated emboli; fungal endocarditis; persistent bacteraemia; myocardial abscess; unstable infected prosthetic valve.¹⁰¹

Mortality 30% with staphs; 14% if bowel organisms; 6% if sensitive streptococci.

Prevention Antibiotic prophylaxis solely to prevent IE is not recommended because:

- There is no proven association between having an interventional procedure (dental or non-dental) and the development of IE.
- The clinical effectiveness of antibiotic prophylaxis is not proven.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis against IE for dental procedures may lead to deaths through fatal anaphylaxis compared with a strategy of no antibiotic prophylaxis.

Recommendations: Give clear information about prevention, including:

- The benefits and risks of antibiotic prophylaxis.
- The importance of maintaining good oral health.
- Symptoms that may indicate IE and when to seek expert advice.
- The risks of invasive procedures, including non-medical procedures such as body piercing or tattooing.¹⁰²

¹ Past IE or rheumatic fever; IV drug abuser; damaged or replaced valve; structural congenital heart disease (but not simple ASD or fully repaired VSD or patent ductus); hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.

Duke criteria for infective endocarditis

Major criteria:

- Positive blood culture:
 - typical organism in 2 separate cultures or
 - persistently +ve blood cultures, eg 3, >12h apart (or majority if ≥ 4)
- Endocardium involved:
 - positive echocardiogram (vegetation, abscess, dehiscence of prosthetic valve) *or*
 - new valvular regurgitation (change in murmur not sufficient).

Minor criteria:

- Predisposition (cardiac lesion; IV drug abuse)
- Fever $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$
- Vascular/immunological signs
- Positive blood culture that does not meet major criteria
- Positive echocardiogram that does not meet major criteria.

How to diagnose: Definite infective endocarditis: 2 major or 1 major and 3 minor or all 5 minor criteria (if no major criterion is met).

Antibiotic therapy for infective endocarditis

See BNF; consult a microbiologist

- Blind therapy—native valve: amoxicillin 2g/4h IVI \pm gentamicin $\sim 1\text{mg/kg}/12\text{h}$ IV slowly, p767. Vancomycin 1g/12h IVI + gentamicin if penicillin-allergic. If thought to be Gram -ve: meropenem (2g/8h IVI) + vancomycin (trough level: 15–20mg/L).
- Blind therapy—prosthetic valve: vancomycin + gentamicin + rifampicin 300–600mg/12h PO/IVI.
- Staphs—native valve: flucloxacillin for $>4\text{wks}$; dose example if $<85\text{kg}$: 2g/6h IVI (/4h if $>85\text{kg}$). If allergic or MRSA: vancomycin + rifampicin.
- Staphs—prosthetic valves: flucloxacillin + rifampicin + gentamicin for 6wks (review need for gentamicin after 2wks). If penicillin-allergic or MRSA: vancomycin + rifampicin + gentamicin.
- Streps—fully sensitive to penicillin: benzylpenicillin 1.2g/4h IV for 4–6wks.¹
- Streps—less sensitive: benzylpenicillin + gentamicin; if penicillin allergic or highly penicillin resistant: vancomycin (or teicoplanin) + gentamicin.
- Enterococci: amoxicillin + gentamicin (or benzylpenicillin + gentamicin). If pen allergic: vancomycin + gentamicin—for 4wks (6wks if prosthetic valve); review need for gentamicin after 2wks.
- HACEK organisms (Haemophilus, Actinobacillus, Cardiobacterium, Eikenella, Kingella): amoxicillin for 4wks (6 if prosthetic valve) + gentamicin eg for 2wks.



Fig 1. Clubbing with endocarditis.



Fig 2. Splinter haemorrhages are normally seen under the fingernails or toenails. They are usually red-brown in colour.



Fig 3. Janeway's lesions are non-tender erythematous, haemorrhagic, or pustular spots eg on the palms or soles.

¹ If *Strep bovis* is cultured, do colonoscopy, as a colon neoplasm is the likely portal of entry (p257 Box 2).

Acute myocarditis This is inflammation of myocardium. **Causes:** Idiopathic (~50%), viral (flu, hepatitis, mumps, rubeola, Coxsackie, polio, HIV); bacterial (Clostridia, diphtheria, TB, meningococcus, mycoplasma, brucellosis, psittacosis); spirochaetes (leptospirosis, syphilis, Lyme); protozoa (Chagas', p426); drugs (cyclophosphamide, herceptin, penicillin, chloramphenicol, sulfonamides, methyl dopa, spironolactone, phenytoin, carbamazepine); toxins; vasculitis, p558. **Symptoms & signs:** Fatigue, dyspnoea, chest pain, fever, palpitations, tachycardia, soft S₁, S₄ gallop (p42). **Tests:** ECG: ST elevation or depression, T wave inversion, atrial arrhythmias, transient AV block. In proper clinical setting (and absence of MI) +ve troponin I or T confirms the diagnosis. Negative antimyosin scintigraphy also excludes active myocarditis. **R:** Supportive. Treat the underlying cause. Patients may recover or get intractable heart failure (p130).

Dilated cardiomyopathy A dilated, flabby heart of unknown cause. Associations: alcohol, ↑BP, haemochromatosis, viral infection, autoimmune, peri- or postpartum, thyrotoxicosis, congenital (x-linked). **Prevalence:** 0.2%. **Presentation:** Fatigue, dyspnoea, pulmonary oedema, RVF, emboli, AF, VT. **Signs:** ↑Pulse, ↓BP, ↑JVP, displaced, diffuse apex, S₃ gallop, mitral or tricuspid regurgitation (MR/TR), pleural effusion, oedema, jaundice, hepatomegaly, ascites. **Tests:** **Blood:** plasma BNP is sensitive and specific in diagnosing heart failure. ↓Na⁺ indicates a poor prognosis. **CXR:** cardiomegaly, pulmonary oedema. **ECG:** tachycardia, non-specific T wave changes, poor R wave progression. **Echo:** globally dilated hypokinetic heart and low ejection fraction. Look for MR, TR, LV mural thrombus. **R:** Bed rest, diuretics, digoxin, ACE-i, anticoagulation, bi-ventricular pacing, ICDs, cardiac transplantation. **Mortality:** Variable, eg 40% in 2yrs.

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy HCM ≈ LV outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction from asymmetric septal hypertrophy. HCM is the leading cause of sudden cardiac death in the young. **Prevalence:** 0.2%. Autosomal dominant inheritance, but 50% are sporadic. 70% have mutations in genes encoding β-myosin, α-tropomyosin, and troponin T. May present at any age. Ask about family history of sudden death. **Symptoms & signs:** Sudden death may be the first manifestation of HCM in many patients (VF is amenable to implantable defibrillators), angina, dyspnoea, palpitation, syncope, CCF. Jerky pulse; a wave in JVP; double-apex beat; systolic thrill at lower left sternal edge; harsh ejection systolic murmur. **Tests:** **ECG:** LVH; progressive T wave inversion; deep Q waves (inferior + lateral leads); AF; WPW syndrome (p120); ventricular ectopics; VT. **Echo:** asymmetrical septal hypertrophy; small LV cavity with hypercontractile posterior wall; midsystolic closure of aortic valve; systolic anterior movement of mitral valve. **Cardiac catheterization** may provoke VT. It helps assess: severity of gradient; coronary artery disease or mitral regurgitation. Electrophysiological studies may be needed (eg if WPW, p120). Exercise test ± Holter monitor (p102) to risk stratify. **R:** β-blockers or verapamil for symptoms (the aim is reducing ventricular contractility). Amiodarone (p124) for arrhythmias (AF, VT). Anticoagulate for paroxysmal AF or systemic emboli. Dual-chamber pacing (p126) is rarely used. Septal myomectomy (surgical, or chemical, with alcohol, to ↓LV outflow tract gradient) is reserved for those with severe symptoms. Consider implantable defibrillator. **Mortality:** 5.9%/yr if <14yrs; 2.5%/yr if >14yrs. **Poor prognostic factors:** age <14yrs or syncope at presentation; family history of HCM/sudden death.

Restrictive cardiomyopathy **Causes:** Idiopathic; amyloidosis; haemochromatosis; sarcoidosis; scleroderma; Löffler's eosinophilic endocarditis; endomyocardial fibrosis.

Presentation is like constrictive pericarditis (p148). Features of RVF predominate: ↑JVP, with prominent x and y descents; hepatomegaly; oedema; ascites.

Diagnosis: Cardiac catheterization. **R:** Treat the cause.

Cardiac myxoma (fig 1) Rare benign cardiac tumour. Prevalence ≤5/10,000, ♀:♂ ≈ 2:1. Usually sporadic, but may be familial (Carney complex: cardiac and cutaneous myxomas, skin pigmentation, endocrinopathy, etc, p215). It may mimic infective endocarditis (fever, weight loss, clubbing, ↑ESR), or mitral stenosis (left atrial obstruction, systemic emboli, AF). A 'tumour plop' may be heard, and signs may vary according to posture. **Tests:** Echo. **R:** Excision.





Fig 1a. Echocardiogram of a 35yr-old patient who presented with severe exertional dyspnoea and several episodes of syncope. Look at the large mass (cardiac myxoma) in left atrium. Abbreviations: RV: right ventricle; LV: left ventricle; AV: aortic valve; AO: aorta; MV: mitral valve.

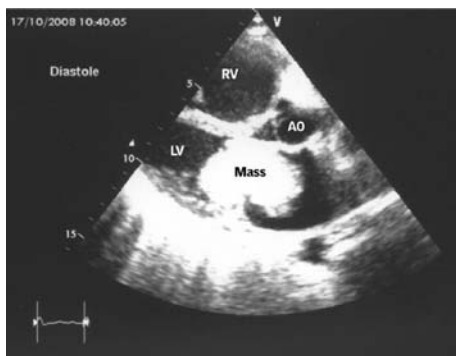


Fig 1b. Echocardiogram of the same patient during diastole. Notice how the large mass of myxoma protrudes into the left ventricle during diastole, and obstructs the mitral valve almost completely. Abbreviations: RV: right ventricle; LV: left ventricle; AO: aorta.

Figures reproduced with permission from Hamid Reza Taghipour.



Acute pericarditis This is inflammation of the pericardium. It may be idiopathic or secondary to:

- Viruses (Coxsackie, flu, Epstein-Barr, mumps, varicella, HIV)
- Bacteria (pneumonia, rheumatic fever, TB, staphs, streps, MAI in HIV, p410)
- Fungi
- Myocardial infarction, Dressler's (p712)
- Drugs: procainamide, hydralazine, penicillin, cromolyn sodium, isoniazid
- Others: uraemia, rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, myxoedema, trauma, surgery, malignancy (and antineoplastic agents), radiotherapy, sarcoidosis.

Clinical features: Central chest pain worse on inspiration or lying flat \pm relief by sitting forward. A pericardial friction rub (p44) may be heard. Look for evidence of a pericardial effusion or cardiac tamponade (see below). Fever may occur.

Tests: ECG classically shows concave (saddle-shaped) ST segment elevation, but may be normal or non-specific (10%); see fig 1. **Blood tests:** FBC, ESR, U&E, cardiac enzymes (*NB: troponin may be raised*), viral serology, blood cultures, and, if indicated, autoantibodies (p555), fungal precipitins, thyroid function tests. Cardiomegaly on CXR may indicate a pericardial effusion. **Echo** (if suspected pericardial effusion).

Treatment: Analgesia, eg ibuprofen 400mg/8h PO with food. Treat the cause. Consider colchicine before steroids/immunosuppressants if relapse or continuing symptoms occur. 15–40% do recur. Steroids may increase the risk of recurrence.

Pericardial effusion Accumulation of fluid in the pericardial sac.

Causes: Any cause of pericarditis (see above).

Clinical features: Dyspnoea, raised JVP (with prominent x descent, p40), bronchial breathing at left base (Ewart's sign: large effusion compressing left lower lobe). Look for signs of cardiac tamponade (see below).

Diagnosis: CXR shows an enlarged, globular heart. ECG shows low-voltage QRS complexes and alternating QRS morphologies (electrical alternans). **Echocardiography** shows an echo-free zone surrounding the heart.

Management: Treat the cause. Pericardiocentesis may be *diagnostic* (suspected bacterial pericarditis) or *therapeutic* (cardiac tamponade). See p787. Send pericardial fluid for culture, ZN stain/TB culture, and cytology.

Constrictive pericarditis The heart is encased in a rigid pericardium.

Causes: Often unknown (UK; elsewhere TB, or after any pericarditis).

Clinical features: These are mainly of right heart failure with \uparrow JVP (with prominent x and y descents, p41); Kussmaul's sign (JVP rising paradoxically with inspiration); soft, diffuse apex beat; quiet heart sounds; S_3 ; diastolic pericardial knock, hepatosplenomegaly, ascites, and oedema.

Tests: CXR: small heart \pm pericardial calcification (if none, CT/MRI helps distinguish from other cardiomyopathies). **Echo;** cardiac catheterization.

Management: Surgical excision.

Cardiac tamponade Accumulation of pericardial fluid raises intrapericardial pressure, hence poor ventricular filling and fall in cardiac output.

Causes: Any pericarditis (above); aortic dissection; haemodialysis; warfarin; transseptal puncture at cardiac catheterization; post cardiac biopsy.

Signs: Pulsus, BP \downarrow , pulsus paradoxus, JVP \uparrow , Kussmaul's sign, muffled S_1 and S_2 .

Diagnosis: *Beck's triad:* falling BP; rising JVP; muffled heart sounds. **CXR:** big globular heart (if >250 mL fluid). **Ecg:** low voltage QRS \pm electrical alternans. **Echo** is diagnostic: echo-free zone (>2 cm, or >1 cm if acute) around the heart \pm diastolic collapse of right atrium and right ventricle.

Management: Seek expert help. The pericardial effusion needs urgent drainage (p787). Send fluid for culture, ZN stain/TB culture and cytology.

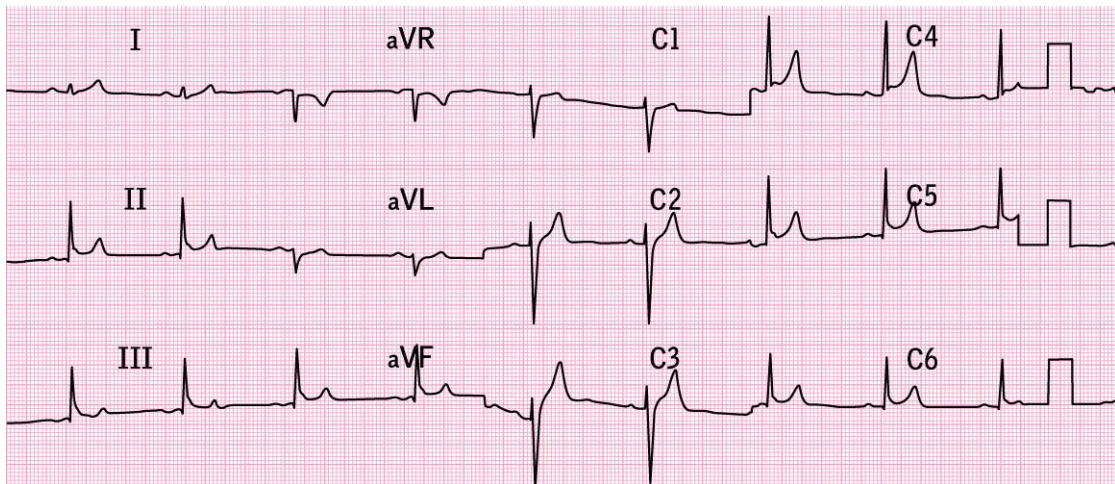


Fig 1. Pericarditis.



The spectrum of congenital heart disease in adults is considerably different from that in infants and children; adults are unlikely to have complex lesions. The commonest lesions, in descending order of frequency, are:

Bicuspid aortic valve These work well at birth and go undetected. Many eventually develop aortic stenosis (needing valve replacement) \pm aortic regurgitation predisposing to IE/SBE \pm aortic dilatation/dissection. Intense exercise may accelerate complications, so do yearly echocardiograms on affected athletes.¹⁰³

Atrial septal defect (ASD) A hole connects the atria. *Ostium secundum* defects (high in the septum) are commonest; *ostium primum* defects (opposing the endocardial cushions) are associated with AV valve anomalies. Primum ASDs present early. Secundum ASDs are often asymptomatic until adulthood, as the L \rightarrow R shunt depends on compliance of the right and left ventricles. The latter decreases with age (esp. if BPT), so augmenting L \rightarrow R shunting (hence dyspnoea/heart failure, eg at age 40–60). There may be pulmonary hypertension, cyanosis, arrhythmia, haemoptysis, and chest pain.

Signs: AF; \uparrow JVP; wide, fixed split S₂; pulmonary ejection systolic murmur. Pulmonary hypertension may cause pulmonary or tricuspid regurgitation. \uparrow freq of migraine.

Complications: • Reversal of left-to-right shunt, ie Eisenmenger's complex: initial L \rightarrow R shunt leads to pulmonary hypertension, hence shunt reversal, causing cyanosis (\pm heart failure & chest infections). • Paradoxical emboli (vein \rightarrow artery via ASD; rare).

Tests: ECG: RBBB with LAD and prolonged PR interval (primum defect) or RAD (secundum defect). CXR: small aortic knuckle, pulmonary plethora, progressive atrial enlargement. Echocardiography is diagnostic. Cardiac catheterization shows step up in O₂ saturation in the right atrium. **Treatment:** In children closure is recommended before age 10yrs. In adults, if symptomatic, or if pulmonary to systemic blood flow ratios of $\geq 1.5:1$. Transcatheter closure is now more common than surgical.

Ventricular septal defect (VSD) A hole connects the ventricles. **Causes:** Congenital (prevalence 2:1000 births); acquired (post-MI). **Symptoms:** May present with severe heart failure in infancy, or remain asymptomatic and be detected incidentally in later life. **Signs:** These depend on size and site: smaller holes, which are haemodynamically less significant, give louder murmurs. Classically, a harsh pansystolic murmur is heard at the left sternal edge, with a systolic thrill, \pm left parasternal heave. Larger holes are associated with signs of pulmonary hypertension. **Complications:** AR, infundibular stenosis, IE/SBE, pulmonary hypertension, Eisenmenger's complex (above). **Tests:** ECG: normal (small VSD), LAD + LVH (moderate VSD) or LVH + RVH (large VSD). CXR: normal heart size \pm mild pulmonary plethora (small VSD) or cardiomegaly, large pulmonary arteries and marked pulmonary plethora (large VSD). Cardiac catheter: step up in O₂ saturation in right ventricle. **Treatment:** This is medical, at first, as many close spontaneously. Indications for surgical closure: failed medical therapy, symptomatic VSD, shunt $>3:1$, SBE/IE. Endovascular closure is also possible.¹⁰⁴

Coarctation of the aorta Congenital narrowing of the descending aorta; usually occurs just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery. More common in boys. **Associations:** Bicuspid aortic valve; Turner's syndrome. **Signs:** Radiofemoral delay (femoral pulse later than radial); weak femoral pulse; BPT; scapular bruit; systolic murmur (best heard over the left scapula). **Complications:** Heart failure; infective endocarditis. **Tests:** CT or MRI-aortogram, CXR shows rib notching. **Treatment:** Surgery, or balloon dilatation \pm stenting.

Pulmonary stenosis may occur alone or with other lesions (p142).



Fallot's tetralogy: what the non-specialist needs to know

Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) is the most common cyanotic congenital heart disorder (prevalence: 3-6 per 10,000), and it is also the most common cyanotic heart defect that survives to adulthood, accounting for 10% of all congenital defects.¹⁰⁵ It is believed to be due to abnormalities in separation of the truncus arteriosus into the aorta and pulmonary arteries that occur in early gestation (fig 1).

The 4 features typical of TOF include:

- 1 Ventricular septal defect (VSD)
- 2 Pulmonary stenosis
- 3 Right ventricular hypertrophy
- 4 The aorta overriding the VSD

Occasionally, a few children also have an atrial septal defect, which makes up the pentad of Fallot.

Presentation: Severity of illness depends greatly on the degree of pulmonary stenosis. Infants may be acyanotic at birth, with a pulmonary stenosis murmur as the only initial finding. Gradually (especially after closure of ductus arteriosus) they become cyanotic due to decreasing flow of blood to the lungs as well as right-to-left shunt across the VSD. During a hypoxic spell, the child becomes restless and agitated, and may cry inconsolably. Toddlers may squat, which is typical of TOF, as it increases peripheral vascular resistance and decreases the degree of right to left shunt. Also: difficulty in feeding, failure to thrive, clubbing. Adult patients are often asymptomatic. In the unoperated adult patient, cyanosis is common, although extreme cyanosis or squatting is uncommon. In repaired patients, late symptoms include exertional dyspnoea, palpitations, RV failure, syncope, and even sudden death. ECG shows RV hypertrophy with a right bundle-branch block.

CXR may be normal, or show the hallmark of TOF, which is the classic boot-shaped heart (fig 2). **Echocardiography** can show the anatomy as well as the degree of stenosis. Cardiac CT and **cardiac MRI** can give valuable information for planning the surgery.¹⁰⁶

Management: Give O₂. Place the child in knee-chest position. Morphine can sedate the child as well as relaxing the pulmonary outflow. Long-term β -blockers may be needed. Give endocarditis prophylaxis only if recommended by a microbiologist. Without surgery, mortality rate is ~95% by age 20. Surgery is usually done before 1yr of age, with closure of the VSD and correction of the pulmonary stenosis. 20-yr survival is ~90-95% after repair.

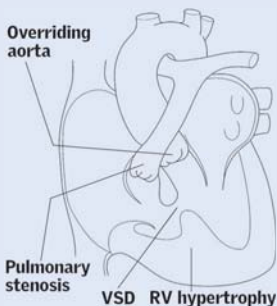


Fig 1. Tetralogy of Fallot.

Adapted from Chikwe, Beddow, and Glenville, *Cardiothoracic Surgery*, 2006, with permission from Oxford University Press.

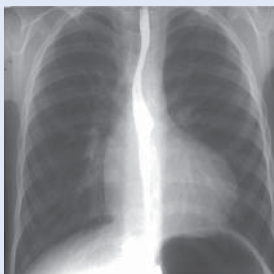


Fig 2. Boot-shaped heart.

Courtesy of Dr Edward Singleton.

UK licences are inscribed "You are required by law to inform Drivers Medical Branch, DVLA, Swansea SA99 1AT at once if you have any disability (physical or medical), which is, or may become likely to affect your fitness as a driver, unless you do not expect it to last more than 3 months". It is the responsibility of drivers to inform the DVLA, and that of their doctors to advise patients that medical conditions (and drugs) may affect their ability to drive and for which conditions patients should inform the DVLA. Drivers should also inform their insurance company of any condition disclosed to the DVLA. If in doubt, ask your defence union. The following are examples of the guidance for holders of standard licences.

Different rules apply for group 2 vehicle licence-holders (eg lorries, buses).

Angina Driving must cease when symptoms occur at rest or with emotion. Driving may recommence when satisfactory symptom control is achieved. DVLA need not be notified.

Angioplasty Driving must cease for 1wk, and may recommence thereafter provided no other disqualifying condition. DVLA need not be notified.

MI If successfully treated with angioplasty cease driving for 1 week provided urgent intervention not planned and LVEF (left ventricular ejection fraction) >40%, and no other disqualifying condition. Otherwise, driving must cease for 1 month. DVLA need not be notified.

Dysrhythmias *Sinoatrial including AF/flutter*: Driving must cease if the dysrhythmia has caused or is likely to cause incapacity. Driving may recommence 4wks after successful control provided there is no other disqualifying condition.

Significant atrioventricular conduction defects: Driving may be permitted when underlying cause has been identified and controlled for >4wks. DVLA need not be notified unless there are distracting/disabling symptoms.

Pacemaker implant Stop driving for 1wk.

Implanted cardioverter/defibrillator The licence is subject to annual review. Driving may occur when these criteria can be met:

- The 1st device has been implanted for at least 6 months.
- The device has not administered therapy (shock and/or symptomatic antitachycardia pacing) within the last 6 months (except during testing).
- Any previous therapy has not been accompanied by *incapacity* (whether caused by the device or arrhythmia).
- A period of 1 month off driving must occur following any revision of the device (generator and/or electrode) or alteration of antiarrhythmics.
- The device is subject to regular review with interrogation.
- There is no other disqualifying condition.

Syncope *Simple faint*: no restriction. *Unexplained syncope* with low risk of recurrence 4wks off driving, high risk of recurrence 4wks off driving if cause identified and treated; otherwise 6 months off. See driving and epilepsy (BOX). Patients who have had a single episode of loss of consciousness (no cause found) still need to have at least 1yr off driving.

Hypertension Driving may continue unless treatment causes unacceptable side-effects. DVLA need not be notified.

Fitness to fly guidelines are now also available¹⁰⁸

¹ See www.dvla.gov.uk/medical/ataglanze.aspx



Other conditions: UK DVLA¹ state it must be informed if:

- An epileptic event. A person who has suffered an epileptic attack while awake must not drive for 1yr from the date of the attack. A person who has suffered an attack while asleep must also refrain from driving for 1yr from the date of the attack, unless they have had an attack while asleep >3yrs ago and have not had any awake attacks since that asleep attack. In any event, they should not drive if they are likely to cause danger to the public or themselves.
- Patients with TIA or stroke should not drive for at least 1 month. There is no need to inform the DVLA unless there is residual neurological defect after 1 month, eg visual field defect. If TIAs have been recurrent and frequent, a 3-month period free of attacks may be required.
- Sudden attacks or disabling giddiness, fainting, or blackouts. Multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's (any 'freezing' or on-off effects), and motor neuron diseases are relevant here.
- Severe mental handicap. Those with dementia should only drive if the condition is mild (do not rely on armchair judgements: on-the-road trials are better). Encourage relatives to contact DVLA if a dementing relative should not be driving. GPs may desire to breach confidentiality (the GMC approves) and inform DVLA of demented or psychotic patients (tel. 01792 783686). Many elderly drivers (~1 in 3) who die in accidents are found to have Alzheimer's.
- A pacemaker, defibrillator, or antivenricular tachycardia device fitted.
- Diabetes controlled by insulin or tablets.
- Angina while driving.
- Parkinson's disease.
- Any other chronic neurological condition.
- A serious problem with memory.
- A major or minor stroke with deficit continuing for >1 month.
- Any type of brain surgery, brain tumour. Severe head injury involving inpatient treatment at hospital.
- Any severe psychiatric illness or mental disorder.
- Continuing/permanent difficulty in the use of arms or legs which affects ability to control a vehicle.
- Dependence on or misuse of alcohol, illicit drugs, or chemical substances in the past 3yrs (do not include drink/driving offences).
- Any visual disability which affects *both* eyes (do not declare short/long sight or colour blindness).

Vision (new drivers) should be 6/9 on Snellen's scale in the better eye and 6/12 on the Snellen scale in the other eye, wearing glasses or contact lenses if needed, and 3/60 in each eye without glasses or contact lenses.

¹ DVLA is the UK Driving and Vehicle Licensing Authority.



Contents

Signs:

Examining the respiratory system 48-54

Investigations:

Bedside tests in chest medicine 156

Further investigations in chest medicine 158

Pulmonary conditions:

Pneumonia 160

Specific pneumonias 162

Complications of pneumonia 164

Bronchiectasis 166

Cystic fibrosis (CF) 166

Fungi and the lung 168

Lung tumours 170

Asthma 172

Management of chronic asthma 174

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 176

Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) 178

Respiratory failure 180

Pulmonary embolism (PE) 182

Pneumothorax 182

Pleural effusion 184

Sarcoidosis 186

Interstitial lung disease (ILD) 188

Extrinsic allergic alveolitis (EAA) 188

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF) 190

Industrial dust diseases 192

Obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome 194

Cor pulmonale 194



Fig 1. Richard Doll (1912-2005). Famously, reported the link between cigarette smoking and lung cancer in the *BMJ* in 1950, which led him to stop smoking, concluding that: "The risk of developing the disease increases in proportion to the amount smoked...It may be 50 times as great among those who smoke 25 or more cigarettes a day as among non-smokers.". This was confirmed by the British Doctors' Study in 1954, and led to a major series of public health campaigns and policy changes against smoking. He was instrumental in the development of epidemiology and clinical trials in the UK. Ironically, after his death it became apparent that he had received payments from the chemical industry for a number of years.

Relevant pages in other sections:

Symptoms and signs: The respiratory history and examination (p48-p54); chest deformities (p55); chest pain (p88); clubbing (p33); cough (p48); cyanosis (p28); dyspnoea (p49); haemoptysis (p49); sputum (p53); stridor (p48).

Radiology: CXR (p736-41); chest CT (p744); V/Q scan (p753).

Procedures: Aspirating pleural effusions (p778); pleural biopsy (p779); chest drains (p780); pneumothorax aspiration (p781); arterial blood gas sampling (p785).

▶▶ **Emergencies:** Asthma (p820); COPD (p822); tension pneumothorax (p824); pneumonia (p826); pulmonary embolism (p828).

Others: Sick-cell acute chest (p335); acid-base balance (p684); tuberculosis (p398).

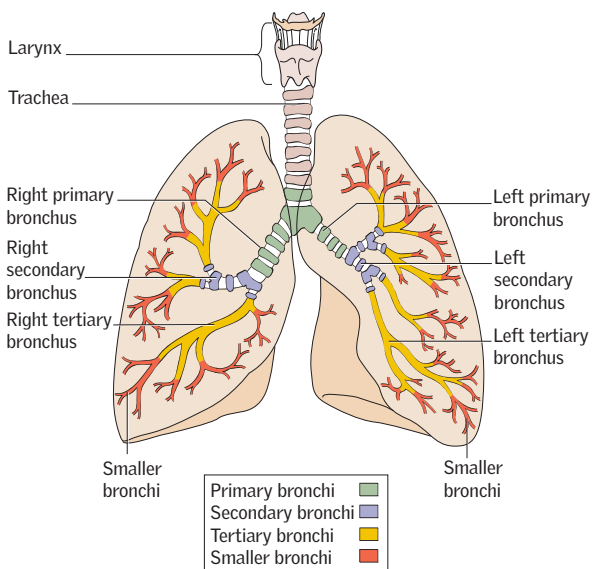


Fig 2. Lung anatomy. The left lung has two lobes and the right has three lobes.



Fig 3. Smoke ring sign: cavitating lung carcinoma. Reproduced from Warrell, Cox, and Firth, *Oxford Textbook of Medicine*, 5th Edition, 2010, with permission from Oxford University Press.

Sputum examination Collect a good sample; if necessary ask a physiotherapist to help. Note the appearance: clear and colourless (chronic bronchitis), yellow-green (pulmonary infection), red (haemoptysis), black (smoke, coal dust), or frothy white-pink (pulmonary oedema). Send the sample to the laboratory for microscopy (Gram stain and auramine/ZN stain, if indicated), culture, and cytology.

Peak expiratory flow (PEF) is measured by a maximal forced expiration through a peak flow meter. It correlates well with the forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) and is used as an estimate of airway calibre, but is more effort-dependent.

Pulse oximetry allows non-invasive assessment of peripheral O₂ saturation (SpO₂). It provides a useful tool for monitoring those who are acutely ill or at risk of deterioration. An oxygen saturation of $\leq 80\%$ is clearly abnormal and action is usually required, unless this is usual for the patient, eg in COPD. If a previously healthy person has pneumonia, a saturation of $< 92\%$ is a serious sign; see p160. Here, check arterial blood gases (ABG) as $P_a\text{CO}_2$ may be rising despite a normal $P_a\text{O}_2$. Causes of erroneous readings: poor perfusion, motion, excess light, skin pigmentation, nail varnish, dysaemoglobinaemias, and carbon monoxide poisoning. As with any bedside test, be sceptical, and check ABG, whenever indicated (p181).

Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis Heparinized blood is usually taken from the radial or femoral artery (see p785), and pH, $P_a\text{O}_2$, and $P_a\text{CO}_2$ are measured using an automated analyser. Remember to note FiO₂ (fraction or percentage of inspired O₂).

- Normal pH is 7.35–7.45. A pH < 7.35 indicates *acidosis* and a pH > 7.45 indicates *alkalosis*. For interpretation of abnormalities, see p684.
- Normal $P_a\text{O}_2$ is 10.5–13.5 kPa. Hypoxia is caused by one or more of the following reasons: ventilation/perfusion (v/Q) mismatch, hypoventilation, abnormal diffusion, right to left cardiac shunts. Of these, v/Q mismatch is the commonest cause. Severe hypoxia is defined as a $P_a\text{O}_2 < 8\text{ kPa}$ (see p180).
- Normal $P_a\text{CO}_2$ is 4.5–6.0 kPa. $P_a\text{CO}_2$ is directly related to alveolar ventilation. A $P_a\text{CO}_2 < 4.5\text{ kPa}$ indicates *hyperventilation* and a $P_a\text{CO}_2 > 6.0\text{ kPa}$ indicates *hypoventilation*.

Type 1 respiratory failure is defined as $P_a\text{O}_2 < 8\text{ kPa}$ and $P_a\text{CO}_2 < 6.0\text{ kPa}$.

Type 2 respiratory failure is defined as $P_a\text{O}_2 < 8\text{ kPa}$ and $P_a\text{CO}_2 > 6.0\text{ kPa}$.

Spirometry measures functional lung volumes. Forced expiratory volume in 1s (FEV₁) and forced vital capacity (FVC) are measured from a full forced expiration into a spirometer (Vitalograph®); exhalation continues until no more breath can be exhaled. FEV₁ is less effort-dependent than PEF. The FEV₁/FVC ratio gives a good estimate of the severity of airflow obstruction; normal ratio is 75–80%. See BOX.

Obstructive defect (eg asthma, COPD) FEV₁ is reduced more than the FVC, and the FEV₁/FVC ratio is $< 75\%$.

Restrictive defect (eg lung fibrosis) FVC is \downarrow and the FEV₁/FVC ratio is \leftrightarrow or \uparrow . Other causes: sarcoidosis; pneumoconiosis, interstitial pneumonias; connective tissue diseases; pleural effusion; obesity; kyphoscoliosis; neuromuscular problems.



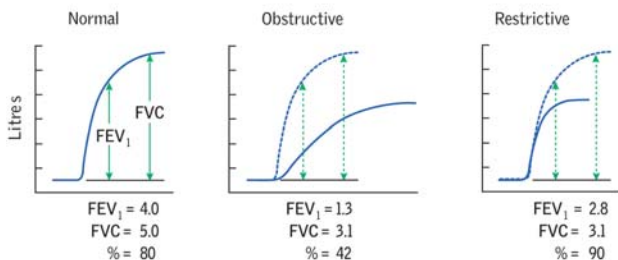


Fig 1. Examples of spiromograms.

(Aa)PO₂: the Alveolar-arterial (Aa) oxygen gradient¹

This is the difference in the O₂ partial pressures between the alveolar and arterial sides, i.e. $(Aa)PO_2 = P_AO_2 - P_aO_2$.

P_AO_2 , the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveoli, depends on R , the respiratory quotient (≈ 0.8 , nearer to 1 if eating all carbohydrates); barometric pressure ($P_B \approx 101\text{kPa}$ at sea level), and P_{H_2O} , the water saturation of airway gas ($P_{H_2O} \approx 6.2\text{kPa}$ as inspired air is usually fully saturated by the time it gets to the carina). P_AO_2 also depends on F_iO_2 , the fractional concentration of O₂ in inspired air (eg F_iO_2 is 0.5 if breathing 50% O₂, and 0.21 if breathing room air). So (at sea level)...

$$P_AO_2 = (P_B - P_{H_2O}) \times F_iO_2 - (P_aCO_2/R)$$

$$= (101 - 6.2) \times F_iO_2 - (P_aCO_2/0.8) = (94.8 \times F_iO_2) - (P_aCO_2 \div 0.8)$$

In type II respiratory failure it helps tell if hypoventilation is from lung disease or poor respiratory effort. Aa gradient normal range breathing air: 0.2–1.5kPa aged 25yrs; † to 1.5–3.0 at 75yrs. A high Aa gradient indicates a problem with O₂ transfer, whereas a normal Aa gradient in the context of hypoxia suggests hypoventilation.





Lung function tests PEF, FEV₁, FVC (see p156). **Total lung capacity** (TLC) and **residual volume** (RV) are useful in distinguishing obstructive and restrictive diseases. TLC and RV are increased in obstructive airways disease and reduced in restrictive lung diseases and musculoskeletal abnormalities. The **gas transfer** coefficient (KCO) represents the carbon monoxide diffusing capacity (DLCO) corrected for alveolar volume. It is calculated by measuring carbon monoxide uptake from a single inspiration in a standard time (usually 10s) and lung volume by helium dilution. Low in emphysema and interstitial lung disease, high in alveolar haemorrhage.² **Flow volume loop** measures flow at various lung volumes. Characteristic patterns are seen with intra-thoracic airways obstruction (asthma, emphysema) and extra-thoracic airways obstruction (tracheal stenosis).

Radiology **Chest x-ray** see p736. **Ultrasound** is used in the diagnosis and to guide drainage of pleural effusions (particularly loculated effusions) and empyema. **Radio-nuclide scans** *Ventilation/perfusion (V/Q, p752) scans* are occasionally used to diagnose pulmonary embolism (PE) (unmatched perfusion defects are seen). **Bone scans** are used to diagnose bone metastases. **Computed tomography** (CT, p744) of the thorax is used for diagnosing and staging lung cancer, imaging the hila, mediastinum and pleura, and guiding biopsies. Thin (1-1.5mm) section high resolution CT (HRCT) is used in the diagnosis of interstitial lung disease and bronchiectasis. CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA, p753) is used in the diagnosis of PE. **Pulmonary angiography** is now rarely used for diagnosing pulmonary hypertension.

Fibreoptic bronchoscopy is performed under local anaesthetic via the nose or mouth. **Diagnostic indications:** suspected lung carcinoma, slowly resolving pneumonia, pneumonia in the immunosuppressed, interstitial lung disease. Bronchial lavage fluid may be sent to the lab for microscopy, culture, and cytology. Mucosal abnormalities may be brushed (cytology) and biopsied (histopathology). **Therapeutic indications:** aspiration of mucus plugs causing lobar collapse, removal of foreign bodies, stenting or treating tumours, eg laser. **Pre-procedure investigations:** FBC, CXR, spirometry, pulse oximetry and **ABG** (if indicated). Check clotting if recent anticoagulation and potential biopsy. **Complications:** respiratory depression, bleeding, pneumothorax (fig 1, p763). **Diagnostic sensitivity** for cancer 50-90%, depends on tumour location; gene profiling of cell sample may improve this.³ May also be used to deliver an ultrasound probe (endobronchial ultrasound), and treatments—eg stents, or cryotherapy.

Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) is performed at the time of bronchoscopy by instilling and aspirating a known volume of warmed, buffered 0.9% saline into the distal airway. **Diagnostic indications:** suspected malignancy, pneumonia in the immunosuppressed (especially HIV), suspected TB (if sputum negative), interstitial lung diseases (eg sarcoidosis, extrinsic allergic alveolitis, histiocytosis X). **Therapeutic indications:** alveolar proteinosis.¹ **Complications:** hypoxia (give supplemental O₂), transient fever, transient CXR shadow, infection (rare).

Lung biopsy may be performed in several ways. **Percutaneous needle biopsy** is performed under radiological guidance and is useful for peripheral lung and pleural lesions. **Transbronchial biopsy** performed at bronchoscopy may help in diagnosing diffuse lung diseases, eg sarcoidosis. If these are unsuccessful, an **open lung biopsy** may be performed under general anaesthetic.

Surgical procedures are performed under general anaesthetic. **Rigid bronchoscopy** provides a wide lumen, enables larger mucosal biopsies, control of bleeding, and removal of foreign bodies. **Mediastinoscopy** and **mediastinotomy** enable examination and biopsy of the mediastinal lymph nodes/lesions. **Thoracoscopy** allows examination and biopsy of pleural lesions, drainage of pleural effusions, and talc pleurodesis.

1 Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis causes cough, dyspnoea, and restrictive spirometry. It is caused by accumulation of surfactant-derived acidophilic phospholipid/protein compounds which fill alveoli and distal bronchioles. Diagnosis may require lung biopsy. Cause: primary genetic or antibody problem, or secondary to inflammation caused by inhaling silica, aluminium or titanium.⁴

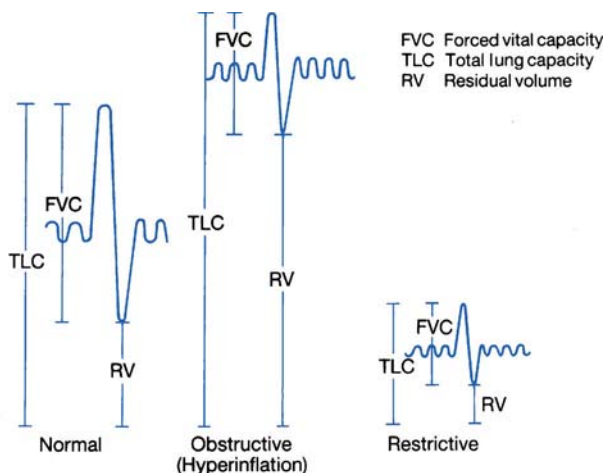


Fig 1. Lung volumes: physiological and pathological. Adapted from D Flenley *Med Int'l* (20) 240.

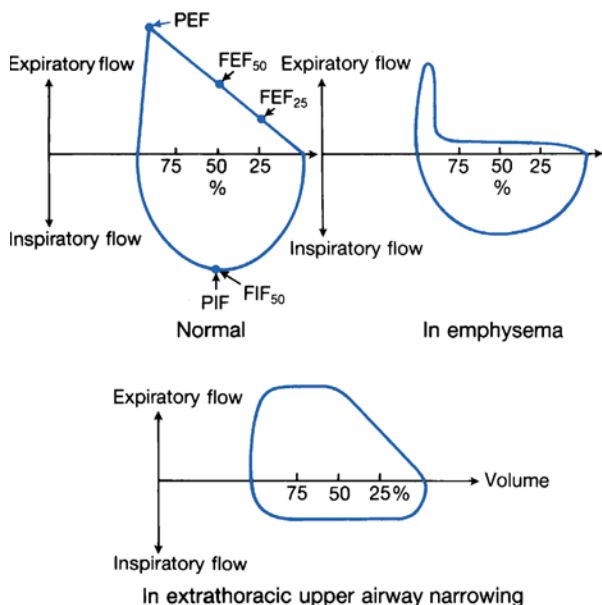


Fig 2. Flow volume loops.

PEF=peak expiratory flow; FEF₅₀=forced expiratory flow at 50% TLC;
 FEF₂₅=forced expiratory flow at 25% TLC; PIF=peak inspiratory flow;
 FIF₅₀=forced inspiratory flow at 50% TLC.

After B Harrison in *Thoracic Medicine* 1981, ed P Emerson,
 Butterworths, London; and B Harrison 1971 *Thorax* 26 579



An acute lower respiratory tract illness associated with fever, symptoms and signs in the chest, and abnormalities on the chest x-ray—**fig 1**, p737. Incidence: 5–11/1000, ↑ if very young or old (30% are under 65yrs). Mortality: ~21% in hospital.

Classification and causes

Community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) may be primary or secondary to underlying disease. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is the commonest cause, followed by *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*. *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Legionella* species, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, and *Chlamydia* account for most of the remainder. Gram negative bacilli, *Coxiella burnetii* and anaerobes are rarer. Viruses account for up to 15%. Flu may be complicated by community-acquired MRSA pneumonia (CA-MRSA).

Hospital-acquired (nosocomial); >48h after hospital admission). Most commonly Gram negative enterobacteria or *Staph. aureus*. Also *Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella*, *Bacteroides*, and *Clostridia*.

Aspiration Those with stroke, myasthenia, bulbar palsies, ↓consciousness (eg post-ictal or drunk), oesophageal disease (achalasia, reflux), or with poor dental hygiene risk aspirating oropharyngeal anaerobes.

Immunocompromised patient: *Strep. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *Staph. aureus*, *M. catarrhalis*, *M. pneumoniae*, Gram -ve bacilli and *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (formerly named *P. carinii*, p410–p411). Other fungi, viruses (CMV, HSV), and mycobacteria.

Clinical features **Symptoms**: Fever, rigors, malaise, anorexia, dyspnoea, cough, purulent sputum, haemoptysis, and pleuritic pain. **Signs**: Pyrexia, cyanosis, confusion (can be the only sign in the elderly—may also be hypothermic), tachypnoea, tachycardia, hypotension, signs of consolidation (diminished expansion, dull percussion note, tactile vocal fremitus/vocal resonance, bronchial breathing), and a pleural rub.

Tests aim to establish diagnosis, identify pathogen, and assess severity (see below). **CXR** (**fig 1**, p737): lobar or multilobar infiltrates, cavitation or pleural effusion. Assess **oxygenation**: oxygen saturation, p156 (ABGs if $S_aO_2 < 92\%$ or severe pneumonia) and BP. **Blood tests**: FBC, U&E, LFT, CRP, blood cultures. **Sputum** for microscopy and culture. In severe cases, check for *Legionella* (sputum culture, urine antigen), atypical organism/viral serology (PCR sputum/BAL, complement fixation tests acutely, paired serology) and check for pneumococcal antigen in urine. **Pleural fluid** may be aspirated for culture. Consider **bronchoscopy** and **bronchoalveolar lavage** if patient is immunocompromised or on ITU.

Severity 'CURB-65' is a simple, validated scoring system.^{6,7} 1 point for each of: **C**onfusion (abbreviated mental test ≤8); **U**rea >7mmol/L; **R**espiratory rate ≥30/min; **B**P <90 systolic and/or 60mmHg diastolic; age ≥65. 0–1 home Rx possible; 2 hospital therapy; ≥3 severe pneumonia indicates mortality 15–40%—consider ITU. It may 'underscore' the young—use clinical judgement. Other features increasing the risk of death are: co-existing disease; bilateral/multilobar involvement; $P_aO_2 < 8kPa$ / $S_aO_2 < 92\%$.

Management ▶▶ p826. **Antibiotics** (p161): orally if not severe and not vomiting; severe give by IV. **Oxygen**: keep $P_aO_2 > 8.0$ and/or saturation ≥94%. **IV fluids** (anorexia, dehydration, shock) and VTE prophylaxis. **Analgesia** if pleurisy—eg paracetamol 1g/6h. Consider ITU if shock, hypercapnia, or uncorrected hypoxia. If failure to improve, or CRP remains high, repeat CXR and look for progression/complications. **Follow-up**: at 6 weeks (±cXR).

Complications (p164) Pleural effusion, empyema, lung abscess, respiratory failure, septicaemia, brain abscess, pericarditis, myocarditis, cholestatic jaundice. Repeat CRP and CXR in patients not progressing satisfactorily.

Pneumococcal vaccine (eg 23-valent Pneumovax II®, 0.5mL sc) At-risk groups: • ≥65yrs old • Chronic heart, liver (eg cirrhosis), renal (eg renal failure, nephrosis*, post-transplant*) or lung conditions • Diabetes mellitus • Immunosuppression, eg spleen function↓ (eg splenectomy, asplenia*, sickle cell* or coeliac disease), AIDS, or on chemotherapy or prednisolone >20mg/d. CI: pregnancy, lactation, T⁺t. (* = 1 risk of fatal pneumococcal infection (above), revaccinate after 6yrs.) Children: **OHCS** p151.



Empirical treatment of pneumonia (check local policy)⁵

Clinical setting	Organisms	Antibiotic (further dosage details: p378 & p379)
<i>Community-acquired</i>		
Mild not previously R	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	Oral amoxicillin 500mg-1g/8h or clarithromycin 500mg/12h or doxycycline 200mg loading then 100mg/day
Moderate	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	Oral amoxicillin 500mg-1g/8h + clarithromycin 500mg/12h or doxycycline 200mg loading then 100mg/12h. If IV required: amoxicillin 500mg/8h + clarithromycin 500mg/12h
Severe	As above	Co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h IV or cephalosporin IV (eg cefuroxime 1.5g/8h IV) AND clarithromycin 500mg/12h IV. Add flucloxacillin± rifampicin if staph suspected; vancomycin (or teicoplanin) if MRSA suspected. Treat for 10d (14-21d if staph, legionella, or Gram -ve enteric bacteria suspected).
	Panton-Valentine Leukocidin-producing <i>Staph. aureus</i> (PVL-SA)	Seek urgent help. Consider adding IV linezolid, clindamycin, and rifampicin
Atypical	<i>Legionella pneumophila</i>	Fluoroquinolone combined with clarithromycin, or rifampicin, if severe. See p162.
	<i>Chlamydophila</i> species	Tetracycline
	<i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i>	High-dose co-trimoxazole (p410-p411)
<i>Hospital-acquired</i>		
	Gram negative bacilli Pseudomonas Anaerobes	Aminoglycoside IV + antipseudomonal penicillin IV or 3 rd gen. cephalosporin IV (p379)
<i>Aspiration</i>		
	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> Anaerobes	Cephalosporin IV + metronidazole IV
<i>Neutropenic patients</i>		
	Gram positive cocci Gram negative bacilli	Aminoglycoside IV + antipseudomonal penicillin IV or 3 rd gen. cephalosporin IV
	Fungi (p168)	Consider antifungals after 48h

3rd gen=3rd generation, eg cefotaxime, p379; gentamicin is an example of an aminoglycoside (p381).

Ticarcillin is an example of an antipseudomonal penicillin.



For antibiotic doses, see p378–382. TB: ► see p398.

Pneumococcal pneumonia is the commonest bacterial pneumonia. It affects all ages, but is commoner in the elderly, alcoholics, post-splenectomy, immuno-suppressed, and patients with chronic heart failure or pre-existing lung disease. Clinical features: fever, pleurisy, herpes labialis. CXR shows lobar consolidation. If mod/severe check for urinary antigen. Treatment: amoxicillin, benzylpenicillin, or cephalosporin.

Staphylococcal pneumonia may complicate influenza infection or occur in the young, elderly, intravenous drug users, or patients with underlying disease, eg leukaemia, lymphoma, cystic fibrosis (cf). It causes a bilateral cavitating bronchopneumonia. Treatment: flucloxacillin ± rifampicin, MRSA: contact lab; consider vancomycin.

Klebsiella pneumonia is rare. Occurs in elderly, diabetics and alcoholics. Causes a cavitating pneumonia, particularly of the upper lobes, often drug resistant. Treatment: cefotaxime or imipenem.

Pseudomonas is a common pathogen in bronchiectasis and cf. It also causes hospital-acquired infections, particularly on ITU or after surgery. Treatment: anti-pseudomonal penicillin, ceftazidime, meropenem, or ciprofloxacin + aminoglycoside. Consider dual therapy to minimize resistance.

Mycoplasma pneumoniae occurs in epidemics about every 4yrs. It presents insidiously with flu-like symptoms (headache, myalgia, arthralgia) followed by a dry cough. CXR: reticular-nodular shadowing or patchy consolidation often of 1 lower lobe, and worse than signs suggest. Diagnosis: PCR sputum or serology. Cold agglutinins may cause an autoimmune haemolytic anaemia. Complications: skin rash (erythema multiforme, fig 3, p564), Stevens-Johnson syndrome, meningoencephalitis or myelitis; Guillain-Barré syndrome. Treatment: clarithromycin (500mg/12h) or doxycycline (200mg loading then 100mg od) or a fluoroquinolone (eg ciprofloxacin or norfloxacin).

Legionella pneumophila colonizes water tanks kept at <60°C (eg hotel air-conditioning and hot water systems) causing outbreaks of Legionnaire's disease. Flu-like symptoms (fever, malaise, myalgia) precede a dry cough and dyspnoea. Extra-pulmonary features include anorexia, D&V, hepatitis, renal failure, confusion, and coma. CXR shows bi-basal consolidation. Blood tests may show lymphopenia, hyponatraemia, and deranged LFTs. Urinalysis may show haematuria. Diagnosis: *Legionella* urine antigen/culture. Treatment: fluoroquinolone for 2–3wks or clarithromycin (p380). 10% mortality.

Chlamydia pneumoniae is the commonest chlamydial infection. Person-to-person spread occurs causing a biphasic illness: pharyngitis, hoarseness, otitis, followed by pneumonia. Diagnosis: *Chlamydia* complement fixation test, PCR invasive samples.⁸ Treatment: doxycycline or clarithromycin.

Chlamydia psittaci causes psittacosis, an ornithosis acquired from infected birds (typically parrots). Symptoms include headache, fever, dry cough, lethargy, arthralgia, anorexia, and D&V. Extra-pulmonary features are legion but rare, eg meningo-encephalitis, infective endocarditis, hepatitis, nephritis, rash, splenomegaly. CXR shows patchy consolidation. Diagnosis: *Chlamydia* serology. Treatment: doxycycline or clarithromycin.

Viral pneumonia The commonest cause is influenza (p402 and Box). Other viruses that can affect the lung are: measles, CMV, and varicella zoster.

Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) causes pneumonia in the immunosuppressed (eg HIV). The organism responsible was previously called *Pneumocystis carinii*, and now called *Pneumocystis jiroveci*.⁹ It presents with a dry cough, exertional dyspnoea, ↓P₅₀O₂, fever, bilateral crepitations. CXR may be normal or show bilateral perihilar interstitial shadowing. Diagnosis: visualization of the organism in induced sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage, or in a lung biopsy specimen. Drugs: high-dose co-trimoxazole (p410–p411), or pentamidine by slow IVI for 2–3 weeks (p411). Steroids are beneficial if severe hypoxaemia. Prophylaxis is indicated if the CD4 count is <200×10⁶/L or after the 1st attack.¹⁰



Avian influenza

Avian-to-human transmission of the H5N1 strain of influenza A causes serious infection in humans with a $\geq 50\%$ mortality, often from a rapidly progressive pneumonia. Human-to-human transmission is reported but is unusual. Oseltamivir can reduce morbidity from influenza A by 1-2 days (see p402; note that oseltamivir-resistant H5N1 has been reported).¹¹ A vaccine is available,¹² but the most likely cause of a pandemic is a new mutant developing between human and avian viruses (genetic reassortment, p403) which may require a different vaccine.

► Suspect avian flu if fever ($>38^{\circ}\text{C}$) plus lower respiratory track signs or consolidation on CXR, or life-threatening infection, AND contact with poultry or others with similar symptoms.¹³ NB: D&V, abdominal pain, pleuritic pain, and bleeding from the nose and gums are reported to be an early feature in some patients.¹⁴

Diagnosis: Viral culture \pm reverse transcriptase-PCR with H5 & N1 specific primers.¹⁵

Management: ► Get help. Contain the outbreak (use your pandemic preparedness plan¹, p403, in the UK, via your consultant in communicable disease control, CCDC). Ventilatory support + O_2 and antivirals may be needed. Nebulizers and high-air flow O_2 masks are implicated in nosocomial spread (use with meticulous precautions).^{14,16}

Precautions for close contacts:

Use appropriate hand hygiene, do not share utensils, avoid face-to-face contact with suspected or proven cases, wear high-efficiency masks and eye protection. Start empirical antiviral treatment and do diagnostic testing if fever ($T^{\circ} >38^{\circ}\text{C}$) and cough, shortness of breath, diarrhoea, or other systemic symptoms develop. In case of close contact or sharing a defined setting (household, extended family, hospital or other residential institution, or military service) with a patient with proven or suspected avian influenza A (H5N1) infection, monitor body temperature twice daily, check for symptoms for 7d after the last exposure, and start post-exposure prophylaxis with oseltamivir: 75mg once daily for 7-10d.¹⁷

SARS¹⁸

Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is caused by SARS-CoV virus—a coronavirus. Major features are persistent fever ($>38^{\circ}\text{C}$), chills, rigors, myalgia, dry cough, headache, diarrhoea, and dyspnoea—with an abnormal CXR and WCC \downarrow . Respiratory failure is the big complication; $>50\%$ need supplemental O_2 ; $\sim 20\%$ progress to acute respiratory distress syndrome requiring invasive ventilation.¹⁹

Mortality is 1-50%, depending on age. Close contact with an index case, or travel to an area with known cases should raise suspicion. The mechanism of transmission of SARS-CoV is only by close contact with other patients.

Management is supportive. No drugs have convincing efficacy (experts may advise on antivirals). Rapid diagnosis, early isolation, and good infection control measures are vital. Communicate with your consultant in infectious diseases.¹⁹

¹ Therapeutic or prophylactic antivirals are said to be the most effective single intervention followed by vaccine and basic public health measures.²⁰ But oseltamivir resistance and unavailability of a suitable vaccine during the early stages of a pandemic make non-drug interventions all the more important.

Respiratory failure (See p180.) Type 1 respiratory failure ($P_aO_2 < 8\text{kPa}$) is relatively common. Treatment is with high-flow (60%) oxygen. *Transfer the patient to ITU if hypoxia does not improve with O_2 therapy or P_aCO_2 rises to $>6\text{kPa}$.* Be careful with O_2 in COPD patients; check ABGs frequently, and consider elective ventilation if rising P_aCO_2 or worsening acidosis. Aim to keep SO_2 at 94–98%, $P_aO_2 \geq 8\text{kPa}$.

Hypotension may be due to a combination of dehydration and vasodilatation due to sepsis. If systolic BP is $<90\text{mmHg}$, give an intravenous fluid challenge of 250mL colloid/crystalloid over 15min. If BP does not rise, consider a central line and give IV fluids to maintain the systolic BP $>90\text{mmHg}$. If systolic BP remains $<90\text{mmHg}$ despite fluid therapy, request ITU assessment for inotropic support (adrenaline, noradrenaline).

Atrial fibrillation (p124) is quite common, particularly in the elderly. It usually resolves with treatment of the pneumonia. β -blocker or digoxin may be required to slow the ventricular response rate in the short term.

Pleural effusion Inflammation of the pleura by adjacent pneumonia may cause fluid exudation into the pleural space. If this accumulates in the pleural space faster than it is reabsorbed, a pleural effusion develops. If this is small it may be of no consequence. If it becomes large and symptomatic, or infected (empyema), drainage is required (p184 & p780).

Empyema is pus in the pleural space. It should be suspected if a patient with a resolving pneumonia develops a recurrent fever. Clinical features: CXR indicates a pleural effusion. The aspirated pleural fluid is typically yellow and turbid with a pH <7.2 , glucose \downarrow , and LDH \uparrow . The empyema should be drained using a chest drain, inserted under radiological guidance. Adhesions and loculation can make this difficult.

Lung abscess is a cavitating area of localized, suppurative infection within the lung (see fig 1).

Causes: •Inadequately treated pneumonia •Aspiration (eg alcoholism, oesophageal obstruction, bulbar palsy) •Bronchial obstruction (tumour, foreign body) •Pulmonary infarction •Septic emboli (septicaemia, right heart endocarditis, IV drug use) •Subphrenic or hepatic abscess.

Clinical features: Swinging fever; cough; purulent, foul-smelling sputum; pleuritic chest pain; haemoptysis; malaise; weight loss. Look for: finger clubbing; anaemia; crepitations. Empyema develops in 20–30%.

Tests: **Blood:** FBC (anaemia, neutrophilia), ESR, CRP, blood cultures. Sputum microscopy, culture, and cytology. **CXR:** walled cavity, often with a fluid level. Consider CT scan to exclude obstruction, and bronchoscopy to obtain diagnostic specimens.

Treatment: Antibiotics as indicated by sensitivities; continue until healed (4–6 wks). Postural drainage. Repeated aspiration, antibiotic instillation, or surgical excision may be required.

Septicaemia may occur as a result of bacterial spread from the lung parenchyma into the bloodstream. This may cause metastatic infection, eg infective endocarditis, meningitis. Treatment with IV antibiotic according to sensitivities.

Pericarditis and myocarditis may also complicate pneumonia.

Jaundice This is usually cholestatic, and may be due to sepsis or secondary to antibiotic therapy (particularly flucloxacillin and co-amoxiclav).



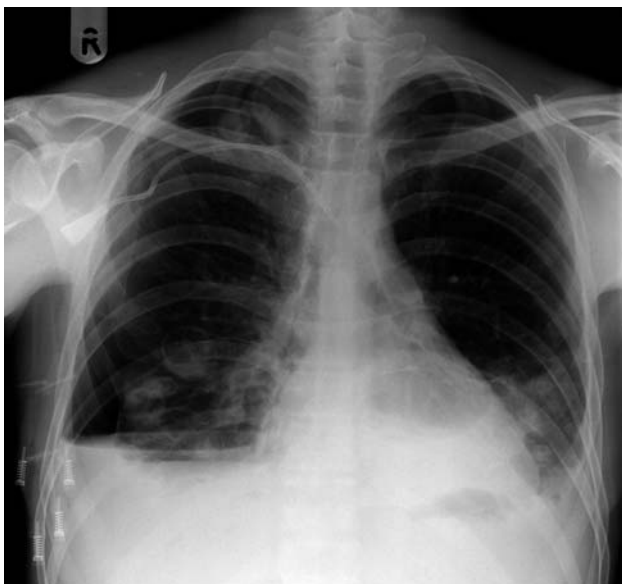


Fig 1. PA chest radiograph showing multiple rounded ring lesions of differing sizes in the right lower zone, at the right apex and in the left lower zone. The lesions are largest in the right lower zone, where they can be seen to contain air-fluid levels, typical appearance of infection in a pneumatocele (=air cyst) or cavitating lesion. A moderate right-sided hydropneumothorax can also be seen, suggesting that one of these lesions may have ruptured into the pleural cavity. The patient also has a right subclavian central venous catheter for the administration of antibiotics. The diagnosis in this case was that of multiple pulmonary abscesses in a patient who was an intravenous drug user.

Image courtesy of Derby Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust Radiology Department.





Pathology Chronic infection of the bronchi and bronchioles leading to permanent dilatation of these airways. Main organisms: *H. influenzae*; *Strep. pneumoniae*; *Staph. aureus*; *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

Causes *Congenital*: cystic fibrosis (CF); Young's syndrome; primary ciliary dyskinesia; Kartagener's syndrome (OHCS p646). *Post-infection*: measles; pertussis; bronchiolitis; pneumonia; TB; HIV. *Other*: bronchial obstruction (tumour, foreign body); allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA, p168); hypogammaglobulinaemia; rheumatoid arthritis; ulcerative colitis; idiopathic.

Clinical features *Symptoms*: persistent cough; copious purulent sputum; intermittent haemoptysis. *Signs*: finger clubbing; coarse inspiratory crepitations; wheeze (asthma, COPD, ABPA). *Complications*: pneumonia, pleural effusion; pneumothorax; haemoptysis; cerebral abscess; amyloidosis.

Tests *Sputum culture*. *CXR*: cystic shadows, thickened bronchial walls (tramline and ring shadows); see fig 1. *HRCT chest*: (p158) to assess extent and distribution of disease. *Spirometry* often shows an obstructive pattern; reversibility should be assessed. *Bronchoscopy* to locate site of haemoptysis, exclude obstruction and obtain samples for culture. *Other tests*: serum immunoglobulins; CF sweat test; *Aspergillus* precipitins or skin-prick test.

Management • *Postural drainage* should be performed twice daily. Chest physiotherapy may aid sputum expectoration and mucous drainage. • *Antibiotics* should be prescribed according to bacterial sensitivities. Patients known to culture *Pseudomonas* will require either oral ciprofloxacin or IV antibiotics. If ≥ 3 exacerbations a year consider long-term antibiotics. • *Bronchodilators* (eg nebulized salbutamol) may be useful in patients with asthma, COPD, CF, ABPA (p168). • *Corticosteroids* (eg prednisolone) for ABPA. • *Surgery* may be indicated in localized disease or to control severe haemoptysis.

Cystic fibrosis (CF)

See OHCS (Paediatrics, p162)

One of the commonest life-threatening autosomal recessive conditions (1:2000 live births) affecting Caucasians. Caused by mutations in the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene on chromosome 7 (>800 mutations have now been identified). This is a Cl^- channel, and the defect leads to a combination of defective chloride secretion and increased sodium absorption across airway epithelium. The changes in the composition of airway surface liquid predispose the lung to chronic pulmonary infections and bronchiectasis.

Clinical features *Neonate*: Failure to thrive; meconium ileus; rectal prolapse.

Children and young adults: *Respiratory*: cough; wheeze; recurrent infections; bronchiectasis; pneumothorax; haemoptysis; respiratory failure; cor pulmonale. *Gastro-intestinal*: pancreatic insufficiency (diabetes mellitus, steatorrhoea); distal intestinal obstruction syndrome (meconium ileus equivalent); gallstones; cirrhosis. *Other*: male infertility; osteoporosis; arthritis; vasculitis (p558); nasal polyps; sinusitis; and hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy (HPOA). *Signs*: cyanosis; finger clubbing; bilateral coarse crackles.

Diagnosis *Sweat test*: sweat sodium and chloride >60mmol/L; chloride usually > sodium. *Genetics*: screening for known common CF mutations should be considered. *Faecal elastase* is a simple and useful screening test for exocrine pancreatic dysfunction.

Tests *Blood*: FBC, U&E, LFT; clotting; vitamin A, D, E levels; annual glucose tolerance test (p198). *Bacteriology*: cough swab, sputum culture. *Radiology*: *CXR*; hyperinflation; bronchiectasis. *Abdominal ultrasound*: fatty liver; cirrhosis; chronic pancreatitis; *Spirometry*: obstructive defect. *Aspergillus serology/skin test* (20% develop ABPA, p168). *Biochemistry*: faecal fat analysis.



Fig 1. PA chest radiograph showing marked abnormal dilatation of the airways throughout the right upper lobe, along with similar changes to a lesser degree throughout the rest of the lung (most notably in the periphery of the left upper zone). Appearances are that of bronchiectasis, which in this case was congenital. The fine background reticular pattern in the lungs suggests that there may also be some interstitial lung disease present.

Image courtesy of Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust Radiology Department.

Management of cystic fibrosis

Patients with cystic fibrosis are best managed by a multidisciplinary team, eg physician, GP, physiotherapist, specialist nurse, and dietician, with attention to psychosocial as well as physical wellbeing. Gene therapy (transfer of CFTR gene using liposome or adenovirus vectors) is not yet possible.

Chest: Physiotherapy regularly (postural drainage, active cycle breathing techniques or forced expiratory techniques). Antibiotics are given for acute infective exacerbations and prophylactically (PO or nebulized). Mucolytics may be useful (eg DNase, ie Dornase alfa, 2.5mg daily nebulized, *OHCS* p163). Bronchodilators.

Gastrointestinal: Pancreatic enzyme replacement; fat soluble vitamin supplements (A, D, E, K); ursodeoxycholic acid for impaired liver function; cirrhosis may require liver transplantation.

Other: Treatment of CF-related diabetes; screening for and treatment of osteoporosis; treatment of arthritis, sinusitis, and vasculitis; fertility and genetic counselling.

Advanced lung disease: Oxygen, diuretics (cor pulmonale); non-invasive ventilation; lung or heart/lung transplantation.

Prognosis: Median survival is now ~40yrs in the UK.



Aspergillus This group of fungi affects the lung in 5 ways:

- 1 **Asthma:** Type I hypersensitivity (atopic) reaction to fungal spores (p172).
- 2 **Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA):** Results from type I and III hypersensitivity reactions to *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Affects 1–% of asthmatics, 2–25% of CF patients.²² Early on, the allergic response causes bronchoconstriction, but as the inflammation persists, permanent damage occurs, causing bronchiectasis (fig 1). *Symptoms:* wheeze, cough, sputum (plugs of mucus containing fungal hyphae, see p440), dyspnoea, and 'recurrent pneumonia'. *Investigations:* CXR (transient segmental collapse or consolidation, bronchiectasis); *Aspergillus* in sputum; positive *Aspergillus* skin test and/or *Aspergillus*-specific IgE RAST (radioallergosorbent test); positive serum precipitins; eosinophilia; raised serum IgE. *Treatment:* prednisolone 30–40mg/24h po for acute attacks; maintenance dose 5–10mg/d. Sometimes itraconazole is used in combination with corticosteroids. Bronchodilators for asthma. Sometimes bronchoscopic aspiration of mucous plugs is needed.
- 3 **Aspergilloma (mycetoma):** A fungus ball within a pre-existing cavity (often caused by TB or sarcoidosis). It is usually asymptomatic but may cause cough, haemoptysis (may be torrential), lethargy ± weight loss. *Investigations:* CXR (round opacity within a cavity, usually apical); sputum culture; strongly positive serum precipitins; *Aspergillus* skin test (30% +ve). *Treatment* (only if symptomatic): consider surgical excision for solitary symptomatic lesions or severe haemoptysis. Oral itraconazole and other antifungals have been tried with limited success. Local instillation of amphotericin paste under CT guidance yields partial success in carefully selected patients, eg in massive haemoptysis.
- 4 **Invasive aspergillosis:** *Risk factors:*²³ immunocompromise, eg HIV, leukaemia, burns, Wegener's* (p728), and SLE, or after broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy. *Investigations:* sputum culture; BAL; biopsy; serum precipitins; CXR (consolidation, abscess). Early chest CT and serial serum measurements of galactomannan (an *Aspergillus* antigen) may be helpful. Diagnosis may only be made at lung biopsy or autopsy. *Treatment:* voriconazole is superior to IV amphotericin.²⁴ Alternatives: IV miconazole or ketoconazole (less effective). *Prognosis:* 30% mortality.
- 5 **Extrinsic allergic alveolitis (EAA)** may be caused by sensitivity to *Aspergillus clavatus* ('malt worker's lung'). Clinical features and treatment are as for other causes of EAA (p188). Diagnosis is based on a history of exposure and presence of serum precipitins to *A. clavatus*. Pulmonary fibrosis may occur if untreated.

Other fungal infections *Candida* and *Cryptococcus* may cause pneumonia in the immunosuppressed (see p440).

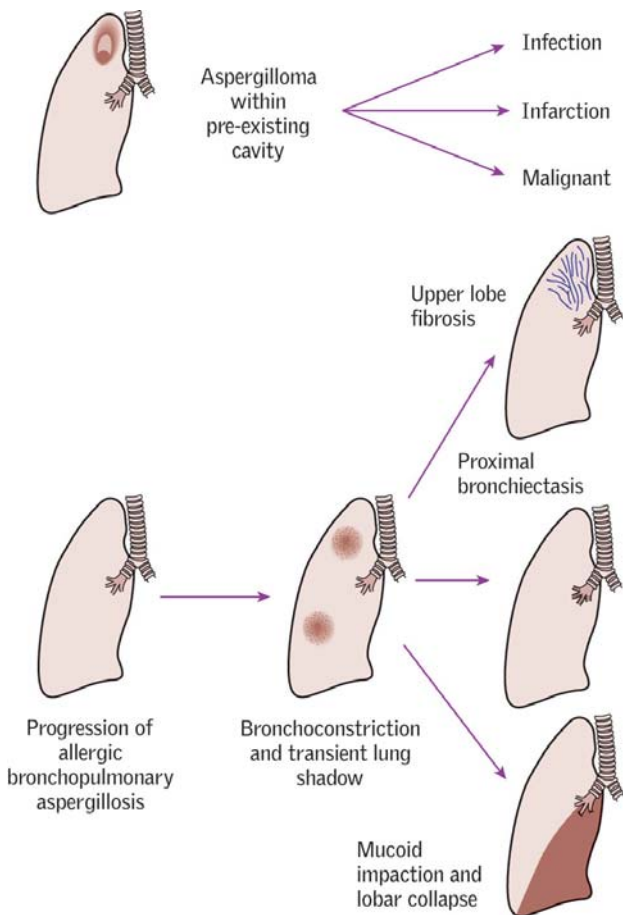


Fig 1. Aspergillosis.

Using amphotericin B

Test dose: 1mg in 20mL 5% dextrose IV over 20–30min. Observe closely for the next ½h for signs of anaphylaxis (shock, swelling, wheeze, etc.). There are various formulations. Consult *BNF*. *Do not give any other drug in the same IVI*. SE: anaphylaxis; serious nephrotoxicity; fever; rash; anorexia; nausea; D&V; headache; myalgia; arthralgia; anaemia; ↓K⁺; ↓Mg²⁺; hepatotoxicity; arrhythmias; hearing loss; diplopia; seizures; neuropathy; phlebitis. *Monitor U&E daily*. **AmBisome**® (liposomal amphotericin) has fewer SEs, but is expensive; it is indicated in systemic or deep mycoses where nephrotoxicity precludes conventional amphotericin; IV initial test dose: 1mg over 10min, then 3mg/kg/d (max 5mg/kg/d IVI).²⁵ Alternatives: **Abelcet**® and **Amphocil**®



Carcinoma of the bronchus Accounts for ~19% of all cancers and 27% of cancer deaths (40,000 cases/yr in UK). Incidence is increasing in women. Only 5% 'cured'.

Risk factors: Cigarette smoking is the major risk factor. Others: asbestos, chromium, arsenic, iron oxides, and radiation (radon gas).

Histology: Squamous (35%); adenocarcinoma (27%); small (oat) cell (20%); large cell (10%); alveolar cell carcinoma (rare, <1%). Clinically the most important division is between small cell (SCLC) and non-small cell (NSCLC).

Symptoms: Cough (80%); haemoptysis (70%); dyspnoea (60%); chest pain (40%); recurrent or slowly resolving pneumonia; lethargy, anorexia; weight loss. **Signs:** Cachexia; anaemia; clubbing; HPOA (hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy, causing wrist pain); supraclavicular or axillary nodes. **Chest signs:** none, or: consolidation; collapse; pleural effusion. **Metastases:** bone tenderness; hepatomegaly; confusion; fits; focal CNS signs; cerebellar syndrome; proximal myopathy; peripheral neuropathy.

Complications: *Local:* recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy; phrenic nerve palsy; svc obstruction; Horner's syndrome (Pancoast's tumour); rib erosion; pericarditis; AF. *Metastatic:* brain; bone (bone pain, anaemia, $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$); liver; adrenals (Addison's). *Endocrine:* ectopic hormone secretion, eg SIADH ($\uparrow\text{Na}^+$ and $\uparrow\text{ADH}$, p678) and ACTH (Cushing's) by small cell tumours; PTH ($\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$) by squamous cell tumours. *Non-metastatic neurological:* confusion; fits; cerebellar syndrome; proximal myopathy; neuropathy; polymyositis; Lambert-Eaton syndrome (p516). *Other:* clubbing, HPOA, dermatomyositis; acanthosis nigricans (p565, fig 6); thrombophlebitis migrans (p564).

Tests: (see BOX 1, fig 1) *Cytology:* sputum and pleural fluid (send at least 20mL). *CXR:* peripheral nodule; hilar enlargement; consolidation; lung collapse; pleural effusion; bony secondaries. Peripheral lesions and superficial lymph nodes may be amenable to percutaneous *fine needle aspiration* or *biopsy*. *CT* to stage the tumour (BOX 2) and guide bronchoscopy. *Bronchoscopy:* to give histology and assess operability, \pm endobronchial ultrasound for assessment and biopsy. ^{18}F -deoxyglucose PET or PET/CT scan to help in staging. *Radionuclide bone scan:* if suspected metastases. *Lung function tests:* help assess suitability for lobectomy.

Treatment: *Non-small cell tumours:* Excision is the treatment of choice for peripheral tumours, with no metastatic spread: stage I/II (~25%). *Curative radiotherapy* is an alternative if respiratory reserve is poor. *Chemotherapy \pm radiotherapy* for more advanced disease. Regimens may be platinum-based, eg with monoclonal antibodies targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor (cetuximab). Get specialist help. *Small cell tumours* are nearly always disseminated at presentation. They may respond to *chemotherapy* but invariably relapse (cyclophosphamide + doxorubicin + vincristine + etoposide; or cisplatin \pm *radiotherapy* if limited disease). *Palliation:* *Radiotherapy* is used for bronchial obstruction, svc obstruction, haemoptysis, bone pain, and cerebral metastases. *svc stent* + radiotherapy and dexamethasone for svc obstruction. *Endobronchial therapy:* tracheal stenting, cryotherapy, laser, brachytherapy (a radioactive source is placed close to the tumour). *Pleural drainage/pleurodesis* for symptomatic pleural effusions. *Drugs:* analgesia; steroids; antiemetics; cough linctus (codeine); bronchodilators; antidepressants.

Prognosis: *Non-small cell:* 50% 2yr survival without spread; 10% with spread. *Small cell:* median survival is 3 months if untreated; 1-1½yrs if treated.

Prevention: Quit smoking (p87). Prevent occupational exposure to carcinogens.

Other lung tumours *Bronchial adenoma:* Rare, slow-growing. 90% are carcinoid tumours; 10% cylindromas. *R:* surgery. *Hamartoma:* Rare, benign; CT: lobulated mass \pm flecks of calcification; ?excise to exclude malignancy. *Mesothelioma* (p192).



Fig 1. A wedge-shaped density in the middle lobe (a secondary). Also note a coin lesion at the right costophrenic angle. The sharp upper boundary of the middle lobe triangular mass is the middle lobe fissure. The right hilar structures are enlarged by metastases within the hilar lymph nodes.

Courtesy of Janet E. Jeddry, Yale Medical School.

Differential diagnosis of nodule in the lung on a CXR

Malignancy (1° or 2°)	Arterio-venous malformation
Abscesses (p164)	Encysted effusion (fluid, blood, pus)
Granuloma	Cyst
Carcinoid tumour	Foreign body
Pulmonary hamartoma	Skin tumour (eg seborrheic wart)



TNM staging for non-small cell lung cancer

Primary tumour (T)

TX	Malignant cells in bronchial secretions, no other evidence of tumour
TIS	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>
T0	None evident
T1	≤3cm, in lobar or more distal airway
T2	>3cm and >2cm distal to carina or any size if pleural involvement or obstructive pneumonitis extending to hilum, but not all the lung
T3	Involves the chest wall, diaphragm, mediastinal pleura, pericardium, or <2cm from, but not at, carina. T >7cm diameter and nodules in same lobe
T4	Involves mediastinum, heart, great vessels, trachea, oesophagus, vertebral body, carina, malignant effusion, or nodules in another lobe

Regional nodes (N)

N0	None involved (after mediastinoscopy)
N1	Peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilum
N2	Ipsilateral mediastinum or subcarinal
N3	Contralateral mediastinum or hilum, scalene, or supraclavicular

Distant metastasis (M)

M0	None
M1	a) Nodule in other lung, pleural lesions or malignant effusion; b) distant metastases present

Stages

Occult	I	II	IIIa	IIIb	IV
TX N0 M0	T1S/T1/T2 N0 M0	T1/T2 N1 M0	T3 N1 M0	T1-4 N3 M0	T1-4 N0-3 M1
		or T3 N0 M0	or T1-3 N2 M0	or T4 N0-2 M0	



Asthma affects 5–8% of the population. It is characterized by recurrent episodes of dyspnoea, cough, and wheeze caused by reversible airways obstruction. Three factors contribute to airway narrowing: *bronchial muscle contraction*, triggered by a variety of stimuli; *mucosal swelling/inflammation*, caused by mast cell and basophil degranulation resulting in the release of inflammatory mediators; *increased mucus production*.

Symptoms Intermittent dyspnoea, wheeze, cough (often nocturnal) and sputum. Ask specifically about:

Precipitants: Cold air, exercise, emotion, allergens (house dust mite, pollen, fur), infection, smoking and passive smoking,²⁸ pollution, NSAIDs, β -blockers.

Diurnal variation in symptoms or peak flow. Marked morning dipping of peak flow is common and can tip the balance into a serious attack, despite having normal peak flow (fig 1) at other times.

Exercise: Quantify the exercise tolerance.

Disturbed sleep: Quantify as nights per week (a sign of severe asthma).

Acid reflux: 40–60% of those with asthma have reflux; treating it improves spirometry—but not necessarily symptoms.²⁹

Other atopic disease: Eczema, hay fever, allergy, or family history?

The home (especially the bedroom): Pets? Carpet? Feather pillows or duvet? Floor cushions and other 'soft furnishings'?

Job: If symptoms remit at weekends or holidays, work may provide the trigger (15% of cases are work-related—more for paint sprayers, food processors, welders, and animal handlers).³⁰ Ask the patient to measure his peak flow at intervals at work and at home (at the same time of day) to confirm this (see fig 2).

Days per week off work or school.

Signs Tachypnoea; audible wheeze; hyperinflated chest; hyperresonant percussion note; air entry \downarrow ; widespread, polyphonic wheeze. **Severe attack:** inability to complete sentences; pulse >110 bpm; respiratory rate >25 /min; PEF 33–50% predicted.

Life-threatening attack: silent chest; confusion; exhaustion; cyanosis ($P_aO_2 < 8$ kPa but P_aCO_2 4.6–6.0, $SpO_2 < 92\%$); bradycardia; PEF $< 33\%$ predicted. **Near fatal:** $\uparrow P_aCO_2$.

Tests **Acute attack:** PEF, sputum culture, FBC, U&E, CRP, blood cultures. ABG analysis usually shows a normal or slightly $\downarrow P_aO_2$ but $\downarrow P_aCO_2$ (hyperventilation). If P_aO_2 is normal but the patient is hyperventilating, watch carefully and repeat the ABG a little later. **► If P_aCO_2 is normal or raised, transfer to high-dependency unit or ITU for ventilation**, as this signifies failing respiratory effort. CXR (to exclude infection or pneumothorax). **Chronic asthma:** PEF monitoring (p156): a diurnal variation of $>20\%$ on ≥ 3 d a wk for 2 wks. Spirometry: obstructive defect ($\downarrow FEV_1/FVC$, $\uparrow RV$ p156); usually $\geq 15\%$ improvement in FEV_1 following β_2 agonists or steroid trial. CXR: hyperinflation. Skin-prick tests may help to identify allergens. Histamine or methacholine challenge. *Aspergillus* serology.

Treatment Chronic asthma (p174). Emergency treatment (p820).

Differential diagnosis Pulmonary oedema ('cardiac asthma'); COPD (may co-exist); large airway obstruction (eg foreign body, tumour); SVC obstruction (wheeze/dyspnoea not episodic); pneumothorax; PE; bronchiectasis; obliterative bronchiolitis (suspect in elderly).

Associated diseases Acid reflux; polyarteritis nodosa (PAN, p558); Churg–Strauss syndrome (p710); ABPA (p168).

Natural history Most childhood asthmatics (see *OHCS* p164) either grow out of asthma in adolescence or suffer much less as adults. A significant number of people develop chronic asthma late in life.

Mortality ~1000 asthma deaths in the UK in 2009, 50% were >65 yrs old.

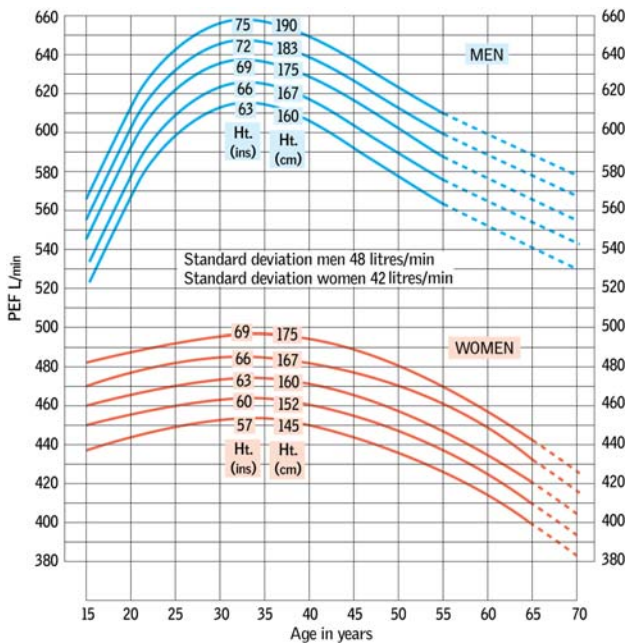


Fig 1. Normal peak expiratory flow (PEF).

Data from Nunn, AJ, Gregg, I. New regression equations for predicting peak expiratory flow in adults.
BMJ 1989;298:1068-70.

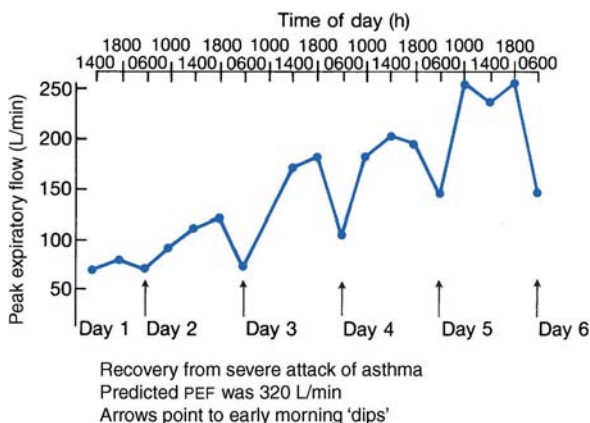


Fig 2. Examples of serial peak flow charts.



Behaviour Help to quit smoking (p87). Avoid precipitants. Check inhaler technique. Teach use of a peak flow meter to monitor PEF twice a day. Educate to enable self-management by altering their medication in the light of symptoms or PEF. Give specific advice about what to do in an emergency; provide a written action plan. Consider teaching relaxed breathing to avoid dysfunctional breathing³¹ (Papworth method).¹

British Thoracic Society guidelines²⁷ Start at the step most appropriate to severity; moving up if needed, or down if control is good for >3 months. Rescue courses of prednisolone may be used at any time.

Step 1 Occasional short-acting inhaled β_2 -agonist as required for symptom relief. If used more than once daily, or night-time symptoms, go to Step 2.

Step 2 Add standard-dose inhaled steroid, eg beclometasone 200–800 μ g/day, or start at the dose appropriate for disease severity, and titrate as required.

Step 3 Add long-acting β_2 -agonist (eg salmeterol 50 μ g/12h by inhaler). If benefit—but still inadequate control—continue and t-dose of beclometasone to 800 μ g/day. If no effect of long-acting β_2 -agonist stop it. Review diagnosis. Leukotriene receptor antagonist or oral theophylline may be tried.

Step 4 Consider trials of: beclometasone up to 2000 μ g/day; modified-release oral theophylline; modified-release oral β_2 -agonist; oral leukotriene receptor antagonist (see below), in conjunction with previous therapy. Modified-release β_2 agonist tablets.

Step 5 Add regular oral prednisolone (1 dose daily, at the lowest possible dose). Continue with high-dose inhaled steroids. Refer to asthma clinic.

Drugs β_2 -adrenoceptor agonists relax bronchial smooth muscle (tAMP), acting within minutes. Salbutamol is best given by inhalation (aerosol, powder, nebulizer), but may also be given PO or IV. SE: tachyarrhythmias, \downarrow K⁺, tremor, anxiety. Long-acting inhaled β_2 -agonist (eg salmeterol, formoterol) can help nocturnal symptoms and reduce morning dips. They may be an alternative to tsteroid dose when symptoms are uncontrolled; doubts remain over whether they are associated with an increase in adverse events.³² SE: as salbutamol, paradoxical bronchospasm.³³

Corticosteroids are best inhaled to minimize systemic effects, eg beclometasone via spacer (or powder), but may be given PO or IV. They act over days to \downarrow bronchial mucosal inflammation. Rinse mouth after inhaled steroids to prevent oral candidiasis. Oral steroids are used acutely (high-dose, short courses, eg prednisolone 40mg/24h PO for 7d) and longer term in lower dose (eg 5–10mg/24h) if control is not optimal on inhalers. Warn about SEs: p371.

Aminophylline (metabolized to theophylline) acts by inhibiting phosphodiesterase, thus \downarrow bronchoconstriction by tAMP levels. Try as prophylaxis, at night, PO, to prevent morning dipping. Stick with one brand name (bioavailability variable). Also useful as an adjunct if inhaled therapy is inadequate. In acute severe asthma, it may be given IV. It has a narrow therapeutic ratio, causing arrhythmias, GI upset, and fits in the toxic range. Check theophylline levels (p766), and do ECG monitoring and check plasma levels after 24h if IV therapy is used.

Anticholinergics (eg ipratropium, tiotropium) may \downarrow muscle spasm synergistically with β_2 -agonists but are not recommended in current guidelines for **chronic** asthma. They may be of more benefit in COPD.

Cromoglicate May be used as prophylaxis in mild and exercise-induced asthma (always inhaled), especially in children. It may precipitate asthma.

Leukotriene receptor antagonists (eg oral montelukast, zafirlukast) block the effects of cysteinyl leukotrienes in the airways by antagonizing the CysLT₁ receptor.

Anti-IgE monoclonal antibody Omalizumab³⁴ may be of use in highly selected patients with persistent allergic asthma. Given as a subcutaneous injection every 2–4 wks depending on dose. Specialists only.

¹ Integrated breathing and relaxation training (Papworth method) is psychological **and** physical: patients learn to drop their shoulders, relax their abdomen, and breathe calmly and appropriately.



Adult doses of common inhaled drugs used in bronchoconstriction

	Inhaled aerosol	Inhaled powder	Nebulized (supervised)
Salbutamol			
Dose example:	100–200µg/6h	200–400µg/6h	2.5–5mg/6h
Airomir® is a CFC-free example of a breath-actuated inhaler			
Terbutaline			
Single dose		500µg ¹	2.5mg/mL
Recommended regimen		500µg/6h	5–10mg/6–12h
Salmeterol			
Dose/puff	25µg	50µg	—
Recommended regimen	50–100µg/12h	50–100µg/12h	—
Ipratropium bromide (COPD)			
Dose/puff	20µg		250µg/mL
Recommended regimen	20–40µg/6h		250–500µg/6h
Steroids			
(Clenil Modulite®=beclometasone; Pulmicort®=budesonide; ¹ Flixotide®=fluticasone)			
Fluticasone (Flixotide®)			
Doses available/puff	50, 100, 250 & 500µg	As for aerosol	250µg/mL
Recommended regimen	100–250µg/12h	100–250µg/12h max 1mg/12h	0.5–2mg/12h
Clenil Modulite®			
Doses available/puff	50 & 100µg 250µg	—	—
Recommended regimen	200µg/12h ↓ 400µg/12h ↓ 1000µg/12h		

► Prescribe beclometasone by brand name, and state that a CFC-free inhaler should be dispensed. This is because, dose for dose, Qvar® is twice as potent as the other available CFC-free brand (Clenil Modulite®).

Any dose ≥250µg ≈ significant steroid absorption: carry a steroid card; this recommendation is being widened, and lower doses (beclometasone) are now said to merit a steroid card (manufacturer's information).

¹ Available as a Turbohaler®; Autohalers® are an alternative (breath-actuated) and don't need breathing coordination, eg Airomir® (salbutamol) and Qvar® (beclometasone). Accuhalers® deliver dry powders (eg Flixotide®, Serevent®).

Systemic absorption (via the throat) is less if inhalation is through a large-volume device, eg Volumatic® or AeroChamber Plus® devices. The latter is more compact. Static charge on some devices reduces dose delivery, so wash in water before dose; leave to dry (don't rub). It's pointless to squirt many puffs into a device: it is best to repeat single doses, and be sure to inhale *as soon as the drug is in the spacer*. SE: local (oral) candidiasis (p371); trite of cataract if lifetime dose ≥2g beclometasone.^{8*}



Definitions COPD is a common progressive disorder characterized by airway obstruction ($FEV_1 < 80\%$ predicted; $FEV_1/FVC < 0.7$; see p156 and TABLE below) with little or no reversibility. It includes chronic bronchitis and emphysema. Usually patients have *either* COPD or asthma, not both: COPD is favoured by: •Age of onset > 35 yrs •Smoking (passive or active) or pollution related³⁸ •Chronic dyspnoea •Sputum production •Minimal diurnal or day-to-day FEV_1 variation. **Chronic bronchitis** is defined *clinically* as cough, sputum production on most days for 3 months of 2 successive yrs. Symptoms improve if they stop smoking. There is no excess mortality if lung function is normal. **Emphysema** is defined *histologically* as enlarged air spaces distal to terminal bronchioles, with destruction of alveolar walls.

Prevalence 10–20% of the over-40s; 2.5×10^6 deaths/yr worldwide.³⁹

Pink puffers and blue bloaters (ends of a spectrum) **Pink puffers** have \uparrow alveolar ventilation, a near normal P_{aO_2} and a normal or low P_{aCO_2} . They are breathless but are not cyanosed. They may progress to type 1 respiratory failure (p180). **Blue bloaters** have \downarrow alveolar ventilation, with a low P_{aO_2} and a high P_{aCO_2} . They are cyanosed but not breathless and may go on to develop cor pulmonale. Their respiratory centres are relatively insensitive to CO_2 and they rely on hypoxic drive to maintain respiratory effort (p180) → *supplemental oxygen should be given with care.*

Symptoms Cough; sputum; dyspnoea; wheeze. **Signs** Tachypnoea; use of accessory muscles of respiration; hyperinflation; \downarrow cricosternal distance (< 3 cm); \downarrow expansion; resonant or hyperresonant percussion note; quiet breath sounds (eg over bullae); wheeze; cyanosis; cor pulmonale.

Complications Acute exacerbations \pm infection; polycythaemia; respiratory failure; cor pulmonale (oedema; JVP \uparrow); pneumothorax (ruptured bullae); lung carcinoma.

Tests **FBC:** PCV \uparrow . **CXR:** Hyperinflation (> 6 anterior ribs seen above diaphragm in mid-clavicular line); flat hemidiaphragms; large central pulmonary arteries; \downarrow peripheral vascular markings; bullae. **ECG:** Right atrial and ventricular hypertrophy (cor pulmonale). **ABG:** $P_{aO_2} \downarrow \pm$ hypercapnia. **Lung function** (p156, p159): obstructive + air trapping ($FEV_1 < 80\%$ of predicted—see p156, FEV_1/FVC ratio $< 70\%$, TLC \uparrow , RV \uparrow , DLCO \downarrow in emphysema—see p158). Learn how to do spirometry from an experienced person: ensure *maximal* expiration of the full breath (it takes > 4 s; it's *not* a quick puff out). **Trial of steroids:** See Box 2.

Treatment **Chronic stable:** see Box; **Emergency R:** p822. Offer *smoking cessation advice* with cordial vigour (p87). BMI is often low: *diet advice \pm supplements*⁴⁰ may help (p586). **Mucolytics** (BNF 3.7) may help chronic productive cough (NICE).⁴¹ Disabilities may cause serious, treatable *depression*; screen for this (p11). **Respiratory failure:** p180. **Flu and pneumococcal vaccinations:** p160 and p402.

Long-term O_2 therapy (LTOT): An MRC trial showed that if P_{aO_2} was maintained ≥ 8.0 kPa for 15 h a day, 3 yr survival improved by 50%. UK NICE guidelines suggest LTOT should be given for: **1** Clinically stable non-smokers with $P_{aO_2} < 7.3$ kPa—despite maximal R. These values should be stable on two occasions > 3 wks apart. **2** If P_{aO_2} 7.3–8.0 and pulmonary hypertension (eg RVH; loud s_2), or polycythaemia, or peripheral oedema, or nocturnal hypoxia. **3** O_2 can also be prescribed for terminally ill patients.

Predicted FEV_1 (Caucasian σ ; litres, \downarrow level in other races) ¹											σ										
Height cm	150	155	160	165	170	175	180	185	190	195	145	150	155	160	165	170	175	180	185	190	195
σ Age (yr)																					
25	2.9	3.2	3.4	3.7	4.0	4.2	4.3	4.7	5.0	5.3	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.7	3.8	
30	2.8	3.1	3.3	3.6	3.8	4.1	4.3	4.6	4.9	5.1	2.5	2.6	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.2	3.3	3.4	3.6	3.7	
40	2.5	2.8	3.0	3.3	3.6	3.8	4.1	4.3	4.6	4.9	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.7	2.8	3.0	3.0	3.2	3.3	3.5	
50	2.2	2.5	2.8	3.0	3.3	3.5	3.8	4.0	4.3	4.6	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.3	
60	2.0	2.2	2.5	2.8	3.0	3.3	3.5	3.8	4.0	4.3	1.7	2.0	2.1	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.1	
70	1.7	2.0	2.2	2.5	2.7	3.0	3.3	3.5	3.8	4.0	1.6	1.8	1.9	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.9	
80	1.4	1.7	2.0	2.2	2.5	2.7	3.0	3.3	3.5	3.8	1.4	1.6	1.7	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.4	2.5	2.7	

Data from www.nationalasthma.org.au/publications/spiro/appc.html Mean

1 African FEV_1 is 10–15% lower; Chinese: 20% lower; Indian: 10% lower; NB: PEF varies little between groups.



British Thoracic Society (BTS)/NICE COPD guidelines³⁷

Assessment of COPD	Spirometry; bronchodilators may slightly improve FEV ₁ Trial of oral steroids; look for >15% ↑ in FEV ₁ CXR: ?bullae ?other pathology Arterial blood gases: hypoxia ?hypercapnia	
Severity of COPD (all FVC < 0.7)	Stage 1 Mild	FEV ₁ ≥ 80% of predicted
	Stage 2 Moderate	FEV ₁ 50–79% of predicted
	Stage 3 Severe	FEV ₁ 30–49% of predicted
	Stage 4 Very severe	FEV ₁ < 30% of predicted
Treating stable COPD		
• <i>General</i>	Stop smoking, encourage exercise, treat poor nutrition or obesity, influenza and pneumococcal vaccination, pulmonary rehabilitation/palliative care. NIPPV: see p823. PRN short-acting antimuscarinic (ipratropium) or β ₂ agonist.	
• <i>Mild/moderate</i>	Inhaled long-acting antimuscarinic (tiotropium) or β ₂ agonist. ¹	
• <i>Severe</i>	Combination long-acting β ₂ agonist + corticosteroids, eg Symbicort® (budesonide + formoterol) ⁴² or tiotropium.	
• <i>If remain symptomatic</i>	Tiotropium + inhaled steroid + long-acting β ₂ agonist Refer to specialist. Consider steroid trial, home nebulizers, theophylline.	
• <i>Pulmonary hypertension</i>	Assess the need for LTOT (see p176). Treat oedema with diuretics.	

More advanced COPD

- ▶ Pulmonary rehabilitation is *greatly* valued by patients.
- Consider LTOT if P_aO₂ < 7.3 kPa (see OPPOSITE).
- Indications for surgery: recurrent pneumothoraces; isolated bullous disease; lung volume reduction surgery (selected patients).
- NIV may be appropriate if hypercapnic on LTOT.
- NB: air travel is risky if FEV₁ < 50% or P_aO₂ < 6.7 kPa.
- Assess home set-up and support needed. Treat depression (p11).

Indications for specialist referral

- Uncertain diagnosis, or suspected severe COPD, or a rapid decline in FEV₁.
- Onset of cor pulmonale.
- Bullous lung disease (to assess for surgery).
- Assessment for oral corticosteroids, nebulizer therapy, or LTOT.
- <10 pack-years smoking (=PYS = the number of packs/day × years of smoking) or COPD in patient <40 yrs (eg is the cause α₁-antitrypsin deficiency? p264).
- Symptoms disproportionate to lung function tests.
- Frequent infections (to exclude bronchiectasis).

Steroid trial

30mg prednisolone/24h PO for 2wks. If FEV₁ rises by >15%, the COPD is 'steroid responsive' and benefit may be had by using long-term inhaled corticosteroids (p167). If this doesn't achieve the post-prednisolone FEV₁, request expert help. NB: NICE says that 'reversibility testing is not necessary as a part of the diagnostic process or to plan initial therapy with bronchodilators or corticosteroids. It may be unhelpful or misleading because: **1** Repeated FEV₁ measurements can show small spontaneous fluctuations; **2** Results of reversibility tests on different occasions can be inconsistent and not reproducible; **3** Over-reliance on a single reversibility test may be misleading unless the change in FEV₁ is >400mL; **4** Definition of a significant change is arbitrary; **5** Response to long-term therapy is not predicted by acute reversibility testing.'

1 Cochrane meta-analyses (2007) of trials (including TORCH) favour steroids + LABA (long acting beta agonist) vs either alone. LABA alone may exacerbate rates, but no excess hospitalizations or mortality; steroid inhalers alone are associated with mortality (by 33%) compared with steroids + LABA.⁴³ Steroid inhalers may risk of pneumonia, but when combined with LABA, advantages outweigh disadvantages.



ARDS, or acute lung injury, may be caused by direct lung injury or occur secondary to severe systemic illness. Lung damage and release of inflammatory mediators cause increased capillary permeability and non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema, often accompanied by multiorgan failure.

Causes *Pulmonary:* Pneumonia; gastric aspiration; inhalation; injury; vasculitis (p558); contusion. *Other:* Shock; septicaemia; haemorrhage; multiple transfusions; DIC (p346); pancreatitis; acute liver failure; trauma; head injury; malaria; fat embolism; burns; obstetric events (eclampsia; amniotic fluid embolus); drugs/toxins (aspirin, heroin, paraquat).

Clinical features Cyanosis; tachypnoea; tachycardia; peripheral vasodilatation; bilateral fine inspiratory crackles.

Investigations FBC, U&E, LFT, amylase, clotting, CRP, blood cultures, ABG. CXR shows bilateral pulmonary infiltrates. Pulmonary artery catheter to measure pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP).

Diagnostic criteria⁴⁴ One consensus requires these 4 to exist: **1** Acute onset. **2** CXR: bilateral infiltrates. **3** Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) <19mmHg or a lack of clinical congestive heart failure. **4** Refractory hypoxaemia with $P_aO_2 : FiO_2 < 200$ for ARDS. Others include total thoracic compliance <30mL/cmH₂O.

Management Admit to ITU; give supportive therapy; treat the underlying cause.

- **Respiratory support** In early ARDS, continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) with 40–60% oxygen may be adequate to maintain oxygenation. But most patients need mechanical ventilation. Indications for ventilation: $P_aO_2 : < 8.3\text{kPa}$ despite 60% O_2 ; $P_aCO_2 : > 6\text{kPa}$. The large tidal volumes (10–15mL/kg) produced by conventional ventilation plus reduced lung compliance in ARDS may lead to high peak airway pressures ± pneumothorax. A low-tidal-volume, pressure-limited approach, with either low or moderate high positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), improves outcome.
- **Circulatory support** Invasive haemodynamic monitoring with an arterial line and Swan-Ganz catheter aids the diagnosis and may be helpful in monitoring PCWP and cardiac output. A conservative fluid management approach improves outcome. Maintain cardiac output and O_2 delivery with inotropes (eg dobutamine 2.5–10µg/kg/min IVI), vasodilators, and blood transfusion. Consider treating pulmonary hypertension with low-dose (20–120 parts per million) nitric oxide, a pulmonary vasodilator. Haemofiltration may be needed in renal failure and to achieve a negative fluid balance.^{45,46}
- **Sepsis** Identify organism(s) and treat accordingly. If clinically septic, but no organisms cultured, use empirical broad-spectrum antibiotics (p161). Avoid nephrotoxic antibiotics.
- **Other:** Nutritional support: enteral is best: p586 & p588, with high fat, antioxidant formulations. Steroids protect those at risk of fat embolization and with pneumocystosis and may improve outcome in subacute ARDS. Their role in established ARDS is controversial.^{47,48}

Prognosis Overall mortality is 50–75%. Prognosis varies with age of patient, cause of ARDS (pneumonia 86%, trauma 38%), and number of organs involved (3 organs involved for >1wk is 'invariably' fatal).

Risk factors for ARDS

Sepsis	Massive transfusion
Hypovolaemic shock	Burns (p858)
Trauma	Smoke inhalation (p859)
Pneumonia	Near drowning
Diabetic ketoacidosis	Acute pancreatitis
Gastric aspiration	DIC (p346)
Pregnancy	Head injury
Eclampsia	ICP†
Amniotic fluid embolus	Fat embolus
Drugs/toxins	Heart/lung bypass
Paraquat, heroin, aspirin	Tumour lysis syndrome (p526)
Pulmonary contusion	Malaria

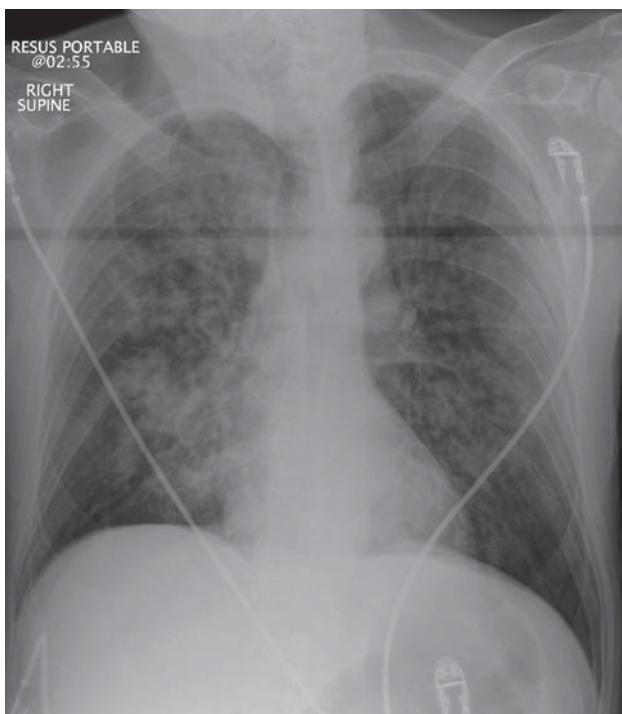


Fig 1. Supine chest radiograph showing air-space shadowing in a perihilar distribution spreading into the peripheries. This appearance can also be seen with infection and cardiogenic pulmonary oedema, but clues from the history, the heart size and lack of pleural effusions can suggest ARDS over the latter. Remember though that this is a supine projection—the patient is lying flat with the x-ray beam AP—causing the cardiac shadow to be artificially enlarged and pleural effusions to level out on the posterior chest wall so they will not obscure the costophrenic angles unless very large.

Image courtesy of Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust Radiology Department.

Respiratory failure occurs when gas exchange is inadequate, resulting in hypoxia. It is defined as a $P_aO_2 < 8\text{kPa}$ and subdivided into 2 types according to P_aCO_2 level.

Type I respiratory failure: defined as hypoxia ($P_aO_2 < 8\text{kPa}$) with a normal or low P_aCO_2 . It is caused primarily by ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) mismatch, eg:

- Pneumonia
- Pulmonary oedema
- PE
- Asthma
- Emphysema
- Pulmonary fibrosis
- ARDS (p178)

Type II respiratory failure: defined as hypoxia ($P_aO_2 < 8\text{kPa}$) with hypercapnia ($P_aCO_2 > 6.0\text{kPa}$). This is caused by alveolar hypoventilation, with or without V/Q mismatch. Causes include:

- **Pulmonary disease:** asthma, COPD, pneumonia, end-stage pulmonary fibrosis, obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA, p194).
- **Reduced respiratory drive:** sedative drugs, CNS tumour or trauma.
- **Neuromuscular disease:** cervical cord lesion, diaphragmatic paralysis, poliomyelitis, myasthenia gravis, Guillain-Barré syndrome.
- **Thoracic wall disease:** flail chest, kyphoscoliosis.

Clinical features are those of the underlying cause together with symptoms and signs of hypoxia, with or without hypercapnia.

Hypoxia: Dyspnoea; restlessness; agitation; confusion; central cyanosis. If long-standing hypoxia: polycythaemia; pulmonary hypertension; cor pulmonale.

Hypercapnia: Headache; peripheral vasodilatation; tachycardia; bounding pulse; tremor/flap; papilloedema; confusion; drowsiness; coma.

Investigations are aimed at determining the underlying cause:

- Blood tests: FBC, U&E, CRP, ABG.
- Radiology: CXR.
- Microbiology: sputum and blood cultures (if febrile).
- Spirometry (COPD, neuromuscular disease, Guillain-Barré syndrome).

Management depends on the cause:

Type I respiratory failure

- Treat underlying cause.
- Give oxygen (35–60%) by facemask to correct hypoxia.
- Assisted ventilation if $P_aO_2 < 8\text{kPa}$ despite 60% O_2 .

Type II respiratory failure: The respiratory centre may be relatively insensitive to CO_2 and respiration could be driven by hypoxia.

- Treat underlying cause.
- Controlled oxygen therapy: start at 24% O_2 . ► *Oxygen therapy should be given with care.* Nevertheless, don't leave the hypoxia untreated.
- Recheck ABG after 20min. If P_aCO_2 is steady or lower, increase O_2 concentration to 28%. If P_aCO_2 has risen $> 1.5\text{kPa}$ and the patient is still hypoxic, consider assisted ventilation (eg NIPPV, p823, ie non-invasive positive pressure ventilation). Rarely a respiratory stimulant (eg doxapram 1.5–4mg/min IVI).
- If this fails, consider intubation and ventilation, if appropriate.





Administering oxygen⁴⁹

Oxygen is usually given via a facemask or nasal cannulae. It is good practice to prescribe it—this avoids inadvertent administration of too much or too little. Titrate the amount guided by the S_aO_2 (aim for $\sim 94\text{--}98\%$ (or $88\text{--}92\%$ if, or at risk of, hypercapnia)); and the clinical condition of the patient. Humidification is only required for longer-term delivery of O_2 at high flow rates and tracheostomies, but may \uparrow expectoration in bronchiectasis. \blacktriangleright Be careful in those with COPD (p822).

Nasal cannulae: preferred by patients, but O_2 delivery is relatively imprecise and may cause nasal soreness. The flow rate (1–4L/min) roughly defines the concentration of O_2 (24–40%). May be used to maintain S_aO_2 when nebulizers need to be run using air eg COPD.

Simple face mask: delivers a variable amount of O_2 depending on the rate of inflow. Far less precise than venturi masks—so don't use if hypercapnia or type 2 respiratory failure. Risk of CO_2 accumulation (within the mask and so in inspired gas) if flow rate $<5\text{L/min}$.

Venturi mask: provides a precise percentage of O_2 (FiO_2) at high flow rates. Colour codes:

24%	BLUE
28%	WHITE
35%	YELLOW
40%	RED
60%	GREEN

Start at 24–28% in COPD.

Non-rebreathing mask: these have a reservoir bag and deliver high concentrations of O_2 (60–90%), determined by the inflow (10–15L/min) and the presence of flap valves on the side. They are commonly used in emergencies, but are imprecise and should be avoided in those requiring controlled O_2 therapy.

Promoting oxygenation Other ways to \uparrow oxygenation to reach the target S_aO_2 (this should be given as a number on the drug chart):

- Treat anaemia (transfuse if essential)
- Improve cardiac output (treat heart failure)
- Chest physio to improve ventilation/perfusion mismatch.

When to consider ABC (arterial blood gas) measurement

- Any unexpected deterioration in an ill patient. (Technique: see p785.)
- Anyone with an acute exacerbation of a chronic chest condition.
- Anyone with impaired consciousness or impaired respiratory effort.
- Signs of CO_2 retention, eg bounding pulse, drowsy, tremor (flapping), headache.
- Cyanosis, confusion, visual hallucinations (signs of $P_aO_2\downarrow$; S_aO_2 is an alternative)
- To validate measurements from transcutaneous pulse oximetry (p156).



Causes PES usually arise from a venous thrombosis in the pelvis or legs. Clots break off and pass through the veins and the right side of the heart before lodging in the pulmonary circulation. Rare causes include: right ventricular thrombus (post-MI); septic emboli (right-sided endocarditis); fat, air, or amniotic fluid embolism; neoplastic cells; parasites.

Risk factors

- Recent surgery, especially abdominal/pelvic or hip/knee replacement
- Thrombophilia, eg antiphospholipid syndrome (p368)
- Leg fracture
- Prolonged bed rest/reduced mobility
- Malignancy
- Pregnancy/postpartum; Pill/HRT
- Previous PE

Clinical features These depend on the number, size, and distribution of the emboli; small emboli may be asymptomatic, whereas large emboli are often fatal.

Symptoms: Acute breathlessness, pleuritic chest pain, haemoptysis; dizziness; syncope. Ask about risk factors (above), past history or family history of thromboembolism. **Signs:** Pyrexia; cyanosis; tachypnoea; tachycardia; hypotension; raised JVP; pleural rub; pleural effusion. Look for signs of a cause, eg deep vein thrombosis.

Tests

- FBC, U&E, baseline clotting, D-dimers (BOX).
 - ABG may show ↓ P_aO_2 and ↓ P_aCO_2 .
 - Imaging: CXR may be normal, or show oligoemia of affected segment, dilated pulmonary artery, linear atelectasis, small pleural effusion, wedge-shaped opacities or cavitation (rare). CTPA—see BOX.
 - ECG may be normal, or show tachycardia, right bundle branch block, right ventricular strain (inverted T in V_1 to V_4). The classical SI QIII TIII pattern (p92) is rare.
- ▶ Further investigations are shown on p828; see also BOX, p753.

Treatment ▶▶ See p828. Anticoagulate with LMW heparin (p828). Start warfarin (p344). Stop heparin when INR is >2 and continue warfarin for a minimum of 3 months (see p345); aim for an INR of 2–3. Thrombolysis for massive PE (alteplase 10mg IV over 1min, then 90mg IVI over 2h; max 1.5mg/kg if <65kg). Consider placement of a *vena caval filter* in patients who develop emboli despite adequate anticoagulation (NB increased risk if placed without concomitant anticoagulation).

Prevention Give heparin (eg dalteparin 2500u/24h sc) to all immobile patients. Prescribe compression stockings and encourage early mobilization. Stop HRT and the Pill pre-op (if reliable with another form of contraception). If past or family history of thromboembolism, consider investigation for thrombophilia (p368).

Pneumothorax⁵¹

Management ▶▶ p824.

Causes Often spontaneous (especially in young thin men) due to rupture of a subpleural bulla. Other causes: asthma; COPD; TB; pneumonia; lung abscess; carcinoma; cystic fibrosis; lung fibrosis; sarcoidosis; connective tissue disorders (Marfan's sy., Ehlers–Danlos sy.), trauma; iatrogenic (subclavian CVP line insertion, pleural aspiration/biopsy, transbronchial biopsy, liver biopsy, +ve pressure ventilation).

Clinical features **Symptoms:** There may be no symptoms (especially if fit, young and small pneumothorax) or there may be sudden onset of dyspnoea and/or pleuritic chest pain. Patients with asthma or COPD may present with a sudden deterioration. Mechanically ventilated patients may present with hypoxia or an increase in ventilation pressures. **Signs:** Reduced expansion, hyper-resonance to percussion and diminished breath sounds on the affected side. *With a tension pneumothorax, the trachea will be deviated away from the affected side.* See x-ray p763.

Management p824, placing a chest drain, ▶▶ p780.

▶▶ **Managing a tension pneumothorax** See p824.



Investigating suspected PE

Diagnosis of PE is improved by adopting a stepwise approach, combining an objective probability score, with subsequent investigations, as follows.

Assess the clinical probability of a PE: many systems exist and are usually based around elements drawn from the history and clinical examination.

Scoring system for investigation of suspected DVT*

Feature	Score
Active cancer, or treatment within 6 months	1
Paralysis, paresis, or recent plaster immobilization of lower limbs	1
Recently bed-ridden (>3 days) or major surgery (<4weeks)	1
Localized tenderness along venous system	1
Entire leg swollen	1
Calf circumference >3cm more than other side, 10cm below tibial tuberosity	1
Pitting oedema > in asymptomatic leg	1
Collateral superficial veins	1
Alternative diagnosis is likely, or more likely, than DVT	-2

Total score: 0=low probability; 1-2 moderate probability; ≥ 3 high probability

*Adapted from Wells *et al. Lancet* 1997 350 1795

D-dimers: only perform in those patients **without** a high probability of a PE. A negative D-dimer test effectively excludes a PE in those with a low or intermediate clinical probability, and imaging is NOT required. However, a positive test does not prove a diagnosis of a PE, and imaging is required.

Imaging: the recommended 1st-line imaging modality is now CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA), which can show clots down to 5th-order pulmonary arteries (after the 4th branching). V/Q scanning (p158, p752 & p828) is now rarely performed.

Definitions A pleural effusion is fluid in the pleural space. Effusions can be divided by their protein concentration into *transudates* (<25g/L) and *exudates* (>35g/L), see box. Blood in the pleural space is a *haemothorax*, pus in the pleural space is an *empyema*, and chyle (lymph with fat) is a *chylothorax*. Both blood and air in the pleural space is called a *haemopneumothorax*.

Causes *Transudates* may be due to tvenous pressure (cardiac failure, constrictive pericarditis, fluid overload), or hypoproteinaemia (cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome, malabsorption). Also occur in hypothyroidism and Meigs' syndrome (right pleural effusion and ovarian fibroma). *Exudates* are mostly due to increased leakiness of pleural capillaries secondary to infection, inflammation, or malignancy. Causes: pneumonia; TB; pulmonary infarction; rheumatoid arthritis; SLE; bronchogenic carcinoma; malignant metastases; lymphoma; mesothelioma; lymphangitis carcinomatosa.

Symptoms Asymptomatic—or dyspnoea, pleuritic chest pain.

Signs *Decreased expansion; stony dull percussion note; diminished breath sounds* occur on the affected side. Tactile vocal fremitus and vocal resonance are ↓ (inconstant and unreliable). Above the effusion, where lung is compressed, there may be *bronchial breathing*. With large effusions there may be *tracheal deviation* away from the effusion. Look for aspiration marks and signs of associated disease: malignancy (cachexia, clubbing, lymphadenopathy, radiation marks, mastectomy scar); stigmata of chronic liver disease; cardiac failure; hypothyroidism; rheumatoid arthritis; butterfly rash of SLE.

Tests *CXR*: Small effusions blunt the costophrenic angles, larger ones are seen as water-dense shadows with concave upper borders. A completely flat horizontal upper border implies that there is also a pneumothorax.

Ultrasound is useful in identifying the presence of pleural fluid and in guiding diagnostic or therapeutic aspiration.

Diagnostic aspiration: Percuss the upper border of the pleural effusion and choose a site 1 or 2 intercostal spaces below it (don't go too low or you'll be in the abdomen!). Infiltrate down to the pleura with 5–10mL of 1% lidocaine. Attach a 21G needle to a syringe and insert it just above the upper border of an appropriate rib (avoids neurovascular bundle). Draw off 10–30mL of pleural fluid and send it to the lab for *clinical chemistry* (protein, glucose, pH, LDH, amylase), *bacteriology* (microscopy and culture, auramine stain, TB culture), *cytology* and, if indicated, *immunology* (rheumatoid factor, ANA, complement).

Pleural biopsy: If pleural fluid analysis is inconclusive, consider parietal pleural biopsy. Thorascopic or CT-guided pleural biopsy increases diagnostic yield (by enabling direct visualization of the pleural cavity and biopsy of suspicious areas).

Management is of the underlying cause.

- **Drainage** If the effusion is symptomatic, drain it, repeatedly if necessary. Fluid is best removed slowly (0.5–1.5L/24h). It may be aspirated in the same way as a diagnostic tap, or using an intercostal drain (see p780).
- **Pleurodesis** with tetracycline, bleomycin, or talc may be helpful for recurrent effusions. Thorascopic talc pleurodesis is most effective for malignant effusions. Empyemas (p164) are best drained using a chest drain, inserted under ultrasound or CT guidance.
- **Intra-pleural streptokinase** Of no benefit.
- **Surgery** Persistent collections and increasing pleural thickness (on ultrasound) requires surgery.⁵²





Pleural fluid analysis

<i>Gross appearance</i>	<i>Cause</i>
Clear, straw-coloured	Transudate, exudate
Turbid, yellow	Empyema, parapneumonic effusion ¹
Haemorrhagic	Trauma, malignancy, pulmonary infarction
<i>Cytology</i>	
Neutrophils ++	Parapneumonic effusion, PE
Lymphocytes ++	Malignancy, TB, RA, SLE, sarcoidosis
Mesothelial cells ++	Pulmonary infarction
Abnormal mesothelial cells	Mesothelioma
Multinucleated giant cells	RA
Lupus erythematosus cells	SLE
<i>Clinical chemistry</i>	
Protein <25g/L	Transudate
>35g/L	Exudate
25–35g/L	If pleural fluid protein/serum protein >0.5, effusion is an exudate
Glucose <3.3mmol/L	Empyema, malignancy, TB, RA, SLE
pH <7.2	Empyema, malignancy, TB, RA, SLE
LDH† (pleural:serum >0.6)	Empyema, malignancy, TB, RA, SLE
Amylase†	Pancreatitis, carcinoma, bacterial pneumonia, oesophageal rupture
<i>Immunology</i>	
Rheumatoid factor	RA
Antinuclear antibody	SLE
Complement levels↓	RA, SLE, malignancy, infection

¹ Inflammation of the pleura caused by pneumonia may lead to infected pleural fluid (empyema); if it is not infected, the term parapneumonic effusion is used.



A multisystem granulomatous disorder of unknown cause. Prevalence highest in Northern Europe, eg UK: 10–20/10⁵ population. Usually affects adults aged 20–40yrs, more common in women. African-Caribbeans are affected more frequently and more severely than Caucasians, particularly by extra-thoracic disease. Associated with HLA-DRB1 and DQB1 alleles.

Clinical features In 20–40%, the disease is discovered incidentally, after a routine CXR, and is thus asymptomatic. **Acute sarcoidosis** often presents with erythema nodosum (fig 1, p275)¹ ± polyarthralgia. It usually resolves spontaneously.

Pulmonary disease 90% have abnormal CXRs with bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy (BHL, fig 1) ± pulmonary infiltrates or fibrosis; see below for staging. **Symptoms:** Dry cough, progressive dyspnoea, ↓ exercise tolerance and chest pain. In 10–20%, symptoms progress, with concurrent deterioration in lung function.

Non-pulmonary signs are legion: lymphadenopathy; hepatomegaly; splenomegaly; uveitis; conjunctivitis; keratoconjunctivitis sicca; glaucoma; terminal phalangeal bone cysts; enlargement of lacrimal & parotid glands (fig 5, p349); Bell's palsy; neuropathy; meningitis; brainstem and spinal syndromes; space-occupying lesion; erythema nodosum (fig 1, p565); lupus pernio; subcutaneous nodules; cardiomyopathy; arrhythmias; hypercalcaemia; hypercalciuria; renal stones; pituitary dysfunction.

Tests **Blood:** ↑ESR, lymphopenia, LFT↑, serum ACE↑ in ~60% (non-specific), ↑Ca²⁺, ↑immunoglobulins. **24h urine:** Ca²⁺↑. **Tuberculin skin test** is -ve in two-thirds; CXR is abnormal in 90%: **Stage 0:** normal. **Stage 1:** BHL. **Stage 2:** BHL + peripheral pulmonary infiltrates. **Stage 3:** peripheral pulmonary infiltrates alone. **Stage 4:** progressive pulmonary fibrosis; bulla formation (honeycombing); pleural involvement. **ECG** may show arrhythmias or bundle branch block. **Lung function tests** may be normal or show reduced lung volumes, impaired gas transfer, and a restrictive ventilatory defect. **Tissue biopsy** (lung, liver, lymph nodes, skin nodules, or lacrimal glands) is diagnostic and shows non-caseating granulomata. **Kveim tests** are now obsolete.

Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) shows ↑lymphocytes in active disease; ↑neutrophils with pulmonary fibrosis.

Ultrasound may show nephrocalcinosis or hepatosplenomegaly.

Bone x-rays show 'punched out' lesions in terminal phalanges.

CT/MRI may be useful in assessing severity of pulmonary disease or diagnosing neurosarcoidosis. **Ophthalmology assessment** (slit lamp examination, fluorescein angiography) is indicated in ocular disease.

Management^{53,54} ▶ Patients with BHL alone don't need treatment as most recover spontaneously. **Acute sarcoidosis:** Bed rest, NSAIDs.

Indications for corticosteroids:

- Parenchymal lung disease (symptomatic, static, or progressive)
- Uveitis
- Hypercalcaemia
- Neurological or cardiac involvement.

Prednisolone (40mg/24h) PO for 4–6 wks, then ↓dose over 1yr according to clinical status. A few patients relapse and may need a further course or long-term therapy.

Other therapy: In severe illness, IV methylprednisolone or immunosuppressants (methotrexate, hydroxychloroquine, ciclosporin, cyclophosphamide) may be needed. Anti-TNFα therapy may be tried in refractory cases, or lung transplantation.

Prognosis 60% of patients with thoracic sarcoidosis resolve over 2yrs. 20% respond to steroid therapy; in the rest, improvement is unlikely despite therapy.²

¹ A detailed history and exam (including for synovitis) + CXR, 2 ASO titres and a tuberculin skin test are usually enough to diagnose erythema nodosum: R Pugol 2000 *Arthr Rheu* 43 584

² ACE is also ↑ in: hyperthyroidism, Gaucher's, silicosis, TB, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, asbestosis, pneumocystosis.⁵⁵ ACE levels may help monitor sarcoidosis activity. ↑ACE levels in CSF help diagnose CNS sarcoidosis (when serum ACE may be normal).⁵⁶ ACE is *lower* in: Caucasians; and anorexia.⁵⁷

Causes of BHL (bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy)

Sarcoidosis

Infection, eg TB, mycoplasma

Malignancy, eg lymphoma, carcinoma, mediastinal tumours

Organic dust disease, eg silicosis, berylliosis

Extrinsic allergic alveolitis

Histiocytosis X

Differential diagnosis of granulomatous diseases

Infections	Bacteria	TB, leprosy, syphilis Cat scratch fever
	Fungi	<i>Cryptococcus neoformans</i> <i>Coccidioides immitis</i> <i>Schistosomiasis</i>
	Protozoa	
Autoimmune	Primary biliary cirrhosis	
	Granulomatous orchitis	
Vasculitis (p558)	Giant cell arteritis	
	Polyarteritis nodosa	
	Takayasu's arteritis	
	Wegener's* granulomatosis	
	Silicosis, berylliosis	
Organic dust disease		
Idiopathic	Crohn's disease	
	de Quervain's thyroiditis	
	Sarcoidosis	
Extrinsic allergic alveolitis		
Histiocytosis X		

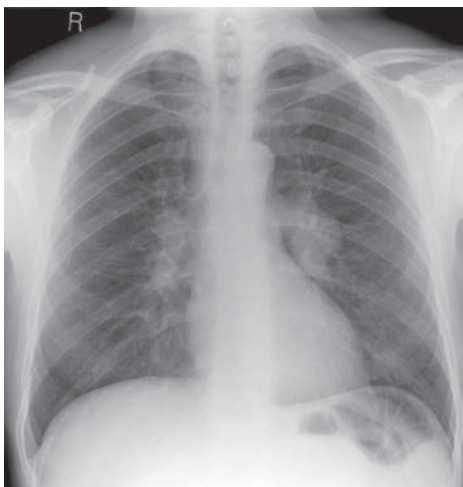


Fig 1. PA chest radiograph showing bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy. The important differentials for this appearance are: sarcoidosis, TB, lymphoma, pneumoconiosis and metastatic disease. This patient has sarcoidosis but there are no other stigmata (such as the presence of infiltrates, fibrosis and honeycombing) on this image.

Image courtesy of Norfolk and Norwich University Hospitals NHS Trust Radiology Department.



This is the generic term used to describe a number of conditions that primarily affect the lung parenchyma in a diffuse manner. They are characterized by chronic inflammation and/or progressive interstitial fibrosis, and share a number of clinical and pathological features. See BOX and fig 1.

Clinical features Dyspnoea on exertion; non-productive paroxysmal cough; abnormal breath sounds; abnormal CXR or high resolution CT; restrictive pulmonary spirometry with ↓DLCO (p158).

Pathological features Fibrosis and remodelling of the interstitium; chronic inflammation; hyperplasia of type II epithelial cells or type II pneumocytes.

Classification The ILDs can be broadly grouped into three categories:

Those with known cause, eg

- Occupational/environmental, eg asbestosis, berylliosis, silicosis, cotton worker's lung (byssinosis)
- Drugs, eg nitrofurantoin, bleomycin, amiodarone, sulfasalazine, busulfan
- Hypersensitivity reactions, eg extrinsic allergic alveolitis
- Infections, eg TB, fungi, viral
- Gastro-oesophageal reflux

Those associated with systemic disorders, eg

- Sarcoidosis
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- SLE, systemic sclerosis, mixed connective tissue disease, Sjögren's syndrome
- Ulcerative colitis, renal tubular acidosis, autoimmune thyroid disease

Idiopathic, eg

- Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF, p190)
- Cryptogenic organizing pneumonia
- Lymphocytic interstitial pneumonia



Extrinsic allergic alveolitis (EAA)

In sensitized individuals, inhalation of allergens (fungal spores or avian proteins) provokes a hypersensitivity reaction. In the acute phase, the alveoli are infiltrated with acute inflammatory cells. With chronic exposure, granuloma formation and obliterative bronchiolitis occur.

Causes

- Bird-fancier's and pigeon-fancier's lung (proteins in bird droppings).
- Farmer's and mushroom worker's lung (*Micropolyspora faeni*, *Thermoactinomyces vulgaris*).
- Malt worker's lung (*Aspergillus clavatus*).
- Bagassosis or sugar worker's lung (*Thermoactinomyces sacchari*).

Clinical features *4-6h post-exposure*: Fever, rigors, myalgia, dry cough, dyspnoea, crackles (no wheeze). *Chronic*: Increasing dyspnoea, weight↓, exertional dyspnoea, type I respiratory failure, cor pulmonale.

Tests *Acute*: Blood: FBC (neutrophilia); ESRT; ABGs; positive serum precipitins (indicate exposure only). *CXR*: upper-zone mottling/consolidation; hilar lymphadenopathy (rare). *Lung function tests*: reversible restrictive defect; reduced gas transfer during acute attacks. *Chronic*: Blood tests: positive serum precipitins. *CXR*: upper-zone fibrosis; honeycomb lung. *Lung function tests*: persistent changes (see above). Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) fluid shows ↑ lymphocytes and mast cells.

Management *Acute*: Remove allergen and give O₂ (35-60%), then:

Oral prednisolone (40mg/24h PO), followed by reducing dose.

Chronic: Avoid exposure to allergens, or wear a facemask or +ve pressure helmet. Long-term steroids often achieve CXR and physiological improvement. Compensation (UK Industrial Injuries Act) may be payable.

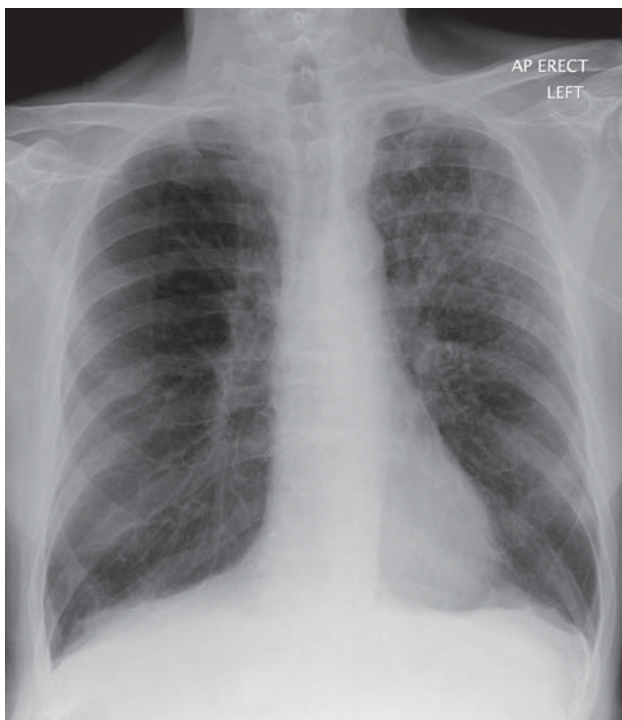


Fig 1. AP chest radiograph showing air-space shadowing in the left upper zone (compare the relative lucency with the right upper zone). Although this appearance often represents infection (ie pneumonia), it is non-specific. Important differentials to remember for this distribution of shadowing include lymphoma, alveolar cell carcinoma (both to be considered if not resolving in appearance on follow-up imaging), and haemorrhage.

Image courtesy of Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust Radiology Department.

Causes of fibrotic shadowing on a CXR

Upper zone

- TB
- Extrinsic allergic alveolitis
- Ankylosing spondylitis
- Radiotherapy
- Sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis

Mid zone

- Progressive massive fibrosis (PMF)

Lower zone

- Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
- Asbestosis

This is a type of idiopathic interstitial pneumonia. Inflammatory cell infiltrate and pulmonary fibrosis of unknown cause (also known as cryptogenic fibrosing alveolitis). The commonest cause of interstitial lung disease.

Symptoms Dry cough; exertional dyspnoea; malaise; weight↓; arthralgia.

Signs Cyanosis; finger clubbing; fine end-inspiratory crepitations.

Complications Respiratory failure; increased risk of lung cancer.

Tests *Blood:* ABG (P_{aO_2} ↓; if severe P_{aCO_2} ↑); CRP↑; immunoglobulins; ANA (30% +ve), rheumatoid factor (10% +ve). *CXR:* (fig 1) Lung volume↓; bilateral lower zone reticulo-nodular shadows; honeycomb lung (advanced disease). *CT* shows similar changes to the *CXR* but is more sensitive and is an essential tool for diagnosis. *Spirometry:* Restrictive (p156); ↓transfer factor. *BAL* (bronchoalveolar lavage) may indicate activity of alveolitis: lymphocytosis (good response/prognosis) or neutrophils and eosinophils (poor response/prognosis). $^{99}Tc^{m}$ -DTPA scan: (diethylene-triamine-penta-acetic acid) may reflect disease activity⁵⁸. *Lung biopsy* may be needed for diagnosis. The histological changes observed on biopsy are referred to as *usual interstitial pneumonia* (UIP).

Management Best supportive care: oxygen, pulmonary rehabilitation, opiates, palliative care input. It is strongly recommended that high-dose steroids are NOT used except where the diagnosis of IPF is in doubt. All patients should be considered for current clinical trials or lung transplantation.⁵⁸

Prognosis 50% 5yr survival rate (range 1–20yrs).

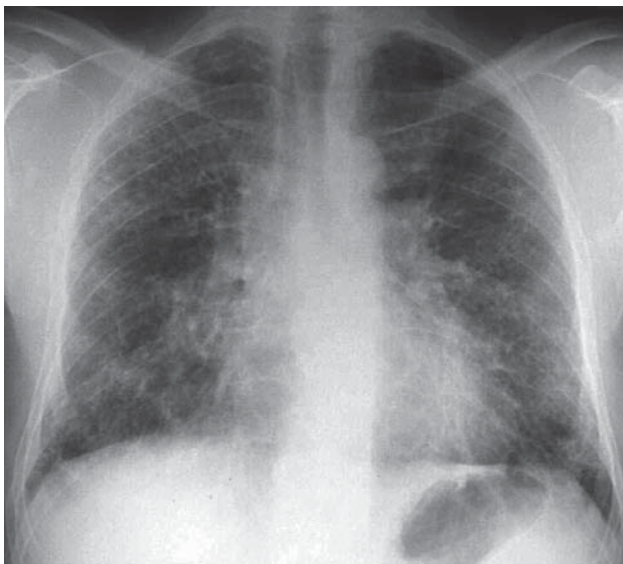


Fig 1. Interstitial lung disease due to idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (a similar appearance to the interstitial oedema of moderate left heart failure, but without a big heart).

Courtesy of Prof P Scally.

This page intentionally left blank



Coal worker's pneumoconiosis (CWP) A common dust disease in countries that have or have had underground coal-mines. It results from inhalation of coal dust particles (1–3µm in diameter) over 15–20yrs. These are ingested by macrophages which die, releasing their enzymes and causing fibrosis.

Clinical features: Asymptomatic, but co-existing chronic bronchitis is common. CXR: many round opacities (1–10mm), especially in upper zone.

Management: Avoid exposure to coal dust; treat co-existing chronic bronchitis; claim compensation (in the UK, via the Industrial Injuries Act).

Progressive massive fibrosis (PMF) is due to progression of CWP, which causes progressive dyspnoea, fibrosis, and, eventually, cor pulmonale. CXR: upper-zone fibrotic masses (1–10cm).

Management: Avoid exposure to coal dust; claim compensation (as above).

Caplan's syndrome is the association between rheumatoid arthritis, pneumoconiosis, and pulmonary rheumatoid nodules.

Silicosis (see [fig 1](#)) is caused by inhalation of silica particles, which are very fibrogenic. A number of jobs may be associated with exposure, eg metal mining, stone quarrying, sandblasting, and pottery/ceramic manufacture.

Clinical features: Progressive dyspnoea, incidence of TB, CXR shows diffuse miliary or nodular pattern in upper and mid-zones and egg-shell calcification of hilar nodes. Spirometry: restrictive ventilatory defect.

Management: Avoid exposure to silica; claim compensation (as above).

Asbestosis is caused by inhalation of asbestos fibres. Chrysotile (white asbestos) is the least fibrogenic—crocidolite (blue asbestos) is the most fibrogenic. Amosite (brown asbestos) is the least common and has intermediate fibrogenicity. Asbestos was commonly used in the building trade for fire proofing, pipe lagging, electrical wire insulation, and roofing felt. Degree of asbestos exposure is related to degree of pulmonary fibrosis.

Clinical features: Similar to other fibrotic lung diseases with progressive dyspnoea, clubbing, and fine end-inspiratory crackles. Also causes pleural plaques, risk of bronchial adenocarcinoma and mesothelioma.

Management: Symptomatic. Patients are often eligible for compensation through the UK Industrial Injuries Act.

Malignant mesothelioma is a tumour of mesothelial cells that usually occurs in the pleura, and rarely in the peritoneum or other organs. It is associated with occupational exposure to asbestos but the relationship is complex.⁶⁰ 90% report previous exposure to asbestos, but only 20% of patients have pulmonary asbestosis. The latent period between exposure and development of the tumour may be up to 45yrs. Compensation is often available.

Clinical features: Chest pain, dyspnoea, weight loss, finger clubbing, recurrent pleural effusions. Signs of metastases: lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, bone pain/tenderness, abdominal pain/obstruction (peritoneal malignant mesothelioma).

Tests: CXR/CT: pleural thickening/effusion. Bloody pleural fluid.

Diagnosis is made on histology, usually following a thoracoscopy. Often the diagnosis is only made post-mortem.

Management: Pemetrexed + cisplatin chemotherapy can improve survival.⁶¹ Surgery is hard to evaluate (few randomized trials). Radiotherapy is controversial. Pleurodesis and indwelling intra-pleural drain may help.

Prognosis is poor (especially without pemetrexed, eg <2yrs). >650 deaths/yr in UK.

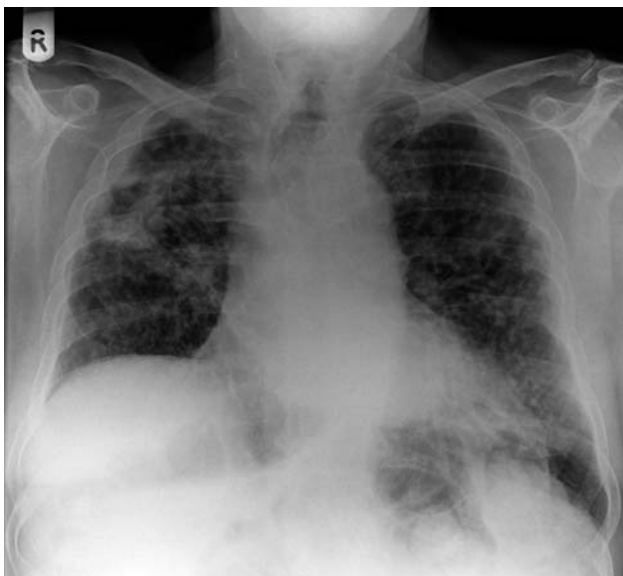


Fig 1. PA chest radiograph showing diffuse nodular pulmonary opacities with a focal area of irregular soft tissue shadowing in the right upper zone. Appearances are consistent with silicosis and developing progressive massive fibrosis (PMF). PMF is usually bilateral and starts as ill-defined or oval opacities that occur most often in the upper/mid-zones and develop from the periphery towards the hila.

Image courtesy of Derby Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust Radiology Department.



This disorder is characterized by intermittent closure/collapse of the pharyngeal airway causing apnoeic episodes during sleep. These are terminated by partial arousal.

Clinical features The typical patient is an obese, middle-aged man who presents because of snoring or daytime somnolence. His partner often describes apnoeic episodes during sleep.

- Loud snoring
- Daytime somnolence
- Poor sleep quality
- Morning headache
- Decreased libido
- Cognitive performance↓.

Complications Pulmonary hypertension; type II respiratory failure (p180). Sleep apnoea is also reported as an independent risk factor for hypertension.⁶²

Investigations Simple studies (eg pulse oximetry, video recordings) may be all that are required for diagnosis. Polysomnography (which monitors oxygen saturation, airflow at the nose and mouth, ECG, EMG chest and abdominal wall movement during sleep) is diagnostic. The occurrence of 15 or more episodes of apnoea or hypopnoea during 1h of sleep indicates significant sleep apnoea.

Management³⁶

- Weight reduction
- Avoidance of tobacco and alcohol
- CPAP via a nasal mask during sleep is effective and recommended by NICE for those with moderate to severe disease⁶⁴
- Surgery to relieve pharyngeal obstruction (tonsillectomy, uvulopalatopharyngoplasty, or tracheostomy) is occasionally needed, but only after seeing a chest physician.



Cor pulmonale

Cor pulmonale is right heart failure caused by chronic pulmonary arterial hypertension. Causes include chronic lung disease, pulmonary vascular disorders, and neuromuscular and skeletal diseases (see BOX).

Clinical features Symptoms include dyspnoea, fatigue, and syncope. Signs: cyanosis; tachycardia; raised JVP with prominent a and v waves; RV heave; loud P₂, pansystolic murmur (tricuspid regurgitation); early diastolic Graham Steell murmur; hepatomegaly and oedema.

Investigations **FBC:** Hb and haematocrit (secondary polycythaemia). **ABG:** hypoxia, with or without hypercapnia. **CXR:** enlarged right atrium and ventricle, prominent pulmonary arteries (see fig 1). **ECG:** P pulmonale; right axis deviation; right ventricular hypertrophy/strain.

Management

- **Treat underlying cause**—eg COPD and pulmonary infections.
- **Treat respiratory failure**—in the acute situation give 24% oxygen if P_aO₂ <8kPa. Monitor ABG and gradually increase oxygen concentration if P_aCO₂ is stable (p180). In COPD patients, long-term oxygen therapy (LTOT) for 15h/d increases survival (p176). Patients with chronic hypoxia when clinically stable should be assessed for LTOT.
- **Treat cardiac failure** with diuretics such as furosemide, eg 40–160mg/24h po. Monitor u&e and give amiloride or potassium supplements if necessary. Alternative: spironolactone.
- Consider **venesection** if haematocrit >55%.
- Consider **heart-lung transplantation** in young patients.

Prognosis Poor. 50% die within 5yrs.

Causes of cor pulmonale

Lung disease

- COPD
- Bronchiectasis
- Pulmonary fibrosis
- Severe chronic asthma
- Lung resection

Pulmonary vascular disease

- Pulmonary emboli
- Pulmonary vasculitis
- Primary pulmonary hypertension
- ARDS (p170)
- Sickle-cell disease
- Parasite infestation

Thoracic cage abnormality

- Kyphosis
- Scoliosis
- Thoracoplasty

Neuromuscular disease

- Myasthenia gravis
- Poliomyelitis
- Motor neuron disease

Hypoventilation

- Sleep apnoea
- Enlarged adenoids in children

Cerebrovascular disease

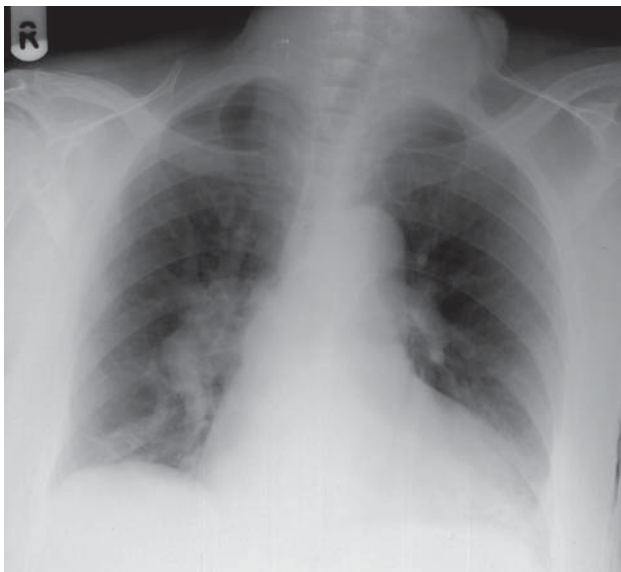


Fig 1. PA chest radiograph showing enlarged pulmonary arteries from pulmonary artery hypertension. When caused by interstitial lung disease and leading to right heart failure, this would be termed cor pulmonale. No signs of interstitial lung disease are identifiable in this image.

Image courtesy of Derby Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust Radiology Department.



Contents

The essence of endocrinology 197

Diabetes mellitus (DM):

Classification and diagnosis 198

Treating diabetes mellitus 200

Helping people with established diabetes 202

Diabetic neuropathy and diabetic foot care 204

Hypoglycaemia 206

Thyroid and parathyroid disease:

Thyroid function tests (TFTs) 208

Thyrotoxicosis 210

Thyroid eye disease 211

Hypothyroidism (myxoedema) 212

Parathyroid hormone and hyperparathyroidism 214

Hypoparathyroidism 214

Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN-1; MEN-2) 215

The adrenal gland:

Adrenal cortex and Cushing's syndrome 216

Addison's disease (adrenal insufficiency) 218

Hyperaldosteronism 220

Phaeochromocytoma 220

Hirsutism, virilism, gynaecomastia and impotence/ED 222

The pituitary gland:

Hypopituitarism 224

Pituitary tumours 226

Hyperprolactinaemia 228

Acromegaly 230

Diabetes insipidus (DI) 232

Relevant pages in other chapters:

Diabetic ketoacidosis (▶▶p842); hypoglycaemia (▶▶p844); surgery and diabetes (p590); the eye in diabetes (OHCS p446); thyroid emergencies (▶▶p844); thyroid lumps (p602); thyroid disease, and surgery (p593); Addisonian crisis and hypopituitary coma (▶▶p846); phaeochromocytoma emergencies (▶▶p847).

The endocrinology of food behaviour, mood, and obesity:

Cholecystokinin, GLP-1, ghrelin, and peptide YY, etc: OHCS p530.

In dermatology (endocrine control of sebocytes via CRH): OHCS p583.

In pregnancy: Thyroid disease: OHCS p25; diabetes in pregnancy: OHCS p24.

In childhood: Childhood diabetes: OHCS p186; thyroid problems: OHCS p182.



Fig 1. Frederick Banting (1891–1941) and Charles Best (1899–1978). Their discovery of insulin and its effects on glucose, from work in beagles, had a profound effect on the lives of all those with diabetes, as it paved the way for the use of insulin to treat what was then a fatal condition. Banting, but not Best, won the Nobel prize for his work, aged 32, making him the youngest ever recipient of the award in Medicine/Physiology. He died prematurely in a plane crash whilst on route to England on a secretive mission to test out an anti-gravity flying suit.

The essence of endocrinology—for scientists

- Define a syndrome, and match it to a gland malfunction.
- Measure the gland's output in the peripheral blood. Define clinical syndromes associated with too much or too little secretion (*hyper-* and *hypo-*syndromes, respectively; *eu-* means normal, neither ↑ nor ↓, as in *euthyroid*). Note factors that may make measurement variable, eg diurnal release of cortisol.
- If suspecting hormone deficiency, test by stimulating the gland that produces it (eg short ACTH stimulation test or *Synacthen*® test in Addison's). If the gland is not functioning normally, there will be a blunted response to stimulation.
- If suspecting hormone excess, test by inhibiting the gland that produces it (eg dexamethasone suppression test in Cushing's). If there is a hormone secreting tumour then this will fail to suppress via normal feedback mechanisms.
- Find a way to image the gland. NB: non-functioning tumours or 'incidentalomas' may be found in health, see p216. Imaging alone does not make the diagnosis.
- Aim to halt disease progression; diet and exercise can stop progression of impaired fasting glucose to frank diabetes.¹² For other glands, halting progression will depend on understanding autoimmunity, and the interaction of genes and environment. In thyroid autoimmunity (an archetypal autoimmune disease), it is possible to track interactions between genes and environment (eg smoking and stress) via expression of immunologically active molecules (HLA class I and II, adhesion molecules, cytokines, CD40, and complement regulatory proteins).³

Endocrinologists love this reductionist approach, but have been less successful at understanding *emergent phenomena*—those properties and performances of ours that cannot be predicted from full knowledge of our perturbed parts. We understand the diurnal nature of cortisol secretion, for example, but the science of relating this to dreams, the consolidation of memory, and the psychopathology of families and other groups (such as the endocrinology ward round you may be about to join) is in its infancy. But as doctors we are steeped in the hormonal lives of patients (as they are in ours)—and we may as well start by recognizing this now.

The essence of endocrinology—for those doing exams

"What's wrong with *him*?" your examiner asks, boldly. While you apologize to the patient for this rudeness by asking, "Is it alright if we speak about you as if you weren't here?", think to yourself that if you were a betting man or woman you would wager that the diagnosis will be endocrinological. In no other discipline are gestalt impressions so characteristic. To get good at recognizing these conditions, spend time in endocrinology outpatients and looking at collections of clinical photographs. Also, specific cutaneous signs are important, as follows.

Thyrotoxicosis: Hair loss; pretibial myxoedema (confusing term, p210); onycholysis (nail separation from the nailbed); bulging eyes (exophthalmos/proptosis).

Hypothyroidism: Hair loss; eyebrow loss; cold, pale skin; characteristic face. You might, perhaps should, fail your exam if you blurt out "Toad-like face".

Cushing's syndrome: Central obesity and wasted limbs (=lemon on sticks' see [fig 1](#)); moon face; buffalo hump; supraclavicular fat pads; striae.

Addison's disease: Hyperpigmentation (face, neck, palmar creases).

Acromegaly: Acral (distal) + soft tissue overgrowth; big jaws (macrognathia), hands and feet; the skin is thick; facial features are coarse.

Hyperandrogenism (♀): Hirsutism; temporal balding; acne.

Hypopituitarism: Pale or yellow tinged thinned skin, resulting in fine wrinkling around the eyes and mouth, making the patient look older.

Hypoparathyroidism: Dry, scaly, puffy skin; brittle nails; coarse hair. **Fig 1.** 'Lemon on sticks.'

Pseudohypoparathyroidism: Short stature, short neck and short 4th and 5th metacarpals.



DM results from lack or reduced effectiveness of endogenous insulin. Hyperglycaemia is one aspect of a far-reaching metabolic derangement, which causes serious microvascular (retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy) or macrovascular problems: stroke, renovascular disease, limb ischaemia—and above all heart disease *So think of DM as a vascular disease*:¹ when meeting a diabetic person adopt a holistic approach and consider other cardiovascular risk factors too—they tend to cluster together.

Diagnosis of diabetes mellitus: WHO criteria (rather arbitrary!)²

- Symptoms of hyperglycaemia (eg polyuria, polydipsia, unexplained weight loss, visual blurring, genital thrush, lethargy) AND raised venous glucose detected once—fasting $\geq 7\text{mmol/L}$ or random $\geq 11.1\text{mmol/L}$ OR
 - Raised venous glucose on 2 separate occasions—fasting $\geq 7\text{mmol/L}$, random $\geq 11.1\text{mmol/L}$ or oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT)—2h value $\geq 11.1\text{mmol/L}$
 - HbA1c $\geq 48\text{mmol/L}$ (6.5%), but below doesn't exclude DM. Avoid in pregnancy, children and type 1 DM.
- Whenever you have a needle in a vein, do a blood glucose (unless recently done); note if fasting or after food. Non-systematic, but better than urine tests (too many false -ves). In one UK GP trial, 5% of those screened aged 40–69 had new DM.

Categories of diabetes and dyslipidaemia

Type 1 DM Usually adolescent onset but may occur at *any* age. **Cause:** Insulin deficiency from autoimmune destruction of insulin-secreting pancreatic β cells. Patients must have insulin, and are prone to ketoacidosis and weight loss. It is associated with other autoimmune diseases (>90% carry HLA DR3 \pm DR4). Concordance is only ~30% in identical twins, indicating environmental influence. Four genes are important: one (6q) determines islet sensitivity to damage (eg from viruses or cross-reactivity from cows' milk-induced antibodies). Latent autoimmune diabetes of adults (LADA) is a form of type 1 DM, with slower progression to insulin dependence in later life.

Type 2 DM (formerly non-insulin-dependent DM, NIDDM) appears to be prevalent at 'epidemic' levels in many places, mainly due to changes in lifestyle, but also because of better diagnosis and improved longevity.⁴ Higher prevalence occurs in Asians, men, and the elderly (up to 18%). Most are over 40yrs, but teenagers are now getting type 2 DM (OHCS p156). **Cause** ↓ Insulin secretion \pm insulin resistance. It is associated with obesity, lack of exercise, calorie and alcohol excess. $\approx 80\%$ concordance in identical twins, indicating stronger genetic influence than in type 1 DM. Typically progresses from a preliminary phase of impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) or impaired fasting glucose (IFG), see BOX. (► This is a unique window for lifestyle intervention.) Maturity onset diabetes of the young (MODY) is a rare autosomal dominant form of type 2 DM affecting young people with a +ve family history (OHCS p187).

Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) Fasting plasma glucose <7mmol/L and OGTT (oral glucose tolerance) 2h glucose $\geq 7.8\text{mmol/L}$ but <11.1mmol/L.

Impaired fasting glucose (IFG) Fasting plasma glucose $\geq 6.1\text{mmol/L}$ but <7mmol/L (WHO criteria). Do an OGTT to exclude DM. The cut-off point is somewhat arbitrary: Americans use 5.55mmol/L and 4.8 is the cut-off in Israel.

IGT and IFG denote different abnormalities of glucose regulation (post-prandial and fasting). There may be lower risk of progression to DM in IFG than IGT. Manage both with lifestyle advice (exercise and diet, p87) + annual review. Incidence of DM if IFG and HbA1c at high end of normal (37–46mmol/L or 5.5–6.4%) is ~25%.⁵

Other causes of DM ► Steroids; anti-HIV drugs; newer antipsychotics; thiazides.

- Pancreatic: pancreatitis; surgery (where >90% pancreas is removed); trauma; pancreatic destruction (haemochromatosis, cystic fibrosis); pancreatic cancer.
- Cushing's disease; acromegaly; pheochromocytoma; hyperthyroidism; pregnancy.
- Others: congenital lipodystrophy; glycogen storage diseases.

1 Chicken or egg? Most type II diabetes-associated genes have a function in the vasculature, and stress in β -cells can result from vascular defects in the pancreas, so maybe vascular events trigger DM.⁴

2 These values reflect economic and political realities: biological realities are different: risk of DM retinopathy relates to glucose levels >5.6mmol/L, for example. But defining DM as >5.6 would cost £billions.

Diabetes and pregnancy

- 4% of pregnancies are complicated by DM: either pre-existing type 1 or 2 DM (<0.5%), or new-onset gestational diabetes (GDM) (>3.5%).
- All forms carry an increased risk to mother and foetus: miscarriage, pre-term labour, pre-eclampsia, congenital malformations, macrosomia, and a worsening of diabetic complications, eg retinopathy, nephropathy.
- Risk of GDM ↑ if: aged over 25; family history; +ve; weight↑; non-Caucasian; HIV+ve; previous gestational DM.⁷
- Pre-conception: Offer general advice, and discuss risks. Control/reduce weight, aim for good glucose control, offer folic acid 5mg/d until 12 weeks.
- Screen for GDM with OGTT if risk factors at booking (16–18 weeks if previous GDM).
- Oral hypoglycaemics other than metformin should be discontinued. Metformin may be used as an adjunct or alternative to insulin in type 2 DM or GDM.
- 6wks postpartum, do a fasting glucose. Even if -ve, 50% will eventually go on to develop DM.

Type 1 versus type 2 diabetes mellitus

Occasionally it may be difficult to differentiate whether a patient has type 1 or 2 DM. Features that suggest type 1 DM include weight loss; persistent hyperglycaemia despite diet and medications; presence of autoantibodies: islet cell antibodies (ICA) and anti-glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) antibodies; ketonuria on urine dipstick.

	Type 1 DM	Type 2 DM
Epidemiology	Often starts before puberty	Older patients (usually)
Genetics	HLA D3 and D4 linked	No HLA association
Cause	Autoimmune β cell destruction	Insulin resistance/β cell dysfunction
Presentation	Polydipsia, polyuria, weight↓, ketosis	Asymptomatic/complications, eg MI

► Not all new-onset DM in older people is type 2: if ketotic ± a poor response to oral hypoglycaemics (and patient is slim or has a family or personal history of autoimmunity), think of latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) and measure islet cell antibodies.

The metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance

Metabolic syndrome (syndrome x) Arbitrarily defined (IDF) as central obesity (BMI >30, or ↑ waist circ),¹ plus 2 of BP ≥130/85, triglycerides ≥1.7mmol/L, HDL ≤1.03♂/1.29♀mmol/L, fasting glucose ≥5.6mmol/L or DM. ~20% are affected; weight, genetics, and insulin resistance important in aetiology. **Possible consequences:** Vascular events (MI)—but may not increase risk beyond individual risk factors; DM; neurodegeneration; microalbuminuria; gallstones; cancers (eg pancreas); fertility problems^{♂ & ♀}. **R:** Exercise; weight↓ ± Mediterranean (?ketogenic) diet, antihypertensives, hypoglycaemics (metformin ± glitazones, p200), statins. Explain that benefits are more than simply chemical: there is an intriguing two-way interaction between depression and insulin resistance: ► Wise doctors and nurses will use this fact and work on many different levels to lead patients out of illness into health. Examples are motivational therapy and weekly phone interventions.

Insulin resistance:

- Risk factors: metabolic syndrome; obese; Asian¹; TB drugs; SSRIs; pregnancy; acromegaly; Cushing's; renal failure; cystic fibrosis; polycystic ovary (OHCS p252); Werner's syn. (OHCS p655).
- Causes: **Obesity:** Possibly ↑ rate of release of non-esterified fatty acids causing post-receptor defects in insulin's action. **Genetics:** mutations in genes encoding insulin receptors. **Circulating autoantibodies** to the extracellular domain of the insulin receptor.

Waist circumference for central obesity

Europeans	♂ ≥94cm; ♀ ≥80cm
South (S) Asians	♂ ≥90cm; ♀ ≥80cm
Chinese	♂ ≥90cm; ♀ ≥80cm
Japanese	♂ ≥85cm; ♀ ≥90cm [★]
S & Central Americans use S Asian <i>pro tem</i>	
Africans + Middle East use European <i>pro tem</i>	

¹ Gujaratis, Punjabis, Sri Lankans, Pakistanis and Bangladeshis have a low threshold for diagnosing obesity (BMI >23) and for vigorous intervention.

Address all vascular risk factors. Obsessive focusing on achieving normoglycaemia may be harmful,^{8,9} eg if it detracts from biopsychosocial health (p9) and quitting smoking. Aim for structured education and motivation from an interdisciplinary team of doctors, specialist nurses, dieticians, etc, and fellow patients (peer advisers). Randomized trials show that group learning from fellow patients is better at lowering HbA1c than well-run diabetic clinics: we doctors are not all that important!¹⁰

General: Structured education programme, offer lifestyle advice (including smoking cessation), start a statin¹ (p109), control BP² (p134). Give foot-care (p204). (Pre-) pregnancy care should be in a multidisciplinary clinic (*OHCS* p24). Advise informing driving licence authority and not to drive if hypoglycaemic spells (p153; loss of hypoglycaemia awareness may lead to loss of licence; permanent if HGV). Be prepared to negotiate on target HbA1c (eg 6.5%), capillary glucose analysis, exercise, diet: p236—saturated fats↓, sugar↓, starch-carbohydrate↓, moderate protein. Foods made just for diabetics are not needed. One could regard bariatric surgery as a cure for DM in selected patients.¹¹

Type 1 DM: Insulin (BOX).

Type 2 DM: •**Metformin** (a biguanide) initially¹² ↑ insulin sensitivity and helps weight. SE: nausea; diarrhoea; abdominal pain; not hypoglycaemia. Avoid if eGFR ≤36 mL/min¹³ (∴ lactic acidosis). Dose: 500mg bd after food. Stop if: tissue hypoxia (eg MI, sepsis); and morning before GA and contrast medium containing iodine (restart when renal function OK). *If HbA1c ≥53mmol/L 16wks later, add:*

•**Sulfonylurea** ↑ insulin secretion; eg gliclazide 40mg/d. SE: hypoglycaemia (monitor glucose); it ↑ weight, so gliptins, below, are an alternative if BMI ≥35 or hypoglycaemia is an issue. *If at 6mths, HbA1c ≥57mmol/L consider:*

•**Insulin** may be needed (BOX), eg isophane insulin bd or long-acting analogue, *or a*

•**Glitazone** to ↑ insulin sensitivity; SE: hypoglycaemia, fractures, fluid retention, LFT↑ (do LFT every 8wks for 1yr, stop if ALT up >3-fold). CI: past or present CCF; osteoporosis; monitor weight, and stop if ↑ or oedema. Example: pioglitazone 15–45mg/24h.¹⁴ It replaces either metformin or sulfonylurea. It is occasionally used with insulin. *Others:*

•**sulfonylurea receptor binders** (nateglinide): ↑ β-cell insulin release. 60mg PO ½h before meals, eg tds, ↑ dose as needed.¹⁵ Alternative: repaglinide. They target post-prandial hyperglycaemia (*t_½* is short—metformin works mostly on fasting glucose). They have a role in those with irregular mealtimes if glycaemic control is poor. •**glucagon-like peptide (GLP) analogues** Incretins are gut peptides that work by augmenting insulin release: 2 drug classes: **GLP-1 analogues**—exenatide 5µg SC bd ½h before meals (>6h apart; avoid if eGFR <30; after >4wks to 10µg bd) and **DPP-4 inhibitors** (dipeptidyl peptidase 4 breaks down GLP-1, sitagliptin; vildagliptin). They may be an alternative to insulin (if eGFR >50), eg if obese (they ↓ appetite). •**α-glucosidase inhibitors** (acarbose) ↓ breakdown of starch to sugar (an add-on drug, often disappointing!), 50mg chewed at start of each meal. Start once daily; max 200mg/8h. SE: wind (less if *slow* dose build-up), abdominal distension/pain, diarrhoea.

Monitoring glucose control

1 Fingerprick glucose if type 1 DM (and type 2, if on insulin).

2 Glycated haemoglobin (HbA1c) relates to mean glucose level over previous 8wks (RBC ½-life). Targets are negotiable, eg 48–57mmol/L (depends on patient's wish and arterial risk, eg past MI or stroke). If at risk from the effects of hypoglycaemia, eg elderly patients prone to falls, consider less tight control. Tight control may not alter all-cause mortality.¹⁶ Complications rise with rising HbA1c, so any improvement helps.

3 Be sure to ask about hypoglycaemic attacks (and whether symptomatic). Hypoglycaemic awareness may diminish if control is too tight, or with time in type 1 DM, due to ↓ glucagon secretion. It may return if control is loosened.

1 Simvastatin 40mg nocte; if triglyceride >4.5mmol/L: Bezalip® 200mg/8h (+Omacor® omega 3 if stillt).

2 Target BP <140/80mmHg; 130/80 if: stroke, MI, retinopathy, microalbuminuria (R₁ ARB or ACE-i, p123).

What is the best diet for obese patients with type 2 diabetes?

Dietary carbohydrate is a big determinant of postprandial glucose levels, and we know that low-carbohydrate diets improve glycaemic control. How do low-carbohydrate, ketogenic diets (<20g of carbohydrate daily; LCKD) compare with low-glycaemic index, reduced-calorie diet (eg 500kcal/day deficit from weight maintenance diet)? In one randomized study over 24 weeks, LCKD had greater improvements in HbA_{1c} (-15 vs -5mmol/L), weight (-11kg vs -7kg), and HDL. Diabetes drugs were reduced or eliminated in 95% of LCKD vs 62% of LGID participants.¹⁷ NB: effects on renal function and mortality are unknown so these diets remain controversial.

Using insulin

► Ketoacidosis p842; HONK p844

For good control, it is *vital* to educate to self-adjust doses in the light of exercise, fingerprick glucose, and calorie intake. Ensure:

- Phone support (trained nurse 7/24)
- Dose titration to target—eg by 2–4u steps
- Can modify diet wisely and avoid binge drinking (danger of delayed hypoglycaemia)
- Partner can abort hypoglycaemia: sugary drinks; GlucoGel® PO if coma (no risk of aspiration).

NB: fingerprick glucose *before* a meal informs about long-acting insulin doses; those done *after* meals inform about the dose of short-acting insulin.

Subcutaneous insulins are short-, medium-, or long-acting. Strength: 100u/mL.

- 1 Ultra-fast acting (Humalog®; Novorapid®); inject at start of meal, or just after (unless sugar-laden)—helps match what is actually eaten (vs what is planned).
- 2 Isophane insulin (variable peak at 4–12h): favoured by NICE (it's cheap!).
- 3 Pre-mixed insulins, with ultra-fast component (eg NovoMix® 30). 30% short acting
70% long-acting
- 4 Long-acting recombinant human insulin analogues (*insulin glargine*, eg 0.4u/kg/d) are used at bedtime in type 1 or 2 DM.¹⁸ There is no awkward peak, so good if nocturnal hypoglycaemia is an issue. Caution if considering pregnancy. Molecular modification ensures it's soluble at acid pH, but precipitates in subcutaneous tissue, and is slowly released. *Insulin detemir* (eg 0.5u/kg/d) is similar and has a role in intensive insulin regimens for type 2 overweight diabetics.

Common insulin regimens ► *Plan the regimen to suit the lifestyle, not vice versa.* Disposable pens (FlexPen®? more accurate than SoloStar®): dial dose; insert needle 90° to skin. Vary injection site (outer thigh/abdomen); change needle daily.

- 'BD biphasic regimen': twice daily premixed insulins by pen (eg NovoMix 30®)—useful in type 2 DM or type 1 with regular lifestyle.
- 'QDS regimen': before meals ultra-fast insulin + bedtime long-acting analogue: useful in type 1 DM for achieving a flexible life-style (eg for adjusting doses with size of meals, or exercise).
- Once-daily before-bed long-acting insulin: a good initial insulin regimen when switching from tablets in type 2 DM. Typical dose to work up to (slowly!): ≥1u/24h for every unit of body mass index in adults. Consider retaining metformin (±pioglitazone) if needed for tight control and patient is unable to use BD regimen.

Dose adjustment for normal eating (DAFNE): Multidisciplinary teams promoting autonomy can save lives. DAFNE found that training in flexible, intensive insulin dosing improved glycaemic control as well as wellbeing.¹⁹ It is resource intensive.

Subcutaneous insulin dosing during intercurrent illnesses (eg influenza)

- Illness often increases insulin requirements despite reduced food intake.
- Maintain calorie intake, eg using milk.
- Check blood glucose ≥ 4 times a day and look for ketonuria. Increase insulin doses if glucose rising. Advise to get help from a specialist diabetes nurse or GP if concerned (esp. if glucose levels are rising or ketonuria). One option is 2-hourly ultra fast-acting insulin (eg 6–8u) preceded by a fingerprick glucose check.
- Admit if vomiting, dehydrated, ketotic (►► p842), a child, or pregnant.

Prospective studies show that good control of hyperglycaemia is key to preventing microvascular complications in type 1 and 2 DM.²⁰ Don't treat in isolation: assess *global* vascular risk, eg: BP, cholesterol,¹ and smoking. ► *Focus on education and lifestyle advice* (eg exercise to ↑ insulin sensitivity), healthy eating, and weight reduction—p236. ► *Find out what problems are being experienced* (eg glycaemic control, morale, erectile dysfunction—p222).

Assess vascular risk: BP (BOX). Target is <140/<80mmHg (or <125/<75 with renal disease: ↑creatinine, microalbuminuria, or dipstick proteinuria). BP control is critical for preventing macrovascular disease and ↓mortality.²¹ Discuss *smoking* and offer referral to cessation services. Check *plasma lipids*.

Look for complications • Check injection sites for infection or lipohypertrophy (fatty change): advise on rotating sites of injection if present.

• **Vascular disease** Chief cause of death. MI is 4-fold commoner in DM and is more likely to be 'silent'. Stroke is twice as common. Women are at high risk—DM removes the vascular advantage conferred by the female sex. Address other risk factors—diet, smoking, hypertension (p87). Suggest a statin (eg simvastatin 40mg nocte) for all, even if no overt IHD, vascular disease, or microalbuminuria. Fibrates are useful for ↑triglycerides and ↓HDL (p704). Aspirin 75mg reduces vascular events (if past stroke or MI) and is good as statin co-therapy (safe to use in diabetic retinopathy; use in primary prevention is disappointing, at least at 100mg/day).²²

• **Nephropathy** (p309) Microalbuminuria is when urine dipstick is -ve for protein but the urine albumin:creatinine ratio (UACR) is ≥3mg/mmol (units vary, check lab) reflecting early renal disease and ↑vascular risk. If UACR >3, inhibiting the renin-angiotensin system with an ACE-i or sartan, even if BP is normal, protects the kidneys. Spironolactone may also help.²³ Refer if UACR >7 ± GFR falling by >5mL/min/1.73m²/yr.²⁴^{NICE}

• **Diabetic retinopathy** Blindness is *preventable*. *Annual retinal screening mandatory for all patients not already under ophthalmology care*. Refer to an ophthalmologist if pre-proliferative changes or if any uncertainty at or near the macula (the only place capable of 6/6 vision). ► Pre-symptomatic screening enables laser photocoagulation to be used, aimed to stop production of angiogenic factors from the ischaemic retina. Indications: maculopathy or proliferative retinopathy. See **figs 1-4**.

• **Background retinopathy:** Microaneurysms (dots), haemorrhages (blots) and hard exudates (lipid deposits). Refer if near the macula, eg for intravitreal triamcinolone.

• **Pre-proliferative retinopathy:** Cotton-wool spots (eg infarcts), haemorrhages, venous beading. These are signs of retinal ischaemia. Refer to a specialist.

• **Proliferative retinopathy:** New vessels form. Needs urgent referral.

• **Maculopathy:** (hard to see in early stages). Suspect if acuity ↓. Prompt laser, intravitreal steroids or anti-angiogenic agents may be needed in macular oedema. **Pathogenesis:** Capillary endothelial change → vascular leak → microaneurysms → capillary occlusion → local hypoxia + ischaemia → new vessel formation. High retinal blood flow caused by hyperglycaemia (and BP↑ and pregnancy) triggers this, causing capillary pericyte damage. Microvascular occlusion causes *cotton-wool spots* (± *blot haemorrhages* at interfaces with perfused retina). *New vessels* form on the disc or ischaemic areas, proliferate, bleed, fibrose, and can detach the retina. Aspirin¹ (2mg/kg/d) may be recommended by ophthalmologists; there is no evidence that it ↑ bleeding.

• **Cataracts:** May be juvenile 'snowflake' form, or 'senile'—which occur earlier in diabetic subjects. Osmotic changes in the lens induced in acute hyperglycaemia reverse with normoglycaemia (so wait before buying glasses).

• **Rubeosis iridis:** New vessels on iris: occurs late and may lead to glaucoma.

• **Metabolic complications:** p842. **Diabetic feet:** p204. **Neuropathy:** p204.

1 As DM has so many vascular events, particularly encourage statin use (p704), esp. if LDL >3mmol/L or systolic BP >140. Even consider a statin *whatever* the pre-treatment cholesterol; discuss with your patient.

Controlling BP in those with diabetes—3 typical scenarios

- 1 BP <140/80mmHg and no microalbuminuria and 10yr coronary event risk (CER10, p664) $\leq 15\%$: simply check BP every 6 months, or more often.
 - 2 BP $\geq 140/80$ and <160/100 and CER10 >15%, but no microalbuminuria: start an antihypertensive. Target BP <140/80. For doses and discussion, see p134.
 - 3 BP $\geq 140/80$ and microalbuminuria is present: ensure ACE-i or A2A are part of the approach (contraindications: p109). Target BP: <125/75 (if patient willing).
- The role of aspirin prophylaxis (75mg/d po) is uncertain in DM with hypertension.¹



Fig 1. Background retinopathy, with microaneurysms and hard exudates.

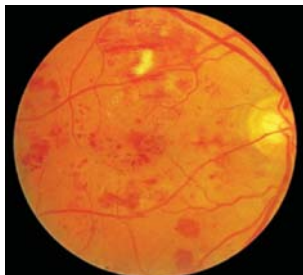


Fig 2. Pre-proliferative retinopathy, with haemorrhages and a cotton-wool spot.



Fig 3. Proliferative retinopathy, with new vessel formation and haemorrhages.



Fig 4. Scars from previous laser photocoagulation.

Figs 1, 3 & 4 courtesy of Prof J Trobe; fig 2 reproduced with permission from the *Oxford Textbook of Medicine*.

Improving quality of life: going beyond the pleasures of the flesh

"I cannot eat what I want because of your pitiful diet. Sex is out because diabetes has made me impotent. Smoking is banned, so what's left? I'd shoot myself if only I could see straight." Start by acknowledging your patient's distress. Don't shrug it off—but don't take it at face value either. Life may be transformed by cataract surgery, sildenafil (unless contraindicated, p222), dietary negotiation, and sport (it needn't be shooting). Take steps to simplify care. Stop blood glucose self-monitoring if it's achieving nothing (constant prickings are known to ↓ quality of life).²⁵ Even if all these interventions fail, you have one trump card up your sleeve: "Let's both try to find one new thing of value before we next meet—and compare notes". This opens the way to vicarious pleasure: a whole new world.

¹ Aspirin ↓ leucocyte adhesion in diabetic retinal capillaries and ↓ expression of integrins on leucocytes. It ↑ nitric oxide synthetase (eNOS) levels and ↓ vasoactive cytokine tumour necrosis factor, known to be raised in diabetic retinopathy, but benefits are hard to prove, and harm is possible.

Amputations are common (100/week UK)—and preventable: *good care saves legs*. ▶ Refer *early* to high-quality interdisciplinary foot care services, which integrate podiatry, imaging, vascular surgery, and skilled optimization of diabetic care.

Signs Examine feet regularly. Distinguish between ischaemia (critical toes ± absent dorsalis pedis pulses and worse outcome) and peripheral neuropathy (injury or infection over pressure points, eg the metatarsal heads). In practice, many have both.

Neuropathy: Sensation in 'stocking' distribution (test sensation with a 10g monofilament fibre applied with just sufficient force to bend it), absent ankle jerks, neuropathic deformity: pes cavus, claw toes, loss of transverse arch, rocker-bottom sole. Sensory loss is patchy, so examine all areas using a monofilament.

Ischaemia: If the foot pulses cannot be felt, do Doppler pressure measurements. Any evidence of neuropathy or vascular disease raises risk of foot ulceration. **Educate** (daily foot inspection—eg with a mirror so the sole can be fully inspected; comfortable shoes—ie very soft leather, increased depth, cushioning insoles/trainers; weight-distributing cradles; no barefoot walking, no corn-plasters). **Regular chiropody** to remove callus, as haemorrhage and tissue necrosis may occur below, leading to ulceration. **Treat fungal infections** (p440). **Surgery** (including endovascular angioplasty balloons, stents, and subintimal recanalization) has a role. Get advice.

Foot ulceration Typically painless, punched-out ulcer (fig 1) in an area of thick callus ± superadded infection. Causes cellulitis, abscess ± osteomyelitis.

Assess degree of: 1 Neuropathy (clinically).

2 Ischaemia (clinically + Doppler ± angiography).

3 Bony deformity, eg Charcot joint (clinically + x-ray). See fig 2.

4 Infection (swabs, blood culture, x-ray for osteomyelitis, probe ulcer to reveal depth).

Management: Regular chiropody to remove callus. Relieve high-pressure areas with bed rest ± therapeutic shoes (Pressure Relief Walkers® may be as good as total contact casts); metatarsal head surgery may be needed. If there is cellulitis, admit for IV antibiotics. Common organisms: staphs, streps, anaerobes. Start with benzylpenicillin 1.2g/6h IV and flucloxacillin 1g/6h IV ± metronidazole 500mg/8h IV, refined when microbiology results are known. IV insulin may improve healing. Get surgical help early. The degree of peripheral vascular disease, general health, and patient request will determine whether local excision and drainage, vascular reconstruction, and/or amputation (and how much) is appropriate. ▶ **Absolute indications for surgery:** Abscess or deep infection; spreading anaerobic infection; gangrene/rest pain; suppurative arthritis.

Diabetic neuropathies: *Symmetric sensory polyneuropathy:* ('glove & stocking' numbness, tingling, and pain, eg worse at night). *R:* (in order) paracetamol → tricyclic (amitriptyline 10–25mg nocte; gradually ↑ to 150mg) → duloxetine, gabapentin, or pregabalin → opiates.¹⁸ Avoiding weight-bearing helps.

Mononeuritis multiplex: (eg III & VI cranial nerves) Treatment: hard! If sudden or severe, immunosuppression may help (corticosteroids, IV immunoglobulin, ciclosporin).²⁶

Amyotrophy: Painful wasting of quadriceps and other pelvifemoral muscles. Use electrophysiology to show, eg lumbosacral radiculopathy, plexopathy, or proximal crural neuropathy. Natural course: variable with gradual but often incomplete improvement. IV immunoglobulins have been used.²⁷

Autonomic neuropathy: (p509) Postural BP drop; ↓cerebrovascular autoregulation; loss of respiratory sinus arrhythmia (vagal neuropathy); gastroparesis; urine retention; erectile dysfunction (ED); gustatory sweating; diarrhoea. The latter may respond to codeine phosphate (use lowest dose to control symptoms, eg 15mg/8h PO). Gastroparesis (early satiety, post-prandial bloating, nausea/vomiting) is diagnosed by gastric scintigraphy with a ⁹⁹technetium-labelled meal. It may respond to anti-emetics, erythromycin, or gastric pacing. Postural hypotension may respond to fludrocortisone 50–300µg/24h PO (SE: oedema, ↑BP), or midodrine (unlicensed α-agonist; SE: ↑BP).

Preventing loss of limbs: primary or secondary prevention?

Traditionally prevention involves foot care advice in diabetic clinics (eg "Don't go bare-foot"), promoting euglycaemia and normotension.¹ But despite this, the sight of a diabetic patient minus one limb is not rare, and must prompt us to redouble our commitment to primary prevention, ie stopping those at risk from ever getting diabetes. In one prospective study of those with impaired glucose tolerance and other risk factors, after 3 yrs, the incidence of diabetes per 100 person-yrs was 5 in those receiving simple exercise and diet advice, 8 in a group given metformin, and 11 in the placebo group. Advice and metformin decreased incidence of diabetes by 58% (NNT \approx 7) and 31% (NNT \approx 14), respectively, compared with placebo. One vital group to focus on are those with the metabolic syndrome (p199).



Fig 1. Gangrene (toes 2, 4 and 5). After amputation, (eg forefoot/Syme's, or above or below knee, depending on Doppler), even the least self-pitying are entitled to a period of narcissistic grief: "I begin again to walk, on crutches. What nuisance, what fatigue, what sadness, when I think about all my ancient travels, and how active I was just 5 months ago! Where are the runnings across mountains, the walks, the deserts, the rivers, and the seas? And now, the life of a legless cripple. For I begin to understand that crutches, wooden and articulated legs, are a pack of jokes...Goodbye to family, goodbye to future! My life is gone, I'm no more than an immobile trunk". ²⁸ Arthur Rimbaud



Fig 2. Charcot (neuropathic) joint, caused by loss of pain sensation, leading to mechanical stress (unimpeded by pain) and repeated joint injury. Swelling, instability and, eventually, deformity, have developed. ▶ Early recognition is vital (cellulitis or osteomyelitis are often misdiagnosed). Treatment: offload all weight (bed rest or non-weight-bearing crutches); immobilization by a total contact cast until oedema and local warmth reduce and bony repair is complete (\approx 8wks). Bisphosphonates may help. Charcot joints are also seen in tabes dorsalis, spina bifida, syringomyelia, and leprosy.

Figs 1 & 2 reproduced from the *Oxford Textbook of Medicine*, with permission from OUP.

► This is the commonest endocrine emergency—see p844. Prompt diagnosis and treatment is essential—brain damage & death can occur if severe or prolonged.

Definition Plasma glucose $\leq 3\text{mmol/L}$. Threshold for symptoms varies. See BOX.

Symptoms • **Autonomic**—Sweating, anxiety, hunger, tremor, palpitations, dizziness.

• **Neuroglycopenic**—Confusion, drowsiness, visual trouble, seizures, coma. Rarely focal symptoms, eg transient hemiplegia. Mutism, personality change, restlessness and incoherence may lead to misdiagnosis of alcohol intoxication or even psychosis.

1 Fasting hypoglycaemia **Causes:** The chief cause is insulin or sulfonylurea treatment in a known diabetic, eg with inactivity, missed meal, accidental or non-accidental overdose. In *non-diabetic* adults you must EXPLAIN the mechanism:

Exogenous drugs, eg *insulin*, *oral hypoglycaemics* (p200). Does she have access to these (diabetic in the family)? Body-builders may misuse insulin to help stamina.

Also: *alcohol*, eg a binge with no food; *aspirin poisoning*; *ACE-i*; *β -blockers*; *pentamidine*; *quinine sulfate*; *aminoglutethamide*; insulin-like growth factor.²⁹

Pituitary insufficiency.

Liver failure, plus some rare inherited enzyme defects.

Addison's disease.

Islet cell tumours (insulinoma) and immune hypoglycaemia (eg anti-insulin receptor antibodies in Hodgkin's disease).

Non-pancreatic neoplasms, eg fibrosarcomas and haemangiopericytomas.

Diagnosis and investigations (see BOX)

- Document hypoglycaemia by taking fingerprick (on filter-paper at home for later analysis) during attack and lab glucose if in hospital (monitors are often not reliable at low readings). • Take a drug history and exclude liver failure.
- 72h fasting may be needed (monitor closely). Take blood samples for glucose, insulin, c-peptide and plasma ketones if symptomatic.

Interpreting results

- Hypoglycaemic hyperinsulinaemia (HH): **Causes:** Insulinoma, sulfonylureas, insulin injection (no detectable c-peptide—only released with endogenous insulin); non-insulinoma pancreatogenous hypoglycaemia syndrome, mutation in the insulin-receptor gene. Congenital HH follows mutations in genes involved in insulin secretion (ABCC8, KCNJ11, GLUD1, CGK, HADH, SLC16A1, HNF4A, ABCC8 & KCNJ11).³⁰
- Insulin low or undetectable, no excess ketones. **Causes:** Non-pancreatic neoplasm; anti-insulin receptor antibodies.
- Insulin \downarrow , ketonest. **Causes:** Alcohol, pituitary insufficiency, Addison's disease.

2 Post-prandial hypoglycaemia May occur after gastric/bariatric surgery ('dumping', p624), and in type 2 DM. **Investigation:** Prolonged OGTT (5h, p198).

Treatment ►► See p844. Treat with oral sugar and a long-acting starch (eg toast); If cannot swallow, 25–50mL 50% glucose IV (via large vein with 0.9% saline flush to prevent phlebitis) or glucagon 1mg IM if no IV access (short duration of effect so repeat after 20min and *follow with oral carbohydrate*). If episodes are often, advise many small high-starch meals. If post-prandial glucose \downarrow , give slowly absorbed carbohydrate (high fibre). In diabetics, rationalize insulin therapy (p201).

Insulinoma This often benign (90–95%) pancreatic islet cell tumour is sporadic or seen with MEN-1 (p215). It presents as fasting hypoglycaemia, with Whipple's triad:

1 Symptoms associated with fasting or exercise **2** Recorded hypoglycaemia with symptoms **3** Symptoms relieved with glucose. **Screening test:** Hypoglycaemia + plasma insulin \uparrow during a long fast. **Suppressive tests:** Give IV insulin and measure c-peptide. Normally exogenous insulin suppresses c-peptide production, but this does not occur in insulinoma. **Imaging:** CT/MRI \pm endoscopic pancreatic US \pm IACS (see BOX; all fallible, so don't waste too much time before proceeding to intra-operative visualization \pm intra-operative ultrasound). ¹⁸F-L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine PET-CT can help guide laparoscopic surgery. **Treatment:** Excision. **Nesidioblastosis:** see BOX. If this doesn't work, options are: tdiet, diazoxide, dextrose IVI, enteral feeding, everolimus.

The definition of hypoglycaemia is context-dependent

Because the brain stops working if plasma glucose levels get too low we are all nervous of levels ≤ 3 mmol/L. But some people can walk around quite happily at this level. So what is definitely abnormal? A rule such as '*Any plasma glucose < 1.7 mmol/L constitutes hypoglycaemia*' may be true (a normal neonate may descend to this level but no further during the 1st day of life: even so—he or she needs feeding urgently)—but it is not a very helpful rule if the context is a fingerprick glucose on someone having seizures. Here it is better to rephrase the question: "*In this ill patient when can I be sure that a low glucose is not contributing to their illness?*" The answer may be 4 mmol/L, allowing for inaccuracy in fingerprick blood glucose levels (NB: whole blood glucose is 10–15% $<$ plasma glucose.) If < 4 , you may be wise to treat (p844)—just in case.

A different context is a call from the lab to say that a glucose is 2.50 mmol/L. Contact the patient, who may be up and about and happy; confirm that they are not on any hypoglycaemic agents. Have they binged on alcohol in the 24h before the test? Skipped meals? Could this low glucose be a sign of an illness such as an insulinoma? Unlikely, but possible. Keep an open mind; let the GP know. Explain about signs of hypoglycaemia and to see a doctor if such signs occur. Consider further tests (p206), eg dotted about the day to catch other episodes of hypoglycaemia. Be more inclined to investigate if the effects of even mild hypoglycaemia might be disastrous (eg in pilots) or if there are unexplained symptoms.

When should I investigate borderline hypoglycaemia? Whipple answered the question thus (*Whipple's triad*): symptoms or signs of hypoglycaemia + \uparrow plasma glucose + resolution of those symptoms or signs after plasma glucose raises.³¹

First thoughts in proven hypoglycaemia Exclude drugs, critical illnesses, hormone deficiencies, and non-islet cell tumours. If none of these, diagnosis narrows to accidental, surreptitious/malicious hypoglycaemia, or endogenous hyperinsulinism (if the latter, do insulin, C-peptide, proinsulin, β -hydroxybutyrate, and circulating oral hypoglycaemic agents during hypoglycaemia). Measure insulin antibodies.

Pursuing a voyage to the islets of Langerhans to the bitter end

A 50-year-old had episodic early-morning sweats and tremors and was found to have hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia. Selective intra-arterial calcium infusions (IACS) showed a 2-fold increase in insulin secretion after infusion of the splenic and superior mesenteric arteries, so setting the stage for 'hunt the insulinoma'.

But cross-sectional imaging and endoscopic ultrasound were normal. At laparotomy, no lesion was found despite mobilization of the pancreas, or during intra-operative ultrasound. "Time to sew up and go home?" "No!" said the surgeon, "I'm going to do a distal pancreatectomy". Histology showed no discrete insulinoma, but diffuse islet cell hyperplasia (*nesidioblastosis*). How much pancreas to resect? Too little and nothing is gained: too much spells pancreatic endocrine disaster. Luckily the surgeon guessed right, and the patient was cured by the procedure.³²



Physiology (fig 1) The hypothalamus secretes thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), a tripeptide, that stimulates production of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH=thyro-tropin), a glycoprotein, from the anterior pituitary. TSH increases production and release of thyroxine (T₄) and triiodothyronine (T₃) from the thyroid, which exert -ve feedback on TSH production. The thyroid produces mainly T₄, which is 5-fold less active than T₃. 85% of T₃ is formed from peripheral conversion of T₄. Most T₃ and T₄ in plasma is protein bound, eg to thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG). The unbound portion is the active part. T₃ and T₄ ↑cell metabolism, via nuclear receptors, and are thus vital for growth and mental development. They also ↑catecholamine effects.

Thyroid hormone abnormalities are usually due to problems in the thyroid gland itself, and rarely caused by the hypothalamus or the anterior pituitary.

Basic tests Free T₄ and T₃ are more useful than total T₄ and T₃ as the latter are affected by TBG. Total T₄ and T₃ are ↑ when TBG is ↑ and *vice versa*. TBG is ↑ in pregnancy, oestrogen therapy (HRT, oral contraceptives) and hepatitis. TBG is ↓ in nephrotic syndrome and malnutrition (both from protein loss), drugs (androgens, corticosteroids, phenytoin), chronic liver disease and acromegaly. TSH is very useful:

- **Hyperthyroidism suspected:** Ask for T₃, T₄, and TSH. In hyperthyroidism, all will have ↓TSH (except for the rare phenomenon of a TSH-secreting pituitary adenoma). Most have raised T₄, but ~1% have only raised T₃.
- **Hypothyroidism suspected or monitoring replacement R_x:** Ask for only T₄ and TSH. T₃ does not add any extra information. TSH varies through the day: trough at 2PM; 30% higher during darkness, so during monitoring, try to do at the same time.

↓TSH, ↓T ₄	Hypothyroidism
↓TSH, normal T ₄	Treated hypothyroidism or subclinical hypothyroidism (p213)
↓TSH, ↑T ₄	TSH secreting tumour or thyroid hormone resistance
↓TSH, ↑T ₄ and ↓T ₃	Slow conversion of T ₄ to T ₃ (deiodinase deficiency; euthyroid hyperthyroxinaemia ¹) or thyroid hormone antibody artefact ^{33,34}
↑TSH, ↑T ₄ or ↑T ₃	Hyperthyroidism
↑TSH, normal T ₄ & T ₃	Subclinical hyperthyroidism
↑TSH, ↓T ₄	Central hypothyroidism (hypothalamic or pituitary disorder)
↑TSH, ↓T ₄ & ↓T ₃	Sick euthyroidism (below) or pituitary disease
Normal TSH, abnormal T ₄	Consider changes in thyroid-binding globulin, assay interference, amiodarone, or pituitary TSH tumour

Sick euthyroidism: In any systemic illness, TFTs may become deranged. The typical pattern is for 'everything to be low'. The test should be repeated after recovery.

Assay interference is caused by antibodies in the serum, interfering with the test.

Other tests • **Thyroid autoantibodies:** Antithyroid peroxidase (TPO; formerly called microsomal) antibodies or antithyroglobulin antibodies may be increased in autoimmune thyroid disease: Hashimoto's or Graves' disease. If +ve in Graves', there is an increased risk of developing hypothyroidism at a later stage.

- **TSH receptor antibody:** May be ↑ in Graves' disease (useful in pregnancy).
- **Serum thyroglobulin:** Useful in monitoring the treatment of carcinoma (p602), and in detection of factitious (self-medicated) hyperthyroidism, where it is low.
- **Ultrasound:** This distinguishes cystic (usually, but not always, benign) from solid (possibly malignant) nodules. If a solitary (or dominant) large nodule, in a multinodular goitre, do a fine-needle aspiration to look for thyroid cancer; see fig 3, p603.
- **Isotope scan:** (¹²³Iodine, ^{99m}technetium pertechnetate, etc; see fig 2, p603). Useful for determining the cause of hyperthyroidism and to detect retrosternal goitre, ectopic thyroid tissue or thyroid metastases (+ whole body CT). If there are suspicious nodules, the question is: does the area have increased (hot), decreased (cold), or the same (neutral) uptake of isotope as the remaining thyroid (see fig 2)? Few neutral and almost no hot nodules are malignant. 20% of 'cold' nodules are malignant. Surgery is most likely to be needed if: •Rapid growth •Compression signs •Dominant nodule on scintigraphy •Nodule ≥3cm •Hypo-echogenicity. See also p752.

1 In 'consumptive hypothyroidism' deiodinase activity is ↑↑; suspect if thyroxine doses have to be ↑↑.

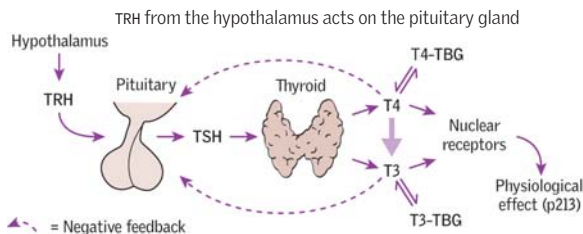


Fig 1. Pathways involved in thyroid function.

Screen the following for abnormalities in thyroid function:

- Patients with atrial fibrillation
- Patients with hyperlipidaemia (4-14% have hypothyroidism)
- Diabetes mellitus—on annual review
- Women with type 1 DM during 1st trimester and post delivery (3-fold rise in incidence of postpartum thyroid dysfunction)
- Patients on amiodarone or lithium (6 monthly)
- Patients with Down's or Turner's syndrome, or Addison's disease (yearly)

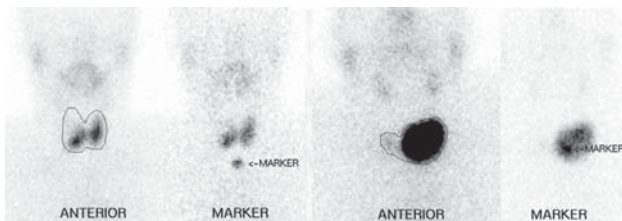


Fig 2. The images are from an isotope scan, with and without markers placed over the sternal notch. We can see on the left that the nodule is metabolically inactive ('cold'). The hot nodule (right pair) is a very avid nodule causing background thyroid suppression.

Image courtesy of Dr Y. T. Huang.

The clinical effect of excess thyroid hormone, usually from gland hyperfunction.

Symptoms Diarrhoea; weight↓; appetite↑ (if ↑↑, paradoxical weight *gain* in 10%); over-active; sweats; heat intolerance; palpitations; tremor; irritability; labile emotions; oligomenorrhoea ±infertility. Rarely psychosis; chorea; panic; itch; alopecia; urticaria.

Signs Pulse fast/irregular (AF or SVT; VT rare); warm moist skin; fine tremor; palmar erythema; thin hair; lid lag (**fig 1**); eyelid lags behind eye's descent as patient watches your finger descend slowly); lid retraction (exposure of sclera above iris; causing 'stare'). There may be goitre (**fig 2**); thyroid nodules; or bruit depending on the cause.

Signs of Graves' disease: (BOX) **1 Eye disease** (BOX): exophthalmos, ophthalmoplegia. **2 Pretibial myxoedema:** oedematous swellings above lateral malleoli: the term *myxoedema* is confusing here **3 Thyroid acropachy:** extreme manifestation, with clubbing, painful finger and toe swelling, and periosteal reaction in limb bones.

Tests TSH↓ (suppressed), T₄ and T₃↑. There may be mild normocytic anaemia, mild neutropenia (in Graves'), ESR↑, Ca²⁺↑, LFT↑. **Also:** Check thyroid autoantibodies. Isotope scan if the cause is unclear, to detect nodular disease or subacute thyroiditis. If ophthalmopathy, test visual fields, acuity, and eye movements (see BOX).

Causes

• **Graves' disease:** Prevalence: 0.5% (% of cases of hyperthyroidism). ♀:♂≈9:1. Typical age: 40–60yrs (younger if maternal family history). Cause: circulating IgG autoantibodies binding to and activating G-protein-coupled thyrotropin receptors, which cause smooth thyroid enlargement and ↑ hormone production (esp. T₃), and react with orbital autoantigens.^{3,35} Triggers: stress; infection; childbirth. Patients are often hyperthyroid but may be, or become, hypo- or euthyroid. It is associated with other autoimmune diseases: vitiligo, type 1 DM, Addison's.

• **Toxic multinodular goitre:** Seen in the elderly and in iodine-deficient areas. There are nodules that secrete thyroid hormones. Surgery is indicated for compressive symptoms from the enlarged thyroid (dysphagia or dyspnoea).

• **Toxic adenoma:** There is a solitary nodule producing T₃ and T₄. On isotope scan, the nodule is 'hot' (p208), and the rest of the gland is suppressed.

• **Ectopic thyroid tissue:** Metastatic follicular thyroid cancer, or struma ovarii: ovarian teratoma with thyroid tissue.

• **Exogenous:** Iodine excess, eg food contamination, contrast media (▶▶ thyroid storm, p844, if already hyperthyroid). Levothyroxine excess causes ↑T₄, ↓T₃, ↓thyroglobulin.

• **Others:** **1 Subacute de Quervain's thyroiditis:** Self-limiting post-viral with painful goitre, T₃↑ ± ↑ESR. Low isotope uptake on scan. **R:** NSAIDs. **2 Drugs:** Amiodarone (p212), lithium (hypothyroidism more common). **3 Postpartum 4 TB** (rare).

Treatment

1 Drugs: β-blockers (eg propranolol 40mg/6h) for rapid control of symptoms.

Anti-thyroid medication: 2 strategies (equally effective):³⁶ **A) Titration**, eg carbimazole 20–40mg/24h PO for 4wks, reduce according to TFTs every 1–2 months. **B) Block-replace:** Give carbimazole + thyroxine simultaneously (less risk of iatrogenic hypothyroidism). In Graves', maintain on either regimen for 12–18 months then withdraw. ~50% will relapse, requiring radioiodine or surgery. Carbimazole SE: agranulocytosis (↓neutrophils, can lead to dangerous sepsis; rare (0.03%)); warn to stop and get an urgent FBC if signs of infection, eg T₃↑, sore throat/mouth ulcers.

2 Radioiodine (¹³¹I): Most become hypothyroid post-treatment. There is no evidence for ↑cancer, birth defects or infertility in women. CI: pregnancy, lactation. Caution in active hyperthyroidism as risk of thyroid storm (p845).

3 Thyroidectomy: Carries a risk of damage to recurrent laryngeal nerve (hoarse voice) and hypoparathyroidism. Patients may become hypothyroid.

4 In pregnancy and infancy: Get expert help. See OHCS p25 & OHCS p182.

Complications Heart failure (thyrotoxic cardiomyopathy, ↑ in elderly), angina, AF (seen in 10–25%: control hyperthyroidism and warfarinize if no contraindication), osteoporosis, ophthalmopathy, gynaecomastia. ▶▶ Thyroid storm (p845).

Thyroid eye disease

This is seen in 25–50% of people with Graves' disease. The main known risk factor is smoking. The eye disease may not correlate with thyroid disease and the patient can be euthyroid, hypothyroid, or hyperthyroid at presentation. Eye disease may be the first presenting sign of Graves' disease, and can also be worsened by treatment, typically with radioiodine (usually a transient effect). Retro-orbital inflammation and lymphocyte infiltration results in swelling of the orbit.

Symptoms Eye discomfort, grittiness, tear production, photophobia, diplopia, acuity, afferent pupillary defect (p79) may mean optic nerve compression: ▶ *Seek expert advice at once as decompression may be needed.* Nerve damage does not necessarily go hand-in-hand with protrusion. Indeed, if the eye cannot protrude for anatomical reasons, optic nerve compression is more likely—a paradox!

Signs Exophthalmos—appearance of protruding eye; proptosis—eyes protrude beyond the orbit (look from above in the same plane as the forehead); conjunctival oedema; corneal ulceration; papilloedema; loss of colour vision. Ophthalmoplegia (especially of upward gaze) occurs due to muscle swelling and fibrosis.

Tests Diagnosis is clinical. CT/MRI of the orbits may reveal enlarged eye muscles.

Management Get specialist help. Treat hyper- or hypothyroidism. Advise to stop smoking as this worsens prognosis. Most have mild disease that can be treated symptomatically (artificial tears, sunglasses, avoid dust, elevate bed when sleeping to ↓ periorbital oedema). Diplopia may be managed with a Fresnel prism stuck to one lens of a spectacle (aids easy changing as the exophthalmos changes).

In more severe disease with ophthalmoplegia or gross oedema, try high-dose steroids (iv methylprednisolone is better than prednisolone 100mg/day PO)³⁷—decreasing according to symptoms. Surgical decompression is used for severe sight-threatening disease, or for cosmetic reasons once the activity of eye disease has reduced (via an inferior orbital approach, using space in the ethmoidal, sphenoidal, and maxillary sinuses). Eyelid surgery may improve cosmesis and function. Orbital radiotherapy can be used to treat ophthalmoplegia but has little effect on proptosis.

Future options: Anti-TNFα antibodies (eg infliximab).



Fig 1. Thyroid eye disease: lid retraction causing a 'staring' appearance.

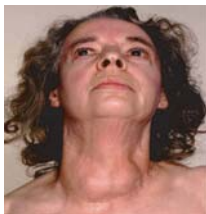


Fig 2. Goitre.

Causes of goitre

Diffuse

- Physiological
- Graves' disease
- Hashimoto's thyroiditis
- Subacute (de Quervain's) thyroiditis (painful)

Nodular

- Multinodular goitre
- Adenoma
- Carcinoma

Manifestations of Graves' disease—and pathophysiology

Pituitary	Suppressed TSH	↓ Expression of thyrotropin β subunit ^{et al}
Heart	↑ Rate; ↓ contractility	↑ Serum atrial natriuretic peptide ^{et al}
Liver	↑ Peripheral T ₃ ; LDL ↓ (p704)	↑ Type 1 5'-deiodinase; LDL receptors
Bone	↑ Bone turnover; osteoporosis	↑ Osteocalcin; ↑ alk phos; ↑ urinary N-telopeptide
Genital ♂	↓ Libido; erectile dysfunction	↑ Sex hormone globulin; ↓ testosterone
Genital ♀	Irregular menses	Oestrogen antagonism
Metabolic	↑ Thermogenesis; ↑ O ₂ use	↑ Fatty acid oxidation; ↑ Na-K ATPase
White fat	↓ Fat mass	↑ Adrenergic-mediated lipolysis
CNS ^{basal ganglia}	Stiff person syndrome (rare) ¹	Antibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase
Muscle	Proximal myopathy	↑ Sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca ²⁺ -activated ATPase
Thyroid	↑ Secretion of T ₃ and T ₄	↑ Type 2 5'-deiodinase activity in thyroid ³⁵

1 Emotional or tactile stimuli cause spasms; seen in any autoimmune state (eg type 1 DM); R: baclofen ± IV Ig.

This is the clinical effect of thyroid hormone lack. It is common (4/1000/yr). If treated, prognosis is excellent; untreated it is disastrous (eg heart disease, dementia^{etc}). ▶ *As it is insidious, both you and your patient may not realize anything is wrong*, so be alert to subtle, nonspecific symptoms, esp. in women ≥ 40 yrs old ($\sigma: \sigma \approx 6:1$).

Symptoms Tired; sleepy, lethargic; mood↓; cold-disliking; weight↑; constipation; menorrhagia; hoarse voice; ↓memory/cognition; dementia; myalgia; cramps; weakness.

Signs **BRADYCARDIC**; reflexes relax slowly; **ataxia** (cerebellar); **dry** thin hair/skin; yawning/drowsy/coma (p844); **cold** hands $\pm T^\circ\downarrow$; **ascites** \pm non-pitting oedema (lids; hands; feet) \pm pericardial or pleural effusion; **round** puffy face/double chin/obese; **de**-feated demeanour; **immobile** \pm ileus; **ccf**. Also: neuropathy; myopathy; goitre (fig 1).

Diagnosis (p208) ▶ Have a low threshold for doing TFTs! TSH (eg ≥ 4 mU/L);¹ $T_4\downarrow$ (in rare secondary hypothyroidism: $T_4\downarrow$ and TSH↓ or ↔ due to lack from the pituitary, p224). Cholesterol and triglyceride↑; macrocytosis (less often normochromic anaemia too).

Causes of primary autoimmune hypothyroidism

- **Hashimoto's thyroiditis**: $\sigma: \sigma \approx 6:1$. Common. Diffuse lymphocytic infiltration of the thyroid, leading to atrophy, hence no goitre.
- **Hashimoto's thyroiditis**: Goitre due to lymphocytic and plasma cell infiltration. Commoner in women aged 60–70 yrs. May be hypothyroid or euthyroid; rarely initial period of hyperthyroid ('Hashitoxicosis'). Autoantibody titres are very high.

Other causes of primary hypothyroidism

- ▶ World-wide the chief cause is **iodine deficiency**.
- **Post-thyroidectomy or radioiodine treatment**.
- **Drug-induced**: Antithyroid drugs, amiodarone, lithium, iodine.
- **Subacute thyroiditis**: Temporary hypothyroidism after hyperthyroid phase.

Secondary hypothyroidism Not enough TSH (\therefore hypopituitarism, p224); very rare.

Hypothyroidism's associations Autoimmune is seen with other autoimmune diseases (type 1 DM, Addison's and PA, p328). Turner's and Down's syndromes, cystic fibrosis, primary biliary cirrhosis, ovarian hyperstimulation (OHCS p311); POEMS syndrome—polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, m-protein band (plasmacytoma) + skin pigmentation/tethering. **Genetic**: Dysmorphogenesis: genetic (often autosomal recessive) defect in hormone synthesis, eg Pendred's syndrome (with deafness): there is uptake on isotope scan, which is displaced by potassium perchlorate.

Pregnancy problems Eclampsia, anaemia, prematurity, ↓birthweight, stillbirth, PPH.

Treatment

- **Healthy and young**: Levothyroxine (T_4), 50–100 μ g/24h po; review at 12 wks. Adjust 6 weekly by clinical state and to normalize but not suppress TSH (keep TSH > 0.5 mU/L). Thyroxine's $t_{1/2}$ is ~ 7 d, so wait ~ 4 wks before checking TSH to see if a dose change is right. NB: small changes in serum free T_4 have a logarithmic effect on TSH.³⁸ Once normal, check TSH yearly. Enzyme inducers (p703) ↑metabolism of levothyroxine.
- **Elderly or ischaemic heart disease**: Start with 25 μ g/24h; \uparrow dose by 25 μ g/4wks according to TSH (▶ cautiously, as thyroxine may precipitate angina or MI).
- **If diagnosis is in question and T_4 already given**: Stop T_4 ; recheck TSH in 6 weeks.

Amiodarone is an iodine-rich drug structurally like T_4 ; 2% of users will get significant thyroid problems from it. Hypothyroidism can be caused by toxicity from iodine excess (T_4 release is inhibited). Thyrotoxicosis may be caused by a destructive thyroiditis causing hormone release. Here, radioiodine uptake can be undetectable and if this is the case, glucocorticoids may help. Get expert help. Thyroidectomy may be needed if amiodarone cannot be discontinued. $T_{1/2}$ of amiodarone ≈ 80 d, so problems persist after withdrawal. If on amiodarone, check TFTs 6-monthly.

1 ▶ *Treat the patient not the blood level!* No exact cut-off in TSH can be given partly because risk of death from heart disease mirrors TSH *even when in the normal range* in women. Risk ≈ 1.4 if TSH 1.5–2.4 vs 1.7 if TSH 2.5–3.5. If TSH > 3.65 and possibly symptomatic, a low dose of levothyroxine may be tried. Monitor symptoms, TSH and T_4 carefully. Over-exposure to thyroxine may cause osteoporosis \pm AF.

Why are symptoms of thyroid disease so various, and so subtle?

Almost all our cell nuclei have receptors showing a high affinity for T_3 : that known as $TR\alpha-1$ is abundant in muscle and fat; $TR\alpha-2$ is abundant in brain; and $TR\beta-1$ is abundant in brain, liver, and kidney. These receptors, via their influence on various enzymes, affect the following processes:

- The metabolism of substrates, vitamins, and minerals.
- Modulation of all other hormones and their target-tissue responses.
- Stimulation of O_2 consumption and generation of metabolic heat.
- Regulation of protein synthesis, and carbohydrate and lipid metabolism.
- Stimulation of demand for co-enzymes and related vitamins.

Subclinical thyroid disease

Subclinical hypothyroidism Suspect if TSH $>4\text{mu/L}$ with normal T_4 and T_3 , and no obvious symptoms.³⁹ It is common: $\sim 10\%$ of those $>55\text{yrs}$ have $\uparrow\text{TSH}$. Risk of progression to frank hypothyroidism is $\sim 2\%$, and increases as TSH \uparrow ; risk doubles if thyroid peroxidase antibodies are present, and is also increased in men. *Management:*

- Confirm that raised TSH is persistent (recheck in 2–4 months).
- Recheck the history: if any non-specific features (eg depression), discuss benefits of treating (p212) with the patient: maybe they will function better.
- Have a low threshold for carefully supervised treatment as your patient may not be so asymptomatic after all, and cardiac deaths *may* be prevented.⁴⁰ Treat if: **1** TSH $\geq 10\text{mu/L}$ **2** +ve thyroid autoantibodies **3** Past (treated) Graves' **4** Other organ-specific autoimmunity (type 1 DM, myasthenia, pernicious anaemia, vitiligo), as they are more likely to progress to clinical hypothyroidism.⁴¹ *If TSH 4–10, and vague symptoms*, treat for 6 months—only continue if symptoms improve (or the patient is trying to conceive).⁴² If the patient does not fall into any of these categories, monitor TSH yearly.
- Risks from well-monitored treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism are small (but there is an risk of atrial fibrillation and osteoporosis if over-treated).

Subclinical hyperthyroidism occurs when TSH \downarrow , with normal T_4 and T_3 . There is a 41% increase in relative mortality from all causes versus euthyroid control subjects—eg from AF and osteoporosis. *Management:*⁴³

- Confirm that suppressed TSH is persistent (recheck in 2–4 months).
- Check for a non-thyroidal cause: illness, pregnancy, pituitary or hypothalamic insufficiency (suspect if T_4 or T_3 are at the lower end of the reference range), use of TSH suppressing medication, eg thyroxine, steroids.
- If TSH <0.1 , treat on an individual basis, eg with symptoms of hyperthyroidism, AF, unexplained weight loss, osteoporosis, goitre.
- Options are carbimazole or propylthiouracil—or radioiodine therapy.
- If no symptoms, recheck 6-monthly.



Fig 1. Facial appearance in hypothyroidism. Look for: pallor; coarse, brittle, diminished hair (scalp, axillary, and pubic); dull or blank expression lacking sparkle; coarse features; puffy lids. These signs are subtle: ► have a low threshold for measuring TSH (in yourself, your friends, and your patients). Reproduced from Cox & Roper, *Clinical Skills* (2004) with permission from Oxford University Press.

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) is normally secreted in response to low ionized Ca^{2+} levels, by 4 parathyroid glands situated posterior to the thyroid (p670). The glands are controlled by $-ve$ feedback via Ca^{2+} levels. PTH acts by: \uparrow Osteoclast activity releasing Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} from bones \uparrow Ca^{2+} and \downarrow PO_4^{3-} reabsorption in the kidney \bullet Active 1,25 dihydroxy-vitamin D_3 production is \uparrow . Overall effect is \uparrow Ca^{2+} and \downarrow PO_4^{3-} .

Primary hyperparathyroidism *Causes:* $\sim 80\%$ solitary adenoma, $\sim 20\%$ hyperplasia of all glands, $<0.5\%$ parathyroid cancer. *Presentation:* Often 'asymptomatic' (\blacktriangleright *not in retrospect!*⁴⁴), with \uparrow Ca^{2+} on routine tests. Signs relate to: **1** \uparrow Ca^{2+} (p690): weak, tired, depressed, thirsty, dehydrated-but-polyuric; also renal stones, abdominal pain, pancreatitis, and ulcers (duodenal:gastric $\approx 7:1$). **2** Bone resorption effects of PTH can cause pain, fractures, and osteopenia/osteoporosis. **3** BPT: \blacktriangleright so check Ca^{2+} in *everyone* with hypertension. *Association:* MEN-1 (BOX). *Tests:* Ca^{2+} \uparrow & PTH \uparrow or inappropriately normal (other causes of this: thiazides, lithium, familial hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia, tertiary hyperparathyroidism). Also PO_4^{3-} \downarrow (unless in renal failure), alk phos \uparrow from bone activity, 24h urinary Ca^{2+} \uparrow . *Imaging:* *osteitis fibrosa cystica* (due to severe resorption; rare) may show up as subperiosteal erosions, cysts, or brown tumours of phalanges \pm acro-osteolysis (fig 1) \pm 'pepper-pot' skull. *DEXA* (p697; for osteoporosis, p696). *R:* If mild: advise \uparrow fluid intake to prevent stones; avoid thiazides + high Ca^{2+} & vit D intake; see 6-monthly. Excision of the adenoma or of all 4 hyperplastic glands prevents fractures and peptic ulcers. *Indications:* high serum or urinary Ca^{2+} , bone disease, osteoporosis, renal calculi, \downarrow renal function, age ≤ 50 yrs. *Complications:* Hypoparathyroidism, recurrent laryngeal nerve damage (\therefore hoarse), symptomatic Ca^{2+} \downarrow (hungry bones syndrome; check Ca^{2+} daily for ≥ 14 d post-op). Pre-op us and MIBI scan may localize an adenoma; intra-operative PTH sampling is used to confirm removal. *Recurrence:* $\sim 8\%$ over 10 yrs.⁴⁵ **Cinacalcet** (a 'calcimimetic') \uparrow sensitivity of parathyroid cells to Ca^{2+} (\therefore \downarrow PTH secretion); monitor Ca^{2+} within 1 week of dose changes; SE: myalgia; testosterone \downarrow .⁴⁶



Fig 1. Acro-osteolysis. ⁴⁶Dr I Maddison myweb.lsbu.ac.uk

Secondary hyperparathyroidism Ca^{2+} \downarrow , PTH \uparrow (appropriately). *Causes:* \downarrow vit D intake, chronic renal failure. *R:* Correct causes. Phosphate binders; vit D; cinacalcet if PTH ≥ 85 pmol/L and parathyroidectomy tricky.⁴⁵

Tertiary hyperparathyroidism Ca^{2+} \uparrow , \uparrow PTH (inappropriately). Occurs after prolonged secondary hyperparathyroidism, causing glands to act autonomously having undergone hyperplastic or adenomatous change. This causes Ca^{2+} \uparrow from \uparrow secretion of PTH unlimited by feedback control. Seen in chronic renal failure.

Malignant hyperparathyroidism Parathyroid-related protein (PTHrP) is produced by some squamous cell lung cancers, breast and renal cell carcinomas. This mimics PTH resulting in Ca^{2+} \uparrow (PTH is \downarrow , as PTHrP is not detected in the assay).

Hypoparathyroidism

Primary hypoparathyroidism PTH secretion is \downarrow due to gland failure. *Tests:* Ca^{2+} \downarrow , PO_4^{3-} \uparrow or \leftrightarrow , alk phos \leftrightarrow . *Signs:* Those of hypocalcaemia, p692 \pm autoimmune comorbidities (BOX). *Causes:* Autoimmune; congenital (Di George synd., OHCS p642). *R:* Ca^{2+} supplements + calcitriol (or synthetic PTH /12h sc: it prevents hypercalciuria).

Secondary hypoparathyroidism Radiation, surgery (thyroidectomy, parathyroidectomy), hypomagnesaemia (magnesium is required for PTH secretion).

Pseudohypoparathyroidism Failure of target cell response to PTH. *Signs:* Short metacarpals (esp. 4th and 5th, fig 2), round face, short stature, calcified basal ganglia (fig 3), IQ \downarrow . *Tests:* Ca^{2+} \downarrow , \uparrow PTH, alk phos \leftrightarrow or \uparrow . *R:* As for 1 $^\circ$ hypoparathyroidism.

Pseudopseudohypoparathyroidism The morphological features of pseudohypoparathyroidism, but with normal biochemistry. The cause for both is genetic.

Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN types 1, 2a, and 2b)

In MEN syndromes there are functioning hormone-producing tumours in multiple organs (they are inherited as autosomal dominants).⁴⁷ They comprise: •MEN-1 and 2 •*Neurofibromatosis* (p518) •*Von Hippel-Lindau* and Peutz-Jeghers syndromes (p726 & p722) •Carney complex (spotty skin pigmentation, schwannomas, myxoma of skin, mucosa, or heart, especially atrial myxoma), and endocrine tumours: eg pituitary adenoma, adrenal hyperplasia, and testicular tumour.

MEN-1 Parathyroid hyperplasia/adenoma (~95%; most tCa^{2+}). Pancreas endocrine tumours (70%)—gastrinoma (p730) or insulinoma (p206), or, rarely, somatostatinoma (DM + steatorrhoea + gallstones/cholangitis), VIPoma (p246), or glucagonomas (\pm glucagon syndrome: migrating rash; glossitis; cheilitis, fig 2 p321; anaemia; weight↓; plasma glucagon↑; glucoset). Pituitary prolactinoma (~50%) or GH secreting tumour (acromegaly: p230); also, adrenal and carcinoid tumours are associated.

The MEN-1 gene is a tumour suppressor gene. Menin, its protein, alters transcription activation. Many are sporadic, presenting in the 3rd–5th decades.

MEN-2a Thyroid: Medullary thyroid carcinoma (seen in ~100%, p602). Adrenal: Pheochromocytoma (~50%, usually benign and bilateral). Parathyroid hyperplasia (~80%, but less than 20% have tCa^{2+}).

MEN-2b has similar features to MEN-2a plus mucosal neuromas and Marfanoid appearance (p720), but no hyperparathyroidism. Mucosal neuromas consist of 'bumps' on: lips, cheeks, tongue, glottis, eyelids, and visible corneal nerves.

The gene involved in MEN-2a and b is the *ret* proto-oncogene, a receptor tyrosine kinase. Tests for *ret* mutations are revolutionizing MEN-2 treatment by enabling a prophylactic thyroidectomy to be done before neoplasia occurs, usually before 3 yrs of age. NB: *ret* mutations rarely contribute to sporadic parathyroid tumours.

Autoimmune polyendocrine syndromes⁴⁸

Autoimmune disorders cluster into two defined syndromes:

Type 1: Autosomal recessive, rare.

Cause: Mutations of **AIRE** (Auto Immune Regulator) gene on chromosome 21.

Features: •Addison's disease •Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis •Hypoparathyroidism. Also associated with hypogonadism, pernicious anaemia, autoimmune primary hypothyroidism, chronic active hepatitis, vitiligo, alopecia.

Type 2: HLA D3 and D4 linked, common. **Cause:** Polygenic.

Features: •Addison's disease •Type 1 diabetes mellitus (in 20%).

• Autoimmune thyroid disease—hypothyroidism or Graves' disease.

Also associated with primary hypogonadism, vitiligo, alopecia, pernicious anaemia, chronic atrophic gastritis, coeliac disease, dermatitis herpetiformis.



Fig 2. Pseudohypoparathyroidism: short 4th and 5th metacarpals.

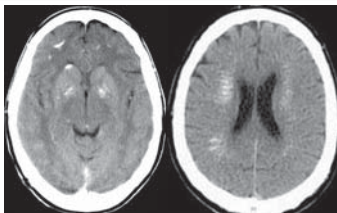


Fig 3. Cerebral calcification in pseudohypoparathyroidism: periventricular (left) and basal ganglia (right).

Fig 3 courtesy of Professor Peter Scally.

These 2 topics are heavy on detail! But don't forget *all* about hyperparathyroidism: ►it's the best cause of a high Ca^{2+} and ►surgery can *transform* a life even if Ca^{2+} only slightly raised. Also, MEN is important...►it's the most treatable form of pancreatic neoplasia.

Physiology The adrenal cortex produces steroids: **1 Glucocorticoids** (eg cortisol), which affect carbohydrate, lipid and protein metabolism, **2 Mineralocorticoids**, which control sodium and potassium balance (eg aldosterone, p682), and **3 Androgens**, sex hormones which have weak effect until peripheral conversion to testosterone and dihydrotestosterone. Corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF) from the hypothalamus stimulates ACTH secretion from the pituitary, which in turn stimulates cortisol and androgen production by the adrenal cortex. Cortisol is excreted as urinary free cortisol and various 17-oxogenic steroids.

Cushing's syndrome This is the clinical state produced by chronic glucocorticoid excess + loss of the normal feedback mechanisms of the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenal axis and loss of circadian rhythm of cortisol secretion (normally highest on waking). The chief cause is oral steroids. Endogenous causes are rare: 80% are due to \uparrow ACTH; of these a pituitary adenoma (Cushing's disease) is the commonest cause.

1 ACTH-dependent causes: (\uparrow ACTH)

- **Cushing's disease** Bilateral adrenal hyperplasia from an ACTH-secreting pituitary adenoma (usually a microadenoma, p226). ϕ : σ >1:1. Peak age: 30-50yrs. A low-dose dexamethasone test (BOX) leads to no change in plasma cortisol, but 8mg may be enough to more than halve morning cortisol (as occurs in normals).
- **Ectopic ACTH production** Especially small cell lung cancer and carcinoid tumours, p278. Specific features: pigmentation (due to \uparrow ACTH), hypokalaemic metabolic alkalosis (\uparrow cortisol leads to mineralocorticoid activity), weight loss, hyperglycaemia. Classical features of Cushing's are often absent. Dexamethasone even in high doses (8mg) fails to suppress cortisol production.
- **Rarely: Ectopic CRF production**—some thyroid (medullary) and prostate cancers.

2 ACTH-independent causes: (\downarrow ACTH due to -ve feedback)

- **Adrenal adenoma/cancer** (may cause abdo pain \pm virilization in ϕ , p222). Because the tumour is autonomous, dexamethasone in any dose won't suppress cortisol.
- **Adrenal nodular hyperplasia** (as above, no dexamethasone suppression).
- **Iatrogenic** Pharmacological doses of steroids (common).
- **Rarely: Carney complex** p215. **McCune-Albright syndrome** See OHCS p650.

Symptoms Weight \uparrow ; mood change (depression, lethargy, irritability, psychosis); proximal weakness; gonadal dysfunction (irregular menses; hirsutism; erectile dysfunction); acne; recurrent Achilles tendon rupture; occasionally virilization if ϕ .

Signs Central obesity; plethoric, moon face; buffalo neck hump; supraclavicular fat distribution; skin & muscle atrophy; bruises; purple abdominal striae (fig 1); osteoporosis; BPT; glucoset; infection-prone; poor healing. Signs of the cause (eg abdommass).

Tests Random plasma cortisols may mislead, as illness, time of day, and stress (eg venepuncture) influences results. Also, don't rely on imaging to localize the cause: non-functioning 'incidentalomas' occur in \sim 5% on adrenal CT and \sim 10% on pituitary MRI. MRI detects only \sim 70% of pituitary tumours causing Cushing's (many are too small).

Treatment Depends on the cause. •**Iatrogenic**: Stop medications if possible.

- **Cushing's disease**: Selective removal of pituitary adenoma (trans-sphenoidally). Bilateral adrenalectomy if source unlocatable, or recurrence post-op (complication: **Nelson's syndrome**: tskin pigmentation due to \uparrow ACTH from an enlarging pituitary tumour, as adrenalectomy removes -ve feedback; responds to pituitary radiation.)
- **Adrenal adenoma or carcinoma**: Adrenalectomy: 'cures' adenomas but rarely cures cancer. Radiotherapy & adrenolytic drugs (mitotane) follow if carcinoma.
- **Ectopic ACTH**: Surgery if tumour is located and hasn't spread. Metyrapone, ketoconazole and fluconazole \downarrow cortisol secretion pre-op or if awaiting effects of radiation. Intubation + mifepristone (competes with cortisol at receptors) + etomidate (blocks cortisol synthesis) may be needed, eg in severe ACTH-associated psychosis.

Prognosis Untreated Cushing's has \uparrow vascular mortality.⁴⁹ Treated, prognosis is good (but myopathy, obesity, menstrual irregularity, BPT, osteoporosis, subtle mood changes and DM often remain—so follow up carefully, and manage individually).



Investigating suspected Cushing's syndrome⁵⁰

First, confirm the diagnosis (a raised plasma cortisol), then localize the source on the basis of laboratory testing. Use imaging studies to confirm the likely source.

1st-line tests *Overnight dexamethasone suppression test* is a good outpatient test. Dexamethasone 1mg PO at midnight; do serum cortisol at 8AM. Normally, cortisol suppresses to <50nmol/L; no suppression in Cushing's syndrome. False -ve rate: <2%; false +ves: 2% normal, 13% obese and 23% of inpatients. *NB:* false +ves (*pseudo-Cushing's*) are seen in depression, obesity, alcohol excess, and inducers of liver enzymes (↑ rate of dexamethasone metabolism, eg phenytoin, phenobarbital, rifampicin, p702). *24h urinary free cortisol* (normal: <280nmol/24h) is an alternative.

2nd-line tests, if above abnormal: *48h dexamethasone suppression test*: Give dexamethasone 0.5mg/6h PO for 2d. Measure cortisol at 0 and 48h (last test at 6h after last dose). Again, in Cushing's syndrome, there is a failure to suppress cortisol. *48h high-dose dexamethasone suppression test*: (2mg/6h) may distinguish pituitary (suppression) from others causes (no/part suppression) *Midnight cortisol*: Admit (unless salivary cortisol used). Often inaccurate due to measurement issues. Normal circadian rhythm (cortisol *lowest* at midnight, *highest* early morning) is lost in Cushing's syndrome. Midnight blood, via a cannula during sleep, shows cortisol ↑ in Cushing's.

Localization tests (where is the lesion?) If the above are +ve—*Plasma ACTH*: If ACTH is undetectable, an adrenal tumour is likely → CT adrenal glands. If no mass, proceed to *adrenal vein sampling* or *adrenal scintigraphy* (radiolabelled cholesterol derivative). If ACTH is detectable, distinguish a pituitary cause from ectopic ACTH production by high dose suppression test or *corticotropin releasing hormone test*: 100µg ovine or human CRH IV. Measure cortisol at 120min. Cortisol rises with pituitary disease but not with ectopic ACTH production. CRH is corticotropin-releasing hormone.

If tests indicate that cortisol responds to manipulation, Cushing's disease is likely. Image the pituitary (MRI) and consider *bilateral inferior petrosal sinus blood sampling*.

If tests indicate that cortisol does not respond to manipulation, hunt for the source of ectopic ACTH—eg IV contrast CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis ± MRI of neck, thorax and abdomen, eg for small ACTH secreting carcinoid tumours.



Fig 1. Hypercortisolism weakens skin; even normal stretching (or the pressure of obesity, as here) can make its elastin break—and on healing we see these depressed purple scars (striae), like flecks of puckered crêpe paper. Cortisone or rapid growth contributes to striae in other contexts: pregnancy; adolescence (eg in the 'love-handle' area); weight lifting; sudden-onset obesity, or from strong steroid creams. Striae mature into silvery crescents looking like the underside of willow leaves. Unsightly immature striae may be improved by YAG lasers.

▶▶ Anyone on exogenous steroids for long enough to suppress the pituitary-adrenal axis, or who has overwhelming sepsis, or has metastatic cancer may suddenly develop adrenal insufficiency with deadly hypovolaemic shock. ▶▶ See p846.

Primary adrenocortical insufficiency (Addison's disease) is rare (~0.8/100,000), but can be fatal. Destruction of the adrenal cortex leads to glucocorticoid (cortisol) and mineralocorticoid (aldosterone) deficiency (see fig 1). Signs are capricious: it is '*the unforgiving master of non-specificity and disguise*'.⁵¹ You may diagnose a viral infection or anorexia nervosa in error (K^+ is ↓ in the latter but ↑ in Addison's).

Cause 80% are due to autoimmunity in the UK. **Other causes:** TB (commonest cause worldwide), adrenal metastases (eg from lung, breast, renal cancer), lymphoma, opportunistic infections in HIV (eg CMV, *Mycobacterium avium*, p411); adrenal haemorrhage (▶▶ Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome p728; antiphospholipid syndrome; SLE), congenital (late-onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia).

Symptoms Often diagnosed late: lean, tanned, tired, tearful ± weakness, anorexia, dizzy, faints, flu-like myalgias/artralgias. **Mood:** depression, psychosis, low self-esteem.¹² **GI:** nausea/vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea/constipation. *Think of Addison's in all with unexplained abdominal pain or vomiting.* Pigmented palmar creases & buccal mucosa (ACTH; cross-reacts with melanin receptors). Postural hypotension. Vitiligo. ▶▶ **Signs of critical deterioration** (p846): Shock (↓BP, tachycardia), T^+ , coma.

Tests Na^+ ↓ & K^+ ↑ (due to ↓mineralocorticoid), glucose ↓ (due to ↓cortisol). Also: uraemia, Ca^{2+} ↑, eosinophilia, anaemia. **Δ:** **Short ACTH stimulation test** (Synacthen® test): Do plasma cortisol before and ½h after tetracosactide (Synacthen®) 250µg IM. Addison's is excluded if 30min cortisol >550nmol/L. Steroid drugs may interfere with assays: ask lab. **NB:** in pregnancy and contraceptive pill, cortisol levels may be reassuring but falsely ↑, due to cortisol-binding globulin. **Also •ACTH:** In Addison's, 9AM ACTH is ↑ (>300ng/L: inappropriately high). It is low in secondary causes. **•21-Hydroxylase adrenal autoantibodies:** +ve in autoimmune disease in >80% **•Plasma renin & aldosterone:** To assess mineralocorticoid status. **AXR/CXR:** Any past TB, eg upper zone fibrosis or adrenal calcification? If no autoantibodies, consider further tests (eg adrenal CT) for TB, histoplasma, or metastatic disease.

Treatment Replace steroids: ~15–25mg hydrocortisone daily, in 2–3 doses, eg 10mg on waking, 5mg lunchtime. Avoid giving late (may cause insomnia). Mineralocorticoids to correct postural hypotension, Na^+ ↓, K^+ ↑: fludrocortisone PO from 50–200µg daily. Adjust both on clinical grounds. If there is a poor response, suspect an associated autoimmune disease¹ (check thyroid, do coeliac serology: p280).

Steroid use: Warn against abruptly stopping steroids. Emphasize that prescribing doctors/dentists/surgeons *must* know of steroid use: give *steroid card*, advise wearing a bracelet declaring steroid use. Add 5–10mg hydrocortisone to daily intake before strenuous activity/exercise. Double steroids in febrile illness, injury or stress. Give out syringes and in-date IM hydrocortisone, and show how to inject 100mg IM if vomiting prevents oral intake (seek medical help; admit for IV fluids if dehydrated).

Follow-up Yearly (BP, U&E); watch for autoimmune diseases (pernicious anaemia^{et al}).²

Prognosis (treated) Adrenal crises and infections do cause excess deaths: mean age at death for men is ~65yrs (11yrs < estimated life expectancy; women lose ~3yrs).

Secondary adrenal insufficiency The commonest cause is iatrogenic, due to long-term steroid therapy leading to suppression of the pituitary-adrenal axis. This only becomes apparent on withdrawal of the steroids. Other causes are rare and include hypothalamic-pituitary disease leading to ↓ACTH production. Mineralocorticoid production remains intact, and there is no hyperpigmentation as ↓ACTH.

1 Adrenal destruction also causes depletion of adrenal androgens. These may have an effect on quality of life. However, studies on replacement of dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), a precursor of sex hormone synthesis, in adrenal failure have been inconclusive.

2 Autoimmune polyglandular syndromes types 1–4: **1** Monogenic syndrome (AIRE gene on chromosome 21); signs: candidiasis, hypoparathyroidism+Addison's. **2** (Schmidt syndrome) adrenal insufficiency+ autoimmune thyroid disease ± DM ± pleuritis/pericarditis **3** Autoimmune thyroid disease + other autoimmune conditions but *not* Addison's. **4** Autoimmune combinations not included in 1–3 above.

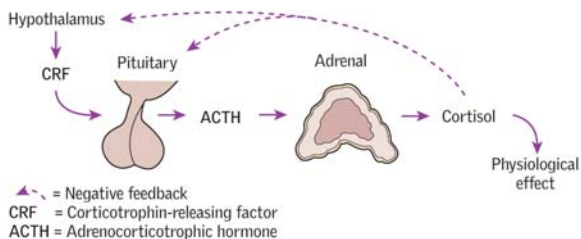


Fig 1. Pathways involved in adrenal function.



Excerpt from the notes of Miss E.L.R., 92 days before her death from undiagnosed Addison's disease. From the Coroner's Court...

"Typical day—wakes up at 11.30, still feels tired, then will have some breakfast and usually fall asleep on the couch. The most energy req. activity in last 1 month is—cooking herself a pasta meal. Then, totally exhausted will sleep more in pm, then eat some dinner. Goes to bed at 11pm—latest. Not able to concentrate...Used to weigh 45kg. Now weighs 42kg."⁵²

Placed on a page about Addison's disease, we might think there are sufficient clues to raise the suspicion of Addison's (even though her electrolytes were not particularly awry, and her pigmentation was barely perceptible). But change the context to our last busy clinic. We are a little distracted. The memory of Addison's is fading. Who among us will hear the alarm bell ring?



Primary hyperaldosteronism is excess production of aldosterone, independent of the renin-angiotensin system, causing ↑sodium and water retention, and ↓renin release. Consider if the following features: hypertension, hypokalaemia or alkalosis in someone not on diuretics. Sodium tends to be mildly raised or normal.

Symptoms: Often asymptomatic or signs of hypokalaemia (p688): weakness (even quadriparesis), cramps, paraesthesiae, polyuria, polydipsia. BP↑ but not always.

Causes: ~⅓ are due to a solitary aldosterone-producing adenoma¹ (**Conn's syndrome**). ~⅔ are due to bilateral adrenocortical hyperplasia. Rare causes: adrenal carcinoma or glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism (GRA). In GRA, the ACTH regulatory element of the 11β-hydroxylase gene fuses to the aldosterone synthase gene, increasing aldosterone production, and bringing it under the control of ACTH.

Tests: U&E, renin and aldosterone (see BOX, ideally not on diuretics, hypotensives, steroids, K⁺, or laxatives for 4wks). Do not rely on a low K⁺, as >20% are normokalaemic. For GRA (suspect if there is a family history of early hypertension), genetic testing is available.

Treatment: •**Conn's:** Laparoscopic adrenalectomy. Spironolactone (25–100mg/24h PO) for 4wks pre-op controls BP and K⁺. •**Hyperplasia:** Treated medically: spironolactone, amiloride, or eplerenone (a newer selective aldosterone receptor antagonist, which doesn't cause gynaecomastia). •**GRA:** dexamethasone 1mg/24h PO for 4wks, normalizes biochemistry but not always BP. If BP is still ↑, use spironolactone as an alternative. •**Adrenal carcinoma:** Surgery ± post-operative adrenalectomy with mitotane—prognosis is poor.

Secondary hyperaldosteronism Due to a high renin from ↓renal perfusion, eg in renal artery stenosis, accelerated hypertension, diuretics, CCF or hepatic failure.

Bartter's syndrome This is a major cause of congenital (autosomal recessive) salt wasting—via a sodium and chloride leak in the loop of Henle via a defective channel. Presents in childhood with failure to thrive, polyuria and polydipsia. BP is *normal*. Sodium loss leads to volume depletion, causing ↑renin and aldosterone production, leading to hypokalaemia and metabolic alkalosis, ↑urinary K⁺ and Cl⁻. **Treatment:** K⁺ replacement, NSAIDs (to inhibit prostaglandins), and ACE-i.

Phaeochromocytoma

Rare catecholamine-producing tumours. They arise from sympathetic paraganglia cells (=phaeochromocytomas), which are collections of chromaffin cells. They are usually found within the adrenal medulla. Extra-adrenal tumours (paragangliomas) are rarer, and often found by the aortic bifurcation (the organs of Zuckerkandl). Phaeochromocytomas *roughly* follow the 10% rule: 10% are malignant, 10% are extra-adrenal, 10% are bilateral, and 10% are familial. They are a dangerous but treatable cause of hypertension (in <0.1%). **Associations:** ~90% are sporadic; 10% are part of hereditary cancer syndromes (p215), eg thyroid, MEN-2a and 2b, neurofibromatosis, von Hippel-Lindau syndrome (succinate dehydrogenase subunit mutations). **Classic triad:** Episodic headache, sweating, and tachycardia (± BP↑, ↓ or ↔, BOX).

Tests WCCt •Plasma + 3 × 24h urines for free metadrenaline and normetadrenaline (better than catecholamines and vanillylmandelic acid⁸³) ± clonidine suppression test if borderline. •**Localization:** Abdominal CT/MRI, or meta-iodobenzylguanidine (MIBG—chromaffin-seeking isotope) scan (can find extra-adrenal tumours, p752).

Treatment **Surgery**, α-blockade pre-op: phenoxybenzamine (α-blocker) is used before β-blocker to avoid crisis from unopposed α-adrenergic stimulation, β-block too if heart disease or tachycardic. **Consult the anaesthetist.** **Post-op:** Do 24h urine metadrenalines 2wks post-op, monitor BP (risk of BP↓). ▶▶**Emergency Rx:** p847. If malignant, chemotherapy or therapeutic radiolabelled MIBG may be used. **Follow-up:** Lifelong: malignant recurrence may present late, genetic screening.

¹ Tumours from the zona glomerulosa, zona fasciculata, or zona reticularis associate with syndromes of ↑mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, or androgens respectively, usually; remember 'GFR=miner GA'.

Hypertension: a common context for hyperaldosteronism tests

Think of Conn's in these contexts: •Hypertension associated with hypokalaemia •Refractory hypertension, eg despite ≥ 3 antihypertensive drugs •Hypertension occurring before 40yrs of age (especially in women).

The approach to investigation remains controversial, but the simplest is to look for a suppressed renin and \uparrow aldosterone (may be normal if there is severe hypokalaemia). CT or MRI of the adrenals is done to localize the cause. This should be done after hyperaldosteronism is proven, due to the high number of adrenal incidentalomas. If imaging shows a unilateral adenoma, **adrenal vein sampling** may be done (venous blood is sampled from both adrenals). If one side reveals increased aldosterone production compared with the other (>3 -fold difference), an adenoma is likely, and surgical excision is indicated. If no nodules or bilateral nodules are seen think about adrenal hyperplasia or GRA.

►NB: renal artery stenosis is a more common cause of refractory \uparrow BP and \downarrow K⁺ (p308).

Features of pheochromocytoma (often episodic and often vague)

Try to diagnose before death: suspect if BP hard-to-control, accelerating or episodic.

- **Heart:** Pulse \uparrow ; palpitations/VT; dyspnoea; faints; angina; MI/LVF; cardiomyopathy.¹
- **CNS:** Headache; visual disorder; dizziness; tremor; numbness; fits; encephalopathy; Horner's syndrome (paraganglioma); subarachnoid/CNS haemorrhage.
- **Psychological:** Anxiety; panic; hyperactivity; confusion; episodic psychosis.
- **Gut:** \uparrow SV; abdominal pain over tumour site; mass; mesenteric vasoconstriction.
- **Others:** Sweats/flushes; heat intolerance; pallor; $T^{\circ}\uparrow$; backache; haemoptysis.

Symptoms may be precipitated by straining, exercise, stress, abdominal pressure, surgery, or by agents such as β -blockers, IV contrast agents, or the tricyclics. The site of the tumour may determine precipitants, eg if pelvic, precipitants include sexual intercourse, parturition, defecation, and micturition. Adrenergic crises may last minutes to days. Suddenly patients feel "as if about to die"—and then get better, or go on to develop a stroke or cardiogenic shock. On examination, there may be no signs, or hypertension \pm signs of heart failure/cardiomyopathy (\pm paradoxical shock, similar to Takotsubo's ¹), episodic thyroid swelling, glycosuria during attacks, or terminal haematuria from a bladder pheochromocytoma.

¹ **Takotsubo cardiomyopathy** (=stress- or catecholamine-induced cardiomyopathy/broken heart syndrome) may cause sudden chest pain mimicking MI, with \uparrow ST segments, and its signature apical ballooning on echo (also \downarrow ejection fraction) occurring during catecholamine surges. It is a cause of MI in the presence of normal arteries. The stress may be medical (SAH, p482) or psychological.



Hirsutism is common (10% of women) and usually benign. It implies hair growth in women, in the male pattern. Causes are familial, idiopathic or are due to ↑ androgen secretion by the *ovary* (eg polycystic ovarian syndrome, ovarian cancer, *OHCS* p281), the *adrenal gland* (eg late-onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia, *OHCS* p251, Cushing's syndrome, adrenal cancer), or *drugs* (eg steroids). **Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS)** causes secondary oligo- or amenorrhoea, infertility, obesity, acne and hirsutism (*OHCS* p252). Ultrasound: bilateral polycystic ovaries. Blood tests: ↑testosterone (if ≥ 6 nmol/L, look for an androgen-producing adrenal or ovarian tumour), ↓sex-hormone binding globulin, ↑LH:FSH ratio (not consistent), TSH, lipids. Metformin may restore cycles and fertility, and helps insulin resistance (consider OGTT, p198). Address any feelings of lack of conformity to society's perceived norms of feminine beauty. A multifaceted approach helps distress and improves sexual self-worth.

Management: What else is going on in her life that makes it worse *now*? Be supportive!

- Local measures: Shaving; laser photoepilation; wax; creams, eg *eflornithine*, or electrolysis (expensive/time-consuming, but effective); bleach (1:10 hydrogen peroxide).
- Oestrogens help, so consider the combined Pill (*OHCS* p302)—Yasmin® is one choice as its progestogen, **drospirenone**, is an antimineralocorticoid. If no real help after 6–8 months, try co-cyprindiol (its anti-androgen is **cypoterone acetate**; it's not licensed as a simple contraceptive. SE: depression)⁵⁴
- Metformin and spironolactone are sometimes tried.⁵⁵ Healthy eating is important.
- Clomifene is used for infertility (a fertility expert should prescribe).

Virilism Onset of amenorrhoea, clitoromegaly, deep voice, temporal hair recession + hirsutism. Look for an androgen-secreting adrenal or ovarian tumour.

Gynaecomastia (ie abnormal amount of breast tissue in men; may occur in normal puberty). Oestrogen/androgen ratio ↑ (vs galactorrhoea in which prolactin is ↑). **Causes:** Hypogonadism (see BOX), liver cirrhosis (oestrogen ↑), hyperthyroidism, tumours (oestrogen-producing, eg testicular, adrenal; HCG-producing, eg testicular, bronchial); drugs: oestrogens, spironolactone, digoxin, testosterone, marijuana; if stopping is impossible, consider testosterone if hypogonadism ± anti-oestrogen (tamoxifen).

Erectile dysfunction (ED=impotence) Erections result from nitric oxide (NO) induced cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) build-up. cGMP-dependent protein kinase activates large-conductance, Ca^{2+} -activated K^+ channels so hyperpolarizing and relaxing vascular and trabecular smooth muscle cells, allowing engorgement.

ED is common after 50yrs, and often multifactorial. A psychological facet is common (esp. if ED occurs only in some situations, if onset coincides with stress, and if early morning 'incidental' erections still occur: these also persist in early organic disease).

Organic causes: The big 3: smoking, alcohol and diabetes (∴ reduce NO + autonomic neuropathy). Also: **endocrine:** hypogonadism, hyperthyroidism, ↑prolactin; **neurological:** cord lesions, MS, autonomic neuropathy; **pelvic surgery,** eg bladder-neck, prostate; **radiotherapy, atheroma; renal or hepatic failure; prostatic hyperplasia; penile anomalies,** eg post-priapism, or Peyronie's (p722); **drugs:** digoxin, β-blockers, diuretics, antipsychotics, antidepressants, oestrogens, finasteride, narcotics.

Workup: After a full sexual and psychological history do: U&E, LFT, glucose, TFT, LH, FSH, lipids, testosterone, prolactin ± Doppler. Is penile arterial pressure enough for inflow? Is penile sensation OK (if not, ?CNS problem). Is the veno-occlusive mechanism OK?

Rx: •Treat causes •Counselling •Oral phosphodiesterase (PDE5) inhibitors ↑cGMP. Erection isn't automatic (depends on erotic stimuli). Sildenafil 25–100mg ½–1h pre-sex (food and alcohol upset absorption). **SE:** headache (16%); flushing (10%); dyspepsia (7%); stuffy nose (4%); transient blue-green tingeing of vision (inhibition of retinal PDE6). **cr:** See BOX. Tadalafil (long *t*_½) 10–20mg ½–36h pre-sex. Don't use >once daily. **SE:** headache, dyspepsia, myalgia; ?no visual SEs. **Vardenafil** (5–20mg). •Vacuum aids (ideal for penile rehabilitation after radical prostatectomy), intracavernosal injections, transurethral pellets, and prostheses (inflatable or malleable; partners may receive unnatural sensations). •Corpus cavernosum tissue engineering (eg on acellular collagen scaffolds) is in its infancy.

Contraindications^{ci}/cautions to Viagra[®] and other oral ED agents

- Concurrent use of nitrates^{ci}
- BP↑↑ or systolic ≤ 90 mmHg^{ci} arrhythmia
- Degenerative retinal disorders,^{ci} eg retinitis pigmentosa (for sildenafil)
- Unstable angina^{ci} Stroke <6mths ago^{ci}
- Myocardial infarction <90d ago^{ci}
- Bleeding; peptic ulcer (sildenafil)
- Marked renal or hepatic impairment

Other cautions ▶ Angina (especially if during intercourse).

- Peyronie's disease or cavernosal fibrosis.
- Risk of priapism (sickle-cell anaemia, myeloma, leukaemia).
- Concurrent complex antihypertensive regimens.
- Dyspnoea on minimal effort (sexual activity may be unsupportable).

Use in coronary artery disease has been a question, but is probably OK.⁵⁶

Interactions: Nitrites^{ci}; cytochrome p450 (CYP3A) inducers: macrolides, protease inhibitors, theophyllines, azole antifungals, rifampicin, phenytoin, carbamazepine, phenobarbital, grapefruit juice (↓bioavailability). Caution if α -blocker use; avoid vardenafil with type 1A (eg quinidine; procainamide) and type 3 anti-arrhythmics (sotalol; amiodarone)—as well as nitrates as above.

Male hypogonadism

Hypogonadism is failure of testes to produce testosterone, sperm, or both. Features: small testes, ↓libido, erectile dysfunction, loss of pubic hair, ↓muscle bulk, ↑fat, gynaecomastia, osteoporosis, mood↓. If prepubertal: ↓virilization; incomplete puberty; eunuchoid body; reduced secondary sex characteristics. Causes include:

Primary hypogonadism is due to testicular failure, eg from •Local trauma, torsion, chemotherapy/irradiation •Post-orchitis, eg mumps, HIV, brucellosis, leprosy •Renal failure, liver cirrhosis or alcohol excess (toxic to Leydig cells). •Chromosomal abnormalities, eg Klinefelter's syndrome (47XXY)—delayed sexual development, small testes and gynaecomastia. Anorchia is rare.

Secondary hypogonadism ↓Gonadotropins (LH & FSH), eg from •Hypopituitarism •Prolactinoma •Kallman's syndrome—isolated gonadotropin releasing hormone deficiency, often with anosmia and colour blindness •Systemic illness (eg COPD; HIV; DM) •Laurence-Moon-Biedl and Prader-Willi syndromes (OHCS p648 & p652) •Age.

R: (p224) If total testosterone ≤ 8 nmol/L, on 2 mornings (or <15 if LH↑ too) and muscle bulk↓, testosterone may help, eg 1% dermal gel (Testogel[®]). Heart,⁵⁷ bladder and sexual function may perk up in age-related hypogonadism. Beware medicalizing ageing!

CI: Ca²⁺↑; nephrosis; polycythaemia; prostate, breast^c or liver ca. Monitor PSA.

1 Success for reversing ED post-op is only 43% vs 85% in those with neurological conditions.

2 Criteria include marked disruption to relationships or mood, judged by a certified prescriber.

Hypopituitarism entails ↓secretion of anterior pituitary hormones (figs 1 & 2). They are affected in this order: growth hormone (GH), gonadotropins: follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH), prolactin (PRL), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). Panhypopituitarism is deficiency of all anterior hormones, usually caused by irradiation, surgery, or pituitary tumour.

Causes are at 3 levels: **1 Hypothalamus:** Kallman's syndrome (p223), tumour, inflammation, infection (meningitis, TB), ischaemia. **2 Pituitary stalk:** Trauma, surgery, mass lesion (craniopharyngioma, p226), meningioma, carotid artery aneurysm. **3 Pituitary:** Tumour, irradiation, inflammation, autoimmunity,¹ infiltration (haemochromatosis, amyloid, metastases), ischaemia (pituitary apoplexy, p226; DIC;² Sheehan's syndrome³).

Features are due to:

1 Hormone lack: •**GH lack:** Central obesity, atherosclerosis, dry wrinkly skin, strength↓, balance↓, wellbeing↓, exercise ability↓, cardiac output↓, osteoporosis, glucose↓. •**Gonadotropin (FSH; LH) lack:** ♀: Few, scant, or no menses (oligomenorrhoea or amenorrhoea), fertility↓, libido↓, osteoporosis, breast atrophy, dyspareunia. ♂: Erectile dysfunction, libido↓, muscle bulk↓, hypogonadism (↓hair, all over; small testes; ejaculate volume↓; spermatogenesis↓). •**Thyroid lack:** As for hypothyroidism (p212). •**Corticotropin lack:** As for adrenal insufficiency (p218). NB: no tskin pigmentation as ↓ACTH. •**Prolactin lack:** Rare: absent lactation.

2 Causes: eg pituitary tumour (p226), causing mass effect, or hormone secretion with ↓secretion of other hormones—eg prolactinoma, acromegaly, rarely Cushing's.

Tests (The triple stimulation test is now rarely done.)

•**Basal tests:** LH and FSH (↓ or ↔), testosterone or oestradiol (↓); TSH (↓ or ↔), T₄ (↓); prolactin (may be ↑, from loss of hypothalamic dopamine that normally inhibits its release), insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1; ↓—used as a measure of GH axis, p230), cortisol (↓). Also do u&E (Na⁺↓ from dilution), Hb↓ (normochromic, normocytic).

•**Dynamic tests:** **1** Short Synacthen® test: (p218) to assess the adrenal axis.

2 Insulin tolerance test (ITT): Done in specialist centres to assess the adrenal and GH axes. CI: epilepsy, heart disease, adrenal failure. Consult lab first. It involves IV insulin to induce hypoglycaemia, causing stress to ↑cortisol and GH secretion. It is done in the morning (water only taken from 22:00h the night before). Have 50% glucose and hydrocortisone to hand and IV access. Glucose must fall below 2.2mmol/L and the patient should become symptomatic when cortisol and GH are taken. Normal: GH >20mu/L, and peak cortisol >550nmol/L.

3 Arginine + growth hormone releasing hormone test.

4 Glucagon stimulation test is alternative when ITT is contraindicated.

•**Investigate cause:** MRI scan to look for a hypothalamic or pituitary lesion.

Treatment involves hormone replacement and treatment of underlying cause.

•**Hydrocortisone** for 2° adrenal failure (p218) ►before other hormones are given.

•Thyroxine if hypothyroid (p212, but TSH is useless for monitoring).

•Hypogonadism (for symptoms and to prevent osteoporosis). ♂: Options include **testosterone enanthate** 250mg IM every 3 weeks, daily topical gels or buccal mucoadhesive tablets. Patches are also used.⁴ ♀: (premenopausal). **Oestrogen:** Transdermal oestradiol patches, or contraceptive pill (exceeds replacement needs) ± **testosterone** or **dehydroepiandrosterone** (DHEA, in hypoandrogenic women; a small amount may improve wellbeing and sexual function, and help bone mineral density and lean body mass).

•**Gonadotropin** therapy is needed to induce fertility in both men and women.

•Growth hormone (BOX). Refer to an endocrinologist for insulin tolerance testing.

1 Autoimmune hypophysitis (=inflamed pituitary) mimics pituitary adenoma. It may be triggered by pregnancy or immunotherapy blocking CTLA-4. No pituitary auto-antigen is yet used diagnostically.

2 Snake bite is a common cause in India (eg when associated with acute renal failure).

3 Sheehan's syndrome is pituitary necrosis after postpartum haemorrhage.

4 Testogel® (50mg testosterone in 5g of gel) is applied in a thin film. 100mg/d may be needed (approach by 25mg increments). Use on clean, dry, healthy skin (shoulders, arms, abdomen), as soon as sachet is opened. Allow to dry for 5min. Wash hands after use, avoid shower/bath for at least 6h. Avoid skin contact with gel sites to prevent testosterone transfer to others (esp pregnant women and children).



Fig 1. Neuroendocrinology: emotions \leftrightarrow thoughts \leftrightarrow actions. As Michelangelo foretold (in his *Creation of Adam*) 'all gods and demons that have ever existed are within us as possibilities, desires, and ways of escape'. Within the dark red vault of our skull we see human and god-like forms reaching out, as thoughts escape into actions—with legs extending into our brainstem (B) and a fist is pushing from our hypothalamus into the pituitary stalk (P). ⁵⁸ Frank Lynn Meshberger. Above the pituitary we have thoughts, ideas, impulses, and neurotransmitters. Below we have hormones. Between is the realm of neuroendocrinology—the neurosecretory cells which turn emotions into the releasing factors for the pituitary hormones (fig 2).

Image courtesy of Gary Bevans.

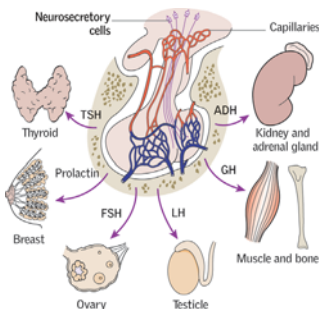


Fig 2. Neuroregulation and integration of endocrine axes makes us who we are—and who we are and what we do feeds back into our hormonal milieu. Multifactorial disruptions within the growth hormone (GH), luteinizing hormone (LH)—testosterone, adrenocorticotropin (ACTH)—cortisol and insulin axes play a major role in healthy maturation and ageing. But it is a truism to say that good health depends on the right balance and feedback loops. The myth of the pituitary as the 'conductor of the orchestra' is exploded by the placenta—that maverick organ with its heavy metal drowning out anything that the pituitary can do (p231). ⁵⁹

Using somatotropin (GH) in those >25yrs old

(see nice.org.uk)

Somatotropin addresses problems of \uparrow fat mass, \downarrow bone mass, \downarrow lean body mass (muscle bulk), \downarrow exercise capacity and problems with heat intolerance. NB: increased abdominal fat results in reduced insulin sensitivity and dyslipidaemia.

Somatotropin uses DNA technology to mimic human GH. It can be used in known GH deficiency, eg peak GH response of $<9\text{mu/L}$ (3ng/mL) during ITT—if there is impaired quality of life and treatment for other pituitary deficiencies is under way.

Self-injection 0.15–0.3mg/d (max 1mg/d); needs lessen with age. Dose titration (1st 3 months of therapy) is done by an endocrinologist. SE: oedema, carpal tunnel syndrome, myalgia, CCF, BPT, ICPT (rare). IGF-1 levels rise with GH replacement. \uparrow IGF-1 is linked with \uparrow risk of neoplasia. CI: malignancy, pregnancy, renal transplant.

Somatotropin can be stopped after 9 months if quality of life scores do not improve by 7 points or more. **Using GH in children:** See *OHCS* p180.

Pituitary tumours (almost always benign adenomas) account for 10% of intracranial tumours (see [figs 1 & 2](#)). They may be divided by size: a microadenoma is a tumour <1cm across, and a macroadenoma is >1cm. There are 3 histological types:

- 1 **Chromophobe**—70%. Many are non-secretory,¹ some cause hypopituitarism. Half produce prolactin (PRL); a few produce ACTH or GH. Local pressure effect in 30%.
- 2 **Acidophil**—15%. Secrete GH or PRL. Local pressure effect in 10%.
- 3 **Basophil**—15%. Secrete ACTH. Local pressure effect rare.

Symptoms are caused by pressure, hormones (eg galactorrhoea), or hypopituitarism (p224). FSH-secreting tumours can cause macro-orchidism in men, but are rare.

Features of local pressure Headache, visual field defects (bilateral temporal hemianopia, due to compression of the optic chiasm), palsy of cranial nerves III, IV, VI (pressure or invasion of the cavernous sinus; [fig 3](#)). Also, diabetes insipidus (DI) (p232; more likely from hypothalamic disease); disturbance of hypothalamic centres of T°, sleep, and appetite; erosion through floor of sella leading to CSF rhinorrhoea.

Tests MRI defines intra- and supra-sellar extension; accurate assessment of visual fields; screening tests: PRL, IGF-1 (p230), ACTH, cortisol, TFTs, LH/FSH, testosterone in ♂, short Synacthen® test. Glucose tolerance test if acromegaly suspected (p230). If Cushing's suspected, see p217. Water deprivation test if DI is suspected (p232).

Treatment Start hormone replacement as needed (p224). Ensure steroids are given before levothyroxine, as thyroxine may precipitate an adrenal crisis. For Cushing's disease see p217, prolactinoma p228, acromegaly p230.

- **Surgery** ([fig 4](#)): Most pituitary surgery is trans-sphenoidal, but if there is supra-sellar extension, a trans-frontal approach may be used. For prolactinoma, 1st-line treatment is medical with a dopamine agonist, p228. *Pre-op*: Ensure hydrocortisone 100mg IV/IM. Subsequent cortisol replacement and reassessment varies with local protocols: get advice. *Post-op*: Retest pituitary function (p224) to assess replacement needs. Repeating dynamic tests for adrenal function ≥6 weeks post-op.
- **Radiotherapy**: (eg stereotactic) Good for residual or recurrent adenomas (good rates of tumour control and normalization of excess hormone secretion).⁶⁰

Post-op Recurrence may occur late after surgery, so life-long follow-up is required. Fertility should be discussed: this may be reduced post-op due to ↓ gonadotropins.

Pituitary apoplexy Rapid pituitary enlargement from a bleed into a tumour may cause mass effects, cardiovascular collapse due to acute hypopituitarism, and death. Suspect if acute onset of headache, meningism, ↑GCS, ophthalmoplegia/visual field defect, especially if there is a known tumour (may present like subarachnoid haemorrhage). **Rx**: Urgent steroids (hydrocortisone 100mg IV) and meticulous fluid balance ± cabergoline (dopamine agonist, if prolactinoma) ± surgery; find the cause, eg a predisposition to thrombosis, from antiphospholipid syndrome.

Craniopharyngioma Not strictly a pituitary tumour: it originates from Rathke's pouch so is situated between the pituitary and 3rd ventricle floor. They are rare, but are the commonest childhood intracranial tumour. Over 50% present in childhood with growth failure; adults may present with amenorrhoea, ↓libido, hypothalamic symptoms (eg diabetes insipidus, hyperphagia, sleep disturbance) or tumour mass effect. **Tests**: CT/MRI (calcification in 50%, may also be seen on skull x-ray). **Treatment**: Surgery ± post-op radiation; test pituitary function post-op.

Classification by hormone secreted (may be revealed by immunohistology)			
PRL only (→prolactinoma)	35%	ACTH (→Cushing's disease)	7%
GH only (→acromegaly)	20%	LH/FSH/TSH	≥1% ^{2,61}
PRL and GH	7%	No obvious hormone	30%

1 If <1cm, usually 'incidentaloma'; most non-functioning macroadenomas are revealed by mass effect and/or hypopituitarism. Here, recurrence after surgery is common, so follow carefully with MRIs.

2 Sensitive methods of TSH measurement have improved recognition of TSH-secreting tumours. These are now more frequently found at microadenoma stage, medially located, and *without* associated hormone hypersecretion. In these tumours, somatostatin analogues (p230) are very helpful.

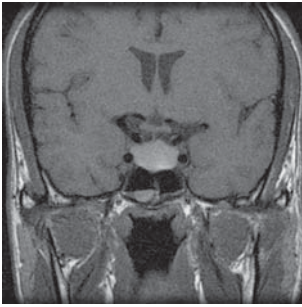


Fig 1. Sagittal T1 weighted MRI of the brain (no gadolinium contrast) showing a lesion in the pituitary fossa, most likely a haemorrhagic pituitary adenoma. Differential diagnosis includes a Rathke's cleft cyst.

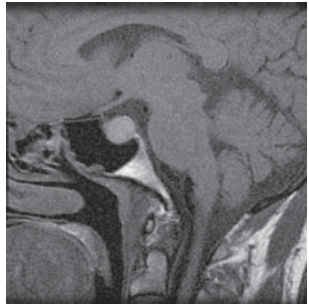


Fig 2. Coronal T1 weighted MRI of the brain (no gadolinium contrast) showing a lesion in the pituitary fossa (see fig 1).

Figs 1 & 2 courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

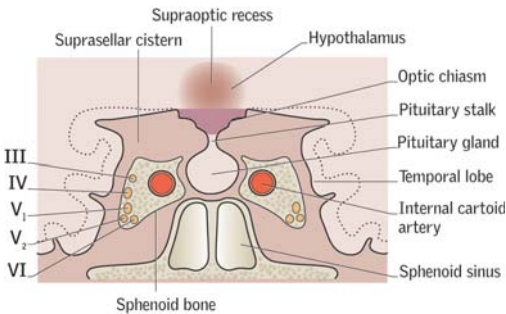


Fig 3. The pituitary gland's relationships to cranial nerves III, IV, V, and VI.

Reproduced from Turner & Wass, *Oxford Handbook of Endocrinology & Diabetes* (2009), with permission from Oxford University Press.

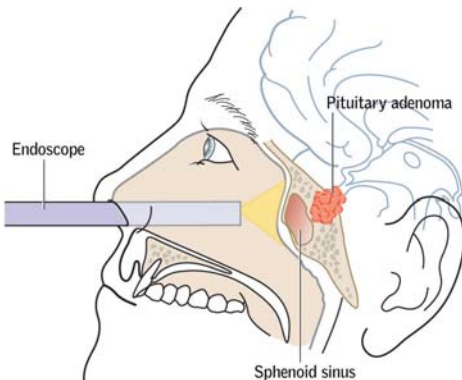


Fig 4. Endoscopic surgery is now possible for pituitary surgery.

This is the commonest hormonal disturbance of the pituitary. It presents earlier in women (menstrual disturbance) but later in men (eg with erectile dysfunction and or mass effects). Prolactin stimulates lactation.^{et al 12} Raised levels lead to hypogonadism, infertility and osteoporosis, by inhibiting secretion of gonadotropin releasing hormone (hence ↓LH/FSH and ↓testosterone or oestrogen).

Causes of raised plasma prolactin (PRL; >390mu/L) PRL is secreted from the anterior pituitary and release is inhibited by dopamine produced in the hypothalamus. Hyperprolactinaemia may result from **1** Excess production from the pituitary, eg prolactinoma. **2** Disinhibition, by compression of the pituitary stalk, reducing local dopamine levels or **3** Use of a dopamine antagonist. A PRL of 1000–5000mu/L may result from any, but >5000 is likely to be due to a prolactinoma, with macroadenomas (>10mm) having the highest levels, eg 10,000–100,000.

- **Physiological:** Pregnancy; breastfeeding; stress. (Acute rises occur post-orgasm.)¹
- **Drugs (most common cause):** Metoclopramide; haloperidol; α-methyl dopa; oestrogens; ecstasy/MDMA;² antipsychotics (a reason for 'non-compliance': sustained hyperprolactinaemia may cause ↓libido, anorgasmia, and erectile dysfunction).
- **Diseases:** *Prolactinoma:* micro- or macroadenoma; *Stalk damage:* pituitary adenomas, surgery, trauma; *Hypothalamic disease:* craniopharyngioma, other tumours; *Other:* hypothyroidism (due to ↑TRH), chronic renal failure (↓excretion).

Symptoms ♀: Amenorrhoea or oligomenorrhoea; infertility; galactorrhoea. Also: libido↓, weight↓, dry vagina. ♂: Erectile dysfunction, ↓facial hair, galactorrhoea. May present late with osteoporosis or local pressure effects from the tumour (p226).

Tests Basal PRL: non-stressful venepuncture between 09.00 and 16.00h. Do a pregnancy test, TFT, U&E. MRI pituitary if other causes are ruled out.

Management Refer to a specialist endocrinology clinic. Dopamine agonists (bromocriptine or cabergoline) are 1st-line.

Microprolactinomas: A tumour <10mm on MRI (~25% of us have asymptomatic microprolactinomas). **Bromocriptine**, a dopamine agonist, ↓PRL secretion, restores menstrual cycles and ↓tumour size. Dose is titrated up: 1.25mg PO; increase weekly by 1.25–2.5mg/d until ~2.5mg/12h. SE: nausea, depression, postural hypotension (minimize by giving at night). If pregnancy is planned^o, use barrier contraception until 2 periods have occurred. If subsequent pregnancy occurs, stop bromocriptine after the 1st missed period. An alternative dopamine agonist is **cabergoline**: more effective and fewer SE, but there are less data on safety in pregnancy. NB: ergot alkaloids (bromocriptine and cabergoline) can cause fibrosis (eg echocardiograms are needed). Trans-sphenoidal surgery may be considered if intolerant of dopamine agonists. It has a high success rate, but there are risks of permanent hormone deficiency and prolactinoma recurrence, and so it is usually reserved as a 2nd-line treatment.

Macroprolactinomas: A tumour >10mm diameter on MRI. As they are near the optic chiasm, there may be ↓acuity, diplopia, ophthalmoplegia, visual-field loss, and optic atrophy. Treat initially with a dopamine agonist (bromocriptine if fertility is the goal). Surgery is rarely needed, but consider if visual symptoms or pressure effects which fail to respond to medical treatment. Bromocriptine, and in some cases radiation therapy, may be required post-op as complete surgical resection is uncommon. If pregnant, monitor closely ideally in a combined endocrine/antenatal clinic as there is risk of expansion.

Follow-up Monitor PRL. If headache or visual loss, check fields (? do MRI). Medication can be decreased after 2yrs, but recurrence of hyperprolactinaemia and expansion of the tumour may occur, and so these patients should be monitored carefully.

1 The prolactin increase (♂ and ♀) after coitus is ~400% greater than after masturbation; post-orgasmic prolactin is part of a feedback loop decreasing arousal by inhibiting central dopaminergic processes. The size of post-orgasmic prolactin increase is a neurohormonal index of sexual satisfaction.

2 MDMA also toxytocin; prolactin + oxytocin are thought to mediate post-orgasmic wellbeing.



Fig 1. Galactorrhoea can be prolific enough to create medium-sized galaxies (bottom right). In the *Birth of the Milky Way* Hera is depicted by Rubens in her chariot, being drawn through the night sky by ominous black peacocks. Between journeys, she enjoyed discussing difficult endocrinological topics with her husband Zeus (who was also her brother), such as whether women or men find sexual intercourse more enjoyable. Hera inclined to the latter—and it is on this flimsy evidence, and her gorgeous galactorrhoea, that we diagnose her hyperprolactinaemia (which is known to decrease desire, lubrication, orgasm, and satisfaction). In the end, this issue was settled, in favour of Zeus's view, by Tiresias, who had unique insight into this intriguing question: every time this soothsayer saw two snakes entwined, (s)he changed sex, so coming to know a thing or two about gender and pleasure. This is a primordial example of an 'N of 1' trial, where the subject is his or her own control. Generalizability can be a problem with this methodology.

Image courtesy of the Prado Museum.⁶²



This is due to ↑secretion of GH (growth hormone) from a pituitary tumour (99%) or hyperplasia, eg via ectopic GH-releasing hormone from a carcinoid tumour. ♀:♂≈1:1. Incidence:UK 3/million/yr. ~5% are associated with MEN-1 (p215). GH stimulates bone and soft tissue growth through ↑secretion of insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1).

Symptoms Acroparaesthesia (*akron*=extremities); amenorrhoea; libido↓; headache; ↑sweating; snoring; arthralgia; backache; **fig 1**: "My rings don't fit, nor my old shoes, and now I've got a wonky bite (malocclusion) and curly hair. I put on lots of weight, all muscle and looked good for a while; now I look so haggard".

Signs (BOX) often predate diagnosis by >4yrs. If acromegaly occurs before bony epiphyses fuse (rare), gigantism occurs.

Complications (may present with CCF or ketoacidosis).

- Impaired glucose tolerance (~40%), DM (~15%).
- Vascular: BPT, left ventricular hypertrophy (±dilatation/CCF), cardiomyopathy, arrhythmias. There is ↑risk of ischaemic heart disease and stroke (?due to ↑BP ± insulin resistance and GH-induced increase in fibrinogen and decrease in protein S).
- Neoplasia: colon cancer risk↑; colonoscopy may be needed.⁶³

Acromegaly in pregnancy (Subfertility is common) Pregnancy may be normal; signs and chemistry may remit. Monitor glucose.

Tests ↑Glucose, ↑Ca²⁺ and ↑PO₄³⁻. **GH**: Don't rely on random GH as secretion is pulsatile and during peaks acromegalic and normal levels overlap. GH also ↑ in: stress, sleep, puberty, and pregnancy. Normally GH secretion is inhibited by high glucose, and GH hardly detectable. In acromegaly GH release fails to suppress.

- If basal serum GH is >0.4µg/L (1.2mIU/L) and/or if IGF-1↑ (p224), an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) is needed. 2000 Consensus statement If the lowest GH value during OGTT is above 1µg/L (3mIU/L), acromegaly is confirmed. With general use of very sensitive assays, it has been said that this cut-off be decreased to 0.3µg/L (0.9mIU/L).⁶⁴

Method: Collect samples for GH glucose at: 0, 30, 60, 90, 120, 150min. Possible false +ves: puberty, pregnancy, hepatic and renal disease, anorexia nervosa, and DM.

- MRI scan of pituitary fossa. • Look for hypopituitarism (p224).
- Visual fields and acuity. • ECG, echo. Old photos if possible.

Treatment Aim to correct (or prevent) tumour compression by excising the lesion, and to reduce GH and IGF-1 levels to at least a 'safe' GH level of <2µg/L (<6mIU/L). A 3-part strategy: **1** Transphenoidal surgery is often 1st-line. **2** If surgery fails to correct GH/IGF-1 hypersecretion, try somatostatin analogues (SSA) and/or radiotherapy, SSA being generally preferred. Example: octreotide (Sandostatin Lar®, given monthly IM), or lanreotide (Somatuline LA®). SE: pain at the injection site; gastrointestinal: abdominal cramps, flatulence, loose stools, gallstones; impaired glucose tolerance. **3** The GH antagonist pegvisomant (recombinant GH analogue) is used if resistant or intolerant to SSA. It suppresses IGF-1 to normal in 90%, but GH levels may rise; rarely tumour size increases, so monitor closely. **Radiotherapy**: If unsuited to surgery or as adjuvant; may take years to work. **Follow-up**: Yearly GH, IGF-1±OGTT; visual fields; vascular assessment. BMI; photos (**fig 2,3**).

Prognosis May return to normal (any excess mortality is mostly vascular). 16% get diabetes with SSAs vs ~13% after surgery.

Fig 1. Acromegaly. Courtesy of Omar Rio.⁶⁵





Figs 2 & 3. Coarsening of the face and ↑ growth of hands and mandible (prognathism).

Signs of acromegaly

- ↑ Growth of hands (fig 2; may be spade-like), jaw (fig 3) and feet (sole may encroach on the dorsum)
- Coarsening face; wide nose
- Big supraorbital ridges
- Macroglossia (big tongue)
- Widely spaced teeth
- Puffy lips, eyelids, and skin (oily and large-pored); also skin tags
- Scalp folds (*cutis verticis gyrata*; ∴ expanding but tethered skin)
- Skin darkening (fig 2)
- Acanthosis nigricans (fig 6, p565)
- Laryngeal dyspnoea (fixed cords)
- Obstructive sleep apnoea
- Goitre (↑ thyroid vascularity)
- Proximal weakness + arthropathy
- Carpal tunnel signs in 50%, p507
- Signs from any pituitary mass: hypopituitarism ± local mass effect (p226; vision; hemianopia); fits.

⚙️ Dysmorphia,¹ personal identity, and acromegaly

We might have devoted this box to a grotesque homunculus depicting the signs of acromegaly: all disconnected lips, hands, feet, brows, and noses. But our integrative ethics disallow this, and ask us instead to see if acromegaly can reveal something universal about our patients and ourselves. What is it like to feel in the grip of some 'alien puberty' or 'empty pregnancy'? These analogies are physiological as well as metaphorical.²³ The changes of acromegaly are not so insidious that the patient thinks all is fine: there is often partial knowledge and a few dark thoughts on looking into the mirror. Even when we lay our lives end-to-end for inspection (fig 1), changes are subtle. It can take the observations of others to force us to come face-to-face with the truth of our new unfolding self. In one patient the comment was "So are you pregnant again?" "Why do you ask?" "Because your nose is as big as it was when you were last pregnant". So here we have the well-known 'physiological acromegaly of pregnancy'² predating the pathological, as the carnival of personal identity moves from helter-skelter to roller-coaster.

1 Morpheus, the god of sleep, has the ability to take on any human form and to appear in dreams.

2 GH variants made by the placenta rise exponentially until 37wks' gestation; pituitary GH gradually drops to near-undetectable levels. 'Gestational acromegaly' probably develops to foster fetoplacental growth; its side-effects include facial oedema, carpal tunnel symptoms, and nose enlargement.

3 Puberty sees GH- and gonad-mediated rises in bone and muscle mass + other 'acromegalic' effects.

This is the passage of large volumes ($>3\text{L/day}$) of dilute urine due to impaired water resorption by the kidney, because of reduced ADH secretion from the posterior pituitary (cranial DI) or impaired response of the kidney to ADH (nephrogenic DI). See **fig 1**.

Symptoms Polyuria; polydipsia; dehydration; symptoms of hypernatraemia (p686). *Polydipsia can be uncontrollable and all-consuming*, with patients drinking anything and everything to hand: in such cases, if beer is on tap, disaster will ensue!⁶⁶

Causes of cranial DI • **Idiopathic** ($\leq 50\%$) • **Congenital**: defects in ADH gene, **DIDMOAD**¹

• **Tumour** (may present with DI + hypopituitarism): craniopharyngioma, metastases, pituitary tumour • **Trauma**: temporary if distal to pituitary stalk as proximal nerve endings grow out to find capillaries in scar tissue and begin direct secretion again • **Hypophysectomy** • **Autoimmune hypophysitis** (p224) • **Infiltration**: histiocytosis, sarcoidosis² • **Vascular**: haemorrhage³ • **Infection**: meningoencephalitis.

Causes of nephrogenic DI • **Inherited** • **Metabolic**: low potassium, high calcium • **Drugs**: lithium, demeclocycline • **Chronic renal disease** • **Post-obstructive uropathy**.

Tests U&E, Ca^{2+} , glucose (exclude DM), serum and urine osmolalities. Serum osmolality estimate $\approx 2 \times (\text{Na}^+ + \text{K}^+) + \text{urea} + \text{glucose}$ (all in mmol/L). Normal plasma osmolality is 285–295 mOsmol/kg, and urine can be concentrated to more than twice this concentration. Significant DI is excluded if urine to plasma (U:P) osmolality ratio is more than 2:1, provided plasma osmolality is no greater than 295 mOsmol/kg. In DI, despite raised plasma osmolality, urine is dilute with a U:P ratio <2 . In primary polydipsia there may be dilutional hyponatraemia—and as hyponatraemia may itself cause mania, be cautious of saying “It’s water intoxication from psychogenic polydipsia”.

Diagnosis The *water deprivation test* aims to test the ability of kidneys to concentrate urine for diagnosis of DI, and then to localize the cause. See **Box**.

NB: it is often difficult to differentiate primary polydipsia from partial DI.

$\Delta\Delta$: DM; diuretics or lithium use; **primary polydipsia**—this causes symptoms of polydipsia and polyuria with dilute urine. Its cause is poorly understood;⁴ it may be associated with schizophrenia or mania ($\pm\text{Li}^+$ therapy), or, rarely, hypothalamic disease (neurosarcoid; tumour; encephalitis; brain injury; HIV encephalopathy). As part of this syndrome, the kidneys may lose their ability to fully concentrate urine, due to a wash-out of the normal concentrating gradient in the renal medulla.

Treatment Cranial DI: Find the cause—MRI (head); test anterior pituitary function (p224). Give desmopressin, a synthetic analogue of ADH (eg Desmomet[®] tablets).

Nephrogenic: Treat the cause. If it persists, try bendroflumethiazide 5mg PO/24h. NSAIDs lower urine volume and plasma Na^+ by inhibiting prostaglandin synthase: prostaglandins locally inhibit the action of ADH.

►► **Emergency management** • Do urgent plasma U&E, and serum and urine osmolalities. Monitor urine output carefully and check U&E twice a day initially.

• **IVI** to keep up with urine output. If severe hypernatraemia, do not lower Na^+ rapidly as this may cause cerebral oedema and brain injury. If Na^+ is ≥ 170 , use 0.9% saline initially—this contains 150 mmol/L of sodium. Aim to reduce Na^+ at a rate of less than 12 mmol/L per day. Use of 0.45% saline can be dangerous.

• Desmopressin 2µg IM (lasts 12–24h) may be used as a therapeutic trial.

1 DIDMOAD is a rare autosomal recessive disorder: **D**iabetes **I**nsipidus, **D**iabetes **M**ellitus, **O**ptic **A**trophy and **D**eafness (also known as Wolfram’s syndrome).

2 Suspect neurosarcoidosis if CSF protein (seen in 34%), facial nerve palsy (25%), CSF pleocytosis (23%), diabetes insipidus (21%), hemiparesis (17%), psychosis (17%), papilloedema (15%), ataxia (13%), seizures (12%), optic atrophy (12%), hearing loss (12%), or nystagmus (9%).

3 Sheehan’s syndrome is pituitary infarction from shock, eg postpartum haemorrhage. It is rare.

4 Most of us could drink 20L/d and not be hyponatraemic; some get hyponatraemic drinking 5L/d; they may have **P**sychois, **I**ntermittent hyponatraemia, and **P**olydipsia (**PIP** syndrome), ?from intravascular volume leading to atrial natriuretic peptide, p131, hence natriuresis and hyponatraemia.

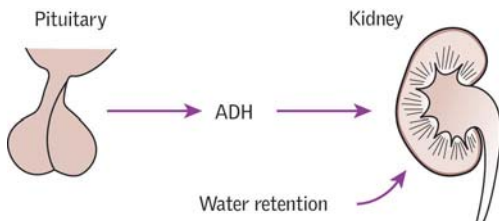


Fig 1. Pathway of renal regulation. ADH=antidiuretic hormone=ADV=antidiuretic vasopressin=arginine vasopressin=AVP. The essential role of ADH V2 and AQP2 (aquaporin 2) receptors in water homeostasis is clear now we know that mutations in their genes cause nephrogenic diabetes insipidus such that the kidney is unable to concentrate urine in response to ADH.

The 8-hour water deprivation test

This test aims to determine whether the kidneys continue to produce dilute urine despite dehydration, and then to localize the cause. Do not do the test before establishing that urine volume is $>3\text{L/d}$ (output less than this with normal plasma Na^+ and osmolality excludes significant disturbance of water balance).

- Stop test if **urine** osmolality $>600\text{mOsmol/kg}$ in Stage 1 (DI is excluded).
- Free fluids until 07.30. Light breakfast at 06.30, no tea, no coffee, no smoking.

Stage 1 Fluid deprivation (0–8h): for diagnosis of DI. Start at 08.00.

- Empty bladder, then no drinks and only dry food.
- Weigh hourly. If $>3\%$ weight lost during test, order urgent serum osmolality. If $>300\text{mOsmol/kg}$, proceed to Stage 2. If <300 , continue test.
- Collect urine every 2h; measure its volume and osmolality.
- Venous sample for osmolality every 4h.
- Stop test after 8h (16.00) if urine osmolality $>600\text{mOsmol/kg}$ (ie normal).

Stage 2 Differentiate cranial from nephrogenic DI.

- Proceed if urine still dilute—ie urine osmolality $<600\text{mOsmol/kg}$.
- Give desmopressin $2\mu\text{g IM}$. Water can be drunk now.
- Measure urine osmolality hourly for the next 4h.

Interpreting the water deprivation test

Normal	Urine osmolality $>600\text{mOsmol/kg}$ in Stage 1 U:P ratio >2 (normal concentrating ability).
Primary polydipsia	Urine concentrates, but less than normal, eg $>400\text{--}600\text{mOsmol/kg}$.
Cranial DI	Urine osmolality increases to $>600\text{mOsmol/kg}$ <i>after</i> desmopressin (if equivocal an extended water deprivation test may be tried (no drinking from 18:00 the night before)).
Nephrogenic DI	No increase in urine osmolality after desmopressin.



Contents

Healthy, enjoyable eating 236
The mouth 238

Some presenting symptoms:

Dysphagia 240
Nausea and vomiting 240
Dyspepsia/peptic ulcer 242
Gastro-oesophageal
reflux 244

Hiatus hernia 244

Diarrhoea 246

Constipation 248

Jaundice 250

Upper GI bleeding 252

▶▶ Bleeding varices 254

Procedures:

Endoscopy and biopsy 256

Diseases and conditions:

Liver failure 258

Cirrhosis 260

Haemochromatosis 262

α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency 264

Primary biliary cirrhosis 266

Primary sclerosing
cholangitis (psc) 266

Autoimmune hepatitis 268

Non-alcoholic fatty liver
disease 269

Wilson's disease 269

Liver tumours 270

Inflammatory bowel disease:

Ulcerative colitis (uc) 272

Crohn's disease 274

Irritable bowel syndrome 276

Carcinoma of the pancreas 276

Nutritional disorders 278

Carcinoid tumours 278

Gastrointestinal malabsorption 280

Coeliac disease 280

Chronic pancreatitis 280

Alcoholism 282



Fig 1. Families are rarely what they seem: Otto, Aurelia and Sylvia seem to be having a nice cuppa, but Warren (the son and brother) is absent, Otto's leg is missing, Aurelia is beside herself with anxiety, and neither is fully aware of the turmoil spiraling out of control in their unstable daughter, Sylvia. How the gut weaves in and out of our patients' stories is one of gastroenterology's perpetually fascinating and significant riddles. So whenever you are presented with an image in gastroenterology, ask what is missing, and try to work out the forces which are perpetuating or relieving symptoms (pathogenesis *versus* salutogenesis). This is all very helpful, but it can never be relied on to tame or predict what happens next. So what *did* happen next? See opposite to find out.

Relevant pages in other chapters: *Signs & symptoms:* Abdominal distension (p57); epigastric pain (p57); flatulence (p58); guarding (p62); heartburn (p244); hepatomegaly (p63); LIF & LUQ pain (p57); palmar erythema (p33); rebound tenderness (p62); regurgitation (p59); RIF & RUQ pain (p57); skin discolouration (p28); splenomegaly (p606); tenesmus (p59); vomiting (p56); waterbrash (p606); weight loss (p29).

Surgical topics: Contents to *Surgery* (p566). *Haematology:* Iron-deficiency (p320).

Infections: Viral hepatitis (p406).

Radiology: The plain abdominal film (AXR) (p740); radiological GI procedures (p756).

Emergencies: Upper GI bleeding (p830); acute liver failure (p806).



Lumen



We learn about gastroenterological diseases as if they were separate entities, independent species collected by naturalists, each kept in its own dark matchbox—collectors' items collecting dust in a desiccated world on a library shelf. But this is not how illness works. Otto had diabetes, but refused to see a doctor until it was far advanced, and an amputation was needed. He needed looking after by his wife Aurelia. But she had her children Warren and Sylvia to look after too. And when Otto was no longer the bread-winner, she forced herself to work as a teacher, an accountant, and at any other job she could get. Otto's illness manifested in Aurelia's duodenum—as an ulcer. The gut often bears the brunt of other people's worries. Inside every piece of a gut is a lumen¹—the world is in the gut, and the gut is in the world. But the light does not always shine. So when the lumen filled with Aurelia's blood, we can expect the illness to impact on the whole family. Her daughter knows where blood comes from ('straight from the heart ... pink fizz'). After Otto died, Sylvia needed long-term psychiatric care, and Aurelia moved to be near her daughter. The bleeding duodenal ulcer got worse when Sylvia needed electroconvulsive therapy. The therapy worked and now, briefly, Sylvia, before her own premature death, is able to look after Aurelia, as she prepares for a gastrectomy.

The story of each illness told separately misses something; but even taken in its social context, this story is missing something vital—the poetry, in most of our patients lived rather than written—tragic, comic, human, and usually obscure—but in the case of this family not so obscure. Welling up, as unstoppable as the bleeding from her mother's ulcer,¹ came the poetry of Sylvia Plath.²

1 *Lumen* is Latin for light (hence its medical meaning of a tubular cavity open to the world at both ends), as well as being the SI unit of light flux falling on an object—ie the power to transilluminate. All doctors have this power, whether by insightfully interpreting patients' lives and illnesses to them, or by acts of kindness—even something so simple as bringing a cup of tea.

2 ...And here you come, with a cup of tea
Wreathed in steam,
The blood jet is poetry,
There is no stopping it.
You hand me two children, two roses.

Sylvia Plath: *Kindness*; Collected Poems; 1981; Faber
Source: katemoses.com/books/w_chronology.html

'There's a lot of people in this world who spend so much time watching their health that they haven't the time to enjoy it' Josh Billings (1818–85).

Recent UK government guidelines emphasize simply eating less (eg 2600 calories/d for men and 2080 for women) rather than specifying dietary content,² recognizing that there are no good or bad foods, and no universally good or bad diets. Don't consider diet independently of desired lifestyle; and don't assume we all want to be thin, healthy, and live forever. If we are walking to the South Pole, our bodies need as much energy-rich fat as possible. But if we are sedentary, the converse may *not* be true. After decades of research, we still don't know who should eat what, or when. Are 3 meals a day healthier than 1? Is fat harmful if weight is normal? Is a balanced diet (see BOX) best? Should we eat 3, 5, 7, or 9 fruits daily? (one recommendation for men, but some studies find no benefit beyond 3).³ Are green vegetables (or yellow?) better than fruits? (maybe, for preventing diabetes).⁴

The traditional answer to these questions (the more fruit the better) may be wrong because of complex interactions between eating and health. All diets have unintended consequences: eg the 'good' antioxidant epicatechin (a flavonoid) in dark chocolate is annulled by taking milk at the same time.⁵ Randomized trials show that low-carbohydrate Atkins-type diets (tfat and tprotein) improve lipid profiles and insulin resistance (possible SEs of renal problems and tCa²⁺ excretion^{6,7} may have been over-played,⁸ but note that bowel flora is changed in a way that is ?carcinogenic).⁹ To complicate matters, diet is also confounded by lifestyle—while some studies show vegetarians may be less likely to die from ischaemic heart disease,¹⁰ is this effect because vegetarians in the UK are more likely to be non-smokers?¹¹ Do vitamin/antioxidant supplements help? β -carotene and vitamins A & E may increase mortality.^{12,13}

Current recommendations must take into account 3 facts:

- Obesity costs health services as much as smoking—1 in 4 UK adults is obese.¹⁴
- Diabetes mellitus is burgeoning: in some places prevalence is >7% (p198).
- Past advice has not changed eating habits in large sections of the population.

Advice is likely to focus on the following:

Body mass index (BMI; BOX 3): aim for 20–25. Controlling quantity may be more important than quality. In hypertension, eating the 'right' things lowered BP by 0.6mmHg, but controlling weight caused a 3.7mmHg reduction in 6 months.^{15 etc}

Oily fish: Rich in omega-3 fatty acid (eg mackerel, herring, pilchards, salmon—but benefits are not fully substantiated).¹⁶ If tinned fish, avoid those in unspecified oils. Nuts are good too: walnuts lower cholesterol (polyunsaturates:saturates=7:1, ie very good). Soya protein lowers cholesterol, low-density lipoproteins, and triglycerides.

Refined sugar: (See BOX for its deleterious effects.) Use fruit to add sweetness. Have low-sugar drinks: a 330mL can of non-diet carbonated soft drink can have up to 10 teaspoons (40g) of refined sugar. Don't add sugar to drinks or cereals. (In a thin, active, elderly, normoglycaemic person, sugar may be no great evil.)

Eat enough fruit and fibre: See BOX 1 and *reduce salt intake*.

Enjoy moderate alcohol use (adults <65yrs): ♀: ≤ 14 u/wk; ♂: ≤ 21 u/wk (controversial)—taken regularly (no binges!). Alcohol inhibits platelet aggregation and is antioxidant (\therefore cardioprotective). There is no evidence that spirit or beer drinkers should switch to wine. If LDL cholesterol is ≥ 5.25 mmol/L, benefits are more likely.¹⁷


► **Avoid this diet if:** • <5yrs old • Need for low residue (eg Crohn's, UC, p274) or special diet (coeliac disease, p280) • Weight loss is expected. **Emphasis may be different in:** Dyslipidaemia (p704); DM (p198); obesity; constipation (p248); liver failure (p258); chronic pancreatitis (p280); renal failure (less protein)(p296); BPT.¹⁸

Difficulties It is an imposition to ask us to change our diet (children often refuse point-blank); a more subtle approach is to take a food we enjoy (crisps) and make it healthier (eg low-salt crisps made from jacket potatoes and fried in sunflower oil).

Traditional low-fat nutritional advice: the balance of good health

A low-fat diet may not only be for the sake of good health, as it can also help control symptoms, eg from gallstones, and while it is unrealistic to expect all our patients' troubles to drift away as the weight comes off, we can offer the incentive of an improvement in both symptoms and health as encouragement.

Starchy foods Bread, rice, pasta, potatoes, etc. form the main starch energy source (wholemeal/unprocessed is recommended).

Fibre  (Mainly non-starch polysaccharide, NSP) 14g/1000kcal is recommended for children and adults. Fibre is claimed to ↓risk of vascular disease, diabetes, breast cancer,¹⁹ and obesity—as well as constipation and piles. Soluble fibre improves insulin sensitivity (non-diabetics and diabetics). If obese, fibre supplements may aid weight loss.²⁰ Prebiotic fibres might enhance immunity.²¹ ↑Fluid intake with diets high in NSP, eg 8 cups (1-2½ pints) daily. Warn about bulky stools. Phytate in NSP can ↓Ca²⁺ and iron absorption, so restrict main intake to 1 meal a day. Iron availability in bread depends on how it is leavened. Modern methods (eg the Chorleywood process, which depends on very fast agitation) decrease iron availability compared with leavening dough slowly.²²

Fruit and vegetables eg >6 pieces of fruit (with skins)²³ or portions of pulses, beans, or lightly cooked greens per day (aims to ↓vascular and cancer deaths).²⁴

Meat and alternatives Meat should be cooked without additional fat. Lower fat alternatives, such as white meat (poultry, without skin), white fish, and vegetable protein sources (eg pulses, soya) are encouraged.

Dairy foods Low-fat semi-skimmed milk/yoghurt; Edam or cottage cheese.

Fat and sugary foods Avoiding extra fat in cooking is advised ('grill, boil, steam, or bake, but don't fry'). Fatty spreads (eg butter) are kept to a minimum and snack foods (crisps, sweets, biscuits, and cake) are avoided.

Losing weight—why and how?

The risks of too much sugar Excess sugar causes caries, diabetes, obesity—which itself contributes to osteoarthritis, cancer,²⁵ hypertension,²⁶ and increased oxidative stress—so raising cardiovascular mortality²⁷ and much more.

Losing weight Motivational therapy. Consider referral to a dietician—a needs-specific diet may be best. In conjunction with exercise and diet strategies, targeted weight-loss can also be achieved successfully with psychotherapy.²⁸

Drugs or surgery for obesity? The most desirable treatment for obesity is still primary prevention, but pharmacotherapy does work.²⁹ *Orlistat* lowers fat absorption (hence SE of oily faecal incontinence)—see *OHCS* p530.¹ **Surgery:** See p628.

Calculating body mass index

$$\text{BMI} = (\text{weight in kg}) / (\text{height in m})^2$$

BMI	State	Some implications within the categories
<18.5	Underweight	<17.5 is one of the criteria for anorexia nervosa
18.5-25	On target	
25-30	Overweight	Weight loss should be considered
30-40	Obesity	>32 is unsuitable for day-case general surgery
>40	Extreme/morbid obesity	>40 is an indication for bariatric surgery

Caveats: BMI does not take into account the distribution of body fat, and is harder to interpret for children and adolescents. ► **Waist circumference** >94cm in men and >80cm in women reflects omental fat and correlates better with risk than does BMI. BMI is still a valid way of comparing nations: average BMI in the USA in 2005 was 28.7. In Japan, it was 22. A nation can be lean without being poor. If other nations adopted the lifestyle of the USA, this would be equivalent to adding a billion people to the planet in terms of sustainability.³⁰ For more details on ethnic variations, see p199.

1 Research continues into the hormones involved in obesity—eg the satiety-inducing *leptin* and the hunger-inducing *ghrelin*.

The diagnosis will often come out of your patient's mouth, so open it! So many GI investigations are indirect...now is your chance for direct observation.

Leucoplakia (fig 1) is an oral mucosal white patch that will not rub off and is not attributable to any other known disease. It is a premalignant lesion, with a transformation rate, which ranges from 0.6% to 18%.³² Oral hairy leucoplakia is a shaggy white patch on the side of the tongue seen in HIV, caused by EBV. ►When in doubt, refer all intra-oral white lesions (see BOX).

Aphthous ulcers (fig 2) 20% of us get these shallow, painful ulcers on the tongue or oral mucosa that heal without scarring. **Causes of severe ulcers:** Crohn's and coeliac disease; Behçet's (p708); trauma; erythema multiforme; lichen planus; pemphigus; pemphigoid; infections (herpes simplex, syphilis, Vincent's angina, p726). **R:** **Minor ulcers:** avoid oral trauma (eg hard toothbrushes or foods such as toast) and acidic foods or drinks. **Tetracycline** or antimicrobial mouthwashes (eg chlorhexidine). **Severe ulcers:** Possible therapies include systemic corticosteroids (eg oral **prednisolone** 30–60mg/d PO for a week) or thalidomide (absolutely contraindicated in pregnancy).³³ ►Biopsy any ulcer not healing after 3 weeks to exclude malignancy; refer to an oral surgeon if uncertain.

Candidiasis (thrush; fig 3) causes white patches or erythema of the buccal mucosa. Patches may be hard to remove and bleed if scraped. **Risk factors:** Extremes of age; DM; antibiotics; immunosuppression (long-term corticosteroids, including inhalers; cytotoxics; malignancy; HIV). **R:** **Nystatin** suspension 100,000u (1mL swill and swallow/6h) or **amphotericin** lozenges. **Fluconazole** for oropharyngeal thrush.

Cheilitis (angular stomatitis) Fissuring of the mouth's corners is caused by denture problems, candidiasis, or deficiency of iron or riboflavin (vitamin B₂). (fig 2, p321)

Gingivitis Gum inflammation ± hypertrophy occurs with poor oral hygiene, drugs (phenytoin, ciclosporin, nifedipine), pregnancy, vitamin c deficiency (scurvy, p278), acute myeloid leukaemia (p350), or Vincent's angina (p726).

Microstomia (fig 4) The mouth is too small, eg from thickening and tightening of the perioral skin after burns or in epidermolysis bullosa (destructive skin and mucous membrane blisters ± ankyloglossia) or systemic sclerosis (p554).

Oral pigmentation Perioral brown spots characterize Peutz-Jeghers' (p722). Pigmentation anywhere in the mouth suggests Addison's disease (p218) or drugs (eg antimalarials). Consider malignant melanoma. **Telangiectasia:** Systemic sclerosis; Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome (p722). **Fordyce glands** (creamy yellow spots at the border of the oral mucosa and the lip vermilion) are sebaceous cysts, common and benign. *Aspergillus niger* colonization may cause a black tongue.

Teeth (fig 5) A blue line at the gum-tooth margin suggests lead poisoning. Prenatal or childhood tetracycline exposure causes a yellow-brown discolouration.

Tongue This may be furred or dry (xerostomia) in dehydration, if on tricyclics, etc¹ after radiotherapy, in Crohn's disease, Sjögren's (p724) and Mikulicz's syndrome.³⁴ (p720)

Glossitis means a smooth, red, sore tongue, eg caused by iron, folate, or B₁₂ deficiency (fig 1, p329). If local loss of papillae leads to ulcer-like lesions that change in colour and size, use the term **geographic tongue** (harmless migratory glossitis).

Macroglossia: The tongue is too big. Causes: myxoedema; acromegaly; amyloid. (p364) A **ranula** is a bluish salivary retention cyst to one side of the frenulum, named after the bulging vocal pouch of frogs' throats (genus *Rana*).

Tongue cancer typically appears on tongue edge as a raised ulcer with firm edges and environs. Main risk factors: smoking and alcohol.² Examine under the tongue and ask patient to deviate his extended tongue sideways. Spread: anterior ⅓ of the tongue drains to the submental nodes; middle ⅓ to the submandibular nodes; posterior ⅓ to the deep cervical nodes (see BOX, p600). **Treatment:** Radiotherapy or surgery. 5yr survival (early disease): 80%. ►When in doubt, refer tongue ulcers.

1 Drugs causing xerostomia: ACE-i, antidepressants; antihistamines; antipsychotics; antimuscarinics/anticholinergics; bromocriptine; diuretics; loperamide; nifedipine; opiates; prazosin; prochlorperazine, etc.

2 Betel nut (*Areca catechu*) chewing, common in South Asia, may be an independent risk factor.³⁵

White intra-oral lesions

- Idiopathic keratosis
- Leucoplakia
- Lichen planus
- Poor dental hygiene
- Candidiasis
- Squamous papilloma
- Carcinoma
- Hairy oral leucoplakia
- Lupus erythematosus
- Smoking
- Aphthous stomatitis
- Secondary syphilis



Fig 1. Leucoplakia on the underside of the tongue. It is important to refer leucoplakia because it is premalignant.



Fig 2. An aphthous ulcer inside the cheek. The name is tautological: *aphtha* in Greek means ulceration.



Fig 3. White fur on an erythematous tongue caused by oral candidiasis. Oropharyngeal candidiasis in an apparently fit patient may suggest underlying HIV infection.



Fig 4. Microstomia (small, narrow mouth), eg from hardening of the skin in scleroderma which narrows the mouth. It is cosmetically and functionally disabling.³⁶



Fig 5. White bands on the teeth can be caused by excessive fluoride intake.



Dysphagia is difficulty in swallowing and always needs investigating urgently to exclude malignancy (unless of short duration, and associated with a sore throat).

Causes Oral, pharyngeal, or oesophageal? Mechanical or motility related? (See BOX.)

5 key questions to ask

1 Was there difficulty swallowing solids **and** liquids from the start? (See BOX.)

Yes: motility disorder (esp if non-progressive, eg achalasia, CNS, or pharyngeal causes).

No: Solids then liquids: suspect a stricture (benign or malignant).

2 Is it difficult to make the swallowing movement?

Yes: Suspect bulbar palsy, especially if patient coughs on swallowing.

3 Is swallowing painful (odynophagia)?

Yes: Suspect cancer, oesophageal ulcer (benign or malignant), *Candida* (eg immunocompromised or poor steroid inhaler technique) or spasm.

4 Is the dysphagia intermittent or is it constant and getting worse?

Intermittent: Suspect oesophageal spasm.

Constant and worsening: Suspect malignant stricture.

5 Does the neck bulge or gurgle on drinking?

Yes: Suspect a pharyngeal pouch (see *OHCS* p573).

Signs Is the patient cachectic or anaemic? Examine the mouth; feel for supraclavicular nodes (left supraclavicular node = Virchow's node—suggests intra-abdominal malignancy); look for signs of systemic disease, eg systemic sclerosis (p554), CNS disease.

Tests FBC (anaemia); U&E (dehydration); CXR (mediastinal fluid level, no gastric bubble, aspiration). Upper GI endoscopy ± biopsy—in high dysphagia, precede by barium swallow (fig 1) for pharyngeal pouch (± ENT opinion). 2nd-line: video fluoroscopy to identify dysmotility, eg achalasia. Oesophageal manometry if barium swallow is normal.

Specific conditions *Oesophagitis* p244. *Diffuse oesophageal spasm* causes intermittent dysphagia ± chest pain. Barium swallow: abnormal contractions, eg corkscrew oesophagus.¹ *Achalasia:* The lower oesophageal sphincter fails to relax (due to degeneration of the myenteric plexus), causing dysphagia (for fluids and solids), regurgitation, substernal cramps, and weight loss. CXR: fluid level in dilated oesophagus (eg above heart); barium swallow: dilated tapering oesophagus. Treatment: endoscopic balloon dilatation, or Heller's cardiomyotomy—then proton pump inhibitors (PPIs, p244). Botulinum toxin injection if a non-invasive procedure is needed (repeat every few months).³⁷ Calcium channel blockers and nitrates also relax the sphincter. Longstanding achalasia may cause oesophageal cancer. *Benign oesophageal stricture:* Caused by gastro-oesophageal reflux (GORD, p244), corrosives, surgery, or radiotherapy. Treatment: endoscopic balloon dilatation. *Oesophageal cancer:* (p620). Associations: ♂, GORD,³⁸ tobacco, alcohol, Barrett's oesophagus (p709), achalasia, tylosis (palmar hyperkeratosis), Paterson-Brown-Kelly (Plummer-Vinson) syndrome (post-cricoid dysphagia, upper oesophageal web + iron-deficiency). **CNS causes:** Ask for help from a speech rehab specialist.

Nausea and vomiting

Exclude pregnancy! (other causes: p56)

Regurgitation or vomiting? The former is effortless (unassociated with nausea).

What's in your vomit? "Coffee grounds" ≈ GI bleeding; recognizable food ≈ gastric stasis; feculent ≈ small bowel obstruction or bacterial overgrowth.

Timing Morning ≈ pregnancy or ICPT; 1h post food ≈ gastric stasis/gastroparesis (DM); vomiting that relieves pain ≈ peptic ulcer; preceded by loud gurgling ≈ GI obstruction. Vomiting only when your mother-in-law visits suggests a different line of enquiry.

Tests **Bloods:** FBC, U&E, LFT, Ca²⁺, glucose, amylase. **ABG:** A metabolic (hypochloraemic) alkalosis from loss of gastric contents (pH >7.45, ↑HCO₃⁻) indicates severe vomiting. **Plain AXR** if suspected bowel obstruction (p742). **Upper GI endoscopy** (p256) if persistent vomiting. Consider head CT in case ICPT. Identify and treat underlying causes if possible.

Treatment See TABLE. Be pre-emptive, eg pre-op for post-op symptoms. Try the oral route first. 30% need a 2nd-line anti-emetic, so be prepared to prescribe more than one, but avoid drugs in pregnancy and children. Give IV fluids with K⁺ replacement if severely dehydrated or nil-by-mouth, and monitor electrolytes and fluid balance.

1 Non-propulsive contractions manifest as tertiary contractions or 'corkscrew oesophagus' (fig 4, p757) and suggest a motility disorder and may lead to acid clearance.³⁹ Symptoms and radiology may not match. *Nutcracker oesophagus* denotes distal peristaltic contractions >180mmHg. It may cause pain,⁴⁰ relieved by nitrates, sublingual nifedipine, or smooth muscle relaxants (sildenafil, p316).⁴¹

Causes of dysphagia

Mechanical block

Malignant stricture (**fig 1**)
 Oesophageal cancer
 Gastric cancer
 Pharyngeal cancer
 Benign strictures
 Oesophageal web or ring (p240)
 Peptic stricture
 Extrinsic pressure
 Lung cancer
 Mediastinal lymph nodes
 Retrosternal goitre
 Aortic aneurysm
 Left atrial enlargement
 Pharyngeal pouch

Motility disorders

Achalasia (see opposite)
 Diffuse oesophageal spasm
 Systemic sclerosis (p554)
 Neurological bulbar palsy (p511)
 Pseudobulbar palsy (p511)
 Wilson's or Parkinson's disease
 Syringobulbia (p520)
 Bulbar poliomyelitis (p432)
 Chagas' disease (p438)
 Myasthenia gravis (p516)

Others

Oesophagitis (p244; reflux or *Candida*/HSV)
 Globus ("I've got a lump in my throat": try to distinguish from true dysphagia)



Fig 1. A malignant lower oesophageal stricture on a barium swallow. Its shouldered edges lead to an 'apple core' effect with an irregular mucosal pattern. On video fluoroscopy there would be no peristalsis visible in this segment. Benign strictures would have a more funnelled appearance with a normal mucosal pattern. Note the normal gastro-oesophageal junction. ©Dr Stephen Golding.

The marshmallow test

To a thoughtful marshmallow eater the question "Is your dysphagia worse with solids or liquids?" is tricky, as marshmallows neatly span this great divide. Never mind: leave it all to the endoscopist to sort out? Not really: endoscopy is poor at assessing dynamic events such as swallowing. In anyone with complicated swallowing problems it is much better to coat a marshmallow with barium and follow its progress at fluoroscopy. Where are the hold-ups and how many swallows does it take before the oesophagogastric junction is successfully negotiated? ⁴²



Remembering your anti-emetics

One way of recalling anti-emetics involves using (simplified) pharmacology.

Receptor	Antagonist	Dose	Notes
H ₁	<i>Cyclizine</i>	50mg/8h PO/IV/IM	GI causes
	<i>Cinnarizine</i>	30mg/8h PO	Vestibular disorders
D ₂	<i>Metoclopramide</i>	10mg/8h PO/IV/IM	GI causes; also prokinetic
	<i>Domperidone</i>	60mg/12h PR 20mg/6h PO	Also prokinetic
	<i>Prochlorperazine</i>	12.5mg IM; 5mg/8h PO	Vestibular/GI causes
	<i>Haloperidol</i>	1.5mg/12h PO	Chemical causes, eg opioids
5HT ₃	<i>Ondansetron</i>	4mg/8h IV slowly	Doses can be much higher for, eg, emetogenic chemotherapy
Others	<i>Hyoscine hydrobromide</i>	200–600µg SC/IM	Antimuscarinic: also anti-spasmodic and antisecretory (don't prescribe with a prokinetic)
	<i>Dexamethasone</i>	6–10mg/d PO/SC	Unknown mode of action; an adjuvant
	<i>Midazolam</i>	2–4mg/d SC (syringe driver)	Unknown action; anti-emetic effect outlasts sedative effect ⁴³

► All antidopaminergics can cause dystonias and oculogyric crisis, especially in younger patients.

War The stomach is a battle ground between the forces of attack (acid, pepsin, *Helicobacter pylori*, bile salts) and defence (mucin secretion, cellular mucus, bicarbonate secretion, mucosal blood flow, cell turnover).⁴⁴ Gastric antisecretory agents, eg H₂ receptor antagonists (H₂RAs), and proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) may only work if you have optimized cytoprotection (antacids and sucralfate work this way). Success may depend on you being not just a brilliant general, but also a tactician, politician, and diplomat. Plan your strategy carefully with the FLOWCHART (fig 1). As in any war, neglecting psychological factors can prove disastrous (see Rx below). The aim is not outright victory but *maintaining the balance of power* so all may prosper.

Symptoms Epigastric pain often related to hunger, specific foods, or time of day ± bloating, fullness after meals, heartburn (retrosteral pain + reflux); tender epigastrium. **Alarm symptoms:** Anaemia (iron deficiency); loss of weight; anorexia; recent onset/progressive symptoms; melaena/haematemesis; swallowing difficulty.

H. pylori¹ (BOX 1). If ≤55yrs old test for *H. pylori*; treat if +ve. Test and treat;² eg lansoprazole 30mg/24h PO for 4wks reduces symptoms and recurrence more than acid suppression alone. ▶ If ≥55 (and new dyspepsia not from NSAID use and persisting for >4-6wks) or **alarm symptoms**, refer for urgent endoscopy (p256).

Duodenal ulcer (DU, fig 1p255) is 4-fold commoner than GU. **Major risk factors:**

H. pylori (90%); drugs (NSAIDs; steroids; SSRI)⁴⁵ **Minor:** tGastric acid secretion; tgastric emptying (↓duodenal pH); blood group O; smoking. The role of stress is debated.

Symptoms: Epigastric pain typically before meals or at night, relieved by eating or drinking milk. 50% are asymptomatic; others experience recurrent episodes.

Signs: Epigastric tenderness. **Diagnosis:** Upper GI endoscopy (stop PPI 2wks before). Test for *H. pylori*. Measure gastrin concentrations when off PPIs if Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (p730) is suspected. **ΔΔ:** Non-ulcer dyspepsia; duodenal Crohn's; TB; lymphoma; pancreatic cancer (p276). **Follow-up:** None; if good response to Rx (eg PPI).

Gastric ulcers (GU) occur mainly in the elderly, on the lesser curve. Ulcers elsewhere are more often malignant. **Risk factors:** *H. pylori* (~80%); smoking; NSAIDs; reflux of duodenal contents; delayed gastric emptying; stress, eg neurosurgery or burns (Cushing's or Curling's ulcers). **Symptoms:** Asymptomatic or epigastric pain (related to meals ± relieved by antacids) ± weight↓. **Tests:** Upper endoscopy to exclude malignancy (stop PPI >2wks before, see FLOWCHART); multiple biopsies from ulcer rim and base (histology, *H. pylori*) and brushings (cytology). Repeat endoscopy (eg if perforation or bleeding) to check healing (biopsy if suspicious of gastric ca).

Rx Lifestyle: Purge stress⁴⁶ by creating opportunities for people to move from disease into health through dialogue and reflection on their lives—eg would he/she see benefit in ↓alcohol and tobacco use? Both will help. Avoid any aggravating foods.

H. pylori eradication: Triple therapy³ is 80–85% effective at eradication.

Drugs to reduce acid: PPIs are effective, eg lansoprazole 30mg/24h PO for 4 (DU) or 8 (GU) wks. H₂ blockers have a place (ranitidine 300mg each night PO for 8wks).

Drug-induced ulcers: Stop drug if possible. PPIs may be best for treating and preventing GI ulcers and bleeding in patients on NSAID or antiplatelet drugs. Misoprostol is an alternative with different SE.⁴⁷ If symptoms persist, re-endoscopy, recheck for *H. pylori*, and reconsider differential diagnoses (eg gallstones). **Surgery:** p626.

Complications Bleeding ▶▶ (p252), perforation ▶▶ (p608), malignancy, gastric outflow↓.

Functional (non-ulcer) dyspepsia Treatment is hard. *H. pylori* eradication, only after a +ve result) may help, but long-term effects of such a strategy are unknown. Some evidence favours PPIs and psychotherapy. PPI SE aren't negligible!² Antacids, antispasmodics, H₂ blockers, misoprostol, prokinetic agents, sucralfate, or tricyclics have less evidence.⁴⁸ Bismuth preparations are an interesting and ancient option (eg DeNol® 120mg/12h), having healing and anti-*Helicobacter* properties; it's available over-the-counter, avoiding medicalization. It turns stools black.

1 *H. pylori* is the commonest bacterial pathogen found worldwide (>50% of the world population over 40yrs has it).⁴⁹ It's a class I carcinogen causing gastritis (p253), duodenal/gastric ulcers & gastric cancer/lymphoma (MALT, p356), also associated with coronary artery disease, B₁₂ and iron deficiency.

2 PPI SE reflect lack of gastric acid: gastroenteritis; B₁₂↓ (also osteoporosis, alopecia, photosensitivity; LFT↑).

¹³C breath test is the most accurate non-invasive *Helicobacter* test

Invasive tests	cLO test	Sensitivity	95%	Specificity	95%
	Histology		95%		95%
	Culture		90%		100%
Non-invasive	¹³ C breath test		95%		95%
	Stool antigen		95%		94%
	Serology		92%		83%

Every breath we exhale leaves our own unique breathprint on the world: nitrogen, oxygen, CO₂, vapour, and ~250 volatile substances that give useful information about our state of health to scientists and lovers—kisses are faster but less reliable than spectrometers, which can inform about GI diseases, asthma, organ rejection, and cancer.⁵⁰

Differential diagnosis of dyspepsia

- Non-ulcer dyspepsia
- Duodenal/gastric ulcer
- Duodenitis
- Oesophagitis/GORD
- Gastric malignancy
- Gastritis (p253)

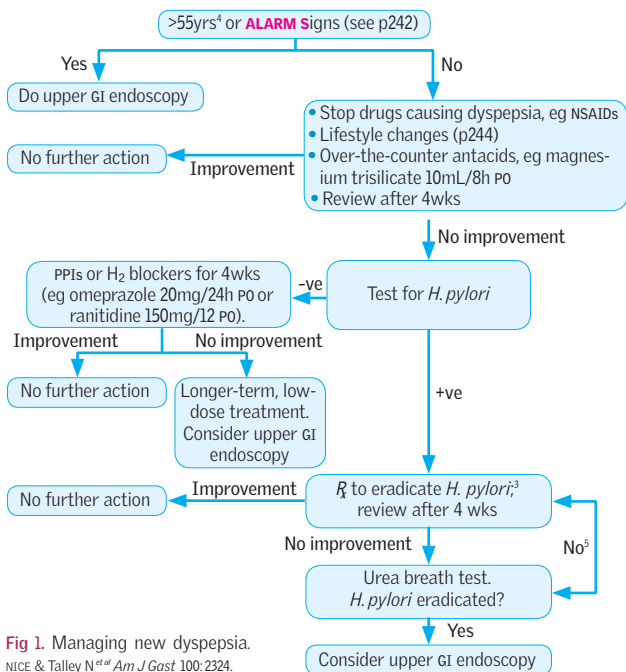


Fig 1. Managing new dyspepsia.

NICE & Talley N *et al* *Am J Gast* 100: 2324.

Why not start everyone on a PPI straight away? Simple measures are safer (more and more PPI SE are reported). Also, PPIs and ranitidine cause false -ve breath tests and antigen tests: stop for >2wks before (>4wks for bismuth and antibiotics).⁵² ▶ See NICE.

3 *H. pylori* eradication (NICE/BNF): either PAC500 regimen (full dose PPI, amoxicillin 1g, clarithromycin 500mg) twice daily or PMC250 (full dose PPI, metronidazole 400mg, clarithromycin 250mg) twice daily for 7d. PPIs: omeprazole 20mg/12h; lansoprazole: 30mg/12h. **Resistant infections:** tripotassium dicitrato-bismuthate (De Noltab® 2 twice daily ½h before food¹³) + PPI + 2 antibiotics for 14d. Bismuth causes black stools: warn the patient! NB: you may need to continue the PPI if the ulcer is large or bleeds.¹³

4 Some experts recommend endoscopy if >45yrs old.

5 Don't treat +ve cases of *H. pylori* more than twice. If still +ve, do endoscopy.

GORD is common, and is said to exist when reflux of stomach contents (acid \pm bile)¹ causes troublesome symptoms (≥ 2 heartburn episodes/wk) and/or complications.⁵⁴ If reflux is prolonged, it may cause oesophagitis (fig 1), benign oesophageal stricture, or Barrett's oesophagus (fig 2 and p709; it is pre-malignant). Causes: lower oesophageal sphincter hypotension, hiatus hernia (see below), loss of oesophageal peristaltic function, abdominal obesity, gastric acid hypersecretion, slow gastric emptying, overeating,⁵⁴ smoking, alcohol, pregnancy, surgery in achalasia, drugs (tricyclics, anticholinergics, nitrates), systemic sclerosis, *Helicobacter pylori*?^{55,2}

Symptoms Oesophageal: Heartburn (burning, retrosternal discomfort after meals, lying, stooping or straining, relieved by antacids); belching; acid brash (acid or bile regurgitation); waterbrash (\uparrow salivation: "My mouth fills with saliva"); odynophagia (painful swallowing, eg from oesophagitis or ulceration). **Extra-oesophageal:** Nocturnal asthma, chronic cough, laryngitis (hoarseness, throat clearing), sinusitis.⁵⁵

Complications Oesophagitis, ulcers, benign stricture, iron-deficiency. **Metaplasia \rightarrow dysplasia \rightarrow neoplasia:** GORD may induce Barrett's oesophagus (p709; distal oesophageal epithelium undergoes metaplasia from squamous to columnar—this intestinal metaplasia looks velvety, fig 2). 0.6–1.6%/yr of those with low-grade Barrett's progress to oesophageal cancer⁵⁶ (higher if 2 histologists concur: diagnosing low-grade dysplasia is tricky: the Prague criteria should be used).⁵⁷ Length of lesion matters less than histology. Overall risk of adenocarcinoma in GORD is <1 in 1000/yr. **Histology:** *Gastric metaplasia:* low risk of malignant change. *Intestinal metaplasia*—2-yrly surveillance. *Low-grade dysplasia*—90% get adenocarcinoma within 6yrs. *High-grade dysplasia:* 50% have adenocarcinoma already.

$\Delta\Delta$ Oesophagitis from corrosives, NSAIDs, herpes, *Candida*; duodenal or gastric ulcers or cancers; non-ulcer dyspepsia; sphincter of Oddi malfunction; cardiac disease.

Tests Endoscopy if: symptoms for >4 wks; persistent vomiting, GI bleeding/iron deficiency; palpable mass; age >55 ; dysphagia; symptoms despite treatment; relapsing symptoms; weight \downarrow . Barium swallow may show hiatus hernia. 24h oesophageal pH monitoring \pm manometry help diagnose GORD when endoscopy is normal.

Treatment Rx **Encourage:** Raising the bed head \pm weight loss; smoking cessation; small, regular meals. "Get to know your own disease, and learn tricks that work for you..." **Avoid:** Hot drinks, alcohol, citrus fruits, tomatoes,⁵⁸ onions, fizzy drinks, spicy foods, coffee, tea, chocolate, and eating <3 h before bed. Avoid drugs affecting oesophageal motility (nitrates, anticholinergics, Ca^{2+} channel blockers—relax the lower oesophageal sphincter) or that damage mucosa (NSAIDs, K^+ salts, bisphosphonates).

Drugs: Antacids, eg *magnesium trisilicate mixture* (10mL/8h), or alginates, eg *Gaviscon Advance*[®] (10–20mL/8h po) relieve symptoms. For oesophagitis, try a PPI, eg *lansoprazole* 30mg/24h po.⁵⁹ PPIs are better than H_2 blockers. If unresponsive, try twice-daily PPI. Metoclopramide as mono- or adjunctive therapy is discouraged.⁶⁰

Surgery (eg laparoscopic) aims to \uparrow resting lower oesophageal sphincter pressure. Consider in severe GORD (confirm by pH-monitoring/manometry) if drugs are not working. Atypical symptoms (cough, laryngitis) are less likely to improve with surgery compared to patients with typical symptoms. Options are many, eg Nissen fundoplication, p626; HALO[®] or Stretta radiofrequency ablation of the gastro-oesophageal junction if high-grade dysplasia (and maybe low-grade too).⁶¹

4 grades Los Angeles classification of GORD Minor diffuse changes (erythema, oedema; friability) are not included, and the term **mucosal break** (a well-demarcated area of slough/erythema) is used to encompass the old terms erosion & ulceration:⁶²

- 1 ≥ 1 mucosal break(s) <5 mm long not extending beyond 2 mucosal fold tops.
- 2 Mucosal break >5 mm long limited to the space between 2 mucosal fold tops.
- 3 Mucosal break continuous between the tops of 2 or more mucosal folds but which involves less than 75% of the oesophageal circumference.
- 4 Mucosal break involving $\geq 75\%$ of the oesophageal circumference.

1 Bile reflux may be as important as acid; bile is alkaline; it may respond to sucralfate (2g/12h po), domperidone or metoclopramide. Roux-en-Y diversion may be needed (p624).⁶³

2 *H. pylori* eradication may not influence the course of GORD,⁶⁴ but may help symptoms.⁶⁵



Fig 1. Upper GI endoscopy showing longitudinal mucosal breaks in severe oesophagitis.

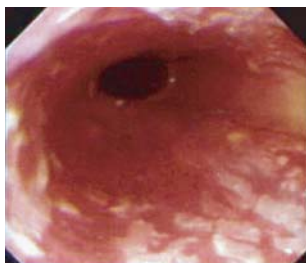


Fig 2. Barrett's oesophagus.

Figs 1 & 2 ©Dr A Mee.

Hiatus hernia

Sliding hiatus hernia (80%) is where the gastro-oesophageal junction slides up into the chest—see **fig 3**. Acid reflux often happens as the lower oesophageal sphincter becomes less competent in many cases.

Rolling hiatus hernia (20%) is where the gastro-oesophageal junction remains in the abdomen but a bulge of stomach herniates up into the chest alongside the oesophagus—see **figs 3** and **4**. As the gastro-oesophageal junction remains intact, gross acid reflux is uncommon.

Clinical features Common: 30% of patients >50yrs, especially obese women. 50% have symptomatic gastro-oesophageal reflux.

Imaging Barium swallow is the best diagnostic test; upper GI endoscopy visualizes the mucosa (?oesophagitis) but cannot reliably exclude a hiatus hernia.

Treatment Lose weight. Treat reflux symptoms. Surgery indications: intractable symptoms despite aggressive medical therapy, complications (see opposite). It is advised to repair rolling hiatus hernia prophylactically (even if asymptomatic) as it may strangulate, which needs prompt surgical repair (which has a high mortality and morbidity rate).

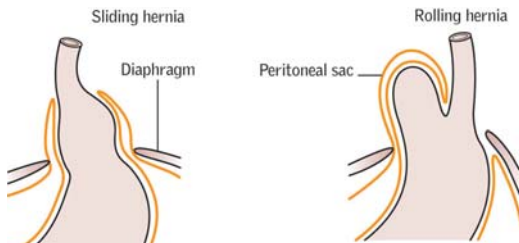


Fig 3. Hiatus hernia—sliding and rolling.



Fig 4. CT chest (IV contrast) showing the rolling components of a hiatus hernia anterior to the oesophagus. Between the oesophagus and the vertebral column on the left-hand side is the aorta.
©Dr S Golding.



Diarrhoea ≈ decreased stool consistency⁶⁶ from water, fat (steatorrhoea), or inflammatory discharge. Watery diarrhoea is osmotic, secretory (eg microscopic colitis)¹, or 'functional' (typically from irritable bowel syndrome). Laxative-induced diarrhoea is often osmotic. Steatorrhoea is characterized by ↑gas, offensive smell, and floating, hard-to-flush stools—giardiasis (p436) and coeliac disease (p280) are classic examples. Inflammatory diarrhoea (Crohn's, UC) has blood and pus in the stool. Invasive bacteria and parasites also produce inflammation.

History Work (is he a chef?—don't work until an infective cause is ruled out) *Acute or chronic?* If acute (<2wks) suspect gastroenteritis—any risk factors? HIV; achlorhydria, eg PA, p328, or on acid suppressants, eg PPI? Travel? Diet change? Contact with D&V? Any fever/pain? Chronic diarrhoea alternating with constipation suggests irritable bowel (p276). Weight↓, nocturnal diarrhoea and anaemia mandate close follow-up (UC/Crohn's^{etc?}).

Bloody diarrhoea: *Campylobacter*, *Shigella*/*Salmonella* (p426), *E. coli*, amoebiasis (p436), UC, Crohn's, colorectal cancer (p618), colonic polyps, pseudomembranous colitis, ischaemic colitis (p622). **Fresh PR bleeding:** p631.

Mucus occurs in IBS (p276), colorectal cancer, and polyps. **Frank pus** suggests IBD, diverticulitis, or a fistula/abscess. White cells are microscopically *absent* in amoebiasis, cholera, *E. coli* and viruses.

Explosive: Eg cholera; giardia; yersinia (p422); rotavirus. **Large bowel:** (*Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *C. diff* & entamoeba).

Watery stool ± blood/mucus; pelvic pain relieved by defecation; tenesmus; urgency. **Small bowel symptoms:** Periumbilical (or RIF) pain not relieved by defecation.

Look for Dehydration—dry mucous membranes, ↓skin turgor; capillary refill >2s; shock (▶▶ think of cholera, p426). Any fever, weight↓, clubbing, anaemia, oral ulcers (p238), rashes or abdominal mass or scars? Any goitre/hyperthyroid signs? Do rectal exam for masses (eg rectal cancer) or impacted faeces (if you don't put your finger in, you'll put your foot in it by missing this diagnosis that never responds to codeine!)

• **Blood FBC:** MCV↓/Fe deficiency, eg coeliac or colon ca; MCV↑ if alcohol abuse or B₁₂ absorption↓, eg in coeliac or Crohn's; eosinophilia if parasites. **ESR/CRP:** Infection, Crohn's/UC, cancer. **U&E:** K⁺↓ ≈ severe D&V. **TSH:** Thyrotoxicosis. **Coeliac serology:** p280.

• **Stool MC&S:** Bacterial pathogens, ova cysts, parasites *C. diff* toxin (see BOX). **Faecal fat excretion** or ¹³C-**hiolein (highly labelled triolein) breath test** (nicer and reliable) if symptoms of chronic pancreatitis, malabsorption, or steatorrhoea.⁶⁷

• **Rigid sigmoidoscopy** With biopsy of normal and abnormal looking mucosa: ~15% of patients with Crohn's disease have macroscopically normal mucosa.

• **Colonoscopy/barium enema** (malignancy? colitis?) ▶ Avoid in acute episode. If normal, consider small bowel radiology (eg Crohn's) ± ERCP (chronic pancreatitis).

Management Treat causes. Food handlers: no work until stool samples are -ve. If a hospital outbreak, wards may need closing. **Oral rehydration** is better than IV, but if impossible, give 0.9% saline + 20mmol K⁺/L IVI. ▶ If dehydrated and bloody diarrhoea for ≥2wks, IV fluids may well be needed. **Codeine phosphate** 30mg/8h PO or **loperamide** 2mg PO after each loose stool (max 16mg/day) ↓stool frequency (avoid in colitis; both may precipitate toxic megacolon).⁶⁸ Avoid antibiotics unless infective diarrhoea is causing systemic upset (fig 1) to avoid selecting resistant strains.

Antibiotic-associated diarrhoea³ may respond to probiotics (eg lactobacilli).

1 Think of this in any chronic diarrhoea; do biopsy (may be +ve on normal looking colonic mucosa—reported as 'lymphocytic' or 'collagenous' colitis). Prognosis: good. **Budesonide** is 1st-line, then 5-aminosalicylic acid (p273), **bismuth** (eg Pepto-Bismol®), or **loperamide**.

2 Vasoactive intestinal polypeptide-secreting tumour; suspect if K⁺↓ and acidosis; Ca²⁺↑; Mg²⁺↓.

3 Erythromycin is prokinetic, others cause overgrowth of bowel organisms, or alter bile acids.

Common causes

- Gastroenteritis
- Parasites/protozoa
- IBS (p276)
- Colorectal cancer
- Crohn's; UC; coeliac

Less common causes

- Microscopic colitis¹
- Chronic pancreatitis
- Bile salt malabsorption
- Laxative abuse
- Lactose intolerance
- Ileal/gastric resection
- Overflow diarrhoea
- Diverticular disease
- Bacterial overgrowth
- *C. difficile* (BOX)

Non-GI or rare causes

- Thyrotoxicosis
- Autonomic neuropathy
- Addison's disease
- Ischaemic colitis
- Tropical sprue • Pellagra
- Gastrinoma • VIPoma²
- Carcinoid • Amyloid

Drugs (many, see BNF)

- Antibiotics³ • PPI
- Propranolol • NSAIDs
- Cytotoxics • Digoxin
- Laxatives • Alcohol

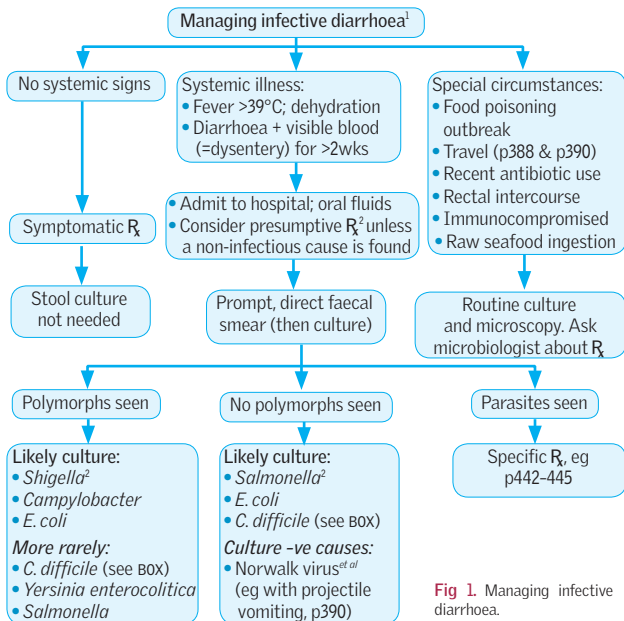


Fig 1. Managing infective diarrhoea.

***Clostridium difficile*: the cause of pseudomembranous colitis**

C. difficile is a Gram +ve 'superbug' whose spores are contagious (faecal-oral or from the environment, where spores can live for ages and are hard to eradicate).

Signs: T⁺; colic; mild diarrhoea—or serious bloody diarrhoea with systemic upset—CRP⁺, WCCT, albumin[↓], and colitis (with yellow adherent plaques on inflamed non-ulcerated mucosa—the pseudomembrane) and multi-organ failure.

Asymptomatic carriage: 1-3% of all adults (∴ broad-spectrum/IV antibiotic use).

Predictors of fulminant *C. diff* colitis: >70yrs, past *C. diff* infection; use of antiperistaltic drugs; Girotra's triad: **1** Increasing abdominal pain/distention and diarrhoea **2** Leukocytosis >18,000 **3** Haemodynamic instability.⁶⁹ **Deaths:** 6500/yr^{uk}.

Toxins: Tissue culture, ELISA, and PCR help detect *C. difficile* toxins (CDT). Some strains produce no toxin and are non-pathogenic; most produce toxins A and B. Some strains are hypervirulent, eg NAP1/027.

Rₓ: Stop the causative antibiotic (if possible). Treatment is not usually needed if asymptomatic (use of antibiotics for *C. difficile* is controversial). If symptomatic, give metronidazole ≤400mg/8h PO for ≤10d (vancomycin 125mg/6h PO is better in severe disease; if complications, up to 2g/day).⁷⁰

► Urgent colectomy may be needed if toxic megacolon, LDH[↑], or if deteriorating.

Recurrent disease: Repeat metronidazole once only (overuse causes irreversible neuropathy). NB: probiotics may prevent recurrences (*Saccharomyces boulardii* 500mg/12h, unless immunosuppressed or c/vp line *in situ*). Administration of stools (via NGT or colonoscopy) from healthy subjects may have a role.⁷⁰

Preventing spread: Meticulous cleaning, use of disposable gloves, not using rectal thermometers, hand-washing, and ward protocols (eg 'bare below elbows').

1 Be aware of your local pathogens, and be prepared to close wards and hospitals if contagion is afoot.

2 Prompt specific Rₓ: eg ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO for 6d may be needed before sensitivities are known. Metronidazole is also tried, as giardia is a common cause of watery diarrhoea (no leukocytes) in travellers.

Constipation reflects ↑transit time or pelvic dysfunction, eg a rectocele.¹ 30% of us feel we are constipated (only 15% meet the Rome criteria, BOX).⁷¹ ♀:♂≈2:1. Doctors' chief concerns are to find pointers to major pathology, eg constipation+rectal bleeding≈cancer; constipation+distension+active bowel sounds≈stricture/GI obstruction; constipation+menorrhagia≈hypothyroidism,^{etc}.

The patient Ask about frequency, nature, and consistency of stools. Is there blood or mucus in/on the stools? Is there diarrhoea alternating with constipation (eg IBS, p276)? Has there been recent change in bowel habit? Any pain?⁷¹ Ask about diet and drugs. ►PR examination can be essential. Refer the patient if there are atypical features, eg weight↓, abdominal pain, and anaemia (signs of colorectal ca).

Tests (None in young, mildly affected patients.) Indications for investigation: age >40yrs; change in bowel habit; associated symptoms (weight↓, PR mucus or blood, tenesmus). **Blood:** FBC, ESR, U&E, Ca²⁺, TFT. **Sigmoidoscopy** and biopsy of abnormal mucosa. **Barium enema/colonoscopy** if suspected colorectal malignancy. Transit studies; anorectal physiology; biopsy for Hirschsprung's^{etc} are occasionally needed.

Treatment Often reassurance, drinking more, and diet/exercise advice (p237) is all that is needed. Treat causes (BOX). A high-fibre diet is often advised, but may cause bloating without helping constipation.⁷² ►Only use drugs if these measures fail, and try to use them for short periods only.² Often, a stimulant such as senna ± a bulking agent is more effective and cheaper than agents such as **lactulose**.⁷²

Bulking agents ↑faecal mass, so stimulating peristalsis. They must be taken with plenty of fluid and may take a few days to act. CI: difficulty in swallowing; GI obstruction; colonic atony; faecal impaction. **Bran** powder 3.5g 2-3 times/d with food (may hinder absorption of dietary trace elements if taken with every meal).⁷³

Ispaghula husk, eg 1 Fybogel® 3.5g sachet after a meal, mixed in water and swallowed promptly (or else it becomes an unpleasant sludge). **Methylcellulose**, eg Celevac® 3-6 500mg tablets/12h with ≥300mL water. **Sterculia**, eg Normacol® granules, 10mL sprinkled on food daily. **Stimulant laxatives** increase intestinal motility, so do not use in intestinal obstruction or acute colitis. Avoid prolonged use as it may cause colonic atony and hypokalaemia (but there are no good long-term data). Abdominal cramps are an important SE. Pure stimulant laxatives are

bisacodyl tablets (5-10mg at night) or suppositories (10mg in the mornings) and **senna** (2-4 tablets at night). **Docusate sodium** and **danthron**³ (=dantron) have stimulant and softening actions. **Glycerol** suppositories act as a rectal stimulant. **Sodium picosulfate** (5-10mg up to 12h beforehand) is useful for rapid bowel evacuation prior to procedures. **Stool softeners** are particularly useful when managing painful anal conditions, eg fissure. **Arachis oil** enemas lubricate and soften impacted faeces. **Liquid paraffin** should not be used for a prolonged period (SE: anal seepage, lipoid pneumonia, malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins).

Osmotic laxatives retain fluid in the bowel. **Lactulose**, a semisynthetic disaccharide, produces osmotic diarrhoea of low faecal pH that discourages growth of ammonia-producing organisms. **Macrogol** (eg Movicol®) is another example. It is useful in hepatic encephalopathy (initial dose: 30-50mL/12h). SE: bloating, so its role in treating constipation is limited. **Magnesium salts** (eg magnesium hydroxide; magnesium sulfate) are useful when rapid bowel evacuation is required. **Sodium salts** (eg Microlette® and Micralax® enemas) should be avoided as they may cause sodium and water retention. **Phosphate enemas** are useful for rapid bowel evacuation prior to procedures.

If laxatives don't help (eg after 6 months) A multidisciplinary approach with behaviour therapy, habit training ± sphincter biofeedback may help. 5HT₄ agonists inducing peristalsis by systemic (not luminal) means include **prucalopride**.⁷⁴

1 Rectocele: front wall of the rectum bulges into the back wall of the vagina. **Levator ani syndrome:** chronic rectal pain without detectable organic cause, worse on walking and defecation. It may be reproduced by coccygeal traction (on PR) with a specific trigger point on the levator muscle.

2 Risks of laxative abuse are overemphasized ('cathartic colon' is a questionable entity); stimulant laxatives may be used chronically on those who do not respond to bulk or osmotic laxatives alone.⁷⁵

3 Danthron causes colon & liver tumours in animals, so reserve use for the very elderly or terminally ill.



4 definitions of constipation

≤2 bowel actions/wk—or less often than the person's normal habit—or passed with difficulty, straining, or pain—or with a sense of incomplete evacuation.

Making constipation glamorous

The best way to make something glamorous is to associate it with somewhere beautiful, immortal, and seductive, so now we have the famous Rome criteria—named after 'the eternal city'.

The Rome criteria

Constipation: the presence of ≥2 symptoms during bowel movements (BMs):

- Straining for ≥25% of BMs
- Lumpy or hard stools in ≥25% of BMs
- Sensation of incomplete evacuations for ≥25% BMs
- Sensation of anorectal obstruction or blockage for ≥25% of BMs
- Manual manoeuvres to facilitate at least 25% of BMs (eg digital evacuation, support of the pelvic floor)
- Fewer than 3 BMs per week

Chronicity entails constipation for the last 90 days, with onset ≥6 months ago.

🌀 Rome feeds anal fixations⁷⁶

▶ Applying the Rome criteria teaches us to be obsessive about our bowels—a prime example of medicalizing our way into two diseases for the price of one—or, quite often, none, as it is possible to be healthy and pass stools only weekly.

As well as moving beyond the traditional oral, anal and phallic stages of development, we propose that doctors must also move beyond their stage of obsessive counting, before they can be of real service to their patients.⁷⁷

All roads lead away from Rome

Most people declaring themselves to be constipated do so in flagrant disregard of the Rome criteria,⁷⁸ perhaps on the grounds that you cannot tell someone they are not hungry just because they eat more than 2 meals a day.

Ironically, the highest prevalence of constipation is in nursing homes, the one place where Rome cannot penetrate as inmates may be too demotivated to report sensations of anal blockage.⁷⁹ This is an example of **vicarious constipation**, ie leading your life painfully slowly, through the bowels of another.

Causes of constipation

General

- Poor diet ± lack of exercise
- Poor fluid intake/dehydration
- Irritable bowel syndrome
- Old age
- Post-operative pain
- Hospital environment (↓privacy; having to use a bed pan)
- Distant, squalid, or fearsome toilets

Anorectal disease (esp. if painful)

- ▶▶ Anal or colorectal cancer
- Fissures (p632), strictures, herpes
- Rectal prolapse
- Proctalgia fugax (p632)
- Mucosal ulceration/neoplasia
- Pelvic muscle dysfunction/levator ani syndrome¹

Intestinal obstruction

- ▶▶ Colorectal carcinoma (p618)
- Strictures (eg Crohn's disease)
- Pelvic mass (eg fetus, fibroids)
- Diverticulosis (rectal bleeding is a commoner presentation)
- Pseudo-obstruction (p613)

Metabolic/endocrine

- Hypercalcaemia (p690)
- Hypothyroidism (rarely *presents* with constipation)
- Hypokalaemia (p688)
- Porphyrria
- Lead poisoning

Drugs (pre-empt by diet advice)

- Opiates (eg morphine, codeine)
- Anticholinergics (eg tricyclics)
- Iron
- Some antacids, eg with aluminium
- Diuretics, eg furosemide
- Calcium channel blockers

Neuromuscular (slow transit from decreased propulsive activity)

- Spinal or pelvic nerve injury (eg trauma, surgery)
- Aganglionosis (Chagas' disease, Hirschsprung's disease)
- Systemic sclerosis
- Diabetic neuropathy

Other causes

- Chronic laxative abuse (rare—diarrhoea is commoner)
- Idiopathic slow transit
- Idiopathic megarectum/colon
- 🌀 Psychological, eg anorexia nervosa, depression, or abuse as a child.

NB: constipation is unlikely to be the sole symptom of serious disease, so be reassuring (if PR, ESR & TSH are ↔).

Jaundice (icterus) refers to yellowing of skin, sclerae, and mucosae from t_{plasma} bilirubin (visible at $\geq 60 \mu\text{mol/L}$ —not always easy to spot if mild, **fig 1**). Jaundice is classified by the site of the problem (pre-hepatic, hepatocellular, or cholestatic/obstructive) or by the type of circulating bilirubin (conjugated or unconjugated). Kernicterus=unbound bilirubin deposited in infant basal ganglia (\rightarrow opisthotonus).

Unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia As unconjugated bilirubin is water insoluble, it does not enter urine, resulting in unconjugated (acholuric) hyperbilirubinaemia.

Overproduction: Haemolysis (p332, eg malaria/DIC, etc); ineffective erythropoiesis.

Impaired hepatic uptake: Drugs (contrast agents, rifampicin), right heart failure.

Impaired conjugation: Eponymous syndromes: Gilbert's, p714; Crigler-Najjar, p710.

Physiological neonatal jaundice is caused by a combination of the above, *OHCS* p115.

Conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia Hepatocellular dysfunction: There is hepatocyte damage, usually with some cholestasis. **Causes:** *Viruses:* hepatitis (A, B, C^{etc} p406), CMV (p404), EBV (p401); drugs (see TABLE); alcohol; cirrhosis (see BOX); liver metastases/abscess; haemochromatosis; autoimmune hepatitis (AIH); septicaemia; leptospirosis; syphilis; α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency (p264); Budd-Chiari (p710); Wilson's disease (p269); failure to excrete conjugated bilirubin (Dubin-Johnson & Rotor syndromes, p712–24); right heart failure; toxins, eg carbon tetrachloride; fungi (**fig 3**).

Impaired hepatic excretion (cholestasis): Primary biliary cirrhosis; primary sclerosing cholangitis; drugs (BOX); common bile duct gallstones; pancreatic cancer; compression of the bile duct, eg lymph nodes at the porta hepatis; cholangiocarcinoma; choledochal cyst; Caroli's disease;¹ biliary atresia; Mirizzi's syndrome (obstructive jaundice from common bile duct compression by a gallstone impacted in the cystic duct, often associated with cholangitis). As conjugated bilirubin is water soluble, it is excreted in urine, making it dark. Less conjugated bilirubin enters the gut and the faeces become pale. When severe, it can be associated with an intractable pruritus which is best treated by relief of the obstruction.

The patient Ask about blood transfusions, IV drug use, body piercing, tattoos, sexual activity, travel abroad, jaundiced contacts, family history, alcohol use, and all medications (eg old drug charts; GP records). **Examine** for signs of chronic liver disease (p260), hepatic encephalopathy (p259), lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, ascites and a palpable gallbladder (if seen with painless jaundice the cause is not gallstones—Courvoisier's 'law').² Pale stools + dark urine \approx cholestatic jaundice.

Tests See p260 for screening tests in suspected liver disease.³ **Urine:** Bilirubin is absent in pre-hepatic causes (=acholuric jaundice); in obstructive jaundice, urobilinogen is absent. **Haematology:** FBC, clotting, film, reticulocyte count, Coombs' test and haptoglobins for haemolysis (p330), malaria parasites (eg if unconjugated bilirubin/fever); Paul Bunnell (EBV). **Chemistry:** U&E, LFT² (bilirubin—unconjugated & conjugated), ALT, AST, alk phos, γ -GT, total protein, albumin.⁸⁰ If AST >1000, it's probably viral hepatitis. Paracetamol levels. **Microbiology:** Blood and other cultures; leptospira & hepatitis A, B, C serology^{etc} **Ultrasound:** Are the bile ducts dilated >6mm (obstruction)? Are there gallstones, hepatic metastases or a pancreatic mass? **ERCP** (p756) if bile ducts are dilated and LFT not improving. **MRCP** (p756) or endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) if conventional ultrasound shows gallstones but no definite common bile duct stones. **Liver biopsy** (p256) if bile ducts are normal. Consider abdominal **CT/MRI** if abdominal malignancy is suspected.

What to do? \blacktriangleright Treat the cause promptly. A stone causing mild jaundice today may be causing fatal pancreatitis or ascending cholangitis tomorrow. If it's malaria, you may only have a few hours. If the liver is failing (ascites, encephalopathy^{etc} p258), get help from a hepatologist; do INR. In post-hepatic causes, is stenting needed?

1 Multiple segmental cystic or saccular dilatations of intrahepatic bile ducts with congenital hepatic fibrosis. It may present in 20yr-olds, with portal hypertension \pm recurrent cholangitis/cholelithiasis.

2 Pancreatic or gall bladder cancer is more likely, as stones would have fibrosed the GB (\therefore unexpandable).

3 Albumin & INR are the best indicators of hepatic synthetic function. \uparrow Transaminases (ALT, AST) indicate hepatocyte damage. \uparrow Alk phos suggests obstructive jaundice, but also occurs in hepatocellular jaundice, malignant infiltration, pregnancy (placental isoenzyme), Paget's disease, and childhood (bone isoenzyme).

Fig 1. It's easy to miss mild jaundice, especially under fluorescent light, so take your patient to the window, and as you both gaze at the sky, use the opportunity to broaden the horizons of your enquiries... where have you been... where are you going... who are you with... what are you taking...? ☹️ In the gaps, your patient may tell you the diagnosis—alcohol or drug abuse, sexual infections/hepatitis, or worries about the side-effects of their TB or HIV medication or a spreading cancer “from this lump here which I haven't told anyone about yet.” Reproduced from *Clinical Skills, Second Edition*, by T.A. Roper, ©OUP.



The pathway of bilirubin metabolism

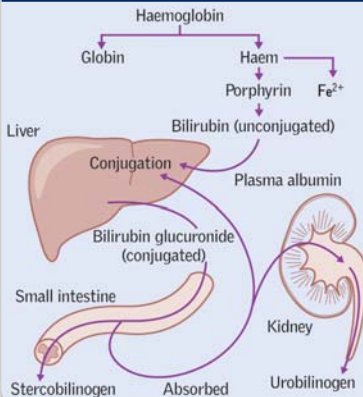


Fig 2. Bilirubin is formed by the breakdown of haemoglobin in a 3-step process: hepatic uptake, conjugation, and excretion.

In the liver, bilirubin is conjugated with glucuronic acid by hepatocytes, making it water soluble. Conjugated bilirubin is secreted in bile and passes into the gut. Some is taken up again by the liver (via the enterohepatic circulation) and the rest is converted to urobilinogen by gut bacteria. Urobilinogen is either reabsorbed and excreted by the kidneys, or converted to stercobilin, which colours faeces brown. After RCSL.

Causes of jaundice in a previously stable patient with cirrhosis

- Sepsis (esp. UTI, pneumonia, or peritonitis)
- Alcohol; drugs (BOX)
- Malignancy: eg hepatocellular carcinoma
- GI bleeding

Signs of decompensation: Ascites; dilated abdominal veins; CNS signs; oedema.

Examples of drug-induced jaundice

(Look for an eosinophilia ± WCC ↑/DRESS) ★

Haemolysis	• Antimalarials (eg dapsone)	
Hepatitis	• Paracetamol overdose (p856)	• Sodium valproate
	• Isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide	• Halothane
	• Monoamine oxidase inhibitors	• Statins
Cholestasis	• Flucloxacillin (may be weeks after Rx)	• Sulfonyleureas
	• Fusidic acid, co-amoxiclav, nitrofurantoin	• Prochlorperazine
	• Steroids (anabolic; the Pill)	• Chlorpromazine

★**DRESS** = drug rash with eosinophilia & systemic symptoms (fever, dyspnoea etc) ^{g1}

Fig 3. *Amanita phalloides* (Latin for 'phallic toadstool'; also known as the 'death cap') is a lethal cause of jaundice. It is the most toxic mushroom known. After ingestion (its benign appearance is confusing), amatoxins induce hepatic necrosis, eg with liver failure. Some have been treated successfully by transplantation.

©Ian Herriott. NB: don't use this image for identification!



Haematemesis is vomiting of blood. It may be bright red or look like coffee grounds. **Melaena** (Greek *melas* = black) means black motions, often like tar, and has a characteristic smell of altered blood. Both indicate upper GI bleeding.

Take a brief history and examine to assess severity.

Ask about past GI bleeds; dyspepsia/known ulcers; known liver disease or oesophageal varices (p254); dysphagia; vomiting; weight loss. Check drugs (see MINIBOX) and alcohol use. Is there serious comorbidity (bad prognosis), eg cardiovascular disease, respiratory disease, hepatic or renal impairment, or malignancy?

Look for signs of chronic liver disease (p260) and do a PR to check for melaena. Is the patient shocked? ▶ "Do you feel faint when you sit up?" Also:

- Peripherally shut down/cool and clammy; capillary refilling (CR) time >2s—urine output <½ mL/kg/h.
- JGCS (tricky to assess in decompensated liver disease) or signs of encephalopathy (p259).
- Poor urine output, eg <25 mL/h or <½ mL/kg/h.
- Tachycardic (pulse >100bpm, and JVP not raised).
- Systolic BP <100mmHg; postural drop >20mmHg.
- Do the **Rockall score** (TABLE). Alternative: the **Glasgow-Blatchford score (GBS)**—if GBS≈0, admission can be avoided—ie Hb ≥130g/L (or ≥120g/L if ♀); systolic BP ≥110mmHg; pulse <100/min; urea <6.5mmol/L; no melaena or syncope+no past/present liver disease or heart failure.

Common causes

- Peptic ulcers
- Mallory-Weiss tear
- Oesophageal varices
- Gastritis/gastric erosions
- Drugs (NSAIDs, aspirin, steroids, thrombolytics, anticoagulants)
- Oesophagitis
- Duodenitis
- Malignancy
- No obvious cause

Rare causes

- Bleeding disorders
- Portal hypertensive gastropathy
- Aorto-enteric fistula²
- Angiodysplasia
- Haemobilia
- Dieulafoy lesion³
- Meckel's diverticulum
- Peutz-Jeghers' syndrome
- Osler-Weber-Rendu synd.

Acute management (p830). Skill in resuscitation determines survival, so get good at this! Summary: start by protecting the airway and giving high-flow O₂, then:

- ▶▶ Insert 2 large-bore (14–16G) IV cannulae and take blood for FBC (an early Hb may be normal because haemodilution has not yet taken place), U&E (urea out of proportion to creatinine is indicative of a massive blood meal), LFT, clotting, and crossmatch 4–6 units (give 1 unit for each 10g/L that the Hb is less than 140g/L).
- ▶▶ Give IV fluids (p831) to restore intravascular volume while waiting for blood to be crossmatched.⁸² In a dire emergency—ie haemodynamically deteriorating despite fluid resuscitation measures—give group O Rh-ve blood.
- ▶▶ Insert a urinary catheter and monitor hourly urine output.
- ▶▶ Organize a CXR, ECG, and check ABG.
- ▶▶ Consider a CVP line to monitor and guide fluid replacement.
- ▶▶ Transfuse (with crossmatched blood if needed) until haemodynamically stable.
- ▶▶ Correct clotting abnormalities (vitamin K (p258), FFP, platelets).
- ▶▶ Monitor pulse, BP, and CVP (keep >5cmH₂O) at least hourly until stable.
- ▶▶ Omeprazole, eg 80mg as a bolus dose IV then continuous IVI at 8mg/h for 3d.^{83, 84}
- ▶▶ Arrange an urgent **endoscopy**, preferably at a dedicated endoscopy unit.^{85, 86¹}
- ▶▶ Inform surgeons of severe bleeds on admission—if endoscopic control fails, surgery may be needed—or emergency mesenteric angiography/embolization.

Further management ▶ Anatomy is important in assessing risk of rebleeding. Posterior DUs are highest risk as they are nearest to the gastroduodenal artery.

- Re-examine after 4h and ask about the need for FFP if >4 units transfused.
- Hourly pulse, BP, CVP, urine output (4hrly if haemodynamically stable may be OK).
- Transfuse to keep Hb >100g/L; always keep 2 units of blood in reserve.
- Check FBC, U&E, LFT, and clotting daily.
- Keep nil by mouth for 24h. Allow clear fluids after 24h and light diet after 48h, as long as there is no evidence of rebleeding (BOX and p254).

1 National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome & Death (NCEPOD) says that in 7% endoscopy is too late.

2 A patient with an aortic graft repair and upper GI bleeding is considered to have an aorto-enteric fistula until proven otherwise: CT abdomen is usually required as well as endoscopy.

3 A Dieulafoy lesion is the rupture of an unusually big arteriole, eg in the fundus of the stomach.

Gastritis

Causes: Alcohol, NSAIDs, *H. pylori*, reflux/hiatus hernia, atrophic gastritis, granulomas (Crohn's; sarcoidosis), CMV, Zollinger–Ellison & Ménétrier's disease (p730 & 720).

Presentation: Epigastric pain, vomiting; haematemesis. **Δ:** Endoscopy + biopsy.

Prevention: Give PPI gastroprotection with NSAIDs; this also prevents bleeding from acute stress ulcers/gastritis so often seen with ill patients (esp. burns) on ITU.

Treatment: Ranitidine or PPI; eradicate *H. pylori* as needed (p243). Triple therapy now often fails: quadruple R with bismuth subcitrate may be needed. Troxipide 100mg/8h PO improves gastric mucus. Endoscopic cautery may be needed.

Rockall risk-scoring for upper GI bleeds

Pre-endoscopy	0 pts	1 pt	2 pts	3 pts
Age ^I	<60yrs	60–79yrs	≥80yrs	
Shock: systolic BP & pulse rate ^I	BP >100mmHg Pulse <100/min	BP >100mmHg Pulse >100/min	BP <100mmHg	
Comorbidity ^I	Nil major	Heart failure; ischaemic heart disease	Renal failure Liver failure	Metastases
Post-endoscopy Diagnosis ^F	Mallory–Weiss tear; no lesion; no sign of recent bleeding	All other diagnoses	Upper GI malignancy	
Signs of recent haemorrhage on endoscopy ^F	None, or dark red spot		Blood in upper GI tract; adherent clot; visible vessel	

I These criteria make up the initial Rockall score.⁸⁷ **F** Added to the initial score, these criteria give the final Rockall score. Other scores have been compared prospectively—the Glasgow Blatchford score (GBS, see opposite), an age-extended GBS (EGBS), the Baylor bleeding score, and the Cedars-Sinai Medical Centre predictive index. The EGBS is the most promising but needs validating. No scoring system seems to accurately predict patients' 30-day mortality, or rebleeding.⁸⁸ See the non-parametric paradox p10, for one reason why. The table below is the most optimistic attempt to do so, but your patient may not behave as predicted.

Prediction of rebleeding and mortality from the Rockall score⁸⁹

Rockall scores help predict risk of rebleeding and mortality after upper GI bleeding.⁹⁰ An initial score >6 is said to be an indication for surgery, but decisions relating to surgery are rarely taken on the basis of Rockall scores alone (p254).

Score	Mortality with initial scoring	Mortality after endoscopy
0	0.2%	0%
1	2.4%	0%
2	5.6%	0.2%
3	11.0%	2.9%
4	24.6%	5.3%
5	39.6%	10.8%
6	48.9%	17.3%
7	50.0%	27.0%
8+	–	41.1%

Management of peptic ulcer bleeds based on endoscopic findings

High-risk⁹¹ Active bleeding or non-bleeding visible vessel: Admit patient to a monitored bed or ICU and perform endoscopic haemostasis (eg Endoclip).⁹² Start PPI by IVI (opposite). H₂ blockers and somatostatin (octreotide) have no role. If haemodynamically stable start oral intake of clear liquids 6h after endoscopy. Change to oral PPI after 72h. Eradication therapy if *H. pylori* is present.

Adherent clot: Remove at endoscopy and ensure haemostasis; treat as above.

Low-risk Flat, pigmented spot or clean base: There is no need for endoscopic haemostasis. Consider early hospital discharge after endoscopy if the patient has an otherwise low clinical risk and safe home environment. Treat with a PPI (p242). Initiate oral intake with a regular diet 6h after endoscopy in stable patients. Initiate treatment if positive for *H. pylori* (p243).



Endoscopy should be arranged after resuscitation, within 4h of a suspected variceal haemorrhage, or when bleeding is ongoing within 24h of admission (fig 1). It can: •Identify bleeding sites •Help estimate risk of rebleeding •Aid treatment—sclerotherapy, variceal banding (fig 2), or argon plasma coagulation (for superficial lesions).⁹³ **Endoscopic signs associated with risk of rebleeding:** Active arterial bleeding (80% risk); visible vessel (50% risk); adherent clot/black dots (30% risk).

Rebleeding 40% of rebleeders die of complications. Identify high-risk patients (TABLE, p253) and monitor closely for signs of rebleeding. IVI of **omeprazole** has a preventive role. Get help; **inform a surgeon at once if:** •Haematemesis with melaena •↑Pulse rate •↓CVP (assess via JVP or CVP line) •↓BP •↓Urine output.

Indications for surgery (p626) ►Contact the surgical team at the onset.

- Severe bleeding or bleeding despite transfusing 6u if >60yrs (8u if <60yrs).
- Active or uncontrollable bleeding at endoscopy—or rebleeding.
- Initial Rockall score ≥3 or final Rockall score >6 (but see TABLE, p253).

Oesophageal varices *Pathogenesis:* Progressive liver fibrosis + regenerative nodules produce contractile elements in the liver's vascular bed→Portal hypertension→Splanchnic vasodilation→Increased cardiac output→Salt and water retention→Hyperdynamic circulation/increased portal flow→Formation of collaterals between the portal and systemic systems, eg in the lower oesophagus and gastric cardia→Gastro-oesophageal varices develop once portal pressure (measured by hepatic venous pressure gradient) is >10mmHg→If >12mmHg variceal bleeding may be brisk→Death (more likely if clotting problems and advanced cirrhosis).⁹⁴ 6-week mortality depends on severity of liver disease (~0% for Child A; ~30% for Child C).⁹⁴ Rebleeding is common and is worse with large varices. NB: varices may also be found in the stomach, around the umbilicus (*caput medusae* is rare), and in the rectum.

Causes of portal hypertension *Pre-hepatic:* Thrombosis (portal or splenic vein). *Intra-hepatic:* Cirrhosis (80% in UK); schistosomiasis (commonest worldwide); sarcoid; myeloproliferative diseases; congenital hepatic fibrosis. *Post-hepatic:* Budd-Chiari syndrome (p710); right heart failure; constrictive pericarditis; veno-occlusive disease. **Risk factors for variceal bleeds:** ↑Portal pressure, variceal size, endoscopic features of the variceal wall (eg haematocystic spots) and Child-Pugh score ≥8 (p261).⁹⁵

Suspect varices as a cause of GI bleeding if there is alcohol abuse or cirrhosis. Look for signs of chronic liver disease, encephalopathy, splenomegaly, ascites, hyponatraemia, coagulopathy, and thrombocytopenia.

Prophylaxis *Primary:* ~30% of cirrhotics with varices bleed—reducible to 15% by: 1 Non-selective β-blockade (propranolol 40–80mg/12h PO) 2 Repeat endoscopic banding ligation. Which is better in cirrhosis? Studies give conflicting answers.^{96, 97} Deaths related to bleeding are similar (~7%), but ligation is riskier. Endoscopic sclerotherapy is not used as complications (eg stricturing) may outweigh benefits.⁹⁸

Secondary: After a 1st variceal bleed, 60% rebleed within 1yr. Options are 1 & 2 as above + transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunt (TIPS)¹ for varices resistant to banding (surgical shunt if TIPS is impossible for technical reasons). Endoscopic banding may be better than sclerotherapy (↓bleeding rates; fewer complications).⁹⁹

Acute variceal bleeding Get help at the bedside from your senior.

- Resuscitate until haemodynamically stable (avoid saline). If very anaemic, transfuse to Hb of 80g/L. NB: over-resuscitating may augment bleeding.
- Correct clotting abnormalities with **vitamin K** (p258), FFP and platelet transfusions. Studies on Factor VIIa failed to show benefit in terms of mortality.
- Start IVI of **terlipressin**, eg 1–2mg/6h for ≤3d; relative risk of death ↓ by 34%.¹⁰⁰ Somatostatin analogues are alternatives (less used in the UK).^{101, 102}
- Endoscopic banding (fig 2) or sclerotherapy should be tried (banding may be impossible because of limited visualization).
- If bleeding uncontrolled, a Minnesota tube or Sengstaken-Blakemore tube (see box) should be placed by someone with experience; get an anaesthetist's help.

Fig 1. Endoscopy image of a duodenal ulcer (p235). See also 'Lumen', p235 for what can happen when such ulcers bleed.

©Dr Jon Simmons.



Balloon tamponade with a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube

In life-threatening variceal bleeding, this can buy time for transfer to a specialist liver centre or for surgical decompression.¹ It uses balloons to compress gastro-oesophageal varices. Before insertion, inflate balloons with a measured volume (120–300mL) of air giving pressures of 60mmHg (check with sphygmomanometer).

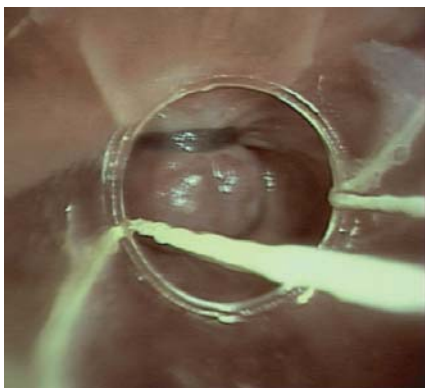
- Deflate, and clamp exits; then pass the lubricated tube (try to avoid sedation) and inflate the gastric balloon with the predetermined volume of air. Cooling the tube beforehand probably doesn't make it any easier to pass.¹⁰³
- ▶ Check position with a portable x-ray before inflating the oesophageal balloon.
- Check pressures (should be 20–30mmHg greater than on the trial run). This phase of the procedure is dangerous: do not over-inflate the balloon because of the risk of oesophageal necrosis or rupture.
- Tape to patient's forehead to ensure the gastric balloon impacts gently on the gastro-oesophageal junction.
- Place the oesophageal aspiration channel on continuous low suction and arrange for the gastric channel to drain freely.
- Leave *in situ* until bleeding stops. Remove after <24h.

Various other techniques of insertion may be used, and tubes vary in structure.

- ▶ Do not try to pass one yourself if you have no or little experience: ask an expert; if unavailable, transfer urgently to a specialist liver centre.

Fig 2. Endoscopic variceal banding involves sucking up a varix into the transparent banding chamber, then placing an elastic band around it. After a few days the banded varix starts to slough, leaving scar tissue in a shallow ulcer. Preventing recurrent variceal bleeds demands a combination of β -blockers and endoscopic band ligation. TIPS (transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunts)¹ are for when this has not worked (or will probably not work, 'early TIPS').

©Dr Jon Simmons.



1 TIPS shunts blood away from the portal circulation through an artificial side-to-side porto-systemic anastomosis in the liver; also used in uncontrolled variceal haemorrhage. Patients with associated renal failure, decreased cardiac preload, and decreased cardiac performance benefit most from TIPS.¹⁰⁴

► Consent is needed for all these procedures; see p570. SBE/IE prophylaxis isn't usually needed, but if neutropenic, immunocompromised, or partially draining possibly infected bile, antibiotics may be used (eg ciprofloxacin 750mg PO 1h pre-op).¹⁰⁵

Upper GI endoscopy *Indications:* BOX 1. *Pre-procedure:* Stop PPIs, etc 2wks pre-op if possible (∴ pathology-masking). Nil by mouth for 4h before. Don't drive for 24h if sedation is used. *Procedure:* Sedation, eg *midazolam* 1–5mg slowly IV (to remain conscious; if deeper sedation is needed, *propofol* via an anaesthetist (narrow therapeutic range)); nasal prong O₂ (eg 2L/min; monitor respirations & ECG, not just oximetry). The pharynx is sprayed with local anaesthetic before the endoscope is passed. Continuous suction must be available to prevent aspiration. *Complications:* Sore throat; amnesia from sedation; perforation (<0.1%); cardiorespiratory arrest (<0.1%). Bleeding can be a big problem (eg with sphincterotomies); get help if on clopidogrel or warfarin (stop 5d pre-op, start LMWH, p344, 48h later; restart warfarin on day 5).

Duodenal biopsy is the gold standard for diagnosing coeliac disease (p280). It is also useful in investigating unusual causes of malabsorption, eg giardiasis, lymphoma, Whipple's disease, amyloid, or microscopic colitis (p246).

Sigmoidoscopy views the rectum + sigmoid colon to splenic flexion. Do rigid or flexible sigmoidoscopy before barium enema in suspected cancer. Flexible sigmoidoscopes gain the best access (→splenic flexure), but ~25% of cancers are still out of reach. It can be used therapeutically (±insertion of a flatus tube) for decompression of sigmoid volvulus (BOX, p613). *Preparation:* Give a *phosphate enema*. *Procedure:* Learn from an expert; do PR exam first. Do biopsies—macroscopic appearances may be normal, eg IBD, amyloidosis, microscopic colitis.

Colonoscopy *Indications:* TABLE 2. *Preparation:* Stop iron 1wk pre-op; low residue diet 1–2d pre-op. Clear fluids but no solid food after lunch on the day before. *Sodium picosulfate* (Picolax®) 1 sachet for morning & afternoon on the day before. *Procedure:* Do PR first. Sedation (see above) and analgesia are given before a flexible colonoscope is passed and guided around the colon. *Complications:* Abdominal discomfort; incomplete examination; haemorrhage after biopsy or polypectomy; perforation (0.1%). See figs 2–6. Post-op: no alcohol, and advise against operating machinery for 1 day.

Video capsule endoscopy (VCE) "The best way to evaluate obscure GI bleeding (p320) and to detect small bowel Crohn's".¹⁰⁶ Do small bowel imaging (eg contrast) or patency capsule test ahead of VCE if patient has abdominal pain or symptoms suggesting small bowel obstruction. It surpasses CT enterography in finding small flat bowel bleeding lesions, and can detect oesophageal problems despite rapid transit. See BSG guidelines.¹⁰⁷

Pre-op: Clear fluids only the evening before then nil by mouth as for colonoscopy.

Procedure: A capsule (fig 1) transmits video via radio to pads on the skin. Movies are stored in a device worn on the belt. Normal activity can take place for the day. *Complications:* Capsule retention in 1% (endoscopic or surgical removal is needed); obstruction, incomplete exam (eg battery failure, slow transit, achalasia).

Problems: No therapeutic options; poor localization of lesions; may miss cancers (still a problem with newer devices, eg PillCam COLON 2—sensitivity only 77%).^{108, 109}

Liver biopsy Route: *percutaneous* if INR OK, or *transjugular* with fresh frozen plasma. *Indications:* LFT↑, chronic viral, alcoholic or autoimmune hepatitis; suspected cirrhosis or liver cancer; biopsy of hepatic lesions; PUO.

Pre-op: Nil by mouth for 8h. Are INR <1.5 and platelets >100×10⁹/L? Give analgesia.

Procedure: Sedation may be given. Do under US/CT guidance; the liver borders are percussed out and where there is dullness in the mid-axillary line in expiration, *lidocaine* 2% is infiltrated down to the liver capsule. Breathing is rehearsed and a needle biopsy is taken with the breath held in expiration. Afterwards lie on the right side for 2h, then in bed for 4h; do pulse and BP regularly.

Complications: Local pain; pneumothorax; bleeding (<0.5%); death (<0.1%).

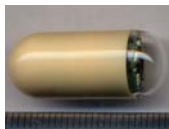


Fig 1. Capsule endoscopy.

Indications for upper GI endoscopy

Diagnostic indications

Haematemesis
New dyspepsia (if ≥ 55 yrs old, p242)
Gastric biopsy (?cancer)
Duodenal biopsy
Persistent vomiting
Iron deficiency (cancer, hiatus hernia^{etc})

Therapeutic indications

Treatment of bleeding lesions
Variceal banding and sclerotherapy
Stricture dilatation
Stent insertion, laser therapy
Argon plasma coagulation for suspected vascular abnormality

Indications for colonoscopy

Diagnostic indications

Rectal bleeding—when settled, if acute
Iron-deficiency anaemia (bleeding cancer)
Persistent diarrhoea
Biopsy of lesion seen on barium enema
Assessment or suspicion of IBD
Colon cancer surveillance

Therapeutic indications

Stents
Haemostasis (eg by clipping vessel)
Bleeding angiodysplasia lesion (argon beamer photocoagulation—delivers energy via gas in an ionized plasma)
Volvulus untwisting (decompression)
Pseudo-obstruction Polypectomy

Sherlock Holmes: A blood culture done for SBE grows *Strep bovis*...S.H. astounds Watson by inserting his colonoscope to apprehend a hidden but deadly cancer—the known but arcane portal of entry ('translocation') of this otherwise rare bug.



Fig 2. A big polyp seen on colonoscopy. An advantage of colonoscopy over barium enema is the ability to biopsy or intervene at the same time—in this case, polypectomy.



Fig 3. Colonoscopy image of an adenocarcinoma—p618. Compared with a colonic polyp (Fig 2), the carcinoma is irregular in shape and colour, larger and more aggressive.



Fig 4. Angiodysplasia lesion seen at colonoscopy. Bleeding may be brisk. R: Endoscopic obliteration. See p630. It is associated with aortic stenosis (Heyde's syndrome).¹¹⁰

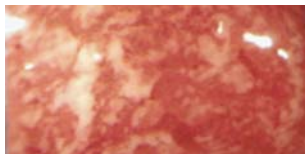


Fig 5. Colonic mucosa in active UC (p272); it is red, inflamed and friable (bleeds on touching). Signs of severity: mucopurulent exudate, mucosal ulceration \pm spontaneous bleeding. If quiescent, there may only be a distorted or absent mucosal vascular pattern.



Fig 6. Colonoscopy image showing diverticulosis (p630). Navigating safely through the colon, avoiding the false lumina of the diverticula, can be a challenge. Don't go there if diverticula are inflamed (diverticulitis): perforation is a big risk. **Other ci to colonoscopy:** MI in last month; ischaemic colitis (OHGH, p165).

Figs 2 & 4 courtesy of Dr Anthony Mee.

Figs 3, 5 & 6 courtesy of Dr J Simmons.

More images: gastrosource.com/kisweb/atlas.htm

Definitions Liver failure may occur suddenly in the previously healthy liver = acute hepatic failure. More often it occurs as a result of decompensation of chronic liver disease = acute-on-chronic hepatic failure. Fulminant hepatic failure is a clinical syndrome resulting from massive necrosis of liver cells leading to severe impairment of liver function: **hyperacute** = encephalopathy (BOX 2) within 7d of onset of jaundice; **acute** = within 8–28d; **subacute** = within 5–26wks. There is decreasing risk of cerebral oedema as the onset of encephalopathy is increasingly delayed.

Causes *Infections:* Viral hepatitis (esp B, C, CMV), yellow fever, leptospirosis. *Drugs:* Paracetamol overdose, halothane, isoniazid. *Toxins:* *Amanita phalloides* mushroom (fig 3, p251), carbon tetrachloride. *Vascular:* Budd–Chiari synd. (p710), veno-occlusive disease. *Others:* Alcohol, primary biliary cirrhosis, haemochromatosis, autoimmune hepatitis, α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency, Wilson's disease, fatty liver of pregnancy (OHCS p26), malignancy, HELLP syndrome (Haemolysis, Elevated Liver enzymes and Low Platelets; it is usually associated with pre-eclampsia) (OHCS p26).

Signs Jaundice, hepatic encephalopathy (see BOX 2), *fetor hepaticus* (smells like pear drops), asterix/flap (p50), constructional apraxia (cannot copy a 5-pointed star?). Signs of chronic liver disease (p260) suggest acute-on-chronic hepatic failure.

Tests *Blood:* FBC (?infection,¹?GI bleed), U&E,² LFT, clotting (TPT/INR), glucose, paracetamol level, hepatitis, CMV and EBV serology, ferritin, α_1 -antitrypsin, caeruloplasmin, autoantibodies (p268). *Microbiology:* Blood culture; urine culture; ascitic tap for MC&S of ascites—neutrophils $>250/\text{mm}^3$ indicates spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (p260). *Radiology:* CXR; abdominal ultrasound; Doppler flow studies of the portal vein (and hepatic vein in suspected Budd–Chiari syndrome, p710). *Neurophysiology:* EEG, evoked potentials (and neuroimaging) have a limited role.¹¹¹

Management ► Beware sepsis, hypoglycaemia, GI bleeds/varices & encephalopathy:

- Nurse with a 20° head-up tilt in ITU. Protect the airway with intubation and insert an NG tube to avoid aspiration and remove any blood from stomach.
- Insert urinary and central venous catheters to help assess fluid status.
- Monitor T°, respirations, pulse, BP, pupils, urine output hourly. Daily weights.
- Check FBC, U&E (BOX 2), LFT, and INR daily.
- 10% glucose IV, 1L/12h to avoid hypoglycaemia. Do blood glucose every 1–4h.
- Treat the cause, if known (eg GI bleeds, sepsis, paracetamol poisoning, p856). N-acetylcysteine probably does not help in non-paracetamol liver failure.¹¹²
- If malnourished, get dietary help: good nutrition can decrease mortality (eg carbohydrate-rich foods).¹¹³ Give *thiamine* and *folate* supplements (p728).
- Treat seizures with *lorazepam* (p836).¹¹⁴
- Haemofiltration or haemodialysis, if renal failure develops (BOX 2).
- Try to avoid sedatives and other drugs with hepatic metabolism (BOX and BNF).
- Consider PPI as prophylaxis against stress ulceration, eg *omeprazole* 40mg/d IV/po.
- Liaise early with nearest transplant centre regarding appropriateness—BOX 4.

Treat complications *Cerebral oedema:* On ITU: 20% *mannitol* IV; hyperventilate.

Ascites: Restrict fluid, low-salt diet, weigh daily, diuretics (p260).

Bleeding: *Vitamin K* 10mg/d IV for 3d, platelets, FFP + blood as needed \pm endoscopy.

Blind R_x of infection: *Ceftriaxone* 1–2g/24h IV, **not** gentamicin (risk of renal failure).

↓Blood glucose: If $\leq 2\text{mmol/L}$ or symptomatic, R_x 50mL of 50% glucose IV; check often.

Encephalopathy: Avoid sedatives; 20° head-up tilt in ITU; *lactulose* 30–50mL/8h + regular enemas to ↓numbers of nitrogen-forming gut bacteria; aim for 2–4 soft stools/d.

Worse prognosis if: grade III–IV encephalopathy, age >40 yrs, albumin $<30\text{g/L}$, \uparrow INR, drug-induced liver failure, late-onset hepatic failure worse than fulminant failure.

¹ Neutrophilic leucocytosis need not mean a secondary infection: alcoholic hepatitis may be the cause.

² Urea is synthesized in the liver, so is a poor test of renal function in liver failure; use creatinine instead.

Prescribing in liver failure

Avoid drugs that constipate (opiates, diuretics—risk of encephalopathy), oral hypoglycaemics, and saline-containing IVs. *Warfarin* effects are enhanced. **Hepatotoxic drugs include:** Paracetamol, methotrexate, isoniazid, azathioprine, phenothiazines, oestrogen, 6-mercaptopurine, salicylates, tetracycline, mitomycin.

Hepatic encephalopathy: letting loose some false neurotransmitters

As the liver fails, nitrogenous waste (as ammonia) builds up in the circulation and passes to the brain, where astrocytes clear it (by processes involving the conversion of glutamate to glutamine). This excess glutamine causes an osmotic imbalance and a shift of fluid into these cells—hence cerebral oedema.¹¹⁵ Grading:

- I** Altered mood/behaviour; sleep disturbance (eg reversed sleep pattern); dyspraxia ("Please copy this 5-pointed star"); poor arithmetic. No liver flap.
 - II** Increasing drowsiness, confusion, slurred speech ± liver flap, inappropriate behaviour/personality change (ask the family—don't be too tactful).
 - III** Incoherent; restless; liver flap; stupor, but not coma, which defines grade **IV**
- ▶ What else could be clouding consciousness? Hypoglycaemia; sepsis; trauma; postictal.

What is hepatorenal syndrome (HRS)?

Cirrhosis + ascites + renal failure ≈ HRS—if other causes of renal impairment have been excluded. Abnormal haemodynamics causes splanchnic and systemic vasodilatation, but renal **vasoconstriction**. Bacterial translocation, cytokines and mesenteric angiogenesis cause splanchnic vasodilatation, and altered renal auto-regulation is involved in the renal vasoconstriction.

Types of HRS: **HRS 1** is a rapidly progressive deterioration in circulatory and renal function (median survival <2wks), often triggered by other deteriorating pathologies. *Terlipressin* replenishes hypovolaemia. Haemodialysis may be needed.

HRS 2 is a more steady deterioration (survival ~6 months). Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunting is the best option for most (TIPS, p255).

Other factors in cirrhosis may contribute to poor renal function (p261).

Transplants Liver transplant may be required. After >8–12wks of pre-transplant dialysis, some may be considered for combined liver-kidney transplantation.^{116, 117}

King's College Hospital^{UK} criteria for liver transplantation

Paracetamol-induced liver failure Non-paracetamol liver failure

- Arterial pH <7.3 24h after ingestion

Or all of the following:

- Prothrombin time (PT) >100s
- Creatinine >300µmol/L
- Grade III or IV encephalopathy

- PT >100s

Or 3 out of 5 of the following:

- 1** Drug-induced liver failure
- 2** Age <10 or >40yrs old
- 3** >1wk from 1st jaundice to encephalopathy
- 4** PT >50s
- 5** Bilirubin ≥300µmol/L¹¹⁸

Fulfilling these criteria predicts poor outcome in acute liver failure. Transplants are cadaveric (heart-beating or non-heart-beating)¹ or from live donors (right lobe)—valid donor consent is a problem. See p263 for indications in chronic disease. Refer earlier rather than later, eg when ascites is refractory or after a 1st episode of bacterial peritonitis. **CI:** active sepsis; ↓life-expectancy (≤2yrs⁶) from concurrent diseases; psychosocial factors precluding immunosuppression.

¹ There is renewed interest in (and an increased number of) non-heart-beating cadaveric donors.¹¹⁹

Cirrhosis (Greek *kirrhos* = yellow) implies irreversible liver damage. Histologically, there is loss of normal hepatic architecture with bridging fibrosis and nodular regeneration.

Causes Most often chronic alcohol abuse, HBV, or HCV infection. Others: see BOX 1.

Signs May be none (just \uparrow LFT) or decompensated end-stage liver disease. **Chronic liver disease:** Leuconychia: white nails with lunulae undemarcated, from hypoalbuminaemia; Terry's nails—white proximally but distal $\frac{1}{4}$ reddened by telangiectasias;¹²⁰ clubbing; palmar erythema; hyperdynamic circulation; Dupuytren's contracture; spider naevi (**fig 1**); xanthelasma; gynaecomastia; atrophic testes; loss of body hair; parotid enlargement; hepatomegaly, or small liver in late disease.

Complications **Hepatic failure:** Coagulopathy (\downarrow factors II, VII, IX, & X causes \uparrow INR); encephalopathy—ie liver flap (asterix) + confusion/coma; hypoalbuminaemia (oedema, leuconychia); sepsis (pneumonia; septicæmia); spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP); hypoglycaemia. **Portal hypertension:** Ascites (**fig 2**); splenomegaly; portosystemic shunt including oesophageal varices (\pm life-threatening upper GI bleed) and *caput medusae* (enlarged superficial periumbilical veins). **HCC:** trisk.

Tests **Blood:** LFT: \leftrightarrow or \uparrow bilirubin, \uparrow AST, \uparrow ALT, talk phos, \uparrow γGT. Later, with loss of synthetic function, look for \downarrow albumin \pm \uparrow PT/INR. \downarrow WCC & \downarrow platelets indicate hypersplenism. **Find the cause:** Ferritin, iron/total iron-binding capacity (p262); hepatitis serology; immunoglobulins (p264); autoantibodies (ANA, AMA, SMA, p555); α -feto protein (p270); caeruloplasmin in patients <40yrs old (p269); α_1 -antitrypsin (p264). **Liver ultrasound + duplex** may show a small liver or hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, focal liver lesion(s), hepatic vein thrombus, reversed flow in the portal vein, or ascites. **MRI:** Caudate lobe size \uparrow , smaller islands of regenerating nodules, and the presence of the right posterior hepatic notch are more frequent in alcoholic cirrhosis than in virus-induced cirrhosis.¹²¹ MRI scoring systems based on spleen volume, liver volume, and presence of ascites or varices/collaterals can quantify severity of cirrhosis in a way that correlates well with Child grades (see BOX 3).¹²² **Ascitic tap** should be performed and fluid sent for urgent MC&S—neutrophils $>250/\text{mm}^3$ indicates spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (see below for treatment).

Liver biopsy (p256) confirms the clinical diagnosis.

Management **General:** Good nutrition is vital. Alcohol abstinence (p282). Avoid NSAIDs, sedatives, and opiates. **Colestyramine** helps pruritus (4g/12h PO, 1h after other drugs). Consider ultrasound \pm α -fetoprotein \bullet^* every 3–6 months to screen for HCC, p270.¹²³ **Specific:** For hepatitis-induced cirrhosis see p406. High-dose **ursodeoxycholic acid** in PBC (p266) may normalize LFT, but may have no effect on disease progression.¹²⁴ **Penicillamine** for Wilson's disease (p269). **Ascites:** Bed rest, fluid restriction ($<1.5\text{L/d}$), low-salt diet (40–100mmol/d). Give **spironolactone** 100mg/24h PO; \uparrow dose every 48h, to 400mg/24h—it counters deranged renin-angiotensin-aldosterone (RAA) axis. Chart daily weight and aim for weight loss of $\leq \frac{1}{2}\text{kg/d}$. If response is poor, add **furosemide** $\leq 120\text{mg/24h}$ PO; do U&E (watch Na^+) often. Therapeutic paracentesis with concomitant albumin infusion (6–8g/L fluid removed) may be tried. **Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP):** \blacktriangleright Must be considered in any patient with ascites who deteriorates suddenly (may be asymptomatic). Common organisms are *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, and streps.¹²⁵ **Rx:** eg **cefotaxime** 2g/6h or **tazocin**[®] 4.5g/8h (see datasheet) for 5d or until sensitivities known (+ **metronidazole** 500mg/8h IV if recent instrumentation to ascites). Give prophylaxis for high-risk patients (\downarrow albumin, \uparrow PT/INR, low ascitic albumin) or those who have had a previous episode: eg **norfloxacin** 400mg PO daily continued until death, transplant, or ascites resolves.¹²⁶ **Renal failure:** See BOX 4.

Prognosis Overall 5yr survival is $\sim 50\%$. Poor prognostic indicators: encephalopathy; serum $\text{Na}^+ < 110\text{mmol/L}$; serum albumin $< 25\text{g/L}$; \uparrow INR.

Liver transplantation is the only definitive treatment for cirrhosis (p263). This increases 5yr survival from $\sim 20\%$ in end-stage disease to $\sim 70\%$.¹²⁷





Fig 1. Spider naevi consist of a central arteriole, from which numerous vessels radiate (like the legs of a spider). These fill from the centre as opposed to telangiectasias that fill from the edge. They occur most commonly in skin drained by the superior vena cava. Up to 5 are said to be normal (they are common in young ♀). Causes include liver disease, contraceptive steroids, and pregnancy (ie changes in oestrogen metabolism).



Fig 2. Gross ascites. Note the umbilical hernia (p615) and a mild degree of gynecomastia. There are veins visible on the anterior abdominal wall, though they are not in the pattern of *caput medusae*.

Causes of cirrhosis

(cryptogenic in up to 20%)

- Chronic alcohol abuse
- Chronic HBV or HCV infection¹
- Genetic disorders: haemochromatosis (p262); α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency (p264); Wilson's disease (p269)
- Hepatic vein events (Budd-Chiari, p710)
- Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)
- Autoimmunity: primary biliary cirrhosis (p266); primary sclerosing cholangitis (p266); autoimmune hepatitis (p268)
- Drugs: eg amiodarone, methyldopa, methotrexate

Is cirrhosis becoming decompensated? ▶▶ Prepare to make an arrest...

Cirrhosis may lie in wait for years before committing one of its 3 great crimes against the person: jaundice, ascites, or encephalopathy. There are almost always accomplices who, if arrested *now*, may stop a killing from unfolding.² These usual suspects are: ▶dehydration ▶constipation ▶covert alcohol use ▶infection (eg spontaneous peritonitis, see above) ▶opiate over-use—or ▶an occult GI bleed. If all have alibis, think of portal vein thrombosis, and call in the Chief Inspector.

Child-Pugh grading of cirrhosis and risk of variceal bleeding

Grade A = 5–6, grade B = 7–9, grade C >10. Risk of variceal bleeding is much higher if score is >8. The grading can also be used to predict mortality² and quantify need for liver transplantation (p263). NB: all such scoring systems come with the 'non-parametric health warning', see p10.

	1 point	2 points	3 points
Bilirubin ($\mu\text{mol/L}$)	<34	34–51	>51
Albumin (g/L) ¹²⁸	>35	28–35	<28
Prothrombin time (seconds > normal)	1–3	4–6	>6
Ascites	none	slight	moderate
Encephalopathy (p259)	none	1–2	3–4

Cirrhosis and deteriorating renal function

In cirrhosis, ↓hepatic clearance of immune complexes leads to their trapping in the kidney (∴ IgA nephropathy ± hepatic glomerulosclerosis). HCV can cause cryoglobulinaemia ± membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis; HBV may cause membranous nephropathy ± PAN. Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis can occur in α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency.¹²⁹ See p259 for hepatorenal syndrome.

¹ Clues as to which patients with chronic HCV will get cirrhosis: platelet count $\leq 140 \times 10^9/\text{L}$, globulin/albumin ratio ≥ 1 , and AST/ALT ratio ≥ 1 —100% +ve predictive value but lower sensitivity (~30%).¹³⁰

² If Child-Pugh grade C, then 1yr survival is 42% and 5yr survival is 21% (vs 84 and 44% for grade A).

This is an inherited disorder of iron metabolism in which ↑ intestinal iron absorption leads to iron deposition in joints, liver, heart, pancreas, pituitary, adrenals and skin. Middle-aged men are more frequently and severely affected than women, in whom the disease tends to present ~10yrs later (menstrual blood loss is protective).

Genetics HH is one of the commonest inherited conditions in those of Northern European (especially Celtic) ancestry (carrier rate of ~1 in 10 and a frequency of homozygosity of ~1 in 200–400). The gene responsible for most HH is called HFE, found on the short arm of chromosome 6. The 2 major mutations are termed C282Y and H63D. C282Y accounts for 60–90% of HH, and H63D accounts for 3–7%, with compound heterozygotes accounting for 1–4%. Penetrance is unknown but is <100%.¹³¹

The patient *Early on*: Nil—or tiredness; arthralgia (2nd+3rd MCP joints + knee pseudogout); erections↓. *Later*: Slate-grey skin pigmentation; signs of chronic liver disease (p260); hepatomegaly; cirrhosis; dilated cardiomyopathy; osteoporosis.¹³² **Endocrinopathies**: DM ('bronze diabetes' from iron deposition in pancreas); hypogonadism (p224) from pituitary dysfunction↓ (not from testicular iron deposition, but may be via cirrhosis, esp. if drinks >60g/d of alcohol); hyporeninaemic hypoaldosteronism.¹³³

Tests **Blood**: ↑LFT, ↑serum ferritin (>1mg/L is very suggestive, but *any* inflammatory process can ↑ferritin); transferrin saturation >45%.¹ Glucose (?DM). HFE genotype.

Images: Chondrocalcinosis^{et al} (fig 1). Liver MRI: Fe overload (sensitivity 84–91%).

Liver biopsy: Perl's stain quantifies iron loading² and assesses disease severity.

ECG/ECHO if cardiomyopathy suspected.

Management **Venesection** ~1 unit/1–3wks, until ferritin ≤50μg/L (may take 2yrs). Iron will continue to accumulate, so maintenance venesection is needed for life (1u every 2–3 months to maintain haematocrit <0.5, ferritin <100μg/L, and transferrin saturation <40%). Consider desferrioxamine (p336) if intolerant of this. **Monitor**: LFT and glucose/diabetes (p198). Hb_{A1c} levels may be falsely low as venesection ↓ the time available for Hb glycosylation.¹³⁴

Over-the-counter drugs: Ensure vitamin preparations^{etc} contain no iron.

Diet: A well-balanced low-iron diet may help. Tea, coffee or red wine with meals ↓ iron absorption, but fruit/fruit juice (high in vit. c) and white wine ↑ absorption.

Screening: Serum ferritin and genotype. ► Screen 1st-degree relatives by genetic testing even if they are asymptomatic and have normal LFT (in young people LFT may be normal).¹³⁵ Prevalence of iron overload in asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes is ≤0.5%. How many will go on to develop iron overload is unknown.

Prognosis Venesection returns life expectancy to normal if non-diabetic and non-cirrhotic (and liver histology *can* improve). Arthropathy may improve or worsen. Gonadal failure is irreversible. ► If cirrhosis, 22–30% get hepatocellular cancer, especially if: age >50yrs (risk ↑ × 13), HBsAg +ve (risk ↑ × 5), or alcohol abuse (risk ↑ × 2).^{136, 137}

Secondary haemochromatosis may occur if many transfusions (~40L in total) have been given.¹³⁸ To reduce need for transfusions, find out if the haematological condition responds to erythropoietin or marrow transplantation before irreversible effects of iron overload become too great. See iron management in thalassaemia, p336.

1 In heterozygotes, biochemical tests may be normal or show mild ↑ in transferrin saturation or ferritin.

2 The HII aims to separate HH from other causes of hepatic siderosis (eg HBV; alcoholic cirrhosis). HII in μmol iron/gram liver/year = [iron concentration (μg iron per gram dry weight of liver)/55.846 (atomic weight of Fe)]/patient's age. HII >1.9 in a non-cirrhotic liver strongly suggests HH. ► **Caveats**: • ~7% of those with HH have an HII <1.9. Using a threshold hepatic iron concentration of 71μmol/g as well as HII can detect most of these.¹³⁹ • Cirrhotic livers can rapidly accumulate iron in non-HH liver disease making HII >1.9. Some say that an HII cut-off of ~4.2 is best in diagnosing HH in cirrhotics.¹⁴⁰ • Iron is not uniformly distributed in the liver (sampling variation). • Correlation among HII, phenotypic HH, and genotypic HH is not 100%.

A bit about iron metabolism

60% of body iron is in haemoglobin, and erythropoiesis requires ~5–30mg iron/day—provided by macrophages (recycling of haeme iron after phagocytosis of old RBCs). Intestinal iron absorption (1–2mg/day) compensates for daily iron losses.

Red meats, liver, seafoods, enriched breakfast cereals and pulses and some spices (eg paprika) are iron-rich. Most dietary iron is Fe^{3+} , which is reduced by low gastric pH and ascorbic acid (vitamin C) to better-absorbed Fe^{2+} . Absorption occurs mainly in the duodenum and jejunum, though very small amounts are absorbed in the stomach and ileum. Iron requirements are greater for women (menstrual loss), when growing, in pregnancy, and in chronic infection.

Hepcidin, a peptide synthesized in hepatocytes, secreted in plasma, is a negative regulator of gut iron absorption and haeme iron recycling by macrophages. Hepcidin synthesis is stimulated by iron and repressed by iron deficiency and by ↑ marrow erythropoiesis¹⁴¹ (eg in anaemia, bleeding, haemolysis, dyserythropoiesis or erythropoietin injections). A defect in activation of hepcidin normally triggered by iron excess causes haemochromatosis whereas a defect in hepcidin repression is responsible for an iron refractory iron deficiency anaemia.

In HH the total body iron is up to 10-fold that of a normal person, with loading found particularly in the liver and pancreas (×100). Hepatic disease classically starts with fibrosis, progressing to cirrhosis as a late feature.

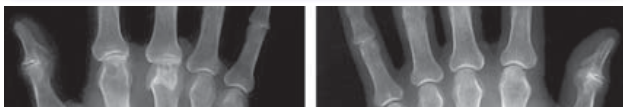


Fig 1. Haemochromatosis causes stressed joints to deteriorate faster than resting joints: the 2nd and 3rd MCP joints have osteophytes and narrowed joint spaces compared to the normal hand (right image) in this man who only used his dominant hand for his production line job.

From 'Haemochromatosis arthropathy & repetitive trauma', C Morgan, D Smith, 2012, with permission BMJ Publishing Group.

Liver transplantation in chronic liver disease

(for acute, see p259)

The first liver transplantation was in Denver, USA, in 1963. Now 800–1000 are done each year in the UK and Ireland. The limiting step for the procedure is often the waiting-list for a donor organ (live or cadaveric—see p259). The indications for transplantation in chronic disease (see TABLE) are generally because of advanced cirrhosis (p260), the grading of which has been used as a selection criterion.¹

Indications	Contraindications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Advanced cirrhosis secondary to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alcoholic liver disease • Hepatitis (B & C—or autoimmune) • Primary biliary cirrhosis (p266) • Wilson's disease (p269) • α_1-antitrypsin deficiency (p264) • Primary sclerosing cholangitis (p266) • Hepatocellular cancer (1 nodule <5cm or 2–3 nodules <3cm) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extrahepatic malignancy • Multiple tumours • Severe cardiorespiratory disease • Systemic sepsis • HIV infection • Non-compliance with drug therapy

The post-op period involves 12–24h on ITU, with enteral feeding starting as soon as possible and close monitoring of LFT. Immunosuppression examples: *ciclosporin* or *tacrolimus* + *azathioprine* or *mycophenolate mofetil* + *prednisolone*. Hyperacute rejection is a result of ABO incompatibility. Acute rejection (T-cell mediated, at 5–10d): the patient feels unwell with pyrexia and tender hepatomegaly—often managed by altering the immunosuppressives. Other complications: sepsis (esp. Gram -ve and CMV), hepatic artery thrombosis, chronic rejection (at 6–9 months), disease recurrence,¹⁴² and, rarely, graft-versus-host disease.¹⁴³ Average patient survival at 1yr is ~80% (5yr survival 60–90%; depends on the pre-op disease). Poor pre-transplant renal function may predict poor outcome.¹⁴⁴

1 The Model for End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) helps crack the conundrum of who should get a transplant.¹⁴⁵

A1AT deficiency is an inherited conformational disease¹ that can be fatal. It commonly affects lung (emphysema) and liver (cirrhosis and hepatocellular cancer, HCC) and can present in homozygous or heterozygous forms. A1AT is a glycoprotein and one of a family of **serine protease inhibitors** made in the liver that control inflammatory cascades. Deficiency is called a **serpinopathy**. It makes up 90% of serum α_1 -globulin on electrophoresis (p701). A1AT deficiency is the chief genetic cause of liver disease in children. In adults, its lack is more likely to cause emphysema. Lung A1AT protects against tissue damage from neutrophil elastase—a process that is also induced by cigarette smoking (p176). **Associations:** HCC (p270), asthma, pancreatitis, gallstones, Wegener's* (p728). **Prevalence:** ~1:4000 (higher in Caucasians).

Genetics The gene for this autosomal recessive disorder is found on chromosome 14; carrier frequency of 1:10. Genetic variants are typed by electrophoretic mobility as medium (M), slow (S), or very slow (Z). S and Z types are due to single amino acid substitutions at positions 264 and 342, respectively. These result in ↓production of α_1 -antitrypsin (S=60%, Z=15%). The normal genotype is P₁MM, the homozygote is P₁ZZ; heterozygotes are P₁MZ and P₁SZ (at low risk of developing liver disease).

The patient Symptomatic patients usually have the P₁ZZ genotype: dyspnoea from emphysema; cirrhosis; cholestatic jaundice. Cholestasis often remits in adolescence.

Tests Serum α_1 -antitrypsin (α_1 AT) levels↓, usually (eg <11μmol/L or <75% of lower limit of normal, which is ~0.9g/L; labs vary). Note the 'usually'. Because A1AT is part of the acute-phase response, inflammation may hide a low level. Unless you do genotyping, you will inevitably mis-label some cirrhosis as cryptogenic.¹⁴⁶ **Liver biopsy:** (p256) Periodic acid Schiff (PAS) +ve; diastase-resistant globules. **Phenotyping** by isoelectric focusing requires expertise to distinguish SZ and ZZ phenotypes. Phenotyping can miss null phenotypes. **Prenatal diagnosis** is possible by DNA analysis of chorionic villus samples obtained at 11–13wks' gestation. DNA tests are likely to find greater use in the future. Measuring lung density with CT may be better than lung function tests at predicting disease progression and mortality.¹⁴⁷

Management ☞ Do some joined-up thinking with GP, lung and liver specialists and geneticists (who else in the family needs testing?). Supportive Rx for emphysema and liver disease may be sufficient for some. Quit smoking. Giving IV A1AT pooled from human plasma is expensive and useless according to some, but COPD exacerbations **may** be prevented (no good randomized trials).^{148, 149} **Liver transplantation** is needed in decompensated cirrhosis. **Inhaled A1AT** has been tried in lung disease.

Prognosis Some patients have life-threatening symptoms in childhood, whereas others remain asymptomatic and healthy into old age. Worse prognosis if male, a smoker, or obese.¹⁵⁰ Emphysema is the cause of death in most, liver disease in ~5%. In adults, cirrhosis ± HCC affect 25% of A1AT-deficient adults >50yrs.

Some screening tests for chronic liver disease

- HBV and HCV serology (p406).
- Iron studies for haemochromatosis: ↑ferritin, ↑tiron, ↑TIBC (p262).
- α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency (plasma for genetics): see above.
- Wilson's disease: ↓serum copper, ↓ceruloplasmin (p269).
- PBC: ↑AMA (p266).
- PSC: ANA, AMA and ANCA may be +ve (p266).
- AIH (autoimmune hepatitis): ↑ANA + ↑ASMA; ↑IgG (p268).
- Immunoglobulins: IgA (↑ in alcoholic liver disease); IgG (↑ in AIH) and IgM (↑ in PBC).
- HCC: ↑ α -fetoprotein (p270).
- Conjugated and unconjugated bilirubin (for Gilbert's disease).

1 Serpinopathies entail inappropriate conformational change and self-association (polymerization) of a serpin molecule. Kinetic instability of serpin Z α_1 -antitrypsin promotes abnormal aggregation. How this causes injury is unclear, but in the lung it involves ↓antiprotease protection on airway epithelial surfaces.¹⁵¹



Approaches to abnormal liver function tests (LFTs)

Abnormal LFT can be found in ~17% of the asymptomatic general population. Also, remember that a normal LFT does not exclude liver disease.

Tests of hepatocellular injury or cholestasis

Aminotransferases (AST, ALT) are released in the bloodstream after hepatocellular injury. ALT is more specific for hepatocellular injury (but also expressed in kidney and muscle). AST is also expressed in the heart, skeletal muscle, and RBCs.¹⁵²

Alkaline phosphatase may originate from liver, bone (so raised in growing children), placenta, kidney, intestine, and WCC.¹⁵²

Gamma-glutamyltransferase (GGT; γ GT) is present in liver, pancreas, renal tubules and intestine—but not bone, so it helps tell if a raised alk phos is from bone (GGT↔) or liver (GGT↑). NB: it is not specific to alcohol damage to the liver.

Tests of hepatic function Serum albumin, serum bilirubin, PT (INR).

Hepatocellular predominant liver injury AST & ALT ↑. Evaluate promptly, eg history from family ("Could he be consuming alcohol?"); ultrasound for fatty liver, metastases,^{etc} viral serology (hepatitis A, B, C,^{etc} and Monospot®, p401).

Alcoholic liver disease: AST/ALT ratio is typically 2:1 or more. When the history is not reliable, normal alk phos, GGT ↑ and macrocytosis suggest this condition.¹⁵³

Acute viral hepatitis: AST & ALT ↑; bilirubin may be ↔. NB: AST may be ↑↑, p406 & p283.

Chronic viral hepatitis: AST & ALT ↑; HBV & C are a leading cause worldwide.


Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) occurs mainly in young and middle-aged females with concomitant autoimmune disorders (eg rheumatological or thyroiditis).¹⁵⁴

Fatty infiltration of the liver (p269) is probably the chief cause of mildly raised LFTs in the general population. Risk factors for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (steatohepatitis): obesity, DM, ↑lipids. It's a diagnosis of exclusion. One study found that in 83% of patients with elevated AST and ALT whose serum evaluation was otherwise negative, biopsy revealed steatosis of no prognostic significance. In 10% biopsy was normal—a reminder that mildly raised LFTs need not mean pathology.¹⁵⁵ Although US, CT, or MRI may help, biopsy is the gold standard.^{156,157}

Ischaemic hepatitis can be seen in conditions when effective circulatory volume is low (eg MI, hypotension, haemorrhage). AST and ALT are ↑, as well as LDH.¹⁵⁸

Drug-induced hepatitis: As no specific serology identifies most culprits, a good history is vital. Paracetamol overdose causes most acute liver failure in the UK.

Cholestasis predominant liver injury Alk phos and GGT↑; AST and ALT mildly↑.

Management For each specific diagnosis, manage accordingly. If asymptomatic and other tests are -ve, try lifestyle modification.  Help reduce weight and alcohol use (p282 & OHCS p513); control DM & dyslipidaemia; stop hepatotoxic drugs.

Follow-up Repeat tests after a few months; if still ↑, do US (±abdominal CT). If diagnosis still unclear, get help: is biopsy needed?; consider α_1 -antitrypsin levels, serum caeruloplasmin (Wilson's disease), coeliac serology, ANA and ASMA (AIH, p268).¹⁵⁵

Essence: Interlobular bile ducts are damaged by chronic autoimmune granulomatous¹ inflammation causing cholestasis which may lead to fibrosis, cirrhosis, and portal hypertension. **Cause:** Unknown environmental triggers (?pollutants, xenobiotics, non-pathogenic bacteria) + genetic predisposition (eg IL12A locus) leading to loss of immune tolerance to self-mitochondrial proteins. **Antimitochondrial antibodies (AMA)** are the hallmark of PBC. **Prevalence:** $\leq 4/100,000$. $\sigma:\sigma \approx 9:1$. **Risk \uparrow if:** +ve family history (seen in 1-6%); many UTIs; smoking; past pregnancy; other autoimmune diseases; \uparrow use of nail polish/hair dye. **Typical age at presentation:** ~ 50 yrs.

The patient Often asymptomatic and diagnosed after finding talk phos on routine LFT. Lethargy, sleepiness, and pruritus may precede jaundice by years. **Signs:** Jaundice; skin pigmentation; xanthelasma (p704); xanthomata; hepatosplenomegaly. **Complications:** Those of cirrhosis (p260); osteoporosis is common. Malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K) due to cholestasis and \downarrow bilirubin in the gut lumen results in osteomalacia and coagulopathy; HCC (p270, so check AFP twice-yearly).

Tests Blood: \uparrow Alk phos, \uparrow γGT, and mildly \uparrow AST & ALT; late disease: \uparrow bilirubin, \downarrow albumin, \uparrow prothrombin time. 98% are AMA M2 subtype +ve, eg in a titre of 1:40 (see above). Other autoantibodies (p555) may occur in low titres (see BOX). Immunoglobulins are \uparrow (esp. IgM). TSH & cholesterol \uparrow or \leftrightarrow . **Ultrasound:** Excludes extrahepatic cholestasis. **Biopsy:** Not usually needed (unless drug-induced cholestasis or hepatic sarcoidosis need excluding); look for granulomas around bile ducts \pm cirrhosis. Liver granuloma Δ : sarcoidosis, PBC, TB, parasites/schistosomiasis, brucellosis, & drug reactions.

Treatment Symptomatic: Pruritus: try *colestyramine* 4-8g/24h PO; *naltrexone* and *rifampicin* may also help. Diarrhoea: *codeine phosphate*, eg 30mg/8h PO. Osteoporosis prevention: p696. **Specific:** *Fat-soluble vitamin prophylaxis:* vitamin A, D and K. Consider high-dose *ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA)*. If baseline bilirubin $>24\mu\text{mol/L}$,¹⁵⁹ it may improve survival and delay transplantation. \bullet SE: weight \uparrow . Predictors of a good response to UDCA: alk phos normalizing or reducing to $<40\%$ of baseline; bilirubin falling to $<17\mu\text{mol/L}$.¹⁵⁹ **Monitoring:** Regular LFT; ultrasound; AFP. **Liver transplantation** (p263) is for end-stage disease (eg bilirubin $>100\mu\text{mol/L}$) or intractable pruritus. Histological recurrence in the graft: $\sim 17\%$ after 5yrs; although graft failure can occur as a result of recurrence, it is rare and unpredictable.

Prognosis Once jaundice develops, survival is <2 yrs without transplantation.¹⁶⁰

Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)

PSC entails progressive cholestasis with bile duct inflammation and strictures (figs 1, 2).

Symptoms/signs Pruritus \pm fatigue; if advanced: ascending cholangitis, cirrhosis and end-stage hepatic failure. **Associations:** \bullet σ sex \bullet HLA-A1; B8; DR3 \bullet AIH (BOX) (p268); $>80\%$ of Northern European patients also have inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), usually ulcerative colitis (UC) of the whole colon. IBD often presents before PSC. Despite typically inactive colitis, risk of colorectal malignancy is paradoxically much increased.

Cancers Bile duct, gallbladder, liver and colon cancers are more common, so do yearly colonoscopy + ultrasound; consider cholecystectomy for gallbladder polyps.²

Tests \uparrow Alk phos, then \uparrow bilirubin; hypergammaglobulinaemia; AMA -ve, but ANA, SMA, and ANCA may be +ve; see BOX and p555. **ERCP** (fig 1) distinguishes large duct from small duct disease. **Liver biopsy** shows a fibrous, obliterative cholangitis.

Treatment Liver transplant is the mainstay for end-stage disease; recurrence occurs in up to 30%; 5yr graft survival is $>60\%$. Prognosis is worse for those with IBD, as 5-10% develop colorectal cancer post-transplant.¹⁶⁰ *Ursodeoxycholic acid* may protect against colon cancer and improve LFT (histological benefit is less clear). High doses, eg 25-30mg/kg/d, may be harmful. *Colestyramine* 4-8g/24h PO for pruritus (*naltrexone* and *rifampicin* may also help). Antibiotics for bacterial cholangitis.

1 Other causes of liver granulomas: TB, sarcoid, infections with HIV (eg toxoplasmosis, CMV, mycobacteria), PAN, SLE, Wegener's*, lymphoma, syphilis, isoniazid, quinidine, carbamazepine, allopurinol. Signs: PUO; LFT \uparrow .

2 Usually GB polyps are an incidental finding on ultrasound, and they can often be left if $<1\text{cm}$ diameter, but in PSC they are much more likely to become malignant.¹⁶¹

Testing for autoantibodies—overlapping, nested mine-fields

The conditions opposite and on the next page all include the measurement of autoantibodies—with their varying sensitivities and specificities—as part of an investigative work-up. Quite often such a work-up shows strange overlap conditions between apparently different diseases: strange until we realize that it is the concept of a uniquely demarcated disease which is odd. The body knows no diseases, only pain and death. It is our own minds which force the unnatural construct of a unitary disease on unsuspecting and innocent cells and bodies.

For example, autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) overlaps with inflammatory bowel disease and PSC.¹⁶² Doing antimitochondrial, antinuclear, antismooth muscle, antiliver kidney microsomal type 1, antiliver cytosol type 1, perinuclear antineutrophil nuclear, and antisoluble liver antigen antibodies sometimes helps, and sometimes mystifies things further.¹⁶³ As ever, management should be individualized dependent on liver histology, serum immunoglobulin levels, autoantibodies, the degree of biochemical cholestasis, cholangiography, and the mood of the day.



Fig 1. ERCP showing many strictures in the biliary tree with a characteristic 'beaded' appearance. *MRCP* (fig 2) is more cost effective.

© Dr Anthony Mee (fig 1) & ©Norwich Radiology Department (fig 2).

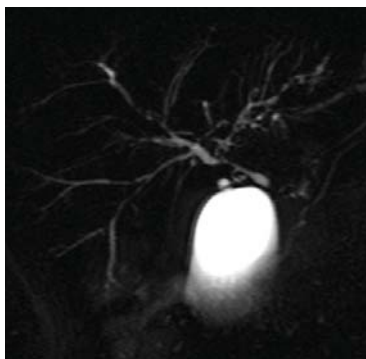


Fig 2. MRCP showing features of PSC. The intrahepatic ducts show multifocal strictures. (MRCP = magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography). Strictures can be hard to differentiate from cholangiocarcinoma (coexistence of uc may promote this development). Stenting may be needed.

An inflammatory liver disease of unknown cause¹ characterized by suppressor T-cell defects with autoantibodies directed against hepatocyte surface antigens. Classification is by autoantibodies (see TABLE). AIH predominantly affects young or middle-aged women (bimodal, ie 10–30yrs—or >40yrs old). Up to 40% present with acute hepatitis and signs of autoimmune disease, eg fever, malaise, urticarial rash, polyarthritides, pleurisy, pulmonary infiltration, or glomerulonephritis. The remainder present with gradual jaundice or are asymptomatic and diagnosed incidentally with signs of chronic liver disease. Amenorrhoea is common and disease tends to attenuate during pregnancy.

Complications: Those associated with cirrhosis (p260) and drug therapy.

Tests Serum bilirubin, AST, ALT and alk phos all usually ↑, hypergammaglobulinaemia (esp. IgG), +ve autoantibodies (see TABLE). Anaemia, WCC↓, and platelets↓ indicate hypersplenism. **Liver biopsy** (p256): mononuclear infiltrate of portal and periportal areas and piecemeal necrosis ± fibrosis; cirrhosis≈worse prognosis. **MRCP** (p756) helps exclude PSC if alk phos disproportionately ↑.

Diagnosis depends on excluding other diseases (no lab test is pathognomonic). Diagnostic criteria based on IgG levels, autoantibodies, and histology in the absence of viral disease are helpful.¹⁶⁴ Sometimes diagnosis is a challenge—there is overlap with other chronic liver disease: eg PBC (p266), PSC (p266) and chronic viral hepatitis.¹⁶⁵

Classifying autoimmune hepatitis: types I–III

- I** Seen in 80%. Typical patient: ♀ <40yrs. Antismooth muscle antibodies (ASMA) +ve in 80%.¹⁶⁶ Antinuclear antibody (ANA) +ve in 10%. IgG↑ in 97%. Good response to immunosuppression in 80%. 25% have cirrhosis at presentation.
- II** Commoner in Europe than USA. More often seen in children, and more commonly progresses to cirrhosis and less treatable. Antiliver/kidney microsomal type 1 (LKM1) antibodies +ve. ASMA and ANA -ve.
- III** Like type I but ASMA and ANA -ve. Antibodies against soluble liver antigen (SLA) or liver-pancreas antigen.

Management *Immunosuppressant therapy:* Prednisolone 30mg/d PO for 1 month; ↓by 5mg a month to a maintenance dose of 5–10mg/d PO. Corticosteroids can sometimes be stopped after 2yrs but relapse occurs in 50–86%. **Azathioprine** (50–100mg/d PO) may be used as a steroid-sparing agent to maintain remission. Remission is achievable in 80% of patients within 3yrs. 10- and 20yr survival rates are >80%.¹⁶⁷ SE are a big problem (p370)—partly ameliorated by a switch to **budesonide**, eg in non-cirrhotic AIH.¹⁶⁸

Liver transplantation (p263) is indicated for decompensated cirrhosis or if there is failure to respond to medical therapy, but recurrence may occur. It is effective (actuarial 10yr survival is 75%).

Prognosis appears not to matter whether symptomatic or asymptomatic at presentation (10yr survival ~80% for both). The presence of cirrhosis at presentation reduces 10yr survival from 94% to 62%. Overlap syndromes: AIH-PBC (primary biliary cirrhosis) overlap is worse than AIH-AIC (autoimmune cholangitis).

Associations of autoimmune hepatitis

- Pernicious anaemia
- Ulcerative colitis
- Glomerulonephritis
- Autoimmune thyroiditis
- Autoimmune haemolysis
- Diabetes mellitus
- PSC (p266)
- HLA A1, B8, and DR3 haplotype

¹ Hepatotrophic viruses (eg measles, herpes viruses) and some drugs appear to trigger AIH in genetically predisposed individuals exposed to a hepatotoxic *milieu intérieur*. Viral interferon can inactivate cytochrome P-450 enzymes (∴ ↓ metabolism of ex- or endogenous hepatotoxins). Putative examples of exogenous agents: monosodium glutamate (MSG; E621) and aspartame (E951), which, if regularly consumed in excess, may promote formation of salt bridges between amino acids. These compounds then act as autoantigens causing CD4 T-helper cell activation.^{169–170}

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) Prevalence: up to 30%

Fatty liver entails ↑fat in hepatocytes (steatosis) ± inflammation (steatohepatitis). The cause is often alcohol, but if a patient presents with LFT↑ (typically ALT↑) or a fatty liver on ultrasound, consider NAFLD if they drink <18U/wk (<9U in women). It may (rarely) progress to hepatic fibrosis ± hepatocellular cancer (all-cause mortality is hardly affected).¹⁷¹ **Typical patient:** Middle-aged obese ♀. **Risk factors:** DM; dyslipidaemia; parenteral feeding; jejuno-ileal bypass; Wilson's disease; drugs (eg amiodarone, methotrexate, tetracycline). **Δ:** Biopsy may be needed. **Treatment:** Control risk factors. Bariatric surgery helps. No drug is of proven benefit. **Follow-up:** LFT; glucose.

Wilson's disease/hepatolenticular degeneration

Wilson's disease is a rare (3/100,000) inherited disorder of biliary copper excretion with too much copper (Cu) in liver and CNS (basal ganglia, eg globus pallidus hypodensity ± putamen cavitation). It is treatable, so screen all youngsters with cirrhosis.

Genetics It is an autosomal recessive disorder of a gene on chromosome 13 that codes for a copper transporting ATPase, ATP7B. Many mutations are known (>200) with H1S1069GLU being the commonest in European populations.

Physiology Total body copper content is ~125mg. Intake ~3mg/day (absorbed in proximal small intestine). In the liver, copper is incorporated into caeruloplasmin. In Wilson's disease, intestinal copper absorption and transport into the liver are intact, while copper incorporation into caeruloplasmin in hepatocytes and its excretion into bile are impaired. Therefore, copper accumulates in liver, and later in other organs.

Signs Children present with *liver disease* (hepatitis, cirrhosis, fulminant liver failure); young adults often start with *CNS signs*: tremor; dysarthria, dysphagia; dyskinesias; dystonias; purposeless stereotyped movements (eg hand clapping); dementia; parkinsonism; micrographia; ataxia/clumsiness.

Mood: Depression/mania; labile emotions; libido↓; personality change. ▶ Ignoring these may cause years of needless misery. ☹️ Often the doctor who is good at combining the analytical and integrative aspects will be the first to make the diagnosis.

Cognition: Memory↓; quick to anger; slow to solve problems; IQ↓; delusions; mutism.

Kayser-Fleischer (KF) rings: Copper in iris (see 6 below); they are not invariable.

Also: Haemolysis; blue lunulae (nails); arthritis; hypermobile joints; grey skin.

Tests ▶ Equivocal copper studies need expert interpretation.

1 Urine: 24h copper excretion is *high*, eg >100µg/24h (normal <40µg).

2 LFT↑: Non-specific (but ALT >1500 is *not* part of the picture).

3 Serum copper: Typically <11µmol/L.

4 Serum caeruloplasmin↓: <200mg/L (<140mg/L is pathognomonic).

- **Falsely low caeruloplasmin:** Protein-deficiency states (eg nephrotic syndrome, malabsorption); any chronic liver disease can cause ↓synthesis.

- **Falsely high caeruloplasmin:** Caeruloplasmin is an 'acute phase reactant', so sometimes high in inflammation/infection and pregnancy.

5 Molecular genetic testing can confirm the diagnosis.

6 Slit lamp exam: KF rings: in iris/Descemet's membrane (fig 1 OHCS p448).

7 Liver biopsy: ↑Hepatic copper (Cu >250µg/g dry weight); hepatitis; cirrhosis.

8 MRI: Degeneration in basal ganglia, fronto-temporal, cerebellar and brainstem.¹⁷²

Management Diet: Avoid eating foods with a high copper content (eg liver, chocolate, nuts, mushrooms, legumes, and shellfish). Copper content of atypical water sources (eg well water) should be analysed. **Drugs:** Lifelong *penicillamine* (500mg/6-8h PO for 1yr, maintenance 0.75-1g/d). SE: nausea, rash, wcc↓, Hb↓, platelets↓, haematuria, nephrosis, lupus. Monitor FBC and urinary Cu and protein excretion. Say "report sore throat, T°↑, or bruising at once" in case wcc/platelets↓↓. Stop if wcc <2.5×10⁹/L or platelets falling (or <120×10⁹/L). **Alternative:** *Trientine dihydrochloride* 600mg/6-12h PO (SE: rash; sideroblastic anaemia). **Liver transplantation** (p263) if severe liver disease. **Screen siblings** as asymptomatic homozygotes need treating.

Prognosis: Pre-cirrhotic liver disease is reversible; CNS damage is less so. There are no clear clinical prognostic indicators.¹⁷³ Fatal events: liver failure, bleeding, infection.



The commonest (90%) liver tumours are secondary (metastatic) tumours, eg from breast, bronchus, or the gastrointestinal tract (see TABLE 2). Primary hepatic tumours are much less common and may be benign or malignant (see TABLE 1).

Symptoms Fever, malaise, anorexia, weight↓, RUQ pain (∴ liver capsule stretch). Jaundice is late, except with cholangiocarcinoma. Benign tumours are often asymptomatic. Tumours may rupture causing intraperitoneal haemorrhage.

Signs Hepatomegaly (smooth, or hard and irregular, eg metastases, cirrhosis, HCC). Look for signs of chronic liver disease (p260) and evidence of decompensation (jaundice, ascites). Feel for an abdominal mass. Listen for a bruit over the liver (HCC).

Tests **Blood:** FBC, clotting, LFT, hepatitis serology, α -fetoprotein¹ (↑ in 50–80% of HCC, though it is an uncertain prognostic indicator¹⁷⁴ may be normal if tumour <3cm).

Imaging: US or CT to identify lesions and guide biopsy. MRI is better at distinguishing benign from malignant lesions. Do ERCP (p756) and biopsy if cholangiocarcinoma is suspected. **Liver biopsy** (p256) may achieve a histological diagnosis; ►careful multidisciplinary discussion is required if potentially resectable, as seeding along the biopsy tract can occur. If the lesion could be a metastasis, find the primary, eg by CXR, mammography, endoscopy, colonoscopy, CT, MRI, or marrow biopsy.

Liver metastases signify advanced disease. Treatment and prognosis vary with the type and extent of primary tumour. Chemotherapy may be effective (eg lymphomas, germ cell tumours). Small, solitary metastases may be amenable to resection (eg colorectal cancer).¹⁷⁵ In most, treatment is palliative. **Prognosis:** Often <6 months.

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) Primary hepatocyte neoplasia accounts for 90% of primary liver cancers; it is common in China & Africa (40% of cancers vs 2% in UK).

The patient: Fatigue, appetite↓, RUQ pain, weight↓, jaundice, ascites, haemobilia: ♂:♀≈3.

Causes: HBV is the leading cause (esp. if >2.3×10⁴ virions/mL; this is quite a low level so most are at risk; p406). HCV;² AIH (p268); cirrhosis (alcohol, haemochromatosis, PBC); non-alcoholic fatty liver; aflatoxin; *Clonorchis sinensis*; anabolic steroids.

Δ: 4-phase CT (delayed wash-out of contrast in a suspect mass); MRI; biopsy.

Treatment: Resecting solitary tumours <3cm across ↑ 3yr survival to 59% from 13%; but ~50% have recurrence by 3yrs.³ Liver transplant gives a 5yr survival rate of 70%.⁴ Percutaneous ablation, tumour embolization (TACE⁵), and sorafenib are options.^{176, 177}

Prevention: ►HBV vaccination (BOX) ►Don't reuse needles ►Screen blood ►↓Aflatoxin exposure (sun-dry maize):¹⁷⁸ **AFP and ultrasound (eg 6-monthly screen):** Consider if at ↑ risk: eg Africans; older Asians; cirrhosis from HBV; family history of HCC.^{179, 180}

Cholangiocarcinoma (biliary tree cancer); ~10% of liver primaries. **Causes:** Flukes (*Clonorchis*, p445); PSC (screening by CA19-9 may be helpful, p266); biliary cysts; Caroli's disease, p250; HBV; HCV; DM;¹⁸¹ biliary-enteric drainage surgery;¹⁸² N-nitroso toxins.¹⁸³

The patient: Fever, abdominal pain (±ascites), malaise, ↑bilirubin; ↑alk phos.

Pathology: Usually slow-growing. Most are distal extrahepatic or perihilar.

Management: 70% are unsuited to surgery. Of those that are, 76% recur. **Surgery:** eg major hepatectomy + extrahepatic bile duct excision + caudate lobe resection. 5yr survival is ~30%.¹⁸⁴ Post-op complications include liver failure, bile leak and GI bleeding.¹⁸⁵ **Stenting** of an obstructed extrahepatic biliary tree, percutaneously or via ERCP (p756), improves quality of life. **Liver transplant** is rarely indicated (as tumour is >3cm, and intrinsic liver disease and mets are often present). **Prognosis:** ~5 months.

Benign tumours **Haemangiomas** are the commonest benign liver tumours. They are often an incidental finding on ultrasound or CT and don't require treatment. Avoid biopsy!! **Adenomas** are common. Causes: Anabolic steroids, oral contraceptive pill; pregnancy. Only treat if symptomatic, or >5cm.

1 Haemobilia is late in HCC. Think of bleeding into the biliary tree whenever Quinke's triad obtains: RUQ pain, upper GI haemorrhage, and jaundice. It may be life-threatening.

2 5yr cumulative risk if cirrhosis is present is 30% in Japan and 17% in USA.

3 Operative mortality: 1.6%.¹⁸⁶ Recurrence is more likely if histology showed neoplastic emboli in small vessels. Get early warning of recurrence by arranging imaging, eg if AFP >5.45µg/L (esp. if trend is rising).¹⁸⁷ Fibrolamellar HCC, which occurs in children and young adults, has a better prognosis.

4 Milan criteria for liver transplantation in HCC: 1 nodule <5cm or 2–3 nodules <3cm.

5 TACE=transarterial chemoembolization, eg with drug-eluting beads; it causes fever and abdo pain in 50%.

Primary liver tumours

Malignant (Prognosis—regardless of type—is poor)

HCC
 Cholangiocarcinoma
 Angiosarcoma
 Hepatoblastoma
 Fibrosarcoma & hepatic gastrointestinal stromal tumour (GIST², formerly leiomyosarcoma)

Benign

Cysts
 Haemangioma¹; common, ♀:♂ ≈ 5:1
 Adenoma
 Focal nodular hyperplasia
 Fibroma
 Benign GIST (=leiomyoma)

Origins of secondary liver tumours

Common in men

Stomach
 Lung
 Colon

Common in women

Breast
 Colon
 Stomach
 Uterus

Less common (either sex)

Pancreas
 Leukaemia
 Lymphoma
 Carcinoid tumours

Using vaccines to prevent hepatitis B, hepatitis B-associated cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis, and hepatic neoplasia

Use hepatitis B vaccine 1mL into deltoid; repeat at 1 & 6 months (child: 0.5mL × 3 into the anterolateral thigh). **Indications:** Everyone (WHO advice, even in areas of 'low' endemicity).¹⁸⁸ This is expensive, but not as expensive as trying to rely on the ultimately unsuccessful strategy of vaccinating at-risk groups (health workers, IV drug users, sexual adventurers, sex workers, those on haemodialysis, and partners of known HB_e antigen +ve carriers). The immunocompromised and others may need further doses. Serology helps time boosters and finds non-responders (correlates with older age, smoking, and ♂ sex). ► **Know your own antibody level!**

Anti-HBs (IU/L) Actions and comments (advice differs in some areas)

>1000	Good level of immunity; retest in ~4yrs.
100–1000	Good level of immunity; if level approaches 100, retest in 1yr.
<100	Inadequate; give booster and retest.
<10	Non-responder; give another set of 3 vaccinations. Retest; if <10 get consent to check hepatitis B status: HBsAg +ve means chronic infection; anti-HB core +ve represents past infection and immunity. If a non-responder is deemed susceptible to HBV, and has recently come in contact with risky bodily fluids, offer 2 doses of anti-hep B immunoglobulin.

NB: protection begins some weeks after dose 1, so it won't work if exposure is recent; here, specific antihepatitis B immunoglobulin is best if not already immunized. Twinrix® is an alternative that protects against hepatitis A and HBV.

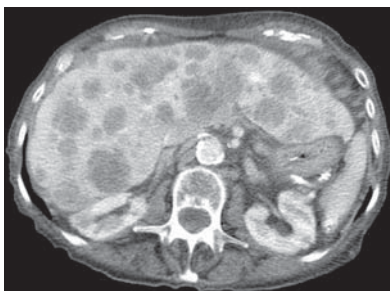


Fig 1. Axial CT of the liver after IV contrast showing many round lesions of varying size, highly suggestive of hepatic metastasis.

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

1 Haemangiomas are hyperechoic on ultrasound; may be part of von Hippel-Lindau syndrome; may need surgery if diagnosis is uncertain (may be confused with HCC) or they are enlarging on 6-monthly US.

2 GISTs are mesenchymal tumours that are more likely to be found in the gut as a spherical mass arising from the muscularis propria, eg with GI bleeding. If unresectable, imatinib ↑ 2yr survival from 26% to 76%.

uc is a relapsing and remitting inflammatory disorder of the colonic mucosa. It may affect just the rectum (proctitis, as in ~50%) or extend to involve part of the colon (left-sided colitis, in ~30%) or the entire colon (pancolitis, in ~20%). It 'never' spreads proximal to the ileocaecal valve (except for backwash ileitis). **Cause:** Unknown;¹ there is some genetic susceptibility. **Pathology:** Hyperaemic/haemorrhagic granular colonic mucosa ± pseudopolyps formed by inflammation. Punctate ulcers may extend deep into the lamina propria—inflammation is normally not transmural. Mucosal disease differentiates it from Crohn's disease. **Histology:** See biopsy, below. **Prevalence:** 100–200/100,000. **Incidence:** 10–20/100,000/yr. **♀:♂** >1:1. Most present aged 15–30yrs. uc is 3-fold as common in non-smokers (the opposite is true for Crohn's disease)—symptoms may relapse on stopping smoking.

Symptoms Episodic or chronic diarrhoea (± blood & mucus); crampy abdominal discomfort; bowel frequency relates to severity (see TABLE); urgency/tenesmus≈rectal uc. Systemic symptoms in attacks: fever, malaise, anorexia, weight↓.

Signs May be none. In acute, severe uc there may be fever, tachycardia, and a tender, distended abdomen. **Extraintestinal signs:** Clubbing; aphthous oral ulcers; erythema nodosum (p275); pyoderma gangrenosum; conjunctivitis; episcleritis; iritis; large joint arthritis; sacroiliitis; ankylosing spondylitis; fatty liver; psc (p266); cholangiocarcinoma; nutritional deficits; amyloidosis (p266).¹⁸⁹

Tests **Blood:** FBC, ESR, CRP, U&E, LFT, blood culture. **Stool MC&S/CDT** (p247) to exclude *Campylobacter*, *C. difficile*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *E. coli*, amoebae. **AXR:** No faecal shadows; mucosal thickening/islands (fig 2, p743); colonic dilatation (below). **Erect cxr:** Perforation. **Ba enema** (fig 1): Never do during severe attacks or for diagnosis.

Colonoscopy shows disease extent and allows biopsy (p256, fig 5)—look for inflammatory infiltrate; goblet cell depletion; glandular distortion; mucosal ulcers; crypt abscesses.

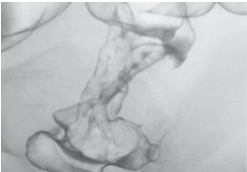


Fig 1. Ba enema: ulcers + loss of haustral pattern. ©OTM.

Assessing severity in uc (Truelove & Witts criteria modified to include CRP) ¹⁹⁰			
Variable	Mild uc	Moderate uc	Severe uc
Motions/day	<4	4–6	>6
Rectal bleeding	Small	Moderate	Large
T°C at 6AM	Apyrexial	37.1–37.8°C	>37.8°C
Resting pulse	<70 beats/min	70–90 beats/min	>90 beats/min
Haemoglobin	>110g/L	105–110g/L	<105g/L
ESR (do CRP too)	<30 (<16 might be better) ¹⁹¹		>30 (or CRP >45mg/L)

- Complications** ▶ Perforation and bleeding are 2 serious dangers, also:
- Toxic dilatation of colon (mucosal islands, colonic diameter >6cm).
 - Venous thrombosis: give prophylaxis to all inpatients (p344).¹⁹² Colonic cancer: risk≈15% with pancolitis for 20yrs. Intra-epithelial neoplasms may occur in flat, normal-looking mucosa. To spot these, surveillance colonoscopy is done, eg 2–4yrs, with 4 random biopsies/10cm. Endomicroscopy (expensive!) may ↑ detection rates.²

Inducing remission **Mild uc:** • 5-ASA³, eg sulfasalazine (SSZ) or mesalazine (=mesalamine) or olsalazine are the mainstay for remission-induction/maintenance. SSZ is cheapest and often as good (unless sulfa-allergic).¹⁹³ Once-a-day regimen: Mezavant XL® 2 gastro-resistant 1.2g tabs once daily.¹⁹⁴

• Steroids help remission induction, eg **prednisolone** ~20mg/d PO ± twice-daily steroid foams PR (eg **hydrocortisone** as Colifoam®), or **prednisolone** 20mg retention enemas (Predsol®).⁴ If improving in 2wks, ↓steroids slowly. If not treat as moderate uc.

Moderate uc: If 4–6 motions/day, but otherwise well, try oral **prednisolone** 40mg/d for 1wk, then 30mg/d for 1wk, then 20mg for 4 more weeks + 5-ASA³ (eg 4 Mezavant 1.2g tabs once daily) + twice-daily steroid enemas.⁴ If improving, ↓steroids gradually. If no improvement after 2 weeks, treat as severe uc.

Severe uc: If unwell and ≥ 6 motions/d, admit for nil by mouth & IV hydration (eg 1L of 0.9% saline + 2L dextrose-saline/24h, + 20mmol K⁺/L for maintenance; less if elderly).

- **Hydrocortisone** 100mg/6h IV.
- Rectal steroids, eg **hydrocortisone** 100mg in 100mL 0.9% saline/12h PR.
- Monitor T[°], pulse, and BP—and record stool frequency/character on a stool chart.
- Twice-daily exam: document distension, bowel sounds, and tenderness.
- Daily FBC, ESR, CRP, U&E \pm AXR. Consider blood transfusion (eg if Hb <90–100g/L). NB: day 3 CRP >45 or bowels open >8 \times /day = 85% chance of colectomy on this admission.
- Parenteral nutrition is only very rarely required (eg if severely malnourished).
- If improving in 5d, transfer to **prednisolone** PO (40mg/24h) with a 5-ASA (eg **sulfasalazine** 500mg/6h) to maintain remission.
- If on day 3 CRP >45 or >6 stools/d, \blacktriangleright action is probably needed, eg colectomy or **rescue therapy** with **ciclosporin** or **infliximab**, which can avoid urgent colectomy in steroid-refractory patients (the need for elective colectomy in the long-term is not modified).^{190, 195}

Topical therapies Proctitis may respond to **suppositories** (**prednisolone** 5mg or **mesalazine**, eg Asacol® 250mg/8h or Pentasa® 1g at bedtime). Topical 5-ASAs work better than topical steroids.¹⁹⁶ Procto-sigmoiditis may respond to **foams** PR (20mg Predfoam®/12–24h or 5-ASA, eg Asacol® 1g/d); disposable applicators aid accurate delivery. Retention enemas may be needed in left-sided colitis.

Surgery This is needed at some stage in ~20%, eg **proc-tolectomy** + **terminal ileostomy**: It may be possible to retain the ileocecal valve, and hence reduce liquid loss.¹⁹⁷ **Colectomy** with **ileo-anal pouch** later. **Surgical mortality**: 2–7%, higher if perforation. **Pouchitis** may improve with antibiotics (eg **metronidazole** + **ciprofloxacin** for 2wks) and immunosuppressants.¹⁹⁸

Indications:

Perforation
Massive haemorrhage
Toxic dilatation
Failed medical therapy

It's time for immunomodulation if... no remission comes with steroids, or if prolonged use is required. Agents: azathioprine, methotrexate, infliximab, adalimumab or calcineurin inhibitors (ciclosporin; tacrolimus).¹⁹⁹ Dose example: **Azathioprine** (2–2.5mg/kg/d PO after food).²⁰⁰ Treat for several months, and monitor FBC every 4–6wks.

Maintaining remission All **5-ASAs** ↓relapse rate from 80% to 20% at 1yr—examples are **sulfasalazine**, **mesalazine**, and **olsalazine**.⁴ Maintenance continues for life. **Sulfasalazine** (500mg/6h PO) is 1st-line. ⚡ SEs relate to sulfapyridine intolerance (headache, nausea, anorexia). Warn of SEs: T[°]t, rash, haemolysis (\blacktriangleright monitor FBC and U&E at start, then at 3 months, then annually), hepatitis, pancreatitis, paradoxical worsening of colitis, and reversible oligospermia.²⁰¹ **Newer 5-ASAs** (eg **mesalazine** 400–800mg/8h PO or **olsalazine** 500mg/12h PO) are as good at maintaining remission, have fewer SEs, but are more expensive. They are indicated in **sulfasalazine** intolerance and young men in whom fertility is a concern (less effect on sperm).²⁰²



Diagnosing 'indeterminate colitis'

After full investigation, IBD may not obviously be Crohn's or uc. Indeterminate colitis more often resembles uc, and may be due to unrecognized variants of uc with transmural inflammation or skip lesions. Colectomy + pouch formation may be needed (see MINIBOX), though pouch failure rate is higher than in uc.²⁰³

1 Crohn's and uc may involve adhesin-expressing strains of *E. coli* capable of inducing interleukin-8 production and transepithelial migration of WBCs.²⁰⁴

2 Confocal laser endomicroscopy (CLE) allows real-time micron-scale live imaging and on-table decisions with less need for repeat procedures. With CLE we go beyond histology: we can watch capillary circulation, cellular death, and vascular and endothelial translocation. Proving that all this saving lives is hard.²⁰⁵

3 Sulfasalazine is a 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA, the active ingredient) + sulfapyridine (carries 5-ASA to the colon, where it is cleaved off); mesalazine is 5-ASA and olsalazine is a dimer of 5-ASA that is also cleaved in the colon. Rare hypersensitivity reactions: worsening colitis, pancreatitis, pericarditis, nephritis.

4 Budesonide (Entocort®) enemas, 1 nocte, may have fewer SEs \therefore ↓suppression of plasma cortisol.²⁰⁶

A chronic inflammatory GI disease characterized by transmural granulomatous inflammation affecting any part of the gut from mouth to anus (esp terminal ileum (in ~70%) and proximal colon). Unlike UC, there is unaffected bowel between areas of active disease (skip lesions). **Cause:** Unknown.¹ Mutations of the NOD2/CARD15 gene trisk. **Prevalence:** 0.5–1/1000; less if Asian. ♀/♂ >1. **Incidence:** 5–10/100,000/yr. Presentation is mostly at ~20–40yrs. **Associations:** Altered cell-mediated immunity. Smoking trisk ×3–4; NSAIDs may exacerbate disease. **Classification:** Complex!²

Symptoms Diarrhoea/urgency ("I get up at 4AM, go 5–6 times in the next 45mins..."), abdominal pain, weight loss/failure to thrive. Fever, malaise, anorexia. "I can be fine one minute, and deathly ill the next. The vomiting, the pain, the diarrhoea that smells so bad it could clear Grand Central Station in 0.5 seconds...I have even been attacked after I came out of the bathroom by 3 guys because I stunk up the place."

Signs Aphthous ulcerations; abdominal tenderness/mass; perianal abscess/fistulae/skin tags; anal strictures. **Beyond the gut:** (fig 1) clubbing, skin, joint & eye problems.

Complications Small bowel obstruction; toxic dilatation (colonic diameter >6cm, toxic dilatation is rarer than in UC); abscess formation (abdominal, pelvic, or ischio-rectal); fistulae (present in ~10%), eg colovesical (bladder), colovaginal, perianal, enterocutaneous; perforation; rectal haemorrhage; colon cancer; fatty liver, PSC (p266), cholangiocarcinoma, renal stones, osteomalacia, malnutrition, amyloidosis.

Tests **Blood:** FBC, ESR, CRP, U&E, LFT, INR, ferritin, TIBC, B₁₂, folate. **Stool** MC&S and CDT (p247) to exclude *C. difficile*, *Campylobacter*, *E. coli*^{et al}. **Colonoscopy + rectal biopsy** even if mucosa looks normal (20% have microscopic granulomas). **Small bowel enema** detects ileal disease. **Capsule endoscopy** (p256, dummy patency capsule 1st that disintegrates if it gets stuck). **Barium enema** (rarely used): cobblestoning, 'rose thorn' ulcers ± colon strictures. **Colonoscopy** (fig 2) is preferred to barium enema to assess disease extent. **MRI** can assess pelvic disease and fistulae (as good as EUA). Small bowel **MRI** assesses disease activity and shows site of strictures.

Rx Find out how your patient deals with what may be a brutal disease (no intimacy...no sex...no hope..."I live with this alone and will die alone"). With a collaborative approach, courage, attention to detail and a dose of humour, this can change. Help quit smoking. ▶ **Optimize nutrition** (BOX). Assess severity: T[†], pulse[†], tESR, tWCC, tCRP + talbumin may merit admission (esp. if he looks ill). NB: the liver often switches to making CRP-type proteins rather than albumin. Specific options: aminosaliclates, steroids, immunosuppressants, TNF inhibitors, antibiotics, diet/supplements.

Mild attacks: (Symptomatic but systemically well). **Prednisolone** 30mg/d po for 1wk, then 20mg/d for 4wks. See in clinic 3-weekly. If symptoms resolve, ↓prednisolone by 5mg every 2–4 weeks; stop steroids when parameters are normal (see also BOX).

Severe: Looks ill. Admit for IV steroids, nil by mouth, and IVI (eg 1L 0.9% saline + 2L dextrose-saline/24h, + 20mmol K⁺/L, less if elderly). **Hydrocortisone** 100mg/6h IV.

- Treat rectal disease: steroids, eg **hydrocortisone** 100mg in 100mL 0.9% saline/12h PR.
- **Metronidazole** 400mg/8h po, or 500mg/8h IV, helps (esp. in perianal disease or superadded infection). SEs: alcohol intolerance; irreversible neuropathy.
- Monitor T[°], pulse, BP, and record stool frequency/character on a stool chart.
- Physical examination daily. Daily FBC, ESR, CRP, U&E, and plain AXR.
- Consider need for blood transfusion (if Hb <100g/L) and parenteral nutrition.
- If improving after 5d, transfer on to oral **prednisolone** (40mg/d). If not, **infliximab** and **adalimumab** have a role (esp. in fistulizing Crohn's). CI: CCF; infection. ^{NICE 2010}
- Consider abdominal sepsis complicating Crohn's disease especially if abdominal pain (ultrasound, CT & MRI are often required to assess this). Seek surgical advice.

Perianal disease occurs in about 50%. MRI and examination under anaesthetic (EUA) are an important part of assessment. Treatment includes oral antibiotics, immunosuppressant therapy ± **infliximab**, and local surgery ± seton insertion.²⁰⁷

1 Environmental agents are implicated. Genetics: colon involvement goes with ↑CARD15 gene expression in macrophages & intestinal epithelial cells.²⁰⁸ Dysregulated immune responses might be primary or from infecting gut commensals, eg *Mycobacterium avium* para-TB;²⁰⁹ *E. coli* adhesins, p273, may have a role.

2 Vienna classification into 24 groups depending on age (> or <40yrs), site affected, and behaviour.



Additional therapies in Crohn's disease (useful in $\leq 50\%$ of patients)

Azathioprine (AZA) (2–2.5mg/kg/d PO) can be used as a steroid-sparing agent, eg if steroid SEs, and if there are multiple/rapid relapses. It takes 6–10 weeks to work.²¹⁰ Steroids are so disappointing in the long term that *early combined immunosuppression* (azathioprine + infliximab \pm steroids) is a tempting early option ('reversing the pyramid'). But evidence is scant; get expert advice.^{211, 212}

Sulfasalazine Efficacy of 5-ASA in Crohn's is unproven but high-dose PENTASA post-op in patients with ileal resection may \downarrow recurrent disease.

TNF α inhibitors TNF α plays an important role in pathogenesis of Crohn's disease, therefore TNF α inhibitors, eg *infliximab* and *adalimumab*, can \downarrow disease activity. They counter neutrophil accumulation and granuloma formation, activate complement, and cause cytotoxicity to CD4+ T-cells, thus clearing cells driving the immune response. Response may be short-lived, but it may be repeated at 8wks. Trials have also shown it to be effective as maintenance therapy.²¹³ CI: Sepsis, \uparrow LFT >3 -fold above top end of normal, concurrent *ciclosporin* or *tacrolimus*. SE: Rash. Avoid in people with known underlying malignancy.²¹⁴ TB may reactivate when on infliximab, so screen patients before starting the treatment (CXR, PPD). Cost per QALY: (see p10) £6700 (higher in fistulizing Crohn's).²¹⁵ According to SONIC trial, combined AZA and infliximab can \uparrow efficacy of R₁ at 12 months, but there are long-term safety issues (eg hepatosplenic T cell lymphomas).

Methotrexate A large randomized trial recommended 25mg IM weekly for remission induction, enabling complete withdrawal from steroids in patients with refractory Crohn's. NNT ≈ 5 —see p669. There was no evidence for lower doses, and no substantial SE were found.²¹⁶ Methotrexate is contraindicated in pregnancy.

Nutrition Enteral is preferred (eg polymeric diet); consider TPN as a last resort. *Elemental diets* (E028[®]) contain amino acids and can give remission.^{217, 218} Low residue diets help control Crohn's activity, but won't on their own give remission.

Antibiotics such as rifaximin EIR (extended intestinal release) 800mg/d PO gave a remission in one RCT.²¹⁹ Probiotics (eg lactobacilli): no randomized data.²²⁰

IV immunoglobulin Small series report rapid benefit (no randomized trials).²²¹

Surgery 50–80% need ≥ 1 operation in their life. It never cures. In the severely affected, it can become a devastating cycle of deterioration. Indications: drug failure (most common); GI obstruction from stricture; perforation; fistulae; abscess. Surgical aims are: **1** to defunction (rest) distal disease, eg with a temporary ileostomy or **2** resection of the worst areas—but see short bowel syndrome, p582.²²² Bypass and pouch surgery is not done in Crohn's (\therefore risk of recurrence).

Poor prognosis if: Age <30 yrs (onset age is bimodal: peaks 20–30 yrs and 60–70); steroids needed at 1st presentation; perianal disease; diffuse small bowel disease.



Fig 1. Beyond the gut... "I hate how this stupid illness is crippling me..." As well as erythema nodosum on the shins (above; also caused by sarcoid, drugs, streptococci and TB) Crohn's can associate with sero-ve arthritis of big joints, spondyloarthropathy, ankylosing spondylitis, sacroiliitis, pyoderma gangrenosum, conjunctivitis, episcleritis, and iritis.

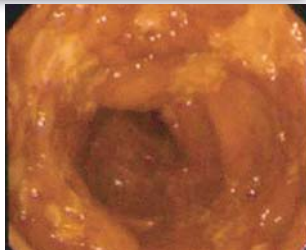


Fig 2. Deep fissured ulcers seen at colonoscopy. The end result? "My family does not or will not even talk to me about the disease ... I don't know when urgency to race for the bathroom will happen so I don't go out and have been living a hermit life..."

©Dr A Mee.

IBS denotes a mixed group of abdominal symptoms for which no organic cause can be found. Most are probably due to disorders of intestinal motility or enhanced visceral perception (the 'brain-gut' axis: see BOX). Several diagnostic criteria exist that evaluate symptoms and their duration (eg Manning, Rome II/III);^{223, 224} but they are not always helpful in practice because of complex interactions between IBS and chronic pain syndromes (BOX).²²⁵ **Prevalence:** 10–20%; age at onset: ≤ 40 yrs; $\text{♀}:\text{♂} \geq 2:1$.

Diagnosis Only diagnose IBS if abdominal pain (or discomfort) is either relieved by defecation *or* associated with altered stool form or bowel frequency (constipation and diarrhoea may alternate) *and* there are ≥ 2 of: urgency; incomplete evacuation; abdominal bloating/distension; mucous PR; worsening of symptoms after food. Other symptoms: nausea, bladder symptoms, backache. Symptoms are chronic (>6 months), and exacerbated by stress, menstruation, or gastroenteritis (post-infection IBS). **Signs:** Examination is often normal, but general abdominal tenderness is common. Insufflation of air during sigmoidoscopy (*not* usually needed) may reproduce the pain. **Think of other diagnoses if:** Age >40 yrs (esp male); history <6 months; anorexia; weight \downarrow ; waking at night with pain/diarrhoea; mouth ulcers; abnormal CRP, ESR, Hb, coeliac serology. **Investigate PR bleeding urgently.** **Management** See BOX.

Carcinoma of the pancreas

Epidemiology: $\leq 2\%$ of all malignancy; ~ 6500 deaths/yr (UK). UK incidence is rising. **Typical patient:** $\text{♂} >60$ yrs old. **Risk factors:** Smoking, alcohol, carcinogens, DM, chronic pancreatitis, waist circumference \uparrow (ie adiposity)²²⁶ and possibly a high fat and red or processed meat diet.²²⁷ **Pathology:** Mostly ductal adenocarcinoma (metastasize early; present late). 60% arise in the pancreas head, 25% in the body, 15% tail. A few arise in the ampulla of Vater (ampullary tumour) or pancreatic islet cells (insulinoma, gastrinoma, glucagonomas, somatostatinomas (p215), VIPomas); both have a better prognosis. **Genetics:** $\sim 95\%$ have mutations in the KRAS2 gene.

The patient Tumours in the head of the pancreas present with painless obstructive jaundice. 75% of tumours in the body and tail present with epigastric pain (radiates to back and relieved by sitting forward). Either may cause anorexia, weight loss, diabetes or acute pancreatitis. **Rarer features:** Thrombophlebitis migrans (eg an arm vein becomes swollen and red, then a leg vein); $\text{Ca}^{2+}\uparrow$; marantic endocarditis; portal hypertension (splenic vein thrombosis); nephrosis (renal vein metastases). **Signs:** Jaundice + palpable gallbladder (Courvoisier's 'law', p250); epigastric mass; hepatomegaly; splenomegaly; lymphadenopathy; ascites.

Tests **Blood:** Cholestatic jaundice. CA19-9† (p534) is non-specific, but helps assess prognosis. **Imaging:** US or CT can show a pancreatic mass \pm dilated biliary tree \pm hepatic metastases. They can guide biopsy and help staging prior to surgery/stent insertion. Compared to MRI and CT, EUS (endoscopic sonography) is most accurate for diagnosis and staging.²²⁸ ERCP (p756) shows biliary tree anatomy and may localize the site of obstruction. **R:** Most ductal cancers present with metastatic disease; $<20\%$ are suitable for radical surgery. Don't automatically exclude if hepatic or mesenteric arteries are invaded; they can be reconstructed.²²⁹ **Surgery:** Consider pancreatoduodenectomy (Whipple's, p279), eg if fit and with no metastases. Post-op morbidity is high (mortality $<5\%$); non-curative resection confers no survival benefit. **Laparoscopic excision:** Tail lesions are easiest. **Post-op chemotherapy** delays disease progression. **Palliation of jaundice:** Endoscopic or percutaneous stent insertion may help jaundice and anorexia. Rarely, palliative bypass surgery is done for duodenal obstruction or unsuccessful ERCP. **Pain:** Disabling pain may need big doses of opiates (p576), or radiotherapy. Coeliac plexus infiltration with alcohol may be done at the time of surgery, or percutaneously. Referral to a palliative care team is essential.

Prognosis Often dismal (but keep up-to-date as chemotherapy is improving). Mean survival <6 months. 5yr survival: 3% ^{UK}. Overall 5yr survival after Whipple's procedure (p279) 5–14%. Prognosis is better if: tumour $<3\text{cm}$; no nodes involved; $-ve$ resection margins at surgery; ampullary or islet cell tumours.²²⁶



Managing IBS

Make a **positive** diagnosis (OPPOSITE) but also try to exclude other diagnoses, so:

- If the history is classic, FBC, ESR, CRP, LFT & coeliac serology (p280) are sufficient.
- If ≥ 50 yrs or any marker of organic disease ($T^{\circ}t$, blood PR, weight \downarrow): colonoscopy.
- Have a low threshold for referring if family history of ovarian or bowel cancer.
- Excluding ovarian cancer may need serum CA-125 (OHCS p281; if >35 do US scan).
- If diarrhoea is prominent do: LFT; stool culture; B_{12} /folate; anti-endomysial antibodies (coeliac, p280); TSH; consider referral \pm barium follow-through (if symptoms suggest small bowel disease) \pm rectal biopsy.

Further investigation should be guided by symptoms and include:

- Upper GI endoscopy (dyspepsia, reflux) or small bowel radiology (Crohn's).
- Duodenal biopsy (coeliac disease), eg if anti-endomysial antibodies +ve.
- Giardia tests, p436 (it often triggers IBS; antiparasitic Rx may not help).²³⁰
- ERCP (p756, eg chronic pancreatitis) or MRCP (p756) if active pancreatitis.
- Transit studies and anorectal physiological studies—rarely used.

Refer if: **1** Diagnosis unsure **2** If changing symptoms in 'known IBS' **3 To surgeon** if rectal mucosal prolapse **4 To dietician** if food intolerance³ **5 To psycho- or hypnotherapist** if stress or depression (seen in $\geq 50\%$) or refractory symptoms (here, NICE favours cognitive therapy, OHCS p372) **6 To gynaecologist** if cyclical pain, dyspareunia, dysmenorrhoea; CA-125 \uparrow ; endometriosis (OHCS p288) often mimics IBS **7 To dermatologist** if co-existing atopy (IBS is 3-fold more common in atopy)²³¹ **8 To yourself** (wearing a different hat) or **pain clinic** if **chronic pain overlap syndromes** (fibromyalgia + chronic fatigue + chronic pelvic pain) or detrusor problems.

Rx Treatment is rarely 50% successful, so aim to make symptoms less intrusive by forging a **therapeutic alliance**. **Explanation** and **reassurance** are vital as is **interdisciplinary teamwork** (interdisciplinary implies a harmonized approach, not just multidisciplinary with each specialist ploughing his own furrow).²³² Ensure a healthy diet; fibre, lactose, fructose, wheat, starch, caffeine, sorbitol, alcohol and fizzy drinks may worsen symptoms. Probiotics and water-soluble fibre may be OK. Many IBS patients report food intolerance², but few clinicians consider food hypersensitivity to be a cause of IBS. No tests can identify food intolerance reliably. ^{NICE 2012} Dietary elimination and food challenge data are contradictory. Further Rx depends on which symptoms predominate:

- **Constipation:** The standard healthy diet (p236) may be problematic: fibre intake can worsen flatulence/bloating; avoid insoluble fibre, such as bran (oats are better). **Bisacodyl** and **sodium picosulfate**²³³ can help constipation. **Ispaghula** has non-fermentable water-soluble fibre—better than **lactulose** which ferments (tgas production is hard to distinguish from bloating)²³⁴
- **Diarrhoea:** Avoid sorbitol sweeteners; try a bulking agent \pm **loperamide** 2mg after each loose stool; max 16mg/d (NNT=5); SE: colic, bloating, ileus.
- **Colic/bloating:** Oral antispasmodics: **mebeverine** 135mg/8h (over the counter); **alverine citrate** 60–120mg/8h;²³⁵ **dicycloverine** 10–20mg/8h.²³⁶ Adding **simeticone** (=dimeticone; it's in Imodium Plus[®]) improves spasm.²³⁷ Once-daily **Bacillus coagulans** GBI-30, **B. infantis** 35624, **E. coli** DSM17252 and **L. acidophilus**.^{238, 239}
- **Psychological symptoms/visceral hypersensitivity:** Emphasize the positive! In 50% symptoms go or improve after 1yr; $<5\%$ worsen. Consider cognitive behaviour therapy (OHCS p372), hypnosis,¹ and tricyclics, eg **amitriptyline** 10–50mg at night (SE: dry mouth^{etc}); explain that it's for chronic pain (\pm depression).^{240, 241} NNT=6. Explain that all forms of abuse (sexual, physical, verbal) perpetuate IBS.

The future Interest is being expressed in modulating the brain-gut axis by 5-HT₃ antagonists (eg alosetron; 2012 data show it can \uparrow quality of life and \downarrow restriction of daily activities in women with severe diarrhoea-predominant IBS, but it has a chequered regulatory history owing to SE, eg ischaemic colitis).²⁴²

1 Food intolerance: dietary fibre and lactose (milk and dairy foods). Wheat resistant starch, caffeine, fructose, sorbitol, alcohol and fizzy drinks.

2 12wks of hypnosis helps abnormal sensory perception:²⁴³ \blacktriangleright Do not think of hypnosis as dubious; it is a neat way to influence the brain-gut axis, reducing doctor dependency and stopping patients from being patients (passive recipients of suffering). Benefits may last ≥ 5 yrs.^{244, 245}

► Always consider that more than one nutritional disorder is likely to be present.

Scurvy is due to lack of vitamin C.¹ Is the patient poor, pregnant, or on an odd diet? **Signs:** **1** Listlessness, anorexia, cachexia (p29). **2** Gingivitis, loose teeth, and foul-breath (halitosis). **3** Bleeding from gums, nose, hair follicles, or into joints, bladder, gut. **4** Muscle pain/weakness. **5** Oedema.^{246, 247} **Diagnosis:** No test is completely satisfactory. WBC ascorbic acid↓. **Rx:** Dietary education; *ascorbic acid* ≥250mg/24h po.

Beriberi There is heart failure with general oedema (wet beriberi) or neuropathy (dry beriberi) due to lack of vitamin B₁ (thiamine). For treatment and diagnostic tests, see Wernicke's encephalopathy (p728).

Pellagra = lack of nicotinic acid. Classical triad: **d**iarrhoea, **d**ementia, **d**ermatitis (Casal's necklace) ± neuropathy, depression, insomnia, tremor, rigidity, ataxia, fits. It may occur in carcinoid syndrome and anti-TB drugs (isoniazid). It is endemic in China and Africa. **Rx:** Education, electrolyte replacement, *nicotinamide* 100mg/4h po.²⁴⁸ See BOX.

Xerophthalmia This vitamin A deficiency syndrome is a big cause of blindness in the Tropics. Conjunctivae become dry and develop oval/triangular spots (Bitôt's spots). Corneas become cloudy and soft. Give **vitamin A** (OHCSp450). ► Get special help if pregnant: vitamin A embryopathy must be avoided. Re-educate and monitor diet.

Carcinoid tumours

This is a specialized area! A diverse group of tumours of enterochromaffin cell (neural crest) origin, by definition capable of producing 5HT. Common sites: appendix (45%), ileum (30%) or rectum (20%).² They also occur elsewhere in the GI tract, ovary, testis, and bronchi. 80% of tumours >2cm across will metastasize (ie consider all as malignant). **Symptoms & signs:** Initially few. GI tumours can cause appendicitis, intussusception, or obstruction. Hepatic metastases may cause RUQ pain. Tumours may secrete bradykinin, tachykinin, substance P, VIP, gastrin, insulin, glucagon, ACTH (∴ Cushing's syndrome), parathyroid, and thyroid hormones. 10% are part of MEN-1 syndrome (p215); 10% occur with other neuroendocrine tumours.²⁴⁹

Carcinoid syndrome occurs in ~5% and implies hepatic involvement.

Symptoms and signs: Bronchoconstriction; paroxysmal flushing especially in upper body (± migrating weals); diarrhoea; CCF (tricuspid incompetence and pulmonary stenosis from 5HT-induced fibrosis). **CNS effects:** Many, eg enhanced ability to learn new stimulus-response associations.²⁵⁰ ► **Carcinoid crisis:** See BOX.

Δ 24h urine 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid† (5HIAA, a 5HT metabolite; levels change with drugs and diet, eg bananas, avocado, walnuts, pineapple, coffee, chocolate: discuss with lab). CXR + chest/pelvis MRI/CT help locate primary tumours. Plasma chromogranin A (reflects tumour mass); ¹¹¹Indium octreotide scintigraphy (octreoscan);²⁵¹ and positron emission tomography (p753) also have a role. Echocardiography and BNP (p131) can be used to investigate carcinoid heart disease.²⁵² **ΔΔ:** GIST.³

Rx **Carcinoid syndrome:** *Octreotide* (somatostatin analogue) blocks release of tumour mediators and counters peripheral effects. Alternative: *lanreotide*. Effects lessen over time. Other options: *loperamide* or *cyproheptadine* for diarrhoea;²⁵³ *interferon-α* as add-in therapy²⁵⁴ with *octreotide*.²⁵⁴ **Tumour therapy:** Resection is the only cure for carcinoid tumours (fig 1), so it is vital to find the primary site (see above). At surgery, tumours are an intense yellow. Procedures depend on site, eg rectal carcinoid tumours <1cm can be resected endoscopically.²⁵⁵ Debulking (eg enucleating), embolization, or radiofrequency ablation of hepatic metastases can ↓ symptoms. Give *octreotide* cover to avoid precipitating a massive carcinoid crisis.

Median survival 5-8yrs (~3yrs if metastases are present, but may be up to 20yrs; so beware of giving up too easily, even in metastatic disease).²⁴⁹

1 That oranges and lemons prevent 'the scurvy' was noted by the naval surgeon James Lind in 1753.²⁵⁶

2 Some are never clinically detected: 1 in 300 autopsies have a small bowel carcinoid tumour.

3 Gastrointestinal stromal tumours (GISTs) are mesenchymal tumours arising from interstitial Cajal cells of the wall of the gut. They may co-exist with carcinoid tumours.²⁵⁷

►► Carcinoid crisis

When a tumour outgrows its blood supply or is handled too much during surgery, mediators flood out. There is life-threatening vasodilatation, hypotension, tachycardia, bronchoconstriction and hyperglycaemia. It is treated with high-dose *octreotide*, supportive measures and careful management of fluid balance (ie a central line is needed—see p789 for insertion technique).

Food mountains, the pellagra paradox, and the sorrow that weeping cannot symbolize¹

'The sweet smell is a great sorrow on the land. Men who can graft the trees and make the seed fertile and big can find no way to let the hungry people eat their produce ... The works of the roots of the vines, of the trees, must be destroyed to keep up the price ...

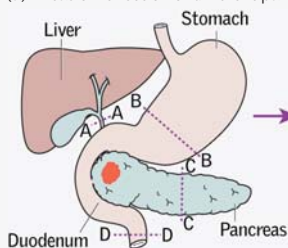
There is a crime here that goes beyond denunciation. There is a sorrow here that weeping cannot symbolize. There is a failure here that topples all our success. The fertile earth, the straight tree rows, the sturdy trunks, and the ripe fruit. And children dying of pellagra must die because a profit cannot be taken from an orange. And coroners must fill in the certificates—died of malnutrition—because the food must rot, must be forced to rot.

The people come with nets to fish for potatoes in the river, and the guards hold them back; they come in rattling cars to get the dumped oranges, but the kerosene is sprayed. And they stand still and watch the potatoes float by, listen to the screaming pigs being killed in a ditch and covered with quicklime, watch the mountains of oranges slop down to a putrefying ooze; and in the eyes of the people there is a failure; and in the eyes of the hungry there is a growing wrath. In the souls of the people the grapes of wrath are filling and growing heavy, growing heavy for the vintage.'

How do John Steinbeck's grapes grow in our 21st-century soil? Too well; a double harvest, it turns out, as not only is much of the world starving, amid plenty (for those who can pay) but also there is a new 'sorrow in our land that weeping cannot symbolize': pathological 'voluntary' **self-starvation**, again amid plenty, in pursuit of the body-beautiful according to images laid down by media gods. If gastroenterologists had one wish it might not be the ending of all their diseases, but that humankind stand in a right relationship with Steinbeck's fertile earth, his straight trees, his sturdy trunks, and his ripe fruit.

Whipple's procedure

(a) Areas of reflection of different parts



(b) Post-operation

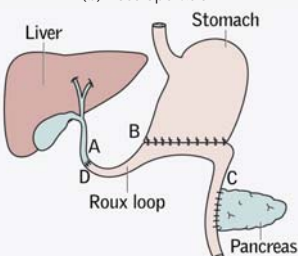


Fig 1. Whipple's procedure may be used for removing masses in the head of the pancreas—typically from pancreatic carcinoma or, rarely, a carcinoid tumour.²⁵⁸

Symptoms Diarrhoea; ↓weight; lethargy; steatorrhoea (stool fatt; hard to flush away) bloating.

Deficiency signs Anaemia (↓Fe, B₁₂, folate); bleeding disorders (↓vit K); oedema (↓protein); metabolic bone disease (↓vit D); neurological features, eg neuropathy.

Tests FBC (↓ or ↑MCV); ↓Ca²⁺; ↓Fe; ↓B₁₂ + folate; tINR; lipid profile; coeliac tests (below). **Stool:** Sudan stain for fat globules; stool microscopy (infestation); α₁AT (p264), elastase. **Ba follow-through:** Diverticula; Crohn's; radiation enteritis. **Breath hydrogen analysis:** for bacterial overgrowth.¹ Take samples of end-expired air; give glucose; take more samples at ½h intervals; texhaled hydrogen = overgrowth. **Endoscopy + small bowel biopsy, ERCP:** (p756) biliary obstruction; chronic pancreatitis. **Causes** See BOX.

Tropical malabsorption (*Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium*, *Isospora belli*, *Cyclospora cayentanensis*, microsporidia). **Tropical sprue:** Villous atrophy + malabsorption occurring in the Far and Middle East and Caribbean—the cause is unknown. **Tetracycline** 250mg/6h PO + **folic acid** 15mg/d PO + optimum nutrition may help.²⁵⁹

Coeliac disease

► Suspect this in all those with diarrhoea + weight loss or anaemia (esp. if iron or B₁₂ ↓). It is a T-cell-mediated autoimmune disease of the small bowel in which prolamins (alcohol-soluble proteins in wheat, barley, rye ± oats) intolerance causes villous atrophy and malabsorption (including of bile acids).^{2,3} **Associations:** HLA DQ2 in 95%; the rest are DQ8; autoimmune disease; dermatitis herpetiformis. **Prevalence:** 1 in 300–1500 (commoner if Irish). **Typical age:** Any (peaks in infancy and 50–60yrs). **♀:♂** >1:1. There is a 10% prevalence in 1st-degree relatives and a 30% relative risk for siblings.

Presentation Stinking stools/steatorrhoea; diarrhoea; abdominal pain; bloating; nausea + vomiting; aphthous ulcers; angular stomatitis (p321, fig 2); weight ↓; fatigue; weakness; osteomalacia; failure to thrive (children). ¼ are asymptomatic.

Diagnosis Hb↓; RCDW↑ (p319); B₁₂↓, ferritin↓. Antibodies: α-gliadin, transglutaminase and anti-endomysial—an I_aA antibody, 95% specific unless patient is I_aA-deficient. Duodenal biopsy done at endoscopy (p256—as good as jejunal biopsy if ≥4 taken): subtotal villous atrophy, intra-epithelial WBCs + crypt hyperplasia, reversing on gluten-free diet (along with ↓symptoms & antibodies). ► Exclude coeliac in all labelled as IBS (p276).

Treatment Lifelong gluten-free diet (ie no prolamins)—patients become experts. Rice, maize, soya, potatoes, oats (≤50g/d);²⁶⁰ and sugar are OK. Gluten-free biscuits, flour, bread, and pasta are prescribable. Verify diet by endomysial antibody tests.

Complications Anaemia; 2° lactose-intolerance⁴; GI T-cell lymphoma (rare; suspect if refractory symptoms or ↓weight); ↑risk of malignancy (gastric, oesophageal, bladder, breast, brain); myopathies; neuropathies; hyposplenism; osteoporosis.

Chronic pancreatitis

Epigastric pain 'bores' through to back, eg relieved by sitting forward or hot water bottles on epigastrium/back (look for *erythema ab igne*'s mottled dusky greyness); bloating; steatorrhoea; ↓weight; brittle diabetes. Symptoms relapse and worsen.

Causes: Alcohol; rarely: familial; cystic fibrosis; haemochromatosis; pancreatic duct obstruction (stones/tumour); ↑PTH; congenital (*pancreas divisum*).

Tests **Ultrasound** ± CT (pancreatic calcifications confirm the diagnosis), MRCP + ERCP (risks acute attack); **AXR:** speckled calcification; ↑glucose; breath tests, eg ¹³C-holien.²⁶¹

Treatment **Drugs:** Give analgesia (coeliac-plexus block may give brief relief);²⁶² lipase, eg Creon®; fat-soluble vitamins (eg Multivite®). Insulin needs may be high or variable (beware hypoglycaemia). **Diet:** No alcohol; low fat may help. Medium-chain triglycerides (MCT oil®) may be tried (no lipase needed for absorption, but diarrhoea may be worsened). **Surgery:** For unremitting pain; narcotic abuse (beware of this); weight↓: eg pancreatectomy or pancreaticojejunostomy (a duct drainage procedure).

Complications Pseudocyst; diabetes; biliary obstruction; local arterial aneurysm; splenic vein thrombosis; gastric varices; pancreatic carcinoma.

Causes of gastrointestinal malabsorption

Common in the UK Coeliac disease; chronic pancreatitis; Crohn's disease.

Rarer

- **↓Bile:** Primary biliary cirrhosis; ileal resection; biliary obstruction; colestyramine.
- **Pancreatic insufficiency:** Pancreatic cancer; cystic fibrosis.
- **Small bowel mucosa:** Whipple's disease (p730); radiation enteritis; tropical sprue; small bowel resection; brush border enzyme deficiencies (eg lactase insufficiency); drugs (metformin, neomycin, alcohol); amyloid (p364).
- **Bacterial overgrowth:** Spontaneous (esp. in elderly); in jejunal diverticula; post-op blind loops. DM & PPI use are also risk factors. Try *metronidazole* 400mg/8h po or *oxytetracycline* 250mg/6h. Don't confuse with afferent loop syndrome (p624).
- **Infection:** Giardiasis; diphyllobothriasis (B₁₂ malabsorption); strongyloidiasis.
- **Intestinal hurry:** Post-gastrectomy dumping; post-vagotomy; gastrojejunostomy.

Deficiency syndromes and the sites of nutrient absorption

Vitamin/nutrient	Site of absorption	Deficiency syndrome
A ^F	Small intestine	Xerophthalmia (p278)
B ₁ (thiamine)	Small intestine	Beriberi (p278); Wernicke's encephalopathy (p728)
B ₂ (riboflavin)	Proximal small intestine	Angular stomatitis; cheilitis (p238)
B ₆ (pyridoxine)	Small intestine	Polyneuropathy
B ₁₂	Terminal ileum	Macrocytic anaemia (p326); neuropathy; glossitis
C	Proximal ileum	Scurvy (p278)
D ^F	Jejunum as free vitamin	Rickets (p698); osteomalacia (p698)
E ^F	Small intestine	Haemolysis; neurological deficit
K ^F	Small intestine	Bleeding disorders (p338)
Folic acid	Jejunum	Macrocytic anaemia (p326)
Nicotinamide	Jejunum	Pellagra (p278)
Mineral		
Calcium	Duodenum + jejunum	p690
Copper	Stomach + jejunum	Menkes' kinky hair syndrome
Fluoride	Stomach	Dental caries
Iodide	Small intestine	Goitre; cretinism
Iron	Duodenum + jejunum	Microcytic anaemia (p320)
Magnesium	Small intestine	p693
Phosphate	Small intestine	Osteoporosis; anorexia; weakness
Selenium	Small intestine	Cardiomyopathy (p693)
Zinc	Jejunum	Acrodermatitis enteropathica; poor wound healing (p693)

^F = fat-soluble vitamin, thus deficiency is likely if there is fat malabsorption.

1 Bacterial overgrowth proximal to the colon causes diarrhoea, abdominal pain, vitamin malabsorption and possibly malnutrition. Causes: old age, chronic pancreatitis; HIV; bacteria not killed by gastric acid (PPI; achlorhydria); fistulae; post-gastrectomy/Roux-en-Y; jejunal diverticula; amyloidosis; autonomic neuropathy. Diagnosis: breath test or culture of duodenal aspirate ($>10^5$ colonies/mL). *OHGH* p226.

2 Bile acid malabsorption: too much bile getting to the colon causes watery diarrhoea. There is also bloating ± gallstone formation. Causes: coeliac or Crohn's, post-cholecystectomy syndrome, or radiation enteritis. Δ : SeHCAT test (selenium homocholic acid taurine): *OHGH* p232. R : ↑fluid intake (to ↓risk of forming oxalate stone); bile acid sequestrants (colestyramine; colestipol; colesvelam); vitamins A, D, E and K.²⁶⁴

3 Infectious causes have been implicated: eg *Candida albicans* could be one trigger. HWP1 has amino acid sequences identical to coeliac disease-related α -gliadin T-cell epitopes.²⁶⁵

4 Lactose intolerance (lactase ↓ on brush border, *OHGH* p384) causes bloating, colic, wind and diarrhoea after milk products. Investigate with the lactose hydrogen breath test. Lactase can be replaced, if a lactose-free diet does not agree. Probiotics may have a role.²⁶³

An alcoholic is one whose repeated drinking leads to harm in work or social life. Intake ranges from bingeing to heavy daily use, and is usually tied in with other life or health issues. Other addictions may also be involved. Lifetime prevalence: $\sim 10\%$ ($\text{♀} \approx 4\%$). ► Denial is a leading feature, so be sure to question relatives. Benefits of low dose alcohol (eg $<20\text{u/wk}$ in men, $<15\text{u/wk}$ in women, see p236) are unproven.

CAGE questions Ever felt you ought to cut down on your drinking? Have people annoyed you by criticizing your drinking? Ever felt bad or guilty about your drinking, eg if it led to you neglecting your responsibilities or to social or psychological harm? Ever had an eye-opener to steady nerves in the morning? Drinking to relieve withdrawal symptoms is a very telling sign. **CAGE** (yes to ≥ 2) helps detect dependency (sensitivity 43–94%; specificity 70–97%),²⁶⁶ but accuracy does change according to background population. There are other screening methods: eg TWEAK (BOX 1); AUDIT.²⁶⁷

Organs affected ► Don't forget the risk of trauma while intoxicated.²⁶⁸

The liver: Normal in 50%; γGTt or tt^+ —but may be tt^+ in any type of liver inflammation, eg fatty liver, AIH (p268), HBV. **Fatty liver:** Acute/reversible, but may progress to cirrhosis if drinking continues (also seen in obesity, DM, and with amiodarone). **Alcoholic hepatitis:** BOX 2 & 3. 80% progress to cirrhosis (hepatic failure in 10%). **Cirrhosis** (p260): 5yr survival is 48% if drinking continues (if not, 77%). Biopsy: Mallory bodies \pm neutrophil infiltrate (can be indistinguishable from NASH, p261).

CNS: Self neglect; ↓memory/cognition: high-potency vitamins IM may reverse it (p728; don't delay!); cortical atrophy; retrobulbar neuropathy; fits; falls; wide-based gait neuropathy; confabulation/Korsakoff's (p718) \pm Wernicke's encephalopathy (p728).


Gut: Obesity; D&V; gastric erosions; peptic ulcers; varices (p254); pancreatitis (acute or chronic); cancer (many types); oesophageal rupture (\therefore vomiting against a closed glottis; suspect if shock and surgical emphysema in the neck: Boerhaave's syndrome).

Blood: MCvt; anaemia from: marrow depression, GI bleeding, alcoholism-associated folate deficiency, haemolysis; sideroblastic anaemia. See p320.

Heart: Arrhythmias; BPT; cardiomyopathy; sudden death in binge drinkers.

Withdrawal starts 10–72h after last drink. **Signs:** Pulset; BP↓; tremor; confusion; fits; hallucinations (*delirium tremens*)—may be visual or tactile, eg animals crawling all over skin. Consider it in any new ($\leq 3\text{d}$) ward patient with acute confusion.

Alcohol contraindications Driving; hepatitis; cirrhosis; peptic ulcer; drugs (eg antihistamines, metronidazole); carcinoid; pregnancy (eg fetal alcohol syndrome—IQ↓, short palpebral fissure, absent philtrum, and small eyes).

Management Alcohol withdrawal: Admit; do BP + TPR/4h. Beware BP↓. For the 1st 3d give generous *chlordiazepoxide*, eg 10–50mg/6h PO, weaning over 7–10d (TABLE 2); alternative: *diazepam*. Vitamins may be needed (p728). **Prevention:** (OHCS p513): Alcohol-free beers; price may help promote low-risk drinking (see below). NB: there are no absolutes: risk is a continuum. *1u \approx 9g ethanol \approx 1 spirits measure \approx 1 glass of wine \approx ½ pint of beer.* **Treating established alcoholics** may be rewarding, particularly if they really want to change. If so, **group therapy** or **self-help** (eg Alcoholics Anonymous) may be useful—especially if self-initiated and determined. Encourage the will to change.  **Suggest:** 1 Graceful ways of declining a drink, eg "I'm seeing what it's like to go without for a bit". 2 Not buying him- or herself a drink when it is his/her turn. 3 "Don't lift your glass to your lips until after the slowest drinker in your group takes a drink." 4 "Sip, don't gulp." Give follow-up and encouragement.

Relapse 50% will relapse soon after starting treatment. *Acamprosate* (p455)²⁶⁹ may help intense anxiety, insomnia, and craving. CI: pregnancy, severe liver failure, creatinine $>120\mu\text{mol/L}$. SE: D&V, libido ↑ or ↓; dose example: 666mg/8h PO if $>60\text{kg}$ and $<65\text{yrs old}$.²⁷⁰ It should be started as soon as acute withdrawal is complete and continued for $\sim 1\text{yr}$. *Disulfiram* can be used to treat chronic alcohol dependence. It causes acetaldehyde build-up (like metronidazole) with extremely unpleasant effects to any alcohol ingestion—eg flushing, throbbing headache, palpitations. Care must be taken to avoid alcohol (eg toiletries, food, medicines) since severe reactions can occur. ► Confer with experts if drugs are to be used.



TWEAK screening questions²⁷¹

- Have you an increased **t**olerance of alcohol? 2 points
- Do you **w**orry about your drinking? 2 points
- Have you ever had alcohol as an **e**ye-opener in the morning? 1 point
- Do you ever get **a**mnnesia after drinking alcohol? 1 point
- Have you ever felt the need to c**(k)**ut down on your drinking? 1 point

A score of ≥ 2 suggests an alcohol problem. It may be more sensitive than the CAGE questionnaire in some populations (eg pregnant women).²⁷²

Patterns of lab tests in alcoholic and other liver disease

	AST	ALT	AST : ALT	MCV
Alcoholic liver disease	↑↑	↑	>2	↑↑
Hepatitis c (HCV)	↑ or ↔	↑↑	<1*	↔
Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease	↑	↑↑	<1	↑ or ↔

*Ratio may reverse if cirrhosis develops. Reference intervals: p742. How to remember AST:ALT ratios...alcohol is the prime cause of any liver disease, but if **ALT**↑ more than anything else, you've got to think of **ALT**ernative diagnoses.

Managing alcoholic hepatitis^{273, 274}

The patient Malaise; TPR↑; anorexia; D&V; tender hepatomegaly ± jaundice; bleeding; ascites. **Blood:** WCC↑; platelets↓ (toxic effect or ∴ hypersplenism); INR↑; AST↑; MCV↑; ureat. ▶ Jaundice, encephalopathy or coagulopathy ≈ **severe** hepatitis.

- Most need hospitalizing; urinary catheter and CVP monitoring may be needed.
- Screen for infections ± ascitic fluid tap and treat for SBP (p260).
- Stop alcohol consumption: for withdrawal symptoms, if **chlordiazepoxide** by the oral route (see below) is impossible, try **lorazepam** IM.
- Vitamins: vit K: 10mg/d IV for 3d. Thiamine 100mg/d PO (high-dose B vitamins can also be given IV as **Pabrinex**®—1 pair of ampoules in 50mL 0.9% saline IVI over ½h; see Datasheet—have resuscitation equipment to hand).
- Optimize nutrition (35–40kcal/kg/d non-protein energy). Use ideal body weight for calculations, eg if malnourished.
- Don't use low-protein diets even if severe encephalopathy is present. Give >1.2g/kg/d of protein; this prevents encephalopathy, sepsis, and some deaths.
- Daily weight; LFT; U&E; INR. If creatinine↑, get help with this—HRS (p259). Na⁺↓ is common, but water restriction may make matters worse.
- Prednisolone 40mg/d for 5d tapered over 3wks if Maddrey score >31 and encephalopathy.▶ CI: sepsis; variceal bleeding. Maddrey Discriminant Factor (DF) = (4.6 × patient's prothrombin time in sec – control time) + bilirubin (μmol/L). This score roughly reflects mortality (the MELD score is an alternative). NB: prednisolone plus N-acetylcysteine may increase 1-month survival, but 6-month survival is not improved.²⁷⁵

Prognosis: Mild episodes hardly affect mortality; if severe, mortality ≈ 50% at 30d. 1yr after admission for alcoholic hepatitis, 40% are dead...a sobering thought.

An example of a chlordiazepoxide-reducing regimen

Day	AM	noon	PM	at night	total/d
1	20mg	20mg	20mg	20mg	80mg
2	20mg	15mg	15mg	20mg	70mg
3	15mg	15mg	15mg	15mg	60mg
4	15mg	10mg	10mg	15mg	50mg
5	10mg	10mg	10mg	10mg	40mg
6	10mg	5mg	5mg	10mg	30mg
7	5mg	5mg	5mg	5mg	20mg
8	5mg	–	–	5mg	10mg
9 (final day)	–	–	–	5mg	5mg

▶ **Caveats:** higher doses for 1st few days for severe withdrawal; there may still be mild withdrawal symptoms at day 3. Have a 5mg dose written for PRN use.

1 Gamma GT is ↑ in 52% of alcoholics; it is also ↑ in 50% of those with non-alcoholic fatty livers. Its best use is not in diagnosing alcoholism but in seeing if a raised alk phos is likely to be from liver, not bone.²⁷⁶



Contents

- Introduction to nephrology 285
- Urine 286
- Urinary tract infection (UTI) 288
- Acute kidney injury (AKI):
 - Diagnosis 290
 - Management 292
- Chronic kidney disease (CKD) 294
 - Management 296
- Renal replacement therapy (RRT) 298
- Glomerulonephritis (GN) 300
- Nephrotic syndrome 302
- Diuretics and their mechanism of action 304
- Interstitial nephritides and nephrotoxins 306
- Renal vascular disease 308
- Renal tubular disease 310
- Inherited kidney diseases 312
- Renal manifestations of systemic disease 314
- Epilogue:
 - The man in a red canoe who saved a million lives 315



Fig 1. Richard Bright (1789-1858). Richard Bright began his career as a philosophy and economics student in Edinburgh, but quickly switched to medicine. He finished his training in London where he began research into kidney diseases. He is known as the father of modern nephrology, describing 'Bright's disease' or the combination of protein in the urine, hypertension and oedema, and deducing from autopsy studies that this was due to kidney disease. He inspired future generations to find treatments beyond that of blood letting to reduce blood pressure.

Relevant pages in other chapters: *Symptoms and signs:* Frequency (p64); loin pain (p57); oedema (p29); oliguria (p65); polyuria (p65).

Surgery: Renal stones (p640); renal & urological ca (p646); urinary retention (p644); incontinence (p650).

Clinical chemistry: Kidney function (p682); ►Creatinine clearance and eGFR (p683); Urate and the kidney (p694).

Emergencies: Management of acute kidney injury (p848).

Also: Vasculitis (p558); polyarteritis nodosa (p558); genitourinary TB (p289); immunosuppressives (p370); biochemistry of renal function (p682); electrolyte physiology (p688); Na⁺ (p686); K⁺ (p688); calcium (p690); urate and the kidney (p694); osteomalacia (p698); urinary tract imaging (p758); catheters (p776).

In OHCS: Gynaecological urology (OHCS p306); bacteriuria and pyelonephritis in pregnancy (OHCS p28); obstetric causes of acute tubular necrosis (OHCS p28); chronic kidney disease in pregnancy (OHCS p28); UTI in children (OHCS p174); urethral valves (OHCS p132); horseshoe kidney (OHCS p132); ectopic kidney (OHCS p132); hypospadias (OHCS p132); Wilms' nephroblastoma (OHCS p133); kidney disease in children (OHCS p176); nephritis and nephrosis in children (OHCS p178); Potter's syndrome (OHCS p132).

Renal disease presents with rather few clinical syndromes—listed from 1 to 7 below. One underlying pathology may have a variety of clinical presentations, and vice versa, but patients will generally present with:

- 1 **Renal pain and dysuria:** Renal pain is usually a dull ache, constant and in the loin. It may be due to renal obstruction (look for swelling \pm tenderness), pyelo-nephritis, acute nephritic syndrome, polycystic kidneys, or renal infarction. Renal (ureteric) colic is severe waxing and waning loin pain radiating to the groin or thigh, eg with fever and vomiting. It is caused by a renal stone, clot, or a sloughed papilla. Urinary frequency with dysuria (pain on voiding) suggests a UTI.
- 2 **Oliguria and polyuria:** Oliguria is a urine output of $<0.5\text{mL/kg/h}$. *Pathological* causes: Pre-renal, ie hypoperfusion; intrinsic renal, ie renal parenchymal disease; post-renal, ie obstruction. Polyuria is the voiding of abnormally high volumes of urine, usually from high fluid intake—or diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus (p232), hypercalcaemia, renal medullary disorders (urine concentrating ability is impaired).
- 3 **Acute kidney injury (AKI)** (previously termed acute renal failure or ARF). Indicates significant decline in renal function occurring over hours or days. AKI usually occurs secondary to a circulatory dysfunction (hypotension, hypovolaemia, sepsis) or urinary obstruction. Primary renal disease is a less common cause.
- 4 **Proteinuria and nephrotic syndrome:** Normal protein excretion is $<150\text{mg/d}$, as the glomerular basement membrane prevents passage of high-molecular-weight proteins (eg albumin) into urine. Nephrotic syndrome = proteinuria $>3\text{g/d}$, hypoalbuminaemia, oedema. Nephrotic range proteinuria ($>3\text{g/d}$) is almost always a sign of glomerular disease. Urine dipstick is unreliable for quantifying protein excretion; use spot protein:creatinine ratio or albumin:creatinine ratio on an early morning MSU.
- 5 **Haematuria:** Blood in the urine may arise from anywhere in the renal tract. Take haematuria seriously, as it may be the only sign of GU malignancy (esp if $>40\text{yrs}$ old and a smoker). However, in the majority of cases it has a benign cause (eg infection, renal stones). The question of who to refer haematuria patients to (urologist or nephrologist) is answered on p286.
- 6 **Chronic kidney disease (CKD)** is defined as irreversible, substantial, and long-standing loss of renal function. It is classified according to glomerular filtration rate (GFR): see p683. There is often a poor correlation between symptoms and severity of renal disease. Progression may be so insidious that patients attribute symptoms to age or a minor illnesses. Referral to renal services is based on local guidelines, but as a general rule refer if CKD stage 3 or more (p300),¹ ie GFR $<60\text{mL/min}$, if other features are present:
 - GFR is falling progressively
 - Non-visible (microscopic) haematuria
 - Urine protein:creatinine ratio (PCR) \uparrow , p286
 - Unexplained anaemia, hyperkalaemia, or calcium or phosphate imbalance
 - Suspected systemic illness (eg SLE)
 - BP uncontrolled despite taking 3 drugs.
 Refer *urgently* if GFR 15–29 (same-day if <15) even if *no* other features present.
- 7 **Silence:** Serious renal failure may cause **no symptoms at all**. This is why we check U&Es before surgery and other major interventions. The silence of renal disease creeps up on us (doctors and patients). Do not dismiss odd chronic symptoms such as fatigue or 'not being quite with it' without considering checking renal function. **Microalbuminuria** is a silent harbinger of serious renal and cardiovascular risk. It is described on p314. In one study, 30% of those with type 2 diabetes mellitus died within ~ 5 years of developing microalbuminuria. This is partly preventable by use of ACE-i.



Perform dipstick urinalysis whenever you suspect renal disease. This is a crude way of checking whether the urine contains anything that it shouldn't, eg protein, blood, glucose. Abnormalities can reflect renal tract or systemic disease and usually require further investigation. Proteinuria particularly requires formal quantification.

Proteinuria Consensus is now to avoid 24h collections (costly, inaccurate) and use albumin:creatinine ratio (ACR) or protein:creatinine ratio (PCR) on a random urine sample, ideally an early morning sample as this avoids orthostatic proteinuria. ACR is preferred to PCR, especially in diabetics.²

Conversion factors		
ACR mg/mmol	PCR mg/mmol	Protein excretion g/24h
30	50	0.5
70	100	1

Normal ACR is <2.5 (men) or <3.5 (women). Transient rises to ~5 can occur with fever or exercise. Causes of raised ACR/PCR: glomerular or tubular disease (eg nephrotic syndrome, p302), DM, amyloidosis, TBP, interstitial nephritis, heavy metals, multiple myeloma (though dipsticks do not detect light chains), pregnancy, CCF. **Microalbuminuria:** Ultra-sensitive dipsticks are now available to measure microalbuminuria (albumin excretion 30–300mg/24h). Causes: DM, TBP, minimal change GN.

Haematuria Blood in the urine may arise from anywhere in the renal tract. It is classified as visible (VH—previously known as macroscopic, frank) or non-visible (NVH—found on dipstick or microscopy). Non-visible is subdivided into symptomatic (sNVH—with LUTS—dysuria, hesitancy, urgency, p644) and asymptomatic (aNVH). Dipstick of fresh urine is more sensitive than MSU, which has a high false -ve rate, therefore no need to confirm every positive dip with microscopy.³ However, MC&S of urine is useful for further analysis of cause. Patients with one episode of VH, one of sNVH or persistent aNVH require further assessment.

- Exclude transient causes: (UTI, vigorous exercise, menstruation).
- Check creatinine/eGFR, proteinuria (spot ACR or PCR) and BP.
- Painless VH usually means bladder cancer (p648); refer urgently.
- In aNVH or if systemic symptoms, consider FBC, ESR, CRP, blood film, clotting (NB do not simply attribute haematuria to anticoagulants/antiplatelet agents).³
- Urine MC&S to look for infection, malignant/inflammatory cells, casts, crystals.
- USS and rapid referral to nephrology if rapid decline in GFR or haematuria with proteinuria, casts or dysmorphic cells. Red cell casts ≈ glomerular bleeding.

Who to refer and to whom?		
	Urology	Nephrology
VH	All patients, any age	<40yrs, cola-coloured urine, recent infection, eg URTI
sNVH	All patients, any age	
aNVH	Persistent, >40yrs	<40yrs with BP >140/90, eGFR <60mL/min, ACR >30 or PCR >50

All others should be monitored in primary care with annual review of urine dip, BP, eGFR and proteinuria (ACR/PCR); refer if above features appear. **Causes:** *Renal:* neoplasia, glomerulonephritis (often IgA nephropathy, p300), tubulointerstitial nephritis, polycystic kidney disease, papillary necrosis, infection (pyelonephritis), trauma. *Extrarenal:* Calculi, infection, neoplasia, trauma (eg from catheter). Some drugs can cause haematuria: eg, captopril, cephalosporins, ciprofloxacin, furosemide, NSAIDs. Ask about risk factors for renal tract cancer (smoking, chronic analgesic use, toxin exposure). **Imaging:** AXR is no longer used for primary assessment of stones, CTkUB is first choice investigation (see p758). NB Not all women with recurrent UTI + haematuria need cystoscopy, but have a good reason not to (Reynard's rule).⁴

Others **Glucose** DM, pregnancy, sepsis, renal tubular damage. **Ketones:** Starvation, ketoacidosis. **Leucocytes:** UTI, vaginal discharge. **Nitrites:** UTI, high-protein meal. **Bilirubin:** Obstructive jaundice. **Urobilinogen:** Pre-hepatic jaundice. **Specific gravity:** Normal range (NR): 1.000–1.030. **pH:** NR: 4.5–8 (acid-base balance: p684).

Figs on p287 reproduced from Davison *et al*, *Oxford Textbook of Clinical Nephrology*, OUP

Urinalysis

Using dipsticks Store dipsticks in a closed container in a cool, dry place, not refrigerated. If improperly stored, or past expiry date, do not use. Dip the dipstick briefly in urine, run edge of strip along container and hold strip horizontally. Read at the specified time—check instructions. For haematuria, etc. see p286.

Urine specific gravity (SG) is not a good measure of osmolality. Causes of low SG (<1.003): diabetes insipidus, renal impairment. Causes of high SG (>1.025): diabetes mellitus, adrenal insufficiency, liver disease, heart failure, acute water loss.

Sources of error in interpreting dipstick results

Bilirubin: False +ve: phenothiazines. False -ve: urine not fresh, rifampicin.

Urobilinogen: False -ve: urine not fresh. Normally present in urine due to metabolism of bilirubin in the gut by bacteria and subsequent absorption. Excess may give a false +ve test for urobilinogen.

Ketones: L-dopa affects colour (false +ve). 3-Hydroxybutyrate gives a false -ve.

Blood: False +ve *dipstick haematuria*: haemoglobinuria, dehydration, myoglobinuria (eg in rhabdomyolysis), porphyria, phenindione, phenolphthalein, or contamination with menstrual blood.

False -ve: low urinary pH, air-exposed dipsticks.

Urine glucose: Depends on the test strips used, some can give false +ve but can give false +ve to peroxide, chlorine; and false -ve with ascorbic acid, salicylate, L-dopa.

Protein: False +ve: urine pH>7.5; concentrated urine; frank haematuria; presence of penicillin, sulfonamides, pus, semen or vaginal secretions.

False -ve: dilute urine; non-albumin urinary proteins.



Fig 1 granular cast;
Fig 2 (below) uric acid crystals.

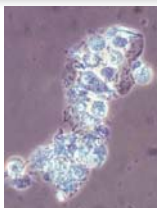


Fig 3 white cell cast;
Fig 4 (below) calcium oxalate crystals.

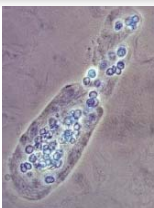
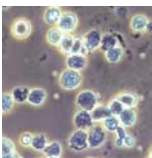
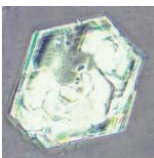
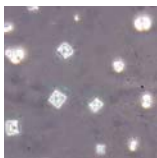
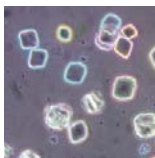


Fig 5 red cell cast;
Fig 6 (below) cystine crystal.



Fig 7 hyaline cast;
Fig 8 (below) white cells.



Urine microscopy

Usually done by local laboratory. Put a drop of fresh, unspun urine on the slide, cover with a coverslip and examine under low and high power, looking for red and white cells, bacteria, casts and crystals. Some example images are shown above. When interpreting laboratory results remember:

- >10/mm³ white cells in an unspun specimen is abnormal, often from UTI, see p288.
- >2/mm³ red cells is abnormal, see haematuria.
- Casts are cylindrical bodies formed in the lumen of distal tubules, and can be waxy, granular, hyaline or cellular. Some types can indicate specific diseases.
- Crystals are common in old or cold urine and may not signify pathology. They are important in stone formers.



Definitions *Bacteriuria*: Bacteria in the urine; may be asymptomatic or symptomatic. *UTI*: The presence of a pure growth of $>10^5$ organisms per mL of fresh MSU. *Lower UTI*: urethra (urethritis), bladder (cystitis), prostate (prostatitis). *Upper UTI*: renal pelvis (pyelonephritis). Up to a third of women with symptoms have negative MSU (= abacterial cystitis or the urethral syndrome).

Classification UTIs may be **uncomplicated** (normal renal tract + function) or **complicated** (abnormal renal/GU tract, voiding difficulty/obstruction, ↓renal function, impaired host defences, virulent organism, eg *Staph. aureus*). For urethritis, see p418.

Risk factors ♀, sexual intercourse, exposure to spermicide in ♀ (by diaphragm or condoms), pregnancy, menopause; *host defence* (immunosuppression, DM); *urinary tract*: obstruction (p642), stones, catheter, malformation. NB: in pregnancy, UTI is common and often asymptomatic, until serious pyelonephritis or premature delivery (± fetal death) supervenes, so do routine dipstick in pregnancy. Urine in catheterized bladders is almost always infected—CSUs and R_x are pointless unless the patient is ill.

Organisms *E. coli* is the main organism (75–95% in the community but >41% in hospital). Occasionally other enterobacteriaceae such as *Proteus mirabilis* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and other bacteria such as *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*.

Symptoms

- **Acute pyelonephritis**: High fever, rigors, vomiting, loin pain and tenderness, oliguria (if acute kidney injury).
- **Cystitis**: Frequency, dysuria, urgency, haematuria, suprapubic pain.
- **Prostatitis**: Flu-like symptoms, low backache, few urinary symptoms, swollen or tender prostate on PR. Treatment: see p647.

Signs Fever, abdominal or loin tenderness, foul-smelling urine. Occasionally distended bladder, enlarged prostate. NB: see *Vaginal discharge*, p418.

Tests If symptoms are present, dipstick the urine; treat empirically if nitrites or leucocytes are +ve while awaiting sensitivities on an MSU. If dipstick is -ve but patient symptomatic, send an MSU for lab MC&S to confirm this. Send a lab MSU anyway if male, a child (OHCS p174; do ultrasound), pregnant, immunosuppressed or ill. A pure growth of $>10^5$ organisms/mL is diagnostic. If $<10^5$ organisms/mL and pyuria (eg >20 WBCs/mm³), this may still be significant; treat if symptomatic. Cultured organisms are tested for sensitivity to a range of antibiotics; check local sensitivity patterns (p378).

Causes of sterile pyuria: ▶ TB

- Treated UTI <2 weeks prior
- UTI with fastidious culture requirement
- Inadequately treated UTI
- Papillary necrosis (eg DM or analgesic excess)
- Appendicitis
- Tubulointerstitial nephritis
- Calculi; prostatitis
- Polycystic kidney
- Bladder tumour
- Chemical cystitis (eg cyclophosphamide)

Blood tests: FBC, U&E, CRP, and blood cultures if systemically unwell ('urosepsis'). Consider fasting glucose and PSA (wait 6 months, as UTI causes false +ves).

Imaging: Consider USS and referral to urology for assessment (CTKUB, cystoscopy, urodynamics) for UTI in children; men; if failure to respond to treatment; recurrent UTI (>2/year); pyelonephritis; unusual organism; persistent haematuria.

Prevention of UTI Drink more water. Antibiotic prophylaxis, continuously or post-coital, ↓UTI rates in females with many UTIs. Self-treatment with a single antibiotic dose as symptoms start is an option. Drinking 200–750mL of cranberry or lingonberry juice a day, or taking cranberry concentrate tablets, ↓risk of symptomatic recurrent infection in women by 10–20%⁵ (may inhibit adherence of bacteria to bladder uroepithelial cells; avoid if taking warfarin). There is no evidence that post-coital voiding, or pre-voiding, or advice on wiping patterns in females is of benefit.⁶



Features of genitourinary tuberculosis

None is specific, so have a high index of suspicion in sterile pyuria and those with risk factors (esp. if HIV+ve), look for a high ESR/CRP, ask about past lung TB (but often there is no history). In one study of 100 males with GU TB 67% of symptoms appeared acutely.⁷

- Dysuria (eg in 50% of those with prostate TB)
- Flank pain (59%; a cold abscess in the flank is a rare presentation)
- Perineal pain (40%)
- Mycobacteriuria 38% (early-morning sample)
- Scrotal fistula 12%
- Leucocytes in urine 85%, eg 'sterile pyuria'; (78% in prostatic secretions)
- Haematuria in 53%

What is the predictive value of urinary symptoms and dipstick for diagnosing UTI?

This is a controversial area, with a meta-analysis of 70 studies concluding that in the general population, a combination of negative nitrite and leucocyte tests on dipstick was sufficient to rule out UTI.⁸

A dipstick positive for either leucocytes or nitrites has a sensitivity of 75% and specificity of 82% in predicting urinary tract infection.⁹ However, a strong specific history (eg dysuria, frequency) has a 90% positive predictive value and warrants treatment even if dipstick is negative. Symptoms should respond in a few hours of starting therapy,¹⁰ so if ongoing despite adequate course of treatment consider: resistant or unusual organism, causes of sterile pyuria (p288), STI.

Managing UTI¹¹

► Drink plenty of fluids; urinate often (don't 'hold on').

Management of bacterial UTI in adult non-pregnant women

- Consider empirical treatment for presumed *E. coli* in otherwise healthy women who present with lower UTI: local sensitivities vary but consider trimethoprim 200mg/12h PO or nitrofurantoin, eg 50mg/6h PO for 3–6d (if normal renal function), amoxicillin 500mg/8h PO. Alternative: cefalexin 1g/12h (if eGFR >40). 2nd line: co-amoxiclav PO (7d course). The latter 2 may cause problems with *C. difficile*. If there is no response, do a urine culture.
- In case of vaginal itch or discharge consider vaginal examination and swabs for other diagnoses, eg thrush, chlamydia, other STIs.
- In non-pregnant women with upper UTI, take a urine culture and treat with, eg co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h IV, then oral when afebrile, complete 7d course. Avoid nitrofurantoin as it does not achieve effective concentrations in urine. Resistance to trimethoprim is common. Non-pregnant women with asymptomatic bacteriuria do not need antibiotics so screening is not recommended.

Managing bacterial UTI in pregnant women Get expert help. Any bacteriuria (symptomatic or asymptomatic) should be treated with an antibiotic. Dipstick and urine culture should be repeated at each antenatal visit.

Managing bacterial UTI in adult men

- Take UTI in men seriously as it often results from an anatomical or functional anomaly. Therefore, all men with symptoms of upper UTI, recurrent UTI or who fail to respond to antibiotic therapy should be referred to a urologist. Also consider prostatitis, epididymitis and chlamydial infection.
- Bacterial UTI in men may need a 2wk course of a quinolone, such as levofloxacin (if no response, think of prostatitis and treat for 4wks).
- Antibiotic therapy of asymptomatic bacteriuria in elderly men (>65yrs old) is not recommended, as it does not reduce morbidity or mortality while it increases the risk of adverse events such as rashes or GI problems.



Definition

The term acute renal failure (ARF) has now been changed to acute kidney injury (AKI). This allows us to consider AKI as a spectrum of damage from a mild deterioration in function to severe injury requiring renal replacement therapy (RRT), as even small rises in creatinine increase the risk of mortality.¹² It is defined as a rapid reduction in kidney function over hours to days, as measured by serum urea and creatinine, and leading to a failure to maintain fluid, electrolyte and acid-base homeostasis.¹³ AKI is common, occurring in up to 18% of hospital patients, and is an independent risk factor for mortality. The Kidney Diseases: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) guidelines¹⁴ suggest the following criteria for diagnosing AKI:

- Rise in creatinine >26µmol/L in 48hrs
- Rise in creatinine >1.5 × baseline (best figure in last 3/12)
- Urine output <0.5mL/kg/h for >6 consecutive hours.

Recently several staging systems for AKI have been brought in to try to standardize care. All use serum creatinine and urine output to categorize patients. Although creatinine is not the best biomarker for monitoring AKI, no other potential biomarker has yet proven better for predicting outcome. Having incorporated several staging systems, the UK Renal Association recommends using KDIGO staging of AKI:

KDIGO staging system for AKI		
	Serum creatinine (sCr) criteria	Urine output criteria
1	Increase >26µmol/L in 48h OR increase > 1.5 × baseline	<0.5mL/kg/h for >6 consecutive hours
2	Increase 2-2.9 × baseline	<0.5mL/kg/h for >12h
3	Increase >3 × baseline OR >354 µmol/L OR commenced on RRT irrespective of stage	<0.3mL/kg/h for >24h or anuria for 12h

It is important to consider the risk of AKI in all patients being admitted to hospital. A 2009 NCEPOD report: *Adding Insult to Injury*¹⁵ identified many deficiencies in care of patients with AKI, including poor recognition and management. Given the high incidence and increased mortality, all hospital admissions should be assessed for the risk of developing AKI. Risk factors are shown below:

Risk factors for developing AKI	
• Age >75	• Diabetes
• Chronic kidney disease	• Drugs (esp newly started)
• Cardiac failure	• Sepsis
• Peripheral vascular disease	• Poor fluid intake/increased losses
• Chronic liver disease	• History of urinary symptoms

Causes: Commonest are ischaemia, sepsis and nephrotoxins, although prostatic disease causes up to 25% in some studies and has the best prognosis.¹⁶

- 1 **Pre-renal** (40-70%) due to renal hypoperfusion, eg hypotension (any cause, including hypovolaemia, sepsis), renal artery stenosis ± ACE-i.
- 2 **Intrinsic renal** (10-50%) may require a renal biopsy for diagnosis:
 - Tubular—acute tubular necrosis (ATN) is the commonest renal cause of AKI, often a result of pre-renal damage or nephrotoxins such as drugs (eg aminoglycosides), radiological contrast (see p293), and myoglobinuria in rhabdomyolysis. Also crystal damage (eg ethylene glycol poisoning, uric acid), myeloma, $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$
 - Glomerular—autoimmune such as SLE, HSP, drugs, infections, primary glomerulonephritides are important not to miss (see p300)
 - Interstitial—drugs, infiltration with, eg lymphoma, infection, tumour lysis syndrome following chemotherapy
 - Vascular—vasculitis, malignant $\uparrow\text{BP}$, thrombus or cholesterol emboli from angiography, HUS/TTP (p308), large vessel occlusion, eg dissection or thrombus
- 3 **Post-renal** (10-25%) caused by urinary tract obstruction:
 - Luminal—stones, clots, sloughed papillae
 - Mural—malignancy (eg ureteric, bladder, prostate), BPH, strictures
 - Extrinsic compression—malignancy (esp pelvic), retroperitoneal fibrosis.



Assessment of the patient with AKI

Assessment ▶ Make sure you know about the renal effects of all drugs taken.

▶▶ All assessment should include basic ABCDE approach, and as part of C:

- Assess volume status—check BP, JVP, skin turgor, capillary refill (<2s), urine output (catheterize).
- Check an urgent K^+ on a venous blood specimen and an ECG to check for life-threatening hyperkalaemia (see p293).

History: check for risk factors (see BOX), comorbidities, ask about previous renal disease, recent fluid intake and losses, new drugs including chemotherapy, systemic features such as rash, joint pain, fevers. Other systems—productive cough, haemoptysis, GU or GI symptoms, etc.

Examination: Full systemic examination. Specific features to look for include a palpable bladder, palpable kidneys (polycystic disease), abdominal/pelvic masses, renal bruits (signs of renovascular disease), rashes.

Bedside tests: Always, always dip the urine. See p236. Dipstick can suggest infection (leucocytes + nitrites), glomerular disease (blood + protein). Microscopy for casts, crystals and cells. Culture for infection. Consider Bence Jones protein.

Blood tests: U&E, FBC, LFT, clotting, CK, ESR, CRP. Consider ABG for acid base assessment. Culture blood if signs of infection. Consider blood film and renal immunology if systemic cause suspected: immunoglobulins and paraprotein electrophoresis, complement (C3/C4), autoantibodies (ANCA, ANA, anti-GBM, esp if haemoptysis, see p300, p555) and ASOT.

Imaging: A renal USS can help to distinguish obstruction and hydronephrosis, and look for abnormalities such as cysts, small kidneys, masses, as well as assess corticomedullary differentiation (reduced in chronic kidney disease). Complete anuria is unusual in AKI and if present suggests an obstructive cause. In elderly men this should be considered prostatic and can often be relieved by catheterization. If catheterization does not resolve anuria and you suspect obstruction above the prostate, get an urgent USS to check for hydronephrosis and consider an urgent CTKUB (does not require contrast), which can show obstructing masses or calculi. Consider CXR if signs of fluid overload.

Is the injury acute or the damage chronic?

Suspect chronic if small kidneys (<9cm) on USS, anaemia, low Ca^{2+} , high PO_4^{3-} , but the only definite sign of chronic disease is previous blood results showing high creatinine/low GFR.

When to refer to a nephrologist (and what they would like to know):

- Firstly assess the patient, correct pre- and post-renal factors, and treat urgent problems such as hyperkalaemia and pulmonary oedema.
- **Always refer:** Hyperkalaemia in an oligoanuric patient, hyperkalaemia or fluid overload unresponsive to medical Rx, urea >40mmol/L ± signs of uraemia such as pericarditis, patients with suspected glomerulonephritis (blood and protein on urinalysis) or systemic disease. **Consider referral:** No obvious reversible cause, creatinine >300 or rising >50μmol/L per day.
- **What they want to know:** The history and timecourse, U&E results—esp K^+ , urine dipstick, drugs, fluid balance and current volume status (see p681).

Indications for dialysis (RRT p298) (discuss with a nephrologist EARLY)

- ▶▶ Refractory pulmonary oedema
- ▶▶ Persistent hyperkalaemia (K^+ >7mmol/L)
- ▶▶ Severe metabolic acidosis (pH<7.2 or base excess <10)
- ▶▶ Uraemic complications such as encephalopathy or
- ▶▶ Uraemic pericarditis (pericardial rub)
- ▶▶ Drug overdose—BLAST: Barbituates, Lithium, Alcohol (and ethylene glycol), Salicylates, Theophylline, see p766.

General measures

- **Assess volume status:** look for ↓urine volume, non-visible JVP, poor tissue turgor, ↓BP, ↑pulse. Signs of fluid overload: ↑BP, ↑JVP, lung crepitations, peripheral oedema, gallop rhythm on cardiac auscultation.
- **Aim for euvolaemia:**¹⁷ if difficult balance with risk of fluid overload, consider titrating input hourly, by matching previous hours output + 25mL/h for insensible losses. This is not usually practical outside of an HDU setting as it requires intensive nursing input. If euvolaemic review balance daily, over 24-hour period aim to match input to loss (urine, vomit, diarrhoea, drains) + 500mL for insensible loss (more if T⁺†).
▶ Avoid K⁺-containing fluids unless hypokalaemic.
- **Stop nephrotoxic drugs:** (See 'sick day rules' BOX) eg NSAIDs, ACE inhibitor, gentamicin, amphotericin. Stop metformin if creatinine is >150mmol/L, see p200. Check and adjust doses of renally excreted drugs (ask your pharmacist for the *Renal Drug Handbook*, a weighty but valuable tome!).
- **Monitoring:** Consider transfer to intensive care or high-dependency unit (ICU/HDU).
 - Check pulse, BP, JVP, and urine output hourly (insert a urinary catheter). Consider inserting a CVP line if on HDU/ICU.
 - Daily U&Es.
 - Daily fluid balance chart and daily weight.
- **Nutrition** is vital in the critically unwell patient: aim for normal calorie intake (more if catabolism ↑, eg burns, sepsis) and protein ~0.5g/kg/d. If oral intake is poor, consider nasogastric nutrition early (parenteral if NGT impossible, p588).

Treat underlying cause

- **Pre-renal:** Correct volume depletion with appropriate fluids, treat sepsis with antibiotics, consider referral to ICU for inotropic support if signs of shock (see p804).
- **Post-renal:** Catheterize and consider CT of renal tract (CTKUB) and urology referral if obstruction likely cause. If signs of obstruction and hydronephrosis on CT/US then discuss with urology regarding cystoscopy and retrograde stents or nephrostomy insertion; this buys time to allow treatment of cause of obstruction, eg stone, mass.
- **Intrinsic renal:** ▶ Refer early to nephrology if concern over tubulointerstitial or glomerular pathology, any signs of systemic disease, multi-organ involvement (eg pulmonary-renal, hepatorenal syndromes) or indications for dialysis (see p291).

Manage complications

- Hyperkalaemia (see BOX p293).
- Pulmonary oedema (see BOX p293).
- Uraemia—may require dialysis if severe or complications, eg encephalopathy, pericarditis, contact renal team. Otherwise symptomatic management.
- Acidaemia—may require dialysis, consider sodium bicarbonate orally or IV if in HDU/ICU setting, discuss with nephrology before initiating.

Renal replacement therapy

Options in AKI include haemodialysis and haemofiltration, both require large-bore venous access (eg internal jugular line). Haemodialysis is usually done intermittently and allows good clearance of solutes in short periods but requires the patient to be haemodynamically stable. If patients are stable enough for ward-based care this is usually the modality of choice. Patients on the ICU are often filtered, as the fluid shifts are much less significant and therefore BP is less likely to drop. However, filtration is much slower at clearing solutes, and is usually performed continuously while the patient is in established renal failure (p298).

Prognosis

Prognosis depends on early recognition and intervention,¹⁸ as the more prolonged the insult, the less likely full recovery of function. Mortality can be as high as 80% depending on the cause: burns (80%); trauma/surgery (60%); medical illness (30%); obstetric/poisoning (10%).



Hyperkalaemia (also p848)



Fig 1. ECG showing severe hyperkalaemia; note broadening of QRS complexes.

ECG changes (in order): Tall 'tented' T waves; small or absent P wave; increased PR interval; widened QRS complex; 'sine wave' pattern; asystole.

Immediate treatment:

- ▶▶ 10mL of 10% calcium gluconate IV via a big vein over 2min, repeated as necessary until ECG improves. This is cardioprotective but does not affect K^+ level.
- ▶▶ Intravenous insulin + glucose: see p849. Insulin stimulates intracellular uptake of K^+ , lowering serum K^+ by 1–2mmol/L over ~60min.
- ▶▶ Salbutamol nebulizers work in the same way as insulin/glucose but high doses are required (10–20mg) and tachycardia can limit use.
- ▶▶ If venous bicarbonate low (ie patient is acidotic) giving IV sodium bicarbonate (eg 50mL of 8.4% $NaHCO_3$ as an infusion or bolus into a big vein) can help to drive K^+ into cells, though the effect is unpredictable.

All of these measures are **temporary** and only **buy time** to definitively lower K^+ , via either renal clearance (eg relieving obstruction with catheter or correcting pre-renal failure with fluids) or haemodialysis/filtration if the patient is oligoanuric.

Pulmonary oedema

(also p812)

- Sit up and give high-flow O_2
- Venous vasodilator, eg diamorphine 2.5mg IV (+antiemetic, eg cyclizine 50mg IV).
- Furosemide 80–250mg IV either as IVI over 1h or boluses titrated to response (larger doses are needed in renal failure).
- If no response, urgent haemodialysis or haemofiltration is needed.
- Consider continuous positive airway pressure ventilation (CPAP).
- IV nitrates also have a role (p813).



Fig 2. Severe pulmonary oedema.

Prevention of AKI—'Sick-day rules'

It is far easier and better for the patient to try to prevent AKI than manage it once established. Up to 30% of cases are preventable. If a patient is admitted acutely unwell, do a risk assessment for AKI, and if they are high risk consider:

Reviewing drugs: Continuing usual medications can be catastrophic if a patient is high risk—diarrhoea and vomiting, third space losses, eg pancreatitis, poor intake, sepsis or other cause of hypotension (ie most surgical patients in the immediate post-op period for any significant surgery!). **Withhold/avoid:** Diuretics, ACE inhibitors, antihypertensives if BP low (NB do not stop β -blockers acutely, consider \downarrow dose), metformin if creatinine rising (risk of lactic acidosis), NSAIDs, nephrotoxic antibiotics (eg gentamicin, nitrofurantoin). **Use with caution:** Opiates can accumulate in renal failure, start with lower dose and build up to patient's pain threshold, keep naloxone handy. **Contrast:** Acutely unwell patients often have multiple contrast CT scans and procedures. This is an important cause of AKI, see p307 & 762. Ensure patient is well hydrated, eg 1L 0.9% saline over 12 hours pre and post procedure.

Definition Impaired renal function for >3 months based on abnormal structure or function, or GFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m² for >3 months with or without evidence of kidney damage. Classification: 5 stages (BOX). Symptoms usually only occur once stage 4 is reached (GFR <30). End-stage renal failure (ESRF) is defined as GFR <15 mL/min/1.73 m² or need for renal replacement therapy (RRT—dialysis or transplant).¹⁹

Causes

- 1 **Diabetes:** 20% UK, 43% USA. Type II >> type I
- 2 **Glomerulonephritis:** commonly IgA nephropathy, also rarer disorders, eg mesangiocapillary GN, systemic disorders, eg SLE, vasculitis
- 3 **Unknown:** up to 20% in the UK have no obvious cause of CKD, many of these present late with small, shrunken kidneys where a biopsy would be uninformative
- 4 Hypertension or renovascular disease
- 5 Pyelonephritis and reflux nephropathy

Rarer causes include obstructive uropathy, which commonly causes AKI but is often reversible, chronic interstitial nephritis (eg myeloma, amyloid), and following previous AKI. Adult polycystic kidney disease (APKD) is the commonest inherited cause of CKD, rare inherited disorders include Alport's syndrome and Fabry's disease (p712).

Screening Intervening early in CKD can reduce the progression to ESRF and so screening is recommended for at-risk patients with:

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypertension
- Cardiovascular disease (IHD, peripheral vascular disease, cerebrovascular disease)
- Structural renal disease, known stones or BPH
- Recurrent UTIs or those with childhood history of vesicoureteric reflux
- Multisystem disorders which could involve the kidney, eg SLE
- Family history of ESRF or known hereditary disease, eg APKD
- Opportunistic detection of haematuria or proteinuria

Some guidelines also suggest routine screening in those >60 yrs, although this is debatable, as many elderly people fall into CKD stage 3 but have little or no progression over many years. Is there a benefit to labelling them with a disease?

History When assessing a patient with known/suspected CKD, try to identify:

- **Possible cause:** ask about previous UTIs, LUTS (lower urinary tract symptoms, p644), PMH of \uparrow BP, DM, IHD, systemic disorder, renal colic. Check drug history and family history (draw tree if positive). Systems review: always be on the lookout for more than is immediately obvious, possible rare causes, symptoms suggestive of systemic disorder or malignancy.
- **Current state:** uraemic symptoms such as anorexia, vomiting, restless legs, fatigue, weakness, pruritus, bone pain. In women ask about amenorrhoea, in men impotence. Symptoms become more common with progression through CKD stages 4 and 5 but if slow onset many patients remain asymptomatic. Check for oliguria, dyspnoea, ankle swelling.

Examination See p295 for examining patients with known CKD. In first presentation look for pallor, uraemic tinge to the skin (yellowish), purpura, excoriations, \uparrow BP, cardiomegaly, signs of fluid overload and possible cause, eg ballotable polycystic kidneys. If untreated patients can present in extremis with severe uraemia and hyperkalaemia causing arrhythmias, encephalopathy, seizures or coma.

Tests Blood: Hb (normochromic, normocytic anaemia), ESR, U&E, glucose (DM), \downarrow Ca²⁺, \uparrow PO₄³⁻, \uparrow alk phos (renal osteodystrophy). \uparrow PTH if CKD stage 3 or more (p214).

Urine: Dipstick, MC&S, albumin: creatinine ratio or protein: creatinine ratio (p286).

Imaging: USS to check size, anatomy and corticomedullary differentiation. In CKD kidneys are usually small (<9 cm) but can be enlarged in infiltrative disorders (amyloid, myeloma), APKD and DM. If asymmetrical consider MAG3 renogram to look at contribution of each kidney to overall function.

Histology: Consider renal biopsy if rapidly progressive disease or unclear cause and normal sized kidneys.

Examining the patient with known CKD/ESRF

You are looking for:

- 1 Cause of ESRF/CKD, eg polycystic kidneys, signs of IHD, DM
- 2 Current mode of renal replacement therapy (RRT) and any complications, eg transplant + skin malignancy from immunosuppression
- 3 Previous types of RRT and any complications, eg arteriovenous fistula + parathyroidectomy scar

Periphery: Hypertension, arteriovenous fistula (thrill, bruit, has it been recently needed?), signs of previous transplant—bruising from steroids, skin malignancy from immunosuppression.

Face: Pallor of anaemia, yellow tinge of uraemia, gum hypertrophy from ciclosporin, cushingoid appearance from steroids.

Neck: Current or previous tunnelled line insertion (if removed, look for a small scar over internal jugular, and a larger scar in 'breast pocket' area from the exit site), scar from parathyroidectomy.

Abdomen: PD catheter or sign of previous catheter (small midline scar just below umbilicus and small round scar to side of midline from exit site), signs of previous transplant (hockey-stick scar, palpable mass), ballotable polycystic kidneys \pm liver.

Elsewhere: Signs of diabetic neuropathy, retinopathy, cardiovascular or peripheral vascular disease.

Classifying renal impairment in chronic kidney disease (CKD)^{NICE}

This is based on presence of kidney damage and GFR, irrespective of diagnosis.

Stage	GFR (mL/min)	Notes
1	>90	Normal or \uparrow GFR with other evidence of renal damage*
2	60–89	Slight \downarrow GFR with other evidence of renal damage*
3 A	45–59	Moderate \downarrow GFR with or without evidence of other renal damage*
3 B	30–44	
4	15–29	Severe \downarrow GFR with or without evidence of renal damage*
5	<15	Established renal failure

*Proteinuria, haematuria, or evidence of abnormal anatomy or systemic disease. One reason to classify renal impairment is to motivate secondary prevention, eg to 'mandate' ACE-i or ARB if BP >140/85 especially if proteinuria is present or stage ≥ 3 .

Problems using MDRD formula to grade renal disease by eGFR (see p683):

► Remember that the eGFR is only a screening test and, especially in mild renal impairment, may underestimate renal function.

Monitoring renal function

Some patients with CKD lose renal function at a constant rate, so one can plot the reciprocal creatinine as a straight line, parallel to the fall in GFR. However, there is much individual variation in progression, so any plot is of limited use.²⁰ Rapid decline in renal function greater than that expected may be due to: infection, dehydration, uncontrolled tBP, metabolic disturbance (eg Ca^{2+}), obstruction, nephrotoxins (eg drugs). Intervention at this point may delay ESRF. Registry data show that the mean estimated GFR at which dialysis is commenced is ~ 8 mL/min.

Why does falling GFR matter? 1 Good renal function is essential for an optimum *milieu intérieur*. 2 A falling GFR is an *independent risk factor* for cardiovascular disease; ► *this is the chief cause of death from renal failure*.

Estimating GFR is difficult and notoriously inaccurate. If in doubt, calculate using 24 hour creatinine clearance or radioisotope clearance. See p683 for details.



Mild-moderate CKD is usually managed in general practice or by other physicians caring for the patient (eg diabetologists). Refer early to a nephrologist if the patient meets any of the following criteria:

- Stage 4 and 5 CKD
- Moderate proteinuria (ACR >70mg/mmol, see p286) unless due to DM and already appropriately treated
- Proteinuria with haematuria
- Rapidly falling eGFR (>5mL/min/1.73m² in 1yr, or >10mL/min/1.73m² within 5yrs)
- tBP poorly controlled despite ≥4 antihypertensive drugs at therapeutic doses
- Known or suspected rare or genetic causes of CKD
- Suspected renal artery stenosis

Management of patients can be split into four main approaches:

1 Investigation

- *Identifying and treating reversible causes:* relieve obstruction, stop nephrotoxic drugs, deal with high Ca²⁺ and cardiovascular risk (stop smoking, achieve a healthy weight), tight glucose control in DM.

2 Limiting progression/complications

- *BP:* Even a small BP drop may save significant renal function.²¹ Target BP is <130/80 (<125/75 if diabetic or ACR >70).²² Choice of drug as per local guidance; in diabetic kidney disease, even with normal BP, treat with an ACE-i or ARB.²³
- *Renal bone disease* (risk of osteodystrophy or adynamic bone disease): Check PTH and treat if raised.²⁴ PO₄³⁻ rises in CKD, which ↑PTH further, and also precipitates in the kidney and vasculature. Restrict diet, give binders (eg CalciChew®) to ↓ gut absorption. Vit D analogues (eg alfacalcidol) and Ca²⁺ supplements ↓ bone disease and hyperparathyroidism (2° and 3°, p214).¹
- *Cardiovascular modification:* In CKD stages 1 and 2, risk from cardiovascular death is higher than the risk of reaching ESRF. Give statins (p704) to CKD patients with raised lipids as per guidelines for any patient. Give aspirin also (CKD is not a contraindication to the use of low-dose aspirin, but beware of risk of bleeding).
- *Diet:* Multidisciplinary team care is essential and all patients should be reviewed by a dietician for advice on a healthy, moderate protein diet, K⁺ restriction if hyperkalaemic, and avoidance of high phosphate foods (eg milk, cheese, eggs).

3 Symptom control

- *Anaemia:* Check haematinics and replace iron/B₁₂/folate if necessary. If still anaemic consider recombinant human erythropoietin. There are many formulations, all of which should increase Hb in an iron, B₁₂ and folate replete patient. If Hb falls despite this, and no infection, haemolysis, or blood loss, etc. suspect red cell aplasia (anti-epo antibodies). Stop at once and get help from haematology. Keep Hb 100–120g/L; above this risks IV access thrombosis, ↑BP, MI).²⁵
- *Acidosis:* Consider sodium bicarbonate supplements for patients with low serum bicarbonate; this not only improves symptoms but may slow progression of CKD.²⁶ Caution in patients with hypertension, as sodium load can ↑BP.
- *Oedema:* High doses of loop diuretics may be needed (eg furosemide 250mg–2g/24h ± metolazone 5–10mg/24h PO each morning), and restriction on fluid and sodium intake.
- *Restless legs/cramps:* Check ferritin (low levels worsen symptoms), clonazepam (0.5–2mg daily) or gabapentin (p508) may help. Quinine sulfate (300mg nocte) can help with cramps.

4 Preparation for renal replacement therapy (RRT)

- See p298.

¹ Alfacalcidol and calcitriol (=1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol) help by ↑parathyroid hormone, but greatly ↑ intestinal Ca²⁺ and PO₄³⁻ absorption and bone mineral mobilization, leading to PO₄³⁻↑ and Ca²⁺↑ (risks vascular calcification). New vit D analogues (eg paricalcitol weekly IV²⁷) retain suppressive action on PTH and gland growth, but have less effect on Ca²⁺ and PO₄³⁻ absorption, and help cardiovascular status.²⁸

Renal biopsy

Most acute kidney injury is due to pre-renal causes or acute tubular necrosis, and recovery of renal function typically occurs over the course of a few weeks. Renal biopsy should be performed only if knowing histology will influence management. Once chronic kidney disease is established, the kidneys are small, there is a higher risk of bleeding from biopsy, and the results are usually unhelpful. Biopsies should only be carried out by physicians trained in the procedure, but the following information can be helpful if you are managing the pre- or post-biopsy patient.

Indications for renal biopsy: Unexplained acute kidney injury or chronic kidney disease, acute nephritic syndromes, unexplained proteinuria and haematuria, systemic diseases associated with kidney dysfunction, suspected transplant rejection (p299) or to guide treatment.²³

Pre-procedure: Check FBC, clotting, group and save. The physician performing the procedure should obtain written informed consent. Ultrasound to delineate anatomy. Stop anticoagulants (aspirin 1 week, warfarin 2-3 days, low molecular weight heparin 24 hours).

Contraindications: • Abnormal clotting • Hypertension $>160/>90$ mmHg • Single kidney (except for renal transplants) • Chronic kidney disease with small kidneys (<9 cm) • Uncooperative patient • Horseshoe kidney • Renal neoplasms.

Post-procedure: Bed rest for a minimum of 6h. Monitor pulse, BP, symptoms, and urine colour. Bleeding is the main complication; most occurs within 8h, although it may be delayed by up to 72h. Macroscopic haematuria occurs in $\sim 10\%$, although blood transfusion is only needed in $\sim 1-2\%$. Aspirin or warfarin can be restarted the next day if procedure uncomplicated.

Prescribing in renal failure

Relate dose modification to GFR, and the extent to which a drug is renally excreted. This is significant for aminoglycosides (gentamicin, p767), cephalosporins, and a few other antibiotics (p378-381), heparin, lithium, opiates, and digoxin.

► Never prescribe in renal failure before checking how its administration should be altered. Loading doses (eg digoxin) should not be changed. If the patient is on dialysis (peritoneal or haemodialysis), dose modification depends on how well it is eliminated by dialysis.

The best text to consult is the *Renal Drug Handbook*, an invaluable text detailing dose modification for almost any drug you could want to use. Most pharmacies and all hospitals should have a copy so speak to your pharmacist.



Mean GFR at start of dialysis is usually about 8–10 mL/min. Preparation is vital, and an MDT approach with psychological, nursing, dietetic and medical input can help patients make difficult decisions. The 'best' form of renal replacement therapy (RRT) is transplantation, but it involves major surgery and is not always successful. Dialysis, whether it be haemo- or peritoneal, can maintain stability but has many complications. For some patients no form of RRT is acceptable. *Conservative management*, particularly in the very elderly or those with significant comorbidities, is not an unreasonable option, and allows the focus of care to be on symptom control and delaying progression of disease. If a patient chooses active RRT then there are two main options aside from transplantation:

Haemodialysis (HD) Blood is passed over a semi-permeable membrane against dialysis fluid flowing in the opposite direction, thus blood is always meeting a less-concentrated solution and diffusion of small solutes occurs down the concentration gradient. Larger solutes do not clear as effectively.³⁰ Ultrafiltration creates a negative transmembrane pressure and is used to clear excess fluid.

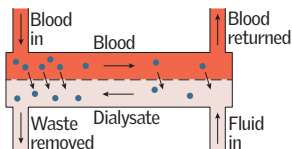


Fig 1. Haemodialysis.

Problems: Disequilibrium syndrome, hypotension, time consuming, access problems (arteriovenous fistula: thrombosis, stenosis, steal syndrome; tunnelled venous access line: infection, blockage, recirculation of blood).

Haemofiltration Blood is filtered across a highly permeable membrane, allowing movement of large and small solutes by convection at almost the same rate. The ultrafiltrate is replaced with an equal volume of fluid, so there is less haemodynamic instability. It is used in critically ill patients for this reason, but is impractical as long-term RRT, as it takes much longer than HD to achieve the same clearance.

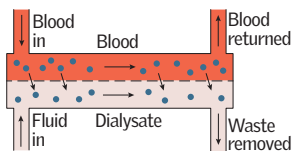


Fig 2. Haemofiltration.

Peritoneal dialysis (PD) Uses the peritoneum as a semi-permeable membrane. A Tenckhoff catheter is inserted into the peritoneal cavity and fluid infused, allowing solutes to diffuse slowly across. Ultrafiltration can be achieved by adding osmotic agents such as glucose to the fluid. It is simple to perform, can be carried out continuously and at home, and so allows the patient more freedom. There are multiple regimens that can be tailored to the patient's needs.

Problems: PD peritonitis, exit site infection, loss of membrane function over time (which can lead to technical failure and need to switch to alternative form of RRT).

Complications of RRT Annual mortality is ~20%, mostly due to *cardiovascular disease*: MI and CVA are much commoner in dialysis patients, thought due to a combination of hypertension and calcium/phosphate dysregulation. *Protein-calorie malnutrition* is common in HD and is associated with morbidity and mortality. *Renal bone disease*: high bone turnover, renal osteodystrophy and osteitis fibrosa (due to ↑PTH). *Infection*: Uraemia causes granulocyte dysfunction. Sepsis-related mortality is 100- to 300-fold greater in dialysis patients than general population. *Amyloid* accumulates in long-term dialysis patients and may cause carpal tunnel syndrome, arthralgia, and fractures. *Malignancy* is commoner in dialysis patients; this may be related to the cause of ESRF, eg urothelial tumours in analgesic nephropathy.

Stopping dialysis Dialysis exerts a big toll on quality of life, and it may all become too much, eg if very old³¹ or there is comorbidity (eg psychiatric or mobility issues). 8–20% of deaths in dialysis patients are due to its withdrawal.³² ▶ Good palliative care allows a good death and mitigates discomfort caused by uraemia. Good communication in the renal team, clear protocols and living wills help the big ethical dilemma.³³

Renal transplantation

This is the treatment of choice for end-stage renal failure (ESRF). However, a transplant involves major surgery, long-term immunosuppression and a number of potential complications, and patients must be physically and psychologically suitable for a transplant. Anaesthetic assessment is key, with cardiac testing and investigation of other systems as appropriate, eg lung function testing.

Absolute contraindications Active infection, cancer (if >5yrs ago and considered cured, may be considered for transplant), severe comorbidity.

Types of graft **DCD:** Donor after cardiac death, patients who do not meet criteria for brainstem death, retrieval of organs only begins when cardiac output has ceased. High risk of delayed graft function due to long warm ischaemic time.

DBD: Donor after brainstem death, patients who meet criteria for brainstem death and therefore remain on cardiorespiratory support for retrieval. Much reduced risk of delayed graft function. **LD:** Living donor grafts give much better outcomes, with planned surgery and minimal ischaemic time. Can be related (parent, sibling) or unrelated (spouse, friend). All live donor transplants must be assessed by an Independent Assessor from the Human Tissue Authority before permission can be given to the surgical centre to go ahead with transplantation. For all donors this involves a psychological assessment ensuring they understand the risks of transplantation.

Immunosuppression

Induction: Conventional induction is with anti-IL-2R monoclonal antibody basiliximab; however, many centres are now using alemtuzumab (Campath®), which provides broad immunosuppression and allows a steroid-free maintenance regimen. This is particularly useful in patients with diabetes, but trials are ongoing.

Maintenance: Most patients are maintained on triple therapy of a calcineurin inhibitor (CNI, tacrolimus or ciclosporin), an antimetabolite (azathioprine or mycophenolate) and prednisolone.

Complications

Surgical: Bleed, thrombosis, infection, urinary leaks, lymphocele, hernia.

Delayed graft function: Affects up to 40% of grafts, far more common in DCD. Usually ATN in graft due to ischaemia-reperfusion injury.

Rejection: Can be acute or chronic. Acute is divided into humoral (antibody mediated) or cellular (far commoner); usual treatment for either is high dose IV methylprednisolone and an intensification of immunosuppression. Antibody-mediated rejection often requires plasma exchange in addition to clear donor-specific antibodies. Chronic allograft nephropathy is the new terminology for chronic rejection. It is thought to be a combination of chronic, low-grade antibody response plus vascular changes and the effects of CNIs. It generally does not respond to treatment but sometimes progression can be slowed by switching CNI to sirolimus.

Drug toxicity: Neurological (tremor, confusion with CNIs), new onset diabetes after transplant (NODAT), gum hypertrophy and hirsutism (ciclosporin), agranulocytosis and hepatitis (antimetabolites).

Infection: Increased risk of all infections, but opportunists and viral infections particularly due to poor T cell response. HSV, *Candida*, *Pneumocystis jirovecii*, CMV.

Malignancy: 5-fold increased risk of cancer with immunosuppression, particularly skin and viral associated. Women should have regular cervical smears, EBV associated post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder is particularly problematic.

Cardiovascular disease: Probably due to drug effects, the leading cause of death in transplant patients. ↑BP in >50% of transplants, probably due in part to donor vascular disease in the graft, plus immunosuppressants.

Prognosis Current figures show 1-year graft survival ranges from 91% (DCD) to 96% (LD), and patient survival from 96% (DCD) to 99% (LD). 10-year graft survival is 60% from DCD, up to 80% from a living donor. Figures are improving year on year.³⁴



The glomerulonephritides are a common cause of ESRF in adults. Many people find the glomerulonephritides complex, confusing and the list of diseases difficult to remember. However, with renal disease, remember the names for the glomerulonephritides are often descriptive, relating to the histology or cause. It is simpler to think in terms of the presentation, and then your list of possible causes reduces to a more manageable one. Glomerulonephritis simply means inflammation of the glomeruli and nephrons; when you remember this you can appreciate what the consequences of this inflammation are:

- Damage to the glomerulus restricts blood flow, leading to compensatory ↑BP
- Damage to the filtration mechanism allows protein and blood to enter the urine
- Loss of the usual filtration capacity leads to acute kidney injury

Depending on the degree of inflammation and damage, and what it is caused by, patients therefore present with a spectrum of disease:

- 1 Blood pressure: normal to malignant hypertension
- 2 Urine dipstick: *proteinuria* mild→nephrotic; *haematuria* mild→macroscopic
- 3 Renal function: normal to severe impairment

Presentation: Many patients present with specific syndromes:

Syndrome	BP	Urine	GFR
Nephrotic (p302)	Normal-mild ↑	Proteinuria >3.5g/day	Normal-mild ↓
Nephritic	Moderate-severe ↑	Haematuria (mild-macro)	Moderate-severe ↓

Causes: generally considered primary (no underlying drive to disease) or secondary (to infection, autoimmunity or malignancy) and tend to present with similar syndromes.

Syndrome	Common primary causes	Common secondary causes
Nephrotic	Membranous Minimal change FSGS (p303) Mesangiocapillary GN	Diabetes SLE (class V nephritis) Amyloid Hepatitis B/c
Nephritic	IgA nephropathy Mesangiocapillary GN	Post streptococcal Vasculitis SLE (other classes of nephritis) Anti-GBM disease (Figs 1 & 2) Cryoglobulinaemia

Tests: looking for degree of damage and potential cause. **Blood:** FBC, U&E, LFT, ESR, CRP; immunoglobulins, electrophoresis, complement (C3, C4); autoantibodies (p555): ANA, ANCA, anti-dsDNA, anti-GBM; blood culture, ASOT, HBsAg, anti-HCV (p406). **Urine:** RBC casts, MC&S, Bence Jones protein, ACR (see p286). **Imaging:** CXR, renal ultrasound.

Renal biopsy (p297) will give the most information and is where many of the complex names arise. Generally it is reported as follows: what is affected (mesangial cells, capillaries, basement membrane, endothelium), how much of the kidney is involved (focal vs diffuse), how much of the glomerulus is involved (segmental vs global), and what is seen on immunofluorescence (deposition of Igs, complement, immune complexes or pauci immune) and electron microscopy.

General management ▶ Early referral to a nephrologist. Keep BP <130/80, or <125/75 if proteinuria >1g/d. Include an ACE-i or ARB as these have proven benefits in reducing proteinuria and preserving renal function; however, there is no additional benefit from dual therapy.³⁵

Specific types of glomerulonephritis

IgA nephropathy: Commonest GN in the developed world. Most present with macro- or microscopic haematuria; occasionally nephritic syndrome. **Typical patient:** Young man with episodic macroscopic haematuria, recovery is often rapid between attacks. There is \uparrow IgA, possibly due to infection, which forms immune complexes and deposits in mesangial cells. **Renal biopsy:** Mesangial proliferation, immunofluorescence (IF) shows deposits of IgA and C3. **Rx:** BP control with ACE-i. With nephritic presentation immunosuppression may slow decline of renal function. **Prognosis:** Worse if \uparrow TBP, male, proteinuria or renal failure at presentation. 20% of adults develop ESRF over \sim 20yrs.

Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP) is a systemic variant of IgA nephropathy, causing a small vessel vasculitis. **Features:** Purpuric rash on extensor surfaces (typically on the legs), flitting polyarthritides, abdominal pain (GI bleeding) and nephritis. **Diagnosis:** Usually clinical. Confirmed with positive IF for IgA and C3 in skin or renal biopsy (identical to IgA nephropathy). **Treatment:** Same as IgA nephropathy. **Prognosis:** 15% nephritic patients \rightarrow ESRF; if both nephritic and nephrotic syndrome, 50% \rightarrow ESRF.

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE): \sim 1/3 of patients with SLE will have evidence of renal disease with vascular, glomerular, and tubulointerstitial damage. Split into class I-IV (increasing severity) and class V (membranous). Requires early treatment.

Anti-glomerular basement membrane (GBM) disease (figs 1 and 2): Also known as Goodpasture's disease, caused by auto-antibodies to type IV collagen, an essential component of the GBM. Type IV collagen is also found in the lung and pulmonary haemorrhage can occur, especially in smokers. Present with haematuria/nephritic syndrome, AKI may occur within days of onset of symptoms. If \uparrow Rx (plasma exchange, steroids \pm cytotoxics) is started early, full recovery is possible and relapses are rare. Renal prognosis is poor if dialysis-dependent at presentation.

Post-streptococcal GN (a diffuse proliferative GN) occurs 1-12 weeks after a sore throat or skin infection. A streptococcal antigen is deposited on the glomerulus, causing a host reaction and immune complex formation. **Presentation:** Usually nephritic syndrome. **Renal biopsy:** Not usually done unless atypical presentation. Inflammatory reaction affecting mesangial and endothelial cells, IF: IgG and C3 deposits. **Serology:** \uparrow ASOT; \uparrow C3. **Treatment:** Supportive: $>95\%$ recover renal function.

Rapidly progressive GN (RPGN): The most aggressive GN, with potential to cause ESRF over days. There are different causes; all have the biopsy finding of crescents affecting most glomeruli. RPGN is classified pathologically into 3 categories:³⁶

- Immune complex disease ($\sim 45\%$ of cases): eg post-infectious, SLE, IgA/HSP
- Pauci-immune disease ($\sim 50\%$ of cases, 80-90% ANCA +ve): granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA, previously known as Wegener's*—c-ANCA +ve, p728), microscopic polyangiitis (MPA—p-ANCA +ve), Churg-Strauss syndrome, p710.
- Anti-GBM disease ($\sim 3\%$): Goodpasture's disease p714.

Clinically: AKI \pm systemic features (eg fever, myalgia, weight loss, haemoptysis). Pulmonary haemorrhage is the commonest cause of death in ANCA +ve patients.

Treatment: Aggressive immunosuppression with high-dose IV steroids and cyclophosphamide \pm plasma exchange. **Prognosis:** 5-year survival 80%.

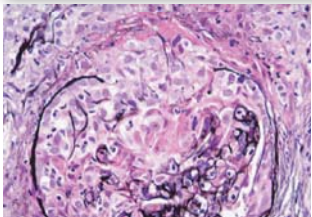


Fig 1. Crescentic GN: a proliferation of epithelial cells and macrophages with rupture of Bowman's capsule, in this patient caused by anti-GBM (Goodpasture's) disease (p714).

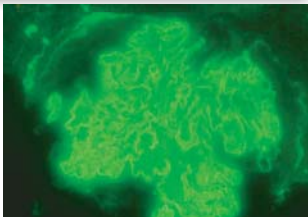


Fig 2. Immunofluorescence for IgG, showing linear staining characteristic of anti-GBM disease.

Figs 1 & 2 courtesy of Dr I. Roberts.

► If there is oedema, dipstick MSU for protein to avoid missing renal disease.

Definition The nephrotic syndrome is a triad of:

- Proteinuria $>3.5\text{g}/24\text{h}$ (ACR $>250\text{mg}/\text{mmol}$)
- Hypoalbuminaemia ($<25\text{g}/\text{L}$, usually much lower)
- Oedema

Severe hyperlipidaemia (total cholesterol $>10\text{mmol}/\text{L}$) is often present.³⁷

Causes Nephrotic syndrome is not a diagnosis, therefore the underlying cause should always be sought. It can be due to primary renal disease or secondary to a number of systemic disorders.

- **Primary causes:** Minimal change disease, membranous nephropathy, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), mesangiocapillary GN (MCGN).
- **Secondary causes:** Hepatitis B/C (usually membranous, hep C can cause MCGN), SLE (class V lupus nephritis causes a membranous pattern), diabetic nephropathy, amyloidosis, paraneoplastic (usually membranous pattern) or drug related (again usually membranous—NSAIDs, penicillamine, anti-TNF, gold).

Pathophysiology Injury to the podocyte appears to be the main cause of proteinuria, podocytes wrap around the glomerular capillaries and maintain the filtration barrier, preventing large molecular weight proteins from entering the urine. Effacement of the foot processes or loss of podocytes can cause heavy protein loss.

Assessment Patients present with pitting oedema, which can be severe and rapid onset, occurring in dependent areas and areas of low tissue resistance, eg periorbitally. **History:** Ask about acute or chronic infections, drugs, allergies, systemic symptoms suggestive of autoimmunity or malignancy. **Signs:** Urine dip shows ++++ protein, albumin is low, BP is usually normal or mildly increased, renal function is usually normal or mildly impaired. **Differential diagnosis:** CCF (↑JVP, pulmonary oedema, mild proteinuria) or liver disease (↓albumin).

► Refer to a nephrologist for further assessment and renal biopsy.

- In children minimal change GN is the commonest cause of nephrotic syndrome and a trial of steroids causes resolution in 90%. Biopsy is avoided in children unless no response to steroids or if clinical features suggest another cause, eg age $<1\text{yr}$, family history, extrarenal disease (eg arthritis, rash, anaemia), renal failure, haematuria.
- All adults should undergo a biopsy as well as full assessment (see under tests for GN, p300). Renal biopsy is more difficult in patients with nephrotic syndrome because of gross oedema and a hypercoagulable state.

Complications

- **Susceptibility to infection** (eg cellulitis, *Streptococcus* infections and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis) happens in up to 20% of adult patients because of ↓serum IgG, ↓complement activity, and ↓T cell function (due in part to loss of immunoglobulin in urine and also to immunosuppressive treatments).
- **Thromboembolism:** (Up to 40%): eg DVT/PE, renal vein thrombosis. This hypercoagulable state is partly due to ↑clotting factors and platelet abnormalities.
- **Hyperlipidaemia:** ↑Cholesterol and triglycerides, thought to be due to hepatic lipoprotein synthesis in response to low oncotic pressure.

Treatment

- 1 **Reduce oedema:** Loop diuretics, eg furosemide are used, often high doses are needed. Gut oedema may prevent oral absorption so IV route is useful. Check daily weight (aim for 0.5–1kg loss/day) and daily u&es. Fluid restrict to 1L/day and salt restrict while giving diuretics.
- 2 **Reduce proteinuria:** ACE-i or ARB should be started in all patients.
- 3 **Reduce risk of complications:** Anticoagulate if nephrotic range proteinuria, start a statin to reduce cholesterol (although often resolves spontaneously when cause treated), treat infections promptly and vaccinate (pneumovax II®, p160; flu).
- 4 **Treat underlying cause:** Find and treat underlying infections, malignancy or systemic disease. Stop causative drugs. Some primary causes do respond to specific therapies.



Histological patterns of nephrotic syndrome

Minimal change Commonest cause of nephrotic syndrome in children (76%, and 20% of nephrotic adults). In adults it can be idiopathic or in association with drugs (NSAIDs) or paraneoplastic (usually Hodgkin's lymphoma). **Biopsy:** Normal under light microscopy (hence the name). Electron microscopy shows effacement of the podocyte foot processes. **R:** 90% of children and 70% of adults undergo remission with steroids, but the majority relapse. Spontaneous remission can occur, and suggests the benefit of steroids is to hold disease until the poorly understood underlying process abates.³⁸ Frequently relapsing or steroid-dependent disease is treated with cyclophosphamide or ciclosporin/tacrolimus. **Prognosis:** ~1% → ESRF.

Membranous nephropathy Accounts for 20–30% of nephrotic syndrome in adults; 2–5% in children. Mostly idiopathic, but can be associated with malignancy, hepatitis B, drugs (gold, penicillamine, NSAIDs) and autoimmunity (thyroid, SLE). **Biopsy:** Diffusely thickened GBM with IgG and C3 subepithelial deposits on immunofluorescence (IF). **Treatment:** Secondary involves treating the underlying cause, proteinuria often remits with, eg control of hepatitis B viraemia. In idiopathic membranous, treatment involves general measures such as ACE/ARB and diuretics. Spontaneous complete remission occurs in up to 30% and partial remission in 24–40% by 5 years. However, with the discovery that antibodies directed against the phospholipase A2 receptor are found in up to 80% of patients with idiopathic membranous nephropathy, interest is growing in immunosuppressive therapy. Trials are ongoing into the use of the modified Ponticelli regimen (alternating IV steroids with chlorambucil/cyclophosphamide), historically results have been variable. In patients who are anti-PLA2 antibody positive, rituximab, an anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, is also being trialled.

Mesangiocapillary GN Previously divided into type I, II and III, now a more aetiology-based approach divides into **immune complex (IC) mediated** and **complement mediated**. **IC mediated** is driven by circulating immune complexes, which deposit in the kidney and activate complement via the classical pathway. An underlying cause can be found in most cases, eg hepatitis C, SLE and monoclonal gammopathies. **Complement mediated** is less common and involves persistent activation of the alternative complement pathway, eg C3 nephritic factor. Patients can have extra-renal manifestations, eg Drusen in the retina. **Biopsy:** mesangial and endocapillary proliferation, a thickened capillary basement membrane, double contouring (tramline) of the capillary walls. IF can show Ig staining, complement staining or light chains depending on cause. Electron microscopy shows electron dense deposits. **Treatment:** underlying cause as priority, ACE/ARB for all. Immunosuppression if rapid progression of disease with steroids ± cyclophosphamide if rapid deterioration in renal function. Given the role of complement, it is possible that new complement-targeted therapies such as eculizumab may be trialled. **Prognosis:** poor where no underlying cause can be found. In patients who reach ESRF (usually idiopathic disease) it can recur in transplants and lead to graft loss.

Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS) may be primary (idiopathic) or secondary (vesicoureteric reflux, IgA nephropathy, Alport's syndrome (OHCS p638), vasculitis (p558), sickle-cell disease, heroin use). HIV is associated with the collapsing subtype (poor prognosis). **Presentation:** Usually nephrotic syndrome or proteinuria. ~50% have impaired renal function. **Biopsy:** Some glomeruli have scarring of certain segments (ie focal sclerosis). IF: IgM and C3 deposits in affected areas. **R:** Responds to corticosteroids in ~30%. Cyclophosphamide or ciclosporin are considered if steroid-resistant. **Prognosis:** Untreated most progress to ESRF. Spontaneous remission probably <10%. Longer courses of treatment lead to response in up to 70%; however, those presenting with abnormal renal function have much poorer prognosis, 30–50% → ESRF. It recurs in approx. 20% of transplanted kidneys, and may respond to plasma exchange.

Loop diuretics, eg furosemide, bumetanide

Mechanism: Block the $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+2\text{Cl}^-$ co-transporter in the thick ascending limb of the Loop of Henle, hence increase the solute load of the filtrate and reduce water resorption. **Effects:** Significant loss of water and Na^+Cl^- . Ca^{2+} , K^+ and H^+ excretion is also increased. **Clinical use:** They are readily absorbed from the GI tract, and given orally they act within 1 hour. IV the peak effect is seen within 30 minutes so they are useful in treating acute pulmonary oedema. Widely used in peripheral oedema (heart failure, ascites). They can also be used to treat severe hypercalcaemia. **Side effects:** Hypokalaemic metabolic alkalosis (because of K^+ and H^+ excretion), hypovolaemia, ototoxicity, allergic reactions.

Thiazide diuretics, eg bendroflumethiazide, indapamide, metolazone

Mechanism: They inhibit the Na^+Cl^- transporter in the distal convoluted tubule. They also decrease Na^+Cl^- resorption and hence increase water loss. **Effects:** Moderate Na^+ and Cl^- excretion. They result in low urine Ca^{2+} by increasing urinary Ca^{2+} resorption (the opposite effect of loop diuretics). They can cause profound hypokalaemia due to excessive K^+ loss. Excretion of uric acid is reduced, and Mg^{2+} is increased. **Use:** Their action begins within 1-2 hours after ingestion, and lasts for 12-24 hours. Useful in TBP, long-term treatment of oedema (eg heart failure). They can reduce renal stone formation in patients with idiopathic hypercalciuria by decreasing urine calcium concentrations. **Side effects:** Hypokalaemia, hyponatraemia, hypomagnesaemia, metabolic alkalosis, hyperglycaemia, increased serum lipid and uric acid levels (thiazide diuretics are contraindicated in gout).

Potassium-sparing diuretics

Mechanism: Spironolactone and eplerenone are aldosterone antagonists and hence inhibit the sodium-retaining action of aldosterone. Amiloride and triamterene block sodium channels in collecting tubules. Both types decrease K^+ excretion. **Effects:** They increase Na^+ excretion and decrease K^+ and H^+ excretion, there is a mild associated diuresis. The onset of action of spironolactone is very slow, and takes several days to have its full effect. Amiloride has a much faster onset and a duration of action of only 12-16 hours. **Use:** Usually used to control the K^+ wasting caused by loop diuretics or thiazides and are given as combination therapy. Spironolactone and eplerenone have significant benefits in hyperaldosteronism (serum aldosterone. Primary = Conn's, rare. Secondary occurs in cirrhosis and heart failure). **Side effects:** Hyperkalaemia is common, metabolic acidosis can occur. Anti-androgenic effects (eg gynaecomastia) are seen with spironolactone, as is GI upset.

Osmotic diuretics Mannitol is a solute that is freely filtered at the glomerulus but poorly reabsorbed from the tubule, so it remains in the lumen and holds water by osmotic effect. The reduction in water reabsorption occurs in the proximal tubule and loop of Henle and also slightly increases Na^+ loss. **Effects:** Mannitol can reduce brain volume and intracranial pressure by osmotically extracting water from the tissue into the blood. **Use:** Haemolysis, rhabdomyolysis, reducing intra-ocular and intra-cranial pressures. **Side-effects:** $\uparrow\text{Na}^+$, headache, nausea, vomiting. In patients who are unable to form urine the transient expansion of the extracellular fluid when water is extracted from intra-cellular fluid can cause pulmonary oedema.

Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors such as acetazolamide act on the proximal tubule to increase excretion of bicarbonate and consequently sodium, potassium and water. This causes alkalization of the urine and hence a mild metabolic acidosis. They are not used as diuretics but are still available for use in **glaucoma** to reduce the formation of aqueous humour. It is also used by climbers (as Diamox[®]) to increase respiration (the body's attempt is to clear the acidosis) and hence improve acclimatization to altitude and reduce the risk of acute mountain sickness (with its rare but deadly complications of high-altitude pulmonary and cerebral oedema).

¹ Principal source: *Pharmacology*. Authors: HP Rang, MM Dale, JM Ritter, PK Moore. Fifth Edition. 2003 Churchill Livingstone.

² Na^+ = sodium, Cl^- = chloride, K^+ = potassium, Ca^{2+} = calcium, Mg^{2+} = magnesium, H^+ = hydrogen ion.

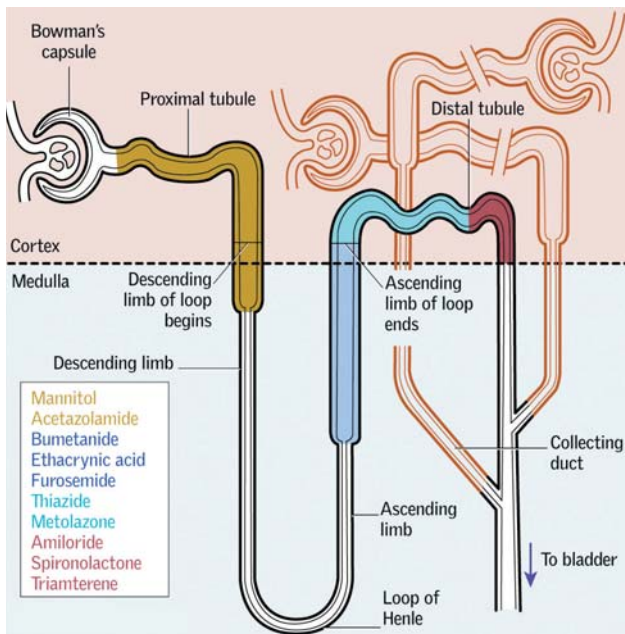


Fig 1. The nephron and sites of action of diuretics.

Proximal convoluted tubule This segment reabsorbs amino acids, glucose, and numerous cations. It is also responsible for 60–70% of the total reabsorption of Na^+ . Bicarbonate is reabsorbed by means of the enzyme carbonic anhydrase; this process can be inhibited by carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (eg acetazolamide). Some drugs that are used in treating gout affect uric acid transport in this segment.

Thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+/\text{2Cl}^-$ co-transporter (which is the target of loop diuretics) acts in this segment. It is also a major site of calcium and Mg reabsorption. 20–30% of the filtered sodium is reabsorbed in this segment.

Distal convoluted tubule 5–8% of sodium reabsorption occurs in this segment. Calcium is also reabsorbed in this segment under the control of PTH.

Cortical collecting tubule In this segment Na^+ is reabsorbed accompanied by an equivalent excretion of K^+ or H^+ ions into urine. Therefore this segment is the main site of urine acidification and K^+ excretion. This is also the site of action of the potassium-sparing diuretics.



Tubulointerstitial nephritis (TIN) Inflammation of the renal interstitium.

Acute interstitial nephritis (AIN) is mediated by an immune reaction to drugs, infections or autoimmune disorders. *Drugs:* NSAIDs, antibiotics; diuretics; also allopurinol, omeprazole, phenytoin, among others. *Infections:* Staphs, Streps, *Bruceella*, *Leptospira*, several viruses. *Immune disorders*, eg SLE, sarcoid—or *no obvious cause*. ▶ Take a full drug history including over-the-counter and herbal preparations.

Features: Usually mild renal impairment; raised \uparrow BP/oliguria are uncommon (indicate worse prognosis). Drug reactions: often 'allergic' picture with fever, rash and peripheral eosinophilia. Biopsy shows inflammatory cell infiltrate in the interstitium. *R:* stop/treat causative agent. If renal function does not improve within a week then trial of prednisolone 1mg/kg/24h for 4 weeks may improve prognosis but the evidence base is poor and trials have had mixed results. *Prognosis:* Generally good if caught early.

Chronic tubulointerstitial nephritis (CIN) is common in disorders leading to abnormal anatomy, eg reflux nephropathy, cystic kidney disease. In normal kidneys it is much less common, causing about 3% ESRF in the UK, with analgesic nephropathy being the commonest cause. Drugs and toxins are common causes, autoimmune diseases such as SLE, RA and Sjögren's rarer; often seen in haematological disorders such as myeloma, light chain disease and sickle cell disease, so investigate for these.

Analgesic nephropathy in the 1950s–70s was the commonest cause of AKI and CKD. History is of chronic, heavy analgesic use, usually NSAIDs, commoner in women. Patients may complain of loin pain (papillary necrosis) but it is often silent until late CKD. Urinalysis can show sterile pyuria and mild proteinuria but may be normal. USS shows small and irregular kidneys. IVU shows the classic 'cup and spill' appearance but CT without contrast is more sensitive.³⁹ Biopsy shows CIN. *R:* Stop/treat cause. Sudden flank pain should prompt an ultrasound or CT urogram to look for obstruction from a sloughed papilla. There is an \uparrow risk of atherosclerosis in these patients.

Aristolochic acid is a nephrotoxin found in plants endemic to areas along the River Danube (*Balkan herb nephropathy*) and some Chinese medicine (*Chinese herb nephropathy*). It can cause CIN in genetically susceptible individuals. *Clinical features:* There is a long duration between exposure and disease presentation. Patients are usually normotensive, \uparrow BP only develops with ESRF.⁴⁰ There is an \uparrow risk of urothelial tumours, reported in up to 40%.⁴¹

Urate nephropathy *Acute crystal nephropathy:* AKI due to uric acid precipitation within the tubules. It is most often due to tumour lysis syndrome, seen in haematological malignancies after chemotherapy, which leads to overproduction of uric acid.⁴² The renal parenchyma appears bright on USS. Plasma urate is often markedly raised with urinary birefringent crystals on microscopy. *R:* p346: keep well hydrated, allopurinol pre-chemo, urinary alkalization with sodium bicarbonate (solubility of uric acid). *Chronic urate nephropathy:* Much reduced incidence with improved diet and earlier treatment of gout with allopurinol. Hyperuricaemic nephropathy is associated with several familial disorders including familial juvenile gout and xanthinuria.

Hypercalcaemia can cause AKI whatever the cause (myeloma, sarcoid, malignancy, nephrocalcinosis, etc). Reduce the calcium acutely with rehydration and IV bisphosphonates (see p691) but ultimately treat the underlying cause.

Radiation nephritis is renal impairment following radiotherapy and occurs acutely (<1 year) or can have a chronic onset (years later). *Signs:* \uparrow BP, proteinuria, progression to ESRF. Biopsy shows interstitial fibrosis. *R:* Strict BP control, nil specific. *Prevention:* During radiotherapy, ensure adequate shielding (or exclusion) of renal areas.



Nephrotoxins

Many agents may be toxic to the kidneys and cause acute kidney injury (AKI), usually by direct acute tubular necrosis, or by causing interstitial nephritis. Examples are shown (not an exhaustive list and idiosyncratic reactions are possible).

- Analgesics (NSAIDs)
- Antimicrobials: gentamicin, sulfonamides, penicillins, rifampicin, amphotericin, aciclovir
- Anticonvulsants: lamotrigine, valproate, phenytoin
- Other drugs: omeprazole, furosemide, thiazides, ACE-i and ARBs, cimetidine, lithium, iron, calcineurin inhibitors, cisplatin
- Anaesthetic agents: methoxyflurane, enflurane
- Radiocontrast material
- Crystals: urate
- Toxins: aristolochia, cadmium, lead, arsenic, ethylene glycol
- Haemoglobin in haemolysis, myoglobin in rhabdomyolysis
- Proteins: Igs in myeloma, light chain disease
- Bacteria: streptococci, legionella, brucella, mycoplasma, chlamydia, TB, salmonella, campylobacter
- Viruses: EBV, CMV, HIV, polyoma virus, adenovirus, measles
- Other: leptospirosis, syphilis, toxoplasma, leishmania

Aminoglycosides (gentamicin, amikacin, streptomycin) are well-recognized nephrotoxins. Typically give mild non-oliguric AKI, 1–2wks into therapy. Risk is by old age, renal hypoperfusion, pre-existing CKD, high dosage/prolonged treatment, and co-administration of other nephrotoxins. Recovery may be delayed or incomplete. Single bolus doses of aminoglycosides can be as effective as multiple doses in treating infection and less nephrotoxic. ▶ Check levels p766!

Radiocontrast nephropathy is a very common cause of iatrogenic AKI with IV contrast radiological studies. Risk factors are diabetes mellitus, high doses of contrast medium, hypovolaemia, other nephrotoxic agents, and previous CKD. **Prevention is key:** stop nephrotoxic agents peri-procedure, and pre-hydrate with IV 0.9% sodium chloride in patients with risk factors. ▶ Follow local protocols and inform radiology, who may use less nephrotoxic contrast. See p763.

Rhabdomyolysis results from skeletal muscle breakdown, with release of its contents into the circulation, including myoglobin, K^+ , PO_4^{3-} , urate and creatine kinase (CK). Complications include $\uparrow K^+$ and AKI: myoglobin is filtered by the glomeruli and precipitates, obstructing renal tubules. **Causes:** Many, including post-ischaemia; eg embolism, clamp on artery during surgery, trauma: prolonged immobilization (eg after falling), burns, crush injury, excessive exercise, uncontrolled seizures; drugs and toxins: statins, alcohol, ecstasy, heroin, snake bite, carbon monoxide, neuroleptic malignant syndrome (p855); infections: Coxsackie, EBV, influenza; metabolic: $K^+\downarrow$, $PO_4^{3-}\downarrow$, myositis, malignant hyperpyrexia (p574); inherited muscle disorders: McArdle's disease (p718), Duchenne's muscular dystrophy (p514). **Clinical features:** Often of the cause, with muscle pain, swelling, tenderness, and red-brown urine. **Tests:** Plasma CK >1000 iU/L (often $>10,000$ iU/L). MI must be excluded as a cause (troponin negative). Visible myoglobinuria (tea- or cola-coloured urine) occurs when urinary myoglobin exceeds $250\mu\text{g/mL}$ (normal $<5\text{ng/mL}$)⁴³ Urine is +ve for blood on dipstick but *without* RBC on microscopy. **Others:** $K^+\uparrow$, $PO_4^{3-}\uparrow$, $Ca^{2+}\downarrow$ (enters muscle), urate. AKI occurs 12–24 hours later, and DIC is associated (p346). Compartment syndrome can result from muscle injury. **Treatment:** Urgent treatment for hyperkalaemia (p849). IV fluid rehydration is a priority to prevent AKI: maintain urine output at 300mL/h until myoglobinuria has ceased; initially up to 1.5L fluid/h may be needed. If oliguric, CVP monitoring is useful to prevent fluid overload. IV sodium bicarbonate is used to alkalinize urine to pH >6.5 , to stabilize a less toxic form of myoglobin. Dialysis may be needed. Ideally manage patient in HDU/ICU setting to allow early detection of deterioration and regular bloods and monitoring. Prognosis is good if treated early.



Hypertension often causes renal problems (eg CKD, p296, and sometimes AKI eg in malignant hypertension or pre-eclampsia¹) and most renal diseases can cause hypertension (esp. diabetic nephropathy, glomerulonephritis, chronic interstitial nephritis, polycystic kidneys and renovascular disease).

Renovascular disease (Fig 1) Defined as stenosis of the renal artery or one of its branches. **Causes:** Atherosclerosis (in 80%: >50yrs, arteriopathies: often co-existent IHD, stroke or peripheral vascular disease), fibromuscular dysplasia (10%, younger ♀). Rarer: Takayasu's arteritis, antiphospholipid syndrome, post-renal transplant, thromboembolism, external compression. **Signs:** tBP resistant to treatment; worsening renal function after ACE-i/ARB in bilateral renal artery stenosis; 'flash' pulmonary oedema (sudden onset, without LV impairment on cardiac echo). Abdominal ± carotid or femoral bruits, and weak leg pulses may be found. **Tests:** USS: renal size asymmetry (affected side is smaller), disturbance in renal blood flow on Doppler US. CT/MR angiography are more sensitive. Renal angiography is 'gold standard', but do after CT/MR as it is invasive (p759). **Rx:** Comprehensive antihypertensive regimens (p134), transluminal angioplasty ± stent placement or revascularization surgery. Best medical management is probably superior to revascularization in atherosclerotic disease, see the ASTRAL trial.⁴⁴

Haemolytic uraemic syndrome (HUS) HUS is characterized by *microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia* (MAHA): intravascular haemolysis + red cell fragmentation. Endothelial damage triggers thrombosis, platelet consumption and fibrin strand deposition, mainly in renal microvasculature. The strands cause mechanical destruction of passing RBCs. Thrombocytopenia and AKI result. **Causes:** 90% are from *E. coli* strain O157 ('O' denotes the somatic antigen, as opposed to H, the flagellar antigen). This produces a verotoxin that attacks endothelial cells. This typically affects young children in outbreaks (more common than sporadically) after eating undercooked contaminated meat. **Signs:** Abdominal pain, bloody diarrhoea, and AKI. **Tests:** Haematuria/proteinuria. Blood film: fragmented RBC (schistocytes, p330); ↓platelets, ↓Hb. Clotting tests are normal. **Rx:** Seek expert advice. Dialysis for AKI may be needed. Plasma exchange is used in severe persistent disease. **Prognosis:** Worse in non-*E. coli* cases. Mortality 3–5%, good prognosis if caught early.

Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) (Fig 2) There is an overlap between TTP and HUS, and many physicians consider them a spectrum of disease. All patients have MAHA (severe, often with jaundice) and low platelets. Other features can include AKI, fluctuating CNS signs (eg seizures, hemiparesis, ↓consciousness, ↓vision) and fever. The classic description included the full 'pentad' of features, but with the advent of plasma exchange this is rarely seen. Mortality is higher than childhood HUS and can be >90% if untreated, though reduced to ~20% with plasma exchange. **Pathophysiology:** There is a genetic or acquired deficiency of a protease (ADAMTS13) that normally cleaves multimers of von Willebrand factor (vWf). Large vWf multimers form, causing platelet aggregation and fibrin deposition in small vessels, leading to microthrombi. **Causes:** Idiopathic (40%), autoimmunity (eg SLE), cancer, pregnancy, drug associated (eg quinine), bloody diarrhoea prodrome (as childhood HUS), haematopoietic stem cell transplant. ▶ *It is a haematological emergency: get expert help.* **Tests:** As HUS. **Rx:** Urgent plasma exchange may be life-saving. Steroids are the mainstay for non-responders, although new therapies such as eculizumab (monoclonal antibody targeting terminal complement pathway C5) have shown promising results in case reports,⁴⁵ though seem to be more effective in children than adults.⁴⁶ Trials are ongoing. Because thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura is uncommon, a high index of suspicion is required for rapid diagnosis and prompt initiation of plasma-exchange treatment. ▶ The unexplained occurrence of thrombocytopenia and anaemia should prompt immediate consideration of the diagnosis and evaluation of a peripheral blood smear for evidence of microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia.

¹ Pre-eclampsia is an example. In later pregnancy, this causes hypertension, oedema and proteinuria which may lead to AKI and stroke; see *OHCs* p48 and remember that finding out if your patient is pregnant is vital!

Diabetes mellitus and the kidney

Diabetes is best viewed as a vascular disease with the kidney as one of its chief targets for end-organ damage. The single most important intervention in the long-term care of DM is the control of BP, to protect the heart, the brain, and the kidney. Renal damage may be preventable with good BP and glycaemic control.

In **type 1 DM** nephropathy is rare in the first 5yrs, after 10yrs annual incidence rises to a peak at 15yrs, then falls again. Those who have not developed nephropathy at 35yrs are unlikely to do so. In **type 2 DM** around 10% have nephropathy at diagnosis and up to half will go on to develop it over the next 20yrs. 20% of people with type 2 DM will develop ESRF.

► Everyone with DM should be screened annually for microalbuminuria.

Microalbuminuria (30–300mg albumin/24h) gives early warning of impending renal problems and is also a strong independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease. Standard dipsticks do not detect this, so use specialized dipsticks or estimate using an albumin:creatinine ratio of >2.5 in men or >3.5 in women.

Those who are positive should be started on an ACE-i (p109) or angiotensin-2 receptor blockers (ARB), *irrespective* of blood pressure as these reduce intra-glomerular pressure and hence proteinuria. **SE:** U&E† (monitor K⁺ and creatinine periodically; stop if there is a rise in creatinine of >20%), cough (with ACE-i). Usually, ACE-i are first-line and ARBs for ACE-i-intolerant individuals. There is currently insufficient evidence that ACE-i and ARB are of additive benefit.⁴⁷ In one study, the combination of telmisartan and ramipril was associated with more adverse events without an increase in benefit.⁴⁸ ► Example of target BP in DM *if no proteinuria*: 130/80; *if microalbuminuria/proteinuria* is present, aim 125/75mmHg.

Is microalbuminuria reversible? If caught early and managed vigorously:

- Tight glycaemic control
- Tight BP control with ACE/ARB
- Manage CV risk: stop smoking, reduce cholesterol, consider aspirin

See p314 for more detail on diabetes and the kidney.

Cholesterol emboli

Cholesterol emboli may be released from atheromatous plaques (often aorta) which lodge in the distal microcirculation (eg renal vessels, peripheral circulation, gut) to cause ischaemia. An inflammatory response leads to fever, myalgia and eosinophils. **Risks:** Atheroma, ↑cholesterol, aortic aneurysm, thrombolysis, arterial catheterization, eg during interventional radiological procedures. **Signs:** Fever, uncontrolled ↑BP, livedo reticularis (p559), oliguria, AKI, gangrene, GI bleeds. **R:** Haemodynamic monitoring, nutritional and metabolic support, dialysis when indicated. Statins are also tried (p704); avoid anticoagulants and instrumentation. **Prognosis:** Often progressive and fatal; some regain renal function after dialysis.



Fig 1. Renal angiogram showing renal artery stenosis.

Courtesy of Dr Edmund Godfrey.

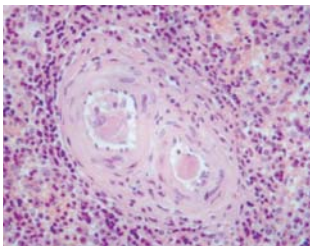


Fig 2. Thrombi in small arterioles due to fibrin and platelet deposition, characteristic of TTP.

Courtesy of Prof Christine Lawrence.

Renal tubular acidosis (RTA) is a metabolic acidosis due to impaired acid secretion by the kidney. There is a hyperchloraemic metabolic acidosis with normal anion gap (p684). There are 4 types, type 3 RTA is a rare combination of types 1 and 2.

Type 1 (distal) RTA is due to an inability to excrete H^+ and generate acidic urine in the distal tubule, even in states of metabolic acidosis. **Causes:** Inherited disorders, acquired include SLE, Sjögren's and drug related (amphotericin). **Features:** Include rickets (+ growth failure) or osteomalacia, due to buffering of H^+ with calcium in bone. Nephrocalcinosis with renal calculi, leading to recurrent UTIs, is due to a combination of hypercalciuria, urinary citrate (reabsorbed as a buffer for H^+) and alkaline urine: all favour calcium phosphate stone formation. **Tests:** Urine pH >5.5 despite metabolic acidosis. **Treatment:** Oral sodium bicarbonate or citrate. Complications are mostly from renal calculi—ESRF may result from nephrocalcinosis.

Type 2 (proximal) RTA is due to a 'bicarbonate leak': a defect in HCO_3^- reabsorption in the proximal tubule resulting in excess HCO_3^- in the urine (pH <5.5) leading to a metabolic acidosis. Type 2 RTA is often associated with a more generalized tubular defect (Fanconi syndrome, below), and is rarer than type 1. Hypokalaemia is common, due to the osmotic diuretic effect of HCO_3^- reabsorption, causing t flow rate to distal tubule \therefore tK^+ excretion. **Diagnosis:** IV sodium bicarbonate load: there is a high fractional excretion of HCO_3^- (>15%). **Treatment:** High doses of bicarbonate (>10mmol/kg/day) are required. Patients often find this intolerable.

Type 4 (hyperkalaemic) RTA is due to 'hyporeninaemic hypoaldosteronism'. Hypoaldosteronism causes hyperkalaemia and acidosis ($\downarrow K^+$ and H^+ excretion). **Causes:** Addison's, diabetic nephropathy, interstitial nephritis (SLE, chronic obstruction), drugs (K^+ -sparing diuretics, β -blockers, NSAIDs, ciclosporin). **Treatment:** Remove any cause. Fludrocortisone 0.1mg, furosemide or Calcium Resonium® are used to control K^+ .

Fanconi syndrome = proximal tubular dysfunction leading to loss of amino acids, glucose, PO_4^{3-} and HCO_3^- in urine. This causes dehydration, metabolic acidosis, osteomalacia/rickets and electrolyte abnormalities. **Causes:** Congenital—idiopathic, cystinosis, Wilson's disease (p269), tyrosinaemia, Lowe syndrome. Acquired—heavy metal poisoning (lead, mercury, cadmium, platinum, uranium), drugs (gentamicin, cisplatin, ifosfamide), light chains (myeloma, amyloid), Sjögren's. **Treatment:** Remove any cause and replace losses. K^+ , sodium bicarbonate, PO_4^{3-} and vitamin D supplements are used.

Cystinosis (fig 1) There is accumulation of cystine in lysosomes due to an autosomal recessive defect. Cystine deposits cause Fanconi syndrome, visual impairment, myopathy, hypothyroidism and progression to ESRF <10yrs. **Treatment:** As Fanconi syndrome. Oral cysteamine \downarrow intralysosomal cystine and delays ESRF, but is poorly tolerated. Renal cystinosis does not recur after transplant; extra-renal disease progresses.

Hereditary hypokalaemic tubulopathies

- **Bartter syndrome:** p220; Low K^+ , metabolic alkalosis, hypercalciuria. Inherited mutation in the co-transporter targeted by LOOP diuretics, so a similar pattern of metabolic abnormalities. Usually present in infancy. Replace K^+ and consider indomethacin, a prostaglandin synthesis inhibitor, which can resolve abnormalities.
- **Gitelman syndrome:** Low K^+ , metabolic alkalosis, hypocalciuria and low Mg^{2+} . Inherited mutation in the co-transporter targeted by THIAZIDE diuretics, so a similar pattern of metabolic abnormalities. Usually present later than Bartter's with muscle cramps, weakness and low BP. Replace Mg^{2+} , may also require K^+ supplementation.

Check 24h urine for Na^+ , K^+ , Ca^{2+} , urea, creatinine \pm protein excretion. Take blood simultaneously for creatinine to calculate creatinine clearance (p683; eGFR may mislead). Patients should be managed at a specialist centre.⁴⁹



Causes of renal tubular acidosis

Type 1 (distal)

- Idiopathic (usually inherited, AD or AR forms)
- Genetic associations (eg Marfan's, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome)
- Autoimmune disease commonest cause in adults (eg SLE, Sjögren's)
- Nephrocalcinosis (eg hypercalcaemia, medullary sponge kidney)
- Tubulointerstitial disease (eg chronic pyelonephritis, chronic interstitial nephritis, obstructive uropathy, renal transplant rejection)
- Drugs (eg lithium, amphotericin)

Type 2 (proximal)

- Idiopathic
- Fanconi syndrome
- Tubulointerstitial disease (eg myeloma, interstitial nephritis)
- Drugs (eg lead or other heavy metals, acetazolamide, out-of-date tetracycline)

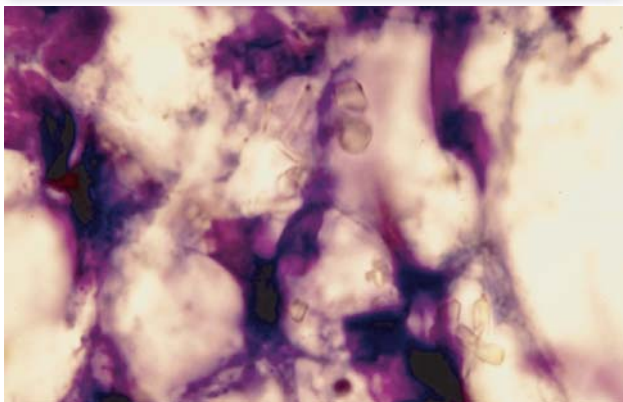


Fig 1. Cystine crystals in the bone marrow, found in cystinosis. Crystals accumulate in most tissues, especially the kidneys.

Courtesy of Professor Christine Lawrence.



Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (APKD)

Prevalence: 1:1000. 85% of patients have mutations in PKD1 (chromosome 16) and reach ESRF by 50s. Remainder have mutation in PKD2 (chromosome 4) and have a slower course, reaching ESRF by 70s. Can be clinically silent for many years so family screening is important. **Signs:** Renal enlargement with cysts, abdominal pain \pm haematuria (haemorrhage into a cyst), cyst infection, renal calculi, BPT, progressive renal failure. **Extrarenal:** liver cysts, intra-cranial aneurysm \rightarrow SAH (subarachnoid haemorrhage, see p482), mitral valve prolapse, ovarian cysts and diverticular disease. **R:** Monitor U&E. **tBP** should be treated aggressively, with target levels of $<130/80\text{mmHg}$ ⁵⁰ (ACE-i are best choices). Treat infections, dialysis or transplantation for ESRF, genetic counselling. Pain may be helped by laparoscopic cyst removal or nephrectomy. **t**Water intake, **↓**Na⁺ intake, and avoiding caffeine may also help.⁵¹ **Screening for PKD:** Genetic testing for PKD1 is difficult as the gene is large and there are hundreds of described mutations. USS screening offers good sensitivity and specificity depending on age. Age 18–39yrs >3 unilateral or bilateral cysts, 40–59yrs >2 cysts in each kidney, >60 yrs >4 cysts in each kidney have good sensitivity and specificity and a positive predictive value close to 100%.⁵² Genetic screening for some PKD2 mutations is available in specialist centres. **Screening for SAH** with magnetic resonance angiography may be done in 1st-degree relatives of those with SAH + ADPKD. Some screen with no family history, especially for certain occupations (eg pilots).

Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease (See fig 1 and OHCS p132). Prevalence 1:40,000, chromosome 6. **Signs:** Variable, many present in infancy with multiple renal cysts and congenital hepatic fibrosis. There is currently no specific therapy. Genetic counselling of family members is important.

Medullary cystic disease Inherited disorder with tubular loss and medullary cyst formation. The juvenile (autosomal recessive) form accounts for 10–20% of ESRF in children. The adult form (autosomal dominant) is rare. **Signs:** Shrunken kidneys, cysts restricted to the renal medulla, salt wasting, polyuria, polydipsia, enuresis (\downarrow urine concentrating ability), failure to thrive, renal impairment \rightarrow ESRF.⁵³ **Extrarenal:** retinal degeneration, retinitis pigmentosa, skeletal changes, cerebellar ataxia, liver fibrosis.

Renal phakomatoses (neuroectodermal syndromes). **Tuberous sclerosis:** OHCS p638. A complex autosomal dominant disorder with hamartoma formation in skin, brain, eye, kidney, and heart caused by genes on chromosomes 9 (TSC1) & 16 (TSC2). **Signs are variable:** • Skin: adenoma sebaceum, angiofibromas (see images in OHCS p639), 'ash leaf' hypomelanotic macules, shagreen patches (sacral plaques of shark-like skin), periungual fibroma • **tQ** • Epilepsy. **Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome** (p726) is the chief cause of inherited renal cancers. **Cause:** Germline mutations of the VHL tumour-suppressor gene (also inactivated in most sporadic renal cell cancers).⁵⁴

Alport syndrome OHCS p638. **Prevalence:** 1:5000. ~85% of cases are x-linked, due to mutations in the COL4A5 gene, which encodes the α_5 chain of type IV collagen.⁵⁵ **Signs:** Haematuria, proteinuria and progressive renal insufficiency. Patients often exhibit systemic manifestations, eg sensorineural deafness and ocular defects (eg lenticonus: bulging of lens capsule seen on slit-lamp examination).⁵⁶

Pathology: Thickened GBM with 'splitting'. Type IV collagen is the antigen in anti-GBM disease (Goodpasture's disease), hence there is a risk of anti-GBM glomerulonephritis post-renal transplant. **R:** None specific, as for CKD.

Fabry's disease See p712.

Hyperoxaluria can be primary (inherited enzyme defect) or secondary: increased intake (rhubarb, spinach, tea), increased intestinal resorption due to ileal disease or short bowel syndrome. **Presents** with oxalate renal stones and nephrocalcinosis. **Treatment:** **t**fluid intake, reduce oxalate in diet, calcium supplements. Liver transplant is curative in primary hyperoxaluria and can be combined with renal transplant.

Cystinuria not to be confused with cystinosis. Manifests with cysteine renal stones. **Treatment:** **t**fluid intake, urine alkalinization with potassium citrate.



As soon as genetics solves one problem, others appear. You might think that the application of science to medicine is an undisputed boon. Petty has provided a compelling counter-example.⁵⁷ A man with adult polycystic kidney disease due to a known PKD1 mutation is in end-stage renal failure. A transplant from a matched, living, related, unaffected donor is highly desired. There are problems in his family, but he persuades his adult children to have genetic testing to see if there are eligible donors. Each is apparently happy to donate a kidney to his/her father.

A can of worms is opened when one son realizes that he is the only child who can offer a good match—and that his brother is carrying the same mutation as his estranged father (there is a 50:50 chance of passing on the PKD gene). The eligible son would rather save his kidney to help his brother than his father. Old animosities resurface, and the family is in turmoil. How will you feel if the father dies of a complication of dialysis, and both his sons feel guilty forever? We should not be too surprised at all this: often in medicine bad comes out of our good intentions. How can we make good come out of bad? By remembering this example, and not doing tests lightly, and by making genetic counselling as professional as possible, so complications can be foreseen and disasters pre-empted. Furthermore, do not have unreasonable expectations about what genetic counselling can do. The number of diseases being found to have a significant genetic component is increasing faster than geneticists can formulate rational guidelines for screening.⁵⁸

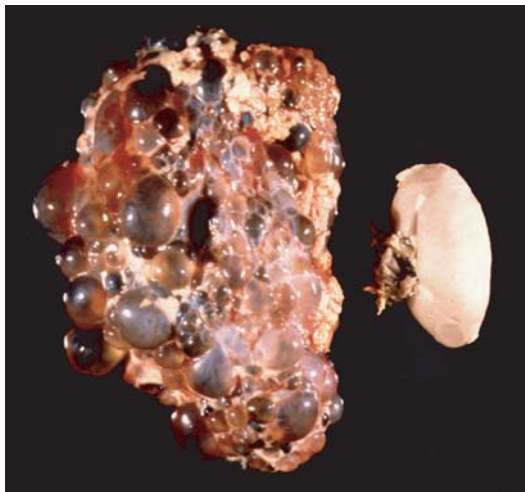


Fig 1. A polycystic kidney (left) compared with a normal sized kidney (right). The progressive increase in size often leads to abdominal discomfort, and there may be haemorrhage into a cyst causing haematuria, or infection.

Courtesy of the PKD Foundation.



Amyloidosis (p364) can cause proteinuria, nephrotic syndrome or progressive renal failure. *Diagnosis:* us: large kidneys; biopsy: see p364. *Treatment:* p364.

Diabetes This is one of the commonest causes of ESRF in the UK, accounting for ~18%. There are a number of mechanisms contributing to progression of diabetic nephropathy, one of the microvascular complications of diabetes. Early on, glomerular and tubular hypertrophy occur, increasing GFR transiently, but ongoing damage from advanced glycosylation end-products (AGE—caused by non-enzymatic glycosylation of proteins from chronic hyperglycaemia) triggers more destructive disease. These AGE trigger an inflammatory response leading to deposition of type IV collagen and mesangial expansion, eventually leading to arterial hyalinization, thickening of the mesangium and glomerular basement membrane and nodular glomerulosclerosis (Kimmelstiel-Wilson lesions). Progression generally occurs in four stages:

- 1 GFR elevated:** early in disease renal blood flow increases, increasing the GFR and leading to microalbuminuria. As sugars are controlled, this falls back to normal.
- 2 Glomerular hyperfiltration:** in the next 5–10yrs mesangial expansion gradually occurs and hyperfiltration at the glomerulus is seen without microalbuminuria.
- 3 Microalbuminuria:** as soon as this is detected it indicates progression of disease, GFR may be raised or normal. This lasts another 5–10yrs.
- 4 Nephropathy:** GFR begins to decline and proteinuria increases.

Patients with type 2 DM may present at the later stages having had undetected hyperglycaemia for many years before diagnosis. See p309 for treatment.

Infection Associated nephropathies are common causes of renal disease. *Glomerulonephritis* occurs with many bacterial, viral and parasitic infections, including post-streptococcal, hepatitis B or C, HIV, SBE/IE, shunt nephritis, visceral abscess, syphilis, malaria, schistosomiasis and filariasis. *Vasculitis* (p558) may occur with hepatitis B or C, post-streptococcal or staphylococcal septicaemia. *Interstitial nephritis:* Seen with bacterial pyelonephritis, viral (CMV, HIV, hepatitis B, hantavirus), fungal and parasitic (leishmaniasis, toxoplasmosis) infections.

Malignancy *Direct effects:* Renal infiltration (leukaemia, lymphoma), obstruction (pelvic tumours), metastases. *Indirect:* Hypercalcaemia, nephrotic syndrome, acute renal failure, amyloidosis, glomerulonephritis. *Treatment associated:* Nephrotoxic drugs, tumour lysis syndrome, radiation nephritis.

Myeloma (p362) is characterized by excess production of monoclonal antibody \pm light chains, which are excreted and detected in $\frac{1}{3}$ of cases as Bence Jones proteinuria. Myeloma kidney is due to blockage of tubules by casts, consisting of light chains. The light chains have a direct toxic effect on tubular cells, causing acute tubular necrosis. *Features:* AKI, CKD, amyloidosis (may cause proteinuria and nephrotic syndrome), hypercalcaemic nephropathy. *Treatment:* Ensure fluid intake of 3L/day to prevent further impairment. Dialysis may be required in AKI. It might be possible to remove light chains by plasma exchange using special filters.

Rheumatological diseases *Rheumatoid arthritis (RA)* NSAIDs may cause interstitial nephritis. Penicillamine and gold can cause membranous nephropathy. AA amyloidosis (p364) occurs in ~15% of RA (often asymptomatic). *SLE* involves the glomerulus in 40–60% of adults, causing acute or chronic disease. Proteinuria and tBP are common. Histological patterns range from minimal change to crescentic GN. Consider a renal biopsy if blood/protein on urine dipstick or deteriorating renal function. *R:* ACE-i if proteinuria. Corticosteroids and immunosuppressants (cyclophosphamide or mycophenolate) are used if biopsy shows aggressive glomerulonephritis (p556). *Systemic sclerosis* (p554) may affect the kidney, especially in diffuse disease. 'Renal crisis' presents with AKI + accelerated hypertension. *R:* ACE-i if tBP or in renal crisis. Dialysis or transplant may be required. ANCA associated vasculitis (AAV) often involves the kidney and can cause ESRF. See p558.

Hyperparathyroidism Clinical features are from hypercalcaemia: p306.

Sarcoidosis may involve the kidney, often by abnormal calcium metabolism (p186). Interstitial nephritis and rarely glomerulonephritis are also associated.

Epilogue: the man in a red canoe who saved a million lives

Mostly we commute to work each day driven by motives we would rather not look at too deeply. But one renal physician used a red canoe to commute each day from his houseboat to the hospital. He could have been a very rich man but instead Belding Scribner gave his invention away, and continued his modest existence. He invented the Scribner shunt—a U of teflon connecting an artery to a vein, so allowing haemodialysis to be something that could be repeated as often as needed. Before Scribner, glass tubes had to be painfully inserted into blood vessels, which would be damaged by the procedure so that haemodialysis could only be done for a few cycles. Clyde Shields was his first patient with end-stage renal failure to receive the shunt—on 9 March 1960—and said that his first treatment ‘took so much of the waste I’d stored up out of me that it was just like turning on the light from darkness’.⁵⁹ Scribner took something that was 100% fatal and overnight turned it into a condition with a 90% survival. In so doing he laid the foundations for a branch of bioethics because not everyone could have the treatment immediately. This is the branch of ethics that is to do with who gets what—ie distributive justice. In Scribner’s day, this was decided by the famous ‘Life and Death Committee’ which had the unenviable job of choosing who would survive by placing people in order of precedence.

Scribner has said that his inventions sprang from his empathy for patients, including himself. ‘I was a sickly child’ he said, and at various times he needed a heart-lung machine, a new hip, and donated corneas. He was the sort of man whose patients would inspire him to worry away at their problems during the day—and then to awake at night with a brilliant solution.

On 19 June 2003, his canoe was found afloat but empty—and like those ancient Indian burial canoes found at Wiskam which have been polished to an unimaginable lustre by the action of the shifting sands around the Island of the Dead, so we polish and cherish the image of this man who gave everything away to help others.





Contents

- On the taking of blood and of holidays 317
- Anaemia 318
- Iron-deficiency anaemia 320
 - Anaemia of chronic disease 320
 - Sideroblastic anaemia 320
- The peripheral blood film 322
- The differential white cell count 324
- Macrocytic anaemia 326
- B₁₂ deficiency and pernicious anaemia 328
- An approach to haemolysis 330
- Causes of haemolysis 332
- Sickle-cell anaemia 334
- Thalassaemia 336
- Bleeding disorders 338
- Coagulations pathways 339
- An approach to bleeding 340
- Blood transfusion 342
- Anticoagulants 344
- Leukaemia and the on-call junior doctor 346
- Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia 348
- Acute myeloid leukaemia 350
- Chronic myeloid leukaemia 352
- Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia 352
- Hodgkin's lymphoma 354
- Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma 356
- Pancytopenia and bone marrow failure 358
- Myeloproliferative disorders 360
- Myeloma 362
- Paraproteinaemia 364
- Amyloidosis 364
- Plasma viscosity (PV) 366
- Hyperviscosity syndrome 366
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) 366
- The spleen and splenectomy 367
- Thrombophilia 368
- Immunosuppressive drugs 370



Fig 1. Here we see Los, the first haematologist, working naked, alone, and at night, hammering a red cell into shape, in his Laboratory of the Imagination. "For every space larger than a red globule of Man's blood is visionary, and is created by the Hammer of Los; and every Space smaller than a Globule of Man's blood opens into Eternity."¹ When we ourselves are working alone and at night, hammering away at some difficult problem, we all need a Haematologist to show us how to move effortlessly from the macro to the micro, and from reductionist to integrative world views.

Image from the *Song of Los*, William Blake.



Fig 2. The new methodology: teamwork in action, as haematologist, geneticist, and lab staff deal with a troublesome spherocyte. ×3000

Topics elsewhere: Haemolytic uraemic syndrome (p308); normal values (p769).

Read this! D Nathan *Genes, Blood, and Courage*. Harvard University Press Dayem Saif, a 6-year-old with a stature of a 2-year-old, has an Hb of 1.5g/L—as low as his chance of survival with thalassaemia. This story about lab medicine and its stormy application at the bedside is so worth reading when feeling hemmed in by difficult patients, for it shows that there are no difficult patients, only difficult times. The book portrays the vital nature of the doctor–patient relationship, and warns us against labelling people—unless the label is a poem: Dayem Saif is Arabic for *Immortal Sword*.

We thank our Specialist Reader Dr Dre Provan, and our Junior Reader Sarah Hickin, for their contribution to this chapter.

On the taking of blood and of holidays

This is not one of those pages about how you should be kind to the patient, explain in full what you are about to do, talk him or her through venepuncture, label the bottles carefully, and make a plan for communicating the results. Be all this as it may, there is something else that needs communicating about the *act* of taking blood. It is partly to do with the fact that as blood is life, and, because, as Ruskin taught us, 'there is no wealth but life', we are led to the conclusion that what is special about taking blood is that for once we are being given something valuable by the patient. What is this wealth? The answer is *time*. For while the blood is flowing into our tube we cannot be disturbed. We are excused from answering our bleeps, and from making polite conversation (a few grunts in reply to patients' enquires about the colour of their blood is quite sufficient)—and we can indulge in that almost unimaginable luxury, at least as far as life on the wards is concerned, of *reflecting on our own thoughts*. Accepting this sacred time as a sort of hypnotic holiday is excellent. For however many nights we have been awoken, and through however many wards we have traipsed to this bedside, this little holiday will be worth an hour's sleep—if our mind is furnished and ready to empty itself of all objectivity.

The best and most watched-for sight during venepuncture is when a chance characteristic of flow sets the jet of blood streaming into our tube into countless bouncing globules. Before coalescing again, these globules jostle together like the overcrowded chain of events that led us to this bedside. During this time, allow your own thoughts to coalesce into a more peaceful order if you can, and let William Blake help you banish objectivity, for he knew some truths about haematology unknown to strictly rational practitioners of this art:

The Microscope knows not of this nor the Telescope: they alter
The ratio of the Spectator's Organs but leave Objects untouched
For every space larger than a red globule of Man's blood
Is visionary, and is created by the Hammer of Los:¹
And every Space smaller than a Globule of Man's blood opens
Into Eternity of which this vegetable Earth is but a shadow.
The red Globule is the unwearied Sun by Los created
To measure Time and Space to mortal Men ...

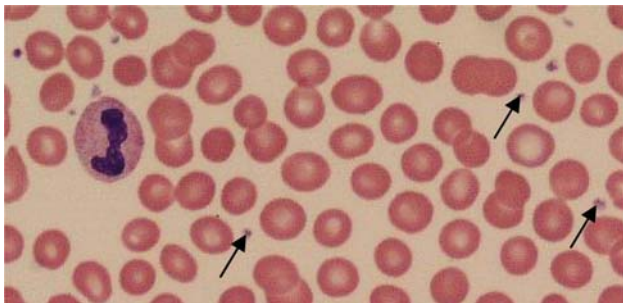


Fig 3. A blood film, with a neutrophil, normal red cells, and platelets (arrows).

©Prof. K Lewandowski & Dr H Jastrow.

¹ Los, the *globe of fire*, is a symbol used by Blake to encompass the exultant energy of creation, the poetic imagination, and the burning brightness where all his noble images were pounded out of eternity and compounded into the most compressed verse and art we have (see P Ackroyd 1996 *Blake*, Minerva). These lines are from his poem *Milton*, section 29, lines 17–24, page 516 in our's *Blake: Complete Writings*, edited (1925–1969) by Geoffrey Keynes, the surgeon, who, incidentally, led the way to lumpectomy for breast cancer, in preference to the much-hated radical mastectomy.

Anaemia is defined as a low haemoglobin (Hb) concentration, and may be due either to a low red cell mass or increased plasma volume (eg in pregnancy). A low Hb (at sea level) is <135g/L for men and <115g/L for women. Anaemia may be due to reduced production or increased loss of RBCs and has many causes. These will often be distinguishable by history, examination, and inspection of the blood film.

Symptoms Due to the underlying cause or to the anaemia itself: fatigue, dyspnoea, faintness, palpitations, headache, tinnitus, anorexia—and angina if there is pre-existing coronary artery disease.

Signs May be absent even in severe anaemia. There may be pallor (eg conjunctivae, although this is not a reliable sign; see **fig 1**). In severe anaemia (Hb <80g/L), there may be signs of a hyperdynamic circulation, eg tachycardia, flow murmurs (ejection-systolic loudest over apex), and cardiac enlargement; or retinal haemorrhages (rarely). Later, heart failure may occur: here, rapid blood transfusion may be fatal.

Types of anaemia The first step in diagnosis is to look at the mean cell volume (MCV, normal MCV is 76–96 femtolitres, 10^{15} fL = 1L).

Low MCV—microcytic anaemia (correlates with mean cell Hb ≤ 27 picograms)!

- 1 Iron-deficiency anaemia (IDA, most common cause): p320.
- 2 Thalassaemia (suspect if the MCV is 'too low' for the Hb level and the red cell count is \uparrow). Definitive diagnosis needs DNA analysis, although finding a normal Hb_{A2} with normal ferritin in a very microcytic picture is suggestive of possible alpha thalassaemia trait. See p336.
- 3 Sideroblastic anaemia (very rare): p320.

NB: the last two are conditions where there is an accumulation of iron, and so tests will show serum iron \uparrow , ferritin \uparrow , and a low total iron-binding capacity (TIBC).

Normal MCV (normocytic anaemia)

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Acute blood loss | 5 Hypothyroidism (or \uparrow MCV) |
| 2 Anaemia of chronic disease (or \downarrow MCV) | 6 Haemolysis (or \uparrow MCV) |
| 3 Bone marrow failure | 7 Pregnancy |
| 4 Renal failure | |

If wcc \downarrow or platelet \downarrow , suspect marrow failure: see p358.

High MCV (macrocytic anaemia)

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 B ₁₂ or folate deficiency | 5 Myelodysplastic syndromes |
| 2 Alcohol excess—or liver disease | 6 Marrow infiltration |
| 3 Reticulocytosis (p322, eg with haemolysis) | 7 Hypothyroidism |
| 4 Cytotoxics, eg hydroxycarbamide | 8 Antifolate drugs (eg phenytoin) |

Haemolytic anaemias do not fit into the above classification as the anaemia may be normocytic or, if there are many young (hence larger) RBCs and reticulocytes, macrocytic (p330). Suspect if there is a reticulocytosis (>2% of RBCs; or reticulocyte count $>100 \times 10^9/L$), mild macrocytosis, haptoglobin \downarrow , bilirubin \uparrow and urobilinogen \uparrow . Often mild jaundice (but no bilirubin in urine as haemolysis causes pre-hepatic jaundice).

Does he need a blood transfusion? Usually No!—unless there is severe acute anaemia (one review suggests that transfusion is not essential for *most* patients unless Hb <70g/L)². If there is an acute cause (eg haemorrhage with active peptic ulcer), transfusion up to 80g/L is sometimes needed. Chronic anaemia is better tolerated, and it is important to ascertain the cause, eg in iron-deficiency anaemia, iron supplements will raise the haemoglobin in a safer and less costly way.

In severe anaemia with heart failure, transfusion is vital to restore Hb to a safe level, eg 60–80g/L, but must be done with great care. Give packed cells *slowly* with 10–40mg furosemide IV/PO with alternate units (dose depends on previous exposure to diuretics; do not mix with blood). Check for rising JVP and basal crackles. If ccr gets worse, stop and treat. If immediate transfusion is essential, a 2–3 unit exchange transfusion can be tried, removing blood at the same rate as it is transfused (get help).





Fig 1. 'Conjunctival pallor', the classic sign of anaemia, is a confusing term as the conjunctiva is translucent, transmitting the colour of structures under it. The 'pallor' refers to the vasculature on the inner surface of the lid which is lacking Hb.

It is this colour



but it should be:



Red cell distribution width (RCDW or RDW)

If all the red cells in a sample are about the same size, the graph of their volumes is narrow, as occurs in health. But in mixed anaemias the graph is broad, and an abnormal RCDW may be the first hint of such an anaemia. In coeliac disease, for example, poor absorption of iron (MCV↓) and folate (MCV↑) may occur, with microcytes and macrocytes circulating simultaneously, so the RCDW is raised. Anisocytosis (p322) is the visual analogue of this. $RCDW = \frac{\text{standard deviation of MCV}}{\text{mean MCV}} \times 100$. Reference interval: 11.5–14.6%. If the MCV is high and the RCDW is *normal*, the cause is likely to be alcohol, liver disease or a marrow problem (chemotherapy or aplastic anaemia).



This is common (seen in up to 14% of menstruating women).

Causes: •Blood loss, eg menorrhagia or GI bleeding¹ (upper p252; lower p631).

- Poor diet may cause IDA in babies or children (but rarely in adults), those on special diets, or wherever there is poverty.
- Malabsorption (eg coeliac disease) is a cause of refractory IDA.
- In the Tropics, hookworm (GI blood loss) is the most common cause.

Signs: Chronic IDA (signs now rare): koilonychia (**fig 1** and p32), atrophic glossitis, angular cheilosis (**fig 2**), and, rarely, post-cricoid webs (Plummer-Vinson syndrome).

Tests: Microcytic, hypochromic anaemia with anisocytosis and poikilocytosis (**figs 3 & 4**). ↓MCV, ↓MCH and ↓MCHC. Confirmed by ferritin↓ (also serum iron↓ with ↑total iron-binding capacity—TIBC, but these are less reliable). ↑Red cell protoporphyrin. NB: ferritin is an acute phase protein and ↑ with inflammation, eg infection, malignancy. Serum transferrin receptors are also ↑ in IDA but are less affected by inflammation. If MCV↓, and good history of menorrhagia, oral iron may be started without further tests. Otherwise investigate for GI blood loss: gastroscopy, sigmoidoscopy, barium enema or colonoscopy, stool microscopy for ova if hookworm, etc. is a possibility. Faecal occult blood is not recommended as sensitivity is poor.

►Iron deficiency with no obvious source of bleeding mandates careful GI workup.¹

Treatment: Treat the cause. Oral iron, eg ferrous sulfate 200mg/8h PO. SE: nausea, abdominal discomfort, diarrhoea or constipation, black stools. Hb should rise by 10g/L/week, with a modest reticulocytosis (ie young RBC, p322). Continue until Hb is normal and for at least 3 months, to replenish stores. Intravenous iron is almost never needed, but may be indicated if the oral route is impossible or ineffective, eg functional iron deficiency in chronic renal failure, where there is inadequate mobilization of iron stores in response to the acute demands of erythropoietin therapy.

The usual reason that IDA fails to respond to iron replacement is that the patient has rejected the pills. Negotiate on concordance issues (p3). Is the reason for the problem GI disturbance? Altering the dose of elemental iron with a different preparation may help. There may be continued blood loss, malabsorption, anaemia of chronic disease; or there is misdiagnosis, eg when thalassaemia is to blame.

The anaemia of chronic disease (secondary anaemia)

It is the commonest anaemia in hospital patients (the 2nd commonest anaemia, after IDA, worldwide).³ **3 problems** (in which the polypeptide, hepcidin, plays a key role): **1** Poor use of iron in erythropoiesis **2** Cytokine-induced shortening of RBC survival **3** ↓Production of and response to erythropoietin.

Causes: Many, eg chronic infection, vasculitis, rheumatoid, malignancy, renal failure.

Tests: Mild normocytic anaemia (eg Hb >80g/L), ferritin normal or ↑. Do blood film, B₁₂, folate, TSH and tests for haemolysis (p330) as anaemia is often multifactorial.⁴

Treatment: Treating the underlying disease more vigorously may help (eg in 60% of patients with RA). Erythropoietin (p296) is effective in raising the haemoglobin level (SE: flu-like symptoms, hypertension, mild rise in the platelet count and thromboembolism). It is also effective in raising Hb and improving quality of life in those with malignant disease.⁵ Iron given parenterally can safely overcome the functional iron deficiency. Inhibitors of hepcidin and inflammatory modulators show promise.⁶

Sideroblastic anaemia

Microcytic anaemia does not equal iron deficiency! 20% of older people with an MCV <75fL are not iron deficient. ►Think of sideroblastic anaemia whenever a microcytic anaemia is not responding to iron.⁷ Do a ferritin; look at a film (hypochromia) and a marrow (**figs 5 & 6**) to look for disease defining sideroblasts. R: Remove the cause. Pyridoxine may help ± repeated transfusion for severe anaemia.

1 In one study, 11% presenting to their GP with IDA had GI carcinoma.⁴ Consider both upper and lower GI investigation as in another study, 29% (n=89) had abnormalities on both.⁴

Interpreting plasma iron studies

	Iron	TIBC	Ferritin
Iron deficiency	↓	↑	↓
Anaemia of chronic disease	↓	↓	↑
Chronic haemolysis	↑	↓	↑
Haemochromatosis	↑	↓ (or ↔)	↑
Pregnancy	↑	↑	↔
Sideroblastic anaemia	↑	↔	↑

TIBC: total iron binding capacity.



Fig 1. Koilonychia. Spoon-shaped nails, found in iron-deficiency anaemia.



Fig 2. Angular cheilosis, ulceration at the side of the mouth, in iron deficiency. Also a feature of vitamin B₁₂ and B₂ (riboflavin) deficiency, and glucagonoma (p215). Courtesy of Dr Joseph Thompson: AskAnOrthodontist.com.

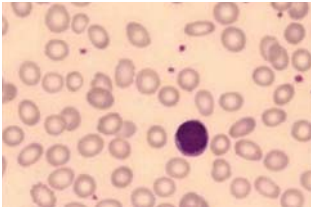


Fig 3. Microcytic hypochromic cells in iron-deficiency anaemia.

Courtesy of Prof. Krzysztof Lewandowski.

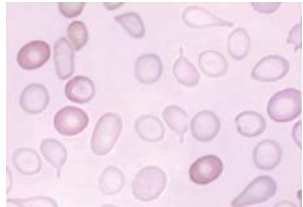


Fig 4. Poikilocytosis and anisocytosis seen, eg, in iron-deficiency anaemia.

Courtesy of Prof. Christine Lawrence (figs 4 & 5).

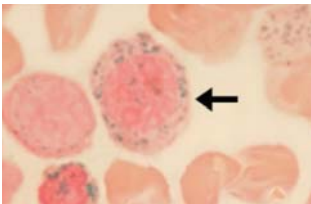


Fig 5. Ring sideroblasts in the marrow, with a perinuclear ring of iron granules, found in sideroblastic anaemia. It is characterized by ineffective erythropoiesis, leading to iron absorption, iron loading in marrow ± haemosiderosis (endocrine, liver and heart damage due to iron deposition). It may be congenital (rare, x-linked) or acquired, eg idiopathic as one of the myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative diseases, but it can follow chemotherapy, anti-TB drugs, irradiation, alcohol or lead excess.

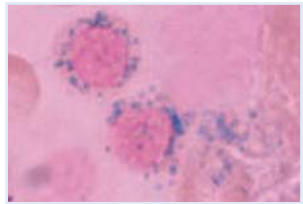


Fig 6. Two ringed sideroblasts showing how the distribution of what we take to be perinuclear mitochondrial ferritin can vary.¹⁰ The problem in congenital sideroblastic anaemia is disordered mitochondrial haem synthesis, >15% marrow ring sideroblasts and <5% blasts is required for a diagnosis of refractory anaemia with ring sideroblasts/sideroblastic anaemia.¹¹

Courtesy of Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.

► Many haematological (and other) diagnoses are made by careful examination of the peripheral blood film. It is also necessary for interpretation of the FBC indices.

Anisocytosis is variation in RBC size, eg megaloblastic anaemia, thalassaemia, IDA.

Acanthocytes: (fig 1) Spicules on RBCs (∴ unstable RBC membrane lipid structure); causes: splenectomy; alcoholic liver disease; abetalipoproteinaemia; spherocytosis.

Basophilic RBC stippling: (fig 2) Denatured RNA found in RBCs, indicating accelerated erythropoiesis or defective Hb synthesis. Seen in lead poisoning, megaloblastic anaemia, myelodysplasia, liver disease, haemoglobinopathy, eg thalassaemia.

Blasts: Nucleated precursor cells. They are not normally in peripheral blood, but are seen in myelofibrosis, leukaemia and malignant infiltration by carcinoma.

Burr cells (echinocytes): RBC projections (less marked than in acanthocytes); fig 3.

Cabot rings: Seen in: pernicious anaemia; lead poisoning; bad infections (fig 9).¹²

Dimorphic picture: Two populations of red cells. Seen after treatment of Fe, B₁₂, or folate deficiency, in mixed deficiency (↓Fe with ↓B₁₂ or folate), post-transfusion, or with primary sideroblastic anaemia, where a clone of abnormal erythroblasts produce abnormal red cells, alongside normal red cell production.

Howell-Jolly bodies: DNA nuclear remnants in RBCs, which are normally removed by the spleen (fig 8). Seen post-splenectomy and in hyposplenism (eg sickle-cell disease, coeliac disease, congenital, UC/Crohn's, myeloproliferative disease, amyloid). Also in dyserythropoietic states: myelodysplasia, megaloblastic anaemia.

Hypochromia: (p320). Less dense staining of RBCs due to ↓Hb synthesis, seen in IDA, thalassaemia, and sideroblastic anaemia (iron stores unusable, p320).

Left shift: Immature neutrophils are sent out of the marrow, eg in infection, p325.

Leukoerythroblastic film: Immature cells (myelocytes, promyelocytes, metamyelocytes, normoblasts) ± tear-drop RBCs from marrow infiltration/infection (malignancy; TB; brucella; visceral leishmaniasis;¹³ parvovirus B19)—or in UC¹⁴ or haemolysis.

Leukaemoid reaction: A marked leucocytosis (WCC >50×10⁹/L). Seen in severe illness, eg with infection or burns, and also in leukaemia.

Pappenheimer bodies: (fig 5) Granules of siderocytes containing iron. Seen in lead poisoning, carcinomatosis, and post-splenectomy.

Poikilocytosis is variation in RBC shape, eg in IDA, myelofibrosis, thalassaemia.

Polychromasia: RBCs of different ages stain unevenly (young are bluer). This is a response to bleeding, haematinic replacement (ferrous sulfate, B₁₂, folate), haemolysis, or marrow infiltration. Reticulocyte count is raised.

Reticulocytes: (normal range: 0.8–2%; or <85×10⁹/L) (fig 6). Young, larger RBCs (contain RNA) signifying active erythropoiesis. Increased in haemolysis, haemorrhage, and if B₁₂, iron or folate is given to marrow that lack these.

Right shift: Hypermature white cells: hypersegmented polymorphs (>5 lobes to nucleus) seen in megaloblastic anaemia, uraemia, and liver disease. See p326, fig 1.

Rouleaux formation: (fig 7) Red cells stack on each other (it causes a raised ESR; p366). Seen with chronic inflammation,¹⁶ paraproteinaemia and myeloma.

Spherocytes: Spherical cells found in hereditary spherocytosis and autoimmune haemolytic anaemia. See p332.

Schistocytes: Fragmented RBCs sliced by fibrin bands, in intravascular haemolysis (p332, fig 4). Look for microangiopathic anaemia, eg DIC (p346), haemolytic uraemic syndrome, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP: p308), or pre-eclampsia.

Target cells: (also known as Mexican hat cells, fig 8 and fig 3, p337) These are RBCs with central staining, a ring of pallor, and an outer rim of staining seen in liver disease, hyposplenism, thalassaemia—and, in small numbers, in IDA.

Tear-drop RBCs: Seen in extramedullary haemopoiesis; see leukoerythroblastic film.



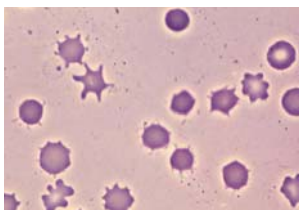


Fig 1. Acanthocytosis.

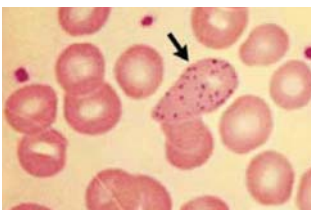


Fig 2. Basophilic stippling.

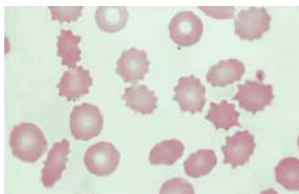


Fig 3. Burr cells: the cause may be renal or liver failure, or an EDTA storage artefact.

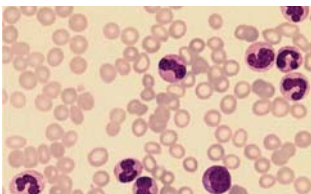


Fig 4. Left shift: presence of immature neutrophils in the blood. See p322.

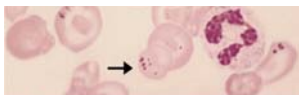


Fig 5. Pappenheimer bodies.

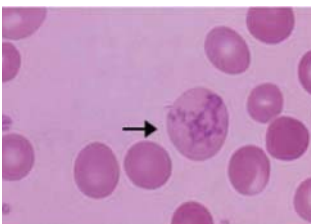
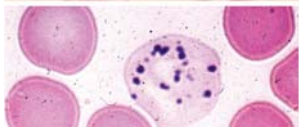


Fig 6. Reticulocytes. RNA in RBCs; supravital staining (azure B; cresyl blue) is needed.



Fig 7. Rouleaux formation.

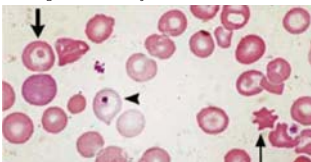


Fig 8. Film in hyposplenism: target cell (short arrow), acanthocyte (long arrow) and a Howell-Jolly body (arrow head).



Fig 9. A Cabot ring.^{1 15}

Figs 1, 6 & 7 ©Dr N Medeiros; figs 2 & 8 ©Prof. Barbara Bain & Massachusetts Medical Society; figs 3 & 5 (top) ©Prof. Christine Lawrence; fig 4 ©Prof. Krzysztof Lewandowski; figs 5 (bottom) & 9 ©Crookston Collection.

1 Cabot 'figure-of-eight' rings may be microtubules from mitotic spindles. It is easy to confuse them with malaria parasites, p385 (especially if stippling gives a 'chromatin dot' artefact, as here).

Richard Clarke Cabot (1868-1939) liked diagnostic challenges: it was he who founded the dastardly hard but beautifully presented weekly clinicopathological exercises of the Massachusetts General Hospital which have made the *New England Journal of Medicine* so famous among discerning clinical detectives.

••• You may forget all about his rings—but not his aphorisms—for example: ► **'Before you tell the truth to the patient, be sure you know the truth, and that the patient wants to hear it.'**¹⁶

Neutrophils (figs 1 & 6) $2\text{--}7.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (40–75% of white blood cells; but absolute values are more meaningful than percentages).

Increased in (ie *neutrophilia*):

- Bacterial infections.
- Inflammation, eg myocardial infarction, polyarteritis nodosa.
- Myeloproliferative disorders.
- Drugs (steroids).
- Disseminated malignancy.
- Stress, eg trauma, surgery, burns, haemorrhage, seizure.

Decreased in (ie *neutropenia*—see p346)

- Viral infections.
- Drugs, eg post chemotherapy, cytotoxic agents, carbimazole, sulfonamides.
- Severe sepsis.
- Neutrophil antibodies (SLE, haemolytic anaemia)—↑ destruction.
- Hypersplenism (p367), eg Felty's syndrome (p712).
- Bone marrow failure—↓ production (p358).

Lymphocytes (fig 2) $1.5\text{--}4.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (20–45%).

Increased in (ie *lymphocytosis*):

- Acute viral infections.
- Chronic infections, eg TB, *Brucella*, hepatitis, syphilis.
- Leukaemias and lymphomas, especially chronic lymphocytic leukaemia.

Large numbers of abnormal ('atypical') lymphocytes are characteristically seen with EBV infection: these are T cells reacting against EBV-infected B cells. They have a large amount of clearish cytoplasm with a blue rim that flows around neighbouring RBCs. See fig 1, p401. Other causes of 'atypical' lymphocytes: see p401.

Decreased in (ie *lymphopenia*):

- Steroid therapy; SLE; uraemia; Legionnaire's disease; HIV infection; marrow infiltration; post chemotherapy or radiotherapy.

T-lymphocyte subset reference values: CD4 count: $537\text{--}1571/\text{mm}^3$ (low in HIV infection). CD8 count: $235\text{--}753/\text{mm}^3$; CD4/CD8 ratio: 1.2–3.8.

Eosinophils (fig 3) $0.04\text{--}0.4 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (1–6%).¹⁷

Increased in (ie *eosinophilia*):

- Drug reactions, eg with erythema multiforme, p564.
- Allergies: asthma, atopy.
- Parasitic infections (especially invasive helminths).
- Skin disease: especially pemphigus, eczema, psoriasis, dermatitis herpetiformis.

Also seen in malignant disease (including lymphomas and eosinophilic leukaemia), PAN, adrenal insufficiency,¹⁸ irradiation, Löffler's syndrome (p718), and during the convalescent phase of any infection.

The hypereosinophilic syndrome (HES) is a severe disease of unknown cause, in which an ↑ eosinophil count ($>1.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ for >6 weeks) leads to end-organ damage (endomyocardial fibrosis/restrictive cardiomyopathy, skin lesions, thromboembolic disease, lung disease, neuropathy, and hepatosplenomegaly). **R**: Oral steroids ± mepolizumab (an anti-interleukin-5 monoclonal antibody). If FIP1L1-PDFA genotype, diagnose myeloproliferative HES/eosinophilic leukaemia (imatinib is 1st choice).¹⁹

Monocytes (fig 4) $0.2\text{--}0.8 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (2–10%). *Increased in* (ie *monocytosis*): Post chemo- or radiotherapy, chronic infections (eg malaria, TB, brucellosis, protozoa), malignant disease (including M4 and M5 acute myeloid leukaemia (p350), and Hodgkin's disease), myelodysplasia.

Basophils (fig 5) $0\text{--}0.1 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (0–1%). *Increased in* (ie *basophilia*): myeloproliferative disease, viral infections, IgE-mediated hypersensitivity reactions (eg urticaria, hypothyroidism), and inflammatory disorders (eg UC, rheumatoid arthritis).



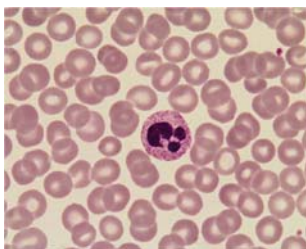


Fig 1. Neutrophil. These ingest and kill bacteria, fungi and damaged cells.

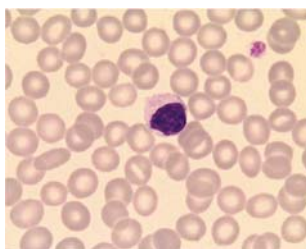


Fig 2. Lymphocyte: divided into T & B types, which have important roles in cell-mediated immunity & antibody production.

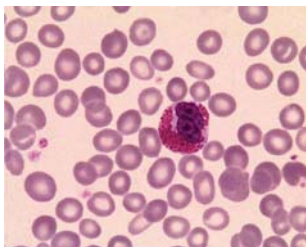


Fig 3. Eosinophil: these mediate allergic reactions and defend against parasites.

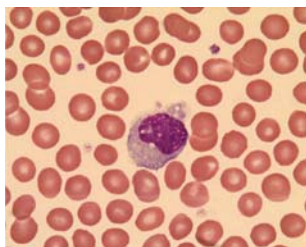


Fig 4. Monocyte: precursors of tissue macrophages.

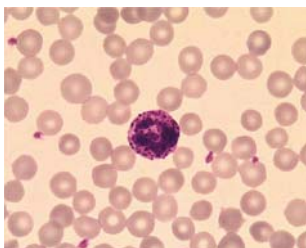


Fig 5. Basophil. The cytoplasm is filled with dark staining granules, containing histamine, myeloperoxidase and other enzymes. On binding IgE, histamine is released from the basophil.

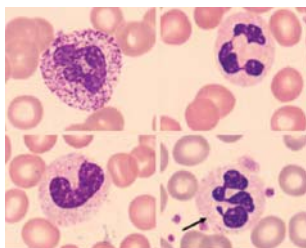


Fig 6. Variations on a neutrophil theme. Top left: 'toxic granulation': ie a neutrophil with coarse, deeply-staining granules (compare with the neutrophil to its right). This is a response to pregnancy or infection. Other neutrophil responses to infection include:

- Left shift: immature neutrophils are released with few lobes to their nuclei. A 'band form' has no lobes and may be shaped like a horseshoe (bottom left).
- Vacuoles in the cytoplasm (the most specific sign of bacterial infection).
- Döhle bodies: inconspicuous grey-blue areas of cytoplasm (residual ribosomes).

Up to 17% of neutrophils from females show a drumstick-shaped Barr body (arrow). It is the inactivated x chromosome.

Figs 1-5 courtesy of Prof. Krzysztof Lewandowski;
Fig 6 courtesy of Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.



Macrocytosis (MCV >96fL) is common, often due to alcohol excess without any accompanying anaemia. Although only ~5% are due to B₁₂ deficiency, pernicious anaemia is the most common cause of a macrocytic anaemia in Western countries. B₁₂ and folate deficiency are megaloblastic anaemias. A megaloblast is a cell in which nuclear maturation is delayed compared with the cytoplasm. This occurs with B₁₂ and folate deficiency, as they are both required for DNA synthesis.

Causes of macrocytosis

- **Megaloblastic:** (fig 1) B₁₂ deficiency, folate deficiency, cytotoxic drugs.
- **Non-megaloblastic:** Alcohol, reticulocytosis (eg in haemolysis), liver disease, hypothyroidism, pregnancy.
- **Other haematological disease:** Myelodysplasia (fig 2), myeloma, myeloproliferative disorders, aplastic anaemia.

Tests: B₁₂ and folate deficiency result in similar blood film and bone marrow biopsy appearances.

Blood film: Hypersegmented polymorphs (fig 1) in B₁₂ and folate deficiency (target cells if liver disease; see fig 8, p323 and fig 3, p337).

Other tests: LFT (include γGT), TFT, serum B₁₂ and serum folate (or red cell folate—a more reliable indicator of folate status, as serum folate only reflects recent intake).

Bone marrow biopsy is indicated if the cause is not revealed by the above tests. It is likely to show one of the following 4 states:

- 1 Megaloblastic.
- 2 Normoblastic marrow (eg in liver disease, hypothyroidism).
- 3 Abnormal erythropoiesis (eg sideroblastic anaemia, p320, leukaemia, aplasia).
- 4 Increased erythropoiesis (eg haemolysis).

Folate is found in green vegetables, nuts, yeast and liver; it is synthesized by gut bacteria. Body stores can last for 4 months. Maternal folate deficiency causes fetal neural tube defects. It is absorbed by duodenum/proximal jejunum. **Causes of deficiency:**

- Poor diet, eg poverty, alcoholics, elderly.
- Increased demand, eg pregnancy or cell turnover (seen in haemolysis, malignancy, inflammatory disease and renal dialysis).
- Malabsorption, eg coeliac disease, tropical sprue.
- Drugs, alcohol, anti-epileptics (phenytoin, valproate), methotrexate, trimethoprim.

Treatment: Assess for an underlying cause, eg poor diet, malabsorption. Treat with folic acid 5mg/day PO for 4 months, ► never without B₁₂ unless the patient is known to have a normal B₁₂ level, as in low B₁₂ states it may precipitate, or worsen, subacute combined degeneration of the cord (p328). In pregnancy prophylactic doses of folate (400µg/day) are given from conception until at least 12wks; this helps prevent spina bifida, as well as anaemia. NB: if ill (eg CCF) with megaloblastic anaemia, it may be necessary to treat before serum B₁₂ and folate results are known. Do tests then treat with large doses of hydroxocobalamin, eg 1mg/48h IM—see BNF, with folic acid 5mg/24h PO. Blood transfusions are very rarely needed, but see p318.

Folate and ischaemic heart disease Previous observational studies have indicated that higher homocysteine concentrations are associated with a greater risk of coronary heart disease. It has been suggested that folic acid supplementation may have a role in prevention of cardiac disease by lowering homocysteine levels. However, trials are disappointing (further studies awaited)²⁰ One meta-analysis also showed no causal relationship between high homocysteine concentrations and coronary heart disease risk in Western populations.²¹

Folate and cognition If borderline folate deficiency (as shown by ↑ homocysteine), 800µg folic acid/d for 3yrs has been found to benefit cognition.

²² The FACIT trial 2007

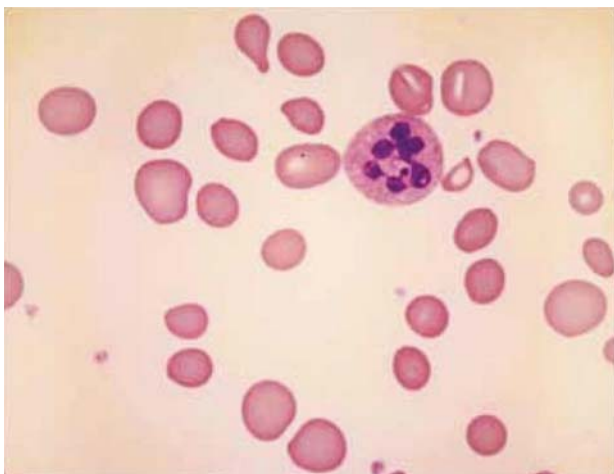


Fig 1. Megaloblastic anaemia: peripheral blood film showing many macrocytes and one hypersegmented neutrophil (normally there should be ≤ 5 segments).

Courtesy of Professor Barbara Bain © 2005 Massachusetts Medical Society.

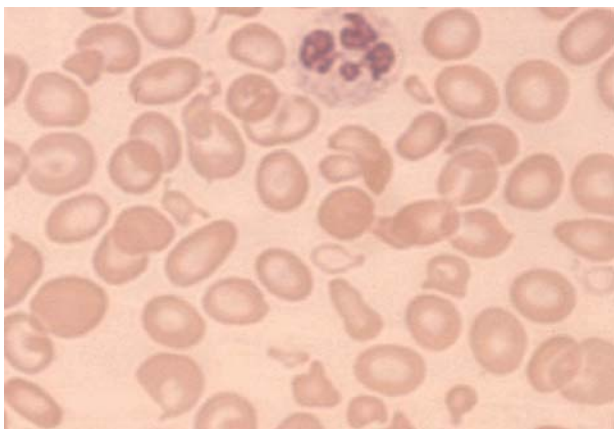


Fig 2. Oval macrocytes seen here in myelodysplastic syndromes. Note aniso- and poikilocytosis with small fragmented cells (schistocytes). NB: B_{12} and folate deficiencies also cause oval macrocytes, but macrocytes caused by alcohol and liver disease are usually round.

Courtesy of Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.



Vitamin B₁₂ is found in meat, fish, and dairy products, but not in plants. Body stores are sufficient for 4yrs. It is protein-bound and released during digestion. B₁₂ then binds to intrinsic factor in the stomach, and this complex is absorbed in the terminal ileum. In B₁₂ deficiency, synthesis of thymidine, and hence DNA, is impaired, so RBC production is slow. **Causes of deficiency:** •Dietary (eg vegans) •Malabsorption: *stomach* (lack of intrinsic factor): pernicious anaemia, post gastrectomy; *terminal ileum*: ileal resection, Crohn's disease, bacterial overgrowth, tropical sprue, tapeworms (*diphyllobothrium*) •Congenital metabolic errors.

Features General: Symptoms of anaemia (p318), 'lemon tinge' to skin due to combination of pallor (anaemia) and mild jaundice (due to haemolysis), glossitis (beefy-red sore tongue; **fig 1**), angular cheilosis (also known as stomatitis, p320).

Neuropsychiatric: Irritability, depression, psychosis, dementia.

Neurological: Paraesthesiae, peripheral neuropathy. Also:

Subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord: Onset is insidious (*subacute*) with peripheral neuropathy due to ↓B₁₂. There is a *combination* of symmetrical posterior (dorsal) column loss, causing sensory and LMN signs, and symmetrical corticospinal tract loss, causing motor and UMN signs (p450). Joint-position and vibration sense are often affected first leading to ataxia, followed by stiffness and weakness if untreated. The classical triad is: •Extensor plantars (UMN) •Absent knee jerks (LMN) •Absent ankle jerks (LMN). It may present with falls at night-time, due to a combination of ataxia and reduced vision, which is also seen with ↓B₁₂. Pain and temperature sensation may remain intact even in severe cases, as the spinothalamic tracts are preserved. ►Neurological signs of B₁₂ deficiency can occur without anaemia.

Pernicious anaemia (PA) This is caused by an autoimmune atrophic gastritis, leading to achlorhydria and lack of gastric intrinsic factor secretion.

Incidence 1:1000; ♀:♂≈1.6:1; usually >40yrs; higher incidence if blood group A.

Associations Other autoimmune diseases (p555): thyroid disease (~25%), vitiligo, Addison's disease, hypoparathyroidism. Carcinoma of stomach is ~3-fold more common in pernicious anaemia, so have a low threshold for upper GI endoscopy.

Tests •Hb+ (30–110g/L) •MCV↑ •WCC and platelets ↓ if severe •Serum B₁₂↓¹ •Reticulocytes ↓ or normal as production impaired •Hypersegmented polymorphs (p326) •Megaloblasts in the marrow •Specific tests for PA: **1** Parietal cell antibodies: found in 90% with PA, but also in 3–10% without. **2** Intrinsic factor (IF) antibodies: specific for pernicious anaemia, but lower sensitivity. These target B₁₂ binding sites (in 50%) or ileal binding sites (in 35%).

Treatment Treat the cause if possible. If a low B₁₂ is due to malabsorption, injections are required. Replenish stores with hydroxocobalamin (B₁₂) 1mg IM alternate days, eg for 2wks (or, if CNS signs, until improvement stops). Maintenance: 1mg IM every 3 months for life (child's dose: as for adult). If the cause is dietary, then oral B₁₂ can be given after the initial acute course (see BOX). Initial improvement is heralded by a transient marked reticulocytosis and hence ↑MCV, after 4–5 days.

Practical hints •Beware of diagnosing PA in those under 40yrs old: look for GI malabsorption (small bowel biopsy, p280).

- Watch for hypokalaemia as treatment becomes established.
- Transfusion is best avoided, but PA with high output CCF may require exchange transfusion (p318), after doing tests for FBC, folate, B₁₂, and marrow sampling.
- As haemopoiesis accelerates on treatment, additional iron may be needed.
- Hb rises ~10g/L per week; WCC and platelet count should normalize in 1wk.

Prognosis Supplementation usually improves peripheral neuropathy within the first 3–6 months, but has little effect on cord signs. Patients do best if treated as soon as possible after the onset of symptoms: don't delay!

1 Plasma B₁₂ levels are normal in many patients with subclinical B₁₂ deficiency. See BOX.



Fig 1. B₁₂ deficiency glossitis; other causes: iron (or Zn) deficiency, pellagra, contact dermatitis/specific food intolerances, Crohn's disease, drugs (minocycline, clarithromycin, some ACE-i). Glossitis may be the presenting feature of coeliac disease or alcoholism. Tongue TB: ulcers, fissure tuberculoma, or diffuse glossitis.²³

When a low B₁₂ is not due to pernicious anaemia

B₁₂ deficiency is common, eg up to 15% of older people. If untreated, it can lead to megaloblastic anaemia and irreversible CNS complications. In the UK, the usual regimen is regular (eg 3-monthly) IM hydroxocobalamin (1mg). Elsewhere, *high-dose oral B₁₂ regimen* (cyanocobalamin 1mg/day) is standard, less costly, and obviates the need for repeat visits to nurses. This use is not yet licensed in the UK.²⁴ Passive absorption of B₁₂ occurs throughout the gut—but only 1–2% of an oral dose is absorbed this (non-terminal ileum) way. The dietary reference range is ~2µg/d.

That a low B₁₂ is not due to PA can usually be determined by serology testing for parietal cell and intrinsic factor antibodies (but -ve in 50% of those with PA), and plasma response to oral B₁₂, and IM B₁₂ if no response to oral doses. The oral dose may be given as cyanocobalamin 50–150µg/daily, between meals (in the NHS, mark the prescription 'SLS', p223, to justify/communicate this special indication). This *low-dose regimen* is often sufficient for B₁₂ deficiency of dietary origin.²⁵ NB: foods of non-animal origin contain no B₁₂ unless fortified or contain bacteria. This information is important for vegans and their breastfed offspring.

Non-dietary, non-autoimmune causes of a low B₁₂: Crohn's and coeliac disease; after gastric surgery; acid-suppressors (eg ranitidine); metformin; pancreatic insufficiency; false-low reading (seen in ≥20% so do 2 readings in isolated low B₁₂). NB: normal serum B₁₂ is documented in overt deficiency, which is confusing. Measuring holotranscobalamin and homocysteine or methylmalonic acid (↑ if B₁₂ low) may be better, but have their own problems, and are non-standard tests.

NB: Schilling tests are not done as the radioisotope they use is not available.



Haemolysis is the premature breakdown of RBCs, before their normal lifespan of ~120d. It occurs in the circulation (*intravascular*) or in the reticuloendothelial system, ie macrophages of liver, spleen and bone marrow (*extravascular*). In sickle-cell anaemia, lifespan may be as short as 5d. Haemolysis may be asymptomatic, but if the bone marrow does not compensate sufficiently, a haemolytic anaemia results.

An approach is first to confirm haemolysis and then find the cause—try to answer these 4 questions:

1 Is there increased red cell breakdown?

- Anaemia with normal or \uparrow MCV.
- \uparrow Bilirubin: unconjugated, from haem breakdown (pre-hepatic jaundice).
- \uparrow Urinary urobilinogen (no urinary conjugated bilirubin).
- \uparrow Serum lactic dehydrogenase (LDH), as it is released from red cells.

2 Is there increased red cell production?

- \uparrow Reticulocytes, causing \uparrow MCV (reticulocytes are large immature RBCs) and polychromasia.

3 Is the haemolysis mainly extra- or intravascular?

Extravascular haemolysis may lead to splenic hypertrophy and splenomegaly. Features of intravascular haemolysis are:

- \uparrow Free plasma haemoglobin: released from RBCs.
- Methaemalbuminaemia: some free Hb is broken down in the circulation to produce haem and globin; haem combines with albumin to make methaemalbumin.
- \downarrow Plasma haptoglobin: mops up free plasma Hb, then removed by the liver.
- Haemoglobinuria: causes red-brown urine, in absence of red blood cells.
- Haemosiderinuria: occurs when haptoglobin-binding capacity is exceeded, causing free Hb to be filtered by the renal glomeruli, absorption of free Hb via the renal tubules and storage in the tubular cells as haemosiderin. This is detected in the urine in sloughed tubular cells by Prussian blue staining ~1 week after onset (implying a chronic intravascular haemolysis)

4 Why is there haemolysis? Causes are on p332.

History Family history, race, jaundice, dark urine, drugs, previous anaemia, travel.

Examination Jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, gallstones (pigmented, due to \uparrow bilirubin from haemolysis), leg ulcers (due to poor blood flow).

Tests FBC, reticulocytes, bilirubin, LDH, haptoglobin, urinary urobilinogen. Thick and thin films for malaria screen if history of travel. The blood film may show polychromasia and macrocytosis due to reticulocytes, or point to the diagnosis:

- Hypochromic microcytic anaemia (thalassaemia).
- Sick cells (sickle-cell anaemia).
- Schistocytes (fig 4, p333; microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia).
- Abnormal cells in haematological malignancy.
- Spherocytes (hereditary spherocytosis or autoimmune haemolytic anaemia).
- Elliptocytes (fig 7, p333; hereditary elliptocytosis).
- Heinz bodies, 'bite' cells,² (glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency).

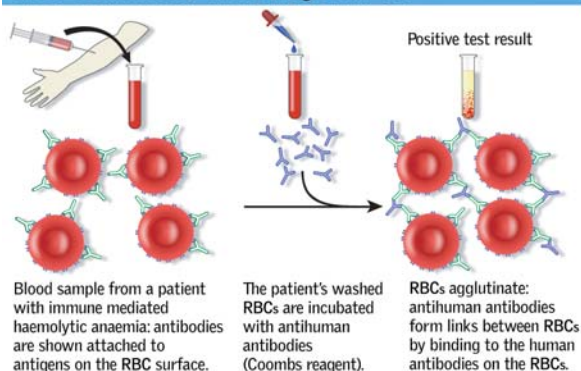
Further tests

- Direct antiglobulin (Coombs) test (DAT, fig 1) identifies red cells coated with antibody or complement. A +ve result indicates an immune cause of the haemolysis.
- RBC lifespan may be determined by *chromium labelling* and the major site of RBC breakdown may also be identified. This test is rarely done now.

The cause may now be obvious, but further tests may be needed. Membrane abnormalities are identified on the film and can be confirmed by *osmotic fragility* testing. *Hb electrophoresis* will detect haemoglobinopathies. *Enzyme assays* are reserved for situations when other causes have been excluded.

¹ See Provan D, *Oxford Handbook of Clinical and Laboratory Investigation*, 3e, OUP.

² On passing through the spleen, Heinz bodies may be removed, leaving an RBC with 'a bite taken out of it'. See p333 fig 2.



Indirect Coombs test / Indirect antiglobulin test

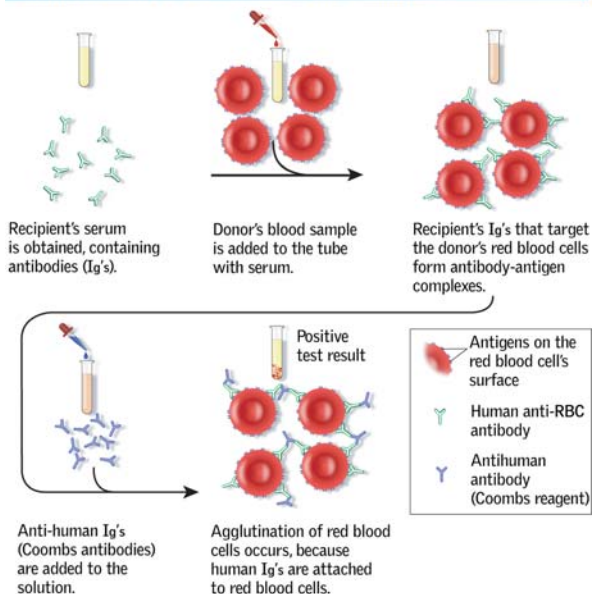


Fig 1. The *direct* Coombs test detects antibodies on RBCs. The *indirect* Coombs test is used in pre-natal testing and before blood transfusion. It detects antibodies against RBCs that are free in serum: serum is incubated with RBCs of known antigenicity. If agglutination occurs, the indirect Coombs test is positive.

With kind permission of Aria Rad.

Acquired—these are divided into immune and non-immune causes.

1 Immune-mediated and direct antiglobulin test +ve (Coombs test, p331):

- **Drug-induced** Causing formation of RBC autoantibodies from binding to RBC membranes (eg penicillin) or production of immune complexes (eg quinine).
- **Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia (AIHA; fig 1)**: Mediated by autoantibodies causing mainly extravascular haemolysis and spherocytosis. Classify according to optimal binding temperature to RBCs: **Warm AIHA**: IgG-mediated, bind at body T° 37°C. **R**: Steroids/immunosuppressants (± splenectomy). **Cold AIHA**: IgM-mediated, bind at 4T° (<4°C), activating cell-surface complement. Causes a chronic anaemia made worse by cold, often with Raynaud's or acrocyanosis. **R**: Keep warm. Chlorambucil may help. Causes: Most are idiopathic; 2° causes of warm AIHA include lymphoproliferative disease (CLL, lymphoma), drugs, autoimmune disease, eg SLE. Cold AIHA may follow infection (mycoplasma; EBV).
- **Paroxysmal cold haemoglobinuria** is seen with viruses/syphilis. It is caused by Donath-Landsteiner antibodies sticking to RBCs in the cold, causing self-limiting complement-mediated haemolysis on rewarming. **Isoimmune**: Acute transfusion reaction (p359); haemolytic disease of newborn²⁸

2 Direct antiglobulin/Coombs -ve AIHA: (2% of all AIHA) Autoimmune hepatitis; hepatitis B & C; post flu and other vaccinations; drugs (piperacillin, rituximab)²⁷

3 Microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia (MAHA): A mechanical disruption of RBCs in circulation, causing intravascular haemolysis and schistocytes (figs 4 & 5). Causes include haemolytic-uraemic syndrome (HUS), TTP (p308), DIC, pre-eclampsia, eclampsia. Treat the underlying disease; transfusion or plasma exchange may be needed.

4 Infection: Malaria (p394): RBC lysis and 'blackwater fever' (haemoglobinuria).

5 Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (Marchiafava-Micheli disease) is a rare acquired stem cell disorder, with haemolysis (esp. at night→haemoglobinuria, fig 1, p719), marrow failure + thrombophilia. Visceral thrombosis (hepatic, mesenteric, renal and CNS veins) and pulmonary emboli predict poor outcome.²⁸ **Δ**: Urinary haemosiderin +ve. RBCs are sensitive to complement-mediated lysis due to abnormal surface glucosylphosphatidylinositol shown by cellular immuno-phenotyping. Ham's test +ve (*in vitro* acid-induced lysis, rarely done). **R**: Anticoagulation. Eculizumab has a role, so stem cell transplantation is less needed.

Hereditary Is there a defect in RBC enzymes, red cell membrane, or Hb?

1 Enzyme defects:

- **Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency** ^{X-linked} is the chief RBC enzyme defect, affecting 100 million (mainly males) in the Mediterranean, Africa (G6PD-A), Middle/Far East (G6PD Canton is the main variant in China).²⁹ Most are asymptomatic, but may get oxidative crises due to ↓glutathione production, precipitated by drugs (eg primaquine, sulfonamides, aspirin), exposure to *Vicia faba* (broad beans/favism), or illness. In attacks, there is rapid anaemia and jaundice. Film: bite- and blister-cells (figs 2 & 3). **Δ**: Enzyme assay (>8wks after crisis as young RBCs may have enough enzyme so results may seem normal). **R**: Avoid precipitants (eg, henna, fig 8); transfuse if severe.
- **Pyruvate kinase deficiency** ^{Autosomal recessive} ↓ATP production causes ↓RBC survival. Homozygotes have neonatal jaundice; later, haemolysis with splenomegaly ± jaundice. **Δ**: Enzyme assay. **R**: Often not needed; splenectomy may help.

2 Membrane defects: All are Coombs -ve; all need folate; splenectomy helps some.

- **Hereditary spherocytosis** ^{Autosomal dominant} Prevalence: 1:3000. Less deformable spherical RBCs, so trapped in spleen→extravascular haemolysis. **Signs**: Splenomegaly, jaundice. **Δ**: Mild if Hb >110g/L & reticulocytes <6%; film: fig 6. ↑Bilirubin (→gallstones).
- **Hereditary elliptocytosis** ^{Autosomal dominant} Film: fig 7. Mostly asymptomatic (somewhat protects from malaria). 10% display a more severe phenotype (± death *in utero*).
- **Hereditary ovalocytosis and stomatocytosis** are rarer. Refer to a haematologist.

3 Haemoglobinopathy: • Sickle-cell disease (p334). • Thalassaemia (p336).

Factors exacerbating haemolysis Infection leads to haemolysis. The anaemia may be exacerbated by parvoviruses (OHCS p142), producing a cessation of marrow erythropoiesis, ie aplastic anaemia, with no reticulocyte formation (p358).

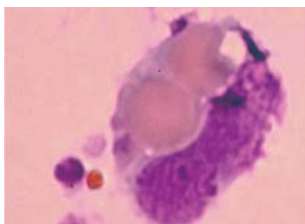


Fig 1. Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia: antibody-coated red cells undergoing phagocytosis by monocytes.

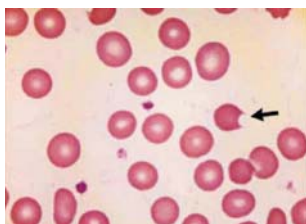


Fig 2. A bite-cell in G6PD, after removal of a Heinz body by the spleen; these are formed from denatured Hb during oxidative crises.

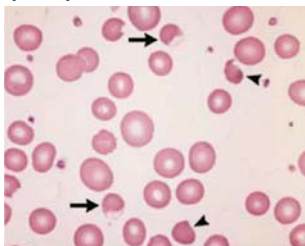


Fig 3. Blister-cells (arrows) in G6PD, following removal of Heinz bodies. Also contracted red cells (arrowheads).

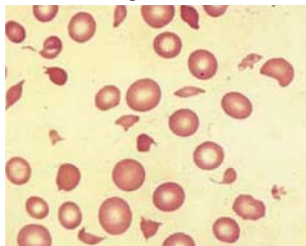


Fig 4. Microangiopathic anaemia, eg from DIC: numerous cell fragments (schistocytes) are present.

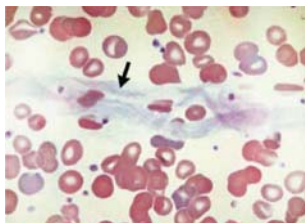


Fig 5. Fibrin strands, deposited in HUS and TTP (p308), slicing up RBCs (microangiopathy). Mechanical heart valves also slice up RBCs.

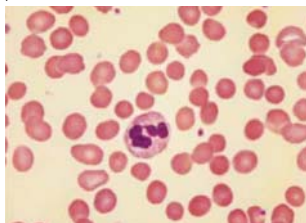


Fig 6. Hereditary spherocytosis. Osmotic fragility tests: RBCs show tfragility in hypotonic solutions.

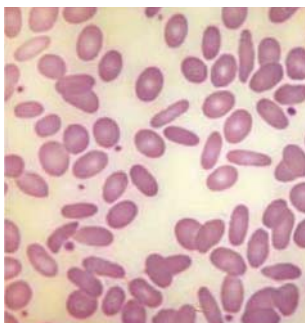


Fig 7. Hereditary elliptocytosis.



Fig 8. Avoid henna use in G6PD deficiency!

Sickle-cell anaemia is an autosomal recessive disorder causing production of abnormal β globin chains. An amino acid substitution in the gene coding for the β chain (Glu \rightarrow Val at position 6) results in the production of HbS rather than HbA. HbA₂ and HbF are still produced. It is common in people of African origin. The homozygote (SS) has sickle-cell *anaemia* (HbSS), and heterozygotes (HbAS) have sickle-cell *trait*, which causes no disability (and protects from *falciparum* malaria) except in hypoxia, eg in unpressurized aircraft or anaesthesia, when vaso-occlusive events may occur, so all those of African descent need a sickle-cell test pre-op. Symptomatic sickling also occurs in heterozygotes with genes coding other Hb variants (eg HbC leading to HbSC, or β -thalassaemia trait leading to HbS/ β thal).

Pathogenesis HbS polymerizes when deoxygenated, causing RBCs to deform, producing sickle cells, which are fragile and haemolyse, and also block small vessels.

Prevalence 1:700 people of African heritage.

Tests Haemolysis is variable. Hb \approx 60–90g/L, \uparrow reticulocytes 10–20%, \uparrow bilirubin. *Film*: sickle cells and target cells (fig 1). *Sickle solubility test*: +ve, but does not distinguish between HbSS and HbAS. *Hb electrophoresis*: Confirms the diagnosis and distinguishes SS, AS states, and other Hb variants. \blacktriangleright Aim for diagnosis *at birth* (cord blood) to aid prompt pneumococcal prophylaxis (vaccine, p160 \pm penicillin V).

Signs/symptoms Chronic haemolysis is usually well tolerated (except in crises; BOX). *Vaso-occlusive 'painful' crisis*: Common, due to microvascular occlusion. Often affects the marrow, causing severe pain, triggered by cold, dehydration, infection or hypoxia. Hands and feet are affected if <3 yrs old leading to *dactylitis*. Occlusion may cause *mesenteric ischaemia*, mimicking an acute abdomen. CNS infarction occurs in $\sim 10\%$ of children, leading to *stroke*, *seizures* or *cognitive defects*. Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography indicates risk of impending stroke, and blood transfusions can prevent this by reducing HbS.³⁰ Also *avascular necrosis* (eg of femoral head), *leg ulcers* (fig 2) and low-flow *priapism* (also seen in CML, may respond to hydration, α -agonists, eg phenylephrine, or aspiration of blood + irrigation with saline; if for >12 h prompt cavernosus-spongiosum shunting can prevent later impotence).³¹

Aplastic crisis: This is due to parvovirus B19, with sudden reduction in marrow production, especially RBCs. Usually self-limiting <2 wks; transfusion may be needed. *Sequestration crisis*: Mainly affects children as the spleen has not yet undergone atrophy. There is pooling of blood in the spleen \pm liver, with organomegaly, severe anaemia and shock. Urgent transfusion is needed.

Complications • Splenic infarction occurs before 2 yrs old, due to microvascular occlusion, leading to \uparrow susceptibility to infection (40% of childhood sickle deaths are caused this way); zinc supplements may help.^{32,33} • Poor growth • Chronic renal failure • Gallstones • Retinal disease • Iron overload (BOX 2) or blood-borne infection after repeated transfusion³⁴ • Lung damage: hypoxia \rightarrow fibrosis \rightarrow pulmonary hypertension, partly prevented by incentive spirometry: 10 maximal inspirations/2h.³⁵

Management of chronic disease \blacktriangleright Get help from a haematologist.

- Hydroxycarbamide if frequent crises. Dose example: 20mg/kg/d if eGFR >60 mL/min.¹
- Splenic infarction leads to hyposplenism. Prophylaxis, in terms of antibiotics and immunization, should be given (p367).
- Febrile children risk septicaemia: repeated admission may be avoided by out-patient ceftriaxone (eg 2 doses, 50mg/kg IV on day 0 and 1). Admission may still be needed, eg if Hb <50 g/L, WCC <5 or $>30 \times 10^9$ /L, $T^\circ >40^\circ\text{C}$, severe pain, dehydration, lung infiltration. Seek expert advice.
- Bone marrow transplant can be curative but remains controversial.

Prevention Genetic counselling; prenatal tests (OHCS p152–3). Parental education can help prevent 90% of deaths from sequestration crises.³⁶

1 Long-term hydroxycarbamide causes \uparrow production of fetal haemoglobin (HbF), \downarrow Hb polymerization, hence fewer painful crises, chest symptoms, admissions, blood transfusions + \downarrow mortality by 40%.^{37,38} This may result from fewer episodes of marrow ischaemia and embolization. Nitric oxide is raised.

Managing sickle-cell crises³⁹

► Seek expert help early.

- Give *prompt*, generous analgesia, eg IV opiates (see p576).
- Crossmatch blood. FBC, reticulocytes, blood cultures, MSU ± CXR if T^o↑ or chest signs.
- Rehydrate with IVI and keep warm. Give O₂ by mask if P_aO₂↓ or O₂ sats <95%.
- 'Blind' antibiotics (eg cephalosporin, p382) if T^o >38°, unwell, or chest signs.
- Measure PCV, reticulocytes, liver, and spleen size twice daily.
- Give blood transfusion if Hb or reticulocytes fall sharply. Match blood for the blood group antigens Rh(c, d, E) and Kell, to prevent alloantibody formation. This helps oxygenation, and is as good as exchange transfusion (reserved for those who are rapidly worsening: it is a process where blood is removed and donor blood is given in stages).⁴⁰ Indications: severe chest crisis, suspected CNS event or multiorgan failure—when the proportion of HbS should be reduced to <30%.

The acute chest syndrome: Entails pulmonary infiltrates involving complete lung segments, causing pain, fever, tachypnoea, wheeze, and cough. It is serious. Incidence: ~0.1 episodes/patient/yr. 13% in the landmark Vichinsky study needed ventilation, 11% had CNS symptoms, and 9% of those over 20 years old died. Prodromal painful crisis occur ~2.5 days before any abnormalities on CXR in 50% of patients. The chief causes of the infiltrates are fat embolism from bone marrow or infection with *Chlamydia*, *Mycoplasma*, or viruses.⁴¹ R: O₂, analgesia, blind antibiotics (cephalosporin + macrolide) until culture results known. Bronchodilators (eg salbutamol, p175) have proved to be effective in those with wheezing or obstructive pulmonary function at presentation. Blood transfusion (exchange if severe). *Take to ITU* if P_aO₂ cannot be kept above 9.2kPa (70mmHg) when breathing air.

Patient-controlled analgesia (example with paediatric doses) First try warmth, hydration, and oral analgesia: ibuprofen 5mg/kg/6h (codeine 1mg/kg/4–8h PO up to 3mg/kg/d may also be tried, but is less effective). If this fails, see on the ward and offer prompt morphine by IVI—eg 0.1mg/kg. Start with morphine 1mg/kg in 50mL 5% glucose, and try a rate of 1mL/h, allowing the patient to deliver extra boluses of 1mL when needed. Do respiration and sedation score every ¼h + O₂ sats if chest/abdominal pain.⁴² Liaise with the local pain service.

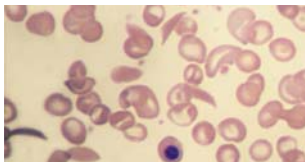


Fig 1. Sickle-cell film: there are sickle cells, target cells, and a nucleated red cell.

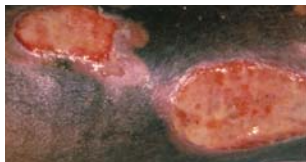


Fig 2. Leg ulcers in sickle-cell disease.

Figs 1 & 2 ©Prof. C Lawrence.

◉ A 7-year-old tells us what it's like to have sickle-cell disease

"I have been hospitalized over 50 times for complications from this disease. To keep it controlled I started having monthly transfusions. After repeated transfusions my body began to get too much iron so I had to start getting infusions. I was taking the medication desferal¹ which my mummy had to insert a needle in my belly hooked up to a pump which I had to carry on my back in my neat Spiderman backpack. I was hooked up to the machine for 10 hours a day 5 days a week but it was okay I still got to play!!! I suffered from pain crisis which makes my legs and back hurt like someone is hitting me with a hammer.

You may notice that I may move slow or look tired when it is time for my blood transfusion. That is because the transfusions are like a heartbeat for my body, without it I can't survive. When I'm in pain the only thing that helps is morphine... I tell my mummy when she's crying I WILL BE OK!!"

¹ This was necessary until a once-daily oral iron chelator came along: deferasirox (Exjade®).

The thalassaemias are genetic diseases of unbalanced Hb synthesis, with underproduction (or no production) of one globin chain (see Box). Unmatched globins precipitate, damaging RBC membranes, causing their haemolysis while still in the marrow. They are common in areas from the Mediterranean to the Far East.

The β thalassaemias are usually caused by point mutations in β -globin genes on chromosome 11, leading to β chain production (β^+) or its absence (β^0). Various combinations of mutations are possible (eg β^0/β^0 , β^+/β^+ , or β^+/β^0).

Tests FBC, MCV, film, iron, HbA₂, HbF, Hb electrophoresis. MRI can monitor myocardial siderosis from iron overload.⁴³

β thalassaemia minor or trait (eg β/β^+ ; heterozygous state): This is a carrier state, and is usually asymptomatic. Mild, well-tolerated anaemia (Hb >90g/L) which may worsen in pregnancy. MCV <75fL, HbA₂ >3.5%, slight ↑HbF. Often confused with iron-deficiency anaemia.

β thalassaemia intermedia describes an intermediate state with moderate anaemia but not requiring transfusions. There may be splenomegaly. There are a variety of causes including mild homozygous β thalassaemia mutations, eg β^+/β^+ , or co-inheritance of β thalassaemia trait with another haemoglobinopathy, eg HbC thalassaemia (1 parent has the HbC trait, and the other has β^+). Sickle-cell β^+ thalassaemia produces a picture similar to sickle-cell anaemia.

β thalassaemia major (Cooley's anaemia) denotes abnormalities in both β -globin genes, and presents in the 1st year, with severe anaemia and failure to thrive. Extramedullary haemopoiesis (RBCs made outside the marrow) occurs in response to anaemia, causing characteristic head shape, eg skull bossing (figs 1 & 2) and hepatosplenomegaly (also due to haemolysis). There is osteopenia (may respond to zoledronic acid).⁴⁴ Skull x-ray shows a 'hair on end' sign due to ↑marrow activity. Life-long blood transfusions are needed, with resulting iron overload/deposition seen after ~10yrs as endocrine failure (pituitary, thyroid, pancreas→diabetes mellitus), liver disease, and cardiac toxicity. The film shows very hypochromic, microcytic cells + target cells + nucleated RBCs. HbF↑, HbA₂ variable, HbA absent.

Treatment ▶ Promote fitness; healthy diet. Folate (\pm carnitine) supplements help.⁴⁵

- Regular (~2–4 weekly) life-long transfusions to keep Hb >90g/L, to suppress the ineffective extramedullary haematopoiesis and to allow normal growth.
- Iron-chelators to prevent iron overload. Oral deferiprone + desferrioxamine sc twice weekly.⁴⁶ SE: pain, deafness, cataracts, retinal damage, risk of *Yersinia*. Alternative: deferasirox (p334). NB: iron overload is a big problem causing hypothyroidism, hypocalcaemia,⁴⁷ hypogonadism (men may get help from testosterone gel).⁴⁸
- Large doses of ascorbic acid also increase urinary excretion of iron.
- Splenectomy if hypersplenism persists with increasing transfusion requirements (p367)—this is best avoided until >5yrs old due to risk of infections.
- Hormonal replacement or treatment for endocrine complications, eg diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism. Growth hormone treatment has had variable success.⁴⁹
- A histocompatible marrow transplant can offer the chance of a cure.⁵⁰

Prevention Approaches include genetic counselling or antenatal diagnosis using fetal blood or DNA, then 'therapeutic' abortion.

The α thalassaemias (fig 3) There are two separate α -globin genes on each chromosome 16 \therefore there are four genes (termed $\alpha\alpha/\alpha\alpha$). The α thalassaemias are mainly caused by gene deletions. If all 4 α genes are deleted ($--/--$), death is *in utero* (Bart's hydrops). Here, HbBarts (γ_4) is present, which is physiologically useless. HbH disease occurs if 3 genes are deleted ($--/-\alpha$); there may be moderate anaemia and features of haemolysis: hepatosplenomegaly, leg ulcers and jaundice. In the blood film, there is formation of β_4 tetramers (=HbH) due to excess β chains, HbBarts, HbA and HbA₂. If 2 genes are deleted ($--/\alpha\alpha$ or $-\alpha/-\alpha$), there is an asymptomatic carrier state, with ↓MCV. With one gene deleted, the clinical state is normal.



Structure of haemoglobin

The three main types of Hb in adult blood are:

Type	Peptide chains	% in adult blood	% in fetal blood
HbA	$\alpha_2 \beta_2$	97	10–50
HbA ₂	$\alpha_2 \delta_2$	2.5	Trace
HbF	$\alpha_2 \gamma_2$	0.5	50–90

Adult haemoglobin (HbA) is a tetramer of 2 α - and 2 β -globin chains each containing a haem group. In the first year of life, adult haemoglobin replaces fetal haemoglobin (HbF).

It might be thought that because the molecular details of the thalassaemias are so well worked out they represent a perfect example of the reductionist principle at work: find out *exactly* what is happening *within* molecules, and you will be able to explain all the manifestations of a disease. But this is not so. We have to recognize that two people with the identical mutation at their β loci may have quite different diseases. Co-inheritance of other genes and conditions (eg α thalassaemia) is part of the explanation, as is the efficiency of production of fetal haemoglobin. The reasons lie beyond simple co-segregation of genes promoting the formation of fetal Hb. The rate of proteolysis of excess α -globin chains may also be important—as may mechanisms that have little to do with genetic or molecular events. So the lesson the thalassaemias teach is more subtle than the reductionist one: it is that if you want to understand the *whole* picture, you must look at every level: genetic, molecular, physiological, social, and cultural. Each level influences the other, without necessarily determining them.



Fig 1. β thalassaemia major: bossing due to extramedullary haematopoiesis.



Fig 2. β thalassaemia major: skull x-ray.

©Dr E van der Enden (fig 1)

©Crookston collection (fig 2).



Fig 3. α thalassaemia showing Mexican hat cells (also called target cells)—one of which is arrowed on the left panel. Note also the tear-drop cell on the right panel, and the 2 normoblasts (nucleated red cells, one on each panel). The shorter arrow on the left panel points to a Howell-Jolly body. Note that the cells which are not Mexican hats are rather small (microcytic). There is also poikilocytosis (*poikilos* is Greek for varied—so this simply means that the vessels holding the haemoglobin are of varied shape).

Courtesy of Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.

After injury, 3 processes halt bleeding: vasoconstriction, gap-plugging by platelets, and the coagulation cascade (**fig 1**). Disorders of haemostasis fall into these 3 groups. The pattern of bleeding is important—vascular and platelet disorders lead to prolonged bleeding from cuts, bleeding into the skin (eg easy bruising and purpura), and bleeding from mucous membranes (eg epistaxis, bleeding from gums, menorrhagia). Coagulation disorders cause delayed bleeding into joints and muscle.

1 Vascular defects *Congenital*: Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome (p722), connective tissue disease (eg Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, *OHCS* p642, pseudoxanthoma elasticum). *Acquired*: Senile purpura, infection (eg meningococcal, measles, dengue fever), steroids, scurvy (perifollicular haemorrhages), Henoch-Schönlein purpura (p716), painful bruising syndrome—women who develop tingling under the skin followed by bruising over limbs/trunk, resolving without treatment.

2 Platelet disorders *Decreased marrow production*: Aplastic anaemia (p358), megaloblastic anaemia, marrow infiltration (eg leukaemia, myeloma), marrow suppression (cytotoxic drugs, radiotherapy). *Excess destruction*: *Immune*: Immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP, below), other autoimmune causes, eg SLE, CLL, drugs, eg heparin, viruses; *Non-immune*: DIC (p346), thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or HUS (p308), sequestration (in hypersplenism). **ITP** is caused by antiplatelet autoantibodies. It is acute (usually in children, 2wks after infection with sudden self-limiting purpura: *OHCS* p197) or chronic (seen mainly in women). Chronic ITP runs a fluctuating course of bleeding, purpura (esp. dependent pressure areas), epistaxis and menorrhagia. There is no splenomegaly. *Tests in ITP*: megakaryocytes in marrow, antiplatelet autoantibodies often present. *R_x*: None if mild. If symptomatic or platelets $<20 \times 10^9/L$, prednisolone 1mg/kg/d, and reduce after remission; aim to keep platelets $>30 \times 10^9/L$ —takes a few days to work. If relapse, splenectomy cures $\leq 80\%$. If this fails: immunosuppression, eg azathioprine or cyclophosphamide. Platelet transfusions are not used (except during splenectomy or life-threatening haemorrhage) as these are quickly destroyed by the autoantibodies. IV immunoglobulin may temporarily raise the platelet count, eg for surgery, pregnancy. Eltrombopag is a new oral thrombopoietin-receptor agonist that stimulates thrombopoiesis. *Poorly functioning platelets*: Seen in myeloproliferative disease, NSAIDs, and ureat.

3 Coagulation disorders *Congenital*: Haemophilia, von Willebrand's disease (p726). *Acquired*: Anticoagulants, liver disease, DIC (p346), vitamin K deficiency.

Haemophilia A Factor VIII deficiency; inherited in an x-linked recessive pattern in 1:10,000 male births—usually due to a 'flip tip' inversion in the factor VIII gene in the x chromosome. There is a high rate of new mutations (30% have no family history). *Presentation* depends on severity and is often early in life or after surgery/trauma—with bleeds into joints leading to crippling arthropathy, and into muscles causing haematomas (↑ pressure can lead to nerve palsies and compartment syndrome). *Diagnose* by ↑APTT and ↓factor VIII assay. *Management*: Seek expert advice. Avoid NSAIDs and IM injections (**fig 2**). *Minor bleeding*: pressure and elevation of the part. Desmopressin ($0.3\mu g/kg/12h$ IVI over 20min) raises factor VIII levels, and may be sufficient. *Major bleeds* (eg haemarthrosis): factor VIII levels to 50% of normal. *Life-threatening bleeds* (eg obstructing airway) need levels of 100%, eg with recombinant factor VIII. *Genetic counselling*: *OHCS* p154.

Haemophilia B (Christmas disease) Factor IX deficiency (inherited, x-linked recessive); behaves clinically like haemophilia A.

Acquired haemophilia is a bleeding diathesis causing big mucosal bleeds in males and females caused by suddenly appearing autoantibodies that interfere with factor VIII.⁵¹ *Tests*: APTT; VIII autoantibody; factor VIII activity $<50\%$. *R_x*: Steroids.

Liver disease produces a complicated bleeding disorder with ↓synthesis of clotting factors, ↓absorption of vitamin K, and abnormalities of platelet function.

Malabsorption leads to less uptake of vitamin K (needed for synthesis of factors II, VII, IX, and X). Treatment is IV vitamin K (10mg) or FFP for acute haemorrhage.



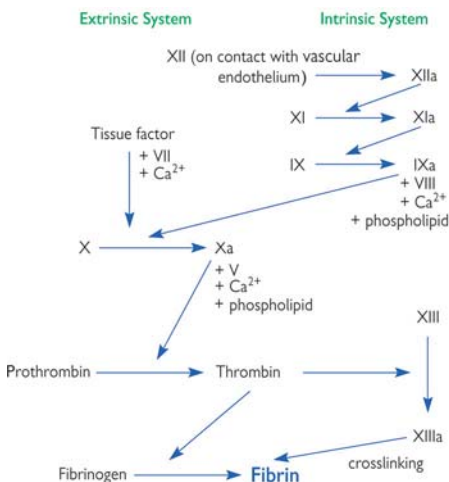


Fig 1. Intrinsic and extrinsic pathways of coagulation (simplified!)



Fig 2. Mild haemophilia after an IM injection.

► Give vaccines etc sc!

©Crookston collection 53

Fibrinolysis

The fibrinolytic system causes fibrin dissolution and acts via the generation of plasmin. The process starts with the release of tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA) from endothelial cells, a process stimulated by fibrin formation. t-PA converts inactive plasminogen to plasmin which can then cleave fibrin, as well as several other factors. t-PA and plasminogen both bind fibrin thus localizing fibrinolysis to the area of the clot.

Mechanism of fibrinolytic agents

Alteplase (=rT-PA=Actilyse®; from recombinant DNA) is a fibrinolytic enzyme imitating t-PA, as above. Plasma $t_{1/2} \approx 5\text{min}$.

Streptokinase is a streptococcal exotoxin and forms a complex in plasma with plasminogen to form an activator complex, which forms plasmin from unbound plasminogen. Initially there is rapid plasmin formation which can cause uncontrolled fibrinolysis. Plasminogen is rapidly consumed in the complex and then plasmin is only produced as more plasminogen is synthesized. The activator complex binds to fibrin, so producing some localization of fibrinolysis.

There are 3 sets of questions to be answered:

- 1 Is there an emergency?**—needing immediate resuscitation or senior help?
 - Is the patient about to exsanguinate (dizzy on sitting up, shock, coma, p800)?
 - Is there hypovolaemia (postural hypotension, oliguria)?
 - Is there CNS bleeding (meningism, CNS, and retinal signs)?
 - Is there an underlying condition which escalates this apparently minor bleeding into an evolving catastrophe? For example:
 - Bleeding in pregnancy or the puerperium
 - GI bleeding in a jaundiced man (ie coagulation factors already depleted)
 - Bleeding in someone who is already anaemic (esp if other comorbidities).
- 2 Why is the patient bleeding?** Is bleeding normal, given the circumstances (eg surgery, trauma, parturition), or does the patient have a bleeding disorder (BOX 1)?
 - Is there a secondary cause, eg drugs (warfarin), alcohol, liver disease, sepsis?
 - Is there unexplained bleeding, bruising, or purpura?
 - Past or family history of excess bleeding, eg during trauma, dentistry, surgery?
 - Is the pattern of bleeding indicative of vascular, platelet, or coagulation problems (p338)? Are venepuncture or old cannula sites bleeding (DIC, p346)? Look for associated conditions (eg with DIC).
 - Is a clotting screen abnormal? Check FBC, platelets, PT, APTT and thrombin time. Consider D-dimers, bleeding time, and a factor VIII assay.
- 3 In cases of bleeding disorders, what is the mechanism?** To help find the answer do FBC, film, and coagulation tests (citrate tube; false results if under-filled):
 - **Prothrombin time (PT):** Thromboplastin is added to test the *extrinsic system*. PT is expressed as a ratio compared to control [International Normalized Ratio (INR), normal range = 0.9–1.2]. It tests for abnormalities in factors I, II, V, VII, X. Prolonged by: warfarin, vitamin K deficiency, liver disease, DIC.
 - **Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT):** Kaolin is added to test the *intrinsic system*. Tests for abnormalities in factor I, II, V, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII. Normal range 35–45s. Prolonged by: heparin treatment, haemophilia, DIC, liver disease.
 - **Thrombin time:** Thrombin is added to plasma to convert fibrinogen to fibrin. Normal range: 10–15s. Prolonged by: heparin treatment, DIC, dysfibrinogenaemia.
 - **D-dimers** are a fibrin degradation product, released from cross-linked fibrin during fibrinolysis (p339). This occurs during DIC, or in the presence of venous thromboembolism—deep vein thrombosis (DVT) or pulmonary embolism (PE). D-dimers may also be raised in inflammation, eg with infection or malignancy.
 - **Bleeding time** tests haemostasis. It is done by making two small incisions into the skin of the forearm. Normal time to haemostasis: ≤ 10 min⁵¹ NB: this is rarely done, as it is operator dependent; consider the PFA-100 instead (BOX 2).

Interpretation

- **Platelets:** If low, do FBC, film, clotting.
- **PT:** If long, look for liver disease or anticoagulant use.
- **APTT:** If long, consider liver disease, haemophilia (VIII or IX deficiency), or heparin.
- **Bleeding time:** Raised in von Willebrand's disease (p726), platelet disorders, and if on low- but not full-dose aspirin.⁵²
- If both PT and APTT are very raised, with low platelets, and \uparrow D-dimers, consider DIC.

Management depends on the degree of bleeding. If shocked, resuscitate (p804). If bleeding continues in the presence of a clotting disorder or a massive transfusion, discuss the need for FFP and platelets with a haematologist. In ITP (p338), steroids \pm IV immunoglobulin may be used. Especially in pregnancy (OHCS p88), consult an expert. Is there overdose with anticoagulants (p854)? In haemophiliac bleeds, *consult early* for coagulation factor replacement. *Never* give IM injections. Pre-op considerations: see BOX 3.



Disorder	INR	APTT	Thrombin time	Platelet count	Bleeding time	Notes
Heparin	↑	↑↑	↑↑	↔	↔	
DIC	↑↑	↑↑	↑↑	↓	↑	↑D-d, p346
Liver disease	↑	↑	↔/↑	↔/↓	↔/↑	AST↑
Platelet defect	↔	↔	↔	↔	↑(t)	
Vit k deficiency	↑↑	↑	↔	↔	↔	
Haemophilia	↔	↑↑	↔	↔	↔	see p338
von Willebrand's	↔	↑↑	↔	↔	↑(t)	see p726

Special tests may be available (factor assays: ► consult a haematologist).

PFA-100: an alternative to the bleeding test

The PFA-100® (Platelet Function Analyzer-100) mimics the clotting process. To do the test, a tube of fresh blood is drawn and a portion put into a test cartridge. A vacuum draws blood through a thin glass tube coated with collagen and with either adrenaline or ADP, which activates the platelets in the moving sample and promotes platelet aggregation. The time it takes for a clot to form inside the glass tube and prevent further flow is measured as a closure time (CT). An initial screen is done with collagen/adrenaline. If the CT is normal, it is unlikely that a platelet dysfunction exists. The collagen/ADP test can confirm an abnormal collagen/adrenaline test. If both are abnormal, it is likely that there is platelet dysfunction and further testing for inherited or acquired bleeding disorders is indicated. If the collagen/ADP test is normal, then the abnormal collagen/adrenaline test may be due to aspirin ingestion.⁵³

Is this pre-op patient at risk of excessive bleeding?

Take a bleeding history! The more structured this is the better.⁵⁴ If excessive, prolonged, or unexplained bleeding in the past, or if on agents known to affect haemostasis, or if the liver is suspect, or there is a condition such as lupus, or if bleeding might be disastrous, further tests may be indicated after discussion with a haematologist: INR, FBC, film, aPPT, PFA-100 (see above) and von Willebrand factor (vWF: Ag). In one pre-op study the bleeding history was +ve in 11%, and tests showed impaired haemostasis in 40% of these. ~98% of these are detectable by PFA-100.⁵⁵



► Blood should only be given if strictly necessary *and there is no alternative*. Outcomes are often *worse* after a transfusion.

- Know and use local procedures to ensure that the right blood gets to the right patient at the right time.
- Take blood for crossmatching from only one patient at a time. Label immediately. This minimizes risk of wrong labelling of samples.¹
- When giving blood, monitor TPR and BP every ½h.
- Do not use giving sets which have contained dextrose or Gelofusine®.

Group-and-save (G&S) requests Know your local guidelines for elective surgery. Having crossmatched blood to hand may not be needed if a blood sample is already in the lab, with group determined, without any atypical antibodies (ie G&S).

Products *Whole blood:* (rarely used) Indications: exchange transfusion; grave exsanguination—use crossmatched blood if possible, but if not, use 'universal donor' group O Rh-ve blood, changing to crossmatched blood as soon as possible.

► Blood even <2d old has no effective platelets. *Red cells:* (packed to make haematocrit ~70%) Use to correct anaemia or blood loss. 1u tHb by 10–15g/L. In anaemia, transfuse until Hb ~80g/L. *Platelets:* (p358) Not usually needed if not bleeding or count is >20 × 10⁹/L. 1u should tplatelet count by >20 × 10⁹/L. Failure to do so suggests refractoriness—discuss with haematologist. If surgery is planned, get advice if <100 × 10⁹/L. *Fresh frozen plasma (FFP):* Use to correct clotting defects: eg DIC (p346); warfarin overdosage where vitamin K would be too slow; liver disease; thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (p308). It is expensive and carries all the risks of blood transfusion. Do not use as a simple volume expander. *Human albumin solution* is produced as 4.5% or 20% protein solution and is for use as protein replacement. 20% albumin can be used temporarily in the hypoproteinaemic patient (eg liver disease; nephrosis) who is fluid overloaded, without giving an excessive salt load. Also used as replacement in abdominal paracentesis (p779). *Others* Cryoprecipitate (a source of fibrinogen); coagulation concentrates (self-injected in haemophilia); immunoglobulin (*anti-D*, *OHCS* p9).

Complications of transfusion⁵⁶ ► Management of acute reactions: see BOX 1.

- *Early (within 24h):* Acute haemolytic reactions (eg ABO or Rh incompatibility); anaphylaxis; bacterial contamination; febrile reactions (eg from HLA antibodies); allergic reactions (itch, urticaria, mild fever); fluid overload; transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI, ie ARDS due to antileucocyte antibodies in donor plasma).
- *Delayed (after 24h):* Infections (eg viruses: hepatitis B/C, HIV; bacteria; protozoa; prions); iron overload (treatment, p336); graft-versus-host disease; post-transfusion purpura—potentially lethal fall in platelet count 5–7d post-transfusion requiring specialist treatment with IV immunoglobulin and platelet transfusions.

Massive blood transfusion This is defined as replacement of an individual's entire blood volume (>10u) within 24h. Complications: platelets↓; Ca²⁺↓; clotting factors↓; K⁺↑; hypothermia.

Transfusing patients with heart failure If Hb ≤50g/L with heart failure, transfusion with packed red cells is vital to restore Hb to a safe level, eg 60–80g/L, but must be done with great care. Give each unit over 4h with *furosemide* (eg 40mg slow IV/PO; don't mix with blood) with alternate units. Check for tJVP and basal lung crackles; consider CVP line. If CCF gets worse, and immediate transfusion is vital, try a 2–3u exchange transfusion, removing blood at same rate as transfused.

Autologous transfusion There is a role for patients having their own blood stored pre-op for later use. *Erythropoietin (EPO, p296)* can increase the yield of autologous blood in normal people. Intraoperative cell salvage with retransfusion is also being used more often, especially in cardiac, vascular and emergency surgery.⁵⁷ Cost-analysis shows that it may be worthwhile on an economic basis alone.⁵⁸

¹ Other methods to avoid mishaps: electronic bar code readers; bedside ABO agglutination test on a card⁵⁹ (used in France; where this is linked with other methods, 99.65% reliability is achieved).⁵⁹

Transfusion reactions

All UK blood products are now leucocyte-depleted (white cells $<5 \times 10^6/L$) so as to reduce the incidence of complications such as alloimmunization to HLA class I antigens and febrile transfusion reactions. Does giving paracetamol and antihistamines before the transfusion prevent more serious reactions? Probably not (although some mild fevers may be prevented).⁶⁰

Acute haemolytic reaction

(eg ABO incompatibility) Agitation, $T^{\circ}\uparrow$ (rapid onset), $\downarrow BP$, flushing, abdominal/chest pain, oozing venepuncture sites, DIC.

STOP transfusion. Check identity and name on unit; tell haematologist; send unit + FBC, U&E, clotting, cultures, & urine (haemoglobinuria) to lab. Keep IV line open with 0.9% saline. Treat DIC (p346).

Anaphylaxis

Bronchospasm, cyanosis, $\downarrow BP$, soft tissue swelling.

STOP the transfusion. Maintain airway and give oxygen. Contact anaesthetist. **▶▶** See p806.

Bacterial contamination

$T^{\circ}\uparrow$ (rapid onset), $\downarrow BP$, and rigors.

STOP the transfusion. Check identity against name on unit; tell haematologist and send unit + FBC, U&E, clotting, cultures & urine to lab. Start broad-spectrum antibiotics.

TRALI (See p342) Dyspnoea, cough; CXR 'white out'

STOP the transfusion. Give 100% O_2 . **▶▶** Treat as ARDS, p178. Donor should be removed from donor panel.

Non-haemolytic febrile transfusion reaction

Shivering and fever usually $\frac{1}{2}$ –1h after starting transfusion.

SLOW or **STOP** the transfusion. Give an antipyretic, eg *paracetamol* 1g. Monitor closely. If recurrent, use WBC filter.

Allergic reactions

Urticaria and itch.

SLOW or **STOP** the transfusion; *chlorphenamine* 10mg slow IV/IM. Monitor closely.

Fluid overload

Dyspnoea, hypoxia, tachycardia, $\uparrow JVP$ and basal crepitations.

SLOW or **STOP** the transfusion. Give oxygen and a diuretic, eg *furosemide* 40mg IV initially. Consider CVP line.

Blood transfusion and Jehovah's Witnesses

These patients are likely to refuse even vital transfusions on religious grounds.¹ These views must be respected, but complex issues arise if the patient is a child, or (perhaps) an adult who lives a sheltered life, who may not be able to give or withhold consent in an informed way—see p554. When in doubt, apply to the Court. Judges tend to take a narrow view on this, acting as if any immediate benefit to life must trump putative benefits in any life hereafter.² How can refusal be informed, it might be argued, if only the physical (and not the metaphysical) consequences of transfusion can be foreseen?

Even if metaphysical considerations are put to one side, it is a question whether giving a transfusion against consent could amount to a degrading act or torture, against which the European Convention on Human Rights gives absolute, inalienable protection. **▶** Some patients may not want to forsake their principles but would not mind too much being told what to do, thereby not being the means of their child's destruction, while being true to their beliefs. It is possible to hold two incompatible beliefs at the same time.¹

1 Accepting transfusion implies self-expulsion from the church, but it is no longer a 'disfellowshipping event' with active expulsion.¹⁴² This tenet is based on (among others) the biblical verse "no soul of you shall eat blood" (Leviticus 17:12).

2 V Wason 1998 Court Order (High Court Family Division) Re L (A Minor), June 1–10.

Main indications

- **Therapeutic:** Venous thromboembolic disease: DVT and PE.
- **Prophylactic:** Prevention of DVT/PE in high-risk patients (p369), eg post-op. Prevention of stroke, eg in chronic AF or prosthetic heart valve.

Heparin 1 Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) Given sc. Molecular weight ~5000 Daltons (Da), eg dalteparin, enoxaparin, tinzaparin. Inactivates factor Xa (but not thrombin). T_{1/2} is 2- to 4-fold longer than standard heparin, and response is more predictable, and so only needs to be given once or twice daily, and no laboratory monitoring is usually required. It has replaced unfractionated heparin (UFH) as the preferred option in the prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism and in acute coronary syndrome. See *BNF* for doses. It accumulates in renal failure: lower doses are used for prophylaxis, or UFH for therapeutic doses.

2 Unfractionated heparin (UFH) IV or sc. ~13,000 Daltons. A glycosaminoglycan, which binds antithrombin (an endogenous inhibitor of coagulation), increasing its ability to inhibit thrombin, factor Xa, and IXa. Rapid onset and has a short T_{1/2}. Monitor and adjust dose with APTT (p340) BOX 3 and below.

SE for both: †Bleeding (eg at operative site, gastrointestinal, intracranial), heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), osteoporosis with long-term use. HIT and osteoporosis are less common with LMWH than UFH. Beware hyperkalaemia.

CI: Bleeding disorders, platelets <60×10⁹/L, previous HIT, peptic ulcer, cerebral haemorrhage, severe hypertension, neurosurgery.

Warfarin is used orally once daily as long-term anticoagulation. The therapeutic range is narrow, varying with the condition being treated (BOX 1 & BOX 2)—and is measured as a ratio compared with the standard INR. Warfarin inhibits the reductase enzyme responsible for regenerating the active form of vitamin K, producing a state analogous to vit K deficiency. **CI:** Peptic ulcer, bleeding disorders, severe hypertension, pregnancy (teratogenic, see *OHCS* p640). Use with caution in the elderly and those with past GI bleeds. In the UK, warfarin tablets are 0.5mg (white), 1mg (brown), 3mg (blue), or 5mg (pink). ▶Interactions: p768.

Others Fondaparinux is a pentasaccharide Xa inhibitor and may be used in place of LMWH for prophylaxis in certain situations. Factor Xa inhibitors (rivaroxaban and apixaban) and direct thrombin inhibitors (dabigatran, p125) are new oral anticoagulants that do not need monitoring—but they have not yet displaced warfarin.⁶³

Beginning therapeutic anticoagulation (follow local guidelines, and see *BNF*).

For treatment of venous thromboembolism, LMWH or UFH are used initially, and warfarin is given in combination usually from day 1. Heparin should be continued until INR has reached target therapeutic range (see BOX) and until day 5, as warfarin has an initial prothrombotic effect.

- **LMWH** Dose according to weight (see *BNF*).

UFH IV infusion: Give heparin 5000iu IV bolus over 30min (10,000iu in severe PE).

- Prepare syringe pump: with 0.9% saline.
- Infuse heparin at a rate of 18 units/kg/h. Check APTT at 6h, aim for APTT ratio 1.5-2.5 (see BOX). Measure APTT daily or 10h after dose change.

Warfarin is given daily; start with 10mg stat at 18.00. Do INR 16h later.

- If INR <1.8 (as is likely) the 2nd dose of warfarin is 5 or 10mg at 18.00 (24h after first dose). Give the lower dose if >60yrs, liver disease, or cardiac failure. But if INR >1.8 (warfarin sensitivity; rare) give just 0.5mg.
- Do INR daily for 5d and adjust dose (see BOX 2—use 5mg, not 10mg dose 3 if over 60, or liver disease, or cardiac failure).
- Stop heparin after 5d and when INR >2 for 2d. Tell lab when stopped.
- Measure INR on alternate days until stable, then weekly or less often.

Antidotes If UFH overdose: stop infusion. If there is bleeding, protamine sulfate counteracts UFH: discuss with a haematologist. Warfarin: see BOX 2.



Warfarin guidelines and target levels for INR¹

- Pulmonary embolism and DVT. Aim for INR of 2-3; 3.5 if recurrent.
- Atrial fibrillation²: for stroke prevention (p124). Target INR 2-3. An alternative is aspirin (but less effective), if the risk of bleeding with warfarin is high (eg falls with risk of intracranial bleed, or difficulty with monitoring).
- Prosthetic metallic heart valves: for stroke prevention. Target INR 3-4.

Duration of anticoagulation in DVT/PE

- If the cause will go away (eg post-op immobility):
At least 6 weeks for below knee DVT.
At least 3 months for above knee DVT or PE.
- At least 6 months if no cause found.
- Indefinitely for identified, enduring causes, eg thrombophilia (p368).

Warfarin dosage and what to do when the INR is much too high

Below is a rough guide to warfarin dosing for target INR of 2-3; see text opposite.

INR	<2	2	2.5	2.9	3.3	3.6	4.1
3 rd dose	10mg	5mg	4mg	3mg	2mg	0.5mg	0mg
Maintenance	≥6mg	5.5mg	4.5mg	4mg	3.5mg	3mg	*

*Miss a dose; give 1-2mg the next day; if INR >4.5, miss 2 doses.

When the INR is much too high:

(see also BNF)

INR 4.5-6	Reduce warfarin dose or omit. Restart when INR <5.
6-8	Stop warfarin. Restart when INR <5.
>8, no or minor bleed, or epistaxis	If no bleeding: stop warfarin. 0.5-2.5mg vitamin K (oral) if risk factors for bleeding. Check INR daily.
Any major bleed (including intracranial haemorrhage)	Stop warfarin. Give prothrombin complex concentrate 50units/kg; discuss with haematologist. If unavailable, give FFP (15mL/kg≈1L for a 70kg man). Also give 5-10mg vitamin K IV slowly.

Vitamin K may take some hours to work and can cause prolonged resistance when restarting warfarin, so avoid if possible when long-term anticoagulation is needed. Prothrombin complex concentrate contains a concentrate of factor IX, and provides a more complete and rapid reversal of warfarin than FFP.

IV heparin dosing

APTT ratio	>5	4-5	3-4	2.5-3	1.5-2.5	1.2-1.4	<1.2
Change rate (iu/h) by	-500*	-300	-100	-50	0	+200	+400

*Stop for 1 hour then recheck APTT. Reduce dose by 500iu/h and restart if <5.

1 Brit. Committee for Standards in Haematology. Guidelines on Oral Anticoagulation (Warfarin): 3e 2005.
2 For QALY-based decision analysis on who needs warfarin in AF, see R Thomson *Lancet* 355 956.

Leukaemia divides into 4 main types depending on the cell line involved:

	Lymphoid	Myeloid
Acute	Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL)	Acute myeloid leukaemia (AML)
Chronic	Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL)	Chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML)

These patients (esp. AML) fall ill suddenly and deteriorate fast, eg with: ►►Infection ►►Bleeding (R; platelets \pm FFP) and ►►Hyperviscosity (p366). Take nonspecific confusion/drowsiness or just "I feel a bit ill today" *seriously* (may be dead tomorrow): do blood cultures, glucose U&E, LFT, Ca^{2+} and clotting. Consider CNS bleeding—CT/MRI if in doubt. With any new patient, find out the agreed aim of treatment: cure; prolonging disease-free survival; or palliation with minimal toxicity? Direct your efforts accordingly; get help if lack of clarity here.

Neutropenic regimen (for when neutrophil count $\leq 0.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$). ►Close liaison with a microbiologist and haematologist is vital. Abide by infection control procedures! Use a *risk-assessment tool* (eg MASCC, see BOX).⁶⁴

- Full barrier nursing if possible. Hand-washing is vital. Use a side room.
- Avoid IM injections (danger of an infected haematoma).
- Look for infection (mouth, axilla, perineum, IVI site). Take swabs.
- Check: FBC, platelets, INR, U&E, LFT, LDH, CRP. Take cultures (blood $\times 3$ —peripherally \pm Hickman line; urine, sputum, stool if diarrhoea); CXR if clinically indicated.
- Wash perineum after defecation. Swab moist skin with chlorhexidine. Avoid unnecessary rectal examinations. Oral hygiene (eg hydrogen peroxide mouth washes/2h) and *Candida* prophylaxis are important (p238).
- TPR (vital signs) 4-hrly. High-calorie diet; avoid foods with high risk of microbial contamination. Vases containing cut flowers pose a *Pseudomonas* risk.

Use of antibiotics in neutropenia ►Treat any known infection promptly.

- If $\text{T}^\circ > 38^\circ\text{C}$ or $\text{T}^\circ > 37.5^\circ\text{C}$ on 2 occasions, $> 1\text{h}$ apart, or the patient is toxic, assume septicaemia and start blind combination therapy—eg piperacillin-tazobactam—p378 (+vancomycin, p381, if Gram+ve organisms suspected or isolated, eg Hickman line sepsis). Check local preferences. Continue until afebrile for 72h or 5d course, and until neutrophils $> 0.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$. If fever persists despite antibiotics, think of CMV, fungi (eg *Candida*; *Aspergillus*, p440) and central line infection.
- Consider treatment for *Pneumocystis* (p411, eg co-trimoxazole, ie trimethoprim 20mg/kg + sulfamethoxazole 100mg/kg/day PO/IV in 2 daily doses). Remember TB.

Other dangers • **Tumour lysis syndrome:** Caused by a massive destruction of cells leading to K^+ ↑, urate↑ and renal injury. **Risk**↑ if: LDH↑, creatinine↑, urate↑, wcc $> 25 \times 10^9/\text{L}$.⁶⁵ **Prevention:** high fluid intake + allopurinol pre-cytotoxics. For those at high risk of cell lysis, recombinant uricase (rasburicase) may be given. Seek advice.

- **Hyperviscosity:** (p366). If wcc is $> 100 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ WBC thrombi may form in brain, lung, and heart (leukostasis). Avoid transfusing before lowering wcc, eg with hydroxycarbamide or leukopheresis, as viscosity rises (risk of leukostasis ↑).
- **DIC:** Widespread activation of coagulation, from release of procoagulants into the circulation with consumption of clotting factors and platelets, with risk of bleeding. Fibrin strands fill small vessels, haemolysing passing RBCs, and fibrinolysis is also activated. **Causes:** Malignancy, sepsis, trauma, obstetric events: OHCS p88. **Signs:** (fig 1) Bruising, bleeding anywhere (eg venepuncture sites), renal failure. **Tests:** Platelets↓; PT↑; APTT↑; fibrinogen↓ (correlates with severity); fibrin degradation products (D-dimers) ↑↑. Film: broken RBCs (schistocytes). **Rx:** Treat the cause. Replace platelets if $< 50 \times 10^9/\text{L}$, cryoprecipitate to replace fibrinogen, FFP to replace coagulation factors. Heparin is controversial. Activated protein C reduces mortality in DIC with severe sepsis or multi-organ failure.⁶⁶ The use of all-transretinoic acid (ATRA) has significantly reduced the risk of DIC in acute promyelocytic leukaemia (the commonest leukaemia associated with DIC).
- **Preventing sepsis:** Fluoroquinolone (eg ciprofloxacin) before neutropenia gets serious; granulocyte colony stimulators¹ are of limited use (NICE says often not cost effective).⁶⁷ Herpes, pneumocystis and CMV (valganciclovir) prophylaxis have a role.⁶⁸

1 Neutrophil production: genetically engineered recombinant human granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF)—glycosylated lenograstim and non-glycosylated filgrastim. Follow guidelines/expert advice.

MASCC score(Multinational Association
for Supportive Care in Cancer)

If the total score is ≥ 21 , risk of septic complications is low (home-care is ?OK):

- Solid tumour or lymphoma with no previous fungal infection 4
- Outpatient status at onset of fever (not needing admission) 3
- Age <60 yrs 2
- Burden of illness: Mild (or no) symptoms 5
- Moderate symptoms 3
- Severe symptoms 0
- No hypotension (systolic BP >90 mmHg) 5
- No COPD 4
- No dehydration 3

Although recommended by NICE, scores can never be validated for 2 reasons:

1 You can never be **sure** a vital variable has not been left out of the score (why is CRP ignored, when its failure to fall after starting antibiotics is known to predict treatment failure?).⁶⁹

2 There are many ways to reach a score of 10 (say), some with severe symptoms, some with none, for example—they won't all have the same prognosis (the non-parametric paradox, p10, ie the score produces only numerals, not true numbers, and these numerals cannot be added, multiplied, divided, or even ranked).



Fig 1. The appearance of disseminated intra-vascular coagulation (DIC) on the sole.

Courtesy of the Crookston collection.

This is a malignancy of lymphoid cells, affecting B or T lymphocyte cell lines, arresting maturation and promoting uncontrolled proliferation of immature blast cells, with marrow failure and tissue infiltration. It is thought to develop from a combination of genetic susceptibility (eg with translocations, and gains and losses of whole chromosomes¹) + an environmental trigger. Ionizing radiation, eg x-rays, during pregnancy, and Down's syndrome are important associations.⁷⁰ It is the commonest cancer of childhood, and is rare in adults. CNS involvement is common.

Classification is based on 3 systems:

- 1 Morphological** The FAB system (French, American, British) divides ALL into 3 types (L1, L2, L3) by microscopic appearance. Provides limited information (figs 1-4).
- 2 Immunological** Surface markers are used to classify ALL into:
 - Precursor B-cell ALL • T-cell ALL • B-cell ALL.
- 3 Cytogenetic** Chromosomal analysis. Abnormalities are detected in up to 85%, which are often translocations. Useful for predicting prognosis, eg poor with Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome (below), and for detecting disease recurrence.

Signs and symptoms (fig 5) are due to:

- Marrow failure: Anaemia (↓Hb), infection (↑WCC), and bleeding (↓platelets).
- Infiltration: Hepato- and splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy—superficial or mediastinal, orchidomegaly, CNS involvement—eg cranial nerve palsies, meningism.

Common infections: Especially chest, mouth, perianal and skin. Bacterial septicaemia, zoster, CMV, measles, candidiasis, *Pneumocystis pneumonia* (p410).

Tests • Characteristic blast cells on blood film and bone marrow. WCC usually high.

- CXR and CT scan to look for mediastinal and abdominal lymphadenopathy.
- Lumbar puncture should be performed to look for CNS involvement.

Treatment 🧠 Educate and motivate: without this, many may shy away from the responsibilities of self-care, to their detriment.⁷¹ Interactive video games help.⁷²

- **Support:** Blood/platelet transfusion, IV fluids, allopurinol (prevents tumour lysis syndrome). Insert a subcutaneous port system/Hickman line for IV access.⁷³

- **Infections:** These are dangerous, due to neutropenia caused by the disease and treatment. Immediate IV antibiotics for infection. Start the neutropenic regimen (p346): prophylactic antivirals, antifungals and antibiotics, eg co-trimoxazole to prevent *Pneumocystis pneumonia* (p346), but beware: can worsen neutropenia.

- **Chemotherapy:** Patients are entered into national trials. A typical programme is:
Remission induction: eg vincristine, prednisolone, L-asparaginase + daunorubicin.
Consolidation: High-medium-dose therapy in 'blocks' over several weeks.

CNS prophylaxis: Intrathecal (or high-dose IV) methotrexate ± CNS irradiation.

Maintenance: Prolonged chemotherapy, eg mercaptopurine (daily), methotrexate (weekly), and vincristine + prednisolone (monthly) for 2yrs. Relapse is common in blood, CNS, or testis (examine these sites at follow-up). More details: *OHCS* p194.

- **Matched related allogeneic marrow transplantations** once in 1st remission is the best option in standard-risk younger adults (?too many SE if older).^{74, 75}

Haematological remission means no evidence of leukaemia in the blood, a normal or recovering blood count, and <5% blasts in a normal regenerating marrow.

Prognosis Cure rates for children are 70-90%; for adults only 40% (higher when imatinib/rituximab, p353, are used). Poor prognosis if: adult, male, Philadelphia chromosome (p352): BCR-ABL gene fusion due to translocation of chromosomes 9 and 22, presentation with CNS signs, Hb↓⁷⁶ or WCC >100×10⁹/L or B-cell ALL. PCR is used to detect minimal residual disease, undetectable by standard means. Prognosis is poor if seen in high amounts at presentation or during remission. Prognosis in relapsed Ph-negative ALL is poor (improvable by marrow transplant).⁷⁷

Personalized treatment ▶ **One size does not fit all!**⁷⁸ Aim to tailor therapy to the exact gene defect, and according to individual metabolism. Monoclonal antibodies, gene-targeted retinoids, cytokines, vaccines, and T-cell infusions are relevant here.⁷⁹ Biomarkers, eg thiopurine methyltransferase, can predict toxicity from thiopurines.

1 Eg t(12;21) ETV6-RUNX1, t(1;19) TCF3-PBX1, t(9;22) BCR-ABL1—and rearrangement of MLL.

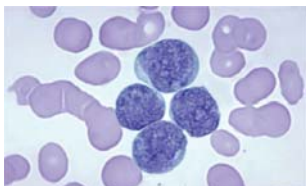


Fig 1. Blood film in ALL, L1 subtype. Small blasts with scanty cytoplasm.

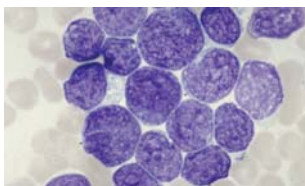


Fig 2. Bone marrow in ALL, L1 subtype.

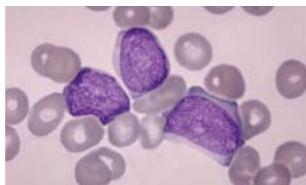


Fig 3. Blood film in ALL, L2 subtype. Larger blast cells with greater morphological variation and more abundant cytoplasm.

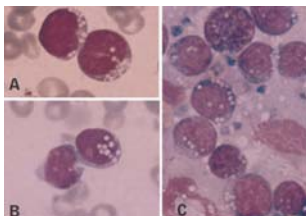


Fig 4. ALL L3. Blasts with vacuolated basophilic cytoplasm. A and B: blood films. C: lymph node.

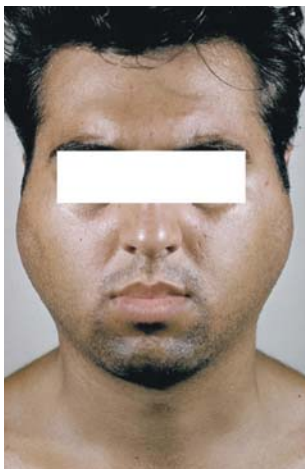


Fig 5. Bilateral parotid infiltration in ALL. (Enlarged salivary glands are also seen in mumps, HIV, bulimia, myxoedema, etc., p596.)

Figs 1, 2, 3, and 5 courtesy of Prof. Christine Lawrence; fig 4 courtesy of Prof. Tangün & Dr Köroğlu.



This neoplastic proliferation of blast cells is derived from marrow myeloid elements. It progresses rapidly (death in ~2 months if untreated; ~20% 3yr survival after R_1).

Incidence The commonest acute leukaemia of adults (1/10,000/yr; increases with age). AML can be a long-term complication of chemotherapy, eg for lymphoma. Also associated with myelodysplastic states (Box), radiation, and syndromes, eg Down's.

Morphological classification There is much heterogeneity.¹ Now based on WHO histological classification, which is complex and requires specialist interpretation. It recognizes the important prognostic information from cytogenetics and molecular genetics.¹ 5 types:

- 1 AML with recurrent genetic abnormalities.
- 2 AML multilineage dysplasia (eg 2° to pre-existing myelodysplastic syndrome).
- 3 AML, therapy related.
- 4 AML, other.
- 5 Acute leukaemias of ambiguous lineage (both myeloid and lymphoid phenotype).

Symptoms • **Marrow failure:** Symptoms of anaemia, infection or bleeding. DIC occurs in acute promyelocytic leukaemia, a subtype of AML, where there is release of thromboplastin. Use of all-transretinoic acid with chemotherapy ↑risk of DIC (p346). • **Infiltration:** Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly, gum hypertrophy (fig 3), skin involvement. CNS involvement at presentation is rare in AML.

Diagnosis wcc is often ↑, but can be normal or even low. Blast cells may be few in the peripheral blood, so diagnosis depends on bone marrow biopsy. Differentiation from ALL may be by microscopy (figs 1, 2, 4; Auer rods are diagnostic of AML), but is now based on immunophenotyping and molecular methods. Cytogenetic analysis (eg type of mutation) affects treatment recommendations, and guides prognosis.¹

Complications • Infection is the major problem, related to both the disease and during treatment. Be alert to septicaemia (p346). Infections may be bacterial, fungal or viral, and prophylaxis is given for each during therapy. **Pitfalls:** AML itself causes fever, common organisms present oddly, few antibodies are made, rare organisms—particularly fungi (esp. *Candida* or *Aspergillus*). • Chemotherapy causes ↑plasma urate levels (from tumour lysis)—so give allopurinol with chemotherapy, and keep well hydrated with IV fluids. • Leukostasis (p346) may occur if wcc↑↑.

Treatment • **Supportive care** As for ALL. Walking exercises can relieve fatigue.⁸⁰

• **Chemotherapy** is very intensive, resulting in long periods of marrow suppression with neutropenia + platelets↓. The main drugs used include **daunorubicin** and **cytarabine**, with ~5 cycles given in 1-week blocks to get a remission (RAS mutations occur in ~20% of patients with AML and enhance sensitivity to cytarabine).⁸¹

• **Bone marrow transplant (BMT)** Pluripotent haematopoietic stem cells are collected from the marrow. **Allogeneic** transplants from HLA-matched siblings or matched unrelated donors (held on international databases) are indicated during 1st remission in disease with poor prognosis. The idea is to destroy leukaemic cells and the immune system by cyclophosphamide + total body irradiation, and then repopulate the marrow by transplantation from a matched donor infused IV. BMT allows the most intensive chemotherapy regimens because marrow suppression is not an issue. Ciclosporin ± methotrexate are used to reduce the effect of the new marrow attacking the patient's body (graft vs host disease).

Complications: Graft vs host disease (may help explain the curative effect of BMT); opportunistic infections; relapse of leukaemia; infertility.

Prognosis: Lower relapse rates ~60% long-term survivors, but significant mortality of ~10%. Autologous BMT where stem cells are taken from the patient themselves, is used in intermediate prognosis disease, although some studies suggest better survival rates with intensive chemotherapy regimens.

Autologous mobilized peripheral blood stem cell transplantation may offer faster haemopoietic recovery and less morbidity.⁸²

• Supportive care, or lower-dose chemotherapy for disease control, may be more appropriate in elderly patients, where intensive therapies have poorer outcomes.

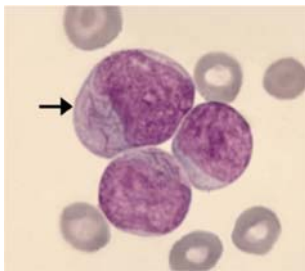


Fig 1. Auer rods (crystals of coalesced granules) found in AML myeloblast cells.

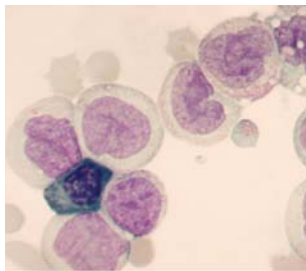


Fig 2. AML with monoblasts and myeloblasts on the peripheral blood film.



Fig 3. Gum hypertrophy in AML.

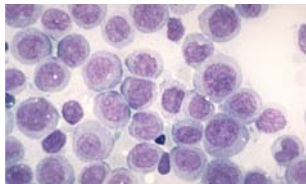


Fig 4. Marrow in AML: multiple monoblasts.

Images on this page are courtesy of Professor Christine Lawrence.

Myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS, myelodysplasia)

These are a heterogeneous group of disorders that manifest as marrow failure with risk of life-threatening infection and bleeding. Most are primary disorders, but they may also develop secondary to chemotherapy or radiotherapy. 30% transform to acute leukaemia. **Tests:** Pancytopenia (p358), with ↓reticulocyte count. Marrow cellularity is usually increased due to ineffective haematopoiesis. Ring sideroblasts may also be seen in the marrow (**fig 5**, p321). There are different subtypes, grouped according to WHO classification.

Treatment:

- Multiple transfusions of red cells or platelets as needed.
- Erythropoietin ± human granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) may lower transfusion requirement.
- Immunosuppressives are also used, eg ciclosporin or antithymocyte globulins.
- Curative allogeneic stem cell transplantation is one option—often inappropriate owing to age-related comorbidities—most are >70yrs old.
- Thalidomide analogues such as lenalidomide have a role, eg in low-risk MDS with 5q deletions. Hypomethylating agents (eg azacytidine and decitabine) have a role in symptomatic MDS (these target epigenetic changes in MDS).

Prognosis: Median survival: from 6 months to 6 years according to disease type.

1 4 types of heterogeneity: morphology, immunophenotype, cytogenetics, and molecular abnormality. Genome-wide technologies enable an ever more detailed molecular analysis of AML and this feeds into risk stratification of AML. Epigenetic and other profiling reveals more and more biomarkers, eg mutations in the genes encoding DNA (cytosine-5)-methyltransferase 3α (DNMT3A).⁸³

CML is characterized by an uncontrolled clonal proliferation of myeloid cells (fig 1). It accounts for 15% of leukaemias. It is a myeloproliferative disorder (p360) having features in common with these diseases, eg splenomegaly. It occurs most often between 40–60yrs, with a slight male predominance, and is rare in childhood.

Philadelphia chromosome (Ph) Present in >80% of those with CML. It is a hybrid chromosome comprising reciprocal translocation between the long arm of chromosome 9 and the long arm of chromosome 22—t(9;22)—forming a fusion gene BCR/ABL on chromosome 22, which has tyrosine kinase activity. Those without Ph have a worse prognosis. Some patients have a masked translocation—cytogenetics do not show the Ph, but the rearrangement is detectable by molecular techniques.

Symptoms Mostly chronic and insidious: weight↓, tiredness, fever, sweats. There may be features of gout (due to purine breakdown), bleeding (platelet dysfunction), and abdominal discomfort (splenic enlargement). ~30% are detected by chance.

Signs Splenomegaly (>75%)—often massive. Hepatomegaly, anaemia, bruising (fig 2).

Tests WBC↑↑ (often >100×10⁹/L) with whole spectrum of myeloid cells, ie ↑neutrophils, myelocytes, basophils, eosinophils. Hb↓ or normal, platelets variable. Urate↑, B₁₂↑. Neutrophil alk phos score↓ (seldom performed now). Bone marrow is hypercellular. Ph found on cytogenetic analysis of blood or bone marrow.

Natural history Variable, median survival 5–6yrs. There are 3 phases: *chronic*, lasting months or years of few, if any, symptoms → *accelerated phase*, with increasing symptoms, spleen size, and difficulty in controlling counts → *blast transformation*, with features of acute leukaemia ± death. **Treatment** See BOX.

Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL)

Accumulation of mature B cells that have escaped programmed cell death and undergone cell-cycle arrest in the G0/G1 phase is the hallmark of CLL. It is the commonest leukaemia (>25%; incidence: ~4/100,000/yr). ♂:♀≈2:1. Mutations, trisomies and deletions (eg del17p13) influence risk; pneumonia may be a triggering event.⁸⁴

Rai stage:	0 Lymphocytosis alone	Median survival >13yrs
I	Lymphocytosis + lymphadenopathy	8yrs
II	Lymphocytosis + spleno- or hepatomegaly	5yrs
III	Lymphocytosis + anaemia (Hb <110g/L)	2yrs
IV	Lymphocytosis + platelets <100 × 10 ⁹ /L	1yr

Symptoms Often none, presenting as a surprise finding on a routine FBC (eg done pre-op). May be anaemic or infection-prone. If severe: weight↓, sweats, anorexia.

Signs Enlarged, rubbery, non-tender nodes (fig 3). Splenomegaly, hepatomegaly.

Tests ↑Lymphocytes—may be marked (fig 4). Later: autoimmune haemolysis (p332), marrow infiltration: ↓Hb, ↓neutrophils, ↓platelets.

Complications 1 Autoimmune haemolysis. 2 Infection due to hypogammaglobulinaemia (≠IgG), bacterial, viral especially herpes zoster. 3 Marrow failure.

Natural history Some remain in *status quo* for years, or even regress. Usually nodes slowly enlarge (± lymphatic obstruction). Death is often due to infection (commonly pneumococcus, haemophilus, meningococcus, *Candida* or aspergillo-sis), or transformation to aggressive lymphoma (Richter's syndrome).

Treatment Consider drugs if: •Symptomatic •Immunoglobulin genes (IgVH) are unmutated •17p deletions (consider intensive Rx). *Fludarabine* + *cyclophosphamide* + *rituximab* if 1st line⁸⁵ (there is synergism)⁸⁵ *Bendamustine*, *alemtuzumab*, and *ofatumumab* may have a role (the latter is "not cost effective").^{87,88} NICE

Steroids help autoimmune haemolysis. *Radiotherapy* helps treat lymphadenopathy and splenomegaly. **Supportive care:** Transfusions, IV human immunoglobulin if recurrent infection. **Relapsed disease:** One option is rituximab + dexamethasone (R-DEX). R-DEX can also be used to debulk before a **stem-cell transplant**.⁸⁹

Prognosis ⅓ never progress, ⅓ progress slowly, and ⅓ progress actively. CD23 and β2 microglobulin correlate with bulk of disease and rates of progression.

Treating CML

CML is the first example of a cancer where knowledge of the genotype has led to a rationally designed drug—*imatinib* (Glivec®), a specific BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase inhibitor, which has transformed therapy over the last 10yrs.⁹⁰

More potent 2nd-generation BCR-ABL inhibitors: *dasatinib*, *nilotinib*, *bosutinib* and *ponatinib*. Dasatinib and nilotinib allow more patients to achieve deeper, more rapid responses associated with improved outcomes⁹¹ (NICE says that dasatinib is often not cost-effective).⁹² Imatinib SE: usually mild: nausea, cramps, oedema, rash, headache, arthralgia. May cause myelosuppression. Dasatinib has been used in imatinib-resistant blast crises. *Hydroxycarbamide* is also used.

Those with lymphoblastic transformation may benefit from treatment as for ALL. Treatment of myeloblastic transformation with chemotherapy rarely achieves lasting remission, and allogeneic transplantation offers the best hope.

Stem cell transplantation Allogeneic transplantation from an HLA-matched sibling or unrelated donor offers the only cure, but carries significant morbidity and mortality. Guidelines suggest that this approach should be used 1st line only in young patients where mortality rates are lower. Other patients should be offered imatinib. Patients are then reviewed annually to decide whether to continue imatinib, or to offer combination therapy or stem cell transplantation.

The role of autologous transplantation, if any, in CML remains to be defined.

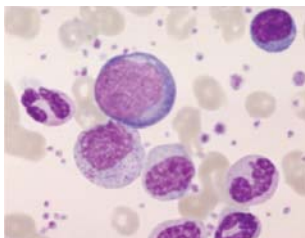


Fig 1. CML: numerous granulocytic cells at different stages of differentiation.



Fig 2. Hepatosplenomegaly in CML.



Fig 3. Bilateral cervical lymphadenopathy in CLL.



Fig 4. CLL: many lymphocytes and a 'smear' cell: a fragile cell damaged in preparation.

Figs 2 and 4 courtesy of Professor Christine Lawrence.

Lymphomas are disorders caused by malignant proliferations of lymphocytes. These accumulate in the lymph nodes causing lymphadenopathy, but may also be found in peripheral blood or infiltrate organs. Lymphomas are histologically divided into Hodgkin's and non-Hodgkin's types. In Hodgkin's lymphoma, characteristic cells with mirror-image nuclei are found, called Reed-Sternberg cells (figs 1, 2, 3).

Incidence 2 peaks of incidence: young adults¹ and elderly. ♂:♀ ≈ 2:1. Risk† if: an affected sibling; EBV (p401); SLE; post-transplantation; westernization;⁹³ obese.⁹⁴

Symptoms Often presents with enlarged, painless, non-tender, 'rubbery' superficial lymph nodes, typically cervical (60–70%), also axillary or inguinal nodes (fig 4). Node size may increase and decrease spontaneously, and nodes can become matted. 25% have constitutional upset, eg fever, weight loss, night sweats, pruritus, and lethargy. There may be alcohol-induced lymph node pain. Mediastinal lymph node involvement can cause features due to mass effect, eg bronchial or SVC obstruction (p526), or direct extension, eg causing pleural effusions. *Pel-Ebstein fever* implies a cyclical fever with long periods (15–28 days) of normal or low temperature: it is, at best, rare.²

Signs Lymph node enlargement. Also, cachexia, anaemia, spleno- or hepatomegaly.

Tests *Tissue diagnosis:* Lymph node excision biopsy if possible. Image-guided needle biopsy, laparotomy or mediastinoscopy may be needed to obtain a sample.

Bloods FBC, film, ESR, LFT, LDH, urate, Ca²⁺. ↑ESR or ↓Hb indicate a worse prognosis. LDH is raised as it is released during cell turnover. PET (p753) also has an uncertain role.⁹⁵

Staging (Ann Arbor system) Influences treatment and prognosis. Done by CXR, CT/PET of thorax, abdo, pelvis ± marrow biopsy if B symptoms, or stage III–IV disease.

I Confined to single lymph node region.

II Involvement of two or more nodal areas on the same side of the diaphragm.

III Involvement of nodes on both sides of the diaphragm.

IV Spread beyond the lymph nodes, eg liver or bone marrow.

Each stage is either 'A'—no systemic symptoms other than pruritus; or 'B'—presence of B symptoms: weight loss >10% in last 6 months, unexplained fever >38°C, or night sweats (needing change of clothes). 'B' indicates worse disease. Localized extra-nodal extension does not advance the stage, but is indicated by subscripted 'E', eg I-A_E.

Chemoradiotherapy Radiotherapy² ± short courses of chemotherapy for stages I–A and II–A (eg with ≤3 areas involved). Longer courses of chemotherapy for II–A with >3 areas involved through to IV–B. '**ABVD**': Adriamycin, Bleomycin, Vinblastine, Dacarbazine (+ radiotherapy in younger patients) cures ~80% of patients.⁹⁶ More intensive regimens are used if poor prognosis or advanced disease.³ In relapsed disease, high-dose chemotherapy with peripheral stem-cell transplants may be used, involving autologous (or occasionally allogeneic) transplantation of peripheral blood progenitor cells to restore marrow function after therapy.⁹⁷

Complications of treatment: See p528–9: Radiotherapy may ↑ risk of second malignancies—solid tumours (especially lung and breast, also melanoma, sarcoma, stomach and thyroid cancers), ischaemic heart disease, hypothyroidism and lung fibrosis due to the radiation field. Chemotherapy SE include myelosuppression, nausea, alopecia, infection. AML (p350), non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and infertility may be due to both chemo- and radiotherapy—see p531.

5-year survival Depends on stage and grade: >95% in I–A lymphocyte-predominant disease; <40% with IV–B lymphocyte-depleted.

Emergency presentations Infection; SVC obstruction—JVpt, sensation of fullness in the head, dyspnoea, blackouts, facial oedema (seek expert help; see p526).

¹ HL is the leading cause of malignancy if aged 15–24yrs (+ gonadal germ-cell tumours² and melanoma).⁹⁸

² Pel-Ebstein fever is dismissed by Richard Asher (*Talking Sense*) as existing only thanks to its exotic name (the 1885 patients of Dr P Pel had no histology, and fevers in Hodgkin's are usually non-specific). Another unfair reason for consigning it to myth is that the paper proving its relation to cyclical changes in node size doesn't come up in literature searches as Wilhelm Ebstein was spelled Epstein throughout.⁹⁹

³ Eg BEACOPP (bleomycin/etoposide/doxorubicin/cyclophosphamide/vincristine/procarbazine/prednisone). In IIB, III, or IV, BEACOPP gives better initial control, but 7yr event free survival is similar: 78% vs 71%.¹⁰⁰ Radiotherapy can be guided by PET: extended field is no better (and has more SE) than involved field.¹⁰¹

Classification (in order of incidence)**Prognosis***Classical Hodgkin's lymphoma*

Nodular sclerosing

Good

Mixed cellularity*

Good

Lymphocyte rich

Good

Lymphocyte depleted*

Poor

NB: nodular lymphocyte predominant Hodgkin's is recognized as a separate entity, behaving as an indolent B-cell lymphoma.

*Higher incidence and worse prognosis if HIV +ve.

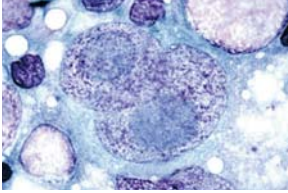


Fig 1. A Reed-Sternberg cell with 2 nuclei, characteristic of Hodgkin's lymphoma.

Courtesy of Professor Christine Lawrence.

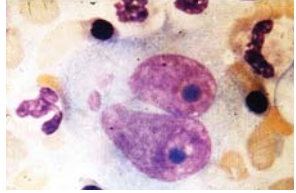


Fig 2. Another Reed-Sternberg cell.

Courtesy of the Crookston collection.

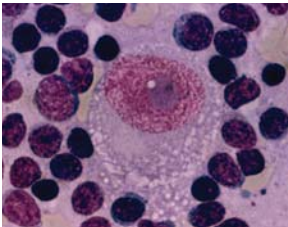


Fig 3. Mononuclear Reed-Sternberg cell in a lymph node.



Fig 4. Cervical lymphadenopathy in Hodgkin's disease.

©Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.

Quality of life, lymphoma, and the role of expressive writing

Being treated for Hodgkin's disease is arduous. Our job is often to give encouragement—the more this is personalized for our individual patient the better.

One method is to encourage our patients to write about their experiences. In one study this gave clear-cut benefits in lymphoma patients. Participants report positive responses to writing, and post-writing half said that writing changed their thoughts about their illness in a positive way (this increased on subsequent follow-up). Textual analysis identifies themes related to experiences of positive change, transformation, and self-affirmation through reflection.^{102,103} These techniques are akin to those used in post-traumatic stress—and remind us that some of our treatments are as destabilizing to our patients as any shipwreck, rape, or earthquake. See <http://mylymphomastory.com> for how to avoid self-pity despite the odds. "I can whine, I can complain, I can moan, and b*tch, about all of the above, but I won't.... The true feat isn't escaping death, rather, learning how to live."

Sometimes narrating lymphoma experiences reveals bitterness, loss of control, and a feeling that life has been rendered void.¹⁰⁴ Here our role is to receive these negatives and to try to keep the channels of communication open, as dialogue is the only validated means of filling these voids. The need to enhance support networks and bolster social ties may trump all our pharmacological imperatives.¹⁰⁵

This includes all lymphomas without Reed-Sternberg cells (p354)—a diverse group. Most are derived from B-cell lines; diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) is commonest.¹⁰⁶ Not all centre on nodes (extranodal tissues generating lymphoma include mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue, eg gastric MALT, below). Incidence has doubled since 1970 (to 1:10,000). **Causes:** Immunodeficiency—drugs; HIV (usually high-grade lymphoma from EBV transformed cells, p401); HTLV-1, p376; *H. pylori*; toxins; congenital.

The patient • Nodal disease (75% at presentation): superficial lymphadenopathy.

• Extranodal disease (25%)—**Skin:** T-cell lymphomas: Sézary syndrome (p598 & fig 1).

Oropharynx: Waldeyer's ring lymphoma causes sore throat/obstructed breathing.

Gut: 1 **Gastric MALT** is caused by *H. pylori*, and may regress with its eradication (p401). Symptoms: like gastric Ca, with systemic features (fever, sweats). MALT usually involves the antrum, is multifocal, and metastasizes late.

2 Non-MALT gastric lymphomas (60%) are usually diffuse large-cell B lymphomas—high-grade and not responding well to *H. pylori* eradication.

3 **Small-bowel lymphomas** are IPSID (immunoproliferative small intestine disease), MALT or enteropathy/coeliac-associated intra-epithelial T-cell lymphoma—presents with diarrhoea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and weight↓. Poor prognosis.

Other possible sites: Bone, CNS, and lung.

• Systemic symptoms—fever, night sweats, weight loss (less common than in Hodgkin's lymphoma, and indicates disseminated disease).

• Pancytopenia from marrow involvement—anaemia, infection, bleeding (↓platelets).

Tests **Blood:** FBC, U&E, LFT. **LDH**≈worse prognosis, reflecting ↑cell turnover. **Marrow and node biopsy** for classification (a complex, changing quagmire, based on the WHO system of high- or low-grade). **Staging** Ann Arbor system (p354)—CT/MRI of chest, abdomen, pelvis. Send **cytology** of any effusion; LP for CSF cytology if CNS signs.

Diagnosis/management is multidisciplinary, synthesizing details from clinical evaluation, histology, immunology, molecular genetics, and imaging. **Generally:**

• Low-grade lymphomas are indolent, often incurable and widely disseminated. Include: follicular lymphoma, marginal zone lymphoma/MALT, lymphocytic lymphoma (closely related to CLL and treated similarly), lymphoplasmacytoid lymphoma (produces IgM = Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia, p364). See fig 2.

• High-grade lymphomas are more aggressive, **but often curable**. There is often rapidly enlarging lymphadenopathy with systemic symptoms. Include: Burkitt's lymphoma (childhood disease with characteristic jaw lymphadenopathy; figs 3 & 4), lymphoblastic lymphomas (like ALL), diffuse large B-cell lymphoma.

Treatment Depends on disease subtype. **Low grade:** If symptomless, none may be needed. Radiotherapy may be curative in localized disease. **Chlorambucil** is used in diffuse disease. Remission may be maintained by using **α-interferon** or **rituximab** (see below). **Bendamustine** is effective both with rituximab and as a monotherapy in rituximab-refractory patients.¹⁰⁷ **High grade:** (eg large B-cell lymphoma, DLBCL), '**R-CHOP**' regimen: **Rituximab** **Cyclophosphamide**, **Hydroxydaunorubicin**, **vincristine** (**Oncovin**®) and **Prednisolone**. Granulocyte colony-stimulating factors (G-CSFs) help neutropenia—eg filgrastim or lenograstim (at low doses it may be cost-effective).¹⁰⁸

Survival Histology is important. Prognosis is worse if at presentation: • Age >60yrs • Systemic symptoms • Bulky disease (abdominal mass >10cm) • **LDH** • Disseminated disease. Typical 5-yr survival for treated patients: ~30% for high-grade and >50% for low-grade lymphomas, but the picture is very variable.





Fig 1. Cutaneous T-cell lymphoma, which has caused severe erythroderma (Sézary syndrome) in a Caucasian woman.

Courtesy of Prof. Christine Lawrence.

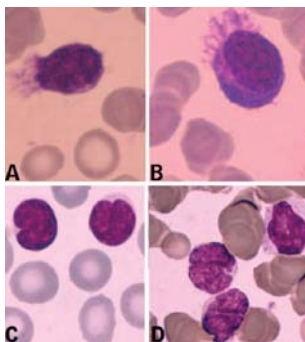


Fig 2. A and B: villous lymphocytes (splenic marginal zone lymphoma). C: 'butterfly cells' with cleaved nuclei (follicular lymphoma). D: Sézary cells with convoluted nuclei.

Courtesy of Prof. Tangün & Dr Köroğlu.



Fig 3. Burkitt's lymphoma, with characteristic jaw lymphadenopathy.

Courtesy of Dr Tom D Thacher.

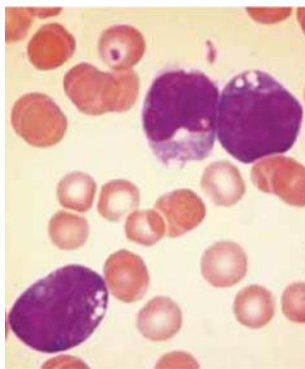


Fig 4. Burkitt's lymphoma, with 3 basophilic vacuolated lymphoma cells.

Courtesy of Prof. Barbara Bain

©2005 Massachusetts Medical Society.

The role of rituximab in untreated follicular lymphoma

Rituximab kills CD20+ve cells by antibody-directed cytotoxicity ± apoptosis induction. It also sensitizes cells to CHOP. It is cost-effective when used with:

- Cyclophosphamide, vincristine and prednisolone (CVP)
- Cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine and prednisolone (CHOP)
- Cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, etoposide, prednisolone & interferon- α (CHVPi)
- Mitoxantrone, chlorambucil and prednisolone (MCP)
- Chlorambucil.

NICE (2012 for STAGES III & IV)

It also has a role in maintaining remission, and in relapsed disease.

The marrow is responsible for haemopoiesis. In adults, this normally takes place in the central skeleton (vertebrae, sternum, ribs, skull) and proximal long bones. In some anaemias (eg thalassaemia), increased demand induces haematopoiesis beyond the marrow (extramedullary haematopoiesis), in liver and spleen, causing organomegaly. All blood cells arise from an early pluripotent stem cell, which divides in an asymmetrical way to produce another stem cell and a progenitor cell committed to a specific cell line. Committed progenitors further differentiate into myeloid or lymphocyte lineages, before their release into the blood as mature cells.

Pancytopenia is reduction in all the major cell lines: red cells, white cells and platelets. Causes are due to: **1 ↓marrow production:** Aplastic anaemia, infiltration (eg acute leukaemia, myelodysplasia, myeloma, lymphoma, solid tumours, TB), megaloblastic anaemia, paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (p332), myelofibrosis (p360), SLE. **2 ↑peripheral destruction:** Hypersplenism.

Agranulocytosis implies that granulocytes (WBCs with neutrophil, basophil or eosinophil granules, **fig 1**) have stopped being made. Neutropenia ($wcc \leq 0.5 \times 10^9/L$) may declare itself early as a sore throat (eg 2wks after starting the drug)¹⁰⁹ before some fatal infection: this is why we warn patients starting drugs causing agranulocytosis¹ "Report **any** fever". (Do FBC! Look at the result!! Stop the drug!!!) Granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) + barrier nursing + neutropenia regimens (p346) may work.¹¹⁰

Aplastic anaemia is a rare stem cell disorder leading to pancytopenia and hypoplastic marrow (the marrow stops making cells). Presents with features of anaemia (↓Hb), infection (↓WCC) or bleeding (↓platelets). **Incidence:** ~5 cases per million/year. **Causes:** Most cases are autoimmune, triggered by drugs (viruses, eg parvovirus, hepatitis) or irradiation. May also be inherited, eg Fanconi anaemia (p712). **Tests:** Marrow examination is needed for the diagnosis. **Treatment:** Support the blood count (below). Asymptomatic patients don't need much except for supportive treatment (neutropenic regimen, p346). The treatment of choice in young patients who are severely affected is an allogeneic marrow transplantation from an HLA-matched sibling, which can be curative. Otherwise, immunosuppression with ciclosporin and antithymocyte globulin may be effective, although it is not curative in most. There is no clear role for G-CSF (p356).¹¹¹

Marrow support Red cells survive for ~120d, platelets for ~8d, and neutrophils for 1-2d, so early problems are mainly from neutropenia and thrombocytopenia.

1 Red cell transfusion: Transfusing 1U should raise Hb by ~10-15g/L (p342). Transfusion may drop the platelet count (you may need to give platelets before or after).

2 Platelets: Traumatic bleeds, purpura and easy bruising occur if platelets $< 50 \times 10^9/L$. Spontaneous bleeding may occur if platelets $< 20 \times 10^9/L$, with intracranial haemorrhage rarely. Platelets are stored at room temperature (22°C; not in the fridge). In marrow transplant or if severely immunosuppressed, platelets may need irradiation before use to prevent transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). Platelets must be ABO compatible. They are not used in ITP (p338). Indications: • Platelets $< 10 \times 10^9/L$ • Haemorrhage (eg DIC, p346) • Before invasive procedures (eg biopsy, lumbar puncture) to increase count to $> 50 \times 10^9/L$. 4u of platelets should raise the count to $> 40 \times 10^9/L$ in adults; check dose needed with lab.

3 Neutrophils: Use a 'neutropenic regimen' if the count $< 0.5 \times 10^9/L$. See p346.

Bone marrow biopsy gives diagnostic information where there are abnormalities in the peripheral blood; it is also an important staging test in the lymphoproliferative disorders. Ideally take an aspirate **and** trephine usually from the posterior iliac crest (aspirates can be taken from the anterior iliac crest or sternum). The aspirate provides a film which is examined by microscope. The trephine is a core of bone which allows assessment of bone marrow cellularity, architecture and the presence of infiltrative disease (eg neoplasia). Coagulation disorders may need to be corrected pre-biopsy. Apply pressure afterwards (lie on that side for 1-2h if platelets are low).

1 Carbimazole, procainamide, sulfonamides, gold, clozapine, dapsone (antibody damage to stem cells).

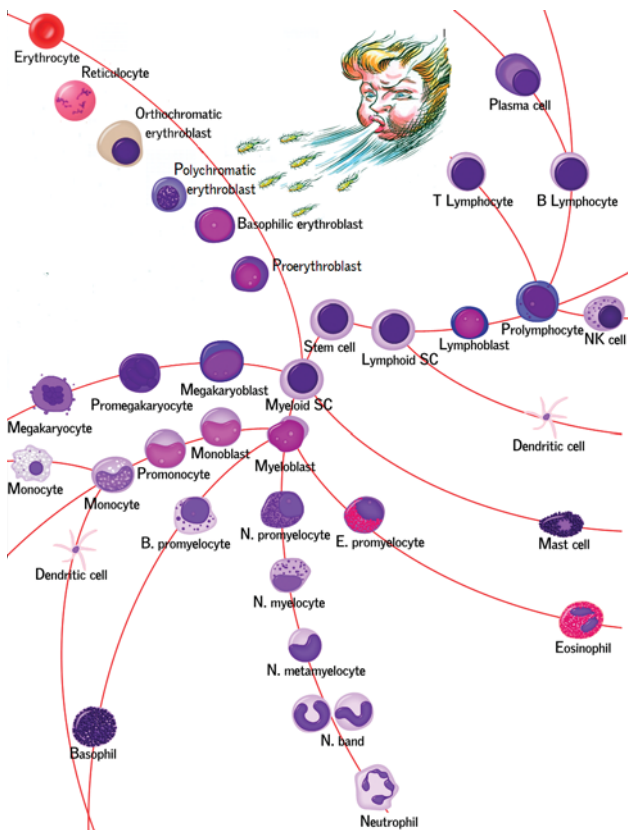


Fig 1. Haemopoiesis and Sod's Law. When we contemplate a diagram like this (of seemingly galactic complexity) we, being doctors, think "What can go wrong?" With a sinking feeling we realize that every arc is an opportunity for multiple disasters. Perhaps, using the Hammer of Los (p316) and our own ingenuity we might occasionally complete these pathways without Sod intervening (Sod's law states that if something can go wrong, it will—here Sod's tubercular breath is seen blowing the red cell line off course—TB is a famous cause of leukoerythroblastic anaemia). When we realize that *every day* each of us makes 175 billion red cells, 70 billion granulocytes, and 175 billion platelets¹¹² we sense that Sod is smiling to himself with especial relish. *Anything* can go wrong. *Everything* can go wrong. This latter we call *aplastic anaemia*. *Agranulocytosis* is when the Southerly arcs go wrong; thrombocytopenia when the West-pointing arcs go wrong. To the East we have the *lymphocytes* and their B- and T-cell complexities. *Anaemia* lies in the North of this diagram. And as for bleeding—how could our predecessors bear to waste a single drop of this stuff on purpose? Our minds are reeling at 175 billion red cells per day—but this is just when the system is idling. When we bleed, throughput can rise by an order of magnitude—if Sod is turning a blind eye are there sufficient haematinics (eg iron, B₁₂ and folate) to allow maximum haemopoiesis?

Figure ©Aria Rad.

These are caused by proliferation of a clone of haematopoietic myeloid stem cells in the marrow. While the cells proliferate, they also retain the ability to differentiate into RBCs, WBCs or platelets.

Classification is by the cell type which is proliferating

RBC	→	Polycythaemia rubra vera (PRV)
WBC	→	Chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML, p352)
Platelets	→	Essential thrombocythaemia
Fibroblasts	→	Myelofibrosis

Polycythaemia may be relative (↓plasma volume, normal RBC mass) or absolute (↑RBC mass). *Relative polycythaemia* may be acute and due to dehydration (eg alcohol or diuretics). A more chronic form exists which is associated with obesity, hypertension, and a high alcohol and tobacco intake. *Absolute polycythaemia* is distinguished by red cell mass estimation using radioactive chromium (^{51}Cr) labelled RBCs. Causes are primary (*polycythaemia rubra vera*) or secondary due to hypoxia (eg high altitudes, chronic lung disease, cyanotic congenital heart disease, heavy smoking) or inappropriately terthropoietin secretion (eg in renal carcinoma, hepatocellular carcinoma).

Polycythaemia rubra vera This is a malignant proliferation of a clone derived from one pluripotent marrow stem cell. A mutation in JAK2 (JAK2 V617F) is present in >90%. The erythroid progenitor offspring are unusual in not needing erythropoietin to avoid apoptosis (p511). There is excess proliferation of RBCs, WBCs, and platelets, leading to hyperviscosity and thrombosis. Commoner if >60yrs old.

Signs May be asymptomatic and detected on FBC, or present with vague signs due to hyperviscosity (p366): headaches, dizziness, tinnitus, visual disturbance. Itch after a hot bath, and erythromelalgia, a burning sensation in fingers and toes, are characteristic. Examination may show facial plethora and splenomegaly (in 60%). Gout may occur due to urate from RBC turnover. Features of arterial (cardiac, cerebral, peripheral) or venous (DVT, cerebral, hepatic) thrombosis may be present.

Investigations: • FBC: ↑RCC, ↑Hb, ↑HCT, ↑PCV, often also ↑WBC and ↑platelets • B_{12} ↑ • Marrow shows hypercellularity with erythroid hyperplasia • Neutrophil alkaline phosphatase (NAP) score is ↑ (↓ in CML) • ↓serum erythropoietin • Raised red cell mass on ^{51}Cr studies and splenomegaly, in the setting of a normal P_{50}O_2 , is diagnostic.

Treatment: Aim to keep HCT <0.45 to ↓risk of thrombosis. In younger patients at low risk, this is done by venesection. If higher risk (age >60yrs, previous thrombosis), hydroxycarbamide (=hydroxyurea) is used. α -interferon is preferred in women of childbearing age. Low-dose aspirin 75mg daily PO is also given. ⚡

Prognosis: Variable, many remain well for years. Thrombosis and haemorrhage (due to defective platelets) are the main complications. Transition to myelofibrosis occurs in ~30% or acute leukaemia in ~5%. Monitor FBC every 3 months.

Essential thrombocythaemia A clonal proliferation of megakaryocytes leads to persistently ↑platelets, often $>1000 \times 10^9/\text{L}$, with abnormal function, causing bleeding or arterial and venous thrombosis, and microvascular occlusion—headache, atypical chest pain, light-headedness, erythromelalgia (fig 1). Exclude other causes of thrombocytosis (see BOX). **Treatment:** Low-dose aspirin 75mg daily. ⚡ Hydroxycarbamide is given to ↓platelets if >60yrs old or if previous thrombosis.

Myelofibrosis There is hyperplasia of megakaryocytes which produce platelet-derived growth factor, leading to intense marrow fibrosis and myeloid metaplasia (haemopoiesis in the spleen and liver)→massive hepatosplenomegaly. **Presentation:** Hypermetabolic symptoms: night sweats, fever, weight loss; abdominal discomfort due to splenomegaly; or bone marrow failure (↓Hb, infections, bleeding). **Film:** Leukoerythroblastic cells (nucleated red cells, p322); characteristic teardrop RBCs (see fig 2). Hb↓. Bone marrow trephine for diagnosis (fig 3). **Treatment:** Marrow support (see p358). Allogeneic stem cell transplant may be curative in young people but carries a high risk of mortality. **Prognosis:** Median survival 4–5 years.

Causes of thrombocytosis

†Platelets $>450 \times 10^9/L$ may be a reactive phenomenon, seen with many conditions including:

- Bleeding
- Infection
- Chronic inflammation, eg collagen disorders
- Malignancy
- Trauma
- Post-surgery
- Iron deficiency

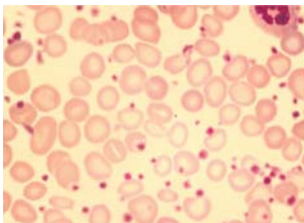


Fig 1. Essential thrombocythaemia: many platelets seen.

© Prof. Christine Lawrence.

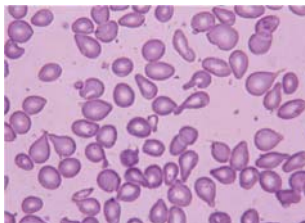


Fig 2. Teardrop cells, in myelofibrosis.

© Dr Nivaldo Medeiros.

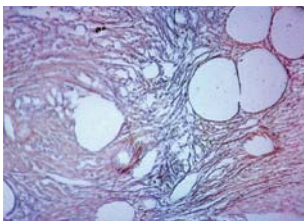


Fig 3. Marrow trephine in myelofibrosis: the streaming effect is caused by intense fibrosis. Other causes of marrow fibrosis: any myeloproliferative disorder, lymphoma, secondary carcinoma, TB, leukaemia, and irradiation.

© Professor Christine Lawrence.



PCDs are due to an abnormal proliferation of a single clone of plasma or lymphoplasmacytic cells leading to secretion of immunoglobulin (Ig) or an Ig fragment, causing the dysfunction of many organs (esp kidney).¹ The Ig is seen as a monoclonal band, or paraprotein, on serum or urine electrophoresis (see below).

Classification is based on immunoglobulin (Ig) product—IgG in ~½; IgA in ~¼; A very few are IgM or IgD. Other Ig levels are low ('immunoparesis', causing susceptibility to infection). In ~¾, urine contains Bence Jones proteins, which are free Ig light chains of kappa (κ) or lambda (λ) type, filtered by the kidney.

Incidence 5/100,000. Peak age: 70yrs. ♂:♀≈1. Afro-Caribbeans:Caucasians≈2:1.

Symptoms ▶ Do serum protein electrophoresis & ESR on all over 50 with back pain.

- **Osteolytic bone lesions** causing backache, pathological fractures (eg long bones or ribs) and vertebral collapse. **Hypercalcaemia** may be symptomatic (p690). Lesions are due to osteoclast activation, from signalling by myeloma cells.
- **Anaemia, neutropenia, or thrombocytopenia** may result from marrow infiltration by plasma cells, leading to symptoms of anaemia, infection and bleeding.
- **Recurrent bacterial infections** due to immunoparesis, and also because of neutropenia due to the disease and from chemotherapy.
- **Renal impairment** due to light chain deposition (p314 & p364) seen in up to 20% at diagnosis—mainly caused by precipitation of light chains with the Tamm-Horsfall protein in the distal loop of Henle.¹¹³ Also, monoclonal immunoglobulins induce changes in glomeruli. A rare type of damage is deposits of light chains in the form of AL-amyloid and subsequent nephrosis¹¹⁴ (and other systemic problems, p364).

Tests FBC—normocytic normochromic anaemia, film—rouleaux formation (p322), persistently ↑ESR or PV (p366), urea and creatinine, ↑Ca²⁺ (in ~40%), alk phos usually ↔ unless healing fracture. Marrow ^{et al}—**figs 1–4**. **Screening test:** Serum and urine electrophoresis. β₂-microglobulin (as a prognostic test). **Imaging:** x-rays: lytic 'punched-out' lesions, eg pepper-pot skull, vertebral collapse, fractures or osteoporosis. CT or MRI may be useful to detect lesions not seen on XR. **Diagnostic criteria:** BOX.

Treatment¹¹⁵ **Supportive:** • Bone pain should be treated with analgesia (avoid NSAIDs due to risk of renal impairment). Give all patients a **bisphosphonate** (clodronate, zoledronate or pamidronate), as they reduce fracture rates and bone pain. Local radiotherapy can help rapidly in focal disease. Orthopaedic procedures (vertebroplasty or kyphoplasty) may be helpful in vertebral collapse. • Anaemia should be corrected with **transfusion**, and **erythropoietin** may be used. • Renal failure: rehydrate, and ensure adequate fluid intake of 3L/day to prevent further renal impairment by light chains. Dialysis may be needed in acute renal failure. • Infections: Treat rapidly with broad-spectrum antibiotics until culture results are known. Regular IV **immunoglobulin infusions** may be needed if recurrent.

Chemotherapy: If unsuitable for intensive R, **melfalan + prednisolone** is used. This can control disease for ~1yr, reducing paraprotein levels and bone lesions. Adding **bortezomib** increases the time to relapse.¹¹⁶ In due course, disease may become uncontrollable and resist treatment. Adding **thalidomide** (a teratogenic immunomodulator) improves event-free survival, eg in the elderly.¹¹⁷ SE: birth defects; drowsiness; neuropathy; neutropenia; sepsis; orthostatic hypotension; thromboembolism (aspirin, or full anticoagulation is probably wise if risk ↑, eg hyperviscosity, or other comorbidities).¹¹⁸ In fitter people, a more vigorous approach is used (high-dose therapy and stem-cell rescue, HDT) with a **VAD** type regimen: **Vincristine**, **Adriamycin** and **Dexamethasone**. Autologous stem cell transplant may then be done, which improves survival but is not curative. Allogeneic transplantation can be curative in younger patients, but carries risk of mortality (~30%). Thalidomide or bortezomib may be tried in relapsed disease. NB: **lenalidomide** is similar to thalidomide and, being a bit more potent, may have a role.¹¹⁹ as may **bendamustine** (it drives cell death by promoting mitotic catastrophe in melfalan-resistant myeloma cells).¹²⁰

Prognosis Worse if: >2 osteolytic lesions, β₂-microglobulin >5.5mg/L, Hb <11g/L; albumin <30g/L.¹²¹ Cause of death: infection; renal failure (transplants have a role).¹²²

1 Toxic and inflammatory effects of monoclonal free light chains (FLCs) affect kidney proximal tubule cells; intratubular casts also form via interaction with Tamm-Horsfall proteins.

Myeloma diagnosis

Have a high index of suspicion, ►eg in bone pain or back pain which is not improving, do an ESR and film and electrophoresis. Diagnostic criteria:

- 1 Monoclonal protein band in serum or urine electrophoresis
- 2 Plasma cells ↑ on marrow biopsy
- 3 Evidence of end-organ damage from myeloma:
 - Hypercalcaemia
 - Renal insufficiency
 - Anaemia
- 4 Bone lesions: a skeletal survey after diagnosis detects bone disease: X-rays of chest; all of spine; skull; pelvis ± Tc-99m MIBI and PET (p754)

Causes of bone pain/tenderness

- Trauma/fracture (steroids trisk)
- Myeloma and other primary malignancy, eg plasmacytoma or sarcoma
- Secondaries (breast, lung, prostate^{etc})
- Osteonecrosis, eg from microemboli¹
- Osteomyelitis/periostitis (eg syphilis)
- Hydatid cyst (bone is a rare site)
- Osteosclerosis, eg from hepatitis C
- Paget's disease of bone
- Sickle cell anaemia
- Renal osteodystrophy
- CREST syndrome/Sjögren's syndrome
- Hyperparathyroidism.

Tests: PSA, ESR, Ca²⁺, LFT, electrophoresis.

Treatment: Treat the cause; bisphosphonates & NSAIDs may control symptoms.

Complications of myeloma

- **Hypercalcaemia** (p690). This occurs with active disease, eg at presentation or relapse. Rehydrate vigorously with IV saline 0.9% 4–6L/d (careful fluid balance). IV bisphosphonates, eg zoledronate or pamidronate, are useful for treating hypercalcaemia acutely.
- **Spinal cord compression** (p470). Occurs in 5% of those with myeloma. Urgent MRI if suspected. Treatment is with dexamethasone 8–16mg/24h PO and local radiotherapy.
- **Hyperviscosity** (p366) causes reduced cognition, disturbed vision, and bleeding. It is treated with plasmapheresis to remove light chains.
- **Acute renal injury** is treated with rehydration. Urgent dialysis may be needed.

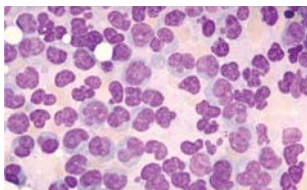


Fig 1. Myeloma bone marrow: many plasma cells with abnormal forms.

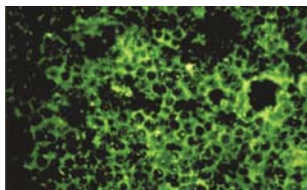


Fig 2. Marrow section in myeloma, stained with IgG kappa monoclonal antibody.

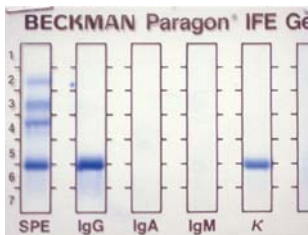


Fig 3. An IgG kappa paraprotein monoclonal band (immunofixation electrophoresis; a control sample has run on the left).

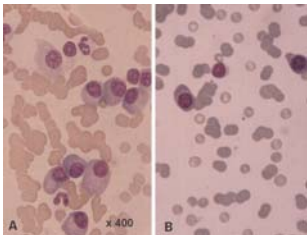


Fig 4. Plasma cells in myeloma. A: marrow smear, B: peripheral smear. Note rouleaux formation of red cells (p322 & p362).

¹ Avascular necrosis from sickle-cell anaemia, sepsis, antiphospholipid syndrome, fat emboli.

Figs 1–3 courtesy of Prof. Christine Lawrence; fig 4 courtesy of Prof. Tangün and Dr Köroğlu.

Paraproteinaemia denotes presence in the circulation of immunoglobulins produced by a single clone of plasma cells. The paraprotein is recognized as a monoclonal band (M band) on serum electrophoresis.¹ There are 6 major categories:

- 1 Multiple myeloma:** See p362.
- 2 Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia:** This is a lymphoplasmacytoid lymphoma producing a monoclonal IgM paraprotein. Hyperviscosity is common (p366), with CNS and ocular symptoms. Lymphadenopathy and splenomegaly are also seen. **tESR**, with IgM paraprotein on serum electrophoresis. **Rx:** None if asymptomatic. Chlorambucil, fludarabine or combination chemotherapy may be used. Plasmapheresis¹ for hyperviscosity (p366).
- 3 Primary amyloidosis:** See below.
- 4 Monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance (MGUS)** is common (3% >70yrs). There is a paraprotein in the serum but no myeloma, 1° amyloid, macroglobulinaemia or lymphoma, with no bone lesions, no Bence Jones protein and a low concentration of paraprotein, with <10% plasma cells in the marrow. Some develop myeloma or lymphoma. Refer to a haematologist (?for marrow biopsy).¹²³
- 5 Paraproteinaemia in lymphoma or leukaemia:** Eg seen in 5% of CLL.
- 6 Heavy chain disease:** This is where neoplastic cells produce free Ig heavy chains. α chain disease is the most important, causing malabsorption from infiltration of small bowel wall. It may progress to lymphoma.

Amyloidosis¹

Amyloid...the amorphous fibrillar protein

This is a group of disorders characterized by extracellular deposits of a protein in abnormal fibrillar form, resistant to degradation. The following are the systemic forms of amyloidosis. Amyloid deposition is also a feature of Alzheimer's disease, type 2 diabetes mellitus and haemodialysis-related amyloidosis.

AL amyloid (primary amyloidosis) Proliferation of plasma cell clone \rightarrow amyloidogenic monoclonal immunoglobulins \rightarrow Fibrillar light chain protein deposition \rightarrow Organ failure \rightarrow Death. Associations: myeloma (15%); Waldenström's, lymphoma. Organs involved:

- Kidneys: glomerular lesions—proteinuria and nephrotic syndrome
- Heart: restrictive cardiomyopathy (looks 'sparkling' on echo), arrhythmias, angina
- Nerves: peripheral and autonomic neuropathy; carpal tunnel syndrome
- Gut: macroglossia (big tongue), malabsorption/weight↓, perforation, haemorrhage, obstruction, and hepatomegaly
- Vascular: purpura, especially periorbital—a characteristic feature (**fig 1**).

Rx: Optimize nutrition; oral melphalan + prednisolone extends median survival from 13 months following diagnosis to 17 months.¹²⁴ High-dose IV melphalan with autologous peripheral blood stem cell transplantation may be better.

AA amyloid (secondary amyloidosis) Here amyloid is derived from serum amyloid A, an acute phase protein, reflecting chronic inflammation in rheumatoid arthritis, UC/Crohn's, familial Mediterranean fever, and chronic infections—TB, bronchiectasis, osteomyelitis. It affects kidneys, liver, and spleen (**fig 2**), and may present with proteinuria, nephrotic syndrome or hepatosplenomegaly. Macroglossia is not seen; cardiac involvement is rare.² **Rx:** manage the underlying condition optimally.

Familial amyloidosis (autosomal dominant, eg from mutations in transthyretin, a transport protein produced by the liver). Usually causes a sensory or autonomic neuropathy \pm renal or cardiac involvement. Liver transplant can cure.

Diagnosis is made with biopsy of affected tissue, and positive Congo Red staining with red-green birefringence under polarized light microscopy. The rectum or subcutaneous fat are relatively non-invasive sites for biopsy and are +ve in 80%.

Prognosis Median survival is 1-2 years. Patients with myeloma and amyloidosis have a shorter survival than those with myeloma alone.

¹ Electrophoresis and plasmapheresis look as though they should share endings, but they do not: Greek *phoros* = bearing (*esis* = process), but *aphairesis* is Greek for removal.

² Murmurs; low voltage ECG, ventricular hypertrophy, diastolic dysfunction.¹²⁵



Fig 1. Periorbital purpura in amyloidosis.

©Prof. Christine Lawrence.

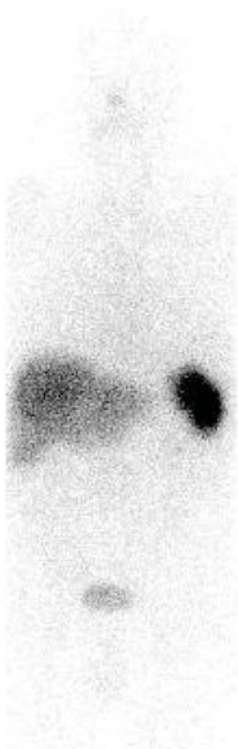


Fig 2. Areas of amyloid deposition in liver and spleen in amyloidosis (isotope scan).

©OTM/OUP.



In many labs, this has replaced the ESR, as it is less affected by anaemia and results can be produced in 15min. The PV is affected by the concentration of large plasma proteins and is raised in the same conditions as the ESR. Both PV and ESR are raised in chronic inflammation and are less affected by acute changes <24h in duration. The CRP is more sensitive in acute change (see p701).

Hyperviscosity syndrome

Blood is made to move! Our beautiful images seem to deny this, as if haematology were just a branch of histology. So what are the intrinsic disorders of flow? If blood viscosity rises there may be a few telltale signs before the quick becomes dead, eg lethargy; confusion; cognition ↓; CNS disturbance; chest pain; abdominal pain; faints; visual disturbance (eg vision ↓, amaurosis fugax, retinopathy—eg engorged retinal veins, haemorrhages, exudates; and a blurred disc as seen in **fig 1a**). The visual symptoms ('slow-flow retinopathy') are like 'looking through a watery car windscreen' (**fig 1b**). Other causes of slow-flow retinopathy: carotid disease and Takayasu's disease (p726). Also hyperviscosity may cause spontaneous GI or GU bleeding.

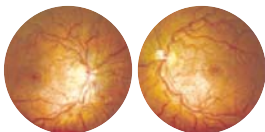


Fig 1a & 1b. Hyperviscosity syndrome.

Causes of high blood viscosity: Very high red cell count (haematocrit >50, eg polycythaemia rubra vera), white cell count (>100×10⁹/L, eg leukaemia), or plasma components—usually immunoglobulins, in myeloma or Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia (p364, as IgM is larger and so ↑ viscosity more than the same amount of IgG). Drugs: oral contraceptives, diuretics, IV Ig, erythropoietin, chemotherapy, radio-contrast media.

Treatment: Urgent treatment is needed which depends on the cause. Venesection is done in polycythaemia. Leukopheresis in leukaemias to remove white cells. Plasmapheresis in myeloma and Waldenström's: blood is withdrawn via a plasma exchange machine, the supernatant plasma from this is discarded, and the RBCs returned to the patient after being resuspended in a suitable medium.

Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) Normal range: ≤20mm/h.

The ESR is a sensitive but non-specific indicator of the presence of disease. It measures how far RBCs fall through a column of anticoagulated blood in 1h. It is really a length (eg 35mm in the 1st hour)—not a rate.¹²⁶ If certain proteins cover red cells, these cause RBCs to stick to each other in columns so they fall faster (the same phenomenon as rouleaux on the blood film, p322). The main causes of a raised ESR are any inflammation, eg infection, rheumatoid arthritis, malignancy, myocardial infarction; or anaemia or a macrocytosis.

In those with a slightly raised ESR, the best plan is probably to wait a month and repeat it. There is a group of patients whose vague symptoms would have prompted nothing more than reassurance—were it not for a markedly raised ESR (>100mm/h)—and in whom there are no pointers to specific disease. The same advice does not hold true for these, where there is a 90% predictive value for disease. In practice, most have signs pointing to the cause. In one survey, serious underlying disease later found included myeloma, giant cell arteritis, abdominal aneurysm, metastatic prostatic carcinoma, leukaemia, and lymphoma. Therefore, it would be wise (after history and examination) to consider these tests: FBC, plasma electrophoresis, U&E, PSA, chest and abdominal imaging, ± biopsy of bone marrow or temporal artery.

ESR also rises with age. A simple, reliable way¹²⁷ to allow for this is to calculate the upper limit of normal, using the Westergren method, to be (for men) age in years ÷ 2. For women, the formula is (years+10) ÷ 2. This is only a rough guide as some workers find no difference between men and women between the ages of 70 and 90yrs old.¹²⁶ NB: some conditions *lower* the ESR, eg polycythaemia (due to red cell concentration), microcytosis, and sickle-cell anaemia. Even a slightly raised ESR in these patients should prompt one to ask: "What else is the matter?"



The spleen and splenectomy

The spleen was a mysterious organ for many years; we now know that it plays a vital immunological role by acting as a reservoir for lymphocytes, and in dealing with bacteraemias. Splenomegaly is a commonish problem and its causes are divided into *massive* (into the RIF) and *moderate*.

Causes of massive splenomegaly CML, myelofibrosis, malaria (hyperreactive malarial splenomegaly), leishmaniasis, 'tropical splenomegaly' (idiopathic—Africa, south-east Asia), and Gaucher's syndrome.

Moderate splenomegaly: See p606. •Infection (eg EBV, endocarditis, TB, malaria, leishmaniasis, schistosomiasis) •Portal hypertension (liver cirrhosis) •Haematological (haemolytic anaemia, leukaemia especially CML, lymphoma) •Connective tissue disease (RA, SLE) •Others: sarcoidosis, primary antibody deficiency (OHCS p198), idiopathic.

Splenomegaly can be uncomfortable and may lead to *hypersplenism*: pancytopenia as cells become trapped in the spleen's reticuloendothelial system, with symptoms of anaemia, infection, or bleeding. Splenectomy may be required if severe.

When faced with a mass in the left upper quadrant, it is vital to recognize the spleen: •Dull to percussion •It enlarges towards the RIF •It moves down on inspiration •You may feel a medial notch •'You can't get above it' (ie the top margin disappears under the ribs). The last three features differentiate the spleen from an enlarged left kidney. Abdominal USS or CT are used to image the spleen. When hunting the cause for enlargement look for lymphadenopathy and liver disease, eg: FBC, ESR, LFT \pm liver, marrow, or lymph node biopsy.

Splenectomy Main indications: splenic trauma, hypersplenism, autoimmune haemolysis: in ITP (p338) or warm autoimmune haemolytic anaemia (p332), congenital haemolytic anaemias. Splenectomy was historically performed for staging in Hodgkin's disease, but CT and MRI have replaced this role. Mobilize early post-splenectomy as transient \uparrow platelets predisposes to thrombi. A characteristic blood film is seen following splenectomy, with Howell-Jolly bodies, Pappenheimer bodies and target cells (see p322).

► *The main problem post-splenectomy is lifelong increased risk from infection.* The spleen contains macrophages which filter and phagocytose bacteria. Post-splenectomy infection is caused most commonly by encapsulated organisms: *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Neisseria meningitidis*. Reduce this risk by giving:¹²⁸

1 Immunizations:

- Pneumococcal vaccine (p160), at least 2 weeks pre-op to ensure good response, or as soon as possible after emergency splenectomy, eg after trauma. Re-immunize every 5-10yrs. Avoid in pregnancy.
- *Haemophilus influenzae* type b vaccine (Hib, see p391).
- Meningococcal c vaccine.
- Annual influenza vaccine (p402).

2 Life-long prophylactic oral antibiotics (phenoxymethylpenicillin). Erythromycin if penicillin allergic.

3 Patient-held cards alerting health professionals to the infection risk.

4 Pendants or bracelets to alert medical staff.

5 Advice to seek medical attention if any signs of infection.

6 Urgent hospital admission if infection develops, for treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics.

7 If travelling abroad, warn of risk of severe malaria and advise meticulous prophylaxis, with nets, repellent, and medication.

The above advice also applies to hyposplenic patients, eg in sickle-cell anaemia or coeliac disease.



Thrombophilia is an inherited or acquired coagulopathy predisposing to thrombosis, usually venous: DVT or PE (venous thromboembolism: VTE). Special precautions are needed in *surgery, pregnancy, and enforced rest*. Risk is also increased by obesity, immobility, trauma (accidents or surgery), and malignancy. NB: thrombocytosis and polycythaemia may also cause thrombosis (p360). See BOX. Note only ~50% of patients with thrombosis and a +ve family history have an identifiable thrombophilia on routine tests: others may have abnormalities that are as yet unidentified.

Inherited • Activated protein c (APC) resistance/factor v Leiden: Chief cause of inherited thrombophilia. Present in ~5% of the population, although most will not develop thrombosis. Usually associated with a single point mutation in factor v (Factor v Leiden), so that this clotting factor is not broken down by APC. Risk of DVT or PE is raised 5-fold if heterozygous for the mutation (50-fold if homozygous). Thrombotic risk is increased in pregnancy and those on oestrogens (OHCS p33, p257 & p303).

• **Prothrombin gene mutation:** Causes high prothrombin levels and thrombosis due to down-regulation of fibrinolysis, by thrombin-activated fibrinolysis inhibitor.

• **Protein c & s deficiency:** These vitamin K-dependent factors act together to cleave and so neutralize factors v & VIII. Heterozygotes deficient for either protein risk thrombosis. Skin necrosis also occurs (esp. if on warfarin). Homozygous deficiency for either protein causes neonatal purpura fulminans—fatal, if untreated.

• **Antithrombin deficiency:** Antithrombin is a co-factor of heparin, and inhibits thrombin. Less common, affects 1:500. Heterozygotes' thrombotic risk is greater than protein c or s deficiency by ~4-fold. Homozygosity is incompatible with life.

Acquired Causes: 3rd generation progesterones¹ in contraceptive Pills (see TABLE for risk of thrombosis) and the antiphospholipid syndrome (APL: p556) when serum antiphospholipid antibodies are found (lupus anticoagulant ± anticardiolipin antibody), predisposing to venous and arterial thrombosis, thrombocytopenia, and recurrent fetal loss in pregnancy. In most it is a primary disease, but it is also seen in SLE.

Risk of thrombosis associated with the Pill	
Not on Pill	5:100,000
2 nd gen. Pill ¹	15:100,000
3 rd gen. Pill ¹	25:100,000
Pregnancy	60:100,000

What tests? Ask the lab. Do FBC, film, clotting (PT, thrombin time, APTT, fibrinogen) ± APC resistance test, lupus anticoagulant and anticardiolipin antibodies, and assays for antithrombin and proteins c & s deficiency (± DNA analysis by PCR for the Factor v Leiden mutation if APC resistance test is +ve, and for prothrombin gene mutation).

When? Ideally while well, not pregnant, and not anticoagulated for 1 month.

Who? Typically, do tests (eg antiphospholipid antibodies) in those who have had unprovoked DVT or PE if unsure as to whether to stop anticoagulation. See MINIBOX.

Who not? Already on lifelong anticoagulation (eg after PE). 1st-degree relatives of people with a history of DVT/PE or thrombophilia except in special circumstances.¹²⁹

What's the benefit of testing? Often none! And cost/QALY is often ≥£20,000. So be sparing in requesting these tests, which can cause significant worry to patients.¹³⁰

Treatment Treat acute thrombosis as standard—heparin, then warfarin to target INR of 2–3 (p345). If recurrence occurs with no other risk factors, lifelong warfarin should be considered. Recurrence whilst on warfarin should be treated by increasing target INR to 3–4. In antithrombin deficiency, high doses of heparin may be needed so liaise with a haematologist. In protein c or s deficiency, monitor treatment closely as skin necrosis may occur with warfarin.

Prevention Lifelong anticoagulation is not needed if asymptomatic, but advise of ↑ risk of VTE with the Pill or HRT, and counsel as regards to the best form of contraception. Warn about other risk factors for VTE. Prophylaxis may be needed in pregnancy, eg in antiphospholipid syndrome. Get expert help: aspirin and, sometimes, prophylactic heparin are used (OHCS p33), as warfarin is teratogenic. Prophylactic SC heparin may also be indicated in high-risk situations, eg pre-surgery.

1 Desogestrel is an example. Risk of thrombosis is ~doubled with Pills containing this, vs levonorgestrel. Part of this effect is due to ↓ free protein S found with desogestrel (24 vs 33u/dL).^{131–132}

Other risk factors for thrombosis

Arterial

- Smoking
- Hypertension
- Hyperlipidaemia
- Diabetes mellitus

Venous

- Surgery
- Trauma
- Immobility
- Pregnancy, oral contraceptive pill, HRT
- Age
- Obesity
- Varicose veins
- Other conditions: heart failure, malignancy, inflammatory bowel disease, nephrotic syndrome, paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (p332).

For thrombophilia in pregnancy, see *OHCS* p33; for anticoagulant use in pregnancy and thromboprophylaxis, see *OHCS* p16.

Consider special tests if:

- Arterial thrombosis or MI at <50yrs old (eg for APL)
- Venous thrombosis at <40yrs with no risk factors
- Familial VTE or with oral contraceptives/pregnancy
- Unexplained recurrent VTE
- Unusual site, eg mesenteric or portal vein thrombosis
- Recurrent fetal loss (≥ 3)
- Neonatal thrombosis



As well as being used in leukaemias and cancers, these are used in organ and marrow transplants, rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, chronic hepatitis, asthma, SLE, vasculitis (eg Wegener's[†], giant cell arteritis, polymyalgia, PAN), inflammatory bowel and other diseases (so this page could figure in almost any chapter).

Prednisolone Steroids can be life-saving, but bear in mind:

- Certain conditions may be made worse by steroids, eg TB, hypertension, chicken-pox, osteoporosis, diabetes: here careful monitoring is needed.
- Growth retardation may occur in young patients, and the elderly frequently get more side-effects from treatment.
- Interactions: [Prednisolone]↓ by anti-epileptics (below) and rifampicin.
- Avoid pregnancy (may cause fetal growth retardation). If breastfeeding and prednisolone >40mg/day, see *BNF*.

Minimize side-effects by using the lowest dose possible for the shortest period of time. Give doses in the morning, and alternate days if possible, to minimize adrenal suppression. Before starting long-term treatment (>3 weeks, or repeated courses) observe these guidelines:

- Explain about not stopping steroids suddenly. Collapse may result, as endogenous production takes time to restart. ►► See p846.
- Inform about the need to consult a doctor if unwell, and increase the dose of steroid at times of illness/stress (eg flu or pre-op).
- Encourage to carry a steroid card saying dose taken, and the reason.
- You *must* warn patients about the listed side-effects if they are receiving long-term treatment (over 6 weeks' worth): see BOX.
- Avoid over-the-counter drugs, eg NSAIDs: aspirin and ibuprofen (trisk of DU).
- Prevent osteoporosis if long-term use (p696): exercise, bisphosphonates, calcium and vitamin D supplements, smoking cessation advice.

Do not stop long-term steroids abruptly as adrenal insufficiency may occur. Once a daily dose of 7.5mg/day of prednisolone is reached, withdrawal should be gradual. Patients on short-term treatment (<3 weeks) can be stopped immediately, unless they have had repeated courses of steroids, a history of adrenal suppression, greater than 40mg daily, or doses at night, where withdrawal should be gradual.

Azathioprine SE: p549. *Interactions:* mercaptopurine and azathioprine (which is metabolized to mercaptopurine) are metabolized by xanthine oxidase (xO). So azathioprine toxicity results if xO inhibitors are co-administered (eg allopurinol).

Ciclosporin This is a calcineurin inhibitor, as is tacrolimus which works in a similar way. It has an important role in reducing rejection in organ and marrow transplant. The main SE is dose-related nephrotoxicity. Do blood levels.

- Other SE: gum hyperplasia, tremor, BPT (stop if ↑↑), oedema, paraesthesiae, confusion, seizures, hepatotoxicity, lymphoma, skin cancer—avoid sunbathing.
- Monitor U&E and creatinine every 2 weeks for the first 3 months, then monthly if dose >2.5mg/kg/d (every 2 months if less than this). ► Reduce the dose if creatinine rises by >30% on 2 measurements *even if the creatinine is still in normal range*. Stop if the abnormality persists. Also monitor LFT.
- Interactions are legion: [ciclosporin]↑ by: ketoconazole, diltiazem, verapamil, the Pill, erythromycin, grapefruit juice. [ciclosporin]↓ by: barbiturates, carbamazepine, phenytoin, rifampicin. Avoid concurrent nephrotoxics: eg gentamicin. Concurrent NSAIDs augment hepatotoxicity—monitor LFT.

Methotrexate An antimetabolite. Inhibits dihydrofolate reductase, which is involved in the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines. See p549.

Cyclophosphamide An alkylating agent. SE: marrow suppression (monitor FBC), nausea, infertility, teratogenic, haemorrhagic cystitis due to an irritative urinary metabolite. There is a slight trisk of later developing bladder cancer or leukaemia.

Side-effects of steroid use

System:	Adverse reactions:
Gastrointestinal	Pancreatitis
	Candidiasis
	Oesophageal ulceration
	Peptic ulceration
Musculoskeletal	Myopathy
	Osteoporosis
	Fractures
	Growth suppression
Endocrine	Adrenal suppression
	Cushing's syndrome
CNS	Aggravated epilepsy
	Depression; psychosis
Eye	Cataracts; glaucoma
	Papilloedema
Immune	Increased susceptibility to and severity of infections, eg chickenpox

Steroids can also cause fever and wcct; steroids only rarely cause leucopenia.

Explain side-effects in terms that patients understand: document this and your plans to prevent osteoporosis if steroid use is going to be long term. Because the risks are mostly long term, you can use your judgement about when to explain about each side-effect. Because steroids can be life-saving, explaining everything all at once in a graphic way may result in your patient being very well informed, but dead.





Contents

Classification of pathogens 374–375

An approach to infectious diseases:

Travel advice 377

Antibiotics: penicillins 378

Cephalosporins and others 379

Empirical 'blind' treatment 382

Using a side-room laboratory 383

Drug abuse & infectious diseases 384

PUO and the tropical traveller 386–9

Gastroenteritis 390

Immunization 391

Nosocomial infections 391

Some specific infections:

Malaria 394

Tuberculosis 398 (MDR-TB 409)

Infectious mononucleosis 401

Influenza 402

Toxoplasmosis & CMV 404

Cytomegalovirus 404

Viral hepatitis 406

HIV 408–415

Sexually transmitted infections 416
(scabies, chlamydia etc)

Vaginal discharge & urethritis 418

Some Gram +ve infections 420

• Staphylococci (including MRSA, VISA)

• Streptococci • Anthrax; Listeriosis

• Diphtheria • Nocardiosis

Some Gram -ve infections 422

• Enterobacteria • Brucella

• Pertussis • Pasteurella

• Pseudomonas • Yersinia

Less common infections:

Tetanus 424

Cholera & bacillary dysentery 426

Leprosy 428

Spirochetes (including Syphilis) 430

Viral haemorrhagic fevers 432

Polio, rabies, and dengue 432

Arthropod-borne bacteria 434

Q fever 434

Typhus 435

Trench fever; ehrlichiosis 434

Some GI protozoa (giardia *et al*) 436

Trypanosomiasis 438

Leishmaniasis 439

Fungi 440

Topics elsewhere *Infections causing cancer* (H×9)—**viruses**: HPV→ca cervix + head & neck ca (OHCS p570); HHV-4/EBV→nasopharyngeal ca + lymphoma (p356); HHV-8→Kaposi sarcoma (p716); HTLV-1→leukaemia; HBV & HCV→HCC (p270)—**helminths**, eg *Schistosoma haematobium*→bladder cancer (p646)—bacteria *Helicobacter*→stomach ca (p620).¹

See also: Surgical prophylaxis (p572); SBE/IE (p144); pneumonia (p160–6); lung abscess (p164); lung fungi (p168); UTI (p288); encephalitis (p834); ►meningitis (p832).

We thank Dr Chris Conlon, our Specialist Reader, and Sinead Taylor, our Junior Reader.



Fig 1. Infections seduce us into 3 beautiful but dangerous beliefs—that we can say that the cause of any communicable disease:

1 Is often simple and unitary, suggesting that simple 'magic bullet' treatments will work.

2 Determines the features of the disease more than host factors or social milieu.

3 Can be killed, leading to diseases being conquered by applying ever more reductionist science (microscopes, PCR, etc).

As we shall see, the 3 great infectious diseases (TB, malaria, and HIV) test these ideas to destruction and show their enduring nature by requiring 3 older principles: co-evolution, co-operation, and compromise.

An example: prospective studies show that after infective diarrhoea, some people recover fast while others get irritable bowel symptoms for years—predicated by their mental state at the time of infection.² Don't blame the pathogen; don't blame the patient: don't blame anyone. Instead look for networks of interrelating causes interacting with random events.

The image is of the poet Rupert Brooke (1887–1915), before he died of the mosquito bite described in Box 1: a random event witnessed by the hidden heart and face concealed in the image—his 'pulse in the eternal mind', seen here bidding us to act *now*, to right the wrongs for which infectious diseases are so infamous.

Nematodes (roundworms) 442

Cestodes (tapeworms) 444

Trematodes (flukes) 445

Zoonoses and exotic infections 446

Death by septicaemia: two incompatible views

1 "Everything is for the best in the best of all possible worlds". *Candide*. Voltaire

This is guaranteed (according to belief) either, in a graceful way, by God's goodness (and his always beneficent if mysterious ways) or by the messy ways of natural selection (the weak are rooted out so that the strong may flourish).

2 "Preventable death is a tragic waste for which nothing can compensate and from which we can look for no crumb of comfort." As Henry James said on learning of the death by septicaemia of Rupert Brooke (fig1) "I have no philosophy, nor piety, no art of reflection, no theory of compensation to meet things so hideous, so cruel, and so mad, they are just unspeakably horrible and irredeemable to me and I stare at them with angry and almost blighted eyes". *Henry James*

We cite the infectious anger of this old Master to motivate us to do whatever it takes to stop these lives slipping through our fingers.¹ And as we look out at our burning world through his pupils we see how his "almost" blighted eyes reveal a tantalizing hint of resilience—on which we found this chapter.

Getting the balance right in infectious diseases (ID)

It is not possible for any ID chapter to be constructed so that it has the right balance throughout the world. Many of our readers come from communities where tetanus and malaria are daily problems—whereas, in UK consulting rooms, chest, GU, and ENT infections are likely to dominate.

In parts of Africa, ~70% of hospitalized patients are HIV+ve,² and most cannot even begin to mount an immune response to approach the classic descriptions beloved of standard textbooks (eg there is meningitis without meningism; pneumonia without fever^{etc}), and here medicine is, it seems, no more than the pathology of immunosuppression. In Western hospital specialist ID practice, the chief problems are:

- Respiratory tract infections (p160–p168, and *Emergencies*, p826)
- Hospital-acquired infections, eg p392, p162, p420 (MRSA), p247 (*C. difficile*)
- Immunocompromise, eg HIV (p408–p415) and febrile neutropenia (p346)
- Infections associated with general surgery (p572 & p578)
- Infections in intensive care unit patients (examples on p382 & p441)
- Osteomyelitis (*OHCS* p696) and prosthetic joint infections (*OHCS* p707)
- Illness in a returning traveller (p388).

All these would be trumped by pandemic flu, if highly pathogenic (p402). But in all areas and at all times, the pitfalls are the same: not taking time to find out about your patient—where he has been, what his hobbies are (and his work), and with whom he or she has had contact. Always have a high index of suspicion for TB, and always remember that ID rarities are often very treatable.

Know your local emerging diseases (p387) and your local multiresistant organisms; remember that it is possible to have more than one infection. ▶ *Two heads are better than one: so when in doubt, get help*. The best help is often from good microbiology and imaging departments. In many places these are impossible luxuries: a chest x-ray can cost more than the entire yearly health budget allocated to each patient.³ If this is your predicament, try not to give up: bring your microscope to the bedside (p383) and campaign for better times.

Notifiable diseases^{UK} Inform the Public Health Consultant

Anthrax	Malaria	Rubella
Cholera	Measles	Scarlet fever
Diphtheria	Meningococcal sepsis	Tetanus
Dysentery (amoebiasis, typhoid/paratyphoid)	Mumps	Tuberculosis
Encephalitis	Ophthalmia neonatorum	Typhus
Food poisoning	Plague	Viral haemorrhagic fevers, eg yellow fever; lassa fever
Leprosy; Leptospirosis	Poliomyelitis	Whooping cough/pertussis
	Rabies; Relapsing fever	

(UK Health Protection Agency www.hpa.org.uk. 020 7759 2700; webteam@hpa.org.uk)

1 If you feel small and insignificant in the face of this challenge, remember that the mosquito that killed Rupert Brooke on his way to Gallipoli in 1915 was smaller still. See also: www.survivingsepsis.org.



Fig 1. What is life? A thing of dynamism, fragility, beauty, danger, and evanescence, gushing forth from a single source, to be sure. But here the certainties end: what does it take to be alive? Are viruses and prions alive?¹⁻⁶ How many branches are there on our tree?²⁻⁹ The harder we look, the more complexities we find. With the recent creation of synthetic bacteria (*Mycoplasma laboratorium*, seen here on the right issuing from its own domain) even the surety of a single common ancestor disappears into smoke.

Because micro-organisms get us up at night and kill our friends (p373) we think of them as bad. This is a big mistake. Kill off micro-organisms and the whole show fizzles out. Micro-organisms gave us the DNA and organelles needed for reading and digesting this page. Even killing a single pathogen might be a mistake: Sod's Law (see p359) will probably ensure that something worse will come to inhabit the vacated ecospace. So the whole affair is like one of our dear, complex geriatric patients: prod one part of her system and events ripple out in an unending stream of unintended consequences, played out under the stars (above), which themselves are evolving, and which donate and receive our primordial elements (p732).

Photo © David Meads.

1 If a thing is organic and converts nutrients into progeny it is alive. If not, it is either non-living, dead, dying, or male. The average mind is surprised to learn that long before birth, baby girls have their full complement of eggs for the next generation; but for biologists this fact just illustrates Aristotle's dictum that the defining essence of life is that it has a plan for its own survival and continuity.

2 Kingdoms are *not* the top categories. Think of 3 grand domains: Archaea, Bacteria (Eubacteria), and Eukarya. Archaea are like bacteria, having no cell nucleus or organelles, but as they have an independent evolutionary history they form a domain of their own. Eukarya have chromosomes and organelles and give rise to plants, animals, and fungi. Single-celled eukaryotes (protists) loom large in this chapter: plasmodia (malaria), trypanosoma (sleeping sickness), amoebae and giardia (p436).

Examples of pathogens from various types of bacteria

This table is not exhaustive; it is simply a guide for the forthcoming pages.

Gram-positive cocci

Staphylococci (including MRSA, p420):
coagulase +ve, eg *Staph. aureus*
coagulase -ve, eg *Staph. epidermidis*

Streptococci (see fig 2 and p420):

β -haemolytic streptococci, eg *Strep.*

pyogenes Lancefield group A

α -haemolytic streptococci

Strep. mitior, *Strep. mutans*

Strep. pneumoniae (pneumococcus)

Strep. sanguis

Enterococci (non-haemolytic):

E. faecalis (not a typical strep)

Anaerobic streptococci

Gram-positive bacilli (rods)

Aerobes

Bacillus anthracis (anthrax: p420)

Corynebacterium diphtheriae (p421)

Listeria monocytogenes (p421)

Nocardia species

Anaerobes:

Clostridium

C. botulinum (botulism: p421)

C. perfringens (gas gangrene: p421)

C. tetani (tetanus: p424)

C. difficile (diarrhoea, p427)

Actinomyces: *Actinomyces*

israelii (p421), *A. naeslundii*,

A. odontolyticus, *A. viscosus*

Intracellular bacteria: (o=obligate)

Chlamydia ^o (p416, p162, OHCS p286)

C. trachomatis: Tropical eye disease

trachoma (OHCS p450)=serovars A-C

GU/cervicitis (p417)=serovars B-K¹⁰

lymphogranuloma ven. (p416)=L1-3¹¹

Chlamydomphila psittaci (p162)

Chlamydomphila pneumoniae (p162)

Coxiella burnetii ^o (p434)

Bartonella ^o and *Ehrlichia* ^o (p434)

Rickettsia ^o (typhus, p435)

Legionella pneumophila (p162)

Gram-negative cocci

Neisseria: *Neisseria meningitidis* (meningitis, septicaemia)

N. gonorrhoea (gonorrhoea, p418)

Moraxella: *Moraxella*

catarrhalis (pneumonia, p423)

Gram-negative bacilli (rods)

Escherichia coli

Shigella species (p426)

Salmonella species (p426)

Citrobacter freundii; *C. koseri*

Klebsiella pneumoniae; *K. oxytoca*

Enterobacter aerogenes; *E. cloacae*

Serratia marcescens; *Proteus mirabilis*

Morganella morganii

Providencia species; *Yersinia* (*Y. pestis*,

Y. enterocolitica, *Y. paratuberculosis*)

Pseudomonas aeruginosa (p422)

Haemophilus influenzae (p422)

Brucella species (p423)

Bordetella pertussis (p422)

Pasteurella multocida (p447)

Vibrio cholerae (p426)

Campylobacter jejuni (p390)

Enterobacteriaceae (p390 & p422)

Anaerobes:

Bacteroides (wound infections, p572)

Fusobacterium

Helicobacter pylori (p242)

Mycobacteria: *M. tuberculosis* (TB, p398)

M. bovis & *M. leprae* (leprosy, p428)

Atypical mycobacteria: ^{► Suspect if imm-}
uncompromised

M. avium intracellulare (p411)

M. scrofulaceum

M. kansasii

M. malmoense

M. marinum

M. xenopi

M. goodii

M. smegmatis, *M. phlei*, *M. flavescens*

Spirochetes (p430): *Borrelia burgdorferi* (Lyme dis., p430); *Bor. recurrentis*

Treponema (syphilis; yaws; pinta)


Leptospira (Weil's dis.; canicola fever)



Fig 2 Streptococci are grouped by haemolytic pattern (α , β , or non-haemolytic) or by Lancefield antigen (A-G), or by species. Rebecca Lancefield (1895-1981) is shown here with her hand lens, typing streps with a variety of M protein-specific¹ antibodies mixed with a streptococcal extract by detecting the precipitin in a pipette. Her lab became known as the Scotland Yard of Streptococcal Mysteries after she found that the most grievous crimes of the streptococcus almost always involve M as a secret accomplice. Although she arrested M on many occasions, M outlived her, and still stalks our wards and clinics.¹²

©Dr V Fischetti, Rockefeller University, NY.

1 M proteins prevent neutrophils from engulfing streps unless a neutralizing antibody is present; hence repeated strep infections are common—immunity to one strep doesn't help with other types, eg streps with M1, 3, 4, 5, 12, 14, 18, 19 & 24 cause throat infection—M 2, 49, 57, 59, 60 & 61 cause impetigo.¹³

DNA viruses A) Double-stranded DNA	
Papovavirus	Papilloma virus: human warts JC virus: progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy, PML
Adenovirus	>30 serotypes; 10% of viral respiratory disease 7% of viral meningitis
Human herpes viruses (HHV)	Alphaherpesvirus ^a (eg neurotropic), beta ^b (eg epithelio- tropic) and gammaherpesvirus ^c (lymphotropic): <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Herpes simplex virus^a (HSV) 1 & 2 (HHV-1 & HHV-2, p400)• Herpes (varicella) zoster virus^a (HHV-3, p400)• Cytomegalovirus^b—CMV, also called HHV-5, (p404)• Herpes virus 6^b & 7^b (HHV-6 & 7): roseola infantum (mild, <i>OHCS</i> p143); also post-transplant, like CMV• Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) (HHV-4, p401)^y• Infectious mononucleosis (glandular fever)• Burkitt's lymphoma; nasopharyngeal carcinoma HHV-8: Kaposi's sarcoma (p716)
	
Fig1. Oral herpes (HSV1 or 2).	
Pox viruses	(1) Variola: smallpox (eradicated in 1979; some stocks left) (2) Vaccinia, cowpox (3) Orf, cutaneous pustules, caught from sheep (4) Molluscum contagiosum, pearly umbilicated papules, typically seen in children or with HIV
Hepatitis B virus	See p406
B) Single-stranded DNA	
Erythrovirus (=parvovirus)	Erythema infectiosum (fifth disease, <i>OHCS</i> p142) 'slapped cheek' appearance ± aplastic crises
RNA viruses A) Double-stranded RNA	
Reovirus	Eg rotavirus (p390), infantile gastroenteritis
B) Positive single-stranded RNA	
Picornavirus	1 Rhinovirus, common cold (>90 serotypes) 2 Enteroviruses (eg echoviruses) are a leading cause of meningo-encephalitis/acute flaccid paralysis ¹⁴ <ul style="list-style-type: none">i Coxsackie A (meningitis, gastroenteritis); Coxsackie B (pericarditis, Bornholm disease)ii Hepatitis A virus; iii Echovirus (30% of viral meningitis)iv Enterovirus EV71 (hand, foot and mouth disease, <i>OHCS</i> p143)v Poliovirus, p432
Coronavirus	Eg Urbani SARS-associated coronavirus (Dr Urbani described it and died in an outbreak in Vietnam in 2003); ►p163.
Togavirus	1 Rubella 2 Alphavirus 3 Flavivirus (yellow fever, dengue, hepatitis C)
C) Negative single-stranded RNA	
Orthomyxovirus	Influenza A, B, C (p402)
Paramyxovirus	Parainfluenza, mumps, measles, respiratory syncytial virus
Arenavirus	Lassa fever (p388 & p432), some viral haemorrhagic fevers, lymphocytic-choriomeningitis virus (LCM)
Rhabdovirus	Rabies (p432)
Bunyavirus	Some viral haemorrhagic fevers
D) Retroviruses (RNA viruses using reverse transcriptase to make DNA)	
Human immunodeficiency virus —HIV-1, HIV-2. Types A & B predominate in UK (p408)	
Human T-lymphotropic virus HTLV-1-4; zoonotic transmission of simian T-lymphotropic viruses (STLVs) from other primates to humans ¹⁵ <i>HTLV-1</i> is mostly asymptomatic, but 1-5% develop ATLL (adult T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma). Endemic clusters: southern Japan, Gabon, French Guyana and Colombia. ¹⁶ <i>HTLV-2</i> may be passed on by transfusions, injecting drug users, or sexually. Also seen in Amerindians and Pygmies. It may cause tropical spastic paraparesis (p520). <i>HTLV-3 & 4</i> : Prevalent in primate hunters in Cameroon.	



Travel and infectious disease

Most travel-related illness is not from infections, but due to accidents, violence, MI, etc. Most infections are due to ignorance or indiscretions. ► *Advice to travellers is more important than vaccination*: eg simple hygiene, malaria prophylaxis, and protective measures (eg safer sex). **Malaria** is a big killer; see p396 for prevention. **Rabies**: vaccinate before travelling if post-exposure vaccination is unlikely to be available (or their activities mean risk is ↑—or if they will be in a rabies area for >1month); seek immediate attention if bitten (wash the wound well); see p432. For **cholera** and **traveller's diarrhoea**, see p426 & p390.¹⁷

Vaccines for travellers¹⁸

Routine vaccination	Selective use for travellers	Mandatory vaccination
Diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis	Meningococcal disease	Yellow fever (in some countries)
Hepatitis B ¹	Hepatitis A	Meningococcal disease & polio ⁴
Haem. influenzae B	Cholera	
BCG, ² HPV (for girls)	Japanese encephalitis ³	
Influenza	Rabies	
MMR	Tick-borne encephalitis	
Pneumococcal disease	Typhoid fever	
Poliomyelitis	Yellow fever ³	
Rotavirus (for babies)		
Varicella		

1 Routine for certain age groups or risk factors, selective for general travellers.

2 No longer routine in most industrialized countries.

3 These vaccines are included in some routine immunization programmes.

4 Required by Saudi Arabia for pilgrims; updates—see www.who.int/wer.

If only one attendance is possible, all is not lost (make up *en route*): malaria prophylaxis/advice: p396. Suggested vaccines: **Africa**: Meningitis, typhoid, diphtheria, tetanus, polio, hepatitis A ± yellow fever. **Asia**: Typhoid, diphtheria, tetanus, polio, hepatitis A. Consider rabies and Japanese encephalitis. **Menin-gitis and Hajj pilgrimage to Saudi Arabia**: All >2yrs old must be vaccinated against meningococcal meningitis with quadrivalent vaccine (serogroups A, C, Y & W135); must be <3yrs ago but not within the last 10 days. If 3 months–2yrs of age, give 2 doses of the A vaccine separated by 3 months.

S. America: Typhoid, diphtheria, tetanus, hepatitis A ± yellow fever ± rabies.

Travel if immunocompromised: Avoid live vaccines. Hepatitis B vaccine: p271.

Preventing traveller's diarrhoea Water: If in doubt, boil all water. Chlorination is ok, but doesn't kill amoebic cysts (get tablets from pharmacies). Filter water before purifying. Distinguish between simple gravity filters and water purifiers (which also attempt to sterilize chemically). Choose a unit that is verified by bodies such as the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine (eg the MASTA¹⁹ *Travel Well Personal Water Purifier*). Make sure that all containers are disinfected. Try to avoid surface water and intermittent tap supplies. In Africa assume that all unbottled water is unsafe. With bottled water, ensure the rim is clean & dry. Avoid ice. Other water-borne diseases include schistosomiasis (p445).

Food: Avoid salads and peel your own fruit. If you cannot wash your hands, discard the part of the food that you are holding (with bananas, careful unzipping obviates this precaution).¹⁷ Hot, well-cooked food is best (>70°C for 2min is no guarantee; many pathogens survive boiling for 5min, but few last 15min).²⁰

Chemoprophylaxis: Prophylactic antibiotics are not needed in healthy people, but those, eg with Crohn's/uc or immunosuppression should get prophylactic antibiotics. Bismuth salicylate can (to some extent) prevent traveller's diarrhoea. Ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h po for 72h²¹ + loperamide can give ~90% protection.




Notes	Amoxicillin/ ampicillin	Cefepime ²²	Cefotaxime ²³	Ciprofloxacin	Co-amoxiclav	Colistin ²⁴	Erythromycin ²⁵	Flucloxacillin	Gentamicin	Imipenem/ meropenem	Metronidazole	Penicillin	Tetracyclines	Ticarcillin/piperacillin/ azlocillin	Trimethoprim ²⁶	Vancomycin/ teicoplanin
S=usually sensitive 2=S, but may be 2 nd choice ?=may be resistant (esp. if hospital-acquired) R=resistance likely 0=not appropriate																
Sources: Medline and GAT (Sanford)																
<i>Staph aureus</i> (MRSA, see p420)	R	S	S	?	S	0	?	S	S	2	R	R	?	R if MRSA	?	S
<i>Strep pneumoniae</i>	?	S	?	?	?	0	?	?	R	2	R	?	?	0	?	S
<i>Strep pyogenese</i>	?	S	S	?	S	0	?	S	R	2	R	S	?	0	?	S
<i>Enterococcus faecalis</i>	?	S	R	R	S	0	R	R	R	2	R	R	R	2	?	S
<i>N. gonorrhoea</i> (p418)	?	?	?	R ²⁷	?	0	R ²⁷	0	0	2	R	?	2	0	R	0
<i>N. meningitidis</i>	?	S	S	?	?	0	0	0	0	2	R	?	0	0	R	R
<i>H. influenza</i>	?	S	S	?	?	0	?	R	0	2	R	?	S	0	S	R
<i>E. coli</i> ²⁸ (UTI, nitrofurantoin p381)	R	S	?	?	?	0	R	R	S	2	R	R	2	2R	?	R
<i>E. coli</i> ESBL ²⁹ extended spectrum beta lactamase	R	?	R	R	R	R	R	R	S	?S	R	R	R	R	R	R
<i>Klebsiella</i> ESBL	R	?	S	?	R	2	R	R	S	2	R	R	?	2R	?	R
<i>Proteus mirabilis</i>	R	S	S	S	S	0	R	R	S	2	R	R	R	2R	?	R
<i>Serratia</i> species ²⁶	R	?	S	S	R	0	R	R	S	2	R	R	R	R	?	R
<i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> ³⁰	R	?	R	?	R	2	R	R	?	2	R	R	R	R	R	R
<i>Acinetobacter baumannii</i> ³⁰	R	R	R	R	R	2	R	R	R ³¹	p423	R	R	R	R	R	R
<i>Bacteroides fragilis</i>	R	R	R	R	R	0	?	R	R	2	S	R	?	R	R	R
<i>Clostridium difficile</i>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	S	0	0	0	0	S

Penicillin-based antibiotics	Usual adult dose:	In renal failure:
Amoxicillin Uses as for ampicillin but better absorbed PO. For IV therapy, use ampicillin.	250–500mg/8h PO 1g/8h in recurrent or severe pneumonia	↓Dose if cc <10 (cc=creatinine clearance, mL/min)
Ampicillin Broader spectrum than penicillin; more active against Gram -ve rods, but β-lactamase sensitive. Amoxicillin is better absorbed PO.	500mg/4–6h IM/IV Listeria: 2g/4h IVI for 10d	↓If cc <10, give doses every 12–24h
Benzylpenicillin = penicillin G Most streps, meningococcus, gonococcus, syphilis, gas gangrene, anthrax, actinomycosis, and many anaerobes.	300–600mg/6h iv, 2.4g/4h in meningitis. If dose >1.2g, inject at rate <300mg/min	Anaphylaxis risk <1:100,000; huge doses cause Na ⁺ ± fits in renal failure
Co-amoxiclav = amoxicillin 250 or 500mg + clavulanic acid 125mg confers β-lactamase resistance so broader spectrum, but LFT may rise.	1 tab/8h PO IV form: p382. NB: May contribute to <i>C. diff</i> infections ³²	If eGFR 10–30, give 1 tab/12h; if eGFR <10, 1 tab (250+125)/24h
Flucloxacillin For Gram +ve β-lactamase producers (staphylococci).	250–500mg/6h PO ½h before food. 0.5–2g/6h IV	Dose unaltered if eGFR >10
Phenoxymethylpenicillin (=pen. v) Like pen. G but poorly absorbed; use as prophylaxis or to complete IV course.	250–500mg/6h PO; take ½h before food	In severe renal failure, give doses every 12h
Piperacillin Very broad spectrum, including anaerobes, <i>Pseudomonas</i> , staphs (not MRSA or coagulase -ve). Reserve only for those with severe infection. May be used with aminoglycosides (but not in the same IVI).	Tazocin® = tazobactam 500mg + piperacillin 4g: dose: 4.5g/8h IV over 3–5min	Max dose of Tazocin® if eGFR <20: 4.5g/12h
Procaine penicillin (= procaine benzylpenicillin) Depot injection; good for syphilis; only available on a named patient basis in the UK.	Syphilis: p431	Dose unaltered in renal failure. Resistance in GC is a problem, p418 ²⁷
Ticarcillin Very broad spectrum, eg <i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>Proteus</i> . Use with an aminoglycoside; more active than azlocillin or piperacillin.	Timentin® = 3g ticarcillin + 200mg clavulanic acid. Dose: 3.2g/8h IV1 (/4h in severe infections)	If eGFR 30–60 1g/8h If eGFR 10–30 0.8g/12h

Antibiotics: cephalosporins

Spectrum Many cephalosporins are active against staphs (including β -lactamase producers), streps (except group D, *Enterococcus faecalis* and *faecium*), pneumococci, *E. coli*, some *Proteus*, *Klebsiella*, *Haemophilus*, *Salmonella*, and *Shigella*. 2nd-generation drugs (cefuroxime, cefamandole) are active against some *Neisseria* and *Haemophilus*. 3rd-generation drugs (cefotaxime, ceftazidime, ceftriaxone) have better activity against Gram -ve organisms. Ceftazidime has less Gram +ve activity (esp. against *Staph aureus*) and is used in *Pseudomonas* infections.

Uses  Oral cephalosporins (cefaclor, cefalexin, cefuroxime axetil) have a role in UTI, pneumonia, and otitis media, but are not 1st-line (unless penicillin-allergic; but 10% will also be cephalosporin allergic). Their major use is parenteral, eg in surgical prophylaxis or post-op infection. 3rd-generation drugs (eg ceftriaxone) may be used in septicæmia. **SE:** Hypersensitivity; warfarin potentiation.

Antibiotic	Adult dose	Notes	For body surface area calculation, see BNF
Cefaclor	250mg (max 1g)/8h PO	No dose change in RF	
Cefalexin	500mg/8h PO Max: 1.5g/6h PO	Max 3g/d if eGFR 40–50 (1.5g/d if eGFR 10–40; 750mg/d if eGFR <10)	
Cefepime ^{4th}	1–2g/12h IVI	Good activity against <i>Pseudomonas</i> , enterobacter, other resistant Gram -ve organisms and <i>S. aureus</i> . If cc 10–50: 1–2g/12h; if cc \leq 10: 1g/24h	
Cefpirome ^{4th}	1–2g/12h IV over 5min	Broad spectrum, used in polymicrobial infection; pyelonephritis; pneumonia. Not for MRSA (p420) or bacteroides. Good against enterobacter. ⁴² In renal failure, get help, eg load with 1–2g, then if cc 20–50: 500mg–1g/12h; if cc 5–20: 500mg–1g/24h	
Cefixime	Syrup: $\frac{1}{2}$ –1yr: 3.75mL (75mg)/d 1–4yrs: 5mL/d 5–10yrs: 10mL/d Adults: 200mg/12–24h	Syrup = 100mg/5mL. Active against streps, coliforms, <i>Haemophilus</i> , <i>Proteus</i> and anaerobes. Staphylococci, <i>E. faecalis</i> , and <i>Pseudomonas</i> are resistant. Lower dose if eGFR <20.	
Cefotaxime ^{3rd}	1–2g/6–12h IVI/IM; max 3g/6h (gonorrhoea: 500mg stat)	Broad spectrum for serious infections only (pneumonia, meningitis). Unreliable activity against <i>Pseudomonas</i> . If eGFR <5 give 1g stat, then halve dose.	
Cefradine	250–500mg/6h PO or 500mg–1g/12h PO	Less active than cefuroxime. Halve normal dose if eGFR 5–20.	
Ceftazidime ^{3rd}	UTI: 500mg–1g/12h IM/IV Other: 1–2g/8h Max: 3g/12h if elderly Route: IV/IM (avoid IM if dose >1g)	Broad spectrum, incl. most <i>Pseudomonas</i> but less effective against Gram +ves; for serious infections only; may help in blind R _x of neutropenic sepsis ³³ (cefepime is better). ³⁴ Reduce dose if eGFR <50.	
Ceftriaxone ^{3rd}	1–4g daily IM/IV over 3min; give \leq 1g at each IM site. Use IVI, not IV, if dose >1g	Many Gram +ve and -ve infections. Used in meningitis (p382), pre-colonic surgery, and gonorrhoea. No activity against <i>Listeria</i> , enterococci, and <i>Pseudomonas</i> . If eGFR <10 ↓ dose, eg limit dose to 2g/d and check levels	
Cefuroxime	250–500mg/12h PO 750mg–1.5g/8h IV/IM Max IV: 1.5g/6h	Broad spectrum and good Gram -ve activity. Used in: surgical prophylaxis; cholecystitis; ³⁵ post-op infections; severe pneumonia. Give 750mg per 12h if eGFR 10–20.	

Abbreviations: RF = renal failure; cc = creatinine clearance; cc^m = cc/1.73m² body area; ^{4th} = 4th-generation cephalosporin; not all are available in the UK; ^{3rd} = 3rd-generation. Source: GAT and BNF 2013. eGFR = estimated GFR mL/min/1.73m².



Antibiotic (and uses)	Adult dose examples	Notes
cc=creatinine clearance, mL/min		
Amikacin See gentamicin. Use ideal weight, p446.	7.5mg/kg/12h IV; (~50% 12-18h if cc 10-50).	Resistance growing, but less common than for gentamicin
Azithromycin See clarithromycin, may be good against <i>N. gonorrhoea</i> . ²⁷	500mg/24h PO for 3d.	SE: see erythromycin. Caution if eGFR <10.
Chloramphenicol Rarely used 1 st -line. May be used in typhoid fever & <i>Haemophilus</i> infection. Also in blind Rx of meningitis if patient allergic to both penicillins and cephalosporins. Avoid in lactation and late pregnancy.	12.5mg/kg/6h PO or IV; 25mg/kg/6h may be used in septicaemia or meningitis.	SE (rare): marrow aplasia (check FBC often), neuritis, GI upset. Avoid long or repeated courses and in liver impairment or if cc <10mL/min. <i>Interactions</i> : warfarin, rifampicin, phenytoin, sulfonylureas, phenobarbital.
Ciprofloxacin Used in adult cystic fibrosis, typhoid, <i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Campylobacter</i> , prostatitis, and serious or resistant infections. Avoid overuse.	250-750mg/12h PO 200-400mg/12h IVI over ≥½h (over 1h, if 400mg used).	Good oral antipseudomonal agent. β-lactamase-resistant. If eGFR <30 ↑ dose interval to /24h. SE: D&V; rash; tendon rupture (esp. if >60yrs or on steroids); potentiates theophylline.
Clarithromycin A macrolide, like erythromycin, used for: <i>S. aureus</i> , streptococci, <i>Mycoplasma</i> , <i>H. pylori</i> , <i>Chlamydia</i> , MAI (p411).	250-500mg/12h PO for 7-14d. <i>H. pylori</i> : 500mg/12h PO for 1wk as triple therapy (p243). MAI may need 12wks (p411).	Halve dose if eGFR <30. <i>Interactions</i> : statins, ergot, warfarin, carbamazepine, theophyllines, zidovudine; never use with pimozide.
Clindamycin Active against Gram +ve cocci including penicillin resistant staph, and anaerobes.	150-300mg/6h PO; max 450mg/6h PO. 0.2-0.9g/8h IV or IM (by IVI only, if >600mg used).	Stop if diarrhoea occurs (pseudomembranous colitis, p247). Used in staph. bone/joint infection.
Co-trimoxazole Sulfamethoxazole 400mg + trimethoprim 80mg. 1 st choice in <i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i> (p410), toxoplasmosis and nocardia. NB: can act against <i>S. aureus</i> .	960mg-144g/12h PO/IVI; see <i>Pneumocystis</i> (p410).	SE (mostly ∴ sulfonamide, elderly at trisk): jaundice; Stevens-Johnson, fig 1 p725; marrow depression; folate↓. If eGFR 15-30, halve dose. cr: G6PD deficiency.
Daptomycin Used only in Gram +ve infections, eg staph septicaemia, right-sided endocarditis, but not pneumonia as it binds surfactant.	6mg/kg IVI over 30min once daily (every 48h if eGFR ≤30).	A new lipopeptide antibiotic occurring in soil saprotrophs. SE: BP↑, SVT, CCF, myalgia, CK↑ (in up to 10%), LFT↑, INR↑, platelets↓, hyperglycaemia.
Doxycycline Used in travellers' diarrhoea, <i>Chlamydia</i> , leptospirosis, syphilis, and brucellosis.	200mg PO on 1 st day then 100mg/24h; max 200mg/d in severe infections.	As for tetracycline, but may be used in renal failure.
Ertapenem Broad-spectrum carbapenem antibiotic used in bad aerobic Gram -ve infections (not <i>Pseudomonas</i>) and some staphs (not MRSA).	1g IVI over 30min daily, or 1g diluted with 3.2mL of 1% lidocaine IM.	SE: few; as with many antibiotics, <i>Clostridium difficile</i> colitis is reported. Max 500mg/d if eGFR <30.
Erythromycin Macrolide, used in penicillin allergy. Used 1 st line in atypical pneumonia, p162.	250-500mg/6h PO (≤4g/d in <i>Legionella</i>). 6.25-12.5mg/kg/6h IVI (adult and child).	SE: D&V; phlebitis in IV use. <i>Interactions</i> : statins, warfarin, theophylline, ergotamine, carbamazepine.
Fusidic acid/sodium fusidate Anti-staph agent (incl. some MRSA, p420); used in osteomyelitis.	500mg/8h PO.	Combine with another antistaphylococcal drug. SE: GI upset, reversible changes in LFTs.



Antibiotic (and uses):	Adult dose examples	Notes (eg use in renal failure)
Gentamicin Spectrum is wide but poor against streps & anaerobes, so use with a penicillin ± metronidazole. Synergy with ampicillin against enterococci. For serious Gram -ve infections.	►p766. <i>Once-daily IV dose</i> over 15min: 5mg/kg ^{LBW} (7mg if very ill). Plasma levels <i>not</i> needed if only one stat dose used, eg in UTI. Use LBW, lean body weight, p446.	Avoid: prolonged use, concurrent furosemide, use in pregnancy/myasthenia gravis. ►Do u&E often. SE: oto- and nephrotoxicity.
Imipenem (+cilastatin) Very broad spectrum: Gram +ve and -ve organisms, anaerobes and aerobes. β-lactam stable.	250-500mg/6h IVI. High doses risk seizures.	Pregnancy/lactation: avoid. SE: fits; D&V; myoclonus, eosinophilia, wcc↑, Coombs' +ve; LFT abnormal. See package insert, eg if <70kg. If eGFR <70, reduce dose; see datasheet.
Linezolid An oxazolidinone antibiotic used against MRSA, VISA, and VRE.	600mg/12h PO/IVI over 1h if eGFR >30 SE: D&V, gastritis, T ^o t, tinnitus, neuropathy, wcc↓.	May cause pancytopenia if ≥2wks' use; monitor FBC and visual acuity. CI: BP↑t, phaeochromocytoma, carcinoid, thyrotoxicosis
Meropenem See imipenem.	½-1g/8h IVI, max 2g/8h (1g/12h if eGFR 26-50).	Causes fewer seizures than imipenem.
Metronidazole 1 st choice vs anaerobes, <i>Gardnerella</i> , <i>Entamoeba histolytica</i> , and <i>Giardia lamblia</i> ; use PO in <i>C. difficile</i> .	400mg/8h PO. PR dose: 1g/8h for 3d then 1g/12h. IVI dose: 500mg/8h for ≤10d. Pregnancy/breast-feeding: avoid high doses.	Disulfiram reaction with alcohol; interacts with warfarin, phenytoin, cimetidine; care if LFT↑. SE: irreversible neuropathy (prolonged dosing).
Minocycline Spectrum is wider than tetracycline's.	100mg/12h PO. Monitor LFT.	As tetracycline, but more SE (hepatitis, pneumonitis).
Nitrofurantoin UTI.	50mg/6h PO with food.	Good vs <i>E.coli</i> . CI: eGFR <60.
Oxytetracycline	250-500mg/6h PO.	See tetracycline.
Rifampicin ^{UK} = rifampin ^{US} Mycobacteria, prophylaxis in meningitis contacts.	Dose example: 600mg/d PO before breakfast. See TB, p398.	Caution in liver disease. Interferes with contraceptive Pill. SE: p398.
Teicoplanin See vancomycin, but not given PO.	IV/IM: 400mg/12h for 3 doses, then 400mg/24h.	If eGFR 40-60, use normal dose but every 48h from day 4.
Tetracycline Used in chronic bronchitis; 1 st line in <i>Chlamydia</i> , Lyme disease, mycoplasma, brucellosis, rickettsia.	250-500mg/6h PO 1h before food. 500-1000mg/12h IVI (not if liver disease). IV preparation not available in UK.	Avoid if <12yrs old, in pregnancy, and if cc ≤50. Absorption ↓by iron, milk, and antacids. SE: photosensitivity, D&V.
Tobramycin As gentamicin; better against <i>Pseudomonas</i> .	1mg/kg/8h IVI or slow IV/IM. Dose↓ in renal failure.	Monitor levels (peak <10mg/L; trough <2mg/L); reduce dose if cc ≤50.
Trimethoprim Used in UTI, COPD. Dose in prophylaxis: 100mg/24h PO.	200mg/12h PO (100mg/12h PO if eGFR <15; if eGFR 15-30, halve dose from day 3).	SE: depressed marrow, D&V. cc 10-50: ½ dose after day 3. cc 10-15, ½ dose.
Vancomycin PO: <i>C. difficile</i> if severe infection (p247) or metronidazole is contraindicated; IV: MRSA or other Gram +ve organisms (not <i>Erysipelothrix</i> species).	125mg/6h PO; 1g/12h IVI over 100min; do peak level 2h post-IVI, eg after dose 3; aim for <30mg/L and ≤10mg/L pre-dose 4.	In renal failure, get help; nomograms are available. SE: renal and ototoxicity. Do not overuse (trisk of multiple resistance).

Abbreviations: MRSA, p420; VISA: vancomycin-intermediate resistance *S. aureus*; VRE: vancomycin-resistant enterococci.



History: A good history may reveal the source of infection: ask about respiratory, GI and GU symptoms; any travel or possible immunocompromise? **Signs** (variable!) T^o† (or ‡); pulset; respiratory ratet; BP† (eg ≤90/70 mmhg); look for localizing signs.

Tests: If time allows and not too ill, culture all possible sources before treating (blood, sputum, urine, faeces, skin/wound swabs, CSF, aspirates). Do FBC, ESR, CRP, U&E, LFT, clotting, serology, malaria film, acute phase serum. Save serum for virology (compare with convalescent sample in ~2wks), CXR, ABG if indicated. MSU/dipstick.

Prognosis: Poor if very old or young, BP†, WCC†, P_aO₂†, DIC, hypothermia.

Treatment: ▶▶ Get help (eg if you cannot get an IV access; antibiotics *must* be up and running within 1h of telltale signs of serious sepsis). Follow local guidelines. Suspect MRSA, so have a low threshold for using vancomycin (also useful if penicillin allergic). Change antibiotic in the light of sensitivities. Give drugs IV (over ≥5min) if severely ill (eg for ~2 days, then change to PO if possible). If in doubt, ask an infection specialist.

Common fatal errors³⁶ Nurses not reporting worsening vital signs; doctor not reacting, or wasting time trying in vain for IV access (p775); pharmacy slow to supply antibiotics; unsuitable antibiotic used; not acting on results of lab data.

Infection	Treatment examples (be aware of local guidelines)
Septicaemia (bloodstream infection)	
From urinary tract sepsis	Co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h (=amoxicillin 1g+clavulanic acid 200mg) IV over 3min + gentamicin IV 5mg/kg <i>once daily</i> is typical max dose; p767
From intra-abdominal sepsis	Ceftazidime 2g/8h IM/IV + metronidazole 500mg/8h IV†
▶▶ From <i>Meningococcus</i> sepsis	Cefotaxime 2g/6h (p833) or ceftriaxone 2g/12h IV over 30min
From skin or bone source	Flucloxacillin 1g/6h IV
Unknown cause	Co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h IV+ gentamicin 5–7mg/kg IV once daily, p767 + metronidazole 500mg/8h IV†
▶▶ With neutropenia (consider the MASCC score, p347)	Tazocin® =piperacillin 4g with tazobactam 500mg + gentamicin (as above). 4.5g/8h IV over ~4min
Pneumonia	
Mild community-acquired	Amoxicillin 500mg/8h PO
Possible atypical pneumonia	Add erythromycin 500mg/6h PO
Severe community-acquired	Co-amoxiclav as above + erythromycin 12.5mg/kg/6h IV; see legionellosis, p162
Hospital-acquired	Ceftazidime (above) or Tazocin® 4.5g/8h IV
Meningitis (p832)	
<i>Meningococcus</i>	▶▶ Ceftriaxone 2g/12h IV over 3min or cefotaxime, p833 (or benzylpenicillin 1.2g IV stat if outside hospital)
<i>Pneumococcus</i>	
<i>Haemophilus</i>	
<i>Listeria</i>	Add ampicillin 2g/4h IV† and gentamicin, p381
If HSV encephalitis possible	Add aciclovir 10mg/kg/8h IV† (if eGFR >50)
Endocarditis (p145)	
Osteomyelitis/septic arthritis	Flucloxacillin 1g/6h IV slowly
UTI (simple)	Trimethoprim 200mg/12h PO
Cellulitis	Flucloxacillin (p378)
Wound infection	Await swab result; if ill, flucloxacillin 1g/6h slow IV





Using a side-room laboratory (near-patient testing)

The main advantage of doing your own lab work is that it enables you to have intelligent chats with lab staff, and to encourage their diligence (lab staff make errors out of boredom; amateurs make errors out of ignorance). The great thing is to understand the sources of error—and allow for them at the bedside.³⁷ Be aware of health and safety issues. Where available, good dipstick or test-kit technology can be used, eg Optimal[®] for malaria diagnosis.

Urine Get used to microscoping your own urines. Labs are often too busy to do this well, and sometimes careful microscopy pays great dividends. See p290. Dipstick analysis is ok but misses casts, etc (p286) and cannot distinguish streps from rods. If dipstick +ve for leucocytes, nitrites, blood, or protein, send for culture and testing for antibiotic sensitivities. If +ve for glucose, suspect diabetes (do fasting plasma glucose). If heavily +ve for protein, do 24h protein collection.

Blood Use precautions: all specimens could be HBV, HCV, or HIV +ve. To make a *thick blood film* (malaria diagnosis), use fresh whole blood: a small blob should be spread out untidily to cover $\sim 1\text{cm}^2$, thinly enough for watch hands to be seen through. The untidiness helps the microscopist, giving areas of varying thickness, some of which will be ideal for what is often a tricky task. Label and allow to dry. To make a *thin blood film*, put 1 small drop of blood near one end of the slide. Take another slide, place its end in the drop of blood, angled at 45° . Push the slide away from you to spread the blood into a thin film (practice makes perfect!). Allow the film to dry, fix in methanol for 5s, then stain as follows.

Leishman's stain: Cover with 10 drops. After 30s add 20 drops of water. Leave for 15min. Pick up the slide with forceps (to avoid purple fingers) and rinse in fast-flowing tap water—for 1s only. Allow to dry. Examine under oil immersion. Note red cell morphology. Do a differential white count. Polymorphs have lobed nuclei. Lymphocytes are small (just larger than red cells) and round, having little cytoplasm. Monocytes are larger than lymphocytes, but similar, with kidney-shaped nuclei. Eosinophils are like polymorphs, but have prominent pink-red cytoplasmic granules. Basophils are rare, and have blue granules—images: p325. Learn to use a white cell counting chamber—don't expect to rival lab accuracy.

Field's stain is easy to use and gives good quick results for malaria, trypanosomes & filaria. Dip the slide in solution A for 5s then solution B for 3s. Dip in tap water for 5s after each staining. Stand to dry. Examine thick film for >5min before saying "no malaria". **NB:** ward *serology tests*, eg ParaSight F[®] are available for *P. falciparum*, but cannot replace microscopy as they are not 100% sensitive³⁸ and parasites are not quantified (needed to plan treatment). New, cheap, pocket microscopes such as the Newton (NM1) have a role here, as does PCR^{39,40}

Pus (Gram stain) Make a smear; fix by gentle heat. Flood slide with cresyl violet for 30s. Wash in running water. Flood with Lugol's iodine for 30s. Wash with running water. Decolourize with acetone for 1–3s until no blue colour runs out. Counterstain for 30s with neutral red or safranin. Wash and dry. Gram +ve organisms appear blue-black; Gram -ve ones look red, but are easier to miss.

Near-patient chemistry In one sense this is less taxing than the above tests—the skill lies in the people who made the reagents easy to use. A problem is quality control and the black box effect: when we put a strip into a machine, eg to measure cardiac enzymes, we cannot see the workings of the black box: it just gives a deceptively accurate-looking figure. Frequent calibration of equipment is only a partial answer to this. It is only after you have spent a long time trying to get good results from near-patient analysers, comparing paired samples with the lab, that one appreciates the reproducibility and reliability of the formal lab.

► Speed of reporting is useless if you cannot trust the results.

► Always consider this when there are evasive answers or unexplained findings, especially in younger patients. Ask direct questions: "Do you use any drugs?"; "Have you ever injected drugs? "; "Does your partner use any drugs? "; "Do you share needles? "; "Have you ever had an HIV test?"; "How do you finance your drugs?" List drugs used, and prescribed drugs, with names of prescriber.

Behavioural clues:

- Temporary resident seen by GP: "Just passing through your area".
- Demands analgesia/anti-emetics. Knows pharmacopoeia well: "I just need some pethidine for my renal colic/sickle-cell crisis".
- Erratic behaviour on the ward; unexplained absences; mood swings.
- Unrousable in the mornings; agitation from day 2.
- Heavy smoking; strange smoke smells (cannabis, cocaine, heroin).

Physical clues:

- Acetone or glue smell on breath (solvent abuse).
- Small pupils (opiates), reversed by naloxone.
- Needle tracks on arms, groin, legs, between toes; IV access hard.
- Abscesses and lymphadenopathy in nodes draining injection sites.
- Signs of drug-associated illnesses (endocarditis, p144; AIDS, p410, viral hepatitis).

Common and possible presentations in drug abusers	
Unconscious	p800 Benzodiazepines—if in ITU consider flumazenil 0.2mg IV over 15s then 0.1mg/min as needed, to 1mg (2mg if on ITU).
Psychosis or agitation	Ecstasy (p855), LSD, amphetamine, anabolic steroids, benzodiazepines. Haloperidol may help (p11).
Asthma or dyspnoea	Is there opiate-induced pulmonary oedema? NB: asthma may follow the smoking of heroin.
Lung abscess	Right-sided endocarditis (Staph) until proved otherwise.
PUO	Is it endocarditis, eg with no cardinal signs (p144)?
Fever/PUO/shivering/headache	Do blood cultures; start, eg gentamicin (p381 & p766).
Hyperpyrexia	See phenothiazine poisoning, p855.
Abscesses	If over injection site, then often of mixed organisms. Eg on injecting suspended tablets into groin.
DVT	Any compression damage (compartment syndrome)? Do ck.
Pneumonia	Pneumococcus, haemophilus, TB, pneumocystis (p410).
Tachyarrhythmia	(If young); cocaine, amphetamines, endocarditis.
Jaundice	Hepatitis A, B, or C; anabolic steroids (cholestasis).
'Glandular fever'	May be presentation of HIV seroconversion illness.
Osteomyelitis	Including spinal. <i>Staph. aureus</i> /Gram -ve organisms.
Constipation	If severe, opiate abuse may be the cause.
Blindness	Consider fungal ophthalmitis ± endocarditis.
Runny nose	Opiate withdrawal (+ colic/diarrhoea, yawns, lacrimation, dilated pupils, insomnia, piloerection, myalgia, mood↓; can occur in neonates if mother is an opiate abuser); cocaine use.
Neuropathies	(and any odd CNS signs) Consider solvent abuse.
Infarctions	(eg of spinal cord, brain, heart) Suspect cocaine use.



IV drug abuse and infectious disease

Vocabulary The 1st step in helping a recreational drug user is to communicate....

Amphetamines	May be called speed; whiz; Billy; pink champagne
Amyl nitrate	Goldrush; poppers; snappers
Barbiturates	Barbs; idiot pills
Synthetic cannabis-like drugs	Annihilator
Cocaine	Coke; Charlie; uncle; the white; the nice; snow; crack
Dihydrocodeine	DFs
Drug-induced sleep	Gauching; nodding; going on the nod
Drug intoxication	Stoned; off it; bladdered; ripped; wiped out; off my box
Heroin	Smack; the nasty; gear; brown; skag; hit; Harry; junk
Ecstasy (MDMA)	E; X; echo; disco biscuit; love drug; XTC; snow ⁴¹
Heroin with ecstasy	Party pack (2-for-1 deal when pusher's business is low)
Filter	Bud/cigarette tip, for drawing drugs through before use
GBL (γ-butyrolactone)	Nail varnish remover (deadly if used with alcohol)
Injecting	Mainlining; hitting/jacking up; cranking; having a dig
(subcutaneous/IM/failed)	(skin popping/muscle popping/failed)
(subclavian)	(pocket shot). NB: febrile reaction is a 'bad hit' ⁴¹
Ketamine	Special K (Home Office class C drug, like cannabis); a 'K hole' is a dissociative state (hole in consciousness, p489)—may be a ketamine prelude to 'ego death'
LSD	Acid; trips; cardboard; tabs; microdots (2mm tabs)
Marijuana	Weed; pot; draw; ganja; grass; resin; Mary; hash; skunk
Methadone	Mud; juice (implies liquid methadone)
Methylenedioxymphetamine	MDA; snowball (like MDMA but more psychedelic) ⁴²
Needles	Spikes; nails (tools=syringes)
Obtaining drugs	Score (selling drugs=deal)
PCP	Angel dust; KJ; ozone; missile
Prostitution	Working the block; on the game; flogging one's golly
Prostitute's client	Mush; punter
Shooting gallery	Hygienic supervised surroundings for injecting
Shoplifting	Grafting
Smoking heroin	Chasing the dragon (bonging=smoking cocaine)
Syringes	Works; tools (barrel of a syringe=gun)
Temazepam	Temazies
Tourniquet	Key
Wanted by police	'On me toes'; keeping head down
White heroin	China white
Withdrawing from opiates	Turkeying; clucking
Zopiclone	Zim-zims

Helping IV drug users (IDUs) on the ward ► Fully assess any severe cutaneous infection (± imaging of deeper structures). Anthrax and other serious infections (eg IE/SBE) present this way in IDUs. Take blood cultures; vancomycin + ciprofloxacin + clindamycin may be needed.⁴³

- ⚙️ Drug users everywhere face stigma, mistreatment, alienation from medical services (that's you?)⁴⁴ and violation of their human rights. It's so easy to think... IV drug abusers? It's their fault...I'm busy...they are beneath my consideration.
- ⚙️ A non-judgemental approach will help cooperation and may avoid self-discharge.
- ⚙️ Establish firm rules of acceptable ward behaviour. NSAIDs help with pain relief.
- ⚙️ In general, don't prescribe benzodiazepines. Methadone may be needed if opiate addicts develop bad withdrawal signs or symptoms in hospital. Get help.
- ⚙️ Encourage safe-sex; support schemes giving new needles to drug users (recently outlawed in the USA for some reason, where many share needles).
- ⚙️ Encourage regular HIV tests (9% are HIV +ve;^{USA} most have no regular serology).⁴⁴
- ⚙️ Don't just think "HIV": ~10 million IV drug abusers are thought to be hepatitis C +ve (ie 80%); 6 million are hep B core antigen +ve;⁴⁵ 3 million are HIV +ve.⁴⁶
- ⚙️ Commercial sex workers need STD screen, speculum exam (OHCS p242) + cervical cytology/HPV screen as carcinoma *in situ* is common (OHCS p273). Screen for syphilis (p431), HIV (p408) and hepatitis B (vaccination, p271). Use gloves. Liaise with GP.



Contrary to Gustave Flaubert, most fevers are not caused by plums, melons, April sunshine, etc;⁴⁷ but by our immune responses to self-limiting viral infections resulting in production of interferons and cytokines. PUO in adults is defined as a temperature $>38.3^{\circ}\text{C}$ for $>3\text{wks}$ with no obvious source despite appropriate investigations (eg after 3 days in the hospital or after 3 outpatient visits).⁴⁸ Signs of bacteraemia include confusion, renal failure, neutrophilia, \downarrow plasma albumin,⁴⁹ and tCRP (p701).

Causes⁴⁹ Infection (23%); connective tissue diseases (22%); tumours (20%); drug fever (3%); miscellaneous (14%). PUOs resist diagnosis in 25% of patients.

- **Infections** Abscesses (lung, liver, subphrenic, perinephric, pelvic); empyema; bacteria (*Salmonella*, *Brucella*, *Borrelia*, *Leptospira*, p430); rheumatic fever; SBE/IE (may be culture -ve, eg Q fever); TB (CXR may be normal, so culture sputum and urine); other granulomas (actinomycosis, toxoplasmosis); parasites (eg amoebic liver abscess, malaria, schistosomiasis, trypanosomiasis); fungi; typhus.⁵⁰ Asking "Where have you been" is vital: find an expert on that area, or else you will miss diagnoses you may have never heard of, eg melioidosis (*Burkholderia*, p447, the chief cause of fatal bacteraemic pneumonia in parts of SE Asia).
- **Neoplasms** Especially lymphomas (any pattern: Pel-Ebstein fever, p354, is rare). Occasionally solid tumours (GI; renal cell). Patients may be unaware of fever.
- **Connective tissue disease** Rheumatoid arthritis, polymyalgia rheumatica, Still's disease, giant cell arteritis, SLE, PAN, Kawasaki disease.
- **Others** Drugs (\uparrow may occur months after starting but remits within days of stopping; eosinophilia is a clue); pulmonary embolism; stroke; Crohn's; ulcerative colitis; sarcoid; amyloid; familial Mediterranean fever—recurrent polyserositis (peritonitis, pleurisy) + fevers, abdominal pain, and arthritis; treat with colchicine; cause: gene defect, eg at 16p13;⁵¹ hyper IgD syndrome (periodic prolonged fevers, large joint arthritis, lymphadenopathy, abdominal pain, skin rash, and \uparrow IgD ($>100\text{u/mL}$)).⁵²

Examples of intermittent fevers Always think of malaria; septicaemia (eg from diverticular disease); UTI; pelvic inflammatory disease; IE/SBE; TB; filarial fever—and rarities, eg: amyloid; *Brucella*; occult thromboembolism;⁵³ Castleman's disease.⁵⁴

- **Daily spikes:** Abscess; TB;⁵⁵ schistosomiasis. **Twice-daily spikes:** Leishmaniasis.⁵⁶
- **Saddleback fever** (eg fever for 7d, then normal for 3d): Colorado tick fever; *Borrelia*; *Leptospira*; dengue; Legionnaire's disease;⁵⁷ *Ehrlichia*⁵⁸ (p434).
- **Longer periodicity:** Pel-Ebstein (eg from lymphoma, p354).
- **Remitting** (diurnal variation, not dipping to normal): Amoebiasis; malaria; *Salmonella*; Kawasaki disease; CMV; TB.⁵⁹

History Work; hobbies; sexual activities; eating raw animals; drug abuse; immunosuppression; distant travel (\blacktriangleright p388); animal/people contacts; bites; cuts; surgery; rashes; diarrhoea; drugs (eg non-prescription); immunization; sweats; weight \downarrow ; lumps; and itching.

Examine Teeth; rectum; vagina; skin lesions; nodes; liver; spleen (p606); nails; heart; joints; temporal arteries; retina (Roth spots, **fig 1**—caused by microinfarcts, eg from SBE/IE, hypertension, HIV, connective tissue disease, anaemia, Behçet's, viraemia, hypercoagulability).

Symptom patterns Dialogue with experts \pm decision support to diagnose fever with any other symptom.

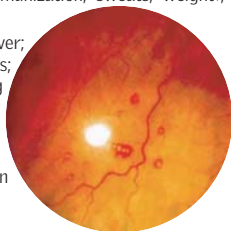


Fig 1. Roth spots.

©J Trobe.

New and newly re-emerging infectious diseases

Many diseases preoccupying infectious disease specialists are new or newly re-emerging: food-borne *E. coli*, waterborne *Cryptosporidium*, airborne Legionnaire's disease, blood-borne hepatitis C, and HIV have come to the fore in the last 30 yrs. Why have these years been so tumultuous in the ID world? Greed and exploitation? Examples: **1** Each year we consume 4 centuries-worth of animal and plant life;⁶⁰ so promoting ecological instability. **2** Economic drive builds dams (breeding grounds for vectors by orders of magnitude) and forces land development, putting people closer to vectors, eg ticks, mosquitoes, and rodents. Intensive farming makes it easier for infectious agents to jump the species barrier—eg hantavirus (from rodents),¹ haemorrhagic fever viruses, arboviruses, Nipah and Hendra viruses, avian influenza, monkeypox virus, SARS (p163), and CJD, p710). Consider also these 10 interacting causes:⁶¹

- 1** Famine and war (\pm threats of bioterrorism, eg with anthrax and smallpox). Sound vector-control practices are impossible if wars are being fought.
- 2** Unprecedented movements of peoples, their animals and their parasites, mixing genes, cultures, customs, and behaviour, eg eating raw molluscs and crabs facilitates toxoplasma, trematode, cestode, and nematode zoonoses.
- 3** Microbial adaptation and change making antibiotics less successful.
- 4** Human susceptibility to infection (increased immunocompromise).
- 5** Climate change leading to shifting ecosystems and, in some places, economic disaster (p372) worsened if local populations have no immunity.
- 6** Warmer parts of Europe (eg Italy) are now seeing tropical diseases such as Chikungunya fever (a mosquito-borne disease commoner in Africa and Asia that can cause arthritis for weeks, but is usually self-limiting).⁶²
- 7** Human demographics (economic development and land use)—and an increasing world population (rising at ~86 million per year).
- 8** Tourism and commerce. West Nile virus, for example, reached New York from its ancestral home in the Middle East on a bird carried by a ship or plane.⁶³ With SARS, the specific tourists, businessmen, and doctors who took the virus from Hong Kong to Hanoi, Singapore, and Toronto have been identified.⁶⁴
- 9** Technology and industry—easy to blame, but also part of the solution. Food security for millions living on <\$1/day depends on increasing rice yields through high-tech genetic manipulation to produce insect- and saline-resistant rice. Good crops from disease-free plants mean disease-free people.
- 10** Breakdown of public health measures with poverty and social inequality.

Can we win against infectious diseases? No! All we can do is live with them. To help us do this in ways that are not too destructive, we need robust public health surveillance institutions, sound vector-control policies, political will, quarantine laws, and, above all, openness and cooperation. SARS and its spread emphasize this in a graphic way: as the Chinese and other less-than-open societies have found out, when it comes to reporting infectious diseases, lying means dying.² Winning or losing is the wrong image: infectious diseases have made us who we are. The ability of genomes to produce and emit DNA/RNA sequences allows *horizontal* transmission of genes, and is one of the main motors of evolution.⁶⁵



1 Hantaviruses cause hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS) in the Americas and haemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS) in Asia and Europe. In Scandinavia/North Europe, a milder form of HFRS occurs (nephropathica epidemica). HPS presents with acute respiratory failure (dyspnoea), renal failure, thrombocytopenia, and reactive lymphocytosis. Diagnosis: serology; PCR. Treatment: ensure fluid homeostasis. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in decompensated patients.⁶⁶

2 This led to the sacking of health ministers and more transparent reporting methods. Problems remain—eg the slow reporting in 2008 of enterovirus EV71 outbreaks—an important cause of paralysis,⁶⁷ meningitis, brainstem encephalitis, and neurogenic pulmonary oedema/cardiogenic shock,⁶⁸ as well as self-limiting hand, foot & mouth disease (T⁶t, mouth ulcers + palm and sole vesicles).

Emergency help^{UK} Liverpool 0151 708 9393, London 020 7388 9600, Birmingham 0121 766 6611, Oxford 01865 225430, HPA 020 77592700. Travel details (where; prophylaxis; immunization; disease exposure) are **vital**, even if you cannot interpret yourself, so seek expert opinion **early**. 🗺️ Have a good gossip with your patient to get to the truth while he is still conscious (vital clues, p446). Know your locally re-emerging diseases! Examples: TB, Lyme disease, leptospirosis, malaria, typhus, cholera, salmonella, hepatitis A, shigella, mumps, measles, brucellosis.⁶⁹ NB: a visit to the tropics doesn't preclude mundane fevers, eg flu. *Examine all over*: any bites/eschar, p435? Do serology, thick film and blood culture. **In every ill traveller, consider:**

- 1 ▶▶ **Malaria** (p394–6): Fever, rigors, headaches, dizziness, flu symptoms, faints, diarrhoea, thrombocytopenia. *Complications*: anaemia, renal failure, pulmonary oedema, cerebral oedema. *Diagnosis*: serial thick and thin blood films.
- 2 **Typhoid** (p426): Presents with fever, relative bradycardia, abdominal pains, dry cough, constipation, lymphadenopathy, headache, splenomegaly ± rose spots (rare). *Complication*: GI perforation. *Diagnosis*: blood or marrow culture.
- 3 **Dengue fever (DF)** (p433): Presents with fever, headache, myalgia, rash (flushing or petechial), thrombocytopenia, and leucopenia. *Diagnosis*: serology.
- 4 **Amoebic liver abscess** (p436): T^ot, jaundice, RUQ pain. Do ultrasound.
- 5 **Also**: Travellers' diarrhoea ('turista'), taeniasis, cysticercosis and trichinosis (p442).

Jaundice Think of viral hepatitis, cholangitis, liver abscess, leptospirosis, typhoid, malaria, dengue fever, yellow fever, haemoglobinopathies.

Gross splenomegaly Malaria causing HMS,¹ visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar).

Diarrhoea & vomiting (p390 & p246) *E. coli* (Travellers' diarrhoea) is commonest. Consider *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*, *Giardia lamblia*, *Vibrio cholerae*, etc. (p390). See p246 for general management. If diarrhoea is prolonged, consider protozoal infection of small bowel or tropical sprue (p280). In HIV: cryptosporidia, microsporidia, and *Isospora belli* (need special stains).

Hepatosplenomegaly p606 malaria; *Brucella*; typhoid; typhus (fig 1); leishmaniasis.

Respiratory symptoms Common respiratory pathogens (p162), typhoid, *Legionella*, TB, Q fever, histoplasmosis, Löffler's (p718), HIV ± pneumocystosis. Do CXR & P₂O₂.

Arthritis Gonococcus; septicaemia; viruses (Ross river, Chikungunya).⁷⁰

Erythema nodosum (p564) Causes: streps, TB, leprosy, fungi, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, sarcoidosis, pregnancy, drugs (sulfonamides, contraceptive steroids).

Anaemia Hookworm, malaria, kala-azar, haemolysis, malabsorption.

Bleeding (melaena, nose bleeds, haematuria, DIC/ARDS) Viral haemorrhagic fevers.

Skin signs • Purpura or any rash: meningococcaemia • Typhus ('eschar' = scab; fig 1) • Orf (pustules) • Leprosy (p428, anaesthetic, hypopigmented areas) • Tropical ulcers • Leishmaniasis (ulcers/nodules) • Onchocerciasis (itchy nodules) • Myiasis (nodules = larvae of insects) • Transitory migratory swellings: gnathostomiasis • Calabar swellings (loa loa, p443) • Scabies (itchy allergic rash + burrows, p416 & OHCS p608).

Acute abdomen Perforating typhoid ulcer, toxic megacolon in amoebic or bacillary dysentery, sickle-cell crisis, ruptured spleen.

Rarities to consider ▶ Ask about local emergency isolation policy & contact tracing.

Rabies & yellow fever: (p432); other CNS viral infections, eg encephalitis (p400; p834).

Lassa fever: (Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Liberia). **Signs**: Fever; exudative sore throat; face oedema; collapse. **Δ**: PCR/EM; serology. **R**: Isolate & refer. See VHF guidelines.⁷¹

Marburg & Ebola virus: (Sudan, Zaire, Kenya). Transmission: close contact/fluids; (maybe via air too).⁷² **Signs**: T^ot, myalgia, D&V, pleuritic pain, hepatitis, shock, bleeding from any orifice/gums. A maculopapular rash appears on day 5–7 and desquamates in <5d.⁷³ **Δ**: PCR or electron microscopy; serology. **R**: Isolate and refer.⁷⁴

Other viruses causing haemorrhage: Dengue, Crimea-Congo fever (CCHF, p446), haemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome, yellow fever. ▶ See p432.

1 HMS (hyper-reactive malarial splenomegaly/tropical splenomegaly syndrome) is a chronic condition **usually** only seen in endemic areas (IgM⁺); acute malaria causes lesser splenomegaly.

Some typical incubation times⁷⁵

For fever with diarrhoea: p390

Incubation times are not set in stone: expect variability.

<14 days	14 days to 6wks	>6wks
Undifferentiated fever		
Malaria	Malaria	Malaria
Typhoid	Typhoid	Hepatitis B or E
Leptospirosis	Leptospirosis	Kala-azar
Dengue fever	Hepatitis A or E	Lymphatic filariasis
Rickettsiae	Acute schistosomiasis	Schistosomiasis
Acute HIV infection	Acute HIV infection	Amoebic liver abscess
Fever with CNS signs		
Malaria		
Viral and bacterial meningitis and encephalitis	East African trypanosomiasis	Rabies
East African trypanosomiasis	Rabies	
Poliomyelitis		
Fever with chest signs		
Influenza	Tuberculosis	Tuberculosis
Legionellosis	Q fever	
Q fever		
Acute histoplasmosis		
SARS		

Hitch-hiking to a Fools' Paradise

We think we are absolved of thinking of tropical diseases when the answer to "Where have you been?" is "Bournemouth" and in our blinkered way we carry on in our Fools' Paradise until disaster bites. It's not just a question of forgotten holidays or amnesic stopovers. Maybe our patient is an airport baggage-handler and has been bitten by a hitch-hiking mosquito: who knows? We never will if we don't ask. Even if there has been no travel to the tropics *global warming is ensuring that the tropics are travelling to us*. To the first writers of medical books, Paradise was just beyond the Far East, and the world was a disc surround by oceans of blue water. The world moves on, tarnished, tawdry, and trashed, and Paradise appears to be evolving with ever more serpents in the garden beguiling us with ambiguous answers to the great question: "Where have you been?"

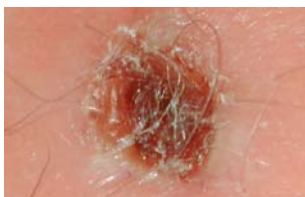


Fig 1. Dr Watson was treating this dentist's presumed septicaemia until Holmes went over his hindquarters with a lens, revealing this lesion. "I see you have been hunting bushbuck in the Eastern Cape again, Mr S—. This eschar is the tell-tale *tache noire* of typhus." Prompt doxycycline averted disaster. Elementary? We are all uneasy amalgams of dullness and brilliancy, jackal and hind, haunted and hunted, as well as hunting.

©M Seare.

Ingesting certain bacteria, viruses, and toxins is a common cause of D&V (p56 & p246). Contaminated food and water are common sources, but often no specific cause is found. Ask about details of food and water taken, cooking method, time until onset of symptoms, and whether fellow-diners were affected. Ask about swimming, canoeing, etc. NB: food poisoning is a notifiable disease (p373) in the UK.

Organism/source	Incubation	Clinical features	Notes/sources of infection
<i>Staph. aureus</i>	1-6h	D&V, P, hypotension	Meat
<i>Bacillus cereus</i>	1-5h	D&V	Rice
Red beans	1-3h	D&V	
Heavy metals, eg zinc	5min-2h	V, P (?work exposure)	(Delayed fever ± flu-like features)
Scrombotoxin	10-60min	D, flushing, sweating	Fish (NB may report hot mouth)
Mushrooms	15min-24h	D&V, P, fits, coma (LFT↑↑)	Image: p251 (hepatic & renal failure)
<i>Salmonella</i>	12-48h	D&V, P, fever, septicaemia	Meat, eggs, poultry
<i>C. perfringens</i>	8-24h	D, P afebrile	Meat
<i>C. botulinum</i>	12-36h	V, paralysis	Processed food
<i>C. difficile</i>	1-7d	Bloody D, P, gut perforation; toxic megacolon; hospital-acquired (1000 deaths/yr ^{UK})	Antibiotic-associated; getting more virulent (eg strain BI/NAP1 with 20-fold ↑ in toxin A and B production) ⁷⁸
<i>Vibrio cholerae</i>	2h-5d	See p426	Water*
<i>Vib. parahaemolyticus</i>	12-24h	Profuse D; P, V	Seafood
<i>Campylobacter</i>	2-5d	Bloody D, P, T ⁺ , peritonism	Milk, poultry, water*
<i>Listeria</i>		Meningoencephalitis; "I've got flu"; miscarriages	Cheese, pâtés
<i>E. coli</i> type O157	12-72h	Cholera/typhoid-like*	Haemolytic-uraemic sy., p308
<i>Y. enterocolitica</i>	24-36h	D, P, fever	Milk*
<i>Cryptosporidium</i> (fig1)	4-12d	D in HIV	Cow→water→man
<i>Giardia lamblia</i>	1-4wks	p436 (D, malabsorption)	*Nappies, cats, ⁷⁹ dogs, crows ⁷⁸
<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	1-4wks	See p436	*
Noroviruses, eg Norwalk SRVS (small round structured virus)	12-48h ⁷⁹ mean≈34h	Fever, P, D & projectile V; ⁸⁰ 'winter vomiting illness'. Δ: no leucocytes in faeces; PCR	*Fecal-oral (vomit is infectious); very contagious, and common. Infectious for ≤48h after symptoms resolve ⁸¹
Rotavirus	1-7d	D&V, fever, malaise	*(Vaccine available for infants aged from 6 weeks, 2 doses)
<i>Shigella</i>	2-3d	Bloody D, P, fever	Any food

V = vomiting; D = diarrhoea; P = abdominal pain. *May be food- or water-borne.

Tests *Stool microscopy/culture* if from abroad, an institution, or in day care, or an outbreak is suspected. In these circumstances culture of the food source may help.

Prevention Hygiene; if abroad, avoid unboiled/unbottled water, ice cubes, salads, and peel own fruit. Eat only freshly prepared hot food (or *thoroughly* rewarmed, p377).⁸⁰ Household water treatment and safe storage technologies can ↑ water quality and ↓ rates of diarrhoea, eg chlorine or solar disinfection, and ceramic or biosand filtration.^{1 82}

Management Usually symptomatic. Maintain *oral fluid* intake (±oral rehydration sachets). For severe symptoms (but not in dysentery), give *anti-emetics*, eg *prochlorperazine* 12.5mg/6h IM + *antidiarrhoeals* (*codeine phosphate* 30mg PO/IM or *loperamide* 4mg stat, then 2mg after each loose stool). *Antibiotics are only indicated if systemically unwell, immunosuppressed or elderly*; resistance is common. *Cholera: tetracycline* reduces transmission.

Salmonella: ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO, 200-400mg/12h IVI over 60min (remember that antibiotic therapy in salmonella enteritis may ↑ number of chronic carriers).

Shigella and Campylobacter: ciprofloxacin as above.

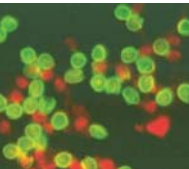


Fig 1. *Cryptosporidium* (immunofluorescence). It is a tiny protozoan (5µm) but a big cause of diarrhoea, esp in children in the 3rd world. It is life threatening if HIV+ve; self-limiting if CD4 ≥100; if <100, 14L of diarrhoea can be lost/d (bad news). It's a UK crime to sell water if >1 oocysts/10L. Spread: unboiled water; cattle. If found in stool, quantify excretion. If *R* needed, ask a microbiologist (*R* often fails); optimizing anti-HIV *R* may be the only approach.⁸³ Consider: nitazoxanide 0.5g/12h PO for 3d (if >12yrs).

©S Upton; Kansas Univ.

1 The top few cm of sand traps most organisms, which develop into a highly active food chain (the *biological layer*, which must remain partially wet). Further filtration occurs in the lower layers of sand.

Active immunization stimulates the immune system (humoral+cellular immunity). **Passive immunization** uses pre-formed antibody (nonspecific or antigen-specific).
 ▶ Strengthening routine immunization is a global priority for us all. Most incompletely vaccinated children live in India (32%), Nigeria (14%), and Indonesia (7%)^{2012 data}.

Age	Immunization (L=live vaccine)	(DoH ^{UK} 2012)
2 months	Pediacel [®] , ie 5-in-1 diphtheria + tetanus + acellular pertussis + inactivated polio + haemophilus B (HiB); if prem, still give at 2 months; can give if ≤10 yrs if missed vacs; + Prevenar 13 [®] (13-valent pneumococcal)	
3 months	Pediacel [®] + NeisVac-C [®] or Meningitec [®] (Meningitis C vaccine)	
4 months	Pediacel [®] + Prevenar 13 [®] (pneumococcal) + NeisVac-C or Meningitec [®]	
12 mths	Menitorix [®] (<i>H. influenzae</i> with meningitis C)	
13 mths	MMRvaxPro [®] or Priorix [®] (measles, mumps and rubella) + Prevenar 13 [®]	
3½-5yrs	Repevax [®] or Infanrix-IPV [®] (diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis and polio) + Priorix [®] or MMRvaxPro [®]	
12-13yrs	Gardasil [®] 3 doses if ♀ separated by 1 then 6 mths (HPV/cervical ca, <i>OHCS</i> p272)	
13-18+yrs	Revaxis [®] (low-dose diphtheria, tetanus, inactivated polio; can also be used for primary vaccination if >10yrs)	
Pregnant	Pertussis, 1 dose of Repevax [®] , in 3 rd trimester & influenza vaccine if indicated	
Any age	BCG ^L (not for everyone, since 2004 in UK) If at trisk of TB, eg for all in high-risk areas (eg London), or in groups at trisk, eg TB contact, or (grand) parents or from high-prevalence country, ie >40/100,000/yr—or a visitor to such a country for >1 month. May start at 3d old. Hepatitis B : p271; universal (WHO advice) or if at trisk. MMRvaxPro [®] may be given at any age if the above is missed. One-off pneumococcal vaccine 23-valent Pneumovax II [®] ± repeat if at trisk after >5yrs (eg splenectomy) ⁸⁴ (Prevenar 13 [®] ×2, as above, if <2yrs old.) Yearly flu vaccine if caring for at-risk person or if chronic heart, chest, liver, or renal disease; DM; immunosuppression (eg HIV +ve, cirrhosis, on chemotherapy, or spleen function↓, eg ∴ coeliac or sickle-cell disease). Revaxis [®] booster.	

▶ *An acute febrile illness is a contraindication to any vaccine.* Give live vaccines either together or separated by ≥3wks. Caution with live vaccines in patients who are immune-deficient (transplants, cancer chemotherapy, steroids, HIV infection)—seek expert advice. ▶ *Contraindications to vaccines:* see *OHCS* p151.

▶ **Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG)** Live attenuated anti-TB vaccine (works in ≤80% for ~10yrs). Make a 7mm blanched weal between the top and middle ⅓ of arm (deltoid's insertion) or, for cosmesis, the upper, outer thigh. Expect to feel marked resistance as the injection goes in. If, while injecting, propagation of the weal stops, you are going too deep: re-insert the needle. A swelling appears after 2-6wks, developing into a papule or small ulcer. Avoid air-occluding dressings. SE: pain, local abscess, regional lymphadenitis (the most common SE. The risk is ↑ in infants aged <30d, so give a reduced dose of vaccine). **CI:** immunosuppression, pregnancy, pyrexia, or eczema at vaccination site.⁸⁵ **T-spot-TB[®]/Mantoux test** (p398) Offer to those at risk of TB (see BCG, above). It is now not routinely needed for those <6yrs being referred for BCG on the above criteria. **Travel** p377. Get expert advice!

▶ *Advice to travellers is more important than vaccination:* eg simple hygiene, malaria prophylaxis, and protective measures (mosquito nets, safe sex advice, etc).

Immunization in special situations If *splenectomized/hyposplenic* (eg *sickle cell*): meningitis vaccine; pneumococcal; HiB (above); annual flu vaccine. *Chronic lung, heart, liver or kidney disease, diabetes*: pneumococcal; annual flu vaccine.

Further details Rotavirus vaccination for all infants (UK DoH 2013). Hepatitis B (p271); flu (p403); pneumococcal (p160); meningococcal (ACWY Vax[®] = group A, C, w135 & Y[®]), for short-term use, eg travel abroad. NB: the common group B meningococcal (MenB) strains are not covered by current vaccines; reverse vaccinology (eg Bexsero[®]) is changing this.²

1 *Schools of tropical medicine:* London: 020 7636 8636; Liverpool: 0151 708 9393.

2 Depends on identifying genes coding for surface-exposed proteins, which are able to induce bactericidal antibodies against a broad range of B strains. Vaccine combining these proteins is being developed.



Nosocomial means hospital-acquired. Fever is common in hospitalized patients of all ages. Nosocomial fever usually results from exposure to pyrogens in the hospital environment or from a medical intervention. Nosocomial fever occurs in 2–30% of inpatients: most are bacterial infections.

Definition Two of the many commonly used definitions are as follows:

- 1 Oral temperature of $\geq 38.1^{\circ}\text{C}$ developing $\geq 24\text{h}$ after admission and is recorded on ≥ 2 consecutive occasions in patients with no history of fever in the preceding week.
- 2 Oral temperature $> 38.0^{\circ}\text{C}$ that occurs at least 48h after admission and is recorded on at least two occasions during any 48-hour period.

Risk factors Alcoholism, cerebrovascular disease, ccf, 'Do-not-resuscitate' status, faecal incontinence, foot ulcers, indwelling bladder catheter, indwelling IV catheter, malignancy, number of procedures before febrile illness, pressure ulcers.

Causes can be grouped into five clinical entities:

- 1 **Infections** (the most common cause): UTI, pneumonia (eg post-op), bacteraemia, skin and soft tissue infections, CNS infection, catheter-related, GI infection, peritonitis, sinusitis, upper respiratory or other self-limiting viral infection, diverticulitis, cholangitis, vascular infections, device-related colitis, tuberculosis.
- 2 **Inflammation**: Aspiration, ARDS, arthritis, autoimmune conditions, adrenal insufficiency, connective-tissue disorder, drug-induced fever, acalculous cholecystitis, phlebitis, procedure-related pancreatitis, haematoma, thrombosis, sickle-cell crisis, GI bleeding, graft-versus-host disease, IV contrast reaction.
- 3 **Ischaemia**: Stroke, MI, pulmonary embolism, bowel ischaemia.
- 4 **Malignancy**: Leukaemia, lymphoma, non-haematological cancer.
- 5 **Drug-induced fever** is another important cause.

Approach Nosocomial UTI is the most common cause in those on general medicine wards, whereas nosocomial pneumonia is the most common cause of nosocomial fever in ITU patients. The cause of nosocomial fever is often not apparent, especially when symptoms or obvious physical findings suggestive of a specific illness are absent. In such cases, follow these steps:

- 1 Get a detailed history and do a careful physical examination covering all systems including the skin. Elucidate the surgical history and procedures performed during hospitalization. Study the patient's medication list carefully (is it a drug fever?).
- 2 Initial lab and imaging studies should be non-invasive, inexpensive, and based on the findings of patient's history and physical examination: FBC, LFT, ESR, urinalysis, basic cultures (eg MSU, blood, swabs of suspect areas), CXR, ESR.
- 3 If the initial evaluation does not reveal the cause of nosocomial fever, more expensive and invasive studies may be needed. These studies should be based on clinical suspicion and the results of the initial studies. They include: US, CT scan, MRI, nuclear medicine scanning, and serology. These modalities, including directed biopsies where indicated, reduce the need for more invasive procedures. The use of radionuclide scanning, such as technetium $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$, gallium-67, or indium-labelled leukocytes, is warranted for obscure inflammatory or neoplastic conditions that are not diagnosed by conventional imaging studies.

Prevention Nosocomial infections result in a 4-fold \uparrow in mortality, highlighting the importance of preventive measures—see BOX.

- Each country has its own risk profile, so get to know, and follow, local guidelines.



Preventing person-to-person transmission/nosocomial infection^{89,90}

Hand decontamination: There must be written policies and procedures for hand washing. Jewellery must be removed before washing.

Personal hygiene: Nails must be clean and kept short. False nails should not be worn. Hair must be worn short or pinned up. Beard and moustaches must be kept trimmed short and clean. Wash hands before and after each patient contact. Alcohol-based hand gels are helpful (but do not kill *C. difficile* spores).

Working clothes: In the UK there is a bare-below-the-elbows policy—and no white coats owing to the theoretical risk of cross-infection for cuffs and wrist-watches. In areas such as burn units or ITU (and on many ordinary UK wards), uniform trousers and a short-sleeved gown are required for men and women. In other units, women may wear a short-sleeved dress.

Shoes: In aseptic units and in theatre, wear dedicated easy-to-clean shoes.

Caps: In aseptic units, theatre, or performing selected invasive procedures, staff must wear caps or hoods which completely cover the hair.

Masks: Cotton wool or gauze masks don't catch microorganisms. Paper masks with synthetic material for filtration are better. Wear these masks in theatre, to care for immunocompromised patients or to puncture body cavities in order to protect the patient. In other situations, staff must wear masks to protect themselves (eg when caring for patients with airborne infections, or when performing bronchoscopy, etc). Patients with infections that may be transmitted by air must use surgical masks when outside their isolation room.

Gloves: Wear sterile gloves for surgery, care for immunocompromised patients, and invasive procedures entering body cavities. Non-sterile gloves should be worn for all patient contacts where hands are likely to be contaminated, or for any mucous membrane contact. Staff should wear non-sterile gloves to protect themselves while caring for patients with communicable disease transmitted by contact, or performing bronchoscopy, etc. Hands must be washed when gloves are removed or changed. Don't reuse disposable gloves!

Safe injection practices: •No unnecessary injections •Sterile disposable equipment •Prevent contamination of medications •Safe sharps disposal practices.

Preventing transmission from the environment Adequate methods for cleaning, disinfecting and sterilizing must be in place. Written policies/procedures must be developed for each facility, and updated regularly.

Cleaning hospitals: Routine cleaning is necessary to ensure that the hospital is visibly clean and free from dust and soiling. 90% of microorganisms are present within 'visible dirt', and the purpose of routine cleaning is to eliminate this dirt. Neither soap nor detergents have antimicrobial activity, and the cleaning process depends essentially on mechanical action. There are 4 hospital zones:

Zone A: no patient contact, eg administration, library—normal domestic cleaning.

Zone B: care of patients who are not infected, and not highly susceptible—clean by procedures that don't raise dust. Dry sweeping or vacuum cleaners are not recommended. Using detergent solution improves the quality of cleaning. Disinfect areas visibly contaminated by blood or body fluids prior to cleaning.

Zone c: infected patients (isolation wards)—clean with a detergent/disinfectant solution, with separate cleaning equipment for each room.

Zone d: highly susceptible patients (protective isolation) or protected areas, eg operating suites, delivery rooms, ITU, A&E and haemodialysis units—clean using a detergent/disinfectant solution and separate cleaning equipment.

All horizontal surfaces in zones B, c & d and in all toilets must be cleaned \geq daily.

Microbial monitoring aims to quantify cleaning rigour and to find organisms before they kill,⁹¹ using swabs, sponges, contact plates, dip slides + enrichment broths and selective media (+PCR for quicker recognition of impending problems).

Clean→inspect→monitor→record→reclean (*all* areas, even hard to find ductwork).



► Someone dies of malaria every few seconds; most are African children, but the old adage that older people in endemic areas have immunity and rarely get serious malaria is untrue: deaths are under-reported (~1.2 million/yr—a number that has been falling since 2004, owing to the Gates foundation^{et al}).⁸² Check for malaria in any sick patient from an endemic area (>3 billion are at risk). **Species:**⁸² *P. vivax*: incubation 10–17d, 'benign tertian malaria', fever spikes every 48h. *P. ovale*: similar to *P. vivax*, except untreated infection lasts less long. Both may produce true relapses by new invasion of the blood from latent hypnozoites in the liver, up to a few years after complete clearance of parasites from the blood.⁸³ *P. malariae*: incubation 18–40d, recurs 72-hourly ('quartan'^{14,7...}); may 'lie low' in the blood to recrudesce after 1–52yrs. It is rarely fatal but may cause glomerulonephritis. *P. falciparum*: incubation 7–10 days, symptoms recur 36–48hrly; fulminating disease. *P. knowlesi* is a rare emergent species (common in monkeys).⁸⁴ See also figs 2–6.

Biology Spread: fig 2. Plasmodium protozoa injected by ♀ *Anopheles* mosquitoes multiply in RBCs causing haemolysis, RBC sequestration and cytokine release. **Fever paroxysms** reflect synchronous release of flocks merozoites from mature schizonts (fig 2). 3 phases: **1** Shivering (<1h): "I feel so cold." **2** Hot stage (2–6h): $T \approx 41^\circ\text{C}$, flushed, dry skin; nausea/vomiting; headache. **3** Sweats (~3h) as T° falls.⁸⁵ **Protective factors:** G6PD lack; sickle-cell trait; melanesian ovalocytosis; some HLA B53 alleles enable T cells to kill parasite-infected hepatocytes in non-Europeans.

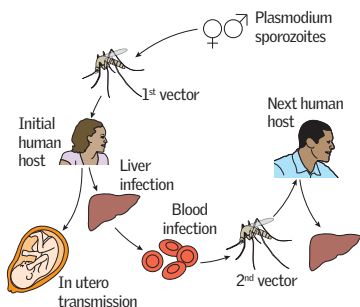


Fig 1. Malaria lifecycle.

Falciparum malaria Mortality: eg 20%; higher if <3yrs old or pregnant.¹ 90% present within 1 month of the mosquito event, with prodromal headache, malaise, myalgia ± anorexia before the 1st fever paroxysm (± faints). There may be no pattern to fever spikes (esp. initially); *don't rely on periodicity to rule out any type of malaria!*

Signs: Anaemia, jaundice, and hepatosplenomegaly. No rash or lymphadenopathy.

Complications: Anaemia is common, eg from haemolysis of parasitized RBCs (often serious in children). *Thrombocytopenia*.

5 grim signs: **1** ↓ Consciousness/coma (*cerebral malaria* ▶▶ p397) **2** Convulsions **3** Co-existing chronic illness **4** Acidosis (eg esp bad if $\text{HCO}_3^- < 15\text{mmol/L}$) **5** Renal failure (eg from acute tubular necrosis). Multivariate analysis shows that other factors² are harder to relate to ↓ survival in younger patients in an *independent* way.⁹⁶

Pregnancy: ▶▶ OHCS p27. Use chemoprophylaxis when pregnant in endemic areas.

Diagnosis Serial thin & thick blood films (needs much skill, don't always believe -ve reports, or reports based on thin film examination alone); if *P. falciparum*, you must know the level of parasitaemia. Rapid stick tests are available if microscopy cannot be performed or previously treated seriously ill patient: see p383 for ParaSight F®. Serology is not useful. Other tests: FBC (anaemia, thrombocytopenia), clotting (DIC, p346), glucose (hypoglycaemia), ABG/lactate (lactic acidosis), U&E (renal failure), urinalysis (haemoglobinuria, proteinuria, casts), blood culture to rule out septicaemia.

1 To prevent malaria deaths in pregnancy, intermittent preventive treatment is often tried, but the standard 2-dose sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine regimen is often insufficient owing to resistance.⁹⁷

2 • Extensor posture • Plantars ↑ • Dysconjugate gaze • Teeth-grinding (bruxism) • Hypoglycaemia (25% of children, 8% of adults; (it's also an SE of quinine) • Haemoglobinuria, ie 'blackwater fever' • DIC • Plasma or CSF lactate >5mmol/L • Pulmonary oedema (ARDS, p178) • Shock may mean *algid malaria* from supervening bacterial sepsis, dehydration, or spleen rupture • Hyperparasitaemia (>5% of RBCs parasitized); if ≥20% (or >10⁴/μL) of parasites are mature trophozoites or schizonts, prognosis is poor, even if few parasites seen (reflects critical mass of sequestered RBCs⁹⁸); ditto if malaria pigment in >5% of neutrophils or Hb <50g/L.⁹⁹

Preventing malaria deaths (eradication or containment?)

Eradication attempts without good primary care (and a good vaccine) are likely to be counter-productive. 'Containment' public health measures entail political will + money for indoor antimosquito spraying, insecticide treated bednets, good antenatal/paediatric care, and reliable distribution of malaria drugs (no wars, no corruption). The US has led here (>\$1bn over 5yrs) and will.¹⁰⁰

Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation; PMI: US President's malaria initiative

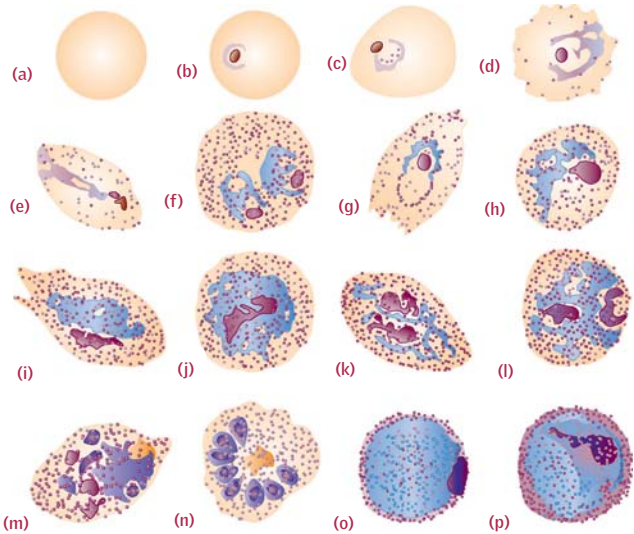


Fig 2. *P. ovale*. Plasmodia live in red cells: what a fantastic niche!—full of food and protected from prowling immunocytes. **a** is void—an unclaimed bag of food; **b-i** show trophozoites; **g**'s RBC is fimbriated and oval, giving the species its name; **k-n** are schizonts containing segmenting merozoites; **o** and **p** are ♀ and ♂ gametocytes. Having this marvelous knack of sexual reproduction (in the mosquito's gut) ensures the almost infinite variety of plasmodia, and their co-evolution with man!¹⁰¹ With this in mind, it is interesting to note that the development of haemoglobin AS, CC, and AC genotypes and homozygous and heterozygous α -thalassaemia give significant protection only from *severe* malaria.¹⁰²

After the Nicholson paintings in Oatney's *Primate Malarias*.

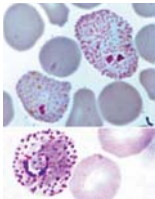


Fig 3. *P. vivax* ring forms partly hidden by Schuffner's dots.

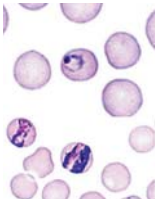


Fig 4. *P. malariae* ring and band forms from 2 specimens.

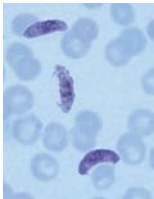


Fig 5. *P. falciparum* sausage-like gametocytes in RBC ghosts.



Fig 6. Ronald Ross who first described the malaria life cycle.

Fig 3 was stained and examined in the field (p383) by JML; figs 4-6 © S Upton, Kansas Univ.

Treatment ▶ If the patient has taken prophylaxis, don't use the same drug for treatment. If species unknown or mixed infection, treat as *P. falciparum*. Nearly all *P. falciparum* is resistant to chloroquine and in many areas also to Fansidar® (pyrimethamine + sulfadoxine). If in doubt, consider as resistant. **Chloroquine**¹⁰³ is 1st choice for benign malarias in most parts of the world, but chloroquine-resistant *P. vivax* occurs in Papua New Guinea, Indonesia, parts of Brazil, Colombia and Guyana.¹⁰⁴ Never rely on chloroquine if used alone as prophylaxis. See HPA (www.hpa.org.uk).

Treating uncomplicated *P. ovale*, *P. vivax*, & *P. malariae*: Chloroquine base:¹ 10mg/kg (max 620mg), then 5mg/kg (max 310mg) at 6h, 24h and 48h. In resistant cases, try Malarone®, quinine, or Riamet®. Primaquine dose in *P. vivax*: 500µg/kg (max. 30mg) daily for 14d; *P. ovale*: 250µg/kg (max. 15mg) daily for 14d—given after chloroquine to treat liver stage and prevent relapse. Screen for G6PD deficiency first. CI: pregnancy. *P. malariae* does not need primaquine.

Treating uncomplicated *Falciparum malaria* (or if species is uncertain): As multidrug resistance (to chloroquine, amodiaquine, etc) is common, combination therapy, preferably containing artemisinin derivatives, is recommended by WHO.¹⁰⁵

- **Artemether-lumefantrine** (Riamet®²)—if >35kg: 4 tabs stat, then 4 tablets at 8, 24, 36, 48 and 60h.¹⁰⁵
- **Artesunate-amodiaquine** (Coarsucam®); if a fixed combination pill is available (AS 100mg + AQ 270mg), the dose is 2 pills/d for 3d. If aged 7–13yrs, it is 1 pill/d for 3d.¹⁰⁶
- **Dihydroartemisinin-naphthoquine**¹⁰⁷
- **Dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine**.¹⁰⁸
- **Atovaquone-proguanil** (Malarone®; 4 'standard' tablets once daily for 3 days) may also work. These are better than quinine regimens (eg 600mg quinine salt/8h po for 7d, + doxycycline 200mg/24h or clindamycin 450mg/8h for 7d).¹⁰⁹ Artemisinins are OK in children and pregnancy (from 13 weeks; use quinine + clindamycin in 1st trimester).¹¹⁰ The oral route is OK if able to swallow and no severe signs.

Treating severe³ *Falciparum malaria*: IV R₁ is needed. Take to ITU. ▶▶ See BOX.

Other treatments: Tepid sponging + paracetamol if necessary for fever. Transfuse if severe anaemia. Consider exchange transfusion if patient severely ill. Treat 'algid' malaria as malaria + bacterial shock (p778). Monitor TPR, BP, urine output, and blood glucose frequently. Daily parasite count, platelets, U&E, LFT.

Prophylaxis for travellers ▶ **Prophylaxis does not give full protection.** Risks vary; get local advice. Avoid mosquitos: wear long-sleeves between dusk and dawn, use repellents (diethyltoluamide/DEET), long-lasting insecticidal bed-nets (US\$5; last ~5yrs).

Except for Malarone® & mefloquine (below), take drugs from 1wk before travel (to reveal any SE) and continue for 4wks after return. None is required if just visiting cities of East Asia. There is no good protection for parts of SE Asia.¹¹¹

If little/no chloroquine resistance: Proguanil 200mg/24h + chloroquine base 300mg/wk.

If chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum*: Mefloquine 250mg/wk (18d before to 4wks after trip) or doxycycline 100mg/d (1d before to 4wks after) or atovaquone^{250mg} + proguanil^{100mg} (Malarone®) 1 tab/d (1d before travel to 7d after).¹¹² If poor medical care and not pregnant, carry standby treatment (eg Riamet®, Malarone®).

Antimalarial SE **Chloroquine:** headache, psychosis, retinopathy (in chronic use).

Fansidar®: Stevens-Johnson syndrome, erythema multiforme, LFT↑, blood dyscrasias. **Primaquine:** Epigastric pain, haemolysis if G6PD-deficient, methaemoglobinemia. **Malarone®:** Abdominal pain, nausea, headache, dizziness.

Mefloquine: Nausea, dizziness, dysphoria, insomnia, neuropsychiatric signs, long t½. Avoid mefloquine if: • Low risk of chloroquine-resistant malaria • Past or family history of epilepsy, psychosis • Need for delicate work (pilots etc) • Risk of pregnancy within 3 months of last dose. **Interactions:** Quinidine, halofantrine.

1 155mg chloroquine base ≈ 250mg chloroquine phosphate (PO).

2 Dispersable formulation example for children with uncomplicated malaria: Coartem® (20mg artemether + 120mg lumefantrine): 1 tab per dose if 5–14kg; 3 tabs/dose if 25–34kg; repeat if vomits within 1h.

3 Prostration, consciousness↓, fits, respiratory distress, unable to drink, uncontrolled vomiting, macroscopic haemoglobinuria, jaundice, systolic BP ≤70mmHg, bleeding/DIC, inability to sit or stand.

Severe *P. falciparum* malaria

Falciparum malaria is one of the great killers (mortality is ~100% in untreated severe malaria, 15–20% with treatment), so get expert help in anyone who could have travelled abroad particularly in the last few months, who is feverish with ↓consciousness. But fever is not *always* a feature of malaria, and signs may be unusual if prophylaxis has been given, and is partly effective. The central event in severe falciparum malaria is sequestration of parasitized erythrocytes in the microvasculature of vital organs. Death rate: ~1 million deaths/yr, worldwide.¹¹³

Key questions What is the parasite count, the plasma bicarbonate and the creatinine? Are there complications: shock (algid malaria), metabolic acidosis, hypoglycaemia, renal failure, or acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS, p178)?

R: (on ITU) *Always* take advice. The main goal is to prevent death. Check FBC, daily parasite count, platelets, U&E, LFT, plasma glucose. Degree of acidosis is an important determinant of outcome. Assess fluid balance meticulously. ▶▶ **Start antimalarials in full dose as soon as possible.** Meta-analyses unequivocally favour parenteral artesunate over quinine for the treatment of severe malaria in adults and children and in different regions¹¹⁴ of the world—so, give artesunate (if *immediately* available¹) or quinine (dihydrochloride) 20mg salt/kg IVI (max 1.4g) over 4h, then after 8h give 10mg/kg (max 700mg) over 4h every 8h.² Give IV until the patient can swallow; complete the course orally (see 'c' below). Monitor for hypoglycaemia. Alternative: artemether (3.2mg/kg followed by 1.6mg/kg daily); in the UK, artemether is not always available: get local advice. Don't wait for an ideal drug if a good alternative is to hand: delay is fatal!¹¹⁵

If swallowing OK and no complications (shock, ARDS, renal failure) give either:

- a) Artemether-lumefantrine Riamet®, see p396.
- b) Malarone® (atovaquone + proguanil; 4 tabs once daily for 3d with food).
- c) Quinine (600mg salt/8h PO for 7d), with either doxycycline 200mg daily or clindamycin 450mg/8h for 7d PO.

ITU monitoring in cerebral malaria

- ▶▶ Fluid requirements vary widely; careful fluid management is critical. Haemofilter early if renal failure. Ventilate early if pulmonary oedema.
- ▶▶ Consider exchange transfusion in very seriously ill patients if feasible.
- ▶▶ Monitor blood lactate (or bicarbonate) and glucose: quinine may cause hypoglycaemia. Do LFT + clotting studies; crossmatch blood if haematocrit <20%.
- ▶▶ Repeated U&E (and arterial blood gases if ARDS).
- ▶▶ Arrange repeated skilled microscopy to monitor parasite counts.¹¹⁶

Expect at least a 75% decrease in the parasite count by 48h of treatment.

Pitfalls

- Failure to take a full travel history (+stop-overs) and failure to check if the patient has already received treatment (can make the blood smear 'negative').
- Thinking that malaria in returning travellers is too rare (1000–2000/yr^{UK}) or too exotic for today's work-a-day ward round or clinic, where "it's probably just flu".
- Delay in treatment while seeking lab confirmation.
- Failure to examine enough blood films before excluding the diagnosis.
- Belief that preventive drugs will work, when the parasite is often one step ahead.
- Not asking local experts about emerging patterns of drug resistance.
- Ignoring the possibility of counterfeit drugs (38% in one study from SE Asia).¹¹⁷
- No IV artesunate/quinine available *immediately*. (Quinidine is an alternative.²)
- Not observing falciparum patients closely for the first few days.
- Forgetting that malaria is a big cause of coma, jaundice, anaemia & renal failure.

¹ Artesunate dose 2.4mg/kg as a bolus at 0, 12 & 24h, then daily. It is not universally available.¹¹⁸ ^{RTC}

² Do not give quinine loading doses if already definitely had quinine, quinidine or mefloquine in last 24h. Warn about tinnitus. If IV quinine is not available, quinidine gluconate is an alternative, eg a loading dose of 10mg/kg over 1–4h, then 0.02mg/kg/min IVI by pump for 72h or until can swallow. ECG monitoring is essential when quinidine is given (not needed for quinine). Stop or ↓infusion if BP↓ or QTc prolonged by >25% (p90).



TB kills 2 million people/yr; it is the cause of death of most people with HIV. TB is one reason why the poor stay poor—and then die. If HIV+ve, risk† if: CD4†; ESRT†; many co-infections; poor nutrition; high viraemia.¹¹⁹ **UK incidence** ~8200/yr; 350 deaths/yr.

Diagnosis Latent TB: Do a Mantoux test. If +ve (or non-reliable) consider interferon-gamma testing (eg *Quantiferon TB Gold*® or T-spot-TB®; see below).

Active TB: If CXR suggests TB, take sputum samples (≥3, with one early morning sample, before starting treatment if possible) and send for MC&S for AFB (acid-fast bacilli resist acid on Ziehl-Neelsen (ZN) staining). If spontaneously produced sputum cannot be obtained, bronchoscopy and lavage may be needed.

Active non-respiratory TB: Try hard to get samples: sputum, pleura & pleural fluid, urine, pus, ascites, peritoneum, bone marrow or CSF. Send surgical samples for culture. Microbiologist should routinely do TB culture on these, even if it is not requested. All patients with non-respiratory TB should have a CXR to find coexisting respiratory TB. Incubate cultures for up to 12wks on Lowenstein-Jensen medium.

PCR: Allows rapid identification of rifampicin (and likely multidrug) resistance.

Histology: The hallmark is the presence of caseating granulomata.

CXR signs: Consolidation, cavitation, fibrosis, and calcification.

Immunological evidence of TB may be helpful: *Tuberculin skin test:* TB antigen is injected intradermally and the cell-mediated response at 48–72h is recorded. A +ve test indicates immunity. It may also indicate previous exposure or BCG. A strong +ve test probably means active TB. *False-ve tests* occur in immunosuppression (miliary TB, sarcoid, AIDS, lymphoma). *Quantiferon TB Gold*® and *T-spot-TB*® tests measure the delayed hypersensitivity reaction developed after contact with *M. tuberculosis*; they use specific, complex *M. tuberculosis* antigens and are better than older Mantoux tests, which rely on reactions to serial dilutions of TB antigen.¹²⁰

Treating pulmonary TB (BOXES) ▶ If histology & clinical picture are consistent with TB, start R_x without waiting for culture results, and continue even if these are -ve. Contact tracing and public health notification are essential.¹²¹

Before R_x: Stress importance of compliance/concordance (helps the patient & prevents resistance). Test colour vision (Ishihara chart) and acuity before and during treatment as ethambutol may cause (reversible) ocular toxicity. Check FBC, U&E, LFT. If pre-R_x creatinine clearance=10–50mL/min: Rifampicin: ↓dose by 50%. Ethambutol: monitor U&E; avoid if possible. No dose change for ethionamide or isoniazid.

Initial phase: 8wks on 4 drugs (depending on susceptibilities): daily adult doses if >50kg: rifampicin 600mg; isoniazid 300mg; pyrazinamide 2g; ethambutol 15mg/kg.

▶ Patients often forget pills, so consider *Directly Observed Therapy* (DOT) as follows:

- 1 **Rifampicin** 600–900mg (child 15mg/kg) po 3 times/wk.
- 2 **Isoniazid** 15mg/kg po 3 times/wk, max 900mg + **pyridoxine** 10mg/24h (esp. if diabetic, thin, chronic renal failure, HIV +ve or alcoholic) to prevent neuropathy.
- 3 **Pyrazinamide** 2.5g po (2g if <50kg) 3 times/wk (child 50mg/kg; max 2g).
- 4 **Ethambutol** 30mg/kg po 3 times a week for 8wks, or **streptomycin** (see BNF).

Continuation phase (16wks on 2 drugs) rifampicin and isoniazid at same doses. Rifinah 300® = rifampicin 300mg + isoniazid 150mg; get advice about resistance. Continue pyridoxine. Consider steroids if meningeal or pericardial TB.

Main side-effects ▶ Seek help in renal or hepatic failure, or pregnancy.

Rifampicin: LFT† (small AST rise is OK, stop if bilirubin†), platelets↓, orange discolouration of urine, tears and contact lens, inactivation of the Pill, flu symptoms.

Isoniazid: LFT†, WCC↓, stop if neuropathy and give **pyridoxine** (50mg/8h po).

Ethambutol: Optic neuritis (colour vision is the first to deteriorate).

Pyrazinamide: Hepatitis, arthralgia (cr: acute gout; porphyria).

WHO's/G8 'stop TB' plan Sputum smear microscopy^{et al} for all as needed; directly observed therapy (DOT) in front of a health worker for 6 months.¹²²

Problems to overcome 🌀 Stigma around TB ("It's dirty & means I may have HIV")

🌀 Lack of confidentiality¹²³ 🌀 No good primary care/active case detection 🌀 Poverty.



Chemoprophylaxis for asymptomatic tuberculous infection

Immigrant or contact screening may identify asymptomatic TB; here, chemoprophylaxis may prevent disease progression. Prophylaxis entails one or two anti-TB drugs for shorter periods than for symptomatic disease (eg rifampicin and isoniazid for 3 months, or isoniazid alone for 6 months). Suitable patients for chemoprophylaxis include adults with documented recent tuberculin conversion, and some young immigrants (16–34yrs) who are T-spot-TB/Mantoux +ve, without prior BCG vaccination.¹²⁴ ▶ Seek expert advice, and see NICE guidance.¹²⁵ ▶ Start standard anti-TB R_x once any clinical or CXR evidence of active TB found.

Some clinical features of TB

▶ Ask about recent contact with TB

- **Pulmonary TB:** This may be silent or present with cough, sputum, malaise, weight loss, night sweats, pleurisy, haemoptysis (may be massive), pleural effusion, or superimposed pulmonary infection. Investigation and treatment: see p398. An aspergilloma/mycetoma (p168) may form in the cavities.
- **Miliary TB:** Occurs following haematogenous dissemination. Signs may be non-specific or overwhelming. CXR: **fig 1**. Look for retinal TB too. Biopsy of lung, liver, lymph nodes, or marrow may yield AFB or granulomata.
- **Genitourinary TB:** May cause dysuria, frequency, loin/back pain, haematuria, sterile pyuria (p288; do 3 EMUs±renal US). Renal TB may spread to bladder, seminal vesicles, epididymis, or Fallopian tubes. Endometrial TB: *OHCS* p274.
- **Bone TB:** (*OHCS* p696) Look for vertebral collapse and Pott's vertebra, p722.
- **Skin TB (*lupus vulgaris*):** Look for jelly-like nodules, eg on face or neck.
- **Peritoneal TB:** Abdominal pain; GI upset. Look for AFB in ascites (send large volume to lab); laparotomy may be needed.
- **Acute TB pericarditis:** Think of this as a primary exudative allergic lesion.
- **Chronic pericardial effusion and constrictive pericarditis:** Fibrosis/calcification may be prominent with spread to myocardium. (Giving steroids to these patients for 11wks with their anti-TB drugs reduces need for pericardiectomy.)
- **TB meningitis:** A devastating disease with 30% mortality.¹²⁶ **Prodrome:** Fever, headache, vomiting, abdominal pain, drowsiness, meningism, and delirium often worsening over 1–3wks (rarely many months) ± seizures (may be the only or 1st sign).¹²⁷ **CNS signs:** Tremor, papilloedema; cranial nerve palsies. **Diagnosis:** LP (p782—the 1st few LPs may be normal); TB PCR; look for immunosuppression (HIV) and TB elsewhere (CXR, etc). MRI + enhancement.¹²⁷ CT (obstructive hydrocephalus; basal enhancement; CNS tuberculomas).¹²⁸ ▶ **Treat on suspicion:**¹²⁹ Isoniazid + rifampicin for 12 months, with pyrazinamide and streptomycin during the 1st 2 months is often used (*OTM*). *Ethambutol* or *ethionamide* are alternatives to streptomycin. Add *pyridoxine* 10–20mg/24h PO to regimens using isoniazid to prevent neuropathies.¹³⁰ In adults, daily single doses of 300mg of isoniazid, 600mg of rifampicin, and 2g of pyrazinamide are adequate. Higher doses aren't needed and are hepatotoxic. Always check sensitivities of the organism, and discuss the chances of multidrug-resistant TB with a microbiologist. TBM with resistance to isoniazid and rifampicin is likely to be fatal.¹³¹ There is a role for dexamethasone (eg for 1st month);¹³² but tuberculomas may start to appear.^{133, 134} Mannitol for ICPT (p841).¹³⁵ **Complications:** Hydrocephalus (may need surgery).¹³⁶ Cognition ↓.



Fig 1. Miliary TB (nodular opacities).

©Dr Vijay Sadasivam, Radiologist, SKS Hosp, Salem, Tamil Nadu, India.

Why is the diagnosis of tuberculous so often missed?

Patients and doctors ignore cough, weight loss and haemoptysis,^{etc} and are ignorant of risk factors: immersion in poverty, alcohol, tobacco, contact with TB, immunosuppression (eg HIV; DM; malignancy; extremes of age), and renal disease.¹³⁷ **Suspect TB continually;** take a good history, and don't expect CXRs to be typical!

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) Manifestations of primary infection:

1 Genital herpes can be a chronic, life-long infection. Majority of cases (esp. recurrent) are caused by HSV-2 (HSV-1 is taking over).¹³⁸ **Signs:** Flu-like prodrome, then grouped vesicles/papules develop around genitals, anus, or throat. These burst, forming shallow ulcers (heal in ~3wks). Also: urethral discharge ± dysuria (esp if ♀); urinary retention. *OHCS* p268. **Tests:** PCR. **R:** Give analgesia. **Aciclovir** 400mg/8h PO, **famciclovir** 250mg/8h PO (500mg/12h for 10d if immunocompromised¹³⁹), or **valaciclovir** 500mg/12h for 5d (for longer if healing is incomplete). If frequent (≥6/yr) or severe recurrences, continuous **aciclovir** 400mg/12h PO, **famciclovir** 250mg/12h PO or **valaciclovir** 500mg/24h.¹³⁸ **Prevention:** Condoms, even for oral sex.

2 Gingivostomatitis: Ulcers filled with yellow slough appear in the mouth.

3 Herpetic whitlow: Abrasions allow virus to enter the finger, causing a vesicle.

4 Herpes gladiatorum: Vesicles wherever HSV is ground into the skin by force.

5 Eczema herpeticum: HSV infection of eczematous skin; usually children.

6 Herpes simplex meningitis: This is uncommon and usually self-limiting (typically HSV-2 in women during a primary attack).

7 Systemic infection may be mild but life-threatening if immunocompromised. Signs: fever, sore throat, lymphadenopathy, pneumonitis, and hepatitis.

8 Herpes simplex encephalitis: Spreads from cranial nerve ganglia, to frontal and temporal lobes. ▶ **Suspect if:** fever, fits, headaches, odd behaviour, dysphasia, hemiparesis, or coma or brainstem encephalitis, meningitis, or myelitis. Δ: Urgent PCR on CSF (it remains +ve ~5d after initiating R). CT/MRI or EEG: non-specific temporal lobe changes; brain biopsy is needed¹⁴⁰ if MRI cannot distinguish from glioma. Seek expert help: careful fluid balance to minimize cerebral oedema, p840; ▶ **prompt aciclovir**, eg 10mg/kg/8h IV for ≥10d, saves lives (p834). Mortality: 19%.

9 HSV keratitis: Corneal dendritic ulcers. *Avoid steroids.* See *OHCS* p416.

Tests: Rising antibody titres in 1° infection; culture; PCR for fast diagnosis.

Recurrent HSV: Dormant HSV in ganglion cells may be reactivated by illness, immunosuppression, menstruation, or sunlight. Cold sores (perioral vesicles) are one manifestation. Aciclovir cream may be disappointing.

Varicella zoster Varicella (chickenpox; **fig 1**) is a contagious febrile illness with crops of blisters at various stages, eg on the back. Complications, eg purpura fulminans/DIC (get help; ▶▶ may need heparin¹⁴¹), pneumonitis, and ataxia, are commoner in pregnancy and adults than in children.¹⁴² Incubation: 11–21d. Infectivity: 4d before the rash until all lesions are scabbed (~1 week). *OHCS* p144. After infection, virus is dormant in dorsal root ganglia. Reactivation causes **shingles** (affects 20% at some time; eg if old or immunosuppressed). Pain in dermatomal distribution (p458, **fig 1**) precedes malaise and fever by some days. **Shingles R:** Treat acute zoster, eg with **aciclovir** 800mg 5 times/d PO for 7d if eGFR >25; if immunocompromised: 10mg/kg/8h slowly IVI for 10d; alternative: **famciclovir**, or **valaciclovir** (1g/8h PO for 7d; it is aciclovir's prodrug—a 2012 meta-analysis says that post-herpetic neuralgia is less).¹⁴³ **MET** If conjunctiva affected, use 3% aciclovir ointment 5×/day. Beware iritis; test acuity often; say to report *any* visual loss at once. SE of aciclovir: GFR↓ (do U&E & LFT), vomiting, encephalopathy, urticaria. **Post-herpetic neuralgia (PHN)** in affected dermatomes can last years; it is hard to treat and can be intolerable.¹ Try amitriptyline (start with 10mg at night), topical **lidocaine** patches, or gabapentin (p508) ± carbamazepine, phenytoin, or topical capsaicin as a counter-irritant. Last resort: ganglion ablation. Refer to a pain clinic. ▶ In those ≥60yrs **HZ vaccine** prevents PHN in >60%.¹ Those 50–59yrs benefit too. ❗ ci: immunosuppression.



Fig 1. Chickenpox. ©Dr C Leung.

Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infects 90% of people at some point during their lives.¹⁴⁴ Spread: saliva or droplet (presumed). Incubation 4-5wks. 🦠 In early childhood it causes few symptoms, but adolescents/young adults may develop infectious mononucleosis. EBV also is associated with several cancers (stomach; nasal/ENT; lymphoma). EBV is a DNA herpesvirus with a predilection for B-lymphocytes, and causes proliferation of T cells ('atypical' mononuclear cells) which are cytotoxic to EBV-infected cells. The latter are 'immortalized' by EBV infection and can, very rarely, proliferate in a way indistinguishable from immunoblastic lymphoma in immunodeficient individuals (whose suppressor T cells fail to check multiplication of these B cells).

The patient Sore throat, T^o, anorexia, malaise, lymphadenopathy (esp. posterior triangle of neck), palatal petechiae, splenomegaly, fatigue/↓mood (risk is ~5-6 times that of other common upper respiratory tract infections;¹⁴⁵ depending in part on features present at onset, eg less fit pre-morbidly, no delay in Monospot[®] becoming +ve, and need for bed rest).¹⁴⁶ Fatigue is also part of 'severe chronic active EBV infection', rare, eg with anaemia, platelets↓ & hepatosplenomegaly.¹⁴⁷ **Severe complications:** Meningoencephalitis, cerebellitis, Guillain-Barré, myeloradiculitis, cranial nerve lesions (eg VII, bilateral in 40%¹⁴⁸), fulminant hepatitis, respiratory distress syndrome, severe thrombocytopenia/aplastic anaemia, acute renal failure, myocarditis.

Blood film Lymphocytosis and atypical lymphocytes (large, irregular nuclei, fig 1). These may occur in: viral infections (CMV, HIV, parvovirus, dengue); toxoplasmosis; typhus; leukaemia; lymphoma; drugs; lead poisoning.

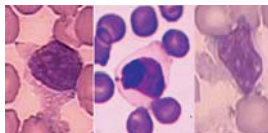


Fig 1. Atypical lymphocytes flowing round RBCs; abundant cytoplasm (dark at contact points). ©JML & A Schneider.

Heterophil antibody test (Monospot[®], Paul-Bunnell) 90% show heterophil antibodies by 3wks, disappearing after ~3 months (≤1yr).¹⁴⁹ They agglutinate sheep RBC but are absorbed (and thus agglutination is prevented) by ox RBC, but not guinea-pig kidney cells. This pattern distinguishes them from other heterophil antibodies. They don't react with EBV or its antigens. **False +ve Monospot[®] tests:** Hepatitis, rubella, parvovirus, lymphoma, leukaemia, malaria, ca of pancreas, and SLE.¹⁵⁰ If serology is difficult, try PCR.¹⁵¹

Other false trails: Older patients may have little pharyngitis or adenopathy, but more prolonged fever and LFT↑, often with no telltale lymphocytosis or atypical lymphocytes.¹⁵² So, if Monospot -ve, they may be subjected to dangerous over-investigation unless you request EBV-specific IgM—implies current infection (IgG reflects past infection). PCR may reveal tserum EBV DNA levels and warn of fulminant infection.¹⁵³

ΔΔ: Streptococci (colonization seen in 30% of EBV, so throat swabs often mislead), CMV (if pregnant do CMV serology, p404, as CMV in pregnancy has important implication), viral hepatitis, HIV seroconversion, toxoplasmosis, leukaemia, diphtheria.

R: None usually needed. Patients may expect chronic fatigue when they hear the diagnosis; don't go along with this! 🦠 Be optimistic (avoid *vigorous* sport; spleen rupture is reported). Avoiding alcohol 'to protect the liver' is controversial. **Steroids**¹⁵⁴ ± aciclovir¹⁵⁵ (p400) are sometimes used for the severest signs, listed above.¹⁵⁶

Never give ampicillin or amoxicillin for sore throats as they often cause a severe rash in those with acute EBV infection (this does not indicate a life-long allergy).

EBV oncogenicity Lymphoma¹⁵⁷ (eg post-transplant),¹⁵⁸ nasopharyngeal cancer (esp. in Asia), leiomyosarcoma¹⁵⁹ and oral hairy leucoplakia (p238; aciclovir-responsive). A vaccine to prevent EBV cancers is being developed.¹⁶⁰

Other EBV-associated diseases Crescentic glomerulonephritis;¹⁶¹ haemophagocytic syndrome (EBV over-activates T cells & macrophages, with over-production of cytokines, eg causing fatal coagulopathy¹⁶² ± central pontine myelinolysis).¹⁶³ The EBV Gianotti-Crosti rash (self-limiting papular acrodermatitis of childhood) consists of pale or red monomorphous 1-10mm papules and plaques placed symmetrically over extensor surfaces of limbs, buttocks, and face (also caused by streps, hep B, HIV, echo, Cocksackie, and respiratory syncytial viruses). forlag.fadl.dk/sample/derma/images/447.htm

This is the most important viral respiratory infection owing to its ubiquity, unpredictability, and complications (esp. if elderly). In a pandemic (see BOX) millions may die (1918 pandemic) or it may be global but milder (eg 1957). **Spread:** Droplets (to stop this, masks for medics must be well-fitted). **Incubation:** 1–4d. **Infectivity:** 1d before to 7d after symptoms start. **Immunity** is only to a strain that has already attacked you. **Symptoms:** T⁺, headache, malaise/mood↓, myalgia, prostration, nausea, vomiting, conjunctivitis/eye pain (± photophobia). **Δ:** **Serology** (paired sera; takes >2wks). **Culture** (1wk, from nasopharyngeal swabs). **PCR:** (eg 36h; sensitivity 94%; specificity ~100%).¹⁶³ **Complications:** Bronchitis (20%),¹⁶⁴ pneumonia (esp. staph), sinusitis, otitis media, encephalitis, pericarditis, Reye's syndrome (coma, LFT↑).

Treatment ▶ Follow national guidelines. Bed rest ± paracetamol; if severe pneumonia, take to ITU to prevent shock/hypoxia (cover *strep pneumoniae* and resistant staphs, eg co-amoxiclav & clarithromycin or doxycycline).¹⁶⁵ **Oseltamivir** is a neuraminidase inhibitor used in influenza A & B, eg if >1yr old presenting with recent (<48h) symptoms typical of flu, when flu is circulating in the community. Dose (>13yrs old and eGFR >30): 75mg/12h PO for 5d. If 1–12yrs old, adjust dose according to body weight.¹⁶⁶ **SE:** D&V, dyspepsia, headache, insomnia, dizziness, conjunctivitis, epistaxis, rash; rarely hepatitis, Stevens-Johnson, p724 ± ?flawed reports of hallucinations in children.¹⁶⁷ **Zanamivir** is an inhaled neuraminidase inhibitor active against influenza A & B. It prevents viral release from infected cells and infection of adjacent cells. It is used to ↓symptoms in those >5yrs old with typical flu symptoms starting <48h ago (36h if a child)—when flu is circulating in the community.¹⁶⁸ Dose: 2 blisters (2×5mg)/12h for 5d (before any other inhalers). **NB:** inhalation is not an ideal route, eg if elderly. **SE:** bronchospasm; oropharyngeal oedema.¹⁶⁸ *Ensure the patient knows how to use the Diskhaler.* Note: drugs do not influence the course of flu by very much.

Prevention •**Hygiene:** see BOX. •Use whole **trivalent vaccine** (from inactivated virus), reserving split vaccine (fragmented virus) for those <13yrs old. It is made from current serotypes and takes <2wks to work. Use if risk: DM; COPD; asthma (not mild); heart, renal or liver failure; immunosuppression (eg splenectomy; steroid use); haemoglobinopathy; medical staff;[⚠] carers; ≥65yrs (esp. in institutions). Vaccinating all at risk poses logistic challenges in ageing populations. Dose: 0.5mL sc (once). In children repeat at 6wks (½ dose if <3yrs; *routine* vaccination of children might save 100 deaths/yr). **SE:** Pain/swelling; T⁺, headache. Guillain-Barré and pericarditis are rare. Efficacy is 'modest' (relative risk of pneumonia falls from 1 to 0.88 after vaccination in the elderly; all-cause mortality is slightly reduced).¹⁶⁹

•**Oseltamivir:** Prophylactic indications: formal notice that A or B is circulating *and* >1yr old *and* <48h since exposure *and* in at-risk group. It's *not* needed if vaccinated >2wks ago with well-matched vaccine *unless* living in rest- or nursing-home,^{etc} when it can be used *whatever* vaccination status. Dose: 75mg/d (if 24–40kg, 60mg/d; 16–23kg, 45mg/d) all for ≥10d. Resistance is common in some A/H1N1, B and A/H5N1.

The common cold (coryza)

Rhinoviruses are the main culprits (>80 strains), and cause a self-limiting nasal discharge (becoming mucopurulent over a few days). **Incubation:** 1–4d. **Complications:** (6% in children) Otitis media, pneumonia, febrile convulsions. **R_⚠:** Avoid medications! Encourage a "leave it to your own brilliant body" approach rather than getting into tangles with drugs or herbal extracts (*Echinacea*, *OHCS* p161), as any ↓in symptoms is almost negligible.¹⁷⁰ Zinc gluconate yields conflicting results in trials.^{171, 172} If nasal obstruction in infants hampers feeding, try 0.9% saline nose drops.



What to do if an ITU nurse or doctor declines vaccination for religious reasons, or to promote autonomy? The risk is fatal transmission to a vulnerable patient.¹⁷³ Force is unjustified, and exclusion from ITU may be impractical in under-staffed units. As ever, dialogue is the only way forward.

The ART of making and delaying new pandemics

When an **a**nimal source of virus couples with human virus (reassortment¹) to form a novel hybrid with efficient **r**eplication and person-to-person **t**ransmission, a pandemic is born. Millions of deaths only occur if no previous immunological exposure **and** the new strain is highly pathogenic. What can we do? Early clusters may be containable, but once transmission is established, quarantine is probably futile and the pandemic will become global! But strategic planning can help:

- Simulated exercises before the event to enhance preparedness.
- Stockpile vaccine (if it can be made in time), antivirals, and vital supplies. Masks (must be well-fitting) are recommended by WHO when health workers are within 1 metre of a probable case, eg on entering a room with such people.
- Seamless international cooperation with WHO and bodies like the European Centre for Disease Prevention, eg to cancel mass events and give information.
- Buy time in spreading epidemics by moving hosts (eg free range hens) indoors.
- Quarantine restrictions around clusters of animal infections, eg a 3km zone where entry and exit are banned, with movements restricted in a further 10km monitoring zone with checking of residents, and their hosts destroyed.¹⁷⁴
- Social distancing: less travel; no mass events (discos, theatre, cinema, schools).¹⁷⁵
- Self-isolation at 1st sign of illness. Personal hygiene: wash hands, don't sneeze into your hand (your elbow may be better); carry, use & bin tissues; use only once.

Prevention, containment, health systems response, and communications

This 4-part response to highly pathogenic flu pandemics depends on how far we have progressed down the pandemic path. Preceding a pandemic there is an *interpandemic period*—*phase 1*: no new subtypes. *Phase 2*: new circulating animal virus arrives; and then a *pandemic alert period*. *Phase 3*: 'human infections with a new subtype, [with] rare instances of spread to a close contact'. *Phase 4*: 'small clusters of highly localized spread' (virus isn't well adapted to us). In *phase 5* there are large clusters of human-to-human spread. A *pandemic* is declared when efficient human transmission is happening in ≥ 3 WHO regions.

How does pandemic influenza differ from seasonal influenza?

- Those with no immunity (eg the young) are at risk and prone to complications.
- Death rates are higher, depending on: **1** Numbers getting infected **2** Virulence factors (fig 1) **3** Host vulnerability **4** Preventive and treatment measures.
- Transmission is more efficient, occurring not only in autumn and winter.
- 2–3 waves of infection may occur; later waves may be more severe. Increased death rates are observed even in milder pandemics, over the next 3 winters.

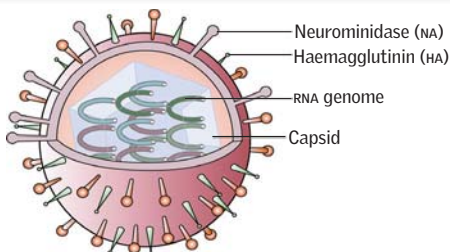


Fig1. Influenza A. Orthomyxoviridae (RNA) have 2 genera: influenza A & B viruses—and influenza C, distinguished by antigenic differences between their nucleoproteins (NP) and matrix (M) proteins. Influenza B and C are almost exclusive to man. Influenza A infects birds and mammals; they are subtyped by surface glycoproteins (haemagglutinin, HA) and neuraminidase (NA). 15 HAs (H1 to H5) and 9 NAs (N1 to N9) are known. Pathogenicity is partly determined by HA glycosylation patterns and amino acids at HA cleavage sites.

1 In genetic reassortment, 2 viral sources shuffle genetic material in someone with a dual infection. Also, simple stepwise single mutations can accumulate to produce new strains. Reassortment is a key factor in the long-term evolution of influenza A virus, including the periodic emergence of epidemic viruses.^{176, 177}

The protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii* infects via the gut (poorly cooked meat; soil-contaminated vegetables), lung, or broken skin. Lifecycle: **fig 1**. In humans, the oocysts release trophozoites, which migrate widely (esp. to eye, brain, and muscle). Toxoplasmosis occurs worldwide. Infection is lifelong. HIV may reactivate it.

The patient ▶ *In any undiagnosed lymphadenopathy or any granulomatous uveitis or retinitis, think of toxoplasmosis, esp. if immunosuppressed (HIV, pregnancy).* Most infections are asymptomatic: in the UK >50% are infected by 70yrs. Symptomatic acquired toxoplasmosis resembles infectious mononucleosis, and is usually self-limiting. Eye infection, usually congenital, presents with posterior uveitis, eg in the 2nd decade of life, and may cause cataract. In the immunocompromised (eg AIDS), myocarditis, encephalitis, focal CNS signs, stroke or seizures may occur.

Tests Acute infection is confirmed by a 4-fold rise in antibody titre over 4wks or specific IgM (unreliable if HIV+ve). Reactivation of latent toxoplasmosis in HIV presents problems (you may need to look for toxoplasma antigen and IgG).¹⁷⁸ PCR may be rewarding.¹⁷⁹ Parasite isolation is difficult; lymph node or CNS biopsy may be diagnostic. CT: characteristic multiple ring-shaped contrast-enhancing CNS lesions.

Treatment 🌟 Often not needed (get help).¹⁸⁰ If the eye is involved, or if immunocompromised, *pyrimethamine* + *sulfadiazine*. ▶ If pregnant, get help. Sampling of fetal cord blood at ~21wks for IgM indicates severe infection. For HIV, see p410.

Prevention Cook food to >63°C/145°F. Does this mean no rare meat? Perhaps only if you are immunocompromised; abandoning rare meat might not have much impact as vegetable sources still abound, and peeling and washing *everything* is impractical. Freezing meat may ↓ infectivity. Wash hands after contact with soil.

Advice in pregnancy/immunosuppression: Don't change cat litter. Don't handle stray cats (esp. kittens).¹⁸¹ Antenatal screening may be worthwhile in areas of high prevalence (eg in Riyadh 38% of antenatal samples are +ve for anti-T gondii IgG antibodies, indicating past exposure but not current risk).¹⁸²

Congenital toxoplasmosis (OHCS p34) Abortion, seizures, chorioidretinitis (**fig 2**), hydrocephalus, microcephaly, cerebral calcification. Worse prognosis if early infection.

Cytomegalovirus (CMV)

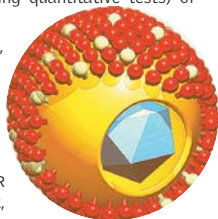
CMV (**fig 2**) is acquired by direct contact (doctors are at risk!);¹⁸³ blood transfusion, or organ transplantation. After acute infection, CMV becomes latent but the infection may reactivate at times of stress or immunocompromise. If immunocompetent, primary infection is usually asymptomatic, but an illness indistinguishable from glandular fever or acute hepatitis may occur. In transplant recipients or post marrow transplantation: fever > pneumonitis > colitis > hepatitis > retinitis (**figs 3-5**). In AIDS: retinitis > colitis > CNS disease ('>' means 'is commoner than').

Diagnosis of acute CMV infection is hard; virus growth is slow and there may be prolonged CMV excretion from past infection. Serology helps; specific IgM indicates acute infection (unreliable if HIV +ve). CMV PCR (including quantitative tests) of blood, CSF and bronchoalveolar lavage is available.

Treat only if serious infection (eg immunocompromised), with *ganciclovir* 5mg/kg/12h IV over 1h via central line, or oral *valganciclovir*, *foscarnet*, *cidofovir*. Immunization is being explored. CMV in HIV, see p410.

Post-transplant prevention¹⁸⁰ Weekly PCR for 14wks to detect CMV antigenaemia/viraemia; if +ve, get help; *ganciclovir* starting dose example: 5mg/kg/12h IV if eGFR OK. Use CMV-ve, irradiated blood if transfusing transplant, HIV, or leukaemia patients. Alternative strategy: pre-emptive anti-CMV Rx (can lead to improved graft survival).¹⁸⁴ **Fig 2.** CMV, a herpesvirus.

Congenital CMV (OHCS p34) Jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, and purpura. Chronic defects: IQ↓, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, deafness, and eye problems. There is no treatment.



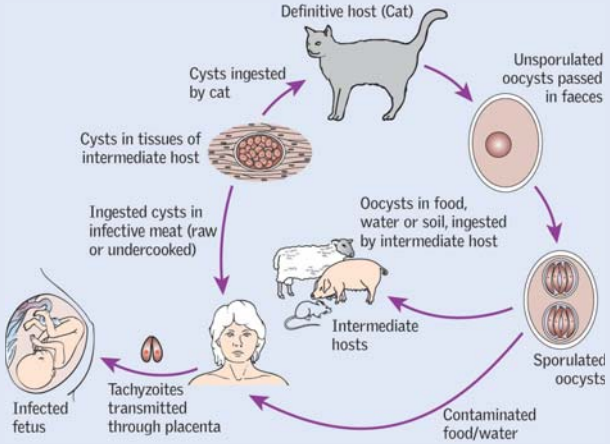


Fig 1. Oocysts in cat faeces can stay in the soil for months, where animals such as rats eat them. They get infected, and, under the direction of *Toxoplasma* in the amygdala, these rats lose their innate fear of cats, and so tend to get eaten. So parasites ensure their success by facilitating their jump from the intermediate to the definitive host. How does the parasite overwhelm the innate fear of cats? By causing a type of sexual attraction to the normally aversive cat odour (through limbic activity).¹⁸⁵

Data from Fernando Monroy; www2.nau.edu/~fpm/research/res.html

Immunocompromised humans with toxoplasmosis may show these signs:

- Confusion, seizures, and signs of brainstem or spinal cord injury.
- Meningoencephalitis + localizing signs (fever + headache → drowsiness → coma → death, eg over days or weeks). CSF: mild lymphocytic pleocytosis and protein ↑. Abnormal MRI, eg multifocal myelin loss; microglial nodules; ring-enhancing lesions often at the grey-white junction with subcortical white matter perifocal oedema. Within large diffuse lesions look for discrete small haemorrhagic lesions. Contrast medium may reveal fine-beaded parallel lines or small discrete nodules traversing the white matter suggesting perivenous spread.¹⁸⁶
- *Pseudotumour cerebri* syndrome (p502): transient intracranial hypertension.
- ICP/space-occupying mass mimicking a tumour or a brain abscess.
- Multiple mass lesions that can be the cause of hemisensory abnormalities, hemiparesis, cranial nerve palsy, aphasia, and tremors.
- Acute psychosis (rare; there may be no other signs of immunodeficiency).¹⁸⁷
- In some areas, eg India, toxoplasmosis is **the** major HIV-associated CNS infection.¹⁸⁸



Fig 3. Retinal toxoplasmosis.



Fig 4. Ill-defined yellow infiltrates. ΔΔ: toxoplasmosis; herpes simplex/zoster; syphilis; sarcoidosis; leukaemia.



Fig 5. In HIV this 'mozzarella pizza' fundus means CMV retinitis. If CD4 ↓, re-examine in 2 days; ► is it progressing?

Hepatitis A RNA virus. *Spread*: Faecal-oral or shellfish. Endemic in Africa and S America, so a problem for travellers. Most infections are in childhood. *Incubation*: 2–6 wks. *Symptoms*: Fever, malaise, anorexia, nausea, arthralgia—then: jaundice (rare in children) hepatosplenomegaly, and adenopathy. *Tests*: AST and ALT rise 22–40d after exposure (ALT may be >1000 u/L), returning to normal over 5–20 wks. IgM rises from day 25 and means recent infection. IgG is detectable for life.

R: Supportive. Avoid alcohol. Rarely, interferon- α for fulminant hepatitis.

Active immunization is with Havrix Monodose[®], an inactivated protein derived from HAV. Dose: if >16yrs old, 1 IM dose (1mL to deltoid) gives immunity for 1yr (20yrs if further booster is given at 6 months). Use Havrix Monodose Junior[®] if 1–15yrs old.

Prognosis: Usually self-limiting. Fulminant hepatitis is rare. Chronicity doesn't occur.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV, a DNA virus.) *Spread*: Blood products, IV drug abusers (IVDU), sexual, direct contact. *Deaths*: 1 million/yr. *Risk groups*: IV drug users and their sexual partners/carers; health workers; haemophiliacs; job exposure to blood (morticians/embalmers); haemodialysis (and chronic renal failure); the sexually promiscuous; foster carers; close family members of a carrier or case; staff or residents of institutions/prisons; babies of HBsAg +ve mothers; adopted child from endemic area.

Endemic in: Far East, Africa, Mediterranean^{et al}. *Incubation*: 1–6 months.

Signs: Resemble hepatitis A but arthralgia and urticaria are commoner.

Tests: HBsAg (surface antigen) is present 1–6 months after exposure. HBeAg (e antigen) is present for 1½–3 months after acute illness and implies high infectivity. HBsAg persisting for >6 months defines carrier status and occurs in 5–10% of infections; biopsy may be indicated unless ALT \leftrightarrow and HBV DNA <2000 iu/mL. Antibodies to HBeAg (anti-HBe) imply past infection; antibodies to HBsAg (anti-HBs) alone imply vaccination. HBV PCR allows monitoring of response to therapy. See **fig 1. Vaccination**: p271. Passive immunization (specific anti-HBV immunoglobulin) may be given to non-immune contacts after high-risk exposure.

R: Avoid alcohol. Immunize sexual contacts. Refer all with chronic liver inflammation (eg ALT \geq 30 iu/L)¹⁹⁸ for antivirals, eg pegylated (PEG) interferon alfa-2a, lamivudine, entecavir,¹⁹⁹ adefovir. The aim is to clear HBsAg and \blacktriangleright prevent cirrhosis and HCC (risk is \uparrow if HBsAg and HBeAg +ve).¹⁹⁰ *Other complications*: fulminant hepatic failure, cholangiocarcinoma, cryoglobulinaemia.

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA flavivirus. *Spread*: Blood: transfusion (thousands of UK cases; compensation is available), IV drug abuse, sexual, acupuncture. UK prevalence: >200,000.¹⁹¹ Early infection is often mild/asymptomatic. ~85% develop silent chronic infection; ~25% get cirrhosis in 20yrs—of these, \leq 4% get hepatocellular cancer (HCC)/yr. \blacktriangleright HCV is the chief reason for liver transplant in the West.

Risk factors for progression: Male, older, higher viral load, use of alcohol, HIV, HBV.

Tests: LFT (AST:ALT <1:1 until cirrhosis develops, p260), anti-HCV antibodies confirms exposure; HCV-PCR confirms on-going infection/chronicity; liver biopsy if HCV-PCR +ve to assess liver damage and need for treatment. Do HCV genotype (BOX 1).

R: BOX 2; quit alcohol. *Complications*: Glomerulonephritis; cryoglobulinaemia; thyroiditis; autoimmune hepatitis; PAN; polymyositis; porphyria cutanea tarda.

Hepatitis D virus (HDV) Incomplete RNA virus (needs HBV for its assembly). HBV vaccination prevents HDV infection). 5% of HBV carriers have HDV co-infection. It may cause acute liver failure/cirrhosis. *Tests*: Anti-HDV antibody (only ask for it if HBsAg +ve). *R*: As interferon- α has limited success, liver transplantation may be needed.

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) RNA virus. Similar to HAV; common in Indochina (commoner in older men and also commoner than hepatitis A in UK); mortality is high in pregnancy. It is associated with pigs. Epidemics occur (eg Africa). Vaccine is available in China (not Europe). Δ : Serology. *R*: Nil specific.

Hepatitis G & GB Parenterally transmitted. No good evidence they damage the liver.

Other causes of hepatitis Alcohol; drugs; toxins; EBV/CMV; leptospirosis; malaria; Q fever; syphilis; yellow fever; autoimmune hepatitis, p268; Wilson's (p269).



Serological markers of HBV infection

	Incubation	Acute	Carrier	Recovery	Vaccinated
LFT		↑↑↑	↑	Normal	Normal
HBsAg	+	+	+		
HBeAg	+	+	+/-		
Anti-HBs		+	+		
Anti-HBe			+/-		
Anti-HBc IgM		+	+/-		
Anti-HBc IgG		+	+	+	

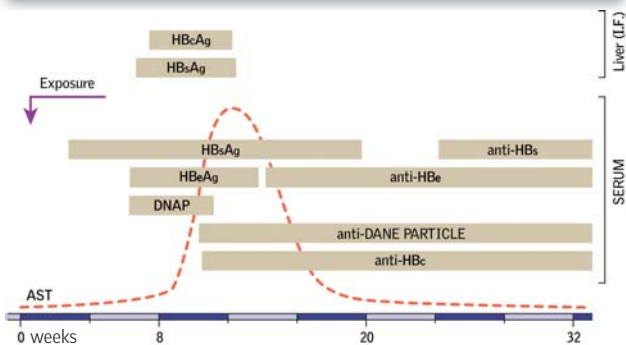


Fig 1. Viral events in hepatitis B in relation to AST peak. IF=immunofluorescence; Ag=antigen; HBs=hep.B surface; HBc=hep. B core; HBe=hep. B e antigen; DNAP=DNA polymerase.

Protease inhibitors, ribavirin and peginterferon- α in HCV

The non-structural 3 serine protease inhibitors boceprevir and telaprevir are the first in a new class of directly acting antivirals against genotype 1 hepatitis C (HCV). When combined with pegylated interferon and ribavirin, these drugs greatly improve sustained virological response rates in treatment-naïve patients and those who have had past treatment failure on simpler treatment. Boceprevir binds to HCV non-structural 3 (NS3) active site; telaprevir binds NS3.4A. Treatment duration: 24-48wks (in specialist centres). Response rate: 40-70%. SE:¹ Efficacy is less if: •HCV genotype 4, 5, or 6 is involved •↑Viral load •Older patients •↑Delay before R_x starts •Black patients (vs Caucasians) •Men •HIV+ve.

NB: Pegylated interferon has an inert tail retarding its elimination (hence it is given SC once weekly). CI: •Interferon allergy •Autoimmune hepatitis •Severe liver dysfunction/decompensated cirrhosis •Age <3yrs •Severe or unstable heart disease in past 6 months •Past severe psychiatric conditions (esp. depression) •Pregnancy/lactation •Haemoglobinopathies (a contraindication to ribavirin).

HIV and hepatitis C: HCV prevalence is ~7% for sexually transmitted HIV and >90% for IV transmission. Untreated HIV may accelerate progress of HCV-induced liver fibrosis. Given the safety and efficacy of therapy, and the bad effects of chronic hepatitis C, consider all HIV/HCV co-infected patients for therapy.¹⁹² **Re-infection** after clearance of virus (undetectable HCV RNA)—ie newly detectable HCV RNA accompanied by a switch in HCV genotype or clade—is quite common in HIV+ve men who have sex with men (eg 15 per 100 person-years), so re-test often.¹⁹³

1 Severe drug reactions/rashes with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms. Anaemia may need erythropoietin alpha and decreased ribavirin doses (esp if cirrhosis). Transfusion is sometimes required.

HIV1, a retrovirus (p376), is responsible for most HIV infections. HIV2 causes a similar illness (?longer latent period). Over 30 million people are HIV +ve (2.5 million/yr; 2 million deaths/yr; most are in Africa (Africa has 25% of the world's disease burden, 3% of total health workforce, and 1% of wealth)).¹⁹⁴ In many areas, incidence is falling as using antiretrovirals ↓ infectivity by 96%.¹⁹⁵ There is increasing HIV transmission in eastern Europe & Middle East, where homosexuality is less accepted and driven underground. *UK prevalence*: ~100,000.¹⁹⁶ *UK incidence*: 6280/yr (in 2011); ♂:♀ ≈ 3:1¹⁹⁷—heterosexual: gay or bisexual = 42% vs 44%;¹⁹⁸ IV drug abusers: 2%; mother–baby: 3% (~600,000 child deaths/yr globally). Oral sex: 3–7%.^{199,200}

Immunology HIV binds, via its gp120 envelope glycoprotein, to CD4 receptors on helper T lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, and neural cells. CD4 +ve cells migrate to the lymphoid tissue where the virus replicates, producing billions of new virions. These are released, and in turn infect new CD4 +ve cells. As infection progresses depletion or impaired function of CD4 +ve cells ↓ immune function.

Virology RNA retrovirus; HIV1 has 9 subtypes or 'clades'. After cell entry, viral reverse transcriptase enzyme makes a DNA copy of the RNA genome. The viral integrase enzyme then integrates this into host DNA. The core viral proteins are initially synthesized as big polypeptides that are cleaved by viral protease enzymes into the enzymes and building blocks of the virus. The completed virions are then released by budding. The number of circulating viruses (viral load) predicts progression to AIDS.

Stages *Seroconversion (primary infection)* may be accompanied by a transient illness 2–6wks after exposure: fever, malaise, myalgia, pharyngitis, maculopapular rash or meningoencephalitis (rare). A period of *asymptomatic infection* follows but 30% have *persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL)*, defined as nodes >1cm diameter at ≥2 extra-inguinal sites, persisting for 3 months or longer. Later, constitutional symptoms develop: T⁺, night sweats, diarrhoea, weight↓, ± minor opportunistic infections, eg oral candida, oral hairy leukoplakia, herpes zoster, recurrent herpes simplex, seborrhoeic dermatitis, tinea. This collection of symptoms and signs is referred to as the *AIDS-related complex (ARC)* and is regarded as a prodrome to AIDS. *AIDS*: HIV + an indicator disease (p410). CD4 usually ≤200 × 10⁶/L.

Time-scales: HIV → AIDS ≈ 8yrs; ARC → AIDS ≈ 2yrs; AIDS → death ≈ 2yrs (without HARTT).²⁰¹

Which signs correlate best with HIV progression? Chronic fever (odds ratio 5.6 vs those in whom HIV is not progressing); PGL (4.7); cough for >1 month (3.5); chronic diarrhoea (3.3); oral thrush (3.2); weight↓ by 10% in <1 month (2.9); TB (2.8); zoster (2.5).

Diagnosis Serum (or salivary) HIV-Ab by ELISA, eg confirmed by Western blot. In recent infection, HIV-Ab might be -ve (window period ~1–3wks after exposure); here, checking HIV RNA (PCR) or core p24 antigen in plasma, or repeating ELISA at 6wks and 3 months confirms diagnosis. 4th-generation kits can test for HIV-Ab and p24-Ag. Rapid test kits give results in 30min; but +ve results must be confirmed by ELISA. OraQuick ADVANCE® uses oral fluid, and may be bought over the counter, eg in UK/USA—sensitivity of 97.4%; specificity of 99.9% (untrained vs trained testers).²⁰²

HIV subtypes A and B predominate in the UK; D is commoner in Africa; hybrid/recombinant types have a worse prognosis as they bind to immune cells more readily.

Prevention Blood screening; disposable equipment; antenatal antiretrovirals if HIV +ve ± Caesarean birth ± bottle-feeding (may ↑ mortality if hygiene poor); PEP (p412).

► *A stop-HIV sexual manifesto*: ☼ Good HIV information (TV, wind-up radios, eg in Africa; HIV issues in soap operas are influential).²⁰³ ☼ Accessible HIV tests with opt-out not opt-in when done in clinics²⁰⁴ (expensive counselling just if +ve). ☼ Good sexual negotiation skills. ☼ Condoms for *all* sexual contact, or abstinence ☼ (very unreliable)²⁰⁵—also "I'd rather be dead than abstain"²⁰⁶). ☼ Reframing of our bodies as a route to intimacy rather than as instruments of gratification always entailing penetration. ☼ Fewer sexual partners. NB: 3 *simultaneous* partners is *much* riskier than 6 serial partners. ☼ ↓ Alcohol use (to avoid risky behaviour).

Good trials find that *circumcision* prevents ~65% of HIV (and herpes²⁰⁷) over 1½ yrs.²⁰⁸ It is not a reliable preventive: circumcised men must not behave as if they are safe.

HIV, TB, poverty and multi- or extensively drug-resistant TB (MDR-TB; XDR-TB)

If your patient is HIV+ve and has cough, fever, night sweats, or weight loss, he has TB till proven otherwise (sensitivity: ~90%).²⁰⁹ TB is a common, serious complication of HIV. ~40% of those with AIDS in the developing world have TB. Morbidity from HIV-TB leads to vicious spirals of decline: loss in productivity → failing economies → unbalanced health budgets → incomplete courses of TB drugs → selection of drug-resistant organisms → more TB deaths → ruin.²¹⁰

New cases of MDR-TB: ~500,000/yr; mortality >20%.²¹¹ **Other HIV-TB interactions:**

- Mantoux tests may be negative and the presentation of TB may be atypical.
- ↑Reactivation of latent TB (LTB):¹ Previous BCG vaccination does not prevent this.²¹²
- Smears may be -ve or scanty² for TB; culture is vital to determine drug sensitivity.
- Normal or atypical CXR, eg lobar or bibasal pneumonia, hilar lymphadenopathy.
- Extrapulmonary and disseminated disease is much more common.
- TB treatment in poor countries entails a 4-drug initial phase (2 months of rifampicin, isoniazid, pyrazinamide & ethambutol) and a 2-drug continuation phase (4 months of rifampicin & isoniazid, or 6 months of isoniazid & ethambutol). HIV is known to increase case fatality and rates of recurrent TB after this regimen.²¹³
- There is toxicity (D&V, hepatitis, rash neuropathy) from combining anti-TB and anti-HIV drugs (eg stavudine, lamivudine & nevirapine as twice-daily generic tablet, often used in resource-poor/WHO HAART, p414). NB: it may be best to delay HAART until 1-2 months after TB Rx is started (unless CD4 <100×10⁶/L).²¹³
- As HAART reconstitutes CD4 counts, paradoxical worsening of TB symptoms may occur (the 'immune reconstitution inflammatory response', IRIS).²¹⁴
- HIV may or may not necessitate prophylaxis with isoniazid (may prevent TB deaths in children),^{215,216} but either way, regular clinical monitoring is vital.

▶ Directly observed treatment strategy (DOTS) prevents MDR-TB and XDR-TB.²¹⁷ In areas where resistance is common, DOTS-plus (use of 2nd-line drugs) may be a solution.²¹⁸

▶ Respiratory isolation is vital if TB patients are near HIV +ve people. Nosocomial (hospital-acquired) and MDR-TB are major problems worldwide, affecting HIV +ve and HIV -ve people. Mortality is ~80% in patient-to-patient spread. Test TB cultures against 1st- and 2nd-line agents; 5+ drugs may be needed in MDR-TB.²¹⁹

First-line anti-TB agents:**Second- or third-line agents:²²⁰**

Isoniazid	Streptomycin	Ofloxacin	Para-amino salicylic acid (PAS)
Rifampicin	Amikacin	Moxifloxacin	Clarithromycin
Pyrazinamide	Kanamycin	Cycloserine	Azithromycin
Ethambutol	Capreomycin	Ethionamide	Linezolid; meropenem; clavulanate

Reducing MDR-TB: chief goals Early identification; full treatment; isolation.²²¹ So...

- 1 Early isolation of suspected TB. A suspicious CXR or past MDR-TB is enough.
- 2 Directly observe and confirm that patients take all drugs as prescribed.
- 3 Staff to use effective masks (also patients on leaving isolation rooms).
- 4 ZN staining available 24/7; do sputum induction/expectoration in isolation rooms.
- 5 Ensure that doors to isolation rooms have automatic closing devices.
- 6 Providing negative air pressure in isolation rooms.
- 7 Only stop isolation after ≥3 sputum samples are AFB -ve on culture for MDR-TB.
- 8 Frequent tuberculin skin surveillance tests for workers and contacts.

Extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR-TB) This most worrying strain (there may be no treatment options) is occurring in at least 45 countries. Most are in former Soviet Union and Africa.²¹¹ It is associated with cumulative duration of past treatment with 2nd-line TB drugs.²²² Compulsory confinement is suggested^{223,224} (not by proponents of Hippocratic medicine "I will put my patient's interests 1st!").

1 LTB implies no x-ray or clinical sign of active TB. 30% of the world's population has LTB.²²⁵ Targeted testing and treatment of LTB in high-risk groups (eg born in endemic area or immunosuppressed) is advised in well-off countries. New tests for LTB (Quantiferon-TB; T-SPOT.TB) are better than tuberculin skin tests (too many false +ves and false -ves if immunosuppressed; a reaction >15mm is significant even if no risk factors).²²⁶ 9 months of daily isoniazid in rich low-prevalence countries.²²⁷

2 Digestion/liquefaction + centrifugation/gravity sedimentation increases sensitivity by 13-33%.²²⁸

Most complications are either psychological or the result of suppression of T-cell-mediated immunity. ► Test all with newly diagnosed HIV for toxoplasma, CMV, hepatitis B/C, and syphilis—eg serology; tuberculin test.

For **TB** see p409; **HHV-8/Kaposi's sarcoma**¹ see p716; for **Leishmaniasis** see p439.

Pulmonary The lung is the most vulnerable organ; in developed countries bacterial pneumonia (esp. pneumococcal)²²⁹ is commonest; elsewhere it is TB (p398 & p409) and *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia (PCP, **fig 1**)—the chief life-threatening fungal opportunistic infection (others: aspergillus, cryptococcus, histoplasma). Suspect it in anyone with cough/shortness of breath or pneumothorax. CXR may be normal; CT: diffuse ground-glass opacity, consolidation, nodules, cysts.²³⁰ Δ: Sputum (eg induced or via bronchoscopy and bronchoalveolar lavage.²³¹ R: high-dose co-trimoxazole (see BOX); special monitoring must be available; precede each dose by prednisolone 50mg (reduce after 5d, and tail off). **Primary prophylaxis:** If CD4 <200×10⁶/L: *co-trimoxazole* 480mg/24h PO or 960mg 3×/wk. Prophylaxis is essential after 1st attack until CD4 >200×10⁶/L.²³² Other pathogens: *M. avium intracellulare* (MAI); **CMV**. Also: **HHV-8** (Kaposi's sarcoma, lymphoma)¹ and **lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis**.

Gut Oral pain may be caused by **candidiasis**, HSV or aphthous ulcers, or tumours. **Oral candida** R: *Nystatin* suspension 100,000U (1mL swill and swallow/6h). **Oesophageal** involvement causes dysphagia ± retrosternal discomfort—R: fluconazole, ketoconazole, or itraconazole PO for 1–2wks. Relapse is common. **HSV** and **CMV** also cause oesophageal ulcers (similar to *Candida*). **Anorexia/weight loss** is common, also **LFT↑** and **hepatomegaly** from viral hepatitis, sclerosing cholangitis, drugs or MAI. MAI causes fever, night sweats, malaise, anorexia, weight↓, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, hepatomegaly, and anaemia. Δ: Blood cultures, biopsies (lymph node, liver, colon, bone marrow). R: *ethambutol* + *clarithromycin* + *rifabutin* (BOX). **Chronic diarrhoea** may be caused by bacteria (*Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*, atypical mycobacteria, *C. difficile*), protozoa (*Cryptosporidium* p390, *Microsporidium*, *Isospora belli*, cyclospora), or viruses (CMV, adenovirus). **Perianal disease** may be from recurrent HSV ulceration, perianal warts, squamous cell cancer (rare). Kaposi's sarcoma (p716) and lymphomas can also affect the gut.

Eye CMV retinitis (acuity↓ ± blindness) may affect 45% of those with AIDS. Fundoscopy: characteristic 'mozzarella pizza' signs, **fig 5** p405. **Treatment:** see BOX. Ganciclovir-containing intra-ocular implants, where available, can improve quality of life.²³³ (NB: risk of post-op retinal detachment, one implant does not prevent disease in the other eye.) The need for maintenance therapy may be reviewed if CD4 ≥100×10⁶/L—eg after immune restoration by HAART (p414), if retinitis is inactive.²³⁴

CNS Acute HIV is associated with transient meningoencephalitis, myelopathy, and neuropathy. **Chronic HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND)**¹⁴³ comprises dementia and various encephalopathies (PML, p376). *Toxoplasma gondii* (p404) is the main CNS pathogen in AIDS, presenting with focal signs. CT/MRI shows ring-shaped contrast enhancing lesions. Treat with *pyrimethamine* (+*folic acid*) + *sulfadiazine* or *clindamycin* for 6 months. Lifelong secondary prophylaxis is needed. *Pneumocystis* prophylaxis also protects against toxoplasmosis.²³⁵ *Cryptococcus neoformans* (**fig 2**; and p440) causes a chronic meningitis, eg with no neck stiffness. R: See BOX. **Tumours** affecting the CNS include primary cerebral lymphoma, B-cell lymphoma. CSF JC virus PCR is useful in distinguishing PML from lymphoma.

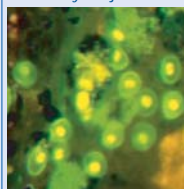
Psychological complications HIV is the paradigm of a **biopsychosocial illness**. HIV is 100% preventable, yet very prevalent. Asking **why** tells us more about ourselves than about HIV.²³⁶ Shame, sexual imperatives, pride and prejudice²³⁷ keep HIV underground and multiplying. Imagine you are pregnant and HIV+ve, eg as a result of rape, and you will appreciate some of the psychological problems (p414). Being HIV+ve is associated with dissociation during sex ("I had no connection to what was going on...numb...unfeeling...I would try to say something but couldn't").²³⁷ Appreciating some of these psychological complexities helps us realize why simplistic messages about safe sex so often fail. 🌸 **Farrant's injunction to HIV doctors:** *Extension of life without efforts to address patients' quality of life is not ethical.*²³⁸



Managing opportunistic infections in HIV

Infection*Tuberculosis***Treatment/side-effects/prophylaxis**

The commonest and most lethal opportunistic infection: R: (p409). If no active infection, prophylaxis may be needed if significant exposure, or tuberculin skin test >5mm induration (*isoniazid* 300mg/day + *pyridoxine* 10-20mg/day PO; get expert local help, eg on how long to continue prophylaxis).²³⁹

Pneumocystis jiroveci

Co-trimoxazole (=trimethoprim 1 part + 5 parts sulfamethoxazole) 120mg/kg/d IVI in 2-4 divided doses for 14-21d (SE: nausea, vomiting, fever, rash, myelosuppression) **or** **pentamidine isetionate** 4mg/kg/d by slow IVI for 14-21d (SE: BP↓, hyper- or hypoglycaemia, renal failure, LFT↑, myelosuppression, arrhythmias). **Prednisolone** 50mg/d PO (reducing dose) if severe hypoxia. Stop after 21d. **2nd-line agents:** **Primaquine** + **clindamycin**, **pentamidine isetionate**, **atovaquone**. Secondary prophylaxis, eg **co-trimoxazole** 480mg/24h PO; same dose as 1^o prophylaxis, essential after 1st attack.

Fig 1. *P. jiroveci* (fluorescent stain × 1000).

© Subhash K Mohan.

Candidiasis

(See figs on p441)

Local R: **Nystatin** suspension 100,000u swill & swallow/6h. **Systemic R, if mucosal:** **Fluconazole** 50-100mg/d PO for 7-30d; **if invasive:** 400mg/d (continue according to response; SE: nausea, LFT↑, platelets↓) or **itraconazole** (SE: CCF, nausea, LFT↑). **Amphotericin B** (p169) is for severe systemic infection. Relapse is common.

Toxoplasmosis

(fig 3, p405)

Indications for R: Typical CNS features + lab data (CD4 <200 cells/μL, +ve toxoplasma IgG and ring-enhancing lesions on CT/MRI). **Acute phase:** **pyrimethamine** 200mg PO once, then 75mg/d + **sulfadiazine** 1.5g/6h PO + **leucovorin** (folinic acid) 5-20mg 3 times a week, continued for 1 week after stopping pyrimethamine (stop the latter 1 week after 'cure').

Cryptococcal meningitis

Δ: India ink stain (fig 2); CSF culture; cryptococcal antigen in blood and CSF. NB: the capsule is an essential virulence factor for this yeast. **Amphotericin B** IV (p169) + **5-flucytosine**.²⁴⁰ 20% mortality. Normalizing ICP (repeat LPs ± shunts) may help. Give secondary prophylaxis (fluconazole) until CD4 >150×10³/L and cryptococcal antigen -ve.²⁴¹ Mortality: 41%.²⁴²

Fig 2. *Cryptococcus*.

© Dr M McGinnis.

CMV retinitis

(fig 4, p405)

Induction: **ganciclovir** eye implant. **Valganciclovir** 900mg/12h PO for 3wks, then 900mg/24h PO or **cidofovir**: start with 5mg/kg IV once weekly for 2wks (with probenecid and IV fluids), then reduce to alternate weekly doses.

MAI *Mycobacterium avium intracellulare* (=MAC, *M. avium* complex, p410).

Clarithromycin 500mg/12h + **ethambutol** 15mg/kg/d + **rifabutin** 300mg/d, all PO. Prophylaxis if CDC <50/mm³: **azithromycin** 1.2g/wk PO.

Mycobacterium xenopi

Best R unknown; clarithromycin-rifampicin-ethambutol, with moxifloxacin as an alternative may be tried.²⁴³

M. kansasii

Isoniazid + rifampicin + ethambutol.

Strep. pneumoniae

Prophylaxis: 23-valent pneumococcal vaccine, p160.²³⁹

1 Human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8) is an oncogenic gamma-herpes virus (p376) described in 1994 in Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) lesions. HHV-8 is involved in multicentric Castlemann's disease (MCD) and primary effusion lymphoma (PEL), both rare B-cell lymphomas. HHV-8-related tumours chiefly affect the immunocompromised. HAART ↓ incidence of KS but not MCD or PEL. HHV-8-related diseases often affect the lung. MCD presents with fever and lymphadenopathy associated with interstitial lung disease without opportunistic infection. Urgent help may be needed. PEL signs: T⁺†, lymphocytic-exudative pleural effusion (no pleural mass on CT). Therapy is complex (get help with special antiretroviral and chemotherapy regimens).²⁴⁴

► Get comfortable talking about sex and sexuality, and requesting HIV tests. It's vital that you do—literally. If you find this difficult, get help (*OHCS* p328). Keep practising! NB: asking "Are you gay?" is not very helpful. If speaking to a man, ask about sex with other men, as many don't identify themselves as gay (esp. in repressive countries). Globally, men who have sex with men are 19-fold more likely to get HIV than others.²⁴⁵

Preventing HIV depends on us all promoting *lifelong* safer sex, condoms, fewer partners—and regular testing (esp. where rates of HIV are ↑). Videos + interactive discussions can double condom use; *100% condom programmes* also help.

- Warn everyone about dangers of sexual tourism/promiscuity. Teach skills in sexual negotiation. Explain how alcohol can undermine safe sex messages.
- Promote human rights so groups driving spread of HIV aren't driven underground.
- Introduce drug users to needle exchange schemes ("Don't share needles").
- Promote the work of STI clinics. Good control of other STIs ↓ HIV incidence by 40%.
- Encourage HIV testing, eg in pregnancy (± Caesarean sections if +ve, *OHCS* p23)¹
- Diagnose HIV *early*: have a high index of suspicion in all with TB, pneumonia, diarrhoea, meningitis, weight ↓, lymphoma, severe fungal infections, or candida.²⁴⁶

Pre- & post-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP/PEP) Follow guidelines and know drug locations. Seroconversion post-needle-stick: ~0.4% (HIV); 30% for hep B if HBeAg +ve.

- Wash well. If needle-stick, encourage bleeding; do not suck or immerse in bleach.
- Note name, address, and clinical details of donor.
- Report incident to occupational health and fill in an accident form.
- Store blood from both parties (HIV, HBV & HCV tests).
- Immunize (active and passive) against hepatitis B at once, if needed (p271).
- Counsel and test recipient at 3 and 6 months.
- Weigh risks by questioning donor; if HIV+ve, what is the CD4 and viral load count?
- Before prophylaxis, do a pregnancy test. Was the inoculum big? Was injury deep?

Start PEP in case of a significant exposure to blood or other high-risk fluid from an HIV+ve source, or any source at ↑ risk of HIV infection. PEP is not indicated after low risk exposures (eg urine, vomit, saliva, faeces, unless they are visibly bloodstained). Start PEP as soon as possible (certainly within 48–72h), and continue for ≥28d. PEP is not needed if exposure >72h ago. Do *follow-up testing* at 12 and 24wks post- (or 24wks after cessation of PEP) and continue for at >12wks after the HIV exposure event (or for at least 12wks from when PEP was stopped). **Starter regimen:** One *Truvada*® tab (245mg *tenofovir* and 200mg *emtricitabine*) once a day plus two *Kaletra*® film-coated tabs (200mg *lopinavir* and 50mg *ritonavir*) twice a day. *Truvada*® + *Kaletra*® is the preferred regimen, but *Combivir*® + *Kaletra*® may be considered as an option if there are difficulties sourcing starter packs containing *Truvada*®.²⁴⁷

Acute seroconversion Early identification matters! Signs are like infectious mononucleosis (eg lymphadenopathy, myalgia, rash, headache; rarely meningitis); do tests if there are unusual signs, eg oral candidiasis, recurrent shingles, leucopenia, or CNS signs (antibody tests may be -ve but viral p24 antigen and HIV RNA levels are ↑ in early infection). As ever, the first best 'test' is to take a thorough history. If you do identify acute seroconversion illness, get expert help—and advise unambiguously on preventing transmission. It is not known if early therapy is worthwhile.²⁴⁸

Other direct effects of HIV Osteoporosis; dementia (the brain is a sanctuary for HIV—and HAART may not prevent dementia from developing).²⁴⁹

When seeing HIV+ve people, ask... • Have you been to an STD clinic? (STDs promote spread of HIV) • Using condoms? • Sharing needles? • Have you told your partner(s)? • What is your CD4 cell count/HIV-1 RNA level? Viral load helps plan start of antiretrovirals; CD4 <200, <100, and <50/mm³ prompt prophylaxis for *pneumocystis*, *toxoplasma*, and *MAC* (p410), respectively • What's your CMV & toxoplasma titre? (counsel to avoid infection, eg no undercooked meat; avoid cats, etc) • Recent CXR? (eg TB; pneumocystosis) • Last cervical smear? (risk of neoplasia)²³⁹ • Are you sad or depressed? • Are you taking time to nurture and teach family & friends? ► Quality of life & drug efficacy relate to self-efficacy, social support and finding holistic benefits in disease.²⁵⁰



HIV tests and counselling

Pre-test counselling doesn't need to be exhaustive. Testing is routine/'opt-out'²⁵¹ in antenatal and STI clinics, new patient medicals, etc. CDC recommends routine screening in healthcare settings for all aged 13–64yrs. If in doubt, get help from STI clinic.

- Determine level of risk (eg unprotected sex; sex overseas; male–male sex; rape).
- Discuss test benefits: partner protection; ↓vertical transmission; getting R.
- What are the difficulties? Will you tell family and friends? Explain possible effects on: job, mortgage, insurance (we have no obligation to disclose HIV status).
- Do post-test counselling (eg to re-emphasize ways to ↓risk exposure).

Rapid point-of-care HIV tests have big benefits, eg on labour ward. 2 rapid tests done in parallel ↑accuracy (blood is more sensitive than saliva: 98% vs 99.7%).²⁵²

Home-use HIV tests are starting to be used by sex partners to inform sexual decisions. Absence of counselling is a problem (or failure to use the post-test counselling phone number if one is provided),²⁵³ as is delayed entry into HIV care. Research must be done to determine the best context for their use.²⁵⁴

Counselling throughout life/safe sex: Issues arise if sexual partners are HIV-discordant. If the woman is HIV-ve, the HIV+ve man is required to use condoms. If pregnancy is wanted, sperm washing to remove HIV can be successful.²⁵⁵ n=635

Legal help may be needed on housing, next-of-kin, employment, and guardianship of children, and making a will. Making advance directives needs special skill. Domiciliary genitourinary teams, GP, and hospices all have a role.

Aims of HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy)

- HAART aims to suppress plasma HIV RNA concentrations below the limit of detection and restore immune function. This is not a cure as latent replication-competent provirus exists in resting CD4+ T lymphocytes and persistent (but cryptic) viral replication remains intact.²⁵⁶ Lifelong suppression of plasma HIV RNA is problematic—hence the need for strategies to *eradicate* HIV.
- In theory, these effects can be helped by any therapy that blocks histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1 mediates virion production). This is the rationale behind studies of HDAC1 blockers such as valproic acid—which has been shown to ↓frequency of resting cell infection (mean reduction 75%).²⁵⁷

Rx HAART must be part of a holistic, integrated, individualized care plan, proceeding with managing comorbidities, eg malnutrition, malaria, etc.²⁵⁸

Monitoring HIV infection²⁵⁹

Routine tests

- CD4 T cell count (every 3–6 months). CD4 counts are expensive. A reasonable alternative is the TLC—the total lymphocyte count: a TLC of 1400/μL ≈ a CD4 count of 200/μL as far as risk of mortality from HIV goes.²⁶⁰
- HIV RNA (every 3–6 months).
- Serum U&E, HCO₃, Cl, creatinine, bilirubin (total + direct)/LFT (every 6–12 months).
- FBC differential (every 3–6 months).
- Fasting lipid profile and glucose (annually).

Other tests Pregnancy test; drug resistance testing.

Indications for initiating antiretroviral therapy²⁵⁹

- History of an AIDS-defining illness or with a CD4 count ≤350 cells/μL²⁶¹
- Antiretroviral therapy should also be initiated in the following groups of patients regardless of CD4 count: pregnant women; patients with HIV-associated nephropathy; and patients co-infected with HBV when treatment is indicated for hepatitis B.
- Antiretroviral therapy may be considered in some patients with CD4 counts >350 cells/mm³ (high viral load, or when CD4 count is falling rapidly).

1 Without interventions, rate of vertical transmission is 15–20%; prolonged breastfeeding doubles this, falling to <2% with antiretroviral prophylaxis, elective Caesars and bottle feeding.

Seek expert help early. Ask if a once-daily regimen (below) is possible. Nonspecialists need to be aware of 4 things: **1** Drug interactions are important, so don't co-prescribe without computerized decision support (or prolonged reading of drug data). **2** Any new sign in your patient may be a side-effect or an effect of HIV itself. **3** Know baseline viral load, eg >100,000 vs 50 copies/mL now. Is the CD4 count rising? **4** Monitor: BP, U&E, glucose/lipids. HAART may cause renal failure±insulin resistance.

Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTI)

Zidovudine (AZT) was the 1st anti-HIV drug. Dose: 250–300mg/12h PO or 1mg/kg/4h IV. SE: anaemia, WCC↓, GI disturbance, fever, rash, myalgia. Stop if tLFT, hepatomegaly, lactic acidosis. CI: anaemia, neutropenia, breastfeeding.

Didanosine (ddi; Videx Ec®) 250mg/24h PO if eGFR >80 and wt <60kg; 400mg/24h if ≥60kg. SE: pancreatitis, neuropathy, uraet, GI disturbance, retinal and optic nerve changes, liver failure. Stop if significant rise in LFT or amylase. CI: breastfeeding.

Lamivudine (3TC)²⁶² is well-tolerated. Dose: 150mg/12h PO, take without food. SE: see zidovudine, but less common. Stop if: tLFT; big liver; lactic acidosis; pancreatitis.

Emtricitabine (FTC) It is like lamivudine but is also active against hepatitis B.²⁶³

Stavudine (d4T) 40mg/12h PO if ≥60kg; 30mg/12h if <60kg; stop if neuropathy or LFT↑.

Tenofovir 245mg/24h PO. SE: see lamivudine.

Abacavir 600mg/24h PO. SE: hepatitis, lactic acidosis, hypersensitivity syndrome (3–5%)—rash, fever, vomiting; may be fatal if rechallenged.

Protease inhibitors (PI) slow cell-to-cell spread, and lengthen the time to the first clinical event. PIs are often given with low-dose ritonavir (100mg/12h PO), which appears to enhance drug levels. All PIs are metabolized by the cytochrome p450 enzyme system so increase the concentrations of certain drugs by competitive inhibition of their metabolism.²⁶⁴ PIs can cause dyslipidaemia, hyperglycaemia/insulin resistance.

Lopinavir/ritonavir (Kaletra®) 400mg (+100mg ritonavir)/12h PO. SE: see saquinavir.

Saquinavir 1g/12h PO within 2h of a meal. SE: oral ulcers, paraesthesiae, myalgia, headache, dizziness, pruritus, rash, pancreatitis.

Fosamprenavir; tipranavir; darunavir; atazanavir; indinavir.

Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTI) These also may interact with drugs metabolized by the cytochrome p450 enzyme system.²⁶⁵

Nevirapine 200mg/24h for 2wks, then 200mg/12h PO. Resistance emerges readily. SE: Stevens–Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, hepatitis.

Efavirenz Dose: 600mg/24h PO. SE: rash, insomnia, dizziness. Avoid in pregnancy.

Rilpivirine A new NNRTI. Resistance may develop (+ cross resistance to other NNRTI).

Integrase strand transfer inhibitors (INSTIs) Raltegravir; elvitegravir; dolutegravir²⁶⁶ May be combined with tenofovir lamivudine.²⁶⁷ SE: GI upset; insomnia.

CCR5 antagonists (cc-chemokine receptor 5) **Maraviroc** 300mg/12h PO.

Once-a-day tablets On an empty stomach at night; those with INSTI may be best, eg

- **Kivexa®/Epizcom®** = abacavir + lamivudine,²⁶⁸ may be given with dolutegravir. Others include:

- **Atripla®** = tenofovir, emtricitabine + efavirenz (causes psychiatric symptoms in 4%).

- **Stribild®** = elvitegravir + cobicistat + tenofovir + emtricitabine.

- **Eviplera®** = tenofovir, emtricitabine + rilpivirine. **Availability depends on location.**

Rx It's not all about drugs! There is no point in what we do if negatives outweigh positives, eg endless rounds of appointments; low/suicidal mood; poor body image; low self-esteem; guilt; discrimination; stigma; safe-sex conundrums; intercurrent infections; financial/insurance headaches; family conflict with soon-to-be-orphaned children. ► **Enable patients to become people in charge of their own destiny.** Treat low mood holistically. Make symptoms less intrusive. Randomized trials show that even one session of art therapy can achieve these ends.²⁶⁹ Phone-delivered support²⁷⁰ and conflict resolution workers *can* help. HIV+ve people can be involved in caring for other HIV people to mutual advantage. This may help bridge cultural phenomena known to inhibit access to HIV services, eg machismo and marianism in Latino and other cultures.²⁷¹ (**Marianism** is excessive humility and willingness of women to sacrifice themselves, and to be submissive to their sexually wayward husbands; **machismo** is its hypermale homophobic counter-stereotype.)



The UK top 10 STIs: genital warts, chlamydia, genital herpes, gonorrhoea, HIV, hepatitis B & C, pubic lice, syphilis, trichomonas. ▶ Refer early to genitourinary medicine (GUM) clinic for microbiology tests, contact tracing and notification. Some clinics offer walk-in services and on-call services. Avoid antibiotics until seen in GUM clinic.

UK incidence is rising alarmingly, by >10%/yr, as safer sex practices are being ignored. Prevalence of chlamydia is ~11%^{UK} (>104,000 new cases of genital *Chlamydia*); 22,320 cases of gonorrhoea, and >2250 cases of syphilis.²⁷⁸ In the USA in 2010, there were 45,834 new cases of syphilis (vs 48,298 for HIV and 309,341 for gonorrhea).²⁷⁹

History Ask about timing of last intercourse; contraceptive method; sexual contacts; duration of relationship; sexual practices/orientations; past STI; menstrual and medical history; antimicrobial therapy. Are sexual negotiation skills up to scratch?

Examination Detailed examination of genitalia including inguinal nodes and pubic hair. Scrotum, subpreputial space, and male urethra. PR examination and proctoscopy (if indicated); PV and speculum examination.

Signs Vaginal/urethral discharge (p418), genital lesions: herpes (p400); syphilis (p431); *Chlamydia* (BOX); genital warts (OHCS p599); salpingitis (OHCS p286); lice (OHCS p608).

Tests Refer to GUM clinic. Urine: dipstick and MSU/MC&S. Ulcers: swabs for HSV culture (viral transport medium) and dark ground microscopy for syphilis (*T. pallidum*). Urethral smear for Gram stain/culture for *N. gonorrhoeae* (send quickly to lab in Stuart's medium); urethral swab for *Chlamydia* (free tests also available from UK chemists, see BOX). High vaginal or swab in Stuart's medium for microscopy/culture (*Candida*, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, anaerobes, *Trichomonas vaginalis*); special endocervical swab for *Chlamydia trachomatis*. *Chlamydia* (an obligate intracellular bacteria) is the trickiest STD to diagnose as it is asymptomatic, difficult to culture, and serology may be unhelpful as it cross-reacts with *C. pneumoniae*. Urine ligase chain reaction and PCR are quite good screening tests, with sensitivity >90%. Other tests: include *Chlamydia* antigen and nucleic acid probe assays.²⁸⁰ **Blood tests:** Syphilis, hepatitis, and HIV serology after counselling.

Follow-up At 1wk and 3 months, with repeat smears, cultures, and syphilis serology.

Scabies (*Sarcoptes scabiei*, an arachnid) Spread is common in families. **The patient:** Papular rash (on abdomen or medial thigh; itchy at night) + burrows (in digital web spaces and flexor wrist skin). **Incubation:** ~6wks (during which time sensitization to the mite's faeces and/or saliva occurs). Penile lesions produce red nodules. **Δ:** Tease a mite out of its burrow with a needle for microscopy (dropping oil and scraping with a scalpel may provide faeces or eggs). **R:** ▶ Bedding, clothing, etc. of the patient and close contacts should be decontaminated (eg washing in hot water and drying in a hot dryer). Give written advice (OHCS p608). Apply 5% *permethrin* over whole body including scalp, face (avoid eyes), neck and ears (BNF). Do not forget the soles. Wash off after 8–12h; repeat after 7d; use 5% cream on hands if washed before the 8h elapses.²⁷¹

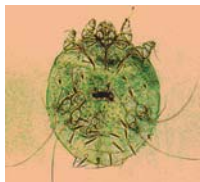


Fig 1. *Sarcoptes scabiei*.

©Prof S. Upton; Kansas Univ.

Lymphogranuloma **Signs:** Inguinal lymphadenopathy + ulceration. **Causes:** *Lymphogranuloma venereum* (*Chlamydia trachomatis*; serovar L2 causes proctitis too, eg in HIV +ve European men);²⁸¹ chancroid (*Haemophilus ducreyi*);¹ or granuloma inguinale (*Klebsiella* (*Calymmatobacterium*) *granulomatis*, ie donovanosis). The latter causes extensive, painless, red genital ulcers and pseudobuboes (inguinal nodes abscess), with possible elephantiasis ± malignant change. **Δ:** 'Closed safety-pin' inclusion bodies in cytoplasm of histiocytes. **R:** *Doxycycline* 100mg/12h PO until all lesions epithelialized—or *azithromycin*, *erythromycin*, or *tetracycline*.

1 In the Tropics, chancroid is a common cause of sexually acquired genital ulcers, typically with a granular, yellow base and ragged edges (± inguinal buboes, which may need draining via a wide-bore needle); the cause is *Haemophilus ducreyi*. WHO recommends erythromycin 500mg/6h PO for 7d, ceftriaxone 250mg IM (1 dose), or azithromycin 1g PO (1 dose). Chancroid facilitates spread of HIV.

Chlamydia screening to prevent pelvic inflammatory disease

Genital *Chlamydia trachomatis* is the commonest STI in the UK ($\geq 100,000$ diagnoses in GUM clinics/yr). Highest rates are in those <24 yrs old—implying long-term morbidity—salpingitis, infertility, and ectopic pregnancy in 2–4%.²⁸² Shame, embarrassment about discussing STIs with partners, lack of appointments, and having to be sensible are the main obstacles. 🗯️ Dialogue is key; you can help by talking frankly with your patients about sex: see *OHCS* p328 for honing this skill. As part of implementing the UK National Chlamydia Screening Programme, UK high street pharmacies and GP surgeries offer free yearly chlamydia tests (self-administered) to those aged 16–24 yrs (and if +ve, to their partners, of any age). Uptake of this service is patchy and it may be hard to sustain. Colleges, prisons, and armed forces are also targeted.²⁸³ NB: only 0.5% of young adults respond to mass media campaigns inviting them in for screening.

Free home-based urine test kits may be distributed to garages, hairdressers, and supermarkets with results texted to mobile phones—removing the need to provide embarrassing samples at the doctor's surgery.

Walk-in STI clinics and late-opening GP clinics allow prompt treatment.

NICE advocates yearly opportunistic screening of young adults (eg with nucleic acid amplification tests on urine) wherever they present to primary care, irrespective of presenting symptoms.²⁸⁴ This might halve the incidence of pelvic inflammatory disease. Issues about efficient contact tracing are unresolved. NB: there is no good evidence to support using screening to halt transmission, or to reduce rates of orchitis,[♂] ectopic pregnancy or infertility.

First-void (early morning) urine may be the single best diagnostic specimen (for *C. trachomatis* and *M. genitalium*—another common STI) for detection by PCR. An additional endocervical specimen may also be needed.²⁸⁵

For genital chlamydial infection give azithromycin 1g PO as a single dose.

🗯️ A holistic approach to sexual health

A simple reading of this chapter supports the fallacy that the pathogen is everything—that we are simply the unvarying terrain on which they wreak their havoc.

Claude Bernard was one of the first to point out that the terrain is more important than the pathogen—get the terrain right, and the pathogen loses its grip.

Louis Pasteur embodied the pathogen theory of disease; nevertheless, his deathbed words were: "Bernard is right; the pathogen is nothing; the terrain is everything." Bernard had drunk a glassful of cholera to prove his point (no one quite knows why he survived but French physiologists are a tough lot).

So when we look at sexual infections we must look at the terrain *and* the pathogen—and ask questions such as how does this couple stay healthy (the science of 'salutogenesis'²⁸⁶) whereas another couple or triad keeps getting ill? Take thrush for example: always a commensal, but in some patients also a big problem. For the terrain to be optimum, nutrition and the immune system must be optimum too. If the subject has HIV, candida may become invasive—not because it changes but because the terrain changes—in this case probably HIV-related downregulation of anti- β -1,2-oligomannosidic epitopes (an epitope is a surface portion of an antigen capable of eliciting an immune response and of combining with the antibody produced to counter that response).²⁸⁷

Understand terrain (above) in its widest sense: it has local, individual, and social axes. Each of these merit interventions in our efforts to reduce sexual infections. Also note that one pathogen often alters the terrain for another—for example one sexual infection makes further infections more likely as inflamed surfaces offer juicy portals of entry. 🗯️ So our job in infectious diseases is to get the terrain right. *If we simply focus on killing pathogens we will always fail.*



Non-offensive vaginal discharge may be physiological. Most that smell or itch are due to infection. Foul discharge may be due to a foreign body (eg forgotten tampons, or beads in children). ▶ Discharges rarely resemble their classical descriptions. ▶ Untreated GU inflammation ↑ viral shedding of HIV-1 in semen 3-fold.

Thrush (*Candida albicans*) Thrush is the commonest cause of discharge and is classically described as white curds. The vulva and vagina may be red, fissured, and sore. The partner may be asymptomatic. **Risk factors:** Pregnancy, immunodeficiencies, diabetes, the Pill, antibiotics. **Δ:** Microscopy: strings of mycelium or oval spores. Culture on Sabouraud's medium. **R:** A single imidazole vaginal pessary, eg clotrimazole 500mg + cream for the vulva (and partners) is convenient. Alternative: 1 dose of fluconazole 150mg PO. Reassure that thrush is not necessarily sexually transmitted. Recurrent thrush: see *OHCS* p284.

***Trichomonas vaginalis* (TV)** causes vaginitis + thin, bubbly, fishy smelling discharge. It is sexually transmitted. Exclude gonorrhoea (may coexist). The motile flagellate may be seen on wet film microscopy, or cultured (**fig 1**). **R:** Metronidazole 400mg/12h PO for 5 days or 2g PO stat. Treat the partner. If pregnant, use the 5-day regimen.

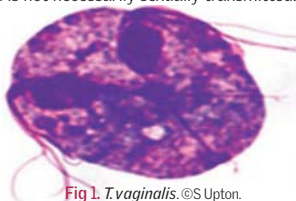


Fig 1. *T. vaginalis*. ©S Upton.

Bacterial vaginosis causes a fishy smelling discharge. The vagina is not inflamed. Itch is rare. Vaginal pH: >5.5, hence alteration of bacterial flora ± overgrowth of, eg *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Mycoplasma hominis*, peptostreptococci, *Mobiluncus* and anaerobes, eg *Bacteroides* species with too few lactobacilli. There is risk of pre-term labour ± amniotic infection. **Δ:** Stippled vaginal epithelial 'clue cells' on wet microscopy. Culture. **R:** Metronidazole 400mg/12h PO for 5d (probiotic *Lactobacillus* GR-1 and RC-14 for 28d ↑ cure rates),²⁸⁸ or clindamycin cream.

Gonorrhoea (*Neisseria gonorrhoea*) (**fig 2**; GC) can infect any columnar epithelium (urethra, cervix, rectum, pharynx, conjunctiva). **♂:** Urethral pus ± dysuria; tenesmus; proctitis ± discharge PR, eg if gay. **♀:** Often asymptomatic (as is pharyngeal GC), or vaginal discharge, dysuria, proctitis. **Local complications:** Prostatitis, cystitis, salpingitis, Bartholinitis. **Systemic:** Septicaemia (petechiae + hand or foot pustules; arthritis; Reiter's⁺ syndrome; SBE/IE). **Obstetric:** Ophthalmia neonatorumND (*OHCS* p36). **Long-term:** Urethral stricture, fertility↓. **R:** Encourage safe sex; trace contacts (get help from GUM clinic); promote sexual negotiation skills; purge abusive relationships. **Uncomplicated infection of cervix, urethra & rectum:** Ceftriaxone 500mg IM stat (or cefixime 400mg PO stat) + **R** for chlamydia (azithromycin 1g PO stat or doxycycline 100mg/12h PO for 7d).

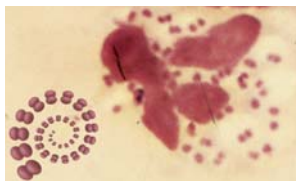


Fig 2. Pairs of gonococci in a neutrophil; their long axes lie parallel, as with lovers, and testicles (inset), reminding us that infertility from epididymo-orchitis is a leading complication. The time it takes to descend the spiral, from the sublime to the excruciating, is 2–10 days. Spiral by Luke Famerly.

Non-gonococcal urethritis (NGU) is commoner than GC. Discharge is thinner and signs less acute. Women (typically asymptomatic) may have cervicitis, urethritis, or salpingitis (pain, fever, infertility). Rectum and pharynx are not infected. **Organisms:** *C. trachomatis* (▶ special swabs are needed, *OHCS* p286); *Ureaplasma urealyticum*; *Mycoplasma genitalium*; *Trichomonas vaginalis*; *Gardnerella*; Gram -ve and anaerobic bacteria; *Candida*. **Complications:** Similar to local complications of GC. *Chlamydia* may cause Reiter's syndrome and neonatal conjunctivitis. **R:** Azithromycin 1g PO stat, or doxycycline 100mg/12h PO for 7d. **Also:** Erythromycin 500mg/6h PO for 14d, or ofloxacin 400mg/24h for 7d. Trace contacts. Avoid intercourse during treatment and alcohol for 4wks.²⁸⁹

Non-infective urethritis Traumatic; chemicals; cancer; foreign body.

Why do antibiotic guidelines become outdated?

Emergence of antibiotic resistance is the third-most important obstacle in the perpetual and perpetually unwinnable war against infectious diseases. Other obstacles are poverty, ignorance, and corruption—and over-using antibiotics. Guidelines, which exist on local, regional, and national levels, help optimize therapy, but must be continually updated in the vain task of trying to keep up with pathogens. To monitor resistance patterns, infective isolates from different

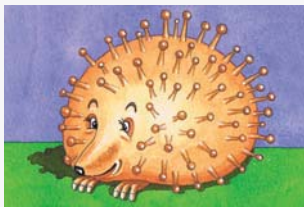


Fig 3. Say to patients: "Don't get prickly when your doctor denies you antibiotics for flu."

UK regions are tested against a variety of antibiotics to determine antibiotic sensitivities, as measured by the minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) of drug required to prevent organism growth in culture. A rising MIC indicates drug resistance, and may prompt revision of the guidelines, but be sceptical of even the most up-to-date ones when events at the bedside so dictate.

One example is the emergence of ciprofloxacin resistance in *Neisseria gonorrhoea*.²⁷ Resistance is now the rule rather than the exception. Historical data: in 2000, 2% of isolates were resistant; 3% in 2002; and 43% in 2006. 2012 data show that some strains are now resistant to penicillins, ceftriaxone, cefixime, cefotaxime, ciprofloxacin and tetracycline.²⁹⁰ Another example: in 2004 only 4% of *E. coli* causing septicaemia were resistant to ciprofloxacin—now it is 21%.

National guidelines aim for chosen drugs to eliminate gonococcal infection in >95% of patients. Ciprofloxacin, previously 1st-line, now has to be replaced by cephalosporins (eg cefixime) in new guidelines.²⁹¹ Avoiding use of broad-spectrum antibiotics (eg cephalosporins, co-amoxiclav) may help reduce overall antibiotic resistance, but ill patients often need such drugs: a big dilemma.

"A post-antibiotic era means an end to modern medicine as we know it..."

So says WHO (2012),²⁹² commenting gloomily on emerging untreatable infections. When we hear these sorts of comments we should listen to Claude Bernard: if you cannot change the organism, change the terrain in which the organism appears to be flourishing. ☸ This is an opportunity for combining reductionist (eg vaccination) and non-reductionist/integrative medicine, for example paying attention to populations, diet, hygiene and the role of the mind in preventing and managing infection. People get better from septicaemia without antibiotics thanks to a strong immune system. Psychoneuroimmunology is starting to understand how. We are not suggesting treating infections without antibiotics, we are simply saying that if no antibiotic works, that is not the end of the road.²⁹³ Bedside medicine can rediscover its old roots, more or less successfully.

Possible ways to try to stop or slow antibiotic resistance²⁹⁰

- Discourage over-the-counter antibiotic availability.
- Don't use antibiotics for well patients with probable viral infections.
- Educate patients not to get prickly (fig 3) when their GP does not prescribe (this is the basis of a current amusing public health drive, linked to an annual European antibiotic awareness day (Nov 18th)).
- Whenever antibiotics are used, explain that the full course should be taken: "Don't keep a few in reserve to save for our next illness..."
- Tailor the antibiotic to the likely bacterium (p378).



Staphylococci When pathogenic, these are usually *Staph. aureus*. Often they infect skin, lids, or wounds. Severe *Staph. aureus* infections: pneumonia, osteomyelitis; septic arthritis; endocarditis; septicaemia. Production of β -lactamase which destroys many antibiotics (p378–70) is the main problem. *Staph. aureus* toxins cause food poisoning (p390) and toxic shock syndrome: shock, confusion, fever, a rash, diarrhoea, myalgia, CPK↑, platelets↓ (associated with the use of tampons). Deep *Staph.* infections need ≥ 4 wks of *flucloxacillin* 500mg/6h iv. **Coagulase -ve staphs (CONS):** *Staph. epidermidis* (albus) is usually only pathogenic if immuno-compromised, or associated with foreign material (pacemakers, IV lines, or joint prosthesis). Removing the foreign material may well be needed.

Methicillin-resistant *Staph. aureus* (MRSA) is typically a hospital-acquired infection, causing pneumonia, septicaemia, wound infections, and death (risk $\uparrow 5$ -fold).²⁹⁴ It accounts for $\sim 6\%$ of total hospital-acquired infection. There are ≥ 17 sub-types. NB: glycopeptide-resistant enterococci and *C. difficile* are bigger problems (p247). In the UK it is mandatory to record all infections. UK prevalence has fallen by 30% (to 1.7/100,000) since 2010 despite ward overcrowding and reluctance to close affected wards, perhaps due to better barrier-nursing facilities and improved hygiene (eg washing hands between patients). Carriage rates (nasal): 1–10%. Risk factors: HIV; dialysis; on ITU. MRSA is community-acquired in up to 40%. Whole genome sequencing helps track outbreaks, enabling prompt control. R_x: Discuss with a microbiologist. **Vancomycin** or **teicoplanin** are used, but strains with reduced sensitivity (vancomycin-intermediate *Staph. aureus* (VISA)— \downarrow sensitivity to *both* drugs) have emerged. Here, consider **linezolid** (may be used 1st-line too);²⁹⁵ or **daptomycin**. Prevention (p391):

- Isolate recently admitted patients with suspected MRSA. Group MRSA cases on one ward (impractical if hospital has to run at 100% capacity).
- Wash your hands and your stethoscope! (also TV remote controls, etc).
- Ask about the need for eradication (with *mupirocin*).
- Be meticulous in looking after intravascular catheters.
- Surveillance swabs of patients and staff in outbreak \pm whole genome sequencing.
- Use gowns/gloves when dealing with infected or colonized patients. Masks may be needed during contact with MRSA pneumonia.

Streptococci Group A streps (eg *Strep. pyogenes*) are common pathogens, causing wound and skin infections (impetigo, erysipelas, *OHCS* p598), tonsillitis, scarlet fever^{no}, necrotizing fasciitis (p662), toxic shock, or septicaemia. Late complications: rheumatic fever; glomerulonephritis. *Strep. pneumoniae* (pneumococcus, Gram +ve diplococcus) causes pneumonia, otitis media, meningitis and septicaemia). Resistance to penicillin is a problem. *Strep. sanguis*, *Strep. mutans*, and *Strep. mitior* ('viridans' group), *Strep. bovis* and *Enterococcus faecalis* all cause endocarditis. *Enterococcus faecalis* also causes UTI, wound infections, and septicaemia. *Strep. mutans* is a very common cause of dental caries. *Strep. milleri* forms abscesses, eg in CNS, lungs, and liver. Most streps are sensitive to penicillins, but *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* may present some difficulties. They usually respond to a combination of *ampicillin* and an aminoglycoside, eg *gentamicin* (p381 & p767). Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) have been reported. Some strains of VRE are sensitive to *teicoplanin* or *linezolid* (p381).



Fig1. Ascending lymphangitis from strep-infected (diabetic) ankle ulcer. ©Prof A Huntley.

Anthrax^{no} (*Bacillus anthracis*) Occurs, eg in Africa, Asia, China, Eastern Europe, and Haiti. Spread is by handling infected carcasses or via contaminated cattle-feed; well-cooked meat poses no risk. **4 types:** **1** Cutaneous **2** GI (eg GI bleeding) **3** Inhalational (dyspnoea) **4** 'Injectional' (eg from contaminated heroin).²⁹⁶ Terrorists have

used long-lasting anthrax spores as a biological weapon.²⁹⁷ **Signs:** Common cutaneous form: local black skin pustule→oedema (may be striking)→fever→regional lymphadenopathy→septicaemia (± hepatosplenomegaly/meningoencephalitis) in 20% (often fatal). **Tests:** CXR (wide mediastinum). Lab: large Gram +ve rod. PCR. **R:** (for inhalational anthrax) *Ciprofloxacin* 400 mg/12h IVI or *doxycycline* 100mg/12h PO/IV + *clindamycin* 1.2g/12h IVI; continue one or other for 60d depending on sensitivities. Get help. Post-exposure prophylaxis uses *doxycycline* or any *quinolone* (eg *ciprofloxacin*, *levofloxacin*) for 60d. **Prevention:** Immunize animals and humans at risk; enforce sound food-handling and carcass hygiene.²⁹⁸

DiphtheriaND is caused by *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* toxin. **Signs:** Tonsillitis ± a pseudomembrane over the fauces ± lymphadenopathy ('bull neck'). ENT details and antitoxin: *OHCS* p158. **R:** *Erythromycin* 12mg/kg/6h IVI. **Prevention:** p391. Give non-immune contacts *erythromycin* 500mg/6h PO for >7d; get lab help.

Listeriosis is caused by *Listeria monocytogenes*, a Gram +ve bacillus with an odd ability to multiply at low temperatures. Sources of infection include pâtés, raw vegetables/prepared salads (eg diced celery),²⁹⁹ unpasteurized milk/soft cheeses (brie, camembert, blue vein types). It may cause non-specific flu-like illness, rash, or PUO, pneumonia, meningoencephalitis/ataxia, eg if immunocompromised or pregnant (where it may cause miscarriage or stillbirth), or neonatal.³⁰⁰ **Δ:** Culture blood, placenta, amniotic fluid, CSF + any expelled products of conception. ► **Take blood cultures in any pregnant patient with unexplained fever for ≥48h.** Serology, vaginal, and rectal swabs don't help (it may be a commensal here). **R:** *Ampicillin* IV (*erythromycin* if allergic) + *gentamicin*; p378 & p381 for doses. **Prevention in pregnancy:** •Avoid soft cheeses, pâtés, and under-cooked meat. •Observe 'use by' dates and standing times if using microwaves. •Ensure reheated food is piping hot; throw away any left-overs.

Clostridia Tetanus p424. *C. perfringens* causes wound infections and gas gangrene ± shock or renal failure after surgery/trauma (p391) or more rarely infections (eg septicaemia with intravascular haemolysis or gas-forming liver abscess)³⁰¹ if immunosuppressed (malignancy, DM). **R:** Debridement is vital; *benzylpenicillin* 1.2-2.4g/4h IV + *clindamycin* 900mg/8h IVI, antitoxin and hyperbaric O₂ may also be used. Amputation may be necessary. Clostridia food poisoning (p390). *C. difficile*: Diarrhoea (pseudomembranous colitis following antibiotic therapy, p247).

C. botulinum spores are ubiquitous; germination/toxin production occurs in anaerobic, low-salt, low-sugar, low-acid, warm conditions. Transporting food, eg unrefrigerated sausages (*botulus* is Latin for sausage) may cause outbreaks in unconnected areas.³⁰² *C. botulinum* toxin blocks release of acetylcholine causing flaccid paralysis. It cannot spread from one person to another. 2 adult forms: food-borne and wound botulism. ► **Risk is high in IV drug abusers** if heroin is contaminated with *C. botulinum*. **Signs:** Afebrile, flaccid paralysis ('descending', dysarthria, dysphagia, diplopia, ptosis, then difficulty in holding the head up, then dropping things, then respiratory failure—and *no* sensory signs)—9h-9 days^{302,303} after ingestion.³⁰⁴ Autonomic signs: dry mouth, fixed or dilated pupils. **Tests:** Find toxin in blood samples or, in wound botulism, identify *C. botulinum* in wound specimens by prompt referral to a reference lab. Samples include: serum, wound pus, swabs in anaerobic transport media.³⁰⁵ **R:** Get help (on ITU). *Botulinum antitoxin* works if given early. Also give to those who have ingested toxin but are as yet asymptomatic. *C. botulinum* is sensitive to *benzylpenicillin* and *metronidazole*. In the UK, antitoxin is sourced via CDSC (020 7210 300).³⁰⁶

Nocardia species cause subcutaneous infection (eg Madura foot) in warm climates, and, if immunocompromised, abscesses (lung, liver, cerebral). Microscopy: branching chains of cocci. **R:** *Trimethoprim* 5mg/kg/8h IVI + *sulfamethoxazole* 25mg/kg/8h IVI for 3wks (do serum levels) then reduce + ceftriaxone 1g/12h IV.

Actinomycosis is caused by *Actinomyces israelii*. Usually causes subcutaneous infections, forming sinuses with pus which contain sulfur granules—eg on the jaw (or IUCDs, *OHCS* p298). It may cause abdominal masses (may mimic appendix mass). **R:** *Ampicillin* 12.5mg/kg/6h for 30d then penicillin V for 100d. Liaise with surgeons.



Enterobacteria Some are normal gut commensals, others environmental organisms. They are a big cause of UTI and intra-abdominal sepsis (eg post-op and in the acute abdomen), and a common cause of septicaemia. Unusually, they may cause pneumonia (especially *Klebsiella*), meningitis, or endocarditis. They may be sensitive to ampicillin and trimethoprim but resistance is growing. Resistance of *K. pneumoniae* to amikacin is seen in 50% (in some places), ceftazidime (90%) and tobramycin (90%)³³ so imipenem may be needed. *Salmonella* & *Shigella* are discussed on p426.

Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a serious pathogen (esp. nosocomial or if immunocompromised, and in cystic fibrosis). It causes pneumonia, septicaemia (risk ↑ if: immunosuppressed, recent antibiotic use, central venous or urinary catheter³⁰⁷), UTI, wound infection, osteomyelitis, and cutaneous infections. The main problem is its increasing antibiotic resistance. **R:** Piperacillin (p378) or mezlocillin + an aminoglycoside (p766). Ciprofloxacin, ceftazidime, and imipenem (p380) are also useful.

Acinetobacter infections (eg *A. baumannii*) This Gram -ve coccobacillus causes pneumonia ± septicaemia, eg if debilitated/hospitalized. Risk ↑ if vascular catheter *in situ*, ventilator use/tracheostomy, enteral feeding, or recent use of 3rd-generation cephalosporins or carbapenem. We carry it on our hands, and it inhabits ventilators. ITU outbreaks occur in summer. **R:** Imipenem ± aminoglycosides. Multidrug-resistance may require use of nephrotoxic polymyxins or tigecycline. **Infection control:** Clean the source; sterilize the reservoir, characterize transmission—and interrupt.³⁰⁸

Yersinia pestis causes plagueND, a disease of small animals and their fleas (fig 1) that can also infect us by flea bite, direct contact, or droplet. **Incubation:** 1-7d.

Signs: Flu-like symptoms, sudden fever, chills, head and body-aches, weakness, and nausea/vomiting. 3 types:

1 Bubonic plague is the most common form. *Yersinia pestis* enters the skin from the site of the bite and travels via lymphatics to the nearest node. Swollen nodes ('buboes') are very painful and can suppurate.

2 Septicaemic plague is a late complication.

3 Pneumonic plague is the worst kind and can be transmitted via droplets without involving fleas or animals. Untreated, it has a high mortality rate.

Δ: Phage typing of bacterial culture, or 4-fold ↑ in antibodies to F antigen.

R: Isolate suspects; *streptomycin* up to 15mg/kg/12h IM for 10d. If in 1st ½ of pregnancy, amoxicillin 500mg/8h PO; if later, co-trimoxazole 480mg/12h PO. Children: co-trimoxazole.³⁰⁹ Staying at home, quarantine (inspect daily for 1wk), insect sprays to legs/bedding, and avoiding dead animals helps stop spread.

Vaccination doesn't offer instant protection, so is not recommended for immediate protection in outbreaks. It is reserved for high-risk groups (eg lab personnel).³¹⁰

Yersinia enterocolitica In Scandinavia this typically causes a reactive, asymmetrical polyarthritis of weight-bearing joints; in America, it causes enteritis. It also causes uveitis, appendicitis, mesenteric lymphadenitis, myositis, glomerulonephritis, thyroiditis, colonic dilatation, ileitis/perforation, and septicaemia. **Δ:** Agglutination titres >1:160 mean recent infection. **R:** Ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO for 3-5d.

Whooping coughND (*Bordetella pertussis*) After 1wk of catarrh, fever & cough, characteristic paroxysms of coughing & inspiratory whoops occur (esp. in children). Most recover well, but it may last months ("my 100-day cough"). Some (esp. babies <2 months old, hence too young to vaccinate) develop pneumonia ± subsequent bronchiectasis, fits & brain damage. Lymphocytosis is a telling sign in older patients. Pertussis is under-diagnosed: ▶ have a high index of suspicion, and access to **per-nasal swabs** (eg blue-topped; contact lab)—insert into the nostril and guide gently **horizontally** to the back of the nose. If obstruction is felt, reinsert via the other nostril. When resistance to the posterior pharynx is felt, withdraw and place in its transport medium. It can be stored (for <24h) at 4-8°C before transport.

R: Clarithromycin dose (for 7d): adult=500mg/12h; neonate/child <8kg=7.5mg/kg/12h; 8-11kg=62.5mg/12h; 12-19kg=125mg/12h; 20-29kg=187.5mg/12h; 30-40kg=250mg/12h

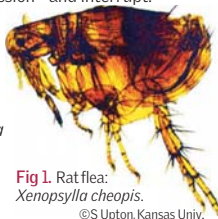


Fig 1. Rat flea:
Xenopsylla cheopis.
©S Upton, Kansas Univ.



all PO. If pregnant: erythromycin 500mg/6h. *If macrolides not tolerated:* cotrimoxazole (p380; not if pregnant or neonatal). Exclude from school^{etc} until treated for 5d.

Chemoprophylaxis (same doses as R_x above; HPA advice) if: baby <1yr and not fully vaccinated; those likely to transmit to such babies, eg mothers or >32wks pregnant, nursery workers; health workers (unless vaccinated in the last 5yrs); household contacts. Complete vaccination courses in these groups as needed. Pertussis vaccine (p391) is indicated at any time in pregnancy, eg with a 2nd dose after 28wks.³¹¹

NB: **immunization** (p391) hasn't controlled pertussis well: incidence in adults doubled recently over a 5yr period.³¹² Immunity wanes 5yrs after dose 5, hence a growing case for vaccinating adults as above, esp. pregnant women, who then pass antibodies directly via the placenta to those who most need it, ie neonates.³¹³

Moraxella catarrhalis (Gram -ve diplococcus) is a cause of pneumonia, exacerbations of COPD, otitis media, sinusitis, and septicaemia. R_x : Clarithromycin 500mg/12h PO.

Brucellosis This zoonosis (p446) from contact with animals, their droplet exhalations, or other products, eg unpasteurized goat (or human) milk. It is common in the Middle/Far East and Bosnia, eg in vets or farmers. **Cause:** *B. melitensis* (worst sort); *B. abortus*; *B. suis/canis*. **Symptoms** may be indolent and last years: eg PUO, sweats, malaise, anorexia, weight↓, hepatosplenomegaly, rash, D&V, myalgia, backache, arthritis, spondylodiscitis (fig 2),³¹⁴ sacroiliitis, bursitis, orchitis, TIA,³¹⁵ cranial palsies (II, VI, VII), urinary retention, depression, hallucinations.³¹⁶

Complications: Osteomyelitis, SBE/IE (culture -ve; a big cause of brucella deaths),³¹⁷ abscesses (liver, spleen, lung, breast: psoas), meningoencephalitis, myelitis, aortitis.

Δ: Pancytopenia; blood culture (≥6wks; rapid culture systems exist, contact lab); serology: if titres equivocal (≥1:40 in non-endemic zones) do ELISA ± immunoradiometric assay.

R_x : ~6wks 🌟 **doxycycline** 100mg/12h PO + **rifampicin** + **gentamicin** (for 7d).³¹⁸ Oral pills might engender more relapses, a **big** problem, but not, ironically, if IM leads to ↑defaulting: either way, the best doctors negotiate ~100% concordance. **Surgery:** For abscesses or SBE/IE.

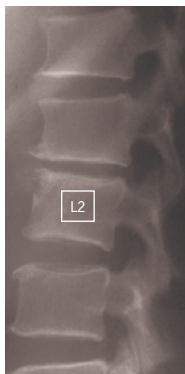


Fig 2. Loss of joint space between L1 & L2 + destruction of L2's anterior body.

© M Reeder; F McGuinness.

Haemophilus influenzae typically affects unvaccinated children usually <4yrs old. It causes otitis media, acute epiglottitis, pneumonia, meningitis, osteomyelitis, and septicaemia. In adults it may cause exacerbations of chronic bronchitis.

R_x : Unreliably sensitive to ampicillin; cefotaxime is more reliable. Capsulated types tend to be much more pathogenic than non-capsulated types. ▶ Immunization: p391.

Tularaemia (*Francisella tularensis* Gram -ve bacillus; acquired by handling infected animal carcasses). It causes rash, fever, malaise, tonsillitis, headache, hepatosplenomegaly, and lymphadenopathy ± papules at sites of inoculation (eg fingers).

Complications: Meningitis, osteomyelitis, SBE/IE, pericarditis, septicaemia.

Δ: Contact local microbiologist for advice. Only use labs with safety cabinets for dangerous pathogens. Swabs and aspirates must be transported in approved containers.

R_x : Gentamicin or tobramycin. Oral tetracycline may be good for chemoprophylaxis.

Prevention: Find the animal vector; reduce human contact with it as far as possible. Vaccination may be possible for high-risk groups.

Cat-scratch disease Cause: *Bartonella henselae* (small, curved, Gram -ve rod or *Afepilis felis*—suggested by: 1 Recent cat scratch 2 Regional adenopathy (-ve tests for other causes, p29) 3 +ve cat scratch skin test antigen response 4 Microabscesses in nodes. If HIV+ve, skin lesions are like Kaposi's sarcoma. R_x : (Often not needed or unresponsive) Azithromycin³¹⁹ or ciprofloxacin, rifampicin and co-trimoxazole.

See also *Spirochetes* p430; *Neisseria* p375; *Legionella* p162.



Essence Tetanospasmin, *Clostridium tetani*'s exotoxin, causes muscle spasms and rigidity, cardinal features of tetanus (= 'to stretch').

Incidence ~50 people/yr in the UK. Mortality: 40% (80% in neonates).

Pathogenesis Spores of *C. tetani* live in faeces, soil, dust, and on instruments. A tiny breach in skin or mucosa, eg cuts, burns, ear piercing, banding of piles, may admit the spores. Diabetics are at risk. Spores then germinate and make the exotoxin. This travels up peripheral nerves and interferes with inhibitory synapses.

The patient 20% have no evidence of recent wounds.³²⁰ Signs appear from 1d to several months from the (often forgotten) injury. There is a prodrome of fever, malaise, and headache before classical features develop: *trismus* (=lockjaw; Greek *trismos* = grinding, hence difficulty in opening the mouth); *risus sardonius* (a grin-like posture of hypertonic facial muscles); *opisthotonus* (fig 1); *spasms* (which at first may be induced by movement, injections, noise, etc, but later are spontaneous; they may cause dysphagia and respiratory arrest); autonomic dysfunction (arrhythmias ± wide fluctuations in BP).

Differential diagnosis is dental abscess (both cause trismus), rabies, phenothiazine toxicity, and strychnine poisoning. Phenothiazine toxicity usually only affects facial and tongue muscles (see p855).

Poorer prognosis Incubation <1wk;³²⁰ trismus leads to spasms in <48h; neonates; elderly; post-infective; postpartum (a big cause of maternal mortality worldwide).

Treatment ►► Get help on ITU. **ABC** (may need tracheostomy and ventilation). Debride all wounds. Monitor ECG + BP + SpO₂ (keep >92%, eg with O₂ mask + reservoir); careful fluid balance.

- Human tetanus immunoglobulin (HTIG) 150 units/kg IM at multiple sites to neutralize toxin.
- Aim to keep the patient asleep but rousable to obey simple requests. Diazepam 5–20mg/8h PO (mild disease; much higher doses may be needed, eg 480mg/d)³²¹ or, to control spasms, 0.05–0.2mg/kg/h IVI (≤140mg/d) or phenobarbital 1.0mg/kg/h IM or IV + chlorpromazine 0.5mg/kg/6h IM (IV bolus is dangerous) starting 3h after the phenobarbital. If this fails to control the spasms, paralyse and ventilate (get anaesthetist's help). Dose example: pancuronium 2–4mg IV, then 1–2mg/h by IVI if needed; get expert help on ITU.³²²
- Metronidazole, eg 500mg/6h PO for 7d (?better than benzylpenicillin 1.2g/4h IV).

Prevention See BOX. Active immunization with tetanus toxoid is part of the 3-stage vaccine during the 1st year of life (eg Pediacel®, p391). Boosters are given on starting school and in early adulthood. Once 5 injections have been given, revaccinate only at the time of significant injury, and consider a final one-off booster at ~65yrs.³²³ **Neonatal and maternal tetanus** are caused by unhygienic methods of delivery, abortion, or umbilical-cord care (eg on day 6–8 of life). 34 countries have not achieved WHO's global elimination target (eg with education and 2 doses of tetanus toxoid antenatally).³²⁴ Mortality is high (eg 50% of infants).

Primary immunization of adults: 0.5mL tetanus toxoid IM repeated twice at monthly intervals. In the UK, the formulation is Revaxis®, p391.

Secondary prevention: See BOX.





Fig 1. Spasm causing opisthotonus (arching of body with neck hyperextension). Differential diagnosis: tetanus, rabies, cerebral malaria, neurosyphilis, acute cerebral injury, catatonia.

© Courtesy of Centres for Disease Control and Prevention.

Tetanus prophylaxis in wound management³²⁵

Clean, minor wounds

Uncertain history of previous vaccination or fewer than 3 doses: Give vaccine.

3 or more previous doses: No need to vaccinate unless vaccination status is incomplete or unknown.

All other wounds (wounds contaminated with dirt, faeces, soil, and saliva, puncture wounds, avulsions, and wounds caused by missiles, crushing, burns, and frostbite).

Uncertain history of previous vaccination or fewer than 3 doses: Give vaccine and tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG). The recommended dose of TIG for recent (<24h) wounds of average severity is 250 units IM (500 units if wound >24h old, and in burns or heavy contamination). When both tetanus vaccine and TIG are administered, use separate syringes and separate injection sites.

Give tetanus vaccine (p391) if born before 1961 or vaccination status is unknown, or immunosuppressed, or a past course was incomplete.

► Hygiene education and wound debridement are of vital importance.



Typhoid and paratyphoid are caused by *Salmonella typhi* and *S. paratyphi* (types A, B, and C), respectively. (Other *Salmonella* cause D&V: p390 & p246.) **Incubation:** 3–21d. **Spread:** Faecal–oral (acid suppression from PPIs trick). **Presentation:** Malaise, headache, high fever with relative bradycardia, cough, and constipation. CNS signs (coma, delirium, meningism, cerebellar signs, fits)³²⁶ are serious. Diarrhoea is more common after the 1st week. Rose spots occur on the trunk of 40%, but may be difficult to see. Epistaxis, bruising, abdominal pain, and splenomegaly may occur. **Δ:** Can be made by isolation of *S. typhi* from blood, bone marrow or a specific anatomical lesion. Clinical symptoms or serology are suggestive but not definitive for diagnosis. Blood culture is the mainstay of the diagnosis, which is +ve in 1st 10d.³²⁷ **Later:** urine/stool cultures. Marrow culture has best yield. **LFT:** Widal test is unreliable (–ve in ~30% of culture-proven cases). DNA probes and PCR tests have been developed.

R: Fluid replacement and good nutrition + ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO for 10d. **Alternatives for ciprofloxacin resistance:** (common, eg in Asia)—ceftriaxone 2g IV/24h for 14d; or azithromycin 1g PO on day 1 with 500g PO on days 2–6.³²⁸ **In severe disease,** give IV ciprofloxacin or IV cefotaxime for 10–14d. In encephalopathy ± shock, give dexamethasone 3mg/kg IV stat just before antibiotics, then 1mg/kg/6h for 48h.

Complications: Osteomyelitis (eg if sickle-cell); GI bleed/perforation; cholecystitis; myocarditis; pyelonephritis; meningitis; abscess; DVT. **Clearance:** 6 consecutive cultures of urine + faeces are –ve. 1% become chronic carriers; treat if a food handler, etc. Ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO for 6wks ± cholecystectomy.

Prognosis: If untreated, 10% die; if treated, 0.1% die. **Vaccine:** p377.

Bacillary dysenteryND

Shigella causes abdominal pain and bloody diarrhoea ± sudden fever, headache, and occasionally neck stiffness. CSF is sterile. UK school epidemics are often mild (often *S. sonnei*), but imported dysentery may be severe (often *S. flexneri* or *S. dysenteriae*).

Incubation: 1–7d. **Spread:** Faecal–oral. **Diagnosis:** Stool culture. **Treatment:** Fluids PO. Avoid antidiarrhoeal drugs. Drugs: ciprofloxacin 500mg/12h PO for 3–5d. Imported shigellosis is often resistant to several antimicrobials: sensitivity testing is important for all enteric fevers. There may be associated spondyloarthritis (p553).

CholeraND

Deaths/yr: ~100,000³²⁹

Cholera loves filth. Anything soiled, polluted or corrupt, where politics and tainted water mix, gives cholera life, spelling death to the poor and undernourished. Where there is no corruption there is no cholera: clean water with clean politics *abolishes* it.

Cause: *Vibrio cholerae* (Gram –ve curved or comma-shaped flagellated motile vibrating/swarming rod). Only types O1 and O139 cause disease, eg explosive outbreaks or pandemics that affect whole countries (eg Zimbabwe and Angola), then continents.

Incubation: A few hours to 5d. **Spread:** Faecal–oral. **Signs:** Profuse (eg 1L/h) watery ('rice water') stools, fever, vomiting, and rapid dehydration (the cause of death, with associated metabolic acidosis). **Δ:** Stool microscopy (± dark ground) & culture.

R: Strict barrier nursing. **▶▶** Prompt oral rehydration with pre-prepared sachets drunk in large amounts (0.9% saline IVI if shocked; add 20mmol/L K⁺ until U&E known; not plain Ringer's lactate ∴ fatal K⁺). Oral rehydration with WHO formula (20g glucose/L) is not as good as cooked rice powder solution (50–80g/L) in reducing stool volume.³³⁰ Its high osmolality (310mmol/L vs 200mmol/L) is also unfavourable to water absorption. Oral *erythromycin* or *ciprofloxacin* 1g PO stat may ↓fluid loss.³³¹ Zinc supplements shorten the illness (15mg elemental Zn/12h, as acetate).

Mortality: 1–3%; up to 50% if unprepared (war, ecological disaster, slum areas).

Prevention: Education. Good hygiene/sewage disposal. More primary care. Fewer slums. Only drink boiled or treated water. Cook all food well; eat it hot. Avoid shellfish. Peel all vegetables. Heat-killed vaccine (serovar O1) gives limited protection and is no longer needed for international travel; newer vaccines are non-standard.³³² **Ineffective public health measures:** Quarantine; a *cordon sanitaire* to halt introduction of cholera by travellers, vaccination, and mass chemoprophylaxis.³³³

⚙️ Whose deaths really matter?

DNA analysis of pulp in the teeth of Athenians dying in the great plague of 430BC reveals that the cause was typhoid fever.³³⁴ 30% of Athenians died, including Pericles, their leader. He gave us the Parthenon, juries, free theatre, and, in his own immortal oratory, the notion that it is better to die resisting than to live in submission.³³⁵ This is definitely *not* the right approach to infectious diseases: Pericles should have promulgated a third way: neither victory nor submission, but, more subtly, *accommodation*, or something even more symbiotic.

For the next 23 centuries, typhoid fever carried on killing, teaching us nothing much, until noon on 23 April 1851, when a little-known girl was quietly expiring in Malvern. Her name was Annie Darwin, her father's, Charles. Annie was his favourite fun-loving daughter, and with her lingering enteric death Darwin gave up all belief in a just and moral universe. Thus unimpeded, his mind was able to frame and compellingly justify the most devastating answer to the oldest question: that we are here by accident, thanks to natural selection, the survival of the fittest, and the 'wasteful, blundering, low and horridly cruel works of nature'¹

The next significant enteric death was 3 short summers later in 1854 at 40 Broad St (fig 1, p664), in the Parish of St James, London, where a child became ill with diarrhoea, dying on 2 September. Her mother rinsed the soiled nappies into the house drains. These led close to the supply to the Broad St pump. Both the drain and the pump's well had faulty brickwork allowing the waters to mix. From this confluence sprung the discipline of Public Health, for many of the 500 or so ensuing late summer deaths from cholera clustered around this pump, as diagrammed by the local doctor, Dr John Snow. He used his now famous diagrams locating each death to motivate the Board of Guardians of St James's parish at its meeting of 7 September: "In consequence of what I said, the handle of the pump was removed the following day"^{2 336}—so inaugurating the control of cholera. If Snow were alive today, he might be busy unplugging all our carbon-emitting power-stations (maybe as killing as cholera), but note that Snow worked through committees to save his countless lives, not by direct action.

These events illustrate two counter-intuitive truths: knowledge of the microscopic cause of a disease is not required for public health measures to succeed (*Vibrio cholerae* was as yet undiscovered)—and even the most parochial Church Council is capable of prompt and decisive action affecting the lives of millions, when informed by an intelligent doctor in command of the facts.

There is one metaphysical truth revealed by these enteric deaths, which would not have escaped Pericles had he only taken the trouble to become a medical student for long enough to realize that his overvalued ideal of heroism is often pointless.³ Pericles never gave his condolences to parents who lost their sons in battle, because, he said, a hero's death was the finest thing that could befall a man. We meet many heroic deaths on our wards, but they seem oddly pointless in retrospect. This is why we owe the highest favour to Annie, whose unheroic death so transforms the inner landscapes of the mind. ⚙️ With Annie in mind, we can confidently relieve our patients of the notion that they must die fighting.

1 A remark of Darwin's in 1856, before starting his *Origin of Species*, quoted in *Darwin* (Desmond & Moore, Penguin). This reminds us of Thomas Hobbes' (1588-1679) dictum: owing to scarcity of natural resources, there is constant war of all against all ('*bellum omnium contra omnes*'). Life in the state of nature is 'solitary, poor, nasty, brutish and short'. It was Thomas Hobbes who first brought Pericles to our attention through his great translations of Thucydides, the biographer of Pericles.

2 Snow (a teetotaler, a vegetarian, and a virgin) is unfairly portrayed as secular saviour; he was really just the man on the spot who took logical decisions.³³⁷

3 If you doubt that heroism is often pointless, visit the Somme where lies buried the old lie '*dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*'. Wilfred Owen (1893-1918) wrote in a letter to his mother: 'The famous Latin tag [Horace] means *It is sweet and meet to die for one's country*. Sweet! and decorous!...' ³³⁸



► In an endemic area, any individual should be regarded as having leprosy if they show **one** of the following signs: **1** skin lesion consistent with leprosy (**fig 1**) and with definite sensory loss, with or without thickened nerves; **2** positive skin smears.

Leprosy is a chronic disease caused by *Mycobacterium leprae*. It affects millions of people in the tropics and subtropics. Since the widespread use of dapsone, and WHO elimination campaigns, prevalence has fallen (from 0.5% to 0.4/10,000 in Uganda; from 11% to 4/10,000 in parts of India).³³⁹ Incidence remains stable, at ~800,000 new cases/yr worldwide, many of whom are children. It mainly affects skin, peripheral nerves, mucosa of upper airways and the eyes. ~1-2 million people are disabled, visibly and irreversibly, from leprosy, and need care in the community in which they live.

Diagnosis is based on the clinical signs and symptoms, and laboratory and other investigations are rarely needed.³⁴⁰ Skin lesions can be single or multiple, and usually manifest as hypopigmented anaesthetic macules, papules, or annular lesions (with raised erythematous rims). Erythema nodosum (**fig 1**, p565) occurs in 'lepromatous' disease, especially during the 1st year of treatment. Sensory loss is a typical feature of leprosy. The skin lesion may show loss of sensation to pin-prick and/or light touch. A thickened nerve is another feature of leprosy, and is often accompanied by other signs as a result of damage to the nerve (eg loss of sensation in the skin and weakness of muscles supplied by the affected nerve). Sometimes a thickened sensory nerve may be felt running into the skin lesion (eg ulnar nerve above the elbow, median nerve at the wrist, or the great auricular nerve running up behind the ear). In the absence of these signs, nerve thickening by itself, without sensory loss and/or muscle weakness is often not a reliable sign of leprosy. In a few cases, rod-shaped, red-stained leprosy bacilli, which are diagnostic of the disease, may be seen in the smears taken from the affected skin. **Eye lesions:**

► **Refer promptly to an ophthalmologist.** The lower temperature of the anterior chamber favours corneal invasion (so secondary infection and cataract). Inflammatory signs: chronic iritis, scleritis, episcleritis. There may be reduced corneal sensation (V nerve palsy), and reduced blinking (VII nerve palsy) and lagophthalmos (difficulty in closing the eyes), ± ingrowing eyelashes (trichiasis).

Classification³⁴¹ **Paucibacillary ('tuberculoid') leprosy:** there is a vigorous immune response, with granulomata containing epithelioid cells and lymphocytes, but few or no demonstrable bacilli. Patients show negative smears at all sites.

Multibacillary ('lepromatous') leprosy: immune response is ↓. There are foamy histiocytes full of bacilli, but few lymphocytes. Patients show +ve smears at any site. **Borderline:** Between these two poles. **Method of transmission:** the exact method is not known;³⁴² however, it seems to be transmitted by contact between cases of leprosy and healthy persons. More recently, the possibility of transmission by the respiratory route has been gaining ground. There are also other possibilities, such as transmission through insects, which cannot be completely ruled out.

Rx³⁴³ **Tackle:** 🧠Poverty 🧠Ignorance 🧠Nutritional state 🧠Shame and stigma, as well as the bacterium—otherwise transmission inevitably continues in endemic countries.³⁴⁴ Ask a local expert about: •Resistance patterns, eg to dapsone, when ethionamide may (rarely) be needed •Using prednisolone for severe complications •Is surgery ± physiotherapy needed as well as drug therapy? In the UK, get advice from the Leprosy Opinion panel. **Paucibacillary leprosy:** Rifampicin: 600mg once a month, dapsone: 100mg/d. Duration: 6 months. **Multibacillary leprosy:** Rifampicin: 600mg once a month, dapsone: 100mg/d, clofazimine: 300mg once a month (supervised) and 50mg/d. Duration: 1yr. **Single skin lesion paucibacillary leprosy:** A stat dose of rifampicin 600mg + ofloxacin 400mg + minocycline 100mg.³⁴⁵

► Beware sudden permanent **paralysis** from nerve inflammation caused by dying bacilli (± *orchitis*, *prostration*, or *death*); this 'lepra reaction' may be mollified by thalidomide (**NOT** if pregnant) or prednisolone. Liaise urgently with a leprologist. Supervised therapy may be problematic as many patients find it hard to attend (nomads, jungle-dwellers). WHO has proposed 'accompanied' multi-drug therapy, where someone close to the patient takes responsibility for ensuring treatment. 🧑🏻👤³⁴⁶



What is more communicable than leprosy?



This page is dedicated to Joseph deVeuster (Father Damien) of Kala-wao, Molokai, in Hawaii, who befriended sufferers of leprosy in a remote Pacific colony. Here the leprosy victims, arriving by ship, were sometimes told to jump overboard and swim for their lives, so frightened were the sailors of contagion that they dared not land. Those swimmers who made it found a friend who was both doctor and priest to them, whose self-imposed duty was to build their homes, their churches—and their coffins. Without any distinction of race or religion, he gave a voice to the voiceless, building a unique community where the joy of being together gave people new reasons for living.

It is said that after spilling boiling water painlessly on his foot, he diagnosed his own leprosy. After that, his sermons beginning “We lepers...” had added veracity.

He gave everything to leprosy—and leprosy took all it could from him, including, on 15 April 1889, his life.

We may look upon that water flowing over his foot not so much as a death sentence, but as one of those initiation ceremonies devised by ancient shamans who realized that it was by these close encounters with death that we augment our spirituality, and so are able to heal.

Joseph deVeuster also invalidates all our definitions of health (soundness in body and mind...total physical wellbeing, etc). More importantly, he demonstrates that optimism works and is more communicable than leprosy, proving that there is nothing that cannot be transcended.



Fig 1. Think of leprosy in everyone with anaesthetic hypopigmented macules or plaques. Could this be vitiligo? No: vitiligo is more demarcated and depigmented (chalk white). See **fig 4** on p565.

Courtesy of Prof Jayakar Thomas.



Lyme disease³⁴⁷ is a tick-borne (fig 1) infection caused by *Borrelia burgdorferi*. **Signs:** ▶≤75% remember the tick bite. The 1st sign is usually erythema migrans; a circular rash (OHCS p587 fig 3) occurring in ~80%, which begins at the site of a tick bite after 3–30d (p564). It gradually expands, reaching up to 30cm across. Its centre may clear as it enlarges (bull's-eye appearance). **Also:** fatigue, chills, fever, headache, muscle and joint pain, lymphadenopathy, myocarditis; heart block; meningitis; ataxia; amnesia; cranial nerve palsies; neuropathy; lymphocytic meningoradiculitis (Bannwarth's syndrome). **Diagnosis** is based on symptoms, physical findings, and a history of exposure to infected ticks. Lab tests are not needed in presence of erythema migrans.³⁴⁸ **R:** Skin rash: doxycycline 100mg/12h po (amoxicillin or penicillin v if <8yrs or pregnant) for 14–21d. Later complications: high-dose iv benzylpenicillin, ceftriaxone. **Prevention:** Keep limbs covered; use insect repellent; tick collars for pets; check skin often when in risky areas. Vaccination is available, eg if living in high-risk areas. Advice differs on prophylaxis after a tick bites. A single dose of doxycycline 200mg po given within 72h of a bite is effective prophylaxis; in highly endemic areas, this may be worthwhile (eg if risk >1%). **Removing ticks:** Use fine (tick-removing) tweezers to grasp the tick very close to the skin. With a steady motion, pull the tick's body away; clean with soap and water. Don't worry if the tick's mouthparts remain in the skin—they won't transmit Lyme disease.³⁴⁹ Skin complications: acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans (ACA; skin is as 'thin as cigarette paper'); borrelia lymphocytoma manifests, eg as a blue/red discolouration of the earlobe.



Fig 1. *Amblyomma americanum*.

© Prof S. Upton;
Kansas Univ.

Endemic treponematoses **Yaws** is caused by *T. pertenue* (serologically indistinguishable from *T. pallidum*). It is a chronic granulomatous disease common in children in the rural Tropics. Spread: direct contact, via skin abrasions, promoted by poor hygiene. The primary lesion (an ulcerating papule) appears ~4wks after exposure. Scattered 2nd lesions then appear, eg in moist skin, but can be anywhere. These may become exuberant. Tertiary lesions are subcutaneous gummatous ulcerating granulomata, affecting skin and bone. cvs and CNS complications do not occur. **Pinta** (*T. carateum*) affects only skin; seen in Central and S America. **Endemic non-venereal syphilis** (*bejel*; *T. pallidum*) is seen in Third World children, when it resembles yaws. In the developed world, *T. pallidum* causes **syphilis** (see BOX). **Δ:** Clinical. **R:** Procaine penicillin (p378).

Weil's diseaseND is caused by *Leptospira interrogans* (eg serogroup *L. icterohaemorrhagiae*). Spread is typically by contact with infected rat urine, eg in slums or while swimming, canoeing or cycling through puddles. After an incubation of 2–20d there is abrupt fever, myalgia/myositis, cough, chest pain ± haemoptysis—then recovery, or jaundice, meningitis, uveitis, and renal failure. **Δ:** Blood culture +ve only up to day 4 of illness; serology. **R:** **Mild:** doxycycline, amoxicillin, or ampicillin. **Severe:** IV penicillin G. **Alternatives:** ampicillin, amoxicillin, erythromycin. Prophylaxis: doxycycline 200mg/wk may have a role—eg for water sports in dangerous places.

Canicola fever is an aseptic meningitis caused by *Leptospira canicola*.

Relapsing feverND This is caused by *Borrelia recurrentis* (louse-borne) or *B. duttoni* (tick-borne). It typically occurs in pandemics following war or disaster, and may kill millions. **Incubation:** 4–18d. **Presentation:** Abrupt onset fever, rigors, and headache. A petechial rash (which may be faint or absent), jaundice, and tender hepatosplenomegaly may develop. Serious signs: myocarditis, hepatic failure, and DIC. Crises of very high fever and tachycardia occur; on abating, fatal hypotension from vasodilatation may occur. Relapses occur, but are milder. **Tests:** Organisms are seen on Leishman-stained thin or thick films. **R:** Doxycycline 100mg/12h po. The Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (p431) is fatal in 5%; meptazinol 100mg IV slowly is given as prophylaxis with the tetracycline, repeated ½h later (with the chill phase) and during the flush phase (if systolic BP <75mmHg). Delouse the patient and their clothes.³⁵⁰ Doxycycline (p380) is useful prophylaxis in high-risk groups.

Syphilis: the archetypal spirochete

► Any anogenital ulcer or sore is syphilis until proven otherwise. UK incidence: >2250 infections/yr.³⁵¹ Serious outbreaks exist in the UK and USA³⁵²⁻³⁵⁴ as safe-sex messages are forgotten, ignored, or trounced (some clubs ban condoms on 'raw nights').³⁵⁵ ~70% are in men who have sex with men (rates rising since 2001, esp if black or Hispanic, aged 15-19yrs).³⁵⁶ Female prevalence (screening in London antenatal clinics): 0.44% (vs 0.34% for HIV & 1.1% for hepatitis B).³⁵⁷

Treponema pallidum (fig 1) enters during sex, via a graze, forming the very infectious hard ulcer (chancre) of **primary syphilis**. All 4 stages are due to an endarteritis obliterans. *Incubation*: 9-90d.

Secondary syphilis: 6 weeks to 6 months after infection: rash (trunk, face, palms, soles; may be scaly), malaise, lymphadenopathy, T⁺, tonsillitis, condylomata lata (flat papules around/beyond genitals),³⁵⁸ oral snail-track ulcers, alopecia, hepatitis (in up to ¼, esp. if HIV +ve too³⁵⁹), hepatosplenomegaly, uveitis, optic neuritis, meningism, glomerulonephritis ± periosteitis.

Tertiary syphilis follows ≥2yrs latency (when patients are non-infectious): there are *gummas* (granulomas in skin, mucosa, bone, joints, viscera, eg lung, testis).

Quaternary Vascular: Ascending aortic aneurysm/aortic regurgitation. Neurosyphilis (Δ: CSF analysis; consider if RPR titre ≥1:32) (a) **Meningovascular**: Cranial nerve palsies (eg vision), stroke (b) **General paresis of insane (GPI)**: Dementia, psychoses/reversible dementia (fatal if untreated) (c) **Tabes dorsalis**: Ataxia, numb legs, chest & bridge of nose, lightning pains ("like a bolt from the blue"), gastric crises, reflex loss, plantarstt, Charcot's joints (p520). Argyll Robertson pupil (p79).

Cardiolipin antibody: Not treponeme-specific. Detectable in primary disease but wanes in late syphilis. Indicates active disease and becomes -ve after treatment. *False +ves* (with -ve treponemal antibody): pregnancy, immunization, pneumonia, malaria, SLE, TB, leprosy. Examples: Venereal Disease Research Laboratory slide test (VDRL), rapid plasma reagin (RPR), Wassermann reaction (WR).

Treponeme-specific antibody: Positive in 1° disease, remains so despite treatment. Examples: *T. pallidum* haemagglutination assay (TPHA), fluorescent treponemal antibody (FTA), *T. pallidum* immobilization test (TPI). Non-specific, also +ve in non-venereal yaws, bejel, or pinta. **ELISA**: Syphilis ELISA IgG and ELISA IgM.

Other tests: In 1° syphilis, treponemes may be seen by *dark ground microscopy* of chancre fluid; serology at this stage is often -ve. In 2° syphilis, treponemes are seen in the lesions and both types of antibody tests are positive. In late syphilis, organisms may no longer be seen, but both types of antibody test usually remain +ve (cardiolipin antibody tests may wane). In neurosyphilis, CSF antibody tests (particularly FTA and TPHA) are +ve. ► **Look for other STIs**. If HIV+ve, serology may be negative during syphilis reactivation. PCR may help. Do contact tracing.

R: Simplest regimen: 2-3 doses (1wk apart) of benzathine penicillin G 1.8g.³⁶⁰ As this is only available in the UK on a named-patient basis (see *BNF*) an alternative is benzylpenicillin 0.6-1.2g/24h IM for ~28d (17d in early syphilis) + probenecid, eg 500mg/6h (to prevent penicillin loss in urine).³⁶⁰

Or doxycycline: early syphilis, 100mg/12h for 14d; late latent syphilis, 100mg/12h for 28d. Neurosyphilis, ceftriaxone (unlicensed) 2g/d IM for 14d. **If pregnant**: erythromycin 500mg/6h PO (*OTM* dose).

Beware **Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction**: T⁺, pulset, and vasodilatation hours after the 1st dose of antibiotic (? from sudden release of endotoxin). Commonest in 2° disease; most dangerous in 3°. Consider steroids. If HIV+ve, penicillin may not stop neurosyphilis; consult microbiologist. **Congenital syphilis**: *OHCS* p35.



Fig 1. *T. pallidum*. ©Prof S Spilatro.



219 virus species are known to infect humans. Yellow fever was the 1st to be discovered (in 1901). New species are added at a rate of ~3/year (with careful observation you may be able to make a name for yourself by discovering the 220th).

Yellow fever: An epidemic arbovirus disease spread by *Aedes* mosquitoes (Brazil, Bolivia, Peru, Central and West Africa). **Immunization:** p391. **Incubation:** 2–14d.

The patient: In mild forms, fever, headache, nausea, albuminuria, myalgia, and relative bradycardia. If severe: 3 days of headache, myalgia, anorexia ± nausea, then abrupt fever, a brief remission, then prostration, jaundice (± fatty liver), haematemesis, other bleeding, oliguria. **Mortality:** <10% (day 5–10). **Δ:** ELISA. **R:** Symptomatic.

Lassa feverND, Ebola virusND, Marburg virusND, dengue haemorrhagic fever (DHF, BOX 1—this 'unofficial' haemorrhagic fever is the commonest arbovirus disease)³⁶¹ They start with sudden headache, pleuritic pain, backache, myalgia, conjunctivitis, prostration, dehydration, facial flushing (dengue), and T⁺. Bleeding soon supervenes. There may be resolution, or renal failure, encephalitis, coma, and death. **R:** Primarily symptomatic; ribavirin helps in Lassa fever if given early.³⁶² ▶ Use special infection control measures (Lassa, Ebola, Marburg); get expert help at once.

PoliomyelitisND

Polio is a highly contagious picornavirus (fig 1), though only a few patients develop any illness from the infection. **Spread:** Droplet or faecal-oral. **Incubation:** 7 days. **Signs:** *Flu prodrome* for 48h then a *pre-paralytic stage*: T⁺, pulset, headache, vomiting, neck stiffness, and unilateral tremor. In <50% this progresses to a *paralytic stage*: myalgia, LMN signs¹ ± respiratory failure. No sensory signs. **Tests:** CSF: WCt, polymorphs then lymphocytes, otherwise normal; paired sera (14 days apart); throat swab and stool culture identify virus. **Natural history:** <10% of those with paralysis die. There may be *delayed progression* of paralysis (*post-polio syndrome*, PPS). **Risk of severe paralysis** ↑ if: Adult; pregnant; muscle fatigue/trauma during incubation period. **PPS** causes fatigue, weakness, myalgia, and worsening function, not necessarily at sites originally affected (advise enough exercise to prevent wasting but not so much as to tweakness in already damaged muscles). No drug works.³⁶³ **Vaccine:** p391.

RabiesND

50,000 deaths/yr world-wide

Rabies is a rhabdovirus spread by bites from an infected mammal, eg bats, dogs, cats, foxes, or raccoons (bites may go unnoticed)³⁶⁴ There is slight risk from scratches, or licks to cuts, mouth or eyes. **The patient:** ~9–90 days' incubation, so give prophylaxis even several months after exposure. Prodrome: headache, malaise, odd behaviour, agitation, fever, and itch around the bite. Progresses to 'furious rabies', eg with water-provoked muscle spasms often accompanied by terror (hydrophobia). In 20%, 'dumb rabies' starts with flaccid paralysis in the bitten limb. **Deaths/yr:** 50,000.

Advice in countries not declared rabies-free: Avoid animal contact; get help if bitten. Wash all bites meticulously with soapy water (takes 20min and ↓ incidence by ~65%).

Pre-exposure prophylaxis (vets, zoo-keepers, customs workers, bat handlers, travellers in rabies area for >1 month or at especial risk, or if access to post-exposure treatment is hard): give human diploid cell strain vaccine (1mL IM, deltoid) on days 0, 7, & 28, and again at 2–3yrs if still at risk. **Treatment if bitten where rabies is endemic** (if unvaccinated): wash as above. ▶ Seek help (*Health Protection Agency, tel:* ^{UK}020 8200 6868). Watch the biting animal to see if it dies (it is possible that it may not die of rabies before the patient does).³⁶⁵ **If previously immunized:** give vaccine (1mL IM) on days 0 & 3. **If previously unimmunized:** give vaccine on days 0, 3, 7, 14 & 30 + rabies immunoglobulin (Rig, 20U/kg on day 0; ½ IM & ½ infiltrated around wounds). HRig is probably unnecessary > a week after vaccination has started, as an active antibody response has already begun. ▶ Never mix vaccine and antiserum or inject in the same limb.³⁶⁶ Rabies is 'always' fatal once symptoms start (survival has occurred, with optimal CNS/respiratory support). Vaccinate attending staff. **Public health:** 🌀 Wherever rabies is a problem, put it on the national curriculum, along with dog-handling.³⁶⁷ Philippines success story³⁶⁸ Vaccinate dogs; make houses bat-proof.³⁶⁸



Dengue fever (DF) and dengue haemorrhagic fever (DHF)

Incidence: 50–100×10⁶/yr (DF); 250,000–500,000/yr get DHF. The global pandemic of this RNA flavivirus relates to poor vector control (eg of Asian tiger *Aedes* mosquitoes), urbanization,² poor waste disposal, and migrations bringing new strains (DEN-2) that get more virulent in those who have had mild dengue. Global warming is extending the range of DF (eg to southern USA). English winters are now warm enough to support transmission.³⁶⁹

Infants typically have a simple febrile illness with a rash. Older children/adults have flushes (face, neck, chest) ± centrifugal maculopapular rash from day 3, or late confluent petechiae with round pale areas of normal skin ± headache, arthralgia, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, anuria. **Haemorrhagic signs:** (Unlikely if AST normal)³⁷⁰ Petechiae, GI, gum or nose bleeds, haematuria, menorrhagia.

Monitor: BP; urine flow; WCC; platelets; PCV; +ve tourniquet test (>20 petechiae/inch²) + PCVt by 20% are telling signs (rapid endothelial plasma leak is the key pathophysiology of DHF). **ΔΔ:** Chikungunya,³ measles, leptospirosis, typhoid, malaria. **Exclusion:** If symptoms start >2wks after leaving a dengue area, or if fever lasts >2wks, dengue is 'ruled out'. **R:** Supportive. Prompt IV resuscitation, eg Ringer's lactate. **▶▶** If shocked (mortality 40%) get help; it is traditional to try a bolus of 15mL/kg repeated every ½h until BP rises and urine flows at >30mL/h. Evidence is lacking.^{371,372} **Mosquito control:** Problematic!⁴

Polio: a tantalizing exercise in prevention and (near) eradication

Eradication makes economic and humanitarian sense, even if it costs us \$billions.³⁷³

- Pre-1950s, polio distribution was worldwide. In 1952 CO₂ retention was found to be the cause of death. Mechanical ventilation began (≈the birth of ITU).³⁷⁴
- 12 April 1955: vaccination starts with Salk's inactivated vaccine.
- 1958: Sabin donated his 3 attenuated strains to Chumakov in Moscow, who produced the 3 vaccines, giving them to 15 million people in 1 year.
- 1960s: the 3 vaccines were mixed, to produce a single oral polio vaccine (OPV).
- 1988: Estimated 350,000 cases worldwide, occurring in 125 countries. The Global Polio Eradication Initiative, aiming to protect children worldwide through vaccination, is launched; the aim was eradication by the year 2000.
- 1991–4: transmission interrupted in the West. 80,000,000 vaccinated in 48h in China.
- 1994: WHO declares the Americas polio-free.
- 1997: 1 case of wild polio in all of Europe.
- 1999: Only 7090 cases worldwide.
- 2000: WHO declares Western Pacific polio-free.
- 2001: 483 cases in 10 endemic countries.
- 2002: WHO declares Europe polio-free.
- 2004: 6 polio-endemic countries remain.³⁷⁵
- 2006: Transmission re-established in: Nigeria, Sudan, Egypt, Central African Republic, Mali, Côte D'Ivoire, Somalia, Burkina Faso, Uttar Pradesh.^{376, 377}
- 2008: 1655 cases in 17 countries.³⁷⁸
- 2012: outbreak of circulating vaccine-derived poliovirus in Yemen & Mozambique.

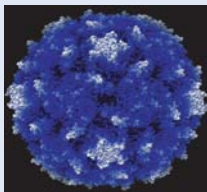


Fig 1. Poliovirus ©D Belnap (Utah Univ.) & J Hogle (Harvard).

Before 2005 most cases in the West were adult contacts of child vaccinees; these cases have stopped as live vaccine has been replaced by inactivated vaccine.

NB: Sabin viruses and their genetic revertants can cause chronic infection in immunodeficient people, who may shed neurovirulent virus in faeces for years. So programmes of oral vaccination must not continue one day longer than needed.

1 Non-viral causes of flaccid paralysis: Borrelia; mycoplasma; diphtheria; botulism; heavy metals; transverse myelitis; polymyositis

2 Southern UK, northern France, parts of Germany, Italy, Sicily, Balkan and Benelux countries are now at risk. Conversely, cities high in the Andes are dengue-free, as *Aedes* mosquitoes cannot survive high up.

3 Haemorrhagic features in Chikungunya virus infections are rare; arthralgia, fever, myalgia and a rash are more common, eg in Indian Ocean islands.

4 Mosquito control has shown limited success owing to: • Modern urban complexity • Increasing insecticide resistance • Labour-intensive and logistically demanding nature of the work • Entomological surveys having limited ability to predict future epidemics. Different approaches are now envisaged: **1** Use of transgenic mosquitoes or adult mosquitoes as vehicles of juvenile hormone transfer between resting and oviposition sites **2** Using mosquito microbiota or its symbionts to manipulate disease transmission.³⁷⁹

Q fever is caused by *Coxiella burnetii* (100 cases/yr in the UK). It is so named because it was first labelled 'query' fever in workers in an Australian abattoir.

Epidemiology: Occurs worldwide, and is usually rural, with reservoirs in cattle and sheep. The organism is resistant to drying and is usually inhaled from infected dust. It can be contracted from unpasteurized milk, directly from carcasses in abattoirs, sometimes by droplet spread, and rarely from tick bites.

Clinical features: Suspect Q fever in anyone with a PUO or atypical pneumonia. It may present with fever, myalgia, sweats, headache, cough, and hepatitis (\pm splenomegaly).³⁸⁰ If the disease becomes chronic, suspect endocarditis (typically 'culture-negative'). This usually affects the aortic valve, but clinical signs may be absent. It also causes miscarriages and CNS infection.

Tests: CXR may show consolidation, eg multilobar or slowly resolving. Liver function tests may be hepatitic and biopsy may show granulomata. Diagnosis is serological: indirect immunofluorescence assay (IFA) is the most dependable and widely used method. Increased IgG and IgA antibodies to phase I are often indicative of Q fever endocarditis.³⁸¹ Phase I antigens suggest chronic infection; phase II antigens suggest acute infection. PCR may be used on tissue samples. CSF tests may be needed.

Treatment: Get expert microbiological help. **Acute:** Doxycycline 100mg/12h po for 2-3wks. Minocycline, clarithromycin, ciprofloxacin (in pregnancy) and co-trimoxazole are used. **Q fever endocarditis:** Treatment is difficult, eg doxycycline plus hydroxychloroquine, eg 600mg/d po for at least 18 months \pm valve replacement.³⁸¹

Prevention: Vaccination for those whose occupation places them at high risk.

Bartonellosis is caused by *Bartonella bacilliformis*, a Gram -ve, motile, bacillus-like organism which parasitizes RBCs. Spread is by sandflies in the Andes, Peru, Ecuador, Colombia, Thailand, and Niger. Transient immunosuppression leads to other infections (eg Salmonella). **Incubation:** 10-210d (mean = 60d).

Signs: Fever, rashes, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, cerebellar syndromes, dermal nodules (verrucae), retinal haemorrhages, myocarditis, pericardial effusion, oedema, and, rarely, meningo-encephalomyelitis.

Tests: Giemsa-stained blood films. Blood culture (prolonged). Coombs' -ve haemolytic anaemia, and hypochromic, macrocytic red cells with a megaloblastic marrow. CSF pleocytosis. Serological tests are not widely available.

Treatment: Responds to penicillin, but ciprofloxacin (500mg/12h po for 10d) is often used because of frequent association with salmonellosis. Steroids if CNS involved.

Trench fever is caused by *Bartonella quintana* inoculated from infected louse faeces, not only in soldiers, but also in the homeless, and in alcoholics.

Clinical features: Fever, headache, myalgia, dizziness, back pain, macular rash, eye pain, leg pain, splenomegaly, endocarditis (rare). In HIV-infected patients, the skin lesions may resemble Kaposi's sarcoma. It is not fatal; it may relapse.

Tests: Blood culture, serology, PCR. **R:** Doxycycline 100mg/12h po for 15 days.

Ehrlichiosis is caused by *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, an obligate intracytoplasmic Gram -ve organism, related to Rickettsia. It is spread by ticks. It causes fever, headache, anorexia, malaise, abdominal pain, epigastric pain, conjunctivitis, lymphadenopathy, jaundice, rash, confusion, and cervical lymphadenopathy.

Tests: Leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, AST \uparrow .³⁸² Serology/PCR are diagnostic.

Treatment: May respond to doxycycline 100mg/12h po for 7-14d.



Typhus: the archetypal rickettsial disease

Rickettsiae are parasitic bacteria that are obligate intracellular parasites; they are bigger than viruses but smaller than classical bacteria. They are carried by host arthropods (figs 1-3) and invade human mononuclear cells, neutrophils, or blood vessel endothelium ('vasculotropic'). All the cataclysmic events of the last century (war, revolution, flood, famine, genocide, and overcrowding) have been helpful to lice. As a result, Rickettsiae (especially typhus) have killed untold millions.

Pathology Widespread vasculitis and endothelial proliferation may affect any organ and thrombotic occlusion may lead to gangrene.

Signs ▶ *Think of typhus in all travellers or inhabitants of endemic areas who seem to have septicaemia, but have -ve blood cultures.*⁵⁰ Incubation: 2-23d. Infection may be mild/asymptomatic or severe/systemic, with sudden fever, frontal headache, confusion, and jaundice. With some species, an eschar (dark crusty ulcer at the site of a bite) is found. A rickettsial rash may be macular, papular, petechial, or haemorrhagic. Tests: haemolysis, neutrophilia, platelets↓, clotting↓, hepatitis, renal impairment. Patients die of shock, renal failure, DIC (p346), stroke, respiratory distress syndrome, cardiac arrest, and multi-organ dysfunction.

Epidemic typhus (*R. prowazekii*): Spread: human lice *Pediculus humanus* (fig 1; faeces are inhaled or pass through skin). It may recrudesce decades later (Brill-Zinsser disease). The rash is truncal, then peripheral (opposite to *R. rickettsii*).

Rocky Mountain spotted fever (*R. rickettsii*) is tick-borne (fig 2). Endemic in Rocky Mountains and south-eastern USA. The rash (seen in 90%) begins as macules on hands/feet, spreading and becoming petechial or haemorrhagic in 50%.

Tick typhus (*R. conorii*; Mediterranean spotted fever/boutonneuse, African tick bite fever, Marseilles fever, Indian/Israeli tick typhus) is the chief imported rickettsial disease in the UK (endemic in Africa, the Mediterranean, eg Croatia, and parts of Asia; sporadic in Laos, Korea, etc). Vector example: fig 3. The rash starts in the axillae, becoming purpuric as it spreads. *Other signs*: conjunctival suffusion; jaundice; deranged clotting; meningoencephalitis; cerebritis;³⁸³ renal failure.

Scrub typhus (*Orientia tsutsugamushi*) Most common in SE Asia. Signs: Eschar from chigger bite (75%); hepatomegaly (65%); cough (60%); lymphadenopathy (46%);⁵⁰ tachypnoea (35%); constipation (25%); abdominal pain (20%); oedema (20%); splenomegaly (15%); vomiting (15%); rash (15%); petechiae (5%); sudden deafness.³⁸⁴ CXR: bilateral infiltrations (85%).³⁸⁵ Blood: LFT↑ (90%); platelets↓ (80%); neutrophilia (60%); lymphocytosis ± atypical lymphocytosis (5%). Complications: pneumonia ± pulmonary oedema, meningitis, and shock.

Murine (endemic) typhus (*R. typhi*) is spread by fleas from rats to humans. It is more prevalent in warm, coastal ports (eg Dalmatia, Laos, southern USA).³⁸⁶

Rickettsialpox (*R. akari*) Variegated rash: macular, papular, or vesicular.

Mediterranean spotted fever (*R. conorii*): meningoencephalitis; cerebellitis.³⁸⁷

▲ Culture is difficult; traditional heterophil antibody Weil-Felix tests are insensitive and non-specific. A rise in antibody titre in paired sera is diagnostic. Latex agglutination, indirect immunofluorescence, ELISAs and PCR are available (may be done on the eschar).³⁸⁸ An accurate, rapid dotblot immunoassay is available for scrub typhus. Skin biopsy may be diagnostic in Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

R Doxycycline 100mg/12h PO/IV for 7d (or 48h after T°↔) or chloramphenicol 500mg/6h PO for 10-14d. Resistance, eg in Thailand. Azithromycin 500mg stat may work in tick and scrub typhus.³⁸⁹ Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation may help.³⁹⁰

Poor prognostic factors Older age, male, black, G6PD deficiency.



Fig 1. *Pediculus humanus*: endemic typhus vector.



Fig 2. *Dermacentor variabilis* is a vector for Rocky Mountain spotted fever.



Fig 3. Dog tick

Figs 1-3 © Prof S Upton, Kansas Univ.

Giardia lamblia (fig 1) is a flagellate protozoon that lives in the duodenum and jejunum. Spread: faecal-oral (↑ risk if, eg immunosuppression, travel, anal sex, achlorhydria, playgroups,³⁹¹ and swimming)—or from pets or birds. Drinking water may be contaminated.

The patient is often asymptomatic. Lassitude, bloating, flatulence, abdominal pain, loose stools ± explosive diarrhoea are typical. Malabsorption, weight loss, and lactose intolerance may occur.

Δ: • Stool microscopy for cysts and trophozoites may be -ve so repeat ≥ 3 times • Duodenal fluid aspirate analysis • Stool ELISA/PCR • Therapeutic trial. **ΔΔ:** Any cause of diarrhoea (p246), sprue (p280), coeliac.

R: Scrupulous hygiene. **Tinidazole** 2g PO stat (avoid alcohol); if pregnant, **paromomycin** 500mg/6h PO for 7d. If this fails, check compliance and consider treating *all* the family. If diarrhoea persists, avoid milk as lactose intolerance may persist for 6wks.

Entamoeba histolytica (amoebiasis; figs 2-5) affects 50 million people worldwide; ~100,000 die annually.³⁹² Spread: faecal-oral (eg oral-anal sex).³⁹³ Boil water and infected food to destroy cysts. Most symptoms are from involvement of the colon, but 1% present with potentially fatal invasive liver disease. Distinguishing invasive forms (*E. histolytica*) from a morphologically identical but *usually*³⁹⁴ non-invasive *E. dispar* requires PCR^{et al}.

Amoebic dysenteryND may occur some time after initial infection. Diarrhoea starts slowly, becoming profuse & bloody. An acute febrile prostrating illness can occur but high fever, colic, and tenesmus are rare. May remit and relapse. **Δ:** Stool microscopy: trophozoites, blood, pus cells. Faecal antigen detection also helps. Serology indicates previous or current infection and may be unhelpful in acute infection. **ΔΔ:** *Bacillary dysentery* often starts more suddenly, is more dehydrating, and stools are more watery. *Acute ulcerative colitis* is more gradual and stools are bloodier. Other causes of bloody diarrhoea: p426 & p246.

Amoebic colonic abscesses may perforate causing peritonitis.

Amoebomas are inflammatory masses, eg in the caecum (a cause of RIF masses).

Amoebic liver abscess is often a single mass in the right lobe containing 'anchovy-sauce' pus. **Signs:** High swinging fever, sweats, RUQ pain/tenderness ± chest pain (eg if intrapleural rupture). WCCt. LFT normal or ↑ (cholestatic). 50% have no history of amoebic dysentery. **Δ:** PCR; ultrasound/CT ± aspiration; don't rely on microscopy.

R: **Metronidazole** 800mg/8h PO for 5d for acute amoebic dysentery (active against vegetative amoebae), then **diloxanide furoate** 500mg/8h PO for 10d to destroy gut cysts (it's a luminal agent to prevent recurrence; SE rare); **diloxanide** is also best in chronic disease when *Entamoeba* cysts, not vegetative forms, are in stools. Amoebic liver abscess/severe infections: **tinidazole** 2g/24h for 5d ± ultrasound-guided aspiration (by an expert in theatre) if not improving within days, eg via catheter (not needle) if >10cm across.³⁹⁵ Check INR/clotting pre-op. Give **diloxanide** post-metronidazole.

Balantidium coli is a big ciliate protozoan with a sausage-shaped nucleus. Explosive diarrhoea may occur when it gains access via water contaminated by pigs. Inhalation is a rarer way in (→ haemoptysis). **R:** Oxytetracycline + metronidazole.³⁹⁶

Other protozoa *Cryptosporidium*, p390; *Microsporidium* & *Isospora*, p410 (with HIV).



Fig 1. *Giardia*: the only diplomonad to trouble us.

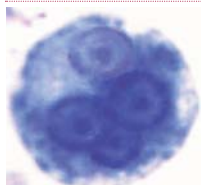


Fig 2. *E. histolytica* cyst with an endosome inside each of its 4 nuclei.

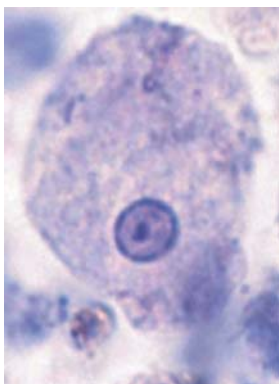


Fig 3. A trophozoite of *Entamoeba histolytica*.

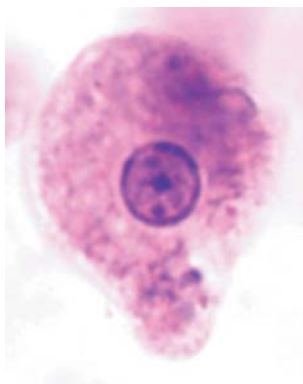


Fig 4. Another trophozoite of *Entamoeba histolytica*.

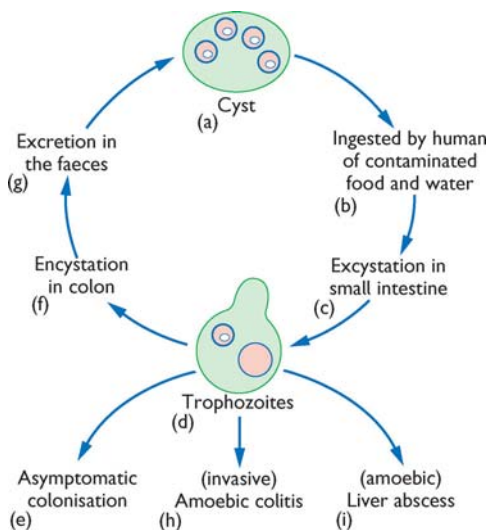


Fig 5. The lifecycle of *Entamoeba histolytica* is in 2 stages: cysts and trophozoites. Cysts (10–15µm across) typically contain 4 nuclei. During excystation in the gut lumen, nuclear division is followed by cytoplasmic division, giving rise to 8 trophozoites. Trophozoites (10–50µm across) contain one nucleus with a central karyosome; they live in the caecum and colon. ~90% of individuals infected with *E. histolytica* are asymptomatic. Re-encystation of the trophozoites occurs in the colon, and excretion of cysts in faeces perpetuates the lifecycle. Trophozoites may also invade colon epithelium, causing amoebic colitis in ~10%.

E. histolytica can spread haematogenously after breaching colon epithelium and can establish persistent extra-intestinal infection (eg amoebic liver abscess).

African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness)

In West and Central Africa, *Trypanosoma gambiense* (fig 1) causes a slow, wasting illness with long latency. In East Africa, *T. rhodesiense* causes a more rapidly progressive illness. Uganda is the only country where both species are endemic.³⁹⁷ Trypanosome parasites, spread by tsetse flies, proliferate in blood, lymphatics, and CNS, causing progressive dysfunction, then death. Prevalence: $\leq 70,000$ in the early 2000s, but active surveillance has now stopped in some areas and mortality is increasing (now probably $\sim 10\%$ vs 5% earlier)³⁹⁷ despite great work done by Stamp Out Sleeping Sickness (SOS) interventions, WHO, the Gates Foundation, Aventis, and Médecins sans Frontières.³⁹⁸ Wars and famines can cause upsurges.

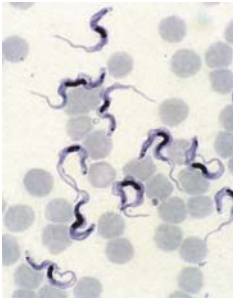


Fig 1. *T. gambiense*.
©S Upton, Kansas Univ.

Staging: A tender subcutaneous nodule (*chancre*) develops at the infection site, then...

Stage I (haemolymphatic): Non-specific fever, rash, rigors, headaches, hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, and joint pains. Winterbottom's sign (posterior cervical node) is a reliable sign (esp. in *T. gambiense*). In *T. rhodesiense* infections, this stage may be particularly severe, with potentially fatal myocarditis.

Stage II (meningoencephalitic): Weeks (*T. rhodesiense*) or months (*T. gambiense*) after initial infection, convulsions, agitation, and confusion—and then apathy, depression, ataxia, dyskinesias, dementia, hypersomnolence, and coma occur.

Diagnosis: Microscopy shows trypomastigotes in blood film, lymph node aspirate, or CSF. Serology (eg card agglutination text) is reliable in *T. gambiense* infections.

Treatment: ▶ Seek expert help. Treat anaemia and other infections first; then: early (pre-CNS) phase: pentamidine isethionate 4mg/kg/d deep IM for 10d. SE: WCC↓, BP↓, Ca^{2+} ↓, GFR↓, platelets↓. Alternative: suramin; SE: proteinuria, GFR↓.

CNS disease: get help. MSF regimen: ^{Médecins sans Frontières} nifurtimox 5mg/kg/8h PO for 10d + eflornithine 200mg/kg/12h IVI in 250mL of 0.9% saline over 2h for 7d. SE: Hb↓, diarrhoea, fits, leucopenia, hair loss. $\sim 8\%$ relapse (risk ↑ if CSF leucocytes $> 20 \times 10^9/L$ or ♂).³⁹⁹

American trypanosomiasis (Chagas' disease) is caused by *T. cruzi*. Spread: blood-sucking reduviids (triatomine bugs, fig 2) in Latin America and southern USA. ▶ Emigration means that chronic Chagas disease could turn up today in your heart or GI clinic: keep alert! Acute disease mostly affects children. A red indurated nodule (*chagoma*) forms at the site of infection; it may scar. **Signs:** (mild/insidious over 2 months): T°↑, myalgia, rash, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly ± unilateral conjunctivitis ± periorbital oedema (*Romana's sign*) ± myocarditis/meningoencephalitis. Chronic disease occurs after a latency of 20yrs. Multi-organ invasion causes serious dilated cardiomyopathy (p146), mega-oesophagus (dysphagia, aspiration), mega-colon (abdominal distension, constipation) + CNS lesions, eg if HIV +ve.



Fig 2. The blood-sucking vector (*Triatoma*) hides in thatch or cracks in walls (rural & urban). Transmission occurs if its faeces are rubbed into wounds or mouths (or via infected blood).
©S Upton, Kansas Univ.

A: (no gold standard): **Acute:** trypomastigotes seen in or grown from blood, CSF, or node aspirate. **Chronic:** serology (Chagas' IgG ELISA).

R: Unsatisfactory. Benznidazole (2.5–3.5mg/kg/12h PO for 60d) or nifurtimox 2mg/kg/6h PO pc for 120d in acute disease (toxic, and eliminate parasites in $\leq 50\%$). Chronic disease can only be treated symptomatically. Surgery may be needed.

Prevention: Better housing, spraying houses with insecticides.

Leishmaniasis

Leishmania are protozoa (fig 1, inset, with 2 RBCs, from a spleen aspirate) that cause granulomata. They are spread by sandflies in Africa, India, Latin America, southern USA, Middle East/Mediterranean. Clinical effects reflect: **1** The ability of each species to induce or suppress the immune response, to metastasize, and to invade cartilage, and **2** the efficiency of our immune response. *L. major* is the most immunogenic and allergenic of cutaneous Old World *Leishmania* and causes most necrosis. *L. tropica* is less immunogenic and causes less inflamed, slow-healing sores with relapsing lesions and a tuberculoid histology.

Cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sore) affects >300,000 people, eg in Africa, India and S. America; caused by *L. mexicana*, *L. major*, *L. tropica* or *L. amazonensis*.⁴⁰⁰ Lesions develop at the bite site, beginning as an itchy papule; crusts fall off to leave an ulcer (*Chiclero's ulcer*). Most heal in ~2 (Old World disease) to 15 months, with scarring (disfiguring if extensive). *L. mexicana* may cause pinna destruction (*Chiclero's ear*). **Δ**: Microscopy and culture of aspiration from the base of the ulcer.⁴⁰¹ **R**: Topical paromomycin, or IM drugs if unhealed by 6 months or lesion >5cm across (or multiple). Get help. Pentavalent antimony, eg meglumine antimoniate (Glucantime) or sodium stibogluconate (Pentostam); 20mg/kg/d for 20d. Oral fluconazole or ketoconazole are alternatives.⁴⁰²



Fig 1. Sandfly. ©S Upton, Kansas Univ.

Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (*L. brasiliensis*) occurs in S America. Primary skin lesions may spread to the mucosa of the nose, pharynx, palate, larynx, and upper lip and cause severe scarring. Nasopharyngeal lesions are called *espundia*. **Δ**: As parasites may be scanty, a Leishmanin skin test may be needed for distinguishing from leprosy, TB, syphilis, yaws, and cancer. Indirect fluorescent antibody tests and PCR are available. **R**: Sodium stibogluconate (below). Treatment is unsatisfactory once mucosae are involved, so treat all cutaneous lesions early.

Visceral leishmaniasis (VL) (kala-azar, means black sickness) is the 2nd most deadly parasitic disease in the world after malaria (50,000 deaths/year).⁴⁰³ It occurs in Asia, Africa, S America and Mediterranean areas. Cause: *L. donovani*, *L. chagasi*, or *L. infantum* (or, rarely, 'visceralizing' of *L. tropica*).⁴⁰⁴ Incubation: months to years. Protozoa spread via lymphatics from minor skin lesions and multiply in macrophages of the reticuloendothelial system (Leishman-Donovan bodies). There are 30 subclinical cases for every overt case. ♀:♂ >3:1. It can be HIV-associated. **Signs**: Dry, warty, hyperpigmented skin lesions; T°↑; sweats; burning feet; arthralgia; cough; epistaxis; abdo pain; splenomegaly (96%); hepatomegaly (63%); lymphadenopathy; emaciation; pancytopenia; hypergammaglobulinaemia.

Δ:⁴⁰⁵ **Microscopic exam** of lymph nodes, bone marrow or spleen are confirmatory. **Ab-detection**: Indirect fluorescence antibody (IFA), ELISA, western blot, direct agglutination test (DAT) and RK39-based immunochromatographic test (ICT). Serology limitations: **1** Ab levels are detectable for years after cure, so cannot diagnose VL relapse. **2** Tests are +ve in many with no history of VL. Serology may be -ve if HIV+ve. **Ag-detection**: detects heat-stable Ag by latex agglutination. **R**: Liposomal amphotericin B (1st-line in Europe/USA), or miltefosine (1st effective oral drug for VL; 0.75-1.2mg/kg/12h PO for 28d). There are increasing cases of antimony-resistant strains of *L. donovani*, eg in India.^{406,407}

Prevention: Sandfly control is not working well, eg in India, as indoor spraying (the basis of *P. argentipes* control) is poorly implemented.⁴⁰⁸

Post kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis: Years after successful **R**, lesions resemble leprosy.



Pathogenic fungi produce either toxins or allergic reactions. They are *superficial* (pityriasis versicolor), *cutaneous* (tinea/ringworm; intertrigo; restricted to keratinized skin, hair and nails), *subcutaneous* (mycetoma; Madura foot or sporotrichosis; R_x is complex and may need limb amputation)—or *systemic* (from the lung, spreading to many organs, eg histoplasmosis; blastomycosis; coccidioidomycosis; fungal meningitis).

Superficial/cutaneous mycoses *Candida* (figs 1 & 3). Dermatophytes (*Trichophyton*, *Microsporum*, *Dermatophyton*) cause tinea (ringworm). Δ : Skin scraping microscopy. R_x : Topical clotrimazole 1%. Continue for 14d after healing. If intractable, try itraconazole (100–200mg/24h PO for 7d if eGFR >80; SE: D&V; CCF), terbinafine (250mg/24h PO for 4wks) or griseofulvin (0.5–1g/24h; SE: agranulocytosis; SLE). *Malassezia furfur* causes pityriasis versicolor, a macular rash which appears brown on pale skin and pale on tanned skin. Δ : Microscopy of skin scrapings under Wood's light. R_x : Ketoconazole cream (2%) or selenium shampoo used as a lotion; leave on for 10min daily for 7d).

Systemic mycoses *Aspergillus fumigatus* may precipitate asthma, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA), or cause aspergilloma (p168) \pm pneumonia and invasive aspergillosis if immunosuppressed. Voriconazole may be better than amphotericin B in invasive aspergillosis;⁴⁰⁹ esp. in cerebral aspergillosis.⁴¹⁰

Systemic candidiasis occurs in the immunocompromised: consider this *whenever* they get a PUO, eg *Candida* UTI in DM or as a rare cause of prosthetic valve endocarditis. Do repeated blood cultures. If infection does not resolve when the predisposing factor (eg IV line) is removed, the treatment is fluconazole (400mg stat then 200mg/d PO, halved if eGFR <50) or an echinocandin (they are embryotoxic). Caspofungin 70mg/d IVI on day 1, then 50mg/d (70mg/d if >80kg) is an alternative.⁴¹¹

Cryptococcus neoformans causes meningitis or pneumonia. It is commonest in the immunocompromised, eg AIDS, sarcoid, Hodgkin's, or steroid R_x . The history may be long. Look for signs of ICpt, eg confusion, papilloedema, cranial nerve lesions.

Δ : Indian ink CSF stain; blood culture. Cryptococcal antigen is detected in CSF & blood by latex tests. R_x : It may be necessary to \downarrow CSF pressure by \sim 50% by removing CSF.

Non-AIDS meningitis: Amphotericin B 0.7mg/kg/d IV + flucytosine 25mg/kg/6h PO for 2wks then fluconazole 200mg/d PO for 8wks. **AIDS meningitis**: As above, but continue fluconazole 400mg/d PO for 10wks, then 200mg/d PO until CD4 >200 for >6 months (or lifelong). **Non-CNS infections** (AIDS or non-AIDS): Do LP to rule out meningitis, then treat with fluconazole, itraconazole or flucytosine.⁴¹² Prophylaxis with fluconazole 200mg/d PO is needed until CD4 >150 \times 10⁶/L and cryptococcal antigen \rightarrow ve (p410).

New World and Africa fungi causing deep infection: *Histoplasma* (fig 2), *Coccidioides immitis*, *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* & *Blastomyces dermatitidis* may be asymptomatic or cause acute/chronic lung disease, or disseminated infection. Histoplasma pneumoniae: arthralgia, erythema nodosum (fig 1, p565), and multiforme (p565). Chronic disease causes upper-zone fibrosis \pm CXR coin lesions. Δ : CXR, serology, culture, biopsy. R_x : Histoplasmosis: 1 week's methylprednisolone (0.5 mg/kg/d) + amphotericin B 0.7mg/kg/d IV, eg if HIV+ve & severe; liposomal form may be better (+less renal failure), then itraconazole 200mg/8–12h PO for 12wks.

Paracoccidioides: Itraconazole 200mg/d PO for >26wks. *Blastomycosis*: Itraconazole.

HIV: which systemic mycoses occur? Cryptococcosis, histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, paracoccidioidomycosis, penicilliosis, aspergillosis, and coccidioidomycosis.⁴¹³



Fig 1. *Candida intertrigo*.

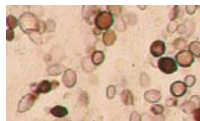


Fig 2. *Histoplasma* \times 1000.

Candida on ITU: colonization → invasion → dissemination

Not everyone with +ve yeast cultures needs treating: *Candida* is a common commensal on skin, pharynx, or vagina but in some contexts (MINIBOX) or if many sites are colonized (surgical drains, urine ± sputum), risk of invasion is high.⁴¹⁴ **Invasion** implies fungus in normally sterile tissues. **Dissemination** involves infection of remote organs via blood (eg endophthalmitis + fungi in lung or kidney). Options: amphotericin (p440); fluconazole; caspofungin if at risk (see MINIBOX; especially if your patient is deteriorating):⁴¹⁵

Risk of dissemination ↑ if:

- Prolonged ventilation
- Broad-spectrum antibiotics
- Urinary catheters
- Immunosuppression
- Intravascular lines
- IV nutrition

• A single well-taken +ve blood culture—if risk factors are present (above).

- Isolation of *Candida* from any sterile site except urine.
- Yeasts on microscopy on a sterile-site specimen, before cultures are known.
- Positive histology from normally sterile tissues in those at risk (above).
- Removal/change of IV lines is essential in patients with candidaemia.

► Consult an ID physician/microbiologist before starting systemic antifungals.

Prevention when immunocompromised Fluconazole 50–400mg/d after chemo/radiotherapy, started before onset of neutropenia, and continued for 1 week after wcc normalizes. It only protects against yeasts. NB: posaconazole is the only drug licensed for prophylaxis in this setting and is active against moulds and yeasts.

Facts of life for budding mycologists

(figs 1–8)¹

To the uninitiated, fungi are like bacteria, but their chitin cell walls and their knack of mitosis puts them in their own kingdom. They are larger than bacteria (eg 8µm across), and mostly reproduce by budding of germ tubes (fig 4), not by fission. Yeasts occur as single cells or as clusters. Hyphae often occur in a mass of cells (called moulds). A hyphal cell with cross-walls is called a mycelium. Some yeasts are dimorphic: single cells at 37°C but forming structures called mycelia, containing fruiting bodies (hyphae), at room temperature.

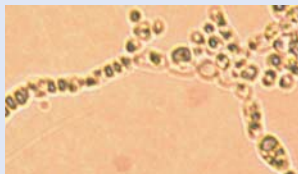


Fig 3. *Candida albicans*.



Fig 4. Germ tubes emerging from dimorphic *Candida albicans* blastospores.

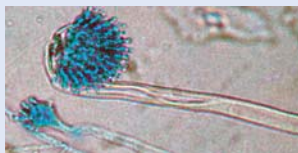


Fig 5. *Aspergillus niger*. If spores are inhaled, aspergillosis can occur (rare, p169).⁴¹⁶ If HIV +ve, bone or eye infection may occur.

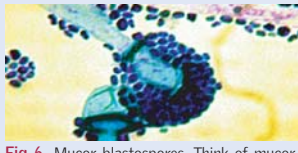


Fig 6. Mucor blastospores. Think of mucormycosis in diabetics with black pus in the nose ± proptosis/sinusitis or pneumonia. R: amphotericin B; posaconazole.



Fig 7. Candida of the glans.



Fig 8. Web-space candida.

1 billion people are hosts to nematodes (\pm few hundred million⁴¹⁷). Many live with us seemingly peacefully \blacktriangleright but with significant loss in quality of life.⁴¹⁸ Ascariasis can cause GI obstruction, hookworms can stunt growth and cause anaemia. Mass use of albendazole 400mg/24h PO for 3d to school children or immigrants from endemic areas? Maybe. But don't think "Drugs..." \odot think "Education...hygiene".⁴¹⁹

Necator americanus and *Ankylostoma duodenale* (hookworm) occur in SE Asia, India, central/N Africa, and parts of Europe. Necator is also found in the Americas & sub-Saharan Africa. Many small worms attach to upper GI mucosa, causing chronic bleeding and iron-deficiency with devastating effects on children and mothers. Eggs are excreted in faeces and hatch in soil. Larvae penetrate feet, so starting new infections. Oral transmission of *Ankylostoma* occurs. Δ : Stool microscopy (fig 1). R : Mebendazole 100mg/12h for 3d.

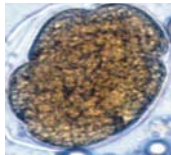


Fig 1. *Necator americanus* eggs ($\sim 70 \times 38 \mu\text{m}$).

Strongyloides stercoralis is endemic in the sub-tropics. Transmitted via skin, it causes migrating urticaria on legs and trunk (*cutaneous larva migrans*) \pm pneumonitis, enteritis/malabsorption (chronic diarrhoea/abdominal pain). Worms may take bacteria into the blood, causing septicaemia \pm meningitis. Δ : Stool microscopy, serology, or duodenal aspiration. R : Ivermectin 0.2mg/kg/24h PO for 48h. Hyperinfestation occurs in AIDS; consider albendazole 400mg/12h PO for 7-10d.

Ascaris lumbricoides looks like a garden worm (*Lumbricus*). It has 3 finely toothed lips. Transmission: faecal-oral. It migrates through liver & lungs, settling in small bowel. Often asymptomatic; GI obstruction/perforation is rare, as is migration to pancreatic ducts. If in bile ducts, cholangitis or pancreatitis can result. Worms may be $>25\text{cm}$ long with a hooked end if σ , fig 2. Δ : Stool microscopy (ova stain orange in bile); worms on barium x-rays; eosinophilia. R : Mebendazole (100mg/12h PO for 3d), albendazole (400mg PO once), ivermectin (150-200 μg /kg PO once).

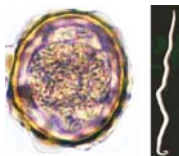


Fig 2. *Ascaris* eggs ($45 \times 40 \mu\text{m}$) & σ worm (20cm).

Enterobius vermicularis Threadworms (fig 3; 9mm long) cause anal itch as they leave the gut to lay eggs on the perineum. Apply sticky tape there to identify eggs ($\sim 55 \times 25 \mu\text{m}$) microscopically. R : Mebendazole 100mg PO stat. Repeat at 2wks if $\geq 2\text{yrs}$, eg if re-infection. If aged $<2\text{yrs}$, try piperazine (see BNF). Treat the whole family. Hygiene is more important than drugs as adult worms die after 6wks. Continued symptoms means reinfection.



Fig 3. *Enterobius*: the folded worm is seen squirming in its egg. On the right is a ϕ worm.

Trichuris trichiura (whipworm) causes non-specific abdominal pain, dysentery, and sometimes rectal prolapse. Δ : Eggs in stool. R : Mebendazole 100mg/12h for 3d.

Trichinella spiralis (worldwide) Transmitted by under-cooked pork etc (bushpigs; warthogs), it migrates to muscle/CNS,⁴²⁰ causing myalgia, fever, rash, fatigue, myocarditis, eyelid oedema \pm T $^{\circ}$ t. Δ : Eggs; MRI. R : Albendazole 400mg/24h PO for 3d.

Toxocara canis is the main cause of visceral¹ and ocular larval migrans (eye granulomas, retinal detachment, ophthalmitis, uveitis, squint, blindness)—also meningoencephalitis (rare). Δ : Fundoscopy, serology, histology. FBC: eosinophilia. R : Albendazole 400mg/12h PO for 5d. Severe lung, heart, or CNS disease may warrant steroids. In eye disease, visible larvae can be lasered. *Toxocara* is contracted by ingesting dirt, so de-worm pets often (exclude from play areas).

Dracunculus medinensis (Guinea worm) is the longest nematode ($\sim 70\text{cm}$). Transmission: water containing tiny crustaceans (copepods).⁴²¹ R : Slow extraction of pre-emerging worms as they exit through the skin helped by metronidazole (\pm steroids). It is almost eradicated (except in Mali, south Sudan and Ethiopia).

1 Visceral larval migrans occurs when larvae migrate through a host's internal organs. We get it by ingesting parasite eggs, or by eating tissues from intermediate hosts containing larvae, eg *Ascaris* in raw beef. Signs vary with location, eg \uparrow appetite, T $^{\circ}$ t, myalgia, big liver, asthma, cough, myeloradiculitis.⁴²²

Filarial infection

This is common—prevalence of lymphatic filariasis: 120 million worldwide.

1 Onchocerciasis (caused by *Onchocerca volvulus*, transmitted by the black fly) is the world's second leading infectious cause of blindness.⁴²³ It causes river blindness in 72% of some communities in Africa and S America (17 million worldwide). A nodule forms at the site of the bite, shedding microfilariae to distant skin sites which develop altered pigmentation, lichenification, loss of elasticity, and poor healing. Signs are mainly from localized host responses to moribund microfilariae. Eye signs: keratitis, uveitis, cataract, fixed pupil, fundal degeneration, or optic neuritis/atrophy. Lymphadenopathy & elephantiasis also occur.

Diagnosis: Visualization of microfilaria in eye or skin snips. Remove a fine shaving of clean, unanaesthetized skin with a scalpel. Put on slide with a drop of 0.9% saline and look for swimming larvae after 30min. **R:** Ivermectin 150µg/kg stat, repeat eg 6-monthly to suppress dermal and ocular microfilariae. If the eye is involved start **prednisolone** 1mg/kg/24h PO a few days before ivermectin (probably OK in pregnancy). Worm survival requires symbiosis with Wolbachia bacteria (susceptible to doxycycline 100mg/d PO for 6 weeks; give *before* ivermectin). Ivermectin resistance may be evolving.⁴²⁴

2 Lymphatic filariasis occurs in Asia, Africa, and S America and is transmitted by 5 genera of mosquito. Acute infection causes fever, lymphadenitis & chyluria.¹ *Wuchereria bancrofti* causes leg lymphoedema (elephantiasis) and hydroceles (may be huge). *Brugia malaya* causes elephantiasis below the elbow/knee. *Wuchereria* lifecycle: a mosquito bites an infected human→ingested microfilariae develop into larvae→larvae migrate to mosquito's mouth→biting of another human→access to bloodstream→adult filariae lodge in lymphatics.

Δ: Blood film (fig 4); or rapid immuno-chromatographic fingerprick field test. As lymphoedema may develop years after infection, tests may be -ve.

Complications: Immune hyperreactivity may cause tropical pulmonary eosinophilia (cough, wheeze, lung fibrosis, high eosinophil counts, IgE↑ and IgG↑). It is a major public health problem and is a WHO target for elimination by the year 2020 (starting with Nigeria, Samoa and Egypt). The current elimination strategy involves mass treatment with one yearly dose of 2 drugs for 5yrs: albendazole (400mg) + *either* ivermectin (200µg/kg) *or* diethylcarbamazine (see BNF).⁴²⁵

Giving diethylcarbamazine-fortified salt to families for 1yr might help too.

Prevention: Avoiding mosquitoes + annual mass treatment of entire communities. Marvellous! Free drugs!! Elimination of a disease!!! Not quite...free drugs are often rejected for cultural reasons.⁴²⁶ Think again...ask a medical anthropologist.

3 Loiasis (eye-worm) Loa loa is a parasite that causes tropical eye worm—seen in tropical forests of Africa where it is transmitted by Tabanid flies of the genus *Chrysops*. It causes pruritus, urticaria, myalgia arthralgia, and mysterious wandering Calabar swellings.² The worm may migrate over the surface of the eye ("Something's wiggling in my eye, doctor"). This eerie trip causes intense conjunctivitis, which luckily heals OK if left alone (don't treat until the transmigration is over: on detecting your therapy the worm tends to panic).⁴²⁷ Check for glomerulonephritis, eosinophilia, and encephalitis. **Δ:** Blood smears (often -ve, or show squirming microfilariae),⁴²⁸ serology, or PCR. **R:** Diethylcarbamazine.

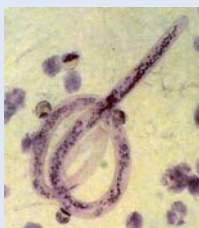


Fig 4. Blood smear of *W. bancrofti* (290×8.5µm).

1 Chyluria entails fistulae (eg pyelo-lymphatic) between lymphatic and urinary systems: hence milky lymph in urine (ΔΔ: filariasis, TB, trauma, neoplasia, congenital; it is also associated with nephrosis).⁴²⁹

2 Calabar swellings occur anywhere (face, arms, legs, eg induced by local trauma). Oedema is preceded by local pain or itching lasting 1-2h. There then develops a 10-20cm non-erythematous, non-pitting swelling, resolving after 2 days to several weeks. Severe swellings can cause paraesthesiae or entrapment neuropathy. Recurrences are common at the same site (or elsewhere). Cause: unknown (?allergic responses to antigens released in the tracks of adult migrating parasites).⁴³⁰

Figs 1-4 ©Prof S Upton, Kansas Univ. Fig 3's eggs: ©JML.

Taenia solium (pork tapeworm; **fig 1**) infection occurs by eating uncooked pork, or from drinking contaminated water.¹ *T. saginata* is from uncooked beef. Both cause vague abdominal symptoms and malabsorption. Contaminated food and water contain cysticerci which adhere to the gut and develop into adult worms. On swallowing the eggs of *T. solium* they may enter the circulation and disseminate widely, becoming cysticerci within the human host (cysticercosis; 50,000 deaths/yr worldwide and the cause of much chronic disability).⁴³¹ This tapeworm encysts in muscle, skin, heart, eye, and CNS, causing focal signs. **Subcutaneous cysticercosis** causes subcutaneous nodules (arms, legs, chest). **Ocular cysticercosis** causes conjunctivitis; uveitis; retinitis; choroidal atrophy; blindness.

Neurocysticercosis is the main cause of seizures in some places, eg Mexico, and is getting more prevalent, eg in the southern USA. Other signs: focal CNS signs, eg hemiplegia, foot drop, odd behaviour, mood or personality change, dementia (reversible if you are quick)⁴³²—or no symptoms. Cysticerci may cluster like bunches of grapes ('racemose' form) in the ventricles (causing hydrocephalus) and basal cisterns (causing basal meningitis, cranial nerve lesions and ↑ICP). Spinal cysticerci may cause radicular or compressive symptoms (p470). **Δ**: • Stool microscopy of perianal swabs. • Serology: indirect haemagglutination test. • CSF: eosinophils in neurocysticercosis, and a CSF antigen test is available. • MRI locates cysts (CT may be normal). • SXR and x-ray of soft tissue: calcified cysts. • Detecting *T. solium* DNA in brain biopsy tissue.⁴³³ **R**: Get help (tel: 0151 705 3100^{UK}). Neurocysticercosis: albendazole, eg 7.5mg/kg/12h (max 400mg/12h) PO for 8–30d, or praziquantel. Dexamethasone ↓ allergic responses to dying larvae (0.1mg/kg/d for 29d), but using steroids routinely is controversial. NB: if CSF ventricles are involved, you may need to shunt before starting drugs. Drugs may worsen the acute phase of cysticercotic encephalitis.⁴³⁴

Hymenolepis nana; *H. diminuta* (dwarf tapeworm; rarely symptomatic). **R**: Praziquantel 25mg/kg PO (1 dose; adults & children) or niclosamide 500mg/d for 3d.

Diphyllobothrium latum (**fig 2**) is a fish tapeworm (via uncooked fish, eg salmon, trout) causing similar symptoms to *T. solium* + tapeworm segments passed PR. It is a cause of vitamin B₁₂ ↓. **R**: Praziquantel 10mg/kg stat PO.

Hydatid Cystic hydatid disease is a zoonosis caused by eating eggs of the dog parasite, eg *Echinococcus granulosus* (**fig 3**), eg in rural sheep-farming regions. Hydatid is a worldwide public health problem (not confined to traditional rural areas in China, Russia, Japan, Alaska, Wales, Italy, India, Pakistan). In one Tunisian study, prevalence of cysts was: 16% in sheep, 9% in cattle, 6% in dromedaries (1-humped camels) and 3% in goats.⁴³⁵ In humans, cysts may inhabit: **liver** (hepatomegaly, obstructive jaundice, cholangitis, PUO); **lung** (dyspnoea, chest pain, haemoptysis, anaphylaxis—alveolar hydatid is caused by *E. multilocularis*); **CNS** (space-occupying signs); **bone** (an interesting osteolytic cause of knee pain, cord compression, etc) or often silently in breast, kidney, adrenals, bladder, heart, psoas.

Δ: Plain x-ray, ultrasound, CT/MRI—cysts may look like tumours.⁴³⁶ A good serological test has replaced the variably sensitive Casoni intradermal test.

R: Get help (including surgical). 1st-choice: albendazole pre & post drainage (if >60kg, 400mg/12h; if <60kg, 7.5mg/kg/12h with food). Excise/drain symptomatic cysts (some favour hepatic resection).⁴³⁷ Beware spilling cyst contents (causes anaphylaxis; give praziquantel here). **PAIR** approach: **p**uncture→**a**spirate cyst→**i**nject hypertonic saline→**r**e-aspirate after 25min; continue albendazole for 30d to prevent recurrence.⁴³⁸

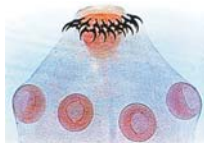


Fig 1. *Taenia solium* (note the two rows of hooks).



Fig 2. *D. latum*.



Fig 3. Hydatid.

1 While eating undercooked pork is the only way to acquire intestinal *T. solium*, any food contaminated by faeces from hosts infected with cysticerci can carry the eggs that may lead to development of cysticercosis. Even vegetarians are at risk. The lack of public awareness of this poses big problems.⁴³⁹

Schistosomiasis (bilharzia) is caused by blood-dwelling schistosoma worms: *S. mansoni* (Africa and Americas), *S. japonicum* (SE and East Asia) and hepatosplenic schistosomiasis), *S. haematobium* (~230 million people in Africa—bladder and vulva involved). Lesser species: *S. mekongi* (Mekong River; similar to *S. japonicum*); *S. intercalatum*. Snails release cercariae that penetrate skin, eg during paddling, causing itchy papular rashes ('swimmer's itch'). Cercariae shed their tails to become schistosomules, migrating via lungs to liver where they grow. ~2wks later, there may be fever, urticaria, diarrhoea, cough, wheeze, and hepatosplenomegaly (Katayama fever). In 8wks flukes mature (14–20mm long), mate (Fig 1), and migrate to resting habitats, eg bladder or mesenteric veins, releasing eggs, causing local granulomas and scars (important sites of HIV entry). Signs reflect our immune response to eggs (type IV hypersensitivity, eg for *S. mansoni*).

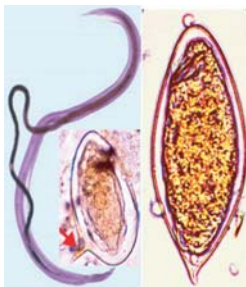


Fig 1. *S. mansoni* ♂/♀ mating; right: egg with sublateral spine (arrow).
Fig 2. *S. haematobium*; terminal spine.


Figs 1–3 © S Upton, Kansas Univ.

Signs: *S. mansoni*: abdominal pain; D&V; later, hepatic fibrosis, granulomatous inflammation, anaemia, and portal hypertension (variceal bleeding is common, but transformation into true cirrhosis has not been well documented). *S. japonicum*, often the most serious, occurs in SE Asia, tends to affect the bowel and liver, and may migrate to lung and CNS ('traveller's myelitis'). Urinary schistosomiasis (*S. haematobium*) occurs in Africa, the Middle East, and the Indian Ocean. Signs: frequency, dysuria, haematuria (± haematospermia), incontinence. Complications: hydronephrosis; renal failure; squamous cell cancer of the bladder. **A:** Eggs in urine (*S. haematobium*; Fig 2, with 3 RBCs for scale) or faeces (*S. mansoni* and *japonicum*) or rectal biopsy (all types). AXR may show bladder calcification in chronic *S. haematobium* infection. Ultrasound (renal obstruction, hydronephrosis ± thick bladder wall). Ab to *S. mansoni*, *S. haematobium*, and *S. japonicum* adult worm microsomal Ag are specific for all 3 species (ELISA and immunoblot assays)⁴⁴⁰. **R:** Praziquantel: 40mg/kg PO with food divided into 2 doses separated by 4–6h for *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*, or 20mg/kg/8h for 1d in *S. japonicum*. Sudden transitory abdominal pain ± bloody diarrhoea may occur shortly after. Oxamniquine is an alternative for *S. mansoni*.

Fasciola hepatica (liver fluke) is spread by sheep, water, and snails. It causes T^ot, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, weight↓, jaundice, hepatomegaly, liver fibrosis and eosinophilia. **Tests:** Stool microscopy, serology. **R:** Get help. Triclabendazole 10mg/kg PO, 1 dose, or bithionol 30mg/kg alternate days for 10–15 doses, max 2g/day IM.

Opisthorchis & **Clonorchis** (Fig 3) are liver flukes common in SE Asia, where they cause cholangitis, cholecystitis & cholangiocarcinoma. **Risk factor:** Raw fish. **Tests:**⁴⁴¹ Stool microscopy; PCR. **R:** Praziquantel 25mg/kg/8h PO for 2d.

Fasciolopsis buski is a GI fluke 7cm long, causing ulcers/abscesses at sites of attachment. **R:** Praziquantel 25mg/kg/8h PO for 1d.

Paragonimus westermani (lung fluke) is got by eating raw freshwater crabs & crayfish. Flukes migrate through gut and diaphragm to invade lungs (hence cough, dyspnoea, haemoptysis, ± lung abscess/bronchiectasis). It occurs in the Far East, S America, and Congo; often mistaken for TB (similar signs and CXR). **Tests:**  Ova in sputum. MRI/CT for lung/CNS lesions. **R:** Praziquantel 25mg/kg/8h for 2d.

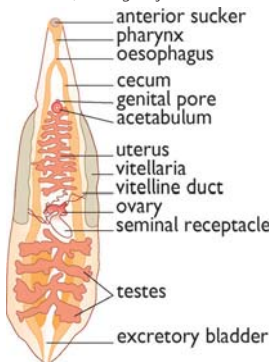


Fig 3. *Clonorchis sinensis*.

Exotic infections may be *community-acquired* or *nosocomial*, ie acquired in hospital. Immunosuppression and antibiotic overuse have caused an increase in exotic infections. Techniques such as PCR have identified more putative infective agents.

A good gossip: Don't expect to find the pertinent question in any textbook—eg:

- 1 "Have you delivered any infected babies in the last year?" You can impress/cure your obstetrician friends who don't know about baby-to-obstetrician brucellosis who tell you that "I'm so depressed about not being able to shake off this flu".⁴⁴²
- 2 "Are your carp well at present?" (*Mycobacterium marinum* skin infection).⁴⁴³
- 3 "Could that be a Hyalomma tick bite from when you rode your ostrich in last week's race?" (Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic fever, CCHF, p388; a bunyavirus→DIC/ARDS).
- 4 "Who has been licking your face recently?" (*Pasteurella multocida*).⁴⁴⁴
- 5 "Has your dog been on holiday this year?" (monkeypox from prairie dogs).
- 6 "Has your pet hedgehog lost weight?" (salmonella).⁴⁴⁵
- 7 "I expect you have a pet magpie causing your headache" (zoonotic transmission of *Cryptococcus neoformans* causing meningitis in an immunocompetent adult).⁴⁴⁶
- 8 "Did you have a stray pig living under your house when the monsoon started?" (pigs + standing water + mosquitoes ≈ Japanese encephalitis).
- 9 "Any contact with invasive snails?" Angiostrongyliasis→eosinophilic meningitis.⁴⁴⁷
- 10 "Do you sometimes wonder if your goat miscarried last year?" (brucellosis).⁴⁴⁸
- 11 "Were you over-enthusiastic at last month's Festival of Sacrifice?" (Turkish Kurban Bayrami) (*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* endocarditis via swine erysipelas).
- 12 "Show me your pet lobster: he may be the cause of your bad hand" (lobsterman's hand, an erysipeloid infection from *Erysipelothrix*).⁴⁴⁹ Pet lobsters have a grand pedigree: Gérard de Nerval (*OHCS* p397) used to take his pet lobster for walks, on a blue silk lead, beside the Seine (fig 1). A lobster, he said, is "serious-minded and quiet, doesn't scratch or bark like a dog, and knows all of the secrets of the deep." His lobster's mission was to combat the Philistinism chaining us all to mediocrity.⁴⁵⁰



Fig 1. "Is your pet lobster well?" (Gérard de Nerval).

When you suspect infection (T⁺, sweats, inflammation, D&V, wcct, or *any* unexplained symptom), ask about: •Foreign travel (recent and past) •Foreign bodies (hip prosthesis, heart valve) •Work or hobby or family exposure to infectious agents •Any bites/stings •Sexual exploits •Any necrotic tissue? •HIV risk or reason for immunosuppression (eg pregnancy; steroids) •Any pets, exotic or otherwise?

Diagnosis 🎧 *Listen to your patient.* Don't just think pathogens! You have two cultures to master: the host's and the pathogen's (culture blood, urine, stool, CSF; take swabs). *Prolonged immersion in both cultures may be needed.* Liaise early with infectious disease doctors & microbiologists. Imaging: CXR, ultrasound, CT/MRI. If the infection seems localized, consider surgical debridement ± drainage. Don't give up if culture is negative; tests may need repeating. Perhaps the organism is 'fastidious' in its nutritional requirement or requires longer incubation? Even if culture is achieved, it may be that the organism is non-pathogenic/commensal (ie part of the normal flora for that patient). If culture fails, look for antibodies or antigen in the serum or body fluids. It is generally agreed that a 4-fold rise in antibody titres in convalescence (compared with the acute sera 2–3wks before) *may* indicate recent infection. PCR is increasingly used for identification, but it is far from infallible, and contamination with DNA from the lab or elsewhere is a big problem.

R "What worked for you last time this happened?" Empirical therapy (p382) may be needed if the patient is ill—see opposite. Draining pus is as important as antibiotics. Ask about local diseases, antibiotic resistance and the need for isolation/contact tracing. *Doses:* Penicillins (p378); cephalosporins (p379); gentamicin^{1 et al} (p380).

1 Prescribing by surface area, or lean body weight (LBW), eg for gentamicin, or ideal body weight (IBW):
 body surface area = $0.20247 \times \text{Height (metres)}^{0.725} \times \text{weight (kg)}^{0.425}$ halls.md/ideal-weight/devine.htm
 lean body weight $\sigma = (1.10 \times \text{weight in kg}) - 128$ ($\text{weight}^2 / (100 \times \text{height in metres}^2)$)
 lean body weight $\phi = (1.07 \times \text{weight in kg}) - 148$ ($\text{weight}^2 / (100 \times \text{height in metres}^2)$)
 ideal body weight $\sigma = 50 + 2.3$ for every inch over 5ft tall ($\phi = 49 + 1.7$ for each inch over 5ft)

Exotic/unusual organism	Site or type of infection	Treatment example
<i>IE=infected endocarditis</i> ¹		
<i>Acanthamoeba</i>	Corneal ulcers	Propamidine + neomycin
<i>Acinetobacter calcoaceticus</i>	UTI; CSF; lung; bone; conjunctiva	Meropenem or amikacin ⁴⁵¹
<i>Actinobacillus lignieresii</i>	CSF; IE; wounds; bone; lymph nodes	Ampicillin ± gentamicin
<i>Actinobacillus ureae</i>	Bronchus; CSF post-trauma; hepatitis	Ampicillin ± gentamicin
<i>Aerococcus viridans</i>	Empyema; UTI; CSF; bone; IE	Penicillin ± gentamicin
<i>Aeromonas hydrophila</i>	IE; CSF; cornea; bone; D&V; liver abscess	Ciprofloxacin
<i>Afpia broomeae</i>	Marrow; synovium	Imipenem or ceftriaxone
<i>Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans</i>	IE; CNS; UTI; bone; thyroid; lung; periodontitis; abscesses	Penicillin ± gentamicin
<i>Alcaligenes species</i>	Dialysis peritonitis; ear; lung	Co-amoxiclav or ceftazidime
<i>Arachnia propionica</i>	Actinomycosis; tear ducts; CNS	Penicillin
<i>Arcanobacterium</i>	Throat; cellulitis; leg ulcer	Penicillin
<i>Babesia microti</i> (protozoa)	Puo ± haemolysis if old/splenectomy	Atovaquone + azithromycin
<i>Bacillus cereus</i>	Wounds; eye; ear; lung; UTI; IE	Vancomycin
<i>Bifidobacterium</i>	Vagina; UTI; IE; peritonitis; lung	Penicillin
<i>Bordetella bronchiseptica</i>	URTI; CSF (after animal contact)	Co-amoxiclav
<i>Burkholderia cepacia</i> , etc (formerly <i>pseudomonas</i>)	Wounds; feet; lungs; IE; CAPD; UTI ecthyma gangrenosa; peritonitis	Ciprofloxacin or meropenem
<i>Burkholderia pickettii</i>	CSF (formerly a <i>pseudomonas</i>)	Cefalosporin
<i>Burkholderia pseudomallei</i> (formerly <i>Pseudomonas pseudomallei</i>)	Melioidosis: self-reactivating septic-aemia + multi-organ, protean signs, eg in rice farmers, via water/soil in Papua, Thailand, Vietnam, Torres Straits	Ceftazidime (14d) + co-trimoxazole for 3 months
<i>Capnocytophaga</i>	Oral ulcer; stomatitis; arthritis	Ertapenem
<i>Cardiobacterium hominis</i>	IE (=infective endocarditis)	Ceftriaxone for 4wks
<i>Chromobacterium violaceum</i>	Nodes; eye; bone; liver; pustules	Gentamicin, chloramphenicol
<i>Citrobacter koseri/diversus</i>	CSF; UTI; blood; cholecystitis	Imipenem
<i>Corynebacterium jeikeium</i>	IE; CSF; otitis; leg ulcer; lung	Vancomycin
<i>Corynebacterium pseudotb</i>	Lymphadenitis	Ciprofloxacin
<i>Corynebacterium ulcerans</i>	Diphtheria-like ± CNS signs	Rifampicin + diphtheria antitoxin
<i>Cyclospora cayetanensis</i>	Diarrhoea (via raspberries)	Co-trimoxazole
<i>Edwardsiella tarda</i>	Cellulitis; abscesses; BP; dysentery via penetrating fish injuries	Cefuroxime + gentamicin
<i>Eikenella corrodens</i>	Sinus; ears; PE post-jugular vein phlebitis (post-anginal sepsis) via bites	Penicillin ± gentamicin
<i>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</i>	Erysipelas-like (<i>OHCS</i> p598); IE	Penicillin
<i>Eubacterium</i>	Wounds; gynaecologic sepsis; IE	Penicillin + cefoxitin
<i>Flavobacterium meningosepticum</i>	Lungs; epidemic neonatal meningitis; post-op sepsis; contact lens keratitis	Piperacillin
<i>Flavobacterium multivorum</i>	Peritonitis (spontaneous); pneumonia in HIV	Ciprofloxacin
<i>Gemella haemolysans</i>	IE; meningitis after neurosurgery	Linezolid + chloramphenicol
<i>Helicobacter cinaedi</i>	Proctitis in homosexual men	Ciprofloxacin + rifampicin
<i>Kingella kingae</i>	Throat; larynx; eyelid; joint; skin	Penicillin ± cephalosporin
<i>Lactobacillus</i>	Teeth; chorioamnionitis; pyelitis	Penicillin or ampicillin
<i>Mobiluncus curtisii/mulieris</i>	Vagina	Clindamycin (topical)
<i>Moraxella osloensis</i> and <i>M. nonliquefaciens</i>	Conjunctiva; wound; vagina; UTI; CSF CNS; bone; haemorrhagic stomatitis	Co-amoxiclav
<i>Pasteurella multocida</i> ^{452, 453} (Gram-ve rod)	Skin; bone; lung; CSF; UTI; pericarditis; epiglottitis. From cat or dog bites	β-lactam antibiotics
<i>P. pneumotrophica</i>	Wounds; joints; bone; CSF	Penicillin; cipro-/moxifloxacin
<i>Peptostreptococcus</i>	Bone/joint/discitis; wound; teeth; face	Clindamycin or metronidazole
<i>Plesiomonas shigelloides</i>	D&V; eye; sepsis—post fishbone injury	Ciprofloxacin
<i>Propionibacterium acnes</i> (see <i>OHCS</i> p600)	Face; wounds; CSF shunts; bone; IE; liver granuloma (botryomycosis)	Tetracycline or ceftriaxone
<i>Prototheca wickerhamii</i> & <i>zopfii=achlorophyllous algae</i>	Subcutaneous granuloma; plaques; bursitis; adenitis; nodules ⁴⁵⁴	Amphotericin or ketoconazole
<i>Providencia stuartii</i>	UTI; purple urine bag syndrome	Ceftriaxone
<i>Pseudomonas maltophilia</i>	stenotrop homonas wounds; ear; eye; lung; UTI; IE	Co-trimoxazole or cefepime
<i>Pseudomonas putrefaciens</i>	CSF post CNS surgery/head trauma	Cefotaxime
<i>Rothia dentocariosa</i> ⁴⁵⁵	Appendix abscess; infective emboli	Penicillin + gentamicin
<i>Serratia marcescens</i> (may be non-pathogenic) ⁴⁵⁶	Wounds; burns; lung; UTI; liver; CSF; bone; IE; red diaper/nappy syndrome	Imipenem, ceftazidime, ciprofloxacin
<i>Sphingomonas paucimobilis</i>	Superficial leg ulcer; CSF; UTI	Ceftazidime
<i>Streptococcus bovis</i>	IE if colon cancer; do colonoscopy	Penicillin + gentamicin
<i>Vibrio vulnificus</i>	Wounds; muscle; uterus; fasciitis	Tetracycline + cephalosporin

1 Rare causes of endocarditis often involve the **HACEK organisms**: *Haemophilus aphrophilus*, *Actinobacillus*, *Cardiobacter*, *Eikenella*, and *Kingella*.
Source: GAT Sandford.



Contents

Neurology at the bedside: 449

- The chief questions 450
- Cerebral artery territories 452
- Drugs and the CNS 454
- Testing peripheral nerves 456
- Dermatomes 458

Some common presentations:

- Headache 460–463 (includes trigeminal neuralgia 461 & migraine 462)
- Blackouts 464
- Vertigo & dizziness 466
- Hearing loss & tinnitus 468
- Weak legs & cord compression 470
- Abnormal movements 472

Diseases and conditions:

- Stroke:
 - Clinical features and acute management ►►474
 - Investigation and prevention 476
 - After the stroke... 478
- Transient ischaemic attack 480
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage 482
- Intracranial venous thrombosis 484
- Subdural haemorrhage 486
- Extradural haemorrhage 486
- Delirium (acute confusional state) 488
- Dementia 490
- Alzheimer's disease 492
- Epilepsy: diagnosis 494
- Epilepsy: management 496
- Parkinsonism 498
- Parkinson's disease 498
- Multiple sclerosis (MS) 500
- Space-occupying lesions 502
- Bell's palsy 504
- Mononeuropathies 506
- Polyneuropathies 508
- Autonomic neuropathy 509
- Motor neuron disease (MND) 510
- Bulbar palsy 511
- Cervical spondylosis 512
- Disorders of muscle (myopathies) 514
- Myasthenia gravis 516
- Neurofibromatosis 518
- Syringomyelia 520
- Retroviruses & the CNS 520

Models of brain functioning 521

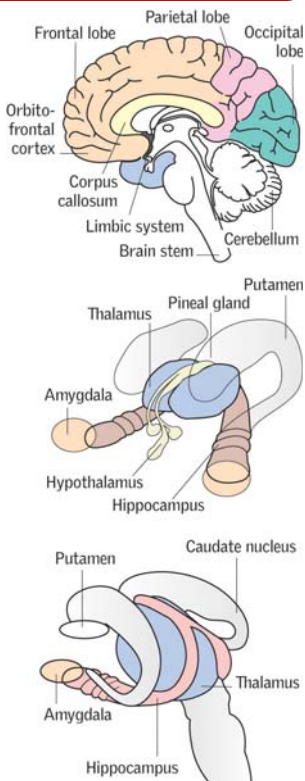


Fig 1. *Conflicting systems:* cerebral hemispheres and limbic system (last 2 images). 'We know...about how there isn't a unitary ego—how we're made up of conflicting, interacting systems.' *A.S. Byatt Possession*

Our bodies are not a bicycle with a single rider—more like a tandem with various processes in various saddles. The front(al) drivers may decide to bear right, but if the rear drivers now lean left we go awry, and our will seems mysteriously subverted. Those few doctors whose processes are in perpetual harmony are at a disadvantage here as they never understand what makes their patients good and bad.

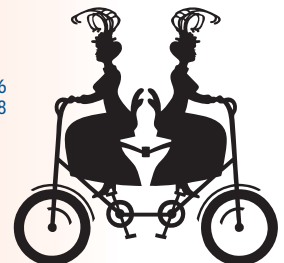


Fig 2. A body has more than one rider.

We dedicate this page to those carers who find themselves responsible for a friend or relative who has a chronic neurological illness, such as stroke, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, or motor neuron disease. As a thought experiment, try spending a morning imagining that you are such a carer, trying to expunge the smell of soiled sheets from your clothes, while awaiting a visit from a neighbour, who said he would 'sit with him' so you can catch the bus into town, and, like a guilty hedonist, play truant from your role as nurse for a few sanity-giving hours of normal life. You wait. No one comes. You stop bothering about the smell on your clothes, and turn towards your husband, about to say something, but when your eyes meet his, you realize he does not recognize you—and you keep your thoughts to yourself. Knuckles whiten as you grasp his collar to lift him forward on the commode, and you seem to hear a mocking voice over your shoulder saying: "... so I see we're getting angry with him today, are we?" The ceaseless round from mouth to anus, from bed to chair, from twilight to twilight, continues, *ad infinitum*.

It is all we can do to spend 2 minutes on this thought experiment, let alone a morning—or the rest of our lives. We need to be aware of the strategies we adopt to avoid involvement with the naked truth of the shattered lives, which, like a tragic subplot, stand behind the farce of morning surgery or outpatients in which we hear ourselves forever saying in tones of plummy complacency: "And how are you today Mrs Salt—your husband, I know... marvellous how you manage. You are a real support to each other. Let me know if I can do anything." We pretend to be busy, we ensure that we *are* busy, we surround ourselves with students, uniforms, and a miasma of technical expertise—we surround ourselves with *anything* to ensure that there is no chink through which Mrs Salt can shine her rays of darkness. Poor Mrs Salt. Poor us—to be frightened of the dark, panicking at the thought that we might not have anything to offer, or that we might be called to offer up our equanimity as a sacrifice to Mrs Salt. How dare one little grain upset our carefully contrived universe?

Respite care, medical charities, meals on wheels, laundry services, physiotherapy, occupational therapy (OT), transport, day care centres, clubs for carers, visits from the doctor (which may cure the plummy complacency), district nurses or from a nurse-matron specializing in chronic diseases will go some way to mitigate Mrs Salt's problems. As ever, the way forward is by taking time to listen. Congratulate the carer, and acknowledge that they may be accomplishing more than what 3 full-time nurses working round the clock could achieve.

Carers' needs evolve. First there is uncertainty, and the need for help in handling this. Next comes the moment of diagnosis, with the numbness, denial, and anger that may follow. Then there may be an adjustment to reality, with frenzied searching for information and advice, or a careful titration by the carer of how much information he or she can handle.

Issues of driving, mobility, finance, sex, and employment are likely to occur throughout the illness, and advice will need to be constantly tailored to suit individual circumstances. But the best thing you can ever offer is the unwritten contract that, come what may, you will be there, available, often ineffectual, but incapable of being alienated by whatever the carer may disclose to you.

Pages elsewhere with a neurological flavour: CNS exam (p72-80); mental state (p82); tremor (p71); facial pain (p71); how to do an LP (p782).

Emergencies: headache (p794); coma (p800); GCS (p802); meningitis (p832); encephalitis (p834); cerebral abscess (p835); status epilepticus (p836); head injury/TICP (p838-840).


We thank Dr Thomas Hughes, our Specialist Reader, and Zuzana Sipkova, our Junior Reader, for their contribution to this chapter.

Where is the lesion? A helpful feature in determining if a focal lesion is present is lack of symmetry—eg one pupil dilated, or one upgoing plantar response. Also a spinal level (below) is a localizing sign (effects may be symmetrical below the lesion).

Localizing the lesion depends on recognizing characteristic patterns of cognitive, cranial nerve, motor, and sensory deficits that occur with lesions at different sites. *Where?* is a great first question, but note that sometimes there is no single lesion, rather, a *general insult*, eg trauma, encephalitis, anoxia, poisoning, or post-ictal states—or *diffuse neurodegeneration* (may have specific local effects, eg amnesia).

Patterns of motor loss: Weakness can arise from lesions of the cortex, corona radiata, internal capsule, brainstem, cord, roots, plexi, peripheral nerves, neuromuscular junction, or muscle. Is the pattern upper or lower motor neuron (UMN or LMN; see BOXES)? **Cortical lesions** may cause an unexpected pattern of weakness of all movements of a hand or foot, with normal or even \downarrow tone—but \uparrow reflexes more proximally in the arm or leg will suggest a UMN rather than LMN lesion. **Internal capsule** (p474) and **corticospinal tract** lesions cause contralateral hemiparesis. If this occurs with epilepsy, \downarrow cognition, or homonymous hemianopia (p453), the lesion is in a cerebral hemisphere. A cranial nerve palsy (III–XII) contralateral to a hemiplegia implicates the brainstem on the side of the cranial nerve palsy. **Cord lesions** causing paraparesis (both legs) or quadriparesis/tetraplegia (all limbs) are suggested by finding a motor and reflex level (power is unaffected above the lesion, with LMN signs at the level of the lesion, and UMN signs *below* the lesion). **Peripheral neuropathies:** (p506) Most cause distal weakness, eg foot-drop; weak hand (in Guillain-Barré syndrome weakness is often *proximal* due to root involvement). Involvement of a single nerve (mononeuropathy) occurs with trauma or entrapment (carpal tunnel, p507); involvement of several nerves (mononeuritis multiplex) is seen, eg in DM or vasculitis.

Sensory deficits: Distribution of sensory loss and modality involved (pain, temperature, touch, vibration, joint-position sense) helps localize the lesion. Pain and T° sensations travel along small fibres in peripheral nerves and the *anterolateral (spinothalamic) tracts* in the cord and brainstem (p520), whereas joint-position and vibration sense travel in large fibres in peripheral nerves and the large *dorsal columns* of the cord. **Distal sensory loss** suggests a neuropathy and may involve all sensory modalities or be selective, depending on nerve fibre size involved. Individual nerve lesions are identified by their anatomical territories, which are usually more sharply defined than those of root lesions (dermatomes, p458), which often show considerable overlap. A **sensory level** is the hallmark (albeit a rather unreliable one) of a cord lesion—ie decreased sensation below the lesion (eg the legs) with normal sensation above this level (eg in abdomen, trunk, and arms). Hemi-cord lesions cause a Brown-Séquard picture (p710) with dorsal column loss on the side of the lesion and contralateral spinothalamic loss. **Dissociated sensory loss** may occur, eg in **cervical cord lesions**—loss of fine touch and proprioception without loss of pain and temperature (or vice-versa, eg syringomyelia, p520; or cord tumours). Lateral brainstem lesions show both dissociated and crossed sensory loss with pain and T° loss on the side of the face ipsilateral to the lesion, and contralateral arm and leg sensory loss. Lesions above the brainstem give a contralateral pattern of generalized sensory loss. In **cortical lesions**, sensory loss is confined to more subtle and discriminative sensory functions (2-point discrimination and stereognosis; p503).

What is the lesion? Are the cells diseased, dysfunctional, disconnected (anatomically, eg after a stroke, or functionally, as in autism¹),  or under- or over-excited (migraine; epilepsy)? Is there loss of a specific type of nerve cell, as in motor neuron disease or subacute combined degeneration of the cord (B_{12} \downarrow , p328, **fig 1** p471). Arteriopaths get strokes, tropical travellers get wormy lesions^{etc etc}.

Why? Do a general examination. Example: a man comes in with dysphasia: where?=dominant hemisphere; what?=infarct; why?=embolus from atrial fibrillation. After a few years of bedside neurology you will find your finger automatically fumbling under the bedclothes to reveal an irregularly irregular pulse long before the stuttering history is half complete. But beware putting 2 and 2 together *too* soon.

UMN (upper motor neuron) lesions

These are caused by damage to motor pathways (corticospinal tracts) anywhere from motor nerve cells in the precentral gyrus of the frontal cortex, through the internal capsule, brainstem, and cord, to the synapse with the anterior horn cells in the cord. UMN weakness affects **muscle groups**, not individual muscles. **Weakness** is typically 'pyramidal'^{1,2} in distribution, ie weakness involving arm extensors (shoulder abduction; elbow, wrist, and finger extension), the small muscles of the hand, and lower limb flexors (at hip and knee, and ankle dorsiflexors and everters). There is no muscle wasting; **loss of skilled fine finger movements** may be greater than expected from the overall grade of weakness (Box). **Spasticity** develops in stronger muscles (arm flexors and leg extensors). It manifests as **↑ tone** that is **velocity-dependent** and **non-uniform**,³ ie the faster you move the patient's muscle the greater the resistance, until it finally gives way in a clasp-knife manner. There is **hyperreflexia**: reflexes are brisk; **plantars are upgoing** (+ve Babinski sign) ± **clonus** (elicited by rapidly dorsiflexing the foot; ≤3 rhythmic, downward beats of the foot are normal; more suggest an UMN lesion) ± a positive **Hoffman's reflex**: brief flexion of thumb and index finger in a pincer movement following a flick to the pulp of the middle finger (it is a stretch reflex so the often-used way of flicking the finger towards the palm isn't ideal). Neck extension is said to increase sensitivity of this test. NB: UMN lesions can mimic LMN lesions in the first few hours before the spasticity and hyperreflexia develop.

LMN (lower motor neuron) lesions

These are caused by damage anywhere from anterior horn cells in the cord, nerve roots, plexi, or peripheral nerves. The distribution of weakness corresponds to those muscles supplied by the involved cord segment, nerve root, part of plexus, or peripheral nerve. See p456. A combination of anatomical knowledge, good muscle testing technique, and experience is needed to distinguish, eg a radial nerve palsy from a C7 root lesion, or a common peroneal nerve palsy from an L5 root lesion (p456).⁴ Affected muscles show **wasting ± fasciculation** (spontaneous involuntary twitching), and the limb feels soft and floppy, providing little resistance to passive stretch (**hypotonia/flaccidity**). **Reflexes are reduced** or absent, the **plantars remain flexor**. The chief differential is weakness from primary muscle disease—here there is symmetrical loss, reflexes are lost later than in neuropathies, and there is no sensory loss. Myasthenia gravis (p516) causes weakness worsening with use (fatiguability); there is little wasting, normal reflexes, and no sensory loss. **Reflexes and spinal cord level**: p73. **Spinal roots for each muscle**: p456. For mixed LMN and UMN signs, see p471 (MND, ↓ B₁₂, taboparesis, etc).

Muscle weakness grading (MRC classification)⁴

Grade 0	No muscle contraction	Grade 3	Active movement against gravity
Grade 1	Flicker of contraction	Grade 4	Active movement against resistance
Grade 2	Some active movement	Grade 5	Normal power (allowing for age)

Grade 4 covers a big range: 4-, 4, and 4+ denote movement against slight, moderate, and stronger resistance; avoid fudging descriptions—'strength 4/5 throughout' suggests a mild quadriparesis or myopathy. It is better to document 'poor effort' and the maximum grade for each muscle tested. ► Distribution of weakness tells us more than grade of weakness (grade does help document improvement).

1 The pyramidal (=corticospinal) tract starts at the pyramidal cells of Betz in area 4 and 6 of the motor cortex. It descends in the internal capsule to the medulla oblongata where fibres pass through the medullar pyramids (hence the name); here most decussate (uncrossed corticospinal fibres descend in the anterior funiculus as the anterior corticospinal tract). Lesions cause paresis and spasticity.²

2 'Extrapyramidal' denotes CNS motor phenomena relating to the basal ganglia. Extrapyramidal lesions cause poor initiation and maintenance of movement—**negative symptoms** include bradykinesia/akinesia (slow/absent movement) and loss of postural reflexes. **Positive symptoms** include tremor, rigidity, involuntary movements (p472, eg chorea, athetosis, ballismus, and dystonia).

3 Whereas with **rigidity**, ↑ tone is not velocity-dependent but constant throughout passive movement.

4 The booklet *Aids to the Examination of the Peripheral Nervous System* is invaluable here. ISBN 0-7020-2512-7

Knowledge of the anatomy of the blood supply of the brain helps in diagnosing and managing cerebrovascular disease (p474–p482). Always try to identify the area of brain that correlates with a patient’s symptoms and identify the affected artery.

Blood supply The brain is supplied by the internal carotid arteries (anteriorly) and the basilar artery (posteriorly, formed by the joining of the vertebral arteries, which supply the brainstem). These 3 vessels feed the anastomotic ring (circle of Willis) at the base of the brain. This arrangement may lessen the effects of occlusion of a feeder vessel proximal to the anastomosis by allowing supply from unaffected vessels. But the anatomy of the circle of Willis is variable and in many people it does not provide much protection from ischaemia due to carotid, vertebral, or basilar artery occlusion. Anastomotic supply from other vessels in the neck may mitigate occlusions of feeder vessels—occlusion of the internal carotid in the neck, for example, may not cause infarction if flow from the external carotid artery enters the circle of Willis via its anastomosis with the ophthalmic artery.



Fig 1. Where (and what) is the lesion?
Answer: p482. ©Dr D Hamoudi.

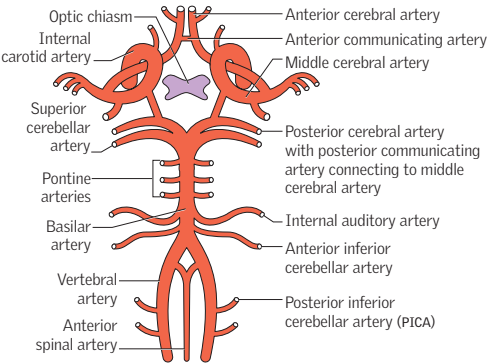


Fig 2. The circle of Willis at the base of the brain. See also fig 1 and fig 2, p483.

Thomas Willis

Thomas Willis (1621–75) is one of those happy Oxford heroes who hold a bogus DM degree, awarded in 1646 for his Royalist sympathies while at Christ Church, the most loyally royal college in the University. He had a busy life inventing terms such as ‘neurology’ and ‘reflex’. Not only has his name been given to his famous circle, but he was the first to describe myasthenia gravis, whooping cough, and the sweet taste of diabetic urine. He was the first person (few have followed him³) to know the course of the spinal accessory nerve. He is unusual among Oxford neurologists in that he developed the practice of giving his lunch away to the poor. He also espoused iatrochemistry: a theory of medicine according to which all morbid conditions of the body can be explained by disturbances in the fermentations and effervescences of its humours.

Dizzy-plus syndromes and arterial events: SCA →dizzy
AICA→dizzy and deaf
PICA→dizzy and dysphagic and dysphonic

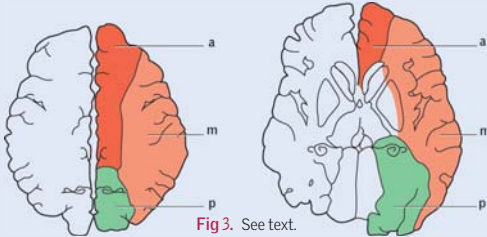


Fig 3. See text.

Carotid artery At worst, internal carotid artery occlusion causes total fatal infarction of the anterior two-thirds of its hemisphere and basal ganglia (lenticulo-striate arteries). More often, the picture is like middle cerebral artery occlusion.

Cerebral arteries 3 pairs of arteries leave the circle of Willis to supply the cerebral hemispheres: the anterior, middle and posterior cerebral arteries. The anterior and middle cerebrals are branches of the internal carotid arteries; in 80%, the basilar artery divides into the 2 posterior cerebral arteries. Ischaemia from occlusion of any one of them may be lessened by retrograde supply from leptomeningeal vessels.

Anterior cerebral artery: (a in fig 3) Supplies the frontal and medial part of the cerebrum. Occlusion may cause a weak, numb contralateral leg ± similar, if milder, arm symptoms. The face is spared. Bilateral infarction can cause akinetic mutism from damage to the cingulate gyri (also a rare cause of paraplegia).

Middle cerebral artery: (m in fig 3) Supplies the lateral part of each hemisphere. Occlusion may cause contralateral hemiparesis, hemisensory loss (esp. face & arm), contralateral homonymous hemianopia due to involvement of the optic radiation, cognitive change including dysphasia with dominant hemisphere lesions, and visuo-spatial disturbance (eg cannot dress; gets lost) with non-dominant lesions.

Posterior cerebral artery: (p in fig 3; fig 4) Supplies the occipital lobe. Occlusion gives contralateral homonymous hemianopia (often with macula sparing).

Vertebrobasilar circulation Supplies the cerebellum, brainstem, occipital lobes; occlusion causes signs relating to any or all 3: hemianopia; cortical blindness; diplopia; vertigo; nystagmus; ataxia; dysarthria; dysphasia; hemi- or quadriplegia; unilateral or bilateral sensory symptoms; hiccups; coma. Infarctions of the brainstem can produce various syndromes, eg *lateral medullary syndrome*, in which occlusion of one vertebral artery or the posterior inferior cerebellar artery causes infarction of the lateral medulla and the inferior cerebellar surface (→ vertigo, vomiting, dysphagia, nystagmus, ipsilateral ataxia, soft palate paralysis, ipsilateral Horner's syndrome, and a crossed pattern sensory loss—analgesia to pin-prick on ipsilateral face and contralateral trunk and limbs). *Locked-in syndrome* is caused by damage to the ventral pons due to pontine artery occlusion. Patients are unable to move, but retain full cognition and awareness, communicating, eg by blinking, electronic boards or special computers. 🗣️ Right-to-die legislation may be invoked...as one sufferer blinked: "My life is dull, miserable, demeaning, undignified, and intolerable." Locked-in syndrome is different from other right-to-die conditions because patients need someone to do the act for them. 🗣️ 4

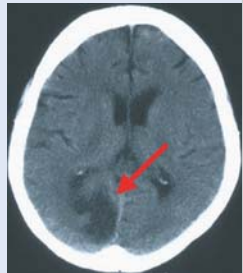


Fig 4. CT of stroke in posterior cerebral artery territory. ©J Trobe.

Subclavian steal syndrome: Subclavian artery stenosis proximal to the origin of the vertebral artery may cause blood to be *stolen* by retrograde flow down this vertebral artery down into the arm, causing brainstem ischaemia typically after use of the arm. Suspect if the BP in each arm differs by >20mmHg.

The brain is a gland that secretes both thoughts and molecules: both products are modulated by neurotransmitter systems. Some target sites for drugs:

- 1 Precursor of the transmitter (eg levodopa).
- 2 Interference with the storage of transmitter in vesicles within the pre-synaptic neuron (eg tetrabenazine).
- 3 Binding to the post-synaptic receptor site (bromocriptine).
- 4 Binding to the receptor-modulating site (benzodiazepines).
- 5 Interference with the breakdown of neurotransmitter within the synaptic cleft (acetylcholinesterase inhibitors; monoamine oxidase inhibitors—MAOIs).
- 6 Reduce reuptake of transmitter from synaptic cleft into pre-synaptic cell (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors—SSRIs, eg fluoxetine, or serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors—SNRIs, eg mirtazapine).¹
- 7 Binding to presynaptic autoreceptors. There are 3 kinds of autoreceptors: neurotransmitter release modulators, synthesis modulators, and impulse modulators. These offer sites for intervention.⁵ Augmenting antidepressant therapy with 5HT autoreceptor antagonists such as pindolol is possible.⁶

The proven neurotransmitters include:

Amino acids Glutamate and aspartate act as excitatory transmitters on NMDA and non-NMDA receptors (BOX)—relevant in epilepsy and CNS ischaemia. γ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) is mostly inhibitory. **Drugs enhancing GABA activity:** Used in epilepsy and neuropathic pain (gabapentin, valproate); spasticity (baclofen, benzodiazepines).

Peptides Opioids and substance P.

Histamine and purines (such as ATP) Clinical relevance is not clear.

Dopamine (DA) **Drugs enhancing DA activity:** Used in Parkinson's; hyperprolactinaemia; acromegaly. SE: vomiting; BP \downarrow ; chorea; dystonia; hallucinations/psychosis. **Drugs that reduce DA activity:** Used in schizophrenia (OHCS p360, D₂ antagonists); chorea; tics; nausea; vertigo. SE: parkinsonism; dystonias; akathisia.

Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine; 5HT) There are many types of receptor, eg 5HT₁₋₄. 5HT₁ has 5 subtypes (5HT_{1A-E}). **Agonists:** Lithium_{1A}; sumatriptan_{1D}. **Partial agonists:** Buspirone_{1A}; LSD₂. **Antagonists:** Ondansetron₃, pizotifen_{1&2}, methysergide_{1&2}, clozapine_{2C}—known as low D₂–high 5HT₂, while risperidone is high D₂–high 5HT₂ (low D₂ means <60% D₂ occupancy at conventional doses; traditional antipsychotics are just high D₂, ie 60–80%). **Reuptake inhibitors:** Fluoxetine, sertraline, venlafaxine. Ecstasy increases nerve-terminal 5HT release.⁷

Adrenaline (epinephrine) and noradrenaline (norepinephrine) 4 receptor types: α_1 , α_2 , β_1 , β_2 . Noradrenaline is more specific for α -receptors but both transmitters affect all receptors. In the periphery, α -receptor stimulation leads to arteriolar vasoconstriction and pupillary dilatation, β_1 stimulation leads to increase in pulse and myocardial contractility, and β_2 stimulation leads to bronchodilatation, uterine relaxation, and arteriolar vasodilatation.

Drugs enhancing adrenergic activity: Used in asthma (β_2); anaphylaxis (adrenaline); heart failure (dobutamine); depression (MAOIs and tricyclics; the latter may act by increasing synaptic norepinephrine in the CNS).¹

Drugs reducing adrenergic activity: Used in angina, TBP, arrhythmias (β_1); anxiety, thyrotoxicosis (β); TBP from pheochromocytoma, prostatism (α).

Acetylcholine (Muscarinic and nicotinic receptors)

Centrally acting anticholinergics: Used in parkinsonism, dystonias, motion sickness. Central toxic effects (especially in the elderly): confusion, delusions.

Peripherally acting antimuscarinics: Used in asthma (ipratropium); incontinence; to dry secretions pre-op; to dilate pupils; to \uparrow heart rate (atropine).

Peripherally acting cholinergic agonists: Used in glaucoma (pilocarpine); myasthenia (anticholinesterases). SE: sweating, hypersalivation, colic.

¹ Noradrenaline may be more involved in the symptoms of anergia, fatigue and loss of drive in depression, and 5-HT may be more involved in the alteration in subjective mood and anxiety.⁸

Neurotransmitters and CNS drugs

Here we list drugs used to modify CNS transmitters. When prescribing bear in mind that: • The drug (or a metabolite) must be able to pass through the blood-brain barrier to have an effect. • The consequences of any sedative effects may be severe. • There will be short- and long-term side-effects (eg tardive dyskinesia with neuroleptic drugs). • Drugs may affect many neurotransmitters, increasing therapeutic scope (and uncertainty). • One neurotransmitter may have many effects, eg dopaminergic neurons go awry in Parkinson's disease, schizophrenia, and addiction to drugs and gambling, by affecting motor control, motivation, effort, reward,¹ analgesia, stress, learning, attention, and cognition.⁹

Don't just think about neurotransmitters! In migraine, for example, targets include calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP) antagonists, nitric oxide synthetase inhibitors, and ion channel antagonists, as well as 5-HT_{1F} receptor agonists.¹⁰

Drugs increasing activity (≈agonists)	Drugs decreasing activity (≈antagonists)
Dopamine	
Pergolide; apomorphine; amantadine	Benzisoxazoles (D ₂), eg risperidone
Bromocriptine (D ₂)	Haloperidol, chlorpromazine
Pramipexole; ¹ ropinirole (D ₃) <small>To do with mood, behaviour & rewards</small>	Metoclopramide (D ₂)
Selegiline (MAOI-B inhibitor)	
Non-adrenaline and adrenaline (=norepinephrine and epinephrine)	
Salbutamol (β ₂); adrenaline	Propranolol (β); bisoprolol, metoprolol (β ₁)
?Tricyclic antidepressants	Clonidine (α ₂ -agonist)
MAOIs	Phentolamine (α)
Serotonin (5HT)	
LSD and other hallucinogens	Pizotifen
Sumatriptan (5HT _{1B} & 1D)	Benzisoxazoles (5HT ₂), eg risperidone
Antidepressants, eg fluoxetine, trazodone	Olanzapine, clozapine (5HT _{2A})
Bupropion, lithium	Mirtazapine, ondansetron (5HT ₃)
Acetylcholine	
Carbachol	Atropine; scopolamine
Pilocarpine	Ipratropium
Anticholinesterases, eg donepezil, rivastigmine, pyridostigmine	Trihexyphenidyl (= Benzhexol)
	Orphenadrine; procyclidine
GABA (=gamma aminobutyric acid—an inhibitory neurotransmitter)	
Benzodiazepines (GABA _A)	Baclofen (GABA _B)
Valproate	Alcohol abuse: ² <i>acute effects</i> block N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors; <i>with chronic use</i> , numbers of NMDA receptors rise, mediating alcohol craving
Gabapentin, pregabalin	
Barbiturates	
Acamprosate (used in alcohol addiction; taurine and GABA analogue) ¹¹	
Glutamate² (an excitatory amino acid)	
None	Lamotrigine (used in epilepsy)
	Topiramate (used in epilepsy) ²
	Acamprosate (↓craving in alcoholics)
	Memantine (Alzheimer's, p492)
	Zonisamide (+ carbonic anhydrase activity, and modulates T-TYPE Ca ²⁺ channels)
New drugs are often aimed at 2–3 neurotransmitters, eg <i>risperidone</i> (blocks D ₂ , 5HT ₂ , α ₁ & α ₂ receptors). The smoking-cessation drug <i>bupropion</i> (= <i>amfebutamone</i>) may act by ↑ dopamine in the mesolimbic system (mediates dependence) and via noradrenergic effects in the locus ceruleus (mediates symptoms of nicotine withdrawal). ¹²	

1 Use of D₃ receptor agonists in Parkinson's causes pathological behavioural patterns such as hypersexuality, pathological gambling or hobbying, and obsessive-compulsive disorders of impulse control in people having no history of these. These remit on stopping the drug. Expression of the D₃ receptor is richest in the limbic system, where it modulates emotional experience of novelty, reward, and risk assessment.¹³

2 Alcoholics have more glutamate binding sites, facilitating midbrain dopamine neurotransmission (pathways that, in the ventral tegmental area, mediate alcohol's rewarding effects). Topiramate and baclofen¹⁴ facilitate GABA function, antagonizing glutamate at kainate receptors, and ↓craving in alcoholism.¹⁵

Upper limb

Nerve root	Muscle	Test by asking the patient to:
C3, 4	Trapezius	Shrug shoulder (via accessory nerve)
C5, 6, 7	Serratus anterior	Push arm forward against resistance; look for scapula winging (p515) if weak
C5, 6	Pectoralis major (P major) clavicular head	Adduct arm from above horizontal, and push it forward
C6, 7, 8	P major sternocostal head	Adduct arm below horizontal
C5, 6	Supraspinatus	Abduct arm the first 15°
C5, 6	Infraspinatus	Externally rotate semi-flexed arm, elbow at side
C6, 7, 8	Latissimus dorsi	Adduct arm from horizontal position
C5, 6	Biceps	Flex supinated forearm
C5, 6	Deltoid	Abduct arm between 15° and 90°
Radial nerve (p506)		
C6, 7, 8	Triceps	Extend elbow against resistance
C5, 6	Brachioradialis	Flex elbow with forearm half way between pronation and supination
C5, 6	Extensor carpi radialis longus	Extend wrist to radial side
C6, 7	Supinator	Arm by side, resist hand pronation
C7, 8	Extensor digitorum	Keep fingers extended at MCP joint
C7, 8	Extensor carpi ulnaris	Extend wrist to ulnar side
C7, 8	Abductor pollicis longus	Abduct thumb at 90° to palm
C7, 8	Extensor pollicis brevis	Extend thumb at MCP joint
C7, 8	Extensor pollicis longus	Resist thumb flexion at IP joint
Median nerve (p506)		
C6, 7	Pronator teres	Keep arm pronated against resistance
C6, 7	Flexor carpi radialis	Flex wrist towards radial side
C7, 8, T1	Flexor digitorum superficialis	Resist extension at PIP joint (with proximal phalanx fixed by the examiner)
C7, 8	Flexor digitorum profundus I & II	Resist extension at index DIP joint of index finger
C7, 8, T1	Flexor pollicis longus	Resist thumb extension at interphalangeal joint (fix proximal phalanx)
C8, T1	Abductor pollicis brevis	Abduct thumb (nail at 90° to palm)
C8, T1	Opponens pollicis	Thumb touches base of 5 th fingertip (nail parallel to palm)
C8, T1	1 st lumbrical/interosseus (median and ulnar nerves)	Extend PIP joint against resistance with MCP joint held hyperextended
Ulnar nerve (p506)		
C7, 8, T1	Flexor carpi ulnaris	Flex wrist to ulnar side; observe tendon
C7, C8	Flexor digitorum profundus III & IV	Resist extension of distal phalanx of 5 th finger while you fix its middle phalanx
C8, T1	Dorsal interossei	Finger abduction: cannot cross the middle over the index finger (tests index finger adduction too) ¹⁶
C8, T1	Palmar interossei	Finger adduction: pull apart a sheet of paper held between middle and ring finger DIP joints of both hands; the paper moves on the weaker side ¹⁷
C8, T1	Adductor pollicis	Adduct thumb (nail at 90° to palm)
C8, T1	Abductor digiti minimi	Abduct little finger
C8, T1	Flexor digiti minimi	Flex little finger at MCP joint

1 Also, metacarpophalangeal joint flexion may be more on the affected side as flexor tendons are recruited—the basis of Froment's paper sign. Wartenberg's sign is persistent little finger abduction.

Lower limb

Nerve root	Muscle	Test by asking the patient to:
Femoral nerve		
L1, 2, 3	Iliopsoas (also supplied via L1, 2, & 3 spinal nerves)	Flex hip against resistance with knee flexed and lower leg supported: patient lies on back
L2, 3, 4	Quadriceps femoris	Extend at knee against resistance. Start with knee flexed
Obturator nerve		
L2, 3, 4	Hip adductors	Adduct leg against resistance
Inferior gluteal nerve		
L5, S1, S2	Gluteus maximus	Hip extension ('bury heel into the couch')—with knee in extension
Superior gluteal nerve¹⁸		
L4, 5, S1	Gluteus medius and minimus	Abduction and internal hip rotation with leg flexed at hip and knee
Sciatic (and common peroneal*) and sciatic (and tibial**) nerves		
*L4, 5	Tibialis anterior	Dorsiflex ankle
*L5, S1	Extensor digitorum longus	Dorsiflex toes against resistance
*L5, S1	Extensor hallucis longus	Dorsiflex hallux against resistance
*L5, S1	Peroneus longus and brevis	Evert foot against resistance
*L5, S1	Extensor digitorum brevis	Dorsiflex proximal phalanges of toes
(*)L5, S1, 2	Hamstrings (short head of biceps femoris is from the common peroneal nerve)	Flex knee against resistance
**L4, 5	Tibialis posterior	Invert plantarflexed foot
**S1, 2	Gastrocnemius	Plantarflex ankle or stand on tiptoe
**L5, S1, 2	Flexor digitorum longus	Flex terminal joints of toes
**S1, 2	Small muscles of foot	Make the sole of the foot into a cup

Quick screening test for muscle power

Shoulder	Abduction	C5	Hip	Flexion	L1-L2
	Adduction	C5-C7		Adduction	L2-3
Elbow	Flexion	C5-C6	Knee	Extension	L5-S1
	Extension	C7		Flexion	L5-S1
Wrist	Flexion	C7-8	Ankle	Extension	L3-L4
	Extension	C7		Dorsiflexion	L4
Fingers	Flexion	C8	Toe	Eversion	L5-S1
	Extension	C7		Plantarflexion	S1-S2
	Abduction	T1		Big toe extension	L5

Remember to test proximal muscle power: ask the patient to sit from lying, to pull you towards himself, and to rise from squatting (if reasonably fit).

► Observe walking—easy to forget, even if the complaint is of difficulty walking!

► Sources vary in ascribing particular nerve roots to muscles, and there is some biological variation in individuals. The above is a reasonable compromise, based on MRC/*Brain* guidelines: ISBN 0-7020-2512-7.

► We don't react to nerve damage according to simple anatomy; eg ulnar neuropathy may initiate dystonic flexion or tremor of 4th and 5th digits by inducing a central motor disorder.¹⁹

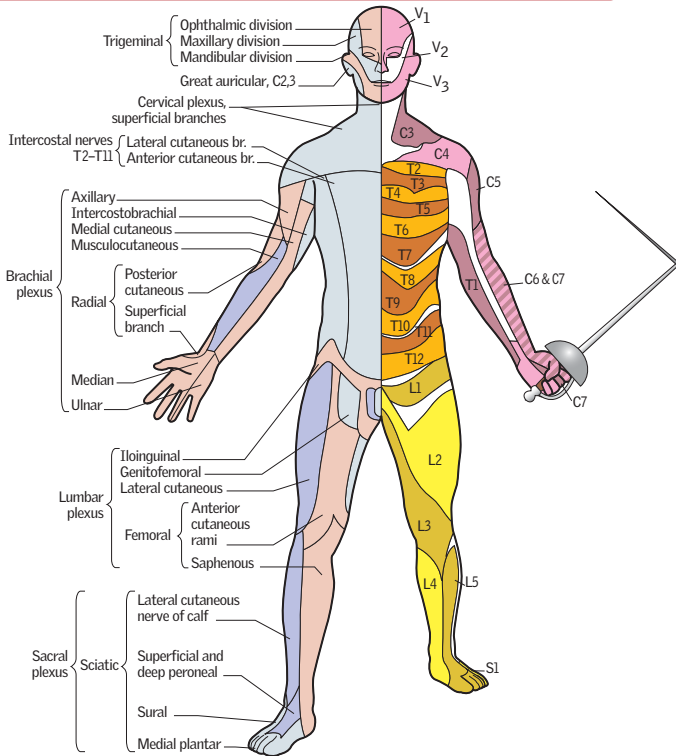


Fig 1. The white areas denote terra incognita, not because a neurologist’s prick has never entered there, but because these 2011 evidence-based dermatomes reveal much more individual variation than originally thought, and no single best option can be given. Great: one less thing to remember! This is only 1 reason why knowing what we don’t know is brilliant.



Fig 2. Pain in a dermatomal distribution suggests a problem with a cranial nerve or dorsal root ganglion (radiculopathy)—where the cell bodies of sensory fibres live.²⁰ What is the dermatome? What is the lesion? See p400 for the answer.

Aim to keep a few key dermatomes up your sleeve (C5-T2)

C3–4	Clavicles
C6–7	Lateral arm/forearm
T1	Medial side of arm
C6	Thumb
C7	Middle finger
C8	Little finger
T4	Nipples
T10	Umbilicus
L1	Inguinal ligament
L2–3	Anterior and inner leg
L5	Medial side of big toe
L5, S1–2	Posterior and outer leg
S1	Lateral margin of foot and little toe
S2–4	Perineum

Rough approximations!

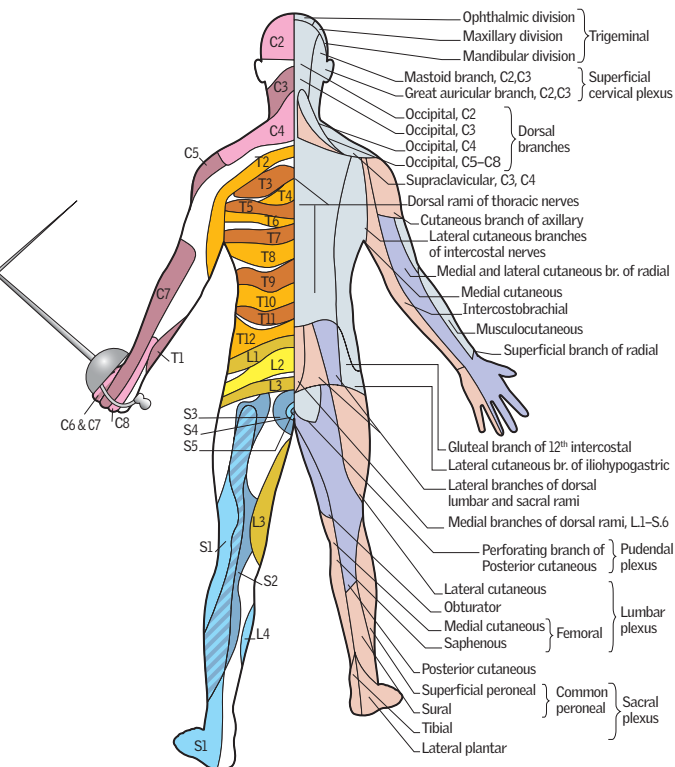


Fig 3. Although this guy is crossing swords with his forward-looking self, don't think "Suicide pact" or "Delusion of doubles" (Capgras syndrome, *OHCS* p640): simply note that each sword points to the top dermatome (Vi) depicted in **fig 2**.

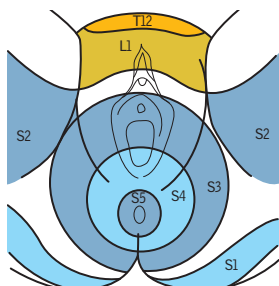


Fig 4. 3 views. In 2, the anterior 1/2 of the scrotum is L1; the posterior 1/2 is S3. The penis is S2/3 (L1 at its root).

Dermatome divisions after M Lee *et al* 2008 An evidence-based approach to human dermatomes. *Clin Anatomy* 21 363; John Wiley with permission. Artwork ©OUP

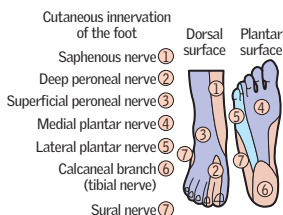


Fig 5. Feet and hands.

Every day, *thousands* visit their doctors complaining of headache. These consultations are rewarding as the chief skill is in interpreting the history—don't *take* it... let it *unfold*. ☞ Let patients tell you about all the headache's associations, or even *who* their headache is. Tension headache is the most common cause of headache, for which stress relief may have more to offer than a neurologist, but some headaches are disabling and treatable (migraine, cluster headache), while others are sinister (space-occupying lesions, meningitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage).

Acute single episode

- **With meningism:** If the headache is acute, severe, felt over most of the head and accompanied by neck stiffness (\approx meningeal irritation) you must exclude:
 - meningitis (p832): fever, photophobia, stiff neck, purpuric rash, coma
 - encephalitis (p834): fever, odd behaviour, fits, or consciousness↓
 - subarachnoid haemorrhage (p482): *sudden-onset*, 'worst ever' headache, often occipital, stiff neck, focal signs, consciousness↓.

Admit immediately for urgent CT head. If CT -ve, do LP to look for signs of infection or blood products in the CSF.

- **Head injury:** Headache is common at the site of trauma but may be more generalized. It lasts \sim 2wks; often resistant to analgesia. Do CT to exclude **subdural** or **extradural haemorrhage** if drowsiness \pm lucid interval, or focal signs (p486).
- **Venous sinus thrombosis:** (p484) Subacute or sudden headache, papilloedema.
- **Sinusitis** causes dull, constant ache over frontal or maxillary sinuses, with tenderness \pm postnasal drip. Pain is worse on bending over. Ethmoid or sphenoid sinus pain is felt deep in the midline at the root of the nose. Common with coryza (p402). The pain lasts \sim 1-2 weeks. CT can confirm diagnosis but is rarely needed.
- **Tropical illness:** eg malaria: travel history, flu-like illness (p388); typhus (p435).
- **Low pressure headache:** From CSF leak (post LP or skull fracture).
- **Acute glaucoma:** Typically elderly, long-sighted people. Constant, aching pain develops rapidly around one eye, radiating to the forehead. **Symptoms:** Markedly reduced vision, visual haloes, nausea/vomiting. **Signs:** Red, congested eye (p563); cloudy cornea; dilated, non-responsive pupil, may be oval; \downarrow acuity. Attacks may be precipitated by dilating eye-drops, emotional upset or sitting in the dark, eg the cinema. **R:** Seek expert help at once. If delay in treatment of >1 h is likely, start acetazolamide 500mg IV over several minutes.

Recurrent acute attacks of headache

Migraine: p462. **Cluster headache:** BOX 1. **Trigeminal neuralgia:** BOX 2.

- **Recurrent (Mollaret's) meningitis:** Suspect if fever/meningism with each headache. Send CSF for herpes simplex PCR (HSV2). Is there access to subarachnoid spaces via a skull fracture, or a recurring cause of aseptic meningitis (SLE, Behçet's, sarcoid)?

Headaches of subacute onset

- **Giant cell arteritis:** (p558). *Exclude in all >50 yrs old with a headache that has lasted a few weeks.* Tender, thickened, pulseless temporal arteries; jaw claudication; ESR >40 mm/h. Prompt diagnosis and steroids avoid blindness.

Chronic headache

- **Tension headache:** The usual cause of bilateral, non-pulsatile headache \pm scalp muscle tenderness, but without vomiting or sensitivity to head movement. Stress relief, eg massage or antidepressants, may be helpful.
- **Raised intracranial pressure:** Typically worse on waking, lying, bending forward, or coughing. Also vomiting, papilloedema, seizures, false localizing signs, or odd behaviour. Do imaging to exclude a space-occupying lesion, and consider idiopathic intracranial hypertension. **LP is contraindicated until after imaging.**
- **Medication overuse (analgesic rebound) headache:** Culprits are mixed analgesics (paracetamol+codeine/opiates), ergotamine and triptans. This is a common reason for episodic headache becoming chronic daily headache. Analgesia must be withdrawn—*aspirin or naproxen may mollify the rebound headache.* A preventive may help once off other drugs (eg tricyclics, valproate, gabapentin; p508). Limit use of over-the-counter analgesia (no more than 6 days per month).

Cluster headache

(AKA migrainous neuralgia)

Cluster headache may be the most disabling of the primary headache disorders. The cause (unknown) *may* be superficial temporal artery smooth muscle hyper-reactivity to 5HT. There are hypothalamic grey matter abnormalities too. An autosomal dominant gene has a role. $\sigma:\phi \geq 5:1$; onset at any age; commoner in smokers.

Symptoms Rapid-onset of excruciating pain around one eye that may become watery and bloodshot with lid swelling, lacrimation, facial flushing, rhinorrhoea, miosis \pm ptosis (20% of attacks). Pain is strictly unilateral and almost always affects the same side. It lasts 15–160min, occurs once or twice a day, and is often nocturnal. Clusters last 4–12wks and are followed by pain-free periods of months or even 1–2yrs before the next cluster. Sometimes it is chronic, not episodic.

Rx "Keep calm ... carry oxygen" ²¹

Acute attack: 100% O₂ for ~15min via non-rebreathable mask (not if COPD); ²² sumatriptan sc 6mg at onset (or zolmitriptan nasal spray 5mg).

Preventives: Level B evidence: suboccipital steroid injections (many SE); intranasal civamide (a synthetic isomer of capsaicin; SE nasal burning)—modestly effective but not available in the UK. ²³ Level C: verapamil 360mg, lithium 900mg, and melatonin 10mg. ^{24,25} Methysergide may be effective but causes retroperitoneal fibrosis \therefore take a 1-month 'drug holiday' every 6 months (get expert advice).

The father in extremis "I am careful not to wake the children as I make my way down the stairs. If they were to witness my nightly cluster ritual, they would never see me the same way again. Their father, fearless protector, diligent provider, crawling about in tears, beating his head on the hard wood floor. The pain is so intense I want to scream, but I never do. I go down 3 flights of stairs where I can't be heard, and drop to my knees. I place my hands on the back of my neck, and lock my fingers together. I bind my head between my arms and squeeze as hard as I can in an attempt to crush my skull. I begin to roll around, banging my head on the floor, pressing my left eye with full force of my palm. I search for the phone that has always been my weapon of choice for creating a diversion, and I beat my left temple with the hand piece. I create a rhythm as I strike my skull, cursing the demon with each blow..." ²⁶

Trigeminal neuralgia

Symptoms: Paroxysms of intense, stabbing pain, lasting seconds, in the trigeminal nerve distribution. It is unilateral, typically affecting mandibular or maxillary divisions. The face screws up with pain (*hence tic douloureux*). **Triggers:** Washing affected area, shaving, eating, talking, dental prostheses. **Typical patient:** $\sigma > 50$ yrs old; in Asians $\phi:\sigma \approx 2:1$. **Secondary causes:** Compression of the trigeminal root by anomalous or aneurysmal intracranial vessels or a tumour, chronic meningeal inflammation, MS, zoster, skull base malformation (eg Chiari). **MRI** is necessary to exclude secondary causes (~14% of cases). ²⁷ **R:** Carbamazepine (start at 100mg/12h po; max 400mg/6h; lamotrigine; phenytoin 200–400mg/24h po; or gabapentin (p508). If drugs fail, surgery may be necessary. This may be directed at the peripheral nerve, the trigeminal ganglion or the nerve root. **Microvascular decompression:** Anomalous vessels are separated from the trigeminal root. Stereotactic gamma knife surgery can work, but length of pain relief and the time to treatment response are limiting factors. **Facial pain $\Delta\Delta$:** p71.

Migraine causes much misery, often because patients haven't teamed up with a doctor to master the art of prophylaxis.²⁸ Economic costs are enormous (\$£ billions/yr).²⁹

Symptoms *Classically*: •Visual or other aura (see below) lasting 15–30min followed within 1h by unilateral, throbbing headache. Or: •Isolated aura with no headache; •Episodic severe headaches without aura, often premenstrual, usually unilateral, with nausea, vomiting \pm photophobia/phonophobia ('common migraine'). There may be allodynia—all stimuli produce pain: "I can't brush my hair, wear earrings or glasses, or shave, it's so painful". **Signs**: None. **Associations**: Obesity (weight loss may \downarrow excess oestrogen/oestradiol production in adipose tissue—but benefit is unproven);³⁰ patent foramen ovale (some say catheter closure may help).³¹ **Tests**: None if typical history. **Prodrome**: Precedes headache by hours/days: yawning, cravings, mood/sleep change. **Aura**: Precedes headache by minutes and may persist during it. •**Visual**: chaotic cascading, distorting, 'melting' and jumbling of lines, dots, or zigzags, scotomata or hemianopia; •**Somatosensory**: paraesthesiae spreading from fingers to face; •**Motor**: dysarthria and ataxia (basilar migraine), ophthalmoplegia, or hemiparesis; •**Speech**: (8% of auras) dysphasia or paraphasia, eg phoneme substitution.

Criteria if no aura ≥ 5 headaches lasting 4–72h + nausea/vomiting (or photo/phonophobia) + any 2 of: •Unilateral •Pulsating •Impairs (or worsened by) routine activity.

Partial triggers Seen in 50%: **CHOCOLATE** or: chocolate, h**ang**overs, o**rg**asms, c**he**ese, o**ra**l contraceptives, l**ie**-ins, a**lc**ohol, t**u**mult, or e**x**ercise.

Differential Cluster or tension headache, cervical spondylosis, \uparrow BP, intracranial pathology, sinusitis/otitis media, caries. TIAs may mimic migraine aura. Migraine is rarely a sign of other pathology: don't look too hard for antiphospholipid syndrome, arteriovenous malformations, or microemboli (but in some they may be important).

Treatment NSAIDs (eg ketoprofen 100mg, dispersible aspirin 900mg/6h) are good as there is less chance of developing medication misuse headache (p460), and they have similar efficacy to oral 5HT agonists (triptans and ergot alkaloids).³² Triptans¹ are generally better tolerated than ergots: in one QALY-based study, rizatriptan was better/cheaper than sumatriptan², which was better/cheaper than Cafergot® (below).³³ Triptans are CI if IHD, coronary spasm, uncontrolled \uparrow BP, recent lithium, SSRIs, or ergot use. Rare SE: arrhythmias or angina \pm MI, even if no pre-existing risk. Ergotamine 1mg PO as headache starts, repeated at $\frac{1}{2}$ h, up to 3mg in a day, and 6mg in a week; or better, as a Cafergot® suppository (2mg ergotamine + 100mg caffeine up to 2 in 24h; then ≥ 4 days without). Emphasize dangers of ergotamine (gangrene, vascular damage). CI: the Pill (OHCS p300); peripheral vascular disease, IHD; pregnancy; breastfeeding; hemiplegic migraine; Raynaud's; liver or renal impairment; BP \uparrow . 12-weekly botulinum toxin type A injections are a last resort in chronic migraine.³

Non-pharmacological therapies: Warm or cold packs to the head, or rebreathing into paper bag ($\uparrow P_a\text{CO}_2$) may help abort attacks.³⁴ Spinal manipulation;³⁵ riboflavin³⁶ and magnesium may have a role. **►** Migraine often co-exists with other chronic conditions—and the combined negative impact is immense. **⚙️** Don't treat each disease in isolation. Rather, attempt to restore a good relationship with the self—and the recovery of the purpose of life. This is the hardest and the most rewarding task. Can these structured holistic dialogues help? Yes, definitely,³⁷ so don't be daunted.

Prevention Remove triggers; ensure analgesic rebound headache is not complicating matters (p460). **Drugs**, eg if frequency ≥ 2 a month or not responding to drugs—**1st-line**: Propranolol 40–120mg/12h, amitriptyline 10–75mg nocte (SE: drowsiness, dry mouth, vision \downarrow), topiramate 25–50mg/12h (SE: memory \downarrow)³⁸ or Ca^{2+} channel blockers.³⁹ **2nd-line**: Valproate, pizotifen (effective, but unacceptable weight gain in some), gabapentin, pregabalin, ACE-i, NSAIDs.⁴⁰ There is less evidence for levetiracetam, tiagabine and lamotrigine.⁴¹ If one drug doesn't work after 3 months, try another; be guided by patient choice and SEs. Most ($>65\%$) achieve $\sim 50\%$ \downarrow in attack frequency.

1 Triptans are 5HT_{1B/1D} agonists, constricting cranial arteries. They also inhibit release of substance P, and pro-inflammatory neuropeptides, blocking transmission from the trigeminal nerve to 2nd-order neurons in the trigeminal nucleus caudalis,⁴² hence use in any process that activates trigeminal fibres, including migraine, cluster headache and subarachnoid haemorrhage.

What is going on in migraine?

The idea that migraine is a primary brain disorder resulting from altered modulation of normal sensory stimuli and trigeminal nerve dysfunction⁴³ is replacing the old idea that vascular events are primary (constriction during aura, with dilatation causing pain). MRIs during attacks show episodic cerebral oedema, dilatation of intracerebral vessels, and ↓water diffusion not respecting vascular territories, so the primary event may be neurological.⁴⁴ PET (p752) implicates thypothalamic activity; this matches food cravings and neuroendocrine data.⁴⁵ *Is migraine due to a hyperexcitable brain?*

Magneto-encephalographic (MEG) studies have shown resting (interictal) hyperexcitability at least in the visual cortex, suggesting a failure of inhibitory circuits.⁴⁶ Cortical hyperexcitability may relate to imbalance between neuronal inhibition (mediated by GABA, p455) and excitation (via excitatory amino acids). Putative causes: ↓cerebral Mg^{2+} levels, mitochondrial abnormalities, dysfunctions related to nitric oxide, and Ca^{2+} channelopathy.⁴⁷ ⚠️ Don't neglect the social context of migraine. We might pat



Fig 1. Migraine? Ask the dog.

ourselves on the back when we ask about family members and migraine, but we are missing the point if we don't ask about pets. In one study (n=1029)⁴⁸ most dog owners said their pet recognized their migraine before they did themselves, or during the early visual phases—and the dogs would typically show unusual attentiveness. It would be nice to think we are of more use to our patients than their dogs—but we mustn't get above our station.

Migraine considerations in women

NICE 2012

Preventives (eg topiramate) may cause embryopathy, and interfere with the Pill.

Migraine, stroke, and the Pill (combined contraception): Incidence of migraine + Pill-related ischaemic stroke is 8/100,000 if aged 20 (80/100,000 if 40). Only use low-dose Pills. Those with migraine+aura have ↑risk, precluding the Pill (but progesterone-only or non-hormonal contraception is OK). Risk is augmented by: •Smoking •Age >35yrs •BPM •Obesity (body mass index >30) •Diabetes mellitus •Hyperlipidaemia •Family history of arteriopathy when aged <45yrs. Warn women with migraine to stop Pills at once if they develop aura or worsening migraine; see *OHCS* p301. *If the problem is migraine without aura in the pill-free interval* consider: •Alternative contraception method or a pill with a lower dose of the same progestogen or lowest available dose of a different progestogen. •Tri-cycling: take the pill continuously for 3 packets (9 weeks) followed by a 7 day pill-free interval, so that the number of menstrual bleeds is reduced. •Oestrogen supplements (below) from 3 days before menses, continuing for 1wk.

Perimenstrual migraine: *Prophylaxis:* If no asthma, CCF, peptic ulcer, etc, NSAID (eg mefenamic acid) at onset of menses to last day of bleeding ± transdermal oestradiol 50–100µg patches 3 days before menses, continue for 1wk.

Pregnancy: Be optimistic: migraine often improves; if not, get help—evidence suggests that worsening migraine in pregnancy is associated with a greater risk of pre-eclampsia and cardiovascular complications.⁴⁹ *Prophylaxis:* stop, or use amitriptyline (most, esp. anti-convulsants, are teratogenic). Anti-emetic: cyclizine or promethazine. *Analgesia:* ibuprofen or aspirin may be used up to 30 weeks' gestation. If attacks persist in the 2nd and 3rd trimesters (uncommon) and paracetamol is insufficient, try partial agonist opioids.⁵⁰ Don't use aspirin if breastfeeding.

2 Of the oral triptans, rizatriptan is said to have quick efficacy; rizatriptan and zolmitriptan are available as rapid-dissolving wafers. Imigran Recovery® may be bought 'over the counter'. Almotriptan is similar to oral sumatriptan, but ?fewer SEs.⁴⁴ 12.5mg is an effective, well-tolerated alternative if there is a poor response to sumatriptan 50mg. Rizatriptan interacts with propranolol (halve rizatriptan dose).

3 Chronic migraine=headaches on >14 days a month. Consider botulinum toxin if no response to 3 prophylactic drugs—and only if medication overuse headache is not an issue. (NICE 2012)

History It is vital to establish exactly what patients mean by 'blackout': loss of consciousness (LOC)?—a fall to the ground without loss of consciousness?—or clouding of vision, diplopia, or vertigo? ☞ Take time with the patient *and* witnesses: let them tell you as much as possible without you prompting or leading them (see BOX).

Vasovagal (neurocardiogenic) syncope Due to reflex bradycardia \pm peripheral vasodilatation provoked by emotion, pain, fear or standing too long. Onset is over seconds (*not* instantaneous), and is often preceded by nausea, pallor, sweating and closing in of visual fields (pre-syncope). *It cannot occur if lying down.* He falls to the ground, being unconscious for \sim 2min. Brief clonic jerking of the limbs may occur (reflex anoxic convulsion due to cerebral hypoperfusion), but there is no stiffening or tonic/clonic sequence. Urinary incontinence is uncommon (but can occur), and there is no tongue-biting. Recovery is rapid (but not as quick as with a dysrhythmia).

Situation syncope Syncopal symptoms are as described for vasovagal syncope.

- **Cough syncope:** Syncope after a paroxysm of coughing.
- **Effort syncope:** Syncope on exercise; cardiac origin, eg aortic stenosis, HCM.
- **Micturition syncope:** Syncope during or after micturition. Mostly men, at night.

Carotid sinus syncope Hypersensitive baroreceptors cause excessive reflex bradycardia \pm vasodilatation on minimal stimulation (eg head-turning, shaving).

Epilepsy Attacks vary with the type of seizure (p494), but certain features are more suggestive of epilepsy: attacks when asleep or lying down; aura; identifiable triggers, eg TV; altered breathing; cyanosis; typical tonic-clonic movements; incontinence of urine; tongue-biting (ask about a sore tongue after the fit); prolonged post-ictal drowsiness, confusion, amnesia and transient focal paralysis (Todd's palsy).

Stokes-Adams attacks Transient arrhythmias (eg bradycardia due to complete heart block) causing \downarrow cardiac output and LOC. The patient falls to the ground (often with *no* warning except palpitations), pale, with a slow or absent pulse. Recovery is in seconds, the patient flushes, the pulse speeds up, and consciousness is regained. Injury is typical of these intermittent arrhythmias. As with vasovagal syncope, a few clonic jerks may occur if an attack is prolonged, due to cerebral hypoperfusion (reflex anoxic convulsion). Attacks may happen several times a day and in any posture.

Drop attacks Sudden weakness of the legs causes the patient, usually an older woman, to fall to the ground. There is no warning, no LOC and no confusion afterwards. The condition is benign, resolving spontaneously after a number of attacks. *Other causes:* hydrocephalus (these patients, however, may not be able to get up for hours); cataplexy—triggered by emotion (associated with narcolepsy, p714).

Other causes **Hypoglycaemia:** Tremor, hunger, and perspiration herald light-headedness or LOC; rare in non-diabetics but see p206. **Orthostatic hypotension:** Unsteadiness or LOC on standing from lying in those with inadequate vasomotor reflexes: the elderly; autonomic neuropathy (p509); antihypertensive medication; overdiuresis; multisystem atrophy (MSA; p499). **Anxiety:** Hyperventilation, tremor, sweating, tachycardia, paraesthesiae, light-headedness, and no LOC suggest a panic attack. **Factitious blackouts:** pseudoseizures, Münchhausen's (p720). **Choking:** If a large piece of food blocks the larynx, the patient may collapse, become cyanotic, and be unable to speak. Do the Heimlich manoeuvre immediately to eject the food.

Examination Cardiovascular, neurological. BP lying and standing.

Investigation ECG \pm 24h ECG (arrhythmia, long QT, eg Romano-Ward, p90);¹ u&E, FBC, glucose; tilt-table tests; EEG, sleep EEG; echocardiogram; CT/MRI brain; HUT.² $P_aCO_2\downarrow$ in attacks suggests hyperventilation as the cause.

► *While the cause is being elucidated, advise against driving.*

¹ Consider elevating V₁–V₃ leads from 4th to the 2nd intercostal space to reveal saddle-shaped ST elevation, a telltale sign of Brugada syndrome (p709)—a SCN5A channelopathy predisposing to VT—and amenable by an implantable defibrillator.³²

² Head-up tilt (HUT) tests distinguish vasodepressor from cardio-inhibitory syncope. HUT is +ve if symptoms are associated with a BP drop >30 mmHg (vasodepressor); consider β -blockers to counter \uparrow sympathetic activity—or bradycardia (cardio-inhibitory; consider pacing).³³

Taking a history of blackouts

Ask a witness:

- Does the patient lose awareness?
- Does the patient injure himself?
- Does the patient move? Are they stiff or floppy? (Not everything that twitches is epilepsy—a few clonic jerks may occur with syncope or arrhythmias, but are not preceded by a tonic phase. Ask for exact details of movements.)
- Is there incontinence? (More common in epilepsy, but can occur with syncope.)
- Is the complexion changed? (Cyanosis suggests epilepsy; white or red suggests arrhythmia, but may also occur in temporal lobe seizures.)
- Does the patient bite the side of his tongue? (Suggests epilepsy.)
- Any associated symptoms (palpitations, sweats, pallor, chest pain, dyspnoea)?
- How long does the attack last?
- If a 'drop attack', is the patient always sleepy? (Narcolepsy, p714.)

Before the attack:

- Is there any warning?—eg typical epileptic aura or cardiac pre-syncope.
- In what circumstances do attacks occur? (If watching TV, presume epilepsy.)
- Can the patient prevent attacks?

After the attack:

- How much does the patient remember about the attack afterwards?
- Muscle ache afterwards suggests a tonic-clonic seizure.
- Is the patient confused or sleepy? (Suggests epilepsy.)

Background to attacks:

- When did they start?
- Are they getting more frequent?
- Is anyone else in the family getting them? Sudden arrhythmic death syndrome (SADS)¹ may leave no cardiac trace at post mortem, or there may be hereditary cardiomyopathy.

► Witnesses often give conflicting accounts: the most reliable may not be the one with the most medical knowledge. He or she may know what you expect to hear, and furnish you with extra (imagined) material. Remember that only judges, historians and scientists are trained as impartial observers of phenomena, and even they are rarely completely objective.

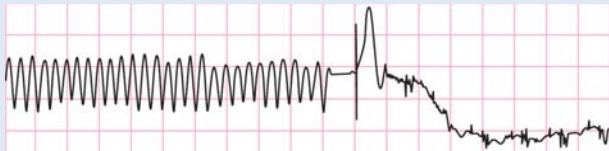


Fig 1. What is the cause of this patient's blackouts? Try to work out how they have been treated before reading footnote 1 opposite. What is the event illustrated here, and what happens just afterwards? Clue: [DDMS](#) (p126).

► All with recurrent syncope (or falls) need cardiac assessment—urgently if associated with palpitations, arrhythmias, 3rd-degree AV block, or prolonged QT interval (p725).⁴ Also refer those with a relative who has had a sudden unexplained death (<40yrs old)—genetic counselling is vital: bshg.org.uk/genetic_centres/uk_genetic_centres.htm.

Complaints of 'dizzy spells' are very common and are used by patients to describe many different sensations. The key to diagnosis is to find out exactly what the patient means by 'dizzy' and then decide whether or not this represents vertigo.

Is this vertigo? *Definition:* An illusion of movement, often rotatory, of the patient or his surroundings. In practice, simple 'spinning' is rare—the floor may tilt, sink, or rise, or "I veer sideways on walking as if pulled by a magnet". Vertigo is always¹ worsened by movement. *Associated symptoms:* Difficulty walking or standing (may even fall suddenly to the ground), relief on lying or sitting still; nausea, vomiting, pallor, sweating. Associated hearing loss or tinnitus implies labyrinth or VIIIth nerve involvement. *What is not vertigo:* *Faintness* may be due to anxiety with associated palpitations, tremor, and sweating. *Light-headedness* may be due to anaemia, orthostatic hypotension, or effort in an emphysematous patient. But in all of these there is no illusion of movement or typical associated symptoms. *Lost awareness* during attacks should prompt thoughts of epilepsy or syncope, not vertigo.

Causes Look to the labyrinth, vestibular nerve, vestibular nuclei, or their central connections. Other structures are rarely involved (MINIBOX).

Benign positional vertigo is due to canalolithiasis—debris in the semicircular canal, disturbed by head movement, resettles causing vertigo lasting a few seconds after the movement (often turning over in bed). Nystagmus on performing the Hallpike manoeuvre is diagnostic. Epley manoeuvres clear the debris from the semicircular canals (OHCS p555).

Acute labyrinthitis (vestibular neuronitis): Abrupt onset of severe vertigo, nausea, vomiting ± prostration. No deafness or tinnitus. Causes: virus; vascular lesion. Severe vertigo subsides in days, complete recovery takes 3–4 wks. **R:** Reassure. Sedate.

Ménière's disease: Endolymphatic hydrops causes recurrent attacks of vertigo lasting >20min (± nausea/vomiting), fluctuating (or permanent) sensorineural hearing loss, and tinnitus (with a sense of aural fullness ± drop attacks (no loss of consciousness or vertigo, but falling to one side, ie Tumarkin otolithic catastrophes)). **R:** Acute attacks—bed rest and reassurance. An antihistamine (eg cinnarizine) is useful if prolonged, or buccal prochlorperazine if severe, for up to 7d. In very severe disease, consider endolymphatic sac surgery or ablation of the vestibular organ with gentamicin. *Prophylaxis:* low-Na⁺ diets or betahistine may be tried, but there is no evidence of efficacy.⁵⁵ Trimetazidine, thiazide diuretics and lithium are not recommended.

Ototoxicity: Aminoglycosides, loop diuretics or cisplatin can cause deafness ± vertigo.

Acoustic neuroma (figs 1 & 2) is doubly misnamed: it is a Schwannoma (not neuro-ma) arising from the vestibular (not auditory) nerve. It often presents with unilateral hearing loss, with vertigo occurring later. With progression, ipsilateral Vth, VIth, IXth, & Xth nerves may be affected (also ipsilateral cerebellar signs). Paradoxically, the VIIth nerve is rarely involved pre-operatively. Signs of ↑ICP occur late, indicating a large tumour. They account for 80% of cerebello-pontine angle tumours (ΔΔ meningioma).⁵⁶ Commoner in ♀; also in neurofibromatosis (esp. NF2, p518). Not all need removing.

Traumatic damage involving the petrous temporal bone or the cerebello-pontine angle often affects the auditory nerve, causing vertigo, deafness and/or tinnitus.

Herpes zoster: Herpetic eruption of the external auditory meatus; facial palsy ± deafness, tinnitus, and vertigo (Ramsay Hunt syndrome, see p505).

Causes of vertigo

Labyrinth & VIIIth nerve

- Ménière's disease
- Vestibular neuronitis (ie acute labyrinthitis)
- Benign positional vertigo (OHCS p554)
- Motion sickness
- Trauma
- Ototoxic drugs
- Zoster (ie Ramsay Hunt syndrome, p505)
- Tullio phenomenon²

Brainstem, cerebellum, cerebello-pontine angle

(Look for nystagmus and cranial nerve lesions)

- MS; acoustic neuroma
- Stroke/TIA; haemorrhage
- Migraine

Cerebral cortex

- Vertiginous epilepsy

Alcohol intoxication

1 The single exception is *mal de débarquement*, in which vertiginous motion sickness persists long after alighting from, for example, the ship or train that triggered the motion sickness.

2 Dizziness induced by sound, eg one's own voice or a musical instrument. Causes: superior canal dehiscence, perilymph fistula, Ménière's syndrome, post fenestration surgery, and vestibulofibrosis

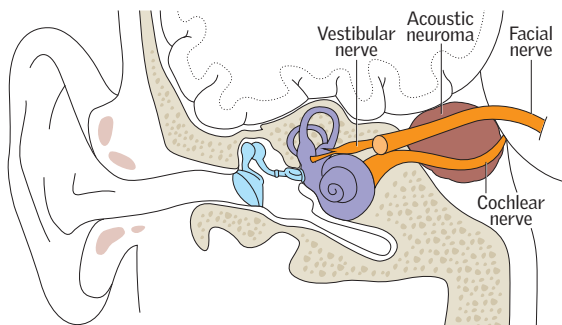


Fig 1. An acoustic neuroma (vestibular schwannoma) growing dangerously near the facial nerve. It helps to understand their natural history, since you may be able to save patients a difficult and dangerous operation. For each patient, growth rate is constant and predictable after a few years of serial MRIs: ~30% do not progress; ~50% grow slowly (1-2mm/yr); and ~20% grow > 2mm/yr. Malignancy is rare but not negligible, and every so often we all get tricked by these tumours. *Microsurgical removal* has ~1% operative mortality. Near-normal post-op facial movement, sensation and perhaps hearing is the aim, but damage to VIIth nerve is common. Likelihood of surgical cure is > 95%.⁵⁷

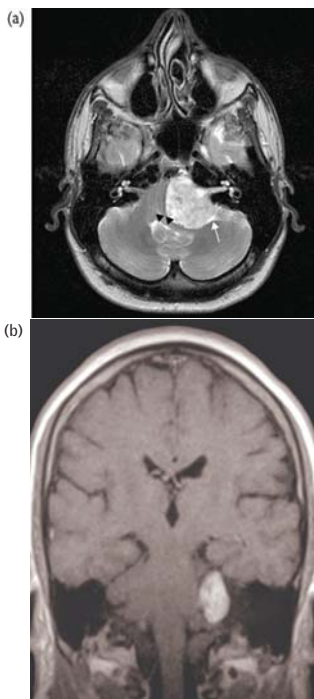


Fig 2. Large vestibular schwannoma. (a) Axial T2W and (b) Contrast enhanced coronal MRI.⁵⁸
Reproduced from Manji *et al*, *Oxford Handbook of Neurology*, 2007, with permission from OUP.

One reasonable bedside method to establish hearing loss is to whisper numbers increasingly loudly in one ear while blocking the other ear with a finger. Ask your patient to repeat the number. Make sure that failure is not from misunderstanding. The anatomy of the auditory apparatus is shown in **fig 1**.

Tuning fork tests No single test is diagnostic, but tuning fork tests do give useful information (also popular in exams). Use a 512Hz or 256Hz tuning fork, struck $\frac{1}{2}$ from its free end on your patella to make it vibrate.

- **Rinne:** Hold a vibrating tuning fork so that the prongs and auditory canal lie on the same line, testing air conduction (AC). Then place the vibrating stem on the mastoid for bone conduction (BC). Ask "Which is louder?" **Rinne negative:** BC > AC. This occurs with conductive deafness >20dB, but also severe sensorineural hearing loss (SNHL)—ie a false -ve Rinne: the other cochlea picks up the sound by bone conduction. Using a Barany noise box to mask the other ear during the test prevents this. **Rinne positive:** AC > BC, indicating normality or SNHL. Remember '**SNAC-RIP**': in **s**ensorineural loss and **n**ormal ears, **a**ir **c**onduction is better—**R**inne **i**s **p**ositive.
- **Weber:** With the vibrating tuning fork on the vertex, forehead or upper incisors(!), ask the patient which ear the sound is heard in. Sound localizes to the affected ear with conductive loss (>10dB loss), to the contralateral ear in SNHL, and to the midline if both ears are normal (or if bilateral sensorineural loss).

Conductive deafness Causes: wax (remove, eg by syringing with warm water after softening with olive oil drops), otosclerosis, otitis media, or glue ear (OHCS p546).

Chronic sensorineural deafness Often due to accumulated environmental noise toxicity, presbycusis or inherited disorders. **Presbycusis:** Loss of acuity for high-frequency sounds starts before 30yrs old. We do not usually notice it until hearing of speech is affected. Hearing is most affected in the presence of background noise. Hearing aids are the usual treatment.

Sudden sensorineural deafness ► Get an ENT opinion *today* (steroids may cure!) **Causes:** noise exposure; gentamicin/other toxin; mumps; acoustic neuroma; MS; stroke; vasculitis; TB. **Tests:** ESR, FBC, LFT, pANCA, viral titres and TB Elispot; evoked response audiometry; CXR; MRI; lymph node and nasopharyngeal biopsy for culture.

Tinnitus

(See also OHCS p552)

This ringing or buzzing in the ears is common, and may cause depression or insomnia. ► Investigate unilateral tinnitus fully to exclude an acoustic neuroma (p466).

Causes Focal hyper-excitability in the auditory cortex (postulated to be the cause of common tinnitus⁵⁹), hearing loss (20%), wax, viral, presbycusis, excess noise (eg gunfire), head injury, septic otitis media, post-stapedectomy, Ménière's, anaemia, tBP (in up to 16%, but it may not be causative).⁶⁰ **Drugs:** Aspirin (reversible), loop diuretics, aminoglycosides. **Psychological associations:** Redundancy, divorce, retirement. **Mean age at onset:** 40–50yrs. $\sigma:\phi\approx 1:1$. **Causes of pulsatile tinnitus:** Carotid artery stenosis or dissection⁶¹ Av fistulae, and glomus jugulare tumours (OHCS p552). May be audible with stethoscope. Discuss imaging with a neuroradiologist.

Management ► **Psychological support** is very important (eg from a hearing therapist). Exclude serious causes; reassure that tinnitus does not mean madness or serious disease and that it often improves in time. **Cognitive therapy** helps, as does 'tinnitus coping training'. Patient support groups can help greatly.⁶² **Drugs** are disappointing. Avoid tranquilizers, particularly if depressed (use tricyclic antidepressants here, eg amitriptyline⁶³ or nortriptyline)⁶⁴ Hypnotics at night may help. Carbamazepine rarely helps. If Ménière's disease is the cause, betahistine helps only a few. **Masking** may give relief. White noise (like an off-tuned radio) is given via a noise generator worn like a post-aural hearing aid. **Hearing aids** may help by amplifying desirable sounds. **Cochlear nerve section** can relieve disabling tinnitus in 25% (at the expense of deafness). Repetitive **transcranial magnetic stimulation** of the auditory cortex can help (a novel and non-standard therapy).⁵⁹

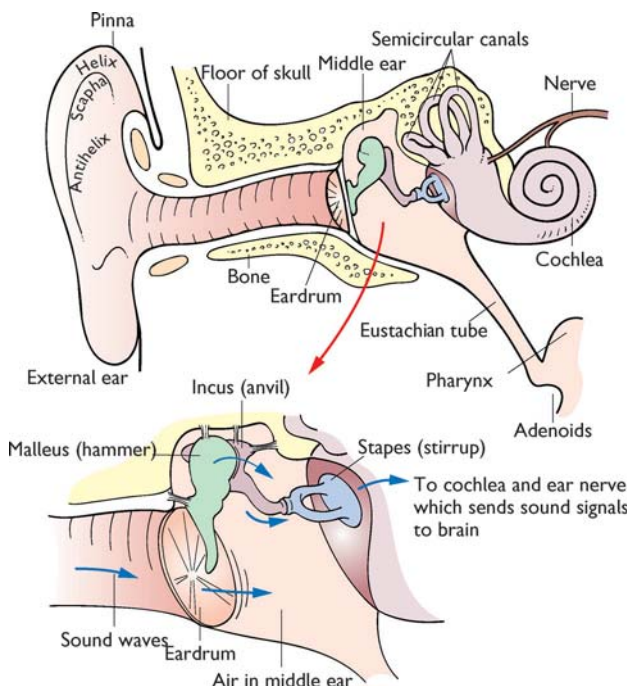


Fig 1. The anatomy of the auditory apparatus.



► Cord compression typically presents with weak legs. There are many causes of weak legs (see BOX): addressing these 5 questions helps with diagnosis:

- 1 Was onset sudden? ► Sudden or progressive weakness is an emergency: get help to prevent permanent paralysis, faecal incontinence, and a neurogenic bladder.¹
- 2 Are the legs flaccid or spastic (causes of UMN lesions, p451)?
- 3 Is there sensory loss?¹ A sensory level usually means spinal cord disease.
- 4 Is there loss of sphincter control (bowels, bladder)?
- 5 Any signs of infection, eg extradural abscess (tender spine, T⁺t, WCCt, ESRT, CRPt)?

Symptoms: Spinal or root pain² may precede leg weakness and sensory loss. Arm weakness is often less severe (suggests a cervical cord lesion). Bladder (and anal) sphincter involvement is late and manifests as hesitancy, frequency, and, later, as painless retention. **Signs:** Look for a motor, reflex, and sensory level, with normal findings above the level of the lesion, LMN signs at the level (especially in cervical cord compression, see p512), and UMN signs *below* the level (but remember tone and reflexes are usually reduced in *acute* cord compression; OHCS p768).

Causes ► Secondary malignancy (breast, lung, prostate, thyroid, kidney) in the spine is commonest. Rarer: infection (epidural abscess), cervical disc prolapse, haematoma (warfarin), intrinsic cord tumour, atlanto-axial subluxation, myeloma. Occasionally one can get caught out by causes that are not in the spine, eg bilateral frontal lobe infarcts, or a parasagittal meningioma (see BOX1).

▲ Transverse myelitis, MS, carcinomatous meningitis, cord vasculitis (PAN, syphilis), spinal artery thrombosis, trauma, dissecting aneurysm, Guillain-Barré (though not a cord pathology, but one of roots and peripheral nerves : LMN; p716).

Investigations ► Do not delay imaging at any cost. Speed of imaging should parallel the rate of clinical progression. Spinal x-rays are unreliable; MRI is the definitive modality. Biopsy or surgical exploration may be needed to identify the nature of any mass. **Screening blood tests:** FBC, ESR, B₁₂, syphilis serology, U&E, LFT, PSA, serum electrophoresis. Do a CXR (primary lung malignancy, lung secondaries, TB).

Treatment ► If malignancy, give dexamethasone IV 4mg/6h while considering more specific therapy, eg radiotherapy or chemotherapy ± decompressive laminectomy; which is most appropriate depends on tumour type, quality of life, and likely prognosis. Epidural abscesses must be surgically decompressed and antibiotics given.

Cauda equina and conus medullaris lesions The big difference between these lesions and those high up in the cord is that leg weakness is flaccid and areflexic, not spastic and hyperreflexic. **Causes:** As above, plus congenital lumbar disc disease and lumbosacral nerve lesions. **Signs:** Conus medullaris lesions feature a mixed UMN/LMN leg weakness; early urinary retention and constipation; back pain; sacral sensory disturbance; and erectile dysfunction. Cauda equina lesions feature back pain and radicular pain down the legs; asymmetrical, atrophic, areflexic paralysis of the legs; sensory loss in a root distribution; and ↓sphincter tone; do PR.

Paralysed patients need especial care Avoid pressure sores by turning. Review weight-bearing areas often. Avoid thrombosis in paralysed limbs by frequent passive movement and pressure stockings ± low molecular weight heparin (p344). Bladder care is vital; catheterization is only one option. Do not control incontinence by decreasing fluid intake (OHCS p774). Bowel evacuation may be manual or aided by suppositories. Increasing dietary fibre intake may help. Exercise of unaffected or partially paralysed limbs is important to avoid unnecessary loss of function.

1 Get help *today* from a neurosurgeon or your spinal cord compression co-ordinator. Prevent DVTs and pressure sores. See p526.

2 Nerve root sensations may be sharp or dull (like angina if T3-T4 affected) or 'warm glows', or 'as if icy bandages were wrapped round my leg' or rubbed with sandpaper, or sprayed with hot water. Dorsal column damage may cause hypersensitivity or vibratory feelings, as if on the deck of a ship under full power, or the limbs may feel twice their normal size. Spinothalamic symptoms may be 'as if my bones burned, and the flesh was torn away'.

Other causes of leg weakness

Unilateral foot drop: DM, common peroneal nerve palsy, stroke, prolapsed disc, MS.

Weak legs with no sensory loss: MND, polio, parasagittal meningioma (an exception to the rule that weak legs mean cord or distal lesion).

Chronic spastic paraparesis: MS, cord tumour (astrocytoma, haemangioblastoma, ependymoma),⁶⁵ cord metastases,⁶⁶ MND, syringomyelia, subacute combined degeneration of the cord (fig 1), hereditary spastic paraparesis, taboparesis,¹ histiocytosis X, parasites (eg schistosomiasis; look for eosinophilia).⁶⁷

Chronic flaccid paraparesis: Peripheral neuropathy, myopathy (rare; arms also involved).

Absent knee jerks and extensor plantars: Combined cervical and lumbar disc disease, conus medullaris lesions, or a '**MAST**': MND (or myeloradiculitis²), Friedreich's ataxia, subacute combined degeneration of the cord (vit. B₁₂ deficiency; fig 1), taboparesis.¹

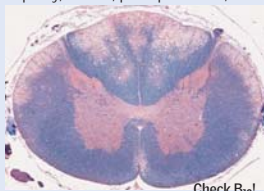


Fig 1 Subacute combined degeneration of the cord, due to vit. B₁₂ deficiency (p329). Why 'combined'? Both lateral (motor) and dorsal (sensory, at the top of fig 1) columns lose myelin (at ~C5-T3), then axons. Eventually *all* the cord's rim is affected, if vit B₁₂ injections are delayed (p328). NB: if B₁₂ is normal, do copper studies (hypocupric myelopathy).

©Prof D Agamanolis.

Gait disorders

(Even the best professionals have to employ extraordinary tactics just to *describe* gaits accurately,³ never mind *diagnose* them accurately.)

Spastic: Stiff, circumduction of legs ± scuffing of the toe of the shoes.

Extrapyramidal: Flexed posture, shuffling feet, slow to start, postural instability. Example: Parkinson's disease.

Apraxic: Pathognomonic '**gluing-to-the-floor**' on attempting walking or a wide-based unsteady gait with a tendency to fall, like a novice on an ice-rink. *Causes:* normal pressure hydrocephalus, multi-infarct states.

Ataxic: Wide-based; falls; cannot walk heel-to-toe. *Causes:* cerebellar lesions (eg MS, posterior fossa tumours, alcohol, phenytoin toxicity); proprioceptive sensory loss (eg sensory neuropathies, ↓B₁₂). Often worse in the dark, or with eyes closed.

Myopathic: Waddle (hip girdle weakness). Cannot climb steps or stand from sitting.

Psychogenic: Often a bizarre gait not conforming to any pattern of organic gait disturbance. Suspect if there is profound gait disturbance with inability even to stand, without any signs when examined on the couch (Paul Blocq's⁶⁸ 'astasia abasia'⁴)—but this may occur with midline cerebellar lesions, normal pressure hydrocephalus, and rare tumours⁶⁹—hence the adage that psychogenic disorders are only to be diagnosed by doctors over 40 in patients under 40. Video analysis reveals 6 'signs of psychogenicity', seen in 97% of patients in one study:⁷⁰

- Fluctuations in response to suggestion or distraction.
- Excessive hesitation of locomotion incompatible with CNS disease.
- 'Psychogenic' building-up of sway amplitudes on Romberg test.
- Uneconomic postures wasting muscular energy.
- 'Walking on ice' gait, ie small cautious steps, with ankle joints fixed.
- Sudden buckling of the knees, usually without falls.

Tests Spinal X-rays; MRI; FBC; ESR; syphilis serology; serum B₁₂; U&E; LFT; PSA; serum electrophoresis; CXR; LP; EMG; muscle ± sural nerve biopsy.

¹ Tertiary syphilis (p431): in **tabes dorsalis** the afferent pathways from muscle spindles are lost, with reduced tone and tendon reflexes (without weakness). Later, additional involvement of the pyramidal tracts causes **taboparesis**—a spastic paraparesis with the peculiar combination of extensor plantars (from the taboparesis) and absent tendon reflexes (from the tabes dorsalis).

² Infections can inflame roots and cord (eg visceral larva migrans); hence the mixed picture.⁷¹

³ Unda her brella mid middle med puddle she ninnygoes nannygoes nancing by. ^{James Joyce}

⁴ Greek for no standing/no walking, eg the 'hysterical' unwalking unwounded cadet. ^{Finnegans Wake}

Movement disorders are clinically and pathologically heterogeneous, and are characterized by impairment of the planning, control or execution of movement.^{72,73} They may manifest with symptoms of ataxia, dystonia, gait problems (p471), parkinsonism, chorea, myoclonus, spasticity, dyskinesia, tics and tremor.

Tremor Note frequency, amplitude, and exacerbating factors (stress; fatigue).

• **Rest tremor:** abolished on voluntary movement. **Cause:** parkinsonism (p498).

• **Intention tremor:** irregular, large-amplitude, worse at the end of purposeful acts, eg finger-pointing or using a remote control. **Cause:** cerebellar damage (eg MS, stroke).

• **Postural tremor:** absent at rest, present on maintained posture (arms outstretched) and may persist (but is not worse) on movement. **Causes:** Benign essential tremor (autosomal dominant; improves with alcohol), thyrotoxicosis, anxiety, β -agonists.

• **Re-emergent tremor:** postural tremor developing after a delay of ~10sec (eg in Parkinson's).⁷⁴ Surgery/deep brain stimulation (DBS) helps some tremors.⁷⁵

Chorea, athetosis, and hemiballismus **Chorea:**¹ Non-rhythmic, jerky, purposeless movements flitting from one place to another—eg facial grimacing, raising the shoulders, flexing/extending the fingers. **Causes:** Huntington's disease, Sydenham's chorea (choreoathetoid movements as a rare complication of strep infection). The anatomical basis of chorea is uncertain but it may be the pharmacological mirror image of Parkinson's disease (L-dopa worsens chorea). **Hemiballismus:** Large-amplitude, flinging hemichorea (affects proximal muscles) contralateral to a vascular lesion of the subthalamic nucleus (often elderly diabetics). Recovers spontaneously over months. **Athetosis:** Slow, sinuous, confluent, purposeless movements (esp. digits, hands, face, tongue), often difficult to distinguish from chorea. **Causes:** commonest is cerebral palsy (OHCS p214). Most other 'athetoid' patterns may now be better classed as dystonias. **Pseudoathetosis** is caused by severe proprioceptive loss.

Tics Brief, repeated, stereotyped movements which patients may suppress for a while. Tics are common in children (and usually resolve). In *Tourette's syndrome* (p714), motor and vocal tics occur. Consider psychological support, clonazepam or clonidine if tics are severe (haloperidol may help but risks tardive dyskinesia).

Myoclonus Sudden involuntary focal or general jerks arising from cord, brainstem, or cerebral cortex, seen in metabolic problems (below), neurodegenerative disease (eg lysosomal storage enzyme defects), CJD (p710), and myoclonic epilepsies (infantile spasms). **Benign essential myoclonus:** Childhood onset with frequent generalized myoclonus, without progression. Often autosomal dominant. It may respond to valproate, clonazepam or piracetam. **Asterixis ('metabolic flap'):** Jerking (~1–2 jerks/sec) of outstretched hands, worse with wrists extended, from loss of extensor tone—ie incoordination between flexors and extensors (= 'negative myoclonus'). **Causes:** liver or kidney failure, ↓Na⁺, ↑CO₂, gabapentin, thalamic stroke (consider if unilateral).⁷⁶

Tardive syndromes Tardive means 'delayed onset', in this case after chronic exposure to dopamine antagonists (eg antipsychotics, antiemetics). Tardive syndromes are a source of much distress and disability, and may be permanent, despite discontinuing all drugs. **Classification:**⁷⁷ • **Tardive dyskinesia** (orobuccolingual, truncal, or choreiform movements, eg vacuous chewing and grimacing movements); • **Tardive dystonia** (sustained, stereotyped muscle spasms of a twisting or turning character, eg retrocollis and back arching/opisthotonic posturing); • **Tardive akathisia** (unpleasant inner sense of restlessness or unease ± repetitive, purposeless movements (stereotypies, eg pacing)); • **Tardive myoclonus**; • **Tardive tourettism** (p714); • **Tardive tremor** (may respond to donepezil).⁷⁸ **Treating tardive dyskinesia:** Get help. Gradually withdraw neuroleptics and wait 3–6 months. If still a problem, consider tetrabenazine 12.5–50mg/8h po.⁷⁹ Quetiapine, olanzapine and clozapine are examples of atypical antipsychotics that are less likely to cause tardive syndromes.

1 Paracelsus used the term *chorea* to describe the jerking movements of medieval pilgrims travelling to the healing shrine of St Vitus—reflecting the ancient Greek round dance accompanied by singing (hence chorus; choreography). He recognized 3 types: chorea arising from the imagination (chorea imaginativa), or from sexual desire (chorea lasciva) or from corporeal causes (chorea naturalis).⁸⁰

Dystonia

Dystonia describes prolonged muscle contractions causing abnormal posture or repetitive movements. Verbatim example of dystonic symptoms (writer's cramp, in this example): ☹️ "I cannot, for example, draw the instrument [pen, pencil] toward me in a circular motion, eg the left arc of a circle, or the letter O. If I force the move, the movements become jerky and I lose all smoothness in the character. The same thing will happen when eating and trying to use a fork...I end up moving my mouth to the fork...instead of moving my hand to my mouth—awkward."⁶¹

Classification can be by *age of onset*—childhood (<12yrs old), adolescent (13–20yrs) or adult (>20yrs); by *part of the body affected*; or by *cause* (there are many).

Idiopathic generalized dystonia is suggested by onset in childhood and often starts with dystonia in one leg, spreading to that side of the body over 5–10yrs. Autosomal dominant inheritance is common (genetics often show a deletion in *DYT1*). Treatment is challenging; exclude Wilson's disease and dopa-responsive dystonia (often better after sleep; needs an L-dopa trial). High-dose **trihexyphenidyl** (=benzhexol, an anticholinergic) and **deep-brain stimulation** may help.⁶²

Focal dystonias are confined to one part of the body, eg *spasmodic torticollis* (head pulled to one side), *blepharospasm* (involuntary contraction of orbicularis oculi, *OHCS* p460), *writer's cramp*. Focal dystonias in adults are typically idiopathic, and rarely generalize. They are worsened by stress. Patients may develop a *geste antagonistique* to try to resist the dystonic posturing (eg a touch of the finger to the jaw in spasmodic torticollis).⁶³ Injection of **botulinum toxin** into the overactive muscles (*OHCS* p460) is usually effective, but there may be SEs.

Writer's cramp (scrivener's palsy; graphospasm) When trying to write, the pen is driven into the paper and flow of movement is poor. ☹️ "I would look at [my fingers] and tell them to do one thing, and they'd do jagged things instead, I'd have full muscle control for everything, except putting a pen to a piece of paper."⁶⁴ Look for hand and forearm spasm, dystonic arm posture, focal tremor, myoclonus, and dominant-hand muscle hypertrophy.⁶⁵ **Association:** obsessive-compulsive disorder.⁶⁶ **EMG:** May correlate with physiological events: ↓reciprocal inhibition of wrist flexor motor neurons at rest, and ↑co-contraction of antagonist muscles of the forearm during voluntary activity.⁶⁷ **EEG:** Abnormal motor command (sensorimotor region β rhythm).⁶⁸ **R:** β -blockers and valproate often fail. Breath-holding or arm-cooling may work, as may botulinum toxin and EMG biofeedback.⁶⁵

Acute dystonia (fig 1) may occur on starting many drugs, including neuroleptics and some antiemetics (eg metoclopramide, cyclizine). There is torticollis (head pulled back), trismus (oromandibular spasm), and/or oculogyric crisis (eyes drawn up). You may mistake this for tetanus or meningitis, but such reactions rapidly disappear after a dose of an anticholinergic, see p855.



Fig 1. Oromandibular/oculogyric crisis in acute dystonia.

From *Mayo Clinic Proc* 2003; 78:1150–2. Used with permission.⁶⁹

Strokes result from ischaemic infarction or bleeding into part of the brain, manifest by rapid onset (eg seconds–minutes) of focal CNS signs and symptoms. It is the major neurological disease of our time. **Mortality after 1st stroke:** 12% by day 56 (UK data; was 21% in 1999). **Incidence** is falling too (now 1/1000/yr, perhaps due to a more vigorous approach to risk factors in primary care, ie statin use and control of BP).⁹⁰

Causes • Small vessel occlusion/cerebral microangiopathy⁹¹ or thrombosis *in situ*

- Cardiac emboli (AF; endocarditis; MI—see BOX on p477)
- Atherothromboembolism (eg from carotids)
- CNS bleeds (BPT, trauma, aneurysm rupture, anticoagulation, thrombolysis)

Other causes: (most important to consider in younger patients) Sudden BP drop by ≥ 40 mmHg (boundary zone/'watershed'¹ stroke, eg in sepsis), carotid artery dissection (spontaneous, or from neck trauma or fibromuscular dysplasia), vasculitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage, venous sinus thrombosis (acute venous infarct, p484), antiphospholipid syndrome, thrombophilia, Fabry's disease (p712), CADASIL,² CARASIL (autosomal recessive).

► Do not hesitate to get a neurology, cardiology, or haematology opinion.

Modifiable risk factors BPT, smoking, DM, heart disease (valvular, ischaemic, AF), peripheral vascular disease, past TIA, tPCV, carotid bruit, the Pill, tlipids, talcohol use, tclotting (eg tplasma fibrinogen, tantithrombin III, p368), thomocysteine, syphilis.

Signs ► Sudden onset, maybe with further progression over hours (rarely days). In theory, focal signs relate to distribution of the affected artery (p452), but collaterals cloud the issue. **Pointers to bleeding (unreliable!):** Meningism, severe headache, and coma within hours. **Pointers to ischaemia:** Carotid bruit, AF, past TIA, IHD.

- **Cerebral infarcts:** (50%) Depending on site there may be contralateral sensory loss or hemiplegia—initially flaccid (floppy limb, falls like a dead weight when lifted), becoming spastic (UMN); dysphasia; homonymous hemianopia; visuo-spatial deficit.
- **Brainstem infarcts:** (25%) Wide range of effects, which include quadriplegia, disturbances of gaze and vision, locked-in syndrome (aware, but unable to respond).
- **Lacunar infarcts:** (25%) In basal ganglia,³ internal capsule, thalamus, and pons. 5 syndromes: ataxic hemiparesis, pure motor, pure sensory, sensorimotor, and dysarthria/clumsy hand. Cognition/consciousness are intact except thalamic stroke.

Action (1st hr; see p476–7 for later) ► **Protect the airway** to avoid hypoxia/aspiration.

► **Pulse, BP and ECG:** Is it an embolus from AF? NB: treating even very high BPs may harm (unless there is encephalopathy, or aortic dissection): even a 20% fall may compromise cerebral perfusion, as autoregulation is impaired. If on HRT, stop it.

► **Blood glucose:** If low, see p844. Aim for 4–11 mmol/L. Sliding scale (p591) if DM.

► **Urgent CT/MRI if:** Thrombolysis considered, cerebellar stroke (cerebellar haematomas may need urgent referral for evacuation),⁹² unusual presentation (alternative diagnosis likely?—BOX), or high risk of haemorrhage (4GCS, signs of tICP, severe headache, meningism, progressive symptoms, known bleeding tendency or anticoagulated). Otherwise imaging can wait (aim <24h). Diffusion-weighted MRI is most sensitive for an acute infarct, but CT helps rule out primary haemorrhage.

► **Thrombolysis:** Consider if onset of symptoms ≤ 4.5 h ago; BOX.

► **'Nil by mouth':** Only if swallowing attempts might lead to choking. Keep hydrated (eg IVI), but don't overhydrate (risk of cerebral oedema).

► **Antiplatelet agents:** Once haemorrhagic stroke is excluded, give aspirin 300mg.

• Communicate fully with your patient, the relatives, and carers over difficult decisions, eg deciding on the kindest/best level of intervention taking into account quality of life, coexisting conditions, and prognosis. Is there a living will? See p478.

Take to a stroke unit with special nursing/physio to save life,⁹³ and to motivate.

¹ In medical parlance a watershed is the zone between 2 vascular beds where supply is most tenuous.

² **CADASIL**=cerebral Autosomal dominant Arteriopathy with Subcortical Infarcts & Leucoencephalopathy. This NOTCH3 gene mutation (19q) is the main genetic cause of stroke. Presents from 40yrs with migraine, TIA, mood disorders, dementia \pm pseudobulbar palsy. MRI: hypointensities on T1-weighted images; hyperintensities on T2+confluent white matter lesions. Skin, spleen, liver, muscle, aorta & glomeruli involved too.⁹⁴

³ Basal ganglia strokes may cause a grasp reflex (p503; adduction/flexion); also unilateral choreoathetosis.

Differential diagnosis of stroke

- Head injury
- Hypo/hyperglycaemia
- Subdural haemorrhage
- Intracranial tumours
- Hemiplegic migraine
- Epilepsy (Todd's palsy)
- CNS lymphoma
- Pneumocephalus; air entry via otitis or mastoid air cells
- Wernicke's encephalopathy
- Drug overdose (if coma)
- Hepatic encephalopathy
- Mitochondrial cytopathies¹
- Herpes encephalitis
- HIV; HTLV-1; toxoplasmosis
- Abscesses (eg typhoid)
- Mycotic aneurysm⁹⁵
- *Coccidioides immitis*⁹⁶
- *Acanthamoeba/naegleria*⁹⁸

NB: status epilepticus *can* cause CNS infarcts.⁹⁷

▶▶Thrombolysis in acute non-haemorrhagic stroke

See IST3 trial

If an expert team (neuroimaging and clinicians) is in place, *and* the patient is seen within ~4.5h^{2,3} of the onset of symptoms, *and* no contraindication exists (see below), refer with *utmost urgency* for consideration of reperfusion with IV recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (tPA: alteplase—eg 0.9mg/kg over 1h). This reduces death and dependency (odds ratio 0.64) despite a small increase in intracranial haemorrhage (these are usually small and asymptomatic).⁹⁹ Recent use of antiplatelet agents does not appear to ↑ this risk.⁹⁹ Always do CT 24h post-lysis to identify bleeds (if +ve, register at SITS, www.acutestroke.org). Safe Implementation of Thrombolysis in Stroke (SITS) database

CI • Major infarct or haemorrhage on CT • Mild/non-disabling deficit • Recent birth, surgery, trauma, or artery or vein puncture at uncompressible site • Past CNS bleed • AVM or aneurysm • Severe liver disease, varices or portal hypertension • Seizures at presentation • Anticoagulants or INR >1.7 • Platelets <100 × 10⁹/L • BP >220/130.

The future: Those with CI may be eligible for a flow-restoration device, eg the Solitaire, in large-vessel intracranial occlusive stroke (SWIFT and TREVO2 trials).¹⁰⁰

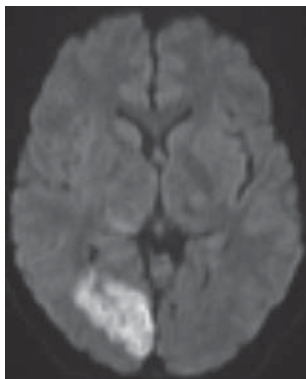
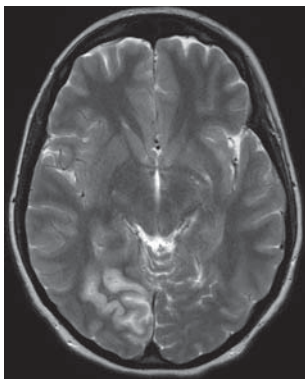


Fig 1. The image on the left is T2-weighted (p760); the more water present, the more white the appearance. In the right occipital lobe, the cerebral cortex is abnormal with high signal, most likely from oedema. If so, it is cytotoxic oedema from cell ischaemia and death, rather than vasogenic oedema from leaky capillaries that involves more of the white matter. The diagnosis could be an infarct (distribution is the right PCA territory), inflammation, or tumour. The diffusion-weighted image on the right shows limited (abnormal) diffusion in the region, indicating this is an infarct.

©Prof Peter Scally.

1 Mitochondrial Encephalopathy with Lactic Acidosis & Stroke-like episodes (MELAS). Episodes triggered by metabolic stress, with lactic acidosis ffl seizures. Due to a point mutation in mitochondrial DNA.

2 Alteplase is licensed within 3h of onset of stroke, but ECASS3 and SITS studies show benefit up to 4.5h.^{101,102} IST3 + meta-analyses suggest at up to 6h (also if >80yrs old).¹⁰³ ▶▶ Best results are at <90min; *don't dawdle!*¹⁰⁴ Public health 'Brain Attack' awareness campaigns address this point: we should all know what the **FAST** acronym stands for: **F**acial weakness, **A**rm/leg weakness, or **S**peech difficulty = **T**ime to act.

3 Intra-arterial r-tPA has a role seen between 3 and 6h post symptom onset.¹⁰⁵

Primary prevention (ie before any stroke) Control risk factors (p474): Look for and treat hypertension, DM, lipids (p704; statins ↓risk by ~17%),¹⁰⁶ and cardiac disease (see BOX). Exercise helps (↑HDL, ↑glucose tolerance). Folate supplements¹ may also help somewhat (↓serum homocysteine).¹⁰⁷ **Help quit smoking:** ▶p87. In middle-aged men (esp. if ↑BP), quitting ↓risk of stroke, with benefits seen in ≤5yrs (switching to pipes or cigars achieves little; former heavy smokers retain some excess risk). Use **lifelong anticoagulation** if rheumatic or prosthetic heart valves on left side, and consider in chronic non-rheumatic atrial fibrillation (AF), especially if there are other vascular risk factors (see BOX). For prevention post-TIA see p480.

Secondary prevention (ie preventing further strokes) Control risk factors (as *Primary prevention* above). Several large studies suggest considerable advantages from lowering blood pressure and cholesterol (even if not particularly raised). **Antiplatelet agents after stroke:** (assuming no primary haemorrhage on CT) Clopidogrel monotherapy is the best way to prevent CNS and heart events and is probably superior to aspirin plus slow-release dipyridamole. **Anticoagulation after stroke from AF:** Start warfarin if indicated (BOX), 2wks after the stroke (if clinically and radiologically small, from 7–10 days). Use antiplatelet therapy until anticoagulated; if anticoagulated already, replace with antiplatelet for 1wk. Warfarin CI: p344.

Tests (see p474 for imaging) Investigate promptly to identify risk factors for further strokes, but consider whether results will affect management. Look for:

- **Hypertension:** Look for retinopathy (p562), nephropathy, and a big heart on CXR. Raised BP is common in early stroke. In general, don't treat acutely.
- **Cardiac source of emboli:** (see also BOX) 24h ECG to look for atrial fibrillation (p124). CXR may show an enlarged left atrium. Echocardiogram may reveal mural thrombus due to AF or a hypokinetic segment of cardiac muscle post-MI. It may also show valvular lesions in infective endocarditis or rheumatic heart disease. Transoesophageal echo is more sensitive than transthoracic.
- **Carotid artery stenosis:** Do carotid Doppler ultrasound ± CT/MRI angiography. ≥70% stenosis is significant. Results of ECST-2 are awaited to see who benefits most from endarterectomy (earlier studies were in the pre-statin era). Endovascular carotid artery stenting is an alternative if not suitable for surgery, but safety and long-term benefits (in-stent re-stenosis) are problems.¹⁰⁸
- **Hypoglycaemia, hyperglycaemia, dyslipidaemia and hyperhomocysteinaemia.**
- **Vasculitis:** ↑ESR, ANA +ve^{etc} (p558). VDRL to look for active, untreated syphilis (p431).
- **Prothrombotic states:** eg thrombophilia (p368), antiphospholipid syndrome (p556).
- **Hyperviscosity:** eg polycythaemia (p360), sickle-cell disease (p334).
- **Thrombocytopenia** and other bleeding disorders.
- **Genetic tests:** CADASIL (p474); Fabry's disease (X-linked, but some ♀ affected too).

Prognosis Good nursing (eg to prevent pressure ulcers—see fig 1) on a stroke unit, antiplatelet agents, and prompt intervention (eg after carotid Doppler imaging) are key. For those with a minor ischaemic stroke/TIA, urgent assessment and treatment saves lives (p480). **Overall mortality:** 60,000/yr; UK 20% at 1 month, then ≤10%/yr. **Full recovery:** ≤40%. Drowsiness ≈ poor prognosis. **Complications:** Aspiration pneumonia (keep 'nil by mouth' until assessed, p478); pressure sores (fig 1; turn regularly and keep dry—consider catheter); contractures; constipation; depression; "I'm a prisoner in my body"; stress in spouse (eg alcoholism), p449.

1 ↑Plasma homocysteine is associated more strongly with stroke risk than with cardiovascular risk. Folic acid lowers homocysteine and folic acid supplementation in grain food has been shown to be associated with a ↓stroke incidence in USA and Canada. Other studies show that any +ve effects on all-cause mortality of folic acid are likely to be small, at best (SEARCH, WENBIT, WAFACS, CHAOS-2, VISP, NORVIT, and HOPE-2 trials).^{109–111}

Cardiac causes of stroke

Cardioembolic causes are the source of stroke in >30% of patients in population studies. These may recur, unless you prevent them.

► So examine the heart with as much attention as you examine the brain.

- **Non-valvular atrial fibrillation** is associated with an overall risk of stroke of 4.5%/yr. Age, prior stroke/TIA, diabetes and hypertension are additive risks. Ischaemic strokes in AF are often worse than ischaemic stroke with sinus rhythm. Warfarin (or dabigatran 150mg/12h po, p125)¹¹² is effective for primary and secondary prevention of ischaemic stroke, reducing risk by 68% (>80% if CHADS2 score¹ ≥2).¹¹³ Aspirin alone may be OK if CHADS2 ≤1 (safer and needs no monitoring).¹¹⁴ Explain risks and benefits of warfarin, and let the patient decide, giving a steer towards warfarin the higher CHADS2 is—if there are no contraindications (falls, poor compliance/concordance). If warfarin is chosen, aim for an INR of 2.5–3.5 (stroke risk doubles if INR ~1.7 vs 2). Adding aspirin to warfarin does not help. Warfarin can be stopped after ablation for AF if CHADS2 ≤3.¹¹⁵
- **External cardioversion** is complicated in 1–3% by peripheral emboli: pharmacological cardioversion may carry similar risks.
- **Prosthetic valves** risk major emboli; anticoagulate (INR 3.5–4.5, p345).
- **Acute myocardial infarct** with large left ventricular wall motion abnormalities on echocardiography predispose to left ventricular thrombus. Emboli arise in 10% of these patients in the next 6–12 months; risk is reduced by two-thirds by warfarin anticoagulation. Mural thrombus is best seen by echocardiography.
- **Paradoxical systemic emboli** via the venous circulation in those with patent foramen ovale, atrial and ventricular septal defects.
- **Cardiac surgery**, eg bypass graft, carries particular risk (0.9–5.2%).
- **Valve vegetations from SBE/IE** may embolize (p144). 20% of those with endocarditis present with CNS signs due to septic emboli from valves. ► Is there fever or a murmur? Treat as endocarditis; ask a cardiologist's opinion.



Fig 1. Sacral pressure ulcer after a stroke. Easy to prevent, given good nursing and nutrition—but so hard to treat, and so often a prelude to death. Lying still for too long also causes severe constipation and hypostatic pneumonia, eg in 9%.¹¹⁶

1 The CHADS2 score (see also CHA2DS2, p125)

C Congestive heart failure	1
H Hypertension: blood pressure consistently above 140/90mmHg (or treated hypertension on medication)	1
A Age ≥75yrs	1
D Diabetes mellitus	1
S2 Prior stroke or TIA or thromboembolism	2

Enablement can focus on the specific disability or it can take a holistic approach and recognize that understanding an individual's past abilities is as important as knowing about present disabilities. *Summary of the Enablement Approach:*

- ☞ Give equal weight to assessing physical and cognitive function.
 - ☞ Agree the tasks to be done. Which elements of each task is the person finding difficult? Don't be too helpful by taking over doing the whole task yourself.
 - ☞ Assess risks involved in doing each task. How can these be reduced or avoided?
 - ☞ Plan each small step. Agree realistic **relevant** goals, that can be achieved soon.
 - ☞ Frequently review and reset specific goals.¹¹⁷
- Each person is an individual and no two people will require the exact same support. *6 points in the early management of stroke which bear on later plans:*

- 1 Watch the patient swallow a small volume of water; if signs of aspiration (a cough or voice change) make *nil by mouth* until formal assessment by a speech therapist. Use IV fluids, then semi-solids (eg jelly; avoid soups and crumbly food). Avoid early NG tube feeds (needed only in the few with established chronic swallowing problems). Speech therapists skilled in assessing swallowing difficulties are invaluable here.
 - 2 Avoid falls and damaging patient's shoulders through careless lifting.
 - 3 Ensure good bladder and bowel care through frequent toileting. Avoid early catheterization which may prevent return to continence.
 - 4 Position to minimize spasticity (occurs in ~40%). Get prompt physiotherapy. Botulinum toxin injections are helpful for focal spasticity.¹¹⁸
 - 5 Measure time taken to sit up, and to transfer from lying to sitting in a chair; this is a good way to monitor progress with physio/occupational therapy.¹¹⁹
 - 6 In pseudo-emotionalism/emotional lability (sobbing unprovoked by sorrow, from failure of cortical inhibition of the limbic system), tricyclics or fluoxetine may help.
- Involve the carer/spouse with all aspects of care-giving. Good rehab saves lives.

Tests Asking to point to a named part of the body tests perceptual function. Copying matchstick patterns tests spatial ability. Dressing or copying a clock face tests for *apraxia* (p80). Picking out and naming easy objects from a pile tests for agnosia (acuity OK, but cannot mime use; guesses are way-out, semantically, and phonetically). Screen for depression (low mood; inability to feel pleasure or to concentrate).

Making physio fun aids motivation, eg swimming (a hemiplegic arm may be supported on a special float), music and video games (recovery by aiding coordination).¹²⁰ The aim is to promote cerebral reorganization. To this end, constraint of the good arm has been found to be helpful (*constraint-induced movement therapy*).¹²¹

End-of-life decisions ► If the patient's views are known, comply with them, except perhaps where doing so entails an illegal act, or one that clearly harms others.

- ☞ No person has authority to impose views on end-of-life decisions. You cannot tell a nurse to stop feeding someone, and expect her to obey you. Consensus is the only practical way. Try to get the opinion of more than one relative, and more than one shift of nurses (eg at changeover time). Let everyone have their say. You may learn new, important facts about your patient, which make decisions easier—or harder.
- ☞ If consensus is impossible, recourse to the Courts is one option: but remember that judges have no special skill in this area.
- ☞ Beware guidelines giving doctors special powers (such as the BMA guidelines).¹²² Doctors may be the worst decision-makers as closeness to life and death may make them tolerant of ending life—eg if the bed could be used for 'something better'. Even if *not* the case, if society thinks this, then doctors are in an untenable position. We *do* have a role, though, in facilitating consensus, and documenting it.

Success is often impossible (there are too many grey areas), but if you can stumble from one ambiguity to another without being disheartened, then that is good enough. Your patients will respect your honesty.

Assessing handicap, disability, and independence in daily life

Handicap entails inability to carry out social functions. 'A disadvantage for a given individual, resulting from an impairment or disability, that limits or prevents the fulfilment of a role.' Two people with the same **impairment** (eg paralysed arm) may have different **disabilities** (one can dress, the other cannot). Disabilities are likely to determine quality of future life. Treatment is often best aimed at reducing disability, not curing disease. For example, Velcro® fasteners in place of buttons may enable a person to dress.

A person with a severe hearing impairment may seem to you to have no disability if they can lip-read. But ask yourself (and your patients, when you get to know them) about the price they pay for rising above their disabilities. Lip-reading, for example, is exhausting, requiring 100% vigilance to make sense of transitory and incomplete visual clues.

Barthel's index of activities of daily living

Bowels	0	Incontinent (or needs to be given enemas)
	1	Occasional accidents (once a week)
	2	Continent
Bladder	0	Incontinent, or catheter inserted but unable to manage it
	1	Occasional accidents (up to once per 24h)
	2	Continent (for more than 7 days)
Grooming	0	Needs help with personal care: face, hair, teeth, shaving
	1	Independent (implements provided)
Toilet use	0	Dependent
	1	Needs some help but can do some things alone
	2	Independent (on and off, wiping, dressing)
Feeding	0	Unable
	1	Needs help in cutting, spreading butter, etc.
	2	Independent (food provided within reach)
Transfer	0	Unable to get from bed to commode: the vital transfer to prevent the need for 24-hour nursing care
	1	Major help needed (physical, 1-2 people), can sit
	2	Minor help needed (verbal or physical)
	3	Independent
Mobility	0	Immobile
	1	Wheelchair-independent, including corners, etc.
	2	Walks with help of one person (verbal or physical)
	3	Independent
Dressing	0	Dependent
	1	Needs help but can do about half unaided
	2	Independent (including buttons, zips, laces, etc.)
Stairs	0	Unable
	1	Needs help (verbal, physical, carrying aid)
	2	Independent up and down
Bath/shower	0	Dependent
	1	Independent (must get in and out unaided and wash self)

The aim is to establish the degree of independence from any help.

Mahoney FI, Barthel DW: Functional evaluation: the Barthel Index. *Maryland State Medical Journal*. 1965; 14:61-65. Used with permission.

Barthel's paradox The more we contemplate Barthel's eulogy of independence, the more we see it as a mirage reflecting a greater truth about human affairs: ► there is no such thing as independence¹—only **inter-dependence**—and in fostering this interdependence lies our true vocation.

¹ **N**o man is an Island, intire of it selfe; every man is a peece of the Continent, a part of the maine; if a Clod bee washed away by the Sea, Europe is the lesse, as well as if a promontorie were, as well as if a Mannor of thy friends or of thine owne were. Any man's death diminishes me, because I am involved in mankind; And therefore never send to know for whom the bell tolls: It tolls for thee. John Donne 1572-1631; Meditation xvii.

What happens when we take up John Donne's offer of meditation? Some very interesting CNS events: brain activity slows, and blood is relocated to the anterior cingulate and dorsolateral prefrontal areas.¹²³

The sudden onset of focal CNS phenomena due to temporary occlusion of part of the cerebral circulation, usually by emboli, is termed a TIA if symptoms last <24h (often much shorter). Incidence: 0.4/1000/yr. ►►15% of 1st strokes are preceded by TIAs; they are also harbingers of MI, so...*good management may avert disaster*.

Signs of TIA Attacks are single or many. Features of a TIA should always mimic those of a stroke in the same arterial territory (p453), and may be the same or different for each TIA. *Global* events (eg syncope, dizziness) are not typical of TIAs. Multiple highly stereotyped attacks suggest a critical intracranial stenosis (commonly the superior division of the MCA, p452). Emboli may also pass to the retinal artery, causing *amaurosis fugax* (one eye's vision is progressively lost "like a curtain descending over my field of view"). Limb-shaking TIAs may be mistaken for a focal motor seizure.

Signs of causes Carotid bruit (p38), but absence does not rule out a carotid source of emboli: tight stenoses often have *no* bruit,¹²⁴ BPT; heart murmur from valve disease; atrial fibrillation. Fundoscopy during TIAs may show retinal artery emboli.

Causes (see also p474) *Atherothromboembolism* from the carotid is the chief cause. *Cardioembolism*: mural thrombus post-MI or in AF, valve disease, prosthetic valve. *Hyperviscosity*: (p366), eg polycythaemia, sickle-cell anaemia, WCC↑↑ (leukostasis; may need urgent chemotherapy), myeloma.¹²⁵ *Vasculitis* (eg cranial arteritis, PAN, SLE, syphilis, etc) is a rare cause, and perhaps shouldn't be classified as TIA.

Differential Hypoglycaemia, migraine aura (symptoms spread and intensify over minutes, often with visual scintillations), focal epilepsy (symptoms spread over seconds and often include twitching and jerking), hyperventilation, retinal bleeds. *Rare mimics of TIA*: Malignant hypertension, MS (paroxysmal dysarthria), intracranial tumours, peripheral neuropathy, phaeochromocytoma, somatization.

Tests Aim to find the cause and define vascular risk: FBC, ESR, U&Es, glucose, lipids, CXR, ECG, carotid Doppler ± angiography, CT or diffusion-weighted MRI (any existing infarcts? If bilateral, it suggests cardioembolism), echocardiogram (rarely shows cardiac cause if no suggestive signs).

Treatment ►► Time to intervention is crucial. Risk of stroke within 90 days of TIA is 2% in those treated within 72h of TIA, compared to 10% in those treated by 3wks.¹²⁶

- **Control cardiovascular risk factors**: tBP (cautiously lower; aim for <140/85mmHg, p134); hyperlipidaemia (p704); DM (p198); help to stop smoking (p87 & OHCS p512).
- **Antiplatelet drugs**: Clopidogrel (75mg/d), a thienopyridine that inhibits platelet aggregation by modifying platelet ADP receptors, prevents further strokes and MIs, as does (to a lesser extent) aspirin 300mg/d (↓after 2wks 75mg/d). NB: dipyridamole MR 200mg/12h should be added to aspirin, where used. Dipyridamole tAMP and ↓thromboxane A₂.
- **Warfarin indications**: Cardiac emboli (eg AF, mitral stenosis, recent big septal MI).
- **Carotid endarterectomy** If ≥70% stenosis at the origin of the internal carotid artery and operative risk is good.^{124,127} Surgery should be performed within 2 weeks of first presentation.¹²⁸ Operating on 50–70% stenoses may be valuable if the team's perioperative stroke and mortality rate <3%.¹²⁹ Intra-operative transcranial Doppler can monitor middle cerebral artery flow. Using patches may reduce chance of restenosis. Do not stop aspirin beforehand. Endovascular carotid artery stenting is an alternative if not suitable for surgery, but safety and long-term benefits (in-stent restenosis is common) remain under investigation.¹⁰⁸

Driving Avoid for 1 month; patients in the UK should inform the DVLA only if multiple attacks in short period or residual deficit.

Prognosis The combined risk of stroke and MI is ~9%/yr; if carotid stenosis is ≥70% risk of stroke ↑ to 12% in 1st year and up to 10% subsequently. More frequent TIAs ↑ risk yet further. Mortality is ~3-fold that of a TIA-free matched population. In one Dutch study in 2005, 60% of patients were dead within 10 years of a TIA.¹³⁰

1 Who risks death/CVA from endarterectomy? q sex, >75yrs old, systolic BPT, contralateral artery occluded; stenosis of ipsilateral carotid syphon/external carotid; wide-territory TIAs (against just amaurosis fugax).

►► When should TIA lead to prompt or emergency referral?

An **ABCD2** score¹³¹ of ≥ 6 (see TABLE) strongly predicts a stroke (8.1% within 2 days, 35.5% in the next week). Patients with a score ≥ 4 should be assessed by a specialist within 24h, and all patients with a suspected TIA should be seen within 7 days.

A ge ≥ 60 yrs old	1 point
B lood pressure $\geq 140/90$	1 point
C linical features	
Unilateral weakness	2 points
Speech disturbance without weakness	1 point
D uration of symptoms	
Symptoms lasting ≥ 1 h	2 points
Symptoms lasting 10–59min	1 point
D iabetes	1 point

In assessing urgency, bear in mind Warlow's 2005 data: in stroke patients who had a preceding TIA, 17% occurred on the day of the stroke, 9% on the previous day, and 43% at some point during the 7 days before the stroke.¹³² These sobering figures should remind us to rehearse routes for referral for emergency endarterectomy—at present this is typically performed >90 days post-TIA.¹³³

ABCD2 score reproduced from *The Lancet*, 366, Rothwell *et al*, A simple score (ABCD) to identify individuals at early risk of stroke after transient ischaemic attack. pp29–36.

© 2005, with permission from Elsevier.



Spontaneous bleeding into the subarachnoid space is often catastrophic. **Incidence:** 9/100,000/yr; typical age: 35–65. **Causes:** Rupture of saccular aneurysms (80%); arteriovenous malformations (AVM; 15%). No cause is found in <15%. **Risk factors:** Smoking, alcohol misuse, BPT,¹ bleeding disorders, mycotic aneurysm (SBE), perhaps post-menopausal ↓ oestrogen (♀:♂ ≈ 3:2 if >45yrs old).¹³⁴ Close relatives have 3–5-fold ↑ risk of SAH.¹³⁵



Fig 1. Middle cerebral artery SAH at the Sylvian fissure. ©Dr D Hamoudi.

Berry aneurysms Common sites: junction of posterior communicating with the internal carotid or of the anterior communicating with the anterior cerebral artery or bifurcation of the middle cerebral artery (figs 1, 2 & fig 1, p452). 15% are multiple. Some are hereditary. **Associations:** Polycystic kidneys, coarctation of the aorta, Ehlers–Danlos syndrome (hypermobility joints with skin elasticity, OHCS p642).

Symptoms Sudden (usually, but not always, within seconds)¹³⁶ devastating typically occipital headache—“I thought I’d been kicked in the head”. Vomiting, collapse, seizures and coma often follow. Coma/drowsiness may last for days.

Signs Neck stiffness, Kernig’s sign (takes 6h to develop), retinal, subhyaloid and vitreous bleeds (=Terson’s syndrome; it carries a worse prognosis: mortality ↑ × 5).¹³⁷ Focal neurology at *presentation* may suggest site of aneurysm (eg pupil changes indicating a IIIrd nerve palsy with a posterior communicating artery aneurysm) or intracerebral haematoma. Later deficits suggest complications (see below).¹³⁸

Differential In primary care, only 25% of those with severe, sudden ‘thunderclap’ headache have SAH. In 50–60%, no cause is found; the remainder have meningitis, migraine, intracerebral bleeds, or cortical vein thrombosis (p484).

Sentinel headache SAH patients may earlier have experienced a sentinel headache, perhaps due to a small warning leak from the offending aneurysm (~6%), but recall-bias clouds the picture.¹³⁶ As surgery is more successful in the least symptomatic, be suspicious of any *sudden* headache especially with neck or back pain.¹³⁸

Tests CT detects >90% of SAH within the 1st 48h (fig 3).¹³⁹ LP if CT –ve and no contraindication >12h after headache onset. CSF in SAH is uniformly bloody early on, and becomes xanthochromic (yellow) after several hours due to breakdown products of Hb (bilirubin). Finding xanthochromia confirms SAH, showing that the LP was not a ‘bloody tap’ (don’t rely on finding fewer CSF RBCs in each successive bottle).

Management ▶ Refer all proven SAH to neurosurgery immediately.

- Re-examine CNS often; chart BP, pupils and GCS (p802). Repeat CT if deteriorating.
- Maintain cerebral perfusion by keeping well hydrated, and aim for SBP ≥ 160mmHg. Treat TBP only if very severe.
- Nimodipine (60mg/4h PO for 3wks, or 1mg/h IVI) is a Ca²⁺ antagonist that reduces vasospasm and consequent morbidity from cerebral ischaemia.
- Endovascular coiling is preferred to surgical clipping where possible (7% ↑ in independent survival over 7yrs follow-up, but ↑ risk of rebleeding).¹⁴⁰ Do catheter or CT angiography to identify single vs multiple aneurysms *before* intervening. Intracranial stents and balloon remodelling enable treating wide-necked aneurysms. Microcatheters can now traverse tortuous vessels to treat previously unreachable lesions.¹⁴¹ AV malformations and fistulae may also benefit from this.

Complications **Rebleeding** is the commonest cause of death, and occurs in 20%, often in the 1st few days. **Cerebral ischaemia** due to vasospasm may cause a permanent CNS deficit, and is the commonest cause of morbidity. If this happens, surgery is not helpful at the time but may be so later. **Hydrocephalus**, due to blockage of arachnoid granulations, requires a ventricular or lumbar drain. **Hyponatraemia** is common but should not be managed with fluid restriction. Seek expert help.

1 For each 20mmHg rise in systolic BP, relative risks of ischaemic stroke, intracerebral haemorrhage, and subarachnoid haemorrhage are 1.8, 2.5, and 1.6 in ♂, and 1.6, 3.1, and 2.3 in ♀, respectively.¹⁴²

Mortality in subarachnoid haemorrhage

Grade	Signs	Mortality: %
I	None	0
II	Neck stiffness and cranial nerve palsies	11
III	Drowsiness	37
IV	Drowsy with hemiplegia	71
V	Prolonged coma	100

Almost all the mortality occurs in the 1st month. Of those who survive the 1st month, 90% survive a year or more.

Unruptured aneurysms: 'the time-bomb in my head'

Bear in mind the old adage: 'if it ain't broke; don't fix it'—usually, risks of *preventive* intervention outweigh any benefits, except perhaps in young patients (more years at risk, and surgery is twice as hazardous if >45yrs old)¹⁴³ who have aneurysms >7mm in diameter, especially if located at the junction of the internal carotid and the posterior communicating cerebral artery, or at the rostral basilar artery bifurcation, and especially if there is uncontrolled hypertension or a past history of bleeds.¹⁴³ Data from the 2003 International Study of Unruptured Intracranial Aneurysms (ISUIA) show that relative risk of rupture for an aneurysm 7-12mm across is 3.3 compared with aneurysms <7mm across; if the diameter is >12mm, the relative risk is 17!¹⁴⁴

Patients with a *previous SAH* have a raised risk for new aneurysm formation and enlargement of untreated aneurysms. Screening these patients might be beneficial, eg if multiple aneurysms, hypertension, or a history of smoking.¹⁴⁵



Fig 2. CT images can be manipulated to show only high-density structures such as bones and arteries containing contrast. Here is a middle cerebral artery aneurysm.

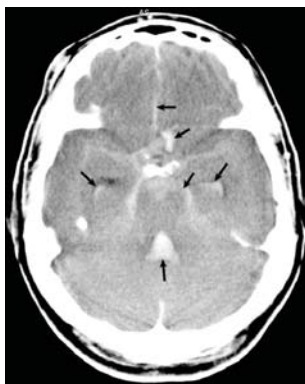


Fig 3. Blood from a ruptured aneurysm occupies the interhemispheric fissure (top arrow), a crescentic intracerebral area presumably near the aneurysm (2nd arrow), the basal cisterns, the lateral ventricles (temporal horns), and the 4th ventricle (bottom arrow).

We thank Prof. Peter Scally for these CT images and the commentaries on them.

Dural venous sinus thrombosis Most commonly sagittal sinus thrombosis (figs 1 & 2; 47% of all IVT) or transverse sinus thrombosis (35%). Sagittal sinus thrombosis often coexists if other sinuses are thrombosed. Symptoms come on gradually over days or weeks. Thrombosis within a dural venous sinus may extend into the cortical veins and cause infarction within a venous territory (fig 3; see under *Cortical vein thrombosis* below for symptoms and signs).

- **Sagittal sinus:** Headache, vomiting, seizures, ↓vision, papilloedema.
- **Transverse sinus:** Headache ± mastoid pain, focal CNS signs, seizures, papilloedema.
- **Sigmoid sinus:** Cerebellar signs, lower cranial nerve palsies.
- **Inferior petrosal sinus:** Vth and VIth cranial nerve palsies, which, with temporal and retro-orbital pain, comprise Gradenigo's syndrome.¹⁴⁹
- **Cavernous sinus:** Often due to spread from facial pustules or folliculitis, causing headache, chemosis, oedematous eyelids, proptosis, painful ophthalmoplegia, fever.¹⁵⁰

Cortical vein thrombosis (CVT) Often causes venous infarcts, with stroke-like focal symptoms that develop over days. However, the associated headache may come on suddenly (thunderclap headache).¹⁵¹ Seizures are common, unlike in arterial stroke, and focal (p494). It usually occurs with sinus thromboses.¹⁵² Galen vein thrombosis is a rare cause of CVT and is usually associated with vascular malformation.¹⁵³ **Signs:** Encephalopathy, focal seizures, headache (including thunderclap headache), slowly evolving focal deficits (paresis, speech disorders, cognition↓, vision↓).

Differential diagnosis Subarachnoid haemorrhage (p482; thunderclap headaches also occur in dissection of a carotid or vertebral artery, and in benign thunderclap headache, triggered by Valsalva manoeuvre (eg cough, coitus)), meningitis, encephalitis, intracranial abscess, arterial infarction.

Investigations Exclude SAH if thunderclap headache (p482). Check there are no signs of meningitis (p832).

Imaging: CT/MRI venography may show the absence of a sinus (fig 1), though an absent transverse sinus can be a normal variant. MRI T2-weighted gradient echo sequences can visualize thrombus directly (fig 2), and also identify haemorrhagic infarction.¹⁵⁴ CT may be normal early; then at ~1wk develops the delta sign, where a transversely cut sinus shows a contrast filling defect.

Lumbar puncture (unless CI by MRI/CT): if raised opening CSF pressure, with persistent headache and SAH excluded, suspect cerebral vein thrombosis. CSF may be normal, or show RBCs and xanthochromia.

Management Seek expert help. Heparin improves outcome,¹⁵⁵ possibly even in those with haemorrhagic venous infarction. Fibrinolytics (eg streptokinase) have been used via selective catheterization.¹⁵⁶⁻¹⁵⁷ Thrombophilia screen and ENT review to help identify the cause.

Prognosis Variable. Death is mainly due to transtentorial herniation from unilateral focal mass effects or diffuse oedema, and multiple parenchymal lesions. Independent predictors of death in one study were coma (odds ratio OR≈8.8), deep cortical vein thrombosis (OR≈8.5), posterior fossa lesion (OR≈6.5) right intracerebral haemorrhage (OR≈3.4), and mental disturbance (OR≈2.5). Evolving focal deficits are also associated with ↑ mortality.¹⁵⁸

Common causes

- Pregnancy/puerperium
- Oral contraceptives
- Head injury
- Dehydration
- Blood dyscrasias
- Intracranial malignancy (local invasion/pressure)
- Extracranial malignancy (hypercoagulability)
- Recent LP

Systemic causes

- Hyperthyroidism
- Nephrosis
- Ketoacidosis¹⁴⁶
- Heart failure
- SLE
- Homocystinuria
- Hyperviscosity (p366)
- Crohn's or UC (p272-4)
- Behçet's disease (p708)
- Activated protein C resistance (p368)
- Antiphospholipid syn
- Klippel-Trénaunay syn
- Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria

Infectious causes

- Meningitis; TB
- Cerebral abscess
- Septicaemia
- Fungal infections
- Otitis media
- Cerebral malaria
- HIV with nephrosis

Drug causes

- Androgens, eg oxymetholone¹⁴⁷
- Antifibrinolytics, eg tranexamic acid
- Infliximab¹⁴⁸

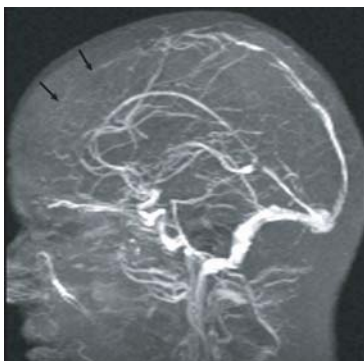


Fig 1. This magnetic resonance venogram (MRV) could look normal at first glance: the hardest thing to see in imaging is often that which is not there. Much of the superior sagittal sinus is not seen because it is filled with clot—a superior sagittal sinus thrombosis. The arrows point to where it should be seen. Posteriorly, the irregularity of the vessel indicates non-occlusive clot.

Image and commentary courtesy of Prof. P. Scally.

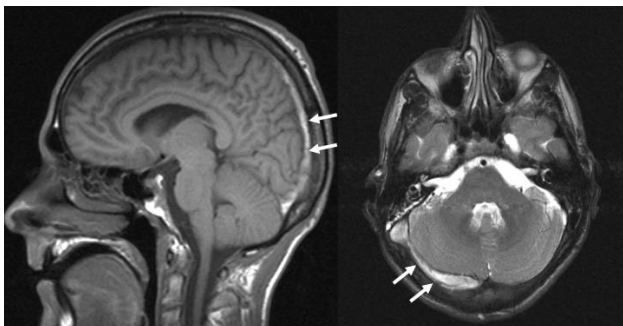


Fig 2. MRI showing thrombus (arrows) in the sagittal sinus (sagittal T1-weighted image, LEFT), and in the right transverse sinus (axial T2-weighted image, RIGHT). Often more than one sinus is involved.

Image courtesy of Dr David Werring.

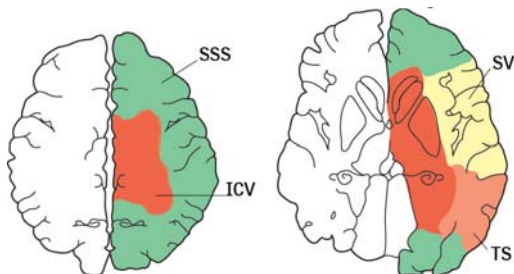


Fig 3. Venous territories (compare with arterial territories on p453). SSS—superior sagittal sinus; TS—transverse sinus; SV—Sylvian veins; ICV—internal cortical veins.

There is much greater variation in venous anatomy between individuals than there is in arterial anatomy, so this diagram is only a rough guide. The key point is to realize that infarction that crosses boundaries between arterial territories may be venous in origin.

► Consider this very treatable condition in all whose conscious level fluctuates, and also in those having an 'evolving stroke', especially if on anticoagulants. Bleeding is from bridging veins between cortex and venous sinuses (vulnerable to deceleration injury), resulting in accumulating haematoma between dura and arachnoid. This gradually raises ICP, shifting midline structures away from the side of the clot and, if untreated, eventual tentorial herniation and coning. Most subdurals are from trauma but the trauma is *often forgotten as it was so minor or so long ago* (up to 9 months).¹⁵⁹ It can also occur without trauma (eg ↓ICP;¹ dural metastases).¹⁶⁰ The elderly are most susceptible, as brain atrophy makes bridging veins vulnerable. *Other risk factors*: falls (epileptics, alcoholics); anticoagulation.

Symptoms Fluctuating level of consciousness (seen in 35%) ± insidious physical or intellectual slowing, sleepiness, headache, personality change, and unsteadiness.

Signs ↑ICP (p840); seizures. Localizing neurological symptoms (eg unequal pupils, hemiparesis) occur late and often long after the injury (mean=63 days).

Imaging (figs 1 & 2) CT/MRI shows clot ± midline shift (but beware bilateral isodense clots). Look for crescent-shaped collection of blood over 1 hemisphere. The sickle-shape differentiates subdural blood from extradural haemorrhage.

▲▲ Stroke, dementia, CNS masses (eg tumours, abscess, neurocysticercosis).¹⁶¹

Treatment Irrigation/evacuation, eg via burr twist drill and burr hole craniostomy, can be considered 1st-line; craniotomy is 2nd-line,¹⁶² if the clot has organized.¹⁶³ Address causes of the trauma (eg falls due cataract or arrhythmia; abuse).

Extradural (epidural) haemorrhage

► *Suspect this if, after head injury, conscious level falls or is slow to improve, or there is a lucid interval.* Extradural bleeds are often due to a fractured temporal or parietal bone causing laceration of the middle meningeal artery and vein, typically after trauma to a temple just lateral to the eye. Any tear in a dural venous sinus will also result in an extradural bleed. Blood accumulates between bone and dura.

The patient Beware deteriorating consciousness after any head injury that initially produced no loss of consciousness or after initial drowsiness post injury seems to have resolved. This **lucid interval** pattern is typical of extradural bleeds (▲▲: epilepsy,¹⁶⁴ carotid dissection,¹⁶⁵ and carbon monoxide poisoning).¹⁶⁶ It may last a few hours to a few days before a bleed declares itself by ↓GCS from rising ICP. Increasingly severe headache, vomiting, confusion, and fits follow, ± hemiparesis with brisk reflexes and an upgoing plantar. If bleeding continues, the ipsilateral pupil dilates, coma deepens, bilateral limb weakness develops, and breathing becomes deep and irregular (brainstem compression). Death follows a period of coma and is due to respiratory arrest. Bradycardia and raised blood pressure are late signs.

Tests CT (fig 3) shows a haematoma (often biconvex/lens-shaped; the blood forms a more rounded shape compared with the sickle-shaped subdural haematoma as the tough dural attachments to the skull keep it more localized). Skull x-ray may be normal or show fracture lines crossing the course of the middle meningeal vessels. Skull fracture after trauma greatly increases risk of an extradural haemorrhage, and should lead to prompt CT. ► **Lumbar puncture is contraindicated.**

Management ►► Stabilize and transfer urgently (with skilled medical and nursing escorts) to a neurosurgical unit for clot evacuation ± ligation of the bleeding vessel. Care of the airway in an unconscious patient and measures to ↓ICP often require intubation and ventilation (+ mannitol IVI, p841).

Prognosis Excellent if diagnosis and operation early. Poor if coma, pupil abnormalities, or decerebrate rigidity are present pre-op.

1 Intracranial hypotension (↓ICP) is due to CSF leaks, amenable to epidural blood patches over the leak.¹⁶⁷ Suspect if headaches are worse on standing.¹⁶⁸ *Causes*: arachnoid diverticula/dural ectasia (eg in Marfan's syndrome); after lumbar puncture or epidural anaesthesia; dehydration; hyperpnoea (↑tidal volume). *MRI*: engorged venous sinuses, meningeal enhancement, and subdural fluid.



Fig 1. This image explains the cause as well as the pathology. On the patient's left, cerebral sulci are prominent and prior to this adverse event would have been even larger. The brain had shrunk within the skull as a result of atherosclerosis, and poor perfusion, leaving large subarachnoid spaces. A simple, quick rotation of the head is enough to tear a bridging vein, causing this *acute subdural haematoma*.



Fig 2. This fluid collection is of low attenuation compared to the brain, except for a small area of increased attenuation. It is an *acute on chronic (mixed-density) subdural haematoma*. But there is more! Look at the shift of midline structures across under the falx cerebri—subfalcine herniation. It is not just caused by the subdural. The left hemisphere is swollen as a result of the compression of the bridging veins in the subdural space, shifting the ventricles and calcified pineal across to the right.



Fig 3. The blood (high attenuation, fusiform or biconvex collection) on the right side is limited anteriorly by the coronal suture and posteriorly by the lambdoid suture. This is therefore an *extradural haematoma*. The low attenuation CSF density collection on the left is causing scalloping of the overlying bone. It is in the typical location of an arachnoid cyst; an incidental finding of a congenital abnormality.

We thank Professor Peter Scally for the images and commentary.

20% of elderly patients on medical and surgical wards have some form of delirium:¹ consider *any* acute fluctuating baffling behaviour change as possible delirium. Look for organic causes (UTI, pneumonia, MI). The 8 signs of **DELIRIUM** are:

Disordered thinking: slow, irrational, rambling, jumbled up, incoherent ideas.

Euphoric, fearful, depressed or angry: Labile mood, eg anxious then torpid.

Language impaired: Speech is reduced or gabbling, repetitive, and disruptive.

Illusions/delusions/hallucinations: Tactile or visual (auditory suggests psychosis).

Reversal of sleep-awake cycle: May be drowsy by day and hypervigilant at night.

Inattention: Focusing, sustaining, or shifting attention is poor; no real dialogue.

Unaware/disorientated: Doesn't know it's evening, or his own name, or location.

Memory deficits: Often marked. (Later he may be amnesic for the episode.)

Summary: Globally impaired cognition and impaired awareness/consciousness.

Illustration from Conrad's *Heart of Darkness* 'The wastes of his weary brain were haunted by shadowy images now—images of wealth and fame... Sometimes he was contemptibly childish. He desired to have kings meet him at railway-stations on his return from some ghastly Nowhere ... "Close the shutter", said Kurtz suddenly "I can't bear to look at this." I did so. There was a silence. "Oh, but I will wring your heart yet!" he cried at the invisible wilderness.'¹⁶⁹ Impaired consciousness is difficult to describe (which is why we have to resort to Conrad—the master of multilayered descriptions). When you talk to the patient you have the sense that he is not with you, but away with the fairies—inaccessible and lost.

Causes (Pain and other psychological states are important co-factors.)

- Systemic infection: pneumonia, UTI, malaria, wounds, IV lines.
- Intracranial infection: encephalitis, meningitis.
- Drugs: opiates, anticonvulsants, levodopa, sedatives, recreational, post-GA.
- Alcohol withdrawal (2–5d post-admission; \uparrow LFTs, \uparrow MCV; history of alcohol abuse). Also drug withdrawal. See p282 for management of alcohol withdrawal.
- Metabolic: uraemia, liver failure, Na^+ or glucose \downarrow , Hb \downarrow , malnutrition (beri-beri, p278).
- Hypoxia: respiratory or cardiac failure.
- Vascular: stroke, myocardial infarction.
- Head injury, \uparrow ICP, space-occupying lesions (eg tumour, subdural haematoma).
- Epilepsy: non-convulsive status epilepticus (see BOX 2), post-ictal states.
- Nutritional: thiamine, nicotinic acid, or B_{12} deficiency.

Differential If agitated, is it anxiety? Check conscious level. If delusions or hallucinations, is it a **primary mental illness** (eg schizophrenia), but this is rare on the wards (esp. if no past history) and delirium is very common in ill patients.

Tests Consider FBC, U&E, LFT, blood glucose, ABG, septic screen (urine dipstick, CXR, blood cultures); also ECG, malaria films, LP, EEG, CT/MRI.

Management After identifying and treating the underlying cause, aim to:

- Reduce distress and prevent accidents; encourage family to sit with the patient.
- Nurse in a *moderately lit*, quiet room, ideally with the *same* staff in attendance (minimizes confusion) where the patient can be watched closely. Improve orientation to time and place—**hunt down hearing aids/glasses**, give repeated reassurance.
- Do not use physical restraints—and remove catheters and other impedimenta.
- Augment self-care. Discourage passive dependency and inappropriate napping.
- Use the **3M** non-drug cures for agitation: **music**, **massage**, and **muscle relaxation**.
- Minimize medication (especially sedatives); but if disruptive, some sedation may be wanted, eg haloperidol 0.5–2mg, or chlorpromazine 50–100mg, *po* if they will take it, *im* if not (p11). Wait 20min to judge effect—further doses can be given if needed.

NB: Avoid chlorpromazine in the elderly and in alcohol withdrawal (p282).

► Be aware that delirium may persist beyond the duration of the original illness by several weeks in the elderly. Do not assume this must be dementia—provide support and reassess 1–2 months later.

¹ Delirium, from the latin *de* (from) and *lira* (ridge between furrows), meaning 'out of one's furrow'.

Tests of consciousness, and an explanation of dissociative states

Consciousness results wherever four entities co-exist: perception, memory, emotion, and orientation in space and time. Remorse, for example, is a blend of these constructs. If a black box exhibited remorse no further test would be needed to establish its consciousness. Patients are often black boxes to us: we are never *sure* what is going on inside. How do we find out? Dialogue is the first method. Patients with clouding of consciousness often engage in dialogue, but we get the feeling that they are not quite with us. A conversation may suggest clouding of consciousness—until the moment when the patient makes an ironic remark, banishing the need for formal tests of consciousness.

If a patient knows where he is, the time of day, and his memory is OK, we think there is no problem with consciousness—and move on to more mundane issues. This is a pity because changes in consciousness are often subtle—and we need to ask others who know the patient well if there has been any change. So elucidating changes in consciousness depends on triangulation between 3 interacting centres of consciousness—our own, the patient's, and a third party. These issues are exemplified in the next boxes, where we illustrate the concept of derealization. Here, it is enough to say that *depersonalization* and *derealization* are part of the *dissociative states* (one example of a disorder of consciousness). Dissociation is a mechanism that separates streams of memories or thoughts from 'now' consciousness. These fragments may resurface and pursue a life of their own. *Causes*: migraine, epilepsy, head injury, stress, and prolonged sleeplessness (which is why all doctors instinctively understand this odd syndrome).

Non-convulsive status epilepticus as a cause of confusion

Non-convulsive status epilepticus is under-diagnosed, and may manifest as confusion, impaired cognition/memory, odd behaviour, and dreamy derealization¹⁷⁰ (the external world appears unfamiliar and unreal—its objects, anchored neither in space nor time, float as in a more or less lucid dream). Other features: aggression, psychosis ± abnormalities of eye movement, eyelid myoclonus, and odd postures. It may occur in the context of classic convulsive seizures (eg prolonged 'post-ictal' state) or ischaemic brain injury (especially haemorrhagic).¹⁷¹ Other causes/associations: drugs (eg antidepressants), infections (arboviruses; HIV; syphilis), neoplasia, dementia, sudden $\uparrow\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ¹⁷² renal failure (eg with cephalosporin therapy or peritoneal dialysis). *Diagnosis*: EEG evidence of rhythmical discharges (eg prolonged 3-per-second spike-wave complexes). Subsequent MRI may show focal oedema (eg in the hippocampus). *Rx*: lorazepam 2mg IV as 1st-line. Valproate IV may be indicated (this requires specialist evaluation).

Ganser syndrome—an example of dissociative symptoms

There are absurd or approximate answers to questions (*paralogias*)—wrong but suggesting that the answers are unconsciously known but have been passed by or half-ignored by the current (dissociated) stream of consciousness. There are also: clouding of consciousness (or hypervigilance); somatic conversion symptoms (eg inexplicable paralysis—formerly known as hysterical symptoms); hallucinations; and amnesia, regarding the episode. *Causes/associations*: head injury, Munchausen's syndrome, solitary confinement, very stressful events.¹⁷³

When asked to spell WORLD backwards, one Ganser patient replied 'EBOLG'. When asked to recall the words 'honesty', 'window', and 'lace', he replied 'modesty', 'house', and 'shoes'.¹⁷⁴ *NB*: ▶ ictal and post-ictal states may present with similarly impaired consciousness, perceptual abnormalities, and odd behaviour.

Dementia is a syndrome encompassing progressive deficits in several cognitive domains. The initial presentation is usually of memory loss over months or years (► if over days think infection or stroke; if over weeks think depression). In later stages, non-cognitive symptoms such as agitation, aggression or apathy may complicate care, which becomes increasingly difficult requiring specialist input.

Prevalence Rare if <55yrs of age; 5–10% if >65yrs; 20% if >80yrs; 70% if >100yrs.

Diagnosis The key is a good history both from the patient and someone who knows them well (eg spouse, relatives, or friends). Ask about the *timeline* of the progression of their impaired cognition/memory, what was noticed first and what particular aspects of it they have most difficulty with (autobiographical, political,¹ etc). Ask also about how it affects their *activities of daily living*, and their ability to cope with tasks such as *financial affairs* and *medications*—some may cope well with significant impairment, others may be disproportionately affected. Examples from the spouse or relative will be helpful. There may also be agitation, aggression, wandering, hallucinations, slow repetitious speech, apathy, mood disturbance (NB: depression is common in dementia, but can also cause cognitive impairment). **Cognitive testing:** use a validated dementia screen such as the AMTS (p70), TYM (p85), or similar, plus short tests of verbal recall (eg HVLt, which is more sensitive in mild impairment) and executive function (eg CLOX).¹⁷⁵ **Mental state examination** may reveal anxiety, depression or hallucinations. **Physical examination** may identify a physical cause of the cognitive impairment, risk factors (esp. for vascular dementia), or parkinsonism.

Investigations FBC, ESR, U&E, Ca²⁺, LFT, TSH, autoantibodies, B₁₂/folate (treat low-normals, p328); syphilis serology.¹⁷⁶ CT/MRI (for vascular damage, haemorrhage or structural pathology). Consider also: EEG, CSF, functional imaging (FDG, PET, SPECT).¹⁷⁷ Metabolic, genetic, and HIV tests if indicated.

Commonest causes Alzheimer's disease (AD) See p492.

Vascular dementia: ~25% of all dementias. It represents the cumulative effects of many small strokes, thus sudden onset and stepwise deterioration is characteristic (but often hard to recognize). Look for evidence of vascular pathology (Bp†, past strokes, focal CNS signs).

Lewy body dementia: The 3rd commonest cause (15–25%) after Alzheimer's and vascular causes, typically with fluctuating cognitive impairment, detailed visual hallucinations (eg small animals or children) and later, parkinsonism (p498). Histology is characterized by Lewy bodies² in brainstem and neocortex.

Fronto-temporal (Pick's³) dementia: Frontal & temporal atrophy without Alzheimer histology (p493); genes on chromosome 9 are important, as in MND (p510).

Signs: Executive impairment; behavioural/personality change; early preservation of episodic memory and spatial orientation; disinhibition (not *always* bad⁴); hyperorality, stereotyped behaviour, and emotional unconcern.

Other causes: Alcohol/drug abuse; repeated head trauma; pellagra (p278), Whipple's disease (p730); Huntington's (p716); CJD (p710); Parkinson's (p498); HIV; cryptococcosis (p440); familial autosomal dominant Alzheimer's; CADASIL (p474).


Ameliorable causes

- T₄↓; B₁₂/folate↓
- Thiamine↓ (eg alcohol)
- Syphilis
- Tumours (meningioma)
- Subdural haematoma
- Parkinson's (p498)
- CNS cysticercosis (p444)
- HIV (± cryptococcosis)
- Normal pressure hydrocephalus (dilated ventricles *without* enlarged cerebral sulci. **Signs:** gait apraxia, incontinence, dementia; CSF shunts help)
- Whipple's disease (p730)
- Pellagra (p278)

¹ Autobiographical and political memory are held in different areas: S Black 2004 *Neuropsychologia* 42 25.

² Lewy bodies are eosinophilic intracytoplasmic neuronal inclusion bodies; there is overlap between Lewy body dementia, Alzheimer's and Parkinson's (PD), making treatment hard as L-dopa can precipitate delusions, and antipsychotic drugs worsen PD. Rivastigmine may help all 3.¹⁷⁸

³ Pick's dementia is a term now reserved for fronto-temporal dementia with Pick inclusion bodies.

⁴  An artist who had been constrained by over-adherence to one school of art had a fascinating blossoming of creativity and emotional insight with the arrival of fronto-temporal dementia.¹⁷⁹ Similarly, the unique writing style of 19th century critic and author John Ruskin is thought to be a consequence of CADASIL. This poses the question of what counts as a disease. If you can answer this question unequivocally perhaps you are over-endowed, fronto-temporally? Let some ambiguity in!

The positive features of dementia (Auntie Kathleen's syndrome)

Positive features include wandering, aggression, flight of ideas, and logorrhoea:

"Not for her a listless, dull-eyed wordless decline; with her it is all rush, gabble, celerity. She had always been a talker, but now her dementia unleashes torrents of speech...one train of thought switching to another without signal or pause, rattling across points and through junctions at a rate no listener can follow... Following the sense is like trying to track a particular ripple in a pelting torrent of talk."

Alan Bennett *Untold Stories*, 87

Practical issues in managing dementia

- Patients with dementia become increasingly dependent and develop increasingly complex needs as the disease progresses. Most will at some stage experience behavioural or psychological symptoms, which can be particularly distressing for the carer. ▶ See *Living with neurological disease*, p449. Issues to consider are:
- **A care coordinator** (via Social Services or the local Old Age Community Mental Healthcare Team) is vital to coordinate the various teams and services that may at various times become necessary, and to arrange the *special help* that is available for those caring for demented relatives at home, eg in the UK:
 - Laundry services for soiled linen
 - Attendance allowance
 - Car badge giving priority parking
 - Respite care in hospital
 - Carers' groups for mutual support
 - Day care/lunch clubs
 - Help from occupational therapist, district nurses, and community psychiatric nurses
 - Council tax rebate (forms from local council office)
- **Capacity:** Can the patient make decisions regarding medical or financial affairs? Wherever possible, allow the patient to guide decisions. If currently capacitous suggest making an advanced directive or appointing a Lasting Power of Attorney.
- **Develop routines:** Routines learned early on are retained until late in the disease, helping patients to maintain their independence for longer. Habitually keeping house keys in the same place, for example, will help to avoid losing them by forgetting their whereabouts later on.
- **Plan ahead:** Relocation to a new house or to a care home can be very disruptive for a patient with dementia. Discuss this with the patient and their family. If the family are keen to help but live far away, consider moving earlier rather than later, when a new environment will be harder to become accustomed to. Equally, regular respite visits to the same care home may make a final move there easier at a later date.
- **Day services** can be invaluable for stimulating patients and providing regular, much-needed breaks for carers. Multisensory stimulation, massage, music,¹⁸⁰ animal therapy and aromatherapy¹⁸¹ can help mood, aggression, anxiety, and speech.¹⁸² Structured conversation and exercise also help.¹⁸³
- **Who will care for the carers?** Carer stress is inevitable, causing morbidity and mortality. Support groups, telephone helplines, respite care and your unswerving loyalty can all ease the burden; eg UK Alzheimer's Disease Society: 0845 300 0336.
- **Challenging behaviour:** First rule out pain and infection as the cause of the worsening behaviour. Then, if non-pharmacological therapies fail, consider **trazodone** (50–300mg at night) or **lorazepam** (0.5–1mg/12–24h po). If the agitation is severe, get help: antipsychotics such as quetiapine, risperidone and olanzapine may improve positive symptoms, but cognition, verbal fluency, and longevity may be worsened.¹⁸⁴ Haloperidol (0.5–4mg) can be useful in the short term.
 - ▶ Avoid using antipsychotics for agitation in Lewy body dementia (↑risk of SE). There is some evidence that acetylcholinesterase inhibitors may help (see p493).
- **Depression** is common. Try an SSRI (eg citalopram 10–20mg OD) or, if severe, mirtazapine (15–45mg at night if eGFR >40). Cognitive behavioural therapy can help with social withdrawal and catastrophic thinking.
- **Avoid drugs that impair cognition** (eg neuroleptics, sedatives, tricyclics, p11).

This leading cause of dementia is *the* big neuropsychiatric disorder of our times, dominating the care of the elderly and the lives of their families who give up work, friends, and ways of life to support relatives through the long final years. Their lives can be tormented—"I am chained to a corpse" (p449)—or transformed, depending on how gently patients exit into their "worlds of preoccupied emptiness". *Onset* may be from 40yrs (earlier in Down's syndrome, in which AD is inevitable).

Presentation See p490 for diagnosing dementias (any type). Suspect Alzheimer's in adults with enduring,¹ progressive and global cognitive impairment (unlike other dementias which may affect certain domains but not others): **visuo-spatial skill** (gets lost), **memory**, **verbal abilities** and **executive function** (planning) are all affected (use neuropsychometric testing to identify affected domains; see p490), and there is **anosognosia**—a lack of insight into the problems engendered by the disease, eg missed appointments, misunderstood conversations or plots of films, and mishandling of money and clerical work.¹⁸⁵ Later there may be irritability; mood disturbance (depression or euphoria); behavioural change (eg aggression, wandering, disinhibition); psychosis (hallucinations or delusions); agnosia (may not recognize self in the mirror). There is no standard natural history. Cognitive impairment is progressive, but non-cognitive symptoms may come and go over months. Towards the end, often but not invariably, patients become sedentary, taking little interest in anything.

Cause Modest concordance between monozygotic and dizygotic twins suggests that environmental and genetic factors both play a role. Accumulation of β -amyloid peptide, a degradation product of amyloid precursor protein, results in progressive neuronal damage, neurofibrillary tangles, numbers of amyloid plaques, and loss of the neurotransmitter *acetylcholine* (fig 1). Defective clearance of β -amyloid plaques by macrophages appears to relate to altered macrophage gene expression.² Neuronal loss is selective—the hippocampus, amygdala, temporal neocortex and subcortical nuclei (eg nucleus basalis of Meynert) are most vulnerable (p448).¹⁸⁶ Vascular effects are also important—95% of AD patients show evidence of vascular dementia.

Risk factors 1st-degree relative with AD; Down's syndrome; homozygosity for apolipoprotein e (ApoE) e4 allele; PICALM, CL1 & CLU mutations;¹⁸⁷ vascular risk factors (\uparrow BP, diabetes, dyslipidaemia, \uparrow homocysteine, AF); \downarrow physical/cognitive activity; depression; loneliness (risk $\uparrow \times 2$; simply living alone is not a risk factor). Evidence on alcohol is inconsistent: ≥ 2 drinks/day accelerated onset of AD by 5yrs in one study; others report that red wine is protective; ≥ 20 cigarettes/day accelerates onset by 2.3yrs.¹⁸⁸ Delaying onset by 5yrs would \downarrow prevalence by $\sim 50\%$.¹⁸⁸

Management ▶ See p491 for a general approach to management in dementia.

- Refer to a specialist memory service.
- Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (BOX).
- BP control (complex interaction between vasculopathy and AD)³
- Ginkgo biloba (EGb 761® 240mg/d) may improve wellbeing of patients *and* carers;^{189,190} data on other antioxidants are mixed. Huperzine A (traditional Chinese Qian Ceng Ta) is promising.

Prevention in the context of AD's time-course: Changes in CSF amyloid- β are seen ~ 25 yrs before onset of unequivocal symptoms (usy) and its deposition is detected 15yrs before usy. CSF tau protein & brain atrophy are also detected 15yrs before usy.¹⁹¹ Cerebral hypometabolism and impaired episodic memory occur 10yrs before usy. Global cognitive impairment occurs 5yrs before usy. Prevention will probably be most effective before any of this starts. Polyunsaturated fatty acid (PUFA), folic acid and B vitamins (BOX) may have a role here.¹⁹² NB: there is no simple relationship between brain structure, neurofibrillary tangles, and function.¹⁹³ **Mean survival:** 7 yrs from usy.

¹ 'Enduring' doesn't mean unfluctuating: cognition comes and goes, allowing poetic insights, as in Iris Murdoch's poignant self-diagnosis: "I am sailing into the dark".

² This is partly correctable by bisdemethoxycurcumin, found in the turmeric component of curries;¹⁹⁴ just one reason why AD may be less prevalent in India: 0.5% vs 1.7% in USA.^{195,196}

³ In heart failure there is a 2-fold risk of AD; excess risk halves with antihypertensive use.¹⁹⁷ Doppler middle cerebral artery monitoring for 1h finds that small emboli occur in 40% in AD vs 15% in controls.¹⁹⁸

Pharmacological treatment of cognitive decline

Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors: Evidence that acetylcholinesterase inhibitors are modestly effective in treating Alzheimer's is good.¹⁹⁹ There is also limited evidence for their efficacy in the dementia of Parkinson's disease,²⁰⁰ and rivastigmine may improve behavioural symptoms in Lewy body dementia.²⁰¹ They appear to help the laying down of new memories more than accessing old ones,²⁰² and delay the need for institutional care, but not its duration.²⁰³ They are currently available in the UK only through specialist memory services, for patients whose MMSE lies between 10 and 20. However, one cannot say "Stop these drugs as he has only scored x on the MMSE" (notoriously variable from day to day) if the wife says "but he's brighter, more motivated".²⁰⁴ ▶ Be aware that using QALYs (p10) relentlessly can make us cruel; sentiment (the alternative to QALYs) may make us useless, but it is better to be useless than cruel. The Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) states that all AD patients could benefit from acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, although this did not take into account a cost-benefit analysis.

- Donepezil:¹ initially 5mg PO, eg doubled after 1 month.
- Rivastigmine:² 1.5mg/12h initially, ↑ to 3–6mg/12h. Patches are also available.
- Galantamine: initially 4mg/12h, ↑ to 8–12mg/12h PO. Originally isolated from daffodils. SE: D&V, cramps, incontinence, headache, dizziness, insomnia, LFT↑; rarely, but importantly, heart block/arrhythmias, hallucinations, peptic ulcers.

▶ The cholinergic effects of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors may exacerbate peptic ulcer disease and heart block. Always ask about dyspepsia and cardiac symptoms, and do an ECG before starting treatment.

Antiglutamatergic treatment: Randomized trials show that memantine (an NMDA antagonist, see p455) is reasonably effective in late stage disease. Dose: 5mg/24h initially, ↑ by 5mg/d weekly to 10mg/12h. SE: hallucinations, confusion, hypertonia, hypersexuality.

Targeting β amyloid has proved disappointing, except for an equivocal effect of solanezumab—mild AD patients may get up to a 42% reduction in decline in cognition after 18 months treatment (but the EXPEDITION2 study was negative).²⁰⁵

Folic acid and B vitamins: 0.8mg folic acid, 0.5mg vit B₁₂ + 20mg vit B₆/day PO decreases mild cognitive impairment (MCI) if baseline homocysteine >11μmol/l. B vitamins also ↓ rates of MRI brain atrophy in MCI (Celeste de Jager's VITACOG trials).²⁰⁶

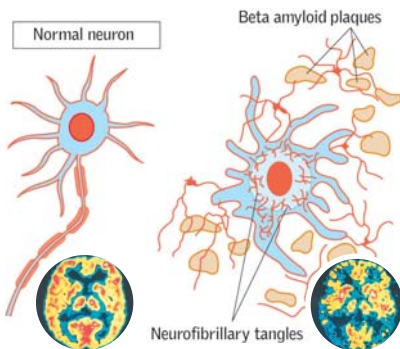


Fig 1. Alzheimer's has 2 hallmarks: senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles. 30yrs ago their proteins were identified, precipitating an avalanche of molecular research and promises of new drugs. So why is progress so slow? Do we need a paradigm shift from the reductionism that defines amyloid and tau hypotheses—to recognition that AD is a manifestation of cellular adaptation, eg a defence against oxidative injury? If AD pathology is a host response rather than a manifestation of protein injury, it is unlikely to be the best target for drugs.

1 Pre-treatment orbitofrontal signs (agitation, disinhibition, odd motor activity) may predict good response to donepezil.²⁰⁷

2 Pre-treatment hallucinations predict a response to rivastigmine.²⁰⁸

Epilepsy is a recurrent tendency to spontaneous, intermittent, abnormal electrical activity in part of the brain, manifesting as *seizures*.¹ These may take many forms, but for each individual patient they tend to be stereotyped. *Convulsions* are the motor signs of electrical discharges. Many of us would have seizures in abnormal metabolic circumstances—eg Na⁺↓, hypoxia (eg reflex anoxic seizures in faints): we would not normally be said to have epilepsy. The prevalence of active epilepsy is ~1%.

Elements of a seizure A *prodrome* lasting hours or days may rarely precede the seizure. It is not part of the seizure itself: the patient or others notice a change in mood or behaviour. An *aura* is part of the seizure of which the patient is aware, and may precede its other manifestations. The aura may be a strange feeling in the gut, or an experience such as *déjà vu* (disturbing sense of familiarity), or strange smells or flashing lights. It implies a partial (focal) seizure, often, but not necessarily, from the temporal lobe. *Post-ictally* there may be headache, confusion, myalgia, and a sore tongue; or temporary weakness after a focal seizure in motor cortex (Todd's palsy, p726), or dysphasia following a focal seizure in the temporal lobe.

Causes ⅔ are idiopathic (often familial). **Structural:** Cortical scarring (eg head injury years before onset), developmental (eg dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumour or cortical dysgenesis), space-occupying lesion, stroke, hippocampal sclerosis (eg after a febrile convulsion), vascular malformations. **Others:** Tuberous sclerosis, sarcoidosis, SLE, PAN. **Non-epileptic causes of seizures:** Trauma, stroke, haemorrhage, T1CP; alcohol or benzodiazepine withdrawal; **metabolic disturbance** (hypoxia, Na⁺↓, Ca²⁺↓, glucose↑↓, uraemia); liver disease; infection (eg meningitis, encephalitis, syphilis, cysticercosis, HIV); T⁺; drugs (tricyclics, cocaine, tramadol, theophylline); pseudoseizures (p496).

Diagnosis There are three key questions to consider:

- 1 Are these really seizures?** A detailed description from a witness of 'the fit' is vital (but ask yourself: "Are they reliable?" In the heat of the moment many witnesses report twitching when none took place. Tongue-biting and a slow recovery are very suggestive. Not everything that twitches is epilepsy—reflex anoxic convulsions due to syncope are particularly difficult. Try hard not to diagnose epilepsy in error—therapy has significant side-effects, and the diagnosis is stigmatizing and has implications for employment, insurance, and driving. See p464 for **AD**.
- 2 What type of seizure is it—partial or generalized?** The attack's *onset* is the key concern here. If the seizure begins with focal features, it is a partial seizure, however rapidly it then generalizes. See **BOX**.
- 3 Any triggers?** Eg alcohol, stress, fevers, certain sounds, flickering lights/TV, contrasting patterns, reading/writing? Does he recognize warning events (eg twitches) so he can abort the fit before it generalizes? TV-induced fits rarely need drugs.

In assessing a first-ever seizure, consider also:

- **Is it really the first?** Ask the family and patient about past funny turns/odd behaviour. *Déjà vu* and odd episodic feelings of fear may well be relevant.
- **Was the seizure provoked?** (see 'Non-epileptic causes' above) Provoked 1st seizures are less likely to recur (3–10%, unless the cause is irreversible, eg an infarct or glioma); if it was unprovoked, recurrence rates are 30–50%.²⁰⁹ NB: provocations are different to triggers: most people would have a seizure given sufficient provocation, but most people do not have seizures however many triggers they are exposed to, so triggered seizures suggest epilepsy. Triggered attacks tend to recur.
- Prompt investigation, eg with admission for 24h for bloods, drugs screen, LP (if safe), EEG—p496 CT/MRI+enhancement (or else infective causes, eg TB, may be missed).²¹⁰ Admit to substantiate ideas of pseudoseizures, or for recurrent seizures.

Counselling After any 'fit', advise about dangers (eg swimming, driving, heights) until the diagnosis is known; then give *individualized* counselling on employment, sport, insurance and ►conception (**OHCS** p29). Avoid driving until seizure-free for >1yr; if in the UK, say "you must contact DVLA" (p153). Document this.

1 ↑Membrane excitation (epileptogenicity) may be related to disorders of synaptic transmission, K⁺ channelopathies, or α-subunit mutations (eg SCN2A; SCN1A) of voltage-gated Na⁺ channel.

Seizure classification²¹¹

Partial seizures Focal onset, with features referable to a part of one hemisphere (see BOX). Often seen with underlying structural disease.

- **Simple partial seizure:** Awareness is unimpaired, with focal motor, sensory (olfactory, visual, etc), autonomic or psychic symptoms. No post-ictal symptoms.
- **Complex partial seizures:** Awareness is impaired. May have a simple partial onset (=aura), or impaired awareness at onset. Most commonly arise from the temporal lobe. Post-ictal confusion is common with seizures arising from the temporal lobe, whereas recovery is rapid after seizures in the frontal lobe.
- **Partial seizure with secondary generalization:** In $\frac{2}{3}$ of patients with partial seizures, the electrical disturbance, which starts focally (as either a simple or complex partial seizure), spreads widely, causing a secondary generalized seizure, which is typically convulsive.

Primary generalized seizures Simultaneous onset of electrical discharge throughout cortex, with no localizing features referable to only one hemisphere.

- **Absence seizures:** Brief (≤ 10 s) pauses, eg suddenly stops talking in mid-sentence, then carries on where left off. Presents in childhood.
- **Tonic-clonic seizures:** Loss of consciousness. Limbs stiffen (tonic), then jerk (clonic). May have one without the other. Post-ictal confusion and drowsiness.
- **Myoclonic seizures:** Sudden jerk of a limb, face or trunk. The patient may be thrown suddenly to the ground, or have a violently disobedient limb: one patient described it as '*my flying-saucer epilepsy*', as crockery which happened to be in the hand would take off.
- **Atonic (akinetic) seizures:** Sudden loss of muscle tone causing a fall, no LOC.
- **Infantile spasms:** (OHCs p206) Commonly associated with tuberous sclerosis.

NB: the classification of *epileptic syndromes* is separate to the classification of seizures, and is based on seizure type, age of onset, EEG findings and other features such as family history. Seizure classifications based on semiology also exist.²¹²

Localizing features of partial (focal) seizures

Temporal lobe • Automatisms—complex motor phenomena, but with impaired awareness and no recollection afterwards, varying from primitive oral (lip smacking, chewing, swallowing) or manual (fumbling, fiddling, grabbing) movements, to complex actions (singing, kissing, driving a car and violent acts);²¹³ • Abdominal rising sensation or pain (\pm ictal vomiting; or rarely episodic fevers²¹⁴ or $\delta\&\nu$ ²¹⁵); • Dysphasia (ictal or post-ictal); • Memory phenomena—*déjà vu* (when everything seems strangely familiar), or *jamais vu* (everything seems strangely unfamiliar); • Hippocampal involvement may cause emotional disturbance, eg sudden terror, panic, anger or elation, and derealization (out-of-body experiences)²¹⁶, which in combination may manifest as excessive religiosity;²¹⁷ • Uncal involvement may cause hallucinations of smell or taste and a dreamlike state,²¹⁸ and seizures in auditory cortex may cause complex auditory hallucinations, eg music or conversations, or palinacousis²¹⁹; • Delusional behaviour; • Finally, you may find yourself not believing your patient's bizarre story—eg "Canned music at Tesco's always makes me cry and then pass out, unless I wear an earplug in one ear"²²⁰ or "I get orgasms when I brush my teeth" (right temporal lobe hyper- and hypoperfusion, respectively).²²¹

Frontal lobe • Motor features such as posturing, versive movements of the head and eyes;²²² or peddling movements of the legs • Jacksonian march (a spreading focal motor seizure with retained awareness, often starting with the face or a thumb) • Motor arrest • Subtle behavioural disturbances (often diagnosed as psychogenic) • Dysphasia or speech arrest • Post-ictal Todd's palsy (p726).

Parietal lobe • Sensory disturbances—tingling, numbness, pain (rare) • Motor symptoms (due to spread to the pre-central gyrus).

Occipital lobe • Visual phenomena such as spots, lines, flashes.

1 The temporolimbic system tags certain stimuli as derealized, crucially important, harmonious, and/or joyous or ecstatic, making us prone to describe these experiences within religious frameworks.²²³

Don't just think about drugs! We get better results if we take time to teach patients about their brain and its functioning, and to explain how their feelings, thinking, and behaviour can help living with epilepsy, and, perhaps, partly to control seizures. Relaxation training or aura interruption (eg smelling a pleasant smell if the aura is a certain bad smell)^{224,225} may abort emotion-triggered seizures (p494). Andrews-Reiter hypotheses 226

► **Involve patients in all decisions.** Concordance depends on communication and doctor-patient negotiation (p3). Living with *active* epilepsy creates many problems (eg inability to drive or operate machinery, drug side-effects) and fears (eg of sudden death). Neurologists may have little time to explore these issues, while GPs may have no special interest in epilepsy. Enlist the help of an **epilepsy nurse specialist**, who can provide telephone advice and annual reviews to monitor drug efficacy and side-effects, to address employment, leisure, and reproductive issues, and, after a few seizure-free years, to consider drug withdrawal.

Drugs We do not advise drugs after one fit, unless risk of recurrence is high (eg structural brain lesion, focal CNS deficit, or unequivocal epileptiform EEG). After a 2nd fit, discuss options with the patient; drugs are probably indicated (provided a specialist has confirmed the diagnosis). If only 1 fit every 2yrs, he or she may accept the risk (if there is no need to drive or operate machinery) rather than have to take drugs every day. Drug choice depends on seizure type and epilepsy syndrome, other medications and co-morbidities, plans for pregnancy, and patient preference:

- **Generalized tonic-clonic seizures:** Sodium valproate or lamotrigine (often better tolerated,²²⁷ and less teratogenic) are 1st-line, then carbamazepine or topiramate. Others: levetiracetam, oxcarbazepine, clobazam.
- **Absence seizures:** Sodium valproate, lamotrigine or ethosuximide.²²⁸
- **Tonic, atonic and myoclonic seizures:** As for generalized tonic-clonic seizures, but avoiding carbamazepine and oxcarbazepine, which may worsen seizures.
- **Partial seizures ± secondary generalization:** Carbamazepine is 1st-line, then sodium valproate, lamotrigine, oxcarbazepine or topiramate. Others: levetiracetam, gabapentin, tiagabine, phenytoin, clobazam.

Treat with *one* drug and with *one* doctor in charge only. Slowly build up doses over 2-3 months (see BOX 1) until seizures are controlled, side-effects are bad, or maximum dosage is reached. If ineffective or not tolerated, switch to the next most appropriate drug. To switch drugs, introduce the new drug (see BOX 1), and only withdraw the 1st drug once established on the 2nd. Dual therapy is necessary in <10% of patients—consider if all appropriate drugs have been tried singly at the optimum dose.

EEG An EEG cannot exclude or refute epilepsy; it forms part of the context for diagnosis, so don't do one if simple syncope is the likely diagnosis (often false +ve). In 1st unprovoked fits, unequivocal epileptiform activity on EEG helps assess risk of recurrence.²²⁹ Only do *emergency* EEGs if non-convulsive status is the problem (p489). Other tests: MRI (structural lesions, p494). Drug levels (is he taking the tablets?). Magnetoencephalography (MEG), PET, cognitive assessment, and ictal SPECT may help localize the epileptogenic focus when evaluating for epilepsy surgery.

Non-epileptic attack disorder (pseudo- or psychogenic seizures) These are not infrequent: suspect this if there are uncontrollable symptoms, no learning disabilities, and CNS exam, CT, MRI, and EEG are normal.²⁰³ It may coexist with true epilepsy.

If drugs don't work... If a single epileptogenic focus can be identified (see above) such as hippocampal sclerosis or a small low-grade tumour, **neurosurgical resection** offers up to 70% chance of seizure freedom, depending on the location of the focus, with the risk of causing focal neurological deficits such as memory impairment, dysphasia or hemianopia.²³⁰ An alternative is **vagal nerve stimulation**, which can reduce seizure frequency and severity in ~33%.

When it all goes wrong **Sudden unexpected death in epilepsy (SUDEP)** is more common in uncontrolled epilepsy, and may be related to nocturnal seizure-associated apnoea or asystole.²³¹ Those with epilepsy have a mortality rate 3-fold that of controls. >700 epilepsy-related deaths are recorded/yr in the UK; up to 17% are SUDEPs. For help with families of those with SUDEP, contact *Epilepsy Bereaved*^{UK} 01235 772852.

Anti-epileptic drugs (AED): doses and side-effects

(see formulary for details)

Carbamazepine: (as slow-release) Initially 100mg/12h, increase by 200mg/d every 2wks up to max 1000mg/12h. **SE:** leucopenia, diplopia, blurred vision, impaired balance, drowsiness, mild generalized erythematous rash, SIADH (rare; see p687).

Lamotrigine: As monotherapy, initially 25mg/d, ↑ by 50mg/d every 2wks up to 100mg/12h (max 250mg/12h). ▶ Halve monotherapy dose if on valproate; double if on carbamazepine or phenytoin (max 350mg/12h). **SE:** maculopapular rash—occurs in 10% (but 1/1000 develop *Stevens-Johnson syndrome* or *toxic epidermal necrolysis*) typically in 1st 8wks, esp if on valproate; warn patients to see a doctor at once if rash or flu symptoms develop; also associated with hypersensitivity (fever, ↑LFTs and disseminated intravascular coagulopathy). Other SEs: diplopia, blurred vision, photosensitivity (SLE-like), tremor, agitation, vomiting, aplastic anaemia.

Levetiracetam: If >16yrs, initially 250mg/24h, increase by 250mg/12h every 2wks up to max 1.5g/12h (if eGFR >80). Psychiatric side-effects are common, eg depression, agitation. Other SEs: D&V, dyspepsia, drowsiness, diplopia, blood dyscrasias.

Phenytoin: Effective and well-tried, but no longer 1st-line for generalized or partial epilepsy due to toxicity (nystagmus, diplopia, tremor, dysarthria, ataxia) and SEs (↓intellect, depression, coarse facial features, acne, gum hypertrophy, polyneuropathy, blood dyscrasias). Dosage is difficult—do blood levels (p766).

Sodium valproate: Initially 300mg/12h, increase by 100mg/12h every 3 days up to max 30mg/kg (or 2.5g) daily. Nausea is very common (take with food).

Vigabatrin: Only used in infantile spasms (due to a high incidence of visual field defects).

▶ Carbamazepine, phenytoin and barbiturates are liver enzyme inducing.

Valproate side-effects

Appetite, weight gain
Liver failure (watch LFT esp. during 1st 6 months)
Pancreatitis
Reversible hair loss (grows back curly)
Oedema
Ataxia
Teratogenicity, **t**remor, **t**hrombocytopenia
Encephalopathy (due to hyperammonaemia)

Women with epilepsy

- **Teratogenicity of AEDs:** Women of child-bearing age should take folic acid 5mg/d. Valproate in particular should be avoided (use lamotrigine).
- **Pre-conception counselling** is vital (5% risk of fetal abnormality, *OHCS* p29).
- **Breastfeeding:** most AEDs except carbamazepine and valproate are present in breast milk. Lamotrigine is not thought to be harmful to infants.
- **The Pill:** Non-enzyme-inducing AEDs have no effect on the Pill. With other AEDs ≥50µg of oestrogen may be needed (Norinyl-1®; ↓pill-free days from 7 to 4; use condoms too) or Depo-Provera® (10-weekly IM). Progesterone-only pills are also affected. Coils are OK for emergency contraception, or levonorgestrel 3mg PO stat.

Stopping anticonvulsants

▶ **Discuss risks and benefits with patients. Informed choices are vital.** Most patients are seizure-free within a few years of starting drugs. More than 50% remain so when drugs are withdrawn. After assessing risks and benefits for the individual patient (eg the need to drive), withdrawal may be tried, if the patient meets these criteria: normal CNS examination, normal IQ, normal EEG prior to withdrawal, seizure-free for >2yrs, and no juvenile myoclonic epilepsy. In one study (*n* = 459), over 5yrs 52% remained seizure-free, compared with 67% who continued their medication.²⁰³ However, in another study, resuming medication did not return the patient to his/her status quo, and not all seizures could be controlled (risk factors: cognitive deficits and partial epilepsy).²³² One way to withdraw drugs in adults is to decrease the dose by 10% every 2-4wks (for carbamazepine, lamotrigine, phenytoin, valproate, and vigabatrin) and by 10% every 4-8wks for phenobarbital, benzodiazepines, and ethosuximide.²³³

James Parkinson (1755–1824) described this cardinal triad:

- 1 Tremor:** Worse at rest; often 'pill-rolling' of thumb over fingers. 4–6 cycles/sec (slower than cerebellar tremor). Distinguish from 'essential tremor', which is a symptomatic postural and action tremor of the upper limbs and head.
- 2 Rigidity/tone:** Rigidity + tremor gives 'cogwheel rigidity', felt by the examiner during rapid pronation/supination.
- 3 Bradykinesia/hypokinesia:** Slow to initiate movement and slow, low-amplitude excursions in repetitive actions, eg ↓ blink rate, monotonous hypophonic speech, micrographia. Gait: ↓ arm-swing, festinace (shuffling steps with flexed trunk, as if chasing one's centre of gravity, **fig 1**), freezing at obstacles or doors. Expressionless face (hypomimesis).

Cause Idiopathic PD¹, or drugs (neuroleptics, metoclopramide, prochlorperazine)^{et al}. Rarely: trauma/boxing; encephalopathy post 'flu; manganese or copper toxicity (Wilson's disease); HIV (HAART helps, p413); Parkinson's-plus syndromes: see BOX.



Fig 1. March à petit pas.

Idiopathic Parkinson's disease (PD)

Presentation Bradykinesia/hypokinesia + one or more of: tremor at rest (one side worse), postural instability ± muscular rigidity. Other signs (MINIBOX) may be subtle, eg poor decoding of the emotional content of speech (prosody),²³⁴ poor executive functioning, and REM sleep disorders. Poor simultaneous motor and cognitive functions can lead to freezing while walking²³⁵ (a devastating symptom) **Typical age at onset:** 65yrs. **Prevalence:** 0.6% at 60–64yrs; 3.5% at 85–89yrs (Europe).

Pathology Mitochondrial DNA dysfunction causes degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra pars compacta (associated with Lewy bodies), hence ↓ striatal dopamine levels.²³⁶

Rx ▶ **Take time!** Sit down over a cup of tea² to clarify how PD, though incurable and progressive, is amenable to palliation. ▶ Explain how you will assemble a multidisciplinary team (GP, neurologist, PD nurse, social worker, carers, physio- & occupational therapist) to boost quality of life. Assess disability & cognition objectively and regularly, eg via UPDRS.^{Unified PD rating scale} ▶ Postural exercises, eg Chinese qigong, help both.²³⁷ Weight lifting has also been 'validated' as superior to simple fitness programs (N=48). ▶ Do all you can to make your patient happy talking about their symptoms: letting their dentist or barber know that their shaking is no big deal will then be easier.

- **Drugs (BOX 1);** a key decision is when to start levodopa. ▶ **Personalize your care plan.** Discuss pros & cons with your patient, eg end-of-dose wearing off and dopamine-induced dyskinesias (develops over 5–10yrs). In view of these, starting late may be wise, eg when >70yrs or when PD seriously interferes with life. NICE recommends referring to a neurologist *before* drugs are used. Dopamine agonists and MAO-B inhibitors may allow delay in starting levodopa, or allow lower doses of levodopa.
- **Neuropsychiatric complications,** such as depression, dementia and psychosis, are common and may reflect disease progression or drug SEs. Try SSRIs for depression. Distinguish drug-induced psychosis (consider reducing DA-agonist doses) from disease progression (try atypical antipsychotics, eg quetiapine, olanzapine).
- **Respite care** is much valued by carers in advanced disease.
- **Deep brain stimulation (DBS)** may help those who are partly dopamine-responsive.²⁴⁰
- **Surgical ablation** of overactive basal ganglia circuits (eg subthalamic nuclei).

Non-motor features:

Sense of smell reduced
Constipation
Visual hallucinations
Frequency/urgency
Dribbling of saliva
Depression & dementia

1 Mutations in FbXo7 may be important in disrupting mitophagy, the process CNS cells use to eliminate faulty mitochondria. PINK1 and Parkin also play a role.

2 Tea might be just the thing: no therapy has proven neuroprotection in PD, but polyphenols in green tea and turmeric (*Curcuma longa*) are strong candidates.^{238,239}

Medical therapy in Parkinson's disease

Levodopa is used combined with a dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor such as **Madopar**® (co-beneldopa) or **Sinemet**® (co-careldopa). 'Modified-release' has little benefit over normal preparations; dispersible tablets have rapid bioavailability and may help 'jump-start' patients in the morning, or during sudden 'off' freezing. SEs: nausea and vomiting can be helped by domperidone; taking the pills with a non-protein snack may help too (protein ↓ effectiveness). Efficacy reduces with time, requiring larger and more frequent dosing, with worsening SE. In the long term, dyskinesias, painful dystonias, and response fluctuations such as unpredictable 'off' freezing and pronounced end-of-dose reduced response are common problems (~50% at 6yrs). Non-motor SE: psychosis; visual hallucinations.

Dopamine agonists (DA): Ropinirole and pramipexole (D3, p455) monotherapy can delay starting L-dopa in early stages of PD, and allow lower doses of L-dopa as PD progresses. **Rotigotine** transdermal patches are available as mono- or additive. SEs: drowsiness, nausea, hallucinations, compulsive behaviour (gambling, hypersexuality, p455). Ergot-derived DA-agonists (**bromocriptine**, **pergolide**, **cabergoline**) can cause heart valvulopathy and serosal fibrosis, and are not favoured.²⁴¹ **Amantadine** (weak DA) is used for drug-induced dyskinesias in late PD.

Apomorphine is a potent DA agonist used with continuous SC infusion to even out end-of-dose effects, or as a rescue-pen for sudden 'off' freezing. SE: injection-site ulcers.

Anticholinergics (eg **benzhexol**, **orphenadrine**) help tremor, but cause confusion in the elderly. SE: dry mouth, dizziness, vision↓, urinary retention, pulse↑, anxiety, confusion, excitement, hallucinations, insomnia, memory↓.²⁴²

MAO-B inhibitors (eg **rasagiline**, **selegiline**) are an alternative to dopamine agonists in early PD. SEs include postural hypotension and atrial fibrillation.

COMT inhibitors (eg **entacapone**, **tolcapone**) may lessen the 'off' time in those with end-of-dose wearing off. Tolcapone has better efficacy, but may cause severe hepatic complications and requires close monitoring of LFT.²⁰³

The future: Non-dopaminergic receptors in the basal ganglia are giving new options: **istradefylline**, an adenosine A_{2A} receptor blocker, potentiates responses to low-dose L-dopa and reduces 'off' time,²⁴³ and **endocannabinoid receptors** have been successfully targeted in PD mouse models.²⁴⁴ Animal studies also hint at a possible neuroprotective and neuroregenerative role for glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF), by using **gene therapy** to increase local GDNF levels.²⁴⁵ Neural stem cell transplantation remains unproven.²⁴⁶

Is a Parkinson's-plus syndrome present? 5 VIVID red flags to unfurl...

- Early postural instability and **v**ertical gaze palsy ± falls; rigidity of trunk > in limbs; symmetrical onset; speech and swallowing problems; little tremor→**progressive supranuclear palsy**: (PSP, Steele-Richardson-Olszewski syndrome).
- Early autonomic features, eg **i**mpotence/incontinence, postural ↓ BP; cerebellar + pyramidal signs; rigidity > tremor→**multiple system atrophy** (MSA; Shy-Drager).
- Fluctuating cognition with **v**isual hallucinations and early dementia→**Lewy body dementia** (p490).
- Akinetic rigidity involving one limb; cortical sensory loss (eg astereognosis); apraxia (even autonomous **i**nterfering activity by affected limb—the 'alien limb' phenomenon)→**cortico-basal degeneration** (CBD).
- Pyramidal signs (legs), eg in **d**iabetic/hypertensive patient who falls²⁴⁷ or has gait problems, eg ataxia (**n**o festination)→**vascular parkinsonism** (2-5% of 'PD').

Cause Discrete plaques of demyelination occur at multiple CNS sites, from T-cell-mediated immune response (trigger is unknown, but see vit. D, below). Demyelination heals poorly, causing *relapsing and remitting* symptoms. Prolonged demyelination causes axonal loss and clinically *progressive* symptoms. **Prevalence:** commoner in temperate areas (England $\geq 42:100,000$; SE Scotland $200:100,000$; ²⁴⁸ rarer in Black Africa/Asia). Lifetime UK risk 1:1000. Adult migrants take their risk with them; children acquire the risk of where they settle. **Mean age of onset:** 30yrs. ♀:♂ $\geq 3:1$. ²⁴⁹

Early exposure to sunlight/vit. D is important, and vit. D status relates to prevention of MS, and fewer symptoms and fewer new lesions on MRI in established MS. ^{250, 251}

Presentation Usually monosymptomatic: unilateral optic neuritis (pain on eye movement and rapid ↓ central vision); numbness or tingling in the limbs; leg weakness; brainstem or cerebellar symptoms (eg diplopia, ataxia). Other signs: see BOX. Symptoms may worsen with heat (eg hot bath) or exercise. Rarely polysymptomatic. **Progression:** Early on, relapses (which can be stress induced) ²⁵² may be followed by remission and full recovery. With time, remissions are incomplete, so disability accumulates. Steady progression of disability from the outset also occurs, while some patients experience no progressive disablement at all. **Poor prognostic signs:** Older ♂; motor signs at onset; many relapses early on; many MRI lesions; axonal loss.

Diagnosis This is clinical, as no test is pathognomonic. It requires *lesions disseminated in time and space*, unattributable to other causes; thus after a 1st episode further evidence is needed. ► Early diagnosis and treatment reduce relapse rates and disability. A careful history may reveal past episodes, eg brief unexplained visual loss, and detailed examination may show more than 1 lesion. **MRI** is sensitive but not specific for plaque detection (*McDonald criteria*, see BOX 2).

~90% presenting with an MS-like 1st episode and consistent MRI lesions go on to develop MS. ²⁵³ MRI may also exclude other causes, eg cord compression. **CSF:** Oligoclonal bands of IgG on electrophoresis that are not present in serum suggest CNS inflammation. Delayed visual, auditory, and somatosensory *evoked potentials*. NMO-IgG antibodies are highly specific for Devic's syndrome. MOG and MBP antibodies in those with a single MS-like clinical lesion can predict time to conversion to definite MS. ²⁵⁴

Rx Encourage a happy, stress-free life if possible (↓ stress can reduce development of new lesions). ²⁵⁵ **RCT** ^{N=121} Minimize disability (disabled living foundation). If poor diet or ↓ sun exposure, give vit. D to achieve serum 25(OH)D levels of $\geq 50\text{nmol/L}$. ²⁵⁶

Steroids: Methylprednisolone, eg ½–1g/24h IV/PO for $\leq 3\text{d}$ shortens acute relapses; use sparingly (\leq twice/yr; steroid SE, p371). It doesn't alter overall prognosis.

Interferons (IFN-1β & IFN-1α): ↓ relapses by 30% in active relapsing-remitting MS; ²⁵⁷ and ↓ lesion accumulation on MRI. ^{258, 259} Their power to delay disability is modest at best, as is their role in progressive MS. SE: flu symptoms, depression, abortion. NB: new gadolinium-enhancing lesions on IFN correlate with severe disability 15yrs later. ²⁵⁹

Monoclonal antibodies: Alemtuzumab acts against T cells in relapsing-remitting MS. 2 trials show it's better than INF. ²⁶⁰ SE: infections, while the immune system reconstitutes itself; autoimmune disease (thyroid, skin, kidney). Natalizumab acts against VLA-4 receptors that allow immune cells to cross the blood-brain barrier. It ↓ relapses in relapsing-remitting MS by 68% and ↓ MRI lesions by 92%. SE: progressive leucoencephalopathy; antibody-mediated resistance.

Non-immunosuppressives: Glatiramer; mitoxantrone (doxorubicin analogue; helps in secondary progressive MS; safety is an issue).

Other drugs: Azathioprine may be as good as interferons for relapsing-remitting MS and is 20 × cheaper. ²⁶¹ NB: there are no good drugs for primary progressive MS. ²⁶²

Palliation: Spasticity: Baclofen 5–25mg/8h PO; diazepam 5mg/8–24h PO (addictive); dantrolene 25mg/24h (max 100mg/6h); tizanidine 2mg/24h PO, ↑ every 4d in steps of 1mg/12h (max 9mg/6h). Endocannabinoid system modulation (Sativex®) has a role. ²⁶³

Tremor: Botulinum toxin type A injections improve arm tremor and functioning. ²⁶⁴

Urgency/frequency: If post-micturition residual urine $>100\text{mL}$, teach intermittent self-catheterization; if $<100\text{mL}$, try tolterodine.

Clinical features (and some personal/social consequences) of MS

"I'm not worried about losing my life; but I am worried about losing my demeanour, my mind, my interaction with life... ." J Hinkleton

Sensory:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Dysaesthesia² •Pins and needles •Vibration sense↓ •Trigeminal neuralgia 	GI: Swallowing disorders; constipation. Eye: Diplopia; hemianopia; optic neuritis; ³ visual phenomena (eg on exercise); ⁴ bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia (p78); pupil defects. ^{5,6}
Motor:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Spastic weakness •Myelitis¹ 	Cerebellum: Trunk and limb ataxia; intention tremor; scanning (ie monotonous) speech; falls.
Sexual/gu: (don't be too shy to ask!)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Erectile dysfunction •Anorgasmia; urine retention; incontinence 	Cognitive/visuospatial decline: ▶ A big cause of unemployment, accidents/isolation; ²⁶⁵ amnesia; mood ↑ or ↓ (avoid ECT); ↓ executive functioning.
NB: T ⁺ , malaise, nausea, vomiting, positional vertigo, seizures, aphasia, meningism, bilateral optic neuritis, CSF leucocytosis and ↑ CSF protein are rare in MS, and may suggest non-MS recurrent demyelinating disease, eg vasculitis or sarcoidosis. ²⁶⁶		

McDonald criteria for diagnosing MS (2010)²⁶⁷

▶ MS remains a clinical diagnosis! These criteria may give too much weight to MRI.²⁶⁸

Clinical presentation	Additional data needed
2 or more attacks (relapses) with 2 or more objective clinical lesions	None; clinical evidence will do; imaging evidence desirable; must conform to MS
2 or more attacks with 1 objective clinical lesion	Typical disseminated lesions on MRI or +ve CSF <i>and</i> ≥2 MRI lesions consistent with MS or 2 nd attack at a new site
1 attack with 2 or more objective clinical lesions	Dissemination in <i>time</i> : •MRI or 2 nd clinical attack
1 attack with 1 objective clinical lesion (monosymptomatic presentation)	Dissemination in <i>space</i> : •MRI or +ve CSF if ≥2 MRI lesions consistent with MS • <i>and</i> dissemination in time (by MRI or a 2 nd clinical attack)
Insidious neurological progression suggestive of MS (primary progressive MS)	+ve CSF <i>and</i> dissemination in space, ie: •MRI evidence of ≥9 T2 brain lesions; <i>or</i> 2 or more cord lesions; <i>or</i> 4–8 brain and 1 cord lesion; <i>or</i> +ve visual evoked potential (VEP) with 4–8 MRI lesions; <i>or</i> +ve VEP + <4 brain lesions + 1 cord lesion <i>and</i> dissemination in time seen on MRI; <i>or</i> continued progression for ≥1yr

Attacks must last >1h, eg weakness, etc (see above), with >30d between attacks.

MRI abnormality: 3 out of 4:

- Gadolinium-enhancing or ≥9 T2 hyperintense lesions if no Gd-enhancing lesion
- 1 or more infratentorial lesions •1 or more juxtacortical lesions
- ≥3 periventricular lesions (1 spinal cord lesion = 1 brain lesion)

CSF: Oligoclonal IgG bands in CSF (and not serum) or tIgG index.

Evoked potentials: (EP) This counts if delayed but well-preserved waveform.

What provides MRI evidence of dissemination in time? A Gd-enhancing lesion demonstrated in a scan done at least 3 months following onset of clinical attack at a site different from attack, *or* if no Gd-enhancing lesions at a 3-month scan, follow-up scan after another 3 months showing Gd-lesion or new T2 lesion.²⁶⁹

Six MS eponyms: Loss of motor, sensory, autonomic, reflex, and sphincter function below the level of a lesion indicates *transverse myelitis*. *Longitudinal myelitis* also occurs. **Devic's syndrome**⁽³⁾ (neuromyelitis optica—NMO) is an MS variant with transverse myelitis, optic atrophy and NMO-IgG antibodies (p712).

In **Lhermitte's sign**⁽²⁾, neck flexion causes 'electric shocks' in trunk/limbs. Also +ve in cervical spondylosis, cord tumours and subacute combined degeneration of the cord (B₁₂↓). Along with dysaesthetic pain, trigeminal neuralgia, and painful tonic MS spasms, it comprises the MS-related central pain disorders.²⁷⁰

Optic neuritis symptoms: •Acuity↓/temporary blindness ± complex visual hallucinations of faces,²⁷¹ ie **Charles Bonnet syndrome**⁽³⁾ (rare) •**Uhthoff's phenomenon**⁽⁴⁾ (↓vision on exercise, hot meals, hot baths); •Phosphenes (flashes) on eye movement •**Pulfrich effect** (unequal eye latencies, causing disorientation in traffic as straight trajectories seem curved and distances are misjudged on looking sideways).²⁷²

Efferent, afferent or relative afferent pupillary defects (p79). An **Argyle Robertson-type pupil**⁽³⁾ is rarer (p79; ΔΔ: syphilis, DM, MS or sarcoidosis—lesion in or near the **Edinger-Westphal nucleus**⁽⁶⁾).²⁷³

Signs • **↑ICP** (see p840): Headache worse on waking, lying down, bending forward, or with coughing (p460); vomiting; papilloedema (only in 50% of tumours); ↓GCS.

- **Seizures**: Seen in ≤50%. Exclude sol in all adult-onset seizures, especially if focal, or with a localizing aura or post-ictal weakness (Todd's palsy, p726).
- **Evolving focal neurology**: See box for localizing signs. ↑ICP causes *false localizing signs*: VIth nerve palsy is commonest (p76) due to its long intracranial course.
- **Subtle personality change**: Irritability, lack of application to tasks, lack of initiative, socially inappropriate behaviour.

Causes Tumour (primary or metastatic, below), aneurysm, abscess (25% multiple); chronic subdural haematoma, granuloma (p187, eg tuberculoma), cyst (eg cysticercosis). **Tumours**: 30% are metastatic (eg breast, lung, melanoma). **Primaries**: astrocytoma, glioblastoma multiforme (opinion remains divided over association with mobile phone use),^{274, 275} oligodendroglioma, ependymoma. Also meningioma (♀:♂≈2:1), primary CNS lymphoma (eg as non-infectious manifestation of HIV), and cerebellar haemangioblastoma.

Differential diagnosis Stroke, head injury, venous sinus thrombosis, vasculitis (p558; eg SLE, syphilis, PAN, giant cell arteritis), MS, encephalitis, post-ictal (Todd's palsy, p726), metabolic, or U&E disturbance. Also colloid cyst of the 3rd ventricle and idiopathic intracranial hypertension.

Tests CT ± MRI (good for posterior fossa masses). Consider biopsy. Avoid LP before imaging (risks *coning*, ie cerebellar tonsils herniate through the foramen magnum).

Tumour management **Benign**: Removal if possible but some may be inaccessible. **Malignant**: Excision of gliomas is hard as resection margins are rarely clear, but surgery does give a tissue diagnosis, it debulks pre-radiotherapy, and makes a cavity for inserting **carmustine wafers**²⁷⁶ (may cause serious cerebral oedema).²⁷⁷ If a tumour is inaccessible but causing hydrocephalus, a **ventriculo-peritoneal shunt** can help. **Chemo-radiotherapy** is used post-op for gliomas or metastases, and as sole therapy if surgery is impossible. Oligodendroglioma with 1p/19q deletions is especially sensitive. In glioblastoma, **temozolomide** (a new alkylating agent) ↑survival²⁷⁸ (benefit is mainly if tumours have methylated methylguanine methyltransferase gene promoters and are thus unable to repair chemotherapy-induced DNA damage).²⁷⁹ **Seizure prophylaxis** (eg phenytoin) is important, but often fails. **Treat headache** (eg codeine 60mg/4h po). **Cerebral oedema**: Dexamethasone 4mg/8h po; mannitol if ↑ICP acutely (p841). Plan meticulous palliative treatment (p536).

Prognosis Poor but improving (<50% survival at 5yrs) for CNS primaries; 40% 20yr survival for cerebellar haemangioblastoma; benign tumours are curable by excision.

Third ventricle colloid cysts These congenital cysts declare themselves in adult life with amnesia, headache (often positional), obtundation (blunted consciousness), incontinence, dim vision, bilateral paraesthesiae, weak legs, and drop attacks. **Rx**: Excision or ventriculo-peritoneal shunting.

Idiopathic intracranial hypertension (=pseudotumour cerebri)

Think of this in those presenting as if with a mass (headache, ↑ICP and papilloedema)—*when none is found*. Typical patients are obese women with narrowed visual fields, blurred vision ± diplopia, VIth nerve palsy, and an enlarged blind spot, if papilloedema is present (it usually is). Consciousness and cognition are preserved.

Cause: Often unknown, or secondary to venous sinus thrombosis, or drugs, eg tetracycline, minocycline, nitrofurantoin, vitamin A, isotretinoin, danazol, and somatropin.

Rx: Weight loss, acetazolamide, loop diuretics, and prednisolone (start at ~40mg/24h po; more SE than diuretics) may reverse papilloedema.²⁸⁰ Consider optic nerve sheath fenestration or lumbar-peritoneal shunt if drugs fail and visual loss worsens.²⁸¹

Prognosis: Often self-limiting. Permanent significant visual loss in 10% (ie not so benign). CSF shunting or optic nerve sheath fenestration can help vision.²⁸²

Localizing features

(see p448 for cerebral and limbic anatomy)

► Ask first *where* the mass is, then *what it is*. Localizing features of SOLs can be thought of as dividing into *negative symptoms* (deficits caused by direct pressure or tumour invasion) and *positive symptoms* (due to localized seizure activity caused by irritation of the brain parenchyma). Both depend on the function of the area of the brain affected. Negative symptoms are listed below. See p495 for positive (seizure) symptoms. Frontal lobe, midline, and non-dominant temporal lobe masses present late.

Temporal lobe •Dysphasia (p80); •Contralateral homonymous hemianopia (or upper quadrantanopia if only Meyer's loop affected); •Amnesia; •Many odd or seemingly inexplicable phenomena, p495.

Frontal lobe •Hemiparesis; •Personality change (indecent, indolent, indiscreet, facetious, tendency to pun; see also orbitofrontal syndrome below); •Release phenomena such as the grasp reflex (fingers drawn across palm are grasped), significant only if unilateral; •Broca's dysphasia (p80), or more subtle difficulty with initiating and planning speech with intact repetition and no anomia—but loss of coherence; •Unilateral anosmia (loss of smell); •General lack of drive or initiative; •Concrete thinking; •Perseveration (unable to switch from one line of thinking to another); •Executive dysfunction (unable to plan tasks); •↓verbal fluency, eg unable to list words beginning with the letter 'A' or 'F' (normal is ~15 words in 1 min).²⁸³

Orbitofrontal¹ syndrome (fig 1, p448): Lack of empathy; over-eating; disinhibition; impulsive behaviour; ↓social skills; over-familiar; unconscious imitation of postures (eg when you put your feet on the desk, or sit on the floor); 'utilization behaviour' (whatever is provided is used, eg hand the patient spectacles, and he puts them on, hand him another pair, and this goes on his nose too, ditto for a 3rd pair).

Parietal lobe •Hemisensory loss; •↓2-point discrimination; •Astereognosis (unable to recognize an object by touch alone); •Sensory inattention; •Dysphasia (p80); •Gerstmann's syndrome (p714).

Occipital lobe •Contralateral visual field defects; •Palinopsia;² •Polyopia (seeing multiple images).

Cerebellum Remember **DASHING**: **d**ysdiadochokinesis (impaired *rapidly alternating* movements, p73) and **d**ysmetria (past-pointing); **a**taxia (limb/trunkal);³ **s**lurred speech (dysarthria); **h**ypotonia; **i**ntention tremor; **n**ystagmus; **g**ait abnormality.

Cerebellopontine angle (eg acoustic neuroma/vestibular Schwannoma; p466) Causes ipsilateral deafness, nystagmus, ↓corneal reflex, facial weakness (rare), ipsilateral cerebellar signs (above), papilloedema, VIth nerve palsy (p77).

Corpus callosum (a rare site for lesions) Severe rapid intellectual deterioration with focal signs of adjacent lobes and signs of loss of communication between lobes (eg left hand unable to carry out verbal commands).

Midbrain (eg pineal tumours or midbrain infarction) Failure of up or down gaze; light/near dissociated pupil responses (p79), with convergence globe-retracting nystagmus²⁸⁴ from co-contraction of opposing horizontal muscles, on attempted up-gaze.²⁸⁵ Elicited by looking at a down-moving target.²⁸⁵ video link

1 The orbitofrontal cortex (fig 1, p448) and right amygdala²⁸⁶ appreciate beauty (and sexual allure). The poets were nearly right that *Beauty is in the eye of the beholder*: it is ~1cm above the orbit.²⁸⁷

2 Palinopsia: persisting or recurring images, once the stimulus has left the field of view, from the Greek word *palin* meaning 'again'.

3 If truncal ataxia is worse on eye closure, blame the dorsal columns, not the cerebellum.

Bell's palsy is partly a diagnosis of exclusion (~30% of facial palsies have a defined cause, see MINIBOX, but features distinguishing it from other causes are: abrupt onset (eg overnight or after a nap) with complete unilateral facial weakness at 24–72h; ipsilateral numbness or pain around the ear; ↓taste (ageusia); hypersensitivity to sounds (ie hyperacusis from stapedius palsy).²⁹¹ Other pathologies may be indicated by bilateral symptoms,¹ UMN signs, other cranial neuropathies (eg V or XII, but also seen in 8% of idiopathic cases),²⁹² limb weakness, and rashes.

Incidence 15–40/100,000/yr (~1 patient/2yrs/GP).²⁹³ ♂≈♀. Risk ↑ in pregnancy (×3) and in diabetes (×5).

Other symptoms of VIIth palsy (from any cause)

- Unilateral sagging of the mouth, which is drawn upwards on the normal side on smiling, causing a grimace
- Drooling of saliva
- Food trapped between gum and cheek
- Speech difficulty
- Failure of eye closure may cause a watery or dry eye, ectropion (sagging and turning-out of the lower lid), injury from foreign bodies, or conjunctivitis.

Signs Ask him to wrinkle his forehead and close his eyes forcefully (under bilateral cortical control so spared in UMN lesion). Whistling/blowing out the cheeks tests buccinator (*buccina* is Latin for trumpet).

Tests **Blood:** ESR; glucose; ↑*Borrelia* antibodies in Lyme disease (indistinguishable clinically from Bell's),²⁹⁴ ↑vzV antibodies in Ramsay Hunt syndrome (BOX).²⁹⁵ **MRI:** Space-occupying lesions; stroke; MS; **CSF** (rarely done) for infections. **Nerve conduction tests** at 2wks predict slow recovery by showing axon degeneration but don't influence treatment, so not routinely done.

Prognosis **Incomplete paralysis** without axonal degeneration usually recovers completely within a few weeks. Of those with **complete paralysis** ~80% make a full spontaneous recovery, but ~15% have axonal degeneration (~50% in pregnancy) in which case recovery is delayed, starting after ~3 months, and may be complicated by aberrant reconnections: **synkinesis**, eg eye blinking causes synchronous upturning of the mouth; misconnection of parasympathetic fibres (red in **fig 1**) can produce **crocodile tears** (gusto-lacrimal reflex) when eating stimulates unilateral lacrimation, not salivation (intra-lacrimal gland botulinum toxin may help).²⁹⁶

Management If given within 72h of onset, prednisolone (eg 60mg/d po for 5d, tailing by 10mg/d) speeds recovery, with 95% making a full recovery,^{297,298} **NTT=8** perhaps by reducing axonal oedema and thus damage. Antivirals (eg aciclovir) don't help; although some 'Bell's cases' are thought to be associated with HSV-1, no-one has shown actively replicating virus.²⁹⁹ There are little data to guide treatment if presenting after 72h of onset, but corticosteroids are widely used (but remember: high doses can cause psychosis and hyperglycaemia)³⁰⁰. No advice on the use of steroids is universally agreed in pregnancy.³⁰¹ **Protect the eye:** • Dark glasses and artificial tears (eg hypromellose) if evidence of drying • Encourage regular eyelid closure by pulling down the lid by hand • Use tape to close the eyes at night. **Surgery:** If eye closure remains a long-term problem (lagophthalmos), a lid loading procedure (eg with gold) to the upper lid may help.³⁰² If ectropion is severe, lateral tarsorrhaphy (partial lid-to-lid suturing) can help; if no recovery in 1yr, plastic surgery to help lid closure and to straighten the drooping face can be tried. Botulinum toxin can augment facial symmetry,³⁰³ and hence self-esteem (beauty is symmetry according to Greek ideals—and *Vogue*).³⁰⁴ There is low quality evidence that tailored facial exercises can improve facial function with moderate and chronic paralysis and ↓sequelae in acute cases.³⁰⁵

Causes of VIIth nerve palsy

Bell's palsy (70% of cases)
Ramsay Hunt syn. (BOX)
Lyme disease (*Borrelia* sp.)
Meningitis (eg fungal)
TB; viruses (HIV, polio)
Mycoplasma (rare)

Brainstem lesions

Stroke, tumour, MS

Cerebello-pontine angle

Acoustic neuroma (p466)
Meningioma

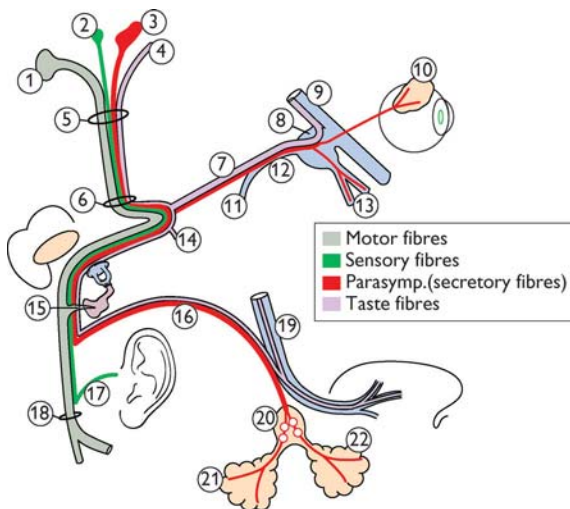
Systemic disease

Diabetes mellitus
Sarcoidosis²⁸⁸
Guillain-Barré (often bilateral)

ENT and other causes

Orofacial granulomatosis
Parotid tumours
Otitis media or cholesteatoma
Trauma to skull base
Diving (barotrauma + temporal bone pneumocele)²⁸⁹
Intracranial hypotension²⁹⁰

1 Common causes of bilateral facial weakness: Lyme disease, Guillain-Barré syndrome, leukaemia, sarcoidosis, EBV, trauma and myasthenia gravis.



- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 Facial nerve nucleus, deep in reticular formation of lower pons | 8 Sphenopalatine ganglion | 16 Chorda tympani |
| 2 Spinal nucleus of V | 9 Superior maxillary nerve | 17 Auricular branch |
| 3 Superior salivary nuc. | 10 Lacrimal gland | 18 Stylomastoid foramen |
| 4 Solitary tract | 11 Large deep petrosal nerve | 19 Lingual nerve—visceral motor ^{VII} and taste ^{VII} and general sensory to tongue (V ³) ³⁰⁷ |
| 5 Porus acusticus internus | 12 Vidian nerve | 20 Submandibular ganglion (and gland, 21) |
| 6 Meatal foramen | 13 Nose/palate gland nerves | 22 Sublingual gland |
| 7 Large petrosal nerve | 14 Small petrosal nerve at geniculate ganglion ³⁰⁶ | |
| | 15 Stapedial nerve | |

Fig 1. Facial nerve branches. The motor part moves the muscles of the face, scalp, and ears—also buccinator (puffs out the cheeks), platysma, stapedius, and the posterior belly of the digastric. It also contains the sympathetic motor fibres (vasodilator) of the submaxillary and sublingual glands (via the chorda tympani nerve). The sensory part contains the fibres of taste for the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and a few somatic sensory fibres from the middle ear region.

After Baylor College of Med. bcm.edu/oto/studs/face.html.

Rare facial nerve eponyms (and why neurology is so easy)

Ramsay Hunt syndrome Described by James Ramsay Hunt in 1907;³⁰⁸ this occurs when latent varicella zoster virus (p400) reactivates in the geniculate ganglion of the VIIth cranial nerve. **Symptoms:** Painful vesicular rash on the auditory canal—*herpes zoster oticus* ± on drum, pinna, tongue palate or iris (→hyphema, ie blood under the cornea)³⁰⁹ with ipsilateral facial palsy, loss of taste, vertigo, tinnitus, deafness, dry mouth & eyes. The rash may be too subtle for ordinary mortals to see—*herpes sine herpete*, ie herpes without herpes (neurology is easy, honestly... there's nothing to it). **Incidence:** ~5/100,000 (higher if >60yrs). **Δ:** Clinical, as antiviral treatment is thought to be most effective within the 1st 72h, while the virus is replicating. **R:** Antivirals (eg *aciclovir* 800mg PO 5× daily for 7d; if eGFR low, see p834)³¹⁰ + *prednisolone*, as for Bell's palsy (according to a small retrospective analysis;³¹¹ no definitive RCTs). **Prognosis:** If treated within 72h, ~75% recover well; if not, ~1/3 make a good recovery, 1/3 a reasonable recovery, and 1/3 a poor recovery.

Foville's syndrome Pontine lesion giving VII palsy, ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy + contralateral hemiparesis, hemisensory loss & internuclear ophthalmoplegia.

Millard-Gubler syndrome Occlusion of basilar artery branches in the pons gives lateral rectus palsy (VI), ipsilateral facial paralysis and contralateral hemiplegia.

These are lesions of individual peripheral or cranial nerves. Causes are usually local, such as trauma,¹ or entrapment (eg tumour), except for carpal tunnel syndrome (BOX 1). The term *mononeuritis multiplex* is used if 2 or more peripheral nerves are affected, when causes tend to be systemic ('WARDS PLC': Wegener's*, AIDS/amyloid, rheumatoid, diabetes mellitus, sarcoidosis, pAN, leprosy, carcinoma-tosis). Electromyography (EMG) helps define the anatomic site of lesions.

Median nerve C6-T1 The median nerve is the nerve of precision grip—muscles involved are easier to remember if you use your 'LOAF' (2 lumbricals, opponens pollicis, abductor pollicis brevis, and flexor pollicis brevis).³¹² *At the wrist:* (eg lacerations, carpal tunnel syndrome, BOX 1) weakness of abductor pollicis brevis and sensory loss over the radial 3½ fingers and palm. *Anterior interosseous nerve lesions:* (eg trauma) weakness of flexion of the distal phalanx of the thumb and index finger. *Proximal lesions* (eg compression at the elbow) may show combined defects.

Ulnar nerve C7-T1 Vulnerable to elbow trauma. *Signs:* Weakness/wasting of medial (ulnar side) wrist flexors, interossei (cannot cross the fingers in the good luck sign) and medial two lumbricals (claw hand); hypothenar eminence wasting (∴ weak little finger abduction); sensory loss over medial (ulnar) 1½ fingers and ulnar side of the hand. Flexion of 4th & 5th DIP joints is weak. With lesions at the wrist (digitorum profundus intact), claw hand is more marked. *Treatment:* BOX 2.

Radial nerve C5-T1 This nerve opens the fist. It may be damaged by compression against the humerus. *Signs:* Test for wrist and finger drop with elbow flexed and arm pronated; sensory loss is variable—the dorsal aspect of the root of the thumb (the anatomical snuff box) is most reliably affected. Muscles involved: ('BEST') brachioradialis; extensors; supinator; triceps.³¹³

Brachial plexus Pain/paraesthesiae and weakness in the affected arm in a variable distribution. *Causes:* trauma, radiotherapy (eg for breast carcinoma), prolonged wearing of a heavy rucksack, cervical rib, neuralgic amyotrophy,² thoracic outlet compression (also affects vasculature).

Phrenic nerve C3-5 ^{C3, 4, 5 keeps the diaphragm alive} Consider phrenic nerve palsy if orthopnoea with raised hemidiaphragm on CXR. *Causes:* Lung cancer, myeloma, thymoma, cervical spondylosis/trauma, thoracic surgery, C3-5 zoster, HIV, Lyme disease, TB, paraneoplastic syndromes, muscular dystrophy, big left atrium, phrenic nucleus lesion, eg MS.

Lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh L2-L3 *Meralgia paraesthetica* is antero-lateral burning thigh pain from entrapment under the inguinal ligament.

Sciatic nerve L4-S3 Damaged by pelvic tumours or fractures to pelvis or femur. Lesions affect the hamstrings and all muscles below the knee (foot drop), with loss of sensation below the knee laterally.

Common peroneal nerve L4-S1 Originates from sciatic nerve just above knee. Often damaged as it winds round the fibular head (trauma, sitting cross-legged). *Signs:* Foot drop, weak ankle dorsiflexion/eversion, and sensory loss over dorsum of foot.

Tibial nerve L4-S3 Originates from the sciatic nerve just above the knee. Lesions lead to an inability to stand on tiptoe (plantarflexion), invert the foot, or flex the toes, with sensory loss over the sole.

1 Hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies is an autosomal dominant hereditary neuropathy presenting as recurrent isolated or multiple neuropathies. Onset is during teenage years.

2 Neuralgic amyotrophy (Parsonage-Turner syndrome) is a poorly understood inflammatory condition affecting the brachial plexus on one side only. Sudden onset severe pain, followed over hours by profound weakness, resolving completely over several days. It may rarely involve the phrenic or lower cranial nerves.

Carpal tunnel syndrome: the commonest mononeuropathy

The median nerve and 9 tendons compete for space within the wrist. Compression is common, especially in women who have narrower wrists but similar-sized tendons to men. For similar reasons, the tibial nerve may be compressed: the tarsal tunnel syndrome, causing unilateral burning sole pain, eg on walking or standing.

The patient: Aching pain in the hand and arm (especially at night), and paraesthesiae in thumb, index, and middle fingers, all relieved by dangling the hand over the edge of the bed and shaking it (remember 'wake and shake'). There may be sensory loss and weakness of abductor pollicis brevis ± wasting of the thenar eminence. Light touch, 2-point discrimination, and sweating may be impaired.

Famous median traps: Myxoedema; enforced flexion (eg in a Colles' splint); diabetic neuropathy; idiopathic; acromegaly; neoplasms (eg myeloma); benign tumours (lipomas, ganglia); rheumatoid arthritis; amyloidosis; pregnancy/premenstrual oedema; sarcoidosis.

Tests: Neurophysiology helps by confirming the lesion's site and severity (and likelihood of improvement after surgery). Maximal wrist flexion for 1 min (*Phalen's test*) may elicit symptoms (unreliable!). Tapping over the nerve at the wrist induces tingling (*Tinel's test*; also rather non-specific).

Treatment: Splinting, local steroid injection (OHCS p710) ± decompression surgery; many alternative therapies are tried: meta-analyses are doubtful.¹

Managing ulnar mononeuropathies from entrapments

The ulnar nerve asks for trouble in at least 5 places at the elbow, starting proximally at the arcade of Struthers (a musculofascial band ~8cm proximal to the medial epicondyle), and ending distally where it exits the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle in the forearm.³¹⁴ Most often, compression occurs at the *epicondylar groove* or at the point where the nerve passes between the 2 heads of flexor carpi ulnaris (true *cubital tunnel syndrome*). Trauma can easily damage the nerve against its bony confines (the medial condyle of the humerus—the 'funny bone'). Normally, stretch and compression forces on the ulnar nerve at the elbow are moderated by its ability to glide in its groove. When normal excursion is restricted, irritation ensues. This may cause a vicious cycle of perineural scarring, consequent loss of excursion, and progressive symptoms—without antecedent trauma. Compressive ulnar neuropathies at the wrist (*Guyon's canal*—between the pisiform and hamate bones) are less common, but they can also result in disability.

Treatment centres on rest and avoiding pressure on the nerve, but if symptoms continue, night-time soft elbow splinting (to prevent flexion to >60°)³¹⁵ is warranted, eg for 6 months.³¹⁶ A splint for the hand may help prevent permanent clawing of the fingers. For chronic neuropathy associated with weakness, or if splinting fails, a variety of *surgical procedures* have been tried. For moderately severe neuropathies, decompressions *in situ* may help, but often fail. Medial *epicondylectomies* are effective in ≤50% (but many will recur). Subcutaneous *nerve re-routing* (transposition) may be tried. Intramuscular and submuscular transpositions are more complicated, but the latter may be preferable.³¹⁷

1 Cochrane meta-analysis of 21 carpal tunnel trials: 7 (but not 2) weeks' ultrasound can help. Compared to placebo, diuretics and NSAIDs gave no benefit. Vit B₆ did not help (*N* = 50). Those adopting the namaste (prayer) posture in yoga may obviate need for surgery: the forced wrist extension helps (*N* = 53). Trials of ergonomic keyboards give equivocal results for pain and function. Trials of magnet therapy, laser acupuncture, and exercise showed no benefit. Chiropractic care can increase distress.

Polyneuropathies are disorders of peripheral or cranial nerves, whose distribution is usually symmetrical and widespread, often with distal weakness and sensory loss ('glove and stocking'). They are classified by course (*acute* or *chronic*), by function (*sensory*, *motor*, *autonomic*, *mixed*), or by pathology (*demyelination*, *axonal degeneration*, or *both*). For example, Guillain-Barré syndrome (p716) is an acute, predominantly motor, demyelinating neuropathy, whereas chronic alcohol abuse leads to a chronic, initially sensory then mixed, axonal neuropathy.

Mostly motor

Guillain-Barré syndrome (p716)
Lead poisoning
Charcot-Marie-Tooth syndrome¹

Mostly sensory

Diabetes mellitus
Renal failure
Leprosy

Diagnosis The history is vital: be clear about the time course, the precise nature of the symptoms, and any preceding or associated events (eg D&V before Guillain-Barré syndrome; weight↓ in cancer; arthralgia from a connective tissue disease). Ask about travel, alcohol and drug use, sexual infections, and family history. If there is palpable nerve thickening think of leprosy or Charcot-Marie-Tooth. Examine other systems for clues to the cause, eg alcoholic liver disease.

Sensory neuropathy: Numbness; pins & needles, "feels funny" or "burning"; affects extremities 1st ('glove & stocking' distribution—map out each modality, p450). There may be difficulty handling small objects such as buttons. Signs of trauma (eg finger burns) or joint deformation may indicate sensory loss. Diabetic and alcoholic neuropathies are typically painful.

Motor neuropathy: Often progressive (may be rapid); weak or clumsy hands; difficulty in walking (falls, stumbling); difficulty in breathing (vital capacity↓). Signs: LMN lesion: wasting and weakness most marked in the distal muscles of hands and feet (foot or wrist drop). Reflexes are reduced or absent.

Cranial nerves: Swallowing/speaking difficulty; diplopia. **Autonomic system:** BOX 1.

Tests FBC, ESR, glucose, U&E, LFT, TSH, B₁₂, electrophoresis, ANA & ANCA (p555), CXR, urinalysis, and consider an LP ± specific genetic tests for inherited neuropathies (eg for PMP22 in Charcot-Marie-Tooth),³¹⁸ lead level, antiganglioside antibodies. Nerve conduction studies help distinguish demyelinating from axonal causes.

Management Treat the cause. Involve physio & OT (p449). Foot care and shoe choice are important in sensory neuropathies to minimize trauma. Splinting joints helps prevent contractures in prolonged paralysis. In Guillain-Barré and CIDP² IV immunoglobulin helps.³¹⁹ For vasculitic causes, steroids/immunosuppressants may help. Treat neuropathic pain with amitriptyline or nortriptyline (10–25mg at night; may not work in HIV neuropathy).³²⁰ If this fails, try gabapentin³ or pregabalin.³²¹

Causes

Metabolic

Diabetes mellitus
Renal failure
Hypothyroidism
Hypoglycaemia
Mitochondrial disorders

Vasculitides (p558)

Polyarteritis nodosa
Rheumatoid arthritis
Wegener's^a granulomatosis

Malignancy

Paraneoplastic syndromes
Polycythaemia rubra vera

Inflammatory

Guillain-Barré syndrome
Sarcoidosis; CIDP²

Infections

Leprosy
HIV, syphilis
Lyme disease (p430)

Nutritional

↓ vit B₁, B₁₂ (eg EtOH abuse)
↓ vit E, folate
↑ vit B₆ (if >100mg/d)

Inherited syndromes

Charcot-Marie-Tooth (p710)
Refsum's syndrome (p724)
Porphyria (p706)
Leucodystrophy

Toxins

Lead, arsenic

Drugs

Vincristine
Alcohol
Cisplatin
Isoniazid
Nitrofurantoin
Phenytoin
Metronidazole

Others

Paraproteinaemias
Amyloidosis (p364)

¹ The *presentation* of Charcot-Marie-Tooth is typically motor, although the sensory deficit is present on examination, because the sensory loss is so gradual & long-standing that it feels 'normal' to the patient.

² Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (CIDP) autoimmune demyelination of peripheral nerves (distal onset of weakness/sensory loss in limbs + nerve enlargement + CSF protein ↑).

³ 300mg on day 1, 300mg/12h on day 2, 300mg/8h on day 3, then ↑ according to response in steps of 100mg/8h; max 600mg/8h if eGFR >80. SE: diarrhoea, dry mouth, dyspepsia, vomiting, oedema, dizziness.

Autonomic neuropathy

Sympathetic and **P**arasympathetic neuropathies may be isolated or part of a generalized sensorimotor peripheral neuropathy.

Causes: DM, amyloidosis, Guillain-Barré and Sjögren's syndrome, HIV, leprosy, SLE,³²² toxic, genetic (eg porphyria), or paraneoplastic, eg paraneoplastic encephalomyeloneuropathies and Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS, p516).

Signs: Postural hypotension^s (faints on standing, eating, or hot bath), erectile dysfunction^p/ejaculatory failure^s (remember 'point & shoot'), sweating^{↓s}, constipation, nocturnal diarrhoea, urine retention^p, Horner's^s (p716), Holmes-Adie pupil^p (p79).³²³

Autonomic function tests • *Postural drop* of $\geq 20/10$ mmHg is abnormal. *R:* p39.

- **ECG:** A variation of < 10 bpm with respiration is abnormal.
- **Cystometry:** Bladder pressure studies.
- **Pupils:** Instil 0.1% epinephrine (dilates if post-ganglionic sympathetic denervation, not if normal); 2.5% cocaine (dilates if normal; not if sympathetic denervation); 2.5% methacholine (constricts if parasympathetic lesion)—rarely used.
- **Paraneoplastic antibodies:** Anti-Hu, anti-Yo, anti-Ri, anti-amphiphysin, anti-cv2, anti-Ma2). **Other ab:** Antiganglionic acetylcholine receptor antibody presence shows that the cause may be autoimmune autonomic ganglionopathy.³²⁴

Primary autonomic failure Occurs alone (autoimmune autonomic ganglionopathy), as part of multisystem atrophy (MSA, p499), or with Parkinson's disease, typically in a middle-aged/elderly man. Onset: insidious; symptoms as above.



MND is a cluster of major degenerative diseases characterized by selective loss of neurons in motor cortex, cranial nerve nuclei, and anterior horn cells. Upper and lower motor neurons are affected but there is *no* sensory loss or sphincter disturbance, thus distinguishing MND from MS and polyneuropathies. MND never affects eye movements, distinguishing it from myasthenia (p516). Events at the ALS-FTD locus (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis–frontotemporal dementia locus on 9p21) explain 87% of familial ALS (eg autosomal-dominant D90A SOD1 mutation).³²⁵ 4 clinical patterns:

- 1 ALS/amyotrophic lateral sclerosis** (archetypal MND; 50%) Loss of motor neurons in motor cortex *and* the anterior horn of the cord, so weakness + UMN signs (eg upgoing plantars) + LMN wasting/fasciculation (p451). Worse prognosis if: bulbar onset, ↑age, ↓FVC. The split hand sign:³²⁶ the thumb's side of the hand seems cast adrift owing to excessive wasting around it—there is much less hypothenar wasting.
- 2 Progressive bulbar palsy** (10%) Only affects cranial nerves IX–XII. Signs: BOX 1.
- 3 Progressive muscular atrophy** (10%) Anterior horn cell lesion only, thus no UMN signs. Affects distal muscle groups before proximal. Better prognosis than ALS.
- 4 Primary lateral sclerosis** Loss of Betz cells in motor cortex, thus mainly UMN signs + marked spastic leg weakness and pseudobulbar palsy. No cognitive decline.

► Think of MND in those >40yrs with stumbling spastic gait, foot-drop ± proximal myopathy, weak grip (door-handles don't turn) and shoulder abduction (hair-washing is hard), or aspiration pneumonia. Look for UMN signs: spasticity, brisk reflexes, ↑plantars; and LMN signs: wasting, fasciculation of tongue, abdomen, back, thigh. Is speech or swallowing affected (bulbar signs)? Fasciculation is not enough to diagnose an LMN lesion: look for weakness too. Frontotemporal dementia occurs in ~25%.

Diagnostic criteria See BOX 2. There is no diagnostic test. Brain/cord MRI helps exclude structural causes, LP helps exclude inflammatory ones, and neurophysiology can detect subclinical denervation and help exclude mimicking motor neuropathies.¹

Prevalence 6/100,000. ♂:♀ ≈ 3:2. Median UK age at onset: 60yrs. Often fatal in 2–4yrs.

Treatment Due to MND's implacable course, its rarity, and its frightening nature, a multidisciplinary approach is best.³²⁷ neurologist, palliative nurse,³²⁸ hospice, physio, OT, speech therapist, dietician, social services—all orchestrated by the GP. Death by choking is rare, so warmly reassure that a dignified end is the rule. MNDassociation.org UK tel. 08457 626262

Antiglutamatergic drugs: Riluzole (BOX) prolongs life by ~3 months; it is costly. *Caution:* LFT↑ (do 3-monthly). SE: vomiting, pulse↑, somnolence, headache, vertigo, LFT↑.

Drooling: Propantheline 15–30mg/8h; amitriptyline 25–50mg/8h (doctors think this is quite effective, but patients disagree: and example of our wishful thinking; BOX).

Dysphagia: Blend food; would he or she like a nasogastric tube, or percutaneous catheter gastrostomy?—or would this prolong death? **Spasticity:** See MS (p500).

Joint pains and distress: Analgesic ladder—NSAIDs, etc, then opioids (p539).

Respiratory failure (± aspiration pneumonia and sleep apnoea): Non-invasive ventilation (NIV) at home in selected patients may give valuable palliation.

⚙️Ethical problems: beyond autonomy Patients with MND may be ventilated (eg NIV), and then decide they want NIV withdrawn.³²⁹ This may be fatal, making decisions difficult for everyone. Ethicists tend to speak in black-and-white prose: "Do whatever promotes autonomy", and this is the *raison d'être* of assisted-suicide organizations such as Dignitas (increasingly popular, worldwide, even if illegal). Sometimes nature contrives something more ambiguous and poetic, in which rationality and rage,³³⁰ uncertainty and the forked emotions of hope and despair produce a heady internal world which the ethicist can never quite catch or tame; if this internal world is one of perpetual change and oscillation of the will, ideas of autonomy become incoherent. Rather than aiming to apply Kantian universal rules (p15), our role may be more to offer a well-placed hug to signal metaphysical complicity, and to stand beside our patients, come what may.

1 If no UMN signs and distal arm muscles are affected in the distribution of individual nerves, suspect multifocal motor neuropathy with conduction block (diagnose on nerve conduction studies; *R*: IV Ig). Gynaecomastia, atrophic testes ± infertility suggests Kennedy syndrome (bulbosplinal muscular atrophy).

Bulbar and corticobulbar ('pseudobulbar') palsy

Bulbar palsy denotes diseases of the nuclei of cranial nerves IX–XII in the medulla. **Signs** are of an *LMN lesion* of the tongue and muscles of talking and swallowing: flaccid, fasciculating tongue (like a sack of worms); jaw jerk is normal or absent, speech is quiet, hoarse, or nasal. **Causes:** MND, Guillain-Barré, polio, myasthenia gravis, syringobulbia (p520), brainstem tumours, central pontine myelinolysis (p686).

Corticobulbar palsy *UMN lesion* of muscles of swallowing and talking due to bilateral lesions above the mid-pons, eg corticobulbar tracts (MS, MND, stroke, central pontine myelinolysis). It is commoner than bulbar palsy. **Signs:** Slow tongue movements, with slow deliberate speech; *t*jaw jerk; *t*pharyngeal and palatal reflexes; pseudobulbar affect (PBA)—weeping unprovoked by sorrow or mood-incongruent giggling (emotional incontinence *without* mood change is also seen in MS, Wilson's, and Parkinson's disease, dementia, nitrous oxide use, and head injury).³³¹ In some countries, dextromethorphan + quinidine is licensed for PBA.

Revised El Escorial diagnostic criteria for ALS

Definite Lower + upper motor neuron signs in 3 regions.

Probable Lower + upper motor neuron signs in 2 regions.

Probably with lab support Lower + upper motor neuron signs in 1 region, or upper motor neuron signs in ≥ 1 region + EMG shows acute denervation in ≥ 2 limbs.

Possible Lower + upper motor neuron signs in 1 region.

Suspected Upper or lower motor neuron signs only—in 1 or more regions.

Following in the footprints of free radicals

Autopsies show that changes to proteins and DNA that are signs or 'footprints' of free-radical damage are more pronounced in MND brains than in controls.³³² Also, cultured fibroblasts from MND brains show \uparrow sensitivity to oxidative insults (pesticides may have a role).³³³ But these findings don't explain 2 key MND phenomena:

Why is there a predilection for motor neurons? One answer may be the sheer length and complex cytoarchitecture of motor cells, with their 1 metre axons and high levels of neurofilament proteins, and low levels of Ca^{2+} -buffering proteins (thought to be protective). We note that motor cells with the shortest axons (to the extraocular muscles) are unaffected in MND; this is not true of the tongue, which only requires slightly longer axons. Also, it isn't *only* motor neurons that are affected: specific aphasia and dementias are part of the MND picture too.³³⁴

Why do some MND brains have excess levels of glutamate? (Glutamate is the chief excitatory neurotransmitter.) This is thought to be from \downarrow activity of the excitatory amino acid transporter (EAAT2), which mops up glutamate—hence the notion that MND is an 'excitotoxic' phenomenon. Motor cells have high levels of Cu/Zn superoxide dismutase (thought to protect normal motor cells from glutamate toxicity/oxidative stress). But a high level may itself be damaging, given certain genetic or acquired vulnerabilities.³³⁵ Transgenic mice exhibiting high levels of superoxide dismutase do indeed develop an MND phenotype.

These ideas are speculative,³³⁶ but help understanding and criticism of future therapies. Riluzole is an Na^+ -channel blocker inhibiting glutamate release. Neurotrophic factors can protect motor neurons in animal studies, but clinical trials have proved disappointing. *CI:* hepatic or renal problems. Effects of free-radical manipulation can be unpredictable. The antioxidant vitamin E protects transgenic mice from developing an MND-like picture, and in at least one human trial high intake of polyunsaturated fatty acids and vitamin E associated with a 50% decreased risk of developing ALS (these nutrients appear to act synergistically).³³⁷

Apoptosis is a hallmark of MND,³³⁸ and overexpression of proteins inhibiting cell death via apoptosis (Bcl-2) in transgenic mice can slow MND degeneration.

PatientsLikeMe.com

Patient-organized sites such as these have now got so big that reliable(ish) data can be obtained about what works for MND symptoms *et al*.³³⁹ There are intriguing disparities between what doctors and patients think works. We think we know everything about symptoms: sites like these show how we lead ourselves astray.

Cervical spondylosis with compression of the cord (myelopathy) and nerve roots is the leading cause of progressive spastic quadriplegia with sensory loss below the neck.³⁴⁰ Most people with cervical spondylosis have no impairment, however—just degeneration of the annulus fibrosus of cervical intervertebral discs \pm osteophytes, which narrow the spinal canal and intervertebral foramina. As the neck flexes and extends, the cord is damaged as it is dragged over these protruding bony spurs anteriorly and indented by a thickened ligamentum flavum posteriorly.

Signs Limited, painful neck movement \pm crepitus—be careful! Neck flexion may produce tingling down the spine—a positive Lhermitte's symptom. This does not help decide if cord or roots (or both) are involved.

Root compression (radiculopathy): Pain/electrical sensations in arms or fingers at the level of the compression (TABLE), with dull reflexes, dynatoma¹ sensory disturbance (numbness, tingling, pain & T°), LMN weakness and eventual wasting of muscles innervated by the affected root. Below the level of the affected root (examine the legs) there may be UMN signs suggesting cord compression: spasticity, weakness, brisk reflexes, and upgoing plantars. Position & vibration sense may be lost. Is there a sensory level?

Dynatomes¹ C3 and C4 symptoms are neck pain or trapezius pain.

C5 pain occurs in the shoulder and radiates down the front of the arm to below the elbow. There is overlap in the pain of **C6** radiculopathy and carpal tunnel syndrome (p507)—CTS causes pain worse on wrist flexion + weak abductor pollicis brevis + thenar atrophy; in contrast, C6 root innervates elbow flexors and wrist extensors. Spurling's manoeuvre² may exacerbate C6 radicular pain (but not CTS).

C7 pain radiates down the dorsal arm, via the elbow and into the 3rd finger.

C8 symptoms go down the inferior medial aspect of the arm into 4th & 5th digits and are often confused with the pain of ulnar neuropathy (but here there is splitting of sensory symptoms in either the 3rd or 4th digit).³⁴²

Tests MRI to localize the lesion (fig 1). An AP compression ratio $\geq 30\%$ usually induces histopathological changes in the cord (cadaver studies). Time to walk 30m helps monitor progress (valid & cheap).³⁴⁰

AA MS; nerve root neurofibroma; subacute combined degeneration of the cord ($\downarrow B_{12}$); compression by bone or cord tumours; intramedullary spinal sarcoidosis.³⁴³

Management A firm neck collar restricts anterior-posterior movement of the neck so may relieve pain, but patients dislike them. Don't dismiss those with chronic root pain in the arm as suffering simply from 'wear and tear' spondylosis. Be optimistic: they may improve over months; if not, they may benefit greatly from surgical root decompression (laminectomy, fig 2, or laminoplasty, fig 3) if there is significant MRI abnormality,³⁴⁴ and especially if the history is short and the neurological deficit is progressing. As a rule of thumb, opt for conservative treatment if the spinal transverse area is $>70\text{mm}^2$, the patient is elderly, and motor conduction time is normal.³⁴⁵ If surgery is done, progression is usually halted and leg weakness may improve. Operative risk is less than with anterior spinal fusion (needs bone grafts with more complications but no extra benefit).³⁴⁶ Transforaminal steroid injection is gaining popularity on the rationale that nerve root inflammation causes radicular pain. Pain reduction is reported.

Rare complications Diaphragm paralysis,³⁴⁷ spinal artery syndrome mimicking angina (from spinal artery compression; pain & T° are lost before vibration sense).³⁴⁸

Complaints may be of:

- Neck stiffness (but common in anyone >50 yrs old)
- Crepitus on moving neck
- Stabbing or dull arm pain (brachialgia)
- Forearm/wrist pain

Signs of cord compression:

- Spastic leg weakness (often 1 leg $>$ other)
- Weak, clumsy hands
- Numbness in hands
- 'Heavy' legs
- Foot-drop/poor walking
- Incontinence, hesitancy & urgency are often late³⁴¹



Fig 1. A T2-weighted MRI (\therefore CSF looks bright). The cord is compressed between osteophytes anteriorly and the ligamentum flavum posteriorly.

Typical motor and sensory deficits from individual root involvement (C5-8)

C5 (C4/C5 disc) Weak deltoid & supraspinatus; ↓supinator jerks; numb elbow.

C6 (C5/C6 disc) Weak biceps & brachioradialis; ↓biceps jerks; numb thumb & index finger.

C7 (C6/C7 disc) Weak triceps & finger extension; ↓triceps jerks; numb middle finger.

C8 (C7/T1 disc) Weak finger flexors & small muscles of the hand; numb 5th & ring finger.

► **Worrying symptoms:** Night pain, weight↓, fever.

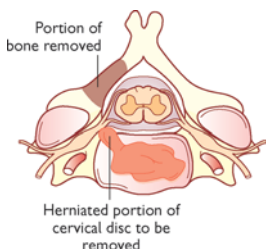


Fig 2. Laminectomy.

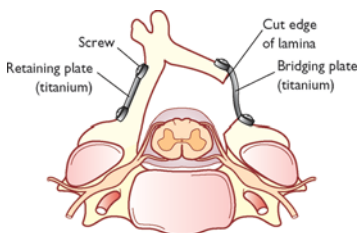


Fig 3. Laminoplasty (screws and plates).

Laminectomy or laminoplasty? Laminectomy and laminoplasty improve gait, strength, sensation, pain, and degree of myelopathy, to a roughly equal extent, but in one study of 44 consecutive patients, laminoplasty was associated with more pain reduction and fewer late complications (but there was more neck stiffness).³⁴⁹ At appropriate level, the ligamentum flavum (overlies the dura) is incised and cut away with part of adjacent laminae, as necessary to expose the extradural space.³⁵⁰

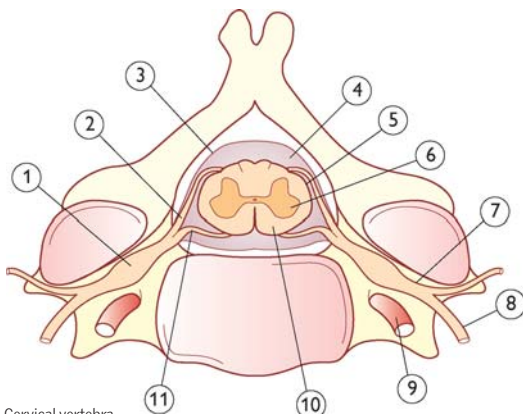


Fig 4. Cervical vertebra.

- 1 Dorsal root ganglion
- 2 Dorsal root
- 3 Dura mater
- 4 Subarachnoid space
- 5 Pia mater
- 6 Grey matter

- 7 Spinal nerve
- 8 Ventral ramus
- 9 Vertebral artery in the transverse foramen
- 10 White matter
- 11 Ventral spinal nerve

Fig 1 ©Prof P Scally; figs 2-4 after Dr C Carpenter.

- 1 A dynatome is the area of pain or pins and needles caused by a trapped nerve root. It differs from a dermatome or myotome because it relates to complex referred pain mechanisms, not nerve root function (which is what radiculopathy relates to). Dynatomes don't map neatly to dermatomes or myotomes, so according to Slipman, we should try not use dynatomes *in isolation* to blame individual nerve roots.³⁵¹
- 2 Reproduction of the patient's symptoms when the examiner moves the patient's head.

Myopathy or neuropathy? In favour of myopathy: • Gradual onset of symmetric *proximal* weakness—difficulty combing hair and climbing stairs (NB: weakness is also *distal* in myotonic dystrophy); • Dystrophies usually affect specific muscle groups (ie selective weakness on first presentation); • Preserved tendon reflexes.

A neuropathy is more likely if there are paraesthesiae, bladder problems or distal weakness. Rapid onset suggests a neuropathy or a toxic, drug, or metabolic myopathy. Excess fatigability (↑weakness with exercise) suggests myasthenia (p516). Spontaneous pain at rest and local tenderness occurs in inflammatory myopathies. Pain on exercise suggests ischaemia or metabolic myopathy (eg McArdle's disease). Oddly firm muscles (due to infiltrations with fat or connective tissue) suggest pseudohypertrophic muscular dystrophies (eg Duchenne's). Lumps are commonly caused by haematoma, herniation of muscle through fascia, and tendon rupture. Muscle tumours are rare. Fasciculation suggests anterior horn cell or root disease. Look for evidence of systemic disease. **Tests:** ESR, CK, AST and LDH may be raised. Do EMG and tests relevant to systemic causes (eg TSHT, p208). Many genetic disorders of muscle are detectable by DNA analysis: use muscle biopsy only if genetic tests are non-diagnostic.

Muscular dystrophies are a group of genetic diseases with progressive degeneration and weakness of specific muscle groups. The primary abnormality may be in the muscle membrane. Secondary effects are marked variation in size of individual fibres and deposition of fat and connective tissue. The commonest is **Duchenne's muscular dystrophy** (3/1000 male live births; sex-linked recessive—30% from spontaneous mutation). The Duchenne gene is on the short arm of x (xp665), and its product, dystrophin, is non-functional. It presents at ~4yrs old with clumsy walking, then difficulty in standing, and respiratory failure. Pseudohypertrophy is seen, especially in the calves. Serum creatine kinase ↑ >40-fold. There is no specific treatment. Some survive beyond 20yrs. Home ventilation improves prognosis. Genetic counselling is vital. **Becker's muscular dystrophy** (~0.3/1000 ♂ births) results from a Duchenne gene mutation that produces partially functioning dystrophin. It presents with similar but milder symptoms, at a later age than Duchenne's, and with a better prognosis. **Facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy** (Landouzy-Dejerine) is almost as common as Duchenne's. **Inheritance:** Autosomal dominant (locus 4q35). Onset is ~12-14yrs old, with inability to puff out the cheeks and difficulty raising the arms above the head (eg changing light-bulbs). **Signs:** Weakness of face ('ironed out' expression), shoulders, and upper arms (often asymmetric with deltoids spared), foot-drop, scapular winging (fig 1),³⁵² scoliosis, anterior axillary folds,³⁵³ and horizontal clavicles.³⁵⁴ ≤20% need a wheelchair by 40yrs old.

Myotonic disorders cause tonic muscle spasm (myotonia). **Histology:** long chains of central nuclei within muscle fibres. The chief one is **dystrophia myotonica** (DM1), an autosomal dominant **Cl⁻ channelopathy**.³⁵⁵ **Typical onset:** 25yr-old with distal-onset weakness (hand/foot drop), weak sternomastoids and myotonia. Facial weakness and muscle wasting give a long, haggard appearance. **Also:** cataracts, male frontal baldness, diabetes, testis/ovary atrophy, cardiomyopathy, and ↓cognition. Most patients die in middle age of intercurrent illness. Mexiletine, phenytoin and acetazolamide may help. Genetic counselling is important. Myotonia caused by **Na⁺ channelopathy:** paramyotonia congenita, adynamia episodica hereditaria.

Acquired myopathies of late onset are often part of systemic disease—eg hyperthyroidism, malignancy, Cushing's, hypo- and hypercalcaemia.

Inflammatory myopathies Inclusion body myositis is the chief example if aged >50yrs. Aggregates of Alzheimer tau proteins suggest a 'peripheral tauopathy'.³⁵⁶ **Signs:** weakness starts with quads, finger flexors or pharyngeal muscles. Ventral extremity muscle groups are more affected than dorsal or girdle groups. Wheelchair dependency is <3%. **Histology:** ringed vacuoles + intranuclear inclusions. Rx: nothing is consistently effective. For polymyositis and dermatomyositis, see p554.

Drug causes Alcohol; statins; steroids; chloroquine; zidovudine; vincristine; cocaine.



Fig 1. Winging of both scapulae in facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy. Winging is due to weakness of thoracoscapular muscles.

Reproduced from Donaghy, *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System*, 12th edition, with permission from Oxford University Press.



MG is an autoimmune disease mediated by antibodies to nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (AChR), interfering with the neuromuscular transmission via depletion of working post-synaptic receptor sites (fig 1). Both B and T cells are implicated.^{357, 358}

Presentation Increasing muscular fatigue. Muscle groups affected, in order: extra-ocular; bulbar (swallowing, chewing); face; neck; limb girdle; trunk. Look for: ptosis, diplopia, myasthenic snarl on smiling, 'peek sign'.¹ On counting to 50, the voice fades (dysphonia is a rare presentation). *Tendon reflexes* are normal. Weakness is worsened by: pregnancy, K⁺↓, infection, over-treatment, change of climate, emotion, exercise, gentamicin, opiates, tetracycline, quinine, procainamide, β -blockers.

Associations If under 50yrs, MG is commoner in women, associated with other autoimmune diseases and thymic hyperplasia. Over 50, it is commoner in men, and associated with thymic atrophy or thymic tumour, rheumatoid arthritis, and SLE.

Tests •*Antibodies*: Anti-AChR antibodies ↑ in 90% (70% in ocular-confined MG); if seronegative look for MUSK antibodies (muscle specific tyrosine kinase; φ : $\sigma \approx 15:2$).³⁵⁹ •*Neurophysiology*: Decremental muscle response to repetitive nerve stimulation \pm single-fibre jitter. •*Imaging*: CT of thymus.³⁶⁰ •*Other*: ptosis improves by >2mm after ice application to the (shut) affected lid for >2min—a neat, non-invasive test.³⁶¹ The Tensilon® test may not give clear answers and has dangers, so is less used.

Treatment *Symptom control* Anticholinesterase, eg pyridostigmine (60–120mg PO up to 6 \times daily; max 1.2g/d). Cholinergic SE: salivation, lacrimation, sweats, vomiting, miosis. Other SE: diarrhoea, colic (controllable with propantheline 15mg/8h).

Immunosuppression: Treat relapses with prednisolone—start at 5mg on alternate days, ↑ by 5mg/wk up to 1mg/kg on each treatment day. ↓dose on remission (may take months). Give osteoporosis prophylaxis. SE: weakness (hence low starting dose). Steroids may be combined with azathioprine 2.5mg/kg/day (do FBC and LFT weekly for 8wks, then 12-weekly) or weekly methotrexate.³⁶² IV methylprednisolone has a role.

Thymectomy: Consider if onset before 50yrs old and disease is not easily controlled by anticholinesterases. Expect remission in 25% and worthwhile benefit in a further 50%. Thymectomy is also necessary for thymomas to prevent local invasion (but MG symptoms are often unaffected). Some give IV immunoglobulin (IV Ig) 0.4g/kg daily for 5 days pre-op.³⁶³

Myasthenic crisis Weakness of the respiratory muscles during a relapse can be life-threatening. ►Monitor forced vital capacity. **Ventilatory support** is unlikely to be needed if vital capacity >20mL/kg.³⁶⁴ Treat with plasmapheresis or IV Ig³⁶⁵ and identify and treat the trigger for the relapse (eg infection, medications).

Prognosis Relapsing or slow progression. If thymoma, 5yr survival is 68%.³⁶⁶

Other causes of muscle fatigability Polymyositis; SLE; Takayasu's arteritis (fatigability of the extremities); botulism (see BOX). For other myopathies, see p514.

Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS, ALSO ELMS)

LEMS can be paraneoplastic (from small-cell lung cancer) or autoimmune.² Unlike true MG there is: •Gait difficulty before eye signs; •Autonomic involvement (dry mouth, constipation, impotence); •Hyporeflexia and weakness, which improve after exercise; •Less response to edrophonium; •Antibody to the pre-synaptic membrane's voltage-gated Ca²⁺ channels (see fig 2; anti-P/Q type VGCC antibodies are +ve in 85%).³⁶⁷ •Electrical post-tetanic potentiation with >60% ↑ in post-exercise facilitation of abductor digiti quinti.³⁶⁸ *Rx*: 3,4-diaminopyridine or IV immunoglobulin (get specialist help).³⁶⁹ ►Do regular CXR/high-resolution CT as symptoms may precede the cancer by >4yrs.

1 After brief opposition to gentle sustained lid closure, the lids separate ('peek') to show white sclerae.³⁷⁰

2 64% of those with non-tumour LEMS have a family member with autoimmune thyroid disease or DM.³⁷¹

How synapses work—the neuromuscular junction

- 1 Before transmission can occur, neurotransmitter must be packed into synaptic vesicles. At the neuromuscular junction (NMJ) this is acetylcholine (ACh). Each vesicle contains ~8000 ACh molecules.
- 2 When an action potential arrives at the pre-synaptic terminal, depolarization opens voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels (VGCC). In Lambert-Eaton syndrome anti-P/Q type VGCC antibodies disrupt this stage of synaptic transmission.
- 3 Influx of Ca^{2+} through the VGCCs triggers fusion of synaptic vesicles with the pre-synaptic membrane (a process that **botulinum toxin** interferes with), and neurotransmitter is released from the vesicles into the synaptic cleft.
- 4 Transmitter molecules cross the synaptic cleft by diffusion and bind to receptors on the post-synaptic membrane, causing depolarization of the post-synaptic membrane (the end-plate potential). This change in the post-synaptic membrane triggers muscle contraction at the NMJ, or onward transmission of the action potential in neurons. In **myasthenia gravis**, antibodies block the post-synaptic ACh receptors, preventing the end-plate potential from becoming large enough to trigger muscle contraction—and muscle weakness ensues.
- 5 Transmitter action is terminated by enzyme-induced degradation of transmitter (eg acetylcholinesterase), uptake into the pre-synaptic terminal or glial cells, or by diffusion away from synapse.³⁷² Anticholinesterase treatments for myasthenia gravis, such as **pyridostigmine**, reduce the rate of degradation of ACh, increasing the chance that it will trigger an end-plate potential.

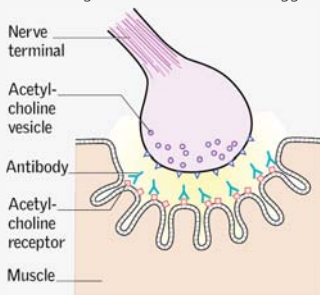


Fig 1. Myasthenia gravis features *post-synaptic* acetylcholine receptor antibodies. Tendon reflexes are normal because the synapses do not have time to become fatigued with such a brief muscle contraction. Ocular palsies are common (it's not exactly clear why).

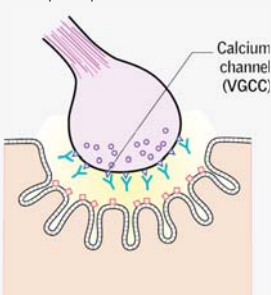


Fig 2. Lambert-Eaton syndrome features *pre-synaptic* Ca^{2+} -channel antibodies. Diplopia and involvement of the muscles of respiration are rare. Depressed tendon reflexes are common, because less transmitter is released, but reflexes may ↑ after maximum voluntary contraction due to a build of transmitter in the synaptic cleft (post-tetanic potentiation). Dysfunction of the autonomic nervous system is also common.

Type 1 neurofibromatosis (NF1, von Recklinghausen's disease)

Autosomal dominant inheritance (gene locus 17q11.2). Expression of NF1 is variable, even within a family. *Prevalence*: 1 in 2500, ♀:♂≈1:1; no racial predilection.

Signs: Café-au-lait spots: flat, coffee-coloured patches of skin seen in 1st year of life (clearest in uv light), increasing in size and number with age. Adults have ≥6, >15mm across. They do *not* predispose to skin cancer. **Freckling**: typically in skin-folds (axillae, groin, neck base, and submammary area⁹), and usually present by age 10. **Dermal neurofibromas**: small, violaceous nodules, gelatinous in texture, which appear at puberty, and may become papillomatous. They are not painful but may itch. Numbers increase with age. **Nodular neurofibromas** arise from nerve trunks. Firm and clearly demarcated, they can give rise to paraesthesiae if pressed. **Lisch nodules** (**fig 1**) are tiny harmless regular brown/translucent mounds (hamartomas) on the iris (use a slit lamp) ≤2mm in diameter. They develop by 6yrs old in 90%. Also short stature and macrocephaly.



Fig 1. Multiple brown Lisch nodules on the iris. ©Jon Miles.

Complications: Occur in 30%. Mild learning disability is common. *Local effects of neurofibromas*: Nerve root compression (weakness, pain, paraesthesiae);³⁷³ GI—bleeds, obstruction; bone—cystic lesions, scoliosis, pseudarthrosis. BPT (6%) from renal artery stenosis or pheochromocytoma. Plexiform neurofibromas (large, subcutaneous swellings). **Malignancy** (5% patients with NF1): optic glioma, sarcomatous change in a neurofibroma. Epilepsy risk ↑ (slight). **Rare association**: carcinoid syndrome (p278).³⁷⁴

Management: Multidisciplinary team with geneticist, neurologist, surgeon, and physiotherapist,³⁷³ orchestrated by a GP. Yearly measurement of BP and cutaneous survey. Dermal neurofibromas are unsightly, and catch on clothing; if troublesome, excise, but removing all lesions is unrealistic. Genetic counselling is vital (*OHCS* p154).

Type 2 neurofibromatosis (NF2)

Autosomal dominant inheritance, though 50% are *de novo*, with mosaicism in some (NF2 gene locus is 22q11). Rarer than NF1 with a prevalence of only 1 in 35,000.

Signs: Café-au-lait spots are fewer than in NF1. **Bilateral vestibular Schwannomas** (= acoustic neuromas; p466) are characteristic, becoming symptomatic by ~20yrs old when sensorineural hearing loss is the 1st sign. There may be tinnitus and vertigo. The rate of tumour growth is unpredictable and variable. The tumours are benign but cause problems by pressing on local structures and by tICP. They may be absent in mosaic NF2. **Juvenile posterior subcapsular lenticular opacity** (a form of cataract) occurs before other manifestations and can be useful in screening those at risk.

Complications: Tender Schwannomas of cranial and peripheral nerves, and spinal nerve roots. Meningiomas (45% in NF2, often multiple). Glial tumours are less common. Consider NF2 in any young person presenting with one of these tumours in isolation.

Management: Hearing tests yearly from puberty in affected families, with MRI brain if abnormality is detected. A normal MRI in the late teens is helpful in assessing risk to any offspring. A clear scan at 30yrs (unless a family history of late onset) indicates that the gene has not been inherited. Treatment of vestibular Schwannomas is neurosurgical and complicated by hearing loss/deterioration and facial palsy. Mean survival from diagnosis is ~15yrs,³⁷⁵ but with best practice should be better.³⁷⁶

Schwannomatosis Multiple tender cutaneous Schwannomas without the bilateral vestibular Schwannomas that are characteristic of NF2. Indistinguishable from mosaic NF2, where vestibular Schwannomas are also absent, except by genetic analysis of tumour biopsies.³⁷⁷ There is typically a large tumour load, assessable only by whole-body MRI. IN11 gene mutations with autosomal dominant inheritance and spontaneous NF2 mutations have both been described.³⁷⁸ Life expectancy is normal.

Diagnostic criteria for neurofibromatosis

NF1 (von Recklinghausen's disease)

Diagnosis is made if 2 of the following are found:

- 1 ≥ 6 café-au-lait macules $>5\text{mm}$ (pre-pubertal) or $>15\text{mm}$ (post-pubertal)
- 2 ≥ 2 neurofibromas of any type or 1 plexiform
- 3 Freckling in the axillary or inguinal regions
- 4 Optic glioma
- 5 ≥ 2 Lisch nodules
- 6 Distinctive osseous lesion typical of NF1, eg sphenoid dysplasia
- 7 First-degree relative with NF1 according to the above criteria

Differential: McCune-Albright syndrome (OHCS p649), multiple lentigines,¹ urticaria pigmentosa (OHCS p610).

NF2

Diagnosis is made if either of the following are found:

- 1 Bilateral vestibular Schwannomas seen on MRI or CT
- 2 First-degree relative with NF2, and either:
 - a) Unilateral vestibular Schwannoma; or
 - b) One of the following:
 - Neurofibroma
 - Meningioma
 - Glioma
 - Schwannoma
 - Juvenile cataract (NF2 type)

Differential: NF1, Schwannomatosis.

Causes of café-au-lait spots: Normal (eg up to 5); NF1 (melanocyte density \uparrow vs 'normal' café-au-lait spots); NF2; rare syndromes: Gaucher's; McCune-Albright; Russel-Silver; tuberous sclerosis; Wiskott-Aldrich.

¹ May be part of **LEOPARD** syndrome: autosomal dominant **L**entigines, **E**CG anomalies, **O**cular hypertelorism (eyes wide-spaced), **P**ulmonary stenosis, **A**nomalies of genital organs, **R**etarded growth, **D**eafness.

Syrinx was one of those versatile virgins of Arcadia who, on being pursued by Pan beside the River Ladon, turned herself into a reed, from which Pan made his pipes, so giving her name to various tubular structures, eg syringe, and syrinx, which is a tubular or slit-like cavity in or close to the central canal of the cervical cord. It may extend up or down. *Mean age of onset: 30yrs. Incidence: 8/100,000/yr.* Symptoms may be static for years, but then worsen fast—eg on coughing or sneezing, as ↑ pressure causes extension, eg into the brainstem (*syringobulbia*).³⁷⁹

Causes Typically, blocked CSF circulation (without 4th ventricular communication), with ↓flow from basal posterior fossa to caudal space, eg Arnold-Chiari malformation (cerebellum herniates through foramen magnum); basal arachnoiditis (after infection, irradiation, subarachnoid haemorrhage); basilar impression/invagination;¹ masses (cysts, rheumatoid pannus, encephalocoele, tumours). *Less commonly*, a syrinx may develop after myelitis, cord trauma or rupture of an AV malformation, or within spinal tumours (ependymoma or haemangioblastoma) due to fluid secreted from neoplastic cells or haemorrhage.

Cardinal signs: Dissociated sensory loss (absent pain and T° sensation, with preserved light touch, vibration, and joint-position sense) due to pressure from the syrinx on the decussating anterolateral pathway (fig 1) in a root distribution reflecting the location of the syrinx (eg for typical cervical syrinx then sensory loss is over trunk and arms); **wasting/weakness** of hands ± **claw-hand** (then arms→shoulders→respiratory muscles). Anterior horn cells are also vulnerable.

Other signs: Horner's syndrome; UMN leg signs; body asymmetry, limb hemi-hyper-trophy, or unilateral odo- or chiromegaly (enlarged hand or foot), perhaps from release of trophic factors via anterior horn cells; **Syringobulbia** (brainstem involvement): nystagmus, tongue atrophy, dysphagia, pharyngeal/palatal weakness, vth nerve sensory loss. **Charcot's (neuropathic) joints:** Increased range of movement (from lost joint proprioception), destroys the joint, which becomes swollen and mobile (see fig 2, p205).³⁸⁰ Causes: tabes dorsalis (eg knee), diabetic neuropathy, paraplegia (eg hips),³⁸¹ syringomyelia (shoulder, wrist),³⁸² leprosy, spinal osteolysis/cord atrophy (systemic sclerosis).³⁸²

MRI imaging How big is the syrinx? Any base-of-brain (Chiari) malformation?

Surgery Don't wait for gross deterioration to occur. Decompression at the foramen magnum may be tried in Chiari malformations, to promote free flow of CSF, and so prevent syrinx dilatation. Surgery may relieve pain, and slow progression.³⁸⁴

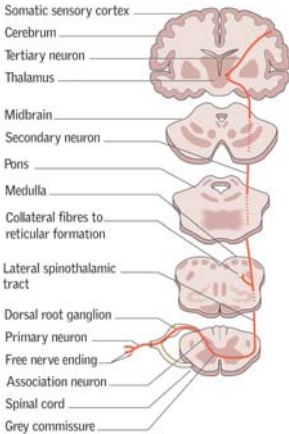


Fig 1. The anterolateral system.³⁸³

Retroviruses and neurology

HIV/AIDS is part of the differential diagnosis of meningitis (eg fungal/TB), intracranial mass lesions (toxoplasmosis), dementia, encephalomyelitis, cord problems,³⁸⁵ and peripheral nerve problems, eg mononeuritis multiplex and Guillain-Barré syndrome.

Tropical spastic paraplegia/HTLV-1 myelopathy is a slowly progressing spastic paraplegia, with paraesthesiae, sensory loss, and disorders of micturition.

1 The top of the odontoid process (part of C2) migrates upwards (congenitally, or in rheumatoid arthritis or osteogenesis imperfecta) causing foramen magnum stenosis ± medulla oblongata compression. Consider basilar invagination if the odontoid tip is ≥4mm above McGregor's line (drawn from the upper surface of the posterior edge of the hard palate to the most caudal point of the occipital curve).

A superficial reading of the foregoing pages might lead one to the conclusion that the structure of the adult brain is fixed, and that a circumscribed lesion will cause reproducible, predictable results (if we remember our neuroanatomy correctly). Furthermore, if a certain phenomenon appears when part of the brain (say area A) is stimulated, and is lost when the same part of the brain is injured, we happily conclude that area A is the centre for laughter, fear, or whatever the phenomenon is. A lesion here, and you will stop laughing for ever, we might think. An area on the hard disk of our mind has been scratched. The grey cells do not regenerate themselves, so the brain carries on as before with this one defect. The more we look at the brain, the more wrong this model becomes.

If our brains were like a computer, the more tasks we did at the same time, the slower we would do any one task. In fact, our performance can *improve*, the more simultaneous tasks we take on. This is why music helps some of us concentrate. Experiments using functional MRI show that listening to polyphonic music recruits memory circuits, promotes attention, and aids semantic processing, target detection, and some forms of imagery.³⁸⁶

Another way in which our brains are not like a computer is that we are born with certain predispositions and expectations. Our hard disk was never blank. Just as the skin on the feet of new-born babies is thicker than other areas, as if feet were made with a prior knowledge of walking or somehow expecting walking, so our brains are made expecting a world of stimuli, which need making sense of by reframing sequential events in terms of cause and effect. We cannot help unconsciously imposing cause and effect relationships on events which are purely sequential. This unconscious reframing no doubt has survival value.

The model we have of brain function is important because it influences our attitude to our patients. If we are stuck with a neuroanatomical model, we will be rather pessimistic and guarded in our assessment of how patients may recover after neurological events. If we use a model that is more holistic and reality-based, such as the Piaget-type model in which the brain is seen as intrinsically unstable and continually re-creating itself, we will grant our patients more possibilities.³⁸⁷ Our model of the brain must encompass its ability to set goals for itself, and to be self-actuating.³⁸⁸ Unstructured optimism is unwarranted, but structured optimism is to some extent a self-fulfilling prognosis. For many medical conditions, the more optimistic we are, and the more we involve our patients in their own care and its planning, the faster and better they will recover.³⁸⁹ If we combine this with the observed fact that those with an optimistic turn of mind are less likely to suffer stroke,³⁹⁰ we can reach the conclusion that emotional wellbeing predicts subsequent functional independence and survival. When this hypothesis is tested directly in a prospective way, the effect of emotional wellbeing is found to be direct and strong and independent of other factors such as functional status, sociodemographic variables, chronic conditions, body mass index, etc.³⁹¹

So the conclusion is that the brain has an unknown amount of inherent plasticity, and an unknown potential for healing after injury—uninjured areas may take on new functions, and injured parts may function in new ways.¹ The great challenge of neurology is to work to maximize this potential for recovery and re-creation. This demands knowledge of your patient, as well as knowledge of neuroanatomy and neurophysiology. The point is that there is no predefined limit to what is possible.

1 In early frontotemporal dementia, artistic creativity may blossom—suggesting that language is not required for, and may even inhibit, certain types of visual creativity. See p490.



Contents

- Looking after people with cancer 523
- Oncology and genetics 524
- Oncological emergencies 528
- Cancer therapies 528
- Radiotherapy 530
- Urgent referral in possible malignancy 532
- Tumour markers 534
- Palliative care:
 - Principles and symptom relief 536
 - Pain relief 538

Relevant pages for specific cancers:

- Anal (p633)
- Breast (p604)
- CNS (p502)
- Colorectal (p618)
- Leukaemias/lymphomas (p346–p357)
- Liver (p270)
- Lung (p170)
- Mesothelioma (p192)
- Melanoma/skin cancers (p598)
- MEN (p215)
- Myeloma (p362)
- Pancreas (p276)
- Renal/urinary tract (p646/648)
- Testicular (p652)
- Thyroid (p602)
- Upper GI (p620)



Fig 1. Nothing ever really matters, we might think, on gazing into the heavens, and spotting a few exploding galaxies or dying suns. But if we lead a more or less insignificant life we might rather like to matter. Dame Cicely Saunders (who combined nursing, social work and medicine, as well as founding the first hospice) matters to us because she never stopped telling her patients “*You matter because you are you. You matter to the last moment of your life.*” Was she right? We are better doctors if we believe her.

Consciously and continually strive to make your patients feel that they matter. Then you will realize that you matter too—and the exploding galaxies and dying suns will, for a moment, be eclipsed.

Relevant pages in other chapters: Active management of death (p7); immunosuppressive drugs (p370); pain (p576); dying at home (OHCS p498).

Communicating about cancer

Communication forms the first step in understanding, treating, or coming to terms with cancer. A range of overwhelming feelings can surface on receiving this diagnosis, including shock, numbness, denial, panic, anger and resignation (“I knew all along...”). Some doctors instinctively turn away from ‘undisciplined squads of emotions’ and try to stop them taking over consultations. A more positive approach is to try to use these to benefit and motivate your patient, through listening to and addressing their worst fears. ▶ **Include your patient in all decision-making processes.** Many patients (not just the young and well informed) will appreciate this, and the giving of information and the sharing of decisions is known to reduce treatment morbidity. So, even when this is physically exhausting (the same ground may need covering many times) it is definitely worth spending this time. A huge amount is forgotten or fails to register initially, so videos and written information are important. Be sure to question, in an open way, about use of alternative therapies, which can indicate psychosocial distress and is frequently a sign of undisclosed worry of recurrence.¹ Ask about this and through good communication and the promotion of autonomy, your patient’s fear-driven wish to try dangerous or untried therapies may be trumped by a spirit of rational optimism.

Looking after people with cancer

No rules guarantee success, but getting to know your patient, making an agreed management plan, and seeking out the right expert for each stage of treatment *all* need to be central activities in oncology. The patient will bring worries from all aspects of their family, work and social life. Communication is central to resolving these issues and the personal attributes of the doctor as a physician are key. Remember, it is never too early to start palliative care (*with* other treatments) and that *quality of life* is of the utmost importance.

Psychological support Meta-analyses have suggested that psychological support can ↓pain² & improve outcome measures such as survival.³ Examples include:

- *Allowing negative feelings*, eg fear or anger (anger can anaesthetize pain).
- *Counselling*, eg with a breast cancer nurse in preparation for mastectomy.
- *Biofeedback and relaxation therapy* can ↓ side-effects of chemotherapy.⁴
- *Cognitive behavioural therapy* reduces psychological morbidity associated with cancer treatments. See *OHCS* p370.
- *Group therapy* (*OHCS* p376) reduces pain, mood disturbance and the frequency of maladaptive coping strategies.

Streamlining care pathways Care pathways map journeys in a health system: symptoms felt→unknown psychic processes¹→GP appointment→referral→hospital appointment→consultant clinic→imaging→initial treatment (surgery, etc). Each arrow represents a possibly fatal delay. 48h access to GPs, GP referral under a '2-week rule' (hospital must see within 2wks, inevitably making other equally or more deserving patients wait longer) and e-booking (like on-line airline reservations) are unreliable ways of speeding up the crucial arrow pointing to initial treatment.⁵ The only way to do this is to increase capacity (beds, nurses, doctors, equipment, theatres).

Hints for breaking bad news⁶

- 1 Set the environment up carefully. Choose a quiet place where you will not be disturbed. Make sure family are present if wanted. Be sure of your facts.
- 2 Find out what the patient already knows or surmises (often a great deal). This may change rapidly, and different perceptions may all be relevant.
- 3 Ascertain how much the person wants to know. You can be surprisingly direct. "If anything were amiss, would you want to know all the details?"
- 4 Give some warning—"There is some bad news for us to address". Offer small amounts of information at a time, as this can soften the impact.
- 5 Share information about diagnosis and treatments. Specifically list supporting people (eg nurses) and institutions (eg hospices). Break information down into manageable chunks and check understanding for each. Ask "Is there anything else you want me to explain?" Don't hesitate to go over the same ground repeatedly. Allow denial: don't force the pace, give them time.
- 6 'Cancer' has negative connotations for many people. Address this, and explain that ~50% of cancers are cured in the developed world.⁷
- 7 Listen to any concerns raised; encourage the airing of feelings and empathize.
- 8 Prognosis questions are often hardest to answer, doctors are usually too optimistic.⁸ Encourage an appropriate level of hope, refer to an expert.
- 9 Summarize, make a plan and offer availability. Record details of the conversation in the notes (including the language used).
- 10 Follow through. ▶Leave the patient with the strong impression that come what may, you are with them, and that this unwritten contract will not be broken.

Don't imagine that a single blueprint will always work. Use whatever the patient gives you—closely observe both verbal and non-verbal cues.⁹ Practise in low-key interactions with patients, so that when great difficulties arise you have a better chance of helping. Humans are very complex, and we all frequently fail—don't be put off: keep trying, and recap with colleagues afterwards, so you keep learning.

1 Why is there so much variation in cancer 5-yr survival rates? In breast cancer, 5-yr survival is 82% in England, 88% in Australia and 89% in Sweden. One reason is NHS inefficiency; another is cultural. If an English woman feels a lump she may say "I haven't got time to be ill," or "Let's see if it goes away," or "If this is how I'm going to die, so be it," but others may say "I'd better get this sorted *now*."¹⁰



Genetic changes drive the pathogenesis of cancer. These changes occur most commonly as acquired events, but they may be inherited as germline mutations causing a cancer predisposition syndrome.

Familial breast/ovarian cancer Around 5–10% of breast cancers are due to mutation in BRCA1 (17q) or BRCA2 (13q). Both genes function as tumour suppressors (see BOX 2). Carrying a BRCA1 mutation confers a 65% lifetime risk of developing breast cancer and a 40% risk of developing ovarian cancer. For BRCA2 the risk of breast cancer is 45% (6% in affected males) and 11% for ovarian cancer. In BRCA1 there is also a 40–60% risk of developing a second breast cancer.¹¹ Incidence of mutations varies among populations. In families with ≥ 4 cases of breast cancer collected by the Breast Cancer Linkage Consortium, the disease was linked to BRCA1 in 52% of families and BRCA2 in 32%. Individuals from families in which a mutation has not been detected can be given risk estimation based on the number of individuals affected and age of onset of cancer.

Treatment is essentially that for non-hereditary disease (p604). It is less clear how to manage asymptomatic carriers or prevent second breast cancers. Annual MRI surveillance is more sensitive than mammography in detecting cancer in women <50 years.¹² It should be offered to all BRCA1/2 carriers aged 30–50, and to those aged 30–39 with >8% 10 year risk, or >20% if aged 40–49.¹³ Bilateral prophylactic mastectomy in BRCA1/2 reduces risk of breast cancer by ~90%¹⁴ and may be offered in conjunction with oophorectomy. No drug has been fully assessed for prevention in high-risk patients. **Tamoxifen** is associated with a reduction of contralateral breast cancer in BRCA1/2 carriers but has unacceptable side-effects. The aromatase inhibitor **exemestane** is effective in reducing breast cancer in non-BCRA postmenopausal women.¹⁵ Trials of letrozole for prevention in BRCA patients are ongoing.¹⁶ There is optimism for a new class of agents known as **poly(ADP)-ribose polymerase (PARP)** inhibitors.

Familial prostate cancer ~5% of those with prostate cancer have a family history: the genetic basis is multifactorial. Risk is modestly elevated for male carriers of BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations, although the molecular basis of this remains to be elucidated. Mutations in BRCA1/BRCA2 or in the genes on chromosomes 1 and X do not account for all family clusters of prostate cancer and so it is clear that other genes must be involved. In one twin study, 42% of the risk was found to be genetic.¹⁷

Familial colorectal cancer ~20% of those with colorectal cancer have a family history of the disease. An individual's relative risk (RR) of colorectal cancer is related to the degree of family history—refer to a genetic clinic if: • Two affected 1st-degree relatives aged <70 (RR $\times 5$); • One affected 1st-degree relative aged <45yrs at diagnosis (RR $\times 3$); • 3 close relatives affected with average age at onset <60yrs (RR $\times 2$); • Familial adenomatous polyposis (below); • Potential family history of HNPCC (below).

Familial adenomatous polyposis is due to germline mutations in the APC gene (5q). Offspring are at 50% risk of being a gene carrier, and gene penetrance approaches 100% for colorectal cancer by 50yrs old. Once diagnosed, total colectomy prevents the inevitable development of carcinoma.

Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (p722) has a 10–20% lifetime risk of colorectal cancer, and is due to germline mutations in STK11, a serine threonine kinase (locus: 19p14).

Hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) entails familial aggregation of colorectal cancer (HNPCC1) \pm cancer of uterus, ovary, stomach, renal pelvis, small gut, or pancreas (HNPCC2) with mutations in 1 of 5 DNA mismatch repair genes. Suspect a family history if ≥ 3 affected relatives (one 1st-degree), from 2 successive generations, of whom one was affected <50yrs old. Inheritance is autosomal dominant (incomplete penetrance). Genetic testing may be indicated. Lifetime risk of colorectal cancer for relatives who carry a mutation is 60%, and women with a mutation have a 40% lifetime risk of endometrial cancer. There is no consensus on prophylactic surgery/most centres use colonoscopic surveillance.

Characteristics of cancer cells

It is proposed that six alterations in cell physiology collectively dictate malignant growth: **1** Autonomy from growth signals; **2** Insensitivity to growth inhibitory signals; **3** Evasion of programmed cell death (apoptosis); **4** Unlimited replication potential; **5** Recruitment and proliferation of blood vessels (angiogenesis); **6** Invasion and metastasis. Each of these new capabilities represents the successful breach of an inherent anticancer defence mechanism.¹⁸

Oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes¹⁹

Mutations in normal genes involved in pathways associated with cell growth, differentiation, and death contribute to carcinogenesis. These mutations may result in a 'gain of function' (oncogenes) or 'loss of function' (tumour suppressor genes).

Oncogenes are mutated genes that increase activity in the absence of a relevant signal. For example, *ras* is a protein involved in signal transduction as part of a tiered cascade of molecular interactions. It is mutated in ~30% of human cancers. Oncogenes behave in a dominant manner, therefore mutation to one allele results in continuous unchecked activation. Oncogene mutations occur most often as somatic events in sporadic tumours, or during the progression to malignancy in those with a predisposition gene. They are rarely inherited.

Tumour suppressor genes act as inhibitors of cellular growth. Suppression of pro-malignant processes are therefore lost in mutated genes. Unlike oncogenes, mutations to both alleles must occur before cellular effects are evident—usually as separate somatic events, but in the case of predisposition genes, the first 'hit' is inherited and the second may occur somatically. Thus the same gene can be involved in both inherited and sporadic tumours and explains why tumours occur at an earlier age and more than once in familial cancers. *p53* is a tumour suppressor gene mutated in ~50% of human cancers. Loss of function results in increased mutation, angiogenesis and tumour growth.

Multistep carcinogenesis

Most cancers arise from multiple mutations. This is perhaps best represented in the stepwise accumulation of cellular mutations in the pathogenesis of colorectal cancer, where virtually all carcinomas develop from adenomatous polyps (fig 1). It is thought to be the accumulation of mutations rather than the order that is critical to developing colorectal cancer.

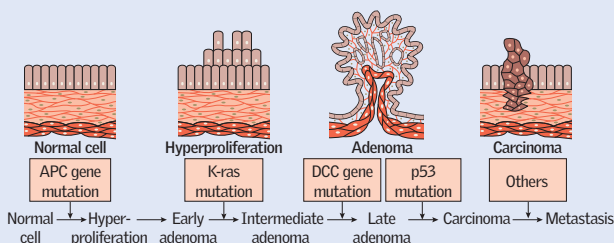


Fig 1. Stepwise cellular mutations and contributing genes in the development of colorectal cancer.²⁰

Other familial cancer syndromes: Von Hippel-Lindau (kidney, CNS) (p726); Carney complex (p215); MEN1 (pituitary, pancreas, thyroid; p215); MEN2 (p215); Neurofibromatosis type 1 (CNS—rare; p518); Neurofibromatosis type 2 (common—meningiomas, auditory neuromas; p518).

► A patient who becomes acutely unwell can often be made more comfortable with simple measures, but some problems require specific treatment.

Febrile neutropenic patients ►► Immediate treatment saves lives. See p346.

Spinal cord compression (see also p470) Urgent and efficient treatment is required to preserve neurological function. A high index of suspicion is essential (Box). **Causes:** Typically extradural metastases. **Other causes:** extension of tumour from a vertebral body, direct extension of the tumour, or crush fracture. **Signs and symptoms:** Back pain, weakness or sensory loss with a root distribution (or a sensory level), bowel and bladder dysfunction. Have a low threshold for investigating patients with known cancer, who present with new or worsening back pain (especially thoracic or cervical) and any deterioration in mobility or sensation. **Investigations:** Urgent MRI of the whole spine. **Management:** *Dexamethasone* 16mg/24h po. Palliative radiotherapy is the commonest treatment. Selected patients should have decompressive surgery.²¹ Discuss with a neurosurgeon and clinical oncologist immediately.

Superior vena cava (svc) obstruction with airway compromise svc obstruction is not an emergency unless there is tracheal compression *with airway compromise*: otherwise there is usually time to plan optimal treatment, which is preferable to rushing into therapy that may not be beneficial.²² **Causes:** Malignancy accounts for >90% of svc obstruction, ¾ of which are from lung cancer. **Rare causes:** mediastinal enlargement (eg germ cell tumour), thymus malignancy, mediastinal lymphadenopathy (eg lymphoma), thrombotic disorders (eg Behçet's or nephrotic syndromes), thrombus around an IV central line, hamartoma. **Signs and symptoms:** Dyspnoea, orthopnoea, plethora/cyanosis, swollen face and arm, cough, headache and engorged veins. **Pemberton's test:** Lifting the arms over the head for >1min causes facial plethora/cyanosis, JVP† (non-pulsatile), and inspiratory stridor. **Investigations:** Urgent contrast enhanced CT. **Management:** Get a tissue diagnosis if the cause is unknown (eg biopsy of peripheral lymph node; bronchoscopy may be hazardous). Give oral *dexamethasone* 8–16mg/24h. Consider balloon venoplasty and svc stenting as this provides the most rapid relief of symptoms²³ (eg prior to radical or palliative chemo- or radiotherapy, depending on tumour type).

Malignancy associated hypercalcaemia Affects 10–20% of patients with cancer, and 40% of those with myeloma. It is a very poor prognostic sign with 75% of patients dead within 3 months of starting hypocalcaemic treatment. **Causes:** Lytic bone mets, myeloma, production of osteoclast activating factor or PTH-like hormones by the tumour. **Symptoms:** Lethargy, anorexia, nausea, polydipsia, polyuria, constipation, dehydration, confusion, weakness. Most obvious with corrected serum Ca^{2+} >3mmol/L (but >2.6mmol/L may be enough in some patients). **Acute management** involves rehydration followed by IV bisphosphonate (or calcitonin if resistant) ► See p691 for treatment of *acute hypercalcaemia*. Maintenance therapy with IV bisphosphonates is often required. The best treatment is control of underlying malignancy.

Raised intracranial pressure (see also p840). Due to either a primary CNS tumour or metastatic disease. **Signs and symptoms:** Headache (often worse in the morning, when coughing or bending over), nausea, vomiting, papilloedema, fits, focal neurological signs. **Investigations:** Urgent CT/MRI is important to diagnose an expanding mass, cystic degeneration, haemorrhage within a tumour, cerebral oedema, or hydrocephalus due to tumour or blocked shunt, since the management of these scenarios can be very different. **Treatment:** *Dexamethasone* 8–16mg/24h po, radiotherapy, and surgery as appropriate depending on cause. *Mannitol* may be tried for symptom relief for cerebral oedema (not evidence-based).²⁴

Tumour lysis syndrome Rapid cell death on starting chemotherapy for rapidly proliferating leukaemia, lymphoma, myeloma, and some germ cell tumours can result in a rise in serum urate, K^+ , and phosphate, precipitating renal failure. Prevention is key, with good hydration and *allopurinol* started 24h before chemotherapy (300mg/12h po if good renal function; if creatinine >100µmol/L give 100mg on alternate days).²⁵ Haemodialysis may be needed in renal failure. A more potent uricolytic agent is *rasburicase* (recombinant urate oxidase) 200µg/kg/d IVI for 5–7d.²⁶

When you suspect cord compression from metastases...²⁷

- Get advice today—eg from a neurosurgeon, or, where appointed, from your *metastatic spinal cord compression co-ordinator*. He or she will want to know:
- Why you think it is urgent—eg back pain disturbing sleep (p544), radicular pain, local spinal tenderness with weak legs, sphincter disturbance, or a sensory level.
 - Has a tissue diagnosis of cancer been made?
 - Is the patient too frail for specialist treatment?
 - How is the compression progressing? If paraplegic for >24h, you may be too late.
 - How long is the patient likely to live? Is it >3 months? *Urgent radiotherapy* may have a role. If longer, *spinal reconstruction* with a bone graft may be appropriate. *Vertebral body reinforcement* is one option for pain. *Laminectomy* alone should only be done for isolated epidural tumours or neural arch metastases.
 - What is the fluid status (over-hydration is a danger)?
 - Has DVT prophylaxis been considered (p580)?
 - Have bisphosphonates (p696) been started? (Needed in all those with vertebral involvement from myeloma or breast cancer—they help pain and stability.)
 - Has the option of palliative radiotherapy been considered?

Cancer staging

Staging systems are used to describe the extent to which a cancer has spread when first diagnosed. This is vital to determine the most appropriate treatment and to assess prognosis. It also provides a common language for doctors to communicate. Note that the stage of a cancer does not change, even if the cancer progresses or recurs. Most solid organ cancers are staged using the TNM system¹, which is based on the extent of tumour (T), the extent of spread to lymph nodes (N), and the presence of metastases (M). Each cancer using the TNM system has its own classification—some use additional values and more detailed subcategories to those listed below:

T_x	Primary tumour cannot be assessed	N_x	Nodes cannot be assessed
T₀	No evidence of primary tumour	N₀	No node involvement
T_{is}	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	N₁₋₃	Regional node metastases
T₁₋₄	Size and/or extent of primary tumour (1=small tumour with minimal invasion; 4=large tumour with extensive invasion)	M₀	No distant spread
		M₁	Distant metastases

A number of prefixes may also be used: **c** refers to **clinical** stage (based on information gained prior to surgery, eg from imaging or biopsy); **p** is the stage given after **pathological** examination; **y** refers to assessment of stage after neoadjuvant therapy; **r** is used if a tumour is **re-staged** after a disease-free interval; **a** indicates stage determined at autopsy.

A colorectal cancer staged as pT2 pN1b M0 describes a tumour staged after pathological examination that invades the muscularis propria of the bowel and has metastases in 2-3 regional lymph nodes, with no evidence of distant metastases. For specific TNM staging see p171 (lung cancer); p604 (breast cancer); p621 (oesophageal cancer); p649 (bladder cancer). Some cancers may also have alternative staging systems such as Duke's classification for colorectal cancer (p619) or the FIGO system used in gynaecological malignancies.

The TNM stage may be combined to assign an overall 'Stage'. In some cancers this may also require non-anatomical factors, such as the histological Gleason score in prostate cancer (p647), or the presence of serum tumour markers in testicular cancer. Stage 0 refers to carcinoma *in situ*; Stages I-III describe local, locally advanced and regional disease; Stage IV indicates distant metastatic disease.

¹ The TNM system was developed and is maintained by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) and the International Union Against Cancer (UICC). Gynaecological malignancies use both the TNM and FIGO classifications for staging. Haematological malignancies and CNS tumours do not use the TNM system.

Cancer affects 30% of the population; 20% die from it. Management requires a multidisciplinary team, and communication is vital. Most patients wish to have some part in decision-making at the various stages of their treatment, and to be informed of their options. The majority will undergo a variety of therapies during the treatment of their cancer and your job may be to orchestrate these. ► *Include the patient in the decision-making process* (p522).

Surgery Has a number of roles: • Surgical biopsy may be required to provide tissue for histological diagnosis. • Staging may be undertaken laparoscopically. • Surgery is often performed with curative intent and is the mainstay of treatment (and principal hope of cure) in most patients with solid tumours. It may be the only treatment required in early GI tumours, soft tissue sarcomas, and gynaecological tumours, but best results are often achieved when used in combination with radiotherapy or chemotherapy. • Palliative surgery may be required in advanced disease, eg surgical debulking of large tumours or stabilization of pathological fractures. • Occasionally surgery may be used prophylactically, eg in BRCA/FAP (p524).

Radiotherapy Uses ionizing radiation to kill tumour cells. See p530.

Chemotherapy Cytotoxics should be given under expert guidance by people trained in their administration. Drugs are given with a variety of intents, often in combination: *Neoadjuvant*—to shrink tumours prior to surgery and thus reduce the need for major surgery (eg mastectomy). There is also a rationale that considers early control of micro-metastasis. *Primary therapy*—as the sole treatment, eg for haematological malignancies. *Adjuvant*—to reduce the chance of relapse after primary surgery in, eg breast and bowel cancers. *Palliative*—to provide relief from symptomatic metastatic disease and possibly to prolong survival.

Important classes of drugs include:

- **Alkylating agents:** Antiproliferative drugs that bind via alkyl groups to DNA, eg cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil, busulfan.
- **Antimetabolites:** Interfere with normal cellular metabolism of nucleic acids, eg methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil.
- **Vinca alkaloids:** 'Spindle poisons' which target mechanisms of cell division, eg vincristine, vinblastine.
- **Antitumour antibiotics:** Vary in action (depending on type), eg dactinomycin, doxorubicin, mitomycin.
- **Monoclonal antibodies:** Inhibit a specific targeted process, such as angiogenesis, (eg bevacizumab for renal cell carcinoma), or epidermal growth factor receptors (eg panitumumab and cetuximab). NB: over-expression of epidermal growth factor receptors correlates with poor prognosis in many cancers.
- **Others:** eg etoposide, taxanes, platinum compounds.

Side-effects depend on the types of drugs used, and include:

- **Vomiting:** A source of much anxiety and should be prevented before the 1st dose, thus avoiding anticipatory vomiting: eg metoclopramide 10–20mg/8h, ondansetron 4–8mg/8h can be effective. See p241, Box.
- **Alopecia:** Can have a profound impact on self esteem and quality of life.
- **Neutropenia:** Most commonly seen 10–14d after chemotherapy (but can occur within 7d for taxanes). ►► Neutropenic sepsis requires immediate attention (p346).

Principles of combination chemotherapy:

Combination therapy has important advantages over single-agent use. It increases tumour cell kill, leading to improved overall response. It offers a broader range of drug activity against resistant tumour cells and it prevents or slows the development of new drug-resistant cells. Each drug should have: • Single-agent activity in that tumour type (preferentially including drugs that induce complete remission) • A different mechanism of activity—ideally with additive or synergistic cytotoxic effect • Non-overlapping toxicity—to maximize the benefit of full therapeutic doses • Action on a different part of the cell cycle • Different mechanisms of resistance.²⁸

Planning or avoiding surgery in patients with cancer

Ambitious surgery may be futile if a cancer has already metastasized—knowing when to halt further intervention is essential. A key process in planning the right procedure is to interest a radiologist in your problem. This may require more than scrawling a brief request on an x-ray form. The range of imaging available is constantly changing, so discussing the request in person with a radiologist may help direct the use of the most appropriate modality to answer your question.²⁹

CT: Extensive application in many cancers.

MRI: Used for precise staging in areas occult to CT (eg marrow, CNS). See p748.

Bone scan: Used for staging/follow-up of prostate, breast, and lung cancer.

Sestamibi scan: Used for localizing active disease in breast cancer and thyroid (eg if not iodine-avid). Like bone scans, it uses technetium (^{99m}Tc).

Thallium scan: Used to localize viable tissue, eg in brain tumours.

Gallium scan: Used for staging and follow-up in lymphoma.

Octreotide scan: Used to demonstrate cancers with somatostatin receptors (eg pancreas, medullary thyroid, neuroblastoma, and carcinoid tumours).

Monoclonal antibodies: ^{99m}Tc-labelled tumour antibodies are used in staging by detecting tumour antigen, eg in lung, colon, and prostate cancer.

FDG PET: 2-[¹⁸F] fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose positron emission tomography detects high rates of aerobic metabolism, eg in lung, colon, breast, and testis.

MIBG scan (¹³¹I): Used to localize noradrenaline production, eg pheochromocytoma. MIBG = meta-iodobenzylguanidine.

Extravasation of chemotherapeutic agents

Do not use an IV line for cytotoxic drugs if there is any doubt about its patency. Extravasation of vesicant agents can cause severe tissue necrosis. ▶Suspect if there is pain, burning or swelling at the infusion site.

Management:³⁰ Stop the infusion and disconnect the drip. Attempt to aspirate any residual drug from the cannula before removing. Take advice and follow local policies if available (many cancer wards have 'extravasation kits'). Follow any drug-specific management recommendations. Apply a cold pack (if extravasation of a DNA binding drug) to vasoconstrict and minimize drug spread, or a heat pack (if non-DNA binding drug) to vasodilate and increase drug distribution/absorption. Local injection of corticosteroids is controversial and their effectiveness is not proven. Topical steroids may help reduce non-specific inflammation. Evidence surrounding the use of antidotes is conflicting.³¹ Liaise early with a plastic surgeon, eg to discuss flush-out. Elevate the arm, mark the affected area and review regularly. Give analgesia if required. Consider reporting to the National Extravasation Scheme.³²

Beau's lines



Fig 1. Beau's lines.

Beau's lines (fig 1) are horizontal depressions in the nail plate that run parallel to the moon-shaped portion of the nail bed. They result from a sudden interruption of nail keratin synthesis and may be due to local infection or trauma, systemic illness or from medication (see p32). Each line in this photo coincided with a round of chemotherapy for breast cancer. The patient was triumphant at having survived it all (just).

1 Some recommend (on scant evidence) topical dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and cooling after extravasation of anthracyclines or mitomycin, locally injected hyaluronidase if vinca alkaloids involved, and locally injected sodium thiosulfate (sodium hyposulfite) if chlormethine (mechlorethamine; mustine). NB all uses unlicensed.

Radiotherapy is used in >50% of cancer patients. It uses ionizing radiation to produce free radicals which damage DNA. Normal cells are better at repairing this damage than cancer cells, so are able to recover before the next dose (or fraction) of treatment.

Radical treatment is given with curative intent. The total doses given range from 40–70 gray (Gy) in 15–35 daily fractions. Some regimens involve giving several smaller fractions a day with a gap of 6–8h. Combined chemoradiation is used in some sites, eg anus and oesophagus, to increase response rates.

Palliation aims to relieve symptoms—it may not impact on survival time. Doses are 8–30Gy, given in 1, 2, 5, or 10 fractions. Bone pain, haemoptysis, cough, dyspnoea, and bleeding are helped in >50% of patients. *"Will this patient benefit from radiotherapy?"* is a frequently asked question.^{33, 34} When in doubt, ask an expert (or two). Remember it may take 3 weeks before radiotherapy begins to produce a therapeutic effect.

Early reactions occur within 8 weeks of treatment.

- **Tiredness:** Common after radical treatments. It can last weeks to months.
- **Skin reactions:** These vary from erythema to dry desquamation to moist desquamation to ulceration. On completing treatment, use moisturizers.
- **Mucositis:** All patients receiving head and neck treatment should have a dental check-up before therapy. Avoid smoking, alcohol, and spicy foods. Antiseptic mouthwashes may help. Aspirin gargle and other soluble analgesics are helpful. Treat oral thrush, eg with *Nystatin* oral solution (1mL swill and swallow every 6h) ± fluconazole 50mg/24h po.
- **Nausea and vomiting:** Occur when stomach, liver, or brain treated. Try *metoclopramide* (dopamine antagonist) 10–20mg/8h po, or *domperidone* (blocks the central chemoreceptor trigger zone) 10–20mg/8h po. If unsuccessful, try a serotonin (5HT₃) antagonist, eg *ondansetron* 4–8mg/8h po/iv. See p241, BOX 3.
- **Diarrhoea:** Usually after abdominal or pelvic treatments. Maintain good hydration. Avoid high-fibre bulking agents; try *loperamide* 2mg po after each loose stool (max 16mg/24h).
- **Dysphagia:** Following thoracic treatments.
- **Cystitis:** After pelvic treatments. Drink plenty of fluids. Use NSAIDs.
- **Bone marrow suppression:** More likely after chemotherapy unless large areas are being irradiated. Usually reversible.

Late reactions occur months or years after treatment.

- **CNS:** *Somnolence*, 6–12wks after brain radiotherapy. Treat with steroids. *Spinal cord myelopathy*—progressive weakness. MRI is needed to exclude cord compression. *Brachial plexopathy*—numb, weak, and painful arm after axillary radiotherapy. Reduced IQ can occur in children receiving brain irradiation if <6yrs old.
- **Lung:** *Pneumonitis* may occur 6–12wks after thoracic treatment, eg with dry cough ± dyspnoea. Treat with *prednisolone* 40mg od, reducing over 6wks.
- **GI:** *Xerostomia*—reduced saliva. Treat with *pilocarpine* 5mg/8h po or artificial saliva with meals (OHCS p579). Care must be taken with all future dental care as healing is reduced. *Benign strictures*—of oesophagus or bowel. Treat with dilatation. *Fistulae* need surgery. *Radiation proctitis* may be a problem after prostate irradiation. NB: those having radiotherapy for rectal cancer seem to have a **lower** than expected incidence of prostate cancer in the next decade (risk ↓ by 72%).³⁵
- **GU:** *Urinary frequency:* small fibrosed bladder after pelvic treatments. *Fertility:* pelvic radiotherapy (and cytotoxics) may ↓ fertility, so consider ova or sperm storage. This is a complex area: get expert help. See BOX 2. In premature female menopause or reduced testosterone, replace hormones. *Vaginal stenosis* and *dyspareunia*. *Erectile dysfunction* can occur several years after pelvic radiotherapy.
- **Others:** *Panhypopituitarism* following radical treatment involving pituitary fossa. Children need hormones checking regularly as growth hormone may be required. *Hypothyroidism*—neck treatments, eg for Hodgkin's lymphoma. *Secondary cancers*, eg sarcomas, usually wait 10 or more years before appearing, as do *Cataracts*.

Methods of delivering radiotherapy

Conventional external beam radiotherapy (EBRT) is the most common form of treatment and delivers beams of ionizing radiation to the patient from an external linear accelerator.

Stereotactic radiotherapy is a highly accurate form of EBRT used to target small lesions with great precision—most frequently in treating intracranial conditions. It is often referred to by the manufacturer's name, eg *Gamma Knife*®, *Truebeam*®.

Brachytherapy involves a radiation source being placed within or close to a tumour, allowing high local radiation dose to a small tumour. Implants may be placed within a cavity (eg uterus) or interstitially (eg prostate or breast).

Radioisotope therapy uses tumour-seeking radionuclides to target specific tissues. For example, ^{131}I (radioiodine) to ablate remaining thyroid tissue after thyroidectomy for thyroid cancer. MIBG (p529) is used to treat neural crest tumours.

Fertility issues in cancer patients

Plan with patients *before* treatment and get expert help.

Chemotherapy and radiotherapy often damage germ cell spermatogonia (causing impaired spermatogenesis or male sterility), and may hasten oocyte depletion (premature menopause). GnRH agonists, eg goserelin, used concurrently during chemotherapy may help to preserve ovarian function.³⁶ As treatments become more effective and survival improves, there are more survivors in the reproductive years for whom parenting is a top priority.³⁷ There is nothing like the hope of creating new life to sustain patients through the difficult times of radio- and chemotherapy, so make sure this hope is well founded.³⁸

Semen cryopreservation from men and older boys with cancer must be offered before therapy. With modern fertility treatment (OHCS p293), even poor quality samples can yield successful pregnancies.³⁹ Another option is use of sperm from cryopreserved testicular tissue followed up with intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI). If your patient is a man some years after cancer therapy who is unable to have children, refer him to a specialist. ► *Do not write him off as infertile*—testicular sperm extraction (TESE) with ICSI can yield normal pregnancies.⁴⁰

Cryopreservation of embryos and **ovarian tissue banking** are harder options in women.⁴¹ Cryopreservation requires ovarian stimulation and oocyte collection, which may result in unacceptable delays to treatment. Harvesting and storing ovarian cortical tissue from girls and young women before potentially gonadotoxic therapy is only available in some centres.⁴²

For ethical issues see OHCS p293.



Diagnosis of cancer on clinical grounds alone can be difficult; however, a variety of clinical scenarios and symptoms should alert you to the possible presence of malignancy and prompt urgent referral to the appropriate specialist. The list below is by no means exhaustive but covers the commonest presentations.

Lung • Immediate admission if there are signs of superior vena caval obstruction (p526) or stridor; • Urgently (within 2 weeks) if persistent haemoptysis (smokers or non-smokers over 40); • Suggestive CXR (pleural effusion, slowly resolving consolidation); • Normal CXR but high suspicion; • History of asbestos exposure and recent chest pain or dyspnoea; • Unexplained systemic symptoms with suspicious CXR. ► **High-risk groups:** ex- and current smokers, COPD (p176), asbestos exposure (p192), previous cancer.

Upper gastrointestinal • Urgent referral should be regardless of *H. pylori* status if there is *dyspepsia* plus any one of chronic GI bleeding, dysphagia, progressive unintentional weight loss, persistent vomiting, iron-deficiency anaemia, epigastric mass, or suspicious barium meal result. *Also:* • Isolated dysphagia; • Unexplained upper abdominal pain and weight loss, with or without back pain; • Upper abdominal mass without dyspepsia; • Obstructive jaundice; • Consider referral in vomiting or iron deficiency anaemia with weight loss, or in dyspepsia with Barrett's oesophagus, dysplasia, atrophic gastritis or old (>20yrs ago) peptic ulcer surgery. ► **For endoscopy:** those over 55 with persistent unexplained recent onset dyspepsia.

Lower gastrointestinal If there are equivocal symptoms and you are not anxious, it is reasonable to watch and wait. Do PR examination and FBC in all. • Over 40 with PR bleeding *and* bowel habit change (more loose/frequent >6 weeks); • Any age with a right lower abdominal mass likely to be bowel; • Palpable rectal mass; • Men or non-menstruating women with unexplained iron-deficiency anaemia and Hb less than 11 or 10 respectively. ► **High-risk groups:** Ulcerative colitis; it is unproven whether a family history of colon cancer assists decisions in symptomatic patients (p524).

Breast • Discrete, hard lump with fixation; • Over 30 with a discrete lump persisting after a period or presenting post-menopause; • Under 30 with an enlarging lump, fixed and hard lump, or family history; • Previous breast cancer with a new lump or suspicious symptoms; • Unilateral eczematous skin or nipple change unresponsive to topical treatment; • Recent nipple distortion; • Spontaneous bloody unilateral nipple discharge; • Men over 50 with a unilateral firm subareolar mass; • Consider referral if under 30 with a lump or persistent breast pain.

Gynaecology • Examination suggestive of cervical cancer (don't wait for a smear test); • Postmenopausal bleeding in non-HRT patients or those on HRT after 6 weeks cessation; • Vulval lump or bleeding; • Consider in persistent intermenstrual bleeding. ► **Ultrasound:** any abdominal or pelvic mass not GI or urological in origin. Do pelvic and abdominal examinations, with speculum as appropriate.

Urology • Hard irregular prostate (refer with PSA result); • Normal prostate but raised PSA (p534) and urinary symptoms; • Painless macroscopic haematuria at any age; • Over 40 with persistent or recurrent UTI and haematuria; • Over 50 with unexplained microscopic haematuria; • Any abdominal mass arising from the urinary tract; • Swelling or mass in the body of the testis; • Ulceration or mass in the penis.

Central nervous system • New onset cranial nerve palsy or unilateral sensorineural deafness (p468); • Recent-onset headaches with features of raised intracranial pressure (eg vomiting, drowsiness, posture-related headache, pulse-synchronous tinnitus; p468) or other CNS symptoms; • A new and different unexplained headache of progressive severity; • Recent-onset seizures; • Consider in rapid progression of subacute focal deficit, unexplained cognitive impairment, or personality change with features indicative of a tumour.

Haematological p346; **Thyroid** p602; **Skin** p598.

⚙️ Is the energy we expend in speeding up referrals paying off?

Possibly not. There is evidence that reducing breast cancer waits from a few months to a few weeks is helpful—but there is little evidence that a few weeks here or there make any difference in colon and other cancers.⁴⁴ There is (as yet) no evidence to suggest that the '2-week wait' for suspected cancers in the UK has improved survival.⁴⁵ One concern with referral guidelines is the poor predictive value of symptoms for cancer, another is the suggestion that guidelines are abused (although one study found GP compliance to be over 90%).⁴⁶ The number of patients referred urgently has increased; however, patients not meeting urgent criteria may present with suspicious signs—yet they will not be seen urgently because other cases are forced to jump the queue. As a result, routine waiting times have increased and an increasing proportion of cancers are being diagnosed in routine patients.⁴⁷ This is just one example of the aphorism that *all targets distort clinical priorities*.

Studies of how well dermatology cancer guidelines work conclude that the best way forward is by education regarding recognition of benign conditions.⁴⁸ It also seems likely that dialogue between local consultants and referring GPs is a key factor—although this dialogue has become harder and less coherent with the 'choose and book' referral system.

On the good side, establishing clear referral responsibilities forces everyone to look at what they are doing—and this has facilitated many care pathways.

Multidisciplinary cancer meetings

These essential meetings aim to improve quality of life for cancer sufferers by standardizing and optimizing screening, early detection and treatment of cancer.⁴⁹ At any meeting you should be able to spot:

- Paired surgeons and physicians (eg upper GI surgeon and gastroenterologist)
- Radiologists
- Oncologists
- Histopathologists
- Palliative care physicians
- Specialist care nurses
- Meeting administrators

This expert forum aims to provide the most up-to-date and relevant options for treatment individualized for each patient. However, despite everyone's best efforts, there can still remain an inherent uncertainty as to what is exactly the best treatment for the patient—something which in the end may only be known to the patient him- or herself when given the options.



Tumour markers are specific molecules (usually glycoproteins) that may be found in higher concentrations in the serum and other tissues in patients with certain cancers (see TABLE p535). ▶ They are rarely sufficiently specific to be diagnostic and do not replace biopsy for establishing a diagnosis. Many tumour markers are raised in several cancers and may also be raised in benign conditions. Normal levels do not exclude malignancy or disease recurrence.

The main value of tumour markers is in monitoring the course of an illness, determining the effectiveness of treatment and in detecting cancer recurrence. Screening of asymptomatic populations to detect early cancer has yet to consistently demonstrate a survival benefit (trials for PSA are conflicting and for CA 125 ongoing).

Measuring ≥ 1 tumour marker is unlikely to aid diagnosis (except if suspecting a germ cell tumour). Therefore opportunistic requests for panels of tumour markers in patients with non-specific symptoms is not helpful. It may cause the patient additional stress and anxiety, result in inappropriate and costly investigations, and could delay correct diagnosis. Similarly unhelpful is testing PSA in women or CA 125 in men. An audit in 1 UK hospital found that 17% of requests for CA 125 (the marker of ovarian cancer) were for men.⁵¹

Prostate specific antigen (PSA)

As well as being a marker of prostate cancer, PSA is (unfortunately) raised in benign prostatic hyperplasia. See p647 for advising men who ask for a PSA test. 25% of large benign prostates give PSA up to 10 ng/mL. PSA may also be raised if:

- BMI <25 (↑BMI associated with ↓PSA concentrations ?^{2°} haemodilution)⁵²
- Black Africans
- Taller men
- Recent ejaculation (avoid for 24h prior to measurement)
- Recent rectal examination (usually insignificant[☛])
- Prostatitis
- UTI (PSA levels may not return to baseline for some months after a UTI).⁵³

Plasma reference interval is age specific; the age specific cut-off for PSA measurements recommended by the Prostate Cancer Risk Management Programme are shown below left¹. Refer urgently if age-specific PSA is raised. The proportion of patients with a raised PSA and benign hypertrophy or carcinoma is shown below right.

Age (yrs)	PSA cut-off values ng/mL
50-59	≥ 3.0
60-69	≥ 4.0
70 and over	≥ 5.0

	PSA ng/mL	PSA will be ~50% lower after 6 months on 5 α reductase inhibitors (see p644)
Benign prostatic hyperplasia	<4 in 91%	
	4-10 in 8%	
	>10 in 1%	
Prostate carcinoma	<4 in 15%	
	4-10 in 20%	
	>10 in 65%	

The above is a guide; reference ranges and populations vary. More specific assays, such as free PSA/total PSA index and PSA density, are also available, which may partly solve these problems. It is shown to illustrate the common problem of interpreting a PSA of ~8—and as a warning against casual requests for PSAs in the (vain) hope of simple answers. NB: PSA should be 'undetectable' after radical prostatectomy—refer to a urologist if >0.04ng/mL.

¹ Note there are no age specific reference ranges for men over 80 years. Nearly all will have a focus of cancer, which only needs to be diagnosed if likely to need palliative treatment.

Paraneoplastic syndromes

Antineuronal antibody associated paraneoplastic syndromes are rare, fascinating non-metastatic manifestations of malignancy mediated by hormones, cytokines or antibodies. They are triggered by an altered immune system response to a neoplasm and their importance is that they often pre-date symptoms associated with the cancer itself. They are worth knowing about: if you do, you will occasionally save a life by making a rather clever double diagnosis, eg of an odd eyelid rash (dermatomyositis p554) and of its associated cancer (eg colon cancer); examples are given in OHCS p589.

Frequently used tumour markers ⁵⁰				
Tumour marker	Relevant cancer	Use	Associated cancers	Associated benign conditions
			Other cancers and benign conditions in which the same tumour marker may be raised (not comprehensive)	
Alpha-fetoprotein (αFP)	Germ cell/testicular	Diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Colorectal; gastric; hepatobiliary; lung	Cirrhosis; pregnancy; neural tube defects
	Hepatocellular			
Calcitonin	Medullary thyroid	Diagnosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	None known	C-cell hyperplasia
Cancer antigen (CA) 125	Ovarian	Diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Breast; cervical; endometrial; hepatocellular; lung; non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; pancreatic; medullary thyroid carcinoma; peritoneal; uterine	<i>Many:</i> Liver disease; cystic fibrosis; pancreatitis; urinary retention; diabetes; heart failure; pregnancy; SLE; sarcoid; RA; diverticulitis; IBS; endometriosis; fibroids
CA 19-9	Pancreatic	Diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Colorectal; gastric; hepatocellular; oesophageal; ovarian	Acute cholangitis; cholestasis; pancreatitis; diabetes; IBS; jaundice
CA 15-3	Breast	Monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Hepatocellular; pancreatic	Cirrhosis; benign breast disease; in normal health
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)	Colorectal	Prognosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Breast; gastric; lung; mesothelioma; oesophageal; pancreatic	Smoking; chronic liver disease; chronic kidney disease; diverticulitis; jaundice
Human chorionic gonadotrophin (β-HCG)	Germ cell/testicular	Diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	Lung	Pregnancy
	Gestational trophoblastic			
Paraproteins	B cell proliferative disorders (eg myeloma)	Diagnosis, monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	None known	None known
Thyroglobulin	Thyroid (follicular/papillary)	Monitoring treatment & detecting recurrence	None known	None known

Adapted from 'Serum tumour markers: how to order and interpret them', Sturgeon C M, Lai L C, Duffy M J, 2012, with permission from BMJ Publishing Ltd.



Palliative care is the medicine of palliating (relieving) symptoms. Though this most often applies in the later stages of a malignancy, it does not necessarily have to—something that doctors and patients all too often forget.

🕒 Take time to find out exactly what is troubling a patient and approach problems holistically. Remember, each person comes with a set of emotions, preconceptions and a family already attached. Most hospitals now have a dedicated palliative care team for help and advice. See also p7.

Pain See p538.

Nausea and vomiting Causes include chemotherapy, constipation, GI obstruction, drugs, severe pain, cough, oral thrush, infection and uraemia. **Management:** Aim to treat reversible causes, eg with laxatives, fluconazole, analgesia or antibiotics; consider stopping, reducing or changing drugs or route. Consider the likely cause and base anti-emetic choice on mechanism of nausea and site of drug action (see p241). Give orally if possible, but remember alternative routes (IV/SC/IM/PR). Patients starting strong opioids should be prescribed a regular antiemetic for first week, then PRN. A third of patients will need more than one medication.⁵⁴ Consider non-pharmacological methods, eg relaxation. **Oral agents:** *Cyclizine* 50mg/8h (antihistamine; anticholinergic; central action); *domperidone* 10–20mg/8h (peripheral antidopaminergic, no acute dystonic SEs); *metoclopramide* 10mg/8h (blocks central chemoreceptor trigger zone, and peripheral prokinetic effects, good in gastric stasis); *haloperidol* 0.5–1.5mg/12h (dopamine antagonist, effective in drug- or metabolic-induced nausea); *ondansetron* 4–8mg/8h (serotonin antagonist, good for chemo/radiotherapy-related nausea); *levomepromazine* 3–12.5mg/12h (broad spectrum, but can sedate).⁵⁵

Constipation Very common SE with opiates, and better prevented than treated. May also be due to $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ or dehydration. Use *bisacodyl* 5mg at night, or combine a stimulant with a softener (co-danthramer 5–10mL nocte). *Macrogols* 2–4 sachets/12h are useful in resistance. Try glycerol suppositories or an enema if oral therapy fails.

Breathlessness Consider fans, air supply, and **supplementary O₂**. *Morphine* reduces respiratory drive, and thus relieves the sensation of breathlessness. Use of relaxation techniques and benzodiazepines can be useful. Look for pleural or pericardial effusion. Consider thoracentesis \pm pleurodesis for a significant pleural effusion. If there is a malignant pericardial effusion, a number of options exist including pericardiocentesis (p787), pleuropericardial windows, and external beam radiotherapy.⁵⁶

Mouthcare Treat any candida infection or other underlying cause. Simple measures such as chewing ice chips, pineapple chunks (release proteolytic enzymes) or gum should be tried. Good oral hygiene with mouth washes, chlorhexidine and saliva substitutes, such as *Biotene Oralbalance*® gel, can help.

Pruritus (itching) See p26.

Venepuncture problems Repeated venepuncture with the attendant risk of painful extravasation and phlebitis may be avoided by insertion of a single or multilumen skin-tunnelled catheter (eg a Hickman line) into a major central vein (eg subclavian or internal jugular) using a strict aseptic technique. Patients can look after their own lines at home, and give their own drugs. Problems include: infection, blockage (flush with 0.9% saline or dilute heparin, eg every week), axillary, subclavian, or superior vena cava thrombosis/obstruction, and line slippage.

The last days and weeks of life Once a decision has been made that a patient is entering the very final days of their illness, comfort should be the main concern. Think about stopping observations, unnecessary blood tests and medications (such as those for long-term prophylaxis). Prescribe 'as required' subcutaneous end of life drugs before they are needed (see Box 2). Start a syringe driver if any of these are being given regularly. Ensure that a 'do not attempt resuscitation' order has been made and clearly documented (usually by a senior doctor). Personalised end-of-life care plans should be made, which focus on control of symptoms, comfort and cessation of unnecessary interventions. Consider whether transfer to a hospice may be appropriate. If going home is a priority, it can be arranged at very short notice.



Syringe drivers

Syringe drivers allow a continuous subcutaneous infusion of drugs when the oral route is no longer feasible and avoids repeated cannulation attempts. Several drugs can be administered subcutaneously to palliate a number of symptoms:

Indication	Drug	Subcutaneous dose	Comment
Pain	Diamorphine	Start 10–20mg/24h If converting from oral morphine divide total 24h dose by 3 (see p539).	If using regular breakthrough doses, \uparrow daily dose by total breakthrough dose required.
Agitation	Midazolam	20–100mg/24h	
Nausea and vomiting	Cyclizine	150mg/24h	
	Haloperidol	1.5–10mg/24h	
Respiratory secretions	Hyoscine hydrobromide ¹	0.6–2.4mg/24h	
	Glycopyrronium	0.6–1.2mg/24h	
Bowel colic	Hyoscine	20–120mg/24h	
	butylbromide ¹		

'As required' end of life medication

Prescribe the following PRN subcutaneous medications for all dying patients *before* they are needed, in anticipation of any symptoms. Also write them up for any patients on syringe drivers who may require breakthrough doses.

Indication	Drug	Subcutaneous dose	Comment
Pain	Diamorphine	2.5–5mg/3–4h	Breakthrough dose = $1/6^{\text{th}}$ of total 24h dose.
Agitation	Midazolam	2.5mg–5mg/4h	
Nausea and vomiting	Haloperidol	1–2.5mg/8h	
Respiratory secretions	Hyoscine hydrobromide ¹	0.4mg/8h	

Other agents that may help relieve symptoms

Other agents and procedures to know about (alphabetically listed)

- Colestyramine 4g/6h PO (1h after other drugs) may help itch with jaundice.
- Dexamethasone 8mg IV stat relieves symptoms of SVC or bronchial obstruction, and lymphangitis carcinomatosa. 4mg/24h PO may stimulate appetite, reduce TICP headache, or induce (in some patients) a satisfactory sense of euphoria (short-term benefits must be balanced against side-effects).
- Fluconazole 50mg/24h PO for candida.
- Haloperidol 0.5–5mg/24h PO helps agitation, hallucinations, and vomiting.
- Hyoscine hydrobromide 0.4–0.6mg/8h SC or 0.3mg sublingual: vomiting from upper GI obstruction or noisy bronchial rattles.
- Metronidazole 400mg/8h PO mitigates anaerobic odours from tumours; so do charcoal dressings (Actisorb®).
- Naproxen 250mg/8h with food: fevers caused by malignancy or bone pain from metastases (consider splinting joints if this fails).
- Nerve blocks may lastingly relieve pleural or other resistant pains.
- Sodium chloride nebulizers 5mL as needed, can aid persistent cough.
- Spironolactone 100mg/12h PO + bumetanide 1mg/24h PO for ascites associated with portal hypertension (but not for ascites caused by abdominal malignancy, ie where serum-ascites albumin gradient $<11\text{g/L}$).

1 Do not confuse the vastly different doses for hyoscine hydrobromide and hyoscine butylbromide!

Pain is one of the most feared sequelae of a terminal diagnosis and yet is largely preventable. Studies show that cancer pain is particularly poorly managed in most settings,⁵⁷ especially in the elderly. No patient should live or die with unrelieved pain; aim to prevent or eliminate it.

Assessment Don't assume a cause—take a detailed history and examine to understand the aetiology. Evaluate severity, nature, functional deficit and psychological state—depression occurs in up to 25% of cancer patients.⁵⁸ Pain from nerve infiltration or local pressure damage may respond better to amitriptyline or gabapentin than to opioids.

Management Explain and plan rehabilitation goals. Aim to modify the pathological process when possible, eg radiotherapy, hormones, chemotherapy, surgery. Effective analgesia is possible in 70–90% of patients⁵⁹ by adhering to 5 simple guidelines:

- 1 *By the mouth*—give orally wherever possible.
- 2 *By the clock*—give at fixed intervals to give continuous relief.
- 3 *By the ladder*—following the WHO stepwise approach (BOX).
- 4 *For the individual*—there are no standard doses for opiates, needs vary.
- 5 *With attention to detail*—inform, set times carefully, warn of side-effects.

Use the WHO ladder (BOX) until pain is relieved. Monitor the response carefully—review of results and side-effects is crucial to good care. Start regular laxatives and anti-emetics with strong opiates. *Paracetamol* PO/PR/IV at step 1 may have an opiate-sparing effect, and should be continued at steps 2 and 3.⁶⁰

Morphine Start with oral solution 5–10mg/4h PO with an equal breakthrough dose as often as required. A double dose at bedtime can enable a good night's sleep. Patient needs will vary greatly and there is no maximum dose; aim to control symptoms with minimum side-effects. If not effective, increase doses in 30–50% increments (5mg→10mg→20mg→30mg→45mg). Change to modified release preparations (eg *MST Continus*® 12h) once daily needs are known by totalling 24h use and dividing by 2. Prescribe 1/6th of the total daily dose as oral solution for breakthrough pain. Side-effects (common) are drowsiness, nausea/vomiting, constipation and dry mouth. Hallucinations and myoclonic jerks are signs of toxicity and should prompt dose review. ► *If the oral route is unavailable try morphine/diamorphine IV/SC* (see BOX for conversions). If difficulty tolerating morphine/diamorphine, try *oxycodone* PO/IV/SC/PR, starting at an equivalent dose. It is as effective as morphine and is a useful 2nd-line opioid with a different range of receptor activity.⁶¹ *OxyNorm*® is the oral liquid form. There are also *fentanyl* transdermal patches which should usually be started under specialist supervision (after opioid dose requirements have been established). Remove after 72h, and place a new patch at a different site. 45mg oral morphine/24h is approximately equivalent to a 12mcg/h fentanyl patch.

Suppositories for pain: try *oxycodone* 30mg PR (eg 30mg/8h ≈ 30mg morphine).

Syringe drivers See BOX on p537.

Unfounded fears: Patients often shrink from using morphine analgesia, usually as a result of common misconceptions—that it is addictive, for the dying, signifying 'The End'. It is important to address and allay these fears. Addiction is not a problem in the palliative care setting, neither is respiratory depression with correct titration—pain stimulates the respiratory centre. Reassure the patient that it is simply a good painkiller, used in many situations. There is evidence it has no effect on life expectancy.⁶² See BOX for dose escalation required to ensure total sedation.

Prescribing morphine and other controlled drugs: Include the total quantity in both words and figures, and include the formulation (tablets, capsules, oral liquid, etc). On charts rewrite medications in full if doses change and always give the amount in milligrams, especially when using liquid preparations.

Morphine-resistant pain Consider methadone or ketamine, and adjuvants such as NSAIDs, steroids, muscle relaxants or anxiolytics + seek expert help. If *neuropathic pain* is suspected, try *amitriptyline* (10–25mg ON) or *pregabalin* (25–300mg/12h). *Depression* is common, and can amplify pain, so consider starting an SSRI.



The WHO analgesic ladder⁶³

(See p576 for NNT)

Rung 1	<i>Non-opioid</i>	Paracetamol; NSAIDs
Rung 2	<i>Weak opioid</i>	Codeine; dihydrocodeine; tramadol
Rung 3	<i>Strong opioid</i>	Morphine; diamorphine; hydromorphone; oxycodone; fentanyl; buprenorphine (\pm adjuvant analgesics)

Unlike other ladders this ladder is not used to fetch something out of reach—adequate pain relief should be attainable to all. If one drug fails to relieve pain, move up—do not try other drugs at the same level. In new, severe pain, rung 2 may be omitted.⁶⁴

Opiate dose equivalents⁶⁵

	24h dose (mg)	4h dose (mg)	Relative potency to oral morphine
Morphine PO	30	5	1 \times
Morphine IV	15	2.5	2 \times
Morphine sc	15	2.5	2 \times
Diamorphine IV	12	2	3 \times
Diamorphine sc	12	2	3 \times
Oxycodone PO	15	2.5	2 \times
Oxycodone IV	12	2	3 \times
Oxycodone sc	7.5–15	1.25–2.5	3 \times
Alfentanil sc ¹	1	—	30 \times

To convert oral codeine, dihydrocodeine, or tramadol to oral morphine, divide the total daily dose by about 10.

Conversions are not exact; these tables are intended as a rough guide. The potency figures in particular can vary widely. If in doubt, use a dose below your estimate.

Total sedation

The active management of death may need geometric increments in drug doses to avoid suffering.² If a patient is dying and prefers total sedation, opiate doses may need to be doubled every 12h (or increased by 5–50% every few hours if on a syringe driver).⁶⁶ Don't be frightened to use big or very big doses if smaller doses are not working. It's whatever is needed and this is very variable:

- **Parenteral morphine:** 2.5–100mg/1–4h sc. If many breakthrough doses are needed, increase background analgesia by $\geq 50\%$.⁶⁷ In one study, 91% needed 5–299mg of morphine/day, 7% needed 300–599mg/day, and 2% needed ≥ 600 mg of morphine/day.^{68, 69} Morphine doses sc via a syringe driver range from 0.5–300mg/h.⁷⁰ If 10mg/h is not working, give a bolus of 10mg, and then increase the rate by $\geq 50\%$ (15mg/h). If distress continues, re-bolus with 15mg, and trate to 22mg/h and so on until full comfort is achieved.⁷¹ It often helps to add midazolam 0.8–8mg/h.^{72, 73} NB: validated protocols for dose escalation are lacking.⁷⁴
- **Modified-release morphine sulfate:** 10–260mg/12h.^{66, 75, 76} Oxycodone is an alternative, eg *OxyContin*®. In one study, the mean daily *OxyContin*® dose was ~ 80 mg/d. 20% need at least 3 times as much.⁷⁷
- **Transdermal fentanyl patches** are useful once dose requirements are known.⁷⁸

1 Alfentanil can be used in patients with marked renal failure—discuss with the palliative care team first

2 Document that this is the patient's wishes, each dose increase is proportionate and plans have been discussed with an experienced colleague; take into account GMC guidance.



Contents

- The rheumatological history 541
- Assessing the locomotor system 542
- Rheumatological investigations 543
- Back pain 544
- Osteoarthritis (OA) 546
- Septic arthritis 546
- Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) 548

Crystal arthropathies:

- Gout 550
- CPPD arthropathy 550

Spondyloarthritides:

- Ankylosing spondylitis (AS) 552
- Enteropathic, psoriatic and reactive arthritis 552

Autoimmune connective tissue diseases:

- Mixed connective tissue disease 554
- Polymyositis & dermatomyositis 554
- Relapsing polychondritis 554
- Systemic sclerosis 554
- Systemic lupus erythematosus 556

Vasculitides:

- Giant cell arteritis 558
- Polyarteritis nodosa 558
- Microscopic angiitis 558
- Polymyalgia rheumatica 559
- Fibromyalgia 560

Systemic disease with:

- Ocular manifestations 562
- Dermatological manifestations 564

Rheumatological emergencies:

- ▶▶ Acute SLE 556
- ▶▶ Acute systemic vasculitis 314 & 558
- ▶▶ Acute cord compression 470 & 545
- ▶▶ Methotrexate-induced pneumonitis 549
- ▶▶ Neutropenic sepsis 346
- ▶▶ Scleroderma: pulmonary hypertensive or renal crisis 314 & 554
- ▶▶ Septic arthritis 546



Fig 1. The painter Pierre-Auguste Renoir (1841–1919) suffered from severe rheumatoid arthritis which caused crippling hand deformity. In later life, he painted with a brush fixed between his index and middle fingers. In this way, and despite shoulder ankylosis, he completed some of his greatest works of impressionist art. Through his work he communicated the joy he took from his subjects. “Why shouldn’t art be pretty?” he said, “There are enough unpleasant things in the world”.

Try to encourage those who are struggling to overcome the adversities of physical disease by engaging them in positive activities that are within their reach (or from which they can adapt). This may allow them to break through the barriers hindering them—whether perceived or real.

We like to see our rheumatology patients before destructive changes take place. Rheumatic disease can present an array of symptoms—the skill of the rheumatologist is to stand back and see the whole. This involves not only making a diagnosis, but also understanding the relationship between patient and disease. The swan is famously mute, and serene, just as our most afflicted patients can appear so serene, bearing the arthritic agony of daily life. But when you see painted fingernails at the end of swan-neck fingers, remember the great effort the swan must make to take flight.

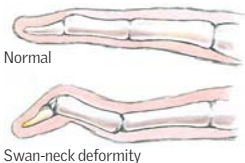


Fig 2. Swan-neck finger deformity.

Relevant pages elsewhere: Cervical spondylosis (p512); Charcot’s joints (p520); osteoporosis (p696); Behçet’s disease (p708); Sjögren’s syndrome (p724); Wegener’s granulomatosis (p728). **Orthopaedics:** OHCS chapter 11.

We thank Professor Kevin Davies, our Specialist Reader, and William Hunt, our Junior Reader, for their contribution to this chapter.

Some points to note in a rheumatological history

In the assessment of an arthritic presentation, pay particular attention to the distribution of joint involvement (including spine) and the presence of symmetry. Also look for disruption of joint anatomy, limitation of movement (by pain or contracture), joint effusions and peri-articular involvement (see p542 for a fuller assessment). Ask about, and examine for, **extra-articular features**: skin and nail (see p32) involvement (include scalp, hairline, umbilicus, genitalia, and natal cleft—psoriasis can easily be missed); eye signs (see p562); lungs (eg fibrosis)(see p188); kidneys (see p314); heart; GI (eg mouth ulcers, diarrhoea); GU (eg urethritis, genital ulcers); and CNS.

3 screening questions for musculo-skeletal disease:

- 1 Are you free of any pain or stiffness in your joints, muscles or back?
- 2 Can you dress yourself without too much difficulty?
- 3 Can you manage walking up and down stairs?

If yes to all 3, serious inflammatory muscle/joint disease is unlikely.

Presenting symptoms:

- Pattern of involved joints
- Symmetry (or not)
- Morning stiffness >30min (eg RA)
- Pain, swelling, loss of function, erythema, warmth

Extra-articular features:

- Rashes, photosensitivity (eg SLE)
- Raynaud's (SLE; CREST; polymyositis and dermatomyositis)
- Dry eyes or mouth (Sjögren's)
- Red eyes, iritis (eg AS)
- Diarrhoea/urethritis (Reiter's*)
- Nodules or nodes (eg RA; TB; gout)
- Mouth/genital ulcers (eg Behçet's)
- Weight loss (eg malignancy, any systemic inflammatory disease)

Related diseases:

- Crohn's/uc (in ankylosing spondylitis), gonorrhoea, psoriasis

Current and past drugs:

- NSAIDs, DMARDs (p549)
- Biological agents (eg TNF α inhibitors)

Family history:

- Arthritis, psoriasis, autoimmune disease

Social history:

- Age
- Occupation
- Sexual history
- Ethnicity (eg SLE is commoner in African-Caribbeans and Asians)
- Ability to function, eg dressing, grooming, writing, walking
- Domestic situation, social support, home adaptations
- Smoking (may worsen RA)

Patterns of presentation of arthritis

Monoarthritis	Oligoarthritis (≤ 5 joints)	Polyarthritis (>5 joints involved)	
Septic arthritis	Crystal arthritis	<i>Symmetrical:</i>	<i>Asymmetrical:</i>
Crystal arthritis (gout, CPPD)	Psoriatic arthritis	Rheumatoid arthritis	Reactive arthritis
Osteoarthritis	Reactive arthritis, eg <i>Yersinia</i> , <i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Campylobacter</i>	Osteoarthritis	Psoriatic arthritis
Trauma, eg haemarthrosis	Ankylosing spondylitis	Viruses (eg hepatitis A, B & C; mumps)	
	Osteoarthritis	Systemic conditions ¹ (can be either)	

►► Exclude septic arthritis in any acutely inflamed joint, as it can destroy a joint in under 24h (p546). Inflammation may be less overt if immunocompromised (eg from the many immunosuppressive drugs used in rheumatological conditions) or if there is underlying joint disease. Joint aspiration (p543) is the key investigation, and if you are unable to do it, find someone who can.

¹ Connective tissue disease (eg SLE and relapsing polychondritis), sarcoidosis, malignancy (eg leukaemia), endocarditis, haemochromatosis, sickle-cell anaemia, familial Mediterranean fever, Behçet's.



This aims to screen for rheumatological conditions primarily affecting mobility (as a consequence of underlying joint disease). It is based on the **GALS** locomotor screen (**G**ait, **A**rms, **L**egs, **S**pine).¹

Essence 'Look, feel and move' (active and passive). If a *joint looks normal* to you, *feels normal* to the patient, and has *full range of movement*, it usually is normal. Make sure the patient is comfortable, and obtain their consent before examination. The GALS screening examination should be done in light underwear.

Spine: *Observe from behind:* Is muscle bulk normal (buttocks, shoulders)? Is the spine straight? Are paraspinal muscles symmetrical? Any swellings/deformities? *Observe from the side:* Is cervical and lumbar lordosis normal? Any kyphosis? "*Touch your toes, please*": Is lumbar spine flexion normal, eg Schober's test? *Observe from in front:* "*Tilt your head*" (without moving the shoulders)—tests lateral neck flexion. Palpate for typical fibromyalgia tender points (see p560).

Arms: "*Try putting your hands behind your head*"—tests functional shoulder movement. "*Arms out straight*"—tests elbow extension and forearm supination/pronation. Examine the hands: (See p32). Any deformity, wasting, or swellings? *Squeeze across 2nd–5th metacarpophalangeal joints*. Pain may denote joint or tendon synovitis. "*Put your index finger on your thumb*"—tests pincer grip. Assess dexterity, eg fastening a button or picking up a coin.

Legs: *Observe legs:* Normal quadriceps bulk? Any swelling or deformity? *With patient lying supine:* Any leg length discrepancy? *Internally/externally rotate each hip in flexion. Passively flex knee and hip to the full extent.* Is movement limited? Any crepitus? *Find any knee effusion* using the patella tap test. If there is fluid, consider aspirating and testing for crystals or infection. *With patient standing: Observe feet:* Any deformity? Are arches high or flat? Any callosities? These may indicate an abnormal gait of some chronicity. *Squeeze across metatarsophalangeal joints:* see above. Also: although not in the GALS system, *palpate the heel and Achilles tendon* to identify plantar fasciitis and Achilles tendonitis often associated with seronegative rheumatological conditions. *Examine the patient's shoes* for signs of uneven wear.

Gait: *Observe walking:* Is the gait smooth? Good arm swing? Stride length ok? Normal heel strike and toe off? Can they turn quickly?

The GALS system for quickly recording your findings		
G (Gait)	✓	
	<i>Appearance:</i>	<i>Movement:</i>
A (Arms)	✓	✓
L (Legs)	✓	✓
S (Spine)	✓	✓
✓ means normal. If not normal, then put a cross with a note to explain what the exact problem is.		

Range of joint movement is noted in degrees, with anatomical position being the neutral position—eg elbow flexion 0°–150° normally, but with fixed flexion and limited movement, range may be reduced to 30°–90°. A **valgus** deformity deviates **laterally** (away from the mid-line, **fig 1**); a **varus** deformity points towards the mid-line.



Fig 1. Bilateral hallux valgus.
Reproduced from *British Medical Journal*, 'Hallux valgus',
R Choa, R Sharp, K R Mahtani, 2010,
with permission from BMJ Publishing Group Ltd.

1 Schober's test: make a mark on the lumbar spine at the level of the posterior iliac spine. Measure out a line from 5cm below to 10cm above the mark. Ask to bend forward as far as they can. If the line does not lengthen by at least 5cm in flexion, there is reduced lumbar flexion, eg in ankylosing spondylitis.

Some important rheumatological investigations

Joint aspiration is the most important investigation in any monoarthritic presentation (see also *OHCS* p708). Send synovial fluid for urgent white cell count, Gram stain, polarized light microscopy (for crystals, p550) and culture. The risk of inducing septic arthritis, using sterile precautions, is $<1:10,000$.² Look for blood¹, pus, and crystals (gout or CPPD crystal arthropathy; p550). ► Do not attempt joint aspiration through inflamed and potentially infected skin (eg through a psoriatic plaque).

Synovial fluid in health and disease				
	Appearance	Viscosity	WBC/mm ³	Neutrophils
<i>Normal</i>	Clear, colourless	↔	≤ 200	None
<i>Osteoarthritis</i>	Clear, straw	↑	≤ 1000	$\leq 50\%$
<i>Haemorrhagic</i> ¹	Bloody, xanthochromic	Varies	$\leq 10,000$	$\leq 50\%$
<i>Acutely inflamed:</i>				
• RA	Turbid, yellow	↓	1–50,000	Varies
• Crystal	Turbid, yellow	↓	5–50,000	~80%
<i>Septic</i>	Turbid, yellow	↓	10–100,000	>90%

Blood tests FBC, ESR, urate, U&E, CRP. Blood culture for septic arthritis. Consider rheumatoid factor, anti-CCP, ANA, other autoantibodies (p555), and HLA B27 (p552)—as guided by presentation. Consider causes of reactive arthritis (p552), eg viral serology, urine chlamydia PCR, hepatitis and HIV serology if risk factors are present.

Radiology Look for erosions, calcification, widening or loss of joint space, changes in underlying bone of affected joints (eg periarticular osteopenia, sclerotic areas, osteophytes). Characteristic x-ray features for various arthritides are shown in **figs 1–3**. Irregularity of the lower half of the sacroiliac joints is seen in spondyloarthritis. Ultrasound and MRI are more sensitive in identifying effusions, synovitis, enthesitis and infection than plain radiographs—discuss further investigations with a radiologist. Do a CXR for RA, vasculitis, TB and sarcoid.



Fig 1. x-ray features of osteoarthritis.



Fig 2. x-ray features of rheumatoid arthritis (MCPJ).



Fig 3. x-ray features of gout (1st MTPJ).

x-ray figs 1–3 courtesy of Dr DC Howlett.

¹ Eg trauma, tumour or haemophilia.

Back pain is very common, and often self-limiting, but *be alert to sinister causes*, ie malignancy, infection or inflammatory causes. See below for red-flag symptoms, and BOX opposite for neurosurgical emergencies.

Red flags for sinister causes of back pain ¹	
▶ Aged <20yrs or >55yrs old	▶ Thoracic back pain
▶ Acute onset in elderly people	▶ Morning stiffness
▶ Constant or progressive pain	▶ Bilateral or alternating leg pain
▶ Nocturnal pain	▶ Neurological disturbance (incl sciatica)
▶ Worse pain on being supine	▶ Sphincter disturbance
▶ Fever, night sweats, weight loss	▶ Current or recent infection
▶ History of malignancy	▶ Immunosuppression, eg steroids/HIV
▶ Abdominal mass	▶ Leg claudication or exercise-related leg weakness/numbness (spinal stenosis)

Examination

- 1 With the patient standing, gauge the extent and smoothness of lumbar forward/ lateral flexion and extension (see p542).
- 2 *Clinical tests for sacroiliitis*: direct pressure, lateral compression, sacroiliac stretch test (pain on adduction of the hip, with the hip and knee flexed).
- 3 Neurological deficits (see BOX 1): test lower limb sensation, power, and deep tendon and plantar reflexes. Digital rectal examination for perianal tone and sensation.
- 4 Examine for nerve root pain: this is distributed in relevant dermatomes, and is worsened by coughing or bending forward. *Straight leg test* (L4, L5, S1): positive if raising the leg with the knee extended causes pain below the knee, which increases on foot dorsiflexion (Lasègue's sign). It suggests irritation to the sciatic nerve. The main cause is lumbar disc prolapse. Also *femoral stretch test* (L4 and above): pain in front of thigh on lifting the hip into extension with the patient lying face downwards and the knee flexed.
- 5 Signs of generalized disease—eg malignancy. Examine other systems (eg abdomen) as pain may be referred.

Causes Age determines the most likely causes:

- 15–30yrs: Prolapsed disc, trauma, fractures, ankylosing spondylitis (AS; p552), spondylolisthesis (a forward shift of one vertebra over another, which is congenital or due to trauma), pregnancy.
- 30–50yrs: Degenerative spinal disease, prolapsed disc, malignancy (primary or secondary from lung, breast, prostate, thyroid or kidney ca).
- >50yrs: Degenerative, osteoporotic vertebral collapse, Paget's (see p699), malignancy, myeloma (see p362), spinal stenosis.

Rarer: Cauda equina tumours, psoas abscess, spinal infection (eg discitis, usually staphylococcal but also *Proteus*, *E. coli*, *S. typhi* and TB—there are often no systemic signs).

Investigations Arrange relevant tests if you suspect a specific cause, or if red flag symptoms: FBC, ESR and CRP (myeloma, infection, tumour), U&E, ALP (Paget's), serum/urine electrophoresis (myeloma), PSA. *x-rays* can exclude bony abnormality but are generally not indicated. *MRI* is the image of choice and can detect disc prolapse, cord compression (fig 1), cancer, infection or inflammation (eg sacroiliitis).

Management ▶▶ Urgent neurosurgical referral if any neurological deficit (see BOX 1). ▶ Keep the diagnosis under review. For non-specific back pain, focus on **education** and **self-management**. Advise patients to continue with normal activities and be active. Manage pain to allow this—regular paracetamol ± NSAIDs ± codeine. Consider low dose amitriptyline if these fail (do not use SSRIs for treating pain). Offer physiotherapy, acupuncture or an exercise programme if not improving.⁴ Address psychosocial issues, which may predispose to developing chronic pain and disability (see p561). Surgical options may be considered in selected patients with intractable symptoms who fail to respond to other measures.



Neurosurgical emergencies

(see also p470)

- ▶ **Acute cauda equina compression:** Alternating or bilateral root pain in legs, saddle anaesthesia (perianal), loss of anal tone on PR, bladder \pm bowel incontinence.
- ▶ **Acute cord compression:** Bilateral pain, LMN signs (p451) at level of compression, UMN and sensory loss below, sphincter disturbance.
- ▶ **Immediate urgent treatment** prevents irreversible loss, eg laminectomy for disc protrusions, radiotherapy for tumours, decompression for abscesses.
- ▶ **Causes** (same for both): bony metastasis (look for missing pedicle on x-ray), large disc protrusion, myeloma, cord or paraspinal tumour, TB (p398), abscess.

Nerve root lesions

Nerve root	Pain	Weakness	Reflex affected
L2	Across upper thigh	Hip flexion and adduction	Nil
L3	Across lower thigh	Hip adduction, knee extension	Knee jerk
L4	Across knee to medial malleolus	Knee extension, foot inversion and dorsiflexion	Knee jerk
L5	Lateral shin to dorsum of foot and great toe	Hip extension and abduction Knee flexion Foot and great toe dorsiflexion	Great toe jerk
S1	Posterior calf to lateral foot and little toe	Knee flexion Foot and toe plantar flexion Foot eversion	Ankle jerk



Fig 1. Sagittal T2-weighted MRI of the lumbar spine showing a herniated L5-S1 disc.

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



Osteoarthritis (OA) is the commonest joint condition. $\phi:\sigma\approx 3:1$, onset typically >50 yrs. It is usually primary (generalized), but may be secondary to joint disease or other conditions (eg haemochromatosis, obesity, occupational).

Signs and symptoms *Localized disease* (usually knee or hip): pain on movement and crepitus, worse at end of day; background pain at rest; joint gelling—stiffness after rest up to ~ 30 min; joint instability. *Generalized disease* (primary OA): with Heberden's nodes ('nodal OA', seen mainly in post-menopausal ϕ), commonly affected joints are the DIP joints, thumb carpo-metacarpal joints and the knees. There may be joint tenderness, derangement and bony swelling (Heberden's nodes at DIP, Bouchard's nodes at PIP), \downarrow range of movement and mild synovitis. Assess effect of symptoms on occupation, family duties, hobbies and lifestyle expectations.

Tests Plain radiographs show: **L**oss of joint space, **O**steophytes, **S**ubarticular sclerosis and **S**ubchondral cysts (fig 1 p543). CRP may be slightly elevated.⁵

Management⁶ *Core treatments*: Exercise to improve local muscle strength and general aerobic fitness (irrespective of age, severity or comorbidity). Weight loss if overweight. *Analgesia*: Regular paracetamol \pm topical NSAIDs. If ineffective use codeine or short-term oral NSAID (+PPI)—see BOX. Topical capsaicin (derived from chillies) may help. Intra-articular steroid injections temporarily relieve pain in severe symptoms. Intra-articular hyaluronic acid injections (viscosupplementation) are as effective as NSAIDs or steroid injection, but are much more expensive.⁷ Glucosamine and chondroitin products are not recommended. *Non-pharmacological*: Use a multi-disciplinary approach, including physiotherapists and occupational therapists. Try heat or cold packs at the site of pain, walking aids, stretching/manipulation or TENS. *Surgery*: Joint replacement (hips, or knees) is the best way to deal with severe OA that has a substantial impact on quality of life.

Septic arthritis

► Consider septic arthritis in any acutely inflamed joint, as it can destroy a joint in under 24h. Inflammation may be less overt if immunocompromised (eg from medication) or if there is underlying joint disease. The knee is affected in $>50\%$ cases.

Risk factors Pre-existing joint disease (especially rheumatoid arthritis); diabetes mellitus, immunosuppression, chronic renal failure, recent joint surgery, prosthetic joints (where infection is particularly difficult to treat), IV drug abuse, age >80 yrs.⁸

Investigations Urgent joint aspiration for synovial fluid microscopy and culture is the key investigation (p543), as plain radiographs and CRP may be normal. The main differential diagnoses are the crystal arthropathies (p550). Blood cultures may be helpful for guiding antibiotic choice later.

Ask yourself "How did the organism get there?" Is there immunosuppression, or another focus of infection, eg from indwelling IV lines, infected skin, or pneumonia (present in up to 50% of those with pneumococcal arthritis)?⁹

Treatment If in doubt start empirical IV antibiotics (after aspiration) until sensitivities are known. Common causative organisms are *Staph. aureus*, streptococci, *Neisseria gonococcus* and Gram -ve bacilli. Follow local guidelines for antibiotic choice. Consider flucloxacillin 1g/6h IV (*clindamycin* if penicillin allergic); *vancomycin* 1g/12h IV if MRSA (or history of MRSA); or *cefotaxime* 1g/8h IV if gonococcal or Gram -ve organisms suspected.¹⁰ If HIV +ve, look for atypical mycobacteria and fungi. Antibiotics are required for a prolonged period but there is no consensus on which route or for how long they should be continued (eg ~ 2 weeks IV, then 2–4 weeks PO)—ask a microbiologist.¹¹ Ask for orthopaedic advice for consideration of arthrocentesis, lavage and debridement, especially if there is a prosthetic joint involved.¹² This may be done arthroscopically (eg for knee) or open under GA (eg for hip; this allows for biopsy—helpful in TB). Splint for ≤ 48 h, give adequate analgesia and consider physiotherapy.



Prescribing NSAIDs: dialogue with patients

Around 60% of patients will respond to any NSAID, but there is considerable variation in response and tolerance—if one isn't effective, try another. If taken regularly, NSAIDs have both analgesic and anti-inflammatory effect, but the full anti-inflammatory effect may take up to 3 weeks.¹⁰ NSAIDs cause ~1000 deaths/yr in the UK¹² so only use after risk:benefit analysis individualized for each patient, including indication, dose, proposed duration of use, and comorbidity. Follow local recommendations and national guidelines where available.

NSAID SEs The main serious side-effects are GI bleeding (▶gastrointestinal damage may occur without dyspeptic symptoms) and renal impairment. NSAIDs are contraindicated in severe heart failure. SEs **increase with**: prolonged use, ↑age, polypharmacy, history of peptic ulcers and renal impairment (review before *and after* starting therapy). Avoid giving NSAIDs to patients on aspirin and do not use in active GI ulceration. Ibuprofen has the lowest GI risk.

Inform your patients Many patients prescribed NSAIDs do not need them all the time, so say "Take the lowest possible dose for the shortest possible time". *Bleeding is more common in those who know less about their drugs.*¹³ Explain:

- Drugs are to relieve symptoms: on good days, don't take any. In rheumatoid arthritis, cod liver oil (eg 10g/d) reduces reliance on NSAIDs by 30%.¹⁴
- Abdominal pain may be a sign of impending GI problems: stop the tablets, and come back for more advice if symptoms continue.
- Report black stools ± faints at once.
- Don't supplement prescribed NSAIDs with ones bought over the counter (eg ibuprofen): mixing NSAIDs can increase risks 20-fold.
- Smoking and alcohol increase NSAID risk.¹⁵

Cardiovascular side-effects:¹⁶ Consider cardiovascular risk when prescribing any NSAID—all are associated with a small increased risk of MI and stroke (independent of cardiovascular risk factor or duration of use). Specifically implicated are celecoxib (any dose), diclofenac (>150mg/24h) and ibuprofen (>1200mg/24h). Naproxen appears to be least harmful.¹⁶

When should COX-2 selective NSAIDs be tried? Not often—COX-2 selective NSAIDs are associated with a lower risk of serious upper GI SEs but are not as safe as we had hoped. Commonly used COX-2 drugs include celecoxib and etoricoxib. Meta-analyses of cardiovascular risk for celecoxib are inconsistent, but appear similar to other conventional NSAIDs (above); for etoricoxib there is increased risk when compared to naproxen or ibuprofen.¹³ Perhaps use COX-2 selective NSAIDs *only* when an NSAID is essential *and* there is past peptic ulceration (but risk is not eliminated, and bleeds that do occur may be very serious) *if* an ordinary NSAID with PPI (eg omeprazole) is problematic *or* >65yrs old (not on aspirin) *or* needing high-dose NSAID over a long time. If at very high risk of GI bleed, ideally avoid altogether, or combine a COX-2 (eg celecoxib 200mg/12h; avoid if eGFR <30) with a PPI.¹⁷



RA is a chronic systemic inflammatory disease, characterized by a symmetrical, deforming, peripheral polyarthritis. **Epidemiology:** Prevalence is ~1% (↑ in smokers). $\sigma:\tau > 2:1$. Peak onset: 5th–6th decade. HLA DR4/DR1 linked (associated with ↑ severity).

Presentation *Typically:* symmetrical swollen, painful, and stiff small joints of hands and feet, worse in the morning. This can fluctuate and larger joints may become involved. *Less common presentations:* • Sudden onset, widespread arthritis; • Recurring mono/polyarthritis of various joints (*palindromic RA*);¹ • Persistent monoarthritis (often knee, shoulder or hip); • Systemic illness with extra-articular symptoms, eg fatigue, fever, weight loss, pericarditis and pleurisy, but initially few joint problems (commoner in σ); • Polymyalgic onset—vague limb girdle aches; • Recurrent soft tissue problems (eg frozen shoulder, carpal tunnel syndrome, de Quervain's tenosynovitis).

Signs *Early* (inflammation, no joint damage): swollen MCP, PIP, wrist, or MTP joints (often symmetrical). Look for tenosynovitis or bursitis. *Later* (joint damage, deformity): ulnar deviation of the fingers and dorsal wrist subluxation. Boutonnière and swan-neck deformities of fingers (**fig 1** on p540) or Z-deformity of thumbs occur. Hand extensor tendons may rupture. Foot changes are similar. Larger joints can be involved. Atlanto-axial joint subluxation may threaten the spinal cord (rare).

Extra-articular Nodules—elbows & lungs; lymphadenopathy; vasculitis; fibrosing alveolitis, obliterative bronchiolitis; pleural & pericardial effusion; Raynaud's; carpal tunnel syndrome; peripheral neuropathy; splenomegaly (seen in 5%; only 1% have Felty's syndrome: RA + splenomegaly + neutropenia, see p712); episcleritis, scleritis, scleromalacia, keratoconjunctivitis sicca (p562); osteoporosis; amyloidosis (p364).

Investigations Rheumatoid factor (RhF) is positive in ~70% (p555). A high titre is associated with severe disease, erosions and extra-articular disease. Anticyclic citrullinated peptide antibodies (ACPA/anti-CCP) are highly specific (~98%) for RA. There is often anaemia of chronic disease. Inflammation causes ↑ platelets, ↑ ESR, ↑ CRP. **X-rays** show soft tissue swelling, juxta-articular osteopenia and ↓ joint space. Later there may be bony erosions, subluxation or complete carpal destruction (see **fig 2** on p543). Ultrasound and MRI can identify synovitis more accurately, and have greater sensitivity in detecting bone erosions than conventional x-rays.¹⁸

Diagnostic criteria see BOX 1.

Management ▶ Refer early to a rheumatologist (before irreversible destruction).

- Disease activity is measured using the DAS28.² Aim to reduce score to <3.
- Early use of DMARDs and biological agents improves long-term outcomes (see BOX).
- Steroids rapidly reduce symptoms and inflammation. Avoid starting unless appropriately experienced. They are useful for treating acute exacerbations ('flares'), eg IM depot *methylprednisolone* 80–120mg. Intra-articular steroids have a rapid but short-term effect (OHCs p708–711). Oral steroids (eg *prednisolone* 7.5mg/d) may control difficult symptoms, but side-effects preclude routine long-term use.
- NSAIDs (see p547) are good for symptom relief, but have no effect on disease progression. Paracetamol and weak opiates are rarely effective.
- Offer specialist physio- and occupational therapy, eg for aids and splints.
- Surgery may relieve pain, improve function and prevent deformity.
- There is ↑ risk of cardiovascular and cerebrovascular disease, as atherosclerosis is accelerated in RA.¹⁹ Manage risk factors (p87). Smoking also ↑ symptoms of RA.

☼ Patients want to live as unencumbered by the disease as possible. Depressive symptoms and pain are better predictors of quality of life than disease markers or radiological damage. Assess impact on relationships, work and hobbies. Psychological interventions (eg relaxation, cognitive coping skills) may help. There is little evidence for the long-term efficacy of complementary therapies but don't prejudice patients who may decide to try.

1 In rheumatological palindromes, arthritis lasting hours or days runs to and fro, visiting and revisiting 3 or more sites, typically knees, wrists, and MCP joints. It may presage RA, SLE, Whipple's, or Behçet's disease. Remissions are (initially) complete, leaving no radiological mark.

2 28-joint Disease Activity Score—assesses tenderness and swelling at 28 joints (MCPs, PIPs, wrists, elbows, shoulders, knees), ESR and patient's self-reported symptom severity.



Who should be tested? Those with ≥ 1 joint with definite swelling which is not better explained by another disease. Add total A-D score. Scores $\geq 6/10$ are diagnostic.

A	Joint involvement (swelling or tenderness \pm imaging evidence)		
	1 large joint =0	2-10 large joints =1	1-3 small* joints [†] =2
	4-10 small* joints [†] =3	> 10 joints (at least 1 small joint) =5	
B	Serology (at least 1 test result needed)		
	Negative RF and negative anti-CCP =0	Low +ve RF or low +ve anti-CCP =2	
	High +ve RF or high +ve anti-CCP =3		
C	Acute phase reactants (at least 1 test result needed)		
	Normal CRP and normal ESR =0	Abnormal CRP or abnormal ESR =1	
D	Duration of symptoms		
	<6 weeks =0	\geq 6 weeks =1	

* = MCPJ, PIPJ, 2-5th MTPJ, wrists and thumb IPJ; [†] = with or without involvement of large joints.

Influencing biological events in RA

The chief biological event is inflammation. Over-produced cytokines and cellular processes erode cartilage and bone, and produce the systemic effects seen in RA.

Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) are 1st-line for treating RA and should ideally be started within 3 months of persistent symptoms. They can take 6-12 weeks for symptomatic benefit. Best results are often achieved with a combination of methotrexate, sulfasalazine and hydroxychloroquine.²¹ Other DMARDs include leflunomide and IM gold (now rarely used). The role of penicillamine, azathioprine and ciclosporin is less clear.

► **Immunosuppression** is a potentially fatal SE of treatment (especially in combination with methotrexate) which can result in pancytopenia, \uparrow susceptibility to infection and neutropenic sepsis (p346). Regular FBC monitoring is required.²²

Other SE: • Methotrexate—pneumonitis (get urgent respiratory help), oral ulcers, hepatotoxicity • Sulfasalazine—rash, \downarrow sperm count, oral ulcers • Leflunomide—teratogenicity (σ and ϕ), oral ulcers, \uparrow BP, hepatotoxicity • Hydroxychloroquine—irreversible retinopathy (request annual ophthalmology review).²³

Biological agents and NICE guidance: There are 4 approaches, which should be initiated under specialist supervision:

1 TNF α inhibitors, eg Infliximab (p275), etanercept, adalimumab, certolizumab-pegol and golimumab. All are approved by NICE (usually in combination with methotrexate) as 1st-line biological agents for active RA after failure to respond to 2 DMARDs and with a DAS28 > 5.1 .^{24, 25, 26} Where methotrexate is contraindicated, adalimumab and etanercept can be used as monotherapy. Clinical response can be striking, with improved function and health outcomes, although some patients may have inadequate or unsustained response.²⁴

2 B cell depletion, eg Rituximab, used in combination with methotrexate and approved by NICE for severe active RA where DMARDs and a TNF α blocker have failed.²⁸

3 IL-1 and IL-6 inhibition, eg Tocilizumab (IL-6 receptor blocker), approved by NICE in combination with methotrexate for patients where both a TNF α blocker and rituximab have failed (or are contraindicated).²⁹ Anakinra (IL-1 receptor inhibitor) is not recommended. Cochrane review shows less clinical improvement in comparison to other agents.³⁰

4 Disruption of τ cell function, eg Abatacept—used infrequently for patients with severe active RA who have not responded to DMARDs, a TNF α blocker or rituximab.³¹

SEs of biological agents: Serious infection, including reactivation of TB (\therefore screen and consider prophylaxis) and hepatitis B; worsening heart failure; hypersensitivity; injection-site reactions and blood disorders. Neutralizing antibodies may \downarrow efficacy with infliximab and adalimumab; ANA and reversible SLE-type illness may evolve. Long-term safety is unknown (no clear evidence for \uparrow risk of cancer).



Gout typically presents with an acute monoarthropathy with severe joint inflammation (fig 1). >50% occur at the metatarsophalangeal joint of the big toe (podagra). Other common joints are the ankle, foot, small joints of the hand, wrist, elbow or knee. It can be polyarthral. It is caused by deposition of monosodium urate crystals in and near joints, precipitated, for example, by trauma, surgery, starvation, infection or diuretics. It is associated with raised plasma urate. In the long term, urate deposits (= tophi, eg in pinna, tendons, joints; see fig 2) and renal disease (stones, interstitial nephritis) may occur. **Prevalence:** ~1%. $\sigma:\phi \approx 4:1$.

Differential diagnoses Exclude septic arthritis in any acute monoarthropathy (p546). Then consider haemarthrosis, CPPD (below) and palindromic RA (p548).

Causes Hereditary, ↑dietary purines, alcohol excess, diuretics, leukaemia, cytotoxics (tumour lysis). **Associations:** Cardiovascular disease, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and chronic renal failure (see p694).³² Gout is a marker for these, therefore seek out and treat if needed.

Investigations Polarized light microscopy of synovial fluid shows *negatively birefringent* urate crystals (fig 3). Serum urate is usually raised but may be normal.³³ Radiographs show only soft-tissue swelling in the early stages. Later, well-defined 'punched out' erosions are seen in juxta-articular bone (see fig 3 on p543). There is no sclerotic reaction, and joint spaces are preserved until late.

Treatment of acute gout³⁴ Use high-dose NSAID or coxib (eg *etoricoxib* 120mg/24h PO).³⁵ Symptoms should subside in 3–5d. If CI (eg peptic ulcer; heart failure; anticoagulation), *colchicine* (0.5mg/6–12h PO) is effective but slower to work (note new *BNF* guidelines of max 6mg per course). **NB:** in renal impairment, NSAIDs and colchicine are problematic. Steroids (oral, IM or intra-articular) may also be used.³⁶ Rest and elevate the affected joint. Ice packs and 'bed cages' can be effective.

Prevention Lose weight. Avoid prolonged fasts, alcohol excess, purine-rich meats and low-dose aspirin (↑serum urate). **Prophylaxis:** Start if >1 attack in 12 months, tophi or renal stones. The aim is to ↓ attacks and prevent damage caused by crystal deposition. Use *allopurinol* and titrate from 100mg/24h, increasing every 2 weeks until plasma urate <0.3mmol/L (max 300mg/8h). SE: rash, fever, WCC↓. Introduction of allopurinol may trigger an attack so wait until 3 weeks after an acute episode, and cover with regular NSAID (for up to 6 weeks) or colchicine (0.5mg/12h PO for up to 6 months). Avoid stopping allopurinol in acute attacks once established on treatment. *Febuxostat* (80mg/24h) is an alternative if allopurinol is CI or not tolerated. It ↓ uric acid by inhibiting xanthine oxidase (SE: ↑ LFTs) and is more effective at reducing serum urate than allopurinol (although the number of acute attacks is the same).³⁷ **Uricosuric drugs** ↑ urate excretion. They are rarely used in patients who under-excrete uric acid or who are resistant to other treatment (eg sulfinpyrazine).

Calcium pyrophosphate deposition (CPPD)

CPPD is an umbrella term used to describe different patterns of disease including:³⁸

- **Acute CPP crystal arthritis** (previously **pseudogout**) like gout it causes an acute monoarthropathy typically of larger joints in elderly patients. It is usually spontaneous and self-limiting, but can be provoked by illness, surgery or trauma.
- **Chronic CPPD** inflammatory RA-like (symmetrical) polyarthritis and synovitis.
- **Osteoarthritis with CPPD** chronic polyarthral osteoarthritis with superimposed acute CPP attacks.

Risk factors Old age, hyperparathyroidism (see p214), haemochromatosis (see p262), hypophosphataemia (see p693).

Tests Polarized light microscopy of synovial fluid shows weakly positively birefringent crystals (fig 4). It is associated with soft tissue calcium deposition on x-ray.

Management Acute attacks: cool packs, rest, aspiration and intra-articular steroids. NSAIDs (+PPI) ± *colchicine* 0.5–1.0mg/24h (used with caution) may prevent acute attacks. Methotrexate and hydroxychloroquine have a role in chronic CPPD.³⁹





Fig 1. Acute monoarthritis in gout.



Fig 2. Ulcerated tophi in gout.

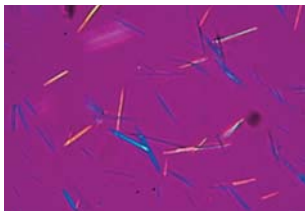


Fig 3. Needle-shaped monosodium urate crystals found in gout, displaying negative birefringence under polarized light.

Reproduced from Warrell *et al*, *Oxford Textbook of Medicine*, 2010, with permission from Oxford University Press.

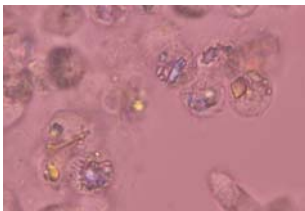


Fig 4. Rhomboid-shaped calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystals in Pseudogout, showing Positive birefringence in polarized light.

Image courtesy of Prof. Eliseo Pascual, Sección de Reumatología, Hospital General Universitario de Alicante.

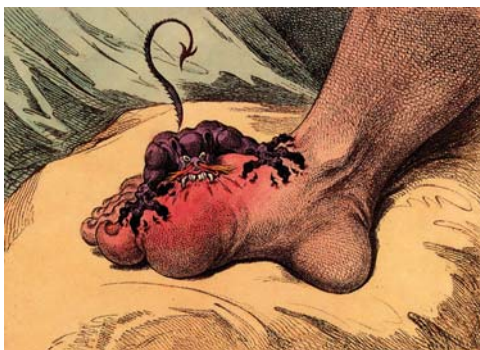


Fig 5. Don't underestimate the severity of pain caused by gout—as illustrated by satirical artist and gout sufferer James Gillray (1756-1815).



1 Ankylosing spondylitis (AS) is a chronic inflammatory disease of the spine and sacroiliac joints, of unknown aetiology. **Prevalence:** 0.25–1%. **Men present earlier:** ♂:♀ ≈ 6:1 at 16yrs old, and ~2:1 at 30yrs old. ~90% are HLA B27 +ve (see BOX 2).

Symptoms and signs: The typical patient is a man <30yrs old with gradual onset of low back pain, worse at night, with spinal morning stiffness relieved by exercise. Pain radiates from sacroiliac joints to hips/buttocks, and usually improves towards the end of the day. There is progressive loss of spinal movement (all directions)—hence thoracic expansion. See p542–4 for tests of spine flexion and sacroiliitis. The disease course is variable; a few progress to kyphosis, neck hyperextension (question-mark posture; **fig 1**), and spino-cranial ankylosis. Other features include **enthesitis** (see BOX 1), especially Achilles tendonitis, plantar fasciitis, at the tibial and ischial tuberosities, and at the iliac crests. Anterior mechanical chest pain due to costochondritis and fatigue may feature. **Acute iritis** occurs in ~½ of patients and may lead to blindness if untreated (but may also have occurred many years before, so enquire directly). AS is also associated with osteoporosis (up to 60%), aortic valve incompetence (<3%) and pulmonary apical fibrosis.

Tests: Diagnosis is clinical, supported by imaging (MRI is most sensitive and better at detecting early disease).⁴⁰ Sacroiliitis is the earliest x-ray feature, but may appear late: look for irregularities, erosions, or sclerosis affecting the lower half of the sacroiliac joints, especially the iliac side. Vertebral syndesmophytes are characteristic (often T11–L1 initially): bony proliferations due to enthesitis between ligaments and vertebrae. These fuse with the vertebral body above, causing ankylosis. In later stages, calcification of ligaments with ankylosis lead to a 'bamboo spine' appearance. **Also:** FBC (normocytic anaemia), ↑ESR, ↑CRP, HLA B27+ve (not diagnostic).

Management: Exercise, not rest, for backache, including intense exercise regimens to maintain posture and mobility—ideally with a physiotherapist specializing in AS. NSAIDs (eg ibuprofen or naproxen, if no CI—see p547) usually relieve symptoms within 48h, and they may slow radiographic progression.⁴¹ **TNFα blockers** etanercept, adalimumab and golimumab are indicated in severe active AS if NSAIDs fail (p549).⁴² Local steroid injections provide temporary relief. Surgery includes hip replacement to improve pain and mobility if the hips are involved, and rarely spinal osteotomy. There is increased risk of osteoporotic spinal fractures (consider bisphosphonates).

Prognosis: There is not always a clear relationship between the activity of arthritis and severity of underlying inflammation (as for all the spondyloarthritides). Prognosis is worse if ESR >30; onset <16yrs; early hip involvement or poor response to NSAIDs.⁴³

2 Enteric arthropathy **Associations:** Inflammatory bowel disease, GI bypass, coeliac and Whipple's disease (p730). Arthropathy often improves with the treatment of bowel symptoms (beware NSAIDs). Use DMARDs for resistant cases.

3 Psoriatic arthritis (OHS p594) Occurs in 10–40% with psoriasis and can present before skin changes. Patterns are: •Symmetrical polyarthritis (like RA); •DIP joints; •Asymmetrical oligoarthritis; •Spinal (similar to AS); •Psoriatic arthritis mutilans (rare, ~3%, severe deformity). **Radiology:** Erosive changes, with 'pencil-in-cup' deformity in severe cases. Associated with nail changes in 80%, synovitis (dactylitis—see BOX 1), acroiniform rashes and palmo-plantar pustulosis. **Management:** NSAIDs, sulfasalazine, methotrexate and ciclosporin. Anti-TNF agents are also effective.

4 Reactive arthritis A *sterile* arthritis, typically affecting the lower limb ~1–4 weeks after urethritis (p416; *Chlamydia* or *Ureaplasma* sp.), or dysentery (*Campylobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, or *Yersinia* sp.). It may be chronic or relapsing. **Also there may be** iritis, keratoderma blennorrhagica (brown, raised plaques on soles and palms), circinate balanitis (painless penile ulceration secondary to *Chlamydia*), mouth ulcers and enthesitis. **Reiter's* syndrome**⁴⁴ is a triad of urethritis, arthritis, and conjunctivitis. **Tests:** ESR & CRP. Culture stool if diarrhoea. Infectious serology. Sexual health review. X-ray may show enthesitis with periosteal reaction. **Management:** There is no specific cure. Splint affected joints acutely; treat with NSAIDs or local steroid injections. Consider sulfasalazine or methotrexate if symptoms >6 months. Treating the original infection may make little difference to the arthritis.



Shared features of the spondyloarthropathies

The spondyloarthropathies show much overlap, with several features in common:

- 1 Seronegativity (= rheumatoid factor -ve).
- 2 HLA B27 association—see BOX below.
- 3 'Axial arthritis': pathology in spine (spondylo-) and sacroiliac joints.
- 4 Asymmetrical large-joint oligoarthritis (ie <5 joints) or monoarthritis.
- 5 Enthesitis: inflammation of the site of insertion of tendon or ligament into bone, eg plantar fasciitis, Achilles tendonitis, costochondritis.
- 6 Dactylitis: inflammation of an entire digit ('sausage digit'), due to soft tissue oedema, and tenosynovial and joint inflammation.
- 7 Extra-articular manifestations: eg iritis (anterior uveitis), psoriaform rashes, oral ulcers, aortic valve incompetence, inflammatory bowel disease.

NB Behçet's syndrome (p708) can also present with uveitis, skin lesions and arthritis and is not always associated with gross oral or genital ulcerations.

HLA-B27 disease associations ⁴⁵

The HLA system plays a key role in immunity and self-recognition. More than one hundred HLA B27 disease associations have been made, yet the actual role of HLA B27 in triggering an inflammatory response is not fully understood. ~5% of the UK population are HLA B27 positive—most do not have any disease. The chance of an HLA B27 positive person developing spondyloarthritis or eye disease is 1 in 4. Common associations include:

Ankylosing spondylitis: 88% of all those with AS are HLA B27 positive.

Acute anterior uveitis: 50–60% are HLA B27 positive.

Reactive arthritis: 60–85% are HLA B27 positive.

Enteric arthropathy: 50–60% are HLA B27 positive.

Psoriatic arthritis: 60–70% are HLA B27 positive.



Fig 1. Progression of disease and effect on posture in severe ankylosing spondylitis.

Reproduced from *American Journal of Medicine* 1976;60:279–85 with permission from Elsevier.



Included under this heading are SLE (p556), systemic sclerosis, primary Sjögren's syndrome (p724), idiopathic inflammatory myopathies (myositis—see below), mixed connective tissue disease, relapsing polychondritis, and Behçet's disease (p708). They overlap with each other, affect many organ systems, and often require immunosuppressive therapies (p370). Consider as a differential in unwell patients with multi-organ involvement, especially if there is no infection.

Systemic sclerosis features scleroderma (skin fibrosis) and vascular disease:

- **Limited cutaneous systemic sclerosis:** (formerly **CREST syndrome**) **C**alcinosis (subcutaneous tissues), **R**aynaud's, **o**esophageal and gut dysmotility, **S**clerodactyly (swollen tight digits), and **T**elangiectasia. Skin involvement is 'limited' to the face, hands and feet. It is associated with anticentromere antibodies in 70–80%. Pulmonary hypertension is often present subclinically, and can become rapidly life-threatening, so should be looked for (Rx: sildenafil, bosentan).

- **Diffuse cutaneous systemic sclerosis:** 'Diffuse' skin involvement (whole body in severe cases) and early organ fibrosis: lung, cardiac, GI and renal (p314). Antitopoisomerase-1 [Scl70] antibodies in 40% and anti-RNA polymerase in 20%. Prognosis is often poor. Control BP meticulously. Perform annual echocardiogram & spirometry.

Management: Currently no cure. Immunosuppressive regimens, including IV cyclophosphamide, are used for organ involvement or progressive skin disease. Trials of antifibrotic tyrosine kinase inhibitors are ongoing.⁴⁶ Monitor BP and renal function. Regular ACE-i or A2RBs ↓ risk of renal crisis (p314). *Raynaud's phenomenon:* (see p722).

Mixed connective tissue disease combines features of systemic sclerosis, SLE and polymyositis. Debate continues as to whether this is a distinct disease.^{47,48}

Relapsing polychondritis attacks cartilage, affecting the pinna (floppy ears), nasal septum, larynx (hence stridor) and joints. *Associations:* aortic valve disease, polyarthritis and vasculitis. 30% have underlying rheumatic or autoimmune disease. Diagnosis is clinical. Rx: Steroids and immunosuppressives.

Polymyositis and dermatomyositis

These rare conditions are characterized by insidious onset of progressive symmetrical proximal muscle weakness and autoimmune-mediated *striated* muscle inflammation (myositis), associated with myalgia ± arthralgia. Muscle weakness may also cause dysphagia, dysphonia (ie poor phonation, *not* dysphasia), or respiratory weakness. The myositis (esp. in dermatomyositis) may be a paraneoplastic phenomenon, commonly from lung, pancreatic, ovarian or bowel malignancy.

Dermatomyositis features myositis plus skin signs: • Macular rash (*shawl sign* is +ve if over back & shoulders); • Lilac-purple (*heliotrope*) rash on eyelids often with oedema (fig 8, p565); • Nailfold erythema (*dilated capillary loops*); • *Gotttron's papules:* Roughened red papules over the knuckles, also seen on elbows and knees (pathognomonic if CKt + muscle weakness); • Subcutaneous calcifications.

Extra-muscular signs in both conditions include fever, arthralgia, Raynaud's, interstitial lung fibrosis and myocardial involvement (myocarditis, arrhythmias).

Tests Muscle enzymes (ALT, AST, LDH, CK & aldolase) ↑ in plasma; electromyography (EMG) shows characteristic fibrillation potentials; muscle biopsy confirms the diagnosis (and excludes mimicking conditions). MRI shows muscle oedema in acute myositis. *Autoantibody associations:* anti-Mi2, anti-Jo1—associated with a syndrome of acute onset and interstitial lung fibrosis that should be treated aggressively.

Differential diagnoses Carcinomatous myopathy, inclusion-body myositis, muscular dystrophy, PMR, endocrine/metabolic myopathy (eg steroids), rhabdomyolysis, infection (eg HIV), drugs (penicillamine, colchicine, statins or chloroquine).

Management Screen systematically for malignancy. Start *prednisolone* (eg 1mg/kg/d po). Immunosuppressives (p370) and cytotoxics are used early in resistant cases, eg azathioprine, methotrexate, cyclophosphamide or ciclosporin. Hydroxychloroquine or topical tacrolimus may help with skin disease.



Plasma autoantibodies (Abs): disease associations

► Always interpret in the context of clinical findings:

Rheumatological Rheumatoid factor (RhF) positive in:

Sjögren's syndrome	≤100%	Mixed connective tissue disease	50%
Felty's syndrome	≤100%	SLE	≤40%
RA	70%	Systemic sclerosis	30%
Infection (SBE/IE; hepatitis)	≤50%	Normal	2-10%

Anticyclic citrullinated peptide Ab (anti-CCP):¹ Rheumatoid arthritis (~96% specificity)

Antinuclear antibody (ANA) positive by immunofluorescence in:

SLE	>95%	Systemic sclerosis	4%
Autoimmune hepatitis	75%	RA	30%
Sjögren's syndrome	68%	Normal	0-2%

ANA titres are expressed according to dilutions at which antibodies can be detected, ie 1:160 means antibodies can still be detected after the serum has been diluted 160 times. Titres of 1:40 or 1:80 may not be significant. The pattern of staining may indicate the disease (although these are not specific):

• Homogeneous	SLE	• Nucleolar	Systemic sclerosis
• Speckled	Mixed CT disease	• Centromere	Limited systemic sclerosis

Anti-double-stranded DNA (dsDNA): SLE (60% sensitivity, but highly specific).

Antihistone Ab: Drug-induced SLE (~100%).

Antiphospholipid Ab (eg anti-cardiolipin Ab): antiphospholipid syndrome, SLE.

Anticentromere Ab: limited systemic sclerosis.

Anti-extractable nuclear antigen (ENA) antibodies (usually with +ve ANA):

- Anti-Ro (SSA) SLE, Sjögren's syndrome, systemic sclerosis. Associated with congenital heart block.
- Anti-La (SSB) Sjögren's syndrome, SLE (15%).
- Anti-Sm SLE (20-30%).
- Anti-RNP SLE, mixed connective tissue disease.
- Anti-Jo-1; Anti-Mi-2 Polymyositis, dermatomyositis.
- Anti-Scl70 Diffuse systemic sclerosis.

Gastrointestinal (for liver autoantibodies, see p268).

Antimitochondrial Ab (AMA): Primary biliary cirrhosis (>95%), autoimmune hepatitis (30%), idiopathic cirrhosis (25-30%).

Anti-smooth muscle Ab (SMA): Autoimmune hepatitis (70%), primary biliary cirrhosis (50%), idiopathic cirrhosis (25-30%).

Gastric parietal cell Ab: Pernicious anaemia (>90%), atrophic gastritis (40%), 'normal' (10%).

Intrinsic factor Ab: Pernicious anaemia (50%).

α-gliadin Ab, antitissue transglutaminase, anti-endomysial Ab: Coeliac disease.

Endocrine Thyroid peroxidase Ab: Hashimoto's thyroiditis (~87%), Graves' (>50%).

Islet cell Ab (ICA), glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) Ab: Type 1 diabetes mellitus (75%).

Renal Glomerular basement membrane Ab (anti-GBM): Goodpasture's disease (100%).

Antineutrophil cytoplasmic Ab (ANCA):

- Cytoplasmic (c-ANCA), specific for serine proteinase-3 (PR3 +ve). Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's*) (90%); also microscopic polyangiitis (30%), polyarteritis nodosa (11%).
- Perinuclear (p-ANCA), specific for myeloperoxidase (MPO +ve). Microscopic polyangiitis (45%), Churg-Strauss, some pulmonary-renal vasculitides (Goodpasture's syndrome).

Unlike immune-complex vasculitis, in ANCA-associated vasculitis no complement consumption or immune complex deposition occurs (ie pauci-immune vasculitis).⁴⁹

ANCA may also be +ve in UC/Crohn's, sclerosing cholangitis, autoimmune hepatitis, Felty's, RA, SLE, or drugs (eg antithyroid, allopurinol, ciprofloxacin).

Neurological Acetylcholine receptor Ab: Myasthenia gravis (90%)(see p516).

Anti-voltage-gated K⁺-channel Ab: Limbic encephalitis.

Anti-voltage-gated Ca²⁺-channel Ab: Lambert-Eaton syndrome (see p516).

Anti-aquaporin 4: Neuromyelitis optica (Devic's disease, p712).

1 Most centres now use anti-CCP antibodies for the initial workup of suspected RA.



SLE is a multisystemic autoimmune disease in which autoantibodies are made against a variety of autoantigens (eg ANA). Immunopathology results in polyclonal B-cell secretion of pathogenic autoantibodies causing tissue damage via multiple mechanisms including immune complex formation and deposition, complement activation and other direct effects. **Prevalence:** ~0.2%. ♀:♂~9:1, typically women of child-bearing age. Commoner in African-Caribbeans, Asians, and if HLA B8, DR2 or DR3 +ve. ~10% of relatives may be affected. It may be triggered by EBV (p401).⁵⁰

Clinical features It is a remitting and relapsing illness of variable presentation and course, typically presenting with non-specific constitutional symptoms of malaise, fatigue, myalgia and fever. See BOX opposite for specific features. Other features include lymphadenopathy, weight loss, alopecia, nail-fold infarcts, non-infective endocarditis (Libman-Sacks syndrome), Raynaud's (30%; see p722), migraine (40%), stroke, and retinal exudates.

Immunology >95% are ANA +ve. A high anti-double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) antibody titre is highly specific, but only +ve in ~60% of cases. ENA (p555) may be +ve in 20–30% (anti-Ro, anti-La, anti-Sm, anti-RNP); 40% are RhF +ve; antiphospholipid antibodies (anticardiolipin or lupus anticoagulant) may also be +ve. SLE may be associated with other autoimmune conditions: Sjögren's (15–20%), autoimmune thyroid disease (5–10%).

Diagnosis see BOX. **Monitoring activity** **3 best tests:** **1** Anti-dsDNA antibody titres. **2** Complement: c3, c4 (denotes consumption of complement, hence c3 and c4, and c3d and c4d, their degradation products). **3** ESR. *Also:* BP, urine for casts or protein (lupus nephritis, below), FBC, U&E, LFTs, CRP (usually normal) ▶ *think of SLE whenever someone has a multisystem disorder and ↑ESR but CRP normal.* If ↑CRP, think instead of infection, serositis or arthritis. Skin or renal biopsies may be diagnostic.

Drug-induced lupus Causes (>50 drugs) include isoniazid, hydralazine (if >50mg/24h in slow acetylators), procainamide, quinidine, chlorpromazine, minocycline, phenytoin. It is associated with antihistone antibodies in ~100%. Skin and lung signs prevail (renal and CNS are rarely affected). The disease remits if the drug is stopped. Sulfonamides or the oral contraceptive pill may worsen idiopathic SLE.

Management should be through specialist SLE and lupus nephritis clinics.

- ▶ **Severe flares:** Acute SLE (eg haemolytic anaemia, nephritis, severe pericarditis or CNS disease) requires urgent IV cyclophosphamide + high-dose prednisolone.
- **Cutaneous symptoms:** treat rashes with topical steroids. Prevent rashes with high-factor sunblock creams. Sun exposure may also trigger acute systemic flares.
- **Maintenance:** use NSAIDs and hydroxychloroquine (see p549 for SE) for joint and skin symptoms. **Low-dose steroids** may be of value in chronic disease. Azathioprine, methotrexate and mycophenolate are used as steroid-sparing agents.
- **Lupus nephritis:** (p314) May require more intensive immunosuppression with steroids and cyclophosphamide or mycophenolate. NB: immunosuppressed patients are prone to infection (especially atypicals). BP control is vital: ACE-i, α-blockers (eg doxazosin) or Ca²⁺-channel blockers (eg nifedipine). Renal replacement therapy (p298) may be needed if disease progresses; nephritis recurs in ~50% post-transplant, but is a rare cause of graft failure.⁵¹
- **B-cell depletion:** Trials of rituximab (p356) have been disappointing.⁵² Belimumab has shown significant clinical benefit and is licensed in the US.⁵³ Trials with epratuzumab are ongoing.⁵⁴
- **Future treatments:** Interferon-α, interleukin-6 inhibition,⁵⁵ and T-cell targets are currently being evaluated.

Prognosis is ~80% survival at 15 years.⁵⁰ There is an increased long-term risk of cardiovascular disease and osteoporosis.

Antiphospholipid syndrome can be associated with SLE (20–30%). More often it occurs as a primary disease. Antiphospholipid antibodies (anticardiolipin & lupus anticoagulant) cause **CLOTS:** Coagulation defect, **L**ivedo reticularis (p559), **O**bstetric (recurrent miscarriage), **T**hrombocytopenia (↓platelets). There is a thrombotic tendency, affecting the cerebral, renal and other vessels. **R:** Low-dose aspirin, or warfarin if recurrent thromboses (aim INR of 2–3).⁵⁶ Seek advice in pregnancy.



Revised criteria (serial or simultaneous) for diagnosing SLE^{57,58}

A favourite differential diagnosis, SLE mimics other illnesses, with wide variation in symptoms that may come and go unpredictably. Diagnose SLE in an appropriate clinical setting if ≥ 4 out of 11 criteria are present:

- 1 **Malar rash (butterfly rash):** Fixed erythema, flat or raised, over the malar eminences, tending to spare the nasolabial folds (fig 1). Occurs in up to 50%.
- 2 **Discoid rash:** Erythematous raised patches with adherent keratotic scales and follicular plugging \pm atrophic scarring (fig 2). Think of it as a 3-stage rash affecting ears, cheeks, scalp, forehead, and chest: erythema \rightarrow pigmented hyperkeratotic oedematous papules \rightarrow atrophic depressed lesions.
- 3 **Photosensitivity:** On exposed skin representing unusual reaction to light. Exposure to sun may also cause disease to flare, so sunblocks are advised.
- 4 **Oral ulcers:** Oral or nasopharyngeal ulceration, usually painless.
- 5 **Non-erosive arthritis:** Involving ≥ 2 peripheral joints (tenderness, swelling, or effusion). Joint involvement is seen in 90% of patients, and may present similarly to RA. A reversible deforming arthropathy may occur due to capsular laxity (Jaccoud's arthropathy). Aseptic bone necrosis may also occur.
- 6 **Serositis:** (a) Pleuritis (presents as pleuritic pain or dyspnoea due to pleural effusion—80% have lung function abnormalities) OR (b) Pericarditis (chest pain, ECG, pericardial rub or signs of pericardial effusion).
- 7 **Renal disorder:** (a) Persistent proteinuria $>0.5\text{g/d}$ (or $>3+$ on urinalysis) OR (b) Cellular casts—may be red cell, granular, or mixed. See p314.
- 8 **CNS disorder:** (a) Seizures, in the absence of causative drugs or metabolic imbalance, eg uraemia, ketoacidosis, or electrolyte imbalance, OR (b) Psychosis in the absence of causative drugs/metabolic derangements, as above.
- 9 **Haematological disorder:** (a) Haemolytic anaemia with reticulocytosis (p330), OR (b) Leukopenia $<4 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ on ≥ 2 occasions, OR (c) Lymphopenia $<1.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ on ≥ 2 occasions, OR (d) Thrombocytopenia $<100 \times 10^9/\text{L}$, in the absence of a drug effect.
- 10 **Immunological disorder:** Presence of (a) Anti-dsDNA antibody, (b) Anti-Sm antibody, OR (c) Antiphospholipid antibody +ve based on:
 - An abnormal serum level of IgG or IgM anticardiolipin antibodies,
 - Positive result for lupus anticoagulant using a standard method, or
 - False +ve syphilis serology: If +ve for >6 months and confirmed by -ve *Treponema pallidum* immobilization and fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption tests.⁴² (The phospholipid reagents used to test for syphilis can cause false positive results in patients with antiphospholipid antibodies.)
- 11 **Antinuclear antibody (ANA):** +ve in $>95\%$.



Fig 1. Malar rash, with sparing of the nasolabial folds.

Courtesy of David F Fiorentino, MD, PhD;
by kind permission of *Skin & Aging*.



Fig 2. Discoid rash.

Courtesy of Amy McMichael, MD;
by kind permission of *Skin & Aging*.



Vasculitis is defined as an inflammatory disorder of blood vessel walls, causing destruction (aneurysm/rupture) or stenosis. It can affect the vessels of any organ, and presentation depends on which organs are involved. It may be a primary condition or secondary to other diseases, eg SLE, RA, hepatitis B & C, HIV. It is categorized according to the main size of blood vessel affected:

- **Large:** Giant cell arteritis, Takayasu's arteritis (see p726).
- **Medium:** Polyarteritis nodosa, Kawasaki disease (OHCS p646).
- **Small:** •ANCA +ve vasculitis has a predilection for respiratory tract and kidneys. It includes p-ANCA associated microscopic polyangiitis, glomerulonephritis and Churg-Strauss syndrome (p710) and c-ANCA associated Wegener's granulomatosis (p728).
- ANCA -ve vasculitis includes Henoch-Schönlein purpura (p716), Goodpasture's syndrome (p714) and cryoglobulinaemia.

Symptoms: Different vasculitides preferentially affect different organs, causing different patterns of symptoms (see BOX 1), but the presentation may often be of only overwhelming fatigue with ↑ESR/CRP. ►► **Consider vasculitis in any unidentified multisystem disorder.** If presentation does not fit clinically or serologically into a specific category consider malignancy-associated vasculitis. A severe vasculitis flare is a medical emergency. If suspected, seek urgent help, as organ damage may occur rapidly (eg critical renal failure <24h).

Tests: ESR/CRP↑. ANCA may be +ve. ↑Creatinine if renal failure. Urine: proteinuria, haematuria, casts on microscopy. Angiography ± biopsy may be diagnostic.

Management: Large-vessel vasculitis: steroids in most cases. Medium/small: standard therapy is steroids and IV *cyclophosphamide* (15mg/kg).⁵⁹ Azathioprine may be useful as steroid-sparing maintenance treatment.

Giant cell arteritis (GCA)⁶⁰ = cranial or temporal arteritis

It is common in the elderly—consider Takayasu's if under 55yrs (p726). It is associated with PMR in 50% (see BOX 2). **Symptoms:** Headache, temporal artery and scalp tenderness (eg when combing hair), jaw claudication, amaurosis fugax, or sudden blindness, typically in one eye. Extracranial symptoms may include dyspnoea, morning stiffness, and unequal or weak pulses.⁶¹ ►► If you suspect GCA, do ESR and start *prednisolone* 60mg/d PO *immediately*. The risk is irreversible bilateral visual loss, which can occur suddenly if not treated (some advocate IV methylprednisolone for 3d if visual symptoms—ask an ophthalmologist). **Tests:** ESR & CRP↑↑, plateletst, alk phost, Hb↓. Get a temporal artery biopsy within 7 days of starting steroids. Skip lesions occur, so don't be put off by a negative biopsy (up to 10%). **Prognosis:** Typically a 2-year course, then complete remission. Reduce prednisolone once symptoms have resolved and ↓ESR; ↑dose if symptoms recur. The main cause of death and morbidity in GCA is long-term steroid treatment so consider risks and benefits! Give gastric and bone protection (PPI & bisphosphonate).

Polyarteritis nodosa (PAN)

PAN is a necrotizing vasculitis that causes aneurysms and thrombosis in medium-sized arteries, leading to infarction in affected organs (fig 2), with severe systemic symptoms. ♂:♀≈2:1. It may be associated with hepatitis B, and is rare in the UK. **Symptoms:** Typically systemic features, plus predominantly skin (rash and 'punched out' ulcers), renal (main cause of death, though glomerulonephritis is not seen), cardiac, GI and GU involvement. See BOX. Coronary aneurysms occur in Kawasaki disease (childhood PAN variant, OHCS p646). **Tests:** Often wcc↑, mild eosinophilia (in 30%), anaemia, ESR↑, CRP↑, ANCA -ve. Renal or mesenteric angiography, or renal biopsy can be diagnostic. **Treatment:** Control BP meticulously. Refer to experts. Most respond to corticosteroids and *cyclophosphamide*. Hepatitis B should be treated with an antiviral (p407) after initial treatment with steroids.⁶²

Microscopic polyangiitis

A necrotizing vasculitis affecting small- and medium-sized vessels. **Symptoms:** Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis usually features; pulmonary haemorrhage occurs in up to 30%; other features are rare. **Tests:** pANCA (MPO) +ve (p555). **Treatment:** As for PAN.



Features of vasculitis

The presentation of vasculitis will depend on the organs affected:

Systemic: fever, malaise, weight loss, arthralgia, myalgia.

Skin: purpura, ulcers, livedo reticularis (fig 1), nailbed infarcts, digital gangrene.

Eyes: episcleritis, scleritis, visual loss.

ENT: epistaxis, nasal crusting, stridor, deafness.

Pulmonary: haemoptysis and dyspnoea (due to pulmonary haemorrhage).

Cardiac: Angina or MI (due to coronary arteritis), heart failure and pericarditis.

GI: Pain or perforation (infarcted viscus), malabsorption (chronic ischaemia).

Renal: Hypertension, haematuria, proteinuria, casts, and renal failure (renal cortical infarcts; glomerulonephritis in ANCA+ve vasculitis).

Neurological: Stroke, fits, chorea, psychosis, confusion, impaired cognition, altered mood. Arteritis of the vasa nervorum (arterial supply to peripheral nerves) may cause mononeuritis multiplex or a sensorimotor polyneuropathy.⁶³

GU: Orchitis—testicular pain or tenderness.

Polymyalgia rheumatica (PMR)⁶⁴

PMR is not a true vasculitis and its pathogenesis is unknown. PMR and GCA share the same demographic characteristics and, although separate conditions, the two frequently occur together.

Features: Age >50yrs; subacute onset (<2 weeks) of bilateral aching, tenderness and morning stiffness in shoulders and proximal limb muscles ± mild polyarthritis, tenosynovitis, and carpal tunnel syndrome (10%). Weakness is not a feature. There may be associated fatigue, fever, weight↓, anorexia and depression.

Investigations: CRP ↑, ESR typically >40 (but may be normal); ALP is ↑ in 30%. Note creatinine kinase levels are normal (helping to distinguish from myositis/myopathies).

Differential diagnoses: Recent onset RA, polymyositis, hypothyroidism, primary muscle disease, occult malignancy or infection, osteoarthritis (especially cervical spondylosis, shoulder OA), neck lesions, bilateral subacromial impingement (OHCS p664), spinal stenosis (OHCS p674).

Management: Prednisolone 15mg/d PO. Expect a dramatic response within 1 week and consider an alternative diagnosis if not. ↓dose slowly, eg by 1mg/month (according to symptoms and ESR). Investigate apparent 'flares' during withdrawal—recurrent symptoms may be attributable to another condition (above). Most need steroids for ≥2yrs, so give gastric and bone protection. NSAIDs are not effective and trials with steroid-sparing agents have been inconsistent. Inform patients to seek urgent review if symptoms of GCA develop.



Fig 1. Livedo reticularis: pink-blue mottling caused by capillary dilatation and stasis in skin venules. Causes: physiological, eg cold, or vasculitis.



Fig 2. Renal angiogram showing multiple aneurysms in PAN.

Courtesy of Dr William Herring.



Fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome are part of a diffuse group of overlapping syndromes, sharing similar demographic and clinical characteristics, in which chronic symptoms of fatigue and widespread pain feature prominently. Their existence as discrete entities is controversial, especially in the absence of clear pathology, and some find such dysfunctional diagnoses frustrating. However, a correct diagnosis enables the doctor to give appropriate counselling and advise appropriate therapies, and allows the patient to begin to accept and deal with their symptoms.

Fibromyalgia

Fibromyalgia comprises up to 10% of new referrals to the rheumatology clinic.⁶⁵ **Prevalence:** 0.5–4%. ♀:♂~10:1. **Risk factors:** BOX. Also female sex, middle age, low household income, divorced, low educational status. **Associations:** Other somatic syndromes such as chronic fatigue syndrome, irritable bowel syndrome (p276) and chronic headaches syndromes (see OHCS p528). Also found in ~25% of patients with RA, AS and SLE.

Features: Diagnosis depends on pain that is *chronic* (>3months) and widespread (involves left and right sides, above and below the waist, and the axial skeleton) in the absence of inflammation; and the presence of pain on palpation of at least 11/18 'tender points'—left- and right-sided: • Suboccipital muscle insertions; • Anterior aspects of the inter-transverse spaces at C5–C7; • Midpoint of the upper border of trapezius; • Origin of supraspinatus near the medial border of the scapular spine; • Costochondral junction of 2nd rib; • 2cm distal from lateral humeral epicondyle; • Upper outer gluteal quadrant; • Posterior to the greater trochanter; • Knee, at medial fat pad proximal to joint line. Patients may have more tender points than those listed, but these are the most consistent and helpful diagnostically.⁶⁶ Healthy individuals may also have tender points, but it is their widespread and severe nature that indicates fibromyalgia. **Additional features:** morning stiffness (~80–90%), fatigue (~80–90%, often severe), poor concentration, low mood and sleep disturbance (~70%).

Investigations: are all normal. Over-investigation can consolidate illness behaviour; however, other causes of pain and/or fatigue must be excluded (eg RA, PMR see p559, vasculitis see p558, hypothyroidism see p212, myeloma see p362).

R: The manner in which management is discussed is almost as important as the management itself, which should focus on **education** of the patient *and their family* and on developing coping strategies. Such a diagnosis may be a relief or a disappointment to the patient. **Explain** that fibromyalgia is a relapsing and remitting condition, with no easy cures, and that they will continue to have good and bad days. **Reassure** them that there is no serious underlying pathology, that their joints are not being damaged, and that no further tests are necessary, but be sympathetic to the fact that they may have been seeking a physical cause for their symptoms. Discuss psychosocial issues (see BOX). **Cognitive-behavioural therapy** (CBT) aims to help patients develop coping strategies and set achievable goals.⁶⁷ Pacing of activity is vital to avoid over-exertion and consequent pain and fatigue. Long-term **graded exercise programmes** improve functional capacity.^{68,69} **Pharmacotherapy:** Pain in fibromyalgia rarely responds to NSAIDs and steroids as there is no inflammation (if it does respond, reconsider your diagnosis!). Low-dose tricyclic antidepressants (eg **amitriptyline** 10–20mg at night) and **pregabalin** (150–300mg/12h po) may improve pain (especially combined with tramadol), sleep and morning stiffness, but effects may not be apparent for up to a month.^{70,71} High-dose SNRIs, eg **venlafaxine**, may also be effective (unlicensed use). SSRIs appear to be less useful.

Chronic fatigue syndrome (aka myalgic encephalomyelitis)⁷²

Chronic fatigue syndrome is defined as persistent disabling fatigue lasting >6 months, affecting mental and physical function, present >50% of the time, plus ≥4 of: myalgia (~80%), polyarthralgia, ↓ memory, unrefreshing sleep, fatigue after exertion >24h, persistent sore throat, tender cervical/axillary lymph nodes. Management principles are similar to fibromyalgia above and include graded exercise and CBT. No pharmacological agents have yet been proved effective for chronic fatigue syndrome (see also OHCS p528).



Yellow flags⁷³

☼ Psychosocial risk factors for developing persisting chronic pain and long-term disability have been termed 'yellow flags'. These include:

- ▶ Belief that pain and activity are harmful.
- ▶ Sickness behaviours such as extended rest.
- ▶ Social withdrawal.
- ▶ Emotional problems such as low mood, anxiety or stress.
- ▶ Problems or dissatisfaction at work.
- ▶ Problems with claims for compensation or time off work.
- ▶ Overprotective family or lack of support.
- ▶ Inappropriate expectations of treatment, eg low active participation in treatment.

☼ An existential approach to difficult symptoms

We all at some stage come across a patient with difficult symptoms and an exasperating lack of pathology to explain them. Investigations are all normal, and medications do not seem to work. It is tempting to dismiss such patients as malingerers, but often this conclusion comes from the clinician approaching the problem from the wrong angle. The patient has symptoms that are real and disabling to them, and that will not improve without help. Perhaps a more pragmatic approach is to take advice from the Danish philosopher Kierkegaard who wrote to a friend in 1835, *'What I really lack is to be clear in my mind what I am to do, not what I am to know ... The thing is to understand myself ... to find a truth which is true for me.'* Listen to the patient and accept their story. Then help them to focus on what they can *do* to improve their situation, and to move away from dwelling on finding a physical answer to their symptoms.

☼ Is fibromyalgia a real disease?

The current hypothesis is that fibromyalgia is caused by aberrant peripheral and central pain processing. Two key features of the condition are *allodynia* (pain in response to a non-painful stimulus) and *hyperaesthesia* (exaggerated perception of pain in response to a mildly painful stimulus), examined for by palpation of tender points. Research is beginning to suggest that certain antidepressants can relieve pain and other symptoms, and especially those that have both serotonergic and noradrenergic activity (tricyclics and venlafaxine). Those acting on serotonergic receptors only are less effective. There is also some evidence to support the use of alternative therapies such as acupuncture and spa therapies, which have been postulated to act through similar spinal pain-modulatory pathways.⁷⁴ Thus far, trials have involved relatively small numbers of patients or short time periods, and lack the power to draw strong conclusions. However, it is interesting to note that the CSF of patients with fibromyalgia appears to have increased levels of substance P, while levels of noradrenaline and serotonin metabolites are decreased. All three are neurotransmitters involved in descending pain-modulatory pathways in the spinal cord.^{75,76} Evidence from PET imaging suggests that patients with fibromyalgia may have an abnormal central dopamine response to pain.⁷⁷ The critical question is: Is this cause or effect?



The eye is host to many diseases: the more you look, the more you'll see, and the more you'll enjoy, not least because the eye is as beautiful as its signs are legion.

Granulomatous disorders Syphilis, TB, sarcoidosis, leprosy, brucellosis, and toxoplasmosis may inflame either the front chamber (anterior uveitis/iritis) or back chamber (posterior uveitis/choroiditis). Refer to an ophthalmologist.

Systemic inflammatory diseases may manifest as iritis in ankylosing spondylitis and Reiter's^{*}; conjunctivitis in Reiter's; scleritis or episcleritis in RA, vasculitis and SLE. Scleritis in RA and Wegener's^{*} may damage the eye. Refer urgently if eye pain. Giant cell arteritis causes optic nerve ischaemia presenting as sudden blindness.

Keratoconjunctivitis sicca is a reduction in tear formation, tested by the Schirmmer filter paper test (<5mm in 5min). It causes a gritty feeling in the eyes, and a dry mouth (xerostomia from ↓ saliva production). It is found on its own (Sjögren's syndrome), or with other diseases, eg SLE, RA, sarcoidosis. *R*: artificial tears/saliva (eg Tears Naturale®, hypromellose drops, Saliveze® oral spray).

Hypertensive retinopathy tBP accelerates atherosclerosis in retinal vessels. Hardened arteries are shiny ('silver wiring'; **fig 1**) and 'nip' veins where they cross (AV nipping; **fig 2**). Narrowed arterioles may become blocked, causing localized retinal infarction, seen as cotton-wool spots. Leaks from these in severe hypertension manifest as hard exudates or macular oedema. Papilloedema (**fig 3**) or flame haemorrhages suggest accelerated hypertension (p132) requiring urgent treatment.

Vascular occlusion *Emboli* passing through the retinal vasculature may cause *retinal artery occlusion* (global or segmental retinal pallor) or *amaurosis fugax* (p480). Roth spots (small retinal infarcts, **fig 1** on p386) occur in infective endocarditis. In dermatomyositis, there is orbital oedema with retinopathy showing cotton-wool spots (micro-infarcts). *Retinal vein occlusion* is caused by tBP, age, or hyperviscosity (p366). Suspect in any acute fall in acuity. If it is the central vein, the fundus is like a stormy sunset (those angry red clouds are haemorrhages). In branch vein occlusion, changes are confined to a wedge of retina. Get expert help.

Haematological disorders *Retinal haemorrhages* occur in leukaemia; comma-shaped *conjunctival haemorrhages* and retinal new vessel formation may occur in sickle-cell disease. *Optic atrophy* is seen in pernicious anaemia (and also MS).

Metabolic disease Diabetes mellitus: p202. Hyperthyroid exophthalmos: p211. Lens opacities are seen in hypoparathyroidism. Conjunctival and corneal calcification can occur in hypercalcaemia. In gout, conjunctival urate deposits may cause sore eyes.

Systemic infections Septicaemia may seed to the vitreous causing endophthalmitis. Syphilis can cause iritis (+ pigmented retinopathy if congenital). Systemic fungal infections may affect the eye, eg in the immunocompromised or in IV drug users, requiring intra-vitreous antibiotics. **AIDS and HIV:** CMV retinitis (pizza-pie fundus—a mixture of cotton-wool spots, infiltrates and haemorrhages, p405) may be asymptomatic but can cause sudden visual loss. If present, it implies AIDS (CD4 count <100 × 10⁶/L; p410). Cotton-wool spots on their own indicate HIV retinopathy and may occur in early disease. Kaposi's sarcoma may affect the lids (non-tender purple nodule) or conjunctiva (red fleshy mass).



Fig 1. Silver wiring.

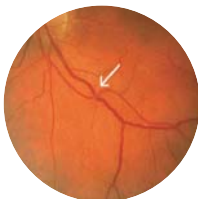






Fig 2. AV nipping.



Fig 3. Papilloedema.

Figs 1–3 ©Prof Jonathan Trobe.

Differential diagnosis of a red eye

	Conjunctiva	Iris	Pupil	Cornea	Anterior chamber	Intraocular pressure	Treatment	Appearance
Acute glaucoma	Both ciliary and conjunctival vessels injected. Entire eye is red. See <i>OHCS</i> p430.	Injected	Dilated, fixed, oval	Steamy, hazy	Very shallow	Very high	Refer. iv acetazolamide + pilocarpine drops (miotic); Peripheral iridotomy.	
Anterior uveitis (iritis)	Redness most marked around cornea, which doesn't blanch on pressure. Usually unilateral. <i>Causes:</i> AS, RA, Reiter's [†] , sarcoidosis, herpes simplex, herpes zoster, and Behçet's disease. NB: a similar scleral appearance but without papillary or anterior chamber involvement may be <i>scleritis</i> (eg RA, SLE, vasculitis).	Injected	Small, irregular due to adhesions between the anterior lens and the pupil margin	Normal	Turgid	Normal	Refer. Steroid eye drops (eg 0.5% prednisolone) + mydriatic (eg cyclopentolate 0.5%).	
Conjunctivitis	Often bilateral. Conjunctival vessels injected, greatest toward fornices, but blanching on pressure. Mobile over sclera. Purulent discharge.	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Most do not require treatment. Consider chloramphenicol ointment or drops.	
Subconjunctival haemorrhage	Bright red sclera with white rim around limbus. <i>Causes:</i> BPT; leptospirosis; bleeding disorders; trauma; snake venom; haemorrhagic fevers.	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Looks alarming but resolves spontaneously. Check BP if elderly; Refer if traumatic; On warfarin?	

After RD Judge, GD Zuidema, FT Fitzgerald *Clinical diagnosis* 5/e, Little Brown, Boston. Images courtesy of Prof. Jonathan Trobe and ADB.



Erythema nodosum (fig 1) Painful, blue-red, raised lesions on shins (\pm thighs/arms). *Causes*: sarcoidosis, drugs (sulfonamides, the Pill, dapsone), streptococcal infection. *Less common*: Crohn's/UC, BCG vaccination, leptospirosis, *Mycobacterium* (TB, leprosy), *Yersinia* or various viruses and fungi. Cause unknown in 30–50%.

Erythema multiforme (see OHCS p588) (fig 3) 'Target' lesions: symmetrical \pm central blister, on palms/soles, limbs, and elsewhere. *Stevens–Johnson syndrome* (p724): a rare, severe variant with fever and mucosal involvement (mouth, genital, and eye ulcers), associated with a hypersensitivity reaction to drugs (NSAIDs, sulfonamides, anti-convulsants, allopurinol) or infections (herpes, *Mycoplasma*, orf—). Also seen in collagen disorders. 50% of cases are idiopathic. Get expert help in severe disease.

Erythema migrans (fig 7) Presents as a small papule at the site of a tick bite which develops into a spreading large erythematous ring, with central fading. It lasts from 48h to 3 months and there may be multiple lesions in disseminated disease. *Cause*: The rash is pathognomonic of Lyme disease and occurs in \sim 80% of cases (p430).

Erythema marginatum Pink coalescent rings on trunk which come and go. It is seen in rheumatic fever (or rarely other causes, eg drugs). See fig 1, p137.

Pyoderma gangrenosum (fig 2) Recurring nodulo-pustular ulcers, \sim 10cm wide, with tender red/blue overhanging necrotic edge, purulent surface, and healing with cribriform scars on leg, abdomen, or face. *Associations*: UC/Crohn's, autoimmune hepatitis, Wegener's*, myeloma, neoplasia. $\sigma > \phi$. *Treatment*: Get help. Oral steroids \pm ciclosporin should be 1st-line therapy.⁷⁸

Vitiligo (fig 4) *Vitellus* is Latin for *spotted calf*: typically white patches \pm hyperpigmented borders. Sunlight makes them itch. *Associations*: autoimmune disorders; premature ovarian failure. Treat by camouflage cosmetics and sunscreens (\pm steroid creams \pm dermabrasion). UK Vitiligo Society: 0800 018 2631.

Specific diseases and their skin manifestations

Crohn's Perianal/vulval/oral ulcers; erythema nodosum; pyoderma gangrenosum.

Dermatomyositis Gottron's papules (rough red papules on the knuckles/extensor surfaces); shawl sign; heliotrope rash on eyelids (fig 8). It may be associated with lung, bowel, ovarian or pancreatic malignancy (p554).

Diabetes mellitus Ulcers, *necrobiosis lipoidica* (shiny yellowish area on shin \pm telangiectasia; fig 5), *granuloma annulare* (OHCS p586), *acanthosis nigricans* (pigmented, rough thickening of axillary, neck or groin skin with warty lesions; fig 6).

Gluten-sensitive enteropathy (coeliac disease) *Dermatitis herpetiformis*—itchy blisters, in groups on knees, elbows, and scalp. The itch (which can drive patients to suicide) responds to *dapsone* 25–200mg/24h po within 48h—and this may be used as a diagnostic test. The maintenance dose may be as little as 50mg/wk. A gluten-free diet should be adhered to, but in 30% dapsone will need to be continued. SE (dose-related): haemolysis (CI: anaemia, G6PD-deficiency), hepatitis, agranulocytosis (monitor FBC and LFTs). There is an \uparrow risk of small bowel lymphoma with coeliac disease and dermatitis herpetiformis—so surveillance is needed.

Hyperthyroidism *Pretibial myxoedema*—red oedematous swellings above lateral malleoli, progressing to thickened oedema of legs and feet, *thyroid acropachy*—clubbing + subperiosteal new bone in phalanges. *Other endocrinopathies*: p197.

Liver disease Palmar erythema; spider naevi; gynaecomastia; decrease in pubic hair; jaundice; bruising; scratch marks.

Malabsorption Dry pigmented skin, easy bruising, hair loss, leuconychia.

Neoplasia *Acanthosis nigricans*: (see above under diabetes and fig 6) associated with gastric cancer. *Dermatomyositis*—see above. *Thrombophlebitis migrans*: Successive crops of tender nodules affecting blood vessels throughout the body, associated with pancreatic cancer (especially body and tail). Acquired ichthyosis: Dry scaly skin associated with lymphoma. *Skin metastases*: Especially melanoma, and colonic, lung, breast, laryngeal/oral, or ovarian malignancy.





Fig 1. Erythema nodosum.



Fig 2. Pyoderma gangrenosum.



Fig 3. Erythema multiforme.



Fig 4. Vitiligo. Compare with [fig 1](#), p429.



Fig 5. Necrobiosis lipoidica.



Fig 6. Acanthosis nigricans.



Fig 7. Erythema migrans.



Fig 8. Heliotrope rash.

Fig 2 Reproduced from *BMJ* 2006; 333:181, with permission from BMJ Publishing Ltd; Fig 5 reproduced from Warrel *et al*, *Oxford Textbook of Medicine*, 2010, with permission from Oxford University Press; Fig 6 reproduced from Lewis-Jones, *Oxford Specialist Handbook of Paediatric Dermatology*, 2010, with permission from Oxford University Press; Fig 7 courtesy of cdc/James Gathany; Fig 8 courtesy of Nick Taylor, East Sussex Hospitals Trust.





Contents

Language of surgery 567

Perioperative care:

Pre-operative care 568

Consent 570

Prophylactic antibiotics 572

Bowel preparation 572

Sutures 572

Surgical drains 573

Anaesthesia 574

Local anaesthetics 574-575

Control of pain 576

General post-op complications 578

DVTs 580

Swollen legs 580

Specific post-op complications 582

Stoma care 584

Nutritional support 586-588

Diabetic patients 590

Jaundiced patients 592

Patients on steroids 592

Patients on anticoagulants 592

Thyroid disease 593

Minimally invasive surgery 594

Issues in day-case surgery 595

Lumps in head, neck & skin:

Lumps 596

Skin diagnoses 598

Lumps in the neck 600

Lumps in the thyroid 602

Breast surgery:

Breast carcinoma 604

Benign breast disease 605

GI surgery:

Abdominal masses 606

Acute abdomen 608

Acute appendicitis 610

Obstruction of the bowel 612

Paralytic ileus 613

Pseudo-obstruction 613

Sigmoid volvulus 613

Volvulus of the stomach 613

Hernias 614-617

Colorectal carcinoma 618

Gastro-oesophageal carcinomas 620

Oesophageal rupture 621

Mesenteric ischaemia 622

Gastric surgery 624

Operations for peptic ulcers 626

Fundoplication for GORD 626



Fig 1. When Wertheim attempted his radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer, the first dozen women died. Undeterred, he continued. Thousands of women owe their lives to his skill—and to the sacrifice of those 12 dead women (see p595 for more).

Bariatric surgery 628

Paediatric GI emergencies 629

Diverticular disease 630

Angiodysplasia 630

Rectal bleeding 631

Around the anus 632

Anal cancer 633

Haemorrhoids (piles) 634

Hepatobiliary surgery:

Gallstones 636

Acute pancreatitis 638

Urology:

Renal stones 640

Urinary tract obstruction 642

Peri-aortitis 642

Urinary retention and BPH 644

Obstructive uropathy 645

Urinary tract malignancies 646

Benign diseases of the penis 647

Prostatitis 647

Bladder tumours 648

Urinary incontinence 650

Lumps in groin & scrotum 652

▶▶ Torsion of the testis 654

Undescended testes 654

Vascular surgery:

▶▶ Aneurysms of arteries 656

▶▶ Thoracic aortic dissection 656

▶▶ Peripheral arterial disease 658

Acute limb ischaemia 659

Carotid artery disease 659

Varicose veins 660

Gangrene & necrotizing fasciitis 662

Skin ulcers 662

See also in other chapters: Gastroenterology (p234), Radiology (p732), UTI (p288); haematuria (p286); prostatism (p65); gynaecological urology (OHCS p306); IV fluids (p680).

We thank our Specialist Readers for this chapter: Mr Mohamed Elkalaawy (General and GI surgery); Professor Thomas Lennard (Breast and endocrine surgery); Mr David Chadwick (Urology); Mr George Peaches (Vascular surgery); Mr Graham Cox (Head and neck surgery); Mr Mark Malak (Urogynaecology). We also thank our Junior Reader, Eleanor Zimmermann.



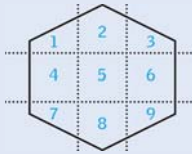
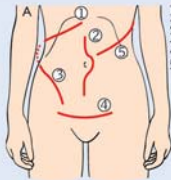
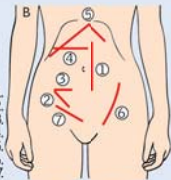


Fig 1. Abdominal areas.

- 1 Right upper quadrant (RUQ) or hypochondrium
- 2 Epigastrium
- 3 Left upper quadrant (LUQ) or hypochondrium
- 4 Right flank (merges posteriorly with right loin, p57)
- 5 Periumbilical or central area
- 6 Left flank (merges posteriorly with left loin, p57)
- 7 Right iliac fossa (RIF)
- 8 Suprapubic area
- 9 Left iliac fossa (LIF)



1. Kocher
2. Midline
3. Muscle splitting (ureter)
4. Pfannenstiel
5. Thoraco-abdominal (oesophagectomy 9th or 10th ICS)



- Paramedian 1.
- McBurney 2.
- Lanz 3.
- Muscle-cutting transverse 4.
- Roof-Top 5.
- McEvedy (femoral hernia) 6.
- Inguinal hernia incision 7.

Fig 2. Incisions.

-ectomy	Cutting something out.		
-gram	A radiological image.		
-pexy	Anchoring of a structure to keep it in position.		
-plasty	Surgical refashioning in order to regain good function/cosmesis.		
-scopy	Procedure with instrumentation for looking into the body.		
-stomy	An artificial union between a conduit and the outside or another conduit.		
-tomy	Cutting something open to the outside world.		
-tripsy	Fragmentation of an object.		
angio-	Tube or vessel	lith-	Stone
appendic-	Appendix	mast-	Breast
chole-	Relating to gall/bile	meso-	Mesentery
colp-	Vagina	nephro-	Kidney
cyst-	Bladder	orchid-	Testicle
-doch-	Ducts	oophor-	Ovary
enter-	Small bowel	phren-	Diaphragm
eschar-	Dead tissue, eg from burn	pyloro-	Pyloric sphincter
gastr-	Stomach	pyel-	Renal pelvis
hepat-	Liver	proct-	Anal canal
hyster-	Uterus	salping-	Fallopian tube
lapar-	Abdomen	splen-	Spleen
abscess	A cavity containing pus. Remember: <i>if there is pus about, let it out.</i>		
cyst	Fluid-filled cavity lined by epi/endothelium.		
fistula	An abnormal connection between two epithelial surfaces. Fistulae often close spontaneously, but will not in the presence of malignant tissue, distal obstruction, foreign bodies, chronic inflammation, and the formation of a muco-cutaneous junction (eg stoma).		
hernia	The protrusion of a viscus/part of a viscus through a defect of the wall of its containing cavity into an abnormal position.		
ileus	Used in this book as a term for adynamic bowel.		
colic	Intermittent pain from over-contraction/obstruction of a hollow viscus.		
sinus	A blind-ending tract, typically lined by epithelial or granulation tissue, which opens to an epithelial surface.		
stent	An artificial tube placed in a biological tube to keep it open.		
stoma	(p584) An artificial union between conduits or a conduit and the outside.		
ulcer	(p662) Interruption in the continuity of an epi/endothelial surface.		
volvulus	(p613) Twisting of a structure around itself. Common GI sites include the sigmoid colon and caecum, and more rarely the stomach.		
epi-	Upon	pan-	Whole
end-	Inside	para-	Alongside
mega-	Enlarged	peri-	Around
		sub-	Beneath
		trans-	Across



Aims ▶ To provide diagnostic and prognostic information. To ensure the patient understands the nature, aims, and expected outcome of surgery. To allay anxiety and pain:

- Ensure that the right patient gets the right surgery. Have the symptoms and signs changed? If so, inform the surgeon.
- Get informed consent (p570).
- Assess/balance risks of anaesthesia, and maximize fitness. Comorbidities? Drugs? Smoker? Optimizing oxygenation **before** major surgery improves outcome.¹
- Check proposed anaesthesia/analgesia with anaesthetist.

Pre-op checks Assess cardiorespiratory system, exercise tolerance, existing illnesses, drugs, and allergies. Is the neck unstable (eg arthritis complicating intubation)? Assess past history of: MI, diabetes, asthma, hypertension, rheumatic fever, epilepsy, jaundice. Assess any specific risks, eg is the patient pregnant? Is the neck/jaw immobile and teeth stable (intubation risk)? Has there been previous anaesthesia? Were there any complications (eg nausea, DVT)? ▶ The World Health Organization 'Surgical Safety Checklist'² should be completed for every patient undergoing a surgical procedure. ▶ Is DVT/PE prophylaxis needed (p580)? ▶ Special tests, eg sickle cell, see BOX 1. ▶ If for 'unilateral' surgery, mark the correct arm/leg/kidney.

Family history May be relevant, eg in malignant hyperpyrexia (p574); dystrophia myotonica (p514); porphyria; cholinesterase problems; sickle-cell disease.

Drugs Any drug/plaster/antiseptic allergies? ▶ Inform the anaesthetist about all drugs even if 'over-the-counter'. ▶ Steroids: see p592; diabetes: see p590.

• **Antibiotics:** *Tetracycline* and *neomycin* may neuromuscular blockade.

• **Anticoagulants:** ▶ Tell the surgeon. Avoid epidural, spinal, and regional blocks. *Aspirin* should probably be continued unless there is a major risk of bleeding. Discuss stopping *clopidogrel* therapy with the cardiologists/neurologists.

• **Anticonvulsants:** Give as usual pre-op. Post-op, give drugs IV (or by NGT) until able to take orally. *Valproate*: give usual dose IV. *Phenytoin*: give IV slowly (<50mg/min, on cardiac monitor). IM *phenytoin* absorption is unreliable.

• **β -blockers:** Continue up to and including the day of surgery as this precludes a labile cardiovascular response.

• **Contraceptive pill:** See *BNF*. Stop 4wks before major/leg surgery; ensure alternative contraception is used. Restart 2wks after surgery, provided patient is mobile.

• **Digoxin:** Continue up to and including morning of surgery. Check for toxicity (ECG; plasma level); do plasma K^+ and Ca^{2+} (*suxamethonium* can $\uparrow K^+$ and lead to ventricular arrhythmias in the fully digitalized).

• **Diuretics:** Beware hypokalaemia, dehydration. Do U&E (and bicarbonate).

• **Eye-drops:** β -blockers get systemically absorbed.

• **HRT:** As with contraceptive pill there may be an increased risk of DVT/PE.

• **Levodopa:** Possible arrhythmias when patient under GA.

• **Lithium:** Get expert help; it may potentiate neuromuscular blockade and cause arrhythmias. See *OHCS* p354.

• **MAOIs:** Get expert help as interactions may cause hypotensive/hypertensive crises.

• **Thyroid medication:** see p593.

• **Tricyclics:** These enhance *adrenaline* (epinephrine) and arrhythmias.

Preparation ▶ Starve patient; NBM $\geq 2h$ pre-op for clear fluids and $\geq 6h$ for solids.³

• Is any bowel or skin preparation needed, or prophylactic antibiotics (p572)?

• Start DVT prophylaxis as indicated, eg graduated compression stockings (not if there is peripheral arterial disease); low molecular weight heparin (LMWH, p344): eg *enoxaparin* 20mg/d sc; start 2h pre-op, increased to 40mg/d in major-risk surgery; or *heparin* 5000u sc 2h pre-op, then every 8-12h sc for 7d or until ambulant.

• Write up the pre-meds (p574); book any pre-, intra-, or post-operative x-rays or frozen sections. Book post-operative physiotherapy.

• If needed, catheterize (p776) and insert a Ryle's tube (p773) before induction. These can reduce organ bulk, making it easier to operate in the abdomen.

1 If within the last 6 months, the perioperative risk of re-infarction (up to 40%) makes most elective surgery too risky. Echo and stress testing (+ exercise ECG or MUGA scan, p755) should be done.



Pre-operative examination and tests—see NICE guidelines⁴

► Careful planning prevents peri-operative death.¹ A good thought exercise is to imagine yourself at the next surgical *Mortality Meeting* and ask “If I were looking back at the pre-op period, knowing that this patient had died, would I still consider that surgery was indicated?” The UK National Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths (NCEPOD) found that ‘too many’ operations are performed on high-risk patients.⁵

It is the anaesthetist’s duty to assess suitability for anaesthesia. The ward doctor assists with a good history and examination, and can also reassure, inform, and get informed written consent (p570; ideally this should be from the surgeon).

Be alert to chronic lung disease, BPT, arrhythmias, and murmurs.

Tests ► Be guided by the history and examination and local/NICE protocols.

- **U&E, FBC, and finger-prick blood glucose in most patients.** If Hb <100g/L tell anaesthetist. Investigate/treat as appropriate. U&E are particularly important if the patient is starved, diabetic, on diuretics, a burns patient, has hepatic or renal disease, has an ileus, or is parenterally fed.
- **Crossmatch:** Blood type is identified and units are allocated to the patient. **Group and save (G&S):** Blood type is identified and held, pending crossmatch (if required). Contact your lab to discuss requirements—this decreases wastage and allows increased efficiency of blood stocks.
- **Specific blood tests:** LFT in jaundice, malignancy, or alcohol abuse. Amylase in acute abdominal pain. Blood glucose if diabetic (p590). Drug levels as appropriate (eg *digoxin*, *lithium*). Clotting studies in liver or renal disease, DIC (p346), massive blood loss, or if on *valproate*, *warfarin*, or *heparin*. HIV, HBSAg in high-risk patients, after counselling. Sickie test in those from Africa, West Indies, or Mediterranean—and if origins are in malarial areas (including most of India). Thyroid function tests in those with thyroid disease.
- **CXR** if known cardiorespiratory disease, pathology or symptoms, possible lung metastases, or >65yrs old. Remember to check the film prior to surgery.
- **ECG** if >55yrs old or poor exercise tolerance, or history of myocardial ischaemia, hypertension, rheumatic fever, or other heart disease.
- **Echocardiogram** may be performed if there is a suspicion of poor LV function.
- **Pulmonary function tests** in known pulmonary disease/obesity.
- **Lateral cervical spine x-ray** (flexion and extension views) if history of rheumatoid arthritis/ankylosing spondylitis/Down’s syndrome, to warn of difficult intubations.
- **MRSA screen:** Screen and decolonize nasal carriers according to local policy (eg nasal mupirocin ointment). Colonization is **not** a contraindication to surgery. Place patients last on the list to minimize transmission to others and cover with appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis, eg *vancomycin* or *teicoplanin*.

Pre-op checklist

- Blood tests (inc. G & S or crossmatch)
 - IV cannula
 - ECG + CXR
 - Drug chart: regular medications analgesia/anti-emetic antibiotics LMWH/heparin
 - Compression stockings
 - Consent
 - Marked site/side
 - Anaesthetist informed
 - Theatres informed
 - Infection risk? (eg MRSA/HIV/HBV/HCV)
 - NBM since when?
- ...not all will be required. WHO Surgical Safety checklists ensure pre-op preparation, intraoperative monitoring and post-operative review²

American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) classification

- Class I** Normally healthy patient
- Class II** Mild systemic disease
- Class III** Severe systemic disease that limits activity but is not incapacitating
- Class IV** Incapacitating systemic disease which poses a constant threat to life
- Class V** Moribund: not expected to survive 24h even with operation

You will see a space for an ASA number on most anaesthetic charts. It is a health index at the time of surgery. The suffix E is used in emergencies, eg ASA 2E.

1 Risk of mortality from elective surgery is currently about 1:100,000 to 1:150,000.



In which of the following situations would you seek 'informed written consent' from a patient? **1** Feeling for a pulse. **2** Taking blood. **3** Inserting a central line. **4** Removing a section of small bowel during a laparotomy for division of adhesions. **5** Orchiectomy after a failed operation for testicular torsion.

English law states that **any** intervention or treatment needs consent—ie all of the above—yet, for different reasons, we know that, for some, informed formal consent is not regularly sought! In fact, **written** consent itself is not required by law, but it does constitute 'good medical practice' in the best interests of the patient and practitioner. Sometimes actions and words can imply valid consent, eg by simply entering into conversation or holding out an arm. In these situations your actions and their consequences are understood by the patient as a product of their knowledge, previous interactions with doctors and learning through experience.¹ However, if the consequences are not clear and the patient has capacity to give consent (see below), you should seek informed written consent as a record of your conversation.⁶

For consent to be valid

- It can be given any time before the intervention/treatment is initiated. Earlier is better as this will give the patient time to think about the risks, benefits and alternatives—he may even bring forward questions on issues that you had not considered relevant. Think of consent as an ongoing process throughout the patient's time with you, not just the moment of signing the form.
- The proposed treatment or test must be clearly understood by the patient, taking into account the benefits, risks (including complication rates if known), additional procedures, alternative courses of action and their consequences.
- It must be given **voluntarily**. This can be difficult to evaluate—eg when live organ donation is being considered—see BOX for other difficult situations.
- The doctor who is providing treatment or undertaking the test needs to ensure that the patient has given valid consent. The act of seeking consent is ultimately the responsibility of the doctor looking after the patient, though the task may be delegated to another health professional, as long as they are suitably trained and qualified. Sometimes you may have to be certified to get consent.
- The patient must have the **capacity** (can understand, retain, and weigh the necessary information) to give consent. Assessment of capacity must be time- and decision-specific.

When taking consent

- Think about whether you are the right person to be obtaining consent.
- Use words the patient understands and avoid jargon and abbreviations.
- Ensure that he believes your facts and can retain 'pros' and 'cons' long enough to inform his decision. Fact sheets/diagrams for individual operations help.
- Make sure his choice is free from pressure from others, and explain that after he has signed the form he is free to choose not to have the proposed treatment (ie withdraw consent) at any time. Some patients may view the consent form as a contract from which they cannot *renege*.
- If the patient is illiterate, a witnessed mark does endorse valid consent. Similarly, if the patient is willing but physically unable to sign the consent form, then an entry into the medical notes stating so is valid.
- Remember to discuss further procedures that may become necessary during the proposed treatment. This avoids waking up to a nasty surprise (eg a missing testicle as in scenario 5 above).
- If you suspect the patient is not capable of giving consent then a formal assessment needs to be documented in the medical notes.

Consent is complex, but remember that it exists for the benefit of the patient and the doctor, giving you an opportunity to revisit expectations and involve the patient in his own care.

1 In agreeing to a blood test, the patient understands that it may be an uncomfortable experience, but he also knows that the results of the test may help you in making a diagnosis and hopefully restore him to full health. But grey areas exist everywhere: when he extends his arm towards you, does he know that you could accidentally injure an artery or nerve, with all the complications that follow—does he need to know...?



Special circumstances for consent...and who to ask

There are some areas of treatment or investigation for which it may be advisable to seek specialist advice if it is not part of your regular practice:

- Photography of a patient.
- Innovative or novel treatment.
- Living organ donation.
- Storage, use, or removal of human tissue (for any length of time), as regulated under the Human Tissue Act 2004.
- The storage, loss, or use of gametes, as regulated under the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 1990.
- The use of patient records or tissue in research or teaching.
- In the presence of an advanced directive or living will expressly refusing a particular treatment, investigation or action.
- Consent if <16yrs (consent form 3 in NHS).⁷ In the UK, those >16yrs can give valid consent. Those <16yrs can give consent for a medical decision provided they understand what it involves—the concept of *Gillick* competence.⁸ It is still good practice to involve the parents in the decision, if the child is willing. If <18yrs and refusing life-saving surgery, talk to the parents and your senior; the law is unclear. You may need to contact the duty judge in the High Court.
- Consent in the incapacitated (NHS consent form 4).⁷ No-one (parents, relatives, or even members of a healthcare team) is able to give consent on behalf of an adult in England, and the High Court may be required to give a ruling on the matters of lawfulness of a proposed procedure. Proceeding in a patient's best interest is decided by the clinician overseeing their care, although it is always good practice to involve family in the proposed course of treatment.

Who to ask if you are unsure?

- Your team's senior/consultant
- Your employing organization
- Legal defence organization
- National medical association
- Local research ethics committee

The right to refuse treatment

Theirs not to make reply,

Theirs not to reason why,

Theirs but to do and die. Alfred, Lord Tennyson from *The Charge of the Light Brigade*, 1854

The rights of a patient are something of an antithesis to this military macabre of Tennyson, and it is our responsibility to respect the legal and ethical rights of those we treat. We do this not only for the sake of the individual, but also for the sake of an enduring trust between the patient and doctor, remembering that is the patient's right to refuse treatment (if a fully competent adult) even when this may result in death of the patient, or even the death of an unborn child, whatever the stage of pregnancy. The only exception is in circumstances outlined by the Mental Health Act 2007 (amends Mental Health Act 1983 and Mental Capacity Act 2005).

5 Principles of capacity:

- 1 Assumption of capacity (unless it is established a person lacks capacity).
- 2 A person is not to be treated as unable to make a decision unless all practicable steps to help him to do so have been taken without success.
- 3 A person is not to be treated as unable to make a decision merely because he makes an unwise decision.
- 4 An act done, or decision made for or on behalf of a person who lacks capacity must be done, or made, in his best interests.
- 5 Before the act is done or the decision is made, regard must be paid as to whether the purpose for which it is needed can be effectively achieved in a way that is less restrictive of the person's rights and freedom of action.



Prophylactic antibiotics are given to counter the risk of wound infection (see TABLE), which occurs in ~20% of elective GI surgery (up to 60% in emergency surgery). Antibiotics are also given if infection elsewhere, although unlikely, would have severe consequences (eg when prostheses are involved). A single dose given before surgery has been shown to be just as good as more prolonged regimens in biliary and colorectal surgery.^{9,10} Additional doses may be given if high-risk/prolonged procedures, or if major blood loss. ► Wound infections are not necessarily trivial since sepsis may lead to haemorrhage, wound dehiscence, and initiate a fatal chain of events, so take measures to minimize the risk of wound infection:

- Time administration correctly (eg IV prophylaxis should be given 30min prior to surgery to maximize skin concentration; metronidazole PR is given 2h before).
- Use antibiotics which will kill anaerobes and coliforms.
- Consider use of peri-operative supplemental oxygen. This is a practical method of reducing the incidence of surgical wound infections.¹¹
- Practise strictly sterile surgical technique. (Ask for a hand with scrubbing up if you are not sure—theatre staff will be more than pleased to help!)

Antibiotic regimens Check for local preferences. BNF examples include:¹²

- **Appendicectomy; colorectal resections and open biliary surgery:** A single dose of IV cefuroxime 1.5g + metronidazole 500mg or gentamicin 1.5mg/kg + metronidazole 500mg or co-amoxiclav 1.2g alone.
- **Oesophageal or gastric surgery:** 1 dose of IV gentamicin or cefuroxime or co-amoxiclav (doses above).
- **Vascular surgery:** 1 dose of IV cefuroxime or flucloxacillin 1-2g + gentamicin. Add metronidazole if risk of anaerobes (eg amputations, gangrene or diabetes).
- **MRSA:** For high-risk patients add teicoplanin or vancomycin to the above.

Bowel preparation in colorectal surgery

Vigorous pre-operative bowel cleansing had been thought to reduce the risk of anastomotic leakage and septic complications, but meta-analyses have shown no benefit to patients from mechanical bowel cleansing before open colonic surgery—its omission is now widely recommended.^{13,14} There is also no evidence for the use of enemas prior to rectal surgery. Mechanical bowel preparation may be used selectively in rectal surgery, but an awareness of the associated complications is essential:

- Liquefying bowel contents which are spilled during surgery
- Electrolyte loss leading to hyponatraemia and seizures¹⁴
- A higher rate of post-operative anastomotic leakage¹⁵
- Perforation
- Dehydration

► If in doubt, check with the surgeon to see if preparation is required.

Bowel preparation prior to colonoscopy does provide obvious benefit for visualizing the lumen.¹⁶ Check your hospital's preferred regimen. **Example:** 1 sachet of *Picolax*® (10mg sodium picosulfate + magnesium citrate) at 8AM; another 6-8h later on the day before endoscopy. SE: dehydration and electrolyte disturbances.

Sutures

Sutures (stitches) are central to the art of surgery. In their broadest sense they are absorbable or non-absorbable, synthetic or natural, and their structure may be divided into monofilament, twisted, or braided. See TABLE (BOX). Monofilament sutures are quite slippery but minimize infection and produce less reaction. Braided sutures have plaited strands and provide secure knots, but they may allow infection to occur between their strands. Twisted sutures have 2 twisted strands and similar qualities to braided sutures. 3-0 or 4-0 (smaller) are the best sizes for skin closure.

Timing of suture removal depends on site and the general health of the patient. Face and neck sutures may be removed after 5d (earlier in children), scalp and back of neck after 5d, abdominal incisions and proximal limbs (including clips) after ~10d, distal extremities after 14d. In patients with poor wound healing, eg steroids, malignancy, infection, cachexia (p29), the elderly, or smokers, sutures may need ~14d.



Classification of surgical procedures and wound infection risk

Category	Description	Infection risk
Clean	Incising uninfected skin without opening a viscus	<2%
Clean-contaminated	Intra-operative breach of a viscus (but not colon)	8–10%
Contaminated	Breach of a viscus + spillage or opening of colon	12–20%
Dirty	The site is already contaminated with pus or faeces, or from exogenous contagion, eg trauma	25%

Table after *MRCs Core Modules: Essential Revision Notes*, S. Andrews, Pastest

Surgical drains in the post-operative period

(OHClinSurg p80)

The decision when to insert and remove drains may seem to be one of the great surgical enigmas—but there are basically 3 types to get a grip of:

- 1 Most are inserted to drain the area of surgery and are often put under suction or -ve pressure (Redivac® uses a 'high vacuum'). These are removed when they stop draining. They protect against collection, haematoma and seroma formation (in breast surgery this can cause overlying skin necrosis).
- 2 The second type of drain is used to protect sites where leakage may occur in the post-operative period, such as bowel anastomoses. These form a tract and are removed after about 1 week.
- 3 The third type (eg Bellovac®) collects red blood cells from the site of the operation, which can then be autotransfused within 6h, protecting from the hazards of allotransfusion—it is used commonly in orthopaedics.

'Shortening a drain' means withdrawing it (eg by 2cm/d) to allow the tract to seal, bit by bit. Evidence suggests that certain types of drain are not effective and may even lead to more complications, such as when used to protect colorectal anastomoses.¹⁷ ► Check the individual surgeon's wishes before altering a drain.

Some commonly encountered suture materials

(OHClinSurg p84)

The perfect suture material is monofilament, strong, easy to handle, holds knots well, has predictable absorption and causes minimal tissue reaction. Unfortunately no single suture fits the bill for every occasion, and so suture selection (including size) depends on the job in hand:

Absorbable

Name	Material	Construction	Use
Monocryl®	Poliglecaprone	Monofilament	Subcuticular skin closure
PDS®	Polydioxanone	Monofilament	Closing abdominal wall
Vicryl®	Polyglactin	Braided multifilament	Tying pedicles; bowel anastomosis; subcutaneous closure
Dexon®	Polyglycolic acid	Braided multifilament	Very similar to vicryl®

Non-absorbable

Name	Material	Construction	Use
Ethilon®	Polyamide	Monofilament	Closing skin wounds
Prolene®	Polypropylene	Monofilament	Arterial anastomosis
Mersilk®N	Silk	Braided multifilament	Securing drains
Metal	Eg steel	Clips or monofilament	Skin wound/sternotomy closure

N = natural; other natural materials (eg cotton and catgut) are rarely used these days.



Before anaesthesia, explain to the patient what will happen and where they will wake up, otherwise the recovery room or ITU will be frightening. Explain that they may feel ill on waking. The premedication aims to allay anxiety and to make the anaesthesia itself easier to conduct (see BOX 1). Typical regimens might include:

- **Anxiolytics:** Benzodiazepines, eg *lorazepam* 2mg PO; *temazepam* 10–20mg PO. In children, use oral premeds as first choice eg *midazolam* 0.5mg/kg (tastes bitter so often put in paracetamol suspension).
- **Analgesics:** See p576. Pre-emptive analgesia is not often used and effects are hard to determine. The aim is to dampen pain signals before they arrive. In children or anxious adults, local anaesthetic cream may be used on a few sites before inserting an IVI (▶ the anaesthetist may prefer to site the cannula themselves!)
- **Anti-emetics:** Post-operative nausea and vomiting is experienced by ~25% of all patients. 5HT₃ antagonists (eg *ondansetron* 4mg IV/IM) are the most effective agents; others, eg *metoclopramide* 10mg/8h IV/IM/PO, are also used—see p241.
- **Antacids:** *Ranitidine* 50mg IV or *omeprazole* 40mg PO/IV in patients at particular risk of aspiration.
- **Antisialagogues:** *Glycopyrronium* (200–400µg in adults, 4–8µg/kg in children; given IV/IM 30–60min before induction) is sometimes used to decrease secretions that may cause respiratory obstruction in smaller airways.
- **Antibiotics:** See p572.

Give oral premedication 2h before surgery (1h if IM route used).

Side-effects of anaesthetic agents

- **Hyoscine, atropine:** Anticholinergic ∴ tachycardia, urinary retention, glaucoma, sedation (especially in the elderly).
- **Opioids:** Respiratory depression, cough reflex↓, nausea and vomiting, constipation.
- **Thiopental:** (induction agent) laryngospasm.
- **Propofol:** (induction agent) respiratory depression, cardiac depression, pain on injection.
- **Volatile agents, eg isoflurane:** Nausea and vomiting, cardiac depression, respiratory depression, vasodilatation, hepatotoxicity (see *BNF*).

The complications of anaesthesia are due to loss of:

- **Pain sensation:** Urinary retention, diathermy burns, pressure necrosis, local nerve injuries (eg radial nerve palsy from arm hanging over the table edge).
- **Consciousness:** Cannot communicate 'wrong leg/kidney'. NB: in some patients (eg 0.15%) **retained** consciousness is the problem. Awareness under GA sounds like a contradiction of terms, but remember that anaesthesia is a process rather than an event. Such awareness can lead to ill-defined, delayed neuroses and post-traumatic stress disorder (*OHCS* p347).¹⁸
- **Muscle power:** Corneal abrasion (∴ tape the eyes closed), no respiration, no cough (leads to pneumonia and atelectasis—partial lung collapse causing shunting ± impaired gas exchange: it starts minutes after induction, and may be related to the use of 100% O₂, supine position, surgery, age and to loss of power).

Local/regional anaesthesia If unfit/unwilling to undergo general anaesthesia, local nerve blocks (eg brachial plexus) or spinal blocks (contraindication: anticoagulation, local infection) using long-acting local anaesthetics such as *bupivacaine* may be indicated. See TABLE for doses and toxicity effects.

Drugs complicating anaesthesia ▶ Inform anaesthetist. See p568 for lists of specific drugs, and actions to take.

Malignant hyperpyrexia This is a rare complication, precipitated by any volatile agent, eg *halothane*, or *suxamethonium*. It exhibits autosomal dominant inheritance. There is a rapid rise in temperature (>1°C every 30min); masseter spasm may be an early sign. Complications include hypoxaemia, hypercarbia, hyperkalaemia, metabolic acidosis, and arrhythmias. ▶ Get expert help immediately. Prompt treatment with *dantrolene*¹ (skeletal muscle relaxant), active cooling and ITU care can reduce mortality significantly.

1 Give 1mg/kg every 5min IV—up to 10mg/kg in total (*OHCS* p628).



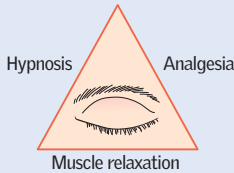


Fig 1. ► The general principles of anaesthesia centre on the triad of hypnosis, analgesia, and muscle relaxation.

The conduct of anaesthesia typically involves:

- **Induction:** Either intravenous (eg *propofol* 1.5–2.5mg/kg IV at a rate of 20–40mg every 10s; *thiopental* is an alternative) or, if airway obstruction or difficult IV access, gaseous (eg *sevoflurane* or *nitrous oxide*, mixed in O₂).
- **Airway control:** Either using a facemask, an oropharyngeal (Guedel) airway or by intubation. The latter usually requires muscle relaxation with a depolarizing/non-depolarizing neuromuscular blocker (*OHCS* p622).
- **Maintenance of anaesthesia:** Either a volatile agent added to N₂O/O₂ mixture, or high-dose opiates with mechanical ventilation, or IV infusion anaesthesia (eg *propofol* 4–12mg/kg/h IVI).
- **Recovery:** Change inspired gases to 100% oxygen only, then discontinue any anaesthetic infusions and reverse muscle paralysis. Extubate once spontaneously breathing, place patient in recovery position and give oxygen by facemask.
- For further details, see the *Anaesthesia* chapter in *OHCS* (p612).

Local anaesthetic toxicity and maximum doses

After a few minutes' conversation with an anaesthetist at work, it becomes apparent that they are masters of the drug dose by weight! It is important to remember the maximum doses for local anaesthetics, not least because we use them so frequently, but because the effects of overdose can be lethal.

Local anaesthetic toxicity starts with peri-oral tingling and paraesthesiae, progressing to drowsiness, seizures, coma and cardiorespiratory arrest. If suspected (the patient feels 'funny' and develops early signs) then stop administration immediately and commence ABC resuscitation as required.

Handy to remember (though it can be worked out with a pen, paper and SI units) is that a 1% concentration is equivalent to 10mg/mL. Local anaesthetics are also basic, and so do not work well in acidic environments, eg abscesses.

% conc ⁿ	Lidocaine conc ⁿ (mg/mL)	Approx. allowable volume (mL/kg)	Approx. allowable volume for 70kg adult (mL)
0.25%	2.5	1.12	≤80
0.5%	5	0.56	≤40
1%	10	0.28	≤20
2%	20	0.14	≤10



Humans are the most exquisite devices ever made for experiencing pain: the richer our inner lives, the greater the varieties of pain there are for us to feel, and the more resources we have for dealing with pain. If we can connect with patients' inner lives we may make a real difference. **Never forget how painful pain is**, nor how fear magnifies pain. Try not to let these sensations, so often interposed between your patient and his recovery, be invisible to you as he bravely puts up with them.

Guidelines for success (see also analgesic ladder, p538–539) Review and chart each pain carefully and individually.

- Identify and treat the underlying pathology wherever possible.
- Give **regular** doses rather than on an 'as-required' basis.
- Choose the best route: PO, PR, IM, epidural, SC, inhalation, or IV.
- Explanation and reassurance contribute greatly to analgesia.
- Allow the patient to be in charge. This promotes wellbeing, and does not lead to overuse. Patient-controlled continuous IV morphine delivery systems are useful.
- Liaise with the Acute Pain Service, if possible.

Non-narcotic (simple) analgesia *Paracetamol* 0.5–1.0g/4h PO (up to 4g daily; 15mg/kg/4h IV over 15min in children <50kg; up to 60mg/kg/d). Caution in liver impairment. NSAIDs, eg *ibuprofen* 400mg/8h PO (see BNFc for dosing in children) or *diclofenac* 50mg/8h PO, or 100mg PR, or 75mg IM stat; these are good for musculoskeletal pain and renal or biliary colic. CI: peptic ulcer, clotting disorders, anticoagulants. Cautions: asthma, renal or hepatic impairment, heart failure, IHD, pregnancy and the elderly. Aspirin is contraindicated in children due to the risk of Reye's syndrome (OHCS p652).

Opioid drugs for severe pain *Morphine* (eg 10–15mg/2–4h IV/IM) or *diamorphine* (5–10mg/2–4h PO, SC, or slow IV, but you may need much more) are best. NB: these are 'controlled' drugs. For palliative care, see p538. **Side-effects of opioids:** These include nausea (so give with an anti-emetic, p241), respiratory depression, constipation, cough suppression, urinary retention, BP↓, and sedation (do not use in hepatic failure or head injury). Dependency is rarely a problem. *Naloxone* (eg 100–200µg IV, followed by 100µg increments, eg every 2min until responsive) may be needed to reverse the effects of excess opioids (p854).

How effective are standard analgesics? Pain is subjective, but its measurement by patients is surprisingly consistent and reproducible. The TABLE below gives 'number needed to treat' (NNT, p669), ie the number of patients who need to receive the drug for one to achieve at least 50% pain relief over 4–6h (the range is 95% confidence intervals).

Codeine ^{60mg}	11–48	Paracetamol ^{1000mg}	3–4
Tramadol ^{50mg}	6–13	Paracetamol ^{1000mg} /codeine ^{60mg}	2–3
Aspirin ^{650mg} /codeine ^{60mg}	4–7	Diclofenac ^{50mg} or ibuprofen ^{400mg}	2–3

Epidural analgesia Opioids and anaesthetics are given into the epidural space by infusion or as boluses. Ask the advice of the Pain Service. SEs are thought to be less, as the drug is more localized: watch for respiratory depression and local anaesthetic-induced autonomic blockade (BP↓).

Adjuvant treatments Eg radiotherapy for bone cancer pain; anticonvulsants, antidepressants, *gabapentin* or steroids for neuropathic pain, antispasmodics, eg *hyoscine butylbromide*¹ (Buscopan® 10–20mg/8h PO/IM/IV) for intestinal, renal tract colic. If brief pain relief is needed (eg for changing dressings or exploring wounds), try inhaled *nitrous oxide* (with 50% O₂—as Entonox®) with an 'on-demand' valve. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), local heat, local or regional anaesthesia, and neurosurgical procedures (eg excision of neuroma) may be tried but can prove disappointing. Treat conditions that exacerbate pain (eg constipation, depression, anxiety).

¹ Not to be confused with *hyoscine hydrobromide*; used for drying secretions and in motion sickness.

Why is controlling post-operative pain so important?

- **Psychological reasons:** Pain control is a humanitarian undertaking.
- **Social reasons:** Pain relief makes surgery less feared.
- **Biological reasons:** There is evidence for the following sequence: pain → autonomic activation → increased adrenergic activity → arteriolar vasoconstriction → reduced wound perfusion → decreased tissue oxygenation → delayed wound healing → serious or mortal consequences.



Pyrexia Mild pyrexia in the 1st 48h is often from atelectasis (needs prompt physio, not antibiotics), tissue damage/necrosis or even from blood transfusions, but still have a low threshold for infection screen. See MINIBOX for where to look for infection—also check the legs for DVT (causes ↑T). Send blood for FBC, U&E, CRP, and cultures (±LFT). Dipstick the urine. Consider MSU, CXR, and abdominal ultrasound/CT depending on clinical findings.

Confusion may manifest as agitation, disorientation, and attempts to leave hospital, especially at night. Gently reassure the patient in well-lit surroundings. See p488 for a full work-up. Common causes are:

- Hypoxia (pneumonia, atelectasis, LVF, PE)
- Drugs (opiates, sedatives, and many others)
- Urinary retention
- MI or stroke
- Infection (see above)
- Alcohol withdrawal (p282)
- Liver/renal failure

Occasionally, sedation is necessary to examine the patient; consider *lorazepam* 1mg PO/IM (antidote: *flumazenil*) or *haloperidol* 0.5–2mg IM. Reassure relatives that post-op confusion is common (seen in up to 40%) and reversible.

Dyspnoea or hypoxia Any previous lung disease? Sit patient up and give O₂, monitor peripheral O₂ sats by pulse oximetry (p156). Examine for evidence of: •Pneumonia, pulmonary collapse or aspiration •LVF (MI; fluid overload) •Pulmonary embolism (p182) •Pneumothorax (p182; due to CVP line, intercostal block or mechanical ventilation). **Tests** FBC; ABG; CXR; ECG. Manage according to findings.

BP↓ If severe, tilt bed head-down and give O₂. Check pulse and BP yourself; compare it with pre-op values. Post-op ↓BP is often from hypovolaemia resulting from inadequate fluid input, so check fluid chart and replace losses. Monitor urine output (may need catheterization). A CVP line can help monitor fluid resuscitation (normal is 0–5cm H₂O relative to sternal angle). Hypovolaemia may also be caused by haemorrhage so review wounds and abdomen. If unstable, return to theatre for haemostasis. Beware cardiogenic and neurogenic causes and look for evidence of MI or PE. Consider sepsis and anaphylaxis. **Management:** p804.

BP↑ may be from pain, urinary retention, idiopathic hypertension (eg missed medication) or inotropic drugs. Oral cardiac medications (including antihypertensives) should be continued throughout the perioperative period even if NBM. Treat the cause, consider increasing the regular medication, or if not absorbing orally try 50mg *labetalol* IV over 1min (see p134).

Urine output↓ (oliguria) Aim for output of >30mL/h in adults (or >0.5mL/kg/h). Anuria often means a blocked or malsited catheter (see p777) rather than AKI and never, we hope, an impending lawsuit from both ureters tied. Flush or replace catheter. **Oliguria** is usually due to too little replacement of lost fluid. Treat by increasing fluid input. ▶Acute renal failure may follow shock, drugs, transfusion, pancreatitis or trauma (see p292 for pre-renal/intrinsic/post-renal causes and management of AKI).

- Review fluid chart and examine for signs of volume depletion.
- Urinary retention is also common, so examine for a palpable bladder.
- Establish normovolaemia (a CVP line may help here); you may need 1L/h IVI for 2–3h. A 'fluid challenge' of 250–500mL over 30min may also help.
- Catheterize bladder (for accurate monitoring)—see p776; check U&E.
- If intrinsic renal failure is suspected, stop any nephrotoxic drugs (eg NSAIDs, ACE-i) and refer to a nephrologist early.

Nausea/vomiting Any mechanical obstruction, ileus, or emetic drugs (opiates, digoxin, anaesthetics)? Consider AXR, NGT, and an anti-emetic (▶not *metoclopramide* because of its prokinetic property). See p241 for choice of anti-emetics.

↓Na⁺ What was the pre-op level? Over-administration of IV fluids may exacerbate the situation. Correct slowly (p686). SIADH (p687) can be precipitated by perioperative pain, nausea, and opioids as well as chest infection.

Looking for infection:

Check for signs of:

- Peritonism
- Chest infection
- UTI
- Wound infection
- Cannula site erythema
- Meningism
- Endocarditis



Post-operative bleeding

Primary haemorrhage: Continuous bleeding, starting during surgery. Replace blood loss. If severe, return to theatre for adequate haemostasis. Treat shock vigorously (p804).

Reactive haemorrhage: Haemostasis appears secure until BP rises and bleeding starts. Replace blood and re-explore wound.

Secondary haemorrhage (caused by infection) occurs 1-2 weeks post-op.

Talking about post-op complications...

When asked to give your thoughts on the complications of an operation—maybe with an examiner or a patient—a good starting point is to divide them up accordingly (and for each of the following stratify as immediate, early and late):

- **From the anaesthetic:** (p574) eg respiratory depression from induction agents.
- **From surgery in general:** (see p578 and BOX1) eg wound infection, haemorrhage, neurovascular damage, DVT/PE.
- **From the specific procedure:** eg saphenous nerve damage in stripping of the long varicose vein.

Tailor the discussion towards the individual who, eg if an arteriopath, may have a significant risk of cardiac ischaemia during hypotensive episodes whilst under the anaesthetic. For some other post-op complications, see:

- Pain (p576) • DVT (p580 and **figs 1-4**) • Pulmonary embolus (p182; massive, p828)
- Wound dehiscence (p582) • Complications in post-gastric surgery (p624)
- Other complications of specific operations (p582).

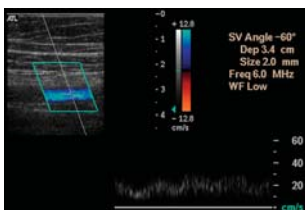


Fig 1. A normal duplex ultrasound (sagittal view) of the superficial femoral vein with a normal Doppler trace. Compression ultrasound (**fig 2**) is the best image in suspected DVT.

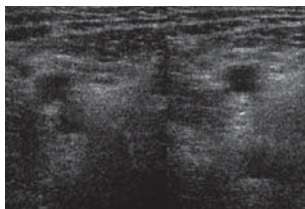


Fig 2. Transverse ultrasound of the superficial femoral vein and artery with (right) and without (left) compression. Collapse of the vein (deeper to the artery) on compression means absence of thrombus.

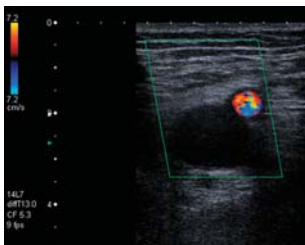


Fig 3. Ultrasound showing evidence of an acute thrombus within a dilated superficial femoral vein. This will not always show an intraluminal echo (compare with **fig 4**) and so confirm its presence by lack of compression of the vein with the ultrasound probe.

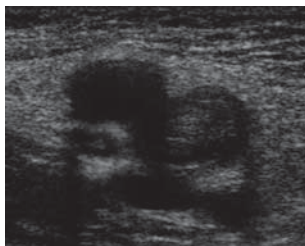


Fig 4. Ultrasound showing a transverse view of the femoral artery and vein. Here, the lumen of the femoral vein (deeper and medial to the artery) is occluded by thrombus, giving a hyper-echoic signal compared to the arterial lumen.

Figs 1-4 courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.



DVTs occur in 25-50% of surgical patients, and many non-surgical patients. All hospital inpatients should be assessed for DVT/PE risk and offered prophylaxis if appropriate (according to local guidelines).¹⁹ 65% of below-knee DVTs are asymptomatic; these rarely embolize to the lung.

Risk factors Age, pregnancy, synthetic oestrogen, trauma, surgery (especially pelvic/orthopaedic), past DVT, cancer, obesity, immobility, thrombophilia (p368).

Signs •Calf warmth/tenderness/swelling/erythema •Mild fever •Pitting oedema.

ΔΔ: Cellulitis; ruptured Baker's cyst. Both may coexist with a DVT.

Tests *D-dimer* is sensitive but not specific for DVT (also ↑ in infection, pregnancy, malignancy, and post-op).²⁰ A -ve result, combined with a low pretest clinical probability score (see BOX 1), is sufficient to exclude DVT.²¹ If D-dimer ↑, or the patient has a high/intermediate pretest clinical probability score, do *ultrasound* (fig 3, p579).²² If this is -ve, a repeat USS may be performed at 1wk to catch early but propagating DVTs. Think of a DVT as a symptom that needs to be investigated: Do *thrombophilia tests* (p368) before commencing anticoagulant therapy if there are no predisposing factors, in recurrent DVT, or if there is a family history of DVT. Look for *underlying malignancy*: Urine dip; FBC, LFT, Ca²⁺; CXR ± CT abdomen/pelvis (& mammography in ♀) if >40yrs.²³

Prevention •Stop the Pill 4wks pre-op. •Mobilize early. •Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH, eg *enoxaparin* 20mg/24h sc, ↑ to 40mg for high-risk patients, p369, starting 12h pre-op). •Graduated compression stockings ('thromboembolic deterrent (TED) stockings'; CI: ischaemia) and intermittent pneumatic compression devices reduce DVT risk by ⅔^{ds} in surgical patients.²⁴ •*Fondaparinux* (a factor Xa inhibitor) reduces risk of DVT over LMWH without increasing the risk of bleeding.²⁵

Treatment LMWH (eg *enoxaparin* 1.5mg/kg/24h sc) or *fondaparinux*. LMWH is superior to *unfractionated heparin* (which may be needed in renal failure or if risk of bleeding; dose guided by APTT, p344). Cancer patients should receive LMWH for 6 months (then review).²³ In others, start *warfarin* simultaneously with LMWH (warfarin is prothrombotic for the first 48h). Stop heparin when INR is 2-3; treat for 3 months if post-op (6 months if no cause is found; lifelong in recurrent DVT or thrombophilia). *Inferior vena caval filters* may be used in active bleeding, or when anticoagulants fail, to minimize risk of pulmonary embolus. *Post-phlebotic change* can be seen in 10-30%. Graduated compression stockings help prevent long-term complications of DVT (pain, swelling and skin changes).²⁶ Thrombolytic therapy (to reduce damage to venous valves) may reduce complications but risks major bleeding.²⁷

Swollen legs

See also p29; treatment—see BOX 2

Bilateral oedema implies systemic disease with ↑venous pressure (eg right heart failure) or ↑intravascular oncotic pressure (any cause of ↓albumin, so test the urine for protein). It is **dependent** (distributed by gravity), which is why legs are affected early, but severe oedema extends above the legs. In the bed-bound, fluid moves to the new dependent area, causing a sacral pad. The exception is the local increase in venous pressure occurring in IVC obstruction: the swelling neither extends above the legs nor redistributes. **Causes:** •Right heart failure (p128); •Albumin ↓ (p700, eg renal or liver failure); •Venous insufficiency: acute, eg prolonged sitting, or chronic, with haemosiderin-pigmented, itchy, eczematous skin ± ulcers; •Vasodilators, eg *nifedipine*, *amlodipine*. •Pelvic mass (p57, p606); •Pregnancy—if BPT + proteinuria, diagnose pre-eclampsia (OHCS p48): find an obstetrician urgently. In all the above, both legs need not be affected to the same extent.

Unilateral oedema: Pain ± redness implies DVT or inflammation, eg cellulitis or insect bites (any blisters?). Bone or muscle may be to blame, eg tumours; necrotizing fasciitis (p662); trauma (check for sensation, pulses and severe pain esp. on passive movement: ►a **compartment syndrome** with ischaemic necrosis needs prompt fasciotomy). Impaired mobility suggests trauma, arthritis, or a Baker's cyst (p708). **Non-pitting oedema** is oedema you cannot indent: see p29.



Pretest clinical probability scoring for DVT: the Wells score²⁸

In patients with symptoms in both legs, the more symptomatic leg is used.

Clinical features	Score
Active cancer (treatment within last 6 months or palliative)	1 point
Paralysis, paresis, or recent plaster immobilization of leg	1 point
Recently bedridden for >3d or major surgery in last 12wks	1 point
Local tenderness along distribution of deep venous system	1 point
Entire leg swollen	1 point
Calf swelling >3cm compared with asymptomatic leg (measured 10cm below tibial tuberosity)	1 point
Pitting oedema (greater in the symptomatic leg)	1 point
Collateral superficial veins (non-varicose)	1 point
Previously documented DVT	1 point
Alternative diagnosis at least as likely as DVT	-2 points

Wells score: ≤ 1 point = DVT unlikely: Perform D-dimer. If negative, DVT excluded. If positive, proceed to USS (if USS negative, DVT excluded; if positive, treat as DVT).

≥ 2 points = DVT likely: Do D-dimer and USS. If both negative, DVT excluded. If USS positive, treat as DVT. If D-dimer positive and USS negative, repeat USS in 1 week.

Reproduced from CMAJ 2006, Scarvelis D, Wells PS: Diagnosis and treatment of deep-vein thrombosis, Oct 24;175(9):1087-92. Vol 350, used with permission.

9 questions to ask those with swollen legs

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Is it both legs? | 2 Is she pregnant? | 3 Is she mobile? |
| 4 Any trauma? | 5 Any pitting (p29)? | 6 Past diseases/on drugs? |
| 7 Any pain? | 8 Any skin changes? | 9 Any oedema elsewhere? |

Tests ▶ Look for proteinuria (+hypoalbuminaemia (≈nephrotic syndrome)). Is there CCF (echocardiogram)?

Treatment of leg oedema Treat the cause. Giving diuretics to everyone is not an answer. Ameliorate dependent oedema by elevating the legs (ankles higher than hips—do not just use footstools); raise the foot of the bed. Graduated support stockings may help (CI: ischaemia).²⁹

Air travel and DVT

In 1954, Homans reported an association between air travel and venous thromboembolism. Factors such as dehydration, immobilization, decreased oxygen tension, and prolonged pressure on the popliteal veins resulting from long periods in aircraft seats have all been suggested to be contributory factors. While the evidence linking air travel to an increased risk of DVT is still largely circumstantial, the following facts may help answer questions from your patients, family, and friends:

- The risk of developing a DVT from a long-distance flight has been estimated at 1 in 10,000 to 1 in 40,000 for the general population.
- The incidence of DVT in **high-risk** groups has been shown to be 4-6% for flights >10h. Travellers with ≥ 1 risk factor should consider compression stockings and/or a single dose of prophylactic LMWH for flights >6h.³⁰
- There is **trisk** of pulmonary embolus associated with long-distance air travel.³¹
- Compression stockings may decrease the risk of DVT, though they may also cause superficial thrombophlebitis.^{28,1}
- There is no evidence to support the use of prophylactic *aspirin*.³²
- Measures to minimize risk of DVT include leg exercises, increased water intake, and refraining from alcohol or caffeine during the flight.



Laparotomy In the elderly, or the malnourished, the wound may break down from a few days to a few weeks post-op, eg if infection or haematoma is present, or this is major surgery in a patient already compromised, eg by cancer, or this is a 2nd laparotomy. The warning sign of wound dehiscence (incidence $\approx 3.5\%$) is a pink serous discharge. Always assume that the defect involves the whole of the wound. Serious wound dehiscence may lead to a 'burst abdomen' with evisceration of bowel (mortality 15–30%). If you are on the ward when this happens, put the guts back into the abdomen, place a sterile dressing over the wound, give IV antibiotics (eg cefuroxime + metronidazole; see local guidelines) and call your senior. Allay anxiety, give parenteral pain control, set up an IVI, and return patient to theatre. **Incisional hernia** is a common problem (20%), repairable by mesh insertion.³³

Biliary surgery After exploration of the common bile duct (CBD), a T-tube is usually left in the bile duct draining freely to the exterior. A T-tube cholangiogram is done at 8–10d, and if there are no retained stones the tube may be pulled out. Retained stones may be removed by ERCP (p756), further surgery, or instillation of stone-dissolving agents (via T-tube). If there is distal obstruction in the CBD, fistula formation may occur with a chronic leakage of bile. Other complications of biliary surgery are CBD stricture; cholangitis; bleeding into the biliary tree (haemobilia) which may lead to biliary colic, jaundice, and haematemesis; pancreatitis; bile leak causing biliary peritonitis. If jaundiced, it is important to maintain a good urine output, monitor coagulation and consider antibiotics. There is a danger of hepatorenal syndrome (p259).

Thyroid surgery (See also p602) Recurrent (\pm superior) laryngeal nerve palsy (\rightarrow hoarseness) can occur permanently in 0.5% and transiently in 1.5%³⁴—warn the patient that **their voice will be different** for a few days post-op because of intubation and local oedema. (NB: pre-operative fiberoptic laryngoscopy should be performed to exclude pre-existing vocal cord dysfunction); hypoparathyroidism (p214), causing hypocalcaemia (p692) that is permanent in 2.5%; hypothyroidism in the long term; thyroid storm (p844); tracheal obstruction due to haematoma in the wound: **▶**relieve by immediate removal of stitches or clips using the cutter/remover that should remain at the bedside; may require urgent surgery.

Mastectomy Arm lymphoedema in up to 20% of those undergoing axillary node sampling or dissection.³⁵ The risk of lymphoedema increases with the level of axillary dissection: risk is lower with Level 1 dissection (remains inferior to *pec. minor*) compared to Level 3 dissection (goes superior to *pec. minor*, rarely done); skin necrosis.

Arterial surgery Bleeding; thrombosis; embolism; graft infection; MI; AV fistula formation. **Complications of aortic surgery:** Gut ischaemia; renal failure; respiratory distress; aorto-enteric fistula; trauma to ureters or anterior spinal artery (leading to paraplegia); ischaemic events from distal trash from dislodged thrombus.

Colonic surgery Sepsis; ileus; fistulae; anastomotic leak (11% for radical rectal surgery);³⁶ obstruction from adhesions (BOX); haemorrhage; trauma to ureters or spleen.

Small bowel surgery Short gut syndrome (best defined functionally, though anatomically $\leq 250\text{cm}$ in the adult) may result from substantial resections of small bowel. Diarrhoea and malabsorption (particularly of fats) lead to a number of metabolic abnormalities including deficiency in vitamins A, D, E, K, and B₁₂, hyperoxaluria (causing renal stones), and bile salt depletion (causing gallstones).³⁷ The management of short bowel syndrome is complex and aims to correct these metabolic abnormalities.³⁸

Tracheostomy Stenosis; mediastinitis; surgical emphysema.

Splenectomy (p367) Acute gastric dilatation (a serious consequence of not using a NGT, or to check that the one in place is working); thrombocytosis; sepsis. **▶**Lifetime sepsis risk is partly preventable with pre-op vaccines—ie *Haemophilus* type B, meningococcal, and pneumococcal (p391 & p160) and prophylactic penicillin.

Genitourinary surgery Septicaemia (from instrumentation in the presence of infected urine)—consider a stat dose of *gentamicin*; urinoma—rupture of a ureter or renal pelvis leading to a mass of extravasated urine.

Gastrectomy See p624. **Prostatectomy** p645. **Haemorrhoidectomy** p634.



Adhesions—legacy of the laparotomy, bane of the surgeon

When re-operating on the abdomen, the struggle against adhesions tests the farthest and darkest boundaries of patience of the abdominal surgeon and the assistant. The skill and persistence required to gently and atraumatically tease apart these fibrous bands that restrict access and vision makes any progression, no matter how slight, cause for subdued celebration. Perseverance is the name of this game.

Surgical division of adhesions is known as *adhesiolysis*. Any surgical procedure that breaches the abdominal or pelvic cavities can predispose to the formation of adhesions, which are found in up to 90% of those with previous abdominal surgery; this is why we do not rush to operate on small bowel obstruction: the operation predisposes to yet more adhesions. Handling of the serosal surface of the bowel causes inflammation, which over weeks to years can lead to the formation of fibrous bands that tether the bowel to itself or adjacent structures—though adhesions can also form secondary to infection, radiation injury and inflammatory processes such as Crohn's disease. Their main sequelae are intestinal obstruction (the cause in ~60% of cases—see p612) and chronic abdominal or pelvic pain. Studies have shown that adhesiolysis may help relieve chronic pain, though for a small proportion of patients the pain never improves or even worsens after directed intervention.³⁹

As far as prevention is concerned, the best approach is to avoid operating, though there is evidence to suggest that laparoscopy compared with laparotomy reduces the rate of local adhesions.⁴⁰ Insertion of synthetic films (eg hyaluronic acid/carboxymethyl membrane) to prevent adhesions to the anterior abdominal wall reduces incidence, extent and severity of adhesions, but not incidence of obstruction or operative re-intervention.⁴¹



A stoma (Greek=*mouth*) is an artificial union between a conduit and the outside world—eg a colostomy, in which faeces are made to pass through an opening in the abdominal wall when a loop of colon is brought out onto the skin. NB A stoma can also be made between 2 internal conduits (eg a choledochojejunostomy).

Colostomies May be temporary or permanent. Pre-op, confirm that the patient is unsuited to one of the newer colostomy-avoiding operations (see below). Are they suitable for a laparoscopic operation?⁴²

- **Loop colostomy:** A loop of colon is exteriorized and partially divided, forming 2 stomas that are joined together (the proximal end passes stool, the distal end passes mucus, see [fig 1](#)). A rod under the loop prevents retraction and may be removed after 7d. A loop colostomy is often temporary and performed to protect a distal anastomosis, eg after anterior resection.
- **End colostomy:** The bowel is divided and the proximal end brought out as a stoma; the distal end may be: **1 resected**, eg abdominoperineal (AP) resection (inspect the perineum for absent anus when examining a stoma); **2 closed** and left in the abdomen (Hartmann's procedure); **3 exteriorized**, forming a 'mucous fistula'.
- **Paul-Mikulicz colostomy:** A double-barrelled colostomy in which the colon is divided completely (eg to excise a section of bowel). Each end is exteriorized as two separate stomas.

Output: Colostomies ideally pass 1–2 formed motions/day into an adherent plastic pouch. Some may be managed with irrigation, thus avoiding a pouch.

Incidence: 21,000 stomas/yr^{UK} (>50% are permanent).⁴³ Most manage their stomas well. The cost for appliances is ~£1300/yr. If there is a skin reaction to the adhesive or pouch, a change of device may be all that is needed. Contact the stoma nurse.

Ileostomies protrude from the skin and emit frequent fluid motions which contain active enzymes (so the skin needs protecting), see [fig 2](#). End ileostomy usually follows total proctocolectomy, typically for UC; loop ileostomies can also be formed.

Defunctioning stomas (eg loop colostomy or ileostomy) are used to relieve distal obstruction or to protect distal anastomoses. Although they do not reduce leakage rates, they probably minimize the severity of leakage when it does occur.⁴⁴

The alternatives to colostomy *Low/ultralow anterior resection:* All or part of the rectum is excised and the proximal colon anastomosed to the top of the anal canal (the lower the level of anastomosis, the higher the risk of complication). *Ileo-anal pouch formation:* The colon and rectum are removed and a pouch of ileum is joined to the upper anal canal. The 'J' pouch results in less frequent bowel movements and less incontinence compared with straight anastomosis.⁴⁵ *Total anorectal reconstruction:* An electrically stimulated sphincter is created using gracilis muscle, or an artificial mechanical sphincter implanted after, eg AP excision of the rectum. *Transanal endoscopic microsurgery:* Allows excision of small tumours within the rectum. Sphincter-saving operations for rectal cancer near the anal verge are not associated with increased recurrence rate compared with AP resection.⁴⁶

⚙️ The physical and psychological aspects of stoma care must not be undervalued. Be alert to any vicious cycle in which a skin reaction leads to leakage and precipitates a fear of going out, or a fear of eating. This in turn may lead to poor skin nutrition and further skin reactions, resulting in further leakage and depression. These cycles can be circumvented by the **stoma nurse**, who is the expert in fitting secure, odourless devices.⁴⁷ Ensure patients are in contact before and after surgery—their advice is more useful than any doctor's in explaining what is going to happen, what the stoma will be like, and in troubleshooting post-op problems. ▶ **Early direct self-referral prevents problems.** Without input from the stoma nurse, a patient may reject his colostomy, never attend to it, or even become suicidal.

Urostomies are fashioned after total cystectomy, bringing urine from the ureters to the abdominal wall via an *ileal conduit* that is usually incontinent. Formation of a catheterizable valvular mechanism may retain continence. Advances in urological surgery have seen an increase in continence-saving procedures such as orthotopic neobladder reconstruction, with good long-term continence rates.⁴⁸



Complications of stomas

► Liaise early with the stoma nurse, starting pre-operatively.

Early:

- Haemorrhage at stoma site
- Stoma ischaemia—colour progresses from dusky grey to black
- High output (can lead to K^+ ↓)—consider *loperamide* ± *codeine* to thicken output
- Obstruction secondary to adhesions (see p583)
- Stoma retraction

Delayed:

- Obstruction (failure at operation to close lateral space around stoma)
- Dermatitis around stoma site (worse with ileostomy)
- Stoma prolapse
- Stomal intussusception
- Stenosis
- Parastomal hernia (risk increases with time).⁴⁹ NB Prophylactic mesh insertion at the time of stoma formation reduces this risk.⁵⁰
- Fistulae
- Psychological problems

Choosing a stoma site

When choosing the site for a stoma, avoid:

- Bony prominences (eg anterior superior iliac spine, costal margins)
- The umbilicus
- Old wounds/scars—there may be adhesions beneath
- Skin folds and creases
- The waistline
- The site should be assessed pre-operatively by the stoma nurse, with the patient both lying and standing

Colostomies are most often placed in the left iliac fossa (fig 3) whereas a stoma in the right iliac fossa is more likely to be an ileostomy/ileal conduit.

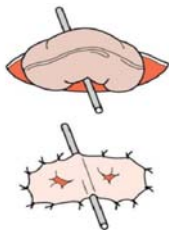


Fig 1. A loop colostomy with double-barrelled stoma and supporting osmotic rod.



Fig 2. An ileostomy sits proud, has prominent mucosal folds, and is often right-sided.

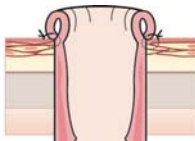


Fig 3. A colostomy sits flush with the skin and is typically sited in the left iliac fossa.



► Over 25% of hospital inpatients may be malnourished. Hospitals can become so focused on curing disease that they ignore the foundations of good health—malnourished patients recover more slowly and experience more complications.¹

Why are so many hospital patients malnourished?

- 1 Increased nutritional requirements (eg sepsis, burns, surgery)
- 2 Increased nutritional losses (eg malabsorption, output from stoma)
- 3 Decreased intake (eg dysphagia, nausea, sedation, coma)
- 4 Effect of treatment (eg nausea, diarrhoea)
- 5 Enforced starvation (eg prolonged periods nil by mouth)
- 6 Missing meals through being whisked off, eg for investigations
- 7 Difficulty with feeding (eg lost dentures; no one available to assist)
- 8 Unappetizing food

Identifying the malnourished patient

- **History:** Recent weight↓ (>20%, accounting for fluid balance); recent reduced intake; diet change (eg recent change in consistency of food); nausea, vomiting, pain, diarrhoea which might have led to reduced intake.
- **Examination:** State of hydration (p680): dehydration can go hand-in-hand with malnutrition, and overhydration can mask malnutrition. Evidence of malnutrition: skin hanging off muscles (eg over biceps); no fat between fold of skin; hair rough and wiry; pressure sores; sores at corner of mouth. Calculate body mass index (p236); BMI <20kg/m² suggests malnourishment. Anthropomorphic indices, eg mid arm circumference, skin fold measures and grip strength are also used.
- **Investigations:** Generally unhelpful. Low albumin suggestive, but is affected by many things other than nutrition. Albumin ↑ can be helpful in monitoring recovery.

Prevention of malnutrition Assess nutrition state and weight on admission, and, eg weekly thereafter. Identify those at risk (see above). Ensure that meals are uninterrupted, when possible. Provide appetizing food to the patient when they want to eat it. If the patient requires nutritional support, seek help from a dietician.

Enteral nutrition (ie nutrition given into gastrointestinal tract) If at all possible, give nutrition by mouth. An all-fluid diet can meet requirements (but get advice from dietician). If danger of choking or aspiration (eg after stroke), consider semi-solid diet before abandoning food by mouth. Early post-op enteral nutrition has been shown to benefit patients (eg after GI surgery) and may reduce complications.⁵¹

Tube feeding: Liquid nutrition via a tube, eg placed endoscopically, radiologically, or surgically (directly into stomach, ie gastrostomy). Use nutritionally complete, commercially prepared feeds. **Polymeric** feeds consist of undigested proteins, starches and long chain fatty acids (eg Nutrison standard®, Osmolite®). Normally contain ~1kCal/mL and 4-6g protein per 100mL. Most people's requirements are met with 2L/24h. **Elemental** feeds consist of individual amino acids, oligo- and monosaccharides needing minimal digestion. Also **disease-specific** feeds, eg in liver cirrhosis with hepatic encephalopathy branched-chain amino acid-enriched formulae, should be used.⁵² Advice from dietician is essential. Nausea and vomiting less problematic if feed continuous, but may have disadvantages compared with intermittent nutrition.

Guidelines for success

- Use fine-bore (9 Fr) nasogastric feeding tube when possible.
 - Check position of nasogastric tube (pH testing) or nasoduodenal tube (x-ray) before starting feeding.
 - Build up feeds gradually to avoid diarrhoea and distension.
 - Weigh weekly, check blood glucose and plasma electrolytes (including phosphate, zinc, and magnesium, if previously malnourished).
 - Treat underlying conditions vigorously, eg sepsis may impede +ve nitrogen balance.
- Close liaison with a dietician is essential.

1 For an in-depth guide to nutrition see *Manual of Dietetic Practice*, 4e, Briony Thomas, Blackwell.

Nil by mouth (NBM) before theatre

If in doubt about what is acceptable oral intake prior to induction for general anaesthesia (eg for GI surgery), it is best to liaise with the anaesthetist concerned. However, guidelines have been published by many colleges and societies to outline what is safe in the perioperative period:

- For adult elective surgery in healthy patients without GI comorbidity
 - Water or clear fluids (eg black tea/coffee) are allowed up to 2h beforehand
 - All other intake up to 6h beforehand³
- In emergency surgery, ≥ 6 h NBM prior to theatre is best.

Daily energy and nutritional requirements

Substance	Requirement (/kg/d)	Notes
Energy	20–40kCal	Normal adult requirements will be 2000–2500kCal/d; even catabolic patients rarely require >2500kCal/d. Very high calorie diets (eg >4000kCal/d) can lead to a fatty liver.
	84–168kJ	Multiply kCal by a factor of 4.2.
Nitrogen	0.2–0.4g	6.25g of enteral protein gives 1g of nitrogen. Considering nitrogen balance is important because although catabolism is inevitable, replenishment is vital.
Protein	0.5g	Contains 5kCal/g.
Fat	3g	Contains 10kCal/g.
Carbohydrate	2g	Contains 4kCal/g.
Water	30–35mL	+500mL/d for each °C of pyrexia.
Na/K/Cl	1.0mmol each	Electrolytes need to be considered, even if not on IVI.



Do not undertake parenteral feeding lightly; it has risks. Specialist advice is vital. It should only be considered if the patient is likely to become malnourished without it—this normally means that the gastrointestinal tract is not functioning (eg bowel obstruction), and is unlikely to function for at least 7d. Parenteral feeding may supplement other forms of nutrition (eg in short bowel syndrome or active Crohn's disease, when nutrition cannot be sufficiently absorbed in the gut) or it can be used alone (total parenteral nutrition—TPN). ▶ Even if there is GI disease, studies show that enteral nutrition is safer, cheaper, and at least as efficacious as parenteral nutrition in the perioperative period.¹⁵³

Administration Nutrition is normally given through a central venous line as this usually lasts longer than if given into a peripheral vein. A peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC line) is another option, though they can be trickier to insert and may have a higher rate of thrombophlebitis.⁵⁴ Insert under strict sterile conditions and check position on x-ray—**figs 1 and 2**.

Requirements There are many different regimens for parenteral feeding. Most provide 2000kCal and 10–14g nitrogen in 2–3L; this usually meets a patient's daily requirements (see TABLE, p587). ~50% of calories are provided by fat and ~50% by carbohydrate. Regimens comprise vitamins, minerals, trace elements, and electrolytes; these will normally be included by the pharmacist.

Complications

- **Sepsis:** (Eg *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Staphylococcus aureus*; *Candida*; *Pseudomonas*; infective endocarditis.) Look for spiking pyrexia and examine wound at tube insertion point. Take line and peripheral cultures. If central venous line-related sepsis is suspected, the safest course of action is always to remove the line. Do not attempt to salvage a line when *S. aureus* or *Candida* infection has been identified. Antimicrobial-impregnated central lines decrease the incidence of line-related infections.⁵⁵
- **Thrombosis:** Central vein thrombosis may occur, resulting in pulmonary embolus or superior vena caval obstruction (p526). Heparin in the nutrient solution may be useful for prophylaxis in high-risk patients, though there is little clear-cut evidence in adult studies.
- **Metabolic imbalance:** Electrolyte abnormalities—see BOX; deranged plasma glucose; hyperlipidaemia; deficiency syndromes (TABLE, p281); acid-base disturbance (eg hypercapnia from excessive CO₂ production).
- **Mechanical:** Pneumothorax; embolism of IV line tip.

Guidelines for success

- ▶ Liaise closely with line insertion team, nutrition team and pharmacist.
- Meticulous sterility. Do not use central venous lines for uses other than nutrition. Remove the line if you suspect infection. Culture its tip.
- Review fluid balance at least twice daily, and requirements for energy and electrolytes daily.
- Check weight, fluid balance, and urine glucose daily throughout period of parenteral nutrition. Check plasma glucose, creatinine and electrolytes (including calcium and phosphate), and FBC daily until stable and then 3 times a week. Check LFT and lipid clearance three times a week until stable and then weekly. Check zinc and magnesium weekly throughout.
- Do not rush. Achieve the maintenance regimen in small steps.
- Treat underlying conditions vigorously—eg sepsis may impede +ve nitrogen balance.

1 Enteral feeding promotes integrity of the gut mucosal barrier, thus preventing bacterial and endotoxin translocation across the gut wall, which can lead to multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS) and perpetuation of a systemic inflammatory response—even when the gut is not the primary source of pathology.



Refeeding syndrome

► This is a life-threatening metabolic complication of refeeding via any route after a prolonged period of starvation.⁵⁶ As the body turns to fat and protein metabolism in the starved state, there is a drop in the level of circulating insulin (because of the paucity of dietary carbohydrates). The catabolic state also depletes intracellular stores of phosphate, although serum levels may remain normal (0.85–1.45mmol/L). When refeeding begins, the level of insulin rises in response to the carbohydrate load, and one of the consequences is to increase cellular uptake of phosphate.

A hypophosphataemic state (<0.50mmol/L) normally develops within 4d and is mostly responsible for the features of 'refeeding syndrome', which include: rhabdomyolysis; red and white cell dysfunction; respiratory insufficiency; arrhythmias; cardiogenic shock; seizures; sudden death.

Prevention requires at-risk patients to be identified, assessed and monitored closely during refeeding (glucose, lipids, sodium, potassium, phosphate, calcium, magnesium, and zinc). Close involvement of a nutritionist is required.

Treatment is of the complicating features and includes parenteral phosphate administration (eg 18mmol/d) in addition to oral supplementation.⁵⁷

At risk with:

- Malignancy
- Anorexia nervosa
- Alcoholism
- GI surgery
- Starvation

The venous system at the thoracic outlet

When trying to judge the position of a central venous line tip on CXR (see **figs 2 and 3**) it helps to know the anatomical landmarks of the venous system. The subclavian veins join the internal jugular veins behind the sternoclavicular joints to form the brachiocephalic veins. These come together behind the right 1st sternocostal joint to form the superior vena cava (svc), which runs from this point to the right 3rd sternocostal joint. The right atrium starts here.

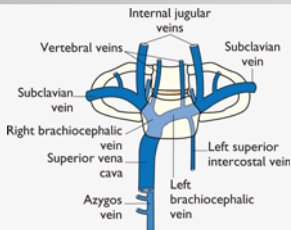


Fig 1. Neck veins

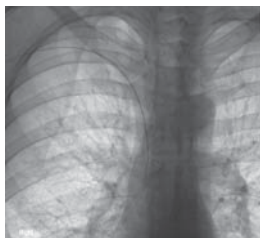


Fig 2. Right arm PICC (peripherally inserted central catheter) still with a wire in the lumen. This is a radiograph at the time of insertion to determine if placement is correct. The tip lies in the svc—ie good positioning for long-term antibiotic therapy. The tip of a Hickman line, for cytotoxic administration, is better in the right atrium, to avoid possible irritation of the svc and consequent thrombosis or stenosis.



Fig 3. CXR showing placement of a dual lumen haemodialysis catheter. It is tunnelled through the subcutaneous tissues, enters the left internal jugular vein, and travels through the left brachiocephalic vein and svc to enter the right atrium. The tip lies best in the svc or right atrium, any further and it might damage the tricuspid valve.

Both images were acquired in the angiography room, where radio-opaque material appears black (it is easier to see contrast media against a white background).

Both images courtesy of Prof Peter Scally.

Over 10% of surgical patients will have diabetes. This group face a greater risk of post-operative infection and cardiac complications.^{59,60} Tight glycaemic control is therefore essential and improves outcome. Aim to achieve an HbA_{1c} of <69mmol/mol prior to elective surgery. Patients are often well informed about their diabetes—involve them fully in managing their diabetic care. Check your hospital's policy for managing diabetic patients who will be NBM before surgery. Below is a general guide.⁶¹

Insulin-treated diabetes mellitus

- Try to place the patient first on the list in order to minimize the fasting period.
- Give all usual insulin the night before surgery.
- Long-acting (basal) insulin is usually continued at normal times (eg **Glargine**; **Detemir**), even when patients are on a variable rate intravenous insulin infusion (VRIII)—previously known as a 'sliding scale' (see BOX 1).
- If on AM list, ensure no subcutaneous rapid-acting (bolus) or mixed insulin is given on the morning of surgery. If PM list, give the normal morning bolus insulin, or half the mixed insulin dose.
- If eating and drinking post-operatively, resume the usual insulin with evening meal. If AM list (or early PM) and eating a late lunch, give half the morning insulin dose with this meal. If not eating until evening, a VRIII may be needed if the capillary glucose readings are high.
- Omit all rapid-acting and mixed insulin whilst the patient is on a VRIII.
- If not eating or drinking post-op, start a VRIII 2 hours prior to surgery. Aim for serum glucose levels of 6–10mmol/L and check finger-prick glucose every 2 hours. When ready to eat, give normal dose of rapid acting or mixed insulin with the 1st meal and stop the VRIII 30–60min later.
- IV fluid is required whilst the patient is on a VRIII: see BOX 1.
- A glucose–potassium–insulin (GKI) infusion can be used as an alternative to a VRIII (see BOX 2), although it is no longer used as standard in the UK.

Tablet-treated diabetes mellitus

- If diabetes is poorly controlled (eg fasting glucose >10mmol/L), treat as for patients on insulin (above).
- Give usual medications the night before surgery, except long-acting sulfonylureas (eg **glibenclamide**) which can cause prolonged hypoglycaemia when fasting and may need to be substituted 2–3 days pre-operatively. Discuss with the diabetes team.
- If eating and drinking post-operatively: On AM list, omit morning medication and take any missed drugs with lunch, after surgery. If PM list, take normal medications with breakfast, omit midday doses and take any missed drugs with a late lunch. The dose of these may need reducing, depending on dietary intake.
- If not eating or drinking post-op, start a VRIII 2 hours prior to surgery. Once eating and drinking, oral hypoglycaemics can be restarted.
- Some patients may need a phase of subcutaneous insulin following major surgery—refer to the diabetes team if serum glucose levels are persistently raised.
- **Metformin and iodine IV contrast:** Metformin can be continued after IV contrast in patients with normal serum creatinine and/or eGFR >60mL/min.⁶² To minimize the risk of nephrotoxicity, if serum creatinine is raised or eGFR <60mL/min, stop metformin for 48h after contrast and check renal function has returned to baseline before restarting.

Diet-controlled diabetes There are usually no issues and patients should be treated as if not diabetic (and do not need to be first on the list). Check capillary blood glucose perioperatively. Avoid 5% glucose IVI as this increases blood glucose levels.

Perioperative morbidity and mortality Diabetes mellitus is classed as an intermediate risk factor for increased perioperative cardiovascular risk by the American Heart Association, so screen for the presence of asymptomatic cardiac and renal disease (p569) and be aware of possible 'silent' myocardial ischaemia.⁶³ Long-term post-op survival has been found to be poorer for patients with diabetes; however, perioperative cardiovascular morbidity and mortality were only increased in the presence of congestive heart failure and haemodialysis—ie not diabetes alone.⁶⁴



How to write up a variable rate intravenous insulin infusion (VRIII)

Variable rate intravenous insulin infusion (VRIII) is more accurate a term than the previously used 'sliding scale'. Prescribe 50 units of short-acting insulin (eg *Actrapid*®) in 50mL of 0.9% saline to infuse at the rate shown in the TABLE below (according to blood glucose levels). NB: this is a guide only—infusions may vary between institutions and no one infusion rate is suitable for all patients.⁶⁵

Capillary blood glucose (mmol/L)	IV soluble insulin (rate of infusion)
<4.0	0.5 units/h (0.0 if long-acting insulin continued)
4.1–7.0	1 unit/h
7.1–9.0	2 units/h
9.1–11.0	3 units/h
11.1–14.0	4 units/h
14.1–17.0	5 units/h
17.1–20	6 units/h
>20	6 units/h; request urgent diabetic review

Fluids should be prescribed to run with the VRIII (through the same cannula via a non-return valve). Ideally use 0.45% sodium chloride with 5% glucose **and** either 0.15% potassium chloride (KCl) (=20mmol/L) or 0.3% KCl (=40mmol/L). This provides a constant supply of substrate, but it is not widely available.

Alternatively, use 10% glucose + KCl. This has a lower risk of hypoglycaemia and hyponatraemia than 5% glucose. If capillary glucose >15mmol/L when starting the VRIII use 0.9% saline until <15mmol/L, then use 10% glucose.

Fluid should infuse at 83–125mL/h (ie 1L over 8–12 hours). Omit potassium if there is renal impairment or hyperkalaemia and slow the rate of infusion in heart failure.

GKI infusions (glucose, K⁺ and insulin)

Although no longer commonly used in the UK, GKI infusions avoid the risks associated with running IV glucose and IV insulin through separate lines. If one cannula becomes blocked, the patient may become hypo- or hyperglycaemic. Even if glucose and insulin are given through the same cannula via a 3-way converter, this may also become blocked. The syringe driver may retrogradely fill the infusion set with insulin and when the cannula is subsequently resited and the infusion restarted, the patient will receive a large accumulated dose of insulin. This has caused lethal hypoglycaemia. In a GKI infusion, a 500mL bag of 10% glucose ± KCl is given over 6h, with a short-acting insulin (eg *Actrapid*®) added according to blood glucose.⁶⁶

Blood glucose (mmol/L)	Insulin dose (units/bag)	Serum K ⁺ (mmol/L)	KCl to be added (mmol/bag)
<4	None	<3	20
4–6	5	3–5	10
6–10	10	>5	None
10–20	15		
>20	20		

- Check blood glucose every 2h. If levels too high or low, start a new 500mL bag of glucose with the correct insulin dose (aim for 7–10mmol/L).
- GKI infusions are not suitable in poorly controlled diabetes or patients who are very unwell (where close serum glucose monitoring is required).
- If the patient is fluid restricted use 250mL of 20% glucose with the same insulin dose as above. If the patient is hyponatraemic then a concomitant infusion of 0.9% saline should be considered.
- Check U&E daily.
- NB: regimens vary and sometimes more insulin will be required. See *BNF* section 6.1.



Operating in patients with obstructive jaundice is best avoided, especially with the availability of ERCP. There is increased risk of perioperative infection, bleeding and renal failure. Prevention of these is key:

Coagulopathy Vitamin K is reduced in obstruction as it requires bile in order to be absorbed. If no history of chronic liver disease, give parenteral vitamin K (consider even if clotting is normal). FFP may be required in liver disease or active bleeding.⁶⁷

Sepsis Susceptibility to infection is due (in part) to •Increased bacterial translocation •Bacterial colonization of the biliary tree and •Reduced neutrophil function. Patients with cholangitis should be given antibiotics. Antibiotic prophylaxis for ERCP is not recommended unless biliary decompression fails, or there is a history of biliary disorders; liver transplantation; presence of a pancreatic pseudocyst; or neutropenia, in which case give oral *ciprofloxacin* or IV *gentamicin*.⁶⁸

Renal failure Patients with obstructive jaundice are prone to developing renal failure post surgery, possibly due to absorption of endotoxin from the intestines (normally limited by the detergent effect of bile). This causes increased renal vasoconstriction and acute tubular necrosis (see hepatorenal syndrome, p259). Limited evidence suggests the use of lactulose or bile salts pre-op may help.⁶⁹ Prevention centres around adequate cardiac output achieved by maintenance of blood volume through IV fluids.⁷⁰ Ensure plenty of IV fluids pre- and post-operatively to maintain good urine output. Monitor urine output every 2 hours. Consider central line, inotropes and furosemide if urine output is poor despite adequate hydration. Measure U&E daily. Give 20mmol of K⁺ per litre of fluid after 24h post-op if urine output good.

Surgery in those on steroids

Patients on steroids may not be able to mount an appropriate adrenal response to meet the stress of surgery due to suppression of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis. Extra corticosteroid cover may be required, depending on the type of surgery. Consider cover for any patient taking >5mg/d of *prednisolone* (or equivalent) for more than 2 weeks or any patient who has had their long-term steroid reduced in the last 2–4 weeks. There is also potential for HPA suppression in patients taking long-term high-dose inhaled or topical corticosteroids. A guide to supplementation is below.⁷¹ Patients should take their normal morning steroid dose.

- **Minor procedures under local anaesthetic:** No supplementation required.
- **Moderate procedures:** (Eg joint replacement) Give 50mg *hydrocortisone* before induction and 25mg every 8h for 24h. Resume normal dose thereafter.
- **Major surgery:** Give 100mg *hydrocortisone* before induction and 50mg every 8h for 24h. After 24h, halve this dose each day until the level of maintenance.

Patients with primary adrenal insufficiency will need extra cover—discuss with an endocrinologist. The major risk with adrenal insufficiency is hypotension, so if this is encountered without an obvious cause, consider a stat dose of hydrocortisone. ▶ See p846 for treatment of Addisonian crisis and *BNF* section 6.3 for steroid dose equivalents.

Surgery in those on anticoagulants

▶ Inform the surgeon and anaesthetist. **Minor surgery** can be undertaken without stopping *warfarin* (if INR <3.5 it may be safe to proceed).⁷² In **major surgery**, drugs may be stopped for 2–5d pre-op. Risks and benefits are individual to each patient, so exact rules are impossible. Discuss these issues when arranging consent. **Vitamin K** ± FFP or *Beriplex*® may be needed for emergency reversal of INR. One elective option is conversion to *heparin* (stop 6h prior to surgery, and monitor APTT perioperatively): unfractionated heparin's short *t*_½ allows swift reversal with *protamine* (p344).⁷³ When re-warfarinizing, continue heparin until the INR is therapeutic, as warfarin is prothrombotic in the early stages.

Stopping antiplatelet drugs is a complex business and best discussed with a cardiologist or neurologist. Premature discontinuation of *clopidogrel* in patients with drug-eluting stents can lead to stent thrombosis. The bleeding effects of *aspirin* are reversed 5d after stopping—check with local policy to see if cessation is required.⁷⁴



Thyroid disease and surgery⁷⁵

Surgery can play a significant role in the management of thyroid disease. Operations include partial lobectomy or lobectomy (for isolated nodules); and thyroidectomy (for thyroid cancers, multinodular goitre or Graves' disease). See also p602.

• *Pre-operative management:*

- The cause of hyperthyroidism or swelling should be fully investigated prior to any surgery.
- Check serum Ca^{2+} (and PTH if abnormal).
- Arrange laryngoscopy to visualize vocal cords (risk of recurrent laryngeal nerve injury).
- Treat hyperthyroidism pre-operatively with antithyroid drugs until the patient is euthyroid (p210), eg carbimazole up to 20mg/12h po or propylthiouracil 200mg/12h po. Potassium iodide also has a role.
- Propranolol up to 80mg/8h po can be used to control tachycardia or tremor associated with hyperthyroidism (continue for 5d post-op).

• *Complications of thyroid surgery:* See p582.

►► **Thyrotoxic storm** is a rare but potentially fatal consequence of thyroid surgery (mortality 50%). See p845.



The terms 'keyhole surgery' or 'minimal access surgery' may be preferred, because these procedures can be as invasive as any laparotomy, having just the same set of side-effects—plus some new ones. It is the size of the incision and the use of laparoscopes that marks out this branch of surgery. Laparoscopy was developed within gynaecology and is now in widespread use for diagnostic purposes and surgical procedures such as appendicectomy, fundoplication, splenectomy, adrenalectomy, hernia repair, colectomy, prostatectomy and nephrectomy. Minimally invasive surgery is also used for thyroidectomy and parathyroidectomy.

As a rule of thumb, whatever can be done by laparotomy can also be done with the laparoscope. This does not mean that it **should** be done, but if the patient feels better sooner, has less post-operative pain, can return to work earlier, and has fewer complications, then these specific techniques will gain ascendancy. Consider the benefits specific to laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair: post-operative pain is reduced, as is long-term chronic pain. Patients can return to normal activities (including work) sooner and there are fewer wound-related infections and haematomas, as well as a smaller scar. Rates of recurrence are similar to open hernia repair.⁷⁶ Laparoscopic repair may also allow diagnosis and repair of a previously undiagnosed contralateral hernia at the same operation. The complications of laparoscopic repair include accidental damage to other intra-abdominal organs and the risk of conversion to open procedure (~5%).⁷⁷ In laparoscopic surgery for colorectal cancer, long-term results show no difference in rate of complications or cancer recurrence between open and laparoscopic surgery.⁷⁸ Laparoscopic surgery may also have the benefit of a less suppressive effect on the immune system.⁷⁹ **NB** It is worth noting that advantages do not always include time—laparoscopic surgery may take longer than open procedures and set-up costs may be more than for conventional surgery.

Problems with minimal access surgery:

For the surgeon

The 2-dimensional visual representation and different surgical approach alters the normal appearance of familiar anatomy. Palpation is impossible and it may be harder to locate colonic lesions prior to resection. As a result, pre-operative imaging may need to be more extensive. A fundamental problem is that of skill: not just that a new skill has to be learned and taught but that old skills may become attenuated. New surgeons may not achieve optimal skill in either open or laparoscopic surgery if they try to do both.

For patients and GPs

- **Post-operative complications:** What may be easily managed on a well-run surgical ward (eg haemorrhage) may be a challenge for a GP and terrify the patient, who may be all alone after early discharge.
- **Loss of tell-tale scars:** Afterwards there may only be a few abdominal wounds, so future carers have to guess at what has been done. The answer here is to communicate carefully with the patient, so that they know what has been done—see BOX 2.

For hospitals

Just because minimal access surgery is often cost-effective, it does not follow that hospitals can afford the procedures. Instruments are continuously being refined, and quickly become obsolete—so that many are now produced in disposable single-use form. Because of budgeting boundaries, hospitals cannot use the cash saved, by early return to work or by freeing-up bed space, to pay for capital equipment and extra theatre time that may be required.

See also: *OHclinSurg* p46.



Who is not suitable for day-case surgery?

Perioperative care has evolved from the inpatient setting, with better results for the patient.¹ Many operations are performed as day-cases. Theoretically any procedure is suitable, provided the time under general anaesthetic does not exceed ~1h. The use of regional anaesthesia helps to avoid the SE of nausea and disorientation that may accompany a general anaesthetic, thus facilitating discharge.

To avoid putting the patient at unnecessary risk, it is important to identify those who are not suitable for day-case surgery:

- Severe dementia • Severe learning difficulties • Living alone (and no helpers)
- Children if supervision difficult—changes in expectation, delays and pain relief can be problematic⁸⁰ • BMI >32 (p237) • ASA category ≥III (p569) thus potentially unstable comorbidities—discuss with the anaesthetist as category III may be suitable with appropriate optimization • Infection at the site of the operation.

Exclusions from local regional anaesthesia: Poor communication (if co-operation required during anaesthetic procedure), severe claustrophobia.

Discharge checklist for use after day-case surgery ('Leap-frog')

Lucid, not vomiting, and cough reflex established.

Easy breathing; easy urination.

Ambulant without fainting.

Pain relief + post-op drugs dispensed and given. Does the patient understand doses?

Follow-up arranged (if required).

Rhythm, pulse & BP checked: is trend satisfactory? Check no postural drop.

Operation site checked and explained to patient.

GP letter sent with patient or carer—the GP *must* know what has happened.

⚙️ Exposing patients to our learning curves? The jury is still out...

All surgeons get better over time (for a while), as they perform new techniques with increasing ease and confidence. When Wertheim did his first hysterectomies, his first dozen patients died—but then one survived. He assumed it was a good operation, and pressed ahead. He was a brave man, and thousands of women owe their lives to him. But had he tried to do this today, he would have been stopped. The UK's General Medical Council (GMC) and other august bodies tell us that we must protect the public by reporting doctors whose patients have low survival rates. The reason for this is partly ethical, and partly to preserve self-regulation.

We have the toughest codes of practice and disciplinary procedures of any group of workers. It is assumed that doctors are loyal to each other out of self-interest, and that this loyalty is bad. This has never been tested formally, and is not evidence-based. We can imagine two clinical worlds: one of constant 'reportings' and recriminatory audits, and another of trust and team-work. Both are imperfect, but we should not assume that the first world would be better for our patients.

When patients are sick with fear, they do not, perhaps, want to know everything. We may tell to protect ourselves. We may *not* tell to protect ourselves. Perhaps what we should do is, in our hearts, appeal to those 12 dead women-of-Wertheim—a jury as infallible as sacrificial—and try to hear their reply. And to those who complain that in doing so we are playing God, it is possible to reply with some humility that, whatever it is, it does not seem like play.

"It is amazing what little harm doctors do when one considers all the opportunities they have" M. Twain.



¹ Advantages: shorter waiting lists, fewer infections, fewer days off work, and patient satisfaction.⁸¹

► Examine the regional lymph nodes as well as the lump. If the lump is a node, examine its area of drainage. Always examine the circulation & nerve supply distal to any lump.

History How long has it been there? Does it hurt? Any other symptoms, eg itch? Any other lumps? Is it getting bigger? Ever been abroad? Otherwise well?

Physical exam Remember the 6 **S's**: **s**ite, **s**ize, **s**hape, **s**moothness (consistency), **s**urface (contour/edge/colour), and **s**urroundings. **Other questions**: Does it transilluminate (see below)? Is it fixed/tethered to skin or underlying structures (see BOX)? Is it fluctuant/compressible? Temperature? Tender? Pulsatile (us duplex may help)?

Transilluminable lumps After eliminating as much external light as possible, place a bright, thin 'pen' torch on the lump, from behind (or at least to the side), so the light is shining through the lump towards your eye. If the lump glows red it is said to transilluminate—a fluid-filled lump such as a hydrocele is a good example.

Lipomas These benign fatty lumps, occurring wherever fat can expand (ie **not** scalp or palms), have smooth, imprecise margins, a hint of fluctuance, and are not fixed to skin or deeper structures. Symptoms are only caused via pressure. Malignant change very rare (suspect if rapid growth/hardening/vascularization). Multiple scattered lipomas, which may be painful, occur in Dercum's disease, typically in postmenopausal women.⁸²

Sebaceous cysts Refer to either **epidermal** (fig 1) or **pilar cysts** (they are not of sebaceous origin and contain keratin, not sebum). They appear as firm, round, mobile subcutaneous nodules of varying size. Look for the characteristic central punctum. Infection is quite common, and foul pus exits through the punctum. They are common on the scalp, face, neck and trunk. **Treatment**: Excision of cyst and contents.

Lymph nodes Causes of enlargement: **Infection**: Glandular fever; brucellosis; TB; HIV; toxoplasmosis; actinomycosis; syphilis. **Infiltration**: Malignancy (carcinoma, lymphoma); sarcoidosis.

Cutaneous abscesses Staphylococci are the most common organisms. Haemolytic streptococci only common in hand infections. *Proteus* is a common cause of non-staphylococcal axillary abscesses. Below the waist faecal organisms are common (aerobes & anaerobes). **Treatment**: Incise and drain. **Boils (furuncles)** are abscesses involving a hair follicle and associated glands. A **carbuncle** is an area of subcutaneous necrosis which discharges itself on to the surface through multiple sinuses. Think of **hidradenitis suppurativa** if recurrent inguinal or axillary abscesses.

Rheumatoid nodules (fig 2) are collagenous granulomas which appear in established rheumatoid arthritis on the extensor aspects of joints—especially the elbows (fig 2).

Ganglia Degenerative cysts from an adjacent joint or synovial sheath commonly seen on the dorsum of the wrist or hand and dorsum of the foot. May transilluminate. 50% disappear spontaneously. Aspiration may be effective, especially when combined with instillation of steroid and **hyaluronidase**.⁸³ For the rest, treatment of choice is excision rather than the traditional blow from your bible (the *Oxford Textbook of Surgery*!). See fig 3.

Fibromas These may occur anywhere in the body, but most commonly under the skin. These whitish, benign tumours contain collagen, fibroblasts, and fibrocytes.

Dermoid cysts Contain dermal structures and are found at the junction of embryonic cutaneous boundaries, eg in the midline or lateral to the eye.

Malignant tumours of connective tissue Fibrosarcomas, liposarcomas, leiomyosarcomas (smooth muscle), and rhabdomyosarcomas (striated muscle). These are staged using modified TNM system including tumour grade. Needle-core (Trucut®) biopsies of large tumours precede excision. Any lesion suspected of being a sarcoma should not be simply enucleated. ► Refer to a specialist.

Neurofibromas See p518.

Keloids Caused by irregular hypertrophy of vascularized collagen forming raised edges at sites of previous scars that extend outside the scar (fig 4). Common in dark skin. Treatment can be difficult. Intralesional steroid injections are a mainstay.



In or under the skin?

Intradermal

- Sebaceous cyst
- Abscess
- Dermoid cyst
- Granuloma

Subcutaneous

- Lipoma
- Ganglion
- Neuroma
- Lymph node

If a lump is intradermal, you cannot draw the skin over it, while if the lump is subcutaneous you should be able to manipulate it independently from the skin.



Fig 1. Epidermal cyst.

Courtesy of DermNetNZ, the web pages of the New Zealand Dermatological Society Inc.
www.dermnetnz.org.



Fig 2. Rheumatoid nodule.

Courtesy of DermNetNZ, the web pages of the New Zealand Dermatological Society Inc.
www.dermnetnz.org.



Fig 3. Ganglion.

Courtesy of John M Erikson, MD,
Raleigh Hand Centre.



Fig 4. Keloid scar.

Courtesy of East Sussex Hospitals Trust.



Malignant tumours

1 Malignant melanoma ♀:♂ ≈ 1.3:1. UK incidence: ≥10:100,000/yr (up ≥200% in last 20yrs). Commonly affects younger patients ∴ early diagnosis is vital. Short periods of intense UV exposure is a major cause, particularly in the early years. May occur in pre-existing moles. If smooth, well-demarcated and regular, it is unlikely to be a melanoma but diagnosis can be tricky so ► if in doubt, refer. Refer if there are ≥3 points on the Glasgow scale, or with 1 point if suspicious.⁸⁴ See **fig 1**.

Major (2 pts each)	Minor (1 pt each)	Less helpful signs
• Change in size	• Inflammation, crusting, or bleeding	• Asymmetry
• Change in shape	• Sensory change	• Irregular colour
• Change in colour	• Diameter >7mm (unless growth is in the vertical plane: beware)	• Elevation
		• Irregular border

Superficial spreading melanomas (70%) grow slowly, metastasize later and have better prognosis than **nodular melanomas (10–15%)** which invade deeply and metastasize early. Nodular lesions may be amelanotic in ~5%. **Others:** **Acral melanomas** occur on palms, soles and subungual areas (there is equal frequency amongst black patients and white patients); **Lentigo maligna melanoma** evolves from pre-existing lentigo maligna. Breslow thickness (depth in mm), tumour stage and presence of ulceration are important prognostic factors.⁸⁵ **R:** Urgent excision can be curative. Chemotherapy gives a response in 10–30% with metastatic disease (*OHCS* p592).

2 Squamous cell cancer Usually presents as an ulcerated lesion, with hard, raised edges, in sun-exposed sites. May begin in solar keratoses (below), or be found on the lips of smokers or in long-standing ulcers (=Marjolin's ulcer). Metastasis to lymph nodes is rare, local destruction may be extensive. **R:** Excision + radiotherapy to treat recurrence/affected nodes. See **fig 2**. NB: the condition may be confused with a keratoacanthoma—a fast-growing, benign, self-limiting papule plugged with keratin.

3 Basal cell carcinoma (aka rodent ulcer) **Nodular:** Typically a pearly nodule with rolled telangiectatic edge, on the face or a sun-exposed site. May have a central ulcer. See **fig 3**. Metastases are very rare. It slowly causes local destruction if left untreated. **Superficial:** Lesions appear as red scaly plaques with a raised smooth edge, often on the trunk or shoulders. **Cause:** (most frequently) UV exposure. **R:** Excision; cryotherapy; for superficial BCCs topical flurouracil or imiquimod (see below).

Pre-malignant tumours

1 Solar (actinic) keratoses appear on sun-exposed skin as crumbly, yellow-white crusts. Malignant change to squamous cell carcinoma may occur after several years. **Treatment:** Cryotherapy; 5% **flurouracil** cream or 5% **imiquimod**—these work by causing: erythema → vesiculation → erosion → ulceration → necrosis → healing epithelialization, leaving healthy skin unharmed. Warn patients of the expected inflammatory reaction. See *BNF* for dosing regimens. Alternatively try diclofenac gel (3%; Solaraze®, use thinly twice-daily for ≤90d).

2 Bowen's disease Slow-growing red/brown scaly plaque, eg on lower legs. **Histology:** Full-thickness dysplasia (carcinoma *in situ*). It infrequently progresses to squamous cell cancer. Penile Bowen's disease is called Queyrat's erythroplasia. **Treatment:** Cryotherapy, topical **flurouracil** (see above) or photodynamic therapy.

3 See also Kaposi's sarcoma (p716); Paget's disease of the breast (p722).

Others •**Secondary carcinoma** Most common metastases to skin are from breast, kidney, or lung. Usually a firm nodule, most often on the scalp. See also acanthosis nigricans (p564) •**Mycosis fungoides** Cutaneous T-cell lymphoma usually confined to skin. Causes itchy, red plaques (Sézary syndrome-variant also associated with erythroderma) •**Leucoplakia** This appears as white patches (which may fissure) on oral or genital mucosa (where it may itch). Frank carcinomatous change may occur •**Leprosy** Suspect in any anaesthetic hypopigmented lesion (p428) •**Syphilis** Any genital ulcer is syphilis until proved otherwise. Secondary syphilis: papular rash—including, unusually, on the palms¹ (p431).

1 Other palm rashes: Stevens-Johnson syn.; hand, foot & mouth dis.; palmar erythema; palmoplantar pustulosis.



ABCDE criteria for diagnosis of melanoma

- A**symmetry
- B**order—irregular
- C**olour—non-uniform
- D**iameter >7mm
- E**levation

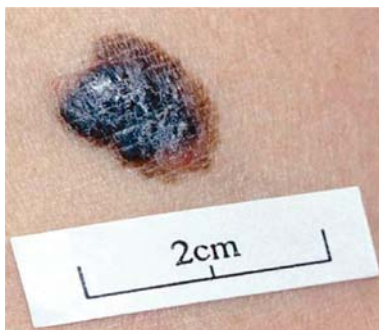


Fig 1. Melanoma.



Fig 2. Squamous cell cancer.



Fig 3. Basal cell carcinoma (BCC).



► Don't biopsy lumps until tumours within the head and neck have been excluded by an ENT surgeon. Culture all biopsied lymph nodes for TB.

Diagnosis First, ask how long the lump has been present. If <3wks, self-limiting infection is the likely cause and extensive investigation is unwise. Next ask yourself where the lump is. Is it intradermal—eg sebaceous cyst with a central punctum (p596)? Is it a lipoma (p596)? If the lump is not intradermal, and is not of recent onset, you are about to start a diagnostic hunt over complicated terrain. 85% of neck swellings are lymph nodes (examine areas which they serve). Consider TB, viruses such as HIV or EBV (infectious mononucleosis), any chronic infection or, if >20yrs, consider lymphoma (hepatosplenomegaly?) or metastases (eg from GI or bronchial or head and neck neoplasia¹), 8% are goitres (p602), and other diagnoses account for 7%.

Tests Ultrasound shows lump consistency: cystic, solid, complex, vascular. CT defines masses in relation to their anatomical neighbours. Do virology and Mantoux test. CXR may show malignancy or, in sarcoid, reveal bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy. Consider fine-needle aspiration (FNA).

Midline lumps: • If patient is <20yrs old, likely diagnosis is *dermoid cyst* (p596). • If it moves up on tongue protrusion and is below the hyoid, likely to be a *thyroglossal cyst*, a fluid-filled sac resulting from incomplete closure of the thyroid's migration path. *R:* surgery; they are the commonest congenital cervical cystic lump. • If >20yrs old, it is probably a *thyroid isthmus* mass. • If it is bony hard, the diagnosis may be a *chondroma* (benign cartilaginous tumour).

Submandibular triangle: (Bordered by the mental process, mandible, and the line between the two angles of the mandible.) • If <20yrs, self-limiting lymphadenopathy is likely. If >20yrs, exclude *malignant lymphadenopathy* (eg firm and non-tender). ► Is TB likely? • If it is not a node, think of submandibular *salivary stone*, *sialadenitis*, or *tumour* (see BOX for *Salivary gland pathology*).

Anterior triangle: (Between midline, anterior border of sternocleidomastoid, and the line between the two angles of the mandible.) • *Branchial cysts* emerge under the anterior border of sternocleidomastoid where the upper third meets the middle third (age <20yrs). Due to non-disappearance of the cervical sinus (where 2nd branchial arch grows down over 3rd and 4th). Lined by squamous epithelium, their fluid contains cholesterol crystals. Treat by excision. There may be communication with the pharynx in the form of a fistula. • If lump in the supero-posterior area of the anterior triangle, is it a *parotid tumour* (more likely if >40yrs)? • *Laryngoceles* are an uncommon cause of anterior triangle lumps. They are painless and may be made worse by blowing. These cysts are classified as external, internal, or mixed, and may be associated with laryngeal cancer. If pulsatile may be: • *Carotid artery aneurysm*, • *Tortuous carotid artery*, or • *Carotid body tumours* (chemodectoma). These are very rare, move from side to side but not up and down, and splay out the carotid bifurcation. They are usually firm and occasionally soft and pulsatile. They do not usually cause bruits. They may be bilateral, familial, and malignant (5%). Suspect in any mass just anterior to the upper third of sternomastoid. Diagnose by duplex USS (splaying at the carotid bifurcation) or digital computer angiography. *R:* Extirpation by vascular surgeon.

Posterior triangle: (Behind sternocleidomastoid, in front of trapezius, above clavicle.) • *Cervical ribs* may intrude into this area. These are enlarged costal elements from C7 vertebra. The majority are asymptomatic but can cause Raynaud's syndrome by compressing subclavian artery and neurological symptoms (eg wasting of 1st dorsal interosseous) from pressure on lower trunk of the brachial plexus. • *Pharyngeal pouches* can protrude into the posterior triangle on swallowing (usually left-sided). • *Cystic hygromas* (usually infants) arise from jugular lymph sac. These macrocystic lymphatic malformations transilluminate brightly. Treat by surgery or hypertonic saline sclerosant injection. Recurrence can be troublesome. • *Pancoast's tumour* (see p722). • *Subclavian artery aneurysm* will be pulsatile.



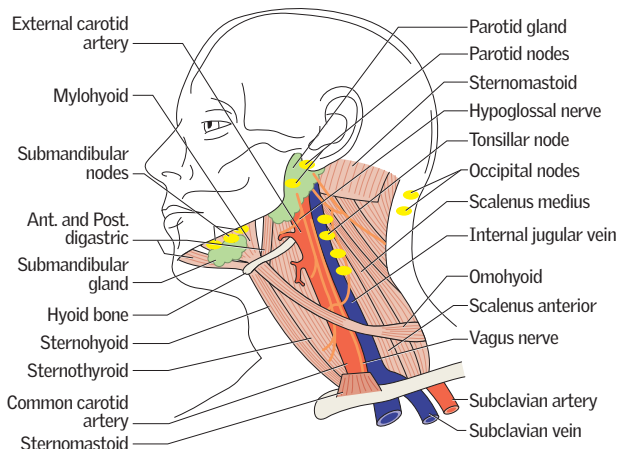


Fig 1. Important structures in the head and neck.

Salivary gland pathology

There are 3 pairs of major salivary glands: parotid, submandibular, and sublingual (there are many minor glands). **History:** Lumps; swelling related to food; pain. **Examination:** Note external swelling; look for secretions; bimanual palpation for stones. Examine VIIth nerve and regional lymph nodes. **Cytology:** This may be ascertained by FNA.

Acute swelling Think of mumps and HIV. **Recurrent unilateral pain and swelling** is likely to be from a stone. 80% are submandibular. The classical story is of pain and swelling on eating—with a red, tender, swollen, but uninfected gland. The stone may be seen on plain x-ray or by sialography (fig 2). Distal stones are removed via the mouth but deeper stones may require excision of the gland. **Chronic bilateral symptoms** may coexist with dry eyes and mouth and autoimmune disease, eg hypothyroidism, Mikulicz's or Sjögren's syndrome (p720 & p724)—also bulimia. **Fixed swelling** may be from a tumour/ALL (fig 5, p349), sarcoid, amyloid, Wegener's^a syndrome, or be idiopathic.



Fig 2. Normal sialogram of the submandibular gland. Wharton's (submandibular) duct opens into the mouth near the frenulum of the tongue.

Salivary gland tumours '80% are in the parotid, 80% of these are pleomorphic adenomas, 80% of these are in the superficial lobe.' Deflection of the ear outwards is a classic sign. ▶ Remove any salivary gland swelling for assessment if present for >1 month. VIIth nerve palsy means malignancy.

Benign or malignant	Malignant	Malignant
Cystadenolymphoma	Mucoepidermoid	Squamous or adeno ca
Pleomorphic adenoma	Acinic cell	Adenoid cystic ca

Pleomorphic adenomas often present in middle age and grow slowly. Remove by superficial parotidectomy. Adenolymphomas (Warthin's tumour): usually older men; soft; treat by enucleation. Carcinomas: rapid growth; hard fixed mass; pain; facial palsy. Treatment: surgery + radiotherapy.

If the thyroid is enlarged (=goitre), ask yourself: **1** Is the thyroid diffusely enlarged or nodular? **2** Is the patient euthyroid, thyrotoxic (p210), or hypothyroid (p212)?

Diffuse goitre: *Causes:* Endemic (iodine deficiency); congenital; secondary to goitrogens (substances that ↓ iodine uptake); acute thyroiditis (de Quervain's); physiological (pregnancy/puberty); autoimmune (Graves' disease; Hashimoto's thyroiditis).

Nodular goitre: • **Multinodular goitre (MNG):** The most common goitre in the UK. 50% who present with a single nodule actually have MNG. Patients are usually euthyroid, but may become hyperthyroid ('toxic'). MNG may be retro- or substernal. Hypothyroidism and malignancy within MNG are rare. Plummer's disease is hyperthyroidism with a single toxic nodule (uncommon). • **Fibrotic goitre:** Eg Reidel's thyroiditis. • **Solitary thyroid nodule:** See MINIBOX; ~10% are malignant.

Investigations • Do T_3 , T_4 and TSH • Thyroid autoantibodies (p208, eg if Hashimoto's/Graves suspected) • CXR with thoracic inlet view (tracheal goitres and metastases?) • USS (solid, cystic, complex or part of a group of lumps) • Radionuclide scans may show malignant lesions as hypofunctioning or 'cold', whereas a hyperfunctioning 'hot' lesion suggests adenoma • FNA (fine-needle aspiration) and cytology on the fluid. ▶ No clinical/lab test good enough to tell for sure if follicular neoplasms found on FNA are benign, so refer for surgery.⁸⁶

Single thyroid nodule

- Cyst
- Adenoma
- Malignancy
- Discrete nodule in multinodular goitre

What should you do if high-resolution ultrasound shows palpable nodules?

Such thyroid nodules can usually be observed provided they are:

- <1cm across (which accounts for most; ultrasound can detect lumps <2mm; such 'incidentalomas' occur in 46% of routine autopsies) and are asymptomatic.
- There is no past history of thyroid cancer or radiation.
- No family history of medullary cancer (if present, do USS-guided FNA).

Thyroid cancer⁸⁷

- 1 Papillary:** (60%). Often in younger patients. Spread: lymph nodes & lung (jugulo-digastric node metastasis is the so-called lateral aberrant thyroid). **R:** total thyroidectomy to remove non-obvious tumour ± node excision ± radioiodine (^{131}I) to ablate residual cells. Give thyroxine to suppress TSH. Prognosis: better if young & ♀.
- 2 Follicular:** (≤25%). Occur in middle-age & spreads early via blood (bone, lungs). Well-differentiated. **R:** total thyroidectomy + T_4 suppression + radioiodine ablation.
- 3 Medullary:** (5%). Sporadic (80%) or part of MEN syndrome (p215). May produce calcitonin which can be used as a tumour marker. They do not concentrate iodine. ▶ Perform a phaeochromocytoma screen pre-op. **R:** thyroidectomy + node clearance. External beam radiotherapy should be considered to prevent regional recurrence.
- 4 Lymphoma:** (5%). ♀:♂≈3:1. May present with stridor or dysphagia. Do full staging pre-treatment (chemoradiotherapy). Assess histology for mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) origin (associated with a good prognosis).
- 5 Anaplastic:** Rare. ♀:♂≈3:1. Elderly, poor response to any treatment. In the absence of unresectable disease, excision + radiotherapy may be tried.

Thyroid surgery Indications: Pressure symptoms, relapse hyperthyroidism after >1 failed course of drug treatment, carcinoma, cosmetic reasons, symptomatic patients planning pregnancy. Render euthyroid pre-op with antithyroid drugs (but stop 10 days prior to surgery as these increase vascularity). Check vocal cords by indirect laryngoscopy pre- and post-op.

Complications: See also p582. **Early:** Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy; haemorrhage ▶ if compresses airway, instantly remove sutures for evacuation of clot; hypoparathyroidism (check plasma Ca^{2+} daily; there is commonly a transient drop in serum concentration); ▶ thyroid storm (symptoms of severe hyperthyroidism—see p844). **Late:** Hypothyroidism; recurrent hyperthyroidism.



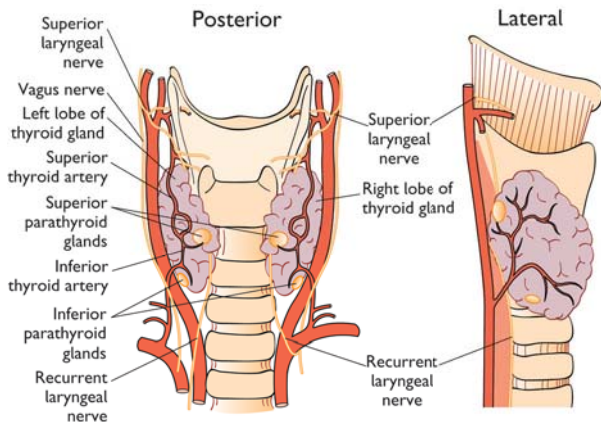


Fig 1. The anatomy of the region of the thyroid gland. The important structures that must be considered when operating on the thyroid gland include:

- Recurrent laryngeal nerve
- Superior laryngeal nerve
- Parathyroid glands
- Trachea
- Common carotid artery
- Internal jugular vein (not depicted—see [fig 3](#)).

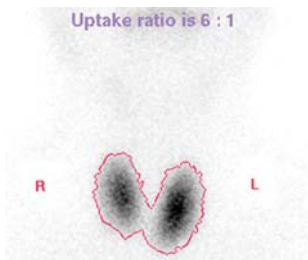


Fig 2. Radionuclide study of the thyroid showing changes consistent with Graves' disease (see also *hot and cold nodules* (p209) and *nuclear medicine*, p752). There is increased uptake of the radionuclide trace diffusely throughout both lobes of the gland (uptake ratio =6:1).

Image courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.

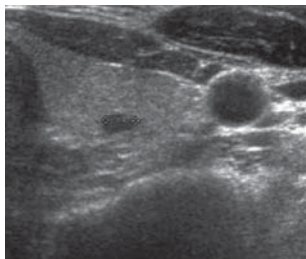


Fig 3. Transverse ultrasound of the left lobe of the thyroid showing a small low-reflectivity cyst within higher-reflectivity thyroid tissue. Note the proximity to the gland of the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein (the latter compressed slightly by pressure from the probe), both seen beneath the body of sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Image courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.

Epidemiology Affects 1 in 9 ♀; ~40,000 new cases per year in UK (incidence increasing). Rare in men (~1% of all breast cancers).

Risk factors Risk is related to family history, age and uninterrupted oestrogen exposure, hence: nulliparity; 1st pregnancy >30yrs old, early menarche; late menopause; HRT; obesity; BRCA genes (p524); not breastfeeding; past breast cancer (metachronous rate ~2%, synchronous rate ~1%).

Pathology Non-invasive ductal carcinoma-*in-situ* (DCIS) is premalignant and seen as microcalcification on mammography (unifocal or widespread). Non-invasive lobular carcinoma is rarer and tends to be multifocal. Invasive ductal carcinoma is most common (~70%) whereas invasive lobular carcinoma accounts for 10–15% of breast cancers. Medullary cancers (~5%) tend to affect younger patients while colloid/mucoid (~2%) tend to affect the elderly. Others: papillary, tubular, adenoid-cystic and Paget's (p722). 60–70% of breast cancers are oestrogen receptor +ve, conveying better prognosis. ~30% over-express HER2 (growth factor receptor gene) associated with aggressive disease and poorer prognosis.

Investigations (See p66 for history & examination.) ▶ All lumps should undergo 'triple' assessment: Clinical examination + histology/cytology + mammography/ultrasound; see fig 1.

Staging: *Stage 1:* Confined to breast, mobile *Stage 2:* Growth confined to breast, mobile, lymph nodes in ipsilateral axilla *Stage 3:* Tumour fixed to muscle (but not chest wall), ipsilateral lymph nodes matted and may be fixed, skin involvement larger than tumour *Stage 4:* Complete fixation of tumour to chest wall, distant metastases. Also **TNM staging:** (p527) T1 <2cm, T2 2–5cm, T3 >5cm, T4 Fixity to chest wall or *peau d'orange*; N1 Mobile ipsilateral nodes; N2 Fixed nodes; M1 Distant metastases.

Treating stage 1-2 cancer •**Surgery:** Removal of tumour by wide local excision (WLE) or mastectomy ± breast reconstruction + axillary node sampling/surgical clearance or sentinel node biopsy (BOX). •**Radiotherapy:** Recommended for all patients with invasive cancer after WLE. Risk of recurrence decreases from 30% to <10% at 10yrs and increases overall survival.⁸⁸ Axillary radiotherapy used if lymph node +ve on sampling and surgical clearance not performed (↑ risk of lymphoedema and brachial plexopathy). SE: pneumonitis, pericarditis and rib fractures. •**Chemotherapy:** Adjuvant chemotherapy improves survival & reduces recurrence in most groups of women (consider in all except excellent prognosis patients), eg epirubicin + 'CMF' (cyclophosphamide + methotrexate + 5-FU). Neoadjuvant chemotherapy has shown no difference in survival but may facilitate breast-conserving surgery. •**Endocrine agents:** Aim to ↓ oestrogen activity and are used in oestrogen receptor (ER) or progesterone receptor (PR) +ve disease. The ER blocker *tamoxifen* is widely used, eg 20mg/d PO for 5yrs post-op (may rarely cause uterine cancer so warn to report vaginal bleeding).⁸⁹ Aromatase inhibitors (eg *anastrozole*) targeting peripheral oestrogen synthesis are also used (may be better tolerated). They are only used if post-menopausal. If pre-menopausal and an ER+ve tumour, ovarian ablation (via surgery or radiotherapy) or GnRH analogues (eg *goserelin*) ↓ recurrence and ↑ survival. •**Support:** Breastcare nurses •**Reconstruction options:** eg tissue expanders/implants, latissimus dorsi flap, TRAM (transverse rectus abdominis myocutaneous) flap.

Treating distant disease (Stage 3–4) Long-term survival is possible and median survival is >2yrs. Staging investigations should include CXR, bone scan, liver USS, CT/MRI or PET-CT (p752) + LFTs and Ca²⁺. Radiotherapy (p530) to painful bony lesions (*bisphosphonates*, p696, may ↓ pain and fracture risk). *Tamoxifen* is often used in ER+ve; if relapse after initial success, consider chemotherapy. *Trastuzumab* should be given for HER2 +ve tumours, in combination with chemotherapy. CNS surgery for solitary (or easily accessible) metastases may be possible; if not—radiotherapy. Get specialist help for arm lymphoedema (try decongestive methods first).^{NICE}

Preventing deaths •Promote awareness •**Screening:** 2-view mammography every 3yrs for women aged 47–73 in UK has ↓ breast cancer deaths by 30% in women >50yrs.



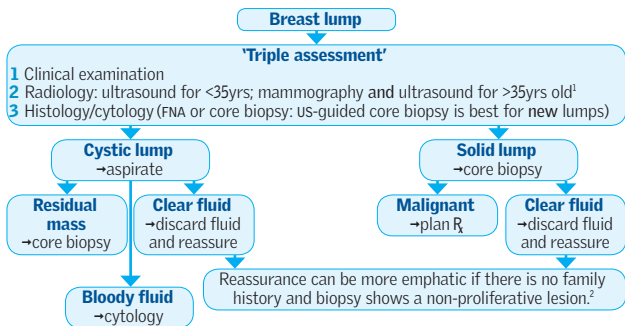


Fig 1. Triple assessment and investigation of a breast lump.

Sentinel node biopsy

Decreases needless axillary clearances in lymph node -ve patients.⁹⁰

- Patent blue dye and/or radiocolloid injected into periareolar area or tumour.
- A gamma probe/visual inspection is used to identify the sentinel node.
- The sentinel node is biopsied and sent for histology ± immunohistochemistry.

Trials suggest sentinel node identified in 90% of patients. False-negative rates are 9-14% (drop to <5% as surgeons become more experienced).

Prognostic factors in breast cancer

Tumour size, grade, lymph node status, ER/PR status, presence of vascular invasion all help assess prognosis. Nottingham Prognostic Index (NPI) is widely used to predict survival and risk of relapse, and to help select appropriate adjuvant systemic therapy:³ $NPI = 0.2 \times \text{tumour size (cm)} + \text{histological grade} + \text{nodal status}$.

If treated with surgery alone, 10yr survival rates are: NPI <2.4: 95%; NPI 2.4-3.4: 85%; NPI 3.4-4.4: 70%; NPI 4.4-5.4: 50%; NPI >5.4: 20%.

Benign breast disease⁹¹

Fibroadenoma: Usually presents <30yrs but can occur up to menopause. Benign overgrowth of collagenous mesenchyme of one breast lobule. Firm, smooth, mobile lump. Painless. May be multiple. ½ regress, ½ stay the same, ½ get bigger. Rx: Observation and reassurance, but if in doubt refer for USS (usually conclusive) ± FNA. Surgical excision if large.

Breast cysts: Common >35yrs, esp. perimenopausal. Benign, fluid-filled rounded lump. Not fixed to surrounding tissue. Occasionally painful. Rx: Diagnosis confirmed on aspiration (perform only if trained).

Infective mastitis/breast abscesses: Infection of mammary duct often associated with lactation (usually *S. aureus*). Abscess presents as painful hot swelling of breast segment. Rx: Antibiotics. Open incision or percutaneous drainage if abscess.

Duct ectasia: Typically around menopause. Ducts become blocked and secretions stagnate. Present with nipple discharge (green/brown/bloody) ± nipple retraction ± lump. Refer for confirmation of diagnosis. Usually no Rx needed.

Fat necrosis: Fibrosis and calcification after injury to breast tissue. Scarring results in a firm lump. Refer for triple assessment. No Rx once diagnosis confirmed.

¹ US is more accurate at detecting invasive breast cancer, though mammography remains most accurate at detecting ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS). MRI is used in the assessment of multifocal/bilateral disease and patients with cosmetic implants who are identified as high risk.

² There is a relatively trisk of malignancy if there is atypical hyperplasia or a proliferative lesion.⁹²

³ Nodal status is scored 1-3: 1 = node -ve; 2 = 1-3 nodes +ve; 3 = >3 nodes +ve for breast cancer. Histological grade is also scored 1-3.

As with any mass (see p596), determine size, site, shape, and surface. Find out if it is pulsatile and if it is mobile. Examine supraclavicular and inguinal nodes. Is the lump ballotable (like bobbing an apple up and down in water)?

Right iliac fossa masses:

- Appendix mass/abscess
- Caecal carcinoma
- Crohn's disease
- Pelvic mass (see below)
- Intussusception
- TB mass
- Amoebic abscess
- Actinomycosis (p421)
- Transplanted kidney
- Kidney malformation
- Tumour in an undescended testis

Abdominal distension Flatus, fat, fluid, faeces, or fetus (p57)? Fluid may be outside the gut (ascites) or sequestered in bowel (obstruction; ileus). To demonstrate ascites elicit signs of a fluid thrill and/or shifting dullness (p60).

Causes of ascites:

- Malignancy*
- Infections*—esp TB
- ↓Albumin (eg nephrosis)
- CCF; pericarditis
- Pancreatitis*
- Myxoedema

Ascites with portal hypertension:

- Cirrhosis
- Budd-Chiari syndrome* (p710)
- IVC or portal vein thrombosis
- Portal nodes

Tests: Aspirate ascitic fluid (paracentesis, p778–779) for cytology, culture, and protein level ($\geq 30\text{g/L}$ in diseases marked*); ultrasound.

Left upper quadrant mass Is it spleen, stomach, kidney, colon, pancreas, or a rare cause (eg neurofibroma)? Pancreatic cysts may be true (congenital; cystadenomas; retention cysts of chronic pancreatitis; cystic fibrosis) or pseudocysts (fluid in lesser sac from acute pancreatitis).

Splenomegaly Causes are often said to be infective, haematological, neoplastic, etc, but grouping by associated feature is more useful clinically:

Splenomegaly with fever	With lymphadenopathy	With purpura
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infection^{HS} (malaria, SBE/IE hepatitis^{HS}, EBV^{HS}, TB, CMV, HIV) • Sarcoid; malignancy^{HS} 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Glandular fever^{HS} • Leukaemias; lymphoma • Sjögren's syndrome 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Septicaemia; typhus • DIC; amyloid^{HS} • Meningococcaemia
With arthritis	With ascites	With a murmur
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sjögren's syndrome • Rheumatoid arthritis; SLE • Infection, eg Lyme (p430) • Vasculitis/Behçet's (p558) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carcinoma • Portal hypertension^{HS} 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SBE/IE • Rheumatic fever • Hypereosinophilia • Amyloid^{HS} (p364)
With anaemia	With weight↓ + CNS signs	Massive splenomegaly
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sickle-cell^{HS}; thalassaemia^{HS} • Leishmaniasis^{HS}; leukaemia^{HS} • Pernicious anaemia (p328) • POEMS syn. (p212) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancer; lymphoma • TB; arsenic poisoning • Paraproteinaemia^{HS} 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Malaria (hyper-reactivity after chronic exposure) • Myelofibrosis; CML^{HS} • Gaucher's syndrome^{HS} • Leishmaniasis

^{HS}=causes of hepatosplenomegaly.

Smooth hepatomegaly Hepatitis, CCF, sarcoidosis, early alcoholic cirrhosis (a small liver is typical later); tricuspid incompetence (→ pulsatile liver).

Craggy hepatomegaly Secondaries or 1° hepatoma. (Nodular cirrhosis typically causes a small, shrunken liver, not an enlarged craggy one.)

Pelvic masses Is it truly pelvic?—Yes, if by palpation you cannot get 'below it'.

Investigating lumps There is much to be said for performing an early CT to save time and money compared with leaving the test to be the last in a long chain. If unavailable, **ultrasound** is the first test (transvaginal approach may be useful). **Others:** IVU; liver and spleen radioisotope scans; Mantoux test (p398). Routine tests: FBC (with film); ESR; U&E; LFT; proteins; Ca^{2+} ; CXR; AXR; biopsy—a tissue diagnosis may be made using a fine needle guided by ultrasound or CT control. MRI also has a role.

Pelvic masses

- Fibroids
- Fetus
- Bladder
- Ovarian cysts or malignancies

The first successful laparotomy...

In 1809 an American surgeon by the name of Ephraim McDowell performed an astonishing operation: the first successful elective laparotomy for an abdominal tumour. It was an ovariectomy for an ovarian mass in a 44-year-old who, prior to physical examination by McDowell, was believed to be gravid. Not only was this feat performed in the age before anaesthesia and antisepsis, but it was also performed on a table in the front room of McDowell's Kentucky home, at that time on the frontier of the West in the United States. His account of the operation makes fascinating reading.⁹³ Whilst the strength of his diagnostic convictions combined with his speed and skill at operating is to be admired (the operation took 25 minutes), there is an even more laudable part played in this story. The patient, Mrs Jane Todd-Crawford, was fully willing to be involved with what can only be described as experimental surgery in the face of uncertainty. She defied pain simply by reciting psalms and hymns, and was back at home within 4 weeks with no complications. We would be well served in remembering the commitment of Mrs Todd-Crawford as most exceptional. In the rush and hurry of our daily tasks perhaps it is all too easy to forget that the undertaking of surgery today may be no less fear-provoking for patients than it was 200 years ago.



Someone who becomes acutely ill and in whom symptoms and signs are chiefly related to the abdomen has an acute abdomen. Prompt laparotomy is sometimes essential: repeated examination is the key to making the decision.

Clinical syndromes that usually require laparotomy

1 Rupture of an organ (Spleen, aorta, ectopic pregnancy) Shock is a leading sign—see TABLE for assessment of blood loss. Abdominal swelling may be seen. Any history of trauma: blunt trauma → spleen; penetrating trauma → liver. Delayed rupture of the spleen may occur weeks after trauma. Peritonism may be mild.

2 Peritonitis (Perforation of peptic ulcer/duodenal ulcer, diverticulum, appendix, bowel, or gallbladder) Signs: prostration, shock, lying still, +ve cough test (p62), tenderness (± rebound/percussion pain, p62), board-like abdominal rigidity, guarding, and no bowel sounds. Erect CXR may show gas under the diaphragm (fig 2). NB: acute pancreatitis (p638) causes these signs, but does not require a laparotomy so don't be caught out and ▶ *always check serum amylase*.

Syndromes that may not require a laparotomy

Local peritonitis: Eg diverticulitis, cholecystitis, salpingitis, and appendicitis (the latter will need surgery). If abscess formation is suspected (swelling, swinging fever, and WCC↑) do ultrasound or CT. Drainage can be percutaneous (ultrasound or CT-guided), or by laparotomy. Local peritoneal inflammation can cause localized ileus with a 'sentinel loop' of intraluminal gas visible on plain AXR (p743).

Colic is a regularly waxing and waning pain, caused by muscular spasm in a hollow viscus, eg gut, ureter, salpinx, uterus, bile duct, or gallbladder (in the latter, pain is often dull and constant). Colic, unlike peritonitis, causes restlessness and the patient may well be pacing around when you go to see him!

Obstruction of the bowel See p612.

Tests U&E; FBC; amylase; LFT; CRP; ABG (is there mesenteric ischaemia?); urinalysis. Erect CXR (fig 2), AXR may show Rigler's sign (p742). Laparoscopy may avert open surgery. CT can be helpful provided it is readily available and causes no delay (p746-747); USS may identify perforation or free fluid immediately, but appropriate performer training is important.

Pre-op ▶ Don't rush to theatre. Anaesthesia compounds shock, so resuscitate properly first (p805) unless blood being lost faster than can be replaced, eg ruptured ectopic pregnancy, (OHCS p262), aneurysm leak (p656), trauma.

Plan: Bed rest—then:

- Treat shock (p804)
- Crossmatch/group and save
- Blood culture
- Antibiotics¹
- Relieve pain (p576)
- IVI (0.9% saline)
- Plain abdominal film
- CXR if peritonitic or >50yrs
- ECG if >50yrs
- Consent
- NBM

The medical acute abdomen Irritable bowel syndrome (p276) is the chief cause, so always ask about episodes of pain associated with loose stools, relieved by defecation, bloating, and urgency (but not blood—this may be UC). Other causes:

▶▶ Myocardial infarction	Pneumonia (p160)	Sickle-cell crisis (p335)
Gastroenteritis or UTI	Thyroid storm (p844)	Phaeochromocytoma (p846)
Diabetes mellitus/DKA (p198)	Zoster (p400)	Malaria (p394)
Bornholm disease (p376)	Tuberculosis (p398)	Typhoid fever (p426)
Pneumococcal peritonitis	Porphyria (p706)	Cholera (p426)
Henoch-Schönlein (p716)	Narcotic addiction	<i>Yersinia enterocolitica</i> (p422)
Tabes dorsalis (p431)	PAN (p558)	Lead colic

Hidden diagnoses ▶▶ Mesenteric ischaemia (p622), ▶▶ acute pancreatitis (p638) and ▶▶ a leaking AAA (p656) are the *Unterseebooten* of the acute abdomen—unsuspected, undetectable unless carefully looked for, and underestimatedly deadly. They may have non-specific symptoms and signs that are surprisingly mild, so always think of them when assessing the acute abdomen and hopefully you will 'spot' them! ▶ Finally: *always exclude pregnancy (± ectopic?) in females*.

1 Give antibiotics if peritonitic, eg cefuroxime 1.5g/8h IV + metronidazole 500mg/8h IV/PR.

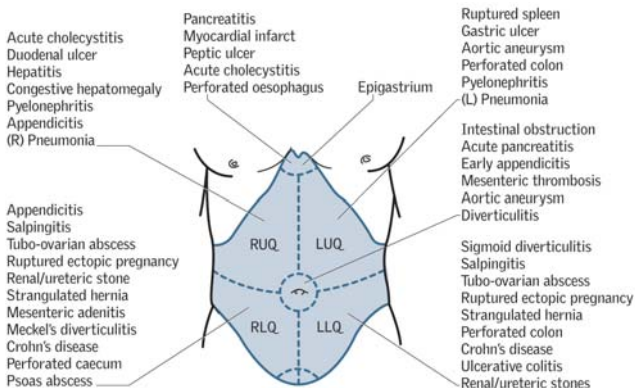


Fig 1. Causes of abdominal pain.

Assessing hypovolaemia from blood loss

The most likely cause of shock in a surgical patient is hypovolaemia (but don't forget the other causes—p804). The chief physiological parameters for assessing shock assess target organ perfusion rather than the direct measurement of BP and pulse, which may be 'normal' in one individual and yet totally abnormal for another. The most perfused organs in a normal state are the kidney, brain, and skin, so check **urine output**, **GCS** and **capillary refill (CR)**. ► *The best quick test is: "do you feel dizzy if you sit up?"*

Of course, BP, pulse, and respirations are still **vital signs**, but the message here is: ► treat suspected shock rather than wait for BP to fall. When there is any blood loss (eg a trauma situation), assess the status of the following:

Parameter	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV
Blood loss	<750mL	750–1500mL	1500–2000mL	>2000mL
	<15%	15–30%	30–40%	>40%
Pulse	<100bpm	>100bpm	>120bpm	>140bpm
BP	↔	↔	↓	↓
Pulse pressure	↔ or ↑	↓	↓	↓
Respirations	14–20/min	20–30/min	30–40/min	>35/min
Urine output	>30mL/h	20–30mL/h	5–15mL/h	Negligible
Mental state	Slightly anxious	Anxious	Confused →	→ Lethargic
Fluid to give	Crystalloid	Crystalloid	Crystalloid + blood	

Assumes a body mass of 70kg and a circulating blood volume of 5L.

Reproduced with permission from American Col. of Surgeons' Committee on Trauma, Advanced Trauma Life Support® for Doctors (ATLS®) Student Manual 7e, Chicago: Am Coll Surg, 2004.



Fig 2. Erect CXR showing air beneath the right hemidiaphragm, indicating presence of a pneumoperitoneum. **Causes:**

- Perforation of the bowel (visible only in 75%)
- Gas-forming infection, eg *C. perfringens*
- Iatrogenic, eg open or laparoscopic surgery (gas under the diaphragm can be still detected on CXR up to 10 days post-op)
- *Per vaginam* (prolonged intercourse)
- Interposition of bowel between liver and diaphragm

Image courtesy of Mr P. Paraskeva.

Incidence Most common surgical emergency (lifetime incidence = 6%). Can occur at any age, though highest incidence is between 10–20yrs. It is rare before age 2 because the appendix is cone shaped with a larger lumen.

Pathogenesis Gut organisms invade the appendix wall after lumen obstruction by lymphoid hyperplasia, faecolith, or filarial worms. This leads to oedema, ischaemic necrosis and perforation. There may be impaired ability to prevent invasion, brought about by improved hygiene & less exposure to pathogens (the 'hygiene hypothesis').

Symptoms Classically periumbilical pain that moves to the RIF (see MINIBOX). Anorexia is an important feature; vomiting is rarely prominent—**pain normally precedes vomiting in the surgical abdomen**. Constipation is usual. Diarrhoea may occur.

Special tests Rovsing's sign (pain > in RIF than LIF when the LIF is pressed). Psoas sign (pain on extending hip if retrocaecal appendix). Cope sign (pain on flexion and internal rotation of right hip if appendix in close relation to obturator internus).

Investigations Blood tests may reveal neutrophil leucocytosis and elevated CRP. USS may help,⁹⁴ but the appendix is not always visualized.⁹⁵ CT has high diagnostic accuracy and is useful if diagnosis is unclear: it reduces -ve appendicectomy rate, but may cause fatal delay.⁹⁶

Variations in the clinical picture

- Inflammation in a retrocecal/retroperitoneal appendix (2.5%) may cause flank⁹⁷ or RUQ pain;⁹⁸ its only sign may be ↑ tenderness on the right on PR.
- The child with vague abdominal pain who will not eat their favourite food.
- The shocked, confused octogenarian who is not in pain.
- Appendicitis occurs in ~1/1000 pregnancies. It is not commoner, but mortality is higher, especially from 20wks' gestation. Perforation is commoner, and increases fetal mortality. Pain is often less well localized (may be RUQ), & signs of peritonism less obvious.

Hints

- If a child is anxious, use their hand to press their tummy—see also p629 for tips.
- Check for recent viral illnesses and lymphadenopathy—mesenteric adenitis?
- Don't start palpating in the RIF (makes it difficult to elicit pain elsewhere).
- Expect diagnosis to be wrong half the time. If diagnosis is uncertain re-examine often. A normal appendix is removed in up to 20% of patients.⁹⁹

Treatment Prompt **appendectomy**. **Antibiotics:** Metronidazole 500mg/8h + cefuroxime 1.5g/8h, 1 to 3 doses IV starting 1h pre-op, reduces wound infections. Give a longer course if perforated. **Laparoscopy:** Has diagnostic and therapeutic advantages (when done by an experienced surgeon), especially in women and the obese. It is not recommended in cases of suspected gangrenous perforation as the rate of abscess formation may be higher.¹⁰⁰

Complications

- **Perforation** is commoner if a faecolith is present¹⁰¹ and in young children, as the diagnosis is more often delayed.¹⁰² Perforation does not cause infertility in girls.¹⁰³
- **Appendix mass** may result when an inflamed appendix becomes covered with omentum. US/CT may help with diagnosis. Some advocate early surgery. Alternatively, initial conservative management—NBM and antibiotics. If the mass resolves, some perform an **interval** (ie delayed) **appendectomy**. Exclude a colonic tumour (laparotomy or colonoscopy), which can present as early as the 4th decade.
- **Appendix abscess** May result if an appendix mass fails to resolve but enlarges and the patient gets more unwell. Treatment usually involves drainage (surgical or percutaneous under US/CT-guidance). Antibiotics alone may bring resolution.

General signs

- Tachycardia
- Fever 37.5–38.5°C
- Furred tongue
- Lying still
- Coughing hurts (p62)
- Foetor ± flushing
- Shallow breaths

Signs in the RIF

- Guarding (p62)
- Rebound + percussion tenderness (p62)
- PR painful on right (sign of low-lying pelvic appendix)

ΔΔ

- Ectopic (▶▶ do a pregnancy test!)
- UTI (test urine!)
- Mesenteric adenitis
- Cystitis
- Cholecystitis
- Diverticulitis
- Salpingitis/PID
- Dysmenorrhoea
- Crohn's disease
- Perforated ulcer
- Food poisoning
- Meckel's diverticulum



Explaining the pattern of abdominal pain in appendicitis

Internal organs and the visceral peritoneum have no somatic innervation, so the brain attributes the visceral (splanchnic) signals to a physical location whose dermatome corresponds to the same entry level in the spinal cord. Importantly, there is no laterality to the visceral unmyelinated c-fibre pain signals, which enter the cord bilaterally and at multiple levels. Division of the gut according to embryological origin is the important determinant here:

Gut	Division points	Somatic referral	Arterial supply
Fore	Proximal to 2 nd part of duodenum	Epigastrium	Coeliac axis
Mid	Above to $\frac{2}{3}$ along transverse colon	Periumbilical	Superior mesenteric
Hind	Distal to above	Suprapubic	Inferior mesenteric

Early inflammation irritates the structure and walls of the appendix, so a colicky pain is referred to the mid-abdomen—classically periumbilical. As the inflammation progresses and irritates the parietal peritoneum (especially on examination!) the somatic, lateralized pain settles at McBurney's point, $\frac{2}{3}$ of the way along from the umbilicus to the right anterior superior iliac spine.

These principles also help us understand patterns of *referred pain*. In pneumonia, the T9 dermatome is shared by the lung and the abdomen. Also, irritation of the underside of the diaphragm (sensory innervation is from above through the phrenic nerve, C3–5) by an inflamed gallbladder or a subphrenic abscess refers pain to the right shoulder: dermatomes C3–5.

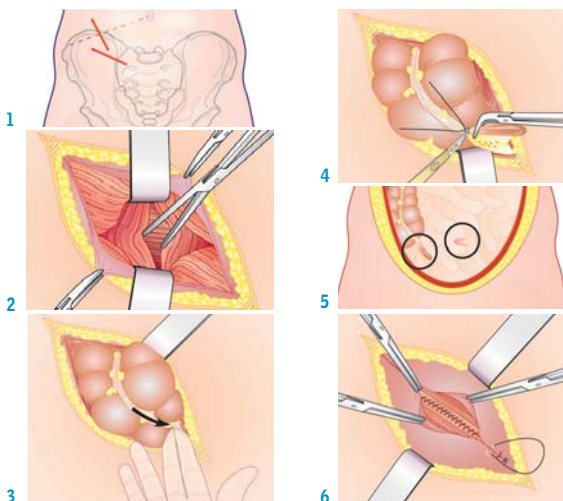


Fig 1. The open appendectomy. **1** Traditional approach is Gridiron incision over McBurney's point, at 90° to line from umbilicus to the anterior superior iliac spine. Lanz incision is more horizontal in Langer's lines (skin creases) and gives a better scar. **2** Divide subcutaneous fat and superficial/Scarpa's fascia. Fibres of external oblique, internal oblique and transversus abdominus divided with muscle splitting incision. **3** Incise pre-peritoneal fat and peritoneum to reveal caecum. Deliver caecum through incision. Appendix located at convergence of taenia coli. **4** Mesoappendix (blood vessels and mesentery) and appendix divided, ligated and excised (stump may be inverted). **5** In case of a normal-looking appendix, excise (may be histologically if not macroscopically inflamed); look for Meckel's diverticulum. **6** Wash, close in layers, dress wound.



Features of obstruction Vomiting, nausea and anorexia. Fermentation of the intestinal contents in established obstruction causes 'faeculent' vomiting ('faecal' vomiting is found when there is a colonic fistula with the proximal gut). Colic occurs early (may be absent in long-standing complete obstruction). Constipation need not be absolute (ie no faeces or flatus passed) if obstruction is high, though in distal obstruction nothing will be passed. Abdominal distension is more marked as the obstruction progresses. There are active, 'tinkling' bowel sounds.

Cardinal features of intestinal obstruction

- Vomiting
- Colicky pain
- Constipation
- Distension

The key decisions:

1 Is it obstruction of the small or large bowel? In small bowel obstruction, vomiting occurs earlier, distension is less, and pain is higher in the abdomen. The AXR plays a key role in diagnosis—see p742. In small bowel obstruction, AXR shows central gas shadows with *valvulae conniventes* that completely cross the lumen and no gas in the large bowel. In large bowel obstruction, pain is more constant; AXR shows peripheral gas shadows proximal to the blockage (eg in caecum) but not in the rectum, unless you have done a PR examination ► which is always essential! Large bowel *haustra* do not cross all the lumen's width. If the ileocaecal valve is competent (ie doesn't allow reflux) pain may be felt over a distended caecum (see below).

2 Is there an ileus or mechanical obstruction? Ileus is functional obstruction from reduced bowel motility (see box + p742). There is no pain and bowel sounds are absent.

3 Is the obstructed bowel simple/closed loop/strangulated? Simple: One obstructing point and no vascular compromise. Closed loop: Obstruction at two points (eg sigmoid volvulus, distension with competent ileocaecal valve) forming a loop of grossly distended bowel at risk of perforation (tenderness and perforation usually at caecum where the bowel is thinnest and widest; >12cm requires urgent decompression). Strangulated: Blood supply is compromised and the patient is more ill than you would expect. There is sharper, more constant and *localized* pain. Peritonism is the cardinal sign. There may be fever + WCC↑ with other signs of mesenteric ischaemia (p622).

Causes: small bowel

- Adhesions (p567)
- Hernias (p614)

Causes: large bowel

- Colon ca (p618)
- Constipation (p248)
- Diverticular stricture
- Volvulus
 - Sigmoid (see BOX)
 - Caecal

Rarer causes

- Crohn's stricture
- Gallstone ileus (p636)
- Intussusception (p628)
- TB (developing world)
- Foreign body

Management

• **General principles:** Cause, site, speed of onset, and completeness of obstruction determine definitive therapy: strangulation and large bowel obstruction require surgery; ileus and incomplete small bowel obstruction can be managed conservatively, at least initially.

• **Immediate action:** ► 'Drip and suck'—NGT and IV fluids to rehydrate and correct electrolyte imbalance (p680). Being NBM does not give adequate rest for the bowel because it can produce up to 9L of fluid/d. Also: analgesia, blood tests (inc. amylase, FBC, U&E), AXR, erect CXR, catheterize to monitor fluid status.

• **Further imaging:** Consider early CT if clinical and radiographic findings are inconclusive: it finds the cause and level of obstruction. It may show dilated, fluid-filled bowel and a transition zone at the site of obstruction (figs 1 & 2). There is a case for investigating the cause of large bowel obstruction by colonoscopy in some instances of suspected mechanical obstruction, though there is a danger of inducing perforation. Oral Gastrografin® can help identify partial small bowel obstruction (if contrast solution present in the colon within 24h it predicts conservative resolution).¹⁰⁴ It may also have mild therapeutic action against mechanical obstruction.

• **Surgery:** ► Strangulation needs emergency surgery, as does 'closed loop obstruction'. Stents may be used for obstructing large bowel malignancies either in palliation or as a bridge to surgery in acute obstruction (p618). Small bowel obstruction secondary to adhesions should rarely lead to surgery—see BOX, p583.



Paralytic ileus or pseudo-obstruction?

Paralytic ileus is adynamic bowel due to the absence of normal peristaltic contractions. Contributing factors include abdominal surgery, pancreatitis (or any localized peritonitis), spinal injury, hypokalaemia, hyponatraemia, uraemia, peritoneal sepsis and drugs (eg tricyclic antidepressants).

Pseudo-obstruction is like mechanical GI obstruction but with no cause for obstruction found. **Acute** colonic pseudo-obstruction is called Ogilvie's syndrome (p720), and clinical features are similar to that of mechanical obstruction.¹⁰⁵ Predisposing factors: puerperium; pelvic surgery; trauma; cardiorespiratory disorders.

Treatment: *Neostigmine* or colonoscopic decompression are sometimes useful. In chronic pseudo-obstruction weight loss from malabsorption is a problem.¹⁰⁶

Sigmoid volvulus

Sigmoid volvulus occurs when the bowel twists on its mesentery, which can produce severe, rapid, strangulated obstruction. There is a characteristic AXR with an 'inverted U' loop of bowel that looks a bit like a coffee bean. It tends to occur in the elderly, constipated and comorbid patient, and is often managed by sigmoidoscopy and insertion of a flatus tube. Sigmoid colectomy is sometimes required.

► If not treated successfully, it can progress to perforation and fatal peritonitis.

Volvulus of the stomach

Gastric volvulus is rare. Rotation is typically 180° left to right, about a line joining the relatively fixed pylorus and oesophagus. This creates a closed loop obstruction that can result in incarceration and strangulation. The classical triad of gastro-oesophageal obstruction may occur: vomiting (then retching), pain, and failed attempts to pass an NG tube. Regurgitation of saliva also occurs. Dysphagia and noisy gastric peristalsis (relieved by lying down) may occur in chronic volvulus.

Risk factors *Congenital:* Paraoesophageal hernia; congenital bands; bowel malformations; pyloric stenosis. *Acquired:* Gastric/oesophageal surgery.

Tests Look for gastric dilatation and a double fluid level on erect films.

Treatment If acutely unwell arrange prompt resuscitation and laparotomy. Laparoscopic management is possible.¹⁰⁷

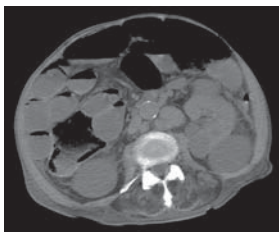


Fig 1. Unenhanced axial CT of the abdomen showing multiple loops of dilated, fluid-filled small bowel in a patient with small bowel obstruction.

Both images courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.



Fig 2. Axial CT of the abdomen post-oral contrast showing dilated loops of fluid and air-filled large bowel (contrast medium is in the small bowel). The cause or level of obstruction is not clear.



Definition The protrusion of a viscus or part of a viscus through a defect of the walls of its containing cavity into an abnormal position. **Terminology:** Hernias involving bowel are said to be **irreducible** if they cannot be pushed back into the right place. This does not mean that they are either necessarily obstructed or strangulated. **Incarceration** implies that the contents of the hernial sac are stuck inside by adhesions. Gastrointestinal hernias are **obstructed** if bowel contents cannot pass through them—the classical features of intestinal obstruction soon appear (p612). They are **strangulated** if ischaemia occurs—the patient becomes toxic and requires urgent surgery. Care must be taken when attempting reduction (see p616 for the technique) as it is possible to perform **reduction en masse**, pushing the strangulated bowel and hernial sac back into the abdominal cavity, but giving the initial appearance of successful reduction.

Inguinal hernia The commonest type (far more common in men), described on p616.

Femoral hernia Bowel enters the femoral canal, presenting as a mass in the upper medial thigh or above the inguinal ligament where it points down the leg, unlike an inguinal hernia which points to the groin. They occur more often in women especially in middle age and the elderly. They are likely to be irreducible and to strangulate due to the rigidity of the canal's borders. **Anatomy:** The neck of the hernia is felt inferior and lateral to the pubic tubercle (inguinal hernias are superior and medial to this point). The boundaries of the femoral canal are **anteriorly** the inguinal ligament; **medially** the lacunar ligament (and pubic bone); **laterally** the femoral vein (and iliopsoas); and **posteriorly** the pectineal ligament and pectineus. The canal contains fat and Cloquet's node. **Differential diagnosis:**¹⁰⁸ (see also p653) **1** Inguinal hernia **2** Saphena varix **3** An enlarged Cloquet's node (p619) **4** Lipoma **5** Femoral aneurysm **6** Psoas abscess. **Treatment:** Surgical repair is recommended. (*Herniotomy* is ligation and excision of the sac, *herniorrhaphy* is repair of the hernial defect.)

Paraumbilical hernias occur just above or below the umbilicus. Risk factors are obesity and ascites. Omentum or bowel herniates through the defect. Surgery involves repair of the rectus sheath (Mayo repair).

Epigastric hernias pass through linea alba above the umbilicus.

Incisional hernias follow breakdown of muscle closure after surgery (11–20%). If obese, repair is not easy. Mesh repair has ↓recurrence but ↑infection over sutures.¹⁰⁹

Spigelian hernias occur through the linea semilunaris at the lateral edge of the rectus sheath, below and lateral to the umbilicus.

Lumbar hernias occur through the inferior or superior lumbar triangles in the posterior abdominal wall.

Richter's hernias involve bowel wall only—not the whole lumen.

Maydl's hernias involve a herniating 'double loop' of bowel. The strangulated portion may reside as a single loop inside the abdominal cavity.

Littre's hernias are hernial sacs containing strangulated Meckel's diverticulum.

Obturator hernias occur through the obturator canal. Typically there is pain along the medial side of the thigh in a thin woman.

Sciatic hernias pass through the lesser sciatic foramen (a way through various pelvic ligaments). GI obstruction + a gluteal mass suggests this rare possibility.¹¹⁰

Sliding hernias contain a partially extraperitoneal structure (eg caecum on the right, sigmoid colon on the left). The sac does not completely surround the contents.

Other examples of hernias:

- Of the nucleus pulposus into the spinal canal (slipped disc).
- Of the uncus and hippocampal gyrus through the tentorium (tentorial hernia) in space-occupying lesions.
- Of brainstem and cerebellum through the foramen magnum (Arnold-Chiari, p708).
- Of the stomach through the diaphragm (hiatus hernia, p245).
- Of the terminal (intravesical) portion of the ureter into the bladder. This is a *ureterocele* and results from stenosis of the ureteral meatus.



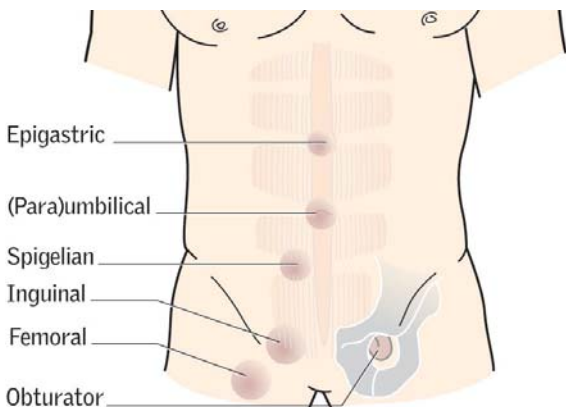


Fig 1. Some examples of hernias.

Abdominal wall defects in children

(see OHCS, p130)

Gastroschisis occurs with protrusion of the abdominal contents through a defect in the anterior abdominal wall to the right of the umbilicus. The protruding bowel is covered by a thin 'peel'. Prompt surgical repair is performed after cautious fluid resuscitation.¹¹¹ Concomitant congenital abnormalities are rare, but there is a 4% incidence of congenital heart defects.¹¹²

Exomphalos (also called *omphalocele*)¹ is associated with other congenital abnormalities, such as anencephaly, cardiac defects, hydrocephalus and spina bifida. In this condition the abdominal contents are found outside the abdomen, covered in a three-layer membrane consisting of peritoneum, Wharton's jelly and amnion. Surgical repair is less urgent than in gastroschisis because the bowel is protected by these membranes. The challenge of surgery is to fit the contents back into the relatively small abdominal cavity without compromising venous return and lung ventilation.

Inguinal hernias *Indirect* occur in ~4% of all male infants (due to patent *processus vaginalis*)—prematurity is a risk factor. They are uncommon in female infants and, if found, should prompt thoughts of testicular feminization. If the patent *processus vaginalis* contains peritoneal fluid only, then it is a *communicating hydrocele*. Surgical repair is required for both. Reinforcement of the posterior wall (eg with a mesh) is not needed as the internal ring has not been chronically dilated.

True umbilical hernias (3% of live births) are a result of a persistent defect in the transversalis fascia—the umbilical ring, through which the umbilical vessels passed to reach the fetus (more common in African-Caribbeans, trisomy 21 and congenital hypothyroidism). Surgical repair is rarely needed in children (3 in 1000) as most resolve by the age of 3.



¹ The *omphalos* is the centre-stone at the Temple of Apollo in Delphi, centre of the ancient world—hence its umbilical association. Here Apollo persuaded Pan (the god of wild places, music, and syrinxes, p520) to reveal the art of prophesy, without which we would be without our most mysterious tool: *prognosis*.

Indirect hernias pass through the internal inguinal ring and, if large, out through the external ring. Direct hernias push their way *directly* forward through the posterior wall of the inguinal canal, into a defect in the abdominal wall (Hesselbach's triangle; medial to the inferior epigastric vessels and lateral to the rectus abdominus). *Pre-disposing conditions:* males ($\sigma:\varphi\approx8:1$), chronic cough, constipation, urinary obstruction, heavy lifting, ascites, past abdominal surgery (eg damage to the iliohypogastric nerve during appendicectomy). There are 2 landmarks to identify: *The deep (internal) ring* may be defined as being the mid-point of the inguinal ligament, $\sim1\frac{1}{2}$ cm above the femoral pulse (which crosses the mid-inguinal point). *The superficial (external) ring* is a split in the external oblique aponeurosis just superior and medial to the pubic tubercle (the bony prominence forming the medial attachment of the inguinal ligament). Relations of the inguinal canal are:

- *Floor:* Inguinal ligament and lacunar ligament medially.
- *Roof:* Fibres of transversalis, internal oblique.
- *Anterior:* External oblique aponeurosis + internal oblique for the lateral $\frac{1}{3}$.
- *Posterior:* Laterally, transversalis fascia; medially, conjoint tendon.

Examination Look for previous scars; feel the other side (more common on the right); examine the external genitalia. Then ask: •Is the lump visible? If so, ask the patient to reduce it—if he cannot, make sure that it is not a scrotal lump. Ask him to cough. Appears **above and medial to the pubic tubercle**. •If no lump is visible, feel for a cough impulse. •Repeat the examination with the patient standing. *Distinguishing direct from indirect hernias:* This is loved by examiners but is of little clinical use—not least because repair is the same for both (see below). The best way is to reduce the hernia and occlude the deep (internal) ring with two fingers. Ask the patient to cough or stand—if the hernia is restrained, it is indirect; if not, it is direct. The 'gold standard' for determining the type of inguinal hernia is at surgery: direct hernias arise lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels; indirect hernias are medial.

Indirect hernias:	Direct hernias:	Femoral hernias:
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Common (80%)• Can strangulate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Less common (20%)• Reduce easily• Rarely strangulate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• More frequent in females• Frequently irreducible• Frequently strangulate

Irreducible hernias You may be called because a long-standing hernia is now irreducible and painful. It is always worth trying to reduce these yourself to prevent strangulation and necrosis (demanding prompt laparotomy). Learn how to do this from an expert, ie one of your patients who has been reducing his hernia for years. Then you will know how to act correctly when the emergency presents. Notice that such patients use the flat of the hand, directing the hernia from below, up towards the contralateral shoulder. Sometimes, as the hernia obstructs, reduction requires perseverance, which may be rewarded by a gurgle from the retreating bowel and a kiss from the attending spouse who had thought that surgery was inevitable.

Repairs Advise to diet (if over-weight) and stop smoking pre-op. Warn that hernias may recur. Mesh techniques (eg Lichtenstein repair) have replaced older methods. In mesh repairs, a polypropylene mesh reinforces the posterior wall. Recurrence rate is less than with other methods (eg $<2\%$ vs 10%). (ci: strangulated hernias, contamination with pus/bowel contents.) Local anaesthetic techniques and day-case 'ambulatory' surgery may halve the price of surgery. This is important because this is one of the most common operations ($>100,000$ per year in the UK). *Laparoscopic repair* gives similar recurrence rates.¹¹³ Methods include *transabdominal pre-peritoneal* (TAPP) in which the peritoneum is entered and the hernia repaired, and *totally extraperitoneal* (TEP), which decreases the risk of visceral injury. For benefits of laparoscopic surgery see p594.

Return to work: We used to advise 4 weeks' rest and convalescence over 10 weeks, but with new mesh or laparoscopic repairs, if comfortable, return to manual work (and driving) after ≤ 2 weeks is ok if all is well; explain this pre-operatively.



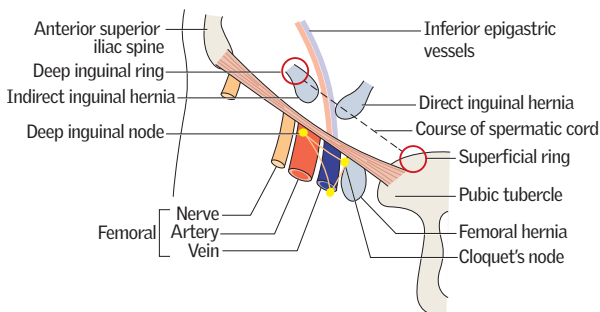


Fig 1. Anatomy of the inguinal canal.

The contents of the inguinal canal in the male

- The external spermatic fascia (from external oblique), cremasteric fascia (from internal oblique and transverses abdominus) and internal spermatic fascia (from transversalis fascia) covering the cord.
- The spermatic cord:
 - Vas deferens, obliterated processus vaginalis, and lymphatics
 - Arteries to the vas, cremaster, and testis
 - The pampiniform plexus and the venous equivalent of the above
 - The genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve and sympathetic nerves
- The ilioinguinal nerve, which enters the inguinal canal via the anterior wall and runs anteriorly to the cord.

NB: in the female the round ligament of the uterus is in place of the male structures. A hydrocele of the canal of Nuck is the female equivalent of a hydrocele of the cord.



This is the 3rd most common cancer and 2nd most common cause of UK cancer deaths (16,000 deaths/yr). Usually adenocarcinoma. 86% of presentations are in those >60yrs old.¹¹⁴ Lifetime UK incidence: $\sigma = 1:15$; $\phi = 1:19$.

Predisposing factors Neoplastic polyps (see below, & p525); IBD (uc and Crohn's); genetic predisposition (<8%), eg FAP and HNPCC (see p524); diet (low-fibre; tred and processed meat); t alcohol¹¹⁵; smoking¹¹⁶; previous cancer. **Prevention:** Aspirin $\geq 75\text{mg/d}$ reduces incidence and mortality—it is thought to inhibit polyp growth. Benefit \uparrow with duration of use and is greatest for proximal lesions. Widespread chemoprevention is not currently recommended due to gastrointestinal SEs.¹¹⁷

Presentation depends on site: **Left-sided:** Bleeding/mucus PR; altered bowel habit or obstruction (25%); tenesmus; mass PR (60%). **Right:** Weight \downarrow ; Hb \downarrow ; abdominal pain; obstruction less likely. **Either:** Abdominal mass; perforation; haemorrhage; fistula. See p532 for a guide to urgent referral criteria. See fig 1 for distribution.

Tests FBC (microcytic anaemia); faecal occult blood (FOB, see BOX); sigmoidoscopy; barium enema or colonoscopy (figs 2 & 3, p257), which can be done 'virtually' by CT (fig 1, p757); LFT, CT/MRI; liver USS. CEA (p535) may be used to monitor disease and effectiveness of treatment. If family history of FAP, refer for DNA test once >15yrs old.

Spread Local, lymphatic, by blood (liver, lung, bone) or transcoelomic. The TNM system (Tumour, Node, Metastases; p527) is most commonly used to stage disease and is largely replacing Dukes' classification (BOX).

Surgery aims to cure and may tsurvival times by up to 50% (eg in TME¹). •Right hemicolectomy for caecal, ascending or proximal transverse colon tumours. •Left hemicolectomy for tumours in distal transverse or descending colon. •Sigmoid colectomy for sigmoid tumours. •Anterior resection for low sigmoid or high rectal tumours. Anastomosis is achieved at the 1st operation—stapling devices work well.¹¹⁸

•Abdomino-perineal (AP) resection for tumours low in the rectum ($\leq 8\text{cm}$ from anus): permanent colostomy and removal of rectum and anus (but see p584 for total anorectal reconstruction). •Hartmann's procedure in emergency bowel obstruction, perforation or palliation. •Transanal endoscopic microsurgery allows local excision through a wide proctoscope in those unfit for major surgery. **Laparoscopic surgery** has revolutionized surgery for colon cancer. It is as safe as open surgery and there is no difference in overall survival or disease recurrence.¹¹⁹ **Endoscopic stenting** should be considered for palliation in malignant obstruction and as a bridge to surgery in acute obstruction. Stenting \downarrow need for colostomy, has less complications than emergency surgery, shortens intensive care and total hospital stays, and prevents unnecessary operations.¹²⁰ Surgery with liver resection may be curative if single-lobe hepatic metastases and no extrahepatic spread.¹²¹

Radiotherapy is mostly used in palliation for colonic cancer. It is occasionally used pre-op in rectal cancer to allow resection. Post-op radiotherapy is only used in patients with rectal tumours at high risk of local recurrence.

Chemotherapy Adjuvant chemotherapy reduces Dukes' c mortality by ~25%.¹²² In Dukes' B there is absolute survival benefit of 3–5%.¹²³ The FOLFOX regimen has become standard (5-FU, folinic acid and oxaliplatin). Chemotherapy is also used in palliation of metastatic disease. **Biological therapies** Bevacizumab (anti-VEGF antibody) improves survival when added to combination therapy in advanced disease.¹²⁴ Cetuximab and Panitumumab (anti-EGFR agents) improve response rate and survival in KRAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer.¹²⁵

Prognosis Overall 5yr survival is ~50% but is dependent on age and stage (see BOX1). Post-op anastomotic leakage is shown to tsurvival rates in otherwise potentially curative surgery.¹²⁶

Polyps are lumps that appear above the mucosa. **1 Inflammatory:** Ulcerative colitis, Crohn's, lymphoid hyperplasia. **2 Hamartomatous:** Juvenile polyps, Peutz-Jeghers (p722). **3 Neoplastic:** Tubular or villous adenomas: malignant potential, esp. if >2cm. Polyps should be biopsied and removed if they show malignant change. Most can be reached by flexible colonoscopy; diathermy can avoid morbidity of colectomy.



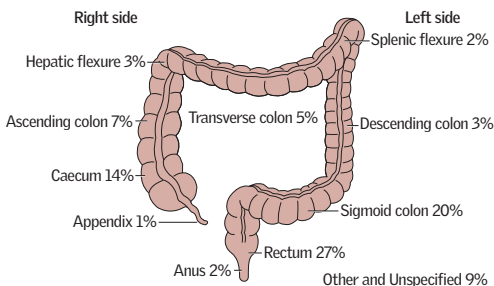


Fig 1. Distribution of colorectal carcinomas. These are averages: black females tend to have more proximal neoplasms. White men tend to have more distal neoplasms.

Dukes' classification for the staging of colorectal cancer

Stage	Description	Treated 5yr survival rate ¹²⁷
A	Limited to muscularis mucosae	93%
B	Extension through muscularis mucosae	77%
C	Involvement of regional lymph nodes	48%
D	Distant metastases	6.6%

See also TNM staging p527.

UK screening for colorectal cancer

The NHS Bowel Cancer Screening Programme¹²⁸ (introduced in 2006) offers screening every 2 years to all men and women aged 60–75 by using Faecal Occult Blood (FOB) home testing kits. FOB screening reduces the relative risk of death from colorectal cancer by 16%.^{129,130} The 11% increase in incidence rates since 2006 for people aged 60–69 is almost certainly due to the screening programme.¹¹⁴

Home test kits are used to sample 3 separate bowel motions and are returned for analysis. Approximately 2% of tests are positive and these patients are offered an appointment with a specialist nurse, plus further investigation (usually colonoscopy). The positive predictive value (p674) is 5–15%. There can be problems with 'acceptability' of home testing and also of high false positive rates (up to 10%).

In addition to this, the NHS is introducing a 'one-off' screening flexible sigmoidoscopy to all people in their 55th year. Trial results have shown the incidence of colorectal cancer in the intervention (screening) group is reduced by 33% and mortality from colorectal cancer is reduced by 43%. Number needed to screen to prevent one diagnosis (=191); or death (=489).¹³¹

Incidence of adenocarcinoma at the gastro-oesophageal junction is increasing in the West, though incidence of distal and body gastric carcinoma has fallen sharply. It remains a tumour notable for its gloomy prognosis and non-specific presentation.

Incidence 23/100,000/yr in the UK, but there are unexplained wide geographical variations; it is especially common in Japan, as well as Eastern Europe, China, and South America. $\sigma:\phi \approx 2:1$.

Pathology Borrmann classification: i) Polypoid ii) Excavating iii) Ulcerating and raised iv) Diffusely infiltrative. Some are confined to mucosa and submucosa—'early' gastric carcinoma.

Presentation Symptoms: Often non-specific. Dyspepsia (p59; for >1 month and age ≥ 50 yrs demands investigation), weight \downarrow , vomiting, dysphagia, anaemia. **Signs** suggesting incurable disease: epigastric mass, hepatomegaly; jaundice, ascites (p606); large left supraclavicular (Virchow's) node (=Troisier's sign); acanthosis nigricans (p564). Most patients in the West present with locally advanced (inoperable) or metastatic disease. **Spread** is local, lymphatic, blood-borne, and transcoelomic, eg to ovaries (Krukenberg tumour).

Tests Gastroscopy + multiple ulcer edge biopsies. **Aim to biopsy all gastric ulcers as even malignant ulcers may appear to heal on drug treatment.** Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) can evaluate depth of invasion; CT/MRI helps staging. Staging laparoscopy is recommended for locally advanced tumours. Cytology of peritoneal washings can help identify peritoneal metastases.¹³³

Treatment See p624 for a description of surgical resections. Partial gastrectomy may suffice for distal tumours. If more proximal, total gastrectomy may be needed. Combination chemotherapy (eg *epirubicin*, *cisplatin* and *5-fluorouracil*) appears to increase survival in advanced disease.¹³⁴ If given perioperatively in operable disease it improves survival compared to surgery alone.¹³⁵ Endoscopic mucosal resection is used for early tumours confined to the mucosa.¹³⁶ Surgical palliation is often needed for obstruction, pain, or haemorrhage. In locally advanced and metastatic disease, chemotherapy increases quality of life and survival.¹³⁷ Targeted therapies are likely to have an increasing role, eg *trastuzumab* for HER-2 positive tumours.

5yr survival <10% overall, but nearly 20% for patients undergoing radical surgery. The prognosis is much better for 'early' gastric carcinoma.

Associations

- Pernicious anaemia
- Blood group A
- *H. pylori* (p242)
- Atrophic gastritis
- Adenomatous polyps
- Lower social class
- Smoking
- Diet (high nitrate, high salt, pickling, low vitamin C)
- Nitrosamine exposure

Carcinoma of the oesophagus

(OHOncol p334)

Incidence Australia <5/100,000/yr; UK <9; Brittany >50; Iran >100. **Risk factors:** Diet, alcohol excess, smoking, achalasia, Plummer-Vinson syn. (p240), obesity, diet \downarrow in vit A&C, nitrosamine exposure, reflux oesophagitis \pm Barrett's oesophagus (p708). $\sigma:\phi \approx 5:1$.

Site 20% occur in the upper part, 50% in the middle, and 30% in the lower part. They may be squamous cell (proximal) or adenocarcinomas (distal; incidence rising).

Presentation Dysphagia; weight \downarrow ; retrosternal chest pain. **Signs from the upper third of the oesophagus:** Hoarseness; cough (may be paroxysmal if aspiration pneumonia). **AD:** See Dysphagia, p240.

Tests Oesophagoscopy with biopsy is the investigation of choice \pm EUS, CT/MRI for staging (fig 1), or laparoscopy if significant infra-diaphragmatic component. **Staging:** See TABLE.

Treatment Survival rates are poor with or without treatment. If localized T1/T2 disease, radical curative oesophagectomy may be tried. Pre-op chemotherapy (*cisplatin* + *5-FU*) for localized disease may improve survival, but causes some morbidity.¹³⁸ Surgery alone may be preferable.¹³⁹ If surgery is not indicated, then chemoradiotherapy may be better than radiotherapy alone.¹⁴⁰ Palliation in advanced disease aims to restore swallowing with chemo/radiotherapy, stenting, and laser use.



TNM staging in oesophageal cancer

(See also p527)

Spread of oesophageal cancer is direct, by submucosal infiltration and local spread—or to nodes, or, later, via the blood.

T_{is}	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	N_x	Nodes cannot be assessed
T1	Invading lamina propria/submucosa	N0	No node spread
T2	Invading muscularis propria	N1	Regional node metastases
T3	Invading adventitia	M0	No distant spread
T4	Invasion of adjacent structures	M1	Distant metastasis

Oesophageal rupture

Causes •*Iatrogenic*, eg endoscopy/biopsy/dilatation (accounts for 85–90% of perforations) •*Trauma*, eg penetrating injury/ingestion of foreign body •*Carcinoma* •*Boerhaave syndrome*—rupture due to violent vomiting •*Corrosive ingestion*.

Clinical features Odynophagia, tachypnoea, dyspnoea, fever, shock, surgical emphysema (a crackling sensation felt on palpating the skin over the chest or neck caused by air tracking from the lungs; $\Delta\Delta$: pneumothorax).

R Iatrogenic perforations are less prone to mediastinitis and sepsis and may be managed conservatively with NG tube, PPI and antibiotics. Others require resuscitation, PPI, antibiotics, antifungals and surgery (debridement of mediastinum and placement of T-tube for drainage and formation of a controlled oesophago-cutaneous fistula).

Bile duct and gallbladder cancers¹⁴¹

All are rare, have an overall poor prognosis and are difficult to diagnose. They account for ~3% of all GI cancers worldwide, but there is geographical variation (\uparrow in north-east Thailand, Japan, Korea and Eastern Europe). Most are adenocarcinomas. Primary sclerosing cholangitis (p266) is the commonest predisposing factor in the West. **Presentation:** Varies according to location and may include obstructive jaundice, pruritus, abdominal pain, weight loss and anorexia. **Investigations:** USS, CT, and ERCP. MRI has a role for determining extent of invasion in bile duct cancers.

Treatment

- **Bile duct cancer:** Surgical resection is the only potentially curative treatment yet ~80% present with inoperable disease. Palliation includes biliary stenting and chemotherapy.
- **Gallbladder cancer:** Again, radical surgery is the only chance of cure. 25% of patients with a porcelain gallbladder have cancer—prophylactic surgery should be considered. Palliative treatment of inoperable disease includes biliary stenting and chemotherapy.

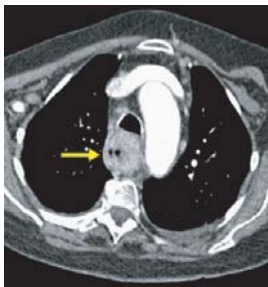


Fig 1. Axial CT of the chest after IV contrast medium showing concentric thickening of the oesophagus (arrow); the diagnosis here is oesophageal carcinoma. Loss of the fatty plane around the oesophagus suggests local invasion. Anterior to the oesophagus is the trachea and next to it is the arch of the aorta.

Image courtesy of Dr Stephen Golding.



There are 3 main types of bowel ischaemia: ► AF with abdominal pain should always prompt thoughts of mesenteric ischaemia.

1 Acute mesenteric ischaemia¹⁴² almost always involves the small bowel and may follow superior mesenteric artery (SMA) thrombosis or embolism, mesenteric vein thrombosis, or non-occlusive disease (see MINIBOX). Arterial thrombosis is becoming the commonest cause of acute ischaemia as embolism becomes rarer. Venous thrombosis is more common in younger patients with hypercoagulable states and tends to affect smaller lengths of bowel. Non-occlusive ischaemia occurs in low-flow states and usually reflects poor cardiac output, though there may be other factors such as recent cardiac surgery or renal failure.¹⁴³

Presentation is a classical clinical triad: ► Acute severe abdominal pain; no abdominal signs; rapid hypovolaemia→shock. Pain tends to be constant, central, or around the RIF. The degree of illness is often far out of proportion with clinical signs.

Tests: There may be Hbt (due to plasma loss), wcc↑, modestly raised plasma amylase, and a persistent metabolic acidosis. Early on, the abdominal x-ray shows a 'gas-less' abdomen. Arteriography helps but many diagnoses are only made on finding a nasty necrotic bowel at laparotomy. CT/MR angiography provides a non-invasive alternative to simple arteriography.¹⁴⁴ Measurement of mucosal oxygen tension and MR oximetric measurements of superior mesenteric vein flow are emerging as diagnostic tools.¹⁴⁵

Treatment: The main life-threatening complications secondary to acute mesenteric ischaemia are **1** septic peritonitis and **2** progression of a systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) into a multi-organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), mediated by bacterial translocation across the dying gut wall. Resuscitation with fluid, antibiotics (*gentamicin* + *metronidazole*, p381) and, usually, *heparin* are required. If arteriography is done, thrombolytics may be infused locally via the catheter. At surgery dead bowel must be removed. Revascularization may be attempted on potentially viable bowel but it is a difficult process and often needs a 2nd laparotomy.

Prognosis: Poor for arterial thrombosis and non-occlusive disease (<40% survive), though not so bad for venous and embolic ischaemia.¹⁴⁶

2 Chronic mesenteric ischaemia (AKA intestinal angina). The triad of severe, colicky post-prandial abdominal pain ('gut claudication'), ↓weight (eating hurts) and an upper abdominal bruit may be present ± PR bleeding, malabsorption and N&V. There is often a history of vascular disease (95% due to diffuse atherosclerotic disease in all 3 mesenteric arteries). It is rare and difficult to diagnose. **Tests:** CT angiography and contrast enhanced MR angiography are replacing traditional angiography.^{147,148}

Doppler USS may be useful. **Treatment:** Once diagnosis is confirmed, surgery should be considered due to the ongoing risk of acute infarction. Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty and stent insertion is replacing open revascularization.¹⁴⁹ It is associated with less post-operative morbidity and mortality, but has higher restenosis rates.¹⁵⁰

3 Chronic colonic ischaemia (AKA ischaemic colitis) usually follows low flow in the inferior mesenteric artery (IMA) territory and ranges from mild ischaemia to gangrenous colitis. **Presentation:** Lower left-sided abdominal pain ± bloody diarrhoea.

Tests: CT may be helpful but colonoscopy and biopsy is 'gold-standard'. Barium enema shows characteristic 'thumb printing' of submucosal swelling. **Treatment:** Usually conservative with fluid replacement and antibiotics. Most recover but strictures are common. Gangrenous ischaemic colitis (presenting with peritonitis and hypovolaemic shock) requires prompt resuscitation followed by resection of the affected bowel and stoma formation. Mortality is high.

Acute ischaemia

- Arterial
 - Thrombotic^(35%)
 - Embolic^(35%)
- Non-occlusive (20%)
- Venous (5%)
- Other
 - Trauma
 - Vasculitis (p558)
 - Radiotherapy
 - Strangulation, eg volvulus or hernia

Chronic ischaemia

Usually a combination of a low-flow state with atheroma.



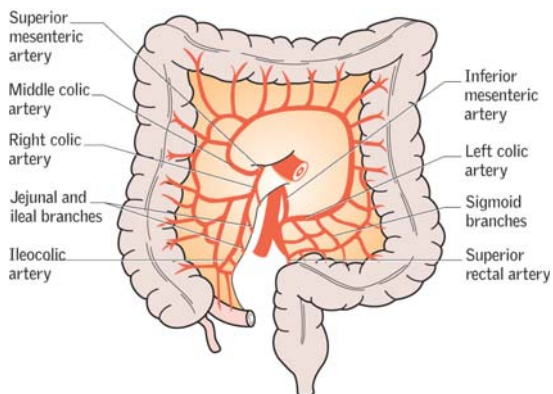


Fig 1. The arterial supply to the colon.



► Indications for gastric surgery include gastric cancer (p620) and peptic ulcers, though medical therapy (p242) has made elective surgery for the latter rare.

Operations for benign gastric ulceration Pyloric ulcers may be considered similarly to duodenal ulceration (p626). Away from the pylorus, elective surgery is rarely needed as ulcers respond well to medical treatment, stopping smoking, and avoidance of NSAIDs. In patients who are unable to tolerate medical treatment, a laparoscopic highly selective vagotomy (HSV) can be done (p626). ► **Emergency surgery** may be needed for haemorrhage or perforation. Haemorrhage is usually treated by under-running the bleeding ulcer base or excision of the ulcer. If the former is done, then a biopsy should be taken to exclude malignancy. Perforation is usually managed by excision of the hole for histology, then closure.

Operations for duodenal ulceration See p626.

Gastric carcinoma Localized disease may be treated by curative gastrectomy, either D₁ resection (excision of tumour and perigastric nodes) or D₂ resection (basically a D₁ resection extended to include nodes around the coeliac axis). D₂ resections should be performed in specialist centres.¹⁵¹ Laparoscopic surgery is as effective and safe as open surgery.¹⁵² A hand may be introduced into the peritoneal cavity (via a larger incision) for assistance (=laparoscopically assisted digital gastrectomy).

Surgery Billroth I: Partial gastrectomy with simple gastroduodenal re-anastomosis.

Billroth II (aka Polya) gastrectomy (fig 1) Partial gastrectomy with gastrojejunal anastomosis. The duodenal stump is oversewn (leaving a blind afferent loop), and anastomosis is achieved by a longitudinal incision into the proximal jejunum.

Roux-en-Y (fig 2) Following total or subtotal gastrectomy, the proximal duodenal stump is oversewn, the proximal jejunum is divided from the distal duodenum and connects with the oesophagus (or proximal stomach after subtotal gastrectomy) whilst the distal duodenum is connected to the distal jejunum.

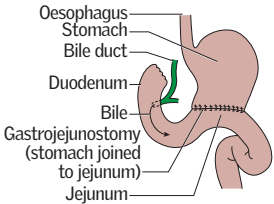


Fig 1. Billroth II.

Physical complications of gastrectomy and peptic ulcer surgery

- **Recurrent ulceration:** Symptoms are similar to those experienced pre-operatively but complications are more common and response to medical treatment is poor. Further surgery is difficult.
- **Abdominal fullness:** Feeling of early satiety (\pm discomfort and distension) improving with time. Advise to take small, frequent meals.
- **Afferent loop syndrome:** Post-gastrectomy (eg Billroth II), the afferent loop may fill with bile after a meal, causing upper abdominal pain and bilious vomiting. This is difficult to treat—but often improves with time.
- **Diarrhoea:** May be disabling after vagotomy. **Codeine phosphate** may help.
- **Gastric tumour:** A rare complication of any surgery which \downarrow acid production.
- **Amylaset:** If with abdominal pain, this may indicate afferent loop obstruction after Billroth II surgery and requires emergency surgery.¹⁵³

Metabolic complications

- **Dumping syndrome:**¹⁵⁴ Fainting and sweating after eating due to food of high osmotic potential being dumped in the jejunum, causing oligoemia from rapid fluid shifts. 'Late dumping' is due to rebound hypoglycaemia and occurs 1–3h after meals. Both tend to improve with time but may be helped by eating less sugar, and more guar and pectin (slows glucose absorption). **Acarbose** (p200) may also help to reduce the early hyperglycaemic stimulus to insulin secretion.¹⁵⁵
- **Weight loss:** Often due to poor calorie intake.
- **Bacterial overgrowth \pm malabsorption** (blind loop syndrome) may occur.
- **Anaemia:** Usually from lack of iron, hypochlorhydria and stomach resection. B₁₂ levels are frequently low but megaloblastic anaemia is rare.
- **Osteomalacia:** There may be pseudofractures which look like metastases.



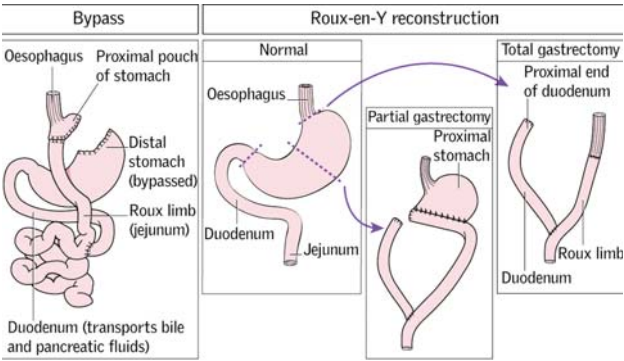


Fig 2. The Roux-en-Y reconstruction and gastric bypass

Complications of peptic ulcer surgery

	Partial gastrec- tomy	Vagotomy & pyloroplasty	Highly selective vagotomy
Recurrence	2%	7%	>7%
Dumping	20%	14%	6%
Diarrhoea	1%	4%	<1%
Metabolic	++++	++	0

(These values are approximate and depend on the skill of the surgeon.)

Theodor Billroth

Theodor Billroth was a surgeon of German-Austrian origin, whose name lives on as a set of operations on the stomach. He was a pioneer of abdominal surgery and the use of aseptic techniques, performing the first Billroth I procedure in 1881 for the resection of a pyloric gastric carcinoma. Among the many of his remarkable achievements is included the first laryngectomy. He was also a talented musician (a close friend of Brahms) and a dedicated educator with something of a realist's view of the world:

"The pleasure of a physician is little, the gratitude of patients is rare, and even rarer is material reward, but these things will never deter the student who feels the call within him."

Theodor Billroth (1829-94)^{156, 157}



Peptic ulcers usually present as epigastric pain and dyspepsia (p242). There is no reliable method of distinguishing clinically between gastric and duodenal ulcers. Although management of both is usually medical in the first instance (eg with *H. pylori* eradication, p242); surgery is usually only required for complications such as *haemorrhage, perforation*, and *pyloric stenosis*, though may be considered for the few patients who are not responsive to, or tolerant of, medical therapy.

Several types of operation have been tried, but whenever surgery is considered, one must consider efficacy, side-effects, and mortality.

1 Elective surgery

- **Highly selective vagotomy:** May be useful in patients unable to tolerate medical treatment. The vagus supply is denervated only where it supplies the lower oesophagus and stomach. The nerve of Latarjet to the pylorus is left intact; thus, gastric emptying is unaffected. The results of surgery are greatly dependent on the skill of the surgeon.
- **Vagotomy and pyloroplasty:** This operation is now almost obsolete, and is only performed in exceptional circumstances.
- **Gastrectomy** (p624) is rarely required (eg Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, p730).

2 Emergency surgery may be required for the following complications:

- **Haemorrhage** may be controlled endoscopically by adrenaline injection, diathermy, laser coagulation, or heat probe. Surgery should be considered for severe haemorrhage or rebleeding, especially in the elderly—see p254 for indications. In theatre, the bleeding ulcer base is under-run or oversewn.
- **Perforation** Most patients undergo surgery, though some advocate an initial conservative approach in patients without generalized peritonitis (NBM, NG tube, IV antibiotics—this can prevent surgery in up to 50% of such cases). If emergency surgery is required, laparoscopic repair is as good (and may be better) than open repair.¹⁵⁸ *H. pylori* eradication should be commenced post-op (p242).
- **Pyloric stenosis** Adult pyloric stenosis is a late complication of duodenal ulcers due to scarring (and has nothing to do with congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis, p629). Patients complain of vomiting large amounts of food some hours after meals. **Treatment:** Endoscopic balloon dilatation, followed by maximal acid suppression (p242), may be tried in the first instance (NB: 5% risk of perforation). If this is unsuccessful, a drainage procedure (eg gastro-enterostomy or pyloroplasty) ± highly selective vagotomy may be performed, often laparoscopically. The operation should be done on the next available list, after correction of the metabolic defect—a hypochloraemic, hypokalaemic metabolic alkalosis.

Fundoplication for gastro-oesophageal reflux

Laparoscopic fundoplication is the surgical procedure of choice when symptoms of GORD are retractable and refractory to medical therapy and there is severe reflux (confirmed by pH-monitoring)—see p244. Symptoms may be complicated by a hiatus hernia, which is repaired during the procedure.

Surgery The defect in the diaphragm is repaired by tightening the crura. Reflux is prevented by wrapping the gastric fundus around the lower oesophageal sphincter—see fig 1. There are various types of procedure, eg Nissen (360° wrap), Toupet (270° posterior wrap), Watson (anterior hemifundoplication).

Laparoscopic surgery is at least as effective at controlling reflux as open surgery but with a lower mortality and morbidity. Wound infections and respiratory complications are also more common in open surgery, though the incidence of dysphagia is similar for the two procedures—but see p594.

Complications Dysphagia (if the wrap is too tight), 'gas-bloat syndrome' (inability to belch/vomit) and new onset diarrhoea.¹⁵⁹



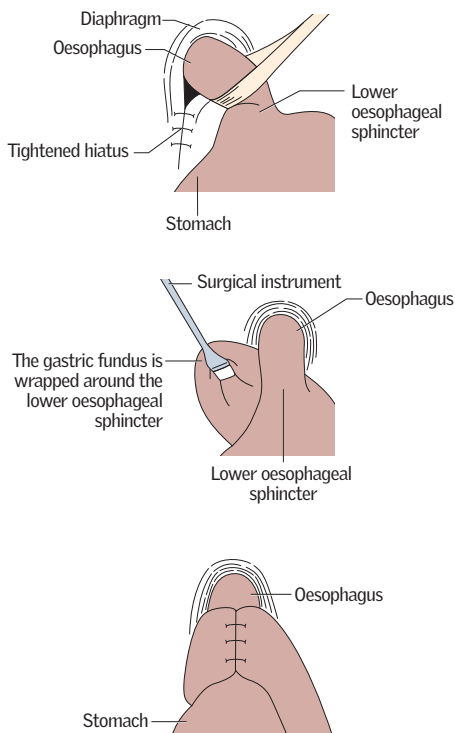


Fig 1. Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication.



Fifty years ago obesity was considered a contraindication to elective surgery; however, obesity in itself may not be a risk factor for most complications.¹⁶⁰ In fact mild obesity confers an advantage to patients undergoing general and vascular surgery, with reduced complications and mortality compared to 'normal' weight patients.^{161,162} Incidence of complications after elective surgery does not differ significantly between obese and non-obese patients, except for ↑ wound infection in obese patients.¹⁶⁰ Some studies have found obesity to increase complication risks (but not mortality) in cardiac surgery¹⁶³ and spinal surgery.¹⁶⁴ However, the practice of forcing patients to lose weight prior to elective surgery may be inappropriate if there are no clinical justifications.

Surgical management of severe obesity Severe obesity is increasing in prevalence worldwide and is associated with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM); hypertension; ischaemic heart disease; sleep apnoea; osteoarthritis; and depression. Bariatric surgery has become very successful at weight reduction, symptom improvement,¹⁶⁵ and improving quality of life.¹⁶⁶ Surgery increases life expectancy by around 3 years¹⁶⁷ (but may not prolong survival in high-risk men).¹⁶⁸

Indications According to NICE guidelines, weight-loss surgery in adults should be considered if *all* the following criteria are met:

- 1 BMI ≥ 40 or ≥ 35 with significant comorbidities that could improve with ↓weight.
- 2 Failure of non-surgical management to achieve and maintain clinically beneficial weight loss for 6 months.
- 3 Fitness for surgery and anaesthesia.
- 4 As part of an integrated programme that provides guidance on diet, physical activity, and psychosocial concerns, as well as lifelong medical monitoring.
- 5 The patient must be well-informed and motivated.

NB: if BMI ≥ 50 surgery is recommended as first-line treatment.

Comparison with medical therapy The *Swedish Obese Subjects Trial* compared conventional medical treatment (either diet, lifestyle or nothing) to surgery (including banding, gastroplasty and bypass). At 2 years surgical patients had a mean 23% weight loss (16% at 10 years). The medical group saw weight increase by 0.1% at 2 years and 1.6% at 10 years. The surgical group had higher recovery from comorbidities and improved quality of life.¹⁶⁹

Procedures There are 2 main mechanisms causing weight loss: 1 Restriction of calorie intake by reducing stomach capacity 2 Malabsorption of nutrients by reducing the length of functional small bowel. NB: This also affects the levels of circulating gut peptides (eg PYY and GLP-1), which are thought to play a role in the mechanism of satiety and weight loss. The 2 most popular procedures are:

- **Laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding (LAGB):** This restrictive technique creates a pre-stomach pouch by placing a silicone band around the top of the stomach, which serves as a new smaller stomach. The band can be adjusted to alter the degree of restriction by addition or removal of saline through a subcutaneous port (see **fig 1**). One prospective study showed mean excess weight loss at 1 year of 45.7%.¹⁷⁰ LAGB is associated with improvements or recovery of T2DM, hypertension, asthma, joint pain, and depression, as well as improved quality of life.¹⁷¹ Weight loss is slower and less than with gastric bypass but there is lower mortality and fewer complications. Long-term outcomes are yet to be firmly established. **Complications:** Pouch enlargement, band slip, band erosion and port infection/breakage.¹⁷²
- **Roux-en-Y gastric bypass** (**fig 2**, p625): A portion of the jejunum is attached to a small stomach pouch to allow food to bypass the distal stomach, duodenum, and proximal jejunum. It can be performed laparoscopically and works by both restriction and malabsorption. Mean excess weight loss at 5 years is 62.8%.¹⁷³ Current evidence demonstrates greater weight loss, greater resolution of comorbidities and lower reoperation rates compared to LAGB.¹⁷⁴ **Complications:** Micronutrient deficiency (requires vitamin supplementation and lifelong follow-up with annual blood and micronutrient level tests), dumping syndrome, wound infection, hernias, malabsorption, diarrhoea, and a mortality of ~0.5% (at experienced centres).



Some paediatric surgical emergencies

Congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis ▶ See *OHCS* p172. Usually presents in first 3–8wks as projectile vomiting (4 in 1000 live births). ♂:♀≈4:1. The baby is malnourished and always hungry. **Diagnosis:** palpate the olive-shaped pyloric mass in the RUQ during a feed. Visible gastric peristalsis starts in the LUQ. The baby can be severely alkalotic and depleted of water and ions from vomiting. Needs correcting before surgery. USS may be useful in assessment. Pass NGT (p773). **Treatment:** Ramstedt's pyloromyotomy (involves incision of muscle down to mucosa).

Intussusception See *OHCS*, p172. Small bowel telescopes, as if swallowing itself by invagination. **Presentation:** Any age (usually 5–12 months). Episodic intermittent inconsolable crying, with drawing the legs up (colic) ± bilious vomiting ± blood PR (like redcurrant jam or cranberry sauce).¹⁷⁵ A sausage-shaped abdominal mass may be felt. May become shocked and moribund. **Tests/Management:** Least invasive approach is USS with reduction by air enema or pneumatic reduction under radiographic control. If reduction fails, surgery is needed. Prompt treatment may avoid necrosis. **Pre-op care:** ▶▶ Resuscitate, crossmatch blood, pass NGT. NB: children >4yrs present differently: rectal bleeding less common, more likely to have a long history (>3wks) and some sort of contributing pathology, eg Henoch-Schönlein purpura, cystic fibrosis, Peutz-Jeghers' syndrome or tumours, eg lymphomas—where obstructive symptoms caused by intussusception are the chief mode of presentation. Recurrence rate: ~5%.

Midgut malrotation See *OHCS* p130. During embryonic development, the midgut undergoes 270° anticlockwise rotation. If malrotated the gut is prone to undergo volvulus upon its abnormally pedicled mesentery. Usually presents in neonatal period with dark green bilious vomiting, distension, and rectal bleeding. Can be asymptomatic for years before acute presentation. **Treatment:** ▶▶ Resuscitation, then surgery (involves broadening the mesentery and replacing bowel in a non-rotated position).

Tips on examining the abdomen in children

Examining the abdomen of a child or infant can prove extremely difficult and requires patience, practice and opportunism. So:

- An age-directed approach will help develop your relationship with the child.
- Remember that the parents will be closely involved in what you do.
- Play specialists may be able to provide distraction.
- The abdomen may need to be examined with the child sitting in mum's lap.
- There is no hope of eliciting any signs whilst the child is crying and tensing his tummy—everyone will be better off if you return when the child has settled!
- Examining for rebound tenderness in young children is probably of little use for us and definitely uncomfortable for them.
- You should always examine the scrotum and inguinal regions in young boys to exclude the possibility of testicular torsion or a strangulated hernia.
- Performing a PR examination, if required, is best left to a specialist.
- Unless you have a magical way with children, don't be surprised to get the cold shoulder once in a while!

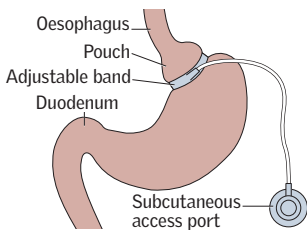


Fig 1. Adjustable gastric band.



A GI diverticulum is an outpouching of the gut wall, usually at sites of entry of perforating arteries. Diverticulosis means that diverticula are present, and diverticular disease implies they are symptomatic. Diverticulitis refers to inflammation of a diverticulum. Diverticulum can be acquired or congenital and may occur elsewhere, but the most important are acquired colonic diverticula, to which this page refers.

Pathology Most occur in the sigmoid colon with 95% of complications at this site, but right-sided and massive single diverticula can occur. Lack of dietary fibre is thought to lead to high intraluminal pressures which force the mucosa to herniate through the muscle layers of the gut at weak points adjacent to penetrating vessels. 30% of Westerners have diverticulosis by age 60. The majority are asymptomatic.

Diagnosis Diverticulae are a common incidental finding at colonoscopy (fig 6, p257), which should be performed if there is any suspicion of malignancy. Barium enema can clarify the diagnosis in patients with abdominal pain and altered bowel habit. CT abdomen is best to confirm acute diverticulitis and can identify extent of disease and any complications.¹⁷⁶ Enema or colonoscopy risk perforation in the acute setting. Abdominal x-ray may identify obstruction, free air (perforation), or vesical fistulae.

Complications of diverticulosis There may be altered bowel habit ± left-sided colic relieved by defecation; nausea and flatulence. A high-fibre diet (wholemeal bread, fruit and vegetables) may be tried. Antispasmodics, eg *mebeverine* 135mg/8h po, may help. Surgical resection is occasionally resorted to. Other complications:

Diverticulitis—with features above + pyrexia, WCCT, CRP/ESR, a tender colon ± localized or generalized peritonism. *Rx*: analgesia, NBM, IV fluids, antibiotics, CT-guided percutaneous drainage (if abscess). ▶ Beware diverticulitis in immunocompromised patients (eg on steroids) who often have few symptoms and may present late.

▶ **Perforation** There is ileus, peritonitis ± shock. Mortality: 40%. Manage as for an acute abdomen. At laparotomy a Hartmann's procedure may be performed (temporary colostomy + partial colectomy). Primary anastomosis is possible and avoids repeat surgery to close the colostomy. This has comparable mortality to Hartmann's in patients with perforation (although selection bias limits sound conclusions).¹⁷⁷ Emergency laparoscopic management is an emerging alternative.¹⁷⁸

• **Haemorrhage** is usually sudden and painless. It is a common cause of big rectal bleeds. ▶ See BOX 2. Bleeding usually stops with bed rest. Transfusion may be needed. Embolization or colonic resection may be necessary after locating bleeding points by angiography or colonoscopy (here diathermy ± local *adrenaline* injections may obviate the need for surgery).

• **Fistulae** Enterocolic, colovaginal, or colovesical (pneumaturia ± intractable UTIs). Treatment is surgical, eg colonic resection.

• **Abscesses**, eg with swinging fever, leucocytosis, and localizing signs, eg boggy rectal mass (pelvic abscess—drain rectally). If no localizing signs, remember the aphorism: *pus somewhere, pus nowhere = pus under the diaphragm*. A subphrenic abscess is a horrible way to die, so do an urgent ultrasound. Antibiotics ± ultrasound/CT-guided drainage may be needed.

• **Post-infective strictures** may form in the sigmoid colon.

Angiodysplasia

Angiodysplasia refers to submucosal arteriovenous malformations that typically present as fresh PR bleeding in the elderly. The underlying cause is unknown. **Pathology**: 70–90% of lesions occur in right colon, though angiodysplasia can affect anywhere in the GI tract. **Diagnosis**: PR examination, colonoscopy (fig 5, p257) may exclude competing diagnoses; ^{99m}Tc radionuclide-labelled red-cell imaging (p752) is useful in identifying lesions during active bleeding (if >0.1mL/min). Mesenteric angiography is very helpful in diagnosing angiodysplasia (shows early filling at the lesion site, then extravasation), and allows therapeutic embolization during bleeding—it detects bleeding >1mL/min. CT angiography offers a non-invasive alternative. **Treatment options**: Embolization, endoscopic laser electrocoagulation, resection.



Managing diverticulitis¹⁷⁹

Initial management

- Mild attacks can be treated at home with bowel rest (fluids only) ± antibiotics.¹⁸⁰
- If oral fluids cannot be tolerated or pain cannot be controlled, admit to hospital for analgesia, NBM and IV fluids. IV antibiotics in uncomplicated diverticulitis are routinely given, but do not speed recovery or prevent complications/recurrence.¹⁸¹ Seek advice and follow local guidelines where available. Most attacks settle but complications include abscess formation (necessitating percutaneous CT-guided drainage), or perforation—see p630 for management.
- **Imaging** Erect CXR + USS can detect perforation, free fluid, and collections, though CT with contrast is more accurate, especially in complicated disease. If a contrast enema is performed, then water-soluble contrast should be used (see p762). ▶ In an acute attack colonoscopy should not be done.¹⁸²

Surgery The need for surgery is reflected by the degree of infective complications:

Stage 1	Pericolic or mesenteric abscess	Surgery rarely needed
Stage 2	Walled off or pelvic abscess	May resolve without surgery
Stage 3	Generalized purulent peritonitis	Surgery required
Stage 4	Generalized faecal peritonitis	Surgery required

- Elective resection after an acute episode is rarely recommended as most patients who develop complications present at the first episode. Indications for elective surgery include stenosis, fistulae or recurrent bleeding.¹⁸³
- For emergency colonic resection see p630.

Rectal bleeding—an acute management plan

The causes of rectal bleeding are covered elsewhere (MINIBOX). Here let's make an acute management plan for this common surgical event:

▶ **ABC** resuscitation, if necessary.

▶ **History and examination**

▶ **Blood tests:** FBC, U&E, LFT, clotting, amylase (always thinking of pancreatitis), CRP, group and save—await Hb result before crossmatching unless unstable and bleeding.

▶ **Imaging** May only need plain AXR, but if there are signs of perforation (eg sepsis, peritonism) or if there is cardiorespiratory comorbidity, then request an erect CXR. See *angiodysplasia*, p630, for more imaging options.

▶ **Fluid management** Insert 2 cannulae (≥18G) into the antecubital fossae. Insert a urinary catheter if there is a suspicion of haemodynamic compromise—there is no absolute indication, but remember that you are weighing up the risks and benefits. Give crystalloid as replacement and maintenance IVI. Blood transfusion is rarely needed in the acute setting.

▶ **Antibiotics** may occasionally be required if there is evidence of sepsis or perforation, eg *cefuroxime* 1.5g/8h IV + *metronidazole* 500mg/8h IV.

▶ **PPI** Consider *omeprazole* 40mg/d IV as ~15% are from upper GI causes (p252–4).

▶ **Keep bedbound** The patient may feel the need to get out of bed to pass stool, but this could be another large bleed, resulting in collapse if they try to walk.
▶ Don't allow them to mobilize and inform the nursing staff of this.

▶ **Start a stool chart** to monitor volume and frequency of motions. Send a sample for MC&S (x3 if known to have compromising comorbidity such as IBD).

▶ **Diet** Keep on clear fluids so that they can have something, yet the colon will be clear for colonoscopy (which is of little value until bleeding has stopped).

▶ **Surgery** The main indication for this is unremitting, massive bleeding.

Typical causes

- Diverticulitis, p630
- Colorectal cancer, p618
- Haemorrhoids, p634
- Crohn's, uc, p272–275
- Perianal disease, p632
- Angiodysplasia, p630
- Rarities—trauma, also:
 - ischaemic colitis, p622
 - radiation proctitis
 - aorto-enteric fistula



Pruritus ani Itch occurs if the anus is moist/soiled; fissures, incontinence, poor hygiene, tight pants, threadworm, fistula, dermatoses, lichen sclerosis, anxiety, contact dermatitis (perfumed goods). Cause is often unknown. *R*: Careful hygiene, anaesthetic cream, moist wipe post-defecation, no spicy food, no steroid/antibiotic cream. Capsaicin may help.¹⁸⁴

Fissure-in-ano Painful tear in the squamous lining of the lower anal canal—often, if chronic, with a 'sentinel pile' or mucosal tag at the external aspect. 90% are posterior (anterior ones follow parturition). ♂ > ♀. *Causes*: Most are due to hard faeces. Spasm may constrict the inferior rectal artery, causing ischaemia, making healing difficult and perpetuating the problem.^{185, 186, 187} Rare causes (multiple ± lateral): syphilis; herpes; trauma; Crohn's; anal cancer; psoriasis. Groin nodes suggest a complicating factor (eg immunosuppression/HIV). *R*: 5% *lidocaine* ointment + *GTN* ointment (0.2–0.4%) or topical *diltiazem* (2%)¹⁸⁸; ↑dietary fibre, fluids ± stool softener and hygiene advice. *Botulinum toxin* injection (2nd line) and topical *diltiazem* (2%) are at least as effective as *GTN* with fewer side-effects.¹⁸⁹ If conservative measures fail, surgical options include *lateral partial internal sphincterotomy*.¹⁹⁰

Fistula-in-ano A track communicates between the skin and anal canal/rectum. Blockage of deep intramuscular gland ducts is thought to predispose to the formation of abscesses, which discharge to form the fistula. *Goodsall's rule* determines the path of the fistula track: if anterior, the track is in a straight line (radial); if posterior, the internal opening is **always** at the 6 o'clock position. *Causes*: perianal sepsis, abscesses (see below), Crohn's disease, TB, diverticular disease, rectal carcinoma, immunocompromise. *Tests*: MRI;¹⁹¹ endoanal US scan.¹⁹² *R*: Fistulotomy + excision. High fistulae (involving continence muscles of anus) require 'seton suture' tightened over time to maintain continence; low fistulae are 'laid open' to heal by secondary intention—division of sphincters poses no risk to continence.

Anorectal abscesses usually caused by gut organisms (rarely staphs or TB). ♂:♀=1:8. Perianal (~45%), ischiorectal (≤30%), intersphincteric (>20%), supralelevator (~5%). *R*: Incise & drain under GA. *Associations*: DM, Crohn's, malignancy, fistulae.

Perianal haematoma (AKA thrombosed external pile—see p635). Strictly, it is actually a clotted venous sacculi. It appears as a 2–4mm 'dark blueberry' under the skin at the anal margin. It may be evacuated under LA or left to resolve spontaneously.

Pilonidal sinus Obstruction of natal cleft hair follicles ~6cm above the anus. In-growing of hair excites a foreign body reaction and may cause secondary tracks to open laterally ± abscesses, with foul-smelling discharge. (Barbers get these between fingers.) ♂:♀≈10:1. Obese Caucasians and those from Asia, the Middle East, and Mediterranean at risk. *R*: Excision of the sinus tract ± primary closure. Consider pre-op antibiotics. Complex tracks can be laid open and packed individually, or skin flaps can be used to cover the defect.¹⁹³ Offer hygiene and hair removal advice.

Rectal prolapse The mucosa (partial/type 1), or all layers (complete/type 2—more common), may protrude through the anus. Incontinence in 75%. It is due to a lax sphincter, prolonged straining, and related to chronic neurological and psychological disorders. *R* *Abdominal approach*: fix rectum to sacrum (rectopexy) ± mesh insertion ± rectosigmoidectomy. Laparoscopic rectopexy is as effective as open repair.¹⁹⁴

Perineal approach: Delorme's procedure (resect close to dentate line and suture mucosal boundaries), anal encirclement with a Thiersch wire.¹⁹⁵

Perianal warts Condylomata acuminata (viral warts) are treated with *podophylotoxin* or *imiquimod* or cryotherapy/surgical excision. Giant condylomata acuminata of Bushke & Loewenstein may evolve into verrucous cancers (low-grade, non-metastasizing). Condylomata lata secondary to syphilis is treated with penicillin.

Proctalgia fugax Idiopathic, intense, brief, stabbing/crampy rectal pain, often worse at night. The mainstay of treatment is reassurance. Inhaled *salbutamol* or topical *GTN* (0.2–0.4%) or topical *diltiazem* (2%) may help.¹⁹⁶

Anal ulcers are rare. Consider Crohn's disease, anal cancer, TB, and syphilis.

Skin tags seldom cause trouble but are easily excised.



Examination of the rectum and anus

► It is necessary to have a chaperone present for the examination. Explain what you are about to do. Make sure curtains are pulled. Have the patient lie on their left side, with knees brought up towards the chest. Use gloves and lubricant. Part the buttocks and **inspect the anus**: • A gaping anus suggests a neuropathy or megarectum • Symmetry (a tender unilateral bulge suggests an abscess) • Prolapsed piles • A subnodular clot may peep out • Prolapsed rectum (descent of >3cm when asked to strain, as if to pass a motion) • Anodermatitis (from frequent soiling). The anocutaneous reflex tests sensory and motor innervation—on lightly stroking the anal skin, does the external sphincter briefly contract?

Press your index finger against the side of the anus. Ask the patient to breathe deeply and insert your finger slowly. Feel for masses (haemorrhoids are not palpable) or impacted stool. Twist your arm so that the pad of your finger is feeling anteriorly. Feel for the cervix or prostate. Note consistency, size, and symmetry of the prostate. If there is faecal incontinence or concern about the spinal cord, ask the patient to squeeze your finger and note the tone. This is best done with your finger pad facing posteriorly. Note stool or blood on the glove and test for occult blood.

Wipe the anus. Consider proctoscopy (for the anus) or sigmoidoscopy (which mainly inspects the rectum).

Anal cancer

Incidence: 300/yr.^{uk} **Risk:** Syphilis, anal warts (HPV 16, 6, 11, 18, 31 & 33 implicated), anoreceptive homosexuals (often young). **Histology:** Squamous cell (85%); rarely basaloid, melanoma, or adenocarcinoma. Anal margin tumours are usually well-differentiated, keratinizing lesions with a good prognosis. Anal canal tumours arise above dentate line, are poorly differentiated and non-keratinizing with a poorer prognosis. **Spread:** Tumours above the dentate line spread to pelvic lymph nodes; those below spread to the inguinal nodes. **The patient** may present with bleeding, pain, bowel habit change, pruritus ani, masses, stricture. **ΔΔ:** Perianal warts; leucoplakia; lichen sclerosis; Bowen's disease; Crohn's disease. **Treatment:** Chemo-irradiation (radiotherapy + 5-fluorouracil + mitomycin/cisplatin) is usually preferred to anorectal excision & colostomy; 75% retain normal anal function.¹⁹⁷

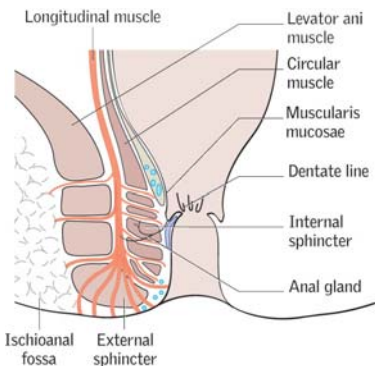


Fig 1. Anatomy of the anal canal. Perianal abscesses present as tender, inflamed, localized swellings at the anal verge. Ischiorectal abscesses are also tender but cause a diffuse, indurated swelling in the ischioanal fossa area. You will find your patient waiting anxiously for you, pacing about, or on the edge of their chair: avoiding all pressure is imperative. NB: Above the dentate line = visceral nerve innervation; below = somatic innervation (very sensitive to pain).



Definition Haemorrhoids are disrupted and dilated anal cushions. The anus is lined mainly by discontinuous masses of spongy vascular tissue—the anal cushions, which contribute to anal closure. Viewed from the lithotomy position, the 3 anal cushions are at 3, 7, and 11 o'clock (where the 3 major arteries that feed the vascular plexuses enter the anal canal). They are attached by smooth muscle and elastic tissue, but are prone to displacement and disruption, either singly or together. The effects of gravity (our erect posture), increased anal tone (?stress), and the effects of straining at stool may make them become both bulky and loose, and so to protrude to form piles (Latin *pila*, meaning a ball). They are vulnerable to trauma (eg from hard stools) and bleed readily from the capillaries of the underlying lamina propria, hence their other name, haemorrhoids (≈*running blood* in Greek). Because loss is from capillaries, it is bright red. NB: piles are **not** varicose veins.

As there are no sensory fibres above the dentate line (squamomucosal junction), piles are not painful unless they thrombose when they protrude and are gripped by the anal sphincter, blocking venous return.

Differential diagnosis Perianal haematoma; anal fissure; abscess; tumour; proctalgia fugax. ▶ Never ascribe rectal bleeding to piles without adequate examination or investigation.

Causes Constipation with prolonged straining is a key factor. In many the bowel habit may be normal. Congestion from a pelvic tumour, pregnancy, CCF, or portal hypertension are important in only a minority of cases.

Pathogenesis There is a vicious circle: vascular cushions protrude through a tight anus, become more congested and hypertrophy to protrude again more readily. These protrusions may then strangulate. See TABLE for classification.

Symptoms Bright red rectal bleeding, often coating stools, on the tissue, or dripping into the pan after defecation. There may be mucous discharge and pruritus ani. Severe anaemia may occur. Symptoms such as weight loss, tenesmus and change in bowel habit should prompt thoughts of other pathology. ▶ In all rectal bleeding do:

- An abdominal examination to rule out other diseases.
- PR exam: prolapsing piles are obvious. Internal haemorrhoids are not palpable.
- Proctoscopy to see the internal haemorrhoids.
- Sigmoidoscopy to identify rectal pathology higher up (you can get no higher up than the rectosigmoid junction).

Treatment ¹⁹⁸ **1 Medical:** (for 1st-degree haemorrhoids) †fluid and fibre is key ± topical analgesics & stool softener. Topical steroids for short periods only.

2 Non-operative: (for 2nd & 3rd degree, or 1st degree if medical therapy has failed). The best treatment is unknown as meta-analyses differ: •**Rubber band ligation:** A cheap treatment, but needs skill. Banding produces an ulcer to anchor the mucosa (SE: bleeding, infection; pain). It has the lowest recurrence rate. •**Sclerosants:** (for 1st- or 2nd-degree piles) 2mL of 5% *phenol* in almond/arachis oil is injected into the pile above the dentate line. Recurrence is higher (SE: impotence; prostatitis). •**Infra-red coagulation:** Applied to localized areas of piles, it works by coagulating vessels and tethering mucosa to subcutaneous tissue. It is as successful as banding and may be less painful. ¹⁹⁹ •**Cryotherapy** (freezing) has a high complication rate and is not recommended. In all but 4th-degree piles, these measures may obviate the need for surgery.

3 Surgery: •**Excisional haemorrhoidectomy** is the most effective treatment (excision of piles ± ligation of vascular pedicles, as day-case surgery, needing ~2wks off work). Scalpel, electrocautery or laser may be used. •**Stapled haemorrhoidopexy** (AKA *procedure for prolapsing haemorrhoids*) may result in less pain, a shorter hospital stay and quicker return to normal activity than conventional surgery. ²⁰⁰ It is used when there is a large internal component, but has a higher recurrence and prolapse rate than excisional surgery. ²⁰¹ **Surgical complications:** Constipation; infection; stricture; bleeding.

Prolapsed, thrombosed piles are treated with analgesia, ice packs and stool softeners. Pain usually resolves in 2–3 weeks. Some advocate early surgery.



Classification of haemorrhoids

1st degree	Remain in the rectum
2nd degree	Prolapse through the anus on defecation but spontaneously reduce
3rd degree	As for 2 nd -degree but require digital reduction
4th degree	Remain persistently prolapsed

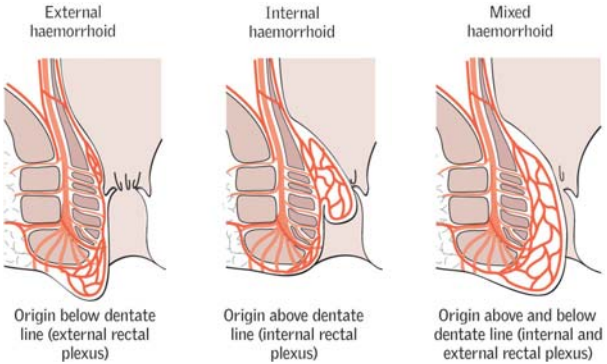


Fig 1. Internal and external haemorrhoids.



Bile contains cholesterol, bile pigments (from broken down Hb), and phospholipids. If the concentrations vary, different stones may form.²⁰² **Pigment stones:** (<10%) Small, friable, and irregular. **Causes:** haemolysis. **Cholesterol stones:** Large, often solitary. **Causes:** ♀, age, obesity (Admiral's triangle: triad of stone if ↓lecithin, ↓bile salts, ↑cholesterol). **Mixed stones:** Faceted (calcium salts, pigment, and cholesterol). **Gallstone prevalence:** 8% of those over 40yrs. 90% remain asymptomatic. Risk factors for stones becoming symptomatic: smoking; parity.

Acute cholecystitis follows stone or sludge impaction in the neck of the gallbladder (GB), which may cause continuous epigastric or RUQ pain (referred to the right shoulder—see p611), vomiting, fever, local peritonism, or a GB mass. The main difference from biliary colic is the inflammatory component (local peritonism, fever, WCCt). If the stone moves to the common bile duct (CBD), obstructive jaundice and cholangitis may occur—see BOX for complications. **Murphy's sign:** Lay 2 fingers over the RUQ; ask patient to breathe in. This causes pain & arrest of inspiration as an inflamed GB impinges on your fingers. It is only +ve if the same test in the LUQ does not cause pain. A **phlegmon** (RUQ mass of inflamed adherent omentum and bowel) may be palpable. **Tests:** WCCt, ultrasound—a thick-walled, shrunken GB (also seen in chronic disease), pericholecystic fluid, stones, CBD (dilated if >6mm), HIDA cholescintigraphy (useful if diagnosis uncertain after US). Plain AXR only shows ~10% of gallstones; it may identify a 'porcelain' GB (~15% association with cancer).²⁰³ **Treatment:** NBM, pain relief, IVI, and, eg cefuroxime 1.5g/8h IV. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy (either acute or delayed, see BOX 3) is the treatment of choice for all patients fit for GA. Open surgery is required if there is GB perforation. If elderly or high risk/unsuitable for surgery, consider percutaneous cholecystostomy; cholecystectomy can still be done later. Cholecystostomy is also the preferred treatment for acalculous cholecystitis.²⁰⁴

Chronic cholecystitis Chronic inflammation ± colic. 'Flatulent dyspepsia': vague abdominal discomfort, distension, nausea, flatulence, and fat intolerance (fat stimulates cholecystokinin release and GB contraction). US to image stones and assess CBD diameter. MRCP (p757) is used to find CBD stones. **R:** Cholecystectomy. If US shows a dilated CBD with stones, ERCP (p756) + sphincterotomy before surgery. If symptoms persist post-surgery consider hiatus hernia/IBS/peptic ulcer/relapsing pancreatitis/tumour.

Biliary colic Gallstones are symptomatic with cystic duct obstruction or if passed into the CBD. RUQ pain (radiates → back) ± jaundice. **R:** Analgesia (see p638), rehydrate, NBM. Elective laparoscopic cholecystectomy (see BOX 3). **ΔΔ:** The above may overlap as part of a spectrum of gallstone disease. Urinalysis, CXR, and ECG help exclude other diseases.

Other presentations

- **Obstructive jaundice with CBD stones** (see p250)—if LFT worsening, ERCP with sphincterotomy ± biliary trawl, then cholecystectomy may be needed, or open surgery with CBD exploration. If CBD stones are suspected pre-operatively, they should be identified by MRCP (p762).
- **Cholangitis** (bile duct infection) causing RUQ pain, jaundice, and rigors (Charcot's triad', BOX). Treat with, eg cefuroxime 1.5g/8h IV and metronidazole 500mg/8h IV/PR.
- **Gallstone ileus:** A stone erodes through the GB into the duodenum; it may then obstruct the terminal ileum. AXR shows: air in CBD (= pneumobilia), small bowel fluid levels, and a stone. Duodenal obstruction is rarer (Bouveret's syndrome).²⁰⁵
- **Pancreatitis** (p638).
- **Mucocoele/empyema:** Obstructed GB fills with mucus (secreted by GB wall)/pus.
- **Silent stones:** Do elective surgery on those with sickle cell, immunosuppression (debatably diabetes) as well as all calcified/porcelain GBs.^{206 207}
- **Mirizzi's syndrome:** A stone in the GB presses on the bile duct causing jaundice.²⁰⁸
- **Gallbladder perforation:** Rare because of dual blood supply (hepatic artery via cystic artery, and from small branches of the hepatic artery in the GB fossa).
- **Other:** Causes of cholecystitis and biliary symptoms other than gallstones are rare. Consider infection (typhoid, cryptosporidiosis and brucellosis); cholecystokinin release; parenteral nutrition; anatomical abnormality; polyarteritis nodosa (p558).



Complications of gallstones

In the gallbladder & cystic duct:

- Biliary colic
- Acute and chronic cholecystitis
- Mucocoele
- Empyema
- Carcinoma
- Mirizzi's syndrome

In the bile ducts:

- Obstructive jaundice
- Cholangitis
- Pancreatitis

In the gut:

- Gallstone ileus

Biliary colic, cholecystitis or cholangitis?

	RUQ pain	Fever / ↑wcc	Jaundice
Biliary colic	✓	✗	✗
Acute cholecystitis	✓	✓	✗
Cholangitis	✓	✓	✓

Early or delayed cholecystectomy?

For acute cholecystitis Laparoscopic cholecystectomy for acute cholecystitis has traditionally been performed 6–12wks after the acute episode due to anticipated increased mortality and conversion to open procedure. However, early laparoscopic cholecystectomy is becoming the treatment of choice. It is as safe as delayed surgery, there is no difference in the rate of conversion to open surgery or bile duct injury and early surgery shortens the length of hospital stay.²⁰⁹ If surgery is delayed, repeat episodes of cholecystitis occur in 18% and may be associated with more complications.²¹⁰

For biliary colic Patients with biliary colic due to gallstones waiting for an elective laparoscopic cholecystectomy may develop life-threatening complications, such as acute pancreatitis (p638) during the waiting period. Cochrane review of one high bias trial found early laparoscopic cholecystectomy (within 24 hours of an acute episode) decreased potential complications that may develop during the wait for elective surgery.²¹¹

🔍 Is it possible to perform double-blind RCTs in surgery?

A double-blinded randomized controlled trial (RCT) looked at the differences between open and laparoscopic cholecystectomy.²¹² This raises issues on both the place and validity of double-blinded RCTs in surgery.

Overcoming established treatments always has difficulties. When faced with either surgery or non-operative management, everyone's preference would be to avoid surgery especially if there is ambivalence about which treatment is superior. The negative influence of the learning curve for a new treatment must be considered and this may take time to overcome (p595). Furthermore, controlling the bias introduced by interperformer and patient variance is not least because each patient is different. There are also inherent difficulties in double-blinding surgical treatment: 'sham' surgery remains a contentious issue.²¹³ 🚫



This unpredictable disease (mortality ~12%) is managed on surgical wards, but because surgery is often not involved, it's easy to think that there's no acute problem. There is: Self-perpetuating pancreatic inflammation by enzyme-mediated autodigestion; Oedema and fluid shifts causing hypovolaemia, as extracellular fluid is trapped in the gut, peritoneum, and retroperitoneum (worsened by vomiting). Progression may be rapid from mild oedema to necrotizing pancreatitis. ~50% of cases that advance to necrosis are further complicated by infection. Pancreatitis is mild in 80% of cases; 20% develop severe complicated and life-threatening disease.²¹⁴ For causes see MINIBOX.

Symptoms Gradual or sudden severe epigastric or central abdominal pain (radiates to back, sitting forward may relieve); vomiting prominent.

Signs may be mild in serious disease! Tachycardia, fever, jaundice, shock, ileus, rigid abdomen ± local/general tenderness, periumbilical bruising (Cullen's sign) or flanks (Grey Turner's sign) from blood vessel autodigestion and retroperitoneal haemorrhage.

Tests Raised serum **amylase** (>1000u/mL or around 3-fold upper limit of normal). The degree of elevation is not related to severity of disease. ▶ Amylase may be normal even in severe pancreatitis (levels starts to fall within the 1st 24–48h). Cholecystitis, mesenteric infarction, and GI perforation can cause lesser rises (usually). It is excreted renally so renal failure will ↑ levels. Serum **lipase** is more sensitive and specific for pancreatitis.²¹⁵ **ABG** to monitor oxygenation and acid-base status. **AXR**: No psoas shadow (retroperitoneal fluid), 'sentinel loop' of proximal jejunum from ileus (solitary air-filled dilatation). **Erect CXR** helps exclude other causes (eg perforation). **CT** is the standard choice of imaging to assess severity and for complications—**MRI** may be even better.²¹⁶ **US** (if gallstones + AStt). **ERCP** if LFTs worsen. **CRP** >150mg/L at 36h after admission is a predictor of severe pancreatitis.

Management Severity assessment is essential (see BOX).

- Nil by mouth, likely to need NG tube (decrease pancreatic stimulation). Set up IVI and give lots of 0.9% saline, to counter third-space sequestration, until vital signs are satisfactory and urine flow stays at >30mL/h. Insert a urinary catheter and consider CVP monitoring. Think about nutrition early on (p586).
- Analgesia: **pethidine** 75–100mg/4h IM, or **morphine** (may cause Oddi's sphincter to contract more,²¹⁷ but it is a better analgesic and not contraindicated).²¹⁸
- Hourly pulse, BP, and urine output; daily FBC, U&E, Ca^{2+} , glucose, amylase, ABG.
- If worsening: ITU, O_2 if $\text{P}_{\text{a}}\text{O}_2 \downarrow$. In suspected abscess formation or pancreatic necrosis (on CT), consider parenteral nutrition ± laparotomy & debridement ('necrosectomy'). Antibiotics may help in specific severe disease, eg **imipenem** if >30% necrosis.²¹⁹ There is no consensus on prophylactic use if necrosis is present.²²⁰
- ERCP + gallstone removal may be needed if there is progressive jaundice.
- Repeat imaging (usually CT) is performed in order to monitor progress.

ΔΔ Any acute abdomen (p608), myocardial infarct. **Prognosis** See BOX.

Early complications Shock, ARDS (p178), renal failure (▶ give lots of fluid!), DIC, sepsis, $\text{Ca}^{2+} \downarrow$, glucoset (transient; 5% need insulin).

Late complications (>1wk) **Pancreatic necrosis** and **pseudocyst** (fluid in lesser sac, fig 1), with fever, a mass ± persistent ↑ amylase/LFT; may resolve or need drainage. **Abscesses** need draining. **Bleeding** from elastase eroding a major vessel (eg splenic artery); embolization may be life-saving. **Thrombosis** may occur in the splenic/gastroduodenal arteries, or colic branches of the SMA, causing bowel necrosis. **Fistulae** normally close spontaneously. If purely pancreatic they do not irritate the skin. Some patients suffer **recurrent oedematous pancreatitis** so often that near-total pancreatectomy is contemplated. ▶ It can all be a miserable course.

Causes 'GET SMASHED'

Gallstones^(38%)

Ethanol^(35%)

Trauma^(1.5%)

Steroids

Mumps

Autoimmune (PAN)

Scorpion venom

Hyperlipidaemia,

hypothermia,

hypercalcaemia

ERCP^(5%) and emboli

Drugs

Also pregnancy and neoplasia or no cause found^(10–30%)



Modified Glasgow criteria for predicting severity of pancreatitis

► 3 or more positive factors detected within 48h of onset suggest severe pancreatitis, and should prompt transfer to ITU/HDU. Mnemonic: **PANCREAS**.²²¹

P _a O ₂	<8kPa
A ge	>55yrs
N eutrophilia	WBC >15 x 10 ⁹ /L
C alcium	<2mmol/L
R enal function	Urea >16mmol/L
E nzymes	LDH >600iu/L; AST >200iu/L
A lbumin	<32g/L (serum)
S ugar	blood glucose >10mmol/L

Courtesy of Mr Etienne Moore FRCS.

Moore EM. A useful mnemonic for severity stratification in acute pancreatitis. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2000; 82: 16-17. © The Royal College of Surgeons of England. Reproduced with permission.

These criteria have been validated for pancreatitis caused by gallstones and alcohol; Ranson's criteria are valid for alcohol-induced pancreatitis, and can only be fully applied after 48h, which does have its disadvantages. Other criteria for assessing severity include the Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Examination (APACHE)-II, and the Bedside Index for Severity in Acute Pancreatitis (BISAP).

Other methods of severity assessment: Severity can also be assessed with the help of CT (Computed Tomography Severity Index).¹ CRP can be a helpful marker.²²²

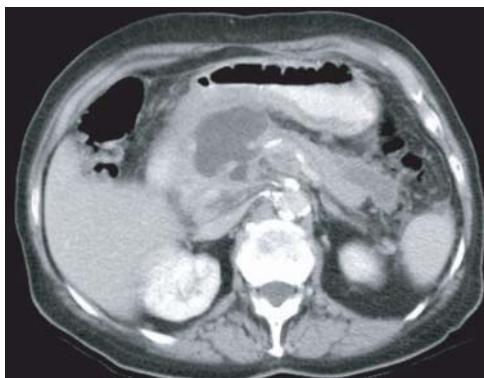


Fig 1. Axial CT of the abdomen (with IV and PO contrast media) showing a pancreatic pseudocyst occupying the lesser sac of the abdomen posterior to the stomach. It is called a 'pseudocyst' because it is not a true cyst, rather a collection of fluid in the lesser sac (ie not lined by epi/endothelium). It develops at ≥6wks. The cyst fluid is of low attenuation compared with the stomach contents because it has not been enhanced by the contrast media.

Image courtesy of Dr Stephen Golding.

¹ For a useful exposition on imaging in pancreatitis see www.emedicine.com/radio/topic521.htm.

Renal stones (calculi) consist of crystal aggregates. Stones form in collecting ducts and may be deposited anywhere from the renal pelvis to the urethra, though classically at **1** Pelviureteric junction **2** Pelvic brim **3** Vesicoureteric junction.

Prevalence Common: lifetime incidence up to 15%. **Peak age:** 20–40yr. ♂:♀≈3:1.

Types •Calcium oxalate (75%) •Magnesium ammonium phosphate (struvite/triple phosphate; 15%) •Also: urate (5%), hydroxyapatite (5%), brushite, cystine (1%), mixed.

Presentation Asymptomatic or: **1 Renal colic:** excruciating ureteric spasms 'loin to groin' (or genitals/inner thigh), with nausea/vomiting. Often cannot lie still (differentiates from peritonitis). **Renal obstruction** felt in the loin, between rib 12 and lateral edge of lumbar muscles (like intercostal nerve irritation pain; the latter is not colicky, and is worsened by specific movements/pressure on a trigger spot). **Obstruction of mid-ureter** may mimic appendicitis/diverticulitis. **Obstruction of lower ureter** may lead to symptoms of bladder irritability and pain in scrotum, penile tip, or labia majora.²²³ **Obstruction in bladder or urethra** causes pelvic pain, dysuria, strangury (desire but inability to void²²⁴) ± interrupted flow. **2 UTI** can co-exist (trisk if voiding impaired); **pyelonephritis** (fever, rigors, loin pain, nausea, vomiting), **pyonephrosis** (infected hydronephrosis) **3** Haematuria **4** Proteinuria **5** Sterile pyuria **6** Anuria.

Examination Usually no tenderness on palpation. May be renal angle tenderness especially to percussion if there is retroperitoneal inflammation.

Tests FBC, U&E, Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , glucose, bicarbonate, urate. **Urine dipstick:** Usually +ve for blood (90%). **MSU:** MC&S. **Further tests for cause:** Urine pH; 24h urine for: calcium, oxalate, urate, citrate, sodium, creatinine; stone biochemistry (sieve urine & send stone).

Imaging: **Spiral non-contrast CT** is superior to and has largely replaced **IVU** for imaging stones (99% visible) + helps exclude differential causes of an acute abdomen. ▶A ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm may present similarly. 80% of stones are visible on **KUB XR** (kidneys+ureters+bladder). Look along ureters for calcification over the transverse processes of the vertebral bodies. **IVU:** radio-opaque contrast injected and serial films taken until contrast seen down to level of obstruction. Cannot be interpreted without a plain control. Abnormal findings: failure of contrast to flow to bladder, dense nephrogram (contrast unable to flow from kidney), clubbed/blunted renal calyces (back pressure), filling defects in the bladder. (ct: contrast allergy, severe asthma, pregnancy, metformin.) **USS** to look for hydronephrosis or hydroureter.

R; Initially: Analgesia, eg **diclofenac** 75mg IV/IM, or 100mg PR.²²⁵ (If ct: opioids) + IV fluids if unable to tolerate PO; antibiotics (eg **cefuroxime** 1.5g/8h IV, or **gentamicin**) if infection. **Stones <5mm in lower ureter:** ~90–95% pass spontaneously. ↑fluid intake.

Stones >5mm/pain not resolving: Medical expulsive therapy: **nifedipine** 10mg/8h PO²²⁶ or α -blockers (**tamsulosin** 0.4mg/d²²⁷) promote expulsion and reduce analgesia requirements.²²⁸ ▶start at presentation.²²⁹ Most pass within 48h (>80% after ~30d). If not, try extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy (ESWL) (if <1cm), or ureteroscopy using a basket.²³⁰ **ESWL:** US waves shatter stone. **SE:** renal injury, may also cause ↑BP and DM.²³¹ **Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL):** keyhole surgery to remove stones, when large, multiple, or complex.²³² Open surgery is rare.

▶**Indications for urgent intervention** (delay kills glomeruli): Presence of infection **and** obstruction—a percutaneous nephrostomy or ureteric stent may be needed to relieve obstruction (p642); urosepsis; intractable pain or vomiting; impending ARF; obstruction in a solitary kidney; bilateral obstructing stones.²³²

Prevention General: Drink plenty. **Normal dietary Ca^{2+} intake** (low Ca^{2+} diets increase oxalate excretion). **Specifically:** •**Calcium stones:** in hypercalciuria, a thiazide diuretic is used to ↓ Ca^{2+} excretion •**Oxalate:** ↓oxalate intake; pyridoxine may be used (p312) •**Struvite:** treat infection promptly •**Urate:** allopurinol (100–300mg/24h PO). Urine alkalinization may also help, as urate is more soluble at pH>6 (eg with potassium citrate or sodium bicarbonate) •**Cystine:** vigorous hydration to keep urine output >3L/d and urinary alkalinization (as above). D-penicillamine is used to chelate cystine, given with pyridoxine to prevent vitamin B₆ deficiency.



Questions to address when confronted by a stone

What is its composition?

Type	Causative factors	Appearance on XR
Calcium oxalate (fig 1)	Metabolic or idiopathic	Spiky, radio-opaque
Calcium phosphate	Metabolic or idiopathic	Smooth, may be large, radio-opaque
Magnesium ammonium phosphate (fig 2)	UTI (proteus causes alkaline urine and calcium precipitation and ammonium salt formation)	Large, horny, 'staghorn' radio-opaque
Urate (p694)	Hyperuricaemia	Smooth, brown, radiolucent
Cystine (fig 3)	Renal tubular defect	Yellow, crystalline, semi-opaque

Why has he or she got this stone now?

- **Diet:** Chocolate, tea, rhubarb, strawberries, nuts and spinach all to oxalate levels.
- **Season:** Variations in calcium and oxalate levels are thought to be mediated by vitamin D synthesis via sunlight on skin.
- **Work:** Can he/she drink freely at work? Is there dehydration?
- **Medications:** Precipitating drugs include: diuretics, antacids, acetazolamide, corticosteroids, theophylline, aspirin, allopurinol, vitamin C and D, indinavir.

Are there any predisposing factors? For example:

- **Recurrent UTIs** (in magnesium ammonium phosphate calculi).
- **Metabolic abnormalities:**
 - Hypercalciuria/hypercalcaemia (p690): hyperparathyroidism, neoplasia, sarcoidosis, hyperthyroidism, Addison's, Cushing's, lithium, vitamin D excess.
 - Hyperuricosuria/↑plasma urate: on its own, or with gout.
 - Hyperoxaluria (p312).
 - Cystinuria (p312).
 - Renal tubular acidosis (p310).
- **Urinary tract abnormalities:** eg pelviureteric junction obstruction, hydro-nephrosis (renal pelvis or calyces), calyceal diverticulum, horseshoe kidney, ureterocele, vesicoureteric reflux, ureteral stricture, medullary sponge kidney.¹
- **Foreign bodies:** eg stents, catheters.

Is there a family history? ↑risk of stones × 3-fold. Specific diseases include x-linked nephrolithiasis and Dent's disease (proteinuria, hypercalciuria and nephrocalcinosis).

► **Is there infection above the stone?** eg fever, loin tender, pyuria? This needs urgent intervention.



Fig 1. Calcium oxalate monohydrate.

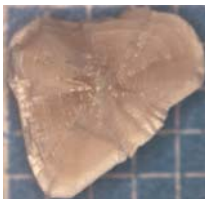


Fig 2. Struvite stone.



Fig 3. Cystine stone.

Figs 1-3 courtesy of Dr Glen Austin.

¹ Medullary sponge kidney is a typically asymptomatic developmental anomaly of the kidney mostly seen in adult females, where there is dilatation of the collecting ducts, which if severe leads to a sponge-like appearance of the renal medulla. **Complications/associations:** UTIs, nephrolithiasis, haematuria and hypercalciuria, hyperparathyroidism (if present, look for genetic markers of MEN type 2A, see p215).²³³

► *Urinary tract obstruction is common and should be considered in any patient with impaired renal function.* Damage can be permanent if the obstruction is not treated promptly. Obstruction may occur anywhere from the renal calyces to the urethral meatus, and may be *partial* or *complete, unilateral* or *bilateral*. Obstructing lesions are *luminal* (stones, blood clot, sloughed papilla, tumour: renal, ureteric, or bladder), *mural* (eg congenital or acquired stricture, neuromuscular dysfunction, schistosomiasis), or *extra-mural* (abdominal or pelvic mass/tumour, retroperitoneal fibrosis, or iatrogenic—eg post surgery). Unilateral obstruction may be clinically silent (normal urine output and U&E) if the other kidney is functioning. ► Bilateral obstruction or obstruction with infection requires urgent treatment. See BOX p645.

Clinical features

- **Acute upper tract obstruction:** Loin pain radiating to the groin. There may be superimposed infection \pm loin tenderness, or an enlarged kidney.
- **Chronic upper tract obstruction:** Flank pain, renal failure, superimposed infection. Polyuria may occur owing to impaired urinary concentration.
- **Acute lower tract obstruction:** Acute urinary retention typically presents with severe suprapubic pain, often preceded by symptoms of bladder outflow obstruction (as below). Clinically: distended, palpable bladder, dull to percussion.
- **Chronic lower tract obstruction:** *Symptoms:* urinary frequency, hesitancy, poor stream, terminal dribbling, overflow incontinence. *Signs:* distended, palpable bladder \pm large prostate on PR. Complications: UTI, urinary retention.

Tests **Blood:** U&E, creatinine. **Urine:** MC&S. **Ultrasound** (p758) is the imaging modality of choice. If there is hydronephrosis or hydroureter (distension of the renal pelvis and calyces or ureter), arrange a **CT scan**. This will determine the level of obstruction. NB: in \sim 5% of cases of obstruction, no distension is seen on ultrasound. **Radionuclide imaging** enables functional assessment of the kidneys. MRI also has a role.

Treatment **Upper tract obstruction:** Nephrostomy or ureteric stent. NB: stents may cause significant discomfort and patients should be warned of this. α -blockers help reduce stent-related pain (\downarrow ureteric spasm).²³⁴ Pyeloplasty, to widen the PUJ, may be performed for idiopathic PUJ obstruction.

Lower tract obstruction: Insert a urethral or suprapubic catheter (p776). Treat the underlying cause if possible. Beware of a large diuresis after relief of obstruction; a temporary salt-losing nephropathy may occur resulting in the loss of several litres of fluid a day. Monitor weight, fluid balance, and U&E closely.

Periaortitis (retroperitoneal fibrosis^{et al})

Causes include idiopathic retroperitoneal fibrosis (RPF), inflammatory aneurysms of the abdominal aorta, and perianeurysmal RPF. Idiopathic RPF is an autoimmune disorder, where there is B-cell and CD4(+) T-cell associated vasculitis. This results in fibrinoid necrosis of the vasa vasorum, affecting the aorta and small and medium retroperitoneal vessels. The ureters get embedded in dense, fibrous tissue resulting in progressive bilateral ureteric obstruction. Secondary causes of RPF include malignancy, typically lymphoma.

Associations Drugs (eg β -blockers, bromocriptine, methysergide, methyl dopa), autoimmune disease (eg thyroiditis, SLE, ANCA+ve vasculitis), smoking, asbestos.

Typical patient Middle-aged σ with vague loin, back or abdominal pain, BPT.

Tests **Blood:** urea and creatinine; \uparrow ESR; \uparrow CRP; anaemia. **Ultrasound:** dilated ureters (hydronephrosis). Then **CT/MRI:** periaortic mass (biopsy under imaging guidance is used to rule out malignancy).

Treatment Retrograde stent placement to relieve obstruction (removed after 12 months) \pm ureterolysis (dissection of the ureters from the retroperitoneal tissue), and immunosuppression with low-dose steroids has good long-term results.²³⁵



Problems of ureteric stenting (depend on site)

Common

Stent-related pain
Trigonal irritation
Haematuria
Fever
Infection
Tissue inflammation
Encrustation
Biofilm formation

Rare

Obstruction
Kinking
Ureteric rupture
Stent misplacement
Stent migration (especially if made of silicone)
Tissue hyperplasia
Forgotten stents

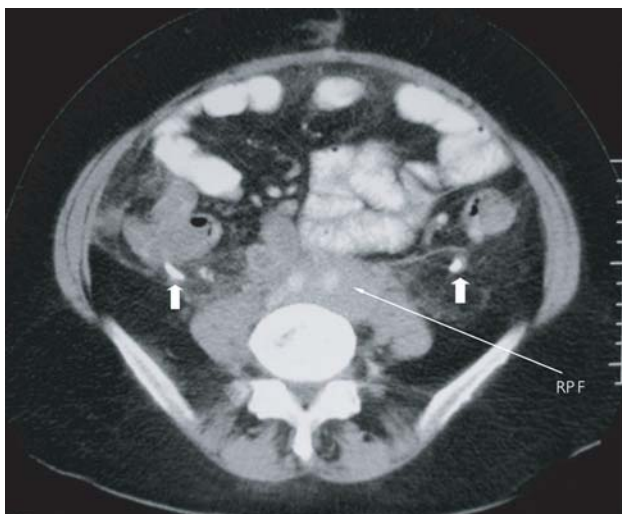


Fig 1. CT scan of retroperitoneal fibrosis (RPF), with subsequent obstruction and dilatation of the ureters (thick arrows).

Oxford Textbook of Nephrology, 2465, ovp.



Retention means not emptying the bladder (due to obstruction or ↓detrusor power).

• **Acute retention** Bladder usually tender, containing ~600mL. **Causes:** prostatic obstruction (usual cause in ♂), urethral strictures, anticholinergics, 'holding', alcohol, constipation, post-op (pain/inflammation/anaesthetics), infection (p292), neurological (cauda equina syndrome), carcinoma. **Examine:** Abdomen, DRE of prostate, perineal sensation (cauda equina compression). **Tests:** MSU, U&E, FBC, and prostate-specific antigen (PSA, p534).¹ Renal ultrasound if renal impairment. **Tricks to aid voiding:** Analgesia, privacy on hospital wards, ambulation, standing to void, voiding to the sound of running taps—or in a hot bath. **If the tricks fail:** Catheterize (p776) and start an α-blocker (eg *tamsulosin* 400µg/d po). If in clot retention the patient will require a 3-way catheter and bladder washout. If >1L residual check U&E and monitor for post-obstructive diuresis (see BOX). After 2–3 days, trial without catheter (TWOC, p777) may work (esp. if <75yrs old and <1L drained or retention was triggered by a passing event, eg GA). α-blockers double the chance of successful voiding. **Prevention:** *Finasteride* (5mg/d po) ↓ prostate size and retention risk. *Tamsulosin* (400µg/d po) ↓ risk of recatheterization after acute retention.²³⁶

• **Chronic retention** More insidious and may be painless. Bladder capacity may be >1.5L. **Presentation:** Overflow incontinence, acute on chronic retention, lower abdominal mass, UTI, or renal failure (eg bilateral obstructive uropathy—see BOX). **Causes:** Prostatic enlargement is common, pelvic malignancy; rectal surgery; DM; CNS disease, eg transverse myelitis/MS; zoster (S2–S4). ▶ Only catheterize patient if there is pain, urinary infection, or renal impairment. Institute definitive treatment promptly. Intermittent self-catheterization is sometimes required (p777). **Catheters** p776. **Prostate carcinoma** p646.

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) is common (24% if aged 40–64; 40% if older).

Pathology: Benign nodular or diffuse proliferation of musculofibrous and glandular layers of the prostate. Inner (transitional) zone enlarges in contrast to peripheral layer expansion seen in prostate carcinoma. **Features:** Lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) = nocturia, frequency, urgency, post-micturition dribbling, poor stream/flow, hesitancy, overflow incontinence, haematuria, bladder stones, UTI. **Management:** Assess severity of symptoms and impact on life. PR exam. **Tests:** MSU; U&E; ultrasound (large residual volume, hydronephrosis—fig 1). 'Rule out' cancer: PSA,¹ transrectal USS ± biopsy. Then consider:

• **Lifestyle:** Avoid caffeine, alcohol (to ↓urgency/nocturia). Relax when voiding. Void twice in a row to aid emptying. Control urgency by practising distraction methods (eg breathing exercises). Train the bladder by 'holding on' to time between voiding.

• **Drugs** are useful in mild disease, and while awaiting surgery. • **α-blockers** are 1st line (eg *tamsulosin* 400µg/d po; also *alfuzosin*, *doxazosin*, *terazosin*). ↓smooth muscle tone (prostate and bladder). SE: drowsiness; depression; dizziness; BP↓; dry mouth; ejaculatory failure; extra-pyramidal signs; nasal congestion; weight↑.

• **5α-reductase inhibitors:** can be added, or used alone, eg *finasteride* 5mg/d po (↓testosterone's conversion to dihydrotestosterone).² Excreted in semen, so warn to use condoms; females should avoid handling. SE: impotence; ↓libido. Effects on prostate size are limited and slow. • There is no evidence for phytotherapy.²³⁷

• **Surgery:**

- **Transurethral resection of prostate** (TURP) ≤14% become impotent (see BOX). Crossmatch 2U. Beware bleeding, clot retention and TUR syndrome: absorption of washout causing hyponatraemia and fits. ~20% need redoing within 10yrs.
- **Transurethral incision of the prostate** (TUIP) involves less destruction than TURP,²³⁸ and less risk to sexual function, but gives similar benefit.²³⁹ It achieves this by relieving pressure on the urethra. It is perhaps the best surgical option for those with small glands <30g—ie ~50% of those operated on in some areas.
- **Retropubic prostatectomy** is an open operation (if prostate very large).
- **Transurethral laser-induced prostatectomy** (TULIP) may be as good as TURP.

¹ Do venepuncture for PSA before PR, as PR can ↑total PSA by ~1ng/mL (free PSA 1by 10%).²⁴⁰ It's difficult to know if acute retention raises PSA, but relieving obstruction does cause it to drop.²⁴¹

² *Finasteride* can prevent retention but has odd effects on risk of prostate cancer. The PCPT trial showed ↓risk of indolent cancers, but ↑risk of Gleason >7 (p647).²⁴²



Advice for patients concerning transurethral prostatectomy (TURP)

Pre-op consent issues may centre on risks of the procedure, eg:

- Haematuria/haemorrhage
- Infection; prostatitis
- Haematospermia
- Erectile dysfunction ~10%
- Hypothermia
- Incontinence $\leq 10\%$
- Urethral trauma/stricture
- Clot retention near strictures
- Post TURP syndrome ($T^\circ\downarrow$; $Na^+\downarrow$)²⁴³
- Retrograde ejaculation (common)

Post-operative advice

- Avoid driving for 2 weeks after the operation.
- Avoid sex for 2 weeks after surgery. Then get back to normal. The amount ejaculated may be reduced (as it flows backwards into the bladder—harmless, but may cloud the urine). It means you may be infertile. Erections may be a problem after TURP, but do not expect this: in some men, erections improve. Rarely, orgasmic sensations are reduced.
- Expect to pass blood in the urine for the first 2 weeks. A small amount of blood colours the urine bright red. Do not be alarmed.
- At first you may need to urinate **more** frequently than before. Do not be despondent. In 6 weeks things should be much better—but the operation cannot be guaranteed to work (8% fail, and lasting incontinence is a problem in 6%; 12% may need repeat TURPs within 8yrs, compared with 1.8% of men undergoing open prostatectomy).
- If feverish, or if urination hurts, take a sample of urine to your doctor.

Obstructive uropathy

In chronic urinary retention, an episode of **acute** retention may go unnoticed for days and, because of their background symptoms, may only present when overflow incontinence becomes a nuisance—pain is not necessarily a feature.

After diagnosing acute on chronic retention and placing a catheter, the bladder residual can be as much as 1.5L of urine. Don't be surprised to be called by the biochemistry lab to be told that the serum creatinine is 1500 μ mol/L! The good news is that renal function usually returns to baseline after a few days (there may be mild background impairment).

Ask for an urgent renal us (fig 1) and consider the following in the acute plan to ensure a safe course:

- **Hyperkalaemia** See p849.
- **Metabolic acidosis** On ABG there is likely to be a respiratory compensated metabolic acidosis. Concerns should prompt discussion with a renal specialist (a good idea anyway), in case haemodialysis is required (p292).
- **Post-obstructive diuresis** In the acute phase after relief of the obstruction, the kidneys produce a lot of urine—as much as a litre in the first hour. It is vital to provide resuscitation fluids and then match input with output.
- ▶ Fluid depletion rather than overload is the danger here.
- **Sodium- and bicarbonate-losing nephropathy** As the kidney undergoes diuresis, Na^+ and bicarbonate are lost in the urine in large quantities. Replace 'in for out' (as above) with isotonic 1.26% sodium bicarbonate solution—this should be available from ITU. Some advocate using 0.9% saline, though the chloride load may exacerbate acidosis. Withhold any nephrotoxic drugs.
- **Infection** Treat infection, bearing in mind that the wcc \uparrow and crp \uparrow may be part of the stress response. Send a sample of urine for mc&s.



Fig 1. Ultrasound of an obstructed kidney showing hydronephrosis. Note dilatation of renal pelvis and ureter, and clubbed calyces.

Image courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



Renal cell carcinoma (aka RCC, hypernephroma, Grawitz tumour) arises from proximal renal tubular epithelium. **Epidemiology:** Accounts for 90% of renal cancers; mean age 55yrs. $\sigma:\phi\approx2:1$. 15% of haemodialysis patients develop RCC. **Features:** 50% found incidentally. Haematuria, loin pain, abdominal mass, anorexia, malaise, weight loss, PUO—often in isolation. Rarely, invasion of left renal vein compresses left testicular vein causing a varicocele. Spread may be direct (renal vein), via lymph, or haematogenous (bone, liver, lung). 25% have metastases at presentation. **Tests:** BP: ↑ from renin secretion. **Blood:** FBC (polycythaemia from erythropoietin secretion); ESR; U&E, ALP (bony mets?). **Urine:** RBCs; cytology. **Imaging:** US (p758); CT/MRI; IVU (filling defect ± calcification); CXR ('cannon ball' metastases). **R:** Radical nephrectomy (nephron-sparing surgery is as good for T1 tumours + preserves renal function).²⁴⁵ RCC is (in general) radio & chemo resistant. In those with unresectable or metastatic disease, some will have a good response to biological therapies, especially angiogenesis-targeted agents: *sunitinib*, *bevacizumab* and *sorafenib*. As 1st-line treatment for patients with multiple poor-risk factors, *temsirolimus* (inhibits mTOR) improves survival compared with interferon.²⁴⁶ Interferon-α and interleukin-2 were formerly used on their own.²⁴⁷ The **Mayo prognostic risk score (SSIGN)** was developed to predict survival and uses information on tumour **stage**, **size**, **grade** and **necrosis**.²⁴⁸ **Prognosis:** 10yr survival ranges from 96.5% (scores 0–1) to 19.2% (scores ≥ 10).²⁴⁹

Transitional cell carcinoma (tcc) may arise in the bladder (50%), ureter, or renal pelvis. **Epidemiology:** Age >40yrs; $\sigma:\phi\approx4:1$. **Risk factors:** p648. **Presentation:** Painless haematuria; frequency; urgency; dysuria; urinary tract obstruction. **Diagnosis:** Urine cytology; IVU; cystoscopy + biopsy; CT/MRI. **R:** See Bladder tumours, p648. **Prognosis:** Varies with clinical stage/histological grade: 10–80% 5yr survival.

Wilms' tumour (nephroblastoma) is a childhood tumour of primitive renal tubules and mesenchymal cells. **Prevalence:** 1:100,000—the chief abdominal malignancy in children. It presents with an abdominal mass and haematuria. **R:** OHCS p133.

Prostate cancer The commonest male malignancy. **Incidence:** ↑ with age: 80% in men >80yrs (autopsy studies). **Associations:** +ve family history (x2–3 ↑ risk, p524), ↓ testosterone. Most are adenocarcinomas arising in peripheral prostate. Spread may be local (seminal vesicles, bladder, rectum) via lymph, or haematogenously (sclerotic bony lesions). **Symptoms:** Asymptomatic or nocturia, hesitancy, poor stream, terminal dribbling, or obstruction. Weight ↓ ± bone pain suggests mets. **DRE exam of prostate:** May show hard, irregular prostate. **Diagnosis:** ↑ PSA (normal in 30% of small cancers); transrectal USS & biopsy; X-rays; bone scan; CT/MRI. **Staging:** MRI. If contrast-enhancing magnetic nanoparticles used, sensitivity for detecting affected nodes rises from 35% to 90%.²⁵⁰ **Treatment:** **Disease confined to prostate:**²⁵¹ Options depend on prognosis (BOX), patient preference and comorbidities. • **Radical prostatectomy** if <70yrs gives excellent disease-free survival (laparoscopic surgery is as good). The role of adjuvant hormonal therapy is being explored. • **Radical radiotherapy** (± neoadjuvant & adjuvant hormonal therapy) is an alternative curative option that compares favourably with surgery (no RCTs). It may be delivered as external beam or brachytherapy. • **Hormone therapy alone** temporarily delays tumour progression but refractory disease eventually develops. Consider in elderly unfit patients with high-risk disease. • **Active surveillance**—particularly if >70yrs and low-risk. **Metastatic disease:** • **Hormonal drugs** may give benefit for 1–2yrs. LHRH agonists, eg 12-weekly *goserelin* (10.8mg sc as Zoladex LA®) first stimulate, then inhibit pituitary gonadotrophin. NB: risks tumour 'flare' when first used—start anti-androgen, eg *cyproterone acetate*, in susceptible patients. The LHRH antagonist *degarelix* is also used in advanced disease. **Symptomatic R:** Analgesia; treat hypercalcaemia; radiotherapy for bone mets/spinal cord compression. **Prognosis:** 10% die in 6 months, 10% live >10yrs. **Screening:** DRE of prostate; transrectal USS; PSA (see BOX).

Penile cancer **Epidemiology:** rare in UK, more common in Far East and Africa, very rare in circumcised. Related to chronic irritation, viruses, smegma. **Presentation:** chronic fungating ulcer, bloody/purulent discharge, 50% spread to lymph at presentation. **R:** radiotherapy & iridium wires if early; amputation & lymph node dissection if late.



Advice to asymptomatic men asking for a PSA blood test (see also p534)

- Many men over 50 consider a PSA test to detect prostatic cancer. *Is this wise?*
 - The test is not very accurate, and we cannot say that those having the test will live longer—even if they turn out to have prostate cancer. Most men with prostate cancer die from an unrelated cause.
 - If the test is falsely positive, you may needlessly have more tests, eg prostate sampling via the back passage (causes bleeding and infection in 1–5% of men).
 - Only one in three of those with a high PSA level will have cancer.
 - You may be worried needlessly if later tests put you in the clear.
 - If a cancer is found, there's no way to tell *for sure* if it will impinge on health. You might end up having a bad effect from treatment that wasn't needed.
 - There is much uncertainty on treating those who **do** turn out to have prostate cancer: options are radical surgery to remove the prostate (this treatment may be fatal in 0.2–0.5% of patients and risks erectile dysfunction and incontinence), radiotherapy, or hormones.
 - Screening via PSA has shown conflicting results. Some RCTs have shown no difference in the rate of death from prostate cancer²⁵²; others have found reduced mortality, eg 1 death prevented per 1055 men invited for screening (if 37 cancers detected).²⁵³
- Ultimately, you must decide for yourself what you want.

Prognostic factors in prostate cancer

A number of prognostic factors help determine if 'watchful waiting' or aggressive therapy should be advised: •Pre-treatment PSA level •Tumour stage (as measured by the TNM system; p527),²⁵⁴ and •Tumour grade—as measured by its Gleason score. Gleason grading is from 1 to 5, with 5 being the highest grade, and carrying the poorest prognosis. A pathologist determines Gleason grades by analysing histology from two separate areas of tumour specimen, and adding them to get the total Gleason score for the tumour, from 2 to 10. Scores 8–10 suggest an aggressive tumour; 5–7: intermediate; 2–4: indolent.

Benign diseases of the penis

Balanitis Acute inflammation of the foreskin and glans. Associated with strep and staph infections. More common in diabetics. Often seen in young children with tight foreskins. **Rx:** Antibiotics, circumcision, hygiene advice.

Phimosis The foreskin occludes the meatus. In young boys this causes recurrent balanitis and ballooning, but time (+ trials of gentle retraction) may obviate the need for circumcision. In adulthood presents with painful intercourse, infection, ulceration and is associated with balanitis xerotica obliterans.

Paraphimosis Occurs when a tight foreskin is retracted and becomes irreplaceable, preventing venous return leading to oedema and even ischaemia of the glans. Can occur if the foreskin is not replaced after catheterization. ►►**Rx:** Ask patient to squeeze glans. Try applying a 50% glucose-soaked swab (oedema may follow osmotic gradient). Ice packs and lidocaine gel may also help. May require aspiration/dorsal slit/circumcision.

Prostatitis

May be acute or chronic. Usually those >35yrs. **Acute prostatitis** is caused mostly by *S. faecalis* and *E. coli*, also chlamydia (and previously TB). **Features:** UTIs, retention, pain, haematospermia, swollen/boggy prostate on DRE. **Rx:** Analgesia; **levofloxacin** 500mg/24h PO for 28d. **Chronic prostatitis** may be bacterial or non-bacterial. Symptoms as above, but present for >3 months. Non-bacterial chronic prostatitis does not respond to antibiotics. Anti-inflammatory drugs, α-blockers and prostatic massage all have a place.



>90% are transitional cell carcinomas (TCCs) in the UK. What appear as benign papillomata rarely behave in a purely benign way. They are almost certainly indolent TCCs. Adenocarcinomas and squamous cell carcinomas are rare in the West (the latter may follow schistosomiasis). UK incidence $\approx 1:6000/\text{yr}$. $\text{♂}:\text{♀} \approx 5:2$. Histology is important for prognosis: **Grade 1**—differentiated; **Grade 2**—intermediate; **Grade 3**—poorly differentiated. 80% are confined to bladder mucosa, and only $\sim 20\%$ penetrate muscle (increasing mortality to 50% at 5yrs).

Presentation Painless haematuria; recurrent UTIs; voiding irritability.

Associations Smoking; aromatic amines (rubber industry); chronic cystitis; schistosomiasis (risk of squamous cell carcinoma); pelvic irradiation.

Tests

- Cystoscopy with biopsy is diagnostic.
- Urine: microscopy/cytology (cancers may cause sterile pyuria).
- CT urogram is both diagnostic and provides staging.
- Bimanual EUA helps assess spread.
- MRI or lymphangiography may show involved pelvic nodes.

Staging See TABLE.

Treating TCC of the bladder

- **Tis/Ta/T1:** (80% of all patients) Diathermy via transurethral cystoscopy/transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURBT). Consider intravesical chemotherapeutic agents for multiple small tumours or high-grade tumours. A regimen of *mitomycin C*, *doxorubicin* and *cisplatin* as maintenance to prevent recurrence is as effective as intravesical BCG (which stimulates a non-specific immune response) and has less SEs.²⁵⁵ 5yr survival $\approx 95\%$.
- **T2-3:** Radical cystectomy is the 'gold standard'. Radiotherapy gives worse 5yr survival rates than surgery, but preserves the bladder. 'Salvage' cystectomy can be performed if radiotherapy fails, but yields worse results than primary surgery. Post-op chemotherapy (eg M-VAC: *methotrexate*, *vinblastine*, *adriamycin*, and *cisplatin*) is toxic but effective. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy with CMV (*cisplatin*, *methotrexate* and *vinblastine*) has improved survival compared to cystectomy or radiotherapy alone.²⁵⁶ Methods to preserve the bladder with transurethral resection or partial cystectomy + systemic chemotherapy have been tried, but long-term results are disappointing. If the bladder neck is not involved, orthotopic reconstruction rather than forming a urostoma is an option (both using $\sim 40\text{cm}$ of the patient's ileum), but adequate tumour clearance must not be compromised. ► The patient should have all these options explained by a urologist and an oncologist.
- **T4:** Usually palliative chemo/radiotherapy. Chronic catheterization and urinary diversions may help to relieve pain.

Follow-up History, examination, and regular cystoscopy: •**High-risk tumours:** Every 3 months for 2yrs, then every 6 months; •**Low-risk tumours:** First follow-up cystoscopy after 9 months, then yearly.

Tumour spread Local \rightarrow to pelvic structures; lymphatic \rightarrow to iliac and para-aortic nodes; haematogenous \rightarrow to liver and lungs.

Survival This depends on age at surgery. For example, the 3yr survival after cystectomy for T2 and T3 tumours is 60% if 65-75yrs old, falling to 40% if 75-82yrs old (in whom the operative mortality is 4%). With unilateral pelvic node involvement, only 6% of patients survive 5yrs. The 3yr survival with bilateral or para-aortic node involvement is nil.

Complications Cystectomy can result in sexual and urinary malfunction. Massive bladder haemorrhage may complicate treatment or be a feature of disease treated palliatively. Determining the cause of bleeding is key. Consider *alum* solution bladder irrigation (if no renal failure) as 1st-line treatment for intractable haematuria in advanced malignancy: it is an inpatient procedure.²⁵⁷



TNM staging of bladder cancer

(See also p527)

Tis	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	Not felt at EUA
Ta	Tumour confined to epithelium	Not felt at EUA
T1	Tumour in lamina propria	Not felt at EUA
T2	Superficial muscle involved	Rubbery thickening at EUA
T3	Deep muscle involved	EUA: mobile mass
T4	Invasion beyond bladder	EUA: fixed mass

EUA = examination under anaesthetic

Is asymptomatic non-visible haematuria significant?

Dipstick tests are often done routinely for new admissions. If non-visible (previously microscopic) haematuria is found, but the patient has no related symptoms, what does this mean? Before rushing into a barrage of investigations, consider:

- One study found that incidence of urogenital disease (eg bladder cancer) was no higher in those with asymptomatic microhaematuria than in those without.²⁵⁸
- Asymptomatic non-visible haematuria is the sole presenting feature in only 4% of bladder cancers, and there is no evidence that these are less advanced than malignancies presenting with macroscopic haematuria.
- When monitoring those with treated bladder cancer for recurrence, non-visible haematuria tests have a sensitivity of only 31% in those with superficial bladder malignancy, in whom detection would be most useful.
- Although 80% of those with flank pain due to a renal stone have microscopic haematuria, so do 50% of those with flank pain but no stone.²⁵⁹

The conclusion is not that urine dipstick testing is useless, but that results should not be interpreted in isolation. Unexplained non-visible haematuria in those >50yrs should be referred under the 2-week rule.²⁶⁰ Smokers and those with +ve family history for urothelial cancer may also be investigated differently from those with no risk factors (eg ultrasound, cystoscopy ± referral), but in a young fit athlete, the diagnosis is more likely to be exercise-induced haematuria.²⁶¹ Wise doctors liaise with their patients. "Shall we let sleeping dogs lie?" is a reasonable question for some patients. Give the facts and let the patient decide, reserving to yourself the right to present the facts in certain ways, depending on your instincts, and those of a trusted colleague. Remember that medicine is for gamblers (p672), and wise gamblers assess the odds against a shifting set of circumstances.



- ▶ Think twice before inserting a urinary catheter.
- ▶ Carry out rectal examination to exclude faecal impaction.
- ▶ Is the bladder palpable after voiding (retention with overflow)?
- ▶ Is there neurological co-morbidity: eg MS; Parkinson's disease; stroke; spinal trauma?

Anyone might 'wet themselves' on a long bus ride (we all would if it was long enough). Don't think of people as dry or incontinent, but as incontinent in some circumstances. Attending to these is as important as the physiology. Get good at treating incontinence and you will do wonders for quality of life. See p64 for symptoms.

Incontinence in men Enlargement of the prostate is the major cause of incontinence: urge incontinence (see below) or dribbling may result from partial retention of urine. TURP (p644) & other pelvic surgery may weaken the bladder sphincter and cause incontinence. Troublesome incontinence needs specialist assessment.

Incontinence in women Often under-reported with delays before seeking help.

- **Functional incontinence**, ie when physiological factors are relatively unimportant. The patient is 'caught short' and too slow in finding the toilet because of (for example) immobility, or unfamiliar surroundings.
- **Stress incontinence**: Leakage from an incompetent sphincter, eg when intra-abdominal pressure rises (eg coughing, laughing). Increasing age and obesity are risk factors. The key to diagnosis is the loss of small (but often frequent) amounts of urine when coughing etc. Examine for pelvic floor weakness/prolapse/pelvic masses.²⁶² Look for cough leak on standing and with full bladder. Stress incontinence is common in pregnancy and following birth. It occurs to some degree in ~50% of post-menopausal women. In elderly women, pelvic floor weakness, eg with uterine prolapse or urethrocele (OHCS p290) is a very common association.
- **Urge incontinence/overactive bladder syndrome** The urge to urinate is quickly followed by uncontrollable and sometimes complete emptying of the bladder as the detrusor muscle contracts. Urgency/leaking is precipitated by: arriving home (latchkey incontinence, a conditioned reflex); cold; the sound of running water; coffee, tea or cola; and obesity. Δ: urodynamic studies. *Cause*: detrusor overactivity, eg from central inhibitory pathway malfunction or sensitisation of peripheral afferent terminals in the bladder; or a bladder muscle problem. Check for organic brain damage (eg stroke; Parkinson's; dementia). *Other causes*: urinary infection; diabetes; diuretics; atrophic vaginitis; urethritis.

In both sexes incontinence may result from confusion or sedation. Occasionally it may be purposeful (eg preventing admission to an old people's home) or due to anger.

Management Check for: UTI; DM; diuretic use; faecal impaction; palpable bladder; GFR.

- **Stress incontinence**: Pelvic floor exercises are 1st line (8 contractions x3/day for 3 months). Intravaginal electrical stimulation may also be effective, but is not acceptable to many women. A ring pessary may help uterine prolapse, eg while awaiting surgical repair. **Surgical options** (eg tension-free vaginal tape) aim to stabilise the mid-urethra.²⁶³ Urethral bulking is also available. If surgical options are not suitable: **Duloxetine** 40mg/12h PO may help (50% have ≥50% ↓ in incontinence episodes) SE = nausea.²⁶⁴
- **Urge incontinence**: The patient (or carer) should complete an 'incontinence' chart for 3 days to define the pattern of incontinence. Examine for spinal cord and CNS signs (including cognitive test, p70 & p85); and for vaginitis (if postmenopausal). Vaginitis can be treated with topical oestrogen therapy for a limited period. Bladder training¹ (may include pelvic floor exercises) and weight loss are important. Drugs may help reduce night-time incontinence (see Box) but can be disappointing. Consider aids eg absorbent pad. If ♂ consider a condom catheter.
- ▶ Do urodynamic assessment (cystometry & urine flow rate measurement) before any surgical intervention to exclude detrusor overactivity or sphincter dyssynergia.



Managing detrusor overactivity in urge incontinence

Agents for detrusor overactivity

Antimuscarinics: eg *tolterodine SR* 4mg/24h; SE: dry mouth, eyes/skin, drowsiness, constipation, tachycardia, abdominal pain, urinary retention, sinusitis, oedema, weight↑, glaucoma precipitation.²³¹ Up to 4mg/12 may be needed (unlicensed).²³²

Topical oestrogens

β3 adrenergic agonist: *mirabegron* 50mg/24h; SE tachycardia; CI: severe HTN; Caution if renal/hepatic impairment.

Intravesical botulinum toxin (*Botox*®)
Percutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation (PTNS). (A typical treatment consists of x12 weekly 30 min sessions.)

Neuromodulation via transcutaneous electrical stimulation²³⁴

Modulation of afferent input from bladder

Hypnosis, psychotherapy, bladder training¹

Surgery (eg clam ileocystoplasty)

Notes

Improves frequency & urgency. Alternatives: *solifenacin* 5mg/24h (max 10mg); *oxybutynin*, but more SE unless transdermal route or modified release used; ⚡ *trospium* or *fesoterodine* (prefers M3 receptors).²³³ Avoid in myasthenia, and if glaucoma or UC are uncontrolled.

Post-menopausal urgency, frequency + nocturia may occasionally be improved by raising the bladder's sensory threshold. ⚡ Systemic therapy worsens incontinence.

Consider if antimuscarinics are contraindicated or clinically ineffective, or if SE unacceptable.

Consider if above medications ineffective. Consider if drug treatment ineffective and *Botox*® not wanted. PTNS delivers neuromodulation to the S2-S4 junction of the sacral nerve plexus.

Sacral nerve stimulation inhibits the reflex behaviour of involuntary detrusor contractions.

Gabapentin (unlicensed).²³⁵ ⚡

(These all require good motivation.)

Reserved for troublesome or intractable symptoms. The bladder is bisected, opened like a clam, and 25cm of ileum is sewn in.

NB: *desmopressin* nasal spray 20µg as a night-time dose has a role in ↓urine production and ∴ nocturia in overactive bladder, but is unsuitable if elderly (SE: fluid retention, heart failure, Na⁺↓).

Not all male urinary symptoms are prostate-related!

Detrusor over-activity Men get this as well as women.²⁷⁰ See above. Pressure-flow studies help diagnose this (as does detrusor thickness ≥2.9mm on US).²⁷¹

Primary bladder neck obstruction²⁷² is a condition in which the bladder neck does not open properly during voiding. Studies in men and women with voiding dysfunction show that it is common. The cause may be muscular or neurological dysfunction or fibrosis. **Diagnosis:** Video-urodynamics, with simultaneous pressure-flow measurement, and visualization of the bladder neck during voiding.

Treatment: Watchful waiting; α-blockers (p644); surgery.²⁷³

Urethral stricture This may follow trauma or infection (eg gonorrhoea)—and frequently leads to voiding symptoms, UTI, or retention. Malignancy is a rare cause. **Imaging:** Retrograde urethrogram or antegrade cystourethrogram if the patient has an existing suprapubic catheter. **Internal urethrotomy** involves incising the stricture transurethrally using endoscopic equipment—to release scar tissue. The expectation is that epithelialization ends before wound contraction still further reduces the urethral diameter.²⁷⁴ **Stents** incorporate themselves into the wall of the urethra and keep the lumen open. They work best for short strictures in the bulbar urethra (anterior urethral anatomy, from proximal to distal: prostatic urethra→posterior or membranous urethra→bulbar urethra→penile or pendulous urethra→fossa navicularis→meatus).

1 Mind over bladder: •Void when you DON'T have urge; DON'T go to the bathroom when you do have urge •Gradually extend the time between voiding •Schedule your trips to toilet •Stretch your bladder to normal capacity •When urge comes, calm down and make it go using mind over bladder tricks.



- ▶ Testicular lump = cancer until proved otherwise.
- ▶ Acute, tender enlargement of testis = torsion (p654) until proved otherwise.

Diagnosing scrotal masses (fig 2):

1 Can you get above it? 2 Is it separate from the testis? 3 Cystic or solid?

- Cannot get above \approx inguinoscrotal hernia (p616) or hydrocele extending proximally
- Separate and cystic \approx epididymal cyst
- Separate and solid \approx epididymitis/varicocele
- Testicular and cystic \approx hydrocele
- ▶ Testicular and solid—tumour, haematocele, granuloma (p186), orchitis, gumma (p431). USS may help (fig 1).

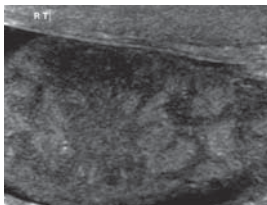


Fig 1 USS testis. Heterogeneity suggests tumour ($\Delta\Delta$: chronic inflammation).

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.

Epididymal cysts usually develop in adulthood and contain clear or milky (spermatocele) fluid. They lie above and behind the testis. Remove if symptomatic.

Hydroceles (fluid within the tunica vaginalis). **Primary** (associated with a patent processus vaginalis, which typically resolves during the 1st year of life) or **secondary** to testis tumour/trauma/infection. Primary hydroceles are more common, larger, and usually in younger men. Can resolve spontaneously. **Rx**: aspiration (may need repeating) or surgery: plicating the tunica vaginalis (Lord's repair)/inverting the sac (Jaboulay's repair) ▶ Is the testis normal after aspiration? If any doubt, do USS.

Epididymo-orchitis **Causes**: Chlamydia (eg if <35yrs); *E. coli*; mumps; *N. gonorrhoea*; TB. **Features**: Sudden-onset tender swelling, dysuria, sweats/fever. Take '1st catch' urine sample; look for urethral discharge. Consider STI screen. Warn of possible infertility²⁷⁵ and symptoms worsening before improving. **Rx**: If <35yrs; *doxycycline* 100mg/12h (covers chlamydia; treat sexual partners). If gonorrhoea suspected add *ceftriaxone* 500mg IM stat. If >35yrs (mostly non-STI), associated UTI is common so try *ciprofloxacin* 500mg/12h or *ofloxacin* 200mg/12h.²⁷⁶ Antibiotics should be used for 2–4 weeks. Also: analgesia, scrotal support, drainage of any abscess.

Varicocele Dilated veins of pampiniform plexus. Left side more commonly affected. Often visible as distended scrotal blood vessels that feel like 'a bag of worms'. Patient may complain of dull ache. Associated with subfertility, but repair (via surgery or embolization) seems to have little effect on subsequent pregnancy rates.

Haematocele Blood in tunica vaginalis, follows trauma, may need drainage/excision.

Testicular tumours The commonest malignancy in σ aged 15–44; 10% occur in undescended testes, even after orchidopexy. A contralateral tumour is found in 5%. Types: seminoma, 55% (30–65yrs);²⁷⁷ non-seminomatous germ cell tumour, 33% (NSGCT; previously teratoma; 20–30yrs); mixed germ cell tumour, 12%; lymphoma.

Signs: Typically painless testis lump, found after trauma/infection \pm haemospermia, secondary hydrocele, pain, dyspnoea (lung mets), abdominal mass (enlarged nodes), or effects of secreted hormones. 25% of seminomas & 50% of NSGCTs present with metastases. **Risk factors**: Undescended testis; infant hernia; infertility.

Staging: 1 No evidence of metastasis. 2 Infradiaphragmatic node involvement (spread via the para-aortic nodes **not** inguinal nodes). 3 Supradiaphragmatic node involvement. 4 Lung involvement (haematogenous).

Tests: (allow staging) CXR, CT, excision biopsy. α -FP (eg >3iu/mL)¹ and β -hCG are useful tumour markers and help monitor treatment (p535); check before & during **Rx**.

Rx: Radical orchidectomy (inguinal incision; occlude the spermatic cord before mobilization to \downarrow risk of intra-operative spread). Options are constantly updated (surgery, radiotherapy, chemotherapy). Seminomas are exquisitely radiosensitive. Stage 1 seminomas: orchidectomy + radiotherapy cures \sim 95%. Do close follow-up to detect relapse. Cure of NSGCT, even if metastases are present, is achieved by 3 cycles of *bleomycin* + *etoposide* + *cisplatin*. Prevention of late presentation: self-examination (see p655). 5yr survival >90% in all groups.

1 α FP is not \uparrow in pure seminoma; may also be \uparrow in: hepatitis, cirrhosis, liver cancer, open neural tube defect.



- Psoas abscess—may present with back pain, limp and swinging pyrexia
- Neuroma of the femoral nerve
- Femoral artery aneurysm
- Saphena varix—like a hernia, it has a cough impulse
- Lymph node
- Femoral hernia
- Inguinal hernia
- Hydrocele or varicocele
- Also consider an undescended testis (cryptorchidism)

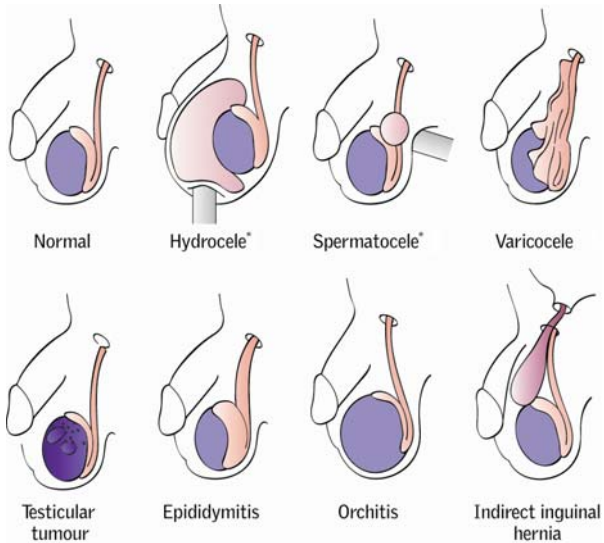


Fig 2. Diagnosis of scrotal masses. (*=transilluminates; position of pen torch shown in image)



The aim is to recognize this condition before the cardinal signs and symptoms are fully manifest, as prompt surgery saves testes. If surgery is performed in <6h the salvage rate is 90–100%; if >24h it is 0–10%.²⁷⁸

► If in any doubt, surgery is required. If suspected refer immediately to urology.

Symptoms: Sudden onset of pain in one testis, which makes walking uncomfortable. Pain in the abdomen, nausea, and vomiting are common.

Signs: Inflammation of one testis—it is very tender, hot, and swollen. The testis may lie high and transversely. Torsion may occur at any age but is most common at 11–30yrs. With **intermittent torsion** the pain may have passed on presentation, but if it was severe, and the lie is horizontal, prophylactic fixing may be wise.²⁷⁹

ΔΔ: The main one is epididymo-orchitis (p652) but with this the patient tends to be older, there may be symptoms of urinary infection, and more gradual onset of pain. Also consider tumour, trauma, and an acute hydrocele. **NB:** **torsion of testicular or epididymal appendage** (the hydatid of Morgagni—a remnant of the Müllerian duct)—usually occurs between 7–12yrs, and causes less pain. Its tiny blue nodule may be discernible under the scrotum. It is thought to be due to the surge in gonadotrophins which signal the onset of puberty. **Idiopathic scrotal oedema** is a benign condition usually between ages 2 and 10yrs, and is differentiated from torsion by the absence of pain and tenderness.

Tests: Doppler USS may demonstrate lack of blood flow to testis, as may isotope scanning. Only perform if diagnosis equivocal—do not delay surgical exploration.

Treatment: ► Ask consent for possible orchidectomy + **bilateral** fixation (orchidopexy)—see p570. At surgery expose and untwist the testis. If its colour looks good, return it to the scrotum and fix **both** testes to the scrotum.

Undescended testes

Incidence About 3% of boys are born with at least one undescended testis (30% of premature boys) but this drops to 1% after the first year of life. Unilateral is four times more common than bilateral. (If bilateral then should have genetic testing.)

- **Cryptorchidism:** complete absence of the testicle from the scrotum (anorchism is absence of both testes).
- **Retractile testis:** the genitalia are normally developed but there is an excessive cremasteric reflex. The testicle is often found at the external inguinal ring. **R:** Reassurance (examining whilst in a warm bath, for example, may help to distinguish from maldescended/ectopic testes).
- **Maldescended testis:** may be found anywhere along the normal path of descent from abdomen to groin.
- **Ectopic testis:** most commonly found in the superior inguinal pouch (anterior to the external oblique aponeurosis) but may also be abdominal, perineal, penile and in the femoral triangle.

Complications of maldescended and ectopic testis Infertility; ×40 increased risk of testicular cancer (risk remains after surgery but in cryptorchidism may be ↓ if orchidopexy performed before aged 10);²⁸⁰ increased risk of testicular trauma, increased risk of testicular torsion. Also associated with hernias (due to patent processus vaginalis in >90%, p615) and other urinary tract anomalies.

Treatment of maldescended and ectopic testis restores (potential for) spermatogenesis; the increased risk of malignancy remains but becomes easier to diagnose.

Surgery: Orchidopexy, usually dartos pouch procedure, is performed in infancy: testicle and cord are mobilized following a groin incision, any processus vaginalis or hernial sac is removed and the testicle is brought through a hole made in the dartos muscle into the resultant subcutaneous pouch where the muscle prevents retraction.

Hormonal: Hormonal therapy, most commonly human chorionic gonadotrophin (hcg), is sometimes attempted if an undescended testis is in the inguinal canal.



Testicular self-examination: advice for patients (and male readers)

Why? Cancers that are detected early are the most easily treated so it makes sense to check yourself regularly. It will help you know what is normal for you and enable you to detect changes. NB: regular self-examination has not been studied enough to show if it does actually reduce the death rate from testicular cancer.²⁸¹

When? Regularly; at least once a month. Ideally in the shower/bath when the muscle in the scrotum is relaxed.

How?

- Gently feel each testicle individually. You should feel a soft tube at the top and back of the testicle. This is the epididymis which carries and stores sperm. It may feel slightly tender. Don't confuse it with an abnormal lump. You should be able to feel the firm, smooth tube of the spermatic cord which runs up from the epididymis.
- Feel the testicle itself. It should be smooth with no lumps or swellings. It is unusual to develop cancer in both testicles at the same time, so if you are wondering whether a testicle is feeling normal or not you can compare it with the other.
- Remember—if you do notice a change in size/weight or find any abnormal lumps or swellings in your testicle, make an appointment and have it checked by your doctor as soon as possible.
- Note—most abnormalities are not cancer but collections of fluid, infection, or cysts. Cancer usually starts as a small hard painless lump. Even if it is cancer, treatment is often effective. In more than 9 in 10 cases, treatment can result in a complete cure. However, the earlier it is detected the easier it is to treat. More than a third of people with this cancer consult their doctor after the cancer has spread, which makes treatment more difficult. Often this is because of unfounded fears, or just hoping it will go away.

Adapted from www.cancerhelp.org.uk.



An artery with a dilatation >50% of its original diameter has an aneurysm; remember this is an ongoing process. True aneurysms are abnormal dilatations that involve all layers of the arterial wall. False aneurysms (pseudoaneurysms) involve a collection of blood in the outer layer only (adventitia) which communicates with the lumen (eg after trauma). Aneurysms may be fusiform (eg most AAAs) or sac-like (eg Berry aneurysms; **fig 2** p483).

Common sites Aorta (infrarenal most common), iliac, femoral and popliteal arteries.

Complications Rupture; thrombosis; embolism; fistulae; pressure on other structures.

Screening all men at age 65yrs decreases mortality from ruptured AAA.²⁸² The NHS AAA screening programme is being introduced across the UK.

Ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) Death rates/year from ruptured AAAs rise with age: 125 per million in those aged 55–59; 2728 per million if over 85yrs.

Symptoms & signs: Intermittent or continuous abdominal pain (radiates to back, iliac fossae, or groins—► don't dismiss this as renal colic), collapse, an **expansile** abdominal mass (it expands and contracts: swellings that are pulsatile just transmit the pulse, eg nodes overlying arteries), and shock. If in doubt, assume a ruptured aneurysm.

Unruptured AAA Definition: >3cm across. **Prevalence:** 3% of those >50yrs. $\sigma : \phi > 3:1$. Less common in diabetics. **Cause:** Degeneration of elastic lamellae and smooth muscle loss.²⁸³ There is a genetic component. **Symptoms:** Often none, they may cause abdominal/back pain, often discovered incidentally on abdominal examination (see BOX). **Monitoring:** RCTs have failed to demonstrate benefit from early endovascular repair (EVAR, see below) of aneurysms <5.5cm (where rupture rates are low).²⁸⁴ Risk of rupture below this size is <1%/yr, compared to ~25%/yr for aneurysms >6cm across. ~75% of aneurysms so monitored eventually need repair and some will lose suitability for endovascular repair. Rupture is more likely if: •BPT •Smoker •Female •Strong family history. Modify risk factors if possible at diagnosis. **Elective surgery:** Reserve for aneurysms ≥ 5.5 cm²⁸³ or expanding at >1cm/yr, or symptomatic aneurysms. Operative mortality: ~5%; complications include spinal or visceral ischaemia and distal trash from dislodged thrombus debris.²⁸⁵ Studies show that age >80yrs should not, in itself, preclude surgery. **Stenting (EVAR):** Major surgery can be avoided by inserting an endovascular stent via the femoral artery. EVAR has less early mortality but higher graft complications, eg failure of stent-graft to totally exclude blood flow to the aneurysm—'endoleak', & is more costly.²⁸⁶ See **fig 1**.

Typical causes

- Atheroma
- Trauma
- Infection, eg mycotic aneurysm in endocarditis, tertiary syphilis (esp. thoracic aneurysms)
- Connective tissue disorders (eg Marfan's, Ehlers-Danlos)
- Inflammatory, eg Takayasu's aortitis (p726)

►► Thoracic aortic dissection

Blood splits the aortic media with sudden tearing chest pain (\pm radiation to back). As the dissection extends, branches of the aorta occlude sequentially leading to hemiplegia (carotid artery), unequal arm pulses and BP or acute limb ischaemia, paraplegia (anterior spinal artery), and anuria (renal arteries). Aortic valve incompetence, inferior MI and cardiac arrest may develop if dissection moves proximally. **Type A** (70%) dissections involve the ascending aorta, irrespective of site of the tear, whilst if the ascending aorta is not involved it is called **type B** (30%) ►► All patients with type A thoracic dissection should be considered for surgery: get urgent cardiothoracic advice. Definitive treatment for type B is less clear and may be managed medically, with surgery reserved for distal dissections that are leaking, ruptured, or compromising vital organs. **Management:** •Crossmatch 10u blood; •ECG & CXR (expanded mediastinum is rare). •CT/MRI or transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE).²⁸⁷ Take to ITU; hypotensives: keep systolic at ~100–110mmHg: **labetalol** (p134) or **esmolol** (p120; $t_{1/2}$ is ultra-short) by IVI is helpful here (calcium-channel blockers may be used if β -blockers contraindicated). Acute operative mortality: <25%.



Emergency management of a ruptured abdominal aneurysm

Mortality—treated: 41% and improving; untreated: ~100%.²⁸⁸

- ▶▶ Summon a vascular surgeon and an experienced anaesthetist; warn theatre.
- ▶▶ Do an ECG, and take blood for amylase, Hb, crossmatch (10–40u may eventually be needed). Catheterize the bladder.
- ▶▶ Gain IV access with 2 large-bore cannulae. Treat shock with ORh+ve blood (if desperate), but keep systolic BP ≤ 100 mmHg to avoid rupturing a contained leak (NB: raised BP is common early on).
- ▶▶ Take the patient straight to theatre. Don't waste time on x-rays: fatal delay may result, though CT can help in a stable patient with an uncertain diagnosis.
- ▶▶ Give prophylactic antibiotics, eg *cefuroxime* 1.5g + *metronidazole* 500mg iv.
- ▶▶ Surgery involves clamping the aorta above the leak, and inserting a Dacron® graft (eg 'tube graft' or, if significant iliac aneurysm also, a 'trouser graft' with each 'leg' attached to an iliac artery).

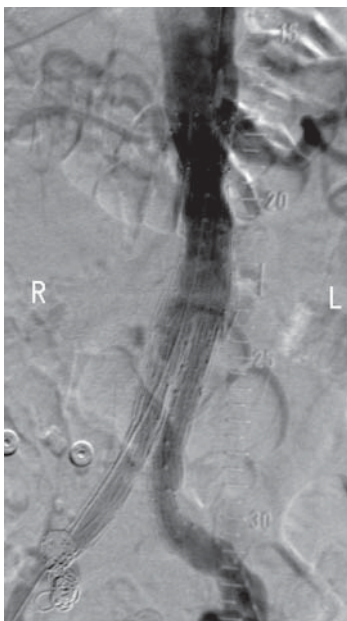


Fig 1. Stenting: not an open or closed case...this is a digital subtraction angiogram showing correct positioning of an endovascular stent at the end of the procedure. Although less invasive than open repair, some are unsuited to this method, owing to the anatomy of their aneurysm. Lifelong monitoring is needed: stents may leak and the aneurysm progress (the risk can be reduced by coiling the internal iliac arteries, as shown).²⁸⁹

Figure courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

💣 The bomb inside you?! 💣

A wise doctor might reframe a patient's fear of an unexploded bomb inside them to deepen their view of his or her own health: health is not simply a question of being of sound body and mind, but entails a process of adaptation to changing environments, to growing up, to ageing, and to healing when damaged (*OHCS*, p470).



Peripheral arterial disease (PAD) occurs due to atherosclerosis causing stenosis of arteries via a multifactorial process involving modifiable and non-modifiable risk factors. 65% have co-existing clinically relevant cerebral or coronary artery disease. ▶ Cardiovascular risk factors should be identified and treated aggressively. The chief feature of PAD is intermittent claudication (= *to limp*). Prevalence = 10%.

Symptoms Cramping pain is felt in the calf, thigh, or buttock after walking for a given distance (the **claudication distance**) and relieved by rest (calf claudication suggests femoral disease while buttock claudication suggests iliac disease). Ulceration, gangrene (p662), and foot pain at rest—eg burning pain at night relieved by hanging legs over side of bed—are the cardinal features of **critical ischaemia**. Buttock claudication ± impotence imply Leriche's syndrome (p718). Young, heavy smokers are at risk from Buerger's disease (thromboangiitis obliterans, p710).²⁹¹

Fontaine classification for peripheral arterial disease: 1 Asymptomatic 2 Intermittent claudication 3 Ischaemic rest pain 4 Ulceration/gangrene (critical ischaemia).

Signs Absent femoral, popliteal or foot pulses; cold, white leg(s); atrophic skin; punched out ulcers (often painful); postural/dependent colour change; a vascular (Buerger's) angle¹ of <20° and capillary filling time >15s are found in severe ischaemia.

Tests Exclude DM, arteritis (ESR/CRP). FBC (anaemia, polycythaemia); U&E (renal disease); lipids (dyslipidaemia); ECG (cardiac ischaemia). Also do thrombophilia screen and serum homocysteine if <50 years. **Ankle-brachial pressure index (ABPI):** Normal = 1.1–1.2; Peripheral arterial disease = 0.5–0.9; Critical limb ischaemia <0.5 or ankle systolic pressure <50mmHg. Beware falsely high results from incompressible calcified vessels in severe atherosclerosis, eg DM.

Imaging **Colour duplex uss** is 1st line (non-invasive and readily available). If considering intervention **MR/CT angiography** (fig 2) is used to assess extent and location of stenoses and quality of distal vessels ('run-off'). It has largely replaced digital subtraction angiography.

R 1 Risk factor modification: Quit smoking (vital). Treat hypertension and high cholesterol. Prescribe an antiplatelet agent (unless contraindicated), to prevent progression and to reduce cardiovascular risk. **Clopidogrel** is recommended as 1st-line.²⁹²

2 Management of claudication: • **Supervised exercise programmes** reduce symptoms by improving collateral blood flow (2h per week for 3 months). Encourage patients to exercise to the point of maximal pain. • **Vasoactive drugs, eg nifedipine, offer modest benefit and are recommended only in those who do not wish to undergo revascularization and if exercise fails to improve symptoms.**

If conservative measures have failed and PAD is severely affecting a patient's lifestyle or becoming limb threatening, intervention is required.

• **Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty (PTA)** is used for disease limited to a single arterial segment (a balloon is inflated in the narrowed segment). 5-year patency is 79% (iliac) and 55% (femoral). Stents can be used to maintain artery patency.

• **Surgical reconstruction:** If atheromatous disease is extensive but distal run-off is good (ie distal arteries filled by collateral vessels), consider arterial reconstruction with a bypass graft (fig 2). Procedures include femoral-popliteal bypass, femoral-femoral crossover and aorto-bifemoral bypass grafts. Autologous vein grafts are superior to prosthetic grafts (eg Dacron® or PTFE).²⁹³

Amputation <3% of patients with intermittent claudication require major amputation within 5 years (↑ in diabetes, p204). Amputation may relieve intractable pain and death from sepsis and gangrene. A decision to amputate must be made by the patient, usually against a background of failed alternative strategies. The knee should be preserved whenever possible as it improves mobility and rehabilitation potential (this must be balanced with the need to ensure wound healing). Rehabilitation should be started early with a view to limb fitting. **Gabapentin** (regimen on p508) can be used to treat the gruelling complication of phantom limb pain.²⁹⁴

Future therapies: Angiogenic gene therapy has yet to reduce amputation rates.²⁹⁵

¹ Leg goes pale when raised, eg by 20° off the couch; compare sides.



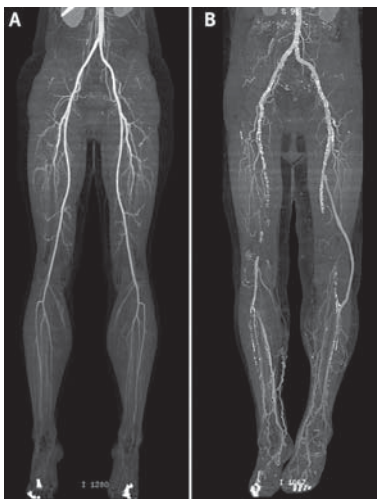
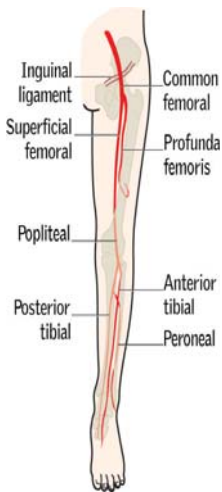


Fig 1. (left) Leg arteries. **Fig 2.** (right) CT angiogram showing (A) normal lower limb vasculature and (B) heavily diseased arteries with previous left femoral anterior tibial bypass.

Reproduced from 'Diagnosis and management of peripheral arterial disease', G Peach, M Griffin, K G Jones, M M Thompson, R J Hinchliffe, vol 345, 2012, with permission from BMJ Publishing Group Ltd.

Acute limb ischaemia

► **Surgical emergency requiring revascularization within 4-6h to save the limb.** May be due to thrombosis *in situ* (~40%), emboli (38%), graft/angioplasty occlusion (15%), or trauma. Thrombosis more likely in known 'vasculopathies'; emboli are sudden, eg in those without previous vessel disease; they can affect multiple sites, and there may be a bruit. Mortality: 22%. Amputation rate: 16%.

• **Symptoms and signs:** The 6 'P's of acute ischaemia: **p**ale, **p**ulseless, **p**ainful, **p**aralysed, **p**araesthetic, and **p**erishingly cold'. Onset of fixed mottling implies irreversibility. Emboli commonly arise from the heart (AF; mural thrombus) or aneurysms. ► In patients with **known PAD**, sudden deterioration of symptoms with deep duskeness of the limb may indicate acute arterial occlusion. This appearance is due to extensive pre-existing collaterals and must not be misdiagnosed as gout/cellulitis.

• **Management:** ► This is an emergency and may require urgent open surgery or angioplasty. If diagnosis is in doubt, do urgent arteriography. If the occlusion is embolic, the options are surgical embolectomy (Fogarty catheter) or local thrombolysis, eg **tissue plasminogen activator** (t-PA, p339), balancing the risks of surgery with the haemorrhagic complications of thrombolysis.²⁹⁶

• Anticoagulate with **heparin** after either procedure and look for the source of emboli. ► Be aware of possible post-op reperfusion injury and subsequent compartment syndrome.

Carotid artery disease

Carotid artery disease accounts for 20% of strokes and TIAs. Symptomatic patients with ipsilateral stenosis $\geq 70\%$ should have **carotid endarterectomy** within 2 weeks of symptom onset (see also p480). This continues to be safer than stenting.²⁹⁷ **Complications:** 2-3% risk of stroke and death within 30 days; hypoglossal nerve injury. NB: there is no benefit in treating completely occluded vessels.



VVs are long, tortuous & dilated veins of the superficial venous system. **Pathology** Blood from superficial veins of the leg passes into deep veins via perforator veins (perforate deep fascia) and at the sapheno-femoral and sapheno-popliteal junctions. Valves prevent blood from passing from deep to superficial veins. If they become incompetent there is venous hypertension and dilatation of the superficial veins occurs. Risk factors: prolonged standing, obesity, pregnancy, family history, and the Pill.²⁹⁸

Symptoms "My legs are ugly". Pain, cramps, tingling, heaviness, and restless legs. But studies show these symptoms are only slightly commoner in those with VVs.

Signs Oedema; eczema; ulcers; haemosiderin; haemorrhage; phlebitis; *atrophie blanche* (white scarring at the site of a previous, healed ulcer); lipodermatosclerosis (skin hardness from subcutaneous fibrosis caused by chronic inflammation and fat necrosis). On their own varicose veins don't cause DVTs (except possibly *proximally spreading thrombophlebitis* of the long saphenous vein).

Examination See BOX.

Treatment ▶ NICE guidelines suggest that the criteria for specialist referral of patients with VVs should be: bleeding, pain, ulceration, superficial thrombophlebitis, or 'a severe impact on quality of life' (ie not for cosmetic reasons alone). In the UK funding for NHS treatment is usually via special funding panels.

- **Treat any underlying cause.**
- **Education:** Avoid prolonged standing and elevate leg(s) whenever possible; support stockings (compliance is a problem); lose weight; regular walks (calf muscle action aids venous return).
- **Endovascular treatment:** (less pain and earlier return to activity than surgery.)
 - **Radiofrequency ablation (vnu closure®):** A catheter is inserted into the vein and heated to 120°C destroying the endothelium and 'closing' the vein. Results are as good as conventional surgery at 3 months.²⁹⁹
 - **Endovenous laser ablation (EVLA)** is similar but uses a laser. Outcomes are similar to surgical repair after 2yrs (in terms of quality of life and recurrence).³⁰⁰
 - **Injection sclerotherapy** Either liquid or foam can be used. Liquid sclerosant is indicated for varicosities below the knee if there is no gross saphenofemoral incompetence. It is injected at multiple sites and the vein compressed for a few weeks to avoid thrombosis (intravascular granulation tissue obliterates the lumen). Alternatively foam sclerosant is injected under ultrasound guidance at a single site and spreads rapidly throughout the veins, damaging the endothelium. Ultrasound monitoring prevents inadvertent spread of foam into the femoral vein. It achieves ~80% complete occlusion but is not more effective than liquid sclerotherapy or surgery.³⁰¹
- **Surgery:** There are several choices, depending on vein anatomy and surgical preference, eg saphenofemoral ligation (Trendelenburg procedure); multiple avulsions; stripping from groin to upper calf (stripping to the ankle is not needed, and may damage the saphenous nerve). **Post-op:** Bandage legs tightly and elevate for 24h. Surgery is more effective than sclerotherapy in the long term.³⁰²

▶ Before surgery and after venous mapping, ensure that all varicosities are indelibly marked to either side (to avoid tattooing if the incision is made through inked skin).

Saphena varix Dilatation in the saphenous vein at its confluence with the femoral vein (the SFJ). It transmits a cough impulse and may be mistaken for an inguinal or femoral hernia, but on closer inspection it may have a bluish tinge.

Primary causes^(95%)

- Unknown
- Congenital valve absence (very rare)

Secondary causes^(5%)

- Obstruction: DVT, fetus, ovarian tumour
- Valve destruction: DVT
- Arteriovenous malformation (tpressure)
- Constipation
- Overactive muscle pumps (eg cyclists)



Examining varicose veins

Method of examination (Start with the patient standing.)

- 1 Inspect for: ulcers usually above the medial malleolus (varicose ulcers, *OHCS* p410) with deposition of haemosiderin causing brown edges, eczema, and thin skin. Inspect the legs from anterior thigh to medial calf (long saphenous vein) and the back of the calf (short saphenous vein). Palpate veins for tenderness (phlebitis) and hardness (thrombosis). If ulceration is present palpate pulses to rule out arterial disease.
- 2 Feel for *cough impulse* at the saphenofemoral junction (SFJ) (\approx incompetence). *Per-cussion test*: Tap VVs distally and palpate for transmitted impulse at the SFJ (interrupted by competent valves).
- 3 Auscultate over varicosities for a bruit, indicating arteriovenous malformation.
- 4 For completion, examine the abdomen, the pelvis in females and external genitalia in males (for masses).
- 5 *Doppler ultrasound probes* listen for flow in incompetent valves, eg the SFJ, or the short saphenous vein behind the knee (the calf is squeezed: flow on release lasting over $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 second indicates significant reflux). If incompetence is not identified and treated, varicosities will return.
- 6 *Special tests: Trendelenburg's test* assesses if the SFJ valve is competent. Doppler USS has largely consigned this and other examination methods (eg *Tourniquet* and *Perthes' test*) to the history books.

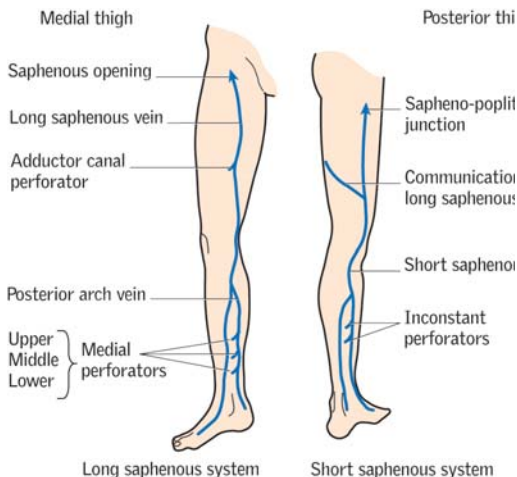


Fig 1. The superficial veins of the leg.

When do varicose veins become an illness?

Perhaps when they hurt? Or is this too simple? 'Certain illnesses are desirable: they provide a compensation for a functional disorder...' (Albert Camus); *this is known to be common with VVs.*³⁰³ Perhaps many opt for surgery as a displacement activity to confronting deeper problems. ► We adopt the sickness role when we want sympathy. Somatization is hard to manage: here is one approach to consider:

- Give time; don't dismiss these patients as 'just the "worried well"'.
 - Explore factors perpetuating illness behaviour (misinformation, social stressors).
 - Agree a plan that makes sense to the patient's holistic view of himself.
 - Treat any underlying depression (drugs and cognitive therapy, *OHCS* p374).

Definitions Gangrene is death of tissue from poor vascular supply and is a sign of critical ischaemia (see p658). Tissues are black and may slough. *Dry gangrene* is necrosis in the absence of infection. Note a line of demarcation between living and dead tissue.¹ **R** Restoration of blood supply ± amputation. *Wet gangrene* is tissue death and infection (associated with discharge) occurring together (p205, fig 1). **R** Analgesia; broad-spectrum IV antibiotics; surgical debridement ± amputation. *Gas gangrene* is a subset of necrotizing myositis caused by spore-forming *Clostridial* species. There is rapid onset of myonecrosis, muscle swelling, gas production, sepsis and severe pain. Risk factors include diabetes, trauma and malignancy. **R** Remove all dead tissue (eg amputation). Give *benzylpenicillin* ± *clindamycin*. *Hyperbaric O₂* can improve survival and ↓ the number of debridements.³⁰⁴

Necrotizing fasciitis is a rapidly progressive infection of the deep fascia causing necrosis of subcutaneous tissue. Prompt recognition (difficult in the early stages) and aggressive treatment is required. ► **In any atypical cellulitis, get early surgical help.** There is intense pain over affected skin and underlying muscle. Group A β-haemolytic streptococci is a major cause, although infection is often polymicrobial. Fournier's gangrene is necrotizing fasciitis localized to the scrotum and perineum. **R** Radical debridement ± amputation; IV antibiotics, eg *benzylpenicillin* and *clindamycin*.

Skin ulcers

OHCS, p604

Ulcers are abnormal breaks in an epithelial surface. Leg ulcers affect ~2% in developed countries.

Causes See MINIBOX—there may be multiple causes. For leg ulcers, venous disease accounts for 70%, mixed arterial and venous disease for 15% and arterial disease alone for 2%. Pressure sores: see fig 1, p477.

History Ask about number, pain, trauma. Go over comorbidities—eg varicose veins, peripheral arterial disease, diabetes, vasculitis. Is the history long or short? Is the patient taking steroids? Is the patient a bit odd? (remember self-induced ulcers: *dermatitis artefacta*). Has a biopsy been taken?

Examination Note features such as site, number, surface area, depth, edge, base, discharge, lymphadenopathy, sensation, and healing. If in the legs, note features of venous insufficiency or arterial disease and, if possible, apply a BP cuff to perform ankle-brachial pressure index (ABPI). See BOX.

Tests Skin and ulcer biopsy may be necessary—eg to assess for vasculitis (will need immunohistopathology) or malignant change in an established ulcer (Marjolin's ulcer = SCC presenting in chronic wound). If ulceration is the first sign of a suspected systemic disorder then further screening tests will be required.

Management Managing ulcers is often difficult and expensive. Treat the cause(s) and focus on prevention. Optimize nutrition. Are there adverse risk factors (drug addiction, or risk factors for arteriopathy, eg smoking)? Get expert nursing care. Consider referral to specialist community nurse or leg ulcer/tissue viability clinic:

- 'Charing-Cross' 4-layer compression bandaging is better than standard bandages³⁰⁵ (use only if arterial pulses OK: ABPI (p658) should be >0.8). Honey dressings can improve healing in mild-moderate burns, but as an adjuvant to compression bandaging for leg ulcers they do not significantly improve healing rate.³⁰⁶
- Negative pressure wound therapy (eg VAC®) helps heal diabetic ulcers.³⁰⁷
- Surgery, larval therapy and hydrogels are used to debride sloughy necrotic tissue (avoid hydrogels in diabetic ulcers due to ↑ risk of wet gangrene).
- Routine use of antibiotics does not improve healing. Only use if there is infection (not colonization).³⁰⁸

Classification

- Venous
- Arterial
 - Large vessel
 - Small vessel
- Neuropathic
- Diabetic
 - Neuropathic, arterial or both
- Lymphoedema
- Vasculitic
- Malignant (p598)
- Infective
 - TB, syphilis
- Traumatic (pressure)
- Pyoderma gangrenosum
- Drug induced

1 'The first sign of his approaching end was when one of my old aunts, while undressing him, removed a toe with one of his old socks'. Graham Greene, *A Sort of Life*, 1971, Simon & Schuster.

Features of skin ulceration to note on examination

Site Above the medial malleolus ('gaiter' area) is the favourite place for *venous ulcers* (mostly related to superficial venous disease, but may reflect venous hypertension via damage to the valves of the deep venous system, eg 2° to DVT). Venous hypertension leads to the development of superficial varicosities and skin changes (*lipodermatosclerosis* = induration, pigmentation, and inflammation of the skin). Minimal trauma to the leg leads to ulceration which often takes many months to heal. Ulcers on the sacrum, greater trochanter, or heel suggest *pressure sores* (OHCS p605), particularly if the patient is bed-bound with suboptimal nutrition.

Temperature The ulcer and surrounding tissues are cold in an ischaemic ulcer. If the skin is warm and well perfused then local factors are more likely.

Surface area Draw a map of the area to quantify and time any healing (a wound >4 weeks old is a chronic ulcer as distinguished from an acute wound).

Shape Oval, circular (cigarette burns), serpiginous (*granuloma inguinale*, p416); unusual morphology can be secondary to mycobacterial infection, eg cutaneous tuberculosis or scrofuloderma (*tuberculosis colliquativa cutis*, where an infected lymph node ulcerates through to the skin).³⁰⁹

Edge Shelved/sloping ≈ healing; punched-out ≈ syphilis or ischaemic; rolled/everted ≈ malignant; undermined ≈ TB.

Base Any muscle, bone, or tendon destruction (malignancy; pressure sores; ischaemia)? There may be a grey-yellow slough, beneath which is a pale pink base. **Slough** is a mixture of fibrin, cell breakdown products, serous exudate, leucocytes and bacteria—it need not imply infection, and can be part of the normal wound healing process. **Granulation tissue** is a deep pink gel-like matrix contained within a fibrous collagen network and is evidence of a healing wound.

Depth If not uncomfortable for the patient (eg in neuropathic ulceration) a probe can be used to gauge how deep the ulceration extends.

Discharge Culture before starting any antibiotics (which usually don't work). A watery discharge is said to favour TB; bleeding can ≈ malignancy.

Associated lymphadenopathy suggests infection or malignancy.

Sensation Decreased sensation around the ulcer implies neuropathy.

Position in phases of extension/healing Healing is heralded by granulation, scar formation, and epithelialization. Inflamed margins ≈ extension.



**Contents**

- The essence of epidemiology 665
- Prevention 666
- Screening 667
- Evidence-based medicine (EBM) 668
- Is this new drug any good? Trials and meta-analysis 670
- Six to five against (*odds ratios*) 672
- Investigations change the odds 674
- An example of epidemiology at work: risk factor analysis 675



Fig 1. John Snow (1813–1858). Often considered as one of the founding figures of epidemiology, and responsible for understanding the waterborne nature of disease transmission. Most famously remembered for arranging the removal of the handle from a water pump in Broad Street in London to tackle an epidemic of cholera in the area, at that time thought to be spread by bad air or 'miasma'. However, he personally commented that the epidemic may have already been in decline, and the Council rapidly replaced the handle! He also had an interest in anaesthesia, and personally anaesthetized Queen Victoria in her last two pregnancies. Voted the "greatest doctor" of all time in 2003, pushing Hippocrates into second place.



We thank Dr Laurie Tomlinson, our Specialist Reader, and Kit Robinson, our Junior Reader, for their contribution to this chapter.

The essence of epidemiology

(see Dr John Snow, fig 1 & p427)

Epidemiology is the study of the distribution of clinical phenomena in populations. It is essential to public health research and disease prevention (p666). For example, it analyses disease outbreaks in terms of **host**, **agent**, and **environment** (the 'epidemiologist's triad')—eg starting by measuring **prevalence** and **incidence**.

Definitions The *period prevalence* is the number of cases during the study period, divided by the study population. If the population is unclear, then this must be specified, eg the prevalence of uterine cancer varies widely, depending on whether you specify all females, girls, or men and women. *Point prevalence* is the prevalence at a point in time. *Incidence* is the number of new cases within a specified study period, eg annual incidence. The *lifetime prevalence* of hiccups is ~100%; the (UK) incidence is millions/year—but the point prevalence may be 0 at 3AM today if no one is actually having hiccups.

Association Differences in disease rates between populations, eg smokers/non-smokers, point to an association between the disease and factors distinguishing the populations (eg smoking). An association is still possible with equal rates because of confounding variables (eg greater asbestos exposure in non-smokers).

Ways of accounting for associations: A may cause B; B cause A; a 3rd unknown agent, X, causes A and B; or it may be a chance finding. If it looks as if A might cause B, bear in mind the Bradford Hill 'criteria' (he did not claim any were essential):

- 1 Consistent findings: the same results are got by different people and studies.
- 2 Temporality: the effect must occur after the cause.
- 3 Biological gradient: greater exposure leading to greater incidence of the effect.
- 4 A plausible mechanism linking cause to effect is reassuring, but not essential.¹
- 5 Coherence between epidemiological and lab findings ↑ likelihood of an effect.
- 6 Analogy: the effect of similar factors may be considered.
- 7 Use of *direct experiment*. Other criteria relate to *specificity* and *strength of association*. Global scores of causation-likelihood can be calculated.¹

There are 2 main types of studies that explore causal connections

Case-control studies: The frequency of the putative risk factor (eg smoking) is compared between two groups: those with a disease (eg lung cancer) and those without (control group). Case-control studies are retrospective in that they start after the onset of the disease (although cases may be collected prospectively).

Cohort studies: The study group consists of subjects exposed to the putative cause (eg smoking); and the control group comprises of unexposed subjects. The incidence of the disease is then compared between the groups over time, usually prospectively.

Matching An association between A and B may be due to another factor P. To eliminate this possibility, matching for X is often used in case-control studies. One powerful (but unreliable, if numbers are small) way to do this in clinical trials is for the subjects to be allocated to groups randomly. **Over-matching** If unemployment causes low income, and low income causes depression, then matching study and control groups for income would mask the genuine causal link between unemployment and depression. ► Avoid matching factors that may intervene in the causal pathway linking A and B. **Blinding** If the subject does not know which of two trial treatments she is having, the trial is single blind. To further reduce risk of bias, the experimenter should also not know (double-blind). ► In a good trial, the blind lead the blind.



¹ Physiology is quite often misleading: eg many deaths after MI are from arrhythmias, suppressible by anti-arrhythmics, but deaths in groups given most of these drugs are 3× higher than in controls.²

Prevention is one of the core aims of epidemiology. Although perhaps less glamorous or urgent than clever diagnosis or expensive interventions involving probes, scalpels, and imaging, preventive medicine is potentially much more powerful. The first step is to motivate your patient to take steps to benefit their own health by asking Socratic questions. "Do you want to smoke?" "What does your family think about smoking?" "Do you want your children to smoke?" "Would there be any advantages in giving up?" "Why is your health important to you?" These motivational questions with specific strategies for prevention (p87, plus when and where to turn to get help) produce more change than withering looks and lectures on lung cancer or legs dropping off.

The law of unintended consequences (Sod's law, p359) decrees that those whom you have to persuade the hardest to accept prevention will be those to whom a complication befalls, eg colon perforation during colonoscopy to prevent cancers in those with polyps. With this in mind, concentrate on those preventive activities that are simple, cheap, have a very low complication rate, and do not interfere (much) with how the patient runs his life.

Individualized risk communication Risk communication done thoughtlessly and only dwelling on positive aspects can lead to bitterness, anger, and litigation.³ If communication is based on a person's individual risk factors for a condition (eg age, family history, smoking status, cholesterol level, eg using formulae such as that on p664), is risk communicated in ways that change behaviour? A 2003 Cochrane meta-analysis⁴ suggests 'not necessarily' (although uptake of screening tests is improved). At least this technique promotes dialogue, and dialogue opens doors, minds, and possibilities for choice. *Informed participation* is the aim, not passive acceptance of advice. It does not make much difference whether information is given as an absolute risk, or as a risk score, or categorized as high, medium, or low risk. See also 'Consent' on p570.

Different types of prevention

Primary—preventing occurrence (new cases)

- Vaccination, water fluoridation
- Advice on healthy eating, smoking cessation, safe-sex, pre-conception folate
- Screening for hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia

Secondary—screening for early disease

- Cervical cytology, mammography, colonoscopy
- Microalbuminuria in diabetes

Tertiary—preventing complications

- Aspirin/statins post MI
- Bisphosphonates in osteoporosis

Quaternary—preventing medicalization

- Prioritizing preventive actions
- Shielding from ruthless targets (eg easing a diabetic's BP target so he feels better or is less prone to falls).

When drugs aren't the answer: the laws of quaternary prevention

- 1 Prevention is better than cure. (Not all prevention is good, though: see above.)
- 2 Don't treat symptoms without working out underlying pathologies.⁵
- 3 Don't treat just pathology, and go beyond the biopsychosocial straitjacket (p9).
- 4 Don't feel you must treat: agree with patients about what's important.
- 5 When you can, work *with* Nature: don't try to pull cures like rabbits out of hats.
- 6 Think graded *exercise* (or *bed rest*), *diet* and *hygiene* before *drugs, drugs*.
- 7 All interventions have unintended consequences. Don't be deluded about this.
- 8 Find something to measure to monitor disease progression and your treatment.
- 9 All laws have exceptions (if he's well on the wrong drug, it's the right drug).

Screening (secondary prevention)

Modified Wilson criteria for screening (1–10 spells **IATROGENIC**¹—to remind us that in treating healthy populations we have an especial duty to do no harm.)

- 1 The condition screened for should be an **i**important one.
- 2 There should be an **a**ceptable treatment for the disease.
- 3 Diagnostic and **t**reatment facilities should be available.
- 4 A **r**ecognizable latent or early symptomatic stage is required.
- 5 **O**pinions on who to treat as patients must be agreed.
- 6 The test must be of *high discriminatory power* (see below), *valid* (measuring what it purports to measure, not surrogate markers which might not correlate with reality), and be *reproducible*—with safety **g**uaranteed.
- 7 The **e**xamination must be acceptable to the patient.
- 8 The untreated **n**atural history of the disease must be known.
- 9 A simple **i**nexpensive test should be all that is required.
- 10 Screening must be **c**ontinuous (ie not a 'one-off' affair).

Conclusion: screening tests must be cost-effective.

Problems *All screening programmes do harm; some do good as well.*⁶

- 1 Those most at risk do not present for screening, thus increasing the gap between the healthy and the unhealthy—the *inverse care law* (p10).
 - 2 The 'worried well' overload services by seeking repeat screening.
 - 3 Services for investigating those testing positive are inadequate.
 - 4 Those who are false positives suffer stress while awaiting investigation, and remain anxious about their health despite reassurance.
- Before screening, the chances of harming a patient (by anxiety or subsequent invasive tests), as well as any benefits, must be quantified: this is *Rees' rule*.⁷

Examples of effective screening

- Cervical smears (cervical cancer)
- Mammography (breast cancer)
- Finding smokers (+ quitting advice)
- Looking for malignant hypertension

Unproven/ineffective screening

- Mental test score (dementia)
- Urine tests (diabetes; kidney disease)
- Antenatal procedures (*OHCS* p8)
- PSA screening (prostate cancer, p647)

NB: screening for cervical cancer and mammography are far from perfect: both are liable to false negatives (p674), and a negative result is interpreted as "I'm fine" (and may be seen as a licence to take risks). So signs of interval cancers (arising between screenings) may be ignored by patients who assume they are in the clear.

¹ From Greek: *iatros* (physician) + *genic*, denoting illness caused by us doctors. You will find this word etched on all our soles, producing a malign imprint however lightly we try to tread. *Ways to reduce iatrogenic illness:* •Use EBM if possible. •Involve patients in all decisions. •Check drug labels/dosages by reading them aloud. •Be aware of drug interactions: look it up—don't assume you know. •Explain to patients how to tell if things are going wrong, and what action to take ("if ... tell me...").



This is the conscientious and judicious use of current best evidence from research to optimize management plans and integrate them with patients' values.⁸ EBM includes 6 steps: **1** Asking answerable questions. **2** Finding the best information. **3** Information appraisal for validity and relevance. **4** Dialogue to find out what the patient wants. **5** Data application to patient care. **6** Evaluation of the performance.

The problem More than 2,000,000 papers are published each year. Patients benefit directly from a tiny fraction of these papers. How do we find them?

A partial solution Journals are scanned not by experts in a specialized field, but by searchers trained to identify papers that have a direct message for clinical practice and meet predefined criteria of rigour (below). Summaries are then published, eg in *Evidence-based Medicine*.^{9,10} **Questions used to evaluate papers:**

- Are the results valid? Randomized? Blinded? Were all patients accounted for who entered the trial? Was follow-up complete? Were the groups similar at the start? Was everyone treated equally, apart from the experimental intervention? NB: randomized trials are now recognized as blunt instruments: adaptive (Bayesian) designs may sometimes be a more efficient way to get to the truth (p674).¹¹
- What are the results? How large (and precise) was the treatment effect?
- Will the results help my patients (cost/benefit sum)?⁸

Problems with the solution ▶ *The concept of scientific rigour is opaque.* What do we want? The science, the rigour, the truth, or what will be most useful to patients? These may overlap, but they are not the same.

- Will the best be the enemy of the good? Are useful papers rejected due to some blemish? Answer: appraise *all* evidence (often impossible).
- By insisting on *answerable* questions, EBM may subvert a patient's aims. He may only want to share his fears, not be used as a substrate for intellectual exercises.
- Is the standard the same for the evidence for *all* changes to our practice? We might avoid prescribing drug x for constipation if there is any chance that it might cause colon cancer, as the choice of drugs is wide. More robust evidence is needed to persuade us to do something rather counterintuitive, eg giving heparin in DIC (p346). There is no science to tell us how robust the data need to be: we decide off the top of our head (albeit a wise head, we hope).
- What about the correspondence columns of the journals from which the winning papers are extracted? It takes years for unforeseen but fatal flaws to surface.
- There is a danger that by always asking "What is the evidence ..." we will divert resources from hard-to-prove areas (eg physiotherapy, which may be very valuable) to easy-to-prove services. The unique personal attributes of the therapist may be as important as the objective regimen.
- EBM is never 100% up-to-date, and reworking meta-analyses takes time and money, so specialists may ostensibly reject a new trial due to a tiny flaw, when the real reason is that they dread it might flip their once-perfect formulation.
- 'My increased knowledge gradually permeated or repressed the world of intuitive premonitions ...'.¹ These premonitions may be vital!
- If EBM is prescriptive, patient choice declines: not all patients are amenable to rational dialogue. Does our zeal for EBM make us arrogant and inflexible?
- The patient before us may not quite fit the type of patient who provided the research basis—and we may be tempted to ignore these small differences, which may then have major unforeseen adverse effects.

Advantages of EBM—this is mainly that patients get better faster—also:

- Our reading habits improve, and we can offer more rational choices to patients.
- EBM leads us to ask questions, and then to be sceptical of the answers.
- As taxpayers, we should like it (wasteful practices can be abandoned).

EBM may not have as much impact as we hope, as gaining evidence is time-consuming and expensive, and sometimes impossible. Despite these caveats, EBM is here to stay, so we may as well subscribe to its ideals—and to its journals.

Number needed to treat (NNT)

Statistical analysis is the glue that holds together the conclusions of a study. It is also the mask behind which the shortcomings of a study may hide. Having an understanding of what the statistical terms mean, and what they can be used for, will help you to decide for yourself whether a study's conclusions are valid. Some other important statistical definitions are given on p765.

If the risk of dying from an MI after 'standard treatment' is 10%, and a new treatment reduces this to 8%, the new drug can be made to look very effective by quoting the *relative risk reduction*, which is 20% ($(10 - 8)/10 \times 100\%$; ie the new drug is 20% more effective). However, the *absolute risk reduction* is 2% ($10 - 8\%$; ie only an extra 2% of patients would derive benefit from the new treatment). In terms of the *number needed to treat*, we might say therefore that 50 patients would need treating to save one additional life ($[1/\text{absolute risk reduction}] \times 100$). NNTs provide a useful way of quantifying benefit. In some preventive studies of mild hypertension in the young, ~800 people may need treating according to a certain regimen to prevent one stroke—when expressed like this, the treatment seems less wonderful. However, they do not take into account treatment costs or the *degree* of potential benefit.

The converse of NNT is *number needed to harm*. This is the number of people who must receive a treatment in order to produce one adverse event.

Strengths: NNTs are context-dependent. Thus if a new antihypertensive regimen is being compared with an old regimen where the NNT was 800 and the new regimen is only marginally better, the NNT to prevent one death or stroke *by adopting the new regimen in place of the old* may run into many thousands, as will your drugs bill if the new drug is more expensive.

Weaknesses: NNTs are difficult to interpret if there is a large *placebo effect*, eg in pain relief. Say the placebo response rate is 40% and that of a new analgesic is 60%, then the NNT is 5. Perhaps it is better to say to patients starting the new drug that 60% respond. *Keep your eye on the question:* NNTs can vary markedly if the question is slightly rephrased—eg from being about primary prevention to being about secondary prevention (as in the statin example above).¹² Also, one needs to be clear whether the mean or median is given as the length of follow-up. For further examples, see www.nntonline.net.

NNT confidence intervals Get these by taking reciprocals of the values defining the confidence interval for the absolute risk reduction (ARR). If $ARR \approx 10\%$ with a 95% confidence interval of 5–15%, $NNT \approx 10$ (ie $100/10$) and the 95% NNT-confidence interval ≈ 6.7 –20 (ie $100/15$ to $100/5$). Non-significant treatment effects are problematic as NNTs can only be positive; here, give NNT *without* confidence intervals (Altman's rule).¹³

Examples of NNTs

Study	Outcome	NNT
Statins (p109) for primary prevention ¹⁴	Death (MI)	931 (78) for 5yrs
Statins for secondary prevention (4s)	Death (MI)	30 (15) for 5.4yrs
Mild hypertension (MRC trial)	Stroke	850 for 1yr
Systolic hypertension in elderly (SHEP)	Stroke	43 for 4.5yrs
Aspirin in acute MI (ISIS-1)	Death	40
Streptokinase in acute MI (ISIS-2)	Death	40
ACE-i for CCF (NYHA class IV, p131)	Death	6 for 1yr



The 'gold-standard' is the double-blind, randomized trial, as they minimize bias and get at the truth as to whether this drug is any good or not. These are increasingly expensive and PROBE designs (prospective, randomized, open-label, blinded, endpoint) are cheaper, easier, and may be appropriate if the outcome measure is robust (death) or can be blinded. But remember that Sod's law (p359) never sleeps, and if something can go wrong with a trial, it will—in at least 8 realms.

- 1 There is no true or false answer to the question.
- 2 Wrong question asked.
- 3 Wrong subjects in the trial, eg all from a country where a gene conferring resistance to a treatment is prevalent. Or under-representation of the elderly.
- 4 Randomization may give 2 groups that are unbalanced (the play of chance)—eg the group having the new antihypertensive may have lower BP.
- 5 Blinding may be subverted if the patients can guess whether they are having the active or placebo treatment—for example by side-effects.
- 6 The design may allow for rejection of the null hypothesis (that there is no difference between the two treatments)—but the null hypothesis may be irrelevant if previous studies show that the new treatment has some benefits. 73% of randomized trials made this mistake in one analysis.¹⁵
- 7 Insufficient subjects enrolled, either by design or failure to recruit, to show a small but valuable effect. If an underpowered (the ability to detect true differences) trial *does* give 'positive' results, the size of the difference between the groups is likely to be exaggerated. (This is type I error; a type II error applies to results that indicate that there is no effect, when in fact there is.)
- 8 Subgroup analysis may seem to show that a drug works in a subset of patients. But trawling of data will often produce these 'effects' if repeated often enough.

What to do about these shortcomings? Sometimes Bayesian probabilistic approaches will help. These ask about the probability of a range of hypotheses conditional on the data. The best dose, for example, may be found during an experiment, as a Bayesian protocol (an *adaptive design*) allows for learning during the experiment. This makes asking the wrong question less of a problem, and allows conclusions using far fewer patients (eg 50% less).¹⁶

In summary, no single methodology is uniquely valid and there is no coherent hierarchy of evidence. Just make do with what is available, and apply it sensibly.

Meta-analyses Systematic merging of similar trials *may* explain data inconsistencies. It is quicker and cheaper than doing new studies, can establish generalizability of research¹⁷ and by trawling for unpublished trials ('grey literature') publication bias can be reduced (positive trials are more likely to be published than negative ones).¹⁸ *Be cautious!* In one study looking at recommendations of meta-analyses where there was a later 'definitive' big trial, it turned out that meta-analyses got it wrong 30% of the time, and 20% of good meta-analyses fail to avoid bias.¹⁹ Don't assume that all meta-analyses, even those from the cleanest stables, such as Cochrane, are free of bias owing to pharmaceutical funding.²⁰

► A big well-planned trial may be worth centuries of uncritical medical practice; but a week's experience on the wards may be more valuable than years reading journals. This is the paradox in medical education: How can we trust our own experiences knowing they are all anecdotal? How can we be open to novel ideas but avoid being merely fashionable? A stance of wary open-mindedness may serve us best.

Types of study

- Randomized trial
- Adaptive design (see above)
- Non-randomized contemporaneous trial
- Historical (retrospective) trial
- Case-control study
- N=1 trial (the patient acts as his own control—see p229)
- Other: case series, case reports, narrative: "What did it feel like on digoxin?"

When a randomized controlled trial might not be the best method

- Generating new ideas beyond current paradigms (case reports may be better).
 - Researching causes of illnesses and prognoses (cohort studies may be better).
 - Evaluating diagnostic tests is best done with a cohort study and decision model.
 - Where the researcher has no idea of the effective dose of a drug. A dose-ranging adaptive design where the next dose given depends on the effects of previous doses is a more efficient methodology,²¹ as there can be a dynamic termination rule allowing for early discontinuation for either efficacy or futility.
 - When recruiting of patients would be impossible or unethical.²¹
 - If the unique gifts of the therapist might have a bigger effect than the drug used.
 - When personalized medicine is the aim. For example, new cancer drugs seek to match effective treatments with patients' biomarker profiles. This may be better accomplished by adaptive designs.²²
- In the end all randomized trials have to submit to the ultimate test when the statistical collides with the personal "Will this treatment help me?" "Will this procedure help you?" No randomized trial is complete until real-life decisions taken in the light of its findings are scrutinized and a narrative is compiled to suggest when results should be applied and when they should be ignored.²³ So do not ask for definitive trials: everything is provisional.



Fig 1. Hierarchy of evidence? No: think more of a network of evidence that takes into account epidemiology, lab work and experiential data.

RCT=randomized controlled trial.

Medicine and the internet and useful contacts

During the time it takes you to read this page, your better-connected patients may have checked out the latest recommendations of Guatemalan Guidelines on Gynaecomastia, or the NICE's Treatise on Toxoplasmosis. Patients have time and motivation, whereas we have little time and our motivation may be flickering. This can seem threatening to the doctor who sees himself as a dispenser of wisdom and precious remedies. It is less threatening if we consider ourselves to be in partnership with our patients. The evidence is that those who use the internet to question their therapy receive a better service. For the doctor, the role of the internet is to answer your clinical questions. Can tetanus toxoid cause purpura? Is there a connection between knee pain and constipation? Frame your questions as simply as possible. You are not asking if it is likely that this patient's purpura is due to last week's tetanus vaccine, just if it is a reported happening. Use the knowledge you are given to guide management.

Some useful online resources:

- **Drugs:** eMIMS (more up to date than eBNF, but see the *What's new* section at www.bnf.org); eMIMS contains many data-sheets—free and updated monthly.
- **Differential diagnoses,** eg 'what causes chest pain, knee pain, and turea?', and rare diseases—try Mentor (www.webmentorlibrary.com).
- **Research:** PubMed is free at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed.
- **Meta-analyses:** (p670) eg the Cochrane Library at www.cochrane.org. Other similar resources are available through Update Software (www.update-software.com).
- **Public Health:** Central Public Health Lab: 020 8200 4400. www.hpa.org.uk. Committee on Safety of Medicines: (part of the MHRA) www.mhra.gov.uk/committees/... / MedicinesAdvisoryBodies/CommitteeonSafetyofMedicines/index.htm. Communicable Disease Surveillance Centre: 020 8200 6868. www.hpa.org.uk. Medic-Alert Foundation: 0800 581 420. www.medicalert.org.uk. Poisons information services: see p850. Transplant Service (UK) (can these organs be used?) 0845 60 60 400. Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine: 0151 705 3100. www.liv.ac.uk/Istm. London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine: 020 7636 8636. www.lshtm.ac.uk.



Your surgical tutor asks whether Gobble's disease is commoner in women or men. You have no idea, and make a guess. What is the chance of getting it right? Common sense decrees that it is even chances; 'Sod's law' (p359) predicts that whatever you guess, you will always be wrong. A less pessimistic view is that the balance is slightly tipped against you: according to Damon Runyon, 'all life is 6 to 5 against'.²⁴

Do new symptoms suggest a new disease or are they from an existing disease? The answer is often counterintuitive. Suppose s is quite a rare symptom of Gobble's disease (seen in 5% of patients), but that it is a very common symptom of disease A (seen in 90%). If we have a man whom we already know has Gobble's disease and who goes on to develop symptom s, is not s more likely to be due to disease A, rather than Gobble's disease? The answer is usually no: *it is generally the case that s is due to a disease that is already known, and does not imply a new disease.*

The 'odds ratio' makes this clearer, ie the ratio of [*the probability of the symptom, given the known disease*] to [*the probability of the symptom given the new disease × the probability of developing the new disease*]. Usually this is vastly in favour of the symptom being due to the old disease, because of the prior odds of the two diseases.

Doctors as gamblers (fig 1). To the average mind it is distasteful to learn that doctors gamble with patients' lives. One of us (JML) has just finished consulting with 23 patients. Not too many, perhaps: it might be argued that each symptom, especially if *serious*, should be investigated until the cause is found.

Let us look at this critically. What counts as a serious symptom? One that might mean death, disfigurement, or disability. Some of these patients offered 5 symptom groups before being gently dissuaded from going on. During elucidation of these symptoms others emerged, yielding a potentially endless cycle of investigation. Certainly some of their symptoms might not seem serious ("this pain in my toe..."). But toe pain might be mortal if caused by emboli or osteomyelitis. Fingernail problems with a slight rash might mean arsenic poisoning, lethargy may mean cancer, and so on. So medicine is not for pessimists—almost anything can be made to seem fatal, so that a pessimistic doctor would never get any sleep at night for worrying about the meanings of his patients' symptoms.

Medicine is not for blind optimists either, who too easily embrace a fool's paradise of false reassurance. Rather, *medicine is for gamblers*: gamblers who are happy to use subtle clues to change their outlook from pessimism to optimism and *vice versa*. Sometimes the gambling is scientific, rational, and methodical (odds-ratio analysis): sometimes it is not, as when the gambling is based on prior knowledge (vital but ill-defined) of one's patient, or the faint apprehension of terror in this new patient's eyes that shows you that there is something wrong, and that you don't yet know what it is.

Being lucky in both types of gambling is a requisite for being a successful doctor: after all we would all rather have a lucky doctor than a wise one. In this game, especially when it gets deadly serious, the chips are not just financial (the most cost-effective next step). They betoken time (for you are spending yourself as surely as you are spending money, as you walk the wards), your reputation, and the health or otherwise of your patient. So do not worry about the fact of gambling: *gambling is your job*. If you cannot gamble you cannot cure. But try hard to assemble sufficient evidence to maximize the chances of being lucky. Professions allied to medicine often seem similar to medicine, but typically without this central role of risk-taking (midwifery is among the notable exceptions).

The foregoing explains why courage is the cardinal clinical virtue: without it we would not follow our hunches and take justified risks—and all our other clinical virtues and skills (holistic care, diagnostic acumen, and operative dexterity) would not be deployed to their full advantage, while we pass the buck.



Fig 1. Her ESR is 21. Is it normal? Heads or tails? Play roulette-roulette to find out (p322).



An example of the odds ratio at work

A 50-yr-old man with known carcinoma of the lung has some transient neurological symptoms and a normal CT scan. Are these symptoms due to secondaries in the brain or to transient ischaemic attacks (TIAs)?

- The chance of secondaries in the brain which cause transient neurological symptoms is 0.045 given carcinoma of the lung.
- The chance of such secondaries not showing up on a CT scan is 0.1. Therefore the chance of this cluster of symptoms is 0.0045 (ie 0.045×0.1).
- The chance of a normal CT + transient CNS symptoms given a TIA is 0.9.
- The chance of a 50-yr-old man developing TIA is 0.0001.
- Therefore the odds ratio is $0.0045 / (0.9 \times 0.0001)$. This equals 50.

That is, the odds ratio is ~50 to 1 in favour of secondaries in the brain.

NB: It is only very rarely that the prior odds of a new disease are so high that the new disease is more likely, eg someone presenting with anaemia already known to have breast cancer, who lives in an African community where 50% of people have hookworm-induced anaemia, is likely to have anaemia due to hookworm *as well as* breast carcinoma.

Odds ratio and relative risk compare the relative likelihood of an event occurring in two distinct groups. Relative risk (p671) is easier to interpret and often consistent with our intuitions. Some study designs, however, such as case-control studies, prevent the calculation of the relative risk (due to a pre-selected population). Which to use when? See childrensmercy.org/stats/journal/oddsratio.asp.

"I did an ESR to exclude giant cell arteritis..."

William Osler wrote that 'Variability is the law of life, and as no two faces are the same, so no two bodies are alike, and no two individuals react alike and behave alike under the abnormal conditions which we know as disease. This is the fundamental difficulty of the physician, and one which he may never grasp.'²⁵ So whenever you hear the word 'exclude' on ward-rounds or in consulting rooms, wink at Osler—for you have discovered another one of his cases of a doctor who does not understand variability and probability. ► *Nothing is ever excluded and everything is always provisional*—even death, for a while. (We have all been caught out by the last gasp not being the last.)

So isn't all this morass of nebulous uncertainty (fig 2) depressing? No. It's beautiful, for luckily the human brain is brilliantly constructed to solve these very problems, because life itself (off the wards, and since the beginning of time) is full of them. Medical education gets itself into a pickle when it tries to teach us too much—as if a mother would try to teach her daughter what to do on day 38 of marriage (yet this is exactly what we do with trypanosomiasis—see past editions). So, as Osler pointed out, if we give ourselves 'good methods and a proper point of view, all other things will be added as [our] experience grows.'²⁵ Then, if on day 38, we find our patient is in labour, for example, we may recognize that other priorities may apply.



Fig 2. Like the chair you are sitting in, and your last ward round, Hind's Variable Nebula probably contains what we call a 'very young stellar object.' Learning to shine is only a matter of time.

Reproduced with permission from Panther Observatory.

www.panther-observatory.com



Only rarely does a single test provide a definitive diagnosis. More often tests alter the odds of a diagnosis. When taking a history and examining patients, we make various wagers with ourselves (often barely consciously) as to how likely various diagnoses are. Further test results simply affect these odds. A test is worthwhile if it alters diagnostic odds in a clinically useful way.

The effect of an investigation on the diagnostic odds To work this out you need to know the *sensitivity* and *specificity* of the test. All tests have false-positive and false-negative rates, as summarized below:

Test result	Patients with the condition	Patients without the condition
Result +ve for the condition	True +ve (a)	False +ve (b)
Result -ve for the condition	False -ve (c)	True -ve (d)

Specificity: How often is the test -ve in health? $d/d+b$. **Sensitivity:** How often is the test +ve in the disease? $a/a+c$. **Positive predictive value:** How often will someone with a +ve result have the disease? $a/a+b$. **Negative predictive value:** How often will someone with a -ve result really not have the disease? $d/d+c$. Screening tests need to have a high sensitivity, to include everyone with the disease (at a cost of including some without), while diagnostic tests need a high specificity, to be certain the disease is present. For example, we know that 3–6% of chest pain patients sent home from casualty departments on the basis of a single ECG actually have myocardial infarction (MI). A single ECG is *specific* (77–100%), but not very sensitive for MI (56%). Troponin tests (p112) are very *sensitive*. So if history and ECG suggest MI, admit (treatment, p782). If story and ECG are not typical of MI, do a troponin test ≥ 6 h after onset of chest pain—only send home if ‘normal’.¹ This strategy reduces inappropriate discharge to 0.3%.² Note that studies showing these effects are very dependent on the local prevalence of MI. A few more MIs in the ‘troponin normal’ group would radically alter these results.

The **likelihood ratio** of the disease given a +ve result (LR+) is the ratio of the chance of having a +ve test if the disease is present to the chance of having a +ve test if the disease is absent: $LR+=sensitivity/(1-specificity)$. Conversely the likelihood ratio given a -ve result, LR-, is $(1-sensitivity)/specificity$. Suppose we have a test of sensitivity 0.8 and specificity 0.9. LR+ will be 8:1 [ie $0.8/(1-0.9)$], and LR- will be 2:9 [$(1-0.8)/0.9$].

Is there any point to this test? Work out the posterior odds assuming first a +ve and then a -ve test result—via the equation: *posterior odds* = (*prior odds*) \times (*likelihood ratio*). If your clinical assessment of a man with exercise-induced chest pain is that the odds of this being due to coronary artery disease (CAD) are 4:1 (80%), is it worth his doing an exercise tolerance test (sensitivity 0.72; specificity 0.8)?²⁵ If the test were +ve, the odds in favour of CAD would be $4 \times (0.72)/(1-0.8) = 14:1$ (93%). If -ve, they would be $4 \times (1 - 0.72)/0.8 = 1.4:1$ (58%), so the test has not in any way ‘ruled out’ CAD.

Experienced doctors are likely to have higher prior odds for the most likely diagnosis. The above shows that with high prior odds, a test must have high sensitivity and specificity for a negative result to bring the odds below 50%.

Another example is John, who is a 40-yr-old (not on NSAIDs, with no prior peptic ulcer) referred for ‘endoscopy’ because of dyspepsia. Before the result of a bedside test for *Helicobacter pylori* is known, he has a 50% chance of harbouring this organism, which, if present, is the probable cause of an ulcer.²⁶ The likelihood ratio for a -ve test result is 0.13²⁷ (sensitivity 0.88, specificity 0.91). **If the test is -ve**, the chance of John having *H. pylori* is <11%—and it may be ok to send him home with symptomatic treatment (eg ranitidine) without endoscopy—if there are no ‘cancer (alarm) symptoms’ (weight loss, dysphagia, etc, p242).⁷ **If the test is +ve**, the probability of *H. pylori* is >90%, strongly suggesting the need for specific anti-ulcer (anti-*Helicobacter*) therapy (p242), and endoscopy if this does not cure his symptoms.

1 Troponin T $\leq 0.1\mu\text{g/L}$ (or troponin I $\leq 0.2\mu\text{g/L}$; labs vary); what is normal is itself a statistical issue (p652)—as is what counts as an MI.²⁸
2 Sensitivity: 97%; specificity: 93%; -ve predictive value: 99.6%; +ve predictive value: 66%; LR+: 13.9; LR-: 0.03.

An example of epidemiology at work

Some decades ago, epidemiologists tested the hypothesis that smoking and hypertension were associated with vascular disease. Painsstaking cohort studies confirmed that these were indeed *risk markers* (a term that does *not* imply causality). Over the years, as evidence accumulates, the term 'risk marker' may upgrade to *risk factor*, which *does* imply causation, and the separate idea that risk-factor modification will cause a reduction in disease. Demonstrating a dose-response relationship (with the correct time sequence) is good evidence of a causal relationship, eg showing that the greater the number of cigarettes smoked, or the higher the blood pressure, the greater the cardiovascular mortality. It is still possible that BP is a risk marker of some other phenomenon, but this is less likely if the relationship between BP and cardiovascular mortality is found to correlate *while keeping other known risk factors constant*. The work of the epidemiologist does not stop here. He or she can use actuarial statistics to weigh the relative merits and interactions of a number of risk factors, to give an overall estimate of risk for an individual. It is then possible to say things like: "If the 5yr risk of a serious cardiac event in people with no overt cardiac disease is >15%, then drug treatment of hyperlipidaemia may begin to be cost-effective—and a 10% 5yr risk may be a sufficient point to trigger antihypertensive treatment in someone with, say, a BP of 150/90". These figures are a guide only: only ~60% of those in the top 10% of the risk distribution will have an adverse coronary event in the 5yr period. Nevertheless, this is more accurate than taking into account risk factors singly—and so we are led to our first important conclusion: *epidemiology improves and informs our dialogue with our patients*. We can give patients good evidence on which to base their choices.

Risk equations: Computerized records allow algorithms derived from millions of UK patients to stratify individual risk of vascular events (QRISK2) using age, sex, BMI, cholesterol/HDL, family history (1° relative <60yrs), BP, smoking and medical history (IHD, rheumatoid arthritis, AF, hypertension, renal disease), and social deprivation (via postcode).^{29,30} In the UK, QRISK2 is more reliable than Framingham data even when refined for UK populations. **Accuracy:** QRISK2 classifies one in 10 UK men as high risk (10yr vascular risk $\geq 20\%$ if ~30–74yrs old—the threshold recommended by NICE for statin Rx).^{31,32} ► Only 30% of subsequent vascular events occur in this high risk group!³³ NB: ~80% of participants in QRISK had some missing data, eg cholesterol:HDL.³³



Contents

- On being normal in the society of numbers 676
- The essence of laboratory medicine 677
- Biochemistry: disease patterns 678
- Lab results: act NOW 679
- Fluid balance and IV fluid therapy 680
- Electrolyte physiology and the kidney 682
- Acid-base balance 684
- Hyper- and hyponatraemia 686
- Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion 687
- Hyper- and hypokalaemia 688
- Calcium and phosphate physiology 690
- Hypercalcaemia 690
- Hypocalcaemia 692
- Phosphate, magnesium, zinc and selenium 693
- Urate and the kidney 694
- Metabolic bone diseases:**
- Osteoporosis 696
- Osteomalacia 698
- Paget's disease of bone 699
- Plasma proteins 700
- Urinary proteins 700
- Plasma enzymes 702
- Hyperlipidaemia 704
- The porphyrias 706



Fig 1. Rosalyn Yalow (1921–2011). Trained in nuclear physics, and made good use of this when she developed the radioimmunoassay technique to allow trace amounts of peptides to be measured in serum using antibodies. This revolutionized laboratory medicine; making reliable assays for hormones widely available; and underpinned the development of endocrinology. It was also employed to screen blood against a range of pathogens, and the technique is still commonly used today. She was awarded the Nobel prize for her work in 1977, and commenting to a group of children that: "Initially, new ideas are rejected... Later they become dogma, if you're right. And if you're really lucky you can publish your rejections as part of your Nobel presentation."

Relevant pages elsewhere: Reference intervals (p770); acute renal injury (p290).

On being normal in the society of numbers

Laboratory medicine reduces our patients to a few easy-to-handle numbers: this is the discipline's great attraction—and its greatest danger. The normal range (reference interval) is usually that which includes 95% of a given population (given a normal distribution, see p764). If variation is randomly distributed, 2.5% of our results will be 'too high', and 2.5% 'too low' on an average day, when dealing with apparently normal people. This statistical definition of normality is the simplest. Other definitions may be *normative*—ie stating what an upper or lower limit *should* be. The upper end of the reference interval for plasma cholesterol may be given as 6mmol/L because this is what biochemists state to be the *desired* maximum. 40% of people in some populations will have a plasma cholesterol greater than 6mmol/L and thus may be at increased risk. The WHO definition of anaemia in pregnancy is an Hb of <110g/L, which makes 20% of mothers anaemic. This 'lax' criterion has the presumed benefit of triggering actions that result in fewer deaths from haemorrhage. So do not just ask "What is the normal range?"—also enquire about who set the range, for what population, and for what reason.

The essence of laboratory medicine

General principles

- Laboratory testing may contribute to four aspects of medicine:
 - diagnosis;
 - prognosis (eg clotting in liver failure);
 - monitoring disease activity or progression (eg creatinine in chronic kidney disease);
 - screening (eg phenylketonuria in newborn babies).
- Only do a test if the result will influence management. Make sure you look at the result.
- Do not interpret laboratory results except in the light of clinical assessment (unless forced to by examiners!).
- ▶ Laboratory staff like to have contact with you. They are an excellent source of help and information for both requests and results.
- If a result does not fit with the clinical picture, trust clinical judgement and repeat the test. Could it be an artefact? The 'normal' range for a test (reference interval) is usually defined as the interval, symmetrical about the mean, containing 95% of results in a given population (p765). The more tests you run, the greater the probability of an 'abnormal' result of no significance (see p765).
- ▶ Involve the patient. Don't forget to explain to them where the test fits into their overall management plan.

Getting the best out of the lab—a laboratory decalogue

- 1 Interest someone from the laboratory in your patient's problem.
- 2 Fill in the request form fully.
- 3 Give clinical details, not your preferred diagnosis.
- 4 Ensure that the lab knows who to contact.
- 5 Label specimens as well as the request form.
- 6 Follow the hospital labelling routine for crossmatching.
- 7 Find out when analysers run, especially batched assays.
- 8 Talk with the lab before requesting an unusual test.
- 9 Be thoughtful: at 16:30h the routine results are being sorted.
- 10 Plot results graphically: abnormalities show sooner.

Artefacts and pitfalls in laboratory tests

- Do not take blood samples from an arm that has IV fluid running into it.
- Repeat any unexpected and inconsistent result before acting on it.
- For clotting time do not sample from a heparinized IV catheter.
- Serum K^+ is over-estimated if the sample is old or haemolysed (this occurs if venepuncture is difficult).
- If using Vacutainers, fill *plain* tubes first—otherwise, anticoagulant contamination from previous tubes can cause errors.
- Total calcium results are affected by albumin concentration (p690).
- INR may be over-estimated if citrate bottles are under-filled.
- Drugs may cause *analytic* errors (eg prednisolone cross-reacts with cortisol). Be suspicious if results are unexpected.
- Food may affect result, eg bananas raise urinary HIAA (p278).

Ford Madox Ford 1915 'The good Soldier'

Penguin 214, 228

▶ Normal values can have hidden historical, social, and political desiderata—just like the normal values novelists ascribe to their characters: *'Conventions and traditions, I suppose, work blindly but surely for the preservation of the normal type; for the extinction of proud, resolute and unusual individuals... Society must go on, I suppose, and society can only exist if the normal, if the virtuous, and the slightly deceitful flourish, and if the passionate, the headstrong, and the too-truthful are condemned to suicide and to madness. Yes, society must go on; it must breed, like rabbits. That is what we are here for ... But, at any rate, there is always Leonora to cheer you up; I don't want to sadden you. Her husband is quite an economical person of so normal a figure that he can get quite a large proportion of his clothes ready-made. That is the great desideratum of life.'*

Ca²⁺, Na⁺, K⁺

Dehydration: ↑urea (disproportionate relative to smaller ↑ in creatinine),¹ ↑albumin (also useful to plot change in a patient's condition), ↑haematocrit (PCV); also ↓urine volume and ↓skin turgor.

Abnormal kidney function: There are two major biochemical pictures:

- **Low GFR:** ↑urea, ↑creatinine, ↑K⁺, ↑H⁺, ↑urate, ↑PO₄³⁻, ↑anion gap, ↓Ca²⁺, ↓HCO₃⁻, oliguria. Causes: early acute oliguric renal failure (p298), chronic kidney disease (p300). In chronic kidney disease also ↓Hb, ↑PTH and renal bone disease.
- **Tubular dysfunction** (damage to tubules): ↓K⁺, ↓urate, ↓PO₄³⁻, ↓HCO₃⁻, ↑H⁺, normal urea and creatinine. Other possible findings include polyuria with urinary glucose, amino acids, proteins (lysozyme, β₂-microglobulin), or phosphate. Diagnosis is made by testing renal concentrating ability (p233). Causes: recovery from acute renal failure, hypercalcaemia, hyperuricaemia, myeloma, pyelonephritis, hypokalaemia, Wilson's disease, galactosaemia, and heavy metal poisoning.

Thiazide and loop diuretics: ↓Na⁺, ↓K⁺, ↑HCO₃⁻, ↑urea.

Bone disease:

	Ca ²⁺	PO ₄ ³⁻	Alk phos
Osteoporosis (p696)	Normal	Normal	Normal
Osteomalacia (p698)	↓	↓	↑
Paget's	Normal	Normal	↑↑
Myeloma	↑	↑, normal	Normal
Bone metastases	↑	↑, normal	↑
1° Hyperparathyroidism	↑	↓, normal	Normal, ↑
Hypoparathyroidism	↓	↑	Normal
Renal failure (low GFR)	↓	↑	Normal, ↑

Hepatocellular disease: ↑bilirubin, ↑↑AST, alk phos ↑ slightly, ↓albumin. Also ↑clotting times. For details of the differences between AST and ALT, see p283.

Cholestasis: ↑bilirubin, ↑↑γGT, ↑alk phos, ↑AST.

Excess alcohol intake: Evidence of hepatocellular disease. Early evidence if ↑γGT, ↑MCV, and ethanol in blood before lunch.

Myocardial infarction: ↑troponin, ↑CK, ↑AST, ↑LDH (p112).

Addison's disease: ↑K⁺, ↓Na⁺ ↑urea.

Cushing's syndrome: May show ↓K⁺, ↑HCO₃⁻, ↑Na⁺.

Conn's syndrome: May show ↓K⁺, ↑HCO₃⁻. Na⁺ normal or ↑. (Also hypertension.)

Diabetes mellitus: ↑glucose, (↓HCO₃⁻ if acidotic).

Diabetes insipidus: ↑Na⁺, ↑plasma osmolality, ↓urine osmolality. (Both hypercalcaemia and hypokalaemia may cause nephrogenic diabetes insipidus.)

Inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH): (see p687) ↓Na⁺ with normal or low urea and creatinine, ↓plasma osmolality. ↑urine osmolality (and > plasma osmolality), ↑urine Na⁺ (>20mmol/L).

Some immunodeficiency states: Normal serum albumin but *low* total protein (because immunoglobulins are missing. Also makes crossmatching difficult because expected haemagglutinins are absent; *OHCs* p198).

¹ Dehydration affects urea more than creatinine because in dehydration a greater proportion of filtered urea is reabsorbed by the kidney. Creatinine is hardly reabsorbed at all.

Laboratory results: ►► when to take action NOW

- On receiving a dangerous result, first check the name and date.
- Go to the bedside. If the patient is conscious, turn off any IVI (until fluid is checked: a mistake may have been made) and ask the patient how he or she is. *Any fits, faints, collapses, or unexpected symptoms?*
- Be sceptical of an unexpectedly wildly abnormal result with a well patient. Compare with previous values. Could the specimens have got muddled up? Is there an artefact? Was the sample taken from the 'drip' arm? Is a low calcium due to a low albumin (p690)? Perhaps the lab is using a new analyser with a faulty wash cycle? ► *When in doubt, seek help and repeat the test.*

The values chosen below are somewhat arbitrary and must be taken as a guide only. Many results less extreme than those below will be just as dangerous if the patient is old, immunosuppressed, or has some other pathology such as pneumonia.

Plasma biochemistry

- The main risks when plasma electrolytes are dangerously abnormal are of cardiac arrhythmias and CNS events such as seizures.

Electrolyte	Lower limit	Upper limit	Relevant pages
Na ⁺	<120mmol/L	>155mmol/L	p686
K ⁺	<2.5mmol/L	>6.5mmol/L	p688, p849
Corrected Ca ²⁺	<2.0mmol/L	>3.5mmol/L	p690, p692
Glucose	<2.0mmol/L	>20mmol/L	p842, p844

Blood gases

- $P_aO_2 < 8.0 \text{ kPa}$ = Severe hypoxia. Give O_2 . See p180.
- $\text{pH} < 7.1$ = Dangerous acidosis. See p684 to determine the cause.

Haematology results

- Hb <70g/L with low mean cell volume (<75fL) or history of bleeding. This patient may need urgent transfusion (no spare capacity). See p318.
- Platelets <40×10⁹/L. May need a platelet transfusion; call a haematologist.
- *Plasmodium falciparum* seen on blood film. Start antimalarials now. See p396.
- ESR >30mm/h + headache. Could there be giant cell arteritis? See p558.

CSF results

- Never delay treatment when bacterial meningitis is suspected.
- >1 neutrophil/mm³. Is there meningitis: usually >1000 neutrophils? See p832.
 - Positive Gram stain. Talk to a microbiologist; urgent blind therapy. See p832.

Conflicting, equivocal, or inexplicable results ► Get prompt help.

Fluid requirement in a normal person over 24h is roughly 2500mL. Normal daily losses are through urine (1500mL), stool (200mL), and insensible losses (800mL). This requirement is normally met through food (1000mL) and drink (1500mL).

Intravenous fluids are given if sufficient fluids cannot be given orally. About 2500mL fluid containing roughly 100mmol Na⁺ and 70mmol K⁺ per 24h are required. Thus, a good regimen is 2L of 5% glucose and 1L of 0.9% saline every 30h with 20mmol of K⁺ per litre of fluid. Alternative routes are via a central venous line or subcutaneously. However, remember that all cannulae carry a risk of MRSA infection: femoral > jugular > subclavian > peripheral, so always resume oral fluid intake as soon as possible.

► In a sick patient, don't forget to include additional sources of fluid loss when calculating daily fluid requirements, such as drains, fevers, or diarrhoea (see BOX 2). Daily weighing helps to monitor overall fluid balance, as will fluid balance charts.

► Examine patients regularly to assess fluid balance (see BOX 1).

Fluid compartments and types of IV fluid

For a 70kg man *total bodily fluid* is approximately 42L (60% body weight). Of this, $\frac{2}{3}$ is intracellular (28L) and $\frac{1}{3}$ is extracellular (14L). Of the extracellular compartment, $\frac{1}{2}$ is intravascular, ie blood (5L). Different types of IV fluid will equilibrate with the different fluid compartments depending on the osmotic content of the given fluid.

5% glucose (=dextrose) is isotonic, but contains only a small amount of glucose (50g/L) and so provides little energy (~10% daily energy per litre). The liver rapidly metabolizes all the glucose leaving only water, which rapidly equilibrates throughout all fluid compartments. It is, therefore, useless for fluid resuscitation (only $\frac{1}{9}$ will remain in the intravascular space), but suitable for maintaining hydration. Excess 5% glucose IV may lead to water overload and hyponatraemia (p686).

0.9% saline ('normal saline') has about the same Na⁺ content as plasma (150mmol/L) and is isotonic with plasma. 0.9% saline will equilibrate rapidly throughout the extracellular compartment only, and takes longer to reach the intracellular compartment than 5% glucose. It is, therefore, appropriate for fluid resuscitation, as it will remain predominantly in the extracellular space (and thus $\frac{1}{2}$ of the given volume in the intravascular space), as well as for maintaining hydration. Hypertonic and hypotonic saline solutions are also available, but are for specialist use only.

Colloids (eg Gelofusine®) have a high osmotic content similar to that of plasma and therefore remain in the intravascular space for longer than other fluids, making them appropriate for fluid resuscitation, but not for general hydration. Colloids are expensive, and may cause anaphylactic reactions. In reality, effective fluid resuscitation will use a combination of colloid and 0.9% saline.

Hypertonic glucose (10% or 50%) may be used in the treatment of hypoglycaemia. It is irritant to veins, so care in its use is needed. Infusion sites should be inspected regularly, and flushed with 0.9% saline after use.

Dextrose-saline (one-fifth 'normal saline') is isotonic, containing 0.18% saline (30mmol/L of Na⁺) and 4% glucose (222mmol/L). It has roughly the quantity of Na⁺ required for normal fluid maintenance, when given 10-hourly in adults, but is now most commonly used in a paediatric setting.

Hartmann's solution contains Na⁺ 131mmol, Cl⁻ 111mmol, lactate 29mmol, K⁺ 5mmol, HCO₃⁻ 29mmol, and Ca²⁺ 2mmol per litre of fluid. It is an alternative to 0.9% saline, and some consider it more physiological.¹

Assessing fluid balance

Underfilled

- Tachycardia
- Postural drop in BP (low BP is a late sign of hypovolaemia)
- ↓capillary refill time
- ↓urine output
- Cool peripheries
- Dry mucous membranes
- ↓skin turgor
- Sunken eyes

Overfilled

- ↑JVP (p40)
 - Pitting oedema of the sacrum, ankles, or even legs and abdomen
 - Tachypnoea
 - Bibasal crepitations
 - Pulmonary oedema on CXR (fig 2, p293)
- See also p128 for signs of heart failure

The JVP is a substitute marker of central venous pressure, and when assessing fluid balance is difficult a CVP line may help to guide fluid management.

Special cases

Acute blood loss Resuscitate with colloid or 0.9% saline via large-bore cannulae until blood is available.

Children Use dextrose-saline for fluid maintenance: 100mL/kg for the first 10kg, 50mL/kg for the next 10kg, and 20mL/kg thereafter—all per 24h.

Elderly More prone to fluid overload, so use IV fluids with care.

GI losses (diarrhoea, vomiting, NG tubes, etc) Replace lost K^+ as well as lost fluid volume.

Heart failure Use IV fluids with care to avoid fluid overload (p128).

Liver failure Patients often have a raised total body sodium, so use salt-poor albumin or blood for resuscitation, and avoid 0.9% saline for maintenance.

Acute pancreatitis Aggressive fluid resuscitation is required due to large amounts of sequestered 'third space' fluid (p638).

Poor urine output Aim for >1 mL/kg/h; the minimum is >0.5 mL/kg/h. Give a fluid challenge, eg 500mL 0.9% saline over 1h (or half this volume in heart failure or the elderly), and recheck the urine output. If not catheterized, exclude retention; if catheterized, ensure the catheter is not blocked!

Post-operative Check the operation notes for intraoperative losses, and ensure you chart and replace added losses from drains, etc.

Shock Resuscitate with colloid or 0.9% saline via large-bore cannulae. Identify the type of shock (p804).

Transpiration losses (fever, burns) Beware the large amounts of fluid that can be lost unseen through transpiration. Severe burns in particular may require aggressive fluid resuscitation (p858).

Potassium in IV fluids

- Potassium ions can be given with 5% glucose or 0.9% saline, usually 20mmol/L or 40mmol/L.
- K^+ may be retained in renal failure, so beware giving too much IV.
- Gastrointestinal fluids are rich in K^+ , so increased fluid loss from the gut (eg diarrhoea, vomiting, high-output stoma, intestinal fistula) will need increased K^+ replacement.

► The maximum concentration of K^+ that is safe to infuse via a peripheral line is 40mmol/L, at a maximum rate of 20mmol/h. Fluid-restricted patients may require higher concentrations or rates in life-threatening hypokalaemia. Faster rates risk cardiac dysrhythmias and asystole, and higher concentrations thrombophlebitis, depending on the size of the vein, so give concentrated solutions >40 mmol/L via a central venous catheter, and use ECG monitoring for rates over >10 mmol/h. For symptoms and signs of hyper- and hypokalaemia see p688.

The kidney controls the homeostasis of a number of serum electrolytes (including Na^+ , K^+ , Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-}), helps to maintain acid-base balance, and is responsible for the excretion of many substances. It also makes erythropoietin and renin, and hydroxylates 25-hydroxyvitamin D to 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D (see p690 for Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} physiology). All of these functions can be affected in chronic kidney disease (p300), but it is the biochemical effects of kidney failure that are used to monitor disease progression.

The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system Plasma is filtered by the glomeruli, and Na^+ , K^+ , H^+ and water are reabsorbed from this filtrate under the control of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. **Renin** is released from the juxtaglomerular apparatus (fig 3, p305) in response to low renal flow and raised sympathetic tone, and catalyses the conversion of *angiotensinogen* (a peptide made by the liver) to *angiotensin I*. This is then converted by angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), which is located throughout the vascular tree, to *angiotensin II*. The latter has several important actions including efferent renal arteriolar constriction (thus \uparrow perfusion pressure), peripheral vasoconstriction, and stimulation of the adrenal cortex to produce **aldosterone**, which activates the Na^+/K^+ pump in the distal renal tubule leading to reabsorption of Na^+ and water from the urine, in exchange for K^+ and H^+ . Glucose spills over into the urine when the plasma concentration $>$ renal threshold for reabsorption ($\approx 10\text{mmol/L}$, but this varies between people, and is \downarrow in pregnancy).

Control of sodium is through the action of aldosterone on the distal convoluted tubule (DCT) and collecting duct to increase Na^+ reabsorption from the urine. The natriuretic peptides ANP, BNP and CNP (p131) contribute to Na^+ homeostasis by reducing Na^+ reabsorption from the DCT and inhibiting renin. A *high GFR* (below) results in increased Na^+ loss, and *high renal tubular flow* and haemodilution decrease Na^+ reabsorption in the proximal tubule.

Control of potassium Most K^+ is intracellular, and thus serum K^+ levels are a poor reflection of total body potassium. The concentrations of K^+ and H^+ in extracellular fluid tend to vary together. This is because these ions compete with each other in the exchange with Na^+ that occurs across most cell membranes and in the distal convoluted tubule of the kidney, where Na^+ is reabsorbed from the urine. Thus, if the H^+ concentration is high, less K^+ will be excreted into the urine. Similarly K^+ will compete with H^+ for exchange across cell membranes and extracellular K^+ will accumulate. Insulin and catecholamines both stimulate K^+ uptake into cells by stimulating the Na^+/K^+ pump.

Serum osmolality is a laboratory measurement of the number of osmoles per *kilogramme* of solvent. It is approximated by **serum osmolality** (the number of osmoles per *litre* of solution) using the equation $2(\text{Na}^+ + \text{K}^+) + \text{Urea} + \text{Glucose}$, since these are the predominant serum electrolytes. Normal serum osmolality is $280\text{--}300\text{mmol/L}$, which will always be a little less than the laboratory-measured osmolality—the **osmolar gap**. However, if the osmolar gap is greater than 10mmol/L , this indicates the presence of additional solutes: consider diabetes mellitus or high blood ethanol, methanol, mannitol, or ethylene glycol.

Control of water is mainly via serum Na^+ concentration, since water intake and loss are regulated to hold the extracellular concentration of Na^+ constant. Raised plasma osmolality (eg dehydration or \uparrow glucose in diabetes mellitus) causes thirst through the hypothalamic thirst centre and the release of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) from the posterior pituitary. ADH increases the passive water reabsorption from the renal collecting duct by opening water channels to allow water to flow from the hypotonic luminal fluid into the hypertonic renal interstitium. Low plasma osmolality inhibits ADH secretion, thus reducing renal water reabsorption.

Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is the volume of fluid filtered by the glomeruli per minute (units mL/min), and is one of the primary measures of disease progression in chronic kidney disease. It can be estimated in a number of different ways (see BOX).

Estimating GFR

Calculating GFR is useful because it is a more sensitive indication of the degree of renal impairment than serum creatinine. Subjects with low muscle mass (eg the elderly, women) can have a 'normal' serum creatinine, despite a significant reduction in GFR. This can be important when prescribing nephrotoxic drugs, or drugs that are renally excreted, which may therefore accumulate to toxic levels in the serum.

A number of methods for estimating GFR exist, all relying on a calculation of the clearance of a substance that is renally filtered and then not reabsorbed in the renal tubule. For example, the rate of clearance of creatinine can be used as a marker for the rate of filtration of fluid and solutes in the glomerulus because it is only slightly reabsorbed from the renal tubule. The more of the filtered substance that is reabsorbed, however, the less accurate the estimate of GFR.

The **MDRD** (*Modification of Diet in Renal Disease Study Group*) equation provides an estimate of GFR from 4 simple parameters: *serum creatinine, age, gender and race (black/non-black)*. It is one of the best validated for monitoring patients with established moderately severe renal impairment,² and most labs now routinely report estimated GFR (eGFR) using the MDRD equation on all U&E reports:

$$\text{eGFR} = 32,788 \times \text{serum creatinine}^{-1.154} \times \text{age}^{-0.203} \times [1.212 \text{ if black}] \times [0.742 \text{ if female}]$$

However, a number of caveats exist, so that it is best used in monitoring declining renal function rather than labelling elderly patients with mild renal impairment:

- it is not validated for mild renal impairment, and therefore its use for screening *general* populations is questionable;
- inter-individual variations (and thus confidence intervals) are wide, although for each individual variations are small so that a decline in eGFR over a number of serum samples is always significant;
- single results may be affected by variations in serum creatinine, such as after a protein-rich meal.

The **Cockcroft-Gault equation** provides an estimate of creatinine clearance. It is an improvement on the MDRD equation because it also takes into account the patient's weight. However, small amounts of creatinine are reabsorbed in the distal renal tubule, and therefore creatinine clearance under-estimates the GFR (and overestimates renal impairment). Moreover, the equation assumes ideal body weight and is thus unreliable in the obese or oedematous. For an example of adjusting for ideal body weight, see p446. Also unreliable in unstable renal function.

$$\text{Creat clearance} = \frac{(140 - \text{age}) \times \text{weight (kg)} \times [0.85 \text{ if female}] \times [1.212 \text{ if black}]}{0.813 \times \text{serum creatinine } (\mu\text{mol/L})}$$

Creatinine clearance can also be calculated by measuring the excreted creatinine in a **24h urine collection** and comparing it with the serum creatinine concentration. However, the accuracy of collection is vital but often poor, making this an unreliable and inconvenient method.

GFR can also be measured by injection of a radioisotope followed by sequential blood sampling (⁵¹Cr-EDTA) or by an isotope scan (eg DTPA ⁹⁹Tc, p190). These methods allow a more accurate estimate of GFR than creatinine clearance, since smaller proportions of these substances are reabsorbed in the tubules. They also have the advantage of being able to provide split renal function.

Inulin clearance (not insulin) is the gold standard for calculating GFR, because 100% of filtered inulin is retained in the luminal fluid and therefore reflects exactly the rate of filtration of water and solutes in the glomerulus. However, measuring inulin clearance again requires urine collection over several hours, and also a constant IV infusion of inulin, and is therefore inconvenient to perform.

Arterial blood pH is closely regulated in health to 7.40 ± 0.05 by various mechanisms including bicarbonate, other plasma buffers such as deoxygenated haemoglobin, and the kidney. Acid–base disorders needlessly confuse many people, but if a few simple rules are applied, then interpretation and diagnosis are easy. The key principle is that primary changes in HCO_3^- are *metabolic* and in CO_2 *respiratory*. See **fig 1**.

A simple method

1 Look at the pH: is there an acidosis or alkalosis?

- pH <7.35 is an acidosis; pH >7.45 is an alkalosis.

2 Is the CO_2 abnormal? (Normal concentration 4.7–6.0 kPa)

If so, is the change in keeping with the pH?

- CO_2 is an acidic gas—is CO_2 raised with an acidosis, lowered with an alkalosis?

If so, it is in keeping with the pH and thus caused by a *respiratory* problem. If there is no change, or an opposite one, then the change is compensatory.

3 Is the HCO_3^- abnormal? (Normal concentration 22–28 mmol/L)

If so, is the change in keeping with the pH?

- HCO_3^- is alkaline—is HCO_3^- raised with an alkalosis, lowered with an acidosis?

If so, the problem is a *metabolic* one.

An example

Your patient's blood gas shows: pH 7.05, CO_2 2.0 kPa, HCO_3^- 8.0 mmol/L. There is an *acidosis*. The CO_2 is low, and thus it is a compensatory change. The HCO_3^- is low and is thus the primary change, ie a *metabolic* acidosis.

The anion gap estimates unmeasured plasma anions ('fixed' or organic acids such as phosphate, ketones, and lactate, which are hard to measure directly). It is calculated as the difference between plasma cations (Na^+ and K^+) and anions (Cl^- and HCO_3^-). Normal range: 10–18 mmol/L. It is helpful in determining the cause of a metabolic acidosis.

Metabolic acidosis pH \downarrow , $\text{HCO}_3^- \downarrow$

Causes of metabolic acidosis and an increased anion gap:

Due to increased production, or reduced excretion, of fixed/organic acids. HCO_3^- falls and unmeasured anions associated with the acids accumulate.

- Lactic acid (shock, infection, tissue ischaemia)
- Urate (renal failure)
- Ketones (diabetes mellitus, alcohol)
- Drugs/toxins (salicylates, biguanides, ethylene glycol, methanol)

Causes of metabolic acidosis and a normal anion gap:

Due to loss of bicarbonate or ingestion of H^+ ions (Cl^- is retained).

- Renal tubular acidosis
- Addison's disease
- Diarrhoea
- Pancreatic fistula
- Drugs (acetazolamide)
- Ammonium chloride ingestion

Metabolic alkalosis pH \uparrow , $\text{HCO}_3^- \uparrow$

- Vomiting
- Burns
- K^+ depletion (diuretics)
- Ingestion of base

Respiratory acidosis pH \downarrow , $\text{CO}_2 \uparrow$

- Type 2 respiratory failure due to any lung, neuromuscular, or physical cause (p180).
- Most commonly chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Look at the PaO_2 . It will probably be low. Is oxygen therapy required? Use controlled O_2 (Venturi connector) if COPD is the underlying cause, as too much oxygen may make matters worse (p181).

► Beware exhaustion in asthma, pneumonia and pulmonary oedema, which can present with this picture when close to respiratory arrest. These patients require urgent ITU review for ventilatory support.

Respiratory alkalosis pH \uparrow , $\text{CO}_2 \downarrow$

A result of hyperventilation of any cause. **CNS causes:** Stroke; subarachnoid bleed; meningitis. **Others:** Mild/moderate asthma, anxiety; altitude; T°t ; pregnancy; pulmonary emboli (reflex hyperventilation); drugs, eg salicylates.

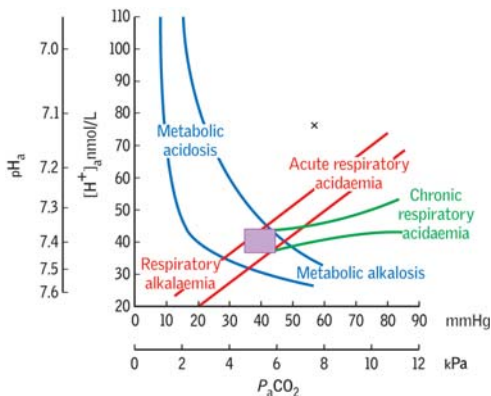


Fig 1. The shaded area represents normality. This method is very powerful. The result represented by point x, for example, indicates that the acidosis is in part respiratory and in part metabolic. Seek a cause for each.

Terminology To aid understanding, we have used the terms acidosis and alkalosis, where a purist would sometimes have used acidemia and alkalemia.

Signs & symptoms Lethargy, thirst, weakness, irritability, confusion, coma, and fits, along with signs of dehydration (p680). **Laboratory features:** $\uparrow\text{Na}^+$, $\uparrow\text{PCV}$, $\uparrow\text{alb}$, $\uparrow\text{urea}$.

Causes

Usually due to water loss in excess of sodium loss:

- Fluid loss without water replacement (eg diarrhoea, vomit, burns).
- Diabetes insipidus (p232). Suspect if large urine volume. This may follow head injury, or CNS surgery, especially pituitary.
- Osmotic diuresis (for diabetic coma, see p842).
- Primary aldosteronism: rarely severe, suspect if $\text{BP}\uparrow$, $\text{K}^+\downarrow$, alkalosis ($\text{HCO}_3^-\uparrow$).
- Iatrogenic: incorrect IV fluid replacement (excessive saline).

Management Give water orally if possible. If not, give glucose 5% IV slowly (1L/6h) guided by urine output and plasma Na^+ . Use 0.9% saline IV if hypovolaemic, since this causes less marked fluid shifts and is hypotonic in a hypertonic patient. Avoid hypertonic solutions.

Hyponatraemia

Plasma Na^+ concentration depends on the amount of both Na^+ and water in the plasma. Hyponatraemia therefore does not necessarily imply Na^+ depletion. Assessing fluid status is the key to diagnosis (see fig 1).

Signs and symptoms Look for anorexia, nausea and malaise initially, followed by headache, irritability, confusion, weakness, $\downarrow\text{GCS}$ and seizures, depending on the severity and rate of change in serum Na^+ . Cardiac failure or oedema may help to indicate the cause. Hyponatraemia also increases the risk of falls in the elderly.³

Causes See the FLOWCHART opposite. Artefactual causes include: • Blood sample was from a drip arm; • High serum lipid/protein content causing \uparrow serum volume, with $\uparrow\text{Na}^+$ concentration but normal plasma osmolality; • If hyperglycaemic ($\geq 20\text{mmol/L}$) add $\sim 4.3\text{mmol/L}$ to plasma Na^+ for every 10mmol/L rise in glucose above normal.

Iatrogenic hyponatraemia If 5% glucose is infused continuously without adding 0.9% saline, the glucose is quickly used, rendering the fluid hypotonic and causing hyponatraemia, esp. in those on thiazide diuretics, women (especially premenopausal) and those undergoing physiological stress (eg post-operative, septic). In some patients, only marginally low plasma Na^+ levels cause serious effects (eg $\sim 128\text{mmol/L}$)—don't attribute odd CNS signs to non-existent strokes/TIAs if $\text{Na}^+\downarrow$.

Management

- Correct the underlying cause; never base treatment on Na^+ concentration alone. The presence of symptoms, the chronicity of the hyponatraemia, and state of hydration are all important. Replace Na^+ and water at the same rate they were lost.
- **Asymptomatic chronic hyponatraemia** fluid restriction is often sufficient if asymptomatic, although demeclocycline (ADH antagonist) may be required. If hypervolaemic (cirrhosis, CCF) treat the underlying disorder first.
- **Acute or symptomatic hyponatraemia**, or if *dehydrated*, cautious rehydration with 0.9% saline may be given, but do not correct changes rapidly as *central pontine myelinolysis*¹ may result. Maximum rise in serum Na^+ 15mmol/L per day if chronic, or 1mmol/L per hour if acute. Consider using furosemide when not hypovolaemic to avoid fluid overload.
- **Vasopressor receptor antagonists** ('vaptans', eg conivaptan, tolvaptan, lixivaptan and satavaptan) promote water excretion without loss of electrolytes, and appear to be effective in treating hypervolaemic and euvoalaemic hyponatraemia but are expensive.⁴
- ▶▶ **In emergency** (seizures, coma) seek expert help. Consider hypertonic saline (eg 1.8% saline) at $70\text{mmol Na}^+/\text{h} \pm$ furosemide. Aim for a gradual increase in plasma Na^+ to $\sim 125\text{mmol/L}$. Beware heart failure and central pontine myelinolysis.¹

1 Central pontine myelinolysis: irreversible and often fatal pontine demyelination seen in malnourished alcoholics or rapid correction of $\uparrow\text{Na}^+$. There is subacute onset of lethargy, confusion, pseudobulbar palsy, para- or quadriplegia, 'locked-in' syndrome or coma.

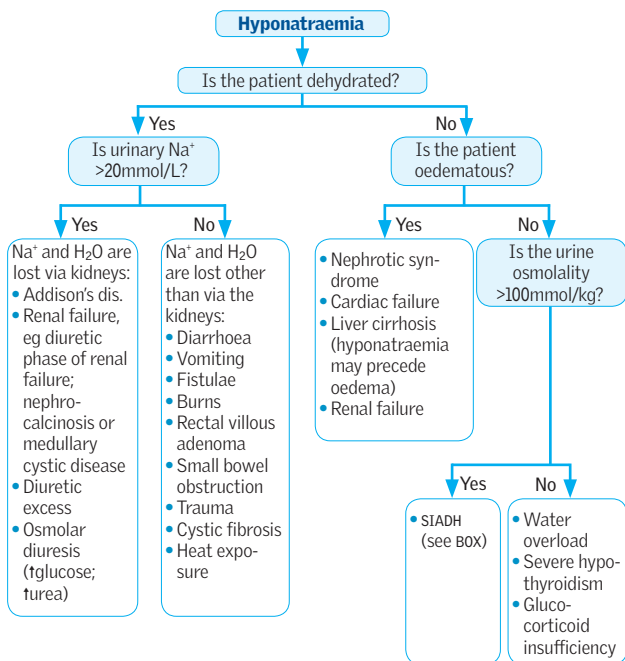


Fig 1. Hyponatraemia.

Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH)

An important, but over-diagnosed, cause of hyponatraemia. The diagnosis requires concentrated urine ($\text{Na}^+ > 20\text{mmol/L}$ and osmolality $> 100\text{mosmol/kg}$) in the presence of hyponatraemia (plasma $\text{Na}^+ < 125\text{mmol/L}$) and low plasma osmolality ($< 260\text{mosmol/kg}$), in the absence of hypovolaemia, oedema, or diuretics.

Causes

- **Malignancy:** lung small-cell, pancreas, prostate, thymus, or lymphoma.
- **CNS disorders:** meningoencephalitis, abscess, stroke, subarachnoid or subdural haemorrhage, head injury, neurosurgery, Guillain-Barré, vasculitis or SLE.
- **Chest disease:** TB, pneumonia, abscess, aspergillosis, small-cell lung cancer.
- **Endocrine disease:** hypothyroidism (not true SIADH, but perhaps due to excess ADH release from carotid sinus baroreceptors triggered by \downarrow cardiac output).⁵
- **Drugs:** opiates, psychotropics, SSRIs, cytotoxics.
- **Other:** acute intermittent porphyria, trauma, major abdominal or thoracic surgery, symptomatic HIV.

Treatment Treat the cause and restrict fluid. Consider salt \pm loop diuretic if severe. Demeclocycline is used rarely. Vasopressin receptor antagonists ('vaptans', p686) are an emerging class of drug used in SIADH and other types of hyponatraemia.

▶▶ A plasma potassium $>6.5\text{mmol/L}$ is an emergency and needs urgent treatment (see p849). The worry is of myocardial hyperexcitability leading to ventricular fibrillation and cardiac arrest. First assess the patient—do they look unwell, is there an obvious cause? If not, could it be an artefactual result?

Concerning signs and symptoms include a fast irregular pulse, chest pain, weakness, palpitations, and light-headedness. ECG: (see ECG 9) tall tented T waves, small P waves, a wide QRS complex (eventually becoming sinusoidal), and ventricular fibrillation.

Artefactual results: If the patient is well, and has none of the above findings, repeat the test urgently as it may be artefactual, caused by: •haemolysis (difficult venepuncture; patient clenched fist); •contamination with potassium EDTA anticoagulant in FBC bottles (do FBCs *after* U&Es); •thrombocythaemia (K^+ leaks out of platelets during clotting); •delayed analysis (K^+ leaks out of RBCs; a particular problem in a primary care setting due to long transit times to the lab).⁶

Causes

- Oliguric renal failure
- K^+ -sparing diuretics
- Rhabdomyolysis (p307)
- Metabolic acidosis (DM)
- Excess K^+ therapy
- Addison's disease (see p218)
- Massive blood transfusion
- Burns
- Drugs, eg ACE-i, suxamethonium
- Artefactual result (see above)

Treatment in non-urgent cases

- Treat the underlying cause; review medications.
- Polystyrene sulfonate resin (eg Calcium Resonium® 15g/8h po) binds K^+ in the gut, preventing absorption and bringing K^+ levels down over a few days. If vomiting prevents po administration, give a 30g enema, followed at 9h by colonic irrigation.
- ▶▶ If there is evidence of myocardial hyperexcitability, or K^+ is $>6.5\text{mmol/L}$, get senior assistance, and treat as an emergency (see p849).

Hypokalaemia

If $\text{K}^+ <2.5\text{mmol/L}$, urgent treatment is required. Note that hypokalaemia exacerbates digoxin toxicity.

Signs and symptoms Muscle weakness, hypotonia, hyporeflexia, cramps, tetany, palpitations, light-headedness (arrhythmias), constipation.

ECG Small or inverted T waves, prominent U waves (after T wave), a long PR interval, and depressed ST segments.

Causes

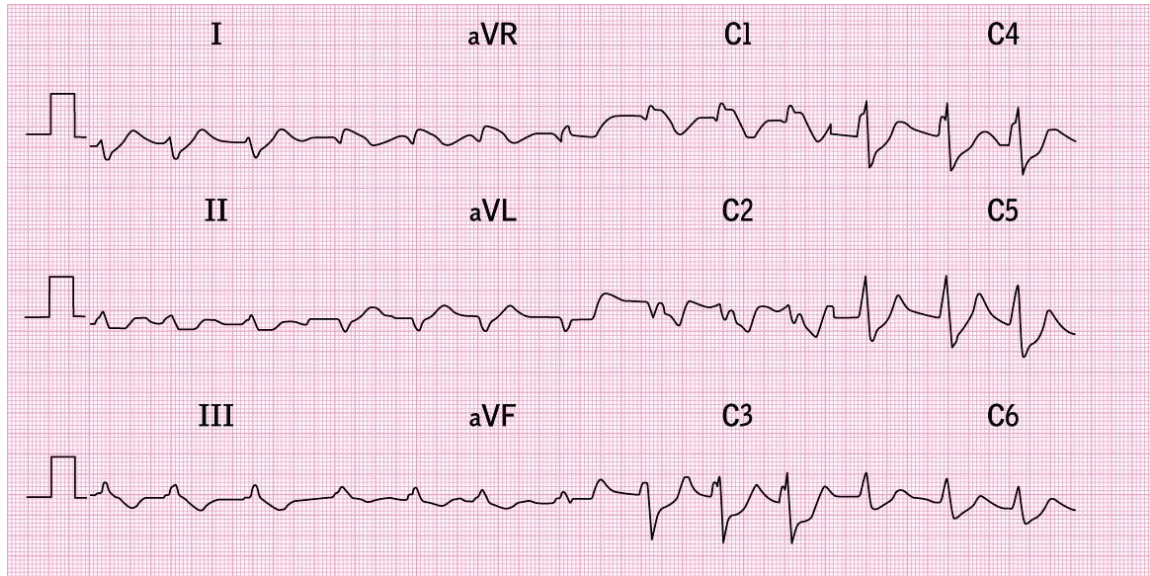
- Diuretics
- Vomiting and diarrhoea
- Pyloric stenosis
- Rectal villous adenoma
- Intestinal fistula
- Cushing's syndrome/steroids/ACTH
- Conn's syndrome
- Alkalosis
- Purgative and liquorice abuse
- Renal tubular failure (p310 & p678)

If on diuretics, HCO_3^- is the best indication that hypokalaemia is likely to have been long-standing. Mg^{2+} may be low, and hypokalaemia is often difficult to correct until Mg^{2+} levels are normalized. Suspect Conn's syndrome if hypertensive, hypokalaemic alkalosis in someone not taking diuretics (p220).

In *hypokalaemic periodic paralysis*, intermittent weakness lasting up to 72h appears to be caused by K^+ shifting from extra- to intracellular fluid. See OHCS p652.

Treatment *If mild:* ($>2.5\text{mmol/L}$, no symptoms) give oral K^+ supplement ($\geq 80\text{mmol/24h}$, eg Sando-K® 2 tabs/8h). Review K^+ after 3 days. If taking a thiazide diuretic, and $\text{K}^+ >3.0$ consider repeating and/or K^+ sparing diuretic. *If severe:* ($<2.5\text{mmol/L}$, and/or dangerous symptoms) give IV potassium cautiously, not more than 20mmol/h , and not more concentrated than 40mmol/L . Do not give K^+ if oliguric.

▶▶ Never give K^+ as a fast stat bolus dose.



ECG 9. Hyperkalaemia—note the flattening of the P waves, prominent T waves, and widening of the QRS complex.

Calcium and phosphate homeostasis is maintained through:

Parathyroid hormone (PTH): Overall effect is $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ & $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$. Secretion by 4 parathyroid glands is triggered by \downarrow serum ionized Ca^{2+} ; controlled by $-ve$ feedback loop. Actions are: \bullet tosteoclast activity releasing Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} from bones; \bullet $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ & $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ reabsorption in the kidney; \bullet renal production of 1,25-dihydroxy-vitamin D_3 .

Vitamin D and calcitriol: Vit D is hydroxylated first in the liver to 25-hydroxy-vit D, and again in the kidney to 1,25-dihydroxy-vit D (calcitriol), the biologically active form, and 24,25-hydroxy-vit D (inactive). Calcitriol production is stimulated by $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$, $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$, and PTH. **Actions are:** \bullet $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\uparrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ absorption from the gut; \bullet inhibition of PTH release; \bullet enhanced bone turnover; \bullet $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\uparrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ reabsorption in the kidney. Cholecalciferol (vit D_3 —from animal sources) and ergocalciferol (vit D_2 —from vegetables) are biologically identical in their activity. Disordered regulation of calcitriol underlies familial normocalcaemic hypercalciuria, which is a major cause of calcium oxalate renal stone formation (p640).

Calcitonin: Made in C-cells of the thyroid, this causes $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and PO_4^{3-} , but its physiological role is unclear. It can be used as a marker of recurrence or metastasis in medullary carcinoma of the thyroid.

Magnesium: $\downarrow\text{Mg}^{2+}$ prevents PTH release, and may cause hypocalcaemia.

Plasma binding: Labs usually measure total plasma Ca^{2+} . $\sim 40\%$ is bound to albumin, and the rest is free ionized Ca^{2+} which is the physiologically important amount. Therefore, **correct total Ca^{2+} for albumin as follows:** add 0.1mmol/L to Ca^{2+} level for every 4g/L that albumin is below 40g/L, and a similar subtraction for raised albumin. However, many other factors affect binding (eg other proteins in myeloma, cirrhosis, individual variation) so be cautious in your interpretation. If in doubt over a high Ca^{2+} , take blood specimens uncuffed (remove tourniquet after needle in vein, but before taking blood sample), and with the patient fasted.

Hypercalcaemia

Signs and symptoms 'Bones, stones, groans, and psychic moans'. Abdominal pain; vomiting; constipation; polyuria; polydipsia; depression; anorexia; weight loss; tiredness; weakness; hypertension, confusion; pyrexia; renal stones; renal failure; ectopic calcification (eg cornea—see BOX); cardiac arrest. **ECG:** QT interval \downarrow .

Causes (See fig 1) Most commonly malignancy (eg from bone metastases, myeloma, PTHrP) or primary hyperparathyroidism. Others include sarcoidosis, vit D intoxication, thyrotoxicosis, lithium, tertiary hyperparathyroidism, milk-alkali syndrome, and familial benign hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia (rare; defect in calcium-sensing receptor). HIV can cause both \uparrow & \downarrow Ca^{2+} (perhaps from PTH-related bone remodelling).⁷

Investigations The main distinction is malignancy vs 1° hyperparathyroidism. Pointers to malignancy are \downarrow albumin, $\downarrow\text{Cl}^-$, alkalosis, $\downarrow\text{K}^+$, $\uparrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$, \uparrow alk phos. \uparrow PTH indicates hyperparathyroidism. Also FBC, protein electrophoresis, CXR, isotope bone scan, 24h urinary Ca^{2+} excretion (for familial hypocalciuric hypercalcaemia).

Causes of metastatic (ectopic) calcification 'PARATHORMONE'

Parathormone (PTH) \uparrow (p214) and other causes of $\text{Ca}^{2+}\uparrow$, eg sarcoidosis;
Amyloidosis; **R**enal failure (relates to $\uparrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$); **A**dison's disease (adrenal calcification)
TB nodes; **T**oxoplasmosis (CNS); **H**istoplasmosis (eg in lung); **O**verdose of vitamin D;
Raynaud's-associated diseases (eg SLE; CREST p554; dermatomyositis); **M**uscle primaries/leiomyosarcomas); **O**ssifying metastases (**osteosarcoma**) or **ovarian** mets (to peritoneum); **N**ephrocalcinosis; **E**ndocrine tumours (eg gastrinoma)

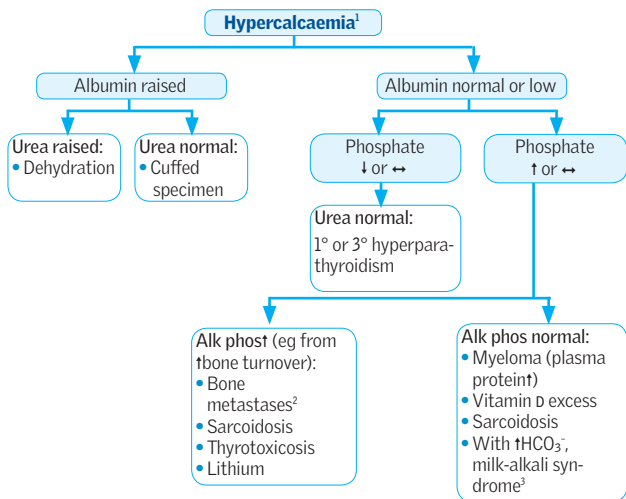


Fig 1. Hypercalcaemia.

Treating acute hypercalcaemia

Diagnose and treat the underlying cause. If $\text{Ca}^{2+} > 3.5 \text{ mmol/L}$ and symptomatic:

- 1 Correct dehydration** if present with IV 0.9% saline.
- 2 Bisphosphonates** prevent bone resorption by inhibiting osteoclast activity. A single dose of pamidronate lowers Ca^{2+} over 2–3d; maximum effect is at 1wk. Infuse slowly, eg 30mg in 300mL 0.9% saline over 3h via a largish vein. Max dose 90mg (see TABLE below). **SE:** Flu symptoms, ↓ PO_4^{3-} , bone pain, myalgia, nausea, vomiting, headache, lymphocytopenia, ↓ Mg^{2+} , ↓ Ca^{2+} , seizures.
- 3 Further management** Chemotherapy may help in malignancy. Steroids are used in sarcoidosis, eg prednisolone 40–60mg/d. Salmon calcitonin acts similarly to bisphosphonates, and has a quicker onset of action, but is now rarely used. **NB:** The use of furosemide is contentious, as supporting RCT evidence is scant.^{8,9} It helps to promote renal excretion of Ca^{2+} , but can exacerbate hypercalcaemia by worsening dehydration. Thus it should only be used once fully rehydrated, and with concomitant IV fluids (eg 0.9% saline 1L/4–6h). Avoid thiazides.

Disodium pamidronate doses

Calcium (mmol/L; corrected)	Single-dose pamidronate (mg)
<3	15–30
3–3.5	30–60
3.5–4	60–90
>4	90

Other bisphosphonates include zoledronic acid, sodium clodronate and ibandronic acid. Zoledronic acid is significantly more effective in reducing serum Ca^{2+} than previously used bisphosphonates.¹⁰ Usually, a single dose of 4mg IV (diluted to 100mL, over 15min) will normalize plasma Ca^{2+} within a week. **SE:** Flu symptoms, bone pain, PO_4^{3-} ↓, confusion, thirst, taste disturbance, nausea, pulse ↓, WCC ↓, creatinine ↑, osteonecrosis of the jaw.

¹ This diagram is only a guide: use in conjunction with the clinical picture.

² Most common primary: breast, kidney, lung, thyroid, prostate, ovary, colon.

³ Ingesting too much calcium and alkali (eg in milk) can cause hypercalcaemia with metastatic calcification and renal failure. Thyrotoxicosis causes alkalaemia because of hyperventilation.¹¹

► Apparent hypocalcaemia may be an artefact of hypoalbuminaemia (p690).

Signs and symptoms See BOX. *Mild*: cramps, perioral numbness/paraesthesiae. *Severe*: carpopedal spasm (especially if brachial artery compressed, *Trousseau's sign*; see fig 1), laryngospasm, seizures. Neuromuscular excitability may also be demonstrated by tapping over parotid (facial nerve) causing facial muscles to twitch (*Chvostek's sign*; see fig 2). Cataract if chronic hypocalcaemia. **ECG**: long QT interval.

Causes With $\uparrow PO_4^{3-}$

- chronic kidney disease (p300)
- hypoparathyroidism (incl thyroid or parathyroid surgery, p214)
- pseudohypoparathyroidism (p214)
- acute rhabdomyolysis
- vitamin D deficiency
- hypomagnesaemia

With \leftrightarrow or $\downarrow PO_4^{3-}$

- osteomalacia (talk phos)
- acute pancreatitis
- over-hydration
- respiratory alkalosis (total Ca^{2+} is normal, but \downarrow ionized Ca^{2+} due to $pH \therefore$ symptomatic)

Treatment

- *Mild symptoms*: give calcium 5mmol/6h PO, with daily plasma Ca^{2+} levels.
- *In chronic kidney disease*: see p300. May require alfacalcidol, eg 0.5–1 μ g/24h PO.
- *Severe symptoms*: give 10mL of 10% calcium gluconate (2.25mmol) IV over 30min, and repeat as necessary. If due to respiratory alkalosis, correct the alkalosis.

Features of hypocalcaemia 'SPASMODY' ¹²

- **S**pasms (carpopedal spasms = Trousseau's sign)
- **P**erioral paraesthesiae
- **A**nxious, irritable, irrational
- **S**eizures
- **M**uscle tone \uparrow in smooth muscle—hence colic, wheeze, and dysphagia
- **O**rientation impaired (time, place and person) and confusion
- **D**ermatitis (eg atopic/exfoliative)
- **I**mpetigo herpetiformis ($\downarrow Ca^{2+}$ and pustules in pregnancy—rare and serious)
- **C**hvestek's sign; **c**horeoathetosis; **c**ataract; **c**ardiomyopathy (long QT interval on ECG)



Fig 1. Trousseau's sign: on inflating the cuff, the wrist and fingers flex and draw together (carpopedal spasm).



Fig 2. Chvostek's sign: the corner of the mouth twitches when the facial nerve is tapped over the parotid.

Phosphate

Hypophosphataemia is common and of little significance unless severe ($<0.4\text{mmol/L}$). **Causes** include vitamin D deficiency, alcohol withdrawal, refeeding syndrome (p578-9), inadequate oral intake, severe diabetic ketoacidosis, renal tubular dysfunction and 1° hyperparathyroidism. **Signs & symptoms** include muscle weakness or rhabdomyolysis, red cell, white cell and platelet dysfunction, and cardiac arrest or arrhythmias. **Treatment** is by oral or parenteral phosphate supplementation, eg Phosphate Polyfusor® IVI (100mmol PO_4^{3-} in 500mL). Never give IV phosphate to a patient who is hypercalcaemic or oliguric.

Hyperphosphataemia is most commonly due to chronic kidney disease, when it is treated with phosphate binders, eg sevelamer $800\text{mg}/8\text{h}$ PO during meals. Also catabolic states such as tumour lysis syndrome (p526).

Magnesium

Magnesium is distributed 65% in bone and 35% in cells; plasma concentration tends to follow that of Ca^{2+} and K^+ .

Hypomagnesaemia causes paraesthesiae, ataxia, seizures, tetany, arrhythmias. Digitalis toxicity may be exacerbated. **Causes** include diuretics, severe diarrhoea, ketoacidosis, alcohol abuse, total parenteral nutrition (monitor weekly), $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$, $\downarrow\text{K}^+$ and $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$. **Treatment:** If needed, give magnesium salts, PO or IV (eg 8mmol MgSO_4 IV over 3min to 2h, depending on severity, with frequent Mg^{2+} levels).

Hypermagnesaemia rarely requires treatment unless severe ($>7.5\text{mmol/L}$). **Causes** are renal failure or iatrogenic (eg excessive antacids). **Signs** if severe include neuromuscular depression, $\downarrow\text{BP}$, $\downarrow\text{pulse}$, hyporeflexia, CNS & respiratory depression, coma.

Zinc

Zinc deficiency This may occur in parenteral nutrition or, rarely, from a poor diet (too few cereals and dairy products; anorexia nervosa; alcoholism). Rarely it is due to a genetic defect. **Symptoms:** Alopecia, dermatitis (look for red, crusted skin lesions especially around nostrils and corners of mouth), night blindness, diarrhoea. **Diagnosis:** Therapeutic trial of zinc (plasma levels are unreliable as they may be low, eg in infection or trauma, without deficiency).

Selenium

An essential element present in cereals, nuts, and meat. Low soil levels in some parts of Europe and China cause deficiency states. Required for the antioxidant glutathione peroxidase, which \downarrow harmful free radicals. Selenium is also antithrombogenic, and is required for sperm motility proteins. Deficiency may increase risk of neoplasia and atheroma, and may lead to a cardiomyopathy or arthritis. Serum levels are a poor guide. Toxic symptoms may also be found with over-energetic replacement.

Causes of hyperuricaemia High levels of urate in the blood (hyperuricaemia) may result from increased turnover (15%) or reduced excretion of urate (85%). Either may be drug induced.

- **Drugs:** Cytotoxics, thiazides, loop diuretics, pyrazinamide.
- **Increased cell turnover:** Lymphoma, leukaemia, psoriasis, haemolysis, muscle death (rhabdomyolysis, p307; tumour lysis syndrome, p526).
- **Reduced excretion:** Primary gout (p550), chronic kidney disease, lead nephropathy, hyperparathyroidism, pre-eclampsia (OHCS p48).
- **Other:** Hyperuricaemia may be associated with hypertension and hyperlipidaemia. Urate may be raised in disorders of purine synthesis such as the *Lesch-Nyhan syndrome* (OHCS p648).

Hyperuricaemia and renal failure Severe renal failure from any cause may be associated with hyperuricaemia, and rarely this may give rise to gout. Sometimes the relationship of cause and effect is reversed so that it is the hyperuricaemia that causes the renal failure. This can occur following cytotoxic treatment (tumour lysis syndrome, p526), and in muscle necrosis.

How urate causes renal failure: Urate is poorly soluble in water, so over-excretion can lead to crystal precipitation. Renal failure occurs most commonly because urate precipitates in the renal tubules. This may occur at plasma levels ≥ 1.19 mmol/L. In some instances ureteric obstruction from urate crystals may occur. This responds to retrograde ureteric catheterization and lavage.

Prevention of renal failure: Before starting chemotherapy, ensure good hydration and initiate **allopurinol** (xanthine oxidase inhibitor) or **rasburicase** (recombinant urate oxidase), which prevent a sharp rise in urate following chemotherapy (see p526). There is a remote risk of inducing xanthine nephropathy.

Treatment of hyperuricaemic acute renal failure: Exclude bilateral ureteric obstruction, then give prompt **rehydration** \pm **loop diuretic** to wash uric acid crystals out of the renal tubules, and correct electrolyte abnormalities. Once oliguria is established, **haemodialysis** is required (in preference to peritoneal dialysis). There is no evidence for either preventing (above) or treating hyperuricaemic renal failure.

Gout See p550.

Urate renal stones Urate stones (**fig 1**) comprise 5–10% of all renal stones and are radiolucent.

Incidence: ~5–10% in temperate climates (double if confirmed gout),¹³ but up to 40% in hot, arid climates. $\sigma:\text{f} \approx 4:1$. But most urate stone formers have no detectable abnormalities in urate metabolism.

Risk factors: Acidic or strongly concentrated urine; turinary excretion of urate; chronic diarrhoea; distal small bowel disease or resection (regional enteritis); ileostomy; obesity; diabetes mellitus; chemotherapy for myeloproliferative disorders; inadequate caloric or fluid intake.

Treatment: Hydration to increase urine volume (aim $> 2\text{L/d}$). Unlike most other renal calculi, existing uric acid stones can often be dissolved with either systemic or topical alkalinizing agents. **Potassium citrate** or **potassium bicarbonate** at a dose titrated to alkalinize the urine to a pH of 6–7 dissolves some urate stones. If hyperuricosuria, consider dietary management \pm **allopurinol** (xanthine oxidase inhibitor).



Fig 1. Urate stone. ©Dr G Austin.

This page intentionally left blank

Osteoporosis implies reduced bone mass. It may be 1° (age-related) or 2° to another condition or drugs. If trabecular bone is affected, crush fractures of vertebrae are common (hence the 'littleness' of little old ladies and their dowager's hump); if cortical bone is affected, long bone fractures are more likely, eg femoral neck: the big cause of death and orthopaedic expense (80% hip fractures in the UK occur in women >50yrs).

Prevalence (in those >50yrs): ♂6%, ♀18%. Women lose trabeculae with age, but in men, although there is reduced bone formation, numbers of trabeculae are stable and their lifetime risk of fracture is less.

Risk factors Age-independent risk factors for 1° osteoporosis: parental history, alcohol >4 units daily, rheumatoid arthritis, BMI <22, prolonged immobility, and untreated menopause. See BOX 2 for other risk factors, including for 2° osteoporosis.

Investigations X-ray (low sensitivity/specificity, often with hindsight after a fracture). Bone densitometry (DEXA—see BOX 1). **Bloods:** Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} & alk phos normal. Consider specific investigations for 2° causes if suggestive history. **Biopsy** is unreliable and unnecessary with non-invasive techniques available.

Management Loss of bone mineral density may not be entirely irreversible. Age, number of risk factors and bone mineral density (DEXA scan; see BOX) guide the pharmacological approach (eg FRAX, which is a WHO risk assessment tool for estimating 10-yr risk of osteoporotic fracture in untreated patients; see www.shef.ac.uk/frax),^{14,15} although DEXA is not necessary if age >75yrs. Lifestyle measures should apply to all (including those at risk but not yet osteoporotic).

Lifestyle measures:

- Quit smoking and reduce alcohol consumption.
- Weight-bearing exercise may increase bone mineral density.¹⁶
- Balance exercises such as tai chi reduce risk of falls.
- Calcium and vitamin D-rich diet (use supplements if diet is insufficient—see below).
- Home-based fall-prevention programme, with visual assessment and a home visit. NB: hip-protectors are unreliable for preventing fractures.¹⁷

Pharmacological measures:

- **Bisphosphonates:** alendronate is 1st line (10mg/d or 70mg/wk; not if eGFR <35). Use also for prevention in long-term steroid use. If intolerant, try etidronate or risendronate. Say to swallow pills with *plenty* of water while remaining upright for >30min and wait 30min before eating or other drugs. (SE: photosensitivity; GI upset; oesophageal ulcers—stop if dysphagia or abdo pain; rarely, jaw osteonecrosis).
- **Calcium and vitamin D:** rarely used alone for prophylaxis, as questionable efficacy and some evidence of a small increased cv risk. Offer if evidence of deficiency, eg calcium 1g/d + vit D 800u/d. Target serum 25-hydroxy-vitamin D level $\geq 75\text{nmol/L}$.
- **Strontium ranelate** helps ↓ fracture rates, and is an alternative in those intolerant of bisphosphonates. Strontium is in the same periodic group as calcium and reduces reabsorption, and may promote new bone formation.
- **Hormone replacement therapy (HRT)** can prevent (not treat) osteoporosis in post-menopausal women. Relative risk of breast cancer is 1.4 if used >10yrs; ↑ cv risk.
- **Raloxifene** is a selective oestrogen receptor modulator (SERM) that acts similarly to HRT, but with ↓ breast cancer risk.
- **Teriparatide** (recombinant PTH) is useful in those who suffer further fractures despite treatment with other agents. There is a potential ↑ risk of renal malignancy.
- **Calcitonin** may reduce pain after a vertebral fracture.
- **Testosterone** may help in hypogonadal men by promoting trabecular connectivity.
- **Denosumab**, a monoclonal Ab to RANK ligand, given SC twice yearly ↓ reabsorption.

DEXA bone densitometry: WHO osteoporosis criteria

Dual Energy X-ray
Absorptiometry

It is better to scan the hip than the lumbar spine. Bone mineral density (g/cm^2) is compared with that of a young healthy adult. The 'T-score' is the number of standard deviations (SD, p765) the bone mineral density (BMD) is from the youthful average. Each decrease of 1 SD in bone mineral density \approx 2.6-fold \uparrow in risk of hip fracture.

T-score > 0	BMD is better than the reference.
0 to -1	BMD is in the top 84%: no evidence of osteoporosis.
-1 to -2.5	Osteopenia. Risk of later osteoporotic fracture. Offer lifestyle advice.
-2.5 or worse	Osteoporosis. Offer lifestyle advice and treatment (p696). Repeat DEXA in 2yrs.

Some indications for DEXA:

- NICE suggests DEXA if previous low-trauma fracture, or for women ≥ 65 yrs with one or more risk factors for osteoporosis, or younger if two or more. The benefits of universal screening for osteoporosis remain unproven, but some authorities recommend this for men and women over 70—and earlier if risk factors are present.¹⁸
- DEXA is not needed pre-treatment for women over 75 yrs if previous low-trauma fracture, or ≥ 2 present of rheumatoid arthritis, alcohol excess, or positive family history.
- Prior to giving long-term prednisolone (eg ≥ 3 months at $>5\text{mg}/\text{d}$). Steroids cause osteoporosis by promoting osteoclast bone resorption, \downarrow muscle mass, and $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ absorption from the gut.
- Men or women with osteopenia if low-trauma non-vertebral fracture.
- Bone and bone-remodelling disorders (eg parathyroid disorders, myeloma, HIV, esp if on protease inhibitors).

Osteoporosis risk factors 'SHATTERED'

Steroid use of $>5\text{mg}/\text{d}$ of prednisolone; **H**yperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, hypercalciuria; **A**lcohol and tobacco use; **T**hin (BMI <22); **T**estosterone \downarrow (eg antiandrogen ca prostate R); **E**arly menopause; **R**enal or liver failure; **E**rosive/inflammatory bone disease (eg myeloma or rheumatoid arthritis); **D**ietary $\text{Ca}^{2+}\downarrow$ /malabsorption; diabetes mellitus type 1.

In osteomalacia there is a normal amount of bone but its mineral content is low (there is excess uncalcified osteoid and cartilage). This is the reverse of osteoporosis in which mineralization is unchanged, but there is overall bone loss. Rickets is the result if this process occurs during the period of bone growth; osteomalacia is the result if it occurs after fusion of the epiphyses.

Signs and symptoms

Rickets: Growth retardation, hypotonia, apathy in infants. Once walking: knock-kneed, bow-legged and deformities of the metaphyseal-epiphyseal junction (eg the rachitic rosary). Features of $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ —often mild (p692). Children with rickets are ill.

Osteomalacia: Bone pain and tenderness; fractures (esp femoral neck); proximal myopathy (waddling gait), due to $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ and vitamin D deficiency *per se*.

Causes

- **Vitamin D deficiency:** Due to malabsorption (p280), poor diet, or lack of sunlight.
- **Renal osteodystrophy:** Renal failure leads to 1,25-dihydroxy-cholecalciferol deficiency [1,25(OH)₂-vitamin D deficiency]. See also **renal bone disease** (p302).
- **Drug-induced:** Anticonvulsants may induce liver enzymes, leading to an increased breakdown of 25-hydroxy-vitamin D.
- **Vitamin D resistance:** A number of mainly inherited conditions in which the osteomalacia responds to high doses of vitamin D (see below).
- **Liver disease:** Due to reduced hydroxylation of vitamin D to 25-hydroxy-cholecalciferol and malabsorption of vitamin D, eg in cirrhosis (p260).
- **Tumour-induced osteomalacia** (oncogenic hypophosphataemia): mediated by raised tumour production of phosphatonin fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF-23) which causes hyperphosphaturia. \downarrow serum PO_4^{3-} often causes myalgia and weakness.¹⁹

Investigations

Plasma: Mildly $\downarrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$ (but may be severe); $\downarrow\text{PO}_4^{3-}$; alk phost; PTH high; 25(OH)-vitamin D \downarrow , except in vitamin D resistance. In renal failure 1,25(OH)₂-vitamin D \downarrow (p302).

Biopsy: Bone biopsy shows incomplete mineralization. Muscle biopsy (if proximal myopathy) is normal.

X-ray: In osteomalacia there is a loss of cortical bone; also, apparent partial fractures without displacement may be seen especially on the lateral border of the scapula, inferior femoral neck and medial femoral shaft (Looser's zones; see **fig 1**). Cupped, ragged metaphyseal surfaces are seen in rickets (**fig 2**).

Treatment

- In dietary insufficiency, give vitamin D, eg as one **Calcium D₃ Forte** tablet/12h PO.
- In malabsorption or hepatic disease, give vitamin D₂ (ergocalciferol), up to 40,000U (=1mg) daily, or **parenteral calcitriol**, eg 7.5mg monthly.
- If due to renal disease or vitamin D resistance, give **alfacalcidol** (1 α -hydroxy-vitamin D₃) 250ng–1 μ g daily, or **calcitriol** (1,25-dihydroxy-vitamin D₃) 250ng–1 μ g daily, and adjust dose according to plasma Ca^{2+} . \blacktriangleright Alfacalcidol and calcitriol can cause dangerous hypercalcaemia.
- Monitor plasma Ca^{2+} , initially weekly, and if nausea/vomiting.

Vitamin D-resistant rickets exists in 2 forms. Type I has low renal 1 α -hydroxylase activity, and type II has end-organ resistance to 1,25-dihydroxy-vitamin D₃, due to a point mutation in the receptor. Both are treated with large doses of calcitriol.

x-linked hypophosphataemic rickets Dominantly inherited—due to a defect in renal phosphate handling (due to mutations in the PEX or PHEX genes which encode an endopeptidase). Rickets develops in early childhood and is associated with poor growth. Plasma PO_4^{3-} is low, alk phos is high, and there is phosphaturia. Treatment is with high doses of oral phosphate, and calcitriol.

Also called *osteitis deformans*, there is increased bone turnover associated with increased numbers of osteoblasts and osteoclasts with resultant remodelling, bone enlargement, deformity, and weakness. Rare in the under-40s. Incidence rises with age (3% over 55yrs old). Commoner in temperate climates, and in Anglo-Saxons.

Clinical features Asymptomatic in ~70%. Deep, boring pain, and bony deformity and enlargement—typically of the pelvis, lumbar spine, skull, femur, and tibia (classically a bowed sabre tibia; **fig 3**). **Complications** include pathological fractures, osteoarthritis, $\uparrow\text{Ca}^{2+}$, nerve compression due to bone overgrowth (eg deafness, root compression), high-output ccf (if >40% of skeleton involved) and osteosarcoma (<1% of those affected for >10yrs—suspect if sudden onset or worsening of bone pain).²⁰

Radiology x-ray Localized enlargement of bone. Patchy cortical thickening with sclerosis, osteolysis, and deformity (eg *osteoporosis circumscripta* of the skull). Affinity for axial skeleton, long bones, and skull. **Bone scan** may reveal 'hot spots'.

Blood chemistry Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} normal; alk phos markedly raised.

Treatment If analgesia fails, alendronate may be tried to reduce pain and/or deformity. It is more effective than etidronate or calcitonin, and as effective as IV pamidronate. Follow expert advice.



Fig 1. Osteomalacia.

Cortical bone lucency and Looser's zones are seen in both forearms of a patient with osteomalacia (**fig 1**). Typical ragged metaphyseal surfaces are seen in the knee and ankle joints of a child with rickets, with bowing of the long bones (**fig 2**). The 'sabre tibia' seen in Paget's disease, with multiple sclerotic lesions (**fig 3**).

Images courtesy of Dr Ian Maddison.



Fig 2. Rickets.

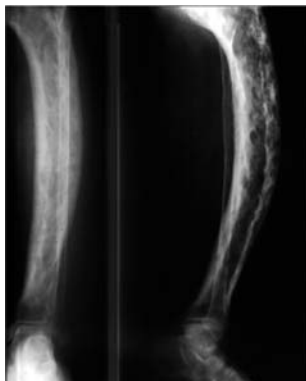


Fig 3. Paget's disease.

The plasma contains a number of proteins including albumin, immunoglobulins, α_1 -antitrypsin, α_2 -macroglobulin, caeruloplasmin, transferrin, low-density lipoprotein (LDL), fibrinogen, complement, and factor VIII. The most abundant is albumin.

Albumin is synthesized in the liver; $t_{1/2} \approx 20$ d. It binds bilirubin, free fatty acids, Ca^{2+} , and some drugs. *Low albumin* results in oedema, and is caused by: • *↓synthesis*: liver disease, acute phase response (due to ↑vascular permeability—eg sepsis, trauma, surgery), malabsorption, malnutrition, malignancy; • *t/loss*: nephrotic syndrome, protein-losing enteropathy, burns; • *haemodilution*: late pregnancy, artefact (eg from 'drip' arm). Also posture (↑5g/L if upright) and genetic variations. *High albumin*: Dehydration; artefact (eg stasis).

Immunoglobulins, or antibodies, are synthesized by B cells. 5 isoforms Ig A, D, E, G, M exist in man, and IgG is the most abundant circulating form. *Specific monoclonal band* in paraproteinaemia (see p364). *Diffusely raised* in chronic infections, TB, bronchiectasis, liver cirrhosis, sarcoidosis, SLE, RA, Crohn's disease, 1° biliary cirrhosis, hepatitis, and parasitaemia. *Low* in nephrotic syndrome, malabsorption, malnutrition, and immune deficiency states (eg severe illness, renal failure, diabetes mellitus, malignancy, or congenital).

Acute phase response The body responds to a variety of insults with, amongst other things, the synthesis, by the liver, of a number of proteins (normally present in serum in small quantities)—eg α_1 -antitrypsin, fibrinogen, complement, haptoglobin, and CRP. A concomitant reduction in albumin level, is characteristic of conditions such as infection, malignancy (especially α_2 -fraction), trauma, surgery, and inflammatory disease.

CRP So-called because it binds to a polysaccharide (fraction c) in the cell wall of pneumococci. Levels help monitor inflammation/infection (normal <8mg/L). Like the ESR, it is raised in many inflammatory conditions, but changes more rapidly. It increases in hours and begins to fall within 2–3d of recovery; thus it can be used to follow disease activity (eg Crohn's disease) or the response to therapy (eg antibiotics). CRP values in mild inflammation 10–50mg/L; active bacterial infection 50–200mg/L; severe infection or trauma >200mg/L; see BOX.

Urinary proteins

Urinary protein loss >150mg/d is pathological (p286).

Albuminuria is usually caused by renal disease (p286). *Microalbuminuria* is urinary protein loss between 30 and 300mg/d (so not visible on normal dipstick) and may be seen with diabetes mellitus, TBP, SLE and glomerulonephritis (see p309 for role in DM).

Bence Jones protein consists of light chains excreted in excess by some patients with myeloma (p362). They are not detected by dipsticks and may occur with normal serum electrophoresis.

Haemoglobinuria is caused by intravascular haemolysis (p330).

Myoglobinuria is caused by rhabdomyolysis (p307).

C-reactive protein (CRP)*Marked elevation*

Bacterial infection
Abscess
Crohn's disease
Connective tissue diseases
(except SLE)
Neoplasia
Trauma
Necrosis (eg MI)

Normal-to-slight elevation

Viral infection
Steroids/oestrogens
Ulcerative colitis
SLE
Atherosclerosis
Morbid obesity

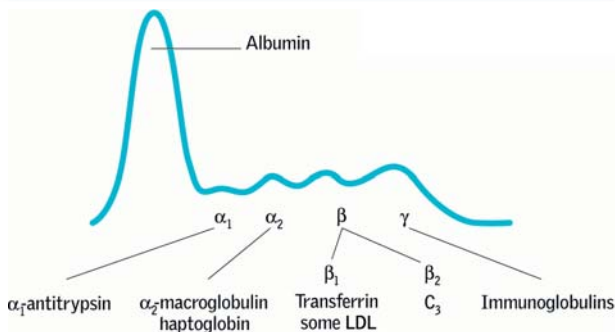


Fig 1. A normal electrophoretic scan.

▶ Reference intervals vary between laboratories. See p770 for guide normal values. Raised levels of specific enzymes can be a useful indicator of a disease. However, remember that most can be raised for other reasons too. Levels may be raised due to cellular damage, ↑cell turnover, cellular proliferation (malignancy), enzyme induction, and ↓clearance. The major causes of **raised enzymes** are given below.

Alkaline phosphatase (several distinguishable isoforms exist, eg liver and bone)

- Liver disease (suggests cholestasis; also cirrhosis, abscess, hepatitis or malignancy).
- Bone disease (isoenzyme distinguishable, reflects osteoblast activity) especially Paget's, growing children, healing fractures, bone metastases, osteomalacia, osteomyelitis, chronic kidney disease and hyperparathyroidism.
- Congestive cardiac failure (moderately raised alk phos).
- Pregnancy (placenta makes its own isoenzyme).

Alanine and aspartate aminotransferase (ALT and AST)

- Liver disease (suggests hepatocyte damage).
- AST also ↑ in MI, skeletal muscle damage (especially crush injuries) and haemolysis.

α-Amylase

- Acute pancreatitis (smaller rise in chronic pancreatitis as less tissue remaining).
- Also: severe uraemia, diabetic ketoacidosis, severe gastroenteritis, and peptic ulcer.

Creatine kinase (CK) ▶ A raised CK does not necessarily mean an MI.

- Myocardial infarction (p112; isoenzyme 'CK-MB'. Diagnostic if CK-MB >6% of total CK, or CK-MB mass >99 percentile of normal). CK returns to baseline within 48h (unlike troponin, which remains raised for ~10 days), ∴ useful for detecting re-infarction.
- Muscle damage (rhabdomyolysis, p307; prolonged running; haematoma; seizures; IM injection; defibrillation; bowel ischaemia; myxoedema; dermatomyositis, p554)—and *drugs* (eg statins).

Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT, γGT)

- Liver disease (particularly alcohol-induced damage, cholestasis, drugs).

Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)

- Myocardial infarction (p112).
- Liver disease (suggests hepatocyte damage).
- Haemolysis (esp sickle cell crisis), pulmonary embolism, and tumour necrosis.

Troponin

- Subtypes troponin T and troponin I are used clinically.
- Cardiac damage or strain (MI—p112, pericarditis, myocarditis, PE, sepsis, CPR).
- Chronic kidney disease (troponin T only; elevation less marked; aetiology unknown).

Enzyme inducers and inhibitors

Hepatic drug metabolism is mainly by conjugation or oxidation. The oxidative pathways are catalysed by the family of cytochrome P450 isoenzymes, the most important of which is the CYP 3A4 isoenzyme. The cytochrome P450 pathway may be either induced or inhibited by a range of commonly used drugs and foods:

Enzyme inducers

Phenytoin
Rifampicin
Carbamazepine
Alcohol
St John's wort
Barbiturates

Enzyme inhibitors

SSRIs
Ciprofloxacin
Isoniazid
Macrolides
HIV protease inhibitors
Imidazole and triazole antifungal agents
Amiodarone
Diltiazem
Verapamil
Omeprazole
Grapefruit juice

This can lead to important interactions or side-effects. For example phenytoin reduces the effectiveness of the Pill due to more rapid oestrogen metabolism, and ciprofloxacin retards the metabolism of methylxanthines (aminophylline) which leads to higher plasma levels and potentially more side-effects. The *BNF* contains a list of the major interactions between drugs.

Lipids travel in blood packaged with proteins as lipoproteins. There are 4 classes: chylomicrons and VLDL (mainly triglyceride), LDL (mainly cholesterol), and HDL (mainly phospholipid). The evidence that cholesterol is a major risk factor for cardiovascular disease (CVD) is now incontrovertible ('4S' STUDY,²¹ WOSCOPS,²² CARE STUDY,²³ HEART PROTECTION STUDY²⁴) and indeed it may even be the 'green light' that allows other risk factors to act.²⁵ Half the UK population have a serum cholesterol putting them at significant risk of CVD. HDL appears to correlate inversely with CVD.

Who to screen for hyperlipidaemia

►NB: full screening requires a fasting lipid profile.

Those at risk of hyperlipidaemia: •Family history of hyperlipidaemia; •Corneal arcus <50yrs old; •Xanthomata or xanthelasmata (fig 1).

Those at risk of CVD: (see *risk equation*, p675) •Known CVD; •Family history of CVD <65yrs old; •DM or impaired glucose tolerance; •Hypertension; •Smoker; •tBMI; •Low socioeconomic or Indian Asian background.

Types of hyperlipidaemia

Common primary hyperlipidaemia accounts for 70% of hyperlipidaemia. tLDL only.

Familial primary hyperlipidaemias comprise multiple phenotypes (see TABLE). *Risk of CVD*††, although evidence suggests protection from CVD is achieved with lower doses of statin than for common primary hyperlipidaemia.²⁶

Secondary hyperlipidaemia may be caused by Cushing's syndrome, hypothyroidism, nephrotic syndrome, or cholestasis. tLDL. Treat the cause first.

Mixed hyperlipidaemia results in ↑ both LDL and triglycerides. Caused by type 2 diabetes mellitus, metabolic syndrome, alcohol abuse, and chronic renal failure.

Management^{27,28}

- **Lifestyle advice.** Aim for BMI of 20–25. Diet with <10% of calories from saturated fats; ↑fibre, fresh fruit and vegetables, omega-3 fatty acids. ↑Exercise.
- Identify familial or 2° hyperlipidaemias. Treatment may differ—see above.
- **Treatment priorities:** using statins in primary prevention may cause side-effects and is expensive. •**Top priority:** Treat those with known CVD (there is no need to calculate their risk: ipso facto they already have high risk). •**2nd priority:** Treat all those with DM (especially if risk of cardiac event >2%/yr). •**3rd priority:** Those with a 10-year risk of CVD >20%, *irrespective of baseline lipid levels*. Current guidelines suggest a target plasma cholesterol of ≤4mmol/L.²⁸ There are not yet enough data to support a 4th priority of giving statins to all men over 50 and women over 65.
- **1st-line therapy:** statins, eg simvastatin (40mg po at night), ↓cholesterol synthesis in the liver. CI: porphyria, cholestasis, pregnancy. SE: myalgia ± myositis (stop if tck ≥10-fold; if any myalgia, check ck; risk is 1 per 100,000 treatment-years),²⁷ abdominal pain, and tLFTs (stop if AST ≥100U/L). Cytochrome P450 inhibitors (p702) ↑serum concentrations (eg 200mL of grapefruit juice may ↑simvastatin concentration by 300%, and atorvastatin ↑80%, but pravastatin is almost unchanged).
- **2nd-line therapy:** fibrates, eg bezafibrate (useful in mixed hyperlipidaemias), or cholesterol absorption inhibitors, eg ezetimibe (although unclear if it reduces mortality); anion exchange resins, eg colestyramine; also consider nicotinic acid (HDL↑; LDL↓; SE: severe flushes; aspirin 300mg ½h pre-dose helps this).
- Hypertriglyceridaemia responds best to fibrates, nicotinic acid, or fish oil.

Xanthomata These yellow lipid deposits may be: **eruptive** (itchy nodules in crops in hypertriglyceridaemia); **tuberous** (plaques on elbows and knees); or **planar**—also called palmar (orange streaks in palmar creases), 'diagnostic' of remnant hyperlipidaemia; or in tendons (p36), eyelids (xanthelasma, see fig 1), or cornea (arcus, p36).

Primary hyperlipidaemias

Blue superscript numbers = WHO phenotype; chol/trig levels given in mmol/L.

Familial hyperchylomicronaemia (lipoprotein lipase deficiency or apoCII deficiency) ^I	Chol <6.5 Trig 10–30 Chylomicrons ↑		Eruptive xanthomata; lipaemia retinalis; hepatosplenomegaly
Familial hypercholesterolaemia ^{II} (LDL receptor defects)	Chol 7.5–16 Trig <2.3	LDL↑	Tendon xanthoma; corneal arcus; xanthelasma
Familial defective apolipoprotein B-100 ^{IIIa}	Chol 7.5–16 Trig <2.3	LDL↑	Tendon xanthoma; arcus; xanthelasma
Common hypercholesterolaemia ^{IIIa}	Chol 6.5–9 Trig <2.3	LDL↑	<i>The commonest 1° lipidaemia</i> ; may have xanthelasma or arcus
Familial combined hyperlipidaemia ^{IIIb, IV or V}	Chol 6.5–10 Trig 2.3–12	LDL↑ VLDL↑ HDL↓	<i>Next commonest 1° lipidaemia</i> ; xanthelasma; arcus
Dysbetalipoproteinaemia (remnant particle disease) ^{IIIc}	Chol 9–14 Trig 9–14	IDL↑ HDL↓ LDL↓	Palmar striae; tubero-eruptive xanthoma
Familial hypertriglyceridaemia ^{IV}	Chol 6.5–12 Trig 3.0–6.0	VLDL↑	
Type V hyperlipoproteinaemia	Trig 10–30; chylomicrons found		Eruptive xanthomata; lipaemia retinalis; hepatosplenomegaly

Primary HDL abnormalities

- Hyperalphalipoproteinaemia: ↑HDL, chol >2.
- Hypoalphalipoproteinaemia (Tangier disease): ↓HDL, chol <0.92.

Primary LDL abnormalities

- Abetalipoproteinaemia (ABL): trig <0.3, chol <1.3, missing LDL, VLDL and chylomicrons. Autosomal recessive disorder of fat malabsorption causing vitamin A & E deficiency, with retinitis pigmentosa, sensory neuropathy, ataxia, pes cavus and acanthocytosis.
- Hypobetalipoproteinaemia: chol <1.5, LDL↓, HDL↓. Autosomal codominant disorder of apolipoprotein B metabolism. ↑ longevity in heterozygotes. Homozygotes present with a similar clinical picture to ABL.



Fig 1. Xanthelasma. *Xanthos* is Greek for yellow, and *elasma* means plate. Xanthelasmata are lipid-laden yellow plaques, typically a few millimetres wide. They congregate around the lids, or just below the eyes, and signify hyperlipidaemia.

The porphyrias are a heterogeneous group of rare diseases caused by various errors of haem biosynthesis (produced when iron is chelated into protoporphyrin IX α), which may be genetic or acquired. Depending on the stage in haem biosynthesis that is faulty, there is accumulation of either porphyrinogens, which are unstable and oxidize to porphyrins, or their precursors, uroporphobilinogen and δ -aminolaevulinic acid. Porphyrin precursors are neurotoxic, while porphyrins themselves induce photosensitivity and the formation of toxic free radicals.

- Alcohol, lead, and iron deficiency cause abnormal porphyrin metabolism.
- Genetic counselling (OHCs p154) should be offered to all patients and their families.

Acute porphyrias occur when the accumulation of porphyrinogen precursors predominates, and are characterized by acute neurovisceral crises, though some forms have additional photosensitive cutaneous manifestations.

Acute intermittent porphyria ('the Madness of King George') A low-penetrant autosomal dominant condition (uroporphobilinogen deaminase gene); 28% have no family history (*de novo mutations*). ~10% of those with the defective gene have neurovisceral symptoms. Attacks are intermittent, more common in women and those aged 18–40, and may be precipitated by drugs. Urine uroporphobilinogens are raised during attacks (the urine may go deep red on standing) and also, in ~50%, between attacks. Faecal porphyrin levels are normal. There is never cutaneous photosensitivity. It is the commonest form of porphyria—prevalence in UK: 1–2/100,000.

Variegate porphyria and hereditary coproporphyria Autosomal dominant, characterized by photosensitive blistering skin lesions and/or acute attacks. The former is prevalent in Afrikaners in South Africa. Uroporphobilinogen is high only during an attack, and other metabolites may be detected in faeces.

Triggers of an acute attack include infection, starvation (including pre-operative 'nil-by-mouth'), reproductive hormones (pregnancy, premenstrual), smoking, anaesthesia, and cytochrome P450 enzyme inducers (alcohol, and other drugs—see BOX).

Features of an acute attack:

- **Gastrointestinal:** abdominal pain, vomiting, constipation.
- **Neuropsychiatric:** peripheral neuropathy (weakness, hypotonia, pain, numbness), seizures (often associated with severe \downarrow Na $^+$), psychosis (or other odd behaviour).¹
- **Cardiovascular:** hypertension, tachycardia, shock (due to sympathetic overactivity).
- **Other:** fever, \downarrow Na $^+$, \downarrow K $^+$, proteinuria, urinary uroporphobilinogens, discoloured urine. Rare but serious complications include bulbar and respiratory paralysis.

► Beware the 'acute abdomen' in acute intermittent porphyria: colic, vomiting, fever and \uparrow WCC—so mimicking an acute surgical abdomen. Anaesthesia could be disastrous.

Treatment of an acute attack

- Remove precipitants (review medications; treat intercurrent illness/infection).
- IV fluids to correct electrolyte imbalance.
- High carbohydrate intake (eg Hycal®) by NG tube, or IV if necessary.
- IV haematin is 1st-line (inhibits production of porphyrinogen precursors).
- Nausea controlled with prochlorperazine 12.5mg IM.
- Sedate if necessary with chlorpromazine 50–100mg PO/IM.
- Pain control with opiate or opioid analgesia (avoid oxycodone).
- Seizures can be controlled with diazepam (although this will prolong the attack).
- Treat tachycardia and hypertension with a β -blocker.

Non-acute porphyrias

Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT), erythropoietic protoporphyria, and congenital erythropoietic porphyria are characterized by cutaneous photosensitivity alone, as there is no overproduction of porphyrinogen precursors, only porphyrins. PCT presents in adults with blistering skin lesions \pm facial hypertrichosis and hyperpigmentation. Total plasma porphyrins and LFTs are \uparrow . Screen for associated disorders: hep C, HIV, iron overload, hepatocellular ca. R_x : phlebotomy, iron chelators, chloroquine, sunscreens.

Drugs to avoid in acute intermittent porphyria

There are many, many drugs that may precipitate an acute attack \pm quadriplegia, and this is by no means an exhaustive list (see *BNF/OTM*).

►► For an up-to-date list of drugs considered safe in acute porphyria see www.wmic.wales.nhs.uk/porphyria_info.php.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| • Diclofenac | • Metoclopramide | • Furosemide |
| • Alcohol | • ACE-inhibitors | • Sulfonylureas |
| • Oral contraceptive pill & HRT | • Ca^{2+} -channel blockers | • Lidocaine |
| • Tricyclic antidepressants | • Statins | • Gold salts |
| • Benzodiazepines | • Anticonvulsants | • Antihistamines |
| • Anaesthetic agents (barbiturates, halothane) | | • Amphetamines |
| • Antibiotics (cephalosporins, sulfonamides, macrolides, tetracyclines, rifampicin, trimethoprim, chloramphenicol, metronidazole) | | |

1 Be sure I looked at her eyes
Happy and proud; at last I knew
Porphyria worshipped me; surprise
Made my heart swell, and still it grew
While I debated what to do.
That moment she was mine, mine, fair,

Perfectly pure and good: I found
A thing to do, and all her hair
In one long yellow string I wound
Three times her little throat around,
And strangled her ...
From *Porphyria's Lover* by Robert Browning.



Fig 1. "No scientific discovery is named after its original discoverer", asserts Professor Stephen Stigler in '*Stigler's Law of Eponymy*', and in doing so, names the sociologist RK Merton as its discoverer—deliberately making Stigler's law exemplify itself. Is the same true in medicine? At least 6 others described Alzheimer's disease before Alois Alzheimer in 1906, and Tetralogy of Fallot (named after Étienne-Louis Fallot in 1888) was first described in 1672 by Niels Stenson. Not all medical eponyms obey Stigler's law. Forty years after it was first described, the French neurologist

Jean-Marie Charcot (himself associated with at least 15 medical eponyms) attributed the name 'Parkinson's Disease' to the illness outlined in James Parkinson's 1817 essay '*The Shaking Palsy*'. Monochromatic doctors may try to abolish eponyms by regimenting them to histologically driven disease titles. But classifications vary as facts emerge, and as a result the renaming of non-eponyms becomes essential. Eponyms, however, carry on forever, because they imply nothing about causes. We like eponyms—they are our sole route to an exotic variety of obscure fame.

Alice in Wonderland syndrome Altered perception in size and shape of body parts or objects \pm an impaired sense of passing time—as experienced by *Alice* in Lewis Carroll's novel. Seen in epilepsy, migraine and cerebral lesions.¹² *Alice Pleasance Liddell, 1865–*

Arnold-Chiari malformation Malformed cerebellar tonsils and medulla herniate through the foramen magnum. This may cause infantile hydrocephalus with mental retardation, optic atrophy, ocular palsies and spastic paresis of the limbs. Spina bifida, syringomyelia (p520), or focal cerebellar and brainstem signs may occur (p503). There may be bony abnormalities of the base of the skull. Often presents in early adulthood. MRI aids diagnosis. *Julius Arnold, 1835–1915 (German pathologist); Hans Chiari, 1851–1916 (Austrian pathologist)*

Baker's cyst Fluid from a knee effusion escapes to form a popliteal cyst (often swollen and painful) in a sub-gastrocnemius bursa.³ Usually secondary to degeneration. **ΔΔ:** DVT (exclude if calf swelling); sarcoma. **Imaging:** USS; MRI. **R:** None if asymptomatic. NSAIDs/ice if painful. Spontaneous resolution may take 10–20 months. Arthroscopy + cystectomy may be needed. *William M Baker, 1838–1896 (British surgeon)*

Bazin's disease (*Erythema induratum*) Localized areas of fat necrosis that produce painful, firm nodules \pm ulceration and an indurated rash, characteristically on adolescent girls' calves. It is associated with TB. **Nodular vasculitis** is a variant unrelated to TB.⁴ *Pierre-Antoine-Ernest Bazin, 1807–1878 (French dermatologist)*

Behçet's disease A systemic inflammatory disorder of unknown cause, associated with HLA-B5. It is most common along the old Silk Road, extending from the Mediterranean to China. **Features:** Recurrent oral and genital ulceration, uveitis, skin lesions (eg erythema nodosum, papulopustular lesions); arthritis (non-erosive large joint oligoarthritis); thrombophlebitis; vasculitis; myo/pericarditis; CNS involvement (pyramidal signs) and colitis. **Diagnosis** is mainly clinical. **Pathergy test:** needle prick leads to papule formation within 48 hours. **R:** Colchicine for orogenital ulceration; Azathioprine or cyclophosphamide for systemic disease. **Infliximab** has a role in ocular disease unresponsive to topical steroids.⁵ *Hulusi Behçet, 1889–1948 (Turkish dermatologist)*

Berger's disease (*IgA nephropathy*, p301) Ranges from microscopic haematuria to rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis. Preceded by URTI in ~45% of children, typically causing gross haematuria.⁶ Biopsy shows mesangial IgA deposition. It is mostly benign, but progression to end-stage renal failure occurs in 20–40%. **R:** Corticosteroids + ACE-i/ARB if \uparrow BP or proteinuria. Tonsillectomy can improve renal function if tonsillitis causes recurrent disease.⁷ *Jean Berger, 1930–2011 (French nephrologist)*

Bickerstaff's brainstem encephalitis Ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, areflexia and extensor plantars \pm tetraplegia \pm coma, and a reversible brain death picture (but there is *no* structural damage). **MRI:** hyperintense brainstem signals. GQ1b antibodies +ve.⁸ Plasmapheresis may help. *Edwin R Bickerstaff, 1920–2008 (British physician)*

Barrett's oesophagus

Barrett's oesophagus results from prolonged exposure of normal oesophageal squamous epithelium to the refluxate of GORD (p244). This causes mucosal inflammation and erosion, leading to replacement of the mucosa with metaplastic columnar epithelium. The length affected may be a few centimetres or all the oesophagus, and can be continuous or patchy (on endoscopy). 3–5% of people with GORD develop Barrett's. ▶ The most significant associated morbidity is oesophageal adenocarcinoma. Risk of progression is low: 0.6–1.6% per year in patients with low-grade dysplasia.⁸ **Diagnosis:** Biopsy of endoscopically visible columnarization allows histological corroboration (using the Prague criteria). **Management:** If pre-malignant/high-grade dysplasia, *oesophageal resection* or *eradication mucosectomy*^{10,11} is appropriate if young and fit. Endoscopic *targeted mucosectomy*,¹² or mucosal ablation by *epithelial laser*, *radiofrequency* (HALO),¹³ or *photodynamic ablation* (PD) is used in others. Annual endoscopic surveillance for low-grade dysplasia is normally recommended, but shorter endoscopic intervals are associated with detection of high-grade dysplasia and adenocarcinoma¹⁴ (no randomized trials have shown this prevents death). If no pre-malignant changes are found, surveillance endoscopy + biopsy should be performed every 1–3 years and anti-reflux measures used (high-dose long-term proton pump inhibitors). Those with longstanding GORD (eg >5yrs, esp. if >50yrs old) should have one-off screening endoscopy.

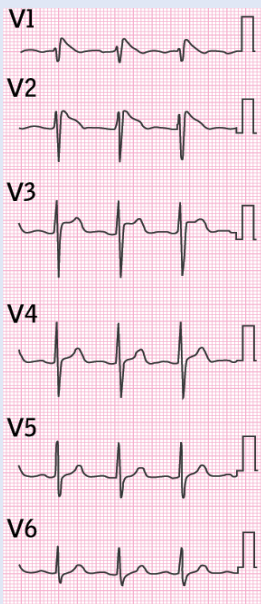
Norman Rupert Barrett, 1903–1979 (British surgeon)

Brugada syndrome

Note right bundle branch block and the unusual morphology of the raised ST segments in V_{1-3} (fig 1; there are 3 ECG variants of this pattern). This predominantly autosomal dominant condition causing faulty sodium channels predisposes to fatal arrhythmias, eg ventricular fibrillation, typically in young males (eg triggered by a fever).¹⁵ It is preventable by implanting a defibrillator. ▶ *Consider primary electrical cardiac disease in all with unexplained syncope.* Programmed electrical stimulation may be needed.¹⁶ Relatives of those with sudden unexplained death may undergo unmasking of arrhythmias by IV ajmaline tests—but some results are false +ve.¹⁷ Use judgement in subjecting those with ST abnormalities but no symptoms to electrophysiological tests, right ventricular myocardial biopsy, and MRI. Mutations in the SCN5A gene (encodes the cardiac voltage-gated Na_v1.5 channel) are found in 15–20%. Other mutations have also been described.¹⁸

Pedro & Josep Brugada, described 1992 (Spanish cardiologists)

Fig 1. Note right bundle branch block and ST morphology in leads V_{1-3} .



Courtesy of Dr Shayashi.¹⁹

We thank Dr Simon Eyre, our Specialist Reader, and Kushalinii Ragubathy, our Junior Reader, for their contribution to this chapter.

See also OHCS p638–p655 concerning further unusual eponymous syndromes.

Consult the index for eponyms covered in other chapters. Biographical details: www.whonamedit.com.

Brown-Séquard syndrome A lesion in one half of the spinal cord (due to hemisection or unilateral cord lesion) causes: • Ipsilateral UMN weakness below the lesion (severed corticospinal tract, causing spastic paraparesis, brisk reflexes, extensor plantars) • Ipsilateral loss of proprioception and vibration (1 dorsal column severed) • Contralateral loss of pain and temperature sensation (severed spinothalamic tract which has crossed over; **fig 1** p520). **Causes:** Bullet, stab, dart, kick, tumour, disc hernia, cervical spondylosis, MS, neuroschistosomiasis, myelitis,²⁰ septic emboli (eg meningococcal).²¹ **Imaging:** MRI. *Charles-Édouard Brown-Séquard, 1817–1894 (Mauritian neurologist)*

Budd-Chiari syndrome Hepatic vein obstruction by thrombosis or tumour causes congestive ischaemia and hepatocyte damage. Abdominal pain, hepatomegaly, ascites and ALT occur. Portal hypertension occurs in chronic forms. **Causes:** include hypercoagulable states (the Pill, pregnancy, malignancy, paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, polycythaemia, thrombophilia), TB, liver, renal or adrenal tumour. **Tests:** USS + Dopplers, CT or MRI. Angioplasty, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPSS) or a surgical shunt may be needed. Anticoagulate (lifelong) unless there are varices. Consider liver transplant in fulminant hepatic necrosis or cirrhosis.²² *George Budd, 1808–1882 (British physician); Hans Chiari, 1851–1916 (Austrian pathologist)*

Buerger's disease (thromboangiitis obliterans) Non-atherosclerotic smoking-related inflammation and thrombosis of veins and middle-sized arteries causing thrombophlebitis and ischaemia (→ulcers, gangrene). **Cause:** Unknown. Stopping smoking is vital. Most patients are men aged 20–45yrs (see BOX). *Leo Buerger, 1879–1943 (US physician)*

Caplan's syndrome Multiple lung nodules in coal workers with RA, caused by an inflammatory reaction to anthracite (also associated with silica or asbestos exposure). CXR: bilateral peripheral nodules (0.5–5cm). **ΔΔ:** TB. *Anthony Caplan, 1907–1976 (British physician)*

Charcot-Marie-Tooth syndrome (peroneal muscular atrophy) This inherited neuropathy starts in puberty with weak legs and foot drop + variable loss of sensation and reflexes. The peroneal muscles atrophy, leading to an inverted champagne bottle appearance. Atrophy of hand and arm muscles also occurs. The most common form, CMT1A (PMP22 myelin gene mutation on ch. 17), has AD inheritance. Quality of life is good;²³ total incapacity rare. Hand pain/paraesthesiae may respond to nerve release. *Jean-Marie Charcot, 1825–1893; Pierre Marie, 1853–1940 (French neurologists); Howard H Tooth, 1856–1926 (British physician)*

Churg-Strauss syndrome A triad of adult-onset asthma, eosinophilia, and vasculitis (± vasospasm ± MI ± DVT), affecting lungs, nerves, heart, and skin. A septic-shock picture/systemic inflammatory response syndrome may occur (with glomerulonephritis/renal failure, esp. if ANCA +ve). **Rx:** Steroids; biological agents if refractory disease, eg rituximab.²⁴ *Jacob Churg, 1910–2005; Lotte Strauss, 1913–1985 (US pathologists)*

Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) The cause is a prion (PrP^{Sc}), a misfolded form of a normal protein (PrP^C), that can transform other proteins into prion proteins (hence its infectivity). PrP^{Sc} leads to spongiform changes (tiny cavities ± tubulovesicular structures) in the brain.²⁵ Most cases are *sporadic* (incidence: 1–3/million/yr). **Vari-ant** CJD (vCJD; ≤225 cases worldwide)²⁶ is transmitted via meat contaminated by CNS tissue affected by bovine spongiform encephalopathy BSE (see BOX). **Inherited forms:** (eg Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome, P102L mutation in PRNP gene with ataxia ± self-mutilation), the 'normal' protein is too unstable, readily transforming to PrP^{Sc}. **Iatrogenic causes:** Contaminated surgical instruments, corneal transplants, growth hormone from human pituitaries, and blood (vCJD only).²⁷ Prion protein resists sterilization. **Signs:** Progressive dementia, focal CNS signs, myoclonus (present in 95%),²⁸ depression, eye signs (diplopia, supranuclear palsies, complex visual disturbances, homonymous field defects, hallucinations, cortical blindness).²⁹ **Tests:** Tonsil/olfactory mucosa biopsy;³⁰ CSF gel electrophoresis; MRI. **Treatment:** None proven. Death occurs in ~6 months in sporadic and iatrogenic CJD. **Prevention:** Regulations to ↓ spread of BSE and transmission to humans + ↓ iatrogenic transmission.³¹ *Hans G Creutzfeldt, 1885–1964 (German pathologist); Alfons M Jakob 1884–1931 (German neurologist)*

Crigler-Najjar syndrome Two rare syndromes of inherited unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia presenting in the 1st days of life with jaundice ± CNS signs. **Cause:** Mutation in UGT enzyme activity causing absent (type 1) or impaired (type 2; mild) ability to excrete bilirubin. **Rx:** T1: Liver transplant before irreversible kernicterus (OHCS p115) develops.³² T2: usually no Rx needed. *John F Crigler b1919; Victor A Najjar b1914 (US paediatricians)*

Signs that may distinguish variant CJD from sporadic CJD (sCJD)

- An earlier age at presentation (median 29yrs vs 60yrs in sporadic CJD).
- Longer survival and later dementia (median 14 months vs 4 for sporadic CJD).
- Psychiatric features are an early sign (anxiety, withdrawal, apathy, agitation, a permanent look of fear in the eyes, depression, personality change, insomnia). Hallucinations and delusions may occur—before akinetic mutism.
- Painful sensory symptoms are commoner (eg foot pain hyperaesthesia).
- More normal EEG (sporadic CJD has a characteristic spike and wave pattern).
- Mean CSF tau-pT181/tau protein ratio is 10-fold higher in vCJD than in sCJD.³³
- Homozygosity for methionine at codon 129 of the PRP gene is typical.

☼ Fame and infamy in the search for lost youth

After his neurological experiments, Brown-Séquard, the most visionary of all neuroanatomists and the grandfather of HRT, proclaimed he had found the secret of perpetual youth after injecting himself with a concoction of testicular blood, semen, and testicular extracts from dogs and guinea pigs. In the 1880s over 12,000 doctors were queuing up to use his special extracts on patients, which he gave away free, provided results were reported back to him. 314 out of 405 cases of spinal syphilis improved, and his own urinary flow rate rose by 25%. Endocrinologists never forgave him for bringing their science into disrepute. To this day, no one really knows if his (literally) seminal work has given us anything of any practical value. But he might be pleased to know that testosterone is now known to have the urodynamic benefits he anticipated, at least in men with hypogonadism.³⁴

Like many brilliant men, he had a cruel streak, backing clitoridectomy for preventing blindness and other imaginary complications of 'masturbatory melancholia'. Had he not been blinded by 19th-century ideas about female sexuality, could he have found a marvellous use for his concoctions, for 21st-century 'hypoactive sexual desire disorder'? Possibly, but only if he relied on placebo responses.^{35,36}

☼ Poisoning your boss

In 1931, Buerger's disease caused gangrene in the toes of Harvey Cushing (p216)—the most cantankerous (and greatest) neurosurgeon ever. He had to be wheeled to the operating theatre to carry on his brilliant art (and to continue terrifying his assistants).³⁷ He had to retire partially, whereupon his colleagues presented him with a magnificent silver cigarette box, containing 2000 cigarettes (to which he was addicted)—one for each brain tumour he had removed during his long career, so verifying the truth that although we owe everything to our teachers, we must eventually kill them to move out from under their shadow.¹

☼ Why bother studying rare diseases? The Liberski imperative...

For centuries, kuru was no bigger than a man's hand: a cloud barely visible on our horizon: a rare disease in cannibals beyond the Pacific. But meticulous work on kuru led to knowledge of prion diseases *before* the 1990s epidemic of vCJD. If in the 1950s, Gajdusek and Zigas had not been intrigued as to why kuru affected women and children more than men (their strange neural diet was the culprit), the discovery of vCJD would have been delayed, as no surveillance would have been in place. Neural tissue might still be in our food chain, with dreadful consequences. But further than this, the notion of 'protein-misfolding diseases'² would have been delayed by decades. So this is the lesson: ▶*let curiosity flourish*. This is Liberski's imperative.³⁸ So now let's scan our horizon for other intriguing clouds.

1 *Der Vogel kämpft sich aus dem Ei. Das Ei ist die Welt. Wer geboren werden will, muss eine Welt zerstören.* The bird struggles out of the egg. The egg is the world. Whoever will be born, must first destroy a world. (Hermann Hesse. *Demian*; 1917.)

2 Cystic fibrosis (misfolded CFTR protein), Marfan's (misfolded fibrillin),³⁹ Fabry's (misfolded α -galactosidase), Gaucher's (misfolded β -glucocerebrosidase), retinitis pigmentosa 3 (misfolded rhodopsin); some cancers may be caused by misfolding of tumour suppressor proteins (von Hippel-Lindau protein).

Devic's syndrome (neuromyelitis optica; NMO) Inflammatory demyelination causes attacks of optic neuritis \pm myelitis. Abnormal CSF (may mimic bacterial meningitis) and serum anti-AQP4 antibody (in 65%) help distinguish it from MS⁴⁰ (see BOX). **Rx:** IV steroids; plasma exchange. **Azathioprine** and **rituximab**⁴¹ help prevent relapses. **Prognosis:** Variable; complete remission may occur. *Eugène Devic, 1858–1930 (French neurologist)*

Dressler's syndrome This develops 2–10wks after an MI, heart surgery (or even pacemaker insertion). It is thought that myocardial injury stimulates formation of autoantibodies against heart muscle. **Symptoms:** Recurrent fever and chest pain \pm pleural or pericardial rub (from serositis). Cardiac tamponade may occur, so avoid anticoagulants. **Rx:** Aspirin, NSAIDs or steroids. *William Dressler, 1890–1969 (US cardiologist)*

Dubin-Johnson syndrome ^{Autosomal recessive} There is defective hepatocyte excretion of conjugated bilirubin. Typically presents in late teens with intermittent jaundice \pm hepatosplenomegaly. **Tests:** \uparrow bilirubin; ALT and AST are normal; bilirubinuria on dipstick; \uparrow ratio of urinary coproporphyrin I to III. Liver biopsy: diagnostic pigment granules.⁴² **Rx:** Usually none needed. *Isadore N Dubin, 1913–1981; Frank B Johnson, b1919 (US pathologists)*

Dupuytren's contracture (fig 1). Progressive shortening and thickening of the palmar fascia causing finger contracture and loss of extension (often 5th finger). **Prevalence:** \sim 10% of σ >65yrs (1 if +ve family history). **Associations:** Smoking, alcohol use, heavy manual labour, trauma, DM, phenytoin, HIV. Peyronie's may coexist (p722). It is thought to be caused by local hypoxia. **Rx:** Collagenase injections.⁴³ Surgery may be needed. *Baron Guillaume Dupuytren, 1777–1835 (French surgeon, famed also for treating Napoleon's haemorrhoids)*

Ekbom's syndrome (Restless legs) Criteria: **1** Compelling desire to move legs **2** Worse at night **3** Relieved by movement **3** Unpleasant leg sensations (eg shootings or tinglings) worse at rest. **Mechanism:** Endogenous opioid system fault causes altered central processing of pain. **Prevalence:** 1–3%. σ : σ \approx 2:1. **Associations:** Iron deficiency, uraemia, pregnancy, DM, polyneuropathy, RA, COPD, persistent genital arousal disorder.⁴⁴ **Exclude:** Cramps, positional discomfort, and local leg pathology. **Rx:** Dopamine agonists are commonly used; also, anticonvulsants, opioids and benzodiazepines.⁴⁵ *Karl Axel Ekbom, 1907–1977 (Swedish neurologist)*

Fabry disease x-linked lysosomal storage disorder caused by abnormalities in the GLA gene, which leads to a deficiency in α -galactosidase A. There is accumulation of glycosphingolipids in skin (angiokeratoma \pm hypohidrosis), eyes (lens opacities), heart (angina, MI, syncope, dyspnoea, LVH, arrhythmias), kidneys (renal failure), CNS (stroke) and nerves (neuropathy/acroparaesthesia) \pm corneal verticillata (whorls). Most males die in the 6th decade due to renal failure, stroke or MI. **Rx:** Enzyme replacement therapy with α or β human agalsidase.⁴⁶ *Johannes Fabry, 1860–1930 (German dermatologist)*

Fanconi anaemia ^{Autosomal recessive HLA-DRB1*04} Defective stem cell repair and chromosomal fragility leads to aplastic anaemia, trisk of AML and breast ca (BRCA2), skin pigmentation, absent radii, short stature, microcephaly, syndactyly, deafness, IQ \downarrow , hypopituitarism, and cryptorchidism. **Rx:** Stem-cell transplant. *Guido Fanconi, 1892–1979 (Swiss paediatrician)*

Felty's syndrome A triad of rheumatoid arthritis + WCC \downarrow + splenomegaly (\pm hypersplenism, causing anaemia and \downarrow platelets), recurrent infections, skin ulcers and lymphadenopathy. 95% are Rh factor +ve. Splenectomy may raise the wcc. **Rx:** DMARDs (p549) \pm **rituximab** if refractory.⁴⁷ *Augustus Roi Felty, 1895–1964 (US physician)*

Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome Liver capsule inflammation causing RUQ pain due to transabdominal spread of chlamydial or gonococcal infection, often with PID \pm 'violin-string' adhesions. **Rx:** Antibiotics for PID (+ treat sexual partners) \pm laparoscopic division of adhesions. *Thomas Fitz-Hugh, 1894–1963 (US physician); Arthur H Curtis, 1881–1955 (US gynaecologist)*

Foster Kennedy syndrome Optic atrophy of one eye due to optic nerve compression (most commonly from an olfactory groove meningioma), with papilloedema of the other eye secondary to \uparrow ICP. There is also central scotoma and anosmia. *Robert Foster Kennedy, 1884–1952 (British neurologist)*

Friedreich's ataxia ^{Autosomal recessive} Expansions of the trinucleotide repeat GAA in the X25 (frataxin) gene causes degeneration of many nerve tracts: spinocerebellar tracts degenerate causing cerebellar ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus, and dysidiadochokineses. Loss of corticospinal tracts occurs (weakness and plantars \uparrow) with peripheral nerve damage, so tendon reflexes are paradoxically depressed (differential diagnosis p451).

Signs distinguishing Devic's syndrome from multiple sclerosis⁴⁸

	Devic's syndrome	Multiple sclerosis
Course	Monophasic or relapsing	Relapsing usually; see p500
Attack severity	Usually severe	Often mild
Respiratory failure	~30%, from cervical myelitis	Rare
MRI head	Usually normal	Many periventricular white-matter lesions
MRI cord lesions	Longitudinal, central	Multiple, small, peripheral
CSF oligoclonal bands	Absent	Present
Permanent disability	Unusual, and attack-related	In late progressive disease
Other autoimmunities	In ≤50% (eg Sjögren's)	Uncommon

Diagnostic criteria for Devic's Optic neuritis, myelitis, and ≥ 2 out of 3 of: •MRI evidence of a continuous cord lesion for ≥ 3 segments •Brain MRI at onset non-diagnostic for MS •NMO-IgG (anti-AQP4) serum or CSF positivity (poorer prognosis).

NB: CNS involvement beyond the optic nerves and cord is compatible with NMO.



Fig 1. Dupuytren's contracture of the 5th finger. Note scar from previous surgery to the index finger.

There is also dorsal column degeneration, with loss of positional and vibration sense. Pes cavus and scoliosis occur. Cardiomyopathy may cause CCF. Typical age at death: ~50yrs. **R:** There is no cure. Treat CCF, arrhythmias and DM.

Nikolaus Friedreich, 1825–1882 (German neurologist)

Froin's syndrome ↑ CSF protein + xanthochromia with normal cell count—a sign of blockage in spinal CSF flow (eg from a spinal tumour). *Georges Froin, 1874–1932 (French physician)*

Gardner's syndrome ^{Autosomal dominant} A variant of familial adenomatous polyposis, caused by mutations in the APC gene (5q21). There are multiple colon polyps (which inevitably become malignant; p524),⁴⁹ benign bone osteomas, epidermal cysts, dermoid tumours, fibromas, and neurofibromas. **Fundoscopy** reveals black spots (congenital hypertrophy of retinal pigment epithelium); this helps pre-symptomatic detection. **Presentation:** Can present from 2–70yrs with colonic (eg bloody diarrhoea) or extracolonic symptoms. Prophylactic surgery (eg proctocolectomy) is the only curative treatment. Endoscopic polypectomy with long-term **sulindac** therapy has been used to postpone prophylactic colectomy.⁵⁰

Eldon J Gardner, 1909–1989 (US physician)

Gélineau's syndrome (narcolepsy) The patient, usually a young man, succumbs to irresistible attacks of inappropriate sleep ± vivid hypnagogic hallucinations, cataplexy (sudden hypotonia), and sleep paralysis (paralysis of speech and movement, while fully alert, at sleep onset or on waking). **Hypothesis:** Mutations lead to loss of hypothalamic hypocretin-containing neurons, via autoimmune destruction.⁵¹ 95% are +ve for HLA DR2. **R:** Stimulants (eg methylphenidate) may cause dependence ± psychosis. Modafinil may be better. **SE:** anxiety, aggression, dry mouth, euphoria, insomnia, BPT, dyskinesia, ALPT.

Jean-Baptiste-Édouard Gélineau, 1828–1906 (French physician)

Gerstmann's syndrome A constellation of symptoms suggesting a dominant parietal lesion: finger agnosia (inability to identify fingers), agraphia (inability to write), acalculia (inability to calculate) and left-right disorientation.

Josef Gerstmann, 1887–1969 (Austrian neurologist)

Gilbert's syndrome A common cause of *unconjugated* hyperbilirubinaemia due to ↓ UGT-1 activity (the enzyme that conjugates bilirubin with glucuronic acid). **Prevalence:** 1–2%; 5–15% have a family history of jaundice. It may go unnoticed for many years and usually presents in adolescence with intermittent jaundice occurring during illness, exercise or fasting. **Diagnosis:** Mild ↑ bilirubin; normal FBC and reticulocytes (ie no haemolysis). It is a benign condition.

Nicolas Augustin Gilbert, 1858–1927 (French physician)

Gilles de la Tourette syndrome Tonic, clonic, dystonic, or phonic tics: jerks, blinks, sniffs, nods, spitting, stuttering, irrepressible explosive obscene verbal ejaculations (coprolalia, in 20%) or gestures (coprophilia, 6%),⁵² grunts, squeaks, burps, twirlings, and nipping others ± tantrums. There may be a witty, innovative, phantasmagoric picture, with mimicry (echopraxia), antics, impishness, extravagance, audacity, dramatizations, surreal associations, uninhibited affect, speed, 'go', vivid imagery and memory, and hunger for stimuli. **The tic paradox:** Tics are *voluntary*, but often *unwanted*: the desire to tic stems from the relief of the odd sensation that builds up prior to the tic and is relieved by it, "like scratching a mosquito bite, tics lead to more tics."⁵³ Tics may be controlled through the medium of dance, or when concentrating, or having sex,⁵⁴ but note: ► "tics aren't just little annoyances now and then, they form an integral part of my existence. I tic therefore I am."⁵⁵ **Mean age of onset:** 6yrs. ♂:♀≈4:1. **Pathogenesis:** Unknown. **Molecular mimicry hypothesis:** Anti-streptococcal antibodies cross-react with basal ganglia (p136 & Box).⁵⁶ **MRI:** Big left thalamus.⁵⁷ **Associations:** Obsessive-compulsive disorder; hyperactivity. **R:** (none may be wanted) Risperidone, haloperidol or pimozide. **☞** Habit-reversal training.⁵⁸ Deep brain stimulation is rarely indicated, but may help—3 key structures are the medial thalamus, globus pallidus internus and internal capsule (anterior limb/nucleus accumbens).^{59,60}

Marquis Georges Albert Édouard Brutus Gilles de la Tourette, 1857–1904 (French neurologist)

Goodpasture's disease¹ (a pulmonary-renal syndrome). Acute glomerulonephritis + lung symptoms (haemoptysis/diffuse pulmonary haemorrhage) caused by antiglomerular basement membrane antibodies (binding kidney's basement membrane and alveolar membrane). **Tests:** CXR: infiltrates due to pulmonary haemorrhage, often in lower zones. Kidney biopsy: crescentic glomerulonephritis. **R:** ►► Treat shock. Vigorous immunosuppressive treatment and plasmapheresis.

Ernest William Goodpasture, 1886–1960 (US pathologist)

Cataplexy is highly specific for narcolepsy/Gélineau's syndrome

Daytime sleepiness has many causes, but if it occurs with cataplexy the diagnosis 'must' be narcolepsy. Cataplexy is bilateral loss of tone in antigravity muscles provoked by emotions such as laughter, startle, excitement, or anger. Associated phenomena include: falls, mouth opening, dysarthria, mutism, and phasic muscle jerking around the mouth. Most attacks are brief, but injury can occur (eg if several attacks per day). It is comparable to the atonia of rapid eye movement sleep *but without loss of awareness*. $\Delta\Delta$: bradycardia, migraine, atonic/akinetic epilepsy,^{61,62} delayed sleep phase syndrome, conversion disorder, malingering, and psychosis.⁶³

Don't confuse cataplexy with catalepsy—a waxy flexibility where involuntary statue-like postures are effortlessly maintained (frozen) despite looking most uncomfortable.

The lung and its various vasculitides (eg Goodpasture's)

Lung vasculitis is most commonly seen with the primary idiopathic, small-vessel or ANCA (p555)-associated vasculitides: granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's), microscopic polyangiitis, and Churg-Strauss syndrome.⁶⁴ Medium-vessel vasculitis (classic polyarteritis nodosa), large-vessel vasculitis (Takayasu arteritis), primary immune complex-mediated vasculitis (Goodpasture's disease), and secondary vasculitis (SLE) can all affect the lung. Hepatitis C is a rare cause of lung vasculitis—usually associated with glomerulonephritis and cryoglobulinaemia.⁶⁵

1 Should it be Goodpasture's disease or syndrome? The latter might refer to any pulmonary-renal vasculitis (eg caused by cryoglobulinaemia or SLE). Goodpasture's disease is reserved for the clinical condition characterized by lung haemorrhage, and crescentic glomerulonephritis associated with linear deposition of antibodies along the glomerular basement membrane.⁶⁶

Guillain-Barré syndrome (Acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy)⁶⁷
Incidence: 1-2/100,000/yr. *Signs:* A few weeks after an infection a symmetrical ascending muscle weakness starts. *Triggers:* *Campylobacter jejuni*, CMV, mycoplasma, zoster, HIV, EBV, vaccinations. 🦋 The trigger causes antibodies which attack nerves. In 40%, no cause is found. It may advance quickly, affecting all limbs at once, and can lead to paralysis. There is a progressive phase of up to 4 weeks, followed by recovery. Unlike other neuropathies, *proximal* muscles are more affected, eg trunk, respiratory, and cranial nerves (esp. VII). Pain is common (eg back, limb) but sensory signs may be absent. *Autonomic dysfunction:* Sweating, pulse, BP changes, arrhythmias. *Nerve conduction studies:* Slow conduction. *CSF:* Protein (eg >5.5g/L), normal CSF white cell count. Respiratory involvement (the big danger) requires transfer to ITU. Do forced vital capacity (FVC) 4 hourly. ▶ *Ventilate sooner rather than later*, eg if FVC <1.5L, P_aO_2 <10kPa, P_aCO_2 >6kPa. *R:* IV immunoglobulin 0.4g/kg/24h for 5d. Plasma exchange is good too (?more SE).⁶⁸ Steroids have no role. *Prognosis:* Good; ~85% make a complete or near-complete recovery. 10% are unable to walk alone at 1yr. *Complete paralysis is compatible with complete recovery. Mortality:* 10%.

George C Guillain, 1876-1961; Jean-Alexandre Barré, 1880-1967 (French neurologists)

Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP) (fig 2) A small vessel vasculitis, presenting with purpura (non-blanching purple papules due to intradermal bleeding), often over buttocks and extensor surfaces, typically affecting young ♂. There may be glomerulonephritis (p300), arthritis, and abdominal pain (± intussusception), which may mimic an 'acute abdomen'. *R:* Mostly supportive.

Eduard H Henoch, 1820-1910 (German paediatrician); Johann L Schönlein, 1793-1864 (German physician)

Horner's syndrome A triad of 1 *miosis* (pupil constriction, fig 1) 2 *partial ptosis* (drooping upper eyelid) + *apparent enophthalmos* (sunken eye) 3 *anhidrosis* (ipsilateral loss of sweating). Due to interruption of the face's sympathetic supply, eg at the brainstem (demyelination, vascular disease), cord (syringomyelia), thoracic outlet (Pancoast's tumour, p722), or on the sympathetic's trip on the internal carotid artery into the skull (fig 3), and orbit.

Johann Friedrich Horner, 1831-1886 (Swiss ophthalmologist)

Huntington's disease ^{Autosomal dominant} Incurable, progressive, neurodegenerative disorder presenting in middle age, often with prodromal phase of mild symptoms (irritability, depression, incoordination). Progresses to chorea, dementia ± fits and death (within ~15yrs of diagnosis). *Pathology:* Atrophy and neuronal loss of striatum and cortex. Genetic basis: Expansion of CAG repeat on Ch. 4. *R:* (p81) No treatment prevents progression. Counselling for patient and family.⁶⁹

George Huntington, 1850-1916 (US physician)

Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome ^{Autosomal recessive} Congenital bilateral sensorineural deafness and long QT interval (p90, hence syncope, VT, *torsades* ± sudden death—50% by age 15 if untreated). KCNQ1 or KCNE1 gene mutation causes K⁺ channelopathy. *R:* β-blocker, pacemaker, ICD, cochlear implants.⁷⁰

Anton Jervell, 1901-1987; Fred Lange-Nielsen, 1919-1989 (Norwegian physicians)

Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) is a spindle-cell tumour derived from capillary endothelial cells or from fibrous tissue, caused by human herpes virus (KSHV = HHV-8). It presents as purple papules (½-1cm) or plaques on skin (fig 4) and mucosa (any organ). It metastasizes to nodes. There are 4 types: 1 *Classic*, especially elderly Jewish or Mediterranean ♂ (esp. in Po Valley and Sardinia, ?related to blood-sucking insects). 2 *Endemic* (Central Africa). In forms 1 and 2, peripheral, slow-growing skin lesions are found, visceral involvement is rare, but node involvement may cause oedema. 3 *KS in immunosuppression*, eg organ transplant recipients. Aggressive course with visceral involvement. Taper immunosuppressives to the lowest level that keeps the graft functional.⁷¹ Sirolimus has a role.⁷² 4 *AIDS related*. In HIV, KS is diagnostic of AIDS (p408) and may be life-threatening with many skin, gut and lung lesions. It affects mostly homo- or bisexual men (but ♂:♀≈1 in HIV-KS in S. Africa).⁷³ Prevalence is less with HAART (p414).⁷⁴ Lung KS may present in HIV +ve men and women as dyspnoea and haemoptysis.⁷⁵ Bowel KS may cause nausea, abdominal pain. *Rare sites:* CNS, larynx, eye, glands, heart, breast, wounds or biopsy sites. *Δ:* Biopsy. *R:* Optimize HAART,⁷⁶ ± *interferon-α*; consider topical retinoids, cryotherapy or radiotherapy for skin lesions. Chemotherapy, eg: pegylated liposomal doxorubicin ± *interleukin-12*.⁷⁷

Moricz Kaposi, 1837-1902 (Hungarian dermatologist)

Diagnostic criteria in typical Guillain-Barré polyneuritis⁷⁸

Features required for diagnosis:

- Progressive weakness of all 4 limbs
- Areflexia

Features excluding diagnosis:

Purely sensory symptoms

Diagnosis of:

- Myasthenia
- Botulism
- Poliomyelitis
- Diphtheria
- Porphyrin
- Toxic neuropathy

Features supporting diagnosis:

- Progression over days, up to 4wks
- Near symmetry of symptoms
- Sensory symptoms/signs only mild
- CN involvement (eg bilateral facial weakness)
- Recovery starts ~2wks after the period of progression has finished
- Autonomic dysfunction
- Absence of fever at onset
- CSF protein ↑ with CSF WCC $<10 \times 10^6/L$
- Typical electrophysiological tests

Variants of Guillain-Barré syndrome include:

Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculopathy (CIPD): characterized by a slower onset and recovery.

Miller Fisher syndrome: Comprises of ophthalmoplegia, ataxia and areflexia. Associated with anti-GQ1b antibodies in the serum.



Fig 1. Right Horner's: everything reduces: pupil, eye, sweating, etc.

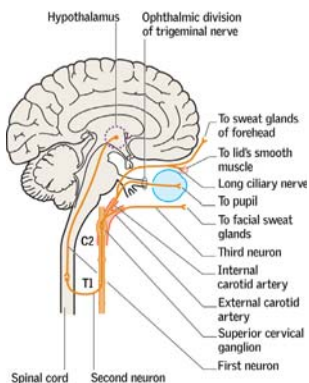


Fig 3. Pathways in Horner's syndrome.



Fig 2. Henoch-Schönlein vasculitis.



Fig 4. Kaposi's sarcoma.

Reproduced from *Oxford Handbook of Medical Dermatology*, 2010, with permission from Oxford University Press.

Klippel-Trénaunay syndrome A triad of port wine stain, varicose veins, and limb hypertrophy, due to vascular malformation. Usually sporadic (although AD inheritance has been reported).⁷⁹

Maurice Klippel, 1858-1942; Paul Trénaunay, 1875-1938 (French physicians)

Korsakoff's syndrome Hypothalamic damage & cerebral atrophy due to thiamine (vitamin B₁) deficiency (eg in alcoholics). May accompany Wernicke's encephalopathy. There is ↓ability to acquire new memories, confabulation (invented memory, owing to retrograde amnesia), lack of insight & apathy. **R**: See *Wernicke's*, p728. **Donepezil**☞ may have a role.⁸⁰

Sergei Sergeievich Korsakoff, 1853-1900 (Russian neuropsychiatrist)

Langerhans cell histiocytosis (histiocytosis X) A group of disorders, either single- (in 73%, eg bone) or multisystem (in 27%; at-risk organs are liver, lung, spleen, marrow) with infiltrating granulomas containing dendritic (Langerhans) cells. ♂:♀≈1.5:1. Pulmonary Langerhans cell histiocytosis presents with pneumothorax or pulmonary hypertension. CXR/CT: nodules and cysts + honeycombing in upper and middle zones. **Δ**: Biopsy (skin, lung). **R**: Local excision, steroids, **vinblastine** ± **etoposide** if severe.⁸¹ **OHCS** p644.

Paul Langerhans, 1847-1888 (German pathologist)

Leriche's syndrome Absent femoral pulse, claudication/wasting⁸² of the buttock, a pale cold leg, and erectile dysfunction from aorto-iliac occlusive disease, eg a saddle embolus at the aortic bifurcation. Surgery may help.⁸³

René Leriche, 1879-1955 (French surgeon)

Löffler's eosinophilic endocarditis Restrictive cardiomyopathy + eosinophilia (eg 120 × 10⁹/L). It may be an early stage of tropical endomyocardial fibrosis (and overlaps with hypereosinophilic syndrome, p324) but is distinct from eosinophilic leukaemia. **Signs**: Heart failure (75%) ± mitral regurgitation (49%) ± heart block. **R**: Suppress the eosinophilia (**prednisolone** ± **hydroxycarbamide**), and then treat with anti-heart failure medication.

Wilhelm Löffler, 1887-1972 (Swiss physician)

Löffler's syndrome (pulmonary eosinophilia) An allergic infiltration of the lungs by eosinophils. Allergens include: *Ascaris lumbricoides*, *Trichinella spiralis*, *Fasciola hepatica*, *Strongyloides*, *Ankylostoma*, *Toxocara*, *Clonorchis sinensis*,⁸⁴ sulfonamides, hydralazine, and nitrofurantoin. Often symptomless with incidental CXR (diffuse fan-shaped shadows), or cough, fever, eosinophilia (in ~20%) & larval migrans (p442). **R**: Eradicate cause. Steroids (if idiopathic).

Wilhelm Löffler, 1887-1972 (Swiss physician)

Lown-Ganong-Levine syndrome A pre-excitation syndrome, similar to Wolf-Parkinson-White (WPW, p120), characterized by a short PR interval (<0.12sec), a normal QRS complex (as opposed to the δ-waves of WPW), and risk of supraventricular tachycardia (but not AF/flutter). The cause is not completely understood, but may be due to paranodal fibres that bypass all or part of the atrioventricular node. The patient may complain of intermittent palpitations.⁸⁵

Bernard Lown, b1921 (US cardiologist); William F Ganong, 1924-2007 (US physiologist); Samuel A Levine, 1891-1966 (US cardiologist)

McArdle's glycogen storage disease (type V) ^{Autosomal recessive} Absence of muscle phosphorylase enzyme with resulting inability to convert glycogen into glucose (eg R50X mutation of PYGM gene). Fatigue and crises of cramps ± hyperthermia. Rhabdomyolysis/myoglobinuria follow exercise. **Tests**: CKt. Muscle biopsy is diagnostic (necrosis and atrophy). **R**: Moderate aerobic exercise helps (by utilizing alternative fuel substrates).⁸⁶ Avoid heavy exertion and statins. Sucrose pre-exercise improves performance, as does a carbohydrate-rich diet. Low dose creatine and **ramipril** (only if D/D ACE phenotype) may be of minimal benefit.⁸⁷

Brian McArdle, 1911-2002 (British paediatrician)

Mallory-Weiss tear Persistent vomiting/retching **causes** haematemesis via an oesophageal mucosal tear. *George K Mallory, 1900-1986 (US pathologist); Soma Weiss, 1898-1942 (US physician)*

Marchiafava-Bignami syndrome Corpus callosum demyelination and necrosis, most often secondary to chronic alcoholism. Type A is characterized by coma, stupor and pyramidal tract features involving the entire corpus callosum. In type B, symptoms are mild and the corpus callosum is partially affected.⁸⁸ **Δ**: MRI.⁸⁹ **R**: As for *Wernicke's*, p728 (BOX 2).

Ettore Marchiafava, 1847-1935; Amico Bignami, 1862-1929 (Italian pathologists)

Marchiafava-Micheli syndrome (paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, PNH) An acquired clonal expansion of a multipotent stem cell manifesting with haemolytic anaemia (from complement-mediated intravascular haemolysis), large vessel thromboses and deficient haematopoiesis (ranging from mild to pancytopenia). See BOX, **fig 1** and p332.

Ettore Marchiafava, 1847-1935 (Italian pathologist); Ferdinando Micheli, 1872-1936 (Italian physician)

Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria: the darkest hour

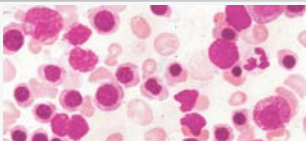


Fig 1. PNH. In this 24h urine sample, the darkest hour is before dawn.¹⁰ Haemolysis occurs throughout the day and night, but the urine concentrated overnight produces the dramatic change in color. **Pathophysiology:** In PNH, surface proteins are missing in all blood cells due to a somatic mutation in the X-linked PIG-A gene. Cells lack the glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor that binds the surface proteins to cell membranes. This causes uncontrolled amplification of the complement system and leads to destruction of the RBC membrane and release of haemoglobin into the circulation. **NB:** The phenomenon of haemoglobinuria¹ is not all that reliable. A much better test even than a marrow biopsy (right-hand panel, showing a clone of PNH cells) is flow cytometric analysis of GPI-anchored proteins on peripheral blood cells. This can determine the size of the PNH clone and type of GPI deficiency (complete or partial). **R:** Most benefit from supportive measures—but allogeneic stem cell transplantation is the only cure.¹¹ *Eculizumab* is a monoclonal antibody that targets the C5 protein of the complement system. Blockade prevents activation of the complement distal pathway, reducing haemolysis, stabilizing haemoglobin and reducing transfusion requirements.¹²

Courtesy of Crookston Collection.

Fatal effects of alcohol on the CNS

- Inhibitions↓ (unsafe sex† etc, etc)²
- Wernicke's encephalopathy
- Korsakoff's syndrome
- Hepatic encephalopathy
- Cerebral atrophy (dementia)
- Central pontine myelinolysis
- Cerebellar atrophy (falls etc)
- Stroke (all varieties)
- Seizures
- Marchiafava-Bignami syndrome

1 In haemoglobinuria, urine dipstick will be positive for blood but microscopy of urine does not show RBCs (thus differentiating it from haematuria, but not myoglobinuria—where CK ± AST will be high).

2 Alcohol is frequently fatal to fetuses—in the UK *thousands* of terminations are carried out *every month* from conceptions related to binge drinking. Also, fewer inhibitions lead to more sex, and hence more deaths from cervical cancer (human papilloma virus-associated, HIV, etc).

Marfan's syndrome Connective tissue disorder with ↓extracellular microfibril formation and poor elastic fibres.⁹³ ~25% occur with no family history. **Major criteria** (diagnostic if >2): Lens dislocation (*ectopia lentis*; **fig 1**); aortic dissection or dilatation; dural ectasia; **skeletal features**: arachnodactyly (long spidery fingers), armspan > height, pectus deformity, scoliosis, pes planus. **Minor signs**: Mitral valve prolapse, high-arched palate, joint hypermobility. Diagnosis is clinical; MRI for dural ectasia. **R**: The danger is aortic dissection: β -blockers are used to slow dilatation of the aortic root. Do annual echos, with elective surgical repair when aortic diameter is >5cm. In pregnancy, the risk of dissection rises. Homocystinuria has similar skeletal deformities:

Antoine Bernard-Jean Marfan, 1858–1942 (French paediatrician)

Marfan's Autosomal dominant fibrillin gene *FBN1* vs

- Upwards lens dislocation
- Aortic valve incompetence
- Normal intelligence
- Scoliosis, flat feet, herniae
- Life expectancy is lower from cardiovascular risks

Homocystinuria Cystathione β -synthetase deficiency; autosomal recessive with early vasculopathy

- Downwards lens dislocation
- Heart rarely affected
- Mental retardation
- Recurrent thromboses, osteoporosis
- Positive urine cyanide-nitroprusside test
- Response to treatment with pyridoxine

Meckel's diverticulum The distal ileum contains embryonic remnants of gastric and pancreatic tissue. There may be gastric acid secretion, causing GI pain & occult bleeding. **Δ** : Radionucleotide scan; laparotomy. *Johann Friedrich Meckel, 1781–1833 (German anatomist)*

Meigs' syndrome A triad of **1** benign ovarian tumour (fibroma) **2** pleural effusion (R>L) & **3** ascites. It resolves on tumour resection. *Joe Vincent Meigs, 1892–1963 (US gynaecologist)*

Ménétrier's disease Giant gastric mucosal folds up to 4cm high, in the fundus, with atrophy of the glands + ↑mucosal thickness + hypochlorhydria + protein-losing gastropathy (hence hypoalbuminaemia \pm oedema). **Causes**: \bullet CMV, streps, \bullet *H. pylori*. There may be epigastric pain, vomiting \pm ↓weight. It is pre-malignant. **R**: Epidermal growth factor receptor blockade with *cetuximab* is 1st-line treatment.⁹⁵ Surgery if intractable symptoms or malignant change.

Pierre Eugène Ménétrier, 1859–1935 (French pathologist)

Meyer-Betz syndrome (paroxysmal myoglobinuria) This rare idiopathic condition causes necrosis of exercising muscles. There is muscle pain, weakness, and discoloured urine: pink→brown (as ↑myoglobin is excreted). Acute renal failure can result from myoglobinuria (p307). DIC is associated. **Tests**: WCCT, LFT, LDH, CPK, urine myoglobin. **Diagnosis**: Muscle biopsy, ↑CPK and ↑serum myoglobin. Exertion should be avoided.

Friedrich Meyer-Betz, described 1910 (German physician)

Mikulicz's syndrome Benign persistent swelling of lacrimal and parotid (or submandibular) glands due to lymphocytic infiltration. Exclude other causes (sarcoidosis, TB, viral infection, lymphoproliferative disorders.) It is thought to be an IgG4-related plasmacytic systemic disease.⁹⁶ *Johann Freiherr von Mikulicz-Radecki, 1850–1905 (Polish-Austrian surgeon)*

Milroy disease Autosomal dominant Primary congenital lymphoedema. Mutations in the VEGFR3 gene cause lymphatic malfunction with lower leg swelling from birth (**fig 2**) **Δ** : Lymphoscintigraphy; genetic testing. **R**: \bullet Compression hosiery/bandages \bullet Encourage exercise \bullet Good skin hygiene \bullet Treat cellulitis actively.⁹⁷ *William Forsyth Milroy, 1855–1942 (US physician)*

Münchhausen's syndrome Vivid liars, who are addicted to institutions, flit from hospital to hospital, feigning illness, eg hoping for a laparotomy (*laparotimophilia migrans*) or mastectomy (*mammomania non-neoplastica*), or they complain of awful bleeding (*haemorrhagia histrionica*), odd eye movements (*nystagmus confabulus*), curious fits (*neurologica diabolica*), sexual assaults (*phantasmorotica penetrans*), throat closings (*otolaryngologica prevarica*), false asthma (*bronchospasmus absurdum*) or heart attacks (*cardiopathia fantastica*). Münchhausen-by-proxy entails injury to a dependent person by a carer (eg mother) to gain medical attention.

Karl Friedrich Hieronymus, Freiherr von Münchhausen, 1720–1797 (German aristocrat). Described by RAJ Asher in 1951⁹⁸

Ogilvie's syndrome (acute colonic pseudo-obstruction) Colonic obstruction in the absence of a mechanical cause, associated with recent severe illness or surgery. **R**: Correct U&E. Colonoscopy allows decompression, and excludes mechanical causes. Neostigmine is also effective, suggesting parasympathetic suppression is to blame.⁹⁹ Surgery is rarely needed (eg if perforation).

William Heneage Ogilvie, 1887–1971 (British surgeon)

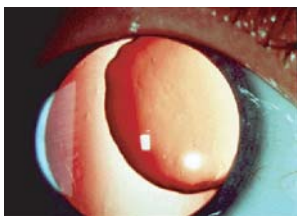


Fig 1. Lens dislocation in **Marfan's syndrome**: here the lens is dislocated superiorly and medially.

Courtesy of Prof Jonathan Trobe.



Fig 2. **Milroy disease.** Lymphoedema may be primary, as in Milroy or Meige disease, and is a feature in both Turner and Noonan syndromes. More commonly it is secondary to other conditions, eg cancer (after surgery, lymph node dissection, radiotherapy or from direct tumour effect), cellulitis, varicose veins or immobility/dependency. Filariasis (p443) is a common cause in tropical regions.

Who was Baron Münchhausen?

Baron Karl Münchhausen was an 18th-century German aristocrat and fabulist, whose tall tales became first a popular book, then a byword for circular logic, and finally a medical syndrome of self-delusion. He is famous for riding cannonballs, travelling to the moon and pulling himself out of a swamp by his own hair. ▶▶ In emergencies (we've all had that sinking feeling...) this method may save your life, for example in your final exams (fig 3):

Examiner: "What is ITP?"

You: "ITP is idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura." (you have scored 50% already).

Examiner: "And what is idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura?"

You: "It's when a cryptogenic cause of a low platelet count leads to purpura."

You have deployed your skills with logical brilliance, without adding a single insight. For this Münchhausen circularity you may be awarded 100%—unless your examiner is a philosopher, when the right answer would be "What is ITP? I don't know—and nor do you"—but don't try this too often. You see, you must never forget that medicine is marvellously scientific, and no-one is popular who dares cast doubt on this article of faith.



Fig 3. Münchhausen during his finals.

Ortner's cardiovascular syndrome Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy from a large left atrium (eg from mitral stenosis) or aortic dissection. *Norbert Ortner, 1865–1935 (Austrian physician)*

Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome (hereditary telangiectasia) ^{Autosomal dominant} Telangiectasia on the skin and mucous membranes (causing epistaxis and GI bleeds), see **fig 1**. It is associated with pulmonary, hepatic and cerebral arteriovenous malformations.¹⁰⁰

William Osler, 1849–1919 (Canadian); Frederick Weber, 1863–1962 (British); Henri Rendu, 1844–1902 (French)—all physicians

Paget's disease of the breast (PDB) Intra-epidermal spread of an intraduct cancer, which can look just like eczema. ▶ Any red, scaly lesion at the nipple (see **fig 2**) *must* suggest PDB: do a biopsy. **R:** Breast conserving surgery + radiotherapy. Sentinel node biopsy should be performed.¹⁰¹

Sir James Paget, 1814–1899 (British surgeon)

Pancoast's syndrome Apical lung ca invades the sympathetic plexus in the neck (→ipsilateral Horner's, p716) ± brachial plexus (→arm pain ± weakness) ± recurrent laryngeal nerve (→hoarse voice/bovine cough).

Henry Pancoast, 1875–1939 (US radiologist)

Parinaud's syndrome (dorsal midbrain syndrome) Upward gaze palsy + pseudo-Argyll Robertson pupils (p79) ± bilateral papilloedema. **Causes:** pineal or midbrain tumours; upper brainstem stroke; MS.

Henry Parinaud, 1844–1905 (French neuro-ophthalmologist)

Peutz-Jeghers' syndrome ^{Autosomal dominant} Germline mutations of tumour suppressor gene STK11 (in 66–94%) cause mucocutaneous dark freckles on lips (**fig 3**), oral mucosa, palms and soles + multiple GI polyps (hamartomas), causing obstruction, intussusception or bleeds. There is a 15-fold ↑ risk of developing GI cancer: perform colonoscopy (from age 18yrs) and oGD (from age 25yrs) every 3yrs. NB: hamartomas are excessive focal overgrowths of normal cells in an organ composed of the same cell type.

Johannes LA Peutz, 1886–1957 (Dutch physician); Harold J Jeghers, 1904–1990 (US physician)

Peyronie's disease (penile angulation) Pathogenesis: A poorly understood connective tissue disorder most commonly attributed to repetitive microvascular trauma during sexual intercourse, resulting in penile curvature and painful erectile dysfunction (in 50%; p222). **Prevalence:** 3–9%. **Typical age:** >40. **Associations:** Dupuytren's (p712); endothelial dysfunction; atheroma; radical prostatectomy. **ΔΔ:** Haemangioma. **Tests:** Ultrasound/MRI. **R:** Oral potassium para-aminobenzoate (**Potaba**®), intralesional **verapamil**, **clostridial collagenase** or **interferon α2B**; topical **verapamil** 15% gel; iontophoresis with verapamil and dexamethasone. All have various success.¹⁰² **Surgery:** (if disease stable for >3 months) tunica plication ± penile prostheses (may help penetration). Manage associated depression (seen in 48%). Penile rehabilitation can help (p222).¹⁰³

Francois Gigot de la Peyronie, 1678–1747 (French surgeon)

Pott's syndrome (spinal TB). Rare in the West, this is usually from an extra-spinal source, eg lungs. **Features:** Backache, and stiffness of *all* back movements. Fever, night sweats and weight loss occur. Progressive bone destruction leads to vertebral collapse and gibbus (sharply angled spinal curvature). Abscess formation may lead to cord compression, causing paraplegia, and bowel/bladder dysfunction (p470). **x-rays:** (**fig 4**) Narrow disc spaces and vertebral osteoporosis, leading to destruction with wedging of vertebrae. Lesions in the thoracic spine often lead to kyphosis. Abscess formation in the lumbar spine may track down to the psoas muscle, and erode through the skin. **R:** Anti-TB drugs (p398).

Sir Percival Pott, 1714–1788 (British surgeon)

Prinzmetal (variant) angina Angina from coronary artery spasm, which may lead to MI, ventricular arrhythmias or sudden death. Severe chest pain occurs **without** physical exertion. Triggers include hyperventilation, cocaine and tobacco use. **ECG:** ST elevation. **R:** Establish the diagnosis. GTN treats angina. Use Ca²⁺-channel blockers (p110) and long-acting nitrates as prophylaxis.

Myron Prinzmetal, 1908–1987 (US cardiologist)

Raynaud's syndrome This is peripheral digital ischaemia due to paroxysmal vasospasm, precipitated by cold or emotion. Fingers or toes ache and change colour: **pale** (ischaemia) → **blue** (deoxygenation) → **red** (reactive hyperaemia). It may be idiopathic (Raynaud's *disease*—prevalence: 3–20%; ♀:♂ >1:1) or have an underlying cause (Raynaud's *phenomenon*; **fig 5**). **Tests:** Exclude an underlying cause (see BOX). **R:** Keep warm (eg hand warmers); stop smoking. **Nifedipine** 5–20mg/8h PO helps, as may evening primrose oil, **sildenafil**, and prostacyclin (for severe attacks/digital gangrene). Relapse is common. Chemical or surgical (lumbar or digital) sympathectomy may help in those with severe disease.

AG Maurice Raynaud, 1834–1881 (French physician)

Prinzmetal angina and vascular hyperreactivity

Coronary spasm causes Prinzmetal angina and also contributes to coronary heart disease in general, eg acute coronary syndrome (esp. in Japan).¹⁰⁴ Coronary spasm can be induced by ergonovine, acetylcholine, and methacholine (the former is used diagnostically).¹ These cause vasodilatation by endothelium-derived relaxing factor when vascular endothelium is functioning normally, whereas they cause vasoconstriction if the endothelium is damaged. In the light of these facts, patients with coronary spasm are thought to have a disturbance in endothelial function as well as local hyperreactivity of the coronary arteries.

If full anti-anginal therapy does not reduce symptoms, stenting¹⁰⁵ or intra-coronary radiation (20Gy brachytherapy) to vasospastic segments may be tried.¹⁰⁶

Prognosis is good (especially if non-smoker, no past MI, and no diabetes; progress to infarction is quite rare);¹⁰⁷ there is evidence that prognosis may be better with the new calcium-channel blockers such as *benidipine*.¹⁰⁸ β -blockers and large doses of aspirin are contraindicated.

Prinzmetal angina is associated with vascular hyperreactivity/vasospastic disorders such as Raynaud's phenomenon and migraine. It is also associated with Circle of Willis occlusion from intimal thickening (moyamoya disease).



Fig 1. Telangiectasia in Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome.



Fig 2. Paget's disease of the breast.



Fig 3. Perioral pigmentation, seen in Peutz-Jeghers' syndrome.



Fig 4. TB of axis: soft tissue swelling displaces the retropharyngeal air-tissue boundary forwards. There is an anterior defect in the vertebra, below the axis peg.

Figures courtesy of:

Figs 1 & 3: Cox & Roper, *Clinical Skills*, 2005; Fig 4: Dr Ian Mad-dison, myweb.lsbu.ac.uk;

Fig 5 the Crookston Collection.

Conditions in which Raynaud's phenomenon may be exhibited²

Connective tissue disorders: Systemic sclerosis, SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, dermatomyositis/polymyositis.

Occupational: Using vibrating tools.

Obstructive: Thoracic outlet obstruction, Buerger's disease, atheroma.

Blood: Thrombocytosis, cold agglutinin disease, polycythaemia rubra vera (p360), monoclonal gammopathies.

Drugs: β -blockers.

Others: Hypothyroidism.



Fig 5. Raynaud's phenomenon in SLE.

1 Since Prinzmetal angina is not a 'demand-induced' symptom, but a supply (vasospastic) abnormality, exercise tolerance tests don't help. The most sensitive and specific test is iv ergonovine; 50 μ g at 5min intervals in a specialist lab until a +ve result or 400 μ g is given. When positive, the symptoms and tst should be present. Nitroglycerin rapidly reverses the effects of ergonovine if refractory spasm occurs.¹⁰⁹

2 Patient information on Raynaud's is available from www.raynauds.org.uk.

Refsum disease ^{Autosomal recessive} Phytanic acid accumulates in tissues and serum, due to *PHYH* or *PEX7* gene mutation. This leads to anosmia (a universal finding) and early-onset retinitis pigmentosa, with variable combinations of neuropathy, deafness, ataxia, ichthyosis and cardiomyopathy. **Tests:** Plasma phytanic acid ↑. **R:** Restrict foods containing phytanic acid (animal fats, dairy products, green leafy vegetables); plasmapheresis is used for severe symptoms.¹¹⁰ *Sigvald Bernhard Refsum, 1907–1991 (Norwegian physician)*

Romano-Ward syndrome ^{Autosomal dominant} A mutation in a K^+ channel subunit causes long QT syndrome ± episodic VT, VF, *torsades* ± sudden death. (Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syn is similar, p716.) *Cesarino Romano, 1924–2008 (Italian paediatrician); Owen C Ward, b1923 (Irish paediatrician)*

Rotor syndrome ^{Autosomal recessive} ⚡ A rare benign disorder of primary non-haemolytic conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia, with almost normal hepatic histology (without pigmentation, in contrast to DJS, p712).¹¹¹ Typically presents in childhood with mild jaundice. Cholescintigraphy reveals an 'absent' liver. *Arturo Belleza Rotor, 1907–1988 (Filipino physician)*

Sister Mary Joseph nodule An umbilical metastatic nodule from an intra-abdominal malignancy (fig 1). *Sister Mary Joseph Dempsey, 1856–1939 (US catholic nun & Dr William Mayo's surgical assistant)*

Sjögren's syndrome A chronic inflammatory autoimmune disorder, which may be primary (♀:♂≈9:1, onset 4th–5th decade) or secondary, associated with connective tissue disease (eg RA, SLE, systemic sclerosis). There is lymphocytic infiltration and fibrosis of exocrine glands, especially lacrimal and salivary glands. **Features:** ↑tear production (dry eyes, keratoconjunctivitis sicca), ↓salivation (xerostomia—dry mouth, caries), parotid swelling. Other glands are affected causing vaginal dryness, dyspareunia, dry cough and dysphagia. Systemic signs include polyarthritis/arthritis, Raynaud's, lymphadenopathy, vasculitis, lung, liver and kidney involvement, peripheral neuropathy, myositis and fatigue. It is associated with other autoimmune diseases (eg thyroid disease, autoimmune hepatitis, PBC) and an ↑risk of non-Hodgkin's B-cell lymphoma. **Tests:** Schirmer's test measures conjunctival dryness (<5mm in 5min is +ve). Rose Bengal staining may show keratitis (use a slit-lamp). Anti-Ro (SSA; in 40%) & anti-La (SSB; in 26%) antibodies may be present (in pregnancy, these cross the placenta and cause fetal congenital heart block in 5%). ANA is usually +ve (74%); rheumatoid factor is +ve in 38%.¹¹² There may be hypergammaglobulinaemia. Biopsy shows focal lymphocytic aggregation. **R:** Treat sicca symptoms: eg *hypromellose* (artificial tears), frequent drinks, sugar-free pastilles/gum. NSAIDs and *hydroxychloroquine* are used for arthralgia. Immunosuppressants may be indicated in severe systemic disease.¹¹³ *Henrik Conrad Samuel Sjögren, 1899–1986 (Swedish ophthalmologist)*

Stevens-Johnson syndrome A severe form of erythema multiforme (p564), and a variant of toxic epidermal necrolysis. It is caused by a hypersensitivity reaction, usually to drugs (eg salicylates, sulfonamides, penicillin, barbiturates, carbamazepine, phenytoin), but is also seen with infections or cancer. There is ulceration of the skin and mucosal surfaces (see fig 2). Typical target lesions develop, often on the palms or soles with blistering in the centre. There may be a prodromal phase with fever, malaise, arthralgia, myalgia ± vomiting and diarrhoea. **R:** Mild disease is usually self-limiting—remove any precipitant and give supportive care (eg calamine lotion for the skin). Steroid use is controversial—trials have been variable, so ask a dermatologist and ophthalmologist. IV immunoglobulin has shown benefit. Plasmapheresis and immunosuppressive agents may have a role.¹¹⁴ **Prognosis:** Mortality ~5%. May be severe for the first 10d before resolving over 30d. Damage to the eyes may persist and blindness can result.¹¹⁵ *Albert M Stevens 1884–1945; Frank C Johnson, 1894–1934 (US paediatricians)*

Sturge-Weber syndrome (SWS) Essential features: **1** facial cutaneous capillary malformation (port wine stain; PWS) in the ophthalmic dermatome (V1 ± V2/V3) **2** clinical signs or radiologic evidence of a leptomeningeal vascular malformation. 75% of patients with unilateral involvement develop seizures by age 1yr (95% if bilateral)—due (in part) to the increased metabolic demand of a developing brain in the setting of vascular compromise. Early management of seizures is critical to minimize brain injury. Some patients have severe cognitive and neurologic deficits beyond simple seizure activity. Screen early for glaucoma (50%). EEG and MRI help establish early diagnosis and treatment in patients at risk for SWS. Treat the PWS early with pulsed dye laser. *William A Sturge, 1850–1919; Frederick P Weber, 1863–1962 (British physicians)*

Causes of a long QT interval (eg Romano-Ward)

Many conditions and drugs (check *BNF*) cause a long QT interval. Brugada syndrome (p709) is similar, predisposing to sudden cardiac death.

Congenital: Romano-Ward syndrome (autosomal dominant). Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome (autosomal recessive) with associated deafness (p716).

Cardiac: Myocardial infarction or ischaemia; mitral valve prolapse.

HIV: May be a direct effect of the virus or from protease inhibitors.

Metabolic: K^+ ↓; Mg^{2+} ↓; Ca^{2+} ↓; starvation; hypothyroidism; hypothermia.

Toxic: Organophosphates.

Anti-arrhythmic drugs: Quinidine; amiodarone; procainamide; sotalol.

Antibiotics ^{et al}: Erythromycin; levofloxacin; pentamidine; halofantrine.

Antihistamines: Terfenadine; astemizole.

Motility drugs: Domperidone.

Psychoactive drugs: Haloperidol; risperidone; tricyclics; SSRIs.

Connective tissue diseases: anti-Ro/SSA antibodies (p554).

Herbalism: Ask about Chinese folk remedies (may contain unknown amounts of arsenic).^{116,117} Cocaine, quinine and artemisinins (and other antimalarials) are examples of herbalism-derived products that can prolong the QT interval.

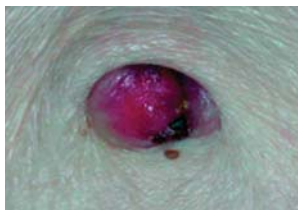


Fig 1. Sister Mary Joseph nodule.

Reproduced from 'Sister Joseph's Nodule', *Post-graduate Medical Journal*, J E Clague, 2002, with permission from BMJ Publishing Group Ltd.

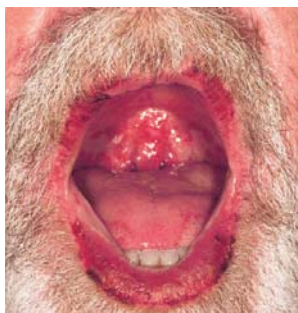


Fig 2. Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

Reproduced from Emberger *et al*, Stevens-Johnson syndrome associated with anti-malarial prophylaxis. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* (2003) 37:1, with permission from Oxford University Press.

Takayasu's arteritis (aortic arch syndrome; pulseless disease) Rare outside of Japan, this systemic vasculitis affects the aorta and its major branches. Granulomatous inflammation causes stenosis, thrombosis and aneurysms. It often affects women aged 20–40yrs. Symptoms depend on the arteries involved. The aortic arch is often affected, with cerebral, ophthalmological and upper limb symptoms, eg dizziness, visual changes, weak arm pulses. Systemic features are common—eg fever, weight loss and malaise. **tBP** is often a feature, due to renal artery stenosis. Complications include aortic valve regurgitation, aortic aneurysm and dissection; ischaemic stroke (**tBP** and thrombus); and ischaemic heart disease. **Diagnosis:** **tESR** and **CRP**; **MRI/PET** allows earlier diagnosis than standard angiography. **Rx:** Prednisolone (1mg/kg/d PO). Methotrexate or cyclophosphamide have been used in resistant cases. **BP** control is essential to **↓**risk of stroke. Angioplasty \pm stenting, or bypass surgery is performed for critical stenosis. **Prognosis:** \sim 95% survival at 15 years. *Mikito Takayasu, 1860–1938 (Japanese ophthalmologist)*

Tietze's syndrome (idiopathic costochondritis) Localized pain/tenderness at the costosternal junction, enhanced by motion, coughing, or sneezing. The 2nd rib is most often affected. The diagnostic key is *localized* tenderness which is marked (flinches on prodding). **Treatment:** Simple analgesia, eg NSAIDs. Its importance is that it is a benign cause of what at first seems to be alarming, eg cardiac pain. In lengthy illness, local steroid injections may be used. *Alexander Tietze, 1864–1927 (German surgeon)*

Todd's palsy Transient neurological deficit (paresis) after a seizure. There may be face, arm or leg weakness, aphasia or gaze palsy, lasting from \sim 30min–36h.¹¹⁸ The aetiology is unclear. *Robert Bentley Todd, 1809–1860 (Irish-born physician)*

Vincent's angina (necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis) Mouth infection with ulcerative gingivitis from *Borrelia vincentii* (a spirochete) + fusiform bacilli, often affecting young σ smokers with poor oral hygiene. Try amoxicillin 500mg/8h and metronidazole 400mg/8h PO, + chlorhexidine mouthwash. *Jean Hyacinthe Vincent, 1862–1950 (French physician)*

Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome ^{Autosomal dominant} A germline mutation of a tumour suppressor gene. It predisposes to bilateral renal cysts (with **↑**risk of transformation to renal cell cancer), retinal and cerebellar haemangioblastoma, and pheochromocytoma. See **figs 1 & 2**. It may present with visual impairment or cerebellar signs (eg unilateral ataxia). *Eugen von Hippel, 1867–1939 (German ophthalmologist); Arvid Lindau, 1892–1958 (Swedish pathologist)*

Von Willebrand's disease (vwd) Von Willebrand's factor (vWF) has 3 roles in clotting: **1** to bring platelets into contact with exposed subendothelium, **2** to make platelets bind to each other, and **3** to bind to factor VIII, protecting it from destruction in the circulation. There are >22 types of vwd; the commonest are:

Type I: (60–80%) ^{Autosomal dominant} Deficiency (**↓**levels) of vWF. Symptoms are mild.

Type II: (20–30%) Abnormal vWF, with lack of high molecular weight multimers. Usually autosomal dominant inheritance. Bleeding tendency varies. There are 4 subtypes.

Type III: (1–5%) Undetectable vWF levels (autosomal recessive with gene deletions). vWF antigen is lacking and there is **↓**factor VIII. Symptoms can be severe.

Signs are of a platelet-type disorder (p338): bruising, epistaxis, menorrhagia, **tb**leeding post-tooth extraction. **Tests:** **APTT****↑**, bleeding time, factor **VIII****↓** (clotting activity), vWF **Ag****↑**; **INR** and platelets \leftrightarrow . **Rx:** Get expert help. Desmopressin is used in mild bleeding, vWF-containing factor VIII concentrate for surgery or major bleeds. Avoid NSAIDs. *Erik Adolf von Willebrand, 1870–1949 (Finnish physician)*

Wallenberg's lateral medullary syndrome This relatively common syndrome comprises lesions to multiple CNS nuclei, caused by posterior or inferior cerebellar artery occlusion leading to brainstem infarction (**fig 3**). **Features:** • Dysphagia, dysarthria (IX and X nuclei) • Vertigo, nausea, vomiting, nystagmus (vestibular nucleus) • Ipsilateral ataxia (inferior cerebellar peduncle) • Ipsilateral Horner's syndrome (descending sympathetic fibres) • Loss of pain and temperature sensation on the ipsilateral face (V nucleus) and contralateral limbs (spinothalamic tract). There is no limb weakness as the pyramidal tracts are unaffected.

In the rarer **medial medullary syndrome**, vertebral or anterior spinal artery occlusion causes ipsilateral tongue paralysis (XII nucleus) with contralateral limb weakness (pyramidal tract, sparing the face) and loss of position sense.

Adolf Wallenberg, 1862–1949 (German neurologist)

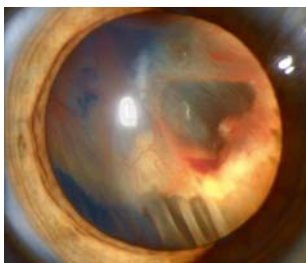


Fig 1. Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome showing retinal detachment.

Reproduced with permission from the National Eye Institute, National Institutes of Health.



Fig 2. Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome showing a retinal tumour.

Reproduced with permission from the National Eye Institute, National Institutes of Health.

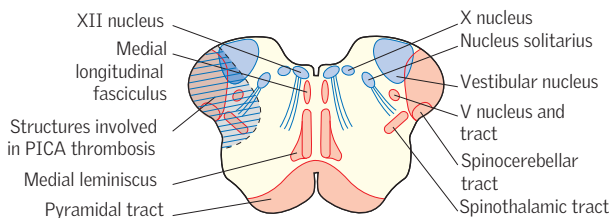


Fig 3. Cross section of the medulla showing structures involved in Wallenberg's lateral medullary syndrome (posterior inferior cerebellar artery thrombosis).

Waterhouse-Friderichsen's (WhF) syndrome Bilateral adrenal cortex haemorrhage, often occurring in rapidly deteriorating meningococcal sepsis, alongside widespread purpura, meningitis, coma, and DIC (**fig 1**). The meningococcal endotoxin acts as a potent initiator of inflammatory and coagulation cascades. Other causes include *H. influenzae*, pneumococcal, streptococcal, and staphylococcal sepsis. Adrenal failure causes shock, as normal vascular tone requires cortisol to set activity of alpha and beta adrenergic receptors, and aldosterone is needed to maintain extracellular fluid volume. **Treatment:** ▶▶ Antibiotics, eg *ceftriaxone* (p832) and hydrocortisone 200mg/4h IV for adrenal support. ICU admission.

Rupert Waterhouse 1873–1958
(British physician); Carl Friderichsen, 1886–1979 (Danish paediatrician)

Weber's syndrome (superior alternating hemiplegia) Ipsilateral oculomotor nerve palsy with contralateral hemiplegia, due to infarction of one-half of the mid-brain, after occlusion of the paramedian branches of the basilar or posterior cerebral arteries.

Herman David Weber, 1823–1918 (German-born physician whose son described Sturge-Weber syndrome)

Wegener's* granulomatosis This has been renamed **granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA)**, in part because of concerns over the suitability of Friedrich Wegener, a member of the Nazi party during WWII, to be the source of an eponym.¹¹⁹ GPA is a multisystem disorder of unknown cause characterized by necrotizing granulomatous inflammation and vasculitis of small and medium vessels. It has a predilection for the upper respiratory tract, lungs and kidneys. **Features:** Upper airways disease is common, with nasal obstruction, ulcers, epistaxis, or destruction of the nasal septum causing a characteristic 'saddle-nose' deformity.¹ Sinusitis is often a feature. Renal disease causes rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis with crescent formation, proteinuria or haematuria. Pulmonary involvement may cause cough, haemoptysis (severe if pulmonary haemorrhage) or pleuritis. There may also be skin purpura or nodules, peripheral neuropathy, mononeuritis multiplex, arthritis/arthralgia or ocular involvement, eg keratitis, conjunctivitis, scleritis, episcleritis, uveitis. **Tests:** cANCA directed against PR3 is most specific and raised in the majority of patients (p555). Some patients express pANCA specific for MPO. ↑ESR/CRP. Urinalysis should be performed to look for proteinuria or haematuria. If these are present, consider a renal biopsy. CXR may show nodules ± fluffy infiltrates of pulmonary haemorrhage. CT may reveal diffuse alveolar haemorrhage. Atypical cells from cytology of sputum/BAL can be confused with bronchial carcinoma.¹²⁰ **Treatment:** Depends on the extent of disease. Severe disease (eg biopsy-proven renal disease) should be treated with corticosteroids and *cyclophosphamide* (or *rituximab*) to induce remission. *Azathioprine* and *methotrexate* are usually used as maintenance. Patients with severe renal disease (eg creatinine >500µmol/L) may benefit from plasma exchange in addition. *Co-trimoxazole* should be given as prophylaxis against *Pneumocystis jiroveci* and staphylococcal colonization.

Friedrich Wegener, 1907–1990 (German pathologist)

Wernicke's encephalopathy Thiamine (vitamin B₁) deficiency with a classical triad of 1 confusion 2 ataxia (wide-based gait; **fig 2**) and 3 ophthalmoplegia (nystagmus, lateral rectus or conjugate gaze palsies). There is inadequate dietary intake, ↓ GI absorption and impaired utilization of thiamine resulting in focal areas of brain damage, including periaqueductal punctate haemorrhages (mechanism unclear). Always consider this diagnosis in alcoholics: it may also present with memory disturbance, hypotension, hypothermia, or reduced consciousness. **Recognized causes:** Chronic alcoholism, eating disorders, malnutrition, prolonged vomiting, eg with chemotherapy, GI malignancy or hyperemesis gravidarum. **Diagnosis:** Primarily clinical. Red cell transketolase activity is decreased (rarely done). **Treatment:** Urgent replacement to prevent irreversible Korsakoff's syndrome (p718). Give *thiamine* (Pabrinex®) 2 pairs of high-potency ampoules IV/IM/8h over 30min for 2d, then 1 pair OD for a further 5d. Oral supplementation (100mg OD) should continue until no longer 'at risk' (+ give other B vitamins). Anaphylaxis is rare. If there is coexisting hypoglycaemia (often the case in this group of patients), make sure thiamine is given before glucose, as Wernicke's can be precipitated by glucose administration to a thiamine-deficient patient. **Prognosis:** Untreated, death occurs in 20%, and Korsakoff's psychosis occurs in 85%—a quarter of whom will require long-term institutional care.

Karl Wernicke, 1848–1905
(German neurologist)



Fig 1. Meningococcal sepsis with purpura.



Fig 2. Wide-based gait (footprints), seen in Wernicke's encephalopathy. Before jumping to the conclusion that these footprints are those of an *OHCM* author on the way back from the pub, bear in mind that alcohol is not the only cause of Wernicke's: think of rapidly growing tumours, malabsorption, hyperemesis gravidarum, hyperthyroidism, and prolonged vomiting of any cause.¹²¹

1 Common causes of a 'saddle-nose' deformity are trauma and iatrogenic (eg post-rhinoplasty). Rarer causes (popular with some finals examiners): GPA, relapsing polychondritis, syphilis, and leprosy.

Whipple's disease¹²² A rare disease featuring GI malabsorption which usually occurs in middle-aged white males, most commonly in Europe. It is fatal if untreated and is caused by *Tropheryma whippelii*, which, combined with defective cell-mediated immunity, produces a systemic disease. **Features:** Often starts insidiously with arthralgia (chronic, migratory, seronegative arthropathy affecting mainly peripheral joints). GI symptoms commonly include colicky abdominal pain, weight loss, steatorrhea/diarrhoea, which leads to malabsorption (p280). Systemic symptoms such as chronic cough, fever, sweats, lymphadenopathy and skin hyperpigmentation also occur. Cardiac involvement may lead to endocarditis, which is typically blood culture negative. CNS features include a reversible dementia, ophthalmoplegia, and facial myoclonus (if all together, they are highly suggestive)—also hypothalamic syndrome (hyperphagia, polydipsia, insomnia). NB: CNS involvement may occur without GI involvement. **Tests:** Diagnosis requires a high level of clinical suspicion. Jejunal biopsy shows stunted villi. There is deposition of macrophages in the lamina propria-containing granules which stain positive for Periodic Acid-Schiff (PAS). Similar cells may be found in affected samples, eg CSF, cardiac valve tissue, lymph nodes, synovial fluid. The bacteria may be seen within macrophages on electron microscopy. PCR of bacterial RNA can be performed on serum or tissue. MRI may demonstrate CNS involvement. **R:** Should include antibiotics which cross the blood-brain barrier. Current recommendations: IV *ceftriaxone* (or penicillin+streptomycin) for 2wks then oral *co-trimoxazole* for some months. Shorter courses risk relapse. A rapid improvement in symptoms usually occurs.

George Hoyt Whipple, 1878–1976 (US pathologist)

Zellweger syndrome (cerebrohepatorenal syndrome) ^{Autosomal recessive} A rare disorder characterized by absent peroxisomes (intracellular organelles required for many cellular activities including lipid metabolism). The syndrome has a similar molecular basis to infantile Refsum's syndrome, and although more severe, exhibits comparable biochemical abnormalities (p724). Clinical features include craniofacial abnormalities, severe hypotonia and mental retardation, glaucoma, cataracts, hepatomegaly and renal cysts. A number of causative PEX gene mutations have been identified. Life expectancy is usually a few months only.

Hans Zellweger, 1909–1990 (US paediatrician)

Zollinger-Ellison syndrome This is the association of peptic ulcers with a gastrin-secreting adenoma (gastrinoma). Gastrin excites excessive gastric acid production, which may produce multiple ulcers in the duodenum and stomach. The adenoma is usually found in the pancreas, although it may arise in the stomach or duodenum. Most cases are sporadic; 20% are associated with multiple endocrine neoplasia, type 1 (MEN1, p215). 60% are malignant; metastases are found in local lymph nodes and the liver. **Symptoms:** Include abdominal pain and dyspepsia, from the ulcer(s), and chronic diarrhoea due to inactivation of pancreatic enzymes (also causes steatorrhea) and damage to intestinal mucosa. **Incidence:** ~0.1% of patients with peptic ulcer disease. Suspect in those with multiple peptic ulcers, ulcers distal to the duodenum, or a family history of peptic ulcers (or of islet cell, pituitary, or parathyroid adenomas). **Tests:** (fig 1) ↑Fasting serum gastrin level (>1000pg/mL). Measure 3 fasting levels on different days. Hypochlorhydria (reduced acid production, eg in chronic atrophic gastritis) should be excluded as this also causes a raised gastrin level: gastric pH should be <2. The secretin stimulation test is useful in suspected cases with only mildly raised gastrin levels (100–1000pg/mL). The adenoma is often small and difficult to image; a combination of somatostatin receptor scintigraphy, endoscopic ultrasound and CT is used to localize and stage the adenoma. OGD evaluates gastric/duodenal ulceration. **R:** High-dose proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), eg *omeprazole*: start with 60mg/d and adjust according to response. Measuring intragastric pH helps determine the best dose (aim to keep pH at 2–7). All gastrinomas have malignant potential—and surgery is better sooner than later (with lymph node clearance generally recommended if >2cm in size). Surgery may be avoided in MEN1, as adenomas are often multiple, and metastatic disease is rare. If well-differentiated (G1 and G2) somatostatin analogues may be 1st-line and chemotherapy with *streptozotocin* (if available) + *doxorubicin/5-FU* is 2nd-line. In G3, *etoposide* + *cisplatin* is possible.¹²³ Selective embolization may be done for hepatic metastases. **Prognosis:** 5yr survival: 80% if single resectable lesion, ~20% with hepatic metastases. Screen all patients for MEN1.

Robert M Zollinger, 1903–1992; Edwin H Ellison, 1918–1970 (US surgeons)

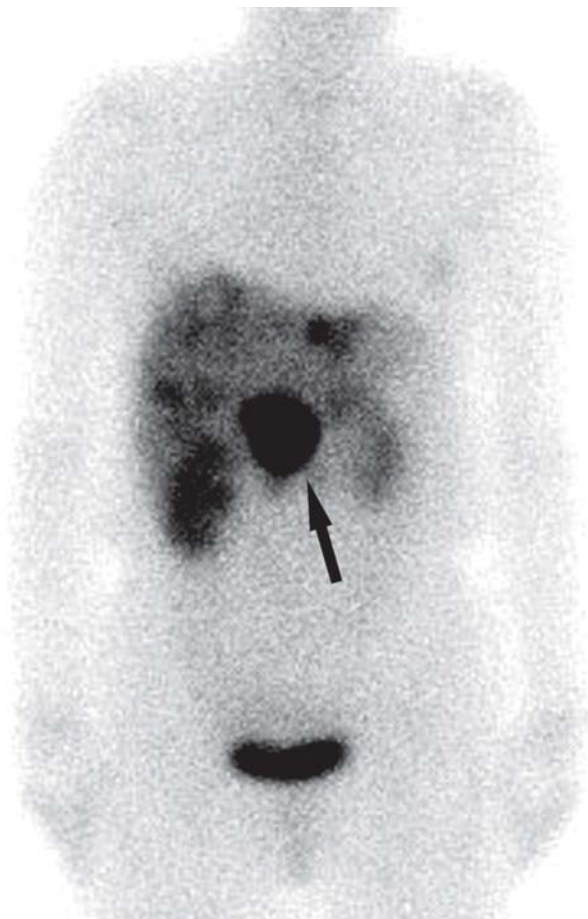


Fig 1. Gastrinoma in a 68-yr-old with Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. Serum gastrin was 158pg/mL (normal, 8–47pg/mL). This rather ghostly anterior ^{111}In pentetreotide image shows focal radiotracer uptake in the pancreatic head (arrow), the primary tumour. Note multiple liver metastases.

Courtesy of Charles Intenzo. *Scintigraphic Imaging of Body Neuroendocrine Tumors*. C Intenzo, S Jabbour, H Lin, J Miller, S Kim, D Capuzzi E Mitchell. *RadioGraphics* 2007 27 1355–1356. RSNA¹²⁴

Epilogue

25% of patients with rare diseases have to wait from 5–30 years for a diagnosis. 40% are misdiagnosed resulting in inappropriate drugs or psychological treatments—eg 20% of people with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (p143) had to consult over 20 doctors before the diagnosis was made,¹²⁵ causing understandable loss of confidence in our profession. Lack of appropriate referral and rejection because of disease complexity are common problems. Let us cultivate our networks with each other and approach 'unexplained symptoms' with an open mind.



Contents

Principles in radiology:

- Typical effective doses 733
- Justifying exposure to ionizing radiation 733
- The art of the request 734
- Interpreting an image 735
- Presenting an image 735

Modalities:

- Chest x-ray (CXR) 736–740
- Plain abdominal x-ray 742
- Computed tomography (CT) 744–6
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) 748
- Ultrasound (US) 750
- Nuclear medicine 752

Radiology in clinical practice:

- (NB Thoracic imaging is covered in modalities, p740, p744)
- Cardiovascular imaging 754
- Gastrointestinal imaging 756
- Genitourinary imaging 758
- Neuroimaging 760

Contrast medium in imaging 762

►► Imaging the acutely unwell patient 763



Fig 1. Godfrey Hounsfield (1919–2004). Joint winner of the 1979 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine, Godfrey Hounsfield was an electrical engineer who began working on the CT scanner as a way of using X-rays to find out what was in a closed box. He constructed a computer to compile an image from multiple X-rays at different angles, creating slices that could be combined to form a 3D image. He then began testing this for potential medical applications, memorably being caught on the London tube carrying a bullock's brain for testing in an experimental whole body scanner! His name lives on in the Hounsfield scale, a measure of radiodensity used to define the images produced from CT scanners, ranging from air at -1000 Hounsfield Units, through water at 0 HU up to bone at 1000 HU.

Other relevant pages Chest medicine (Chapter 4); echocardiography (p106); further investigations in chest medicine (p158); cerebral artery territories (p452).

Images in other chapters

CXR: Cavitating lung cancer (p155); lung metastasis (p171); idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (p190); industrial dust diseases (p193); correct PICC line (p589); incorrect sub-clavian line (p589); pneumoperitoneum (p609).

CT: Stroke (p81 & p453); hiatus hernia (p245); liver metastases (p271); retroperitoneal fibrosis (p643); sub-arachnoid haemorrhage (p483, with 3DCT reconstruction); subdural and extradural haematomas (p487); pancreatic pseudocyst (p639); endovascular aortic stent (p657); SBO (p613); large bowel obstruction (p613); caecal cancer (p619); oesophageal cancer (p621).

MRI: Pituitary adenoma (p227); stroke (p475); superior sagittal sinus thrombosis (MR venogram, p485); cervical spondylosis (p512); the cauda equina (p783).

US: Compression US/US imaging of DVT (p579); torsion of the hydatid of Morgagni and testis cancer (p652); hydronephrosis (p645); thyroid lesion (p603).

Nuclear medicine: Graves' disease (p603); gastrinoma (p731).

ERCP/MRCP: Primary sclerosing cholangitis (p267).

Contrast studies: Oesophageal cancer (p241); parotid sialogram (p601).

DSA: Lower limb (p659).



Typical effective doses

The effective dose of an examination is calculated as the weighted sum of the doses to different body tissues. The weighting factor for each tissue depends on its sensitivity. The effective dose thus provides a single dose estimate related to the total radiation risk, no matter how the radiation dose is distributed around the body. This table is certainly not to be learnt; rather it serves as a reminder of the relative exposures to radiation that we prescribe in practice. ► Remember that us and MRI involve no radiation, would they provide the answer?

Procedure	Typical effective dose (mSv)	CXR equivalents	Approx. equivalent period of background radiation ¹
X-ray examinations			
Limbs and joints	<0.01	<0.5	<1.5 days
Chest (PA)	0.02	1	3 days
Abdomen	1	50	6 months
Lumbar spine	13	65	7 months
CT head	23	115	1 year
CT chest	8	400	3.6 years
CT abdo/pelvis	10	500	4.5 years
Radionuclide studies			
Lung ventilation	0.3	15	7 weeks
Lung perfusion	1	50	6 months
Bone	4	200	1.8 years
PET head	5	250	2.3 years
PET-CT	10-20	500	4.5-9 years

After Making the Best Use of Department of Clinical Radiology, 5e RCOG; with permission.

Justifying exposure to ionizing radiation

The very nature of ionizing radiation that gives us vision into the human body also gives it lethal properties. The decision to expose patients to radiation must be made with the risks in mind, and even with strict guidelines we still have a tendency to over-exposure in medical practice. So when requesting an examination, the clinical benefits should outweigh the risks of cancer induction and genetic mutation.

The responsibility lies with us not to rely too heavily on radiology. ► Don't request examinations to comfort patients, or to replace lost images, or when the result will not affect management. To give an idea of relative doses, a CT of the abdomen and pelvis gives a typical effective dose of 500 times as much radiation as a CXR (see TABLE). This important factor also tells us about the preference of ultrasound over CT when investigating abdominal and pelvic complaints such as acute appendicitis, especially given the youthful demographics of this diagnosis. Avoid irradiating someone simply to avoid medico-legal issues.

► Unwitting exposure of the unborn fetus to radiation is inexcusable at any stage of gestation—unless the mother's life is in immediate danger—and it is the responsibility of the referring clinician to ensure that this is avoided. Discuss beforehand with the patient that you would like to do a pregnancy test, explaining why, being broad in your suppositions and tactful in your inquiries.



One of the most nerve-wracking moments that you can encounter as a recently qualified doctor is having to request an investigation face-to-face with a seasoned consultant radiologist. Imagine that you have been asked by your team to request an ultrasound examination of the renal tract for one of your patients who has a newly raised creatinine of 300µmol/L. You aren't quite sure what to write on the request form; however, they have already moved on to the next patient. What do you write? How much do you write? Who do you ask? Put yourself on the other side. If you were a radiologist, how would you prioritize who needed what imaging and when? Keep the following in mind when requesting (never ordering!) an investigation:

1 Patient details

2 Clinical details

3 Investigation details

This can be broadly broken down into:

- **Who:** ► Get the patient's name right! Include hospital number and date of birth on all requests.
- **What:** think of your clinical question, what scan do you think is required? What answer are you hoping it will give? (See MINIBOX.)
- **Why:** give clinical details, remember that the radiologist ultimately decides what imaging they undertake. The information you give may change the type of scan they choose, a CT chest can look at lungs, arteries, veins, soft tissues, and more. Different questions require different protocols. If you think the patient has a collection, would you like them to drain it? Always include \pm intervention on the request form (eg US abdo \pm drain insertion) if you think this may be required.
- **How:** it is also important to mention pertinent facts that may change the way the investigation can be carried out. For example, an agitated or confused patient may need sedation prior to an MRI of their head. A CT scan on a patient with a raised creatinine may need to be done without contrast medium. Insertion of a drain on a patient with deranged clotting may need to wait while this is corrected. Include recent creatinine, Hb and clotting on the form if appropriate. Don't forget to mention anticoagulants, eg warfarin, LMWH for intervention requests.

Radiology can help:

- Confirm a suspected diagnosis
- 'Exclude' something important: remember that exclusion is never 100%
- Define the extent of a disease
- Monitor the progress of a disease

If in doubt, or if the investigation is very urgent, call or go down to the department in person. If you can do this for all investigations it is courteous to the radiologist, and you will learn a lot; however, they do appreciate there isn't the time to do this for every request. Radiologists appreciate being involved in the clinical decision and may be able to suggest a better way of answering your clinical question. Asking for an x-ray of the hip "fall ?#NOF" is straightforward. But "does this patient have a hepatic malignancy or is it an abscess" may require US, triple phase CT, or PET-CT.

Pointers:

- Know your patient well, but keep your request brief and accurate.
- Know the clinical question and how the answer will change your management.
- Look up previous imaging before you go; asking for a CT on a patient who had one yesterday makes you look foolish and will not go down well.

If your request is turned down, don't be afraid to (politely) ask why. If you or your team still feel it is warranted, look back at the request; did you miss a relevant piece of information that would change the mind of the radiologist? If you still draw a blank, try speaking to a radiologist who specializes in that particular technique. Many teams have clinical radiology meetings; think about approaching someone who appreciates why you are asking that particular question. Alternatively, go back to your team; speak to your senior, who may have a better understanding of why the investigation is needed and be able to convey this to the radiologist.

Ultimately though, remember that there is a patient at the heart of this. Don't be afraid to be their advocate. If the results of an investigation will change their management then explain this to the radiologist. Moreover, don't forget to explain it to your patient. Being whisked off to the department for investigation and intervention can be particularly terrifying if you aren't expecting it.



Interpreting an image

You won't always be able to get a radiologist's interpretation (especially at night) so it is worth knowing broadly how to look at an image. ►Firstly make sure the image you are looking at is of your patient. Check its date. Remembering the following points may help hone your own interpreting skills:

- **Practice makes perfect**—always look at the image before checking the report, learning how to distinguish normal from abnormal.
- **Understand how the scan is done**—makes interpretation easier and helps you appreciate which scan will give the answer you need. This also gives practical clues to the result—eg a routine CXR is performed in the postero-anterior (PA) direction (the source posterior to the patient to minimize the cardiac shadow).
- **Use a systematic approach** so that you don't miss subtleties. Don't worry, though—some things can be notoriously difficult to spot.
- **Understand your anatomy**—virtually all investigations yield a 2D image from a 3D structure (though technology keeps improving, see p745). An understanding of anatomical relationships of the area in question will help reconstruct the images in your mind.
- **Orientation**—for axial cross-sectional imaging this is as if you are looking up at the supine patient ►*from his feet*. For images with non-conventional orientations (eg MRCP) look on the image for clue markings, or rely on your knowledge of anatomy—it can be tricky to visualize oblique sections!
- Remember an investigation is only one part of the clinical work-up, don't rely solely on the investigation result for your management decisions.
- Go back to see the patient after looking at the investigation and reading the radiologist's report: you might notice something that you didn't before.

Presenting an image

Everyone has their own method for presenting, and the right way is **your own way**. As long as you cover everything systematically—because we all get 'hot-seat amnesia' at some point—the particulars will take care of themselves. Continue to polish your own method and remember a few extra tips for when an image is presented expectantly by your consultant/examiner and the floor is yours. A brief silence with a thoughtful expression as you analyse the image is fine, then...

- State the written details: name, date of birth, where and how the imaging was taken. Look for clues: weighting of an MRI, a '+ c' indicating that contrast medium has been used, the phase of the investigation (arterial/venous/portal), or even the name of the organ printed on an ultrasound.
- State the type, mode and technical quality of investigation—not always easy!

Going through the above also gives you a bit of thinking time. Then:

- Start with life-threatening or very obvious abnormalities. *Then be systematic:*
- Is the patient's position adequate? Any lines, leads or tubes? Note their position.
- Just like the bedside clues in a physical examination, there are clues in radiology examinations. Note oxygen masks, ECG leads, venous access, infusion apparatus, and invasive devices. Identifying what they are also helps you to look through what may otherwise appear to be a cluttered mess.
- Not everything on the image is inside the subject—some things may be on the surface/outside or not there at all, eg ring artefacts or 'stair-stepping' on CT.
- Giving a differential diagnosis is good practice, as not all findings are diagnostic.
- If there is additional clinical information that would help you to make a diagnosis, don't be afraid to ask. After all, we treat patients and not images!

Remember:

- X-ray=**radiodensity** (lucency/opacity)
- CT=**attenuation**
- US=**echogenicity**
- MRI=**signal intensity**

1 Geometry of helical CT causes periodic asymmetries and variable noise distribution, appearing as stripes (zebra artefact) or steps (stair-stepping) when surfaces are inclined relative to the table translation direction. These distort volume and diameter measurements (taking thinner slices helps).²

Images are usually taken on inspiration with the x-ray source behind the patient (postero-anterior, PA). Emergency mobile images may be antero-posterior (AP (fig 1, p741)), magnifying heart size and elevating the diaphragm. If supine, distribution of air and fluid in lungs and pleural cavities is altered.

Acclimatize yourself to the 4 cardinal elements of the chest radiograph, memorably (albeit slightly inaccurately) termed **bone, air, fat, and 'water'/soft tissue**. Each has its own radiographic density. ▶ **A border is only seen at an interface of 2 densities**, eg heart (soft tissue) and lung (air); this 'silhouette' is lost if air in the lung is replaced by consolidation ('water'). The silhouette sign localizes pathology (eg middle lobe pneumonia or collapse causing loss of clarity of the right heart border, fig 1). When interpreting a CXR use a systematic approach that works for you, eg from outside to inside, or inside-out. Start by assessing technical quality:

- **Rotation:** The sternal ends of the clavicles should symmetrically overlie the transverse processes of the 4th or 5th thoracic vertebrae. A rotated film can alter the position of structures, eg rotation to the right projects the aortic arch vessels over the right upper zone, appearing as though there is a mass.
- **Inspiration:** There should be 5 to 7 ribs visible anteriorly (or 10 posteriorly). Hyperinflation can be abnormal, eg COPD. Poor inspiration can mimic cardiomegaly, as the heart is usually pulled down (hence elongated) with inspiration, and crowding of vessels at the lung bases can mimic consolidation or collapse. This is common in patients who are acutely unwell, particularly those in pain or unconscious. Take care in interpreting these images.
- **Exposure:** An under-exposed image will be too white and an over-exposed image will be too black. Both cause a loss of definition and quality. With modern software images can be adjusted, compensating for over-exposure more easily than under-exposure.
- **Position:** The entire lung margins should be visible.

Trachea Normally central or just to the right. Deviated by collapse (towards the lesion), tension (away from the lesion), or patient rotation. Check heart position (below).

Mediastinum Widened by mediastinal fat; retrosternal thyroid; unfolded aorta, or aortic aneurysm; lymph node enlargement (sarcoidosis, lymphoma, metastases, TB); tumour (thymoma, teratoma); cysts (bronchogenic, pericardial); paravertebral mass (TB). There are 3 'moguls'¹ or lumps normally visible on the left border of the mediastinum that help identify pathology if abnormal. From superior to inferior they are: 1 Aortic knuckle 2 Pulmonary outflow tract 3 Left ventricle.

The mediastinum may be shifted towards a collapsed lung or away from processes that add volume (eg an effusion).

Hila The left hilum is higher than the right or at the same level (not lower); they should be the same size and density. May be pulled up or down by fibrosis or collapse.

1 **Enlarged hila:** Nodes; pulmonary arterial hypertension (\pm an enlarged 2nd mogul); bronchogenic ca. 2 **Calcification:** Sarcoid, past TB; silicosis; histoplasmosis (p440). Sarcoidosis, TB & lymphoma can give bilateral hilar + paratracheal lymphadenopathy.

Heart Normally less than half of the width of the thorax (cardiothoracic ratio <0.5). $\frac{1}{3}$ should lie to the right of the vertebral column, $\frac{2}{3}$ to the left. It may appear elongated if the chest is hyperinflated (COPD); or enlarged if the image is AP or if there is LV failure (fig 2), or a pericardial effusion. Are there calcified valves?

Diaphragm The right side is often slightly higher (due to the liver) **Causes of raised hemidiaphragm:** Trouble above the diaphragm—lung volume loss. Trouble with the diaphragm—stroke; phrenic nerve palsy (causes, p506; any mediastinal mass?). Trouble below the diaphragm—hepatomegaly; subphrenic abscess. NB: subpulmonic effusion (effusions having a similar contour to the diaphragm without a characteristic meniscus) and diaphragm rupture give apparent elevation. NB: bilateral palsies (polio, muscular dystrophy) cause hypoxia.

1 It's as if skiing down the left heart border creates these moguls or bumps of radio-opaque 'snow'.



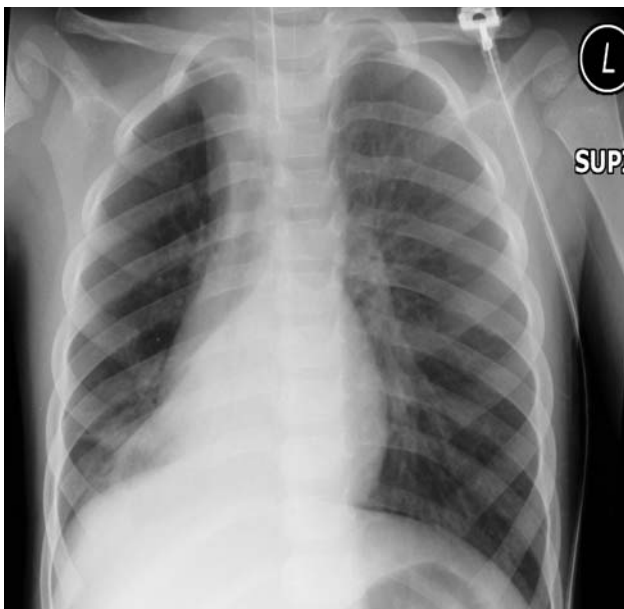


Fig 1. Lower lobe collapse (right lung). The right heart border is obscured and there is also volume loss in the right lower zone.

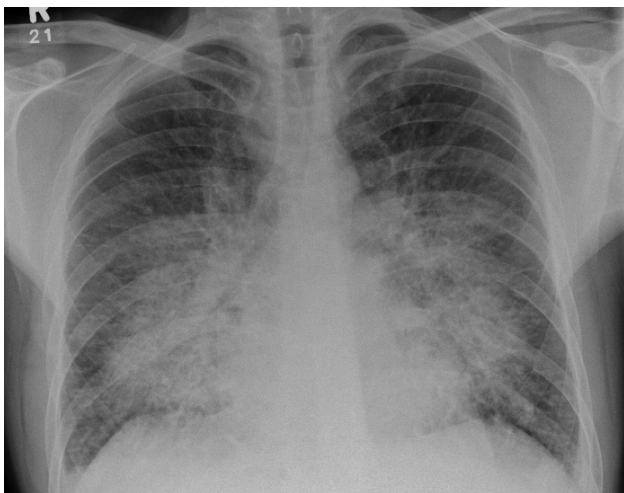


Fig 2. 'Bat's wing' pulmonary oedema consistent with heart failure and fluid overload (compare with [fig 2, p293](#)).



Opacification Lung opacities are described as nodular, reticular (network of fine lines, interstitial), or alveolar (fluffy). A single nodule may be called a SOL (space-occupying lesion).

Nodules:¹ (if >3cm across, the term pulmonary mass is used instead).

- 1 Neoplasia: metastases (often missed if small), lung cancer, hamartoma, adenoma.
- 2 Infections: varicella pneumonia, septic emboli, abscess (eg as an SOL), hydatid.
- 3 Granulomas: miliary TB, sarcoidosis, granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA—the new name for Wegener's granulomatosis, p728), histoplasmosis.
- 4 Pneumoconioses (except asbestosis), Caplan's syndrome (p710).

Reticular opacification: = lung parenchymal changes, can be acute (interstitial oedema, eg cardiac, atypical pneumonia, eg viral) or subacute/chronic.

- Acute interstitial oedema
- Infection: acute (viral, bacterial), chronic (TB, histoplasmosis)
- Fibrosis: usual interstitial pneumonia (UIP), non-specific interstitial pneumonia (NSIP), drugs (eg methotrexate, bleomycin, crack cocaine), connective tissue disorders (rheumatoid arthritis—p548, GPA—p728, SLE, PAN, systemic sclerosis—p554, sarcoidosis), industrial lung diseases (silicosis, asbestosis)
- Malignancy (lymphangitis carcinomatosa)

Alveolar opacification: = airspace opacification, can be due to any material filling the alveoli, usually divided into one or a combination of the following:

- Pus—pneumonia
- Blood—haemorrhage, DIC (p346)
- Water—renal or liver failure (p294, p258), ARDS (p178), smoke inhalation (p859), drugs (heroin), O₂ toxicity, near drowning (OHCS p786)
- Cells—lymphoma, bronchioloalveolar carcinoma
- Protein—alveolar proteinosis, ARDS, fat emboli (~7 days post fracture)

'Ring' opacities: Either airways seen end-on (bronchitis; bronchiectasis) or cavitating lesions, eg abscess (bacterial, fungal, amoebic), tumour, or pulmonary infarct (wedge shaped with a pleural base).

Linear opacities: Septal lines (Kerley B lines, ie interlobular lymphatics seen with fluid, tumour, or dusts); atelectasis; pleural plaques (asbestos exposure).

White-out of whole hemithorax (**fig 1**): pneumonia, large pleural effusion, ARDS, post-pneumonectomy.

Gas outside the lungs Check for a pneumothorax (hard to spot if apical or in a supine image, can you see vascular markings right out to the periphery?), surgical emphysema (trauma, iatrogenic) and gas under the diaphragm (surgery, perforated viscus, trauma). **Pneumomediastinum:** air tracks along mediastinum, into the neck. Due to oesophageal or bronchial trauma (can be iatrogenic, eg from endoscope).

Pneumopericardium: rare (usually iatrogenic).

Bones Check the **clavicles** for fracture, **ribs** for fractures, absence and lesions (eg metastases), **vertebral column** for degenerative disease, collapse or destruction and **shoulders** for dislocation, fracture and arthritis.

An apparently normal CXR? Check for tracheal compression, absent breast shadow (mastectomy), double left heart border (left lower lobe collapse, **fig 2**), fluid level behind the heart (hiatus hernia, achalasia), and paravertebral abscess (TB).



1 Remember that the apex of the lower lobe rises up to the 4th rib posteriorly, so it is difficult to ascribe the true location of a lesion on a PA image without additional information from a lateral view. It may be better to use the term 'zone' rather than lobe when localizing a lesion.

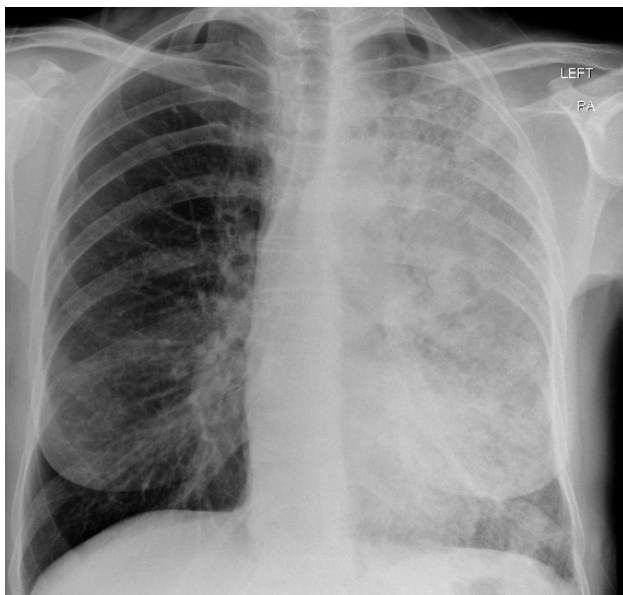


Fig 1. Opacification of the left hemithorax from consolidation.



Fig 2. Large right-sided pneumothorax; note the trachea remains central, suggesting this is a simple pneumothorax, not a tension pneumothorax.



On a night shift, one of the most frequent requests you will get as a junior doctor (after replacing cannulae and writing up fluids) is to confirm the position of various tubes, lines and leads on a CXR. This can be a daunting task, as incorrect positioning can have deadly consequences, eg an incorrectly positioned NG tube can lead to an aspiration pneumonia, a poorly positioned cvc can lead to fatal arrhythmias. However, this is a fairly straightforward task as long as you remember some basic anatomy, see **figs 1 & 2**:

Line/tube/lead	Correct position for tip(s)
cvc (p788)	In the svc or brachiocephalic vein
PICC	In the svc or brachiocephalic vein
Tunnelled line, eg Hickmann	At the junction of the svc and right atrium
Endotracheal	5-7 cm above the carina
Nasogastric (p733)	10cm beyond the gastro-oesophageal junction
Chest drain (p780)	In the pleural space tracking either up (for pneumothorax) or down (for effusion)
Cardiac pacemaker/temporary pacing wire (p790)	Atrial lead—in the right appendage Ventricular lead—in the tip of the right ventricle

Normal anatomy

- The svc begins at the right 1st anterior intercostal space
- The right atrium lies at the level of the 3rd intercostal space
- The carina should be visible at the level of T5-T7 thoracic vertebrae
- The right atrial appendage sits at the level of the 3rd intercostal space

Common bleeps from nursing staff

1 Central line not aspirating

- Is the tip in the right place (see above) or has it gone up into the internal jugular, too far in (sitting against the tricuspid valve, does the patient have an arrhythmia?) or not far enough in (sitting against a venous valve)?
- Is the tip kinked, suggesting it may be in a side vessel or against the vessel wall?
- If the line looks appropriately positioned, consider flushing gently, could the line be blocked?

2 Patient not ventilating well

- Is the ET tube down the right main bronchus (causes left lung collapse, or rarely right pneumothorax)? Retract tube to correct position (above).
- Is the ET tube blocked? Most have a secondary port allowing ventilation even if the main hole is blocked, get anaesthetic assistance!

3 Chest drain not bubbling/swinging

- Is it correctly positioned (see above)—if not in the pleural space, it cannot drain the air/fluid. Common problems include sitting in the soft tissue of the chest wall, sitting above the effusion or below the pneumothorax.
- Is it blocked? If draining an effusion and correctly positioned, consider gently flushing with 10mL of sterile saline, then aspirating. If not successful, obtain senior advice.
- Has the effusion/pneumothorax resolved? Pneumothoraces can rapidly resolve with a correctly positioned drain.

4 Unable to aspirate from NG tube

- Is NG tube not far enough in/coiled in oesophagus? Tip is radio-opaque and should be visible below the diaphragm, if it is coiled it may lie anywhere along the mediastinum.
- Is NG tube passing down the trachea and into the bronchus? The oesophagus is (generally speaking) a straight vertical line, if the tube veers off to left or right before it goes below the diaphragm, assume it is in the bronchus and replace it.

The consequences of malposition can be fatal, so it is worthwhile learning this basic anatomy, and remember that if you are unsure, always ask a senior.



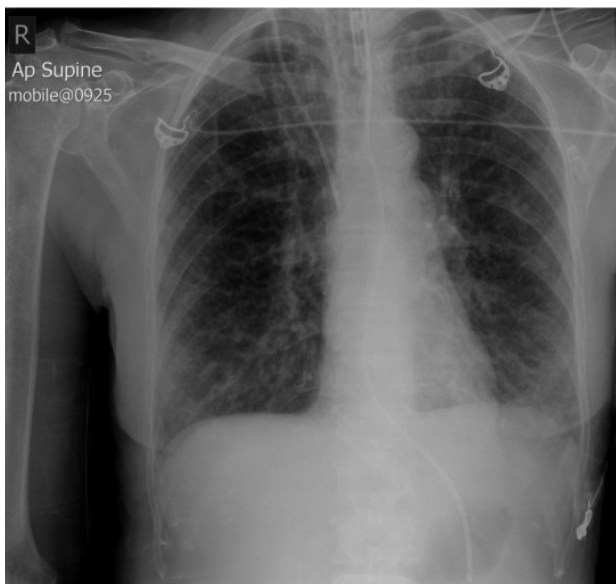


Fig 1. Image from ICU showing ET tube, CVC and NG tube *in situ* with ECG tracing leads placed across the chest.

Image courtesy of Dr Elen Thomson, Leeds Teaching Hospitals.

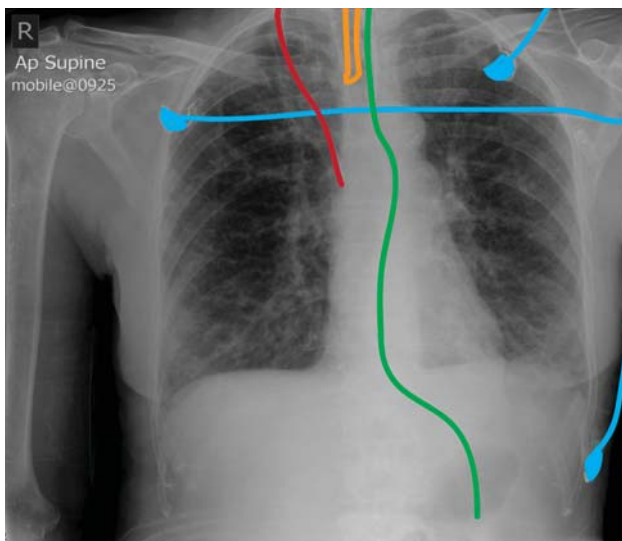


Fig 2. Knowing where lines and tubes should be placed is an essential skill. An ET tube (orange) should sit above the carina, this one is slightly high. The tip of the CVC (red, here a right internal jugular line) should lie in the SVC, as seen here, or just in the right atrium. The tip of the NG tube (green) must be seen below the diaphragm to ensure it is placed in the oesophagus, not the trachea. Do not confuse external leads (blue) with internal lines.



These are rarely diagnostic and involve a radiation dose equivalent to 50 CXRs. Indications for AXR with acute abdominal symptoms are:

- Suspicion of obstruction (or intussusception, eg in paediatrics).
- Acute flare of inflammatory bowel disease to confirm/exclude megacolon.
- Renal colic with known renal stones (if first presentation, CT urogram is better).
- Ingestion of a sharp or poisonous foreign body (eg lithium battery).

Bowel gas pattern is best assessed on supine images and free intraperitoneal gas (signifying perforation) is best seen on an erect CXR (fig 1, p609).

Gas patterns Look for: an abnormal quantity of gas in the stomach, small intestine, or colon. Decide whether you are looking at small or large bowel (fig 1).

Small bowel:	Large bowel:	Ileus:
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Smaller calibre• Central; multiple loops• <i>Valvuli conniventes</i>: folds that go from wall to wall, all the way across the lumen; more regular and finer than haustra• Grey (contains air and fluid)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Larger calibre• Peripheral• <i>Semi-lunar folds</i>:¹ don't go all the way across the lumen, but may appear to do so if viewed from an angle• Blacker (contains gas)²	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Both small and large bowel visible• There is no clear transition point that corresponds to an obstructing lesion

Small bowel diameter is normally ~2.5cm, the colon ~5cm, the caecum up to 10cm. Dilated small bowel is seen in obstruction and paralytic ileus. Dilated large bowel (≥6cm) is seen in both these, and also in 'toxic dilatation', and, in the elderly, in benign hypotonicity. Grossly dilated segments of bowel (coffee bean sign) are seen in sigmoid and caecal volvulae. Loss of normal mucosal folds and bowel wall thickening are seen in inflammatory colitis (eg IBD)—fig 2. 'Thumb-printing' is protrusion of thickened mural folds into the lumen, seen in large bowel ischaemia and colitis.

Gas outside the lumen You must explain any gas outside the lumen of the gut. It could be: **1** Pneumoperitoneum; signs on the supine AXR include: gas on both sides of the bowel wall (Rigler's sign), a triangle of gas in the RUQ trapped beneath the falciform ligament, and a circle of gas beneath the anterior abdominal wall. **2** Gas in the urinary tract—eg in the bladder from a fistula. **3** Gas in the biliary tree (pneumobilia, see MINIBOX), or rarely **4** Intramural gas, found in bowel necrosis, after endoscopy, necrotizing enterocolitis (neonates) and rarely pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis.³

Biliary tree Any stones? ~10% visible on plain AXR. Pneumobilia (see MINIBOX).

Urinary tract The kidneys normally have an equivalent length of 2½–3½ vertebral bodies and slope inferolaterally. The right is lower than the left ('pushed down' by the liver). Their outline can usually be seen as they have a surrounding layer of perinephric fat.

The ureters pass near the tips of the lumbar transverse processes, cross the sacroiliac joints, down to the ischial spines, and turn medially to join the bladder. Check the kidneys and ureteric courses for calculi (visible in 90% of cases)—this requires practice! Don't get confused by other calcifications⁴—eg phleboliths, recognized by their rounded shape and radiolucent centre, are harmless calcifications found in the perivesical veins.

Other soft tissues Look for size/position of: liver, spleen and bladder. A big liver will push bowel to the left side of the abdomen. An enlarged spleen displaces bowel and stomach bubble to the right. A big bladder elevates these. Liver and spleen shouldn't extend below the level of the 12th rib on a correctly aligned image.

Medical devices Double-J and biliary stents, nephrostomy and gastrostomy tubes, intrauterine devices, laparoscopic sterilization clips, and peritoneal dialysis (PD) catheters can all be seen on AXR.

Bones and joints Plain AXR is not the best image, but there may be important abnormalities. In the lumbar spine, look for scoliosis and degeneration (osteophytes, joint space narrowing).

Pneumobilia

- Post-ERCP/sphincterotomy
- Post-surgery (eg Whipple's)
- Recent stone passage⁴
- Gallbladder–bowel fistula³
- Anaerobic cholangitis (rare)





Fig 1. Multiple dilated air-filled loops of large and small bowel. This pattern is seen in ileus.

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



Fig 2. Abdominal film showing toxic megacolon associated with ulcerative colitis, note bowel wall thickening and loss of mucosal folds in the colon.

- 1 Semi-lunar folds (plicae semilunares) lie in between adjacent haustra.
- 2 The ascending colon contains liquid faeces, but the descending colon contains faecal pellets (*scyballa*).
- 3 Gallstone ileus: a big stone migrates directly from an inflamed gallbladder, eg to the transverse colon. Rigler's triad (seen in 25%): 1 pneum(at)obilia 2 small bowel obstruction 3 an ectopic gallstone.
- 4 The aorta may calcify, as may the pancreas (chronic pancreatitis) and gallbladder (=‘porcelain gallbladder’) from chronic inflammation from gallstones (associates with gallbladder cancer in 22%).



Since its first use in Atkinson Morley Hospital in 1972,⁵ CT has become a speedy and accurate aid to the clinician. Modern systems give whole-body images in under one breath (thanks to continuous, helical rather than sequential, axial data acquisition). Within a single slice (eg 1–5mm thick) CT records the **attenuation**¹ of different tissues to ionizing radiation and calculates a mean value for a given volume of tissue, called a **voxel**. This value is represented in greyscale as a single point, called a **pixel**, in the final 2D image. The greyscale of the image is measured on the Hounsfield scale (see **fig 1**) relative to the attenuation of water, which has a value of 0 Hounsfield units (HU) and ranges from less than –1000 HU (low attenuation) to more than +1000 HU (high attenuation). The human eye and the display systems have a very limited grey-scale range, so different windows are used to look at tissues of different density, eg bone or lung (**fig 2**).

CT with intravenous iodinated contrast medium gives the ability to image vascular anatomy and vascular structures (ie most organs) in arterial, venous and delayed phases after the injection of contrast medium (**fig 3**). It is usually given:

- IV for examining the chest, abdomen and pelvis
- IV to look for infection or neoplasia (increased blood flow to affected area)
- Orally 1 hour before examining stomach or small bowel (contrast medium = positive contrast, water = negative contrast)
- Rectally for examining colonic lumen although CT colonography or ‘virtual colonoscopy’ (see p757) uses insufflated air to define anatomy more clearly

CTs of the brain, spine, and musculoskeletal system are normally done without IV contrast medium. Also see *Contrast medium in imaging*, p762.

CT as the examination of choice

- Staging and monitoring malignant disease
- Intracranial pathology, eg stroke, trauma, **tICP**, and space-occupying lesions
- Trauma
- Pre-operative assessment of complex masses
- Following abdominal surgery

Streak artefact Remember that the CT slice image is a matrix representation of the attenuation produced by rotating around the patient. High-attenuation items such as metal fillings, clips and prostheses (and even bone) can cause interference. Other CT artefacts: p735.

Specific CT techniques, eg 3D reconstruction (**fig 4**)

- **CT angiography** uses CT for imaging blood vessels.
- **CT urography** is the image of choice for the ureters.
- **Perfusion CT** maps cerebral blood flow by acquiring images after an IV bolus of contrast medium (**fig 5**). Although it is widely and frequently used in stroke thrombolysis,⁶ there is no clear evidence base as yet. But it does have advantages of being less invasive than angiography and more available than MRI,⁷ with the possibility for hub-and-spoke telenetworks to improve access to stroke thrombolysis.⁸
- **CT combined with PET** (see p752) has an increased sensitivity and specificity over each alone, although with a much higher radiation dose.

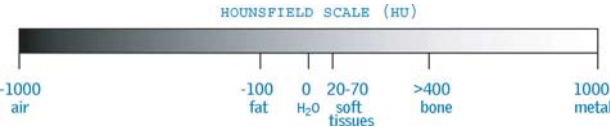


Fig 1. The Hounsfield scale.

Courtesy of Dr T Turmezei

1 Attenuation is loss of energy of a wave from absorption, refraction, reflection and/or divergence.



Fig 2. Axial high-resolution CT chest on a lung window algorithm; note solitary lesion in the right lung (Wegener's granulomatosis, now known as granulomatosis with polyangiitis). Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

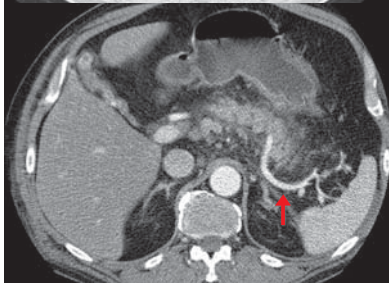


Fig 3. Axial CT of the abdomen after IV contrast (arterial phase). The tortuous splenic artery is enhanced (arrow)—so is the aorta, but not the inferior vena cava. Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

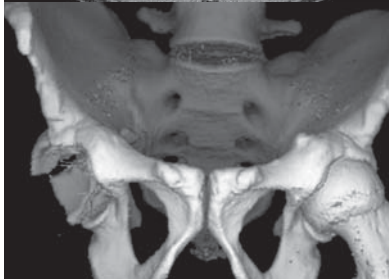


Fig 4. Surface rendered 3D CT reconstruction of the pelvis. The posterior aspect of the right acetabulum is fractured. The right femur has been removed digitally. Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.

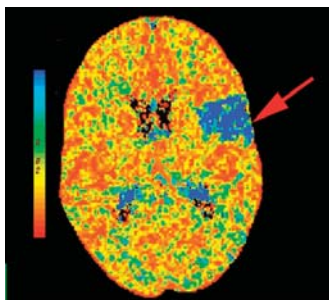


Fig 5. Head perfusion CT showing ischaemia around the Sylvian fissure (arrow).

Courtesy of Dr C Cousens.

Too many CTs? (CT≈40% of iatrogenic radiation; ≈1.5% of all cancers)☼

In one review, no substantial group of patients who were undergoing unnecessary CT could be found, but always balance benefits of CT vs other images with less or no radiation (ultrasound; MRI).⁹ To get the best balance, talk to a radiologist. Risk is worst when screening healthy populations, and in children.



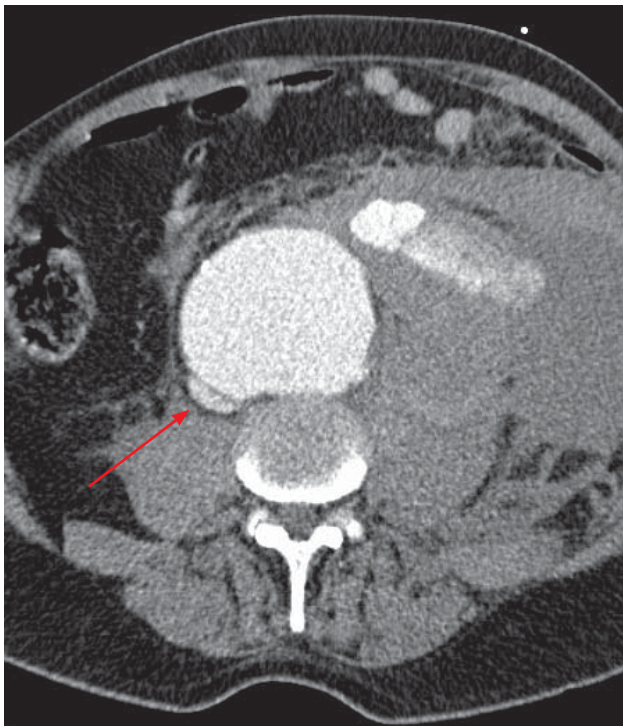


Fig 1. The history was of central abdominal pain with a non-peritonitic abdomen on examination. However, in this patient the CT shows a leaking AAA; by using CT scanning the interventional radiologists can go on to repair this using stents, inserted via arterial puncture and deployed in the aneurysm. This kind of endovascular aneurysm repair (EVAR) is increasingly used in the treatment of ruptured AAA as well as elective repair of intact but enlarging aneurysms.

The changing role of CT in acute abdominal pain In the days when general surgeons did their rounds towards the end of an on-call day, there would be wards of patients with undiagnosed abdominal pain having 'drip-and-suck' regimens (IVI and NGT) while awaiting improvement or the unequivocal need for surgery. On opening up, the surgeon would be confident that whatever he found he could deal with. But with the waning of the general surgeon, and the waxing of minimally invasive procedures, specialist surgical teams and highly accurate imaging, it is now best (unless immediate surgery is essential) to match the team to the condition diagnosed by imaging. CT and ultrasound are the best imaging techniques in abdominal pain. So, in this context, drip-and-suck is on the ebb, giving way to imaging, accurate diagnosis, early intervention, rapid discharge or referral to the appropriate team.





Fig 2. Triple phase CT abdomen, cropped to show the pancreas. Top panel—unenanced image, middle panel—arterial phase of contrast medium to look for pseudocysts and parenchymal enhancement, bottom panel—portal venous phase of contrast medium to look at veins. The history here was also central abdominal pain with a non-peritonitic abdomen. Here the CT shows an enlarged pancreatic head with fat stranding around the duodenopancreatic groove, and on the portal venous phase, two small areas of fluid attenuation posteriorly consistent with small pseudocysts. The CT was diagnostic of groove pancreatitis.



- 1 A large proportion of the human body is fat or water (~80%).
- 2 Fat and water contain a large number of hydrogen nuclei (unpaired protons).
- 3 The spin of a positively charged hydrogen nucleus gives it magnetic polarity.

Thus...

- Placing the human body in a magnetic field aligns its hydrogen nuclei either with (parallel) or against (anti-parallel) the field.
- A radiofrequency (RF) pulse at the resonant frequency flips nuclei away from their original alignment by an angle depending on the amount of energy they absorb.
- When the RF pulse stops, the nuclei flip back (or relax) into their original alignment, emitting the energy (called an echo) that was absorbed from the RF field.
- Measuring and plotting the energy of the returning signal according to location (provided the nuclei haven't moved) gives a picture of fat, tissue, and water as distributed throughout the body.
- The hydrogen nuclei in flowing blood move after receiving the RF pulses. The echo is not detected, and so the vessel lumen appears black.

Rather than radiodensity or attenuation, the correct descriptive terminology for the greyscale seen in MRI is **signal intensity**: high signal appears white and low signal black (see below). **Weighting** is a quality of MRI that is dependent on the time between the RF pulses (**repetition time**, TR) and the time between an RF pulse and the echo (**echo time**, TE). MR images are most commonly T1-weighted (good for visualizing anatomy) or T2-weighted (good for visualizing disease) but can also be a mixture of both, called **proton density** (PD) weighting. FLAIR sequences produce heavily T2-weighted images. A good way to determine the weighting of an MR image is to look for water—eg in the aqueous humour of the eye, CSF, or synovial fluid (see TABLE, fig 1).

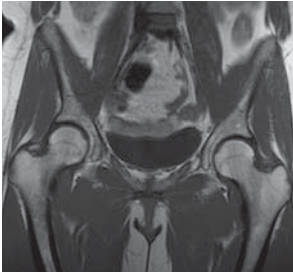
	T1-WEIGHTED	T2-WEIGHTED	
TR	short (<1000ms)	long (>2000ms)	
TE	short (<30ms)	long (>80ms)	
LOW SIGNAL	water flowing Hb fresh Hb haemosiderin	bone flowing Hb deoxyHb haemosiderin melanin	
HIGH SIGNAL	bone fat cholesterol gadolinium (p762) metHb	water cholesterol fresh Hb metHb	

Fig 1. T1-weighted MRI of the hips.¹

Advantages MRI's great bonus is that it does not involve ionizing radiation. It has no known long-term adverse effects. It is *excellent for imaging soft tissues* (water- and hence proton-dense) and is preferred over CT for many intracranial, head and neck, spinal, and musculoskeletal disorders. Multiplanar acquisition of images can provide multiple views and 3D reconstruction from one scan. MR angiography is also excellent for reconstructing vascular anatomy. This avoids the need for invasive angiography with femoral puncture or CT contrast in patients with renal impairment.

Disadvantages Poor imaging of lung parenchyma and GI mucosa. More claustrophobic and noisy than CT. High cost combined with limited availability.

Contraindications **Absolute:** •Pacemakers; other implanted electrical devices. •Metallic foreign bodies, eg intra-ocular (consider orbital x-ray to exclude), shrapnel. •Non-compatible surgical clips/coils/heart valves. **Relative:** •If unable to complete the pre-scan questionnaire. •1st trimester of pregnancy (not currently approved). •Cochlear implants. NB: orthopaedic prostheses and extracranial metallic clips are generally safe. ►If uncertain, ask a radiologist. **Contrast:** •Renal impairment (gadolinium can cause systemic fibrosis in patients with CKD¹⁰). •Allergy. •Pregnancy.

1 Coronal T1-weighted MRI of the hips—so normal adult bone marrow is high signal due to fatty yellow marrow, while red marrow gives a lower signal. There is also low signal from urine in the bladder.



Fig 2. T2-weighted sagittal MRI of the cervical spine. There is impingement of the spinal cord at the C4/5 and C5/6 levels caused by degenerative disease. C2 (axis) is identifiable from the odontoid peg, which is embryologically derived from the body of C1 (atlas).

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.

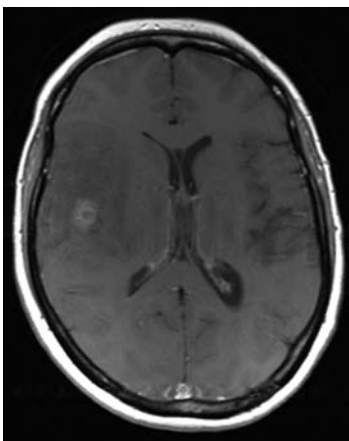


Fig 3. Axial T1-weighted MRI of the brain post-IV gadolinium. In the right temporo-parietal region there is a small area of high signal enhancement with a more central area of low signal, surrounded by a region of low signal (presumably vasogenic cerebral oedema) in comparison to the normal brain tissue. This is all causing mass effect with effacement of the sulci and adjacent right frontal horn of the lateral ventricle. There is very subtle midline shift.

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.

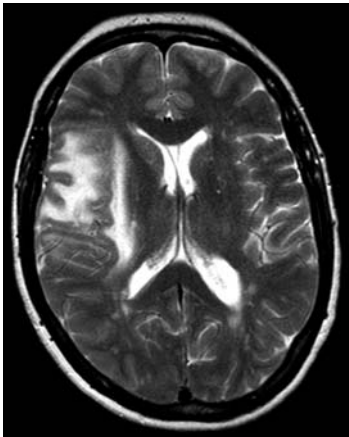


Fig 4. Axial T2-weighted MRI of the same patient at the same level as **fig 3**. The high signal in the temporo-parietal region shows a mass effect. The diagnosis was of a solitary metastasis. In this T2-weighted image the oedema and the cerebrospinal fluid within the ventricles and cortical sulci are of high signal due to their water content.

Courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



Unlike the other methods of imaging, us doesn't use electromagnetic radiation. Instead, it relies on properties of longitudinal sound waves. This has made it a popular and safe form of imaging (eg in obs & gynae, testes, gallbladders, vessels, fistulae, thyroid). High-frequency sound waves (3–15MHz) are made by a piezo-electric quartz crystal; its size, shape, and resonant frequency determine tissue penetration and image quality. NB: transducers act as transmitter and receiver due to the piezo-electric properties of quartz crystal.¹ Passage of sound waves through tissue is affected by **attenuation** and **reflection**. Attenuation disperses waves out of the receiver's range, but it is the waves reflected to the receiver that determine the image. Its quality depends on the difference in **acoustic impedance** between adjacent soft tissues.

Processing: with the help of software a real-time 2D image is made. During processing an average attenuation value is assumed throughout the tissue examined, so if a higher-than-average attenuation structure is in the superficial tissues, then everything deep to it will be in a low intensity (black) **acoustic shadow**. If a lower-than-average attenuation object is in the superficial tissues then everything deep to it will be high intensity (white) or **enhanced**. If a tissue interface is strongly disparate, then all the waves are reflected back, making it impossible to image beyond it. See also **figs 1-4**.

Acoustic shadow
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fibrous tissue• Calcification• Gas
Acoustic enhancement
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fluid-filled and cystic structures

Modes B (brightness) is the most common, giving 2D slices that map the different magnitudes of echo in greyscale. **M** (movement) traces the movement of structures within the line of the sound beam. It is used in imaging, eg heart valves (p106).

Duplex ultrasonography (flow and morphology) By combining Doppler effects (shifts in wavelength caused by movement of a source or reflecting surface) with B-mode ultrasound technology, flow characteristics of blood can be inferred (**fig 1**). This is extremely useful in arterial and venous studies, and echocardiography.

Advantages Portable; fast; non-ionizing; cheap; real-time; can be used with intervention; can enter organs, eg rectum, vagina, gut. **Endoscopic us** can be used to stage and biopsy lung and GI tract cancers, eg stomach, pancreas, ¹¹ and also image the heart = transoesophageal echocardiogram or TOE, p106.

Disadvantages Operator dependent—interoperator variability high; poor quality if patient is obese; interference from bone, bowel gas, calculi, or superimposed organs can limit depth and quality of imaging.

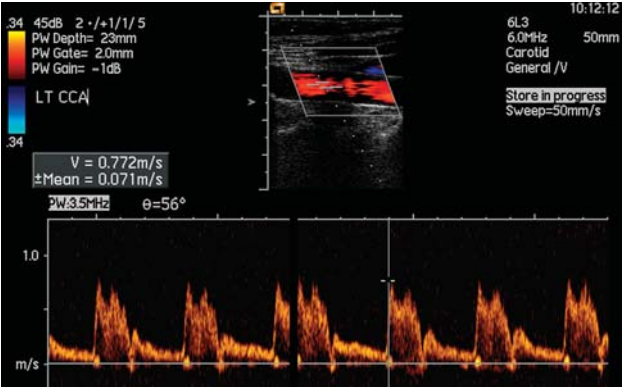


Fig 1. A normal Duplex us of the right common carotid artery with a flow rate=77cm/s. The Doppler trace (orange) is displayed below the main image.

1 When a voltage is applied to a piezo-electric crystal it changes shape, emitting a sound wave when it vibrates. In reverse, when a sound wave physically alters its shape an electrical current is induced.

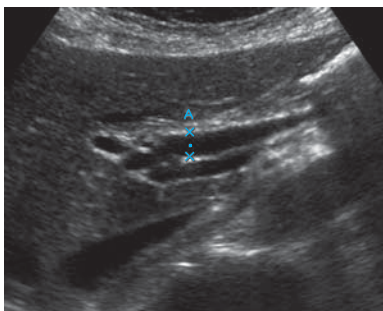


Fig 2. Ultrasound of the liver shows the CBD to be dilated. Distal obstruction of the CBD gives proximal dilatation of the duct. It is important to correlate the width of the CBD with the alkaline phosphatase, as the normal diameter varies with age and previous interventions.¹² Also check that the distal CBD tapers as it enters the duodenum. NB: the portal vein lies posterior to the duct (along with the hepatic artery) in the free edge of the lesser omentum. Next, ask "What is causing the obstruction?" and "Where can I get that information?"

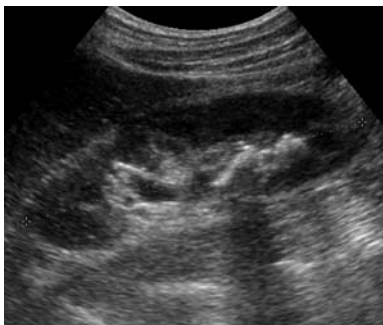


Fig 3. Ultrasound of the kidney. At first the image may seem normal but there is a wedge of posterior acoustic shadow cast by the object which is causing increased echogenicity in the lower pole calyces. Acoustic shadows in the kidney suggest stones—as here—or nephrocalcinosis.

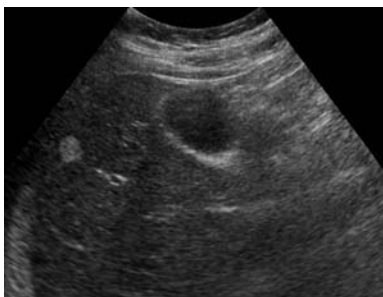


Fig 4. Longitudinal ultrasound of the right lobe of the liver showing a well-defined small area of echogenicity. This is the typical appearance of a liver haemangioma, a very common benign liver lesion.

All images courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



The majority of imaging is concerned with passing external waves (eg radiation) through the patient to a detector, and measuring scatter, slowing or other alterations by various tissues. Nuclear medicine is the opposite; it measures emitted radiation from an internal source, introduced into the patient via injection, inhalation or ingestion. It can be diagnostic (eg PET scanning) and therapeutic (eg radio-iodine (I^{131}) ablation in thyrotoxicosis). When first introduced it was nicknamed 'New-Clear' medicine, but then relabelled as 'Un-Clear' medicine, as it can show where a problem is, but not usually what the problem is. Combining it with CT can overcome this.

Because molecules labelled with radioisotopes are introduced into the patient, there is exposure to ionizing radiation, though doses are usually less than those from a CT abdomen (see TABLE, p733). The selection of molecule for labelling depends on the tissue of interest, as it should be something that will be readily taken up by that tissue, eg bisphosphonates for bone, glucose for fast-turnover tissue. Examples include:

Ventilation/perfusion (VQ) scan Inhaled Xenon-133 (^{133}Xe) or technetium (Tc) plus injected $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ macro-aggregates, which lodge in lung capillaries. Normal perfusion excludes PE but ventilation component requires a normal CXR for comparison (figs 1&2).

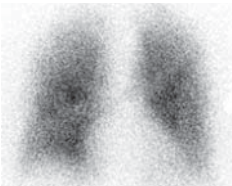


Fig 1. Ventilation scintigram.



Fig 2. Perfusion scintigram showing mismatches with fig 1.

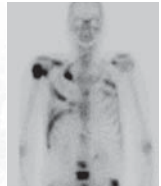


Fig 3. Bone scintigram showing metastases.

Bone scintigraphy $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ labelled bisphosphonates are readily taken up by bone, and concentrate in areas of pathology (tumours, metastases¹, fractures) (fig 3).

Thyroid disease TcO_4 is used for differentiating Graves', toxic multinodular goitre, and subacute thyroiditis (fig 1, p603) as well as identifying ectopic tissue, functioning nodules, and residual/recurrent thyroid tissue after surgery. ~15% of cold (non-functioning) nodules are malignant. Hot nodules are often toxic adenomas.

Phaeochromocytoma Iodine-123 (^{123}I) meta-iodobenzylguanidine (MIBG) is taken up by sympathetic tissues, and indicates functioning, ectopic, and metastatic adrenal medullary (+other neural crest) tumours. ^{131}I -MIBG is also used for treatment.

Hyperparathyroidism $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ -methoxyisobutyl isonitrile (MIBI) scans can detect parathyroid adenomas.

Haemorrhage Red cells are removed from the patient and labelled with $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$, then re-injected to allow identification of a bleeding point. Used in both acute (3rd-line after endoscopy and CT) and chronic GI bleeding, red cell scans are more sensitive than angiography and useful in intermittent bleeding.

Renal function Chromium-51 (^{51}Cr) EDTA or DTPA ($^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$, p683) is used to assess GFR. $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ -mercapto-acetyltriglycine (MAG3) technique assesses relative (left-right) renal function and renal transit time (eg in renovascular disease). $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ -dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scanning (fig 4) is the gold standard for evaluation of renal scarring that occurs, eg in reflux nephropathy.

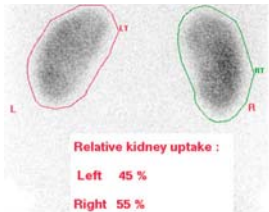


Fig 4. DMS showing relative renal function of each kidney.

1 This is much more sensitive than x-ray, where lesions may not appear until >50% of bone matrix has been destroyed.



Position emission tomography (PET)

This is becoming one of the key investigations in malignancy but also has a wide range of other uses. It maps glucose metabolism in the body. ^{18}F -fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG), a short half-life (110min) glucose analogue, is taken up by metabolically active tissues. It decays rapidly to produce a positron that, after travelling a few millimetres through tissue, annihilates with an electron to produce a pair of high-energy photons (gamma rays), which PET detects. *Neoplasms* have high uptake of FDG, but so do benign inflammatory lesions. *Severely underperfused tissues*, such as those supplied by a critically stenotic coronary artery, switch from fatty acid metabolism to glycolytic metabolism, and hence take up higher levels of FDG and can also be detected by PET. This allows identification of viable (glycolytically active) tissue, eg in myocardial perfusion scanning (p754). PET can be combined with CT or MRI to provide high quality images combining anatomy with physiology, and therefore be used to guide management of malignancy and other conditions such as myocardial ischaemia.

However, PET detects all metabolically active tissue. Normal high uptake of FDG occurs in brain, liver, kidney, bladder, larynx and lymphoid tissue of pharynx and must be considered when assessing images. Inflammation or infection also increase uptake of FDG and can have a false positive result when assessing for malignancy (eg sarcoid, TB).

Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) is similar to PET but rather than using positron emission from glucose metabolism, it uses a radioisotope labelled molecule as per conventional nuclear imaging, but with two gamma cameras for detection. The images produced are of lower resolution than PET but it is more widely available as the isotopes used are longer lived and more easily available.

Oncology PET, PET-CT and SPECT have become some of the most widely used tools for both diagnostics and follow-up in oncology imaging. They can identify hot-spots, with high uptake of FDG, suggesting primary disease or metastases; however, because of the non-specific nature of FDG uptake, diagnosis must be confirmed with histology of suspicious lesions. They are better indicated for *staging* of many solid organ malignancies (lung, melanoma, oesophageal) as well as lymphomas, and are particularly useful for *planning* of radiotherapy and surgery for both primary disease and metastases.

V/Q scintigram or CT pulmonary angiogram (CTPA)?

The results of the recent PIOPE II trial suggest that CTPA should be the investigation of choice for suspected pulmonary embolism. However, imaging should only be carried out where there is a moderate or high clinical suspicion of an embolism from history and examination, as well as baseline tests such as ECG and CXR.

- If low or moderate probability of embolism, check D-dimer; if this is negative then no further investigation is required.
- In the presence of a positive D-dimer, or where assessment gives a high probability of embolism, then CTPA should be the first choice for imaging with consideration of venous phase imaging of the pelvis and legs to assess for source of clot.
- In patients for whom contrast or high dose radiation is undesirable (CKD, young women—avoid irradiating breasts, pregnancy) consider bilateral USS Doppler legs \pm VQ as 1st-line.

PIOPE II suggested a positive predictive value for CTPA of 96% if there was a high clinical probability. Sensitivity was 90% and specificity 95%.



Fig 5. CT pulmonary angiogram (CTPA) with a large grey filling defect in the main pulmonary arteries, showing a saddle embolus.



CT

Cardiac CT Recent improvements in CT technology have made routine cardiac imaging possible. 64 slice CT, because of its speed and resolution, can image coronary arteries and exclude significant disease with a negative predictive value (NPV) of 97–99%. It can also visualize CABG patency, provide coronary artery Ca^{2+} scoring (a risk factor for coronary artery disease, p111), demonstrate cardiac anatomy including congenital anomalies, and estimate ventricular function.

Vascular CT Imaging of the vasculature has become routine in the emergency assessment room for suspected dissections, ruptured aneurysms and arterial and venous thromboses (see p753 for CTPA). CT angiography has overtaken invasive angiography in the assessment of many conditions such as stable angina and renal artery stenosis.

Catheter angiography

Wherever intervention may be required, contrast studies such as angiography are unrivalled, eg angioplasty or stenting of vessels, endovascular repair of aneurysms, clipping/coiling of aneurysms (see p760). Remember that these have a high burden of both radiation and contrast medium, so check renal function before requesting. **Complications** include those of arterial puncture (bleeding, infection, thrombosis, dissection, pseudoaneurysm formation) plus cholesterol emboli, thromboemboli and vasospasm.



Fig 1. CT angiogram showing type A (ascending) aortic dissection with haemopericardium.

MRI

Cardiac MRI has lower resolution than CT but is superior for functional assessment. This, coupled with a lack of radiation, makes it ideal for the assessment of congenital heart disease. Flow velocities can be measured and, because the flow is proportional to the pressure differences, degrees of stenosis and regurgitation across heart valves can be calculated. Myocardial infarction, perfusion and viability can also be imaged with the use of IV gadolinium contrast medium (p762). Both CT and MR use ECG-gating to acquire the imaging data and relate it to the position in the cardiac cycle, thus minimizing the movement artefact (best when the patient is in sinus rhythm).

Vascular MRI is used to limit radiation exposure where multiple investigations may be required over a long time period, eg follow-up of aortic root size in a young patient with Marfan's syndrome (p720) or Takayasu's arteritis (p726).

Ultrasound

Non-invasive with no radiation, ultrasound is excellent for assessing peripheral vessels, particularly with regard to thrombus, stenosis, malformations and vessel wall thickness. Interest has grown in the use of ultrasound as an assessment tool for cardiovascular risk. Vessel wall thickness has been suggested as a surrogate marker for atherosclerosis and there is some evidence that it may predict long-term cardiovascular outcomes.¹³



Myocardial perfusion imaging A non-invasive method of assessing regional myocardial blood flow and the cellular integrity of myocytes. The technique uses radionuclide tracers which cross the myocyte membrane and are trapped intracellularly. **Thallium-201** (^{201}Tl), a K^+ analogue, is distributed via regional myocardial blood flow and requires cellular integrity for uptake. Newer **technetium-99** (^{99}Tc)-based agents are similar to ^{201}Tl but have improved imaging characteristics, and can be used to assess myocardial perfusion and LV performance in the same study (fig 2). Myocardial territories supplied by unobstructed coronary vessels have normal perfusion whereas regions supplied by stenosed coronary vessels have poorer relative perfusion, a difference that is accentuated by exercise. For this reason, exercise tests are used in conjunction with radionuclide imaging to identify areas at risk of ischaemia/infarction. Exercise scans are compared with resting views: **reversible** (ischaemia) or **fixed defects** (infarct) can be seen and the coronary artery involved reliably predicted. Drugs (eg *adenosine*, *dobutamine* and *dipyridamole*) can also be used to induce perfusion differences between normal and underperfused tissues.

Myocardial perfusion imaging adds information in patients presenting with acute MI (to determine the amount of myocardium salvaged by thrombolysis) and in diagnosing acute chest pain in those without classical ECG changes (to define the presence of significant perfusion defects).

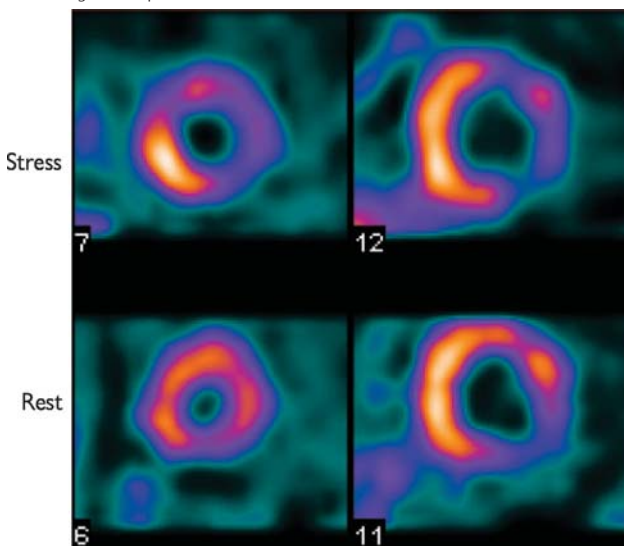


Fig 2. ^{99}Tc perfusion study showing perfusion defect in the left ventricle anterior and lateral walls at stress which is reversible (difference between stress and rest images). This study is good for small vessel disease such as in diabetes. CT and coronary angiography do not show small vessel disease well.

Images courtesy of Dr C Cousins.

Multiple gated acquisition (MUGA) scanning is a non-invasive way to measure left ventricle ejection fraction. After injection of $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ labelled RBCs, a dynamic image of the left ventricle is obtained for a few hundred heartbeats by gamma camera. A widespread use for MUGA scanning has been in the pre-op assessment of patients for vascular surgery. However, one review suggested that it was an accurate predictor of long-term prognosis but not of operative risk. However, also consider that gated heart pool LVEF is more reproducible than echo. LVEF stress echocardiography and perfusion scintigraphy may have more clinical relevance in this role, particularly in monitoring of women receiving Herceptin[®] treatment, which can lead to cardiac dysfunction.



Ultrasound

US is useful for imaging gallbladder, liver, kidneys (see p758) and masses. Consider requesting when investigating abdominal pain, abnormal LFTs, jaundice, hepatomegaly, renal dysfunction and masses. Ensure the patient is 'nil by mouth' for 4 hours beforehand (aids gallbladder filling). Pelvic ultrasound needs a full bladder, consider clamping the catheter if appropriate. Ultrasound may also guide diagnostic biopsy and therapeutic aspiration of cysts or collections.

CT

CT is widely used in the investigation of acute abdominal pain (see p744-747). It is unparalleled in the detection of free gas and intra-abdominal collections, and allows good visualization of the gut and retroperitoneal areas. Oral or IV contrast medium enhances definition (p744). The big disadvantage is the radiation dose.

CT colonography (CTC) Although endoscopic evaluation is still the gold standard for diagnosis of colonic neoplasia, CTC ('virtual colonoscopy' see [fig 1](#)) is increasingly used in the diagnosis of colonic abnormalities and has superseded barium enema here. CTC uses CO₂ insufflation, usually coupled with an oral stool tagging agent. Intravenous contrast medium is not necessarily required, but can help delineate the bowel wall. The advantage of CTC is that it can be performed in patients who are too frail to undergo the bowel purgation required for endoscopy (it requires only a low-residue diet) and if negative is a definitive test. However, if polyps or masses are seen then patients will usually go on to have a colonoscopy. It allows staging of malignancy by assessing for liver and nodal metastases at the same time as assessing the colon; this is also useful in patients with a stenosing tumour, where it can be used to assess the proximal colon when endoscopy is not possible. Disadvantages are that interpretation takes time and requires a specialist radiologist¹⁴. For polyps >9mm specificity is 97% but sensitivity is 85% and drops to 48% if <6mm.¹⁵

Wireless capsule endoscopy See p256.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

MRI gives good soft tissue imaging, helping diagnose many benign and malignant lesions. Often used to image the liver, MRCP (magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography) gives detail of the biliary system and the pancreatic duct ([fig 2](#)). MRCP has excellent sensitivity and specificity for diagnosing common bile duct stones—when these are >6mm both are 99% (although accuracy is lower for stones <6mm, see p636)—and is the imaging modality of choice.¹⁶

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) ([fig 3](#))

Indications: No longer routinely used for diagnosis, it still has a significant therapeutic role: sphincterotomy for common bile duct stones; stenting of benign or malignant strictures and obtaining brushings to diagnose the nature of a stricture.

Method: A catheter is advanced from a side-viewing duodenoscope via the ampulla into the common bile duct. Contrast medium is injected and x-rays taken to show lesions in the biliary tree and pancreatic ducts. **Complications:** Pancreatitis; bleeding; cholangitis; perforation. Mortality <0.2% overall; 0.4% if performing stone removal.

Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS)

See p750. Commonly used in diagnosis of upper GI abnormalities, and is excellent for diagnosis of oesophageal, gastric and pancreatic cancers. It allows staging by assessing depth of invasion, as well as histological diagnosis by biopsy of lesions.

Contrast studies ([fig 4](#))

These can help in dysphagia (p240). Real-time fluoroscopic imaging studies assess swallowing function. Barium gives better contrast but iodine-based water-soluble contrast medium is used if there is a concern of perforation. **Barium enemas** are used less frequently with the increasing use of CT colonography.



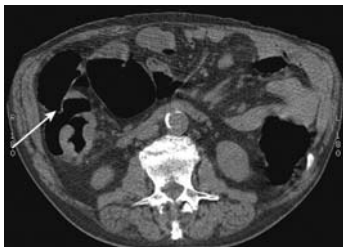


Fig 1. Axial CT colonogram: mural thickening (?ascending colon tumour).

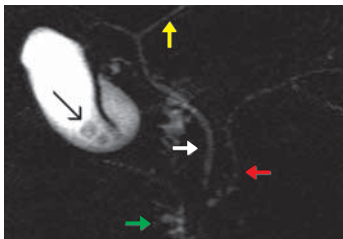


Fig 2. MRCP of the biliary system showing: left hepatic duct (yellow arrow); multiple gallstones in the gallbladder (black arrow); common bile duct (white arrow); pancreatic duct (red arrow); duodenum (green arrow).

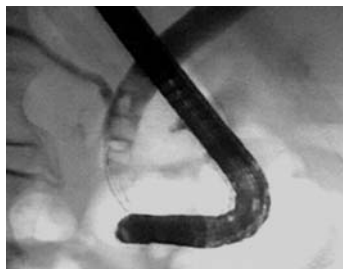


Fig 3. The ERCP shows a dilated common bile duct. The multiple filling defects are calculi within and obstructing the duct (remember the orientation of this image is flipped because the patient is prone for the procedure!).



Fig 4. Barium swallow: note 'corkscrew' appearance of the oesophagus found in some motility disorders.

Figs 1-4, courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



Ultrasound

Imaging modality of choice for genitourinary problems. Can be used to assess:

Kidneys

- Renal size—small in chronic kidney disease, large in renal masses, cysts, hypertrophy if other kidney missing, polycystic kidney disease (fig 1), and rarities (eg amyloidosis, p364).¹⁷
- Hydronephrosis, which may indicate ureteric obstruction or reflux (fig 1, p645).
- Perinephric collections (trauma, post-biopsy).
- Transplanted kidneys (collections, obstruction, perfusion).

Lower urinary tract

- Bladder residual volume: useful in assessment of the need to catheterize. Post-micturition residuals.
- Prostate: transrectal ultrasound enables US-guided biopsy of focal lesions. NB: prostate size does not correlate with symptoms.

Other

- Ovarian cysts, size, infections (pyosalpinx), uterine fibroids and other masses.
- Testicular masses, hydrocele, varicocele.

Advantages: Fast; cheap; independent of renal function; no IV contrast or radiation risk. **Disadvantages:** Intraluminal masses (transitional cell ca) in the upper tracts may not be seen; not a functional study; only suggests obstruction if there is dilatation of the collecting system (95% of obstructed kidneys) and so can miss obstruction from, eg, retroperitoneal fibrosis.

CT

First-choice in renal colic. No contrast medium is used so it is safe in renal impairment; such unenhanced images miss <2% of stones,¹⁸ and can show other pathologies (fig 2). With contrast, CT can delineate masses (cystic or solid, contrast enhancement, calcification, local/distant extension, renal vein involvement); renal trauma (presence of 2 kidneys; haemorrhage; devascularization; laceration; urine leak); and retroperitoneal lesions. CT has all but replaced intravenous urography and the radiation dose is similar.

Plain abdominal x-ray

Can be used to look at the kidneys, the paths of the ureters, and bladder. However, in practice it is only useful for monitoring known renal calculi.

Contrast studies

Retrograde pyelography/ureterograms are good at showing pelvi-calyceal, ureteric anatomy, and transitional cell carcinomas (TCCs). Contrast medium is injected via a ureteric catheter. With the advent of cystoscopy, allowing immediate intervention, these are rarely done in isolation. However, contrast medium is routinely used in cystoscopic placement of retrograde stents for obstruction.

Percutaneous nephrostomy Used in obstruction to decompress the renal pelvis, which is punctured under local anaesthetic with imaging guidance. Images are obtained following contrast injection (antegrade pyelogram). A nephrostomy tube is then placed to allow decompression, sometimes followed by an antegrade stent if there is no easily treatable cause of obstruction.

Renal arteriography (fig 3)

Therapeutic indications: angioplasty; stenting; embolization (bleeding tumour, trauma, AV malformation).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

Soft tissue resolution can help clarify equivocal CT findings. Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) helps image renal artery anatomy/stenosis (fig 4) and is also used in the assessment of potential live donors for kidney transplant, as well as to monitor patients following embolization of tumours, arteriovenous malformations and aneurysms.

Radionuclide imaging See p753.



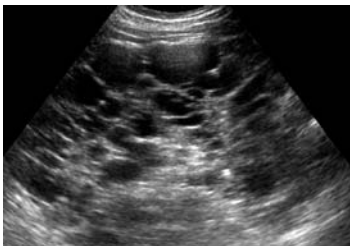


Fig 1. Ultrasound of the kidney showing multiple simple cysts.

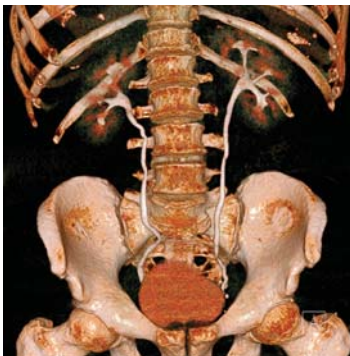


Fig 2. CT MIP (maximum intensity projection)—3D reconstruction of CT urogram showing normal appearances of both kidneys, ureters and bladder.

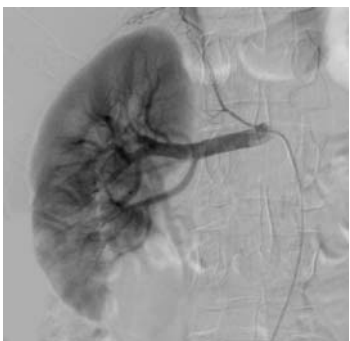


Fig 3. Renal artery digital subtraction angiogram (DSA; DSA is the final arbiter of renal artery stenosis). It is possible to tell that this is a DSA as no other structure has any definition or contrast in the image. There is, however, some interference from overlying bowel gas, which is not an uncommon problem. GI tract peristalsis can be diminished during the examination by using iv buscopan.



Fig 4. Coronal 3d MRA of the kidneys showing two renal arteries supplying the left kidney. This is important information pre-transplant. Anomalous renal arteries are common and, like the normal renal arteries, are end arteries, hence the consequence of infarction if tied at surgery.



CT

CT is the imaging modality of choice for patients presenting with acute neurological symptoms suggestive of a stroke. It is better than MRI at showing *acute haemorrhage* and *fractures*, and is much easier to do in ill or anaesthetized patients, and so is good in emergencies. The attenuation of biological soft tissues is in a narrow range from about +80 for blood and muscle, to 0 for CSF, and down to -100 for fat (Hounsfield units, p744). IV contrast medium initially gives an angiographic effect, whitening the vessels. Later, if there is a defect in the blood-brain barrier (eg tumours or infection) contrast medium will opacify a lesion's margins, giving enhancing white areas.

- Some CNS areas, eg pituitary gland, choroid plexus, have no blood-brain barrier and enhance normally.
- Fresh blood is of higher attenuation (ie whiter) than brain tissue.
- In old haematomas Hb breaks down and loses attenuation, so a subacute subdural haematoma at 2wks may be of the same attenuation as adjacent brain.
- A chronic subdural haematoma will be of relatively low attenuation.

CT is often used in *acute stroke* to exclude haemorrhage (eg pre-anticoagulation) and now to detect clot in a major artery, such as the middle cerebral or basilar, as part of management decisions regarding thrombolysis. The actual area of infarction/ischaemia will not show up for a day or so, and will be low-attenuation cytotoxic oedema (affecting white and grey matter—look for loss of grey matter definition).

Tumours and abscesses appear similar, eg a ring enhancing mass, surrounding vasogenic oedema, and mass effect. Vasogenic oedema (from leaky capillaries) is extracellular and spreads through the white matter (grey matter spared). Mass effect causes compression of the sulci and ipsilateral ventricle, and may also cause herniation (subfalcine, transtentorial, or tonsillar). ▶ See p487 (and also fig 2).

Another indication for CT is acute, *severe headache*, eg suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage. An unenhanced CT may show acute blood, but if not will demonstrate if there is hydrocephalus or any other abnormality that might make lumbar puncture unsafe.

Cranial CT perfusion assesses cerebral blood flow without the need for invasive catheter angiography (fig 5, p745). 3D CT angiography gives excellent mapping of the cerebral circulation (fig 3), and can be done directly after unenhanced CT, looking for an aneurysm if the unenhanced CT shows subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

See p748. Example of MRI in stroke: p745. The chief image sequences are:

- **T1-weighted images:** Give good anatomical detail to which the T2 image can be compared. Fat is brightest (signal intensity ↑); other tissues are darker to varying degrees. Flowing blood is low signal. Gadolinium-DTPA contrast medium (p762) usually results in an increase in signal intensity.
- **T2-weighted images:** These provide the best detection of most lesions as they usually contain some oedema or fluid and therefore appear white (eg fig 4, p749). Fat and fluid appear brightest. Flowing blood is again low signal.

Magnetic resonance angiography maps carotid, vertebrobasilar and cerebral arterial circulations (and sinuses, veins). Functional MRI can image local blood flow.

Catheter angiography

Fig 4 is less commonly used since the advent of MRA and CT angiography and perfusion techniques, though it has the advantage of allowing immediate therapy—eg coil embolization of saccular aneurysms.

Radionuclide imaging

See p752. PET is mostly used as a research tool in dementia, but perfusion scintigraphy scan be used in the assessment of Alzheimer's disease, other dementias, and localizing epileptogenic foci. Dopamine scintigraphy can be used to assess local cerebral uptake in Parkinson's disease.





Fig 1. Unenhanced axial CT head: note the old infarct in the left middle cerebral artery territory.

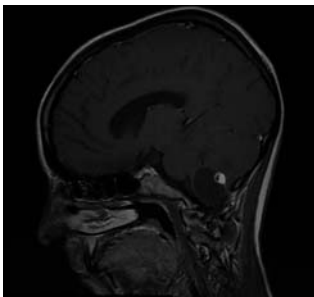


Fig 2. T1-weighted MRI of the brain showing a haemangioblastoma in a patient with Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome (p726). Note enhancement with contrast medium.

Courtesy of Dr Edmund Godfrey.

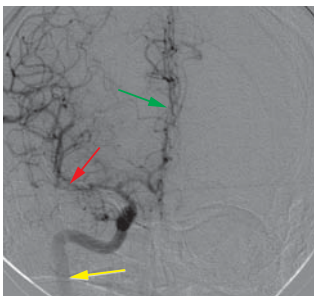


Fig 3. Digital subtraction angiogram (DSA). The right internal carotid artery (yellow arrow), anterior cerebral artery (green arrow) and middle cerebral artery (red arrow) are shown.

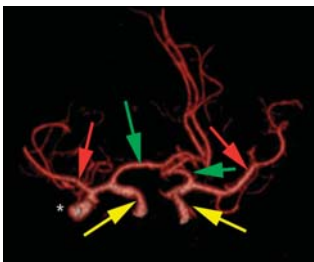


Fig 4. A 3D reconstruction of a CT angiogram of the paired internal carotid arteries (yellow arrows) and their branches (anterior or cerebral arteries—green arrows, middle cerebral arteries—red arrows), seen from the front and slightly to the right. There is an aneurysm of the right middle cerebral artery (*).

Figs 1, 3 & 4 courtesy of Norwich Radiology Department.



The use of x-irradiation in imaging relies on the principle that tissues of different electron densities produce different degrees of attenuation. Two adjacent tissues of a similar electron density are indistinguishable on plain x-ray. Increasing electron density increases attenuation and makes tissues appear more radio-opaque. Although this can occur pathophysiologically (eg calcification in chronic pancreatitis or malignancy) it can be induced artificially by the use of a contrast medium and thus create a visible interface. Contrast medium is usually administered by the following routes:

- **PO:** barium- or iodine-based agents for swallow, meal, or follow-through.
- **Inhaled:** technetium or xenon used in ventilation scintigraphy.
- **IV:** iodine- or gadolinium- (see below) based contrast agents.
- **PR:** CO₂ can be introduced to the colon for CT colonography, iodinated contrast medium is used for water-soluble enemas.

IV contrast medium has the most widespread clinical application.

Iodine-based contrast agents Iodine is used because of its relatively high electron density and good physiological tolerance. When used with CT, the examination is said to be contrast enhanced—look for ‘+ c’ amongst the scan details. Caution should be exercised in patients with the following because of the increased risk of adverse reactions (have latest renal function to hand): renal or cardiac impairment; myeloma; diabetes; sickle cell disease; the elderly and infants; a history of allergy to contrast medium or iodine. Minor reactions include nausea, vomiting and a sensation of warmth. More severe reactions include urticaria, bronchospasm, angioedema and low BP (1:250); theoretical risk of death for 1:150,000 ▶ Metformin must be withheld for 48h after IV contrast administration because of the risk of lactic acidosis¹⁹. ▶ Avoid iodine-based agents in patients with active hyperthyroidism. Contrast induced acute kidney injury is problematic in acutely unwell patients—see p307.

Barium sulfate is the most common contrast medium used in examination of the GI tract. Water-insoluble particles of 0.6–1.4µm diameter are mixed with large organic molecules such as pectin and gum to promote good flow, mucosal adherence and high density in thin layers. **Complications:** chemical pneumonitis or peritonitis. Never administer if you suspect perforated viscus.

Water-soluble iodine-based contrast agents are used instead of barium where there is a risk of peritoneal contamination (eg fistula, megacolon, ulceration, diverticulitis, bowel anastomosis, acute intestinal haemorrhage), but gastrograffin should never be used where there is a risk of aspiration as it can cause pulmonary oedema; discuss alternatives with your radiologist. ▶ Contains iodine so establish allergy history and thyroid status.

Air In CT colonography air (or CO₂) is insufflated as a negative contrast medium after barium administration to enhance mucosal definition. Water can also be used PR to outline the lumen of the colon.

Gadolinium is a lanthanide series element with paramagnetic qualities that is administered intravenously (as gadolinium-DTPA) to enhance the contrast of certain structures in MRI. It works by reducing the time to relaxation (TR) of hydrogen nuclei in its proximity and appears as high signal on T1-weighted scans. It does not cross the blood-brain barrier so is useful in enhancing isointense extra-axial tumours such as meningiomas. It can also highlight areas where the blood-brain barrier has broken down secondary to inflammatory or neoplastic processes. It is renally excreted: ▶ check eGFR: if reduced, gadolinium is contraindicated, as up to 30% may develop **progressive nephrogenic systemic fibrosis/nephrogenic fibrosing dermopathy** which causes generalized fibrosis which impairs movement and breathing—and which may be fatal. Aberrations in calcium-phosphate metabolism and erythropoietin treatment seem to increase risk.²⁰

Other adverse reactions include headache, nausea and local irritation at the site of injection, with idiosyncratic reaction reported in less than 1%.



Imaging the acutely unwell patient

Asking yourself "Does this investigation need to be done right now?" will often yield the answer "No!"; yet there are a few occasions when early imaging can provide vital diagnostic information and influence the prognosis for a patient:

- Acute cauda equina syndrome (p470): ►►MRI lumbar spine.
- Suspected thoracic aorta dissection (p656): ►►CT thorax + IV contrast, MRI or transoesophageal echo (TOE). The mediastinum is rarely widened on CXR.
- Acute kidney injury (p290 & p848): ►►us of renal tract to exclude obstruction.
- Acute pulmonary oedema: ►►Portable CXR: don't delay to get an ideal film.
- Acute abdomen with signs of peritonism: ►►Erect CXR to find intraperitoneal free gas (fig 1, p609; ≈ GI perforation). Remember: post-op there will be detectable gas (air/CO₂) in the abdomen for ~10 days.²¹ Early CT (<6h after onset of symptoms) in addition to plain films appears not to give added diagnostic information in peptic perforation.²²
- Any patient with post-traumatic midline cervical spine tenderness—not just for the emergency department! ►►Hard collar and backboard immobilization followed by a CT. All the vertebrae down to the top of T1 must be visualized and cleared before it is safe to take the collar off.
- Sudden onset focal neurology, worst-ever headache, deteriorating GCS: ►►CT head, then LP if no evidence of ↑ICP.

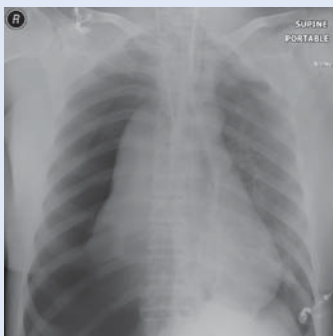
Remember that imaging—or re-imaging for a poor quality film—should never delay the definitive treatment of an emergency condition, eg:

- Tension pneumothorax (p824 and fig 1): ►►decompression not CXR.
- Intra-abdominal haemorrhage or viscus rupture (p608): ►►laparotomy.
- High clinical suspicion of torsion of testis (p654): ►►surgery not Doppler us.

Prior to the advent of interventional radiology, a collapsed, shocked patient with an acute abdomen would have skipped CT and gone straight for a laparotomy. However, you should bear in mind that ruptured aneurysms are increasingly being managed by endovascular repair under CT guidance (p656) so this is one area where rapid imaging may be preferable to immediate intervention.

Fig 1. This is a great educational image from ICU. The inexperienced doctor could be distracted by the poor quality image, missing the lung bases: technicians do their best under difficult conditions. To ask for a new CXR here would be a mistake ►►note the large right-sided tension pneumothorax needing immediate decompression!

Lungs: The right lung field is too black compared to the left, the right hemidiaphragm is also depressed and the right lung is seen collapsed against the mediastinum.



Pleura: The pleural recess is seen at the right base. **Mediastinum:** Left-shifted, obstructing venous return—so cardiac output↓, and a threat to life. Is it being pushed or pulled? Check hila, bones and soft tissues. Is the ET tube down the right main bronchus, inflating the right lung and collapsing the left? No. Is the right lung collapsed? Yes. ►►Right tension pneumothorax. Needle thoracocentesis decompression and a chest drain are needed now. Once this has been done it is evident that, although the ET tube and internal jugular line are appropriately placed, the tip of the NG tube (trace the wire—see p741) is too high and needs repositioning before use (see p741) or there is risk of feed/medications entering the lungs.





Contents

The Gaussian ('Normal') distribution 765

Drug therapeutic ranges in plasma 766

Gentamicin 767

Some important drug interactions 768

Haematology reference intervals 769

Biochemistry reference intervals 770

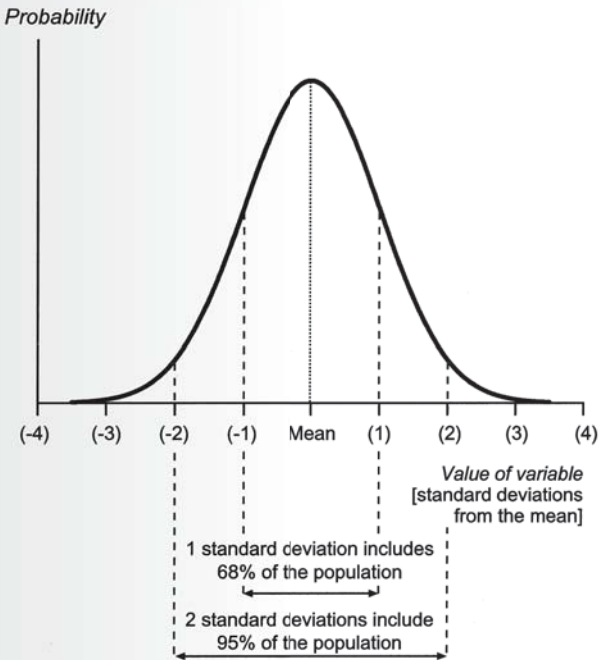


Fig 1.

Reproduced with permission from *Concepts of Epidemiology*; Bhopal R, Oxford University Press 2008.

Once upon a time, in a famous hospital named R— in the middle of England, there lived a crusty old surgeon and a brilliant young house officer. The surgeon issued infallible and peremptory edicts such as "All my patients with a haemoglobin less than 100 must be transfused." Everyone did as the surgeon said (this was a long time ago) except for the wily house officer who understood statistics, sampling error, and the play of chance. One day she was rung up by the haematologist who asked her "Why have you requested 3 blood counts on Mrs Wells today? One is enough. You are wasting our resources!" "Not so," said the house officer. "The first Hb was 98, the second was 97 and the third was 101g/L. I knew if I was persistent, I stood a good chance of preventing an unnecessary transfusion. She is a patient of Mr X." The two conspirators smiled at each other down the telephone, and no more was said. Of course the right way of dealing with this problem is through clinical governance and dialogue with the surgeon. But the point remains: numbers are elastic, despite, on occasion, being given to 3 decimal places. Don't believe in them as absolute entities, and don't believe that the normal range is anything other than arbitrary; think before you act: think statistically. *Think like Gauss.*



Fig 2. Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855). His Gaussian ('Normal') distribution bell-shaped graph is the theoretical basis of reference intervals (normal values—see below). In some ways Gauss would have made an ideal handbook author: he left behind him a tiny notebook of just 19 pages which solved 146 problems in mathematics including non-Euclidean geometry—his motto being *pauca sed matura* (few but ripe). His messages were brief and perhaps *too* much to the point (not surprisingly, since he invented the first telegraph in 1833)—on being disturbed during deep thought to be told that his wife was dying it is reported that he replied "Tell her to wait a moment until I'm through..."¹

Image courtesy of Axel Wittman.

Some definitions

- **Range:** The lowest and highest value of all observations in the set being studied.
- **Arithmetic mean:** The sum of all observations ÷ by the number of observations.
- **Median:** The median is the middle value (eg 9 data points are higher and 9 are lower). If their distribution is Normal, then the median coincides with the mean.
- **Standard deviation (SD):** The square root of the variance (the average of the square of the distance of each data point from the mean). When the distribution of the observations is Normal, 95% of observations are located in the interval 'mean ± 1.96 SD'. This is the basis of the reference interval.
- **Standard error of the mean:** This gives an estimate of the reliability of the mean of a sample representing the mean of the population from which the sample was taken, and is the SD of the sample ÷ by the square root of the number of observations in the sample. Thus the larger the sample size, the smaller the standard error of the mean. Sample means are always Normally distributed, even if the underlying population they are taken from is not, thus you would expect 95% of those sample means to fall within the range 'population mean ± 1.96 × population SD'.



► Ranges should only be used as a guide to treatment. A drug in an apparently too low concentration may still be clinically useful.² Some patients require (and tolerate) levels in the 'toxic' range.

► The time since the last dose should be specified on the request form.

***Amikacin** Peak (1h post iv dose): 20–30mg/L. Trough: <10mg/L.

***Carbamazepine** Optimal concentration: 20–50µmol/L (4–12mg/L).

****Digoxin** (6–12h post dose) 1–2.6nmol/L (0.8–2µg/L). <1.3nmol/L may be toxic if there is hypokalaemia. *Signs of toxicity*—cvs: arrhythmias, heart block. CNS: confusion, insomnia, agitation, seeing too much yellow (xanthopsia), delirium. GI: nausea. *NB*: in those over 65yrs, 0.5–0.9ng/mL may be sufficient and if the indication is CCF.²

****Gentamicin** (p381) and **tobramycin** The potential for oto- and nephrotoxicity is high if aminoglycosides are used inappropriately, so use local expert advice/guidelines. *Signs of toxicity*: tinnitus, deafness, nystagmus, vertigo, renal failure. Although historically given two or three times daily, many now favour **once-daily dosing**, such as the Hartford protocol (fig 1),³ with fewer SEs, and better bactericidal activity. They are suitable only for short therapeutic courses, and are contraindicated in severe renal or liver failure, ascites, burns, high cardiac output states (eg anaemia, Paget's disease), children, and pregnancy. In endocarditis, dosing 8-hourly increases the synergistic bactericidal effect of prescribing gentamicin with other agents. **Divided daily dosing** in such cases may be calculated as 1mg/kg/8h (or 12-hourly in renal failure), or more accurately using a nomogram such as that shown in fig 2. Peak (1h post-dose) and trough (just before dose) levels should be monitored daily—**peak**: 5–10mg/L (3–5mg/L in IE); **trough**: <2mg/L (<1mg/L in IE). Adjust the dose if peak level is out of range, and dose interval if trough level is out of range.

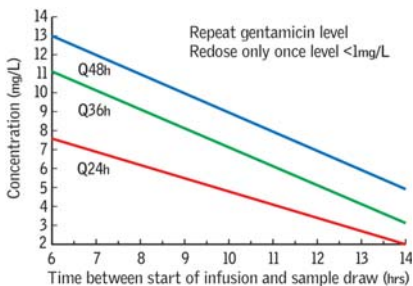


Fig 1. Hartford protocol for 7mg/kg once-daily gentamicin dosing IVI over 15min. Adjust the dosing interval depending on the zone into which the level falls. Q48h means give every 48h; Q24h means give once daily. Above the blue line repeat the gentamicin level and redose only once level <1mg/L. Use lean body weight (p446).

Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy, 1995, Vol 39, pages 650–655, with permission from American Society for Microbiology.

†**Lithium** (12h post dose). Guidelines vary: 0.4–0.8mmol/L is reasonable. *Early* signs of toxicity (Li^+ >1.5mmol/L): tremor. *Intermediate*: lethargy. *Late*: (Li^+ >2mmol/L) spasms, coma, fits, arrhythmias, renal failure (haemodialysis may be needed). See *OHCS* p354.

***Phenobarbital** Trough: 60–180µmol/L (15–40mg/L).

****Phenytoin** Trough: 40–80µmol/L (10–20mg/L). Beware if ↓ albumin, as the assay is for bound phenytoin, while it is free phenytoin that is pharmacologically important. *Signs of toxicity*: ataxia, diplopia, nystagmus, sedation, dysarthria.

Theophylline 10–20mg/mL (55–110µmol/L). (► see p821) Take sample 4–6h after starting an infusion (which should be stopped for ~15min just before the specimen is taken). *Signs of toxicity*: arrhythmias, anxiety, tremor, convulsions.

Vancomycin Trough: 5–10 mg/L (10–15mg/L in SBE/IE and less-sensitive MRSA infections). Start monitoring 48h after 1st dose.

* Trough levels should be taken just before the next dose.

† Drugs for which routine monitoring is indicated.

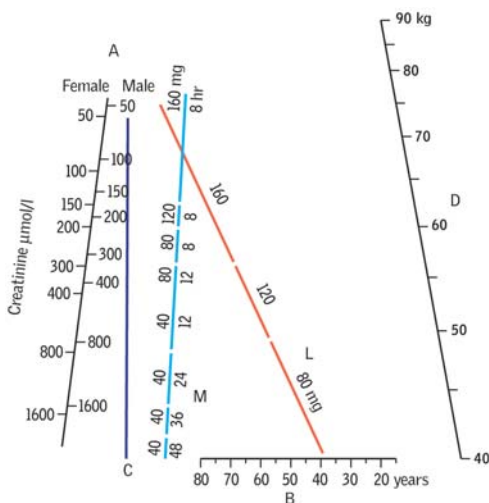


Fig 2. Nomogram for divided daily dosing of gentamicin.

- 1 Join with a straight line the serum creatinine concentration appropriate to the sex on scale A and the age on scale B. Mark the point at which this line cuts line C.
- 2 Join with a line the mark on line C and the body weight on line D. Mark the points at which this line cuts lines L and M, to get loading and maintenance doses, respectively.
- 3 Confirm the appropriateness of this regimen at an early stage by measuring serum levels, especially in severe illness and renal impairment.
- 4 Adjust dose if peak concentration (1h after IM dose; $\frac{1}{2}$ h after IV dose) is outside the range 5–10mg/L. A trough concentration (just before dose) above 2mg/L indicates the need for a longer dosage interval.



Note: '↑' means the effect of the drug in *italics* is increased (eg through inhibition of metabolism or renal clearance). '↓' means that its effect is decreased (eg through enzyme induction). See p702 for a list of cytochrome P450 inducers and inhibitors.

Adenosine ↓ by: aminophylline. ↑ by: dipyridamole.

Aminoglycosides ↑ by: loop diuretics.

Antidiabetic drugs (all) ↑ by: alcohol, β-blockers, bezafibrate, monoamine oxidase inhibitors. ↓ by: contraceptive steroids, corticosteroids, diazoxide, diuretics, (possibly also lithium).

Metformin ↑ by: cimetidine. With alcohol: lactic acidosis risk.

Sulfonylureas ↑ by: azapropazone, chloramphenicol, bezafibrate, co-trimoxazole, miconazole, sulfapyrazone. ↓ by: rifampicin (nifedipine occasionally).

Antiretroviral agents (HIV): See p414.

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors ↓ by: NSAIDs, oestrogens.

Antihistamines Avoid anything that ↑ concentrations and risk of arrhythmias, eg anti-arrhythmics, antifungals, antipsychotics, β-blockers, diuretics, halofantrine, macrolide antibiotics (erythromycin, azithromycin, etc), protease inhibitors (p414), SSRIs (p454), tricyclics.

Azathioprine ↑ by: allopurinol.

β-blockers Avoid verapamil. ↓ by: NSAIDs. Lipophilic β-blockers (eg propranolol) are metabolized by the liver, and concentrations are ↑ by cimetidine. This does not happen with hydrophilic β-blockers (eg atenolol).

Carbamazepine ↑ by: erythromycin, isoniazid, verapamil.

Ciclosporin ↑ by: erythromycin, grapefruit juice, nifedipine. ↓ by: phenytoin.

Cimetidine ↑ the effect of: amitriptyline, lidocaine, metronidazole, pethidine, phenytoin, propranolol, quinine, theophylline, warfarin.

Contraceptive steroids ↓ by: antibiotics, barbiturates, carbamazepine, phenytoin, rifampicin.

Digoxin ↑ by: amiodarone, carbenoxolone and diuretics (due to ↓ K⁺), quinine, verapamil.

Diuretics ↓ by: NSAIDs—particularly indometacin.

Ergotamine ↑ by: erythromycin (ergotism may occur).

Fluconazole: Avoid concurrent astemizole.

Lithium ↑ by: thiazide diuretics.

Methotrexate ↑ by: aspirin, NSAIDs. Many antibiotics (check BNF).

Phenytoin ↑ by: chloramphenicol, cimetidine, disulfiram, isoniazid, sulfonamides. ↓ by: carbamazepine.

Potassium-sparing diuretics with ACE-inhibitors: Hyperkalaemia.

Theophyllines ↑ by: cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, erythromycin, contraceptive steroids, propranolol. ↓ by: barbiturates, carbamazepine, phenytoin, rifampicin. See p821.

Valproate ↓ by: carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin.

Warfarin and **nicoumalone** (=acenocoumarol) ↑ by: alcohol, allopurinol, amiodarone, aspirin, chloramphenicol, cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, co-trimoxazole, danazol, dipyridamole, disulfiram, erythromycin (and broad-spectrum antibiotics), gemfibrozil, glucagon, ketoconazole, metronidazole, miconazole, nalidixic acid, neomycin, NSAIDs, phenytoin, quinidine, simvastatin (but not pravastatin), sulfapyrazone, sulfonamides, tetracyclines, levothyroxine.

Warfarin and **nicoumalone** ↓ by: aminoglutethimide, barbiturates, carbamazepine, contraceptive steroids, dichloralphenazone, griseofulvin, rifampicin, phenytoin, vitamin K.

Zidovudine (AZT) ↑ by: paracetamol (increased marrow toxicity).

IVI solutions to avoid

Dextrose: Avoid furosemide, ampicillin, hydralazine, insulin, melphalan, phenytoin, and quinine.

0.9% saline: Avoid amphotericin, lidocaine, nitroprusside.



(For B₁₂, folate, Fe, and TIBC, see p770-1)

Measurement	Reference interval	Your hospital
White cell count (wcc)	4.0-11.0 × 10 ⁹ /L	
Red cell count	♂ 4.5-6.5 × 10 ¹² /L ♀ 3.9-5.6 × 10 ¹² /L	
Haemoglobin	♂ 130-180g/L ♀ 115-160g/L	
Packed red cell volume (PCV) or haematocrit	♂ 0.4-0.54L/L ♀ 0.37-0.47L/L	
Mean cell volume (MCV)	76-96fL	
Mean cell haemoglobin (MCH)	27-32pg	
Mean cell haemoglobin concentration (MCHC)	300-360g/L	
Red cell distribution width (RCDW, RDW)	11.6-14.6% (p319)	
Neutrophils	2.0-7.5 × 10 ⁹ /L; 40-75% wcc	
Lymphocytes	1.3-3.5 × 10 ⁹ /L; 20-45% wcc	
Eosinophils	0.04-0.44 × 10 ⁹ /L; 1-6% wcc	
Basophils	0.0-0.10 × 10 ⁹ /L; 0-1% wcc	
Monocytes	0.2-0.8 × 10 ⁹ /L; 2-10% wcc	
Platelet count	150-400 × 10 ⁹ /L	
Reticulocyte count	0.8-2.0% ¹ 25-100 × 10 ⁹ /L	
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate	Depends on age (p366)	
Prothrombin time (citrated bottle) (factors I, II, VII, X)	10-14s	
Activated partial thrombo- plastin time (VIII, IX, XI, XII)	35-45s	
D-dimer (citrated bottle, as for INR) ²	<0.5mg/L	

Proposed therapeutic ranges for prothrombin time: see p345.

1 Only use percentages as reference interval if red cell count is normal; otherwise, use the absolute value.

2 D-dimer assay is useful for *excluding* thromboembolic disease if the assay is normal. The D-dimer is so non-specific, however, that a raised level is unhelpful, thus the assay should only be requested if the probability of thromboembolic disease is low (eg Wells score; see p581). It needs to get to the lab quickly.



See p676 for the *philosophy of the normal range*; see *OHCS* p222 for children.

Drugs (and other substances) may interfere with any chemical method; as these effects may be method dependent, it is difficult for the clinician to be aware of all the possibilities. If in doubt, discuss with the lab.

Substance	Specimen	Reference interval (labs vary, so a guide only)	Your hospital
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone	P	<80ng/L	
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	P	5–35u/L	
Albumin ¹	P	35–50g/L	
Aldosterone ²	P	100–500pmol/L	
Alkaline phosphatase	P	30–150u/L (adults)	
α -amylase	P	0–180 Somogyi u/dL	
α -fetoprotein	S	<10ku/L	
Angiotensin II ²	P	5–35pmol/L	
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	P	0.9–4.6pmol/L	
Aspartate transaminase	P	5–35u/L	
Bicarbonate ¹	P	24–30mmol/L	
Bilirubin	P	3–17 μ mol/L	
BNP (see p689)	P	<50ng/L	
Calcitonin	P	<0.1 μ g/L	
Calcium (ionized)	P	1.0–1.25mmol/L	
Calcium ¹ (total)	P	2.12–2.65mmol/L	
See p690 to correct for albumin			
Chloride	P	95–105mmol/L	
Cholesterol ³ (see p704)	P	<5.0mmol/L	
VLDL (see p704)	P	0.128–0.645mmol/L	
LDL	P	<2.0mmol/L	
HDL	P	0.9–1.93mmol/L	
Cortisol	P	AM 450–700nmol/L midnight 80–280nmol/L	
Creatine kinase (CK)	P	♂ 25–195u/L ♀ 25–170u/L	
Creatinine ¹ (∞ to lean body mass)	P	70–150 μ mol/L	
Ferritin	P	12–200 μ g/L	
Folate	S	2.1 μ g/L	
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	P/S	2–8u/L in ♀ (luteal); >25u/L in menopause	
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase	P	♂ 11–51u/L ♀ 7–33u/L	
Glucose (fasting)	P	3.5–5.5mmol/L	
Growth hormone	P	<20mu/L	
HbA _{1c} = glycosylated Hb (DCCT)	B	4–6%. 7% \approx good DM control	
HbA _{1c} IFCC (more specific than DCCT)	B	20–42mmol/mol; 53 \approx good DM control	
Iron	S	♂ 14–31 μ mol/L ♀ 11–30 μ mol/L	
Lactate	P ABG	Venous 0.6–2.4mmol/L Arterial 0.6–1.8mmol/L	
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	P	70–250u/L	
Lead	B	<1.8mmol/L	
Luteinizing hormone (LH) (premenopausal)	P	3–16u/L (luteal)	

1 See *OHCS* p15 for reference intervals in pregnancy.

2 The sample requires special handling: contact the laboratory.

3 Desired upper limit of cholesterol would be <6mmol/L. In some populations, 7.8mmol/L is the top end of the distribution.



Magnesium	P	0.75–1.05mmol/L
Osmolality	P	278–305mosmol/kg
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	P	<0.8–8.5pmol/L
Potassium	P	3.5–5.0mmol/L
Prolactin	P	♂ <450u/L ♀ <600u/L
Prostate specific antigen (PSA)	P	0–4µg/mL, age specific, see p538
Protein (total)	P	60–80g/L
Red cell folate	B	0.36–1.44µmol/L (160–640µg/L)
Renin ² (erect/recumbent)	P	2.8–4.5/ 1.1–2.7pmol/mL/h
Sodium ¹	P	135–145mmol/L
Thyroid-binding globulin (TBG)	P	7–17mg/L
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	P	0.5–5.7mU/L widens with age, p208 assays vary; 4–5 is a grey area
Thyroxine (T ₄)	P	70–140nmol/L
Thyroxine (free)	P	9–22pmol/L
Total iron-binding capacity	S	54–75µmol/L
Triglyceride	P	0.55–1.90mmol/L
Triiodothyronine (T ₃)	P	1.2–3.0nmol/L
Troponin T (see p112)	P	<0.1µg/L
Urate ¹	P	♂ 210–480µmol/L ♀ 150–390µmol/L
Urea ¹	P	2.5–6.7mmol/L
Vitamin B ₁₂	S	0.13–0.68nmol/L (>150ng/L)
Vitamin D	S	60–105nmol/L

Arterial blood gases reference intervals

pH: 7.35–7.45	P _a CO ₂ : 4.7–6.0kPa
P _a O ₂ : >10.6kPa	Base excess: ±2mmol/L

Note: 7.6mmHg = 1kPa (atmospheric pressure ≈ 100kPa)

Urine reference intervals	Reference interval	Your hospital
Cortisol (free)	<280nmol/24h	
Hydroxyindole acetic acid	16–73µmol/24h	
Hydroxymethylmandelic acid (HMA, VMA)	16–48µmol/24h	
Metanephrines	0.03–0.69µmol/mmol creatinine (or <5.5µmol/day)	
Osmolality	350–1000mosmol/kg	
17-oxogenic steroids	♂ 28–30µmol/24h ♀ 21–66µmol/24h	
17-oxosteroids (neutral)	♂ 17–76µmol/24h ♀ 14–59µmol/24h	
Phosphate (inorganic)	15–50mmol/24h	
Potassium	14–120mmol/24h	
Protein	<150mg/24h	
Protein	creatinine ratio <3mg/mmol	
Sodium	100–250mmol/24h	





Contents

- Placing nasogastric tubes 773
- Placing IV cannulae (drips) 774
- ▶▶ Cut down on to a vein 775
- Catheterizing bladders 776
- Draining ascites 778
- Diagnostic aspiration of a pleural effusion 779
- Abdominal paracentesis 779
- Inserting a chest drain 780
- ▶▶ Relieving a tension pneumothorax 781
- Aspiration of a pneumothorax 781
- Lumbar puncture (LP) 782
- Cardioversion/defibrillation 784
- Arterial blood gas sampling 785
- Cricothyroidotomy 786
- Emergency airway management 786
- Central venous cannulation 788
- Internal jugular catheterization 789
- Inserting a temporary cardiac pacemaker 790



Fig 1. Ivan Seldinger (1921–1998). Swedish radiologist who pioneered a technique to access both vessels and hollow organs throughout the body, by means of threading a catheter over a flexible guide wire. He published this technique in 1953 as a new method of percutaneous angiography, but it is now widely used for all forms of access from central line insertion, pacemakers, angiography and angioplasty, and drainage of fluid (infected collections, pleural effusions, pneumothorax, ascites). He received many awards for his work, which has revolutionised practical procedures by allowing percutaneous rather than open approaches, minimising infection and reducing recovery times.

▶ With the new focus on practical skills training in Foundation and Core training programmes, there is much more emphasis on ensuring junior doctors are confident in carrying out procedures, and the old adage of 'see one, do one, teach one' is no longer relevant. 'Just having a go' when you aren't confident can have devastating consequences for the patient, but also for you and your future. Seek out opportunities to learn practical procedures, in an elective setting, so that your first attempt isn't a life-or-death emergency attempt. For example, time in theatres or intensive care units can hone skills in NG tube insertion, IV cannulation, urethral catheterization, central venous access, arterial line insertion, airway management, lumbar punctures, ascitic drains and chest drain insertion. Many seniors will be happy to make time to teach if you contact them in advance—speak to anaesthetists, respiratory physicians, surgeons, ED and ICU staff. Let them know you are interested and leave your bleep, you'll find your experiential learning increases significantly!

▶ Even in an emergency setting, it is often wiser to obtain help rather than carrying out an urgent procedure for the first time (**fig 1**)—but some procedures must occasionally be performed at once—see **EMERGENCY BOX**, p775.

▶ NHS Never Events have come to the fore in recent years, and several relate to practical procedures. A Never Event is a serious, largely preventable patient safety incident that should *never* occur if the available preventative measures have been implemented. Examples include misplacement of NG tube, misidentification of patient, and overdose of midazolam during conscious sedation, such as for insertion of central venous access. A Never Event can have serious consequences for the Trust and for you. Patient safety should come first in your mind, but your own safety and future should not be far behind.¹

Relevant pages in other chapters: Arrhythmias (p118); bone marrow biopsy (p358); cardiogenic shock (p814); consent, (p570); intravenous fluid therapy (p680); liver failure (p258); local anaesthetics (TABLE, p575); meningitis (p832); pleural effusion (p184); pneumothorax (p182, p824); renal biopsy (p300); subarachnoid haemorrhage (p482); tension pneumothorax (p824); the venous system of the thoracic inlet (**Box**, p589).

We thank our Specialist Reader, Dr Andrew Johnston, and our Junior Reader, Tim Croker-Buqué for their contribution to this chapter.



Nasogastric tubes

These tubes are passed into the stomach via the nose—oro-gastric if via the mouth—and drain externally. Large (eg 16 Fr) are good for drainage but can be uncomfortable for patients. Small (eg 10 Fr) are more comfortable for feeding but can be difficult to aspirate and are poor for drainage.

- To decompress the stomach/gastrointestinal tract especially when there is obstruction, eg gastric outflow obstruction, ileus, intestinal obstruction.
- For gastric lavage.
- To administer feed/drugs, especially in critically ill patients or those with dysphagia, eg motor neuron disease, post CVA.

Passing the tube Nurses are experts and will ask you (who may never have passed one) to do so only when they fail—so the first question to ask is: "Have you asked the charge-nurse from the ward next door?"

- Wear non-sterile gloves and an apron to protect both you and the patient.
- Explain the procedure. Take a new, cool (hence less flexible) tube. Have a cup of water to hand. Lubricate well with aqueous gel.
- Use the tube, by holding it against the patient's head, to estimate the length required to get from the nostril to the back of the throat.
- Place lubricated tube in nostril with its natural curve promoting passage down, rather than up. The right nostril is often easier than the left but, if feasible, ask the patient for their preference. Advance directly backwards (not upwards).
- When the tip is estimated to be entering the throat, rotate the tube by $\sim 180^\circ$ to discourage passage into the mouth.
- Ask the patient to swallow a sip of water, and advance as they do, timing each push with a swallow. **If this fails:** Try the other nostril, then oral insertion.
- The tube has distance markings along it: the stomach is at $\sim 35\text{--}40\text{cm}$ in adults, so advance $>$ this distance, preferably $10\text{--}20\text{cm}$ beyond. Tape securely to the nose.

Confirming position: This is vital prior to commencing any treatment through the tube. Misplaced naso- or orogastric tubes have led to a number of preventable deaths, and a misplaced tube is an NHS Never Event (see opposite).

- Use pH paper (pH gradations of 0.5 and a pH range of 0–6 or 1–11) to test that you are in the stomach: aspirated gastric contents are acid ($\text{pH} \leq 5.5$) although antacids or PPIs may increase the pH. Small tubes can be difficult to aspirate, try withdrawing or advancing a few centimetres or turning the patient on the left side to help dip the tube in gastric contents. Aspirates should be $>0.5\text{mL}$ and tested directly on unhandled pH paper. Allow 10s for the colour change to occur.
- If the pH is >5.5 and the NGT is needed for drug or feed administration then the position must be checked radiologically. Request a CXR/abdo x-ray (tell the radiologist why you need it). Look for the radio-opaque line/tip (this can be hard to see, look below the diaphragm, but if in doubt, ask for help from the radiologist).
- The 'whoosh' test is NOT an accepted method of testing for tube position.
- Either spigot the tube, or allow to drain into a dependent catheter bag secured to clothing (zinc oxide tape around tube to form a flap, safety pin through flap).
- ▶ Do not pass a tube nasally if there is any suspicion of a facial fracture.
- ▶ Get senior help if the patient has recently had upper GI surgery—it is not good practice to push the tube through a fresh anastomosis!

Complications •Pain, or, rarely: •Loss of electrolytes •Oesophagitis •Tracheal or duodenal intubation •Necrosis: retro- or nasopharyngeal •Stomach perforation.

Weaning When planning removal of an NGT *in situ* for decompression or relief of obstruction, it is wise to wean it so that the patient manages well without it. Drainage should be $<750\text{mL}/24$ hours for successful weaning.

- First it should be on free drainage with, eg, 4hrly aspirations;
- Then spigot with 4hrly aspirations;
- Then spigot only. If this is tolerated along with oral intake then it is probably safe to remove the tube; if not, then take a step backwards.



► Much of what we do is not evidence based; however, in more recent years, particularly in intensive care units, the rise of hospital acquired infections and multidrug resistant organisms has prompted a review of standard practice and a series of evidence based interventions put together as a 'care bundle' to reduce hospital acquired infections. The technique for placing a cannula is best shown by the bedside by an expert, but keeping these simple rules in mind means the risk of infection from the cannula is significantly reduced.²

Preparation is key, remember the following before you start:

- 1 Equipment:** set up a tray with cleaning swabs, gauze, cannulae (swallow your pride and take at least three of different sizes), dressings, 0.9% saline, 10mL syringe, needle-free adaptor (eg octopus with bionector), blood tubes if required, portable sharps bin → needlestick injuries do happen.
- 2 Patient:** have them lying down, explain procedure, obtain verbal consent, place tourniquet around arm, rest the arm below the heart to aid venous filling.
- 3 Site:** look for the best vein—it should be palpable, some of the best veins are not easily visible, some of the most visible collapse on insertion. Tapping gently helps. ► **Never cannulate:** AV fistulae arms, limbs with lymphoedema. ► **Avoid** sites crossing a joint (if possible), the cephalic vein in a renal patient.
- 4 Consider:** EMLA® cream, cold spray or 1% lidocaine for children or those with needle phobia. EMLA® takes 45min to work, but can save you hassle later.³

Insertion care bundle

1 Aseptic technique **2** Hand hygiene **3** Apron + non-sterile gloves **4** Skin preparation—2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol (allow to dry for 30 seconds). Do not repalpate vein after cleaning unless wearing sterile gloves **5** Dressing—sterile and transparent so that insertion site can be observed.

After insertion

1 Take blood with syringe or adaptor **2** Remove tourniquet **3** Attach needle-free device (if appropriate) and flush with 10mL 0.9% saline **4** Apply dressing **5** Let nursing staff know that cannula is in place and ready for use **6** Document insertion according to local policy **7** Write up appropriate fluids or parenteral medication.

When seeing your patient on the daily ward round, and to avoid being called to review or replace cannulae at 6pm, do a RAID assessment:⁴ consider if the drip is:

Rquired—can the patient manage with oral medication/fluids?

Appropriate—should you consider a PICC, central line, long-term line, etc?

Infected—any signs of inflammation or infection? Remove if yes. Peripheral cannulae should be replaced every 72–96 hours

Dressed properly—many drips are replaced early because they have 'fallen out', or are kinked from poor dressings







Tissued or infected cannulae need replacing, either with another peripheral cannula, or with a longer-term access device, such as a PICC line.

If you fail after 3 attempts ► Shocked patients need fluid quickly: if you are having trouble putting in a drip, call your senior. The advice below assumes that the drip is not immediately life-saving. ►► If it is, see EMERGENCY BOX.

- Ask for help—from colleagues or seniors—do not be ashamed, everyone has to learn and even senior doctors have bad days; a fresh pair of eyes can be all it takes. As a house officer, one of us was asked to place a drip when a very shame-faced consultant had 'had a go' to prove he still could, and found out that he couldn't!
- Help yourself—try putting the hand in warm water, using a small amount of GTN paste over the vein, or using ultrasound if available to help you identify the vein.
- If there is no one else to help, take a break and come back in half an hour. Veins come and go, and coming back with fresh eyes can make all the difference.



Intravenous cannulae sizes and UK colour conventions

Gauge	Colour	Diameter (mm)	Length (mm)	Flow rate (mL/min ^v)
14G		2.0	45	250
16G		1.7	42	170
18G		1.2	40	90
20G		1.0	32	55
22G		0.28	25	25
24G		0.07	19	24

^vV=Maximum flow rate under gravity.

According to Poiseuille's law¹ the flow rate (Q) of a fluid through a tubular structure is inversely proportional to viscosity (η) and length (l) and proportional to the pressure difference across it ($P_i - P_o$) and the radius *to the power of 4* (r^4). Hence:

$$Q \propto \frac{(P_i - P_o) r^4}{\eta l}$$

A last throw of the dice

Just once it may come down to you. For some, this is one of the challenges and thrills in medicine. There may be no one else available to help when there is an absolute and urgent indication for IV drugs/fluids/blood—and all of the above measures have been tried, and have failed. Think of lonesome night shifts, over-run emergency departments, a disaster scene, war, or medicine in the field. The following measures are not recommended for non-life-threatening scenarios:

- ▶▶ Don't worry. Have a good look again. Feet (avoid in diabetics)? Inside of the forearm? Upper arm?
- ▶▶ Have you really exhausted all of your options for help from a colleague? Maybe the anaesthetist or ICU registrar is approachable—they do have remarkable skills.
- ▶▶ Is the patient familiar with his/her own veins (eg previous IV drug abuser)?
- ▶▶ If there is only a small amount of IV medication required and a small, short vein, you may be able to gain access with a carefully placed butterfly needle that is taped down. Some drugs cannot be passed this way (eg amiodarone, K⁺).
- ▶▶ The external jugular vein may become prominent when the patient is head down (Trendelenburg) by 5–10° (▶ not in situations of fluid overload, LVF, tICP). Only attempt cannulation of this vein if you are not going to jeopardize future central line insertion, and if you can clearly determine the surrounding anatomy.
- ▶▶ In an arrest situation, the 2010 Advanced Life Support Guidelines recommend the intraosseous route in both adults and children if venous access is not possible.

Only do the following if you have had the appropriate training/experience:

- ▶▶ In children, consider cannulating a scalp vein.
- ▶▶ Central venous catheterization (p789). This may be just as hard in a profoundly hypovolaemic arrest patient, and a good knowledge of local anatomy and of the procedure (\pm ultrasound guidance) will be invaluable.

NB: **A cut down to the long saphenous** vein may (must!) be attempted, *in extremis*,⁵ even if you have no prior experience (at this site you won't kill by being ham-fisted). ▶▶ Make a transverse incision 1–2cm anterior and superior to the medial malleolus ▶▶ Free the vein with forceps ▶▶ Cannulate it under direct vision. ▶▶ Here, 'first do no harm' is trumped by 'nothing ventured, nothing gained'.

Hopefully, it shouldn't ever have to come to these measures, but one day...

¹ Poiseuille's law is a neat piece of physiology and worth remembering—it is applicable in some form to almost every system in the body. Note that it is a 4th-power law: a small change in the radius makes a huge difference to flow.



Urinary tract infections are the second commonest healthcare associated infection, and urinary catheters are frequently to blame. Think, does the patient really need a catheter? If so, use the smallest you can and take out as soon as possible.

Size: (in French gauge): 12=small; 16=large; 20=very large (eg 3-way). **Material:** Latex is soft (ask about allergy). A silastic (silicone) catheter may be used long term, but costs more. Silver alloy coating reduces infections.⁶ **Shape:** Foley is typical (fig 1); coudé (elbow) catheters have an angled tip to ease around prostates but are more risky; 3-way catheters are used in clot or debris retention and have an extra lumen for irrigation fluid, attached to the irrigation set via an extra port on the distal end (fig 2). Get urology advice before starting irrigation. Condom catheters are often preferred by patients (less discomfort) even though they may leak and fall off.⁷

Catheter problems: • **Infection** ~5% develop bacteraemia (most will have bacterial colonization, antibiotics may not be required unless systemically unwell—discuss with microbiology). A stat dose of, eg, *gentamicin 80mg*, is sometimes given pre-insertion despite a lack of evidence for benefit.⁸ Check your local policy. • **Bladder spasm** may be painful—try reducing the water in the balloon or an anticholinergic drug, eg *oxybutinin*.

Catheterize as per the recommended care bundle!

1 Per urethram: Aseptic technique required.

Indications • Relieve urinary retention, • Monitor urine output in critically ill patients, • Collect uncontaminated urine for diagnosis. ▶ It is contraindicated in urethral injury (eg pelvic fracture) and acute prostatitis.

- Explain the procedure, and obtain verbal consent. Prepare a catheterization pack (if not pre-packed, see MINIBOX).
 - Lie the patient supine: women with knees flexed and hips abducted with heels together. Use a gloved hand to clean urethral meatus in a pubis-to-anus direction, holding the labia apart with the other hand. With uncircumcised men (check with the patient!), retract the foreskin to clean the glans; use a gloved hand to hold the penis still. The hand used to hold the penis or labia should not touch the catheter. Place a sterile drape with a hole in the middle to help you maintain asepsis. Remember: left hand dirty, right hand clean.
 - Put sterile lidocaine 1–2% gel on the catheter tip and ≤10mL into the urethra (≤5mL if ♀). In men, lift and gently stretch the penis upwards to eliminate any urethral folds that may lead to false passage formation.
 - Use steady gentle pressure to advance the catheter, rotating slightly can help it slide in. ▶ Never force the catheter. Tilting the penis up towards the umbilicus while inserting may help negotiate the prostate. Insert to the hilt; wait until urine emerges before inflating the balloon. Remember to check the balloon's capacity before inflation (written on the outer end). Collect a sterile specimen and attach a drainage bag. Pull the catheter back so that the balloon comes to rest at the bladder neck.
 - If you are having trouble getting past the prostate try: more lubrication, a gentle twisting motion; a larger catheter; or call the urologists, who may use a guide-wire.
- ▶ Remember to reposition the foreskin in uncircumcised men after the catheter is inserted to prevent oedema of the glans and paraphimos.

Documentation: in the notes be sure to document the indication for catheterization, size of catheter, whether insertion was difficult or straightforward, any complications, residual volume and colour of urine. It is good practice to document that the foreskin has been replaced. Sign with your name, date and designation.

2 Suprapubic catheterization: Sterile technique required ▶ Absolutely contraindicated unless there is a large bladder palpable or visible on ultrasound, because of the risk of bowel perforation. Be wary, particularly if there is a history of abdominal or pelvic surgery. Suprapubic catheter insertion is high risk and you should be trained before attempting it, speak to the urologists first!

Checklist

- Gloves
- Catheter
- Lidocaine jelly
- 10mL water
- Cleaning solution
- Drape
- Kidney dish
- Gauze swabs
- Forceps (optional)
- Drainage bag
- Specimen container



Self-catheterization

This is a good, safe way of managing chronic retention from a neuropathic bladder (eg in multiple sclerosis, diabetic neuropathy, spinal tumour or trauma). Never consider a patient in difficulties from a big residual volume to be too old, young, or disabled to learn. 5-yr-old children can learn the technique, and can have their lives transformed—so motivation may be excellent. There may be fewer UTIs as there is no residual urine—and less reflux obstructive uropathy. Assessing suitability entails testing sacral dermatomes: a 'numb bum' implies ↓ sensation of a full bladder; higher sensory loss may mean catheterization will be painless. Get help from your continence adviser who will be in a position to teach the patient or carer that catheterizations must be gentle (the catheter is of a much smaller calibre), particularly if sensation is lacking, and must number >4/d ('always keep your catheter with you; don't wait for an urge before catheterizing'). See **fig 3**.



Fig 1. A size 14F latex Foley catheter with the balloon inflated via the topmost port of the outer end (green).¹ Images © Dr Tom Turmezei (they are not to scale).



Fig 2. The external end of a size 20F 3-way catheter. The lowest port is for the bladder irrigation fluid and the uppermost port (yellow) is for balloon inflation.



Fig 3. A size 10F catheter for self-catheterization. They are usually smaller than indwelling catheters, eg 10F compared to 14F. Note that this catheter also has no balloon.

"The catheter is not draining..."

You will be asked to check catheters that are not draining. Check the fluid chart and the patient:

- **Previously good output, now anuric** = blocked catheter until proven otherwise. Was the urine clear previously or bloodstained? Consider flushing the catheter: with aseptic technique flush and withdraw 20mL of sterile 0.9% saline with a bladder syringe. This may get the flow going again. A 3-way catheter may be needed if there is clot or debris retention. If it blocks again, replace it. Repeated flushes lead to infection.
- **Slow decline in urine output over several hours**: in a dehydrated/post-op patient a fluid challenge of 250mL Gelofusine® STAT (slowly if renal/cardiac comorbidity) may help, come back and check the response in 30min. Check all other parameters (eg pulse, BP, CVP) and increase rate of IV fluids if appropriate.
- ▶ **Acute kidney injury** (the new name for acute renal failure, p848): if urine output has tailed off and now stopped, the cause is often renal hypoperfusion (ie pre-renal failure), but consider other factors, eg nephrotoxic drugs.
- **Catheter is bypassing**: a condom catheter may be more appropriate.
- **Catheter has dislodged** into the proximal (prostatic^o) urethra, possible even if the balloon is fully inflated. Consider this if a flush enters but cannot be withdrawn. If the patient still needs a catheter then replace it, consider a larger size.
- ▶▶ The catheter has perforated the lower urinary tract on insertion and is not lying in the bladder or urethra. If suspected, call the urologists immediately.

Remember: urine output should be >400mL in 24h or >0.5mL/kg/h (see p578).

Trial without catheter (twoc)

When it is time to remove a catheter, the possibility of urinary retention must be considered. If very likely, arrange for a urology outpatient twoc in 2 weeks, or start an α -blocker first; otherwise remove the catheter first thing one morning. If retention does occur, insert a long-term catheter (eg silicone) and arrange urology clinic follow-up.

¹ We would like to thank Addenbrooke's Hospital Urology Department for supplying the catheters.



For patients with refractory or recurrent ascites that is symptomatic, it is possible to drain the ascites using a long pig-tail catheter. Paracentesis in such patients even in the presence of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis may be safe.⁸ Learn at the bedside from an expert.

Contraindications (these are relative, not absolute): End-stage cirrhosis; coagulopathy; hyponatraemia (≤ 126 mmol/L); sepsis. The main complication of the procedure is severe hypovolaemia secondary to reaccumulation of the ascites, so intravascular replenishment with a plasma expander is required. For smaller volumes, eg less than 5L, 500mL of 5% human albumin or gelofusine would be sufficient. For volumes over 5L, reasonable replacement would be 100mL 20% *human albumin* IV for each 1-3 litres of ascites drained¹⁰ (check your local policy). You may need to call the haematology lab to request this in advance.

Procedure Requires sterile technique.

- Ensure you have good IV access—eg 18G cannula in the antecubital fossa.
- Explain the procedure including the risks of infection, bleeding, hyponatraemia, renal impairment and damage to surrounding structures (such as liver, spleen and bowel), and obtain consent from the patient. Serious complications occur in less than 1 in 1000 patients.¹¹ Ask the patient to empty their bladder.
- Examine the abdomen carefully, evaluating the ascites and checking for organomegaly. Mark where you are going to enter. If in doubt, ask the radiology department to ultrasound the abdomen and mark a spot for drainage. Approach from the left side unless previous local surgery/stoma prevents this—call a senior for support and advice if this is the case.
- Prepare a tray with 2% chlorhexidine solution, sterile drapes, 1% lidocaine, syringes, needles, sample bottles and your drain. Clean the abdomen thoroughly and place sterile drapes, ensure you maintain sterile technique throughout. Infiltrate the local anaesthetic.
- Perform an ascitic tap (see p779) first so that you know you are in the correct place, remove 20mL fluid for MC&S.
- Away from the patient, carefully thread the catheter over the (large and long) needle using the guide so that the pig-tail has been straightened out. Remove the guide.
- With the left hand hold the needle ~1 inch from the tip—this will stop it from advancing too far (and from performing an aortic biopsy!). With the right hand, hold the other end.
- Gently insert the needle perpendicular to the skin at the site of the ascitic tap up to your hold with your left hand—ascites should now drain easily. If necessary advance the needle and catheter a short distance until good flow is achieved.
- Advance the catheter over the needle with your left hand, keeping the needle in exactly the same place with your right hand. ► Do not re-advance the needle because it will go through the curled pig-tail and do not withdraw it because you won't be able to thread in the catheter.
- When fully inserted, remove the needle, connect the catheter to a drainage bag (keep it below the level of the abdomen) and tape it down securely to the skin.
- The patient should stay in bed as the ascites drains.
- Document clearly in the notes the indication for the procedure, that consent was obtained, clotting and U&Es checked pre-procedure, how much lidocaine was required, how much fluid was removed for investigations, and whether there were any complications to the procedure.
- Replenish intravascular volume with human albumin (see above).
- Ask the nursing staff to remove the catheter after 6h or after a pre-determined volume has been drained (up to 20L can come off in 6 hours!) and document this clearly in the medical notes. Drains are normally removed after 4-6 hours to prevent infection.
- Check U&E after the procedure and re-examine the patient.



Diagnostic taps

If you are unsure whether a drain is needed, a diagnostic tap can be helpful. Whatever fluid you are sampling, a green needle carries far less risk than a formal drain. It also allows you to decide whether a drain is required.

Ascites may be sampled to give a cytological or bacterial diagnosis, eg to exclude spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP; p260). Before starting, know the patient's platelets + clotting times. If they are abnormal, seek help before proceeding.

- Place the patient flat and tap out the ascites, marking a point where fluid has been identified, avoiding vessels, stomas and scars (adhesions to the anterior abdominal wall). The left side may be safer—less chance of nicking liver.
- Clean the skin. Infiltrate some local anaesthetic, eg 1% *lidocaine* (see p575).
- Insert a 21G needle on a 20mL syringe into the skin and advance while aspirating until fluid is withdrawn, try to obtain 60mL of fluid.
- Remove the needle, apply a sterile dressing.
- Send fluid to microbiology (15mL) for *microscopy and culture, biochemistry* (5mL for protein, see p184), and *cytology* (40mL). Call microbiology to forewarn them if urgent analysis of the specimen is required.

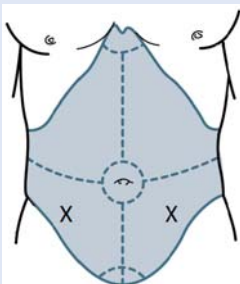


Fig 1. Always tap out the ascites, but aim approximately for 5cm medial to and superior to the anterior superior iliac spine. If in doubt, ask for an ultrasound to mark the spot.

Diagnostic aspiration of a pleural effusion

- If not yet done, a CXR may help evaluate the side and size of the effusion.
- Percuss the upper border of the pleural effusion and choose a site 1 or 2 intercostal spaces below it (usually posteriorly or laterally). If there is any doubt about the size or site of the effusion, ask for an ultrasound to mark a spot.
- Clean the area around the marked spot with 2% chlorhexidine solution.
- Infiltrate down to the pleura with 5–10mL of 1% *lidocaine*.
- Attach a 21G needle to a syringe and insert it just above the upper border of the rib below the mark to avoid the neurovascular bundle (see Box above). Aspirate whilst advancing the needle. Draw off 10–30mL of pleural fluid. Send fluid to the lab for *chemistry* (protein, glucose, pH, LDH, amylase); *bacteriology* (microscopy and culture, auramine stain, TB culture); *cytology* and, if indicated, *immunology* (rheumatoid factor, antinuclear antibodies, complement).
- ▶ If you cannot obtain fluid with a 21G needle, seek help.
- If any cause for concern, arrange a repeat CXR.

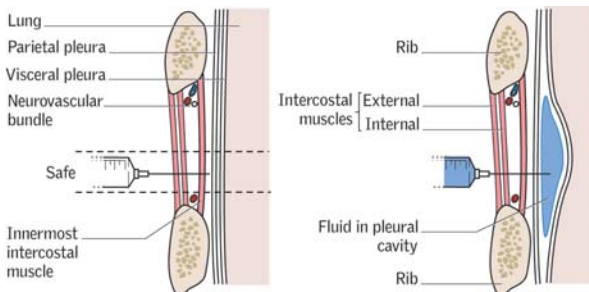


Fig 2. Safe approach to entering the pleura by the intercostal route.



Indications

- Pneumothorax: ventilated; tension; persistent/recurrent despite aspiration (eg <24h after 1st aspiration); large 2nd spontaneous pneumothorax if >50yrs old
- Malignant pleural effusion, empyema or complicated parapneumonic effusion
- Pleural effusion compromising ventilation, eg in ICU patients
- Traumatic haemopneumothorax
- Post-operatively: eg thoracotomy; oesophagectomy; cardiothoracic surgery.

▶ Most effusions are now drained using ultrasound guidance and a Seldinger technique. The Seldinger technique is also used for pneumothoraces except in traumatic or post-operative situations and for this reason is detailed below.

Sterile procedure¹²

- Identify the point for drainage. In effusions this should be done with ultrasound, ideally under direct guidance or with a marked spot (make sure the patient doesn't move!). For pneumothoraces check the drainage point from CXR/CT/examination.
- Preparation: Trolley with dressing pack; 2% chlorhexidine; needles; 10mL syringes; 1% lidocaine; scalpel; suture; Seldinger chest drain kit; underwater drainage bottle; connection tubes; sterile H₂O; dressings. Incontinence pad under patient.
- Choose insertion site: 4th–6th intercostal space, anterior- to mid-axillary line—the 'safe triangle' (see BOX and fig 1). A more posterior approach, eg the 7th space posteriorly, may be required to drain a loculated effusion (under direct US visualization!) and occasionally the 2nd intercostal space in the mid-clavicular line may be used for apical pneumothoraces—however, both approaches tend to be less comfortable.
- Maintain sterile technique—clean and place sterile drapes. Scrub for insertion.
- Prepare your underwater drain by filling the bottle to the marked line with sterile water. Ensure this is kept sterile until you need it.
- Infiltrate down to pleura with 10mL of 1% lidocaine and a 21G needle. Check that air/fluid can be aspirated from the proposed insertion site; if not do not proceed.
- Attach the Seldinger needle to the syringe containing 1–2mL of sterile saline. The needle is bevelled and will direct the guidewire, in general advance bevel up for pneumothoraces, bevel down for effusions.
- Insert the needle gently, aspirating constantly. When fluid/air is obtained in the syringe, stop, note insertion depth from the markings on the Seldinger needle. Remove syringe, thread the guidewire through the needle. Remove the needle and clamp the guidewire to the sterile drapes to ensure it does not move. Using the markings on the Seldinger needle, move the rubber stops on the dilators to the depth noted earlier, to prevent the dilator slipping in further than intended.
- Make a nick in the skin where the wire enters, and slide the dilators over the wire sequentially from smallest to largest to enlarge the hole, keep gauze on hand. Slide the Seldinger drain over the wire into the pleural cavity. Remove the wire and attach a three-way tap to the drain, then connect to the underwater drainage bottle.
- Suture the drain in place using a drain stitch—make a stitch in the skin close to the drain site, tie this fairly loosely with a double knot. Then tie the suture to the drain. It is usually best to be shown this before attempting it for yourself. Dress the drain, and ensure it is well taped down.
- Check that the drain is swinging (effusion) or bubbling (pneumothorax) and ensure the water bottle remains below the level of the patient at all times. If the drain needs to be lifted above the patient, clamp it briefly. ▶ You should never clamp chest drains inserted for pneumothoraces. Clamping for pleural effusions can control the rate of drainage and prevent expansion pulmonary oedema.
- Request a CXR to check the position of the drain.

Removal in pneumothorax Consider when drain is no longer bubbling and CXR shows re-inflation. Give analgesia beforehand, eg morphine.¹³ Smartly withdraw during expiration or Valsalva. There is no need to clamp the drain beforehand as re-insertion is unlikely.¹⁴ **In effusions** generally the drain can be removed when drainage is <200mL/24h, but for cirrhotic hydrothoraces the chest drain is treated similarly to the ascitic drain (see p778) with HAS supplementation and removal at 4–6 hours.



The 'safe triangle' for insertion of a chest drain

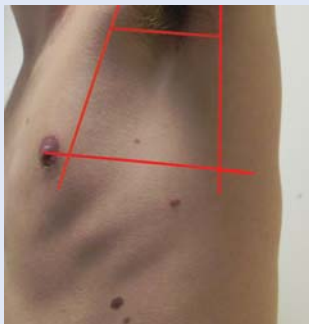


Fig 1. The safe 'triangle' is not really a triangle, as the axilla cuts off the point of the triangle. Draw a line along the lateral border of pectoralis major, a line along the anterior border of latissimus dorsi, and a line superior to the horizontal level of the nipple. The apex of the triangle is the axilla.

Often chest drains are inserted directly under ultrasound guidance, or with a pre-marked spot; however, in an emergency or for aspiration, the landmarks of the safe triangle are important to know.

Complications

- Thoracic or abdominal organ injury
- Lymphatic damage \therefore chylothorax
- Damage to long thoracic nerve of Bell \therefore wing scapula
- Rarely, arrhythmia.¹⁵

Watch out for

- Retrograde flow back into the chest
- Persistent bubbling—there may be a continual leak from the lung
- Blockage of the tube from clots or kinking—no swinging or bubbling
- Malposition—check position with CXR.

Relieving a tension pneumothorax

Symptoms Acute respiratory distress, chest pain, \blacktriangleright respiratory arrest.

Signs Hypotension; distended neck veins; asymmetrical lung expansion; trachea and apex deviated away from side of reduced air entry and hyperresonance to percussion. \blacktriangleright There is no time for a CXR (but see [fig 1](#), p763).

Aim To release air from the pleural space. In a tension pneumothorax air is drawn into the intrapleural space with each breath, but cannot escape due to a valve-like effect of the tiny flap in the parietal pleura. The increasing pressure progressively embarrasses the heart and the other lung.

\blacktriangleright **100% oxygen.**

\blacktriangleright **Insert a large-bore IV cannula** (eg Venflon®) usually through the 2nd intercostal space in the midclavicular line or the 'safe triangle' for chest drain insertion (see [Box](#)). Remove the stylet, allowing the trapped air to escape, usually with an audible hiss. This converts the tension pneumothorax to an open pneumothorax. Tape securely. \blacktriangleright Don't recover the cannula as tensioning will recur.

\blacktriangleright Proceed to formal chest drain insertion (see [p780](#)).

Aspiration of a pneumothorax

\blacktriangleright p825

Identify the 2nd intercostal space in the midclavicular line (or 4–6th intercostal space in the midaxillary line) and infiltrate with 1% *lidocaine* down to the pleura overlying the pneumothorax.

- Insert a 16G cannula into the pleural space. Remove the needle and connect the cannula to a 3-way tap and a 50mL syringe. Aspirate up to 2.5L of air (50mL \times 50). Stop if resistance is felt, or if the patient coughs excessively.
- Request a CXR to confirm resolution of the pneumothorax. If successful, consider discharging the patient and repeating the CXR after 24h to exclude recurrence, and again after 7–10d. Advise to avoid air travel for 6 weeks after a normal CXR. Diving should be permanently avoided.
- If aspiration is unsuccessful (in a significant, symptomatic pneumothorax), insert an intercostal drain (see [p780](#)).



Contraindications • Bleeding diathesis; • Cardiorespiratory compromise; • Infection at site of needle insertion. Most importantly: ► ↑Intracranial pressure (suspect if very severe headache, ↓level of consciousness with falling pulse, rising BP, vomiting, focal neurology, or papilloedema)—LP in these patients will cause coning, so unless it is a routine procedure, eg for known idiopathic intracranial hypertension, obtain a CT prior to LP. CT is not infallible, so be sure your indication for LP is strong.

Method Explain to the patient what sampling CSF entails, why it is needed, that co-operation is vital, and that they can communicate with you at all stages.

- Place the patient on his or her left side, with the back on the edge of the bed, fully flexed (knees to chin). A pillow under the head and another between the knees may keep them more stable.
- Landmarks: plane of iliac crests through the level of L3/4 (see **fig 1**). In adults, the spinal cord ends at the L1/2 disc (**fig 2**). Mark L3/4 intervertebral space (or one space below, L4/5), eg by a gentle indentation of a needle cap on the overlying skin (better than a ballpoint pen mark, which might be erased by the sterilizing fluid).
- Use aseptic technique (hat, mask, gloves, gown) and 2% chlorhexidine in 70% alcohol to clean the skin, allow to dry and then place sterile drapes.
- Open the spinal pack. Assemble the manometer and 3-way tap. Have 3 plain sterile tubes and 1 fluoride tube (for glucose) ready.
- Using a 25G (orange) needle, raise a bleb of local anaesthetic, then use a 21G (green) needle to infiltrate deeper.
- Wait 1min, then insert spinal needle (22G, stilette in place) perpendicular to the body, through your mark, aiming slightly up towards umbilicus. Feel resistance of spinal ligaments, and then the dura, then a 'give' as the needle enters the subarachnoid space. NB: keep the bevel of the needle facing up, parallel with dural fibres.
- Withdraw stilette. Check CSF fills needle and attach manometer (3-way tap turned off towards you) to measure 'opening' pressure.
- Catch fluid in three sequentially numbered bottles (10 drops per tube).
- Reinsert stilette,¹⁶ then remove needle and apply dressing. Document the procedure clearly in the notes including CSF appearance and opening pressure.
- Send CSF promptly for *microscopy, culture, protein, lactate and glucose* (do plasma glucose too)—call the lab to let them know. If applicable, also send for: cytology, fungal studies, TB culture, virology (± herpes and other PCR), syphilis serology, oligoclonal bands (+serum sample for comparison) if multiple sclerosis suspected. Is there xanthochromia (p482)?
- There is no evidence that lying flat post procedure prevents headache,¹⁷ check CNS observations and BP regularly if you have concerns. Post-LP headache is partly preventable by reinserting the stilette before needle withdrawal,¹⁸ and reducing CSF leakage by using finer needles shaped to part the dura rather than cut it: see **BOX**.
- If you fail; ask for help—try with the patient sitting or with radiology guidance.

CSF composition *Normal values:* Lymphocytes <5/mm³; no polymorphs; protein <0.4g/L; glucose >2.2mmol/L (or ≥50% plasma level); pressure <200mm CSF. *In meningitis:* See p833. *In multiple sclerosis:* See p500.

Bloody tap: This is an artefact due to piercing a blood vessel, which is indicated (unreliably) by fewer red cells in successive bottles, and no yellowing of CSF (xanthochromia). To estimate how many white cells (*W*) were in the CSF before the blood was added, use the following:

$$W = \text{CSF WCC} - [(\text{blood WCC} \times \text{CSF RBC}) \div \text{blood RBC}]$$

If the blood count is normal, the rule of thumb is to subtract from the total CSF WCC (per μL) one white cell for every 1000 RBCs. To estimate the true protein level, subtract 10mg/L for every 1000 RBCs/mm³ (be sure to do the count and protein estimation on the same bottle). NB: high protein levels in CSF make it appear yellow. **Subarachnoid haemorrhage:** Xanthochromia (yellow supernatant on spun CSF). Red cells in equal numbers in all bottles (unreliable). RBCs will excite an inflammatory response (eg CSF WCC raised), most marked after 48h. **Raised protein:** Meningitis; MS; Guillain-Barré syndrome. **Very raised CSF protein:** Spinal block; TB; or severe bacterial meningitis.



Complications

• Post-dural puncture headache • Infection • Bleeding • Cerebral herniation (rare, check for signs of \uparrow ICP before proceeding) • Minor/transient neurological symptoms, eg paraesthesia, radiculopathy.

Any change in lower body neurology after an LP (pain, weakness, sensory changes, bladder/bowel disturbance) should be treated as cauda equina compression (haematoma/abscess) until proven otherwise. Obtain an urgent MRI spine.

NB: post-LP brain MRI scans often show diffuse meningeal enhancement with gadolinium. This is thought to be a reflection of increased blood flow secondary to intracranial hypotension. Interpret these scans with caution and in the context of the patient's clinical situation. Ensure the reason for the scan and current neurological examination are discussed with the radiologist pre procedure.

Post-LP headache

Risk 10–30%, typically occurring within 24h of LP, resolution over hours to 2wks (mean: 3–4d). Patients describe a constant, dull ache, more frontal than occipital. The most characteristic symptom is of **positional exacerbation**—worse when upright. There may be mild meningism or nausea. The pathology is thought to be continued leakage of CSF from the puncture site and intracranial **hypotension**, though there may be other mechanisms involved.¹⁸

Prevention Use the smallest spinal needle that is practical (22G) and keep the bevel aligned as described on p782. **Blunt** needles (more expensive!) can reduce risk and are recommended (ask an anaesthetist about supply, headache following spinal anaesthesia occurs in only ~1%, partly due to this and partly due to the smaller needles used);¹⁹ however, collection of CSF takes too long (>6min) if needles smaller than 22G are used.²⁰ Before withdrawing the needle, reinsert the stylette.¹⁶

Treatment Despite years of anecdotal advice to the contrary, none of the following has ever been shown to be a risk factor: position during or after the procedure; hydration status before, during, or after; amount of CSF removed; immediate activity or rest post-LP.²¹ Time is a consistent healer. For severe or prolonged headaches, ask an anaesthetist about a **blood patch**.²² This is a careful injection of 20mL of autologous venous blood into the adjacent epidural space (said to 'clog up the hole'). Immediate relief occurs in 95%.

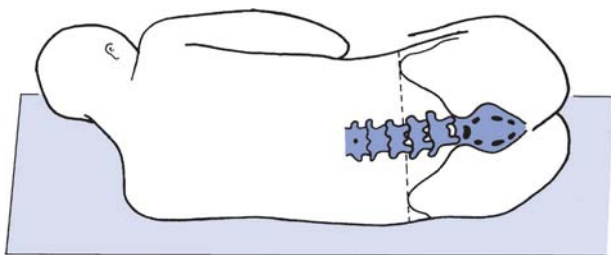


Fig 1. Defining the 3rd–4th lumbar vertebral interspace.

Adapted with permission from Vakili; *Diagnosis & Management of Medical Emergencies*, OUP.



Fig 2. Axial T2-weighted MRI of the lumbar spine. The conus ends at the L1/L2 level with continuation of the cauda equina. Lumbar puncture below the L2 level will not damage the cauda equina as the nerve roots will part around an LP needle.

Image courtesy of Norwich Radiology Dept.



► Do not wait for a crisis before familiarizing yourself with the defibrillator, as there are several types. All hospitals should include this information in your induction but check how the machine on your ward works.

Indications To restore sinus rhythm if VF/VT; AF, flutter, or supraventricular tachycardias if other treatments (p120) have failed, or there is haemodynamic compromise (p124 & p818). This may be done as an emergency, eg VF/VT, or electively, eg AF.

Aim To completely depolarize the heart using a direct current.

Procedure

- Unless critically unwell, conscious patients require a general anaesthetic or monitored heavy sedation.¹
- If elective cardioversion of AF ensure adequate anticoagulation beforehand.
- Almost all defibrillators are now paddle-free and use 'hands-free' pads instead (less chance of skin arc than jelly). Place the pads (eg Littmann™ Defib Pads) on chest, 1 over apex (p37) and 1 below right clavicle. The positions are often given by a diagram on the reverse of the pad.

► For VF/pulseless VT follow the ALS algorithm on inside back cover and call the arrest team!

Cardioversion: Synchronize the shock with the rhythm by pressing the 'SYNC' button on the machine. This ensures the shock does not initiate a ventricular arrhythmia. However, this only works for cardioversion; if the sync mode is engaged in VF, the defibrillator will not discharge!

- **Monophasic defibrillators** (fig 1): Set the energy level at 360J for VF/VT (ARREST SITUATION); 200J for AF; 50J for atrial flutter.^{23,24}
- **Biphasic defibrillators** (fig 2): Impedance is less with a biphasic shock and 120–200J is used for shocks for VF/VT. They use less energy and are just as effective as monophasic defibs in cardioversion. 120–200J will cardiovert most arrhythmias.
- **Automatic external defibrillators** (AED): Can be used by anyone who can turn them on and apply the pads. Follow the instructions given by the AED.

Shocking

- 1 Consider anticoagulation in AF.²
- 2 Clearly state that you are charging the defibrillator.
- 3 Make sure no one else is touching the patient, the bed, or anything is in turn touching these.
- 4 Clearly state that you are about to shock the patient.
- 5 Press the button(s) on the electrode(s) to give the shock. If there is a change in rhythm before you shock and the shock is no longer required, turn the dial to 'discharge'. Do not allow anyone to approach until the reading has dropped to 0J.
- 6 After a shock: watch ECG; repeat the shock. Up to 3 are usual for AF/flutter.
- 7 Get an up-to-date 12-lead ECG.

► In children, use 2J/kg, then 4J/kg in VF/VT; if monophasic, and if >10kg, use adult paddles; OHCS p239.



Fig 1. The damped sine monophasic waveform.

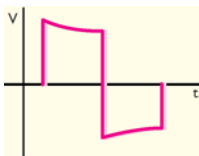


Fig 2. Rectilinear biphasic waveform with truncated exponential decay. Most new external defibrillators use this waveform.

1 Remember that overdose of midazolam for sedation in a conscious patient is an NHS 'Never Event', so make sure you know what you are doing and have the support of an anaesthetist or someone else who is trained in sedation and airway management, eg intensivist, or emergency department physician.

2 The risk of emboli is increased if the patient presents >48 hours after onset of AF; if in doubt, anticoagulate or, if patient less stable, request a TOE to check for thrombi.

Taking arterial blood gas (ABG) samples

The reaction of a patient to ABG sampling is often very different to when they are subjected to venepuncture, so try to explain that the blood sample you are about to take is going to feel different and is for a different purpose (p156 for indications and analysis). The usual site is the radial artery at the wrist. **Check with the patient that they do not have an arteriovenous fistula for haemodialysis. Never, ever sample from a fistula!**

Procedure:

- Get kit ready; include: portable sharps bin; pre-heparinized syringe; needle (blue size (23G) is good, although many syringes now come pre-made with needle); gloves; 2% chlorhexidine/70% alcohol swab; gauze; tape.
- Feel thoroughly for the best site. Look at both sides.
- Wipe with cleaning swab. Let the area dry. Get yourself comfortable.
- If the patient is drowsy or unconscious, ask an assistant to hold the hand and arm with the wrist slightly extended (fig 3).
- Before sampling, expel any excess heparin in the syringe. Infiltration over the artery with a small amount of 1% *lidocaine* (p575) through a 25G (orange) needle makes the procedure painless.
- Hold the syringe like a pen, with the needle bevel up. Let the patient know you are about to take the sample. Feel for the pulse with your other hand and enter at 45°, aiming beneath the finger you are feeling with.
- In most syringes, the plunger will move up on its own in a pulsatile manner if you are in the artery; rarely, entry into a vein next to the artery will give a similar result. Colour of the blood is little guide to its source!
- Allow the syringe to fill with 1-2mL, then remove the needle and apply firm pressure for 5 minutes (10 if anticoagulated).
- Expel any air from the syringe as this will alter the oxygenation of the blood. Cap and label the sample, check the patient's temperature and FiO_2 (0.21 if on air!). Take the sample to the nearest analysis machine or send it by express delivery to the lab (which may be by your own feet, get someone else to apply pressure) as it should be analysed within 15 minutes of sampling.
- Syringes and analysis machines differ, so get familiar with the local nuances.

The other site that is amenable to ABG sampling is the femoral artery. Surprisingly this may be less uncomfortable as it is a relatively less sensitive area and because, when supine, the patient cannot see the needle and thus may feel less apprehensive. The brachial artery can also be used, but be aware that the median nerve sits closely on its medial side and it is an end-artery. Normal values: p771.



Fig 3. The ideal position for the wrist, slightly hyperextended, resting on an unopened litre bag of fluid or a bandage is ideal. In an unconscious patient or for arterial line insertion, taping the thumb to the bed can hold the wrist in the perfect position if you do not have an assistant.

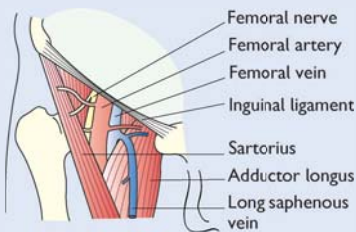


Fig 4. The femoral artery is amenable to ABG sampling.



Cricothyroidotomy = an emergency procedure to overcome airway obstruction above the level of the larynx. It should only be done in absolute “can’t intubate, can’t ventilate” situations, ie where ventilation is impossible with a bag and mask (\pm airway adjuncts) and where there is an immediate threat to life. If not, call anaesthetics or ENT for immediate help.

Indications Upper airway obstruction when endotracheal intubation not possible, eg irretrievable foreign body; facial oedema (burns, angio-oedema); maxillofacial trauma; infection (epiglottitis).

Procedure Lie the patient supine with neck extended (eg pillow under shoulders) unless there is suspected cervical-spine instability. Run your index finger down the neck anteriorly in the midline to find the notch in the upper border of the thyroid cartilage (the Adam’s apple): just below this, between the thyroid and cricoid cartilages, is a depression—the cricothyroid membrane (see **fig 1**). If you cannot feel the depression and it is an emergency, you can access the trachea directly approximately halfway between the cricoid cartilage and the suprasternal notch.

Ideally use a purpose-designed kit (eg QuickTrach, MiniTrach), all hospitals will stock one version. If no kit is available then a cannula (needle cricothyroidotomy) can buy time, and in out-of-hospital situations a blade and empty biro case have saved lives!

1 Needle cricothyroidotomy: Pierce the membrane perpendicular to the skin with large-bore cannula (14G) attached to syringe: withdrawal of air confirms position; lidocaine may or may not be required. Slide cannula over needle at 45° to the skin superiorly in the sagittal plane (see **fig 3**). Use a Y-connector or improvise connection to O_2 supply at 15L/min: use thumb on Y-connector to allow O_2 in over 1s and CO_2 out over 4s (‘transtracheal jet insufflation’). This is the preferred method in children <12 yrs. This will only sustain life for 30–45min before CO_2 builds up. However, if the patient has a completely obstructed airway then they will not be able to exhale through this, and it will lead to cardiovascular compromise and pneumothoraces.

2 Cricothyroidotomy kit: Most contain a guarded blade, and a large (4–6mm) shaped cannula (cuffed or uncuffed depending on brand) over an introducer, plus a connector and binding tape. The patient will have to be ventilated via a bag, as the resistance is too high to breathe spontaneously. This will sustain for 30–45min.

3 Surgical cricothyroidotomy: Smallest tube for prolonged ventilation is 6mm. Introduce high-volume low-pressure cuff tracheostomy tube through a horizontal incision in membrane. Take care not to cut the thyroid or cricoid cartilages.

Complications Local haemorrhage \pm aspiration; posterior perforation of trachea \pm oesophagus; subglottic stenosis; laryngeal stenosis if membrane over-incised in childhood; tube blockage; subcutaneous tunnelling; vocal cord paralysis or hoarseness (the recurrent laryngeal nerve runs superiorly in the tracheo-oesophageal groove).

►NB: needle and kit cricothyroidotomies are temporary measures pending formal tracheostomy.

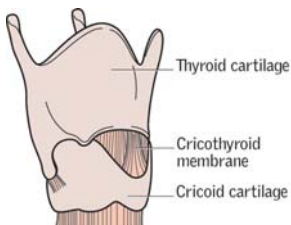


Fig 1. The cricothyroid membrane.



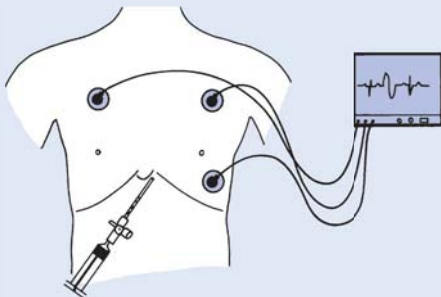


Fig 2. Emergency needle pericardiocentesis.

- Get your senior's help (for whom this page may serve as an *aide-mémoire*).
- Equipment: 20mL syringe, long 18G cannula, 3-way tap, ECG monitor, skin cleanser. Use echo guidance if time allows.
- If time allows, use full aseptic technique, at a minimum clean skin with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% alcohol (eg Chloraprep®) and wear sterile gloves, and, if conscious, use local anaesthesia and sedation, eg with slow IV *midazolam*: titrate up to 3.5–5mg—start with 2mg over 1min, 0.5–1mg in elderly (in whom the maximum dose is 3.5mg; inject at the rate of $\leq 2\text{mg/min}$)—antidote: *flumazenil* 0.2mg IV over 15s, then 0.1mg every 60s, up to 1mg in total.

► **Ensure you have IV access and full resuscitation equipment to hand.**

- Introduce needle at 45° to skin just below and to left of xiphisternum, aiming for tip of left scapula. Aspirate continuously and watch ECG. Frequent ventricular ectopics or an injury pattern (ST segment \downarrow) on ECG imply that the myocardium has been breached—withdraw slightly. As soon as fluid is obtained through the needle, slide the cannula into place.
- Evacuate pericardial contents through the syringe and 3-way tap. Removal of only a small amount of fluid (eg 20mL) can produce marked clinical improvement. If you are not sure whether the fluid you are aspirating is pure blood (eg on entering a ventricle), see if it clots (heavily bloodstained pericardial fluid does not clot), or measure its PCV (though this may be difficult in the acute setting but some blood gas analysers may give this).
- You can leave the cannula *in situ* temporarily, for repeated aspiration. If there is reaccumulation, insert a drain but pericardiectomy may be needed.
- Send fluid for microscopy and culture, as needed, including tests for TB.

Complications: Laceration of ventricle or coronary artery (\pm subsequent haemopericardium); aspiration of ventricular blood; arrhythmias (ventricular fibrillation); pneumothorax; puncture of aorta, oesophagus (\pm mediastinitis), or peritoneum (\pm peritonitis).

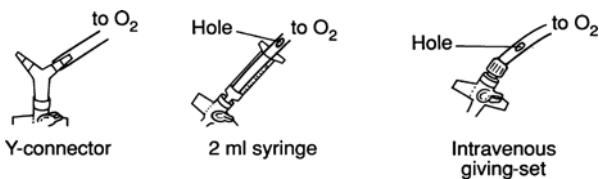


Fig 3. Methods of providing oxygen.

1 Procedures used by cardiologists for elective pericardiocentesis may differ, involving the use of guide-wires, screening, and catheters.



Central venous cannulae may be inserted to measure central venous pressure (CVP), to administer certain drugs (eg amiodarone, chemotherapy), or for intravenous access (fluid, parenteral nutrition). In an emergency, the procedure can be done using the landmark method (see opposite), though NICE recommends that all routine internal jugular catheters should be placed with US guidance.²⁵ Even if the line is not placed under direct ultrasound visualization, a look to check vessel size, position in relation to artery, and patency (no thrombus or stenosis) is extremely useful.

Contraindications to central venous cannulation

Absolute	Relative
Infection at insertion site	Coagulopathy
	Ipsilateral carotid endarterectomy
	Newly inserted cardiac pacemaker leads
	Thrombus within the vein
	Venous stenosis
	Ipsilateral abnormal anatomy

Sites of insertion include the internal jugular vein (see below and BOX, p41), subclavian vein, and the femoral vein (often used in an emergency see BOX, p785). The choice depends largely on operator experience, but evidence suggests that the femoral approach is associated with a higher rate of line infection and thrombosis.²⁶ Overall, the internal jugular approach (with ultrasound guidance) is most commonly used and risks fewer complications than the subclavian. If possible, get written consent (p570). Check clotting + platelets. The technique for internal jugular (routine) and femoral (emergency) is given below.

Complications (~20%). Insertion is not without hazard, so decide whether the patient requires a line first, and then ask for help if you are inexperienced.

- ▶ Bleeding; arterial puncture/cannulation; AV fistula formation.
 - Air embolism.
 - Pneumothorax; haemothorax; chylothorax (lymph).
 - Phrenic nerve palsy.¹ The right phrenic nerve passes over the brachiocephalic artery, posterior to the subclavian vein. Hiccups may be a sign of injury.²⁷
 - Phlebitis; thrombus formation on tip or in vein. If high risk for thromboembolism (eg malignancy), consider anticoagulation (eg low molecular weight heparin).
 - Bacterial colonization; cellulitis; sepsis. This can be reduced by adherence to a strict aseptic technique, and use of antibiotic- or heparin-coated catheters.²⁸
- ▶ If taking blood cultures in a febrile patient with a central venous line, remember to take samples from the central line and from a new peripheral site (ie not a pre-existing cannula).

Peripherally inserted central cannulas (PICC lines) are a good alternative to central lines, as they can stay *in situ* for up to 6 months, and provide access for blood sampling, fluids, antibiotics (allowing home IV therapy). They are placed using a Seldinger technique, puncturing the brachial or basilic vein then threading the line into the subclavian or superior vena cava. Because of the insertion site there is a much lower risk of pneumo- or haemothorax, but they are tricky to insert in an emergency.

Removing central lines Should be done carefully with aseptic technique. Put the patient slightly head down, remove dressings, clean and drape the area, remove sutures. Ask the patient to inhale and hold their breath, then breath out smoothly while you are pulling the line out. This helps to prevent air emboli. Apply pressure for 5 minutes (longer if coagulopathic).

1 Think of phrenic nerve palsy whenever there is orthopnoea (CXR: raised hemidiaphragm). Other causes: lung ca; myeloma; thymoma; neck trauma; cervical spondylosis; thoracic surgery; c3-5 zoster; HIV; Lyme dis.; TB; paraneoplastic syndrome; muscular dystrophy; big left atrium; phrenic nucleus lesion (eg MS).²⁹

Internal jugular catheterization

Internal jugular should be the approach of choice in a non-emergency situation. Ideally the right side as it offers a direct route to the heart and there is less chance of misplacement of the line compared to the left. The subclavian approach is trickier and best taught by an expert. Use ultrasound guidance if at all possible, ideally to insert the line under direct vision, but at least to define the anatomy. If possible, have the patient attached to a cardiac monitor in case of arrhythmias.

- Position the patient slightly head down to avoid air embolism and fill the veins to improve your chances of success. **NB:** ▶ this can compromise cardiac function and precipitate acute LVF so check if your patient has a cardiac history. Minimize the time the patient is head down; if they are unable to lie flat, consider a femoral approach. Turn their head slightly to the left.
- This should be a sterile procedure so use full aseptic technique (hat, mask, gloves, gown) and clean with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol before draping. Ensure your equipment is prepared, flush the catheter lumens with saline.
- If ultrasound is not available, the **landmark procedure** can be used to identify insertion point—approximately at the junction of the two heads of sternocleidomastoid at about the level of the thyroid cartilage (fig 1). Feel gently for the carotid pulse, then infiltrate with 1% lidocaine just lateral to this. The vein is usually superficial (fig 2).
- Insert the introducer needle with a 5mL syringe attached, advance gently at a 45 degree angle, aiming for the ipsilateral nipple and aspirating continuously. If you are using ultrasound, watch the needle tip enter the vein, if the landmark approach keep your fingers on the carotid pulse.
- As soon as blood is aspirated, lay down the ultrasound and hold the introducer needle in position, remove the syringe and thread the guidewire through the needle. It should pass easily, if there is resistance try lowering the angle of the needle and gently advancing the wire. If the wire will not pass do not remove it alone, the tip can shear off and embolize, remove the needle with the wire, apply pressure and attempt a second puncture.
- If the wire threads easily, insert to 30cm (see markings on the wire), remove the needle keeping hold of the wire at all times. Make a nick in the skin with a scalpel at the insertion point, and gently thread the dilator over the wire. You do not need to insert the dilator far, only as far as the vein (you often feel a loss of resistance as the dilator enters the vein, so insert gently, the authors have seen several pneumothoraces from enthusiastic dilating).
- Remove the dilator, keeping hold of the wire, thread the flushed catheter over the wire, then remove the wire. The line should sit at about 13cm on the right side (17cm on the left). Check you can aspirate blood from each lumen, then flush them.
- Suture the catheter in place (many have little 'wings' for suturing) and dress. Request a CXR to confirm position and exclude pneumothorax. The tip of the catheter should sit vertically in the svc.

Femoral vein In an emergency situation where ultrasound is not easily accessible, if the patient is unable to lie flat, or where speed is of the essence, the femoral approach is often the safest, as there is no risk of pneumothorax, haemothorax and a much reduced risk of arrhythmia. The technique is similar to internal jugular, except the insertion point is just medial to the femoral artery at the groin crease.

Subclavian vein Should be taught by an expert and should ideally be carried out under ultrasound guidance. Many experienced physicians prefer this approach, but even in experienced hands there is a higher risk of complications compared to ultrasound guided internal jugular lines.³⁰



Fig 1. Position of internal jugular and subclavian veins (red) compared to the clavicle (yellow).



Fig 2. Vessels seen on ultrasound. The compressible vein is above the artery.



Often it is wiser to liaise with a specialist pacing centre to arrange prompt, definitive pacing than to try temporary transvenous pacing, which often has complications (see below) which may delay a definitive procedure.

Possible indications in the acute phase of myocardial infarction

• *Complete AV block:*

- With inferior MI (right coronary artery occlusion) pacing may only be needed if symptomatic; spontaneous recovery may occur.
- With anterior MI (representing massive septal infarction).

• *Second-degree block:*

- Wenckebach (p119; implies decremental AV node conduction; may respond to atropine in an inferior MI; pace if anterior MI).
- Mobitz type 2 block is usually associated with distal fascicular disease and carries high risk of complete heart block, so pace in both types of MI.

• *First-degree block:* Observe carefully: 40% develop higher degrees of block.

• *Bundle branch block:* Pace prophylactically if evidence of trifascicular disease (p94) or non-adjacent bifascicular disease.

• *Sino-atrial disease + serious symptoms:* Pace unless responds to atropine.

Other indications where temporary pacing may be needed

- Pre-op: if surgery is required in patients with type 2 or complete heart block (whether or not MI has occurred); do 24h ECG; liaise with the anaesthetist.
- Drug poisoning, eg with β -blockers, digoxin, or verapamil.
- Symptomatic bradycardia, uncontrolled by *atropine* or *isoprenaline*.
- Suppression of drug-resistant VT and SVT (overdrive pacing; do on ICU).
- Asystolic cardiac arrest with P-wave activity (ventricular standstill).
- During or after cardiac surgery—eg around the AV node or bundle of His.

Technique for temporary transvenous pacing Learn from an expert.

• *Preparation:* Monitor ECG; have a defibrillator to hand, ensure the patient has peripheral access; check that a radiographer with screening equipment is present.¹ If you are screening, wear leads. Ensure you use full aseptic technique throughout.

• *Insertion:* Place the introducer into the (ideally right) internal jugular vein (p789) or subclavian. If this is difficult, access to the right atrium can be achieved via the femoral vein. Pass the pacing wire through the introducer into the right atrium, ideally under radiological screening. It will either pass easily through the tricuspid valve or loop within the atrium. If the latter occurs, it is usually possible to flip the wire across the valve with a combined twisting and withdrawing movement (fig 1). Advance the wire slightly. At this stage the wire may try to exit the ventricle through the pulmonary outflow tract. A further withdrawing and rotation of the wire will aim the tip at the apex of the right ventricle. Advance slightly again to place the wire in contact with the endocardium. Remove any slack to ↓risk of subsequent displacement.

• *Checking the threshold:* Connect the wire to the pacing box and set the 'demand' rate slightly higher than the patient's own heart rate and the output to 3V. A paced rhythm should be seen. Find the pacing threshold by slowly reducing the voltage until the pacemaker fails to stimulate the tissue (pacing spikes are no longer followed by paced beats). The threshold should be less than 1V, but a slightly higher value may be acceptable if it is stable—eg after a large infarction.

• *Setting the pacemaker:* Set the output to 3V or over 3 times the threshold value (whichever is higher) in 'demand' mode. Set the rate as required. Suture the wire to the skin, and fix with a sterile dressing.

• Check the position of the wire (and exclude pneumothorax) with a CXR.

• Recurrent checks of the pacing threshold are required over the next few days. The formation of endocardial oedema can raise the threshold by a factor of 2-3.

Complications Pneumothorax; sepsis; cardiac perforation; pacing failure: from loss of capture, loss of electrical continuity in pacing circuit, or electrode displacement.

¹ Balloon-flotation techniques do not need radiographic guidance and have been shown to be quicker and easier to insert, with fewer complications compared to placement of semi-rigid electrode wires.³¹

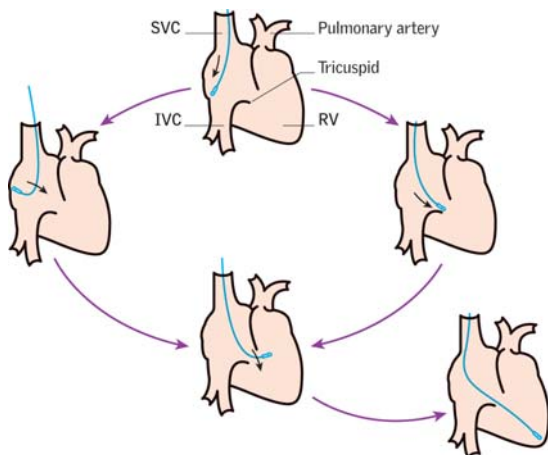


Fig 1. Siting a temporary cardiac pacemaker.

Non-invasive transcutaneous cardiac pacing

This method (performed through a defibrillator with external pacing facility) has the advantages of being quicker, less risky than the transvenous route, and easier to perform. Its main disadvantage is the pain caused by skeletal muscle contraction in the non-sedated patient. Indications for pacing via the transcutaneous route are as **OPPOSITE**, **plus** if transvenous pacing (or someone able to perform it) is unavailable or will be delayed in an emergency situation.

- ▶▶ Give sedation and analgesia, eg *midazolam* + *morphine* IV titrated to effect.
- ▶▶ Clipping chest hair may help improve electrical contact; ▶▶ don't shave the skin, as nicks can predispose to electrical burns. Ensure the skin is dry.
- ▶▶ Almost all modern transcutaneous devices can function through defibrillation 'hands free' pads, and so these can be applied as for defibrillation (see p784). If necessary, the pads can be placed in an AP position: anteriorly over the V_2 - V_3 electrode position and posteriorly at the same level, just below the scapula.
- ▶▶ Select 'demand' mode, (which synchronizes the stimulus with the R wave, so avoiding pacing on the T wave—which can provoke VF or VT) and adjust the ECG gain so that QRS complexes can be seen.
- ▶▶ Select an appropriate pacing rate: eg 60-90bpm in an adult.
- ▶▶ Set the pacing current at the lowest setting and turn on the pacemaker.
- ▶▶ Increase the pacing current until electrical capture occurs (normally from 50-100mA), which can be confirmed by seeing a wide QRS complex and a T wave on the trace (ventricular electrical capture). This does not necessarily mean that there has been mechanical capture—one clinical trial has described using emergency cardiac ultrasound to assess for this.³²
- ▶▶ There will be some interference from skeletal muscle contraction on the ECG trace, as well as possible artefact, which could be mistaken for a QRS complex. The absence of a T wave is an important discriminator between the two.
- ▶▶ CPR can continue with the pads in place, though only when the pacing unit is off.
- ▶▶ Once adequate cardiac output has been maintained, seek expert help and arrange transvenous pacing.





Many diseases can present as emergencies, but if you know about the following, you will be very unlucky to lose a patient from a disease not listed here, on a general medical take, provided you remember to ask for help.

Emergency presentations

Headache 794

Breathlessness 796

Chest pain 798

Coma 800

The Glasgow coma scale (GCS) 802

Shock 804

Anaphylactic shock 806

Cardiovascular emergencies:

Acute coronary syndrome—with ST-elevation 808

Acute coronary syndrome—without ST-elevation 810

Severe pulmonary oedema 812

Cardiogenic shock 814

Broad complex tachycardia 816

Narrow complex tachycardia 818

Respiratory emergencies:

Acute severe asthma 820

Acute exacerbations of COPD 822

Pneumothorax 824

Tension pneumothorax 824

Pneumonia 826

Pulmonary embolism (PE) 828

Gastrointestinal emergencies:

Acute upper GI bleeding 830

Neurological emergencies:

Meningitis 832

Encephalitis 834

Cerebral abscess 835

Status epilepticus 836

Head injury 838

Raised intracranial pressure (ICP) 840

Endocrinological emergencies:

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) 842

Other diabetic emergencies 844

Thyroid emergencies 844

Addisonian crisis/Hypopituitary coma 846

Phaeochromocytoma emergencies 847

Acute kidney injury (AKI)/Hyperkalaemia 848

Acute poisoning 850

Salicylate and paracetamol poisoning 856

Burns 858

Hypothermia 860

Major disasters 862

Emergencies covered in other chapters See inside front cover.

In OHCS—Paediatrics: Life support and cardiac arrest (OHCS p238–p239); is he seriously ill? (OHCS p103); epiglottitis (OHCS p158). **Adults:** The major disaster (OHCS p806); trauma (OHCS chapter 11); drowning (OHCS p724); ectopic pregnancy (OHCS p262); eclampsia (OHCS p48); amniotic fluid embolus (OHCS p89); obstetric shock (OHCS p55); glaucoma (OHCS p430); pre-hospital care/first aid (OHCS p790–p814).

Sources include: *BMJ*; *NEJM*; *Oxford Handbook of Acute Medicine*; and the MOD clinical guidelines for operations.¹



Fig 1. Dr James K. Styner was piloting a light aircraft in 1976 when weather conditions caused a crash that killed his wife and seriously injured three of his four children. With his eldest son he stabilised the other children and transferred all three to a local hospital, where he was appalled that the local doctors were unprepared for treating multiple trauma cases. He famously said "When I can provide better care in the field with limited resources than my children and I received at the primary facility, there is something wrong with the system and the system has to be changed." Following this incident he collaborated with several colleagues and in 1978 began offering an Advanced Trauma and Life Support course, now available in over 40 countries worldwide and considered the gold standard for initial management of trauma cases. He still practises today as an orthopaedic surgeon in California.



Introduction to emergencies

Some doctors enjoy the adrenaline rush of seeing an emergency case and pulling someone back from the edge of death. Some fear the emergency take, worried as to what they will miss, how many will die. There is no right approach; the emergency room needs both thought and practicality to manage patients. A patient who comes in flat and can be resuscitated gives the whole team a boost, as right there in front of us is the proof that we can make a difference. However, a patient who comes in well and collapses, dying before we can even decide what is wrong, can bring the whole team down. There are nights where we save life after life, and nights where we can't, sometimes a death is inevitable, despite our best efforts. You are a doctor, but you are a human being as well, and losing a patient can feel like a personal failure. However, remember that when we lose a patient it is the disease that has killed them, not us. Try to take a few minutes and reflect on what happened; ask if you could have done anything differently. Should you have sought help sooner? Discussing with a senior can be helpful, as can writing down your reflection, not in a portfolio for discussion at your appraisal, but in anonymous format for your own education. Watch the team at an arrest, the best doctors are the ones who have learned to stand back, assess the whole situation, and take enough time to see where the critical intervention is needed. There is no substitute for experience, nobody becomes a Consultant overnight, but watch the best clinicians at work and you will learn both practical and life skills.

Most important in an emergency situation is communication. Wherever you can, involve the relatives and the whole team in discussions, but remember that at the heart of this is a patient. What do they want? Never be afraid to ask the patient directly, they may hold very strong views. However, it is up to us as physicians to be honest with them about their prognosis, do not offer a treatment you know is not in the best interests of the patient, and this includes resuscitation. When faced with death, many patients are afraid, our role is to try to relieve that fear, whether by intervening to delay death, or by easing their passing. But we cannot ever prevent death, we simply delay it. As Shakespeare says in *Julius Caesar*:

"Of all the wonders that I have yet heard, it seems to me most strange that men should fear, seeing that death, a necessary end, will come when it will come."

ABCDE preliminary assessment (primary survey)^{2 NICE}

- Airway** Protect cervical spine, if injury possible.
Assessment: any signs of obstruction? Ascertain patency.
Management: establish a patent airway.
- Breathing** *Assessment:* determine respiratory rate, check bilateral chest movement, percuss and auscultate.
Management: if no respiratory effort, treat as arrest² (see inside back cover), intubate and ventilate. If breathing compromised, give high-concentration O₂, manage according to findings, eg relieve tension pneumothorax.
- Circulation** *Assessment:* check pulse and BP; check if peripherally shut down; check capillary refill; look for evidence of haemorrhage.
Management: if shocked, treat as on p804.
If no cardiac output, treat as arrest (see inside back cover).
- Disability** Assess 'level of consciousness' with **AVPU** score (alert? responds to voice? to pain? unresponsive?); check pupils: size, equality, reactions. *Glasgow coma scale*, if time allows.
- Exposure** Undress patient, but cover to avoid hypothermia.

Quick history from relatives assists diagnosis: **Events** surrounding onset of illness, evidence of overdose/suicide attempt, any suggestion of trauma? **Past medical history:** Especially diabetes, asthma, COPD, alcohol, opiate or street drug abuse, epilepsy or recent head injury; recent travel. **Medication:** Current drugs. **Allergies.** Once ventilation and circulation are adequate, proceed to carry out history, examination, investigations, and management in the usual way.



The vast majority of headaches are benign, but when taking a history do not forget to ask about the following (early diagnosis can save lives):

Worrying features or 'red flags'¹

- First and worst headache—*subarachnoid haemorrhage*
- Thunderclap headache—*subarachnoid haemorrhage* (p484 for other causes)
- Unilateral headache and eye pain—*cluster headache, acute glaucoma*
- Unilateral headache and ipsilateral symptoms—*migraine, tumour, vascular*
- Cough-initiated headache—*raised ICP/venous thrombosis*
- Worse in the morning or bending forward—*raised ICP/venous thrombosis*
- Persisting headache ± scalp tenderness in over-50s—*giant cell arteritis*
- Headache with fever or neck stiffness—*meningitis*
- Change in the pattern of 'usual headaches'
- Decreased level of consciousness

Two other vital questions:

- Where have you been? (malaria)
- Might you be pregnant? (pre-eclampsia; especially if proteinuria and BPT)

Always examine a patient presenting with a severe headache, if nothing about history or examination is concerning, both you and the patient will be reassured, but subtle abnormalities are important not to miss.

No signs on examination

- Tension headache
- Migraine
- Cluster headache
- Post-traumatic
- Drugs (nitrates, calcium-channel antagonists)
- Carbon monoxide poisoning or anoxia
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage

Signs of meningism?

- Meningitis (may not have fever or rash)
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage (examination may be normal)

Decreased conscious level or localizing signs?

- Stroke
- Encephalitis/meningitis
- Cerebral abscess
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage (see p482–3, **figs 2 & 3**)
- Venous sinus occlusion (focal neurological deficits)
- Tumour
- Subdural haematoma
- TB meningitis

Papilloedema?

- Tumour
- Venous sinus occlusion (focal neurological deficits)
- Malignant (accelerated phase) hypertension
- Idiopathic intracranial hypertension
- Any CNS infection, if prolonged (eg >2wks)—eg TB meningitis

Others

- Giant cell arteritis (ESR↑ and tender scalp over temporal arteries)
- Acute glaucoma (painful red eye—get pressures checked urgently)
- Vertebral artery dissection (neck pain and cerebellar/medullary signs)
- Cervical spondylosis
- Sinusitis
- Paget's disease (alk phos ↑↑)
- Altitude sickness



¹ Adapted from C Hawkes 2002 *Hosp Med* 63 732–42.

This page intentionally left blank

There may not be time to ask or the patient may not be able to give you a history in acute breathlessness, this in itself can be a helpful sign (inability to complete sentences in one breath = severe breathlessness, inability to speak/impaired conscious level = life threatening). Collateral history of known respiratory disease, anaphylaxis or other history can be extremely helpful but do not delay. Assess the patient for the following:

Wheezing?

- Asthma (p820)
- COPD (p822)
- Heart failure (p812)
- Anaphylaxis (p806)

Stridor? (Upper airway obstruction)

- Foreign body or tumour
- Acute epiglottitis (younger patients)
- Anaphylaxis
- Trauma, eg laryngeal fracture

Crepitations?

- Heart failure
- Pneumonia
- Bronchiectasis
- Fibrosis

Chest clear?

- Pulmonary embolism (p828)
- Hyperventilation
- Metabolic acidosis, eg diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)
- Anaemia
- Drugs, eg salicylates
- Shock (may cause 'air hunger', p804)
- Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia
- CNS causes

Others

- Pneumothorax—pain, increased resonance, tracheal deviation (if tension pneumothorax)
- Pleural effusion—'stony dullness'

Key investigations

- Baseline observations—O₂ sats, pulse, temperature, peak flow
- ABG if saturations <94% or concern about acidosis/drugs/sepsis
- ECG (signs of PE, LVH, MI?)
- CXR
- Baseline bloods: glucose, FBC, U&E, consider drug screen



This page intentionally left blank

First exclude any potentially life-threatening causes, by virtue of history, brief examination, and limited investigations. Then consider other potential causes. For the full assessment of cardiac pain, see p88 & p112.

Life-threatening

- Acute myocardial infarction
- Angina/acute coronary syndrome
- Aortic dissection
- Tension pneumothorax
- Pulmonary embolism
- Oesophageal rupture

Others

- Pneumonia
- Chest wall pain:
 - Muscular
 - Rib fractures
 - Bony metastases
 - Costochondritis
- Gastro-oesophageal reflux
- Pleurisy
- Empyema
- Pericarditis
- Oesophageal spasm
- Herpes zoster
- Cervical spondylosis
- Intra-abdominal:
 - Cholecystitis
 - Peptic ulceration
 - Pancreatitis
- Sickle-cell crisis

Before discharging patients with undiagnosed chest pain, be sure in your own mind that the pain is not cardiac (this pain is usually dull, may radiate to jaw, arm, or epigastrium, and is usually associated with exertion). Carry out key investigations and discuss options with a colleague, and the patient. *Safety-net*, telling the patient to return or seek advice if they develop worrying features (specify these) or the pain does not settle.

Key investigations

- CXR
- ECG
- FBC, U&E, and troponin (p112). Consider D-dimer

► Just because the patient's chest wall is tender to palpation, this doesn't mean the cause of the chest pain is musculoskeletal. Even if palpation reproduces the same type of pain, ensure that you exclude all potential life-threatening causes. Although chest wall tenderness has discriminatory value against cardiac pain, it may be a feature of a pulmonary embolism.



This page intentionally left blank

Definition *Unrousable unresponsiveness.* Quantify using the *Glasgow coma scale*.

Causes of impaired conscious level/coma

Metabolic: Drugs, poisoning, eg carbon monoxide, alcohol, tricyclics
Hypoglycaemia, hyperglycaemia (ketoacidotic, or HONK, p844)
Hypoxia, CO₂ narcosis (COPD)
Septicaemia
Hypothermia
Myxoedema, Addisonian crisis
Hepatic/uraemic encephalopathy

Neurological: Trauma

Infection: meningitis (p832); encephalitis, eg herpes simplex—give IV aciclovir if the slightest suspicion (p400), *tropical:* malaria (▶▶p394; do thick films), typhoid, typhus, rabies, trypanosomiasis
Tumour: 1° or 2°
Vascular: stroke, subdural/subarachnoid, hypertensive encephalopathy
Epilepsy: non-convulsive status (p489) or post-ictal state

Immediate management see **fig 1** (and coma CNS exam, p802)

- Assess **A**irway, **B**reathing, and **C**irculation. Consider intubation if GCS <8 (p802). Support the circulation if required (ie IV fluids). Give O₂ and treat any seizures. Protect the cervical spine unless trauma is known not to be the cause.
- Check blood glucose; give 50mL 20% glucose IV stat if hypoglycaemia possible.
- IV thiamine if any suggestion of Wernicke's encephalopathy; see below.
- IV naloxone (0.4–2mg IV) for opiate intoxication (may also be given IM or via ET tube); IV flumazenil (p854) for benzodiazepine intoxication only if airway compromised as risk of seizures especially if concomitant tricyclic intoxication.

Examination ▶ **Vital signs are vital—obtain full set, including temperature.**

- Signs of trauma—haematoma, laceration, bruising, CSF/blood in nose or ears, fracture 'step' deformity of skull, subcutaneous emphysema, 'panda eyes'.
- Stigmata of other illnesses: liver disease, alcoholism, diabetes, myxoedema.
- Skin for needle marks, cyanosis, pallor, rash (meningitis; typhus), poor turgor.
- Smell the breath (alcohol, hepatic fetor, ketosis, uraemia).
- Opisthotonus (**fig 1**, p425) ≈ meningitis or tetanus. Decerebrate/decorticate? p802.
- Meningism (p460, p832) ▶ but do *not* move neck unless cervical spine is cleared.
- Pupils (p803) size, reactivity, gaze.
- Heart/lung exam for BP, murmurs, rubs, wheeze, consolidation, collapse.
- Abdomen/rectal for organomegaly, ascites, bruising, peritonism, melaena.
- Are there any foci of infection (abscesses, bites, middle ear infection)?
- Any features of meningitis: neck stiffness, rash, focal neurology?
- Note the *absence* of signs, eg *no* pin-point pupils in a known heroin addict.

Quick history from family, ambulance staff, bystanders: Abrupt or gradual onset? How found—suicide note, seizure? If injured, suspect cervical spinal injury and do not move spine (*OHCS* p766). Recent complaints—headache, fever, vertigo, depression? Recent medical history—sinusitis, otitis, neurosurgery, ENT procedure? Past medical history—diabetes, asthma, **BP**, cancer, epilepsy, psychiatric illness? Drug or toxin exposure (especially alcohol or other recreational drugs)? Any travel?

If the diagnosis is unclear

- Treat the treatable: Pabrinex® IV for Wernicke's encephalopathy, p728; O₂; naloxone as above; glucose (50mL of 50% IV); septic specifics: cefotaxime 2g/12h IV (meningitis, p832), artemether/quinine (malaria, p396), aciclovir (encephalitis, p834).
- Do routine biochemistry, haematology, thick films, blood cultures, blood ethanol, drug screen, etc.
- Arrange urgent CT head, if normal, and no CI, proceed to LP.

The diagnosis should now be clear, eg hyperglycaemia; alcohol excess; poisoning; uraemia; pneumonia; subarachnoid (p482); hypertensive/hepatic encephalopathy.



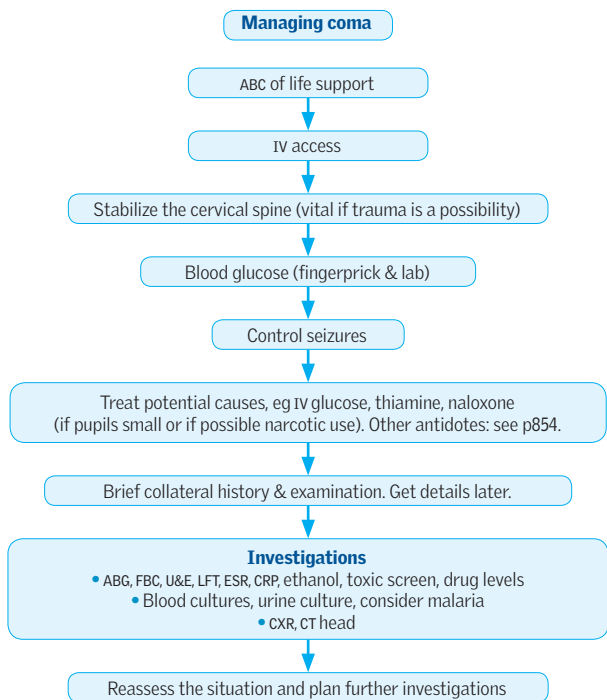


Fig 1. Managing coma. NB: check pupils every few minutes during the early stages, particularly if trauma is the likely cause. Doing so is the quickest way to find a localizing sign (so helpful in diagnosis, but remember that false localizing signs do occur)—and observing changes in pupil behaviour (eg becoming fixed and dilated) is the quickest way of finding out just how bad things are.

This gives a reliable, objective way of recording the conscious state of a person. It can be used by medical and nursing staff for initial and continuing assessment. It has value in predicting ultimate outcome. 3 types of response are assessed, note in each case the best response (or best of any limb) which should be recorded.

Best motor response	Best verbal response	Eye opening
6 Obeying commands	5 Oriented (time, place, person)	4 Spontaneous
5 Localizing to pain	4 Confused conversation	3 In response to speech
4 Withdrawing to pain	3 Inappropriate speech	2 In response to pain
3 Flexor response to pain	2 Incomprehensible sounds	1 None
2 Extensor response to pain	1 None	
1 No response to pain		

An overall score is made by summing the score in the 3 areas assessed.

- No response to pain + no verbalization + no eye opening = 3
- Severe injury, gcs ≤8—consider airway protection
- Moderate injury, gcs 9–12
- Minor injury, gcs 13–15.

Causing pain is not a pleasant thing, there are acceptable and unacceptable methods. Try fingernail bed pressure with a pen/pencil, supraorbital pressure or sternal pressure (not a rub). Abnormal responses to pain can help to localize the damage:

- **Flexion** = decorticate posture (arms bent inwards on chest, thumbs tucked in a clenched fist, legs extended) implies damage above the level of the red nucleus in the midbrain.¹
- **Extension** = decerebrate posture (adduction and internal rotation of shoulder, pronation of forearm) indicates midbrain damage below the level of the red nucleus.

NB: an abbreviated coma scale, **AVPU**, is sometimes used in the initial assessment ('primary survey') of the critically ill:

- A** = alert
- V** = responds to **v**ocal stimuli
- P** = responds to **p**ain
- U** = **u**nresponsive

NB: the GCS scoring is different in young children; see *OHCS* p201.

1 Red nucleus output reinforces upper limb antigravity flexion. When its output is damaged, the unregulated reticulospinal and vestibulospinal tracts reinforce extension tone of upper and lower limbs.⁴
The Glasgow Coma Scale is reproduced from *The Lancet*, Vol. 304, Teasdale G & Jennet B, Assessment of Coma and Impaired Consciousness: A Practical Scale, ©1974, with permission from Elsevier.



The neurological examination in coma

This is aimed at locating the pathology in 1 of 2 places. Altered level of consciousness implies either:

- 1 A diffuse, bilateral, cortical dysfunction (usually producing loss of awareness with normal arousal), or
- 2 Damage to the ascending reticular activating system (ARAS) located throughout the brainstem from the medulla to the thalami (usually producing loss of arousal with unassessable awareness). The brainstem can be affected directly (eg pontine haemorrhage) or indirectly (eg compression from trans-tentorial or cerebellar herniation secondary to a mass or oedema).

Systematic examination

- Level of consciousness; describe using *objective* words/AVPU.
- Respiratory pattern (p53) – Cheyne-Stokes (brainstem lesions or compression) hyperventilation (acidosis, hypoxia, or, rarely, neurogenic), ataxic or apneustic (breath-holding) breathing (brainstem damage with grave prognosis).
- Eyes—almost all patients with ARAS pathology will have eye findings.
 - 1 **Visual fields** In light coma, test fields with visual threat. No blink in one field suggests hemianopia and contralateral hemisphere lesion.
 - 2 **Pupils** *Normal direct and consensual reflexes present* = intact midbrain. *Mid-position (3–5mm) non-reactive ± irregular* = midbrain lesion. *Unilateral dilated and unreactive ('fixed')* = 3rd nerve compression. *Small, reactive* = pontine lesion ('pin-point pontine pupils') or drugs. *Horner's syndrome* (p716, **fig 1**) = ipsilateral lateral medulla or hypothalamus lesion, may precede uncal herniation. Beware patients with false eyes or who use eye drops for glaucoma.
 - 3 **Extraocular movements (EOMS)**—observe resting position and spontaneous movement; then test the vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR) with either the *doll's-head manoeuvre* (normal if the eyes keep looking at the same point in space when the head is quickly moved laterally or vertically) or *ice water calorics* (normal if eyes deviate towards the cold ear with nystagmus to the other side). If present, the VOR exonerates most of the brainstem from the VIIth nerve nucleus (medulla) to the IIIrd (midbrain). *Don't move the head unless the cervical spine is cleared.*
 - 4 **Fundi**—papilloedema, subhyaloid haemorrhage, hypertensive retinopathy, signs of other disease (eg diabetic retinopathy).
- Examine for CNS asymmetry (tone, spontaneous movements, reflexes). One way to test for hemiplegia in coma is to raise both arms together and compare how they fall under gravity. If one descends fast, like a lead weight, but the other descends more gracefully, you have found a valuable focal sign. The same applies to the legs.



Essence Circulatory failure resulting in inadequate organ perfusion. Often defined by low BP—(SBP) systolic <90mmHg—or mean arterial pressure (MAP) <65mmHg—with evidence of tissue hypoperfusion, eg mottled skin, urine output (uo) of <0.5mL/kg for 1 hour, serum lactate >2mmol/L. **Signs:** Low GCS/agitation, pallor, cool peripheries, tachycardia, slow capillary refill, tachypnoea, oliguria.

MAP = cardiac output (CO) × systemic vascular resistance (SVR). CO = stroke volume × heart rate. So shock can result from inadequate CO or a loss of SVR, or both.

Inadequate cardiac output

• Hypovolaemia:

- Bleeding: trauma, ruptured aortic aneurysm, GI bleed.
- Fluid loss: vomiting, burns, 'third space' losses, eg pancreatitis, heat exhaustion.

• Pump failure:

- Cardiogenic shock, eg ACS, arrhythmias, aortic dissection, acute valve failure.
- Secondary causes, eg pulmonary embolism, tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade.

Peripheral circulatory failure (loss of SVR)

- **Sepsis:** Infection with any organism can cause acute vasodilation from inflammatory cytokines. Gram -ves can produce endotoxin, causing sudden and severe shock but without signs of infection (fever, raised WCC). Classically patients with sepsis are warm & vasodilated, but may be cold & shut down. Other diseases, eg pancreatitis, can give a similar picture associated with the inflammatory cascade.
- **Anaphylaxis:** p806.
- **Neurogenic:** Eg spinal cord injury, epidural or spinal anaesthesia.
- **Endocrine failure:** Addison's disease, p846 or hypothyroidism; see p844.
- **Other:** Drugs, eg anaesthetics, antihypertensives. Inability to use oxygen, eg cyanide poisoning.

Assessment ►► **ABCDE** (p793) With shock we are dealing primarily with 'C' so get large-bore IV access × 2 and check ECG for rate, rhythm (very fast or very slow will compromise cardiac output), and signs of ischaemia.

General review: Cold and clammy suggests cardiogenic shock or fluid loss. Look for signs of anaemia or dehydration, eg skin turgor, postural hypotension? Warm and well perfused, with bounding pulse points to septic shock. Any features suggestive of anaphylaxis—history, urticaria, angio-oedema, wheeze?

CVS: usually tachycardic (unless on β-blocker, or in spinal shock—OHCS p772) and hypotensive. But in the young and fit, or pregnant women, the systolic BP may remain normal, although the pulse pressure will narrow, with up to 30% blood volume depletion. Difference between arms (>20mmHg)—aortic dissection?

JVP or central venous pressure: If raised, cardiogenic shock likely.

Check abdomen: Any signs of trauma, or aneurysm? Any evidence of GI bleed?

Management ► If BP unrecordable, call the cardiac arrest team.

• Septic shock:

- Ideally take cultures before antibiotics (2 × peripheral blood culture plus, eg, urine, sputum, CSF) but do not delay starting treatment!
- Give antibiotics within first hour, choice depends on local policy and suspected source. Empirical R^x if no clear source, eg Tazocin® (4.5g tds) + gentamicin (eg 5mg/kg od; see p766) + vancomycin (1g/12h IVI) if MRSA. Adjust doses in CKD.
- After fluid bolus of 20mL/kg crystalloid (or 7mL/kg colloid) repeat BP and ABG. If SBP remains <90 or lactate >4mmol/L then consider referral to ICU for early goal-directed therapy[†]—aim CVP 8–12, MAP >65mmHg, uo >0.5mL/kg/h.
- Low-dose steroids may improve BP but do not improve mortality, recombinant activated protein C does not improve outcome and has been withdrawn from the market.

• **Anaphylaxis:** See p806.

• **Cardiogenic shock:** See p814.



- **Hypovolaemic shock:** Identify and treat underlying cause. Raise the legs.
 - Give fluid bolus 10–15mL/kg crystalloid or 3–5mL/kg colloid, if shock improves, repeat, titrate to HR (aim <100), BP (aim SBP >90) and uo (aim >0.5mL/kg/h)
 - If no improvement after 2 boluses, consider referral to ICU.
- **Haemorrhagic shock:** Stop bleeding if possible. See TABLE for grading.
 - If still shocked despite 2L crystalloid or present with class III/IV shock (see table) then crossmatch blood (request O Rh-ve in an emergency, see p342)
 - Give FFP alongside packed red cells (1:1 ratio) and aim for platelets >100 and fibrinogen >1. Discuss with haematology early.
- **Heat exposure (heat exhaustion):**
 - Tepid sponging + fanning; avoid ice and immersion. Resuscitate with high-sodium IVI, such as 0.9% saline \pm hydrocortisone 100mg IV. Dantrolene seems ineffective. Chlorpromazine 25mg IM may be used to stop shivering. Stop cooling when core temperature <39°C.

Class of shock	1	2	3	4
Blood loss (estimated mL or % of circulating vol)	<750mL or <15%	750–1500mL 15–30%	1500–2000mL 30–40%	>2000mL >40%
Heart rate (HR)	<100bpm	>100bpm	120–140bpm	>140bpm
Systolic BP	Normal	Normal	Low	Unrecordable
Pulse pressure	Normal	Narrow	Narrow	V narrow/absent
Capillary refill	Normal	>2 seconds	>2 seconds	Absent
Respiratory rate	14–20/min	20–30/min	>30/min	>35/min
Urine output	>30mL/h	20–30mL/h	5–20mL/h	Negligible
Cerebral function	Normal/anxious	Anxious/hostile	Anxious/confused	Confused/unresponsive

NB: remember that higher flow rates can be achieved through peripheral lines than through 'standard' gauge central lines. If cause unclear: R_1 as hypovolaemia—the most common cause, and reversible.

SIRS, sepsis, and related syndromes

The pathogenesis of sepsis and septic shock is becoming increasingly understood. The 'systemic inflammatory response syndrome' (SIRS) is thought to be a central component, involving cytokine cascades, free-radical production, and the release of vasoactive mediators. SIRS is defined as the presence of 2 or more of the following features:⁶

- Temperature >38°C or <36°C
- Tachycardia >90bpm
- Respiratory rate >20 breaths/min or P_aCO_2 <4.3kPa
- WBC >12 $\times 10^9$ /L or <4 $\times 10^9$ /L, or >10% immature (band) forms

Related syndromes include:

Sepsis: SIRS occurring in the presence of infection.

Severe sepsis: Sepsis with evidence of organ hypoperfusion, eg hypoxaemia, oliguria, lactic acidosis, or altered cerebral function.

Septic shock: Severe sepsis with hypotension (systolic BP <90mmHg or MAP \leq 60) despite adequate fluid resuscitation, or the requirement for vasopressors/inotropes to maintain blood pressure.

Septicaemia was used to denote the presence of multiplying bacteria in the circulation, but has been replaced with the definitions above.

Type-I IgE-mediated hypersensitivity reaction. Release of histamine and other agents causes: capillary leak; wheeze; cyanosis; oedema (larynx, lids, tongue, lips); urticaria. More common in atopic individuals. An *anaphylactoid reaction* results from direct release of mediators from inflammatory cells, without involving antibodies, usually in response to a drug, eg acetylcysteine.

Examples of precipitants

- Drugs, eg penicillin, and contrast media in radiology
- Latex
- Stings, eggs, fish, peanuts, strawberries, semen (rare)

Signs and symptoms

- Itching, sweating, diarrhoea and vomiting, erythema, urticaria, oedema
- Wheeze, laryngeal obstruction, cyanosis
- Tachycardia, hypotension

Mimics of anaphylaxis

- Carcinoid (p278–279)
- Pheochromocytoma (p220, p847)
- Systemic mastocytosis
- Hereditary angioedema



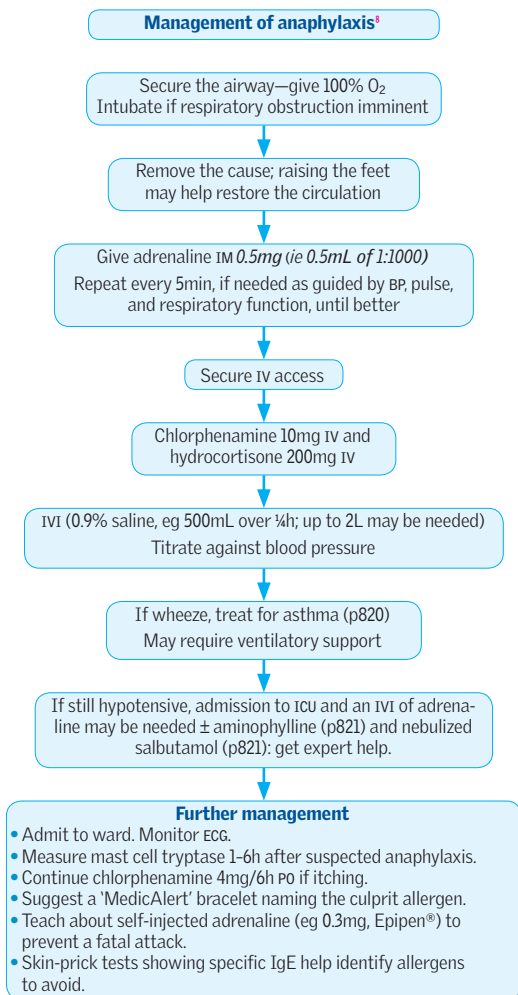


Fig 1. Management of anaphylaxis.

► Adrenaline (=epinephrine) is given IM and NOT IV unless the patient is severely ill, or has no pulse. The IV dose is **different**: 100µg/min—titrating with the response. This is 0.5mL of 1:10,000 solution per minute. Stop as soon as a response has been obtained.

If on a β-blocker, consider salbutamol IV in place of adrenaline.



Acute coronary syndrome (ACS) includes unstable angina, STEMI (what most of us mean by acute MI), and NSTEMI (see p810). STEMI is a common medical emergency, and prompt appropriate treatment saves lives. If in doubt, seek immediate help.

Initial treatment Take brief history, do a quick physical examination and take a 12-lead ECG. Blood tests on admission: U&E, troponin, glucose, cholesterol, FBC, CXR.

- **Aspirin** 300mg PO (if not already given); consider prasugrel (60mg PO if no history of stroke/TIA and <75yrs) or ticagrelor (180mg PO) as newer alternatives to clopidogrel (300mg PO) as they have been shown to be superior in outcome studies.^{10, 11, 12}
- **Morphine** 5–10mg IV (repeat after 5min if necessary). Give anti-emetic with the 1st dose of morphine: metoclopramide 10mg IV (1st line), or cyclizine 50mg IV (2nd line).
- **GTN** routine use now not recommended in the acute setting unless patient is hypertensive or in acute LVF. Useful as anti-anginal in chronic/stable patients.
- **Oxygen** is recommended if patients have SaO₂ <95%, are breathless or in acute LVF.
- **Restore coronary perfusion** Either primary PCI (if available) or thrombolysis.
 - **Primary PCI** ►► should be offered to all patients who present with an acute STEMI who either are at or can be transferred to a primary PCI centre within 120 minutes of first medical contact. If this is not possible, patients should receive fibrinolysis and be transferred to a primary PCI centre after the infusion for either rescue PCI (if fibrinolysis unsuccessful) or angiography if successful.
 - **Fibrinolysis** ►► benefit reduces steadily from onset of chest pain, target time is <30min from admission, and is contraindicated >24h from onset of symptoms.
 - Do not thrombolyse ST depression alone, T-wave inversion alone or normal ECG.
- **Anticoagulation** an injectable anticoagulant must be used in primary PCI. Bivalirudin is preferred, if not available use enoxaparin ± a GP IIb/IIIa blocker.

Complications

- Recurrent ischaemia or failure to reperfuse is not uncommon (usually detected as persisting pain and ST-segment elevation immediately after thrombolysis) so all patients should be transferred to a primary PCI centre for ongoing management.
- Stroke.
- Pericarditis: analgesics, try to avoid NSAIDs.
- Cardiogenic shock: see p814, and heart failure: see p812.

Right ventricular infarction Confirm by demonstrating ST elevation in rv_{3/4} and/or echo. NB: rv₄ means that v₄ is placed in the right 5th intercostal space in the midclavicular line. Treat hypotension and oliguria with fluids (avoid nitrates and diuretics). Monitor BP carefully, and assess early signs of pulmonary oedema. Intensive monitoring and inotropes may be useful in some patients.

Thrombolysis

ECG criteria for thrombolysis

- ST elevation >1mm in 2 or more limb leads or >2mm in 2 or more chest leads.
- LBBB (unless known to have LBBB previously).
- Posterior changes: Deep ST depression and tall R waves in leads v₁ to v₃.

Contraindications

- Previous intracranial haemorrhage
- Ischaemic stroke <6months
- Cerebral malignancy or AVM
- Recent major trauma/surgery/head injury (<3wks)
- GI bleeding (<1 month)
- Known bleeding disorder
- Aortic dissection
- Non-compressible punctures <24h eg liver biopsy, lumbar puncture

Relative CI: TIA <6months, oral anticoagulant therapy, pregnancy/<1wk post partum, refractory hypertension (>180mmHg/110mmHg), advanced liver disease, infective endocarditis, active peptic ulcer, prolonged/traumatic resuscitation.

Choice of agent: tissue plasminogen activators are preferred 1st line. **Alteplase, reteplase or tenecteplase** are all associated with fewer deaths than streptokinase, although a slight increase in stroke risk. Alteplase should be followed with an unfractionated heparin infusion. Tenecteplase is preferred in the out-of-hospital setting as it is a single bolus.

► Patients with STEMI who do not receive reperfusion should be treated with **fonaparinux**,¹⁴ or enoxaparin/unfractionated heparin if not available.



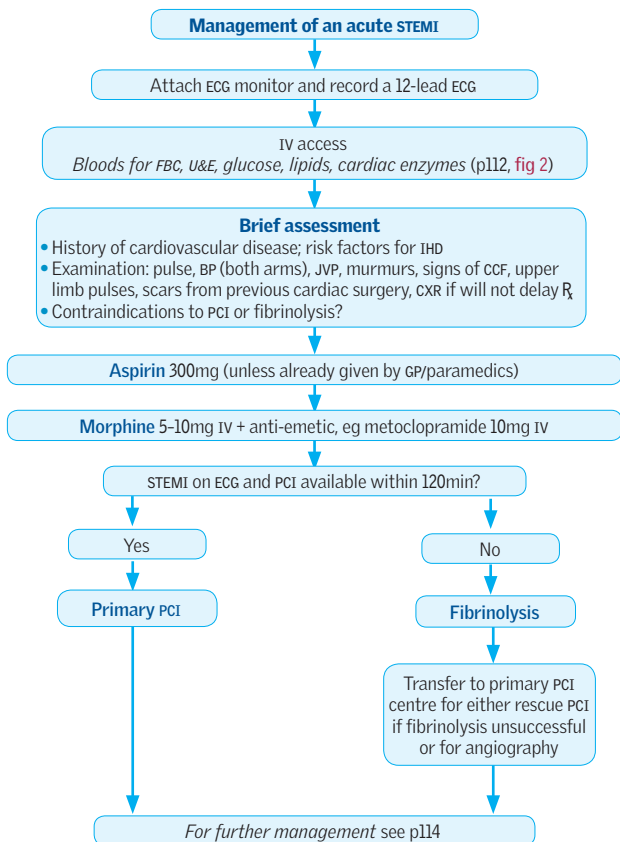


Fig 1. Management of an acute STEMI.



Patients should be managed medically until symptoms settle, unless high risk. They are then investigated by angiography with a view to possible percutaneous coronary intervention or surgery (CABG).

Assessment

Brief history: (p34) previous angina, relief with rest/nitrates, history of cardiovascular disease, risk factors for IHD.

Examination: (p36) pulse, BP, JVP, cardiac murmurs, signs of heart failure, peripheral pulses, scars from previous cardiac surgery.

Investigations ECG: ST depression; flat or inverted T waves; or normal.

U&E, troponin, glucose, random cholesterol, FBC, CXR (later on CCU if no recent CXR). Measurement of cardiac troponins helps to predict which patients are at risk of a cardiac event, and who can be safely discharged early.¹⁴ Note that 2 different forms of troponin are measured: troponin T and troponin I: they have different reference intervals (consult your lab).

Management ▶ See **fig 1** for acute management, but p808 if ST elevation.

The aim of therapy is to optimize anti-ischaemic and antiplatelet therapy.

Oral antiplatelet therapy: *Aspirin* 300mg initially, followed by 75mg/d and either *clopidogrel* (300mg initially then 75mg/d po), ticagrelor (180mg then 90mg/12h po) or prasugrel (50–60mg then 10mg/d po) should be given to the following groups of patients and continued for 12 months: •↑troponin •ACS already on aspirin •↓ST on resting ECG •ACS after recent MI •Patients being transferred for angioplasty •Aspirin intolerant. Clopidogrel should not be used routinely for patients with suspected cardiac pain in the absence of ECG changes or raised troponin.

Anticoagulation: ideally fondaparinux (Factor Xa inhibitor) 2.5mg daily; if not available, use low molecular weight heparin (LMWH, eg enoxaparin 1mg/kg/12h) or unfractionated heparin (aim APTT 50–70s) until discharge.

Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors: (see FLOWCHART). Consider in patients with recurrent or persistent chest pain and ECG changes despite standard treatment.

Nitrates (PO or IV) for recurrent chest pain.

Beta-blockers: if tachycardic or hypertensive and no signs of heart failure, unless contraindicated (consider diltiazem as alternative). Continue if previously on R.

ACE-i should be given to all patients unless there are CI (monitor renal function).

Lipid management: as for STEMI (p114).

Prognosis Overall risk of death ~1–2%, but ~15% for refractory angina despite medical therapy. Risk stratification can help predict those most at risk and allow intervention to be targeted at those individuals. The following are associated with an increased risk:

- History of unstable angina
 - ST depression or widespread T-wave inversion
 - Raised troponin (except patients with ST elevation MI)
 - Age >70 years
 - General comorbidity, previous MI, poor LV function or DM.
- ▶ High-risk patients should be considered for inpatient coronary angiography.

Further measures and preparing for discharge

- Wean off *glyceryl trinitrate* (GTN) infusion when stabilized on oral drugs.
- Continue fondaparinux (or LMWH or heparin) until discharge.
- Check serial ECGs, and troponin >12h after pain.
- Address modifiable risk factors: smoking, hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, diabetes.
- Gentle mobilization.
- Ensure patient on dual antiplatelet therapy, β-blocker if depressed LV function, ACE inhibitor and statin.

▶ If symptoms recur, refer to cardiologist for urgent angiography & PCI or CABG.



Acute management of ACS without ST-segment elevation

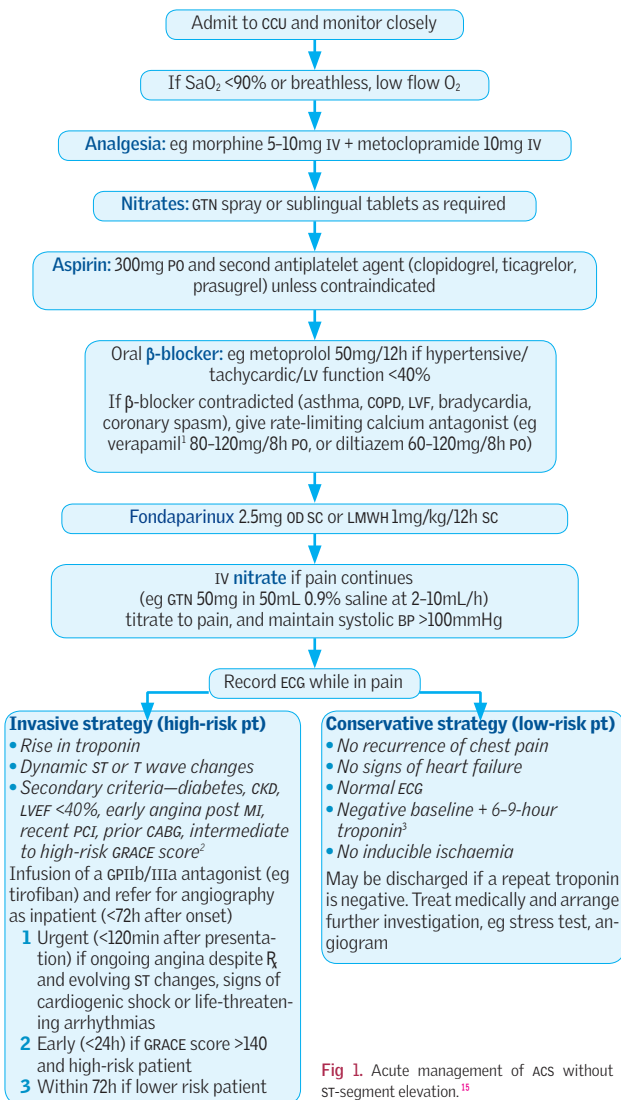


Fig 1. Acute management of ACS without ST-segment elevation.¹⁵

1 Do not use verapamil and a β-blocker together (can cause asystole).

2 GRACE = Global Registry of Acute Coronary Events. Risk is scored based on age, heart rate, BP, renal function, Killip class of heart failure, and other events, eg raised troponin. Very complicated to calculate so recommendation by European Society of Cardiology is to use an online calculator, eg <http://www.outcomes-umassmed.org/grace/>.

3 Many labs are changing from traditional 12-hour troponins, check your local policy.



Causes

- Cardiovascular, usually left ventricular failure (post-MI or ischaemic heart disease). Also valvular heart disease, arrhythmias, and malignant hypertension.
- ARDS (p178) from any cause, eg trauma, malaria, drugs. Then look for predisposing factors, eg trauma, post-op, sepsis. *Is aspirin overdose or glue-sniffing/drug abuse likely?* Ask friends/relatives.
- Fluid overload.
- Neurogenic, eg head injury.

Differential diagnosis Asthma/COPD, pneumonia, and pulmonary oedema are often hard to distinguish, especially in the elderly, where they may co-exist. If the patient is extremely unwell and you are not sure, consider treating all three (eg with salbutamol nebulizer, furosemide IV, diamorphine, amoxicillin—p378).

Symptoms Dyspnoea, orthopnoea (eg paroxysmal), pink frothy sputum. NB: note drugs recently given and other illnesses (recent MI/COPD or pneumonia).

Signs Distressed, pale, sweaty, pulset, tachypnoea, pink frothy sputum, pulsus alternans, JVPt, fine lung crackles, triple/gallop rhythm (p42), wheeze (cardiac asthma). Usually sitting up and leaning forward. Quickly examine for possible causes.

Investigations

- CXR (p129, p737–741): cardiomegaly, signs of pulmonary oedema: look for shadowing (usually bilateral), small effusions at costophrenic angles, fluid in the lung fissures, and Kerley B lines (linear opacities).
- ECG: signs of MI, dysrhythmias.
- U&E, troponin, ABG.
- Consider echo.
- Plasma BNP (p131) may be helpful if diagnosis in question (high negative predictive value).¹⁶

Management

►► Begin treatment before investigations. See **fig 1**.

Monitoring progress: BP; pulse; cyanosis; respiratory rate; JVP; urine output; ABG.

Once stable and improving:

- Daily weights, aim reduction of 0.5kg/day, check obs at least qds.
- Repeat CXR.
- Change to oral furosemide or bumetanide.
- If on large doses of loop diuretic, consider the addition of a thiazide (eg bendroflumethiazide or metolazone 2.5–5mg daily PO).
- ACE-i if LVEF <40%. If ACE-i contraindicated, consider hydralazine and nitrate (may also be more effective in African-Caribbeans).¹⁷
- Also consider β -blocker and spironolactone (if LVEF <35%).
- Is the patient suitable for biventricular pacing or cardiac transplantation?
- Consider digoxin \pm warfarin, especially if AF.

Nesiritide, recombinant human brain natriuretic peptide, is not recommended for use in acute heart failure as the largest RCT showed only borderline improvement in dyspnoea with no improvement in mortality or rehospitalization, and a significant increase in hypotension.¹⁸



Management of acute heart failure

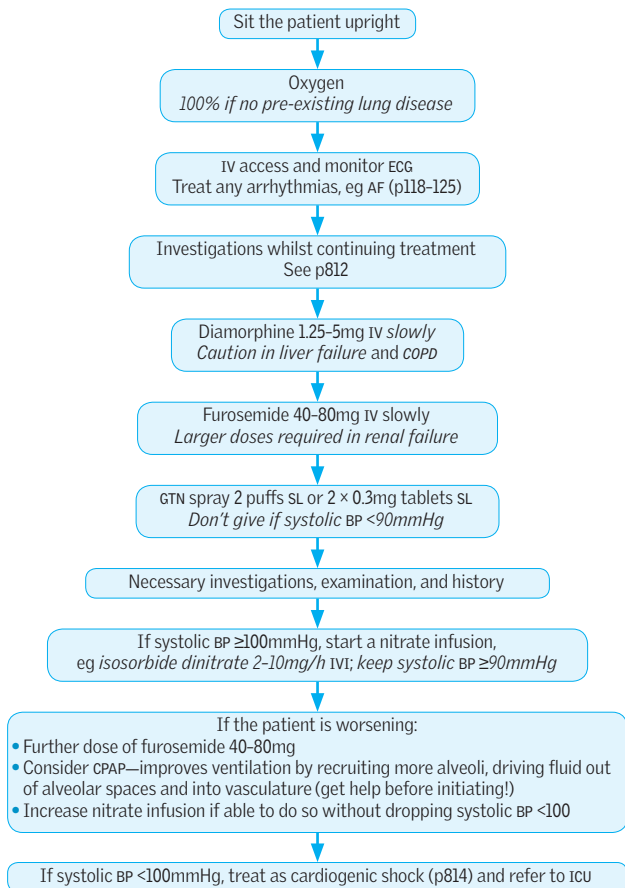


Fig 1. Management of heart failure.

Notes:^{19,20}

- If failure to improve, reassess and consider alternative diagnoses, eg hypertensive heart failure, aortic dissection, pulmonary embolism, pneumonia.
- CPAP (5-10cmH₂O) in dyspnoeic patients (if no ABP or emergent need for intubation) can reduce the need for intubation, and possibly in-hospital mortality.
- Consider IV nitrate therapy for patients with dyspnoea.



This has a high mortality and is very difficult to treat. ► Ask a senior physician's help both in formulating an *exact* diagnosis and in guiding treatment.

Cardiogenic shock is a state of inadequate tissue perfusion primarily due to cardiac dysfunction. It may occur suddenly, or after progressively worsening heart failure.

Causes

- Myocardial infarction
- Arrhythmias
- Pulmonary embolus
- Tension pneumothorax
- Cardiac tamponade
- Myocarditis; myocardial depression (drugs, hypoxia, acidosis, sepsis)
- Valve destruction (endocarditis)
- Aortic dissection

Management

If the cause is myocardial infarction prompt revascularization (acute angioplasty or fibrinolysis) is vital¹; ►► see p808 for indications and contraindications.

- Manage in Coronary Care Unit, or ICU.
- Investigation and treatment may need to be done concurrently.
- See **fig 1** for details of management.
- **Investigations:** ECG, U&E, troponins/cardiac enzymes, ABG, CXR, echocardiogram. If indicated, CT thorax (aortic dissection/PE) or V/Q scan.
- **Monitor** CVP, BP, ABG, ECG, urine output. Do a 12-lead ECG every hour until the diagnosis is made. Consider a CVP line and an arterial line to monitor pressure, if these are *in situ* consider using PICCO, LIDCO² or other measures of cardiac output and volume status. Catheterize for accurate urine output.

Cardiac tamponade

Essence: Pericardial fluid collects → intrapericardial pressure rises → heart cannot fill → pumping stops.

Causes: Trauma, lung/breast cancer, pericarditis, myocardial infarct, bacteria, eg TB. **Rarely:** Ureat, radiation, myxoedema, dissecting aorta, SLE. Also coronary artery dissection (secondary to PCI) and/or ruptured ventricle.

Signs: Falling BP, a rising JVP, and muffled heart sounds (Beck's triad); JVP↑ on inspiration (Kussmaul's sign); pulsus paradoxus (pulse fades on inspiration). Echocardiography may be diagnostic. CXR: globular heart; left heart border convex or straight; right cardiophrenic angle <90°. ECG: electrical alternans (p148).

Management: This can be very difficult. Everything is against you: time, physiology, and your own confidence, as the patient may be too ill to give a history, and signs may be equivocal—but bitter experience has taught us not to equivocate for long.

►► Request the presence of your senior at the bedside (do not make do with telephone advice). With luck, prompt pericardiocentesis (p787) brings swift relief. While awaiting this, give O₂, monitor ECG, and set up IVI. Take blood for group and save. **NB:** there may be a role for cardiothoracic surgery (eg CABG, ventricular repair, or pericardial window) as a definitive solution to some causes.

¹ SHOCK trial 2003 V Menon *Congest Heart Fail* 9 35. NNT for acute angioplasty = 5.

² Pulse contour cardiac output and lithium dilution cardiac output. Both use injection (PICCO = cold water, LIDCO = lithium) to estimate filling pressure, extravascular water (ie pulmonary oedema) and cardiac output. The time from injection via a central vein to detection via an arterial line, plus dilution, gives estimates of cardiac output and volume status and can guide fluid and inotrope therapy.



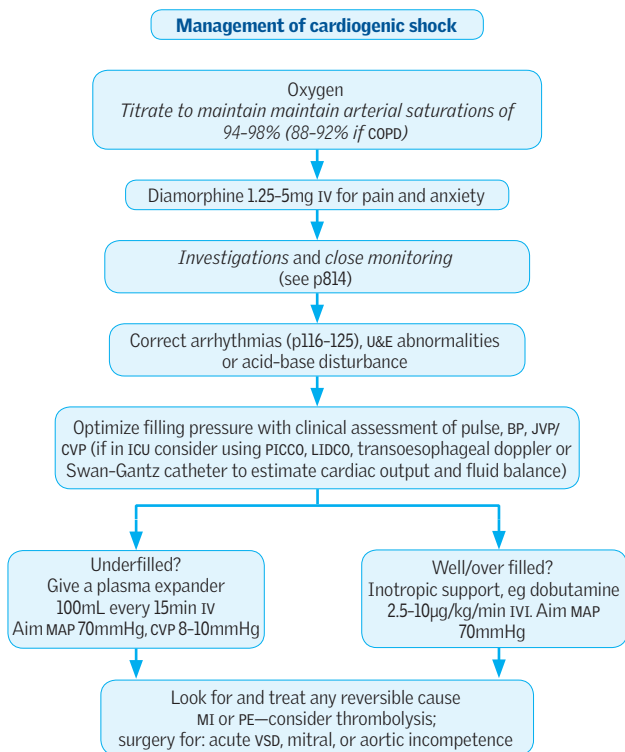


Fig 1. Management of cardiogenic shock. MAP = Mean arterial pressure



ECG shows rate of >100bpm and QRS complexes >120ms (>3 small squares on ECGs done at the standard UK rate of 25mm/s).

Principles of management

- 1 If in doubt, treat as ventricular tachycardia (the commonest cause).
- 2 Identify the underlying rhythm and treat accordingly.

Differential diagnosis

- **Ventricular tachycardia (VT) including torsade de pointes.** Single ventricular ectopics should not cause confusion; if >3 together at a rate >100, this is VT.
- SVT with aberrant conduction, eg AF, atrial flutter with bundle branch block.
- Pre-excited tachycardias, eg AF, atrial flutter, or AV re-entry tachycardia with underlying WPW (p120).

Identifying the underlying rhythm may be hard; get help. Diagnosis is based on the history (if IHD/MI likelihood of a ventricular arrhythmia is >95%), 12-lead ECG, and lack of response to IV adenosine (p120). **ECG findings in favour of VT:**

- Positive QRS concordance in chest leads
- Marked left axis deviation
- AV dissociation (occurs in 25%) or 2:1 or 3:1 AV block
- Fusion beats or capture beats (ECG p123, **fig 1**)
- Also bear in mind Brugada's criteria, eg RSR complex in V1 (and +ve QRS in V1): p123.

Management See **fig 1**.

- Connect patient to a cardiac monitor and have a defibrillator to hand.
- Monitor O₂ sats and if <90% give supplemental oxygen.
- Correct electrolyte abnormalities, esp K⁺ and Mg²⁺.
- Check for adverse signs. Low cardiac output (clammy, consciousness↓, BP <90); oliguria; angina; pulmonary oedema.
- Obtain 12-lead ECG (request CXR) and obtain IV access.

If haemodynamically unstable: ►► Synchronized DC shock (see inside back cover).

- Correct any hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia: up to 60mmol KCl at 30mmol/h, and 4mL 50% magnesium sulfate over 30min both via central line.
- Follow with amiodarone 300mg IV over 10–20min (peripherally only in emergency).
- For refractory cases procainamide or sotalol may be considered.

If haemodynamically stable: Correct hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia: as above.

- Amiodarone 300mg IV over 20–60min (avoid if long QT) via central line.
- If this fails, use synchronized DC shock.

After correction of VT: Establish the cause (via the history and tests above).

- Maintenance anti-arrhythmic therapy may be required. If VT occurs after MI, give IV amiodarone infusion for 12–24h; if 24h after MI, also start oral anti-arrhythmic: sotalol (if good LV function) or amiodarone (if poor LV function).
- Prevention of recurrent VT: surgical isolation of the arrhythmogenic area or an implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD) may help.

Ventricular fibrillation: (ECG p123, **fig 3**) Use non-synchronized DC shock (there is no R wave to trigger defibrillation, p784): see inside back cover.

Ventricular extrasystoles (ectopics): These are the commonest post-MI arrhythmia but they are also seen in healthy people (often >10/h). Patients with frequent ectopics post-MI have a worse prognosis, but there is no evidence that antidysrhythmic drugs improve outcome, indeed they may increase mortality.

Torsade de pointes: A form of VT, with a constantly varying axis, often in the setting of long-QT syndromes (ECG p123, **fig 4**). Causes (p725): congenital or from drugs (eg some antidysrhythmics, tricyclics, antimalarials, antipsychotics). Torsade in the setting of congenital long-QT syndromes can be treated with high doses of β-blockers.

In acquired long-QT syndromes (p725), stop all predisposing drugs, correct hypokalaemia, and give magnesium sulfate (2g IV over 10min). Alternatives include: **over-drive pacing** (pace at a faster rate, then slowly reduce) or **isoprenaline** IV to increase heart rate.



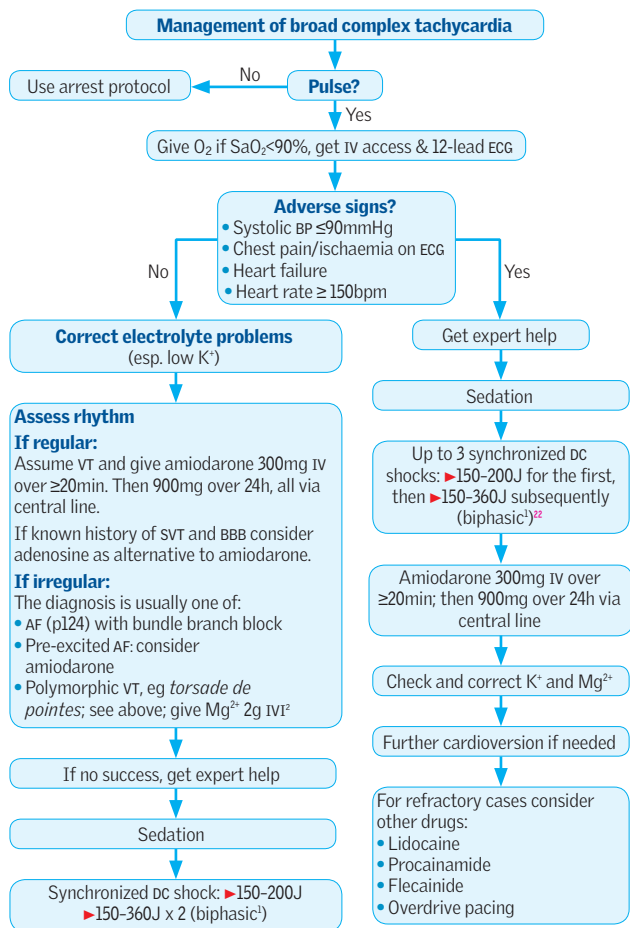


Fig 1. Management of broad complex tachycardia.

1 If monophasic shock used, start at 200J, subsequent shocks at 360.

2 Magnesium sulfate—give 4mL of 50% magnesium sulfate (which is 8mmol or 2g) over 10 minutes.



ECG shows rate of >100bpm and QRS complex duration of <120ms (<3 small squares on ECGs done at the standard UK rate of 25mm/s).

Differential diagnosis

- **Sinus tachycardia:** Normal P wave followed by normal QRS—not an arrhythmia! Do not attempt to cardiovert; if necessary (ie not a physiological response to fever/hypovolaemia) rate control with β -blockers.
- **Atrial tachyarrhythmias:** Rhythm arises in atria, AV node is a bystander.
 - Atrial fibrillation (AF): absent P wave, irregular QRS complexes.
 - Atrial flutter: atrial rate ~260–340bpm. Sawtooth baseline, due to a re-entrant circuit usually in the right atrium. Ventricular rate often 150bpm (2:1 block).
 - Atrial tachycardia: abnormally shaped P waves, may outnumber QRS.
 - Multifocal atrial tachycardia: ≥ 3 P wave morphologies, irregular QRS complexes.
- **Junctional tachycardia:** AV node is part of the pathway. P wave either buried in QRS complex or occurring after QRS complex.
 - AV nodal re-entry tachycardia.
 - AV re-entry tachycardia, includes an accessory pathway, eg WPW (p120).

Principles of management See fig 1.

- ▶▶ If the patient is compromised, use DC cardioversion.
- Otherwise, identify the underlying rhythm and treat accordingly. The most important thing is to decide whether the rhythm is regular or not (irregular is likely AF).
- Vagal manoeuvres (carotid sinus massage, Valsalva manoeuvre) transiently increase AV block, and may unmask an underlying atrial rhythm.
- If unsuccessful, give **adenosine**, which causes transient AV block. It has a short half-life (10–15s) and works by: **1** transiently slowing ventricles to show the underlying atrial rhythm; **2** cardioverting a junctional tachycardia to sinus rhythm.

Giving adenosine:¹ 6mg IV bolus into a large vein, followed by 0.9% saline flush, while recording a rhythm strip. If unsuccessful, after 2 min give 12mg, then one further 12mg bolus. Warn about SE: transient chest tightness, dyspnoea, headache, flushing.

Relative cr: Asthma, 2nd/3rd-degree AV block or sinoatrial disease (unless pacemaker).

Interactions: Potentiated by dipyridamole; antagonized by theophylline.

Specifics Sinus tachycardia: Identify and treat underlying cause.

Supraventricular tachycardia: If adenosine fails, use verapamil ~5mg IV over 2–3min. NB: NOT if on a β -blocker. If no response, a further 5mg IV over 3min (if age <60yrs). Alternatives: atenolol 2.5mg IV repeated at 5min intervals until 10mg given; or amiodarone. If unsuccessful, use DC cardioversion.

Atrial fibrillation/flutter: Manage with rate control; seek help if resistant (p124).

Atrial tachycardia: Rare; may be due to digoxin toxicity: withdraw digoxin, consider digoxin-specific antibody fragments. Maintain K^+ at 4–5mmol/L.

Multifocal atrial tachycardia: Most commonly occurs in COPD. Correct hypoxia and hypercapnia. Consider verapamil if rate remains >110bpm.

Junctional tachycardia: Where anterograde conduction through the AV node occurs, vagal manoeuvres are worth trying. Adenosine will usually cardiovert a junctional rhythm to sinus rhythm. If it fails or recurs, β -blockers (or verapamil—not with β -blockers, digoxin, or class I agents such as quinidine). If this does not control symptoms, consider radiofrequency ablation.

- ▶▶ Seek specialist advice if resistant junction tachycardia, or accessory pathway.

Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome (ECG p125) Caused by congenital accessory conduction pathway between atria and ventricles. Resting ECG shows short PR interval and widened QRS complex due to slurred upstroke or 'delta wave'. 2 types: WPW type A (+ve δ wave in V_1), WPW type B (–ve δ wave in V_1). Present with SVT which may be due to an AVRT (p120), pre-excited AF, or pre-excited atrial flutter. Risk of degeneration to VF and sudden death. **R:** Flecainide, propafenone, sotalol, or amiodarone. Refer to cardiologist for electrophysiology and ablation of the accessory pathway.



Management of narrow complex tachycardia (supraventricular tachycardia)

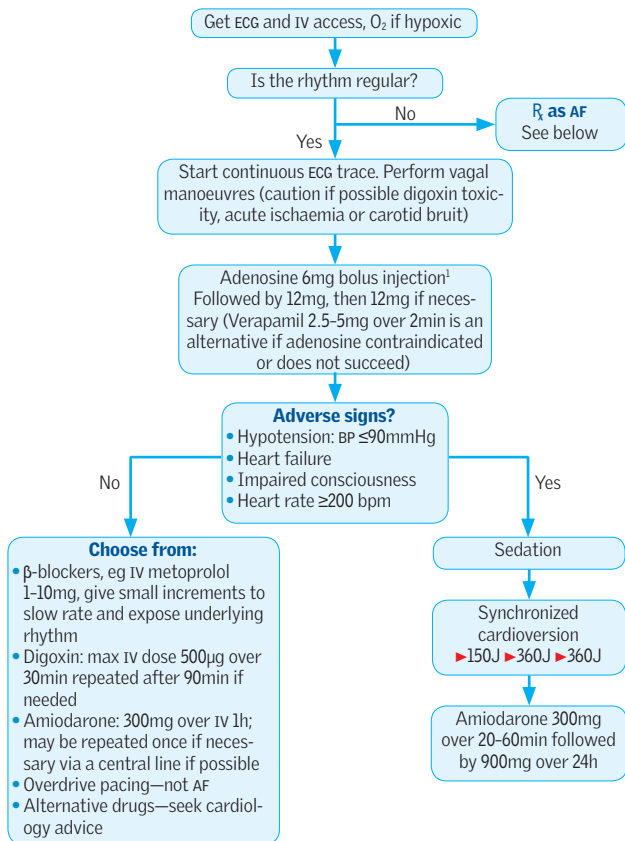


Fig 1. Management of narrow complex tachycardia (supraventricular tachycardia).

Irregular narrow complex tachycardia

- Treat as AF—by far the most likely diagnosis.
- Control rate with either β-blocker or digoxin.
- If onset <48h consider cardioversion with either amiodarone, 300mg IVI over 20–60min, then 900mg over 24h; or DC shock, see p784.
- Consider anticoagulation with heparin and/or warfarin to reduce the risk of stroke.

¹ Consult BNF if on dipyridamole or has had a heart transplant.
See Resuscitation Council (UK) guidance for more details (www.resus.org.uk).



- ▶ The severity of an attack is easily underestimated.
- ▶ An atmosphere of calm helps.

Presentation Acute breathlessness and wheeze.

History (p48) Ask about usual and recent treatment; previous acute episodes and their severity and best peak expiratory flow rate (PEF). Have they been admitted to ICU?

Differential diagnosis Acute infective exacerbation of COPD, pulmonary oedema, upper respiratory tract obstruction, pulmonary embolus, anaphylaxis.

Investigations PEF—but may be too ill; arterial blood gases if saturations <92%; CXR (if suspicion of pneumothorax, infection or life-threatening attack); FBC; U&E.

Assessing the severity of an acute asthmatic attack

Severe attack:

- Unable to complete sentences
- Respiratory rate >25/min
- Pulse rate >110 beats/min
- Peak expiratory flow 33–50% of predicted or best

Life-threatening attack:

- Peak expiratory flow <33% of predicted or best
- Silent chest, cyanosis, feeble respiratory effort
- Bradycardia or hypotension
- Exhaustion, confusion, or coma
- Arterial blood gases:
 - normal/high $P_a\text{CO}_2$ >4.6kPa (32mmHg)
 - $P_a\text{O}_2$ <8kPa (60mmHg), or $S_a\text{O}_2$ <92%
 - low pH, eg <7.35

Treatment ▶ Life-threatening or severe asthma, see **fig 1**.

- Salbutamol 5mg nebulized with oxygen and give prednisolone 30mg PO.
- If PEF remains <75%, repeat salbutamol.
- Monitor oxygen saturation, heart rate, and respiratory rate.

Discharge Patients, before discharge, must have:

- Been stable on discharge medication for 24h.
- Had inhaler technique checked.
- Peak flow rate >75% predicted or best with diurnal variability <25%.
- Steroid (inhaled *and* oral) and bronchodilator therapy.
- their own PEF meter and have management plan.
- GP appointment within 1wk.
- Respiratory clinic appointment within 4wks.

Drugs used in acute asthma

Salbutamol (β_2 -agonist) SE: tachycardia, arrhythmias, tremor, K^+ ↓.

Hydrocortisone and **prednisolone** (steroid; reduces inflammation)

Aminophylline is used much less frequently and is not routinely recommended in current *BTS* guidelines, but may be initiated by respiratory team or ICU. It inhibits phosphodiesterase; ↑[cAMP]. SE: pulset, arrhythmias, nausea, seizures. The amount of IVI aminophylline may need altering according to the individual patient: always check the *BNF*. Monitor ECG.

- **Factors that may necessitate reduction of dose:** Cardiac or liver failure, drugs that increase the half-life of aminophylline, eg cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, erythromycin, contraceptive steroids.
- **Factors that may require ↑ dose:** Smoking, drugs that shorten the half-life, eg phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, rifampicin.
- ▶ Aim for plasma concentration of 10–20 $\mu\text{g/mL}$ (55–110 $\mu\text{mol/L}$). Serious toxicity ($\text{BP}\downarrow$ arrhythmias, cardiac arrest) can occur at concentrations $\geq 25\mu\text{g/mL}$. Measure plasma K^+ : theophyllines may cause $K^+\downarrow$. Don't load patients already on oral preparations. Stick with one brand (bioavailability varies).



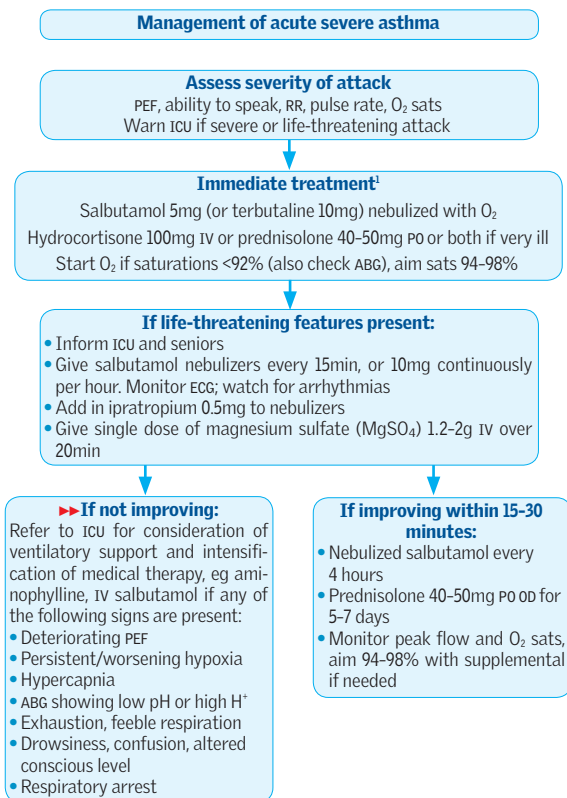


Fig 1. Management of acute severe asthma.

1 NB: The routine use of antibiotics is not recommended in exacerbations of asthma.



A common medical emergency especially in winter. May be triggered by viral or bacterial infections.

Presentation Increasing cough, breathlessness, or wheeze. Decreased exercise capacity.

History (p48) Ask about usual/recent treatments (especially home oxygen), smoking status, and exercise capacity (may influence a decision to ventilate the patient).

Differential diagnosis Asthma, pulmonary oedema, upper respiratory tract obstruction, pulmonary embolus, anaphylaxis.

Investigations

- Arterial blood gases (p785).
- CXR to exclude pneumothorax and infection.
- FBC; U&E; CRP. Theophylline level if patient on therapy at home.
- ECG.
- Send sputum for culture if purulent.
- Blood cultures if pyrexial.

Management

- Look for a cause, eg infection, pneumothorax.
- See **fig 1** for acute management.
- Prior to discharge, liaise with GP regarding steroid reduction, domiciliary oxygen (p176), smoking cessation, and pneumococcal and flu vaccinations (p160).

Treatment of stable COPD and more advanced disease: See p176, p177.

Considering the ceiling of care:

⚙️ In the acute setting it is very easy for us to intervene, there are many things we can do, but it is often important to consider what we *should* do and what is in the best interests of the patient. Invasive ventilation for exacerbations of COPD can be a minefield, as it can be difficult to wean patients off ventilatory support, and brings with it the risk of ventilator-associated pneumonias and pneumothoraces from ruptured bullae. If possible, speak to the patient early, before deterioration, try to ascertain their wishes. Patients who have previously been ventilated may not wish to repeat the experience. Consider age, FEV₁, comorbidities, functional status, whether the patient requires home oxygen, and whether the patient has previously been admitted to ICU (and if so, whether they were easily weaned from invasive ventilation). Involve the patient, the family, your seniors and ICU early in making a decision about the ceiling of care for an individual patient.

Oxygen therapy

- The greatest danger is hypoxia, which probably accounts for more deaths than hypercapnia. *Don't leave patients severely hypoxic.*
- However, in some patients, who rely on their hypoxic drive to breathe, too much oxygen may lead to a reduced respiratory rate and hypercapnia, with a consequent fall in conscious level. Always prescribe O₂ as if it were a drug.
- Care is always required with O₂, especially if there is evidence of CO₂ retention. Start with 24–28% O₂ in such patients.
- ▶▶ Whenever you initiate or change oxygen therapy, do an ABG within the next hour or sooner if the patient is deteriorating.
- Monitor the patient carefully. Aim to raise the P_aO₂ above 8.0kPa with a rise in P_aCO₂ <1.5kPa.
- In patients without evidence of retention at baseline use 28–40% O₂, but still monitor and repeat ABG.



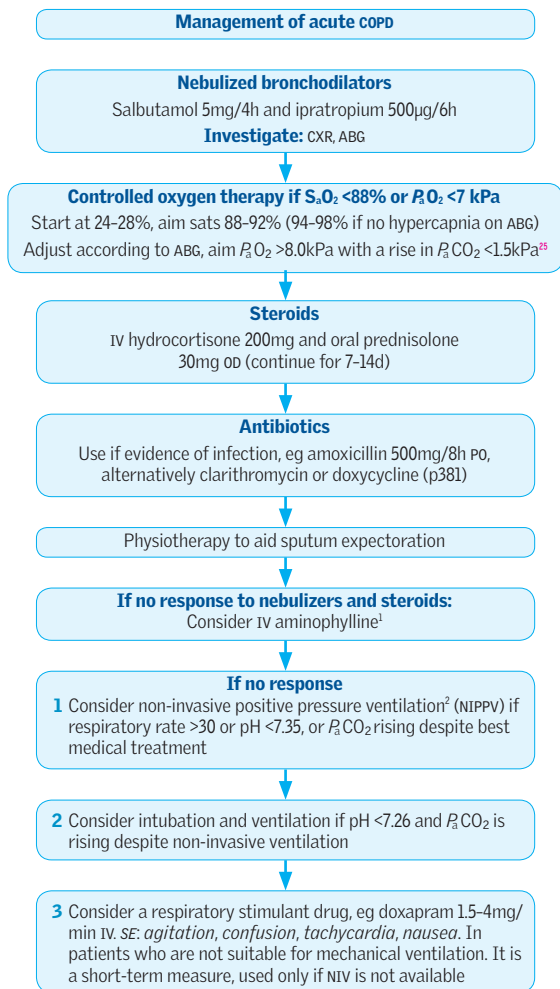


Fig 1. Management of acute COPD.

Aminophylline: Do not give a loading dose to patients on maintenance methylxanthines (theophyllines/aminophylline; see p820). Load with 250mg over 20min, then infuse at a rate of $\sim 500\mu\text{g/kg/h}$ ($300\mu\text{g/kg/h}$ if elderly), where kg is ideal body weight, p446. Check plasma levels if given for > 24 h. ECG monitoring is required.

1 This may alone serve as a rescue therapy, be an intermittent step before ventilation, or be considered as a 'ceiling of therapy' for those deemed not suitable for mechanical ventilation.



►►**Tension pneumothorax** requires immediate relief (see below). Do not delay management by obtaining a CXR.

Causes

- **Spontaneous** (especially in young thin men) due to rupture of a subpleural bulla
- **Chronic lung disease**: asthma; COPD; cystic fibrosis; lung fibrosis; sarcoidosis
- **Infection**: TB; pneumonia; lung abscess
- **Traumatic**: including iatrogenic (CVP line insertion, pleural aspiration or biopsy, percutaneous liver biopsy, positive pressure ventilation).
- **Carcinoma**
- **Connective tissue disorders**: Marfan's syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome

Clinical features

Symptoms: Can be asymptomatic (especially in fit young people with small pneumothoraces) or sudden onset of dyspnoea and/or pleuritic chest pain. Patients with asthma or COPD may present with a sudden deterioration. Mechanically ventilated patients can suddenly develop hypoxia or an increase in ventilation pressures.

Signs: Reduced expansion, hyper-resonance to percussion and diminished breath sounds on the affected side. *With a tension pneumothorax, the trachea will be deviated away from the affected side and the patient will be very unwell.*

Tests ►►A CXR should not be performed if a tension pneumothorax is suspected, as it will delay immediate necessary treatment. Otherwise, request an expiratory film, and look for an area devoid of lung markings, peripheral to the edge of the collapsed lung (see p739). Ensure the suspected pneumothorax is not a large emphysematous bulla. Check **ABG** in dyspnoeic/hypoxic patients and those with chronic lung disease.

Management Depends on whether it is a primary or secondary (underlying lung disease) pneumothorax, size and symptoms—see **fig 1**.

- Pneumothorax due to trauma or mechanical ventilation requires a chest drain.
- Aspiration of a pneumothorax, see p781.
- Insertion and management of a chest drain, see p780.

Surgical advice: Arrange if: bilateral pneumothoraces; lung fails to expand after intercostal drain insertion; 2 or more previous pneumothoraces on the same side; or history of pneumothorax on the opposite side.

►►Tension pneumothorax

(see p763)

►► This is a medical emergency.

Essence Air drawn into the pleural space with each inspiration has no route of escape during expiration. The mediastinum is pushed over into the contralateral hemithorax, kinking and compressing the great veins. Unless the air is rapidly removed, cardiorespiratory arrest will occur.

Signs Respiratory distress, tachycardia, hypotension, distended neck veins, trachea deviated away from side of pneumothorax. Increased percussion note, reduced air entry/breath sounds on the affected side.

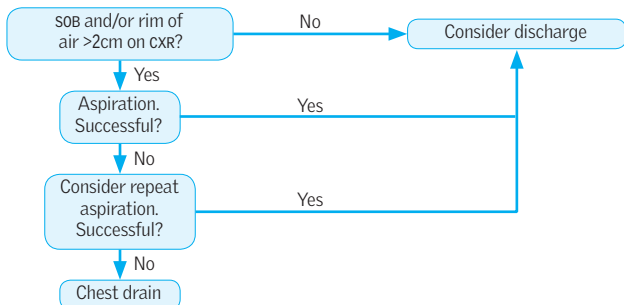
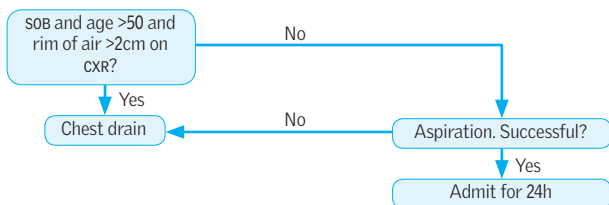
Treatment

To remove the air, insert a large-bore (14–16G) needle with a syringe, partially filled with 0.9% saline, into the 2nd intercostal interspace in the midclavicular line on the side of the suspected pneumothorax. Remove plunger to allow the trapped air to bubble through the syringe (with saline as a water seal) until a chest tube can be placed. Alternatively, insert a large-bore Venflon in the same location.

►► Do this *before* requesting a CXR.

►► Then insert a chest drain. See p780.



Primary pneumothorax**Secondary pneumothorax****Fig 1.** Acute management of pneumothorax.*Aspiration of a pneumothorax:* ►► see p781.*Intercostal tube drainage:* For insertion, see p780.

- Use a small tube (10–14F) unless blood/pus is also present.
- Never clamp a bubbling tube.
- Tubes may be removed 24h after the lung has re-expanded and air leak has stopped (ie the tube stops bubbling). This is done during expiration or a Valsalva manoeuvre.
- If the lung fails to re-expand within 48h, or if there is a persistent air leak, specialist advice should be obtained, as suction or surgical intervention may be required.
- If suction is required, high-volume, low-pressure (–10 to –20cmH₂O) systems are required.

An infection of the lung parenchyma. Incidence of community-acquired pneumonia is 5–11 per 1000 adults. Of these, 1–3 per 1000 will require hospitalization, and mortality in those hospitalized is up to 14%.

Common organisms

- *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is the commonest cause (60–75%).
- *Haemophilus influenzae*.
- *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*.
- *Staphylococcus aureus* found more commonly in ICU patients.
- *Legionella* species and *Chlamydia psittaci*.
- Gram-negative bacilli, often hospital-acquired or immunocompromised, eg *Pseudomonas*, especially in those with COPD.
- Viruses including influenza account for up to 15%.

Symptoms

- Fever, rigors, malaise, anorexia, dyspnoea, cough, purulent sputum (classically 'rusty' with pneumococcus), haemoptysis, and pleuritic chest pain.

Signs

- Fever, cyanosis, herpes labialis (pneumococcus), confusion, tachypnoea, tachycardia, hypotension, signs of consolidation (diminished expansion, dull percussion note, increased tactile vocal fremitus/vocal resonance, bronchial breathing), and a pleural rub.

Investigations

- CXR (X-ray images, **fig 1** on p739).
- Oxygen saturation and arterial blood gases if $S_aO_2 < 92\%$ or severe pneumonia.
- FBC, U&E, LFT, CRP, atypical serology (remember to put date of onset on form).
- Urine pneumococcal (and legionella) antigen.
- Viral throat swabs if appropriate.
- Blood cultures if pyrexial.
- Pleural fluid may be aspirated for culture.
- Bronchoscopy and bronchoalveolar lavage if the patient is immunocompromised or on ICU.

Severity

Calculate the core adverse features '**CURB-65**' score

- **C**onfusion (abbreviated mental test ≤ 8)
- **U**rea $> 7 \text{ mmol/L}$
- **R**espiratory rate $\geq 30/\text{min}$
- **B**P $< 90/60 \text{ mmHg}$
- Age ≥ 65

Score:

0–1 home treatment if possible

2 hospital therapy

≥ 3 indicates severe pneumonia and should consider ICU referral

Other features increasing the risk of death are: co-existing disease; bilateral/multilobar involvement; $P_aO_2 < 8 \text{ kPa}$ or $S_aO_2 < 92\%$.

Management See **fig 1**.

Complications (of infection or treatment)

Pleural effusion, empyema, lung abscess, respiratory failure, septicaemia, pericarditis, myocarditis, cholestatic jaundice, acute kidney injury.



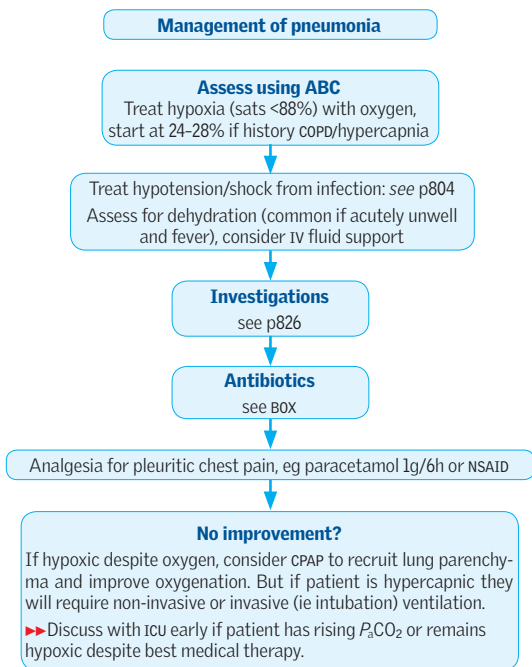


Fig 1. Management of pneumonia.

Empirical treatment of severe pneumonia (CURB 3-5)

▶ Regimens vary, so consult local guidelines—the following are British Thoracic Society suggestions. For fuller advice see p161.

Co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h IV AND clarithromycin 500mg/12h IVI.

If penicillin allergic use cephalosporin instead of co-amoxiclav. Ciprofloxacin is an alternative to clarithromycin.

If atypical suspected *Legionella pneumophila* add levofloxacin + rifampicin, *Chlamydophila* species (p162) add tetracycline, *Pneumocystis jiroveci* add high-dose co-trimoxazole (p411).

If hospital acquired or neutropenic consider aminoglycoside IV (eg gentamicin, p766) + antipseudomonal penicillin (eg ticarcillin, p378).



► Always suspect pulmonary embolism (PE) in sudden collapse 1–2 wks after surgery. Mortality rate in England and Wales: 30,000–40,000/yr.

Mechanism Venous thrombi, usually from DVT, pass into the pulmonary circulation and block blood flow to lungs. The source is often occult.

Risk factors

- Malignancy.
- Surgery—especially pelvic and lower limb (much lower if prophylaxis used).
- Immobility.
- Combined oral contraceptive pill (there is also a slight risk attached to HRT).
- Previous thromboembolism and inherited thrombophilia, see p368.

Signs and symptoms

- Acute dyspnoea, pleuritic chest pain, haemoptysis, and syncope.
- Hypotension, tachycardia, gallop rhythm, JVP†, loud P₂, right ventricular heave, pleural rub, tachypnoea, cyanosis, AF.

With thromboprophylaxis PE following surgery is far less common, but PE may occur after any period of immobility, or with no predisposing factors. Breathlessness may be the only sign. Multiple small emboli may present less dramatically with pleuritic pain, haemoptysis, and gradually increasing breathlessness. ► Look for a source of emboli—especially DVT (is a leg swollen?).

Investigations ► p182

- U&E, FBC, baseline clotting.
- ECG: commonly normal or sinus tachycardia; right ventricular strain pattern V_{1–3} (p94), right axis deviation, RBBB, AF, may be deep S waves in I, Q waves in III, inverted T waves in III ('S_I Q_{III} T_{III}').
- CXR: often normal; decreased vascular markings, small pleural effusion. Wedge-shaped area of infarction. Atelectasis.
- ABG: hyperventilation + poor gas exchange: P_aO₂↓, P_aCO₂↓, pH often †, p156.
- Serum D-dimer: high sensitivity but low specificity († if thrombosis, inflammation, post-op, infection, malignancy) ∴ excludes PE if normal D-dimer.
- CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA) is sensitive and specific in determining if emboli are in pulmonary arteries. If unavailable, a ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) scan can aid diagnosis. If V/Q scan is equivocal, pulmonary angiography or bilateral venograms may help (MRI venography or plethysmography are alternatives).

Management See fig 1 for immediate management.

- Try to prevent further thrombosis with compression stockings.
- Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) concurrently with warfarin until INR >2.
- If obvious remedial cause, 6 weeks of warfarin (p345) may be enough; otherwise, continue for ≥3–6 months (long term if recurrent emboli, or underlying malignancy).
- Is there an underlying cause, eg thrombophilic tendency (p368), malignancy (especially prostate, breast, or pelvic cancer), SLE, or polycythaemia?
- If good story and signs, make the diagnosis. Start treatment (FLOWCHART) before definitive investigations: most PE deaths occur within 1h.

Prevention Early post-op mobilization is the simplest method; also consider:

- Antithromboembolic (TED) stockings.
- Low molecular weight heparin prophylaxis sc.
- Avoid contraceptive pill if at risk, eg major or orthopaedic surgery.
- Recurrent PEs may be prevented by anticoagulation. Vena caval filters are of limited use unless patients cannot be anticoagulated.

Don't just think of prophylactic low molecular weight heparin (LMWH, p580) for post-op patients. Many acutely ill medical patients are equally at risk (5–15% have DVTs, and >50% of all thromboembolic events are in these patients; prevalence of PE: 0.3–1.5%).²⁹ Do proper risk analysis—especially in those with MI, pneumonia, malignancy, inflammatory bowel disease, prolonged immobility/on ICU, and stroke (there is no † risk of CNS bleeds if LMWH is used).³⁰



Management of large pulmonary embolism

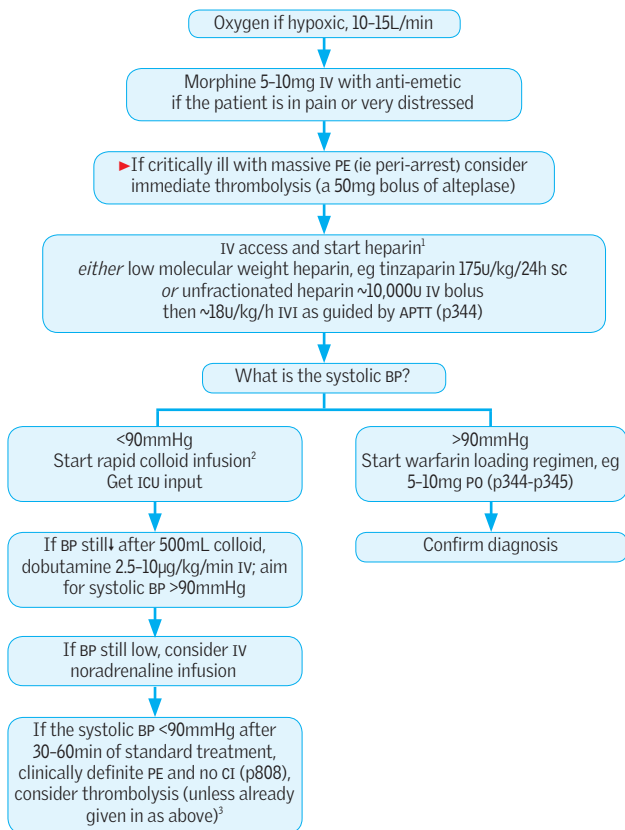


Fig 1. Management of large pulmonary embolism.

1 A bolus of unfractionated heparin may be preferred in massive PE for its faster onset, and unfractionated heparin may also be useful where there may be a need for rapid reversal of anticoagulation.

2 Controversial, but some authorities say it is best to infuse plasma-expanding fluids even if CVP↑, to maintain BP and organ perfusion, see *Concise OTM* (OUP, 2000) p151—but see Task Force on PE, European Society Cardiology *Eur Heart J* 2000 21 1301.

3 A standard regimen is: alteplase 50mg bolus IV over 1-2min. See also formulary.



Causes

- Peptic ulcer disease (PUD) 35–50%.
- Gastroduodenal erosions 8–15%.
- Oesophagitis 5–15%.
- Mallory-Weiss tear 15%.
- Varices 5–10%.
- Other: upper GI malignancy, vascular malformations. Consider also facial trauma, nose bleed, or haemoptysis as causes of *swallowed* blood.

Signs and symptoms (p56–63) Haematemesis, or melaena, dizziness (especially postural), fainting, abdominal pain, dysphagia? Hypotension (in young may be postural only), tachycardia (not if on β -blocker), \downarrow JVP, \downarrow urine output, cool and clammy, signs of chronic liver disease (p260), eg telangiectasia, purpura, jaundice (biliary colic + jaundice + melaena suggests haemobilia). NB: ask about previous GI problems, drug use, alcohol.

Management (see Rockall score, p253)³²

Is the patient shocked?

- Cool and clammy to touch (especially nose, toes, fingers) \downarrow capillary refill.
- Pulse >100 bpm, JVP not visible
- Systolic BP <100 mmHg or postural drop (>20 mmHg on standing).
- Urine output <30 mL/h.

If haemodynamically stable: Insert 2 big cannulae; start slow saline IVI to keep lines patent; check bloods and monitor vital signs + urine output. Consider transfusion if loss $>30\%$ circulating volume (see p805) NB: Hb may not fall until circulating volume is restored.

If shocked: See **fig 1** for management.

cVP line: Consider for high-risk patients, eg \uparrow age, CV disease, on β -blockers.

Acute drug therapy: Following successful endoscopic therapy in patients with major ulcer bleeding, omeprazole or pantoprazole (80mg stat IV over 5min followed by 8mg/h for 72h) is recommended.

Variceal bleeding: (p254) Resuscitate then proceed to urgent endoscopy for banding or sclerotherapy. Give terlipressin 2mg SC qds (caution in PUD). If massive bleed or bleeding continues, pass a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube (p255, see BOX). A bleed is the equivalent of a large protein meal so start treatment to avoid hepatic encephalopathy (p258). Omeprazole 40mg PO may also be helpful in preventing stress ulceration.

Endoscopy: Within 4h if you suspect variceal bleeding; within 12–24h if shocked on admission or significant comorbidity. Endoscopy can identify the site of bleeding, estimate the risk of rebleeding (see FLOWCHART) and be used to administer treatment.

No site of bleeding identified: Bleeding site missed on endoscopy; bleeding site has healed (Mallory-Weiss tear or Dieulafoy's lesion); nose bleed (swallowed blood); site distal to 3rd part of the duodenum (Meckel's diverticulum, colonic site).

Helicobacter pylori: Check status in all patients; eradicate if positive (p243).

Rebleeds Serious event: 40% of patients who rebleed will die. If 'at risk' maintain a high index of suspicion. If a rebleed occurs, check vital signs every 15min and call senior cover for repeat endoscopy and/or surgical intervention.

Signs of a rebleed:

- Rising pulse rate.
- Falling JVP \pm decreasing hourly urine output.
- Haematemesis or melaena.
- Fall in BP (a late and sinister finding) and decreased conscious level.



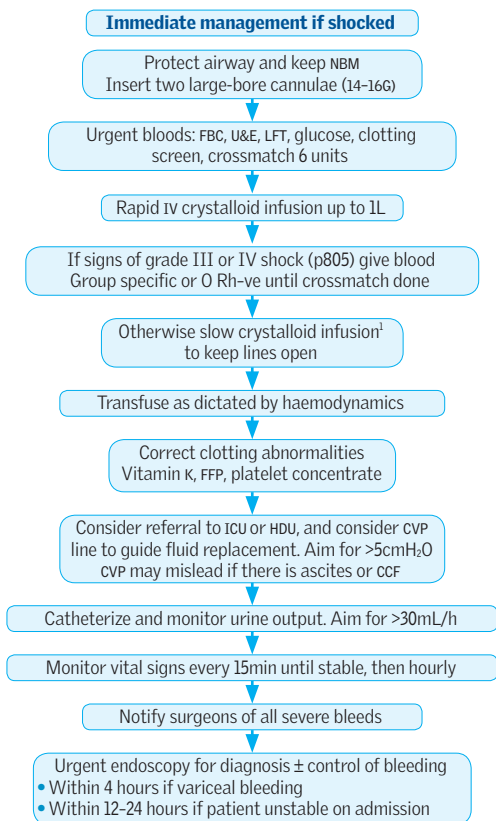


Fig 1. Immediate management if shocked.

Rockall scoring system for prognosis in acute GI bleeding

Variable	Score		
	0	1	2
Age	<60	60-79	>80
Shocked?	No	SBP >100 Pulse >100	SBP <100 Pulse >100
Comorbidity?	None		CCF, IHD, any major Renal/liver failure or malignancy
Diagnosis	Mallory-Weiss or normal	All other diagnoses	Malignancy
Bleeding visible?	None/spot		Visible blood/clot spurting vessel

Score <3 means an excellent prognosis; >8 means a high risk of death

¹ Avoid saline in patients with decompensated liver disease (ascites, peripheral oedema) as it worsens ascites and, despite a low serum sodium, patients have a high body sodium. Use whole blood or salt-poor albumin for resuscitation, and 5% dextrose for maintenance.



► **When to act now** Headache, pyrexia, neck stiffness, altered mental state: if any 2 co-exist and not yet in hospital, give benzylpenicillin 1.2g IM/IV before admitting.³³

Organisms Meningococcus or pneumococcus. Less commonly *Haemophilus influenzae*; *Listeria monocytogenes*. CMV, cryptococcus (p411), or TB (p399) if immunocompromised, eg HIV +ve, organ transplant, malignancy.

Differential Malaria, encephalitis, septicaemia, subarachnoid, dengue, tetanus.

Features³⁴

Early: Headache, leg pains, cold hands and feet, abnormal skin colour.

Later:

- Meningism: neck stiffness, photophobia, Kernig's sign (pain + resistance on passive knee extension with hip fully flexed).
- Conscious level ↓, coma.
- Seizures (~20%) ± focal CNS signs (~20%) ± opisthotonus (p425, fig 1).
- Petechial rash (non-blanching—fig 1; may only be 1 or 2 spots, or none).



Fig 1. Glass test for petechiae.

Courtesy of Meningitis Research Foundation

Signs of galloping sepsis: slow capillary refill; DIC; BP↓. T° and pulse: ↑ or normal.

Management³⁵

- Start antibiotics (below) immediately; see fig 1 for acute management.
- **Signs of disease causing meningitis:** zoster; cold sore/genital vesicles (HSV); HIV signs (lymphadenopathy, dermatitis, candidiasis, uveitis); bleeding ± red eye (leptospirosis); parotid swelling (mumps); sore throat ± jaundice ± nodes (glandular fever, p401); splenectomy scar (∴ immunodeficient).
- **If ICP raised,** summon help immediately and inform neurosurgeons.
- **Prophylaxis:** (discuss with public health/ID) • Household contacts in droplet range.
 - Those who have kissed the patient's mouth. Give rifampicin (600mg/12h po for 2d; children >1yr 10mg/kg/12h; <1yr 5mg/kg/12h) or ciprofloxacin (500mg po, 1 dose child 5-12yrs: 250mg stat): neither is guaranteed in pregnancy, but are recommended.

Antibiotic therapy for meningitis

- Local policies vary. If in doubt, ask. The following are suggestions only, where the organism is unknown:
 - <55yrs: cefotaxime 2g/6h slow IV.
 - >55yrs: cefotaxime as above + ampicillin 2g IV/4h (for *Listeria*).
 - Aciclovir (p834) if viral encephalitis suspected.
 - Once organism isolated, seek urgent microbiological advice.

Investigations

- U&E, FBC (WBC↓ ≈ immunocompromise: get help), LFT, glucose, coagulation screen.
- Blood culture, throat swabs (1 for bacteria, 1 for virology), rectal swab for viruses. Serology, eg EBV (p401); HIV (p412; contact lab).
- Lumbar puncture (p782) is usually done after CT but if GCS 15, no symptoms of raised ICP and no focal neurology can be done without. ci: suspected intracranial mass lesion, focal signs, papilloedema, trauma, middle ear pathology, major coagulopathy. Measure opening pressure:
 - 7-18cm CSF is normal
 - In meningitis may be >40; typically 14-30
- Send CSF for MC&S, Gram stain, protein, glucose, virology/PCR, and lactate (see FLOW-CHART for interpretation and normal values).
- In aseptic meningitis (usually self-limiting) do CSF PCR: 46% are from enteroviruses (eg Coxsackie A & B; echoviruses); 31% herpes simplex type 2 (HSV2); 4% HSV1. HSV meningitis is self-limiting if immunocompetent, unlike HSV encephalitis (a different entity).³⁶ For mumps, etc, see OHCS p142.
- CXR (signs of TB? If so, consider TB meningitis, p399).



Management of suspected bacterial meningitis³³

ABCs: IVI + fluid resus. Ask a nurse to draw up cefotaxime 2g. If immunocompromised, get help; add ampicillin 2g/6h IV for *Listeria*, also if >55yrs old.

Septicaemic signs predominate: eg ↓capillary refill time; cold hands + feet (occurs before BP falls); rash.

Meningitic signs predominate: ie neck stiffness; photophobia.

- Do not attempt LP
 - Cefotaxime 2g IV
 - Get help from critical care team
- Signs of shock?

Dexamethasone 4-10mg/6h IV³⁷

If signs of tICP, take to ICU and do **not** do LP.
If no shock or tICP signs, do LP.
If not sure, get senior help

Yes

No

Take to ICU for:

- Fluid resuscitation
- Pre-emptive intubation
- Inotropes/vasopressors
- Aim for mean arterial pressure of >70mmHg and urine output >30mL/h

2g cefotaxime IV post-LP at once
▶ pre-LP, if to be delayed by >½h

Nurse at 30°; have low threshold for intubation. NB: don't rely on CT to rule out raised ICP. Also, papilloedema is a late sign.

Careful monitoring

Repeat review

Subsequent therapy: Discuss antibiotic therapy with microbiology and adjust based on organism and local sensitivities. Maintain normovolaemia with IVI if needed. Isolate for 1st 24h. If response to the above is poor consider pre-emptive intubation and ventilation ± inotropic/vasopressor support (p804). Inform Public Health, p373.

Fig 1. Management of suspected bacterial meningitis.

Lumbar puncture in meningitis

CSF in meningitis	Pyogenic	Tuberculous (p399)	Viral ('aseptic')
Appearance	Often turbid	Often fibrin web	Usually clear
Predominant cell	Polymorphs	Mononuclear	Mononuclear*
Cell count/mm ³	Eg 90-1000 or more	10-1000	50-1000
Glucose	<½ plasma	<½ plasma	>½ plasma
Protein (g/L)	>1.5	1-5	<1
Bacteria	In smear & culture	Often none in smear	None seen or cultured

Normal values: ≤5 lymphocytes/mm³ may be normal, so long as there are no neutrophils. Protein: 0.15-0.45g/L. CSF glucose: 2.8-4.2mmol/L. **Causes of ↓CSF glucose:** sepsis; parasitic meningitis, eg from eating snails (do CSF eosinophil count); also herpes encephalitis, hypoglycaemia, sarcoid, CNS vasculitis. A CSF lactate level of ≥3.5mmol/L (31.5mg/dL) predicts bacterial meningitis quite well.³⁸

* Predominant cell type may also be lymphocytes in TB, listerial, and cryptococcal meningitis.



► Suspect encephalitis whenever odd behaviour, ↓consciousness, focal neurology or seizure is preceded by an infectious prodrome (T°↑, rash, lymphadenopathy, cold sores, conjunctivitis, meningeal signs). It is often wise to treat (see below) before the exact cause is known—usually viral, and often never identified. Without the infectious prodrome consider *encephalopathy*: hypoglycaemia, hepatic encephalopathy, diabetic ketoacidosis, drugs, hypoxic brain injury, uraemia, SLE, beri-beri (give vit B₁ if in doubt p728).

Signs and symptoms

- Bizarre encephalopathic behaviour or confusion
- ↓GCS or coma
- Fever
- Headache
- Focal neurological signs
- Seizures
- History of travel or animal bite.

Causes

- *Viral*: HSV-1 & 2, arboviruses, CMV, EBV, VZV (varicella-zoster virus), HIV (seroconversion), measles, mumps, rabies, Japanese B encephalitis, West Nile virus, tick-borne encephalitis.
- *Non-viral*: any bacterial meningitis, TB, malaria, listeria, Lyme disease, legionella, leptospirosis, aspergillosis, cryptococcus, schistosomiasis, typhus (fig 3, p389).

Investigations

- *Bloods*: blood cultures; serum for viral PCR (also throat swab and MSU); toxoplasma IgM titre; malaria film.
- *Contrast-enhanced CT*: focal bilateral temporal lobe involvement is suggestive of HSV encephalitis. Meningeal enhancement suggests meningoencephalitis. Do before LP. MRI is alternative if allergic to contrast.
- *LP*: typically moderately ↑CSF protein and lymphocytes, and ↓glucose (p833). Send CSF for viral PCR including HSV (CSF PCR is 95% specific for HSV-1).
- *EEG*: urgent EEG showing diffuse abnormalities may help confirm a diagnosis of encephalitis, but does not indicate a cause.

Management

- Mortality in untreated viral encephalitis is ~70%. ►► Aim to start aciclovir within 30min³⁹ of the patient arriving (10mg/kg/8h IV over 1h) for 14 days as empirical treatment for HSV (21 days if immunosuppressed). Adjust aciclovir dose according to eGFR: use every 12h if eGFR 25–50; every 24h if eGFR 10–25. Consult product literature if eGFR <10. Specific therapies also exist for CMV and toxoplasmosis (p404).
- Supportive therapy, in high-dependency unit or ICU environment if necessary.
- Symptomatic treatment: eg phenytoin for seizures (p836).



Suspect this in any patient with **tICP**, especially if there is fever or **twcc**. It may follow ear, sinus, dental, or periodontal infection; skull fracture; congenital heart disease; endocarditis; bronchiectasis. It may also occur in the absence of systemic signs of inflammation.

Signs Seizures, fever, localizing signs, or signs of **tICP**. Coma. Signs of sepsis elsewhere (eg teeth, ears, lungs, endocarditis).

Investigations CT/MRI p760 (eg 'ring-enhancing' lesion); **twcc**, **tESR**; biopsy.

Treatment Urgent neurosurgical referral; treat **tICP** (p840). If frontal sinuses or teeth are the source, the likely organism will be *Strep. milleri* (microaerophilic), or oropharyngeal anaerobes. In ear abscesses, *B. fragilis* or other anaerobes are most common. Bacterial abscesses are often peripheral; toxoplasma lesions (p404) are deeper (eg basal ganglia). NB: ask yourself: is the patient immunocompromised? Discuss with infectious diseases/microbiology.



This means seizures lasting for >30min, or repeated seizures without intervening consciousness. Mortality and the risk of permanent brain damage increase with the length of attack. Aim to terminate seizures lasting more than a few minutes as soon as possible (<20min).

Status usually occurs in patients with known epilepsy. If it is the 1st presentation, the chance of a structural brain lesion is high (>50%). Diagnosis of tonic-clonic status is usually clear. Non-convulsive status (eg absence status or continuous partial seizures with preservation of consciousness) may be more difficult: look for subtle eye or lid movement. For other signs, see p489, p494-497. An EEG can be very helpful. ► *Could the patient be pregnant* (any pelvic mass)? If so, eclampsia (OHCS p48) is the likely diagnosis, check the urine and BP: call a senior obstetrician—immediate delivery may be needed.

Investigations

- Bedside glucose, the following tests can be done once R_x has started: lab glucose, ABG, U&E, Ca^{2+} , FBC, ECG.
- Consider anticonvulsant levels, toxicology screen, LP, culture blood and urine, EEG, CT, carbon monoxide level.
- Pulse oximetry, cardiac monitor.

Treatment See fig 1. Basic life support—and these agents:

- 1 Lorazepam:** 0.1mg/kg (usually 4mg) as a slow bolus into a large vein. If no response within 10min give a second dose. Beware respiratory arrest during the last part of the injection. Have full resuscitation facilities to hand for all IV benzodiazepine use. The rectal route is an alternative for diazepam if IV access is difficult.¹ **Buccal midazolam** is an easier to use oral alternative; dose for those 10yrs old and older 10mg; if 1-5yrs 5mg, if 5-10yrs 7.5mg; squirt half the volume between the lower gum and the cheek on each side. While waiting for this to work, prepare other drugs. If fits continue ...
- 2 Phenytoin infusion:** 15-20mg/kg IVI (roughly 1g if 60kg, and 1.5g if 80kg; max 2g), at a rate of ≤ 50 mg/min (don't put diazepam in same line: they don't mix). Beware BP↓ and do not use if bradycardic or heart block. Requires BP and ECG monitoring. 100mg/6-8h is a maintenance dose (check levels). If fits continue ...
- 3 Diazepam infusion:** eg 100mg in 500mL of 5% dextrose; infuse at about 40mL/h (max 3mg/kg/24h) until seizures respond. Close monitoring, especially respiratory function, is vital. It is most unusual for seizures to remain unresponsive following this. If they do, allow the idea to pass through your mind that they could be pseudoseizures (p720), particularly if there are odd features (pelvic thrusts; resisting attempts to open lids and your attempts to do passive movements; arms and legs flailing around).
- 4 Dexamethasone:** 10mg IV if vasculitis/cerebral oedema (tumour) possible.
- 5 General anaesthesia:** ► For refractory status: get anaesthetist/ICU involved early. As soon as seizures are controlled, start oral drugs (p496). Ask what the cause was, eg hypoglycaemia, pregnancy, alcohol, drugs, CNS lesion or infection, hypertensive encephalopathy, inadequate anticonvulsant dose (p494).



1 Diazepam Rectubes®: give 0.5mg/kg stat dose—eg ~2-3 10mg tubes PR (respiratory problems at this dose are very rare: all survived). If your back is still against the wall with no response after 10min, try 1 last 10mg tube. Halve dose if elderly. For children's Stesolid® regimen (it is different), see OHCS p206.

Management of status epilepticus

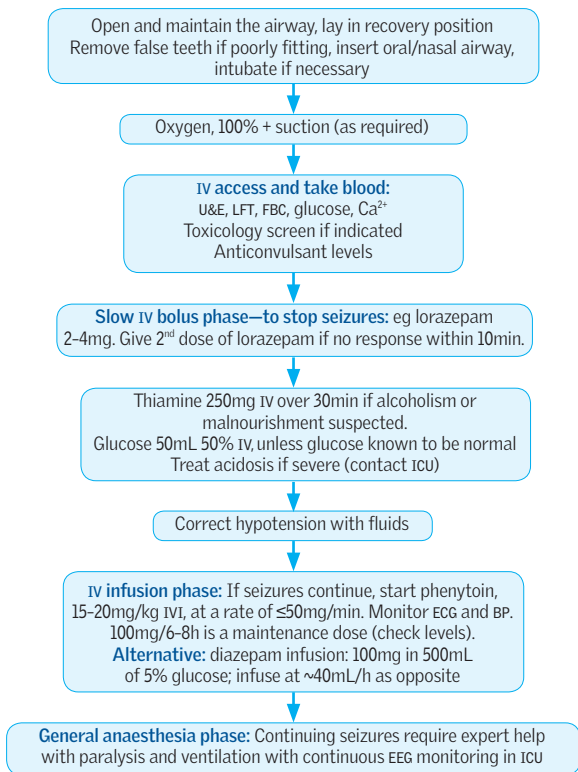


Fig 1. Management of status epilepticus.

NB: ► **never** spend longer than 20min on someone with status epilepticus without having help at the bedside from an anaesthetist.



▶ If the pupils are unequal, diagnose rising intracranial pressure (ICP), eg from extradural haemorrhage, and summon urgent neurosurgical help (p486). Retinal vein pulsation at fundoscopy helps exclude ↑ICP.

Initial management (See **fig 1**) Write full notes. Record times.

- Involve neurosurgeons at an early stage, especially with comatose patients, or if raised ICP suspected.
- Examine the CNS. Chart pulse, BP, T°, respirations + pupils every 15min.
- Assess anterograde amnesia (loss from the time of injury, ie post-traumatic) and retrograde amnesia—its extent correlates with the severity of the injury, and it never occurs without anterograde amnesia.
- Nurse semi-prone if no spinal injury; meticulous care to bladder and airway.

Who needs a CT head?

If any of the following are present, a CT is required immediately:

- GCS <13 at any time, or GCS 13 or 14 at 2h following injury
- Focal neurological deficit
- Suspected open or depressed skull fracture, or signs of basal skull fracture (haemotympanum, 'panda' eyes, CSF leak through nose/ears, Battle's sign)
- Post-traumatic seizure
- Vomiting >once
- Loss of consciousness AND any of the following:
 - Age ≥65
 - Coagulopathy
 - 'Dangerous mechanism of injury', eg car crash or fall from great height
 - Anterograde amnesia of >30min

When to ventilate immediately:

- Coma ≤8 on Glasgow coma scale (GCS; p802)
- P_aO_2 <9kPa in air (<13kPa in O_2) or P_aCO_2 >6kPa
- Spontaneous hyperventilation (P_aCO_2 <3.5kPa)
- Respiratory irregularity (p53)

Ventilate before neurosurgical transfer if:

- Deteriorating level of consciousness
- Bilateral fractured mandible
- Bleeding into mouth, eg skull base fracture
- Seizures

Risk of intracranial haematoma in adults

- Fully conscious, no skull fracture = <1:1000
- Confused, no skull fracture = 1:100
- Fully conscious, skull fracture = 1:30
- Confused, skull fracture = 1:4

Criteria for admission

- Difficult to assess (child; post-ictal; alcohol intoxication)
- CNS signs; severe headache or vomiting; fracture
- Brief loss of consciousness does **not** require admission if well and a responsible adult is in attendance

Drowsy trauma patients (GCS <15 to >8) smelling of alcohol: Alcohol is an unlikely cause of coma if plasma alcohol <44mmol/L. If unavailable, estimate blood alcohol level from the osmolar gap (p682). If blood alcohol ≈ 40mmol/L, osmolar gap ≈ 40mmol/L. Never assume signs are just from alcohol.

Complications **Early:** Extradural/subdural haemorrhage, seizures. **Late:** Subdural (p486), seizures, diabetes insipidus, parkinsonism, dementia.

Indicators of a bad prognosis Old age, decerebrate rigidity, extensor spasms, prolonged coma, ↑BP, P_aO_2 ↓ (on blood gases), T° >39°C. 60% of those with loss of consciousness of >1 month will survive 3–25yrs, but may need daily nursing care.

For Spinal cord injury & Persistent vegetative states, see **OHCS** (p766–774 & p776).



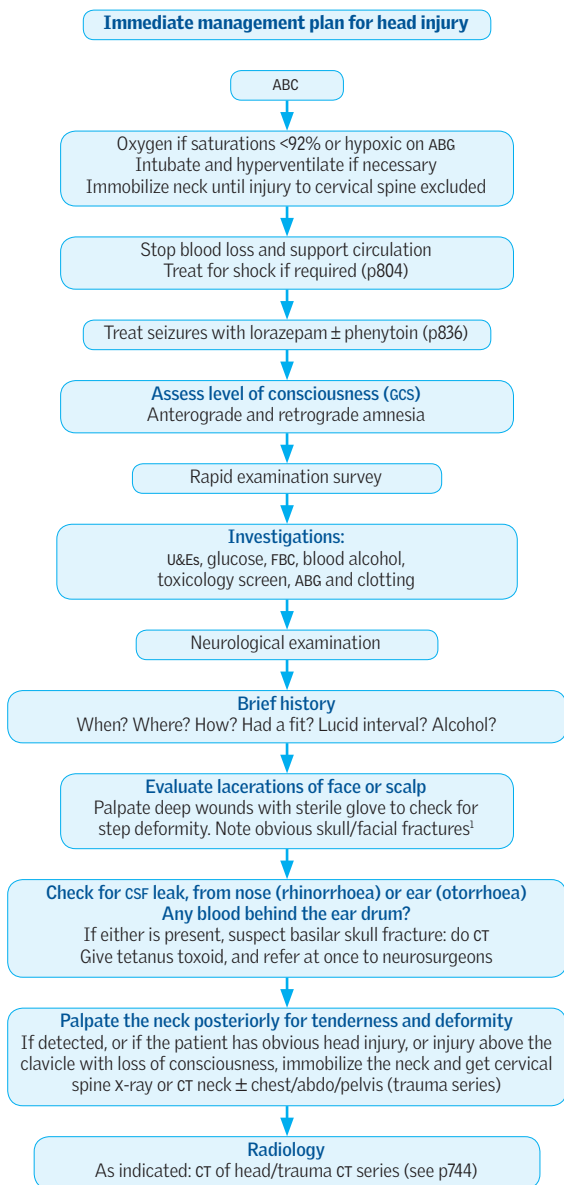


Fig 1. Immediate management plan for head injury.

1 Periorbital ('panda' eyes/raccoon sign) or postauricular (Battle sign) ecchymoses.



The volume inside the cranium is fixed, so any increase in the contents can lead to raised ICP. This can be mass effect, oedema or obstruction to fluid outflow. Normal ICP in adults is <15mmHg.

Causes

- Primary or metastatic tumours.
- Head injury.
- Haemorrhage (subdural, extradural, subarachnoid, intracerebral, intraventricular).
- Infection: meningitis, encephalitis, brain abscess.
- Hydrocephalus.
- Cerebral oedema.
- Status epilepticus.

Signs and symptoms

- Headache (worse on coughing, leaning forwards), vomiting.
- Altered GCS: drowsiness; listlessness, irritability, coma.
- History of trauma.
- Falling pulse and rising BP (Cushing's response); Cheyne-Stokes respiration.
- Pupil changes (constriction at first, later dilatation—do not mask these signs by using agents such as tropicamide to dilate the pupil to aid fundoscopy).
- Visual acuity; peripheral visual field loss.
- Papilloedema is an unreliable sign, but venous pulsation at the disc may be absent (absent in ~50% of normal people, but loss of it is a useful sign).

Investigations

- U&E, FBC, LFT, glucose, serum osmolality, clotting, blood culture.
- Consider toxicology screen.
- CXR—any source of infection that might indicate abscess?
- CT head.
- Then consider lumbar puncture if safe. Measure the opening pressure!

Treatment

The goal is to ↓ICP and avert secondary injury. Urgent neurosurgery is required for the definitive treatment of ↑ICP from focal causes (eg haematomas). This is achieved via a craniotomy or burr hole. Also, an ICP monitor (or bolt) may be placed to monitor pressure. Surgery is generally *not* helpful following ischaemic or anoxic injury.

Holding measures are listed in [fig 1](#).

Herniation syndromes

Uncal herniation is caused by a lateral supratentorial mass, which pushes the ipsilateral inferomedial temporal lobe (uncus) through the temporal incisura and against the midbrain. The IIIrd nerve, travelling in this space, gets compressed, causing a dilated ipsilateral pupil, then ophthalmoplegia (a fixed pupil localizes a lesion poorly but is 'ipsi-lateralizing'). This may be followed (quickly) by contralateral hemiparesis (pressure on the cerebral peduncle) and coma from pressure on the ascending reticular activating system (ARAS) in the midbrain.

Cerebellar tonsil herniation is caused by ↑pressure in the posterior fossa forcing the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum. Ataxia, VIth nerve palsies, and upgoing plantar reflexes occur first, then loss of consciousness, irregular breathing, and apnoea. This syndrome may proceed very rapidly given the small size of, and poor compliance in, the posterior fossa.

Subfalcian (cingulate) herniation is caused by a frontal mass. The cingulate gyrus (medial frontal lobe) is forced under the rigid falx cerebri. It may be silent unless the anterior cerebral artery is compressed and causes a stroke—eg contralateral leg weakness ± abulia (lack of decision-making).



Immediate management plan for raised intracranial pressure

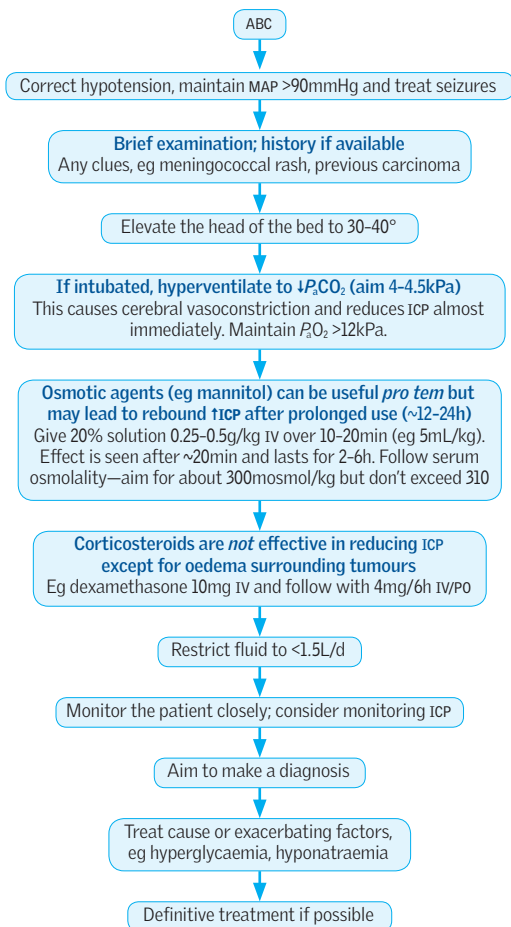


Fig 1. Immediate management plan for raised intracranial pressure.



Mechanism Normally the body metabolizes carbohydrates, leading to efficient energy production. Ketoacidosis is an alternative metabolic pathway, normally used in starvation states, it is far less efficient, and produces acetone as a by product (hence the fruity breath of patients in ketosis). In acute diabetic ketoacidosis, there is excessive glucose, but because of the lack of insulin, this cannot be taken up into cells to be metabolized, so pushing the body into a starvation-like state where ketoacidosis is the only mechanism of energy production. The combination of severe acidosis and hyperglycaemia can be deadly, so early recognition and treatment is important.

Typical picture Gradual drowsiness, vomiting and dehydration in type 1 diabetic (very rarely type 2) ▶ Do glucose in *all* those with unexplained vomiting, abdo pain, polyuria, polydipsia, lethargy, anorexia, ketotic breath, dehydration, coma, or deep breathing (sighing 'Kussmaul' hyperventilation). **Triggers:** Infection, eg UTI; surgery; MI; pancreatitis; chemotherapy; antipsychotics;⁴³ wrong insulin dose/non-compliance.

Diagnosis

- 1 Acidaemia (blood pH <7.3)
- 2 Hyperglycaemia
- 3 Ketonaemia

Tests: ECG, CXR. **Urine:** Dipstick and MSU. **Blood:** Capillary and lab glucose, ketones, U&E, HCO_3^- , amylase, osmolality, ABG/VBG (p843), FBC, blood culture.

Plasma osmolality = $2[\text{Na}^+] + [\text{urea}] + [\text{glucose}]$ mmol/L. Anion gap: p684.

Severe DKA If one or more of the following features is present on admission, consider transfer to HDU/ICU for monitoring and central venous access. Get senior help!

- Blood ketones >6mmol/L
- Venous bicarbonate <5mmol/L
- Venous/arterial pH <7.1
- K <3.5mmol/L on admission
- GCS <12
- O_2 sats <92% on air (assuming no respiratory disease)
- Systolic BP <90mmHg
- Pulse >100 or <60 bpm
- Anion gap above 16

Pitfalls in diabetic ketoacidosis

- **Plasma glucose** is usually high, but not always, especially if insulin continued.
- **High wcc** may be seen in the absence of infection.
- **Infection:** often there is no fever. Do MSU, blood cultures, and CXR. Start broad-spectrum antibiotics (eg co-amoxiclav, p378) early if infection is suspected.
- **Creatinine:** some assays for creatinine cross-react with ketone bodies, so plasma creatinine may not reflect true renal function.
- **Hyponatraemia** is common, due to osmolar compensation for the hyperglycaemia. \uparrow or \leftrightarrow $[\text{Na}^+]$ indicates severe water loss. As treatment commences Na^+ rises as water enters cells. Na^+ is also low due to an artefact; corrected plasma $[\text{Na}^+] = \text{Na}^+ + 2.4[(\text{glucose} - 5.5)/5.5]$.
- **Ketonuria** does not equate with ketoacidosis. Anyone may have up to ++ketonuria after an overnight fast. Not all ketones are due to diabetes—consider alcohol if glucose normal. Always check venous blood ketones.
- **Recurrent ketoacidosis:** blood glucose may return to normal long before ketones are removed from the blood, and a rapid reduction in the amount of insulin administered may lead to lack of clearance and return to DKA. This may be avoided by maintaining a constant rate of insulin, eg 4–5U/h IVI, and co-infusing glucose 10–20% to keep plasma glucose at 6–10mmol/L—the extended insulin regimen.
- **Acidosis** but without gross elevation of glucose may occur, but consider overdose (eg aspirin) and lactic acidosis (in elderly diabetics).
- **Serum amylase** is often raised (up to $\times 10$) and non-specific abdominal pain is common, even in the absence of pancreatitis.

Complications ▶ Cerebral oedema (get help if sudden CNS decline), aspiration pneumonia, hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypophosphataemia, thromboembolism.

▶ Talk with the patient: ensure there are no further preventable episodes.



Management plan for diabetic ketoacidosis

ABC approach, 2 large-bore cannulae

If SBP <90mmHg give 500mL bolus saline, if no response give a second bolus and get ICU advice. If SBP >90 or response to first bolus, start fluids as below.

Tests: As per p842, venous blood gas (VBG) for pH, bicarbonate and lab glucose, ketones, U&Es (for K⁺ and Na⁺) as minimum

Insulin add 50u actrapid to 50mL 0.9% saline. Infuse continuously at 0.1u/kg/h. Only give a stat dose if there is a delay in starting the infusion. Continue the patient's long-acting insulins.

Aim for a fall in blood ketones of 0.5mmol/L/h, or a rise in venous bicarbonate of 3mmol/L/h with a fall in glucose of 3mmol/L/h. If not achieving this, increase insulin infusion by 1u/h until target rates achieved.

Check VBG for pH, bicarb, glucose and K⁺ at 1h, 2h and 2hrly thereafter

Assess need for K⁺ replacement (see below)

Consider catheter if not passed urine by 1h, aim for urine output 0.5ml/kg/h. Consider NG tube if vomiting or drowsy. Start all patients on low molecular weight heparin

Avoid hypoglycaemia! When glucose <14mmol/L start 10% glucose at 125mL/h to run alongside saline and prevent hypoglycaemia

Continue fixed-rate insulin until ketones <0.3mmol/L, venous pH >7.3 and venous bicarb >18mmol/L. Do not rely on urinary ketones to indicate resolution—they stay positive after DKA resolved. Find and treat infection/cause for DKA.

Fig 1. Management plan for diabetic ketoacidosis.

Fluid replacement

- 0.9% saline is the replacement fluid of choice.
- Typical fluid deficit is 100mL/kg, so for an average 70kg man = 7 litres.
- In this example, give 1L in 1st hour, 1L over 2 hours, 1L over 2 hours, 1L over 4 hours, 1L over 4 hours, 1L over 6 hours. Always reassess at 12 hours.
- Be more cautious with fluids if young adult, elderly, pregnant, comorbidities.
- Bicarbonate may increase risk of cerebral oedema and is not recommended.

Potassium replacement

- Typical deficit = 3–5mmol/kg, plasma K⁺ falls with treatment as K⁺ enters cells.
- Don't add K⁺ to the 1st bag. Monitor uo hourly; start adding K⁺ when >30mL/h.
- Check U&E hourly initially, and replace as required:

Serum K ⁺ (mmol/L)	Amount of KCl to add per litre of iv fluid
>5.5	Nil
3.5–5.5	40mmol
<3.5	Seek help from HDU/ICU re higher doses

Less will be needed in renal failure or oliguria.

Other emergencies: Hyperosmolar non-ketotic coma and hypoglycaemia: p844.



Hypoglycaemic coma Usually *rapid* onset; may be preceded by odd behaviour (eg aggression), sweating, pulse \uparrow , seizures. **Management:** \blacktriangleright Give 20–30g glucose IV, eg 200–300mL of 10% dextrose. This is preferable to 50–100mL 50% glucose which harms veins. Expect prompt recovery. Glucagon 1mg IV/IM is nearly as rapid as dextrose but will not work in drunk patients. Dextrose IVI may be needed for severe prolonged hypoglycaemia. Once conscious, give sugary drinks and a meal.

Hyperglycaemic hyperosmolar non-ketotic (HONK) coma Typically those with type 2 DM are at risk of this.⁴⁴ The history is longer (eg 1wk), with marked dehydration and glucose >35 mmol/L. Acidosis is absent as there is no switch to ketone metabolism. Osmolality (p842) is >340 mosmol/kg. \blacktriangleright *Occlusive events are a danger* (focal CNS signs, chorea, DIC, leg ischaemia/rhabdomyolysis⁴⁵), DVT—give LMWH prophylaxis to all unless contraindication (p344).^{46,47} Rehydrate slowly with 0.9% saline IVI over 48h, typical deficits are 110–220mL/kg, ie 8–15L for a 70kg adult. Replace K⁺ when urine starts to flow (see DKA box, p843). Only use insulin if blood glucose not falling by 5mmol/L/h with rehydration or if ketonaemia—start slowly 0.05u/kg/h. Keep blood glucose at least 10–15mmol/L for first 24 hours to avoid cerebral oedema.⁴⁸ Look for the cause, eg MI, drugs, or bowel infarct.

Lactic acidosis is a rare but serious complication of DM with metformin use or septicaemia. Blood lactate: >5 mmol/L. Seek expert help. Treat sepsis vigorously, maintain blood pressure and hence tissue perfusion. Stop metformin.

Thyroid emergencies

Myxoedema coma The ultimate hypothyroid state before death.

Signs and symptoms: Looks hypothyroid (p212, p213, **fig 1**); often >65 yrs; hypothermia; hyporeflexia; glucose \downarrow ; bradycardia; coma; seizures. May have had radioiodine, thyroidectomy, or pituitary surgery (signs of hypopituitarism, p224). Patient may have seemed psychotic (myxoedema madness)⁴⁹ just before the coma (eg precipitated by infection, MI, stroke, or trauma).

Examination: Goitre; cyanosis; BP \downarrow (cardiogenic); heart failure; signs of precipitants.

Treatment: Preferably on ICU.

- Blood for: T3, T4, TSH, FBC, U&E (Na⁺ often \downarrow), cultures, cortisol, glucose.
- ABG for P_aO₂. High-flow O₂ if cyanosed. Ventilation may be needed.
- Correct any hypoglycaemia.
- Give T3 (liothyronine) 5–20 μ g/12h IV slowly. Be cautious: you may precipitate manifestations of ischaemic heart disease. Alternative regimens involve levothyroxine.⁵⁰
- Give hydrocortisone 100mg/8h IV—vital if pituitary hypothyroidism is suspected (ie no goitre, no previous radioiodine, and no previous thyroid surgery).
- If infection suspected, give antibiotic, eg cefuroxime 1.5g/8h IVI.
- Caution with fluid, rehydrate as needed but watch for cardiac dysfunction, BP may not respond to fluid and inotropes may be needed.⁵¹
- Active warming (blankets, fluids) may be needed for *hypothermia*. Beware complications (hypoglycaemia, pancreatitis, arrhythmias). See p860.

Further Rx: T3 5–20 μ g/4–12h IV until sustained improvement (\sim 2–3d) then levothyroxine 50 μ g/24h PO. Hydrocortisone + IV fluids as needed (hyponatraemia is dilutional).

Hyperthyroid crisis (thyrotoxic storm) **Sign and symptoms:** σ : σ \approx 4:1. Severe hyperthyroidism also see p210: T⁺, agitation, confusion, coma, tachycardia, AF, D&V, goitre, thyroid bruit, acute abdomen (exclude surgical causes), heart failure, cardiovascular collapse.⁵²

Precipitants: Recent thyroid surgery or radioiodine; infection; MI; trauma.

Diagnosis: Do not wait for test results if urgent treatment is needed. Do TSH, free T4 and free T3. Confirm with technetium uptake if possible.

Treatment: Ask an endocrinologist. **Grand strategy:** 1 Counteract peripheral effects of thyroid hormones. 2 Inhibit thyroid hormone synthesis. 3 Treat systemic complications. See **fig 1** for how to put this into effect.⁵³ If you are not making headway in 24h, consider thyroidectomy if you can find a good anaesthetist and surgeon.^{54,55}



Management plan for thyrotoxic storm

IV access, fluids if dehydrated. NG tube if vomiting.

Take blood for: T3, T4, TSH, cultures (if infection suspected).

Sedate if necessary (eg chlorpromazine 50mg PO/IM). Monitor BP.

If no contraindication, and cardiac output OK, give propranolol 40mg/8h PO; max IV dose: 1mg over 1min; may need repeating. In asthma/poor cardiac output, propranolol has caused cardiac arrest in thyroid storm, so ultra-short-acting β -blockers have a role, eg IV esmolol. Consider diltiazem if β -blockers contraindicated. ►Get help.

High-dose digoxin may be needed to slow the heart, but ensure adequately β blocked, give with cardiac monitoring.

Antithyroid drugs: carbimazole 15–25mg/6h PO (or via NGT); after 4h give Lugol's solution (aqueous iodine oral solution) 0.3mL/8h PO well diluted in water for 7–10 days to block thyroid.

Hydrocortisone 100mg/6h IV or dexamethasone 4mg/8h PO to prevent peripheral conversion T4 to T3.

Treat suspected infection, eg with co-amoxiclav 1.2g/8h IV.

Adjust IV fluids as necessary; cool with tepid sponging \pm paracetamol.

Continuing treatment: After 5d reduce carbimazole to 15mg/8h PO. After 10d stop propranolol and iodine. Adjust carbimazole (p210).

Fig 1. Management plan for thyrotoxic storm.



Signs and symptoms Patients may present in shock (pulses; vasoconstriction; postural hypotension; oliguria; weak; confused; comatose)—often (but not always!) in a patient with known Addison's (eg when oral steroid has not been increased to cover stress such as pneumonia), or someone on long-term steroids who has forgotten their tablets. Remember bilateral adrenal haemorrhage (eg meningococcaemia) as a cause. An alternative presentation is with hypoglycaemia.

Precipitating factors Infection, trauma, surgery, missed medication.

Management If suspected, treat before biochemical results.

- Bloods for cortisol and ACTH (this needs to go straight to laboratory, call ahead!), U&Es—can have high K^+ (check ECG and give calcium gluconate if needed, see p849) and low Na^+ (salt depletion, should resolve with rehydration and steroids).
- Hydrocortisone 100mg IV stat.
- IV fluid bolus, crystalloid or colloid to support BP.
- Monitor blood glucose: the danger is hypoglycaemia.
- Blood, urine, sputum for culture, then antibiotics if concern about infection.

Continuing treatment

- Glucose IV may be needed if hypoglycaemic.
- Give IV fluids as guided by clinical state and to correct U&E imbalance.
- Continue hydrocortisone, eg 100mg/8h IV or IM.
- Change to oral steroids after 72h if patient's condition good. The tetracosactrin (=tetracosactide) test is impossible while on hydrocortisone.
- Fludrocortisone may well be needed if the cause is adrenal disease: ask an expert.
- Search for (and vigorously treat) the underlying cause. Get endocrinological help.

Hypopituitary coma

Think of decompensated chronic hypophyseal failure whenever hypothermia, refractory hypotension \pm septic signs *without* fever occur with short stature or loss of axillary/pubis hair \pm gonadal atrophy.⁵⁶ ▶ Waiting for lab confirmation may be fatal. It *usually* develops gradually in a person with known hypopituitarism. If rapid onset due to pituitary infarction (eg postpartum Sheehan's, p224), subarachnoid haemorrhage is often misdiagnosed as symptoms include headache and meningism.

Presentation Headache; ophthalmoplegia; consciousness↓; hypotension; hypothermia; hypoglycaemia; signs of hypopituitarism (p224).

Tests Cortisol; T4; TSH; ACTH; glucose. Pituitary fossa CT/MRI.

Treatment ▶ Hydrocortisone, eg 100mg IV/6h.

- Only after hydrocortisone begun: liothyronine (L-tri-iodothyronine sodium), eg 10µg/12h PO or by slow IV: 5–20µg/12h (4-hourly may be needed).
- Prompt surgery is needed if the cause is pituitary apoplexy (p226).



Phaeochromocytoma emergencies

Patients with phaeochromocytoma may have had undiagnosed symptoms for some time, but stress, abdominal palpation, parturition, general anaesthetic, or contrast media used in imaging¹ can cause acute *hypertensive crises*.

Signs and symptoms Pallor, pulsating headache, hypertension, feels 'about to die', pyrexial. *ECG*: signs of LVF, \uparrow ST segment, VT and cardiogenic shock.⁵⁷

Treatment ▶ Get help. Take to ICU.

Principle is combined α and β blockade, but α must be started first, as unopposed β blockade can worsen hypertension.

- Start with short-acting, IV α -blocker, eg phentolamine 2-5mg IV.⁵⁸ Repeat to maintain safe BP.
- When BP controlled, give long-acting α -blocker, eg phenoxybenzamine 10mg/24h PO (increase by 10mg/d as needed, up to 30mg/12h PO); SE: postural hypotension; dizziness; tachycardia; nasal congestion; miosis; idiosyncratic marked BP drop after 1st dose. The idea is to \uparrow the dose until BP is controlled and there is no significant postural hypotension. Alternative α_1 -selective blockers, eg doxazosin, are preferred in some centres, particularly if surgery is not an option, eg metastatic tumour.
- A β_1 -blocker may also be given at this stage to control any tachycardia or myocardial ischaemia/dysrhythmias (p108).
- Surgery is usually done electively after 4-6wks to allow full α -blockade and volume expansion. When admitted for surgery the phenoxybenzamine dose is increased until significant postural hypotension.

1 NB: low-osmolarity IV contrast may be OK.⁵⁹



- ▶ Seek expert help promptly.

Acute kidney injury is a common problem in emergency admissions, and anyone arriving with sepsis, acute fluid losses or dehydration, hypotension or oliguria is at risk. See p290–293 for comprehensive assessment and management, this emergency information covers the first few hours of admission.

Symptoms and signs May be none, or fatigue, malaise, rash, joint pains, nausea/vomiting, chest pain, palpitations, shortness of breath, fluid overload, abdominal pain, oliguria, hypo- or hypertension.

Investigations

- Urgent ABG/VBG for K^+
- **ECG** for hyperkalaemic changes (see ECG, p 689)
- **Bloods:** U&Es, Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , FBC, ESR, CRP, clotting, LFTs, CK in all. Consider 'renal screen': protein electrophoresis, hepatitis serology, autoantibodies (ANCA, ANA, anti-GBM), complement, ASOT, rheumatoid factor, cryoglobulins.
- **Urine:** dipstick, send for microscopy, culture, albumin/creatinine ratio
- USS
- CXR

Causes

- **Pre-renal:** hypotension of any cause, eg sepsis, hypovolaemia, cardiac dysfunction
- **Renal:** drugs, glomerulonephritis, vasculitis (p558)
- **Post-renal:** obstruction (p642), eg prostatic, stones (usually very painful)

Principles of treatment

See fig 1

- Treat life-threatening hyperkalaemia
- Treat hypotension, sepsis or other pre-renal cause
- Catheterize to try to treat any post-renal component
- Treat pulmonary oedema with IV diuretics
- Contact renal team early if no urine output following catheterization and correction of hypotension, particularly if hyperkalaemia, pulmonary oedema or signs of uraemic pericarditis (extremely rare) (p148)
- Urgent USS to rule out obstruction above the level of the bladder (ie not corrected with catheterization)
- Consider whether patient needs transfer to ICU (especially if more than one organ dysfunction, eg AKI in association with sepsis from pneumonia—may need ventilatory and inotropic support as well as renal support)

Contact renal team for urgent dialysis if:

- ▶▶ Hyperkalaemia unresponsive to medical treatment or in an oliguric patient
- ▶▶ Pulmonary oedema unresponsive to medical treatment
- ▶▶ Uraemic complications such as pericarditis, encephalopathy
- ▶▶ Severe metabolic acidosis (pH <7.2 or base excess below -10)



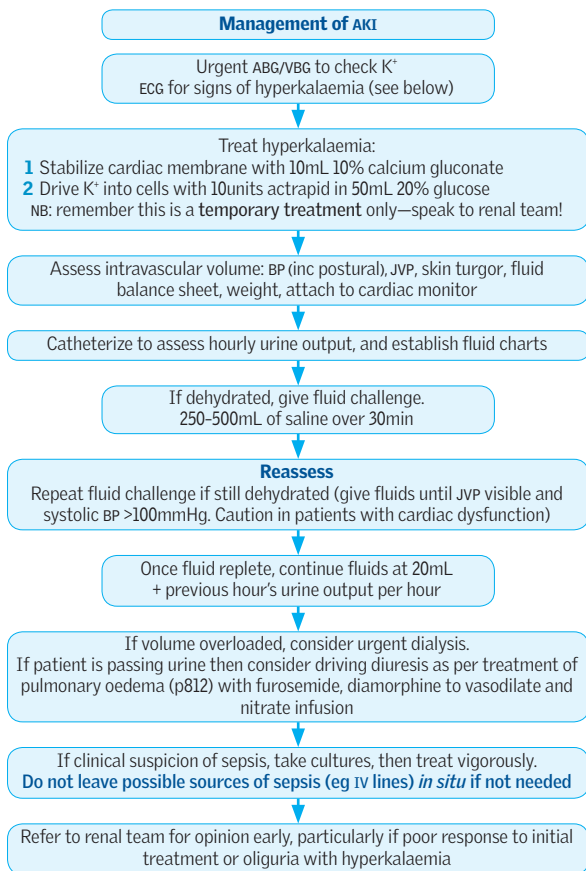


Fig 1. Management of AKI.

Hyperkalaemia

The danger is ventricular fibrillation. $K^+ > 7.0 \text{ mmol/L}$ requires urgent treatment, as does $K^+ > 6 \text{ mmol/L}$ or potentially lower values if there are ECG changes:

- Tall 'tented' T waves \pm flat P waves \pm increased PR interval (p. 688, ECG p. 689).
- Widening of the QRS complex—leading eventually, and dangerously, to a sinusoidal pattern and VF/VT.



Diagnosis Mainly from the history. The patient may not tell the truth about what has been taken. If there are any tablets with the patient, use *MIMS Colour Index*, *eMIMS* images, *BNF* descriptions, or the computerized system 'TICTAC' (ask pharmacy) to identify tablets and plan specific treatment.

TOXBASE is the best resource for managing acute poisoning: www.toxbase.org—check with your Emergency Department about log-in details for your hospital.⁷¹

Clues may become apparent from examination:

- **Fast or irregular pulse:** Salbutamol, antimuscarinics, tricyclics, quinine, or phenothiazine poisoning.
- **Respiratory depression:** Opiate (p854) or benzodiazepine (p855) toxicity.
- **Hypothermia:** Phenothiazines (p855), barbiturates.
- **Hyperthermia:** Amphetamines, MAOIs, cocaine, or ecstasy (p855).
- **Coma:** Benzodiazepines, alcohol, opiates, tricyclics, or barbiturates.
- **Seizures:** Recreational drugs, hypoglycaemic agents, tricyclics, phenothiazines, or theophyllines.
- **Constricted pupils:** Opiates (p854) or insecticides (organophosphates, p855).
- **Dilated pupils:** Amphetamines, cocaine, quinine, or tricyclics.
- **Hyperglycaemia:** Organophosphates, theophyllines, or MAOIs.
- **Hypoglycaemia:** (p844) Insulin, oral hypoglycaemics, alcohol, or salicylates.
- **Renal impairment:** Salicylate (p856), paracetamol (p856), or ethylene glycol.
- **Metabolic acidosis:** Alcohol, ethylene glycol, methanol, paracetamol, or carbon monoxide poisoning—p854.
- **↑Osmolality:** Alcohols (ethyl or methyl); ethylene glycol. See p682.

Management See **fig 1** for a general guide to management.

- **Take blood** as appropriate (p852). Always check paracetamol and salicylate levels.
- **Empty stomach** if appropriate (p852).
- **Consider specific antidote** (p854) or oral activated charcoal (p852).
- **If you are not familiar with the poison** get more information. *Toxbase* (www.toxbase.org) should be your first thought. If no information here or in doubt how best to act, phone the Poisons Information Service: in the UK phone 0844 892 0111.

Continuing care Measure temperature, pulse, BP, and blood glucose regularly. Keep on cardiac monitor. If unconscious, nurse semi-prone, turn regularly. Catheterize if the bladder is distended, or acute kidney injury (p848) is suspected, or forced diuresis undertaken. Consider ICU, eg if respiration↓.

Psychiatric assessment Be sympathetic despite the hour! Interview relatives and friends if possible. Aim to establish:

- **Intentions at time:** Was this a suicide attempt, if so was the act planned? What precautions against being found? Did the patient seek help afterwards? Does the patient think the method was dangerous? Was there a final act (eg suicide note)?
- **Present intentions.** Do they still feel suicidal? Do they wish it had worked?
- **What problems** led to the act: do they still exist?
- Is there a **psychiatric disorder** (depression, alcoholism, personality disorder, schizophrenia, dementia)?
- What are the patient's **resources** (friends, family, work, personality)?

The assessment of suicide risk: The following increase the chance of future suicide: original intention was to die; present intention is to die; presence of psychiatric disorder; poor resources; previous suicide attempts; socially isolated; unemployed; male; >50yrs old. See *OHCS* p338. There is an increased risk of death in the first year following initial presentation.

Referral to psychiatrist: This depends partly on local resources. Refer all with presence of psychiatric disorder or high suicide risk. Consider discussing all presentations with deliberate self-poisoning.

Mental Capacity Act or the Mental Health Act: (in England and Wales) may provide for the detention of the patient against his or her will: see *OHCS* p400.



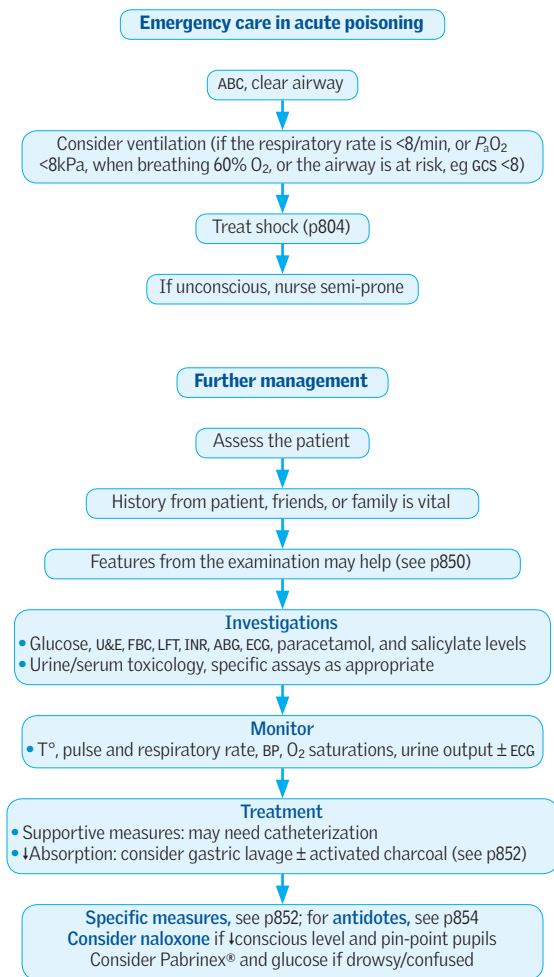


Fig 1. Emergency care in acute poisoning.



Plasma toxicology For all unconscious patients, paracetamol and aspirin levels and blood glucose are required. The necessity of other assays depends on the drug taken and the index of suspicion. Be guided by the Poisons Information Service. More common assays include: digoxin; methanol; lithium; iron; theophylline. Toxicological screening of urine, especially for recreational drugs, may be of use in some cases (although not always, see BOX p853).

GI decontamination: recommended for many drugs. The treatment of choice is now activated charcoal rather than gastric lavage. If in doubt, consult Toxbase or Poisons Information Service.

Activated charcoal reduces the absorption of many drugs from the gut when given as a single dose of 50g with water, eg salicylates, paracetamol. It is given in repeated doses (50g/4h) to increase elimination of some drugs from the blood, eg carbamazepine, dapsone, theophyllines, quinine, phenobarbital, and paraquat. Lower doses are used in children. Do not use with petroleum products, corrosives, alcohols, clofentanone, malathion or metal salts (eg iron, lithium).

Gastric lavage Rarely used. Lavage after 30–60min may make matters worse. ► *Do not empty stomach* if petroleum products or corrosives such as acids, alkalis, bleach, descalers have been ingested (*exception:* paraquat), or if the patient is unconscious or unable to protect their airway (unless intubated). ► Never induce vomiting.

Gastric emptying and lavage NB: we do not recommend gastric lavage is attempted unless specifically suggested by toxbase or poisons information service. If comatose, or no gag reflex, ask for an anaesthetist to protect airway with cuffed endotracheal tube. If conscious, get verbal consent.

- Monitor O₂ by pulse oximetry. See p156.
- Have suction apparatus to hand and working.
- Position the patient in left lateral position.
- Raise the foot of the bed by 20cm.
- Pass a lubricated tube (14mm external diameter) via the mouth, asking the patient to swallow.
- Confirm position in stomach (see page 773).
- Siphon the gastric contents. Check pH with litmus paper.
- Perform gastric lavage using 300–600mL tepid water at a time. Massage the left hypochondrium then siphon fluid.
- Repeat until no tablets in siphoned fluid.
- Leave activated charcoal (50g in 200mL water) in the stomach unless alcohol, iron, Li⁺, or ethylene glycol ingested.
- When pulling out tube, occlude its end (prevents aspiration of fluid remaining in the tube).

Haemodialysis This may be needed for poisoning from ethylene glycol, lithium, methanol, phenobarbital, salicylates, and sodium valproate.



Legal highs

Increasingly 'designer' drugs, which can be legal to buy, are leading to acute poisoning and complications requiring admission. These drugs pose a difficult problem for the admitting physician, as the chemical make-up and mechanisms of action are often unclear. Although many are legal, they can be as deadly as many well-known recreational drugs, leading to deaths^{60,61} and life-threatening complications such as rhabdomyolysis.⁶² Be aware that these drugs are out there, and ask specifically about legal highs when taking a history, as there are often no screening tools for these drugs.



Benzodiazepines Flumazenil (for respiratory arrest) 200µg over 15s; then 100µg at 60s intervals if needed. Usual dose range: 300–600µg IV over 3–6min (up to 1mg; 2mg if on ICU). May provoke fits. Use only after expert advice.

β-blockers Severe bradycardia or hypotension. Try atropine up to 3mg IV. Give glucagon 2–10mg IV bolus + 5% glucose if atropine fails then infusion of 50µg/kg/h. Also consider including phosphodiesterase inhibitor infusions (eg enoximone 5–20µg/kg/min). If unresponsive, consider pacing.

Cyanide This fast-killing poison has affinity for Fe^{3+} , and inhibits the cytochrome system, aerobic respiration (therefore patients are acidotic with raised lactate). Depending on degree of poisoning presentation can be:

- **Mild** Dizziness, anxiety, tachycardia, nausea, drowsiness/confusion
- **Moderate** Vomiting, reduced consciousness, convulsions, cyanosis
- **Severe** Deep coma, fixed unreactive pupils, cardiorespiratory failure, arrhythmias, pulmonary oedema

Treatment: ►► 100% O_2 , GI decontamination. If mild, supportive care is usually sufficient. If moderate/severe then specific treatment to bind cyanide is required. Give sodium nitrite/sodium thiosulfate, or dicobalt edetate 300mg IV over 1min, then 50mL 50% glucose IV (repeat once if no response after a minute); or hydroxocobalamin (Cyanokit®) 5g over 15min repeated once if required. *Get expert help.* See p859.

Carbon monoxide Despite hypoxaemia skin is pink (or pale), not blue, as carboxyhaemoglobin (COHb) displaces O_2 from Hb binding sites. For the same reasons SpO_2 from a pulse oximeter may be normal. Check ABG in a co-oximeter (ie ensure it measures haemoglobin, SaO_2 , Meth-Hb and COHb) which will show low SaO_2 and high COHb (normal <5%). **Symptoms:** Headache, vomiting, pulset, tachypnoea, and, if COHb >50%, fits, coma, and cardiac arrest.

Treatment ►► Remove the source. Give 100% O_2 until COHb <10%. Metabolic acidosis usually responds to correction of hypoxia. If severe, anticipate cerebral oedema and give mannitol IVI (p841). Confirm diagnosis with an ABG quickly as levels may soon return to normal. Monitor ECG. If COHb >20%, patient has neurological or psychological features, or cardiovascular impairment, fails to respond to treatment, or is pregnant consider hyperbaric O_2 : discuss with the poisons service.

Digoxin Symptoms: Cognition↓, yellow-green visual halos, arrhythmias, nausea, and anorexia. If serious arrhythmias are present, correct hypokalaemia, and inactivate with digoxin-specific antibody fragments (DigiFab®). If load or level is unknown, give 20 vials (800mg)—adult or child >20kg. Consult Compendium/SPC (p850). If the amount of digoxin ingested is known, the SPC will tell you how much DigiFab® to give.

Heavy metals Enlist expert help.

Iron Desferrioxamine 15mg/kg/h IVI; max 80mg/kg/d. NB: gastric lavage if iron ingestion in last hour; consider whole bowel irrigation.

Oral anticoagulants If major bleed, treat with vitamin K, 5mg slow IV; give prothrombin complex concentrate 50U/kg IV (or if unavailable, fresh frozen plasma 15mL/kg IVI). For abnormal INR with no (or minimal) bleeding, see BNF. If it is vital that anticoagulation continues, enlist expert help. Discuss with haematology. NB: coagulation defects may be delayed for 2–3d following ingestion.

Opiates (Many analgesics contain opiates.) Give naloxone, eg 0.4–2mg IV; repeat every 2min until breathing is adequate (it has a short $t_{1/2}$, so it may need to be given often or IM; max ~10mg). Naloxone may precipitate features of opiate withdrawal—diarrhoea and cramps, which will normally respond to diphenoxylate and atropine (Lomotil®—eg 2 tablets/6h PO). Sedate as needed (see p11). High-dose opiate misusers may need methadone (eg 10–30mg/12h PO) to combat withdrawal. Register opiate addiction (OHCS p362), and refer for help.



Phenothiazine poisoning (eg chlorpromazine) No specific antidote. *Dystonia* (*torticollis*, *retrocollis*, *glossopharyngeal dystonia*, *opisthotonus*): try procyclidine, eg 5–10mg IM or IV. Treat shock by raising the legs (\pm plasma expander IVI, or inotropes if desperate). Restore body temperature. *Monitor ECG*. Avoid lidocaine in dysrhythmias. Use lorazepam IV for prolonged fits in the usual way (p836). *Neuroleptic malignant syndrome* consists of: hyperthermia, rigidity, extrapyramidal signs, autonomic dysfunction (labile BP, pulse, sweating, urinary incontinence), mutism, confusion, coma, wcct, ckt; it may be treated with cooling. Dantrolene 1–2.5mg/kg IV (p574) (max 10mg/kg/day) can help, bromocriptine and amantadine are alternatives.

Carbon tetrachloride poisoning This solvent, used in many industrial processes, causes vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, seizures, coma, renal failure, and tender hepatomegaly with jaundice and liver failure. IV N-acetylcysteine may improve prognosis. Seek expert help.

Organophosphate insecticides inactivate cholinesterase—the resulting increase in acetylcholine causes the **SLUD** response: **s**alivation, **l**acrimation, **u**rination, and **d**iarrhoea. Also look for sweating, small pupils, muscle fasciculation, coma, respiratory distress, and bradycardia. *Treatment*: Wear gloves; remove soiled clothes. Wash skin. Take blood (FBC and serum cholinesterase activity). Give atropine IV 2mg every 10min till full atropinization (skin dry, pulse >70 , pupils dilated). Up to 3 days' treatment may be needed. Also give pralidoxime 30mg/kg IVI over 20min, then 8mg/kg/h, max 12g in 24h. See Toxbase.¹ Even if fits are not occurring, diazepam 5–10mg IV slowly seems to help.

Paraquat poisoning (Found in weed-killers.) This causes D&V, painful oral ulcers, alveolitis, and renal failure. Diagnose by urine test. Give activated charcoal at once (100g followed by a laxative, then 50g/3–4h). ► *Get expert help*. Avoid O₂ early on (promotes lung damage).

Ecstasy poisoning Ecstasy is a semi-synthetic, hallucinogenic substance (MDMA, 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine). Its effects range from nausea, muscle pain, blurred vision, amnesia, fever, confusion, and ataxia to tachyarrhythmias, hyperthermia, hyper/hypotension, water intoxication, DIC, K⁺, acute kidney injury (AKI), hepatocellular and muscle necrosis, cardiovascular collapse, and ARDS. There is no antidote and treatment is supportive. Management depends on clinical and lab findings, but may include:

- Administration of activated charcoal and monitoring of BP, ECG, and temperature for at least 12h (rapid cooling may be needed).
- Monitor urine output and U&E (AKI 292, p848–849), LFT, CK, FBC, and coagulation (DIC p346). Metabolic acidosis may benefit from treatment with bicarbonate.
- Anxiety: diazepam 0.1–0.3mg/kg PO. IV dose: p836.
- Narrow complex tachycardias (p818) in adults: consider metoprolol 5mg IV.
- Hypertension can be treated with nifedipine 5–10mg PO or phentolamine 2–5mg IV. Treat hypotension conventionally (p804).
- Hyperthermia: attempt to cool, if rectal T° $>39^{\circ}\text{C}$ consider dantrolene 1mg/kg IV (may need repeating: discuss with your senior and a poisons unit, below). Hyperthermia with ecstasy is akin to serotonin syndrome, and propranolol, muscle relaxation and ventilation may be needed.

Snakes (adders) Anaphylaxis p806. *Signs of envenoming*: BP↓ (vasodilatation, viper cardiotoxicity); D&V; swelling spreading proximally within 4h of bite; bleeding gums or venepuncture sites; anaphylaxis; ptosis; trismus; rhabdomyolysis; pulmonary oedema. *Tests*: wcct; clotting↓; platelets↓; U&E; urine RBCT; ckt; P_aO₂↓, ECG. *Management*: Avoid active movement of affected limb (so use splints/slings). *Avoid incisions and tourniquets*. ► *Get help from local/national poisons service*. Is antivenom indicated (IgG from venom-immunized sheep)?—eg 10mL IV over 15min (adults and children) of *European Viper Antiserum* (from Monvato) for adder bites (see BNF); —20mL if severe envenoming have adrenaline to hand—p806. Monitor ECG. For foreign snakes, see BNF.

Aspirin is a weak acid with poor water solubility. It is present in many over-the-counter preparations. Uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation leads to anaerobic metabolism and the production of lactate and heat. Effects are dose-related and potentially fatal: •150mg/kg: mild toxicity •250mg/kg: moderate •>500mg/kg: severe toxicity. Levels over 700mg/L are potentially fatal.

Signs and symptoms Unlike paracetamol, there are many early features:

- Vomiting, dehydration, hyperventilation, tinnitus, vertigo, sweating.
 - Rarely ↓GCS, seizures, ↓BP and heart block, pulmonary oedema, hyperthermia.
- Patients present initially with respiratory alkalosis due to a direct stimulation of the central respiratory centres and then develop a metabolic acidosis. Hyper- or hypoglycaemia may occur.

Management General: p850–p851. Correct dehydration. Keep patient on ECG monitor. Give activated charcoal to all presenting ≤ 1 h—consider even if delayed presentation, slow release formulations or bezoar formation (can delay absorption): at least one dose of 1g/kg (max 50g). Consider repeat doses (2 further doses of 50g, 4h apart).

- 1 Bloods:** Paracetamol and salicylate level, glucose, U&E, LFT, INR, ABG, HCO_3^- , FBC. Salicylate level may need to be repeated after 2h, due to continuing absorption if a potentially toxic dose has been taken. Monitor blood glucose 1–2hrly, beware hypoglycaemia, if severe poisoning, monitor salicylate levels, serum pH and U&E.
- 2 Urine:** Check pH, consider catheterization to monitor output and pH.
- 3 Correct acidosis:** If plasma salicylate level $>500\text{mg/L}$ (3.6mmol/L) or severe metabolic acidosis, consider alkalinization of the urine, eg with 1.5L 1.26% sodium bicarbonate IV over 3h. Aim for urine pH 7.5–8. NB: monitor serum K^+ as hypokalaemia may occur, and should be treated (caution if acute kidney injury—AKI).
- 4 Dialysis** may well be needed if salicylate level $>700\text{mg/L}$, and if AKI or heart failure, pulmonary or cerebral oedema, confusion or seizures, severe acidosis despite best medical therapy, or persistently ↑plasma salicylate. Contact nephrology early.
- 5** Discuss any serious cases with the local toxicological service or national poisons information service.

Paracetamol poisoning

150mg/kg,¹ or 12g in adults may be fatal (75mg/kg if malnourished). However, prompt treatment can prevent liver failure and death. ▶1 tablet of paracetamol = 500mg.

Signs and symptoms None initially, or vomiting \pm RUQ pain. Later: jaundice and encephalopathy from liver damage (the main danger) \pm acute kidney injury.

Management General measures p850, GI decontamination is recommended in those presenting <4 h after OD. Activated charcoal 1g/kg (max 50g) is the treatment of choice, reducing serum levels more than gastric lavage⁶³ and limiting liver injury.⁶⁴

- Glucose, U&E, LFT, INR, ABG, FBC, HCO_3^- ; blood paracetamol level at 4h post-ingestion.
 - If <10 –12h since overdose, not vomiting, and plasma paracetamol is above the line on the graph (see fig 1), start N-acetylcysteine.
 - If >8 –24h and suspicion of large overdose ($>7.5\text{g}$) err on the side of caution and start N-acetylcysteine, stopping it if level below treatment line and INR/ALT normal.
- N-acetylcysteine** is given by IV: 150mg/kg in 5% dextrose over 15min 1 hour.² Then 50mg/kg in 500mL of 5% dextrose over 4h. Then 100mg/kg/16h in 1L of 5% dextrose. Rash is a common SE: treat with chlorphenamine + observe; do not stop unless anaphylatoid reaction with shock, vomiting, and wheeze (occur $<10\%$). An alternative (if acetylcysteine unavailable) is methionine 2.5g/4h PO for 16h (total: 10g), but absorption is unreliable if vomiting.
- If ingestion time is unknown, or it is staggered, or presentation is >15 h from ingestion, treatment *may* help. ▶Get advice.
 - The graph may mislead if HIV +ve (hepatic glutathione↓), or if long-acting paracetamol has been taken, or if pre-existing liver disease or induction of liver enzymes has occurred. ▶Beware ↓glucose—do BM hourly; INR/12h.



Ongoing management:

- Next day do INR, U&E, LFT. If INR rising, continue N-acetylcysteine until <1.4 .
- If continued deterioration, discuss with the liver team. Don't hesitate to get help

Criteria for referral to specialist liver unit

In 1989 King's College Hospital in London proposed criteria for liver transplantation for fulminant liver failure. These have since been modified,⁶⁵ and these modified criteria probably still have the best predictive value of fulminant hepatic failure in paracetamol overdose. Discuss early with liver unit if:

- Lactate $>3.5\text{mg/dL}$ (0.39mmol/L) 4h after early fluid resuscitation
- pH <7.3 or lactate $>3\text{mg/dL}$ (0.33mmol/L) after full fluid resuscitation at 12h
- INR >2.0 at 24h, >4 at 48h, >6 at 72h (peak elevation 72–96h)
- Creatinine $>300\mu\text{mol/L}$ (3.4mg/dL) at any point
- Grade 3 or 4 hepatic encephalopathy
- Phosphate $>1.2\text{mmol/L}$ (3.75mg/dL) at 48h

Refer all with signs of CNS oedema: BP $>160/90$ (or brief SBP rises $>200\text{mmHg}$), bradycardia, decerebrate posture, extensor spasms, poor pupil responses.

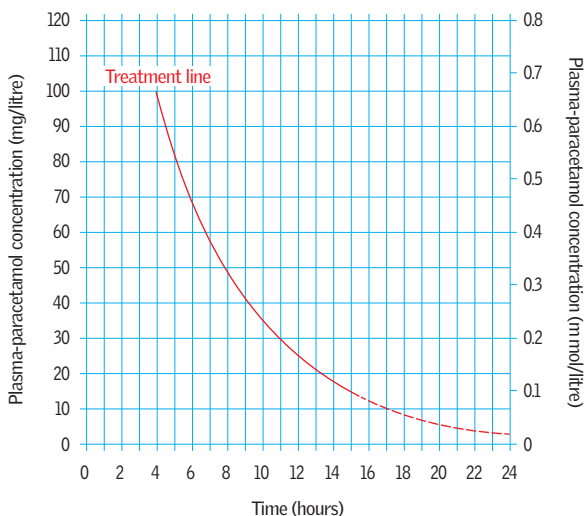


Fig 1. Plasma concentration of paracetamol vs time. If the patient's plasma paracetamol concentration is above the treatment line, overdose occurred <10 – 12 hours ago and there is no vomiting, give N-acetylcysteine by IV infusion. If there is doubt about the timing of the overdose, or ingestion has been 'staggered' over more than 1 hour, give acetylcysteine without waiting for levels. Treatment can be stopped if levels are low.

Reproduced from Drug Safety Update September 2012, vol 6, issue 2: A1 © Crown Copyright 2013.

Resuscitate and arrange transfer for all major burns (>25% partial thickness in adults and >20% in children). Assess site, size, and depth of burn (fig 1, to help calculate fluid requirements). Referral is still warranted in cases of full thickness burns >5%, partial thickness burns >10% in adults or >5% in children or the elderly, burns of special sites, chemical and electrical burns and burns with inhalational injury.

Assessment *Burn size* is important to assess (see fig 1, BOX 2) as it influences the size of the inflammatory response (vasodilatation, increased vascular permeability) and thus fluid shift from the intravascular volume. Ignore erythema. *Burn depth* determines healing time/scarring; assessing this can be hard, even for the experienced. The big distinction is whether the burn is partial thickness (painful, red, and blistered) or full thickness (insensate/painless; grey-white). NB: burns can evolve, particularly over the first 48h.

Resuscitation

- **Airway:** Beware of upper airway obstruction developing if hot gases inhaled. Suspect if history of fire in enclosed space, soot in oral/nasal cavity, singed nasal hairs or hoarse voice. A flexible laryngo/bronchoscopy is useful. Involve anaesthetists early and consider early intubation. Obstruction can develop in the first 24h.
- **Breathing:** Exclude life-threatening chest injuries (eg tension pneumothorax) and constricting burns—consider escharotomy if chest burns are impairing thorax excursion (OHCS p733). Give 100% O₂. Suspect carbon monoxide poisoning (p.854) from history, cherry-red skin and carboxyhaemoglobin level (COHb). With 100% O₂ $\frac{1}{2}$ of COHb falls from 250min to 40min (consider hyperbaric O₂ if: pregnant; CNS signs; >20% COHb). SpO₂ (oximetry) is unreliable in CO poisoning.
- **Circulation:** Partial thickness burns >10% in a child and >15% in adults require IV fluid resuscitation. Put up 2 large-bore (14G or 16G) IV lines. Do not worry if you have to put these through burned skin, intraosseous access is valuable in infants and can be used in adults (see OHCS p236). Secure them well: they are literally lifelines.

Use a *burns calculator* flow chart or a formula, eg: *Parkland formula* (popular): $4 \times \text{weight (kg)} \times \% \text{ burn} = \text{mL Hartmann's solution in 24h, half given in 1st 8h}$. Replace fluid from the time of burn, not from the time first seen in hospital. *Formulae are only guides*: adjust IVI according to clinical response and urine output; aim for 0.5mL/kg/h (1mL/kg/h in children), ~50% more in electrical burns and inhalation injury. Monitor T° (core and surface); catheterize the bladder. Beware of over-resuscitation ('fluid creep') which can lead to complications such as abdominal compartment syndrome.

Treatment 'Cool the burn, warm the patient'. Do *not* apply cold water to extensive burns for long periods: this may intensify shock. Take care with circumferential full thickness burns of the limbs as compartment syndrome may develop rapidly particularly after fluid resuscitation. Decompress (escharotomy and fasciotomy) as needed. If transferring to a burns unit, do not burst blisters or apply any special creams as this can hinder assessment. Simple saline gauze or paraffin gauze is suitable; cling film is useful as a temporary measure and relieves pain. Titrate morphine IV for good analgesia. Ensure tetanus immunity. Antibiotic prophylaxis is not routinely used.

Definitive dressings There are many dressings for partial thickness burns, eg biological (pigskin, cadaveric skin), synthetic (Mepitel®, Duoderm®) and silver sulfadiazine cream alone (Flamazine®) or with cerium nitrate as Flammacerium®; it forms a leathery eschar which resists infection.⁶⁶ Major full thickness burns benefit from early tangential excision and split-skin grafts as the burn is a major source of inflammatory cytokines causing SIRS (systemic inflammatory response syndrome—see p804 for management) and forms a rich medium for bacterial growth.



Smoke inhalation

Consider if:

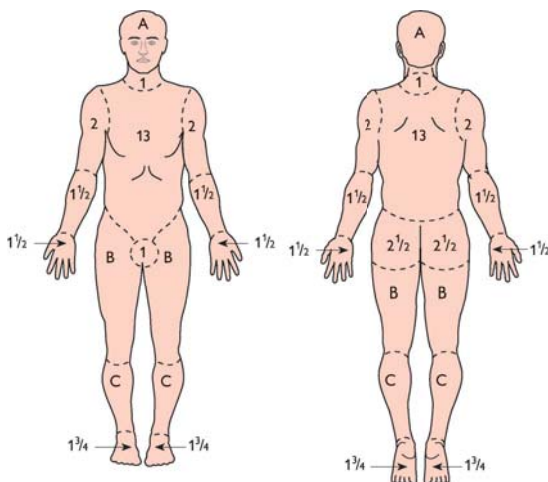
- History of exposure to fire and smoke in an enclosed space
- Burns to face
- Singed nasal hairs
- Hoarseness or change in voice
- Soot in saliva or sputum
- Harsh cough
- Inflamed oropharynx
- Stridor

Initially laryngospasm leads to hypoxia and straining (leading to petechiae), then hypoxic cord relaxation leads to true inhalation injury. Free radicals, cyanide compounds, and carbon monoxide (CO) accompany thermal injury. Cyanide (p.854) compounds (generated, eg, from burning plastics) stop oxidative phosphorylation, causing dizziness, headaches, and seizures. Tachycardia + dyspnoea soon give way to bradycardia + apnoea. CO is generated later in the fire as oxygen is depleted. NB: COHb levels do not correlate well with the severity of poisoning and partly reflect smoking status and urban life. Use nomograms to extrapolate peak levels.

▶▶ 100% O₂ is given to elute both cyanide and CO.

▶▶ Involve ICU/anaesthetists early if any signs of airway obstruction or respiratory failure: early intubation and ventilation may be useful.

▶▶ Enlist expert help in cyanide poisoning—see p854.



Relative percentage of body surface area affected by growth

Area	Age	0	1	5	10	15	Adult
A: half of head		9 1/2	8 1/2	6 1/2	5 1/2	4 1/2	3 1/2
B: half of thigh		2 3/4	3 1/4	4	4 1/4	4 1/2	4 3/4
C: half of leg		2 1/2	2 1/2	2 3/4	3	3 1/4	3 1/2

Fig 1. Lund and Browder charts.¹

1 Accurate but time-consuming compared with the 'rule of nines': arm: 9%; front of trunk 18%; head and neck 9%; leg 18%; back of trunk 18%; perineum 1%. The rule of nines generally over-estimates burn area (better than under-estimating).¹⁷ A modified rule of nines for children: from birth up to 1yr, surface area of head and neck is 18% and each leg is 14%. For each year after, the head loses 1% and each leg gains 0.5%—so adult proportions are reached by age 10yrs.

We thank Professor Tor Chiu for help in preparing this topic.



► *Have a high index of suspicion and a low-reading thermometer.* Most patients are elderly and do not complain, or feel, cold—so they have not tried to warm up. In the young, hypothermia is usually from cold exposure (eg near-drowning), or is secondary to impaired consciousness (eg following excess alcohol or drug overdose).

Definition Hypothermia implies a core (rectal) temperature $<35^{\circ}\text{C}$.

Causes In the elderly, hypothermia is often caused by a combination of factors:

- Impaired homeostatic mechanisms: usually age-related
- Low room temperature: poverty, poor housing
- Impaired thermoregulation: pneumonia, MI, heart failure
- Reduced metabolism: immobility, hypothyroidism, diabetes mellitus
- Autonomic neuropathy (p509); eg diabetes mellitus, Parkinson's
- Excess heat loss: psoriasis and any other widespread dermatological diseases (i.e. TEN/erythrodermic eczema)
- Cold awareness: dementia, confusion
- Increased exposure to cold: falls, especially at night when cold
- Drugs: major tranquillizers, antidepressants, diuretics, alcohol

The patient

- If the patient is shivering then the hypothermia is mild, if they are not shivering despite temp $<35^{\circ}\text{C}$ then the hypothermia is severe
- Symptoms and signs include confusion, agitation, reduced GCS, coma, bradycardia, hypotension and arrhythmias (AF, VT, VF), esp if temp $<30^{\circ}\text{C}$

There are many stories of people 'returning to life' when warmed despite absence of vital signs, see BOX. It is essential to rewarm (see below) and re-examine.

Diagnosis Check oral or axillary T° . If ordinary thermometer shows $<36.5^{\circ}\text{C}$, use a low-reading one PR. Is the rectal temperature $<35^{\circ}\text{C}$? Infra-red ear thermometers can accurately reflect core temperature.

Tests Urgent U&E, plasma glucose, and amylase. Thyroid function tests; FBC; blood cultures. Consider blood gases. The ECG may show J-waves (fig 1).

Treatment Use ABCDE approach (p793)—but don't expose to cold.

- All patients should receive warm, humidified O_2 , ventilate if comatose or respiratory insufficiency.
- Remove wet clothing, *slowly rewarm*, aiming for rise of $\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{h}$ (check rectal temperature, BP, pulse, and respiratory rate every 30min) using blankets or active external warming (hot air duvets). If temp rising too quickly stop and allow to cool slightly. Rapid rewarming causes peripheral vasodilatation and shock. A falling BP can be a sign of too rapid warming.
- Warm IVI.
- Cardiac monitor is essential (AF, VF and VT can occur at any time during rewarming or on stimulation).
- Consider antibiotics for the prevention of pneumonia (p160). Give these routinely in patients over 65yrs with a temperature $<32^{\circ}\text{C}$.
- Consider urinary catheter (to monitor renal function).

NB: in sudden hypothermia from immersion or profound hypothermia with cardiovascular instability/cardiac arrest, the temperature needs to be raised rapidly. Options include warmed fluid lavage (intravesical, nasogastric, intrapleural, intraperitoneal) and intravascular warming (cardiopulmonary bypass, dialysis). In the event of cardiac arrest, defibrillation is usually unsuccessful if the temperature is $<30^{\circ}\text{C}$ (consider amiodarone, bretylium). Resuscitation must continue until the core temp is above 33°C (OHCS p786.)

Complications Arrhythmias (if there is a cardiac arrest continue resuscitating until $T^{\circ} >33^{\circ}\text{C}$, as cold brains are less damaged by hypoxia); pneumonia; pancreatitis; acute kidney injury; disseminated intravascular coagulation. **Prognosis:** Depends on age and degree of hypothermia. If age >70 yrs and $T^{\circ} <32^{\circ}\text{C}$ then mortality $>50\%$.

Before hospital discharge Anticipate problems. Will it happen again? What is their network of support? Review medication (could you stop tranquillizers)? How is progress to be monitored? Liaise with GP/social worker.



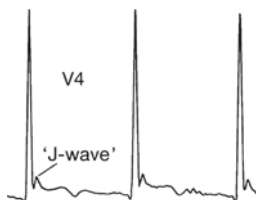


Fig 1. J-wave in hypothermia.

Courtesy of Dr R Luke and Dr E McLachlan.



"I did not die but nothing of life remained..."

Remember that death is a process not an event, and that in hypothermia, *all* processes are suspended, as this chilling quotation from Dante shows. In the last round of the 9th circle of *Hell*, Dante tells how those betraying their benefactors are encased in ice (*canto xxxiv*) 'Com'io divenni allor gelato e fioco...Io non mori e non rimasi vivo—How frozen I then became: I did not die but nothing of life remained'.

Human records: Mitsuaka Uchikoshi appears to have 'hibernated' 🌸 for 24 days on Mount Rokko (core $T^{\circ} \approx 22^{\circ}\text{C}$). Erica Nordy came to life in 2 hours after her heart stopped (core T° : 16°).

Planning All hospitals have a detailed *Major Incident Plan*, but additionally the tasks of key personnel can be distributed on individual *Action Cards*.

At the scene Call the police to notify them of the Major Incident and ask them to take command. They will set up a central command centre to assess and manage the incident, depending on casualty numbers they will inform multiple hospitals of the need to prepare for the imminent arrival of casualties.

Safety is paramount—your own and others. Be visible (luminous monogrammed jacket) and wear protective clothing where appropriate (safety helmet; water-proofs; boots; respirator in chemical environment).

Triage: See *OHCS* p797. There are several commercial systems available to label patients so emergency personnel can see at a glance the scale of the incident. The key is to divide patients by the urgency of care/transfer to hospital:

- 1 Emergency (label **RED** = will die in a few minutes if no treatment)
- 2 Urgent (label **YELLOW** = will die in ~2h if no treatment)
- 3 Non-urgent (label **GREEN** = walking wounded/those who are stable and can wait)
- 4 Deceased (label **BLUE/WHITE**).

Communications are essential; each emergency service will dispatch a control vehicle and will have a designated incident officer for liaison. Support medical staff from hospital report to the medical incident officer (MIO)—he or she is usually the first doctor on the scene. Their job is to assess then communicate to the receiving hospital the number + severity of casualties, to organize resupply of equipment and to replace fatigued staff. The MIO must resist temptation to treat casualties as this compromises their role.

Equipment: Must be portable and include: intubation and cricothyrotomy set; intravenous fluids (colloid); bandages and dressings; chest drain (+flutter valve); amputation kit (when used, ideally 2 doctors should concur); drugs—*analgesic*: morphine; *anaesthetic*: ketamine 2mg/kg IV over >60s (0.5mg/kg is a powerful analgesic without respiratory depression); limb splints (may be inflatable); defibrillator/monitor ± pulse oximeter.

Evacuation: Remember that with immediate treatment on scene, the priority for evacuation may be reduced (eg a tension pneumothorax—**RED**—once relieved can wait for evacuation and becomes **YELLOW**), but those who may suffer by delay at the scene must go first. Send any severed limbs to the same hospital as the patient, ideally chilled—but not frozen.

At the hospital a 'major incident' is declared. The *first receiving* hospital will take most of the casualties; the *support* hospital(s) will cope with overflow and may provide mobile teams so that staff are not depleted from the first hospital. A control room is established and the medical coordinator ensures staff have been summoned and informed of their roles, nominates a triage officer, and supervises the best use of inpatient beds and ICU/theatre resources.



Blast injuries

These may be caused by domestic (eg gas explosion) or industrial (eg mining) accidents, or by terrorist bombs. Death may occur without any obvious external injury. Injury occurs in a number of ways:

- 1 **Blast wave:** A transient (milliseconds) wave of overpressure expands rapidly producing cellular disruption, shearing forces along tissue planes (submucosal/subserosal haemorrhage) and re-expansion of compressed trapped gas—bowel perforation, fatal air embolism.
- 2 **Blast wind:** This can totally disrupt a body or cause avulsive amputations. Bodies can be thrown and sustain injuries on landing.
- 3 **Missiles:** Penetration or laceration from missiles are by far the commonest injuries. Missiles arise from the bomb or are secondary, eg glass.
- 4 **Flash burns:** These are usually superficial and occur on exposed skin.
- 5 **Crush injuries:** Beware sudden death or acute kidney injury from rhabdomyolysis after release.
- 6 **Contamination:** There is increasing concern about the use of biological or radioactive material in terrorist bombs. Even domestic or industrial blasts can scatter chemicals widely and cause both superficial and penetrating contamination. Consider the location and mechanism of the blast, and seek advice.
- 7 **Psychological injury:** Eg post-traumatic stress disorder (*OHCS* p347).

Treatment Approach the same as any major trauma (*OHCS* p724). Rest and observe any suspected of exposure to significant blast but without other injury. Gun-shot injury: see *OHCS* p722. Major blast injuries, whatever the cause, should be reported to the police for investigation, particularly if multiple casualties are involved.



Abbreviations: F indexes a notable figure or image; dis = disease; syn = syndrome.

- α-antitrypsin **264**, 700
 α-zone 700
 α-gliadin 280
 γGT 250, 260, 282, 678, 702
 O157 *E. coli* 308, **390**
¹³¹I 210, 752F
¹³C-urea breath test 243
 1st rib syn (*OHCS* 660)
 see thoracic outlet, 600
 2-week rule 523, 619
 21-hydroxylase 218
 3D CT angiogram 761
 3D CT 745
 3-way catheter 644, 776
⁵¹Cr-EDTA 683
 5-HIAA 278
 5-HT 278, 454, 455
 in cluster headache 461
 in migraine 462
 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid 278
 5-hydroxytryptamine
 see 5HT
 6–5 against, all life is 672
^{99m}-technetium 754
- A**
- a wave on JVP 40, 41F
 A2A 301, 307, 309
 Aa gradient 157
 AAA (aneurysm) 656
 CT of leaks 746F
 Abasia 471
 Abbreviated mental test score 70
 ABC 793
 Abdomen/abdominal
 acute abdomen 608
 aorta 47, 61
 aortic aneurysm 656
 areas (names) 567
 auscultation of 61, 62
 burst 582
 CT 746F, 747F, 757F
 distension 53, 57, 606
 examination 60–3, 629
 films 742–3F
 gasless 622
 in children 629
 in tropics 388
 injury (*OHCS* 726)
 ischaemia 622
 masses 57, **606**
 MRI 757F
 obstruction 612
 pain 57, **608**, 609F, 611
 palpation of 61, 62
 paracentesis 779
 percussion of 61, 62
 us 756
 wall defects 615
 x-ray 741F
 Abdominojugular reflux 37, **41**
 Abdomino-perineal resection 584
 for rectal ca 584, 618
- Abducens nerve 76, 77, 83F
 palsies 76, 77, 510
 Abduction 31
 hip 75
 Aberration of normal development & involution (ANDI) 605
 Abetalipoproteinaemia 322, **705**
 ABG see blood gas
 Ablation of the gastro-oesophageal 244
 ABPA 168
 ABPI 46, 658
 Abrams' needle 184
 Abscess 596
 amoebic liver 436
 anorectal 632
 aortic root 144
 appendix 610
 bacterial 420–4
 BCG 391
 brain/cerebral 835
 cutaneous 596
 definition 567
 diverticular 630
 drug abuse 384
 exotic 447
 fasciolopsis buski 445
 hepatic 422, **436**
 hydatid 444
 if there's pus... 567
 ischiorectal 632
 lung 164, 445
 lymph nodes
 abscess nearby 416
 microabscesses
 cat scratch 423
 myocardial 144
 pancreatic 638
 paragonimus 445
 perianal 632
 perinephric 57, 386
 psaos 653
 PUO 386
 spinal (Pott's) 722
 subphrenic 630
 typhoid 426
 Absence seizures 495
 Absolute risk reduction 671
 Abuse
 alcohol 254, 258, 260, **282**
 laxative 248
 narcotic 384, 385
 Acalculia 714
Acanthamoeba 447
 Acanthocytes 322, 323F
 Acanthosis nigricans 231, 198, 564, 565F,
 Accommodation 79
 Accessory nipples 605
 ACE, A2A 301, 309
 ACE-inhibitors
 ACS 114
 cardiomyopathy 146
 interactions 768
- ACE-inhibitors...
 continued
 heart failure 130
 how to start 109
 valve disease 142
 Acetylators, slow 556
 Acetylcholine 454
 drugs and 455
 in Alzheimer's 493
 in myasthenia 516
 receptor antibodies 516, 517F, 555
 Acetylcysteine 856
 Achalasia 240
 Acidosis/acidaemia 684
 ketoacidosis 286, 842
 lactic 684, 805, 844
 metabolic 298, 310
 renal tubular 310
 Acid-base 684
Acinetobacter 423
 Acoustic
 enhancement
 impedance, us 750
 nerve 76, 466
 neuroma 466, 467F,
 518
 shadow 750
 Acquired
 immunodeficiency syndrome 408–415
 ACR see UACR 202
 Acrodermatitis of childhood 401
 Acromegaly 197, **230**
 ACS 112, 114, 808, 810
 ACTH 216, 217
 physiology 219F
 stimulation test 218
 Actinomycosis 421
 Activated protein C 368
 Activities, daily living 479
 Acuity 76
 chart see endpapers
 Acupuncture 406, 561
 Acute
 abdomen 63, **608**,
 609F, 746F
 imaging 746F, 763
 tropical 388
 cauda equina 470, 544
 imaging 763
 confusional state 488
 coronary syn see ACS
 emergencies
 808–810
 delirium 488
 intermittent
 porphyria 706
 interstitial nephritis 306
 ischaemia 46, **658**
 kidney injury 290–293
 emergencies 848
 lymphoblastic leukaemia 348, 349F
 myeloid leukaemia 350
 nephritic syndrome 285, 294, 306
- Acute... *continued*
 pancreatitis 638
 phase response 700
 pulmonary oedema 812
 imaging 129F, 737F
 renal failure (see Acute kidney injury)
 emergencies 848
 respiratory distress 178
 tubular necrosis 298
 Acutely unwell patient, imaging, 763
Ad nauseam 241
 Adams–Stokes 464
 Adaptive designs 668, 670
 Addictions to alcohol 282, 455
 hospitals 720
 narcotic 384
 Addisonian crisis 846
 Addison's disease 218
 pre-op steroids 592
 Addresses, web 667
 Adduction 31
 hip 75
 Adenoid-cystic breast 604
 Adenoma
 colon polyp 257F
 parathyroid 753F
 Adenosine 120, 818
 Adenoviruses 376
 ADH 232, 682, 687
 inappropriate 678, 687
 Adhesiolysis 583
 Adhesions 583
 pleural 164, 184
 Adiposity 199
 Admirand's triangle 636
 ADP receptor
 antagonists (eg clopidogrel) 108, 476
 Adrenal
 autoantibodies 218
 crisis 846
 haemorrhage 728
 hormones 216
 tumours 220
 Adrenaline 454
 in anaphylaxis 807
 Adrenocorticotrophic hormone see ACTH
 Adult respiratory distress syndrome 178
 Advance directives 7, 20, 413, 304
 Advice/experience 19
 Advising patients 3
 after prostatectomy 645
 before PSA test 647
 Adynamia 514
 Aegophony 51, 54, 160

- Aerococcus* 447
Aeromonas 447
Aerophagy 58
Af 124
 warfarin in 344, 345
AFBs 398
AFP 270, 535, 652
Affect 11, 269
Afpia 447
Aflatoxin 270
 6-5 against, all life is 672
Ageism 12, 13
Ageusia 504
Agglutination test 331F
Agglutinins, cold 332
Aging & medicalization 223
Agnosia 492, 714
Agranulocytosis 358
AIDS/HIV 408-415
 TB with 409
AIH-AIC 268
AIH-PBC 268
AIIA 301, 309
Air embolism 862
Air travel and DVT 581
Air, contrast media 762
AIRE 215
Airways 820
 obstruction
 irreversible 176, 822
 reversible 172, 188
Akathisia 472
Akinesia 451, 498
Alanine
 aminotransferase (ALT) 283, 702
Albumin 700
 correction, Ca²⁺ 690
 creatinine ratio 309
 human solution (IVI) 342, 779
Alcohol 282
 fatal effects 719
 help cutting down 282
 withdrawal 282, 455
Alcoholic
 craving 455
 demyelination 508
 hepatitis 283
Alcoholics 282
 anonymous 282
 eponymous 709
Alcoholism 282
 & related syn 728
 screening tests 282
Aldosterone 682
Aldosteronism 220
Algid malaria 394
Alice in Wonderland syn 708
'Alien limb'
 phenomenon 499
Alkaline phosphatase 678, 702, 690, 691F
Alkalosis/aemia 684
ALL 348, 349F
Allergic alveolitis 188
Allodynia 462, 561
Allopacia (*OHCS* 602)
Alpha-1-antitrypsin deficit 264, 700
Alpha-1-zone 700
Alpha-fetoprotein 270, 535, 652
Alphaherpesvirus 376
Alport's syn 312 (*OHCS* 638)
ALS 510
ALT 283, 702
 ALT:AST ratio 283
Alternative therapies 491, 507
 causing long QT 725
 for AD 491
 for PD 498
 IBS hypnosis 277
Altman's rule 671
Alveolar proteinosis 158
Alveolar shadows 738F
Alveolitis 187, 188
 allergic 168, 188
 fibrosing 190, 738F
Alzheimer's dis. 492
AMA 266
Amanita phalloides 251F
Amatoxin 251
Amaurosis fugax 480, 558
Ambiguity 5, 793
Amblyomma 430F
Ambulatory
 BP 132
 ECG 35, 102
 surgery 616
Amenorrhoea 223-4, 228, 268 (*OHCS* 251),
American
 trypanosomiasis 438
Amikacin 380
 levels 766
Aminoacidurias 306, 310
Aminoglycosides 381, 766
 interactions 768
 drug levels 766
 susceptibility to 378
Aminophylline 820, 821, 823
Aminotransferase
 alanine 283, 702
 aspartate 113F, 283, 702
 hepatic 283
 myocardial 113F
Amiodarone 116, 118, 120, 125
 and thyroid 212
AML 350, 351F
Amnesia 488-493, 838, 855
 tests 70, 85
Amoebiasis 436F, 437F
Amoxicillin 378
Ampicillin 378
Amputation 658
 avulsive 862
 kit 862
AMTS 70
Amygdala 405, 448F, 492
Amylase 638, 702
Amyloid, beta 493F
Amyloid plaques 493F
Amyloidosis 362, 364
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis 510
Amyotrophy
 diabetic 204
 neuralgic 506
ANA 555, 556
Anaemia 318
 aplastic 358
 blood count 318
 causes 318
 chronic disease 320
 haemolytic 318, 330-2
 iron-deficiency 318, 320
 macrocytic 318, 326
 megaloblastic 326-8
 normocytic 318
 pernicious 328
 sickle-cell 334
 stomatocytic 320
 signs 318
 symptoms 318
Anaesthesia 574 (*OHCS* ch.9)
Anal
 anatomy 633F
 canal image 633F
 carcinoma 633
 examination 633
 fissure 632
 fistula 632
 pain 632, 634
 reconstruction 584
 sphincters 633F
 ulcers 632
Analgesia 536-9
 in cancer 536-9
Analgesic nephropathy 306
Analgesic rebound 460
Anaphylaxis 804, 806
Anaplastic, ca. 602
Anasarca 296
Anastrozole 604
ANCA 555
Anchovy sauce pus 436
ANDI 605
Androgen lack 223
Aneurysms 46, 656
 berry 452F, 482, 483F
 causes of 656
 dissecting 88, 102, 212, 470, 656
 DSA 761F
 inflammatory 642
 mycotic 656
 PAN 559F
 ruptured 656
 Type A 754F
 ventricular 116
Anger 7, 11, 522
 as action's spur 373
Angina 34, 110
 microvascular 110
 Prinzmetal's 722
 unstable 810
 Vincent's 726
Angiodysplasia 257F, 630
Angiography 104, 114, 559F, 659F, 761F, 808
 3D CT 761F
 angina 110
 aorta 657F
 contrast 760
Angiography...
 continued
 neuroimaging 760
 cerebral 761F
 digital subtraction 623F, 659F, 761F
 leg 659F
 mesenteric 623F, 309F
 renal 759F
Angioplasty 110
 emergency, in acute MI 808, 814
 in legs 658
Angiostrongyliasis 446
Angiotensin 682
Angiotensin II receptor antagonists/blockers 301, 307, 309
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
 see ACE-inhibitors
Angiotensinogen 682
Angry patients 7, 11, 522
Angular cheilosis 238, 321F
Anhedonia 82
Anhidrosis 78, 509, 718
Animals and infection 446, 447
Anion gap 684
Anisocoria (pupils) 79
Anisocytosis 322
Ankyloglossia 238
Ankylosing spondylitis 544, 552
Ankylostoma 442
Anogenital ulcer 431, 708
Anorectal abscess 632
Anosmia
 cerebral sign 503
 olfactory nerve lesions 77
Antegrade pyelography 759F
Anterior resection 618
Anterolateral system 520F
Antero-posterior (AP), CXR 736
Anthracyclines 604
Anthrax 421
Antiarrhythmics 118, 120, 122, 124, 816-9
Antibiotic-associated diarrhoea 246
Antibiotics
 'blind'/empirical use of 161, 382
 broad spectrum 419
 endocarditis 145
 prevention 144
 guide 378-381
 pneumonia 160-2, 382
 pre-operative 572
 resistance to 378, 419-20
 SBE/IE 145
 sensitivities 378
 septicaemia 382

- Antibodies
 - autoantibodies 555
 - cold 332
 - liver 266
 - rises in infection 446
- Anti-cardiolipin
 - antibodies 431, 555-7
- Anti-CCP 548, 555
- Anti-centromere 554
- Anticholinergics 454, 498, 499
 - centrally acting 454
 - effects 11
- Anticholinesterase 516
- Anticoagulants 344
 - poisoning 854
 - pre-op 592
 - stroke 476, 480
- Anticonvulsants 496, 497
 - drug interactions 768
 - serum levels 766
 - stopping 497
- Antidiuretic hormone
 - 232, 678, *see* ADH
- Antidotes 854
- Anti-dsDNA 555, 294, 298
- Anti-emetics 241, 536, 538
- Anti-endomysial
 - antibodies 555
- Anti-extractable
 - nuclear antigen (ENA) 555
- Anti-GBM antibodies
 - 294, 555
- Anti-gliadin antibodies
 - 555
- Anti-glomerular
 - basement
 - membrane disease 294
- Antiglutamatergics 493
- Anti-histone antibodies
 - 555
- Antihypertensives 134
- Anti-insulin receptor
 - antibodies 206
- Anti-liver/kidney
 - microsomal type 1 (Ikm1) 268
- Anti-mitochondrial
 - antibodies 266
- Antimuscarnics 454, 651, 499
- Anti-neuronal
 - antibodies 534
- Antinuclear antibodies/
 - factor 268, 555, 556
- Antioxidants 236, 511
- Antiperspirants 27
- Anti-phospholipid
 - antibodies 555
 - syndrome 556
- Anti-platelet agents,
 - stroke 110, 476, 480
- Antisialogues 574
- Anti-smooth muscle
 - antibodies 555
- Antistreptolysin titre
 - ASO 136
- Antithrombin III 368
- α_1 -antitrypsin 264, 700
- Anti-voltage gated K⁺
 - channels 555
- Anuria 65, 298, 640
 - in AKI/ARF 848
 - post-op 578
- Anus
 - anatomy 633F
 - diseases of 632
 - examination of 633
 - reconstruction 584
- Anxiety (*OHCS* 344)
- Aorta
 - abscess 144
 - angiogram 657F
 - coarctation 150
 - dissection 656
 - blood flowing wrong way 140
 - expansile, signs 47F
 - overriding, Fallot 151F
 - palpation 47F, 62
- Aortic
 - aneurysm 656, 88
 - arch
 - aneurysm 38, 656
 - syndrome 726
 - dissection 656
 - surgical
 - complications 582
 - valve
 - bicuspid 150
 - incompetence/regurgitation 37, 38, 140, 656
 - eponyms 45
 - stenosis 37, 656, 140
 - surgery 140, 141F
- APC resistance 368
- Apex beat 37-8, 52
- Aphasia 80
 - in MND 499
 - in stroke 474
- Aphthous ulcers 238, 239F
- APKD/APRD 312
- Aplastic anaemia 358
- crisis 334
- Apneustic breathing 803
- ApoE4 variant 492
- Apoptosis
 - (programmed cell death) 356, 360, 511
- Appendicitis 610
- Apraxia 80, 471
 - constructional, 258
- Arachis/almond oil 634
- Arachnid 416F
- Arachnodactyly 38, 720
- Arachnoid cyst 487F
- Arachnoid diverticula
 - 486
- ARB 309
- Arbovirus (eg dengue)
 - 432
- Archea 374F
- Arcus 37F, 39, 68, 704
- ARDS 178
- Arenavirus 376
- ARF 298, 848
- Arginine test of GH 224
- Argyll Robertson 79
- Aristolochic acid 306
- Arnold-Chiari 520, 614, 708
- Aroma therapy 491
- Aromatase inhibitors
 - 604
- Arrest, cardiac *see* *endpapers*
- Arrhythmias 118-124, 816-9
 - asystole, *endpapers*
 - atrial 120, 124
 - bradycardia 92, 116, 118
 - broad complex 122, 816, 817F
 - cardioversion 784F
 - drugs and 118-125
 - extrasystoles 122
 - investigations
 - 102, 118
 - narrow complex 120, 818, 819F
 - peri-arrest 118, 784, *see endpapers*
 - re-entry 120
 - SVT 120, 818, 819F
 - ventricular
 - after MI 116, 122, 123F
 - fibrillation 123F, 816, 849
 - see endpapers*
 - tachycardia 122, 123F
 - ECG of 100F
- Art & medicine 5, 17
- Artefacts 677
 - on CT 735
 - potassium 688
- Arterial
 - blood gases 156
 - interpretation 684
 - normal values 771
 - technique 785F
 - when needed? 181
 - disease 658
 - embolus 659
 - imaging 623F
 - leg 659F
 - stenting 104, 110, 657F
 - stomach 625F
 - watersheds 474, 623F
- Arteriography
 - coronary 104
 - renal 759F
- Arteriosclerosis *see* Atheroma
- Arteritis
 - giant cell 460, 558
 - Takayasu's 726
 - temporal 460, 558
- Artery
 - arm 785F
 - aorta
 - abscess 144
 - angiogram 657F
 - coarctation 150
 - dissection 656
 - blood flowing wrong way 140
 - expansile, signs 47F
 - overriding, Fallot 151F
 - palpation 47F, 62
- Artery... *continued*
 - carotid, *see* Carotid
 - coeliac axis 611
 - coronary 105F
 - CT 245F, 620F
 - cystic (of GB) 637F
 - Drummond's 623F
 - femoral 785F
 - IMA 623F
 - leg 659F
 - mesenteric 623F
 - renal 61, 759F
 - SMA 623F
 - spinal 512
- Arthritis
 - axial 553
 - osteo 543F, 546
 - psoriatic 552, 553F
 - reactive 552
 - rheumatoid 548
 - septic 546, 543
- Arthrocentesis 543
- Arthropathies
 - calcium
 - pyrophosphate 550, 551F
 - Charcot's joint 205F, 520, 540F
 - crystal 550, 551F
 - enteropathic 552
 - haemophilic 338
 - hypertrophic 170
 - Jaccoud's 557
 - osteo 546
 - psoriatic 552, 553F
 - pulmonary 170
 - reactive 552
 - rheumatoid 548, 549F
 - spondylo 552, 553
- Arthropod borne
 - bacteria 434
 - viruses 432
- Artificial tears 504
- As 140, 552
- ASA classification 569
- Asbestosis 192
- Ascariasis 442F
- Ascites 57, 61, 260, 261F, 606
 - culture 283
 - tapping 260, 778, 779
- ASD 150
- Aseptic meningitis 460
- Ashleaf macule 312
- Aspartate
 - aminotransferase (AST) 113F, 283, 702
- Aspergilloma 168, 169F
- Aspergillosis 168, 169F
- Aspergillus niger* 238, 441F
- Aspiration
 - pericardial 787F
 - pleural 778, 779F
 - pneumonia 161
 - pneumothorax 781F
- Aspirin 34
 - angina, MI, TIA 108
 - bleeding time 340
 - diabetes 203
 - poisoning 856
 - stroke 474, 476
- Assisted-suicide
 - organizations 510

- Association 665
 AST 113F, 283, 702
 AST:ALT ratio 283
 Astasia 471
 Astereognosis 503
 Parkinson's plus 499
 Asterix/flap 50F, 62, 258, 260, 472
 Asthma 48, 172-175
 emergencies 820, 821
 Astrocytoma 471, 502
 Astronomy 18
 Asymptomatic
 haematuria 649
 Asystole *see*
endpapers
 Ataxia 503
 Friedreich's 471, 712
 Atelectasis 574, 738
 Atheroma diseases
 angina 110
 graft occlusion 111
 MI 112
 peripheral vascular
 disease 658
 statins and 109
 stroke/TIA 474, 480
 Athetosis 81, 472
 Atkins-type diet 236
 ATN 298
 Atopy 48
 Atrial
 enlargement 124
 fibrillation 68, 119F, 124, 345,
 flutter 119F, 125
 myxoma 36, 106, 124, 146
 natriuretic peptide
 128, 131, 232, 812
 septal defect 150
 tachycardia 120
 Atrophy, cerebral 745F
 dementia 490
 CT 745F
 Atropine 116
 Atropinization 855
 Attendance allowance
 491
 Attenuation
 CT 735, 744
 US 750
 Atypical
 lymphocytes 401
 mycobacteria 375
M. avium
intracellular
 411
M. marinum 446
M. scrofulaceum
 663
 pneumonia 161, 162, 380, 434
 Audit (OHCS 506)
 Auer rod 351F
 Aura
 epileptic 494
 in migraine 462
 Auscultation 36-8, 39F, 42-5, 51
 abdomen, before
 palpation? 61, 62
 heart 37, 42
 heart sounds 42
 Auscultation...
continued
 lungs 50-4
 murmurs 37, 38, 44
 Australia antigen,
 HBsAg 406, 407F
 Authentic lives 16
 Autism (OHCS 394)
 Autoantibodies 555
 adrenal 218
 disease association
 555
 insulin 198
 liver disease 266, 269
 paraneoplastic 534
 parietal cell 328
 thyroid 208-213
 Autoantigens 210, 268
 Autoimmune autonomic
 ganglionopathy
 509
 cholangitis 268
 Autoimmune diseases
 Addison's 218
 alopecia areata
 (OHCS 602)
 autoantibodies 555
 biliary cirrhosis 266
 CNS disorders 715
 coeliac 280
 demyelinating 508
 diabetes
 mellitus 198
 insipidus 232
 Graves' disease 210
 haemolysis 332
 Hashimoto's 212
 primary biliary
 cirrhosis 266
 hepatitis 268
 hypophysitis 224, 232
 liver disease 266, 268
 myasthenia 516
 pemphigus (OHCS 602)
 periaortitis 642
 pernicious anaemia
 328
 pituitary 224
 Autoimmune diseases
 pituitary (DI) 232
 polyendocrine
 syn 215
 polymyositis 554
 sclerosing
 cholangitis 267
 Sjögren's syn. 724
 SLE 556
 thrombocytopenic
 purpura 308
 thyroid disease 210
 Autoimmune
 polyglandular
 syn 218
 Autonomic function
 tests 509
 Autonomic
 ganglionopathy 509
 Autonomic neuropathy
 509
 diabetic 204
 Autonomy 15
 Av block 116, 119F, 126
 Av nipping 562F
 Av nodal re-entry
 tachycardia 120,
see AVNRT
 Av node ablation 120,
 124, 125
 Avian influenza 163, 402
 AVNRT 120
 AVPU coma scale
 793, 802
 Axial arthritis 553
 Axilla, palpation of 67
 Axillary tail of Spence 67
 Axis, ECG 90, 91F
 AXR 741-2F
 colitis 741F
 gas pattern 741F
 gas 741F
 ileus 741F
 large bowel
 dilatation 741F
 pneumatobilia 742
 sentinel loop 742
 small bowel
 dilatation 741F
 urinary tract 742
 Azathioprine 370
 drug interactions 768
 Azithromycin 380
 Azlocillin 378
 Azygosvein 580F
B
 B₁ deficiency 728
 B₁₂ deficiency 328, 471
 B₁₂ intake and dementia
 328, 490
 Babinski sign 75, 451
 Bacillary dysentery 426
 Bacillus 374F
Bacillus cereus 390, 447
 Back pain 544 (OHCS
 674-8)
 Backs to the wall 0
 Bacteria
 classification 375
 exotic 447
 susceptibility 378
 Bacterial
 endocarditis 144
 endosymbionts 443
 meningitis 832
 overgrowth 281
 peritonitis 260
 pneumonia 160, 162
 shock 804
 vaginosis 418
 Bacterial overgrowth
 281
 Bacteriuria 292
 Bad news, breaking 523
 Baguda criteria (SVT/
 VT) 123
 Baker's cyst 708
 Balance 35, 466
 Balanitis 647
 circinate 552
 Balding 68 (OHCS 602)
 frontal 514
 Balkan nephropathy 306
 Balloon tamponade 255
 Ballotment 63F
 Bamboo spine 552
 Band forms 325F
 Banding
 gastric 628
 piles 634
 variceal 255F
 Bannwarth's syn. 430
 Bariatric surgery 628
 in diabetes 200
 Barium as contrast 762
 Barium enema 272, 756
 double contrast 757F
 Barotrauma 504
 Barr body 325F
 Barrel chest 55
 Barrett's oesophagus
 245F, 709
 Barthel's Index 479
 Bartonellosis 434
 Bartter's syn 220
 Basal cell
 cancer 599F
 Basal ganglia 214, 269, 448F, 472, 474, 498
 gait disorders 471
 Basilar artery branches
 505
 Basilar invagination
 520
 Basophil 325F
 Basophilia 324
 Basophilic stippling
 322, 323F
 Bat's wing CXR 737F
 Bayesian designs 670
 Bayesian methods 668
 Bazin's disease 708
 BCC 599F
 BCR-ABL inhibitors 353
 B-cell leukaemia 348
 BCG 391
 Beat
 apex 37, 38
 diffuse 148
 double 146
 heaving 140
 tapping 138
 thrusting 138
 capture 122, 123F, 127
 fusion 122, 123F, 127
 Beau's lines 32, 529F
 Bedside
 history-taking 22
 manner 3
 microscopy 286, 383
 neurology 450
 tests
 and *H. pylori* 243
 in lung disease 156
 logic 668-70
 urine 286
 Beefy tongue 328
 Behçet's disease 708
 Bejel 431
 Bell curve 764
 Bell's palsy 504
 Bence Jones protein
 362, 700
 'Benign' intracranial
 hypertension
see idiopathic
 intracranial
 hypertension
 77, 502
 Benign mammary
 dysplasia 605

- Benign prostatic hypertrophy 644
Benzylpenicillin 378, 382
Bereavement 7 (*OHCS* 498)
Berger's dis. 294, 708
Beriberi 278
Berry aneurysm 452F, 482
Beta-blockers 108
 interactions 768
 peri-op 568
 poisoning 854
Beta-lactamase 378-381, 420
BHS guidelines 133
Bias 670
Bicarbonate in cardiac arrest *see endpapers*
Bickerstaff's encephalitis 708
Bifascicular block 94
Bile
 ducts 636
 dilatation 250, 757
 vomiting 624
Bile acid malabsorption: 281
Bile reflux 244
Bilharzia 445
Biliary
 cirrhosis 266
 colic 636
 imaging 757
 obstruction 250, 636
 surgical complications 582
Bilirubin 250, 678
 metabolism 251F
Billings, Josh 236
Billroth I/II 624, 625F
Billroth, Theodor 625
Biochemistry *Ch.15*
 derangements 678
 essence 677
 forms 677
 normal values 676, 770
 renal failure 298
Bioethics 15, 315, 571
Biopsy
 breast 604
 sentinel node 605F
 duodenal 256
 liver 256
 marrow 349F, 358
 trephine 361F
 pleural 779
 prostate 646
 small bowel 256, 280
Biopsychosocial aspects perpetuating illness 16
 models 9, 12
Bioterrorism 387
Biphasic waveform 784F
Biphosphates
 in hypercalcaemia 691
 in osteoporosis 696
Bird fanciers' dis. 188
Bird flu 163, 402, 403
Bite cells 330, 333F
Bjork-Shiley valve 42, 142
BKA 658
Blackouts 34, 464
Blackwater fever 394
Bladder
 cancer 646, 648
 catheterization 776
 detrusor instability 651
 haemorrhage 648
 incontinence 650
 percussion of 61
Blake, William 316F, 317
Blame: how to do it ix
Blast cells 359F
Blast injury 862
Blastomycosis 440
Blastospores 441F
Blasts 322, 349F
Blatchford system 252
Bleeding **338-341**
 aneurysm 657
 disorders 338
 GI 252, 830
 varices 254
 rectal 246, 631
Blepharospasm 473
Blind antibiotics 382
 in pneumonia 161
Blind
 loops 624
 trials 637, 665, 670
Blindness, sudden 558
Bloating 277
 in coeliac 280
 ovarian ca (*OHCS* 280)
Block
 Av (Mobitz I) 116
 bifascicular 94
 bundle 94
 pacemakers 126
 sinoatrial type I, II 119F
 trifascicular 94
 Wenckebach 119F
Blocq's 'astasia abasia' 471
Blogs, sickle cell 335
Blood
 clotting 338
 film 322, 383
 normal 317F
 preparation of 383
 for malaria 383, 395F
 gases 156
 normal values 771
 sampling 785F
 technique 785
 when needed? 181
GI
 rectal bleeding 631
 upper GI 252, 254, 830
 loss and shock 609, 804
 pressure 132-4
 measurement 38, 133
 progenitor cells 354, 358, 359F, 360
 transfusion 342
 inappropriate 318, 346
Bloodstream
 infection 373, *see* septicaemia
Bloody diarrhoea 246
 organism 390
 dysentery 426
Bloody tap (LP) 782
Blot haemorrhage 203F
Blue
 bloaters 176
 patient 176, 180
Blue lanulae 62
BMD 697
BMI (kg/m)
 calculating 237
 healthy eating 236
 pre-op 593
 problems 237
 range 205
 in Asians 199
 undernourished 586
 vs waist circumference 205
B-mode, US 750
BNF 669
Body habitus 68
Body mass index *see* BMI
Body surface area 446
Body-beautiful 279
Boerhaave's syndrome 282, 621
Boils 596
Bomb injury 862 (*OHCS* 812)
Bone
 density tests 697
 disease 696, 698
 causing pain 363
 marrow 321F, 349F, 351F, 358
 biopsy 358
 failure 358
 support 358
 transplant 350
 trephine 361F
 scan 529
 scintigraphy 752
Borborygmi *see* bowel sounds
Bordetella 423, 447
Bornholm disease 66, 376
Borrelia 430
Borrmann classification 620
Botulism 421
Böttinger neurones 450
Bouchard's nodes 30, 546
Boutonneuse 435
Boutonnière's deformity 30, 548
Bouveret's syn 636
Bovine
 cough 48, 170, 210, 722
 spongiform encephalopathy 710
Bovis 257
Bowel
 cancer 618
 screening 619
 change of 56
 ischaemia 622
 obstruction 612
Bowel... *continued*
 prep., pre-op 572
 screening 619
 sounds 61-2, 612
Bowen's disease 598
BPH 644
Brachial plexopathy 506, 530
 pulse 36, 47
Brachydactyle 215F
Brachytherapy 646
Bradycardia 92, 116, 118, 119F
Bradykinesia 498
Brain
 abscess 835
 anatomy 448F
 death 6
 encephalitis 708, 833
 failure 490
 tests 70, 81
 how it works 521
 ischaemia 475-6, 480
 metastases 749F
 MRI (incl. T1, T2) 749F
 stem, coning 486, 502, 840
 tumours 502, 749F
Brain Attack 475
Bran/fibre 237, 248
Branchial cyst 600
Brassy cough 48
BRCA genes 524
Breast
 abscess 604
 cancer 604
 genetics of 524
 prognosis 605
 cysts 605
 examination 67F
 fibroadenoma 605
 pain 66
 palpation 67F
 quadrants 67
Breath
 sounds 51, 52, 54F
 tests
 Helicobacter 243
 hydrogen 280
Breathlessness (dyspnoea) 34, 49, 88
 emergencies 796
 grading 129
 management in ca 536, 538
 the 'real' cause 5
Breathprint 243
Breslow thickness 598
Brill-Zinsser dis. 435
British Hypertension Society 133
Broad complex tachycardia 122, 816
Broad spectrum antibiotics 419
Broca's dysphasia 80
Bronchial
 asthma 172-5
 breathing 52, 55
 carcinoma 170
Bronchiectasis 50, 166
Bronchitis 176

Bronchoalveolar lavage 158

Bronchodilators 174

Bronchopulmonary lavage 158

Bronchoscopy 158

Bronchospasmus absurdus 720

Bronze diabetes 262

Brown tumours 214

Brown-Séquard 710

Brucellosis 423

Brugad syndrome 464, 709

Brugia malaya 443

Bruising syndrome 338

Bruits 37-8, 47, 61

Bruxism (teeth grinding) 394

BSE 710

Buboes 416, 422

Buccinator test 504

Budd-Chiari syn 710

Buerger's

angle 46, 658

disease 710

sign 46

test 47

Buffalo hump 216

Bulbar palsy 510

Bull's-eye appearance, Lyme disease 430

Bundle branch block 92, 94

Bunyavirus 376

Burkholderia 386, 447

Burkitt's lymphoma 356, 357F

Burns 858

Burr cell 322, 323F

Burr holes 840

Burst abdomen 582

Busy, much too 14

Butterfly rash 557F

Buying time 793

C

C. difficile 247

CA-125 277

CA 19-9 etc 276, 535

CABG 117

CA-MRSA 160

Cabot ring 322, 323F

Cachexia 29

Cadasil 474

Caecal ca 619F

Café-au-lait spots 518

Cage questions 282

Cajal cells 278

Calabar swelling 443

Calciferol 690

Calcification 640

adrenal 218

AXR 742

basal ganglia 214, 215F

bladder 445

cerebral 215F

ectopic 444, 691, 742

gallbladder 742

ligaments 552

lung 170, 192

lung (TB) 398

Calcification...

continued

lung, valves 736

metastatic 690

pancreas 762

pancreatic 280

pituitary 226

renal 306, 312, 646, 758

Calcimimetics 214

Calcineurin 299

Calcinosis 214

Calcitonin 690

Calcitonin gene-related

peptide 455

Calcitriol 690

Calcium 690

channelopathy 463

channels 517F

gluconate 299, 849

hypocalcaemia

R 692

in renal failure 299

pyrophosphate 551F

Calculi

CBD 756F

gallbladder 636, 757F

CT 757F

MRCP 757F

renal 640, 758F, 759F

Calot's triangle 637F

Calyceal blunting 759F

Calymmatobacterium granulomatis 416

Campylobacter 390

Canal

anal 633, 634

femoral 614

inguinal 617F

Nuck 617F

CANCA 555, 558, 728

Cancer *see* carcinoma

coming to terms

with 522

diets and 237

multidisciplinary

meeting 528, 533

pointless tests 529

treatments 528

urgent referral 532

Candida 418, 440, 441

glans 441F

ITU and *Candida* 441

oesophageal 410

oral 238, 239F

in HIV 410, 411

superficial 440

systemic 441

in HIV 410, 411

web-space 441F

Canicola fever 430

Cannonballs 646

Cannon waves 40

Cannulae, IV

colour coding 775

central venous 788

technique 774

Capacity 491, 571

Capacity/demand 523

CAPD 742

Capgras syndrome 459

Capillary

refill time 46

Caplan's syn 710

Capnocytophage 447

Capsule endoscopy

256F

Capture beat 122, 123F

pacemaker 126

Caput medusae 62

Carasil 474

Carbamazepine

interactions 768

levels 766

Carbon

dioxide 156, 684, 771

monoxide 854

tetrachloride 855

Carbuncle 596

Carcinoembryonic

antigen 535, 618

Carcinogenesis,

multistep 525

Carcinoid 278

crisis 279

Carcinoma

anal 633

basal cell 598

bladder 648

breast 604

bronchial 170

caecal 618, 619F

cellular 525

cholangio- 267, 270

colon 257F, 618, 619F

screening 619

colorectal 618, 619

emergencies 526

familial 524

genetics 524

hepatic 270

holistic method 523

kidney 646

liver 270

lung 170

metastatic 270

oesophagus 620, 621F

pain 536, 538

pancreas 276

patients with 523

prostate 646

renal 646

salivary 600, 601

squamous cell 598

stomach 620

symptom control

532, 534

therapy 522-30

thyroid 602

Carcinomatosis

cachexia 29

Cardiac

arrest *see*

endpapers

arrhythmias 118-126

asystole, *see*

endpapers

atrial 124

bicarbonate in *see*

endpapers

bradycardia 116,

118, 119, 126

broad complex 122,

123F, 816

catheter 104, 754

cycle 43F

drugs 108-9

investigations

90-106

Cardiac arrhythmias...

continued

narrow complex

120, 818

peri-arrest 118,

816, 818, *see*

endpapers,

re-entry 120

SVT 120

or is it VT 122-3

ultrasound 754

ventricular,

extrasystoles 122

post MI 116

VT 118, 122, 816

VF 122, *see*

endpapers

hypertrophy 94

asthma (LVF) 128,

172, 812

auscultation 37

block 94, 116, 119

catheterization 104

cycle 43F

electrophysiology 104

enzymes 112

examination 36-45

extrasystoles 122

failure 128, 130

with anaemia 318

haemolysis 142

imaging

CT 754

ECG gating 755F

MRI 754

MUGA scan 755F

perfusion

scintigraphy 755F

radionuclide 754

myxoma 146

pain 34, 88

palpitations 35, 88

shock 814

siderosis 336

sounds 42-5

surgery 142

syndrome X 110

tamponade 88,

116, 148

valve disease 136-145

Cardiogenic shock 814

Cardiomegaly, CXR 736,

737F

Cardiomyopathy 146

Cardiopathia fantastica

720

Cardioresp. arrest *see*

endpapers

Cardiovascular

examination 36-8

Cardiovascular history

34

Cardioversion 784

Care

eight NSF standards

12

pathways 533

philosophy of 13

plans 13, 491

Carers

groups 449, 491

stress 449, 491

Carey Coombs'

murmur 44

- Carney complex 146, 215
- Caroli's syndrome 250
- Carotid artery 452, 474
- aneurysm 600
 - body tumour 600
 - bruit 38, 47, 474
 - disease 659
 - endarterectomy 659
 - external 601F
 - internal 452F
 - pulse 37, 47
 - relations 603
 - sinus syncope 464
 - stenosis 474, 659
 - tinnitus 468
- Carpal tunnel syn 507
- Case
- control study 665
 - management programmes 13
- Casal's necklace 278
- Castleman's dis 411
- Casts 287F
- red cell 286
 - in GN 300
- Cat scratch fever 423
- Catalepsy 715
- Cataplexy 714, 715
- Cataract (OHCS 442)
- diabetes mel. 202
 - dystrophia myotonica 514
 - examination 76
 - hypocalcaemia 692
 - leprosy 428
 - neurofibromas 518
 - old age 12
 - onchocerciasis 443
 - radiotherapy 530
 - rubella (OHCS 34)
 - steroids 371
 - toxoplasmosis 404
- Catatonica 715
- Catecholamines 220
- Cathartic colon 248
- Catheter
- angiography 754
 - blocked 777
 - cardiac 104
 - Fogarty 659
 - trial without 777
 - urinary 776, 777F
 - 3-way 644, 776
- Catheterizations
- cardiac 104
 - urinary 776
 - self 500, 777
- Cauda equina compression 470, 545
- imaging 763, 783F
- Cavernous sinus thrombosis 484
- Cavitating lesions 154F, 738
- CBD 757F
- calculi, ERCP 757F
 - dilatation 751F
 - obstruction ffl
 - stones, ERCP 757F
- CCCDL 373
- CCF see congestive cardiac failure
- CEA 535
- Ceiling of care 822
- Cellulitis 204, 382, 662
- Central abdo pain 57
- Central lines 589F, 788
- CXR position 741F
- Central nervous system exam 70
- Central pain disorders 501
- Central pontine myelinolysis 511, 686, 719
- Central venous lines 588, see also CVP
- insertion 788
 - positioning, 589F
- Cephalosporins 379
- Cerebello-pontine angle signs 503
- Cerebellum 503
- tonsils 840
- Cerebral
- abscess 835
 - arteries 452, 453F
 - calcification 215F
 - DSA 761F
 - infarct 474
 - haemorrhage 482
 - hemispheres 448F
 - ischaemia 474-80
 - ischaemia CT 745F
 - lesions 502
 - lobes 503
 - malaria 394-397
 - pregnancy (OHCS 27)
 - microangiopathy 474
 - oedema 840
 - cytotoxic, CT 760
 - vasogenic, CT 760
 - MRI 749F
 - SOL 502, 749F, 761F
 - sinus thrombosis 484
 - tumour 502, 749F, 761F
 - venous territories 485F
 - thrombosis 484
- Cerebrohepatorenal sy. 730
- Cerebrospinal fluid see CSF
- Cerebrovascular accident see stroke
- Cervical
- rib 600 (OHCS 660)
 - spine
 - imaging 763
 - MRI 749F
 - spondylosis 512
 - vertebra 513F
- Cestodes 444
- CGRP 455
- CHA2DS2 125
- CHADS2 score 477
- Chagas' disease 146, 438F
- Chancre 431
- Chancroid 416
- Channelopathies 463, 494, 514
- sodium 514
- Chaperone 67
- Charcoal 852
- Charcot-Marie-Tooth 74, 508, 710
- Charcot's joints 205F, 520
- Charcot's triad 636, 637F
- Charlatanism 197
- CHD risk 87, 112
- how to reduce it 236
 - risk-factor equation 675
- Check lists
- pre-op 569
 - post-op 595
- Cheilitis 238, 321F
- Chemodectoma 600
- Chemoembolization, transarterial 270
- Chemoradiation 530
- Chemotherapy 528
- Chest
- deformity 55
 - drain 780
 - not bubbling 740F
 - examination 50-5
 - expansion 51-2
 - film 736
 - investigation 156-9
 - pain 34, 88
 - emergencies 798
 - physiotherapy 167
 - safe triangle 781F
 - signs 50-5
 - silent chest 52, 820
 - x-ray 129F, 155F, 736-41F (see CXR)
 - coin lesion 171
- Chickenpox 400F
- Chikungunya fever 387, 433
- Child abuse (OHCS 146)
- Child-Pugh 261
- Children's ops 629
- Chinese gongong 498
- Chiropodists 204
- Chlamydia 375, 416
- Chlamydomydia pneumonia 162
 - screening for 417
- Chloramphenicol 380
- Chlordiazepoxide regimen 283
- Chloride, low 690
- Chlorination 390
- Cholangiocarcinoma 267F, 270
- cholangiogram 582
- cholangiopancreatography MRI 757
- retrograde 756
- Cholangitis 636
- primary sclerosing 266
- Cholecalciferol 690
- Cholecystectomy 636
- Cholecystitis 636
- Cholithromyocyst 250
- Cholelithiasis 636, 757F
- MRCP 757F
- Cholera 426
- Cholestasis 250
- Cholesterol 704
- emboli 309
 - stones 636
- Chondrocalcinosis, pseudogout 550
- CHOP 357
- Chorea 81, 472
- Huntington's 716
 - Sydenham's 136 (OHCS 654)
- Chorionic gonadotrophin 535 (OHCS 264)
- Christmas dis. (IX) 338
- Chromium labels 330
- Chromophobe adenoma 226
- Chronic
- asthma 172, 174
 - calcinosis 306, 550, 554
 - cough 48
 - disease anaemia 320
 - fatigue syndrome 560
 - headache 460
 - heart failure 130
 - hepatitis B 271, 406
 - immune hepatitis 268
 - inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculopathy (CIDP) 508, 717
 - kidney disease 297
 - leukaemia, see CLL/CML
 - liver disease 260
 - liver signs 62
 - nail infection 32
 - obstructive lung, see COPD
 - cor pulmonale 194
 - emergencies 822
 - organic reaction, see dementia 490
 - pain 560
 - pain overlap syndromes 277
 - paraparesis 471
- Churg-Strauss 558, 710
- autoantibodies 555
- Chvostek's sign 692
- CHVPI 357
- Chylomicrons 704
- Ciclosporin 370
- interactions 768
- CIDP 508, 717
- Ciliary ganglion 79F
- Cingulate gyrus 453, 479, 840
- Ciprofloxacin 380, 419, 703
- Circinate balanitis 552
- Circle of Willis 452F
- CT image 483F
- Cirrhosis 260
- biliary 266
- CJD 710
- CK see creatine kinase
- Clades (HIV) 408
- Clarithromycin 380
- Clasp-knife 451
- Classification of
- ASA 569
 - bacteria 375
 - dysphasia 80
 - helminths 442-4
 - hyperlipidaemia 705

- Classification of...
continued
 life 374
 pathogens 374
 renal diseases 285
 viruses 376
- Claudication 34, 658
- Clavulanic acid 378
- CLE 273
- Click
 heart sounds 42, 130, 138, 142
 pneumothorax sound 53
- Clinical governance 595, 765
- Clitoromegaly 222
- CLL 352
- Clonorchis* 445F
- Clonus 74, 451
- Cloquet's node 617F
- Closed loop obstruction 612
- Clostridia 375, 421
C. botulinum 421
C. difficile (pseudomembranous colitis) 247
C. tetani 424, 425F
 poisoning 421
- Clotting 338–40
 thrombophilia 368
- Clouded
 consciousness 488
 cornea 78, 460, 563
- Clubbing 30F, 32, 33, 36, 50, 62, 68
- Cluster headache 461
- CML 352, 353F
- CMV 404
 congenital 404 (*OHCS* 34)
 retinitis 405F, 410
- CNI 299
- CNS
 examination 70, 450
 focal signs 494, 503
 symptoms 22, 70, 450
- CO₂ gas 684
 analysis 156
 normal values 771
 retention of 50–2, 180
 when to do it 181
- COAD see COPD
- Coagulation 338–43
 anticoagulants 344
 cascade 339F
 disorders 338–41
 infrared 634
 management 340
 poisoning 854
 tests 341
- Coal in lung 192
- Coarctation of the aorta 38, 132, 150
- Cocci 374F, 418F
- Coccidioidomycosis 440
- Cochlear nerve 469F
- Cockcroft–Gault formula 683
- Coeliac
 axis 611
 disease 280
- Coeliac disease...
continued
 autoantibodies 555
 dermatitis
 herpetiformis 564
 related t-cell lymphomas 356
- Cognitive
 loss in old age 488
 screening tests 70, 85, 488
 therapy (*OHCS* 372)
- Cogwheel rigidity 71, 498
- Cohort study 665
- Coin lesion 171F
- Cold
 antibodies 332
 common (URT1) 402
- Coldsores 376F
- Coleridge & thought 16
- Colic 567, 608
 arteries 632F
 biliary 636
 in children 629
 renal and ureteric 285, 640
 imaging 758, 759F
- Colitis
 imaging 743F
 indeterminate 273
 ischaemic 622
 microscopic 246
 pseudomembranous 246
 ulcerative 257F, 272–3
- Collapse
 lobar, on CXR 736, 737F
- Collapsed
 lung 824
 patient see *endpapers*
- Collapsing pulse 36, 40, 41, 140
- Collar incision 68
- Collective memory 0
- Colloid cyst (3 ventricle) 502
- Colloid/mucoid ca, breast 604
- Colon 257F
 arterial supply 632
 cancer 618
 cathartic 248
 diverticulum 630
 polyps 257F, 525, 618, 714,
 preparation 572
 surgery 572
 complications 582, 618
 mucosal thickening 757F
- Colonography 757F
- Colonoscopy 256
 images 257
 surveillance 272
 virtual 757F
- Colorectal ca 618
 familial 524
 screening 619
- Colostomy 584, 585F
 alternative 584
- Colour
 blue 28
 bronze 28
 odd 28
 pale 24
 yellow 24
- Coma 800–803
 diabetic 842
 examination 802
 Glasgow coma scale (GCS) 802
 head injury 838
 hepatic 259
 hyperglycaemic 842
 hypoglycaemic 844
 hypopituitary 846
 malaria 397
 management 801
 myxoedema 844
 neurological exam 803
 poisoning 850
 ventilation in 838
- Commandments, ten 8
- Commercial sex workers 385
- Committees save lives 315, 427
- Common bile duct 751F
- Communicating 3–4, 522
 bad news 523
 cancer issues 522
- Community
 -acquired pneumonia 160
 CA-MRSA 160
 psychiatric nurses 491
- Competence, refusing R 571
- Complement 197, 556
- Compliance
 concordance 3
 of lungs 178
- Complications
 gastrectomy 624, 625F
 laparoscopic cholecystectomy 583
 post-op 578
 specific 582
- Comprehension 80
- Computer tomography see CT scan,
- Concordance
 drug regimen 3
 ECG 122
- Concussion 838
- Condoms 412
- Condylomata lata 431
- Confidence interval 669
- Confidentiality 0
- Confocal laser
 endomicroscopy 273
- Conformational disease 264
- Confronting
 visual fields 76
- Confusion 488
 post-operative 578
- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (*OHCS* 134)
 adult onset 222
- Congestive cardiac failure 128–131
 severe 812
- Coning 486, 502
- Conjugated bilirubin 251
- Conjunctivitis 563F
- Conjunctival pallor 36, 319F, 349F
- Connective tissue
 autoantibodies 555
 autoimmune dis. 554
 diseases 544–561
 malignancies 596
 mixed 554 (*OHCS* 699)
- Conn's syndrome 220
- Consciousness
 clouding 488
 disorders of 489
 levels of 802
 loss of, coma 800–3
 post-op 578
- Consensual, light reaction 79F
- Consent 30, 36, 259, 343, 568, 570
- Consolidation
 on CXR 736, 739F
 signs of 52, 54F
- Constipation 248
- Constraint-induced movement therapy 478
- Consultation
 active or passive? 16
 analysis (*OHCS* 478)
 going wrong 16
 patient-centred 4
 skills *OHCS* 478
- Contraindications, MRI 748
- Contrast
 air 762
 angiographic neuroimaging 760
 barium 762
 CT 744, 745F
 gadolinium 762
 ideal IV 762
 iodine based 762
 media 762
 metformin and 762
 negative 762
 swallow 757F
- Conus medullaris 470
 end of 783F
- Convergence 79
 retraction
 nystagmus 503
- Convulsions 494, 836
- Coombs' test 331
- Coordination 73, 75
- COPD 176, 822
- Cope sign 610
- Copper metabolism 269
- Copper/silver wiring 133, 562F
- Corporiphilia 714
- Cor pulmonale 194
- Cord tumours 471
- Cord see spinal cord
- Corkscrew oesophagus 240, 757F
- Corneal arcus 37F, 39, 68, 704

- Corneal whorls 712
- Coronary angiography 104
in angina 110
angioplasty 110
artery
anatomy 105F
bypass grafts 110
spasm 723
thrombosis 112-6,
808-10
- care 114
- heart disease
risk 87
reduction 236,
704
- likelihood with
anginal or non-
anginal pain 111
- syndrome 112, 808,
810
- website for NSF 87
- Coronavirus 376
- SARS 163
- Coroner 6
- Corpus callosum 448F,
503, 718
- Corrected calcium 690
- Corrigan's
secret door 14
sign 140
- Cortical
lesions 503
dysgenesis 494
scarring 494
- Corticobulbar palsy 511
- Cortico-basal
degeneration 499
- Cortico-spinal tracts
328, 450, 520, 710
- Cortisol 216
& dreams 197
too much 216
- Corynebacterium*
421, 447
- Coryza 402
- Cost containment
in surgery 616
QALYs and 10
- Costochondritis 726
- Co-trimoxazole 380
- Cotton-wool spot 562
- Coudé catheter 776
- Cough 48
impulse test 661
syncope 464
test in abdominal
pain 62
- Council tax rebate 491
- Counselling (*OHCS* 380)
genetic 21 (*OHCS* 154)
HIV tests 413
- Courvoisier's 'law'
250, 276
- Cox-2 inhibitors 547
- Coxiella* 434
- Coxsackie virus 146, 148,
307, 376, 401
- CPAP 194
- CPN 13, 491
- CPPD 550
- CPR *see endpapers*
- ⁵¹Cr-EDTA 683
- Crab lice (*OHCS* 608)
- Crackles 52
- Cramp 71
- Cranberry juice 298
- Cranial
arteritis 558
nerves 76
examination of 76
lesions 77-9
w/ contralateral
hemiplegia
450
names 83F
perfusion CT 761F
- Craniopharyngioma 226
- C-reactive protein 700
in cardiovascular
dis. 700
- Creatine kinase (CK)
307, 514, 554, 702
- CK-MB (cardiac) 112
- Creatinine
clearance 295, 683
- Cr-EDTA scans 683, 752
- Crepitations 52
- CREST syndrome 554
- Creutzfeldt-Jakob 710
- Cricosternal distance
50
- Cricothyroidotomy 786
- Crigler-Najjar 250, 710
- Crisis
Addisonian 846
carcinoid 279
oculogyric 473
- Critical view method,
laparoscopic
cholecystectomy
583
- Critical view of safety
technique 637
- Crohn's dis. 274, 275F
mucosa in 275F
skin signs 564
- Crossmatch for surgery
569
- CRP 700
- Crura 672F
- Crural neuropathy 204
- Cryoglobulins 332, 406
- Cryptococcus 410,
411F, 440
- Cryptogenic fibrosing
alveolitis 190
- Cryptorchidism 654
- Cryptosporidium 390F
- Crystal
arthritis 550
methamphetamine
385
- Crystals
in joints 550, 551F
piezo-electric 750
renal 640
- CSF
analysis 833
lumbar puncture 782
- CT 744
3D 745F
3D angiogram 761
abdomen 757F
angiography 754
artefacts 735
attenuation 744F
calculi 757F
- CT... *continued*
gallbladder 757F
renal 758F
cardiac 754
cerebral oedema
cytotoxic 760
vasogenic 760
cerebral SOL 761F
cholelithiasis 757F
colic 757
colonography 756,
757F
contrast
enhancement 744
cranial perfusion 761F
CT MIP 759F
CVA 760F
dose 233
enterography 256
gallbladder calculi
757F
gallstones 757F
GU 758-9F
Hounsfield units 745F
lung window 744F
MIP 759F
neuroimaging 760
oedema
cerebral,
cytotoxic 760
vasogenic 760
perfusion scanning
745F
PET 752
pulmonary angio
183, 753F
renal calculi 758F
renal colic 758
SOL, cerebral 761
stroke 760F
triple phase 747F
unenhanced 760
volume averaging
744F
window 745
with contrast
medium 745F
CTPA and V/Q 753F
- Cubital tunnel syn 507
- Cullen's sign 638
- Cultural differences 9
- Culture media (*OHCS* 433)
- C-urea breath test 243
- Curiosity 711
- Curling's ulcers 242
- Cushing's
disease 216
syndrome 216
ulcer 242
- Cutaneous
larva migrans 442
leishmaniasis 439
lumps 597F
pustule 421
sclerosis 554
signs of
endocrinopathy 197
signs of systemic
disease 564
- Cut-down 775
- Cutis verticis gyrata
231
- CVA *see* stroke
- CVP line 788
- CVS examination *see*
cardiac
- CXR 736-41
AP 741F
coin lesion 171
collapse, lobar 736,
737F, 739F
consolidation 739F
linear opacities 738F
lung nodules 738
LVF 129F, 293F, 737F
nodules 738
opacities 738
pneumothorax 739
'ring' shadowing
155F, 738
- Cyanide 854
- Cyanosis 28, 46, 50,
150, 180
- Cyanotic congenital
heart disease
38, 150
- Cyclophosphamide 370
- Cyst 567, 756
arachnoid 487
Baker's 708
branchial 600
dermoid 596
epididymal 652
hydatid 444
pseudo 638, 639F
renal 312, 313F
us, 759F
sebaceous 596
thyroglossal 600
- Cystectomy 648
- Cystic
fibrosis 166 (*OHCS* 162)
hygroma 600
kidney 312, 313
- Cysticercosis 444
- Cystine crystals in
marrow 311F
- Cystinosis 310
- Cystinuria 312
- Cystitis 288
chemical 288, 418
Cystoscopy 648
- Cytochrome P450
system 223, 414,
703, 706
- Cytogenetics 351
- Cytokines 394, 534,
805, 858
- Cytomegalovirus 404
CMV retinitis 405F
HIV and 410
- Cytotoxic, cerebral
oedema on CT 760
drugs 528

D

- D&V 56, 240, 246, 388, 390
childhood (*OHCS* 168)
cholera 426
tropical 388
typhoid 426
- Dactylitis 553
- DAFNE 201
- Dag Hammarskjöld on
teamwork ix
- Dartos pouch
procedure 654

- Darwin, A. & C. 427
- Day-case surgery
discharge 595
- DBs 472, 498
- DCIS 605
- D-dimer blood tests
580, 769
- De Musset's sign 140
- De Quervain's
thyroiditis 210, 602
- Deafness 468 (*OHCS*
550)
- Death 6, 7
cap 251F
close encounters 429
meaningless or
meaningful?
373, 427
sudden see Sudden
death
whose matter? 427
- Decision
by patients 522
support 8
- Deep
brain stimulation
472, 498
vein thrombi see DVT
- Defect
abdominal wall, in
children 615
- Defence, legal 11, 570
- Defibrillation 784F
automatic 118,
122, 709
implant 152, 465F, 709
in VF see *endpapers*
- Deficiency syn. 281
- Degeneration
CNS 490, 492, 510
joint 546-542
muscle 514, 554
peripheral nerve 508
spinal cord 328, 471F
vertebral disc 512
- Dehiscence 582
- Dehydration, blood
picture 678
- Dehydroepiandro-
sterone 224
- Deiodinase 208
- Déjà vu 495
- Delirium tremens 282
- Delirium 488
post-operative 578
- Delorme's procedure 632
- Delusion of doubles
459
- Delusions 82, 488 (*OHCS*
316)
- Dementia 410, 431,
490-493
drugs & QALYs 493
screening tests 70,
85, 490
- Demographics 387
- Demyelinating
polyradiculoneuro-
pathy 508, 716
- Demyelination 500, 508,
712, 716
- Dengue fever 388,
432, 433
- Densitometry 697
- Density, electron 762
- Dental pathology 239F
- Dentate line 633F, 635F
- Dentistry (*OHCS* 580)
- Dent's disease 641
- Depersonalization 489
- Depression (*OHCS*
336-343)
in your patients 11
psychiatric
assessment 82
in yourself 9 (*OHCS*
332)
- Dercum's disease 596
- Derealization 489
- Dermatitis (*OHCS* 596)
herpetiformis 564
- Dermatological
signs of endocrin-
opathy 197
signs of systemic
disease 564
- Dermatomes 458
- Dermatomyositis 554
- Dermatophytes 440
- Dermoid cyst 596
- Descemet's membrane
269
- Descriptive terms,
radiology 735
- Designer drugs 853
- Detrusor unstable 651
- Devic's syndrome
500, 712
- Devil's grip 66
- DEXA scan 697
- Dexamethasone
suppression
test 217
- Dextrocardia 37-8
(*OHCS* 646)
- Dextrose IV 590, 680,
844
- DHEA 219, 224
- Diabetes
Diabetes insipidus
232, 678
- Diabetes mel. 198-205
amyotrophy 204
autonomic
neuropathy 204
biguanides 200
BP in 203
classification 198
coma 842, 844
complications 202
control 200
DPP-4 inhibitors
definition 198
dermatomyositis 564
diagnosis 198
diet 200, 236
drugs for
type 1 (insulin) 201
type 2 200
education 200
emergencies 842,
844
eye lesions 202
feet/foot care 204
fostational 199
gliptins 200
glitazone 200
GLP analogues 200
- Diabetes mel....
continued
hyperosmolar 844
hypertension 203
insulin 201
intercurrent illness
201
resistance 199
syndrome x 199
sliding scale 591
starting in type 2
DM 201
ketoacidosis 842
microalbuminuria 314
nephropathy 202,
309, 314
oral hypoglycaemics
200
retinopathy 202, 203F
risk factors 198
skin lesions 564
sulfonylurea 200
receptor binder 200
surgery, pre-op 590
symptoms 198
toes 204
treatment 200, 203
type 1 & 2 defined 198
neuropathy 204
- Diagnosis methods 13
- Dialysis 298
- Diamorphine IV 576
- Diaphragm
gas under 609F, 763
paralysis 180
raised 736
- Diaphragm palsy 736
- Diarrhoea 246
bloody 246, 390
enteric 426
food poisoning 390
traveller's 377, 388
tropical 388
- Diastolic murmurs
44-45F
- DIC 333F, 346, 347F
- Dice, a last throw 775
- DIDMOAD syn 232
- Diet 236
diabetic 200
elemental 275
gluten-free 280
healthy 236
hospital 586
renal failure 296, 302
- Dieulafoy lesion 252
- Difficult patients 16
- Digastric 601F
- Digital subtraction
angiography 759F,
761F
- Dignitas 510
- Digoxin 108
interactions 768
effect on ECG 92
levels 766
poisoning 854
- Dihydroxyphenyl-
alanine, PET 206
- Dilatation, gut, AXR
742, 743F
- Dilated
cardiomyopathy
146
- Diltiazem 108, 632
- Dimorphic blood
film 322
- Diphtheria 421 (*OHCS*
158)
immunization 391
- Diphyllbothriasis
444F
- Diplococci 374F, 418F
- Diplomonadid 436F
- Diplopia 76, 453
Fresnel prism 211
- Dipsticks 287, 678
- Disability 479, 500
- Disasters 862
- Disc, cervical 513F
lumbar 544, 545F
(*OHCS* 674)
optic 77
- Discharge
genital 418
ENT (*OHCS* 544)
nipple 605
skin 663
- Discoid rash 557F
- Diseases aren't always
bad 490
- Disinhibition 490,
492, 503
- Disorientation 488,
578
- Dissecting aneurysm
88, 106, 470, 656
imaging 763
type A 754F
- Disseminated
intra-vascular
coagulation see
DIC 333F, 346, 347F
- Dissociated sensory
loss 450, 520
- Dissociative state 489
- Distributive justice 10,
223, 315
- Diuretic U&E picture 678
- Diuretics 304
- Diverticular disease
257F, 630
sigmoid 757F
- Divisions, gut 611
- Dizziness 35, 466
- DKA 842
- DLBCL 356
- DMSA study 753F
- DNA
cancer and 524
damage by free
radicals 511
dsDNA antibodies 556
repair disorders 524
(*OHCS* 648)
viruses 376
- DNMT3A 351
- 'Do not resuscitate...'
see *endpapers*
- Dobutamine 106, 178,
815, 829
- Doctor-patient issues
Ch.1, 449
- Döhle body 325F
- Doll's eye 803
- Donath-Landsteiner
antibodies 332
- Donovanosis 416

- Dopamine 454, 498
agonists 499
in dystonia 472
neurones 455
renal dose 815
scintigraphy 760
- Doppler ultrasound
661, 750F
- Dorsal columns 74, 450,
471F, 712, *see also*
Friedreich's ataxia
- Dorsal root ganglion
513F
- Dorsal midbrain syn 722
- Dorsalis pedis pulse 47
- Dose, typical radiation
733
- DOT (directly observed)
R 398
- Dot haemorrhages 203F
- Downbeat nystagmus 76
- Down's syndrome
(OHCS 152)
- Doxycycline 380, 443
- Dracunculus*
medinensis 442
- Draining
ascites 778, 779F
chest 184, 780, 781F
effusion 779
- Drains, surgical 573
- Dreams
feeding 9
lucid 489
memory
consolidation 197
- DRESS 251
- Dressler's syn 712
- Dribbling, terminal 65
- Drip & suck 746
- Drips, inserting 774
colour coding 775F
IV fluid regimen 680
- Driving & heart 152
and seizures 153
- Drop attack 464, 502
- Drug-eluting beads 270
- Drug history 48, 64
- Drug rash with
eosinophilia 251
- Drugs 8
abuse of 384
alternatives to 8
antibiotics 378–382
CNS 454
compliance/
concordance
issues 3, 12
CVS 108
interactions 768
is this new drug any
good? 670
pre-op care 568
prescribing 8
resistance 378,
409, 419
therapeutic ranges
766
- Drumstick 325F
- DSA 761F
cerebral 761F
gut 623F
leg 659F
renal 759F
- DTPA, diethylene-
triamine-penta-
acetic acid 190, 752F
- DTs 282
- Dubin–Johnson 712
- Duchenne's dystrophy
514 (OHCS 642)
- Duct, ectasia 605
obstruction 250
- Duke criteria 145
- Dukes' classification, ca
colon 619
- Dumping syn 624, 628
- Duodenal ulcer 242, 255F
surgery 626
- Duplex US 579F, 750F
- Dupuytren's 32, 712, 713F
- Dural ectasia 486
- Dura mater 513F
- Duroziez's sign 140
- Dust inhalation 192
- DVLA 153
- DVT 580
anticoagulation 345
high risk 369
prophylaxis 580, 828
recurrent 368
ultra sound 579F
Wells score 581
- Dwarf tapeworms 444
- Dynatome 513
- Dysarthria 80
- Dyscalculia/acalculia 714
- Dysdiadochokinesis 73,
503, 712
- Dysembryoplastic
neuroepithelial
tumour 494
- Dysentery 247
amoebic 436
bacillary 426
- Dyskinesia 472
- Dyslipidaemias 704
- Dysmorphia 231F
- Dyspepsia 59, 242
- Dysphagia 70, 240
- Dysphasia 80–81F,
453, 474
- Dysphonia 80
- Dyspnoea 34, 48,
49, *see also*
breathlessness
emergencies 796
- Dyspraxia 80
- Dysrhythmias 118–126,
see arrhythmias
- Dystonia 473
- Dystrophia myotonica
514
- Dysuria 64, 285

E

- E. coli* 272
enteritis 246, 390
haemolytic uraemic
syn 308
multiresistance 378
type-O157 toxin
308, 390
- E621 & E951 268
- Ear anatomy 469F
- Early diastolic murmur
44
- Early morning urine
309, 393
- Eating disorders 279
(OHCS 348)
- Eaton–Lambert 516
- EBM 668
- Ebola virus 388, 432
- e-bookings, 523
- Ebstein anomaly 142
- EBV 401
- ECG
ambulatory 102
AF 119F, 124
atrial flutter 119F, 125
AV block 119F
axis 90, 91F
bifascicular block 94
bradycardia 92, 119F
bundle branch
block 94
Ca²⁺ effects on QT 90
dual chamber pacing
126
ectopics/
extrasystoles 122
exercise ECG 102, 103
extrasystoles 122
gating, 754
images
AF/flutter 119F
anterior MI 98F
AV block 119F
Brugada syn 709F
capture beat 123F,
127F
complete heart
block 99F
fusion beat 123F,
127
heart block 99F
hyperkalaemia
689F
inferolateral MI 97F
J-wave 861F
LBBB 95F
lead positions 94F
LVH 135F
MI 97F, 98F, 113F,
115F
Mobitz I/II 119F
nomenclature 91F
paced rhythm
101F, 127F
pericarditis 149F
postero-lateral
MI 115F
RBBB 96F
torsade de pointes
123F
type 1 block 119F
type 2 block 119F
VI–V₆ positions 94F
ventricular
tachycardia
100F, 123F
hypertrophy 135F
VF 123F
VT 100F, 123F
Wenckebach 119F
WPW 125F
- K⁺ high 689F
- lead position 94F
- left axis deviation
90, 91F
- ECG... *continued*
method 90
myocardial infarct 92,
98, 112, 113F, 115F,
nomenclature
90, 91F
P wave 90F
paced rhythm 126F
PR interval 90, 91F
pre-op 569
pulmonary embolism
92
QRS 90, 91F
rate 91, 92
rhythm 90
sinus bradycardia
92
tachycardia 92
ST segment 90
depression 90, 91F,
92, 103F
elevation 90, 97F,
98, 112, 113F
strain pattern 92, 140
T wave 90
inverted 90, 113F
digoxin 92
PE 92
LBBB 94
RBBB 94
tachycardia 92
trifascicular block 94
U wave 91F
ventricular
hypertrophy 94
Echinococcus 444F
Echo time (TE), MRI 748
Echocardiography 106,
107F
stress 755
Echogenicity, us 735
Echopraxia 714
Eclampsia 308, 332, 580,
794 (OHCS 48)
Econocrats 10
Economics, health 10
Economy-class DVT
syn 581
Ecstasy poisoning 855
Ectopic calcification
214, 215F (*see*
calcification 206),
280
Ectopic testis 654
Ectopics *see*
extrasystole
Ectropion 504 (OHCS
417F)
Eczema 26, 48 (OHCS
596F), 400
herpetic 400
Edema *see* oedema
Edinger–Westphal 79F
Education for health
200, 202
Education, public
health 433
Edwardsiella 447
Effusion
pleural 52, 184
draining 778, 779F,
780
imaging 737F, 739F
pericardial 40, 106, 148

- Effusion... *continued*
draining 787
tamponade 814
- eGFR 300, 683
- Egophony 51, 54, 160
- Ehlers-Danlos syn 55,
138, 140, **143**, 311,
338, 482, 656, 824
(*OHCS* 643F)
- Ehrlichiosis 434
- Eisenmenger's syn 150
- Ejection systolic
murmur 44,
140, 142
- Ekblom's syn 712
- El Escorial diagnostic
criteria 511
- Elderly patient 12
- Electrocardiography
see ECG
- Electrolytes 682,
688–693
- Electromechanical
dissociation *see*
endpapers
- Electromyography
see EMG
- Electron density 762
- Electronic booking 523
- Electrophoresis 700
- Elemental enteral feed
275, 586
- Elephantiasis 443
- Elliptocytosis 332, 333F
- Embolism
amniotic (*OHCS* 89)
cholesterol 309
CNS 474, 476, 480
leg 658
pulmonary 92, 182,
828
recurrent 368, 828
fetal loss 556
systemic 116, 144, 474,
476, 480
- Embryo cryo-
preservation 531
- Emergency imaging
763F
- Emergent phenomena
197
- Emerging diseases 387
- EMG 508
- Emotion 5, 17
neuroendocrinology
225F
- Emotional
incontinence 478, 510
lability 478
unconcern 490
- Empathy, lack 503
- Emphysema 176
emergencies 822
surgical 621, 662, 738
ruptured
oesophagus 282
- Empyema 164, 184, 636
- EMU 309, 393
- Enablement Approach
478
- Encephalitis 834
Bickerstaff's 708
Herpes simplex 400
Japanese 377, 446
- Encephalopathy
hepatic 259
mitochondrial 475
spongiform 710
Wernicke's 728
- Encephalomyelo
neuropathies 509
- Encephalotrigeminal
angiomatosis 724
- Endarteritis obliterans
431
- Endocarditis 144
- Endocrine tumours
206, 215, 220, 226,
228, 230
- Endocrinopathy,
signs 197
- End-of-life drugs 537
- End-of-life queries 478
- Endoleak 656
- Endomicroscopy,
Confocal laser 273
- Endomysial antibodies
280, 555
- Endoscopic
colonic stenting 618
retrograde
cholangio-
pancreatography
see ERCP
US 750, 756
- Endoscopy 254, 256
dyspepsia criteria 242
wireless 256
- Endothelial growth
factors 33, 720
- Endothelial health 109
- Endotoxic shock 804
- Endotracheal tube
position on CXR 740
- Endovascular stent
480, 622
- Enemas 572,
barium 272, 756
double contrast,
757F
small bowel 756
- England and Wales
Mental Capacity
Act (2005) 571
- Enhancement
acoustic, US 750F
contrast, CT 744
- Enophthalmos 716
- Enoulment 16
- Entamoeba* 436F, 437F
- Enteral feeding 586
- Enteric fever 426
- Enterobacteria 378, 422
4th gen
cephalosporins 379
classification 375
nosocomial
pneumonia 160
Enterobius 442F
Enterococcus 420
blind R 382
cephalosporins 379
classification 375
resistance 378
SBE/IE 144
- Enterography 256
- Enterohepatic
circulation 251
- Enteropathic reactive
arthritis 552
- Enteroviruses 387
- Enthesitis 552
- Enthesopathy 552
- Enzyme inducers 702
- Eosinophil 325F
- Eosinophilia 324
- Eosinophilic granuloma
(*OHCS* 644)
- Ependymoma 471,
502, 520
- Epicondylectomy 507
- Epidemic myalgia 66
- Epidermal cyst 597F
- Epidermolysis bullosa
238
- Epididymo-orchitis 652
- Epidural
abscess 470
haemorrhage 486
- Epigastric
hernias 615F
pain in 57
aneurysms 57
antimalarials
and 396
cardiac 88
MI 112
cholecystitis
ehrlichiosis
gastritis 253
Ménétrier's
disease 720
pancreatic ca 276
peptic ulcers 242
vessels 617F
- Epigastrium 567
pain in 57
- Epigenetic and other
profiling 351
- Epilepsy 464, 494–497
driving and 153,
494, 497
counselling 494
diagnosis 494
drug levels 496, 766
investigation 494
localizing signs 495
non-convulsive 489
nurse specialist 496
pregnancy and
(*OHCS* 29)
status 489, 836
stopping R 497
treatment 496
types 494, 495
uncontrolled 496, 836
women with 497
- Epileptogenicity 494
- Epinephrine 454, 806,
see endpapers
- Episcleritis 562, 728
- Epistaxis 4, 340 (*OHCS*
560)
- Epley manoeuvre 466
(*OHCS* 555F)
- Epstein-Barr virus
see EBV
- Equation, risk analysis
664
- ERCP 267F, 276, 582, 636,
638, 756, 757F
CBD calculi 756F
- ERCP... *continued*
indications 756F
- Erectile dysfunction 222
- Ergocalciferol 690
- Error
at the bedside,
common ones 381
laboratory 383
standard, of mean
(statistics) 765
types I–II 670
- Eruktion/burps 58
- Erysipelas 420 (*OHCS*
598)
- Erythema
ab igne 280
chronicum migrans
564
marginatum 137F, 564
migrans 430 (*OHCS*
587)
multiforme 564, 565F
nodosum 275F, 564,
565F
palmar 32, 33, 260
- Erythroblasts 359F
- Erythromelalgia 360
- Erythromycin 380
- Erythropoietin 296,
320, 342
- ESBL 378
- Eschar 388F, 435
- Esophagus *see*
oesophagus
- Espundia 439
- ESR 366, 675
- Essential thrombo-
cythaemia 360
- Estimated GFR 683
problems with 300
- ET tube position 740
- Ethics 15, 315, 478, 571
economics and 10
end of life 7, 510
- Eu... defined 197
- Eubacterium* 447
- Euphoria 488, 511
- Eus 756
- Euthyroid but T4↑ 208
- EV71 387
- EVAR 656
- Evidence-based
medicine 668
- Evidence from trials
617F
- Ewart's sign 148
- Exam technique 84, 197
learning to gamble
672
- Examination
abdomen 60–3
back 544
breast 67
cardiovascular 36–45
chest 50–5
children 629 (*OHCS*
102)
cognitive 85, 490
coma 800, **803**
eye 3, **76–79**, 319F, 563F
gastrointestinal 60–3
general 24, 84
hands 30–3
locomotor system 542

- Examination...
continued
 memory 85
 mental state 82
 nails 32F, 321F, 553F
 neurological 72–81,
 456–9
 nerve root lesion
 456–9, 545
 nutritional 586
 psychiatric 82
 rectal 633
 respiratory 50–5
 rheumatological 542
- Exercise 87
 ECG 102, 103F
 syncope 464
 tests 102, 674
 tolerance 131
- Existence, our own...
 why? 16
- Existentialism,
 Kierkegaard 561
 Satre & Nietzsche 15
 (OHCS 471)
- Exomphalos 615
- Exophthalmos 68, 197, 211
- Exotic infections 446
- Experience
 and advice 19
 hands-on 772F
 limits to
 knowledge
 derived from 2
- Explosive diarrhoea 246
- Exposure, radiation 733
- Exsanguination 804
- Extended spectrum β
 lactamase 378
- Extensor, plantar 75, 451
- Extradural
 haemorrhage 486,
 487F
- Extraocular
 movements 803
- Extrapyramidal 451
 gait 471
- Extrasystole 122F
- Extravasation of
 cytotoxics 529
- Extrinsic
 alveolitis 188
Aspergillus clavatus
 168
 coagulation 339F
- Eye (OHCS ch.5)
 acuity *front*
endpaper
 in systemic
 diseases 562
- Eye, acuity *front*
endpaper
 in thyroid diseases
 211
 examination 76–9
 see also pupils
- Eyelid oedema 29
- F**
- F-18-fluorodeoxy-
 glucose (FDG) 753
- Fabry disease 712
- Face odd 231F
- Facial, nerve 76, 504
 pain 71
- Facing death 7
 for the doctor 793
- Facioscapulohumeral
 muscular
 dystrophy 514
- Factitious diseases
 hypoglycaemia 206
 Münchausen's 720
 pseudoseizures 836
- Factors, clotting 339F
 deficiency 258, 338
- Faecal 246, 280
 fats 246
 incontinence 58
 occult blood 618
 softeners 248
 urgency 246
- Faeces
 bloody 246, 426, 436
 hard 248
 light (pale) 250
 stinking/fatty see
 steatorrhoea
 watery 246, 426, 436
- Faecal-oral 390, 406,
 426, 432, 436, 442
- Failure, and its
 transformation 5
- Faints 88, 152, 182, 464,
 709, 828
- Falci-parum 394–7
 ward test 383
- Fallot's tetralogy 151
- Falls 13, 26, 464, 471
- False localizing signs 502
- Familial adenomatous
 polyposis 524, see
 also Gardner
- Family
 history 20, 34, 48,
 56, 64
 trees 21F
- Famous tree, Cos 0
- Fanconi
 anaemia 712
 syndrome 310
- Fantastic diseases
 see non-existent
 diseases 720, 721F
- Farmer's lung 188
- Fascia, spermatic 653F
- Fasciculation 451, 510, 514
- Fasciitis necrotizing 662
- Fasciitis/enthesitis 552
- Fascioliasis 445
- Facioscapulohumeral
 muscular
 dystrophy 514
- FAST acronym 475
- Fastidious organisms 446
- Fat embolism 335
- Fat necrosis 605
- Fatigability 514, 516
- Fatigue 27
 chronic 560 (OHCS 528)
- Fats 87, 704
 diet allowance
 236, 584
 faecal 246, 280
- Fatty liver disease 269
 abnormal LFT 265
 pregnancy (OHCS 26)
- Favism (broad beans)
 332
 FBx07 499
- FDG PET 490, 529, 753, 754
- FDP, D-dimers 340, 346
- Fecal-oral see faecal-
 oral
- Feeding 586
 enteral 586
 parenteral 588
- Feelings take
 precedence 16
- Feet, diabetic 204
- Felty's syn 548, 712
 autoantibodies 555
- Femoral
 artery
 arteriogram 759F
 Doppler 579F
 diagram, groin 617F
 hernia 614
 nerve 457, 617F, 785F
 stab 785F
 vein 627F
 Doppler and DVT
 579F
- Femtolitres (10^{-15} L) 318
- Fenestration 466
- Fertility in cancer 531
- Festinant gait 498
- Fetal
 alcohol syn 282
 loss (recurrent) 368
- Fetor
 hepaticus 258
 oris 59
- FEV₁ 156
 normal values 176
- Fever 24, 84, 386
 diurnal variation 24
 enteric 426
 haemorrhagic 432
 intermittent 386
 measuring 24
 Mediterranean 386
 night sweats 27,
 352–360
 Pel–Ebstein fever 354
 post-operative 578
 PUO 386
 Q 434
 relapsing 430
 rheumatic 136
 saddle-back 386
 tropical 388
 unexplained 386
- FFP 342
- Fibre 236, 248
 in diet 236
 fermentation and
 bloating 277
- Fibrillation
 atrial (AF) 124
 ventricular, see
endpapers 784,
 816, 849
- Fibrin degradation
 products 340, 346
- Fibrinoid necrosis
 132, 642
- Fibrinolysis 339
- Fibrinolytics 114, 339, 344
 mechanism 339
- Fibroadenoma 604
- Fibroadenosis 604
- Fibrolamellar hcc 270
- Fibroma 596
- Fibromyalgia 560
- Fibrosing alveolitis 51,
 190, 190F, 738
- Fibrosis
 cystic 166
 massive 192
 mineral 192
 pulmonary 190
- Field defect 77, 226, 453,
 462, 474, 503
- Field's stain 383, 418F
- Filariasis 443
- Filling defect, IVU 759F
- Film, blood
 image 323F
 staining 383
 normal 317
- Finger 31
 agnosia 714
 clubbing 32, 33, 33F
 –nose test 73
- Finnegans wake* 471
- funny walks 471
- mid-stream 287,
- First aid (OHCS 724), see
endpapers
- First do no harm 8, 15, 772
- Fish in diet 236
- Fisher 708, see also
 Bickerstaff,
- Fissure, anal 632
- Fistula 567
 Crohn's 274
 in diverticulosis 630
 in-ano 632
- Fitness 87
- Fits 494–7
 unending 836
- Fitz-Hugh-Curtis
 synd 712
- fL (femtolitre (10^{-15} L) 318
- Flaccid paralysis see
 Paralysis flaccid
- FLAIR sequence 748
- Flank 567F
 pain, causes:
 adrenal tumours
 220
 diverticulitis 630
 endometriosis
 (OHCS 288)
 glomerulonephritis
 300
 liver tumours 270
 lumbar disc
 problems 544
 lymphoma 356
 obstructive
 uropathy 642
 peri-aortitis 642
 perinephric
 abscess 386
 phaeochromo-
 cytoma 220
 polycystic dis. 313F
 psoas abscess 653
 renal
 vein thrombus
 296
 emboli/infarct
 308

Flank... *continued*
 vascular dis. 308
 abscess 386
 stones 640
 tumours 646
 Flap/asterixis 50F, 62,
 258, 260, 472
 Flatulent dyspepsia 636
 Flatulence 58
 Flaviviruses 376
Flavobacterium 447
 Flavonoids 236
 Flesch's formula 3
 Flexion 31, 544
 Flight of ideas 83
 Fluoroscopy 241
 Flow
 bladder 642
 obstruction
 prostatic 644
 volume loops 159F
 venous 62
 Flu 402
 in travellers 388
 Flucloxacillin 378
 Fluid balance 24, 680
 assessing 680
 in surgery
 shock 804
 Fluid thrill 60
 Flukes 445
 Fluoroscopy 241F
 Fluorosis 239F
 Flushing 221, 278
 Flutter atrial 119F, 125
 Focal epilepsy 495
 Focal segmental
 glomerulosclerosis
 297
 Fogarty catheter 659
 Folic acid 326
 Follicle-stimulating
 hormone 224, 226,
 see also FSH,
 Follicular cancer 602
 Follow through, small
 bowel (SBFT) 756F
 Fontaine classification
 658
 Foot
 drop 450, 471, 506,
 510, 512, 514
 diabetic 204
 Food
 additives 268
 for travellers 377
 good for you 236
 poisoning 390F
 Forced expiratory vol
 see FEV₁
 Foregut 611
 Fortification spectra
 462
 Fossae 567
 Foster Kennedy 712
 Fournier gangrene 662
 Fourth heart sound 42
 Foville's syndrome 505
 Fracture, pelvic 745F
 Free radicals 511
 MND 511
 Fremitus 51, 52, 54
 Frequency, urinary
 64, 651

Fresh frozen plasma
 256
 Fresnel lenses 211
 Friedrich's ataxia 74,
 77, 143, 471, 712
 Froin's syndrome 714
 Froment's sign 31, 456
 Frontal lobe 503
 Fronto-temporal
 dementia 490, 510
 Fruit, 3, 5 or 9 pieces per
 day? 236
 FSH 224, 226 (OHCS 256)
 Fulminant hepatic
 failure 258
 Functional enquiry 22
 Fundoplication 626
 Fundoscopy 38, 203
 (OHCS 413)
 Fungi
 generalized 440F
 lung 168
 skin 440 (OHCS 598)
 Funnel chest 55
 Funny bone 507
 'Funny feelings' 508
 Furuncle 596
 Fusidic acid 380
 Fusion beat 123F, 127
 Fvc 156

G

G6PD 332, 333F, 394, 396
 GABA 454, 463
 Gadolinium, contrast
 762
 Gait 74, 471
 festinant 498
 wide-based 728, 729F
 Galactocoele 604
 Galactorrhoea 228
 Gallbladder 636, 742
 calculi 757F
 cancer 250
 CT 757F
 MRCP 757F
 perforation 636
 polyps 266
 porcelain 742
 US 750F
 Gallium scan 529
 Gallop rhythm 42
 Gallstone(s) 636
 CT 757F
 ileus 612, 636
 imaging 742
 MRCP 757F
 US 750F
 GALS, locomotor exam
 542
 Gambling 455
 Gambling doctors 672
 Gamma gt 283
 Gamma rays 752
 Gamma-glutamyl
 transpeptidase
 (γ-GT) 250, 260,
 282, 702
 Ganglia 596
 basal 269, 448F, 451,
 472, 597F
 Ganglionopathy 509
 Gangosa (yaws) 430

Gangrene 204, 662
 Fournier's 662
 leg 658
 Meleney's 662
 meningococcal 729F
 Ganser syn 489
 Gardner's syn 714
 Gas
 blood see blood gas
 extraluminal, AXR 740
 intramural, AXR 740
 pattern
 AXR 740, 741F
 production
 (abdominal) 277
 Gastrectomy 624
 Gastric
 bypass 628
 cancer 620
 erosion gastritis
 242, 282
 lavage 852
 parietal cell
 antibodies 555
 stasis 240
 surgery 624
 ulcers 242
 Gastrin 730
 Gastritis 242, 252, 253,
 282, 328
 Gastroenteritis 390
 childhood (OHCS 168)
 cholera 426
 diarrhoea 246
 chronic 410
 tropical 377, 388
 typhoid 426
 Gastrointestinal
 bleeding see GI
 bleeding
 examination 60-3
 history 56
 Gastrointestinal
 stromal tumors
 278
 Gastro-oesophageal,
 ablation of the 244
 Gastro-oesophageal
 reflux disease 244
 Gastroparesis 240
 in diabetes 204
 Gastroschisis 615
 Gauss, Carl Friedrich 765
 Gc (gonococcus) 418
 GCS 802
 G-CSF 346
 Gelineau's syn 714
 Gelling 546
Gemella haemolysans
 447
 General
 anaesthesia 574
 (OHCS 618-630)
 paralysis (GPI) 431F
 practice (OHCS ch.6)
 Generalized epilepsy
 495
 Generic health
 workers 2
 Genetics 524
 anti-oncogenes
 (OHCS 421)
 apoE4 variant 492
 BRCA mutations 524

Genetics... *continued*
 cancer 524
 cell cycle & disease
 (OHCS 648)
 counselling 313 (OHCS
 154)
 disease 524 (OHCS 152)
 DNA repair disorders
 524 (OHCS 649)
 gene, probes (OHCS
 154)
 tracking (OHCS 154)
 guardian of genome
 (OHCS 649)
 multiple
 malignancies 215,
 525 (OHCS 649)
 mutations 524
 germline (OHCS
 648)
 oncogenes 215
 ovarian cancer 524
 p53 gene (OHCS 649)
 preconception
 counselling
 (OHCS 2)
 prenatal diagnosis
 (OHCS 152)
 suppressor gene
 (OHCS 421)
 tumorigenesis (OHCS
 649)
 Genital
 herpes 400
 infection 416 (PV
 discharge), 418
 nonspecific 416
 sores/ulcers 400, 431,
 564 (OHCS 268),
 warts (OHCS 268)
 Genitourinary history
 64
 Gentamicin 381, 766
 1 or 2 doses/d? 766
 levels 766
 Geriatric medicine 12,
 Barthel's index 479
 confusion 488
 dementia 490
 disability 479
 discharge 13
 falls 26, 464
 giants 12
 handicap 479
 hypothermia 860
 incontinence 650
 faecal 58
 inter-dependency
 479
 NSF for elderly 13
 prescribing 8
 stroke 474-481
 transferring 479
 German measles (OHCS
 142)
 prevention 391
 Gerontology see
 Geriatrics
 Gerstmann 503, 714
 Gestalt impressions
 196F, 197
 Gestational DM 199
 Geste antagonistique
 473

- GFR 683
antibiotics 378–381
declining 301F
and drugs 8, 301
gentamicin 381, 766
estimated, problems
with 300
yGT 250, 260, 282, 678, 702
GT 250, 260, 282, **702**
GI
bleeding 252–5
emergencies 830
malabsorption 280
obstruction 612, 742–3
procedures 756
red cell study 753
Gianotti-Crosti rash 401
Giant cell arteritis 460,
558, 675
Giardiasis 436F
Giggling, odd 511
Gilbert's syn 714
Gilles de la Tourette 714
Gingivitis 238, 726
Gingivostomatitis 400
Girotra's triad: 247
GIST 271, 278
Gitelman syn 310
GKI infusion 591
Glandular fever 401
Glasgow Blatchford
253
Glasgow–Blatchford
system 252
Glasgow coma scale
see GCS
Grasp reflex 474
Glaucoma 460, 563F
(OHCS 430, 440)
steroid use 371
Gleason grade 647
Gliadin 280
α-gliadin 280
Glitazones 200
Global warming 372,
387, 433
Globular heart 148
Globus 241
pallidum 498
pallidus 269
hystericus 241
Glomerular filtration
see GFR
Glomerulonephritis 294
Berger's 294
Goodpasture's 294
Henoch-Schönlein
301
mesangiocapillary 296
minimal change 296
nephritic syn 294
proliferative 294
rapidly progressive
295
Glomerulosclerosis 314
focal segmental 297
Glomerulus 284F, 295F
Glossitis 238, 329F
Glossopharyngeal
nerve (XI) 76
bulbar palsy 511
lesions of 77
Glove and stocking
anaesthesia 508
Glucagon 844
Glucocorticoids 216, 370
Glucose 198, 844
and quinine 397
phosphate
dehydrogenase
deficiency 332
tolerance test 198
Glucose-6-phosphate
332, 396
Glucose-potassium-
insulin (GKI) 591
Glutamic acid 211
Gluten 280
Glycated Hb 200, 205,
262, 770
Glycogen storage
disease 718
Glycosuria 286
Glycosylated Hb 200,
205, 262, 770
GMP 222
Gnathostomiasis 388
Goitre 68
auscultation of 68
percussion of 68,
211F, 212, 602
Gonadotrophins 224, 226
'Gone off her legs'
26, 470
Gonorrhoea 418F
Good luck sign 506
Goodpasture's 294, 714
Goodsall's rule 632
GORD 244
Gottron's papule 32,
554, 564
Gout 550, 551F
radiology 543F
urate 694
GP access 523
GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors
ACS 114, 810
angina 108
stenting 110
GRA 220
GRACE score 811
Gradenigo's syn 77, 484
Graham Steell 44, 138
Gram
stain 383
+ve bacteria 375, 420
-ve bacteria 375, 422
Granulation tissue 663
Granuloma
annulare 564 (OHCS
586)
inguinale 416, 663
Granulomas, liver 266
Granulomata 562, 597
diseases causing
187, 728
Grasp reflex 503
Graves' disease 68, 208,
210, 211F, 603F
Grawitz tumour 646
Grey Turner's sign 638
Grief 2, 7 (OHCS 498)
Griffith's point 623
Group
learning 200
therapy (OHCS 376)
Group-and-save
requests 342, 569
Growth, factors 720
hormone 224, 226
acromegaly 230
placental 231
yGT 250, 260, 282,
678, 702
GTN 34, 88, 110, 632, 808
Guanosine
monophosphate
222
Guarding 61, 62, 608
Gubernaculum 615
Guillain-Barré syn 716
Guinea worm 442
Gum
hypertrophy 351F
infection 238, 726
GUM 408–418
Gumma **431**, 652
Gunn, Marcus 79
Gusto-lacrimal reflex
504
Gut
alcoholic 282
brain axis 277
cancer 618, 620
claudication 622
divisions 611
focussed hypnosis 277
lumen 235
Guyon's canal 507
Gynaecology (OHCS
241–311)
Gynaecomastia 62, 222

H
H. pylori see
Helicobacter
H2RA 242
HAART 415
HACEK organisms 144
Haemangioblastoma
471, 502, 726
Haemangioma 270,
271, 724
liver 751F
Haemangiopericytoma
206
Haemarthrosis 338
Haematemesis 56, 252
emergencies 830
with varices 254
Haematocele 652
Haematocrit 360
see also anaemia
Haematology values 769
Haematoma
extradural 486, 487F
perianal 632
subdural 486
Haematuria **286**
asymptomatic 649
dipsticks
false -ve 287
false +ve 287
macroscopic 286
microscopic 286
visible vs non-visible
286
when to refer?
286, 649
Haeme iron recycling
263
Haemobilia 252, **270**, 582
Haemochromatosis 262
Haemodialysis 299,
300, 304
Haemoglobin
fetal 334, 336, 337
Hb variants 334, 336
HbA_{1c} 198, 200, 201,
204, 203, 262,
270, 205
HbH disease 336
structure 337
Haemoglobinopathy
sickle-cell 334
thalassaemia 336
Haemoglobinuria
330, 332
paroxysmal 332, 718,
719F
Haemolysis 330–2
Haemolytic
anaemia 318, **330–2**
uraemic syn 308,
333F, see HUS,
Haemophagocytic
syn 401
Haemophilia 338, 339F
Haemophilus
ducreyi 416
immunization 391
influenzae 160,
166, **423**
meningitis 832
pneumonia 160
Haemoptysis 49
Haemorrhage 338
assess volume 609
adrenal 728
bladder 286, 648
cerebral 474
diverticular 630
extradural 486, 487F
flame 133, 562
GI 252, 254, 630,
631, 830
GU 648
intracranial 474
primary 579
reactive 579
rectal 631
red cell study 630, 753
retinal 133, 144, 202,
203F, 366F, 562
shock 579, 609, 804
splinter 32, 144, 145F
subarachnoid 482F,
782, 794
subconjunctival 563
subdural 486, 487F
Haemorrhagic
disease 338F, 340
fevers 432
shock 804
telangiectasia 722
Haemorrhagica
histrionica 720
Haemorrhoidectomy
634
Haemorrhoids 634
Haemosiderin 330, 660
Haemosiderosis 321
Haemospermia 647
Haemostasis 338
pre-op tests 341

- Hair loss 224 (*OHCS* 602)
 recession 222
- Hair on end sign 336
- Hairy leukoplakia 238
- Hajj 377 (*OHCS* 495)
- Halitosis 59, 282
- Hallucinations 82, 537
 (*OHCS* 316)
- Hallux valgus 542F
- Hamartomas 618
 Lisch nodules 518F
 Peutz-Jeghers' 524, 722
- Ham's test 332
- Hand
 examination 30, 542
 foot & mouth
 disease 376, 387
 and foot syn 334
 nerves 456, 506
 swelling 231
 -washing 31
- Hand-Schüller-Christian
 syn (*OHCS* 644)
- Handicap 479
- Handover, good 7, 19
- Hands-on skills 772F
- Hansen's/leprosy 428
- Hantavirus 387
- Haptoglobins 330
- Harrison's sulcus 55
- Hashimoto's dis. 212
- Hashitoxicosis 212
- HAT 401
- Haustra 740, 741F
- Hayfever 48
- HbA1c 198, 200, 205
 DCCT vs IFCC 770
- HBsAg 406, 407F
- HbSS/HbAS 334
- HCC 270
- hCG treatment 654
- Head, injury 486, 838
 /neck anatomy 601F
- Headache 460, 794
 analgesic overuse 460
 cluster 461
 emergencies 794
 post-LP 783
 tension 460
 thunderclap 482, 484
 worst ever 482, 484
 imaging 763
- Head-up tilt test 464
- Healing 429
- Health
 assessments, NICE 10
 cardiovascular 87
 competing
 definitions (*OHCS* 470)
 diet 236
 economists 10
 ideals 2
 illness behaviour
 235, 661
 index, ASA 569
 integrative, of 9
 interdependencies
 235, 479
 legal aspect 11
 measured by QALY 20
 mental, defined
 (*OHCS* 314)
 Mental Health Act 11
- Health... *continued*
 mortal dimensions 15
 nutrients & health
 236
 public 373, 387, 427
 old age 12
 reproduction (*OHCS* 1)
 salutogenesis 417
 your own health 9, 14
- Hearing, loss 468 (*OHCS* 550)
 tests, Rinne & Weber
 468
- Heart *see also* cardiac
 block, ECG 99F
 -burn 34, 59, 244, 245F
 failure 128-131
 CXR 129F, 736
 severe 812
- Heat exhaustion (*OHCS* 788)
- Heaves and thrills 37
- Heavy
 chain disease 364
 metal poisoning 854
- Heberden's nodes 30,
 32F, 546
- Heel-shin test 75
- Heinz bodies 330, 333F
- Helicobacter pylori* 242
 antibiotics 243
 class 1 carcinogen 242
 diagnostic tests
 243, 674
 dyspepsia 242
 eradication 243
 lymphoma/MALT 356
 Ménétrier's dis. 720
 peptic ulcers 242
 stomach cancer 620
- Heliotrope rash 554
- HELLP syn 258 (*OHCS* 26)
- Helminths 374
 classes 445F
 cestodes 374, 444F
 nematodes 442F
 trematodes 445F
- Hemianopia 77, 453F,
 462, 474, 480, 503
- Hemiballismus 81, 472
- Hemiblock 90, 94
- Hemicolecotomy 618, 619F
 bowel prep. for 572
- Hemidiaphragm 736
- Hemiplegia 474, 483
- Hemo... *see* haemo
- Hendra viruses 387
- Henoch-Schönlein 295,
 716, 717F
- Heparinization 114, 125,
 344, 811,
 prophylaxis 580
- Hepatic
 coma 259
 encephalopathy 259
 enlargement 63, 606
 failure 258
 fetor 62, 258
 flap/asterixis 50F, 62,
 258, 260, 472
 iron index 258
 lenticular disease 269
 metastases 271F
 neoplasia 270
- Hepatic... *continued*
 portal hypertension
 254
 Budd-Chiari 710
 renal syndrome
 259, 592
 siderosis 262
 tumour 270, 751F
- Hepatitis 406
 alcoholic 283
 autoantibodies 555
 autoimmune 265, 268
 drug-induced 251
 ischaemic 265
 serology, transfusion
 342, 407
 toxic 265
 vaccination 271, 377
 viral 406
- Hepatocellular
 biochemistry 678
 cancer 270
- Hepatocyte death 258
- Hepatogugular reflux
 37, 40
- Hepatolenticular
 degeneration 269
- Hepatoma 270, 606
- Hepatomegaly 63,
 353F, 606
- Hepatorenal syn 259, 592
- Hepatosplenomegaly
 606
- Hepcidin 320
- Herbalism, long QT 725
- Herceptin® 604
- Hereditary non-
 polyposis colon
 cancer 524
- Hernias 614
 brain 840
 disc 545F
 epigastric 614
 femoral 614
 hiatus 245F
 incisional 582, 614
 inguinal 616, 617F
 Littre's 614
 lumbar 614
 Maydl's 614
 muscular 514
 obturator 614
 others 614
 paraumbilical 261F,
 615F
 Richter's 614
 Spigelian 614
 subfalcine 487F
 umbilical 261F, 615F
- Herniorrhaphy 614
- Herniotomy 614
- Heroin 854
- Herpangina (*OHCS* 143)
- Herpes 376F, 400
 encephalitis 400, 832
 genital 400
 gladiatorum 400
 Ramsay Hunt syn 505
 simplex 400
sine herpete 505
 viral classification
 376
 zoster 77, 400, 458F
- Hesitancy 65
- Hesselbach's Δ 616
- Heterophil antibody
 401
- Heuristics 13
- Heyde's syndrome 257
- HHV 376
- HHV-8 and neoplasia
 411
- 5-HIAA 278
- Hiatus hernia 245F
 surgery 626
- HiB immunization 391
- Hiccups 453
- Hickman line 346, 348,
 536, 589F
- HIDA scan 636
- Hidradenitis
 suppurativa 27, 596
- Highly active
 antiretroviral
 therapy 415, *see*
also HAART
- Hila, CXR 736
- Hilar nodes 187, 736
- Hindgut 611
- ¹³C-hiolien 280
- Hippocampus 448F, 492
 sclerosis 494
- Hippocrates 0F
 "1st do no harm" 772
 oath 0
- Hirsutism 222
- Histiocytosis 718
- Histoplasma 440F
- History-taking 20-85
 blackouts 465
 cvs 88
 elderly patient 12
 functional 22, 23
 psychiatric 11, 82
 questions 4, 20
 before specialist
 referral 25
 rheumatological 541
- Hiv 408-415
 antiretrovirals 413-4
 complications 410
 diagnosis 408
 economics 409
 eye 405F
 HAART 413, 415
 managing
 opportunistic
 infections 409, 411
 mouth 238, 239F
 needle-stick 412
 prevention 408, 412
 what every doctor
 should know 412
- HLA
 B8, SLE 556
 B27, ank. spond. 552
 B51, Behcet's 708
 B53, malaria,
 protective 394
 DQB1, sarcoidosis 186
 DR1, rheumatoid 548
 DR2, +ve in
 narcolepsy,
 Gelineau's
 syndrome 65
 SLE 556
 DR3, +ve in
 Addison's 218

- HLA... *continued*
 autoimmune
 hepatitis 268
 dermatitis
 herpeticiformis
 280, **564**
 DM type I 198
 Graves' 202
- HLA DR3, +ve in
 membranous
 GN 294
 myasthenia 516
 Sjögren's 724
 SLE 556
- DR4, +ve in:
 Addison's 218
 DM type I 198
 pemphigus (*OHCS*
 602)
 rheumatoid 548
- DRB1, +ve in
 Fanconi anaemia
 712
 MS 500
 sarcoidosis 186
 matching, transplant
 305, 350, 353, 358
 transfusion reaction
 342
- HNCC 524
- Hoarseness 48, 170,
 722 (Ortners
 Cardiovascular
 Syndrome) (*OHCS*
 568)
- Hobbling 455
- HOCM 38, 146
- Hodgkin's disease 354
- Hoffman's reflex 451
- Holism 197
- Holistic approach to
 sexual health 417
- Holmes-Adie 79
- Holmes, Sherlock 13,
 257, 389
- Holter ECG 35, 102, 103
- Home dialysis 298
- Home helps, etc. 449
- Home Office class C
 drug 385
- Homocysteine and
 angina/MI 112, 326
 B₁₂ 329
 stroke 476
- Homocystinuria 720
- Homografts 142
- Homonymous
 hemianopia see
 Hemianopia
- Honeycomb lung 186,
 188, 190
- Hookworms 320, 442**F**
- Hope 7
- Hormone replacement
 therapy 696
- Horner's syndrome 52,
 716, 803
- Hospital-acquired
 infection see
 nosocomial
- Hot/cold nodules 209
- Hounsfield scale 744
- House-jobs, surviving 9
- Howell-Jolly 322, 323**F**
- How to...
 diagnose 13
 take a history 20
- HRS 259
- HRT 696 (*OHCS* 256)
 for men 223
- Hsv 376**F**, 400
- 5-HT 278, 454, 455
 in cluster headache
 461
 in migraine 462
- 5-HT1f 455
- HTLV
 -I, II, III, IV 376
 -1 myelopathy 520
 classification 376
 lymphoma 356
 tropical paraplegia
 520
- Hugs 8
- Human rights *not to be*
 Belding Scribner 315
 bullied 16
 denied dignity 531
 discriminated
 against 13
 forced to be 595
 ignored, as carers,
 as 'too difficult'
 449
 judged by doctors
OHCS 319)
 kept alive 7
 starved of food 279
 treated ...
 as means rather
 than ends 2
 by untrained staff
 595
 without consent
 11 Jehovah's
 Witness 343
 unfairly (justice) 10
 violated by zealous
 staff (*OHCS* 174)
- Human
 albumin solution
 342, 778
 chorionic
 gonadotropin 535
- Fertilisation &
 Embryology Act
 571 (*OHCS* 293)
- immunodeficiency
 virus see HIV
- T-cell leukaemia
 virus see HTLV
- T-lymphotropic virus
 376, see HTLV
- Tissue Act 571
- Humanities & medicine
 5, 17 (*see also*
 literature &
 medicine)
- Hungry bones syn 214
- Huntington's chorea 716
- Hus 308
- Hydatid 444**F**
 Morgagni 654
- Hydrocele 615, 652
 us 751**F**
- Hydrocephalus 399, 404,
 444, 464, 471, 482,
 502, 840
- Hydrocephalus...
continued
 normal pressure
 471, 490
- Hydrocortisone 821
- Hydrogen breath
 test 280
- Hydronephrosis 642,
 645**F**
- 5-hydroxyindoleacetic
 acid 278
- 21-hydroxylase 218
- 5-hydroxytryptamine
 see 5HT
- Hydroxocobalamin
 326, 328
- Hygiene 377, 390
- Hygroma, cystic 600
- Hymenolepis* 444
- Hyoid bone 601**F**
- Hyper-
 acusis 504
 acute T waves 112
 aesthesia 561, 711
 aldosteronism 220
 ammoniaemia 497
 androgenism 197, **222**
 baric oxygen 662,
 854, 858
 bilirubinaemia **250**, 714
 inherited 318, 710
 calcaemia 640, **690**
 in cancer 526
 in myeloma 362
 nephropathy 306
 calcauria 640
 cholesterolaemia 704
 cortisolism 216
 dynamic circulation
 318
 echoic on ultrasound
 271
 eosinophilia 324, 718
 glycaemia 198
 emergency 842
 hidrosis 27
 homocysteinaemia
 720
 IgD syndrome 386
 infestation 442
 insulinaemia 206
 kalaemia 299, 310,
688, 849
 ECG 689**F**
 lactic acidosis 844
 lipidaemia 199, **704**
 magnaemia 692
 mobile joints 143, 269
 natraemia 686
 nephroma 646
 osmolar coma 844
 oxaluria **312**, 582, 640
 parathyroidism
 214, 753
 MIBI study 753
 pnoea 53
 phosphataemia
 300, 692
 pigmentation 32
 palmar creases 28
 plasia 724
 adrenal 216
 congenital 218
 prolactinaemia 228
- Hyper-... *continued*
 pulmonary OA 170
 pyrexia 574
 reflexia 451
 segmented
 neutrophil 327**F**
 sensitivity
 pneumonitis 445
 type I 168, 188
 type III 806
 type IV 168
 sexuality 455
 splenism **367**, 712
 tension 132
 aldosterone **132-4**,
 221
 idiopathic
 ('benign')
 intracranial
 77, **502**
 images 203**F**
 malignant **134**, 135,
 562**F**
 portal 254
 pregnancy 308
 (*OHCS* 48), 710
 retinopathy 134,
 562**F**
 thyroidism **210**, 211**F**
 eyes 211
 goitre 211
 lumps 602
 storm 844
 symptoms 22
 signs of 68, 210
 trophic
 cardiomyopathy
 146 (*see also*
 HOCM)
 trophy, prostate 644
 uricaemia 346, 640,
694
 ventilation 180, 464
 viscosity 366
- Hyphae 441**F**
- Hyphema 505
- Hypnosis 277, 575
- Hypnotherapy 277
- Hypnotics **27**, 468, 488
- Hypo-
 active sexual desire
 disorder 711
 aliphilipoprotein-
 aemia 705
 androgenism 222, 224
 betalipoproteinaemia
 705
 calcaemia 692
 chondriasis 35
 chromia **320**, 321**F**,
 322
 chondrium 567, 712
 cretin (orexin) 714
 glossal nerve 601**F**
 glycaemia 206, 464
 emergency 844
 gonadism 223, 260
 kalaemia 310, **688**
 magnaemia 690,
693
 natraemia 686
 in DM 842
 in DI 232
 in SIADH 687

Hypo-... *continued*
 parathyroidism 214
 phosphataemia 589,
 678, **692**, 698,
 rickets 310, 698
 physectomy 226
 phytitis 224, 232
 pituitarism 224, 846
 proteinaemia 184, 700
 reflexia 451
 splenism 280, 322,
 323**F**, 334, **367**
 tension 38, 464, **804**
 intracranial 486
 thalamic syn 730
 thermia 860
 therna area **30F**
 thyroidism 22, **212**
 coma 844
 lumps 602
 signs of 68, 212
 storm 844
 subclinical 213
 symptoms 212
 tonia 451
 ventilation 156, **180**, 195
 volaemic shock 804
 Hypocupric
 myelopathy 471
 Hypomimesis 498
 Hyporeninaemic
 hypoaldo-
 steronism 262
 Hypoxaemia 156, **180**
 CO poisoning 854
 cyanosis 28, 50
 resp. failure 180
 Hysteria *see* medically
 unexplained
 symptoms
 or Münchhausen's 720

I

¹³¹I 210, 752**F**
 I am sailing into the
 dark 492
 Iatrochemistry 452
 IBS 276
 ICA aneurysm **761F**
 DSA, 3D **761F**
 Ichthyosis 564
 ICP **†** 502, 840
 idiopathic ('benign')
 502
 signs 460, 502, 840
 venous thrombosis
 484
 ICSI 531
 ICT, visceral
 leishmaniasis 439
 Icterus (jaundice) 250
 Ideal, body wt 446
 IV contrast 762
 Ideals 2
 Idiopathic
 Bell's palsy 504
 DI 232
 dystonia 473
 Fanconi syn 310
 hypercalciuria 640
 intracranial hyper-
 tension 502, 503
 periaortitis 642, 643

Idiopathic... *continued*
 scrotal oedema 648
 thrombocytopenia,
 see ITP **338**, 721
 IE 144
 IFG 198
 IFN (interferon) 406,
 500, 646
 alpha 353, 500
 beta 500, 722
 IgA nephropathy
 301, 708
 IGF 206, 224-6
 IGT 198
 Ileocaecal valve 272, 612
 Ileostomy 584, 585**F**
 Ileus 567, 612
 AXR 742-3**F**
 gallstones 636, 637
 paralytic 612
 Iliac fossa pain 567
 Illness behaviour
 235, 661
 Imaging *Ch.17*
 acute cauda equina
 763
 acute pulmonary
 oedema 763
 acute renal injury 763
 and acutely unwell
 patients 763
 arterial, limb 658
 cardiac 754, 755**F**
 cervical spine 763
 CNS 467**F**, 475**F**, 485**F**,
 487**F**, 545**F**, **760**
 ECG-gating 754
 emergency 763
 gastrointestinal
 630, **756**
 headache 763
 joints 543**F**
 neuro 760
 peritonism 763
 pneumothorax 763
 tension 763
 radionuclide in
 cardiology 754
 renal injury, acute 763
 suspected thoracic
 dissection 763
 tension
 pneumothorax **763F**
 testicular torsion 763
 thoracic dissection
 763
 thyroid 602, 752
 urinary tract 758
 with contrast 762
 Imidazole agonists 418
 Imipenem 381
 Imitating postures 503
 Imagination, role in
 consultations 16
 Immune
 complexes 294, 338
 compromise 408
 hypoglycaemia 206
 thrombocytopenia
 338
 tolerance 266
 Immunization 391
 hepatitis 271
 influenza 402

Immunization...
 continued
 pneumococcal 391
 children 160
 Immunoglobulins 362,
 363**F**, 364, 700
 Immunologically active
 molecules 197
 Immunomodulation 273
 Immunoparesis 362
 Immunoproliferative
 small intestine
 disease 356
 Immunosuppression
 HIV 408-411
 as therapy **370**, 549
 in transplant 263, 305
 Immunotherapy 648
 Impaired fasting
 glycaemia *see* IFG
 Impaired glucose
 tolerance *see* IGT
 Impairment 479
 Impedance, acoustic,
 us 750
 Impotence 222
 Inappropriate ADH **†** 687
 Incidence 665
 Incisions 567
 hernias in 582, 614
 transurethral 644
 Inclusion-body
 myositis 514
 Incontinence
 faeces 58
 urine 64, **650**
 Incubation times for **††**
 in travellers 389
 Indeterminate colitis 273
 Indications, ERCP 756
 Indigestion 59, **242**
 Indium scan,
 gastrinoma **731F**
 Industrial lung dis. 192
 Infantile hemiplegia 74
 Infarction 466
 brainstem 474
 cerebral 453, **474-481**,
 760 *see also* stroke
 corticospinal 450
 internal capsule 450
 intestinal 622
 lacunar 474
 mesenteric 622
 midbrain 503
 myocardial 112-6
 emergency 808-10
 nail 32
 pituitary 846
 renal 285
 venous 484
 Infections abroad 388-91
 Infectious
 hepatitis 406
 mononucleosis 401
 Infective
 endocarditis 36, 38,
 144, **145F**
 mastitis 605
 Inferior vena caval
 filter 580
 Inflammatory bowel
 disease 272-5
 Influenza 163, **402F**

Infrared coagulation 634
 Infusion, GKI 591
 Inguinal
 anatomy **617F**
 canal **617F**
 hernia 614-617, 615**F**,
 616, **617F**
 Inhalers 174, **175**
 Injury, acute kidney
 290-292
 Ino **78**, 500
 INR 340
 and surgery 592
 Insecticides 855
 Insomnia 27
 Insulin 200, 201
 glargine 201
 in ketoacidosis 842
 intensive treatment
 works 198, 201
 -like growth factor
 230, **224**, *see* IGF
 resistance 199, 236
 ↓by high-fat diets
 236
 sliding scale 591
 tolerance test 224
 Insulinoma 206
 Integrative medicine
 9, 231
 Intellect 70, 503
 Interferon *see* IFN
 Intermediate care 13
 Intermittent
 claudication 658, 718
 dysphagia 240
 fevers 386
 peritoneal dialysis 298
 Internal capsule 450
 International
 normalized ratio
 see INR
 Internet 669
 Internuclear
 ophthalmoplegia
 78F, 501
 Interosseal 456
 Interpretation,
 radiology image
 735
 Interstitial
 nephritis 306
 pneumonitis 738
 Intertrigo **440F**
 Intervertebral disc
 lesions 512, 544,
 545**F** (*OHCS* 674)
 Intestinal
 flukes 445
 haemorrhage 252
 helminths 631
 injury (*OHCS* 726)
 malabsorption 280
 malrotation 628
 obstruction 612
 Intestinal metaplasia
 244
 Intoxication, water 855
 Intracranial
 hypertension *see* ICP
 hypotension 486
 masses 502
 pressure 502, 840
 Intra-epidermal ca 598

Intravenous
 drips 680
 feeding 588, & see *iv*
 fluids 680
 pyelogram 758, 759F
 transfusion 342
 urogram 758

Intrinsic
 coagulation 339F
 factor 328
 antibodies 555

Intuition 2, 666, 668

Intussusception 629F

Inulin clearance 682

Inverse care law 10

Investigations
 bedside 418F
 in lung disease 156
 microscopy 383
 chest 156-9
 pre-op 569
 tests
 biochemical 673
 ward urine 678
 logic 668, 673-5
H. pylori 243, 674

Involuntary
 memory 19
 movement 472

Iodine
 -based contrast
 media 762
 Lugol's, Gram stain
 383
 pre-op 593
 thyrotoxicosis 845

Iodothyronine
 deiodinase 208

Ion channel
 antagonists 455

Ionizing radiation 733

IPPV/NIPPV 177 (see also
 COPD)

IPSID 356

IRIS 409

Iris Murdoch 492

Iritis/uveitis 562, 563F

Iron
 deficiency 320, 321F
 excess 262
 metabolism 263
 poisoning 854

'Ironed out' expression
 514

Irritable bowel syn
 276, 560

Ischaemia
 bowel 622
 cardiac 89, 110-6
 emergency 808-10
 risk-factor
 equation 664
 risk reduction 87,
 237, 704
 risk of surgery 568
 silent 102
 cerebral 474, 476, 480
 gut 622
 heart disease 89, 110-6
 emergency 808-10
 risk-factor
 equation 664
 risk reduction 87,
 237, 704

Ischaemia heart
 disease... *continued*
 risk of surgery 568
 silent 102
 limb 658

Ischiorectal abscess 632

tossa 633F

ISH 132

Islet cell tumour 206

Isopropyl 388, 389F

ISUIA 483

Itch 26, 250, 267

Itineraries of veracity 5

ITP, antibiotics 338

Iv
 antibiotics 378-82
 blood transfusion 342
 cannulation 774
 colour coding 775F
 fluids 680
 nutrition 588
 problems in cancer
 R 536

Ivu/IVP 758F

calculus 759F

duplex ureter 758F

filling defect 759F

renal calculus 759F

ureter 758F

duplex 758F

J
 J point 102, 103F

J waves 860, 861F

Jaboulay's repair 652

Jaccoud's arthropathy
 5570

Jacksonian fits 495

JAK2 360

Janeway lesions 38, 145F

Japanese encephalitis
 446
 vaccination 377

Jargon 3, 23

Jarisch-Herxheimer
 reaction 431

Jaundice 250
 drug-induced 251
 obstructive 636
 pre-op care 592
 tropical 388

JE, vaccination 377

Jehovah's Witness 343

Jervell-Lange-Nielsen
 syn 90, 716, 724

Joint
 aspiration 543, 546
 examination 30, 542
 infections of 541
 swelling 541
 Charcot 205
 gelling 546
 hypermobile 143, 269
 position sense 73, 75,
 328, 450
 rheumatoid 548, 549F

Jones criteria 136

Jugular
 cannulation 788
 internal 601F
 venous pressure 37,
 40, 41F, 481

Jung 668

Justice 10

Juvenile subcapsular
 opacity 518

Juxtaglomerular
 apparatus 305F,
 295, 682

JVP 36, 40, 41F, 681

K
 K-hole 385

Kala-azar 439

Kaliuresis (Fanconi, K †
 in urine) 712

Kallman's syn 223

Kant 15, 510

Kaolin cephalin time 340

Kaposi's sarcoma 716,
 717F

Kartagener 166 (OHCS
 646)

Kawasaki disease 558
 (OHCS 646)

Kayser-Fleischer 269

Keloids 596, 597F

Kennedy syndrome 510

Keratitis, HSV 400

Keratoacanthoma 598

Keratoconjunctivitis
 sicca 562, 724

Keratoderma
 blenorrhagica 552

Keratomalacia (OHCS 450)

Keratosis 598

Kerley's lines 129, 738, 812

Kernig's sign 482, 832

Ketamine 385

Ketoacidosis coma
 842, 843

Ketogenic diets 201

Ketonaemia 842

Ketonuria 842

Keyhole surgery 594

Kidney(s)
 amyloid 364,
 biochemistry 680-4
 ballotment of 63F
 carcinoma 646
 cysts 312
 diabetic 202, 304
 drugs and 301
 failure 298-302
 injury, acute 290-292
 medullary sponge
 311, 641, 758
 obstructed 298, 642
 palpation of 60-2
 small 758
 stones 640
 transplant 305, 607F
 ultrasound 607F
 urate's effect on 694

Kierkegaard 561

Kimmelstiel-Wilson 314

Klebsiella 162, 375, 416

Klinefelter's syn 143
 (OHCS 646)

Kisses 243

Klippel-Trénaunay 718

Clumpke's palsy (OHCS
 764)

Knee jerks absent,
 plantars †† 471

Knight's move 83

Knowledge
 from experience 2
 self-knowledge 9

Köbner sign (OHCS 594)

Kocher's incision 567

Koilonychia 32, 321F

Koplik spots (OHCS 142,
 143F)

Korotkov sound 38

Korsakoff's syn 718

Krukenberg tumour 620

Kuru 711

Kussmaul
 breathing 53
 sign 148

Kyphosis 55

L
 Laboratory
 decalogue 677
 error 677
 near-patient 383
 results 677-9, 769-71
 when to act NOW 679

Labour (OHCS 64)

Labyrinthitis 466 (OHCS
 554)

Lactate dehydrogenase
 113F, 702

Lactic acidosis 844

Lactobacilli 246

Lactobacillus 418, 447

Lactose intolerance 281

LAD see left axis
 deviation

LADA 198

Lagophthalmos 504

Lambert-Eaton syn 516

Laminectomy 513F

Laminoplasty 513F

Lancefield 375F

Landouzy-Dejerine 514

Lange-Nielsen syn 724

Langerhans'-cell
 histiocytosis 718

Language 3-4, 23
 bedside 239
 disorders of 80
 surgical 567
 see also speech

Lanz incision 567

Laparoscopy
 ambulatory surgery
 594, 616
 appendicitis 610
 banding 628
 cholecystectomy 637F
 colorectal ca 618
 fundoplication 626

Laparotomophilia 720

Laparotomy 608
 complications 582
 burst abdomen 582
 for whom? 608, 747

Large bowel 618
 cancer 618
 obstruction 612, 618,
 741F

Larval migrans 442

Lasègue's sign 544

Laser photocoagulation
 203F

Lassa fever 388, 432

- Lassitude 27, *see also* fatigue,
 Last days of life 7
 Latarget's nerves 626
 Lateral
 geniculate body 79F
 medullary syn 453
 sinus thrombosis 484
 Laxative abuse 248
 Laxatives 248
 LBBB 94, 95F
 LDH 112, 702
 LDL 122F, 704-5
 Lead
 colic 608
 poisoning 238, 249,
 322, 508
 Cabot ring 322,
 323F
 Lean body wt 446
 Learning
 in groups 200
 to gamble 672
 Leber's optic atrophy 77
 Left
 axis deviation 90, 91F
 bundle branch block
 94, 95F
 heart failure 128-130
 severe 812
 iliac fossa pain 57
 lower lobe collapse
 739F
 shift 322, 325F
 upper quadrant 567
 mass 606
 pain 57
 varicocele 646, 652
 ventricular aneurysm
 100, 116
 hypertrophy 94
 Leg(s)
 amputation 658
 diabetic 205
 embolism 658
 'gone off' 26
 innervation 457
 nerves 457-9
 neuropathy 506
 ulcer 335F, 580, 662
 (OHCS 604)
 weak 470
 Legal highs 853
 Legal issues, terminal
 care 7
 Legionella 162
 Leishman-Donovan
 bodies 439
 Leishmaniasis 439F
 Leishman's stain 383
 Lemon-on-a-stick 197F
 Lens dislocation 721,
 cataract
 dislocation
 Lenticonus 312
 LEOPARD syndrome 519
 Leprosy 428, 429F
 Leptospirosis 430
 Leriche's syn 718
 Lesch-Nyhan syn 641
 (OHCS 648)
 Lesions, CNS 450
 Leucocytes 324, 317F,
 325F, 769
 Leucoerythroblastic
 anaemia 322, 359F
 Leuconychia 62, 260
 Leucopenia 324
 Leucoplakia 238, 239F,
 401, 598
 Leucostasis 346
 Leukaemia
 ALL 348
 AML 350
 CLL 352
 CML 352
 on call dr: 346
 PUO in 346
 Leukaemoid reaction 322
 Levine sign 89
 Lewy body 490, 493, 498
 (OHCS 649F)
 LFTs 678
 AST/ALT ratio 283
 LH 224 (OHCS 184, OHCS
 248)
 Lhermitte 501, 512
 Libersk's imperative
 711
 Libido, low 211, 223, 224,
 226, 228, 230, 269
 Libman-Sacks
 endocarditis 556
 Lice 435F (OHCS 608),
 see louse-born fever
 Lichen planus (OHCS 602)
 Lid
 lag 68, 211F
 oedema 29
 retraction 68
 Lidocaine 122, 575, 817,
 see endpapers,
 toxicity 575
 LIF 567F
 pain in 57
 Life 374
 Life and Death
 Committee 315
 Life-style 223
 diseases of 223
 eating and 236
 Light
 chain deposition
 disease 362
 reaction 79F
 guiding light 234F
 Lightning pains 431
 Likelihood ratio 670,
 674
 Limb ischaemia 658
 Limbic
 encephalitis,
 autoantibodies 555
 system 448F
 Line, central (inserting)
 788F
 peripherally inserted
 (PICC) 588
 Linear opacities 738
 Linezolid 381
 Linguinal 505F
 Lipaemia retinalis 705
 Lipase 638
 Lipids 704, 705
 Lipodermatosclerosis
 663
 Lipoma 596
 Lipoproteins 704
 Lips 28, 150
 blue 180, 725F
 vesicles 723F
 Lisch nodule 518F
 Listeria 421, 832
 Literature and
 medicine 17
 Bennett, Alan:
 alcoholics
 eponymous 709
 logorrhoea 491
 Babbage, Herschel 18
 Blake:
 naked
 haematologist
 316F
 taking blood/
 eternity 317
 Brooke, Rupert 373
 Browning:
 Porphyria's lover
 706
 Byatt: consciousness
 448F
 Camus: varicose
 veins or deeper
 ailments? 661
 Coleridge: feeling
 trumps thought 16
 Conrad: conscious-
 ness 488
 Dante: T⁺ and living
 death 860
 De Nerval, Gérard:
 dizziness 35
 bursting life 374
 Donne: no man is an
 island... 479
 Dylan: the man with
 the catheter 14
 Eliot, TS: dysphasia
 80
 Flaubert: fever
 caused by plums
 386
 Henry James:
 blighted eyes 373
 Hippocrates: Oath 0
 Hughes: Russian
 roulette, pulse 35
 Joyce:
 funny walks 471
 mid-stream 287
 Jung 16, 668
 Kant 15
 Kierkegaard:
 existentialism 561
 Keats: vale of
 tears 16
 Macbeth and time 14
 McEwan, Ian 11
 Nathan: genes, blood
 & courage 316
 Nietzsche 15
 Pericles 427
 Plath's bleeding 235
 Proust:
 mortality 7
 unconscious
 memory 19
 Ruskin, John:
 nausea 241
 no wealth but
 life 317
 Literature and
 medicine...
 continued
 Steinbeck: pellagra
 279
 Tennyson: consent 571
 Virginia Woolf: Mrs
 Dalloway 23
 Voltaire 373
 Lithium
 interactions 768
 levels 766
 Lithotripsy 636, 640
 Littre's hernia 614
 Livedo reticularis 556,
 559F
 Liver
 abscess 436
 alcohol and 282
 antigen 268
 autoimmune dis.
 282, 268
 biopsy 256, 268
 bleeding disorders
 256, 338
 cancer 260
 chronic stigmata
 260
 disease, screening
 tests, screening
 for 264
 enlarged 63
 enlargement 606
 enzymes 250, 283
 failure 258
 fatty 265 (OHCS 26)
 flap/asterixis 50F, 62,
 258, 260, 472
 fluke 270, 445
 function test 250, 283
 abnormal,
 approach 265
 granulomas 266
 imaging 746F, 747F,
 751F
 iron loading 262
 irregular 270
 knobbly 270
 metastases 270, 271F
 neoplasia 258, 270
 palpation of 60-2
 percussion of 61
 pulsatile 62
 and skin dis. 564
 signs 260
 transplant 263, 259
 King's criteria 259
 Milan criteria 270
 tumours 270
 prevention 271
 ultrasound 276F
 Liver/kidney microsomal
 type 1 (Ikm1)
 antibodies 268
 Living wills 7, 304
 LKM 269
 LMN lesions 451, 510
 mixed with UMN 471
 LMW heparin 344
 Loa loa 443
 Lobes
 cerebral 448F, 503
 lungs 824
 collapse 53F, 171F

- Local anaesthesia 574
(*OHCS* 632)
toxicity 575
- Localizing signs, CNS
450, 495, 503
- Locked-in sign 474
- Lockjaw 424, 425F
- Locomotor system
exam 542
- Löffler's, syn 718
endocarditis 718
- Logic 668, 673-5
- Logorrhoea 491
- Loiasis 443
- Loin pain 57, 64
- Lonestar tick 430F
- Looking after people
with cancer 523
- Loop
colostomy 584
diuretics 304
ileostomy 584
- Looser's zones 699F
- Lord's repair 652
- Los Angeles GORD
classes 245
- Louse-borne fevers
bartonella 434
borrelia 430
typhus 435F
- Lower
back pain 544
motor neurone
lesions 451, 510
urinary tract
infections see LUT
- Lowe's syndrome 310
- Low molecular weight
heparin 344
- Lown-Ganong-Levine
syndrome 718
- Low pressure headache
460
- LP 782, 783F
CSF results 782, 833
post-LP headache
783
- Lucid interval 486
- Lugol's iodine
Gram stain 383
pre-op 593
thyrotoxicosis 845
- Lumbar (*OHCS* 674)
disc 545F
pain 544
puncture 782, 783F
CSF results 782,
833
meningitis 833
normal values 833
post-LP headache
783
spine 742, 783F
- Lumbosacral
radiculopathy 204
- Lumbrical
good luck sign 506
muscles 456
- Lumen and life 235
- Lumps
abdominal 57, 606
ballotable 606
breast 604
examination 596
- Lumps... *continued*
groin 616, 652
neck 600-3
skin 596-9
testicular 652, 653F
thyroid 211F, 602, 603F
- Lung
abscess 164, 445
biopsy 158
cancer 154F, 170, 171F
examination 50-5
coal in 192
collapse 738F, 824
fibrosis 188, 192
function tests 156-8
nodules 738
segments 53F
tumours 154F, 170,
171F
vasculitis 715
volumes 159
- Lupus
anticoagulant 557
pernio 186
SLE 556
vulgaris 399
- Luo 567
mass 606
pain in 57
- Luteinizing hormone
see LH
- LUTS
defined 644
haematuria with
LUTS 286
non-prostatic 651
prostatic 644
questions 64
- LVF 128-130
severe 812
CXR 129F, 736
- Lyme disease 430F
skin signs 564
- Lymph nodes 29, 596
axillary 67, 583F, 604
cervical 60F, 353F,
355F
Virchow's 62
HIV 408
inguinal 416
lymphoma 357F
neck 60F, 353F, 355F
plague 422
sampling 605
stomach 625F
supraclavicular 60
- Lymphadenitis 391, 422,
443, 600
- Lymphadenopathy see
lymph nodes
- Lymphangitis 420
- Lymphapress® 184, 720
- Lymphatic leukaemia
348, 352
- Lymphoblasts 359F
- Lymphocyte 325F, 353F
atypical 401F
T & B 359F
- Lymphocytosis 324
- Lymphoedema 443,
583F, 720
- Lymphogranuloma 416
- Lymphoma 354-6
- Lymphopenia 324
- Lymphostatic disease
580
- Lytic lesions 362, 742
- M**
- MAC 411
- Macrocystic lymphatic
malformations 600
- Macrocystosis 326
- Macrolobulinaemia 364
- Macroglossia 230,
238, 364
- Macrovascular
disease and
microalbuminuria
309
- Macules 38, 144, 428,
429F, 431, 435, 519
- Madura foot 421
- MAG3 study 753
- Magnesium 693
- Magnesium-
ammonium
phosphate stones
641
- Magnetic resonance,
angiography see
MRA
- cholangiopancreat-
ography 267, 757
- gastrointestinal 757
- imaging see MRI
- venography 485F
- Magnetic stimulation
of the brain 468
- Magnetoencephalo-
graphy (MEG)
463, 496
- MA1 411
- Major disasters 862
- Mal de débarquement
466
- Malabsorption 280
bile acid 281
- Malar
flush 36, 38, 138
rash 556, 557F
- Malaria 394-7
in pregnancy (*OHCS*
27)
travellers' 388
- Malassezia 440
- Maldescent, testis 654
- Male menopause 223
- Malignant
hypertension 132, 308
hyperparathyroidism
214
hyperpyrexia 574
melanoma 598F
- Mallory-Weiss 718
- Malnutrition 278, 281,
586 (*OHCS* 168)
in alcoholics 510, 686
specific 278, 281
- Malt worker's lung 188
- MALT 356, 602
- Mammography 604
- Mammomania 720
- Management plans 491,
523, 631, 668, 677
- Mania (*OHCS* 354)
- Mannitol 841
- Mantoux test 391, 398
- Marburg virus 388, 432
- Marchiafava-Bignami
(-Micheli) syn 718
- Marcus Gunn sign 79
- Marfan's 720, 721F
- Marginal artery,
Drummond, 623
- Marjolin's ulcer 598, 662
- Marrow 321F, 326, 349F,
351F, 358, 359F
biopsy 326, 358
failure 350, 358
fibrosis 360
ischaemia 334
transplant 334, 336,
348, 350, 352, 358
- Marshmallow test 241
- Mass effect 749F, 760,
761F
- Massage 491
- Masses
abdominal 57, 606
appendix 610
ballotable 60-2,
312, 606
CXR 154F, 171F 738
inguinal 653
intracranial 502
left upper quadrant
606
lung 154F, 170, 171F
mediastinum 736
pelvic 606
RIF 606
scrotal 653
- Masseter spasm 574
- Massive
fibrosis 192
PE 828, 829
splenomegaly 367, 606
transfusion 342
- Mastalgia 66, 605
cyclical (*OHCS* 254)
- Mastectomy 582, 604
- Masturbatory
melancholia 711
- Matching, in epidemio-
logical 665
- Maydl's hernia 614
- Mayo repair 614
- MCA 761F
stroke 474, 475F
- McArdle's dis. 718
- McBurney's point 611
- Mcd 411
- McDonald criteria 501
- McDowell, laparotomy
607
- McGregor's line 520
- Mcv 318, 326, 769
- MDMA (ecstasy) 855
- MDRD formula 295, 683
- MDR-TB 409
- Myalgic
Encephalomyelitis
(ME) 560 (*OHCS* 528)
- Mean, arithmetic/stan-
dard error of 765
- Measles (*OHCS* 142)
- Mechanisms 5
- Mechanistic medicine 5
- Meckel's diverticulum
720

- Medial, longitudinal fasciculus **78F**, **727F**
medullary syn 726
- Median
nerve **456**, 506
in statistics 765
- Mediastinal mass 736
Mediastinoscopy 158
Mediastinotomy 158
Mediastinum 736
- Medical
ethics 15, 315
health economics 10
humanities 5, **17**
- Medicalizing normal aging 223
- Meditation 479
- Mediterranean fever 386
- Mediterranean spotted fever 435
- Medlock x
- Medulla **727F**
- Medullary
ca of breast 604
ca of thyroid 602
cystic disease 312
sponge kidney 641
- Mees' lines 32
- Megacolon, toxic 272
- Megakaryocytes **359F**
- Megaloblastic 326, **327F**, 328
- Megaoesophagus 438
- Meigs' syndrome 720
- Melaena 252
emergencies 830
- Melancholia,
masturbatory 711
- Melanoma 598, **599F**
- MELAS 475
- Meld score 283
- Melioidosis 447
- Membranous
nephropathy 300, **302**, **303**
- Memory
consolidation, cortisol 197
- Memory loss 488–493
test scores 70, **85**
- MEN I/II **215**, 525, 730
- Ménétrier's disease 720
- Ménière's disease 466
- Menin 215
- Meningioma 471, 490, 502, 504, 518
- Meningitis 832
eosinophilic 446
recurrent 460
tubercular 399
vaccination 391
- Meningococcal sepsis 728, **729F**
- Menorrhagia 212, 320 (*OHCS* 253)
- Menses 64
- Menstrual diseases (*OHCS* 250)
- Mental
cognition, testing 70, **85**, 490
in your patients 11
- Mental health...
continued
in yourself 9 (*OHCS* 332)
psychiatric assessment 82
- Health Act 11, 571 (*OHCS* 400)
state examination 82, 490
- Meropenem 381
- Mesangiocapillary, glomerulonephritis **300**, **303**
- Mesenchymal tumours 271
- Mesenteric
adenitis 610
angiography/embolization 252
arteries **623F**
ischaemia 622
- Mesothelioma 192
- Meta-analyses 670
Cochrane library 671
- Metabolic
acidosis 684
bone disease 696–9
emergencies 842–6
glycogenoses (*OHCS* 182)
inherited disease (*OHCS* 152, 176)
flap/asterixis **50F**, 62, 258, 260, **472**
syndrome (x) 199
- Metabolic syn 199
- Metacarpals, unequal **215F**
- Metal poisoning 854
see lead poisoning
- Metamyelocytes 322
- Metaphor, in medicine 5, 17
- Metaphysics
of consultations 16
- Meteorism see sentinel loop
- Metformin
contrast media 762
interactions 768
- Methicillin & staph 420
- Method of exam. 84
- Methotrexate 370
interactions 768
- Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (ecstasy) 385 see MDMA
- Metronidazole **381**, 572
- Meyer-Betz 720
- MGUS 364
- MIBG scan 220, 529, **752**
- MIBI scan 214, **752F**
- Mic 419
- Micro-
albuminuria 285, 309, 314
BP & DM 203, 309
other causes: **1BP**, GN SLE 314
reversible? 286
angiopathy, cerebral 474
- Micro-... *continued*
cytosis 318, **321F**
dochectomy 66
haematuria 649
prolactinoma 228
scopic
colitis 246
haematuria 649
polyangitis 555, **558**, 715
somal antibodies TPO 208, 267, 268
somal antibodies LKM1 268
stomia **239F**
vascular angina 110
- Microscopy 383
synovial fluid 550, **551F**
urine 286
- Micturition syncope 464
- Midbrain 503
- Migraine 462
- Mikulicz's syndrome 720
- Milk-alkali syn 690, 691
- Millard–Gubler syndrome 505
- Miller Fisher syndrome 717
- Milroy disease 720, **721F**
- Milton vs Newton 16
- Mineral fibrosis 192
- Minimal inhibitory concentration 419
- Minimally invasive surgery 594
- Miosis 716
- Mirizzi's syndrome 636
- Mitochondrial dyscytopathies 475
DNA dysfunction 498
encephalopathy 475
Parkinson's 498
proteins 266
- Mitophagy 498
- Mitotic catastrophe 362
- Mitral valve
prolapse 42, **138**
regurgitation 37, 42, **138**
stenosis 37, 42, 138
- Mixed connective tissue disease 554
- Mixed UMN & LMN signs 470
- M-mode, US 106–**7F**, 750
- MND 510
- Mobiluncus* 447
- Mobitz I and II 119
- Mode, us (a- b- & m) 750
- Models of
brain functioning 521
care 9
- MOY 198
- Moguls, mediastinal 736
- Mollaret's meningitis 460
- Molluscum contagiosum 376 (*OHCS* 599)
- Moniliasis see *Candida*
- Monoarthritis 541, **551F**
gout/pseudogout 550
septic 546
- Monoblasts **359F**
- Monoclonal antibodies 170, 348, 528
gammopathy 303
364, 723
- Monocyte **325F**, **333F**
- Monocytosis 324
- Monofilament test 204
- Mononeuritis multiplex 506
- Mononeuropathies 506
- Mononucleosis, infectious 401
- Monophasic waveform 784
- Monosodium glutamate 268
- Monospot test 401
- Mood changes
in your patients 11, 82
in yourself 9 (*OHCS* 336)
incongruent giggling 511
lability 478
- Moon face 197, **216**
- Moraxella* **423**, 447
- Morgagni, hydatid of 654
- Morning stiffness 548
- Morphea see systemic sclerosis
- Morpheus 231
- Morphine 536, 538, 539, 576
Oddi's sphincter 638
- Motivation 9
- Motivational therapy 666
- Motor
neuron
disease 510
lesions 450, **451**
neuropathy 508
system examination 72–5, **456**, 542
- Mouth pathology 238
- Movement disorders 472
- Mozzarella pizza CMV 405
- MPA 558
- MRA
3D, renal **759F**
neuroimaging 760
- MRCP **757F**
- MRI **748F**
brain **749F**
gadolinium contrast 762
GI 757
neuroimaging 760
signal intensity 735
stroke **475F**
venogram **485F**
venous sinus thrombosis **485F**
T1 and T2 weighting **748F**
- MRSA **420**
pneumonia 160, 162
pre-op 569

- MRV 485F
MSA 499
Mucormycosis 441F
Mucosal break 245F
Mucositis 530
Muehrcke's lines 32, 60, 62
MUGA scanning 755F
Müllerian ducts 654
Multi-
disciplinary team 167, 498, 528, 533
focal motor
neuropathy 510
infarct/vascular
dementia 490
nodular goitre
210, 602
resistance
antibiotics 378–81
TB 409
Multiple
endocrine neoplasia
215
gated acquisition
(MUGA) study 755F
sclerosis 500
system atrophy 499
Mumps (*OHCS* 142)
Münchausen's
syndrome 720
Murmurs 37, 44
Austin Flint 44, 140
Carey Coombs
44, 136
early diastolic 44,
138, 142
ejection systolic 44,
140, 142
grading 45
Graham Steell 44, 138
locations 37F, 44
mid-diastolic 44, 138,
140 (*OHCS* 137)
pansystolic 44, 138, 142
prosthetic valve 42
Murphy's
sign 636
Muscle
and glycogen 718
fatigability 516
herniation 514
necrosis 307, 662,
718, 720
pain see myalgia
power test 72–5, 456
rhabdomyolysis 307
wasting 30, 72
Muscular dystrophy 514
Muscularis propria 271
Musculoskeletal
symptoms 23
Mushrooms 251F
Music R 478, 488, 491
Myalgia 162, 169, 188,
212, 218, 278, 307,
388, 394, 402, 408,
423, 430, 432, 434,
438, 442, 494, 554,
556, 558, 559, 560,
698, 704, 720, 724
epidemic (Bornholm)
66
fibromyalgia 560
Myalgia... *continued*
polymyalgia 559
polymyositis 554
Myalgic
encephalomyelitis
560 (*OHCS* 528)
Myasthenia 516
Mycetoma 168
Mycobacterium 375,
398
atypical 399
drug-resistant
HIV & mycobacteria
398, 409
Mycobacterium
M. avium
intracellular 411
M. kansasii 375
M. leprae 428
M. marinum 375
M. tuberculosis 398
meningitis 399
Mycoplasma 162, 418
Mycoses 440
Mycosis fungoides 598
Mycotic aneurysm 656
Myelin proteins 500
Myelinolysis 510, 686
Myelitis 432, 470
Myeloblasts 351F
Myelocytes 322
Myelodysplasia 351
Myelofibrosis 322, 360,
361F
Myeloid cell lines 359F
Myeloid leukaemia
350, 352
Myeloma 362
Myelopathy 512, 513,
520
hypocupric 471
vacuolar 410
Myeloproliferation 360
Myiasis 388
Myocardial
infarct 112–6
emergency 808
aspirin in 114, 808
complications 116
ECG 113F
antero-lateral
MI 92
infero-lateral
MI 97F
postero-lateral
MI 115F
sequential
changes 113F
immediate
management
808
pain 88
prevention 87
rehabilitation 114
streptokinase 808
contraindi-
cations 808
ischaemia 110
perfusion imaging
755
siderosis 336
Myocarditis 146
Myoclonus 472
Myoglobinuria 307, 720
Myohyloid 601F
Myopathies 514
Myositis 554, 662
inclusion-body 514
Myotonia 514
Myxoedema 212
coma 844
pretibial 210
Myxoma 146
N
N of 1 trial 229
Na channelopathy 514
Naevi, spider 260, 261F
NAFLD 269
LFT 265
Nails 31, 32, 553F
clubbing 30F, 33
infarct 144, 559
Naked
haematologist 316F
truth, avoiding 449
Naloxone 576, 854
Narcolepsy 714
Narcotics 854 (*OHCS*
362)
Narrative
medicine 5
power to melt 17
Narrow complex
arrhythmias
120, 818
Nasal ventilation
176, 181
long term O₂ therapy
176
Nasogastric tube 773
not aspirating 740F
National, Health
Service see NHS
Service Framework
for older people 12
Natriuresis 232
Nausea 56, 240
cancer 528, 530, 536
NBM (pre-op) 587
NCEPOD 252
NCSE 489
ND (notifiable dis.) 373
Near-patient tests 383
Nebulizers 175, 177,
820–3
Necator 442
Neck
lumps 600
Necrobiosis lipoidica
564, 565F
Necrosis
bone 334, 557
bowel 616, 622
fat 605
muscle 307, 662,
718, 720
myocardial 112
pancreatic 638
pituitary 224
skin 662
Necrotizing fasciitis 662
Needle
pericardiocentesis
787
-stick injury 412
Needs assessment 491
Negative
predictive value 105,
131, 674
symptoms 83
Neisseria 375, 418F, 832
Nelson's syn 216
Nematodes 442–3
Neologisms 80, 83
Neoplasia 564
Nephritis 285, 300, 306
crescentic 714
interstitial 306
lupus 556
Nephrocalcinosis, us
311–2
Nephrogenic DI 232
Nephrolithiasis 640,
641F see renal
stones
Nephrolithotomy 640
Nephrology, guide 285
Nephron 305F
Nephropathy 300, 708
membranous 303
Nephrosis see
nephrotic syn
Nephrostomy 642, 758
Nephrotic syn 302, 394
Nephrotoxins 307
Nerve
cranial, exam 76–9
compression 470,
507, 512
facial 504F
lateral cutaneous 506
mechanisms 517F
median 506, 507
mononeuropathy 506
peripheral, exam
456–9
phrenic 506
polyneuropathies 508
radial 506
recurrent laryngeal
48, 170, 210, 214,
602, 722
root lesions 545
sciatic 506
testing 456
tibial 506
ulnar 506
Nervous system
examination 72–81,
450, 456–9
Nesidioblastosis 207
Neuralgia amyotrophy
506
Neuritis, optic 77,
500, 712
Neuroacanthocytosis 81
Neuroanatomists 711
Neurocardiogenic
syncope 464
Neurocysticercosis 444
Neuroendocrinology
225F
Neurofibrillary tangles
493F
Neurofibromatosis 518
Neuroimaging 760
angiography 761F
catheter
angiography 760
CT & MRI 760

- Neuroleptic 855
dyskinesia 473
malignant (serotonin) syndrome 855
dystonia 473
- Neurologica diabolica 720
- Neurological examination 72-81, 450, 456-9
lower limb 74
upper limb 72
cranial nerves 76-9
in coma **803**
- Neurology is easy 505
- Neuroma 518
acoustic **466, 467F**, 468, 518
- Neuromuscular junction **517F**
- Neuromyelitis 712
- Neuropathy 506-8
diabetic 204
in anaemia 328
- Neuropsychiatry 82, 328, 488-93
- Neurosarcoidosis 232
- Neurosis 83
- Neurosyphilis 431
- Neurotransmitters 454, 517
- Neurotrauma 838
- Neurotrophic factor 499
- Neutropenia 324
regimen for 346
- Neutrophils 324, **325F**
hypersegmented **327F**
- Never events 772
- New treatments: any good? 670
- New York classification 131
- Newton vs Milton 16
- NGU 418
- NHS
elderly 12
spine of 8
- Nice 10, 670
pre-op tests 569
- Nicotinic acetylcholine receptors 516
- Niemann-Pick (*OHCS* 650)
- Nietzsche 15
- Night sweats 27, 352-360, 399
- Nil by mouth, pre-op 587
- Nipah viruses 387
- Nipple discharge 66, 605
- Niv 823
- Nissen fundoplication 626, **627F**
- Nitric oxide 130, 178, 463
synthetase 203
inhibitors 455
- Nitrofurantoin 381
- Nitroprusside 134
- NMDA 454, 493
- NMJ **517F**
- NNRTI 414
- NNT 669
- No man is an island 479
- Nocardia* 375, **421**
- Nocturia 22, 64
hyperparathyroidism 214
incontinence 650
prostatism 64, 644
see also frequency
- Nodules
lung 738
CXR 738
Caplan's syndrome 718
histiocytosis 718
miliary TB **399F**
fibromatous 518
genital 416
melanoma 598
rheumatoid 192, 548, **597F**
Sister Mary 724
skin **388**, 434, 598
subcutaneous, 136, 186, 596-8
thyroid **210**, 602
- Nomogram
body wt (*OHCS* 233)
gentamicin **767F**
- Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease 269
LFT **↑ 265**
convulsive status epilepticus 489
existent diseases
hypoactive sexual desire disorder 711
masturbatory melancholia 711
Münchhausen's syndrome 720, **721F**
Hodgkin's 356
invasive
breast ca 604
pacing 791
nucleoside reverse transcriptase (NNRTI) 414
parametric paradox 347
parametric statistics 10
pathogenic bacteria 266
polyposis colon cancer 524
specific urethritis (gonococcal) 418
STEMI 112, **810**
steroids 547
ulcer dyspepsia 59, 242
- Noonan syndrome 142 (*OHCS* 650)
- Noradrenaline 454
- Normal distribution 765
pressure
hydrocephalus 471, 490
values 769-71
problems with 676
- Normoblasts 322
- Noroviruses 390
- Norwalk virus 390
- Nose bleed 340 (*OHCS* 560)
- Nosocomial infection (hospital-acquired) 160, 381, 409, 446,
approach to **392**
pneumonia 160
prevention 393
- Notched ribs 150
- Notifiable diseases
see ND (p373 for UK list)
- Nottingham Prognostic Index 605
- NRTI 414
- NSAID 547
- NSF *see* National Service Framework
- Nuck, canal of **617F**
- Nuclear medicine 752
- Nucleated RBC **335F**
- Nucleoside analogue
reverse transcriptase inhibitors *see* NNRTI
- Number needed to harm 669
treat (NNT) 669
- Nurse 2
community (*OHCS* 474)
district 449
health education (*OHCS* 494)
nurse-physicians 2
participation in end-of-life 478
run clinics (*OHCS* 488)
specialists
CF 167
DM 200, 590
epilepsy 496
malignancy 523, 604, 619
MND 510
psychiatric (CPN) 491
stoma 584
universal health givers 2
- Nutcracker oesophagus 240
- Nutrition
IV 588
by NGT in hospital 586
diets and nutrition 236
parenteral 588
requirements 587
- Nutritional disorders 278
support on wards 586
- Nystagmus **76**, 501
- O**
- O157 *E. coli* 308, 390
- O₂ 156, **181**, *see* oxygen
- Oat cell ca 170
- Oath, Hippocratic 0, 1
- Obesity 28, 87, 199
and cancer 237
central 197, 199, 205
co-morbidity 237
diet 236
insulin, resistance 199
surgery and 628
- Obliterative bronchiolitis 172
- Obsessive-compulsive disorders 455
- Obstruction
bowel 612
small bowel, (AXR) **743F**
CT **613F**
CBD & ERCP **757F**
pseudo 613, 720 (Ogilvie)
renal 642, 645
SVC 354, **526**
urinary tract 645
- Obstructive airways disease (COPD) 176
sleep apnoea 194
uropathy 645
- Occipital lobe 503
- Occupational exposure to HIV 412
lung disease 192
therapist 26, 449, 478, 491, 493, 498, 508, 548
- Octreotide scan 529
- Oculogyric crisis **473F**
- Oculomotor nerve 76-79
- Oddi malfunction 244
- Odds ratios 672
- Odontoid peg **749F**
- Odynophagia **240**, 244
- Oedema
acute pulmonary 812
imaging **129F, 737F**
cerebral **487F, 749F**, 840
eyelid 29
heart failure 128-131
severe 812
nerve 504
peripheral 29, 580
pulmonary 128, **812**
sacral 580
swollen legs 29, 580
- Oesophagitis 244, **245F**
fundoplication 626
- Oesophagoscopy 256
- Oesophagus
achalasia 240
Barrett's **245F**, 709
carcinoma 620, 709
endoscopy (OGD) 256
nutcracker 240
reflux 244
rupture 621
spasm 240
stricture 240, **241F**
varices 254
- 'Off legs' 26, 470
- Ogilvie's syn **613, 720**
- OGTT 198
- Old age 12, *see* Geriatrics

Old polio 74
 Older age NSF 12
 Olfactory nerve 76
 Oligoarthritis 541, 552
 Oligomenorrhoea 222–4
 Oliguria 65, 285
 post-op 578
 Omega-3 fats 236
 dementia (*OHCS* 352)
 Omohyoid 601F
 Omphalocele 615
 Onchocerciasis 443
 Oncogenes 215, 525
 Oncology 522–9
 emergencies 526
 urgent referral 532
 On-off effect 498
 Opacity 738
 linear, etc. 738
 Open
 appendectomy 611F
 heart surgery 142
 Opening snap 42
 Operations
 complications 582
 gastrectomy 582, 624
 general 578
 specific 582
 consent 570
 duodenal ulcer 626
 heart 142
 hiatus hernia 626
 pre-op care 569
 bowel preparation 572
 diabetes 590
 jaundice 592
 Patients on steroids 592
 thyroid 593
 stomach 624
 Ophthalmia
 neonatorum 373, 418 (*OHCS* 36)
 Ophthalmoplegia 68, 76–9, 210, 462, 484, 501, 708, 717, 728
 Ophthalmoscopy 76, 203F, 405F, 562F (*OHCS* 413)
 Opioid drugs (opiates) 576
 abuse 384 (*OHCS* 362)
 poisoning 854
Opisthorchis 445
Opisthotonus 424, 425F
 Optic
 chiasm 77, 79F
 compression 226–8
 nerve 76–9, 79F
 atrophy 77
 compression 211
 papilloedema 77, 502, 562F, 840
 neuritis 77, 500, 712
 Optimism works! 2, 521
 Oral
 anticoagulants 344
 poisoning 854
 candidiasis 238, 239F
 diseases 238, 239F
 glucose tolerance test 198

Oral... *continued*
 hairy leukoplakia 238, 239F
 hygiene 59
 hypoglycaemics 200
 pathology 238
 thrush 238, 239F
 ulcers 238, 431, 447, 557, 708
 Ora-Quick test, HIV 408
 Orbitofrontal syn 503
 Orchestration of care 510
 Orchidectomy 648
 Orchidopexy 652, 654
 Orchitis 652
 Orf 376
 Organ, donation 6
 transplant
 consent 259, 299
 live 299
 liver 259
 renal 299
 Organic reaction
 acute/delirium 488
 chronic/dementia 490, 492, 493
 Organisms, classes 374–6
 Organophosphates 855
Orientia typhus 435
 Oriental sore 439
 Orientation 82
 Orion 2F
 Orlistat 237
 Ornithosis 162
 Orthomyxovirus 376, 403F
 Orthopnoea 22, 34, 49, 88, 128, 140, 506, 526
 Orthostatic
 hypotension 39, 464, 498
 Ortner's syndrome 722
 Oscillopsia 520
 Osler
 nodes 36, 38, 144
 William 673
 -Weber-Rendu 722
 Osmolality 682, 771
 Osmolar gap 682
 Osmolarity 232, 682
 Osteitis fibrosa 214
 Osteo-
 arthritis 543F, 546
 arthropathy, pulmonary 170
 calcin 211
 dystrophy, renal 294–302, 698
 lysis
 brucellosis 423F
 hyatid 444
 hyperpara thyroidism 214F
 myeloma 362
 Paget's 699F
 spinal 520
 malacia 678, 698
 myelitis (*OHCS* 696)
 penia 214, 543F
 DEXA criteria 697
 rheumatoid 548
 thalassaemia 336

Osteo... *continued*
 porosis 412, 548, 552, 678
 steroids 370
 sclerosis 543
 Paget's 699F
 Otolaryngologica
 prevarica 720
 Ovalocytosis 332
 Over-
 dosage 850–7
 eating 503
 growth, bacterial 281
 matching 665
 nutrition 199
 Overgrowth 281
 Overlap syndromes 268
 Owen, Wilfred 427
 Oxalate 312, 640, 641F
 gut absorption 274
 Oxidative stress 237, 511
 Oximetry 156
 Oxygen 181
 A-a concentration gradient 157
 COPD 176, 180, 822
 LTOT 176
 therapy 181, 822
 Oxytetracycline 381

P

P wave 90
 Pacemakers 126
 ECG 101F, 127F
 inserting temporary 790, 791F
 CXR position 740
 Packed cell volume
 see PCV
 Packed cells 342
 Pack-years 48, 177
 P_5CO_2 , PaO_2 , gases, meaning 156, 684
 normal values 771
 resp. failure 180
 when to do them 156, 181
 Paediatric surgery 629
 Paediatrics (*OHCS* ch. 2)
 Paget's disease of bone 699
 breast 604, 722, 723F
 Pain 536, 538, 576
 abdominal 57, 608
 back 544
 cancer 536, 538
 cardiac 88
 chest 88
 child 335 (*OHCS* 730)
 chronic 560
 complex regional pain (*OHCS* 737)
 control of 538, 576
 dermatomal 458F
 epigastric 57
 antimalarials and 396
 cardiac 88
 MI 112
 gastritis 253
 Ménétrier's dis 720
 pancreatic ca 276
 peptic ulcers 242

Pain... *continued*
 facial 71
 ischaemic 89
 lancinating 204
 left iliac fossa 57
 left upper quadrant 57
 loin 57
 pelvic 57
 pleuritic 88
 post-operative 577
 prodromal 504
 rebound 62
 referred 611
 rehabilitation goals 536, 538
 relief 538, 576
 right upper quadrant 57
 shooting 204, 506, 512
 Painful bruising
 syndrome 338
 Palindromic (RA) 548
 Palinopsia 503
 Palliative care
 cancer 536–9
 COPD 176
 in elderly 12
 facing death 7
 motor neurone dis 510
 post-stroke 478
 Pallor 28, 32, 319F
 Palmar
 crease pigmentation 30
 erythema 30F, 32, 210, 260
 Palpating abdomen 60
 in children 629
 Palpitations 34, 88
 Palsy
 Bell's 504
 bulbar 80, 511
 cerebral (*OHCS* 214)
 cranial nerve 76, 226, 466, 502
 gaze 499
 peripheral nerve 506
 phrenic nerve 506, 736
 pseudobulbar 80, 511
 Todd's 494, 726
 PAN 558
 pANCA 555
 Pancoast's syn./tumour 52, 600, 722
 Pancolitis 272
 Pancreatic
 pseudocysts 638, 639F
 tumour 276
 Pancreatitis
 acute 638
 chronic 280
 diabetes and 198
 groove 747F
 imaging 639
 mnemonic 639
 scoring 639
 third spacing 681, 804
 Pancreatogenous
 hypoglycemia syn 206
 Pancytopenia 358

- Panda eyes 800
- Pandemic alert period 403
- Panhypopituitarism 224
- Pansystolic murmur **44**, 138, 142
- Panton-Valentine 161
- Papillary carcinoma of breast 604
- thyroid 602
- Papilloedema 77, 562**F**
- Papovavirus 376
- Pappenheimer bodies 322, 323**F**
- Papular acrodermatitis of childhood 401
- Paracentesis abdominal 779
- Paracetamol 576
- poisoning 856, 857**F**
- Paracoccidioides 440
- Paradoxical bronchospasm 174
- pulse 40, 116, 128
- respiration 52
- Paraesthesiae 71, 501
- Paragonimiasis 445
- Paralogia 489
- Paralysis 474
- agitans *see* Parkinson's
- diaphragmatic 180, 506, 736
- differential 433
- facial 76, 504
- after a fit 494
- flaccid 432, 450, 470
- GPI 431
- ipsilateral 710
- management 470, 478
- of legs 450, 470
- periodic 688
- polio 432
- sleep 714
- spastic 450, 470
- tongue 76, **511**, 726
- Paralytic ileus 613
- Paramyotonia congenita 514
- Paramyxovirus 376
- Paraneoplastic syn 534
- Paraparesis 450, 470
- flaccid 450, 470
- spastic 450, 470, 520
- Paraphasia 80, 462
- Paraphimosis **647**, 776
- Paraplegia *see* paraparesis
- in arterial injury 582
- in TB 722
- tropical spastic 520
- Paraproteins 362, **364**, 700
- in urine 362, 700
- Paraquat 855
- Parasympathomimetic SE 27
- Parathyroid adenoma 752
- hormone 690
- related protein 214, 690
- Paratyphoid 426
- Paraumbilical hernia 614
- Parenteral nutrition 588
- Paresis of insane 431
- Parietal lobe 495, 503
- Parinaud's syn 722
- Parkinsonism 498
- Parkinson's dis. 498
- Paronychia, chronic 32
- Parotid gland 601
- enlargement 349**F**
- sialogram 601
- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea 34
- Paroxysmal haemoglobinuria 332, 719
- myoglobinuria 720
- nocturnal dyspnoea 34, 49, 88, 128
- Parsonage-Turner 506
- Partial epilepsy 495
- thromboplastin time *see* PTT
- Particle inhalation 192
- Parvovirus 334, 376 (*OHCS* 142)
- Past history 48, 56, 64
- Pasteur vs Claude Bernard 417
- Pasteurella* 447
- Paterson-Brown-Kelly (Plummer-Vinson) 240
- Patient 2-17
- autonomy choice 15, 522, 570
- narratives 523
- participation 5, 666
- rights *see also* Human rights
- blue 28
- centred care 4, 16, 335
- art and 17
- cancer 522, 523
- genetics 313
- geriatrics 12
- health economics 10
- NSF for old age 12
- participation in self-care 522
- questions 4
- controlled analgesia 335
- doctor interactions authentic 5, 16
- difficult 16
- existential 561
- liars 720
- safety 569, 772
- yellow 24
- Pauci-immune vasculitis 555, *see* Churg-Strauss
- microscopic polyangiitis 558
- Wegener's 728
- Paul-Bunnell 401
- Paul-Mikulicz 584
- Paul's tubing (♂ condom drainage) 776
- PBA 511
- PBC 266
- PCV high in 360
- dehydration 678
- PE 182, 828
- CTPA & v; / & Q; 182, 183, 752, 753, 753**F**
- V/Q; *versus* CTPA 753
- Peak expiratory flow 156, 172, 173**F**
- Peau d'orange* 67
- Pectoriloquy 51-2
- Pectus carinatum 55**F**
- excavatum 55**F**
- Pediculus 435**F** (*OHCS* 608)
- Pedigree trees 21
- Peek sign 516
- PEF(R) 156, 172, 173**F**
- Pel-Elstein fever 354
- Pellagra 278
- Pelvic abscess 630
- floor prolapse 650
- fracture 745**F**
- inflammatory dis. (salpingitis) 418 (*OHCS* 286)
- masses 57, 606
- pain 57
- Pelvi-ureteric obstruction 640, 642
- Pemberton's test 526
- Pendred's syn 212
- Penicillins 378
- Penis balanitis 647
- angulation (penile) 722
- cancer 598, 646
- catheterization, male 776
- erectile dysfunction 222
- priapism 334
- infections, eg GC 418
- Candida* 441**F**
- circumcision/ HIV 408
- nodules 416
- pain 418, 640
- paraphimosis 647, 776
- phimosis 647
- rehabilitation 222
- ulcers 416, 431
- Bowen's Queyrat's 598
- vesicles 400
- Pepper-pot skull 214, 362
- Peptic ulcer 242
- bleeding, R₂ 253, 830
- operations 624
- Peptostreptococcus 447
- Percussion abdomen, pain on 62
- chest 50-5
- areas **51F**
- dull 52, 160, 184
- hyper-resonance 52, 172, 176, 182, 824
- Percutaneous nephrostomy 758
- transluminal angioplasty *see* PTA/PTCA
- Perforation appendix 610
- bowel 608, 609**F**, 612
- 624, 630
- gastric 626
- oesophagus 621
- Perfusion scan 755**F**
- CT, brain 745**F**
- myocardial 755, 755**F**
- Q (scintigram) 752**F**, 753, 828
- Perianal abscess 632
- haematoma 632
- warts 632 (*OHCS* 268)
- Perianeurysmal retroperitoneal fibrosis 642
- Pericardial dis. 148
- friction rub 44
- Pericardiocentesis 536, 787**F**
- Pericles 427
- Perilymph fistula 466
- Periodic paralysis 688
- Peripheral blood film 322
- preparation & stains 383
- pulses 47
- nerves 456-9, 506
- stem-cell transplantation 354
- vascular disease 658
- examination 46
- Perirectal disease 632
- Peritoneal dialysis 298
- Peritonitis 582, 608
- imaging in 763
- spontaneous 260
- Perl's stain 262
- Pernicious anaemia 328
- autoantibodies 555
- Peroneal muscular atrophy 710
- nerve 456-9, 506
- Perseveration autism (*OHCS* 404)
- delirium 488
- dementia 490
- dysphasia 80
- frontal cortex lesion 503
- Gilles de la Tourette 714
- lead poisoning (*OHCS* 210)
- palinopsia 503 (*OHCS* 204)
- Personal identity disorder 231
- Personality change 502, 503
- clashes ix
- type & good communication 523

- Perthes' test 660
 Pertussis 422 (*OHCS* 160)
 vaccine 391 (*OHCS* 150)
 Pes cavus 74, 204, 712
 PET 206, 529, **753**
 cardiac 754
 CT 752
 Petechial rash 832**F**
 Petrosal nerve 550**F**
 Petrosal apicitis 77
 Pets, infections from
 446, 423, 430, 442,
 722, 723**F**
 Peyronie's disease 722
 PFA-100 445
 Pfannenstiel 567
 PGL 408
 pH (arterial) 156, 684
 Phaeochromocytoma
 220
 crisis 847
 MIBG study 753
 Phagocytosis 333**F**
 Phalen's test 507
 Phantasmorotica
 penetrans 720
 Pharmaceutical
 funding 670
 Phenobarbital, levels
 766
 Phenothiazine toxicity
 855
 Phenylketonuria (*OHCS*
 217)
 Phenytoin **497**, 836
 drug interactions 768
 IV, status epilepticus
 836
 levels 766
 Philadelphia
 chromosome 352
 Philosophy of life 374
 in action 479, 511
 Phimosis 647
 Phleboliths 742
 Phlegmon 636
 Phone numbers 667
 Phosphate 678, **693**
 refeeding 589
 Photodynamic therapy
 708
 Photophobia 462, 832
Phthirus pubis lice
 (*OHCS* 608)
 Physical exam **24**, 84
 Physician-assisted
 suicide 510
 Physiotherapy 156, 167,
 449, 478, 508, 544,
 546, 560, 823
 Phytotherapy 644
 Pia mater 513**F**
 PICA thrombosis 726,
 727**F**
 P1CC line 588, 589**F**
 position on CXR 740
 Pickwickian syndrome
 (sleep apnoea &
 obesity) 194
 Picornavirus 376
 PID (salpingitis) (*OHCS*
 286)
 Piddle 471
 Piezo-electric crystal 750
 Pigeon chest 55**F**
 Pigment stones 636
 Pigmented
 papules 557
 retinopathy 77, 562
 skin 24, 32, 218, 564
 Piles 634
 Pill rolling tremor 498
 Pilonidal sinus 632
 PIMM 264
 Pineal gland 448
 Pink puffers 176
 Pin-point pupil 803
 Pinta 430
 PIOPED II trial 753
 Piperacillin 378
Pis en deux 651
 Pistol shot sign 140
 Pitting, nail 30, 552
 Pituitary 224
 apoplexy 226
 tests 224
 tumours 226, 228
 Pizz 264
 Pizza CMV retinitis 405**F**
 PKD1 313
 Placebo
 effect 671
 in drug trials 670
 Plague 422
 Plain abdo x-ray 742**F**
 Planning
 care management
 plan 12, 491
 discharge, hospital
 478, 553
 Plantar fasciitis 74, 552
 Plantars upgoing 451
 & no knee jerks 471
 Plaque, rupture 112
 stabilization,
 intensive statin
 regimens 811
 Plasma
 biochemistry 366
 cell dyscrasias 362
 cell myeloma 362
 cells 363**F**
 enzymes 363**F**, 700
 fresh frozen 336, 702
 protein 342
 viscosity 700
 Plasmapheresis 366
Plasmodium 394–6, 395**F**
 knowlesi 394
 Plasticity 521
 Platelets
 antiplatelet drugs
 108, 474, 480
 function tests 445
 in dengue 433
 low 338, 340, 358, 361
 raised 367
 transient 360
 transfusion of 342, 358
 Pleomorphic adenoma
 601
 Plesiomonas 447
 Pleural
 biopsy 779
 effusion 58**F**, **184**,
 779**F**
 safe approach 778
 Pleural effusion...
 continued
 tapping 778, 779**F**
 pain 88
 rub 52
 Pleurisy 48, 88, **160**,
 162, 268
 Pleuritic chest pain see
 pleurisy
 Pleurodesis 184
 Plexopathy 204, 530
 Plicae semilunares 740
 Plummer's disease 602
 Plummer-Vinson 240
 PMF 192, 193**F**
 PND 20, 47
 Pneumobilia 636, **742**
 Pneumococcal
 meningitis 832
 pneumonia 160
 sensitivities 378
 vaccination 160
 Pneumoconiosis 192
 Pneumocystis 162, 411**F**
 Pneumonia 160–4
 antibiotics for 161
 aspiration 160
 atypical 162
 in AIDS 162, 410
 management 161
 nosocomial 160
 post-op 162, 578
 severe **826**
 sputum in 53
 unusual 162
 Pneumonitis 400,
 530, 738
 Pneumoperitoneum
 609**F**
 Pneumothorax 182, 824
 aspiration 781
 click 52
 CXR signs 739**F**
 prostatic
 carcinoma
 familial 524
 draining 780
 examination 54
 surgical 603
 tension 763**F**, **824**
 Podagra 550
 Podiatrists 204
 Poems (the other sort)
 see Literature &
 medicine
 POEMS syndrome 212
 Poikilocytosis 321**F**
 Point prevalence 665
 Poisoning **850–7**
 antidotes 854
 aspirin 856
 charcoal 852
 emergency care 851
 food poisoning 390
 information 850
 opiates 854
 paracetamol 856
 phone numbers 850
 psychiatry 850
 salicylates 856
 specific poisons 854
 stomach washout 852
 Polio 376**F**, **432**, 433**F**
 immunization 391
 Pollutants 266
 Polyangiitis, micro-
 scopic 295, 555,
 558
 Polyarteritis nodosa 558
 Polyarthritides 541
 Polychondritis 554
 Polychromasia 322
 Polycystic
 kidney dis. 312, 313**F**
 infantile (*OHCS* 132)
 ovary syn. (*OHCS* 282)
 hirsutism and 222
 Polycythaemia **360**
 Polydactyly 38
 Polydipsia 64
 psychogenic 232–3
 Polyendocrine syn 215
 Polymeric enteral
 feed 586
 Polymyalgia 559
 Polymyositis 554
 Polyneuritis, post-
 infective 716
 Polyneuropathy 508
 Polyopia (occipital) 503
 Polypharmacy 8
 Polyposis 618, 714, 722
 Polyps 618, 714, 722
 colonic **257F**
 Polyradiculopathy 717
 Polyserositis 386
 Polyuria 64, 232
 Pontine lesions 53, 453
 myelinolysis 401,
 511, **686**
 Poor stream 64, 644
 Popliteal pulse 47**F**
 Porcelain gallbladder
 742
 Porphyria 706
 Port wine stain 724
 Portal
 hypertension 254,
 260–systemic
 shunt 254
 Positive
 predictive value 674
 symptoms, psych 83
 Positron emission
 tomography
 (PET) 752
 Post-cricoid webs 320
 Posterior
 inferior cerebellar
 artery 453
 tibial pulse 47
 Postero-anterior (PA)
 CXR 736
 Post-
 cholecystectomy
 syndrome 281
 herpetic neuralgia
 71, 400
 ictal 494
 Todd's palsy 726
 myocardial infarction
 syndrome 712
 operative compli-
 cations 578, 582
 fluid R 680
 gastrectomy 624
 oliguria 578
 pain 577

- Post-... *continued*
 partum 199
 diabetes 224
 pituitary necrosis
 tetanus 424
 thyroiditis 212
 (OHCS 25)
 polio syn 432
 transfusion reactions
 342
 traumatic stress
 disorder (OHCS 347)
- Postural
 hypotension 39,
464, 498
 tremor 472
- Posture odd 472
- Potassium 688
 dangerous levels 679
 fast 'stat' bolus 688
 hyperkalaemia 299,
688, 849
 ECG 689**F**
 emergency R_x 849
 hypokalaemia 688
 homeostasis 682
 in major diseases 678
 requirements 680
 with sliding scale 591
- Pott's syndrome 722
- Poverty, how it kills 409
- Power, motor exam
 72-4, 456-7
- Pox virus 376
- Pr
 exam 633
 interval 90
- Prader-Willi (OHCS 652)
- Pre-Bötzinger
 neurones 450
- Pre-cancerous syn 215
- Pre-diabetes 197
- Prednisolone 370
- Pre-eclampsia 308
 (OHCS 48)
- Pregnancy, and
 radiation 733
- Premalignant
 endocrinopathies 215
 Ménétrier's dis. 720
- Premedication 574
- Premortons 666, 668
- Pre-op.
 care **568**
 acute abdomen
 608
 Addison's dis. 592
 anticoagulants 592
 diabetes 590
 drugs 568
 general 569
 GI obstruction 612
 haemostasis tests
 445
 heparin 568
 hyperthyroidism
 593
 jaundice 592
 morbidity scale 569
 nil by mouth 571
 pacemakers 126,
 790
 sickle-cell dis 334
- Presbycusis 468
- Prescribing **8**
 compliance/concord-
 ance 3, 12
 in liver failure 259
 in renal failure 301
- Presenting radiology
 images 735
- Pressure sores 477**F**,
 662
- Pressure ulcer 477
- Pre-syncope 34, 464
- Pre-tectum 79**F**
- Pretibial myxoedema
 68-9, 210
- Prevalence 665
- Prevention 666 (OHCS
 467)
 AIDS 408, 412
 barriers to (OHCS 484)
 cancer 531
 breast 524
 colorectal 604, **619**
 infertility 619
 liver 271
 cardiovascular dis.
 87, 236, 658,
 contractures 478
 DVT 182, 580
 endocarditis 144
 gastroenteritis 390
 heart dis. 87, 236, 704
 risk-factor
 equation 664
 hepatitis 283
 alcoholic 271
 HIV 408, 412
 infections post-op 572
 infectious disease 391
Influenza 402
 limb loss 205
 malaria 396
 malnutrition 586
 meningitis 391, 833
 myocardial infarct-
 ion in ACS 811
 nosocomial
 (hospital-
 acquired) infection
 393
 osteoporosis 696
 pneumococcal
 infection 160, 391
 polio 391, 433
 prenatal (OHCS
 152-232)
 pulmonary emboli
 182, 580
 rabies 432
 rheumatic fever 136
 stones 640
 stroke 476
 thalassaemia 336
 tuberculosis 391
 polio 391, 433
 prenatal (OHCS
 152-232)
 pulmonary emboli
 182, 580
 rabies 432
 rheumatic fever 136
 stones 640
 stroke 476
 thalassaemia 336
 tuberculosis 391
- Preventive health by
 target payment
 205
- Priapism 223, 334
- Primary
 biliary cirrhosis 266
 autoantibodies 555
 care (OHCS ch.6)
 sclerosing
 cholangitis 266
 survey 793
- Primum non nocere*
 1st do no harm 8,
 15, 772
- Prinzmetal angina 722
- Prion disease 710
- Prism 18
- Probiotics 418
 in diarrhoea 246
- Probiy 387
- Procainamide *see*
endpapers
- Procedures, GI,
 radiological 756
- Processus vaginalis 615
- Proctalgia fugax 632, 634
- Proctitis 272
 gonococcus 418
Helicobacter 447
 ulcerative colitis 272
- Proctoscopy 633-4
- Procurator Fiscal
 (coroner in
 Scotland) 6
- Professionalism 2
- Prognathia 231**F**
- Progressive
 massive fibrosis 192
 muscular atrophy 510
 systemic sclerosis 554
 supranuclear palsy
 499
- Prokinetic agents 242
- Prolactin 228
- Prolapsed
 disc, intervertebral
 470, 544, 545**F**
 mitral valve 138
 piles 138, 634
 rectum 632
 uterine 650
- Proliferative
 retinopathy 203**F**
- Prologue on teamwork
 ix
- Promyelocytes 322,
 359**F**
- Pronator drift 73
- Prophylaxis, *see also*
 Prevention
 pre-op 569, 572
 endocarditis 144
 malaria 396
 MRSA 572
- Propionibacteria* 447
- Propofol 574
- Propositis 21
- Proprioception 72-5, 450
- Proptosis
 (exophthalmos)
 210, 211**F**
- Prospective study 665
- Prostatectomy 644
 pre- & post-op 645
 radical 646
- Prostatic
 bogginess 647
 carcinoma 646
 -specific antigen **534**
 to test or not? 647
 hypertrophy 644
 assessment 64
 surgery 644, 646
- Prostatitis 292, 418, **647**
 treatment 647
- Prosthetic valves
45F, 142
- Prostitutes 385
- Protease inhibitors
 (PI) 414
- Protein
 c, & coagulation 368
 mis-folding diseases
 711
 serum proteins 700
- Proteinosis 158
- Proteinuria 286, 700
- Proteus 375
- Prothrombin time
see PTT
- Protists 374
- Proton
 density (PD)
 weighting, MRI 748
 pump inhibitors **242**,
 244, 730
- Protozoa 374**F**
 babesia 447
 balantidium 436
 Chagas 426
 cryptosporidium 39
 giardia 436**F**
 in gut 436
 isospora 410
 leishmania 439**F**
 malaria 394**F**, 395**F**
 microsporidium 436
 toxoplasmosis 405**F**
- Providencia 447
- Proximal weakness 68,
514, 554, 716
- Pruritus 26
 ani 632
- PSA *see* prostate-
 specific antigen
- Pseudo-
 aneurysms 656
 athetosis 81
 bulbar affect 511
 bulbar palsy 510
 Cushing's 217
 cyst, pancreas 757**F**
 MRI 757**F**
 cysts 638, 639**F**
 emotionalism 478, 510
 gout 550, 551**F**
 hypoparathyroidism
 214
 membranous colitis
 247
 obstruction 613, 722
 polyp 272
 pseudo-hypopara-
 thyroidism 214
 seizures 496
 tumour cerebri 502
- Pseudomonas* **422**, 447
 antibiotics 378-381
 if neutropenic 346
- Psittacosis 162
- Psoas sign 610
 abscess 617, 653
- Psoriatic arthritis 552
 (OHCS 594)
- PSP 499
- Psychiatric symptoms
 83
- Psychiatry 11, 82 (OHCS
 ch 4)

Psychogeriatrician 490, 492
 Psychosis 83
 Psychosomatic medicine 16
 Psychotherapy (*OHCS* 370-489)
 PT(T) 340, 769
 warfarin 344
 PTA/PTCA 110, 658
 PTH† 214
 PTHrP 214
 Ptois 78
 Public health 373, 387, 432, **664-7**
 audit (*OHCS* 506)
 chlamydia 417
 cholera 426
 diet 236
 drug abuse 384
 economics/QALYs 10
 epidemiology 666-675
 evidence-based medicine 666-8
 food 377
 gastroenteritis **380**, 420
 history 427
 HIV 408-415
 immunization 391
 infections 373
 malaria 396
 malnutrition (*OHCS* 168)
 notifiable diseases 373
 origins 427
 phone numbers 667
 plague 422
 prevention see prevention
 primary care (*OHCS* 472)
 psychiatric care (*OHCS* 400)
 purchasing (*OHCS* 526)
 screening 667, 672
 sexual health 417 (*OHCS* 243)
 sexually transmitted dis. 412, 415, **416-419**
 strategic thinking (*OHCS* 484)
 water 377
 Publication bias 670
 Puffiness 231
 PUJ obstruction 642
 Pulmonary
 angiograms 158
 ECG changes 92
 embolism 182
 massive 828
 eosinophilia 718
 fibrosis 192
 hypertension 194
 nodules 738
 oedema 128-130
 neurogenic (EV71) 387
 severe 812
 osteoarthropathy 166
 valve stenosis 142

Pulse 36, 38, **40**, 50, 60, 68
 absent 658
 in a leg see *endpapers*
 alternans **40**, 128, 148
 anacrotic (slow-rising) 36, 40, 41
 bisferiens 40
 bounding 40
 collapsing 40, 140
 jerky 146
 oximetry 156
 paradoxus **40**, 116, 148
 pressure 38
 slow rising 40
 small volume 40
 venous 40, 41**F**
 water hammer 41, 140
 wave forms 41**F**
 Pulsus
 paradoxus **40**, 116, 148
 alternans **40**, 128, 148
 Pump failure 814
 PUO 386
 Pupil 76-9
 Argyll Robertson 79
 Holmes-Adie 79
 Hutchinson's 79
 reactions 79, 803
 Purpura 62
 amyloid 364, 365**F**
 bleeding disorder 338
 cholesterol emboli 308
 CMV 404
 defined 62, 716
 DIC 346
 haemolytic uraemia 308
 Henoch-Schönlein 716
 ITP 338
 leukaemia 348
 meningococcal 729**F**, 832**F**
 osteogenesis imperfecta (*OHCS* 700)
 polyarteritis nodosa 558
 post-transfusion 342
 protein cts± 368, 728
 scarlet fever (*OHCS* 564)
 TTP 308, 338
 Waterhouse 728
 Weil's disease 430
 Pus 383
 Putamen 269, 448**F**
 Pyelogram 759**F**
 antegrade 759**F**
 intravenous 758
 retrograde 759
 Pyelonephritis 286, 292, 300
 Pyloric stenosis
 acquired 626
 congenital 628
 Pyoderma 274, 564
 gangrenous 565**F**
 Pyonephrosis 292, 640
 Pyramidal
 neurons 451
 tract 451

Pyrexia 578
 post-op 386
 tropical 578
 unknown origin, 388
 Pyrophosphate 550
 Pyruvate kinase 332
 Pys 177
 Pyuria (pus in urine), sterile 288
Q
 Q24h/Q48h 766
 Q fever 434
 QALYs 10
 QT interval† 724
 QTc 90
 Qrisk 87, 675
 Quadripareisis/plegia 510, 512, 686
 in stroke 474
 power grade 451
 Quadruple
 assessment 605
 therapy (TB) 398
 Quality
 of life 10
 outcomes & Drs pay 205
 Quantiferon TB Gold® test 398
 Question-mark posture 553**F**
 Questions 4
 Queyrat's erythroplasia 598
 Qian Ceng Ta 492
 Quincke's sign 38
 Quinke's triad 270
 Quotations see Literature and medicine
R
 Rabies 432
 RAD 90
 Radial, nerve 456, 506
 pulse 36, 47
 Radiation 733
 and pregnancy 733
 doses 733
 equivalent doses 733
 enteritis 281
 exposure 733
 nephritis 306
 risks 733
 Radiculoneuropathy 508
 Radiculopathy 512
 Radiodensity, x-ray 735
 Radio-femoral delay 36, 38, 150
 Radiofrequency ablation 120
 Radioiodine 208, 210
 Radiological GI procedures 756
 Radiology *Ch.17*
 abdominal film 740
 cancer 529
 cardiovascular 754
 chest 736-9
 CNS 483, 485, 760

Radiology... *continued*
 CT 744
 GU 758
 image
 interpretation 735
 presentation 735
 MRI 748
 other details 732
 request 734
 scans 529
 Radionuclide imaging 760-7
 cancer 529
 cardiology 754
 thyroid 503**F**
 ventriculography 754
 Radio-radial delay 36, 38, 150
 Radiotherapy 530
 renal disease 306
 Raised hemidiaphragm 736
 Ramsay Hunt syn 77, 466, 504, **505**
 Ramstedt's op 628
 Randomized control trial 666-9
 in surgery 637
 Ranula 238
 Rapid plasma reagin 431
 Rashes
 acneiform 552
 arsenic poisoning 672
 butterfly 556, 557**F**
 discoid 556, 557**F**
 heliotrope/lilac 554
 necrotic 389**F**, 662
 livedo reticularis 556, 559**F**
 papular 554
 penile 416, 431, 552, 598, 708
 psoriaform 552
 rheumatoid 548
 RAST 168
 Rat flea 422**F**
 Rationing 10, 223
 Raynaud's 554, 556, 722, 723**F**
 RBBB 94, 96
 RCDW 319
 RCTs 666-9
 in surgery 637
 RDW 319
 Re-abled 478
 Reactive arthritis 552
 Reading 17, **80**
 test-types see 1st *endpapers* **F**
 Rebound abdominal tenderness 62
 Reciprocal ST depression 97**F**, 112
 Rectal
 bleeding 247, **631**
 in colorectal cancer 618
 in diverticulosis 630, 631
 in piles 631, **634**
 carcinoma **618**, 757**F**
 screening for 619
 examination 633

- Rectal... *continued*
 prolapse 632
 tumours 618
 Rectocele 248
 Red
 cell
 casts 286, 287F
 in GN 300
 distribution width 319
 immature 359F
 indices 769
 membrane 332
 scan 753
 diaper syn 447
 eye 563
 Reductionism 5, 197
 Reductionist medicine
 at fault 231, 337
 Reduviids 438F
 Reed-Sternberg cell 355F
 Re-emerging diseases
 387-8
 Re-entry tachycardias
 120
 Rees' rule 667, 672 (*OHCS*
 486)
 Refractory anemia
 with ring
 sideroblasts 321
 Refeeding syn 589
 Reference values
 769-771
 problems with 676
 Referrals
 beyond the firm 25
 in possible
 malignancy 532
 Referred pain 611
 Referred pain
 mechanisms 513
 Reflectivity 735
 ultrasound 735
 Reflexes 72-5, 450, 545
 ankle 75
 biceps 73
 brisk 68
 knee 75
 slow relaxing 68, 212
 supinator 73
 triceps 73
 Reflux oesophagitis 244
 Refsum's syn 724
 Refusing treatment
 11, 570
 Jehovah's Witnesses
 343
 Regurgitation 59, 244
 Rehabilitation 12
 as part of pain relief
 536, 538
 in elderly 13
 post-CABG 111
 post-MI 114
 post-stroke 478
 Reiter's syn 552
 Relapsing
 fever 430
 polycondritis 554
 Relative risk reduction
 671
 Relaxation (*OHCS* 344)
 Remission in leukaemia
 348
- Renal
 angiography 559F,
 758, 759F
 artery stenosis 308,
 309F 759F
 biopsy 297, 303
 calcification 306, 312,
 646, 758
 calculus 640
 CT 758F
 ultrasound 751F
 IIV 758F, 759F
 carcinoma 646
 colic 640
 cysts 312 (us), 758F
 dialysis 291, 298
 DSA 759F
 failure (see CKD and
 AKI)
 acute 290
 emergency 848
 chemistry 290, 678
 chronic 300-2
 classification by
 eGFR 295
 screening 294
 management 296
 drugs in 8, 297
 end-stage 294
 histology 294, 295F,
 309F
 hypertension 308
 imaging 758
 inherited dis. 312
 injury, acute 290-293
 manifestations of
 systemic dis. 314
 diabetes 314
 MRA 749F, 759
 reconstruction 642, 645
 papillary necrosis
 288
 physiology 682
 replacement therapy
 298
 stones 640, 641F
 urate 694F
 toxins 307
 tract obstruction
 642, 640-6, 759F
 transplant 299
 on US 607F
 tubular
 acidosis 310
 necrosis 298
 ultrasound 751F, 758
 vascular dis. 308
 vein thrombi 302
- Renin 220, 682
 Reovirus 376
 Repetition 80
 time, MRI 748
 Request, radiology 734
 Resilience in the face
 of catastrophe
 373, 793
 Resistance antibiotic
 378, 419, 420
 TB 409
 Resonance, chest
 percussion 54, 176,
 182, 824
 Resource, allocation 10
 -limited HIV R 413
- Respiratory
 acidosis 684
 alkalosis 684
 arrest *see endpapers*
 Cheyne-Stokes 53
 distress 52
 syndrome 178
 examination 50-5
 failure 164, 180
 function tests 156
 segments 53F
 sounds 52
 support 178
 symptoms 22
 tract infection
 lower 160-4
 upper 401
 Respite care (relatives)
 449
 Restless legs 302, 712
 Restrictive spirometry
 157F
 Results-driven targets
 205
 Resuscitation *see*
endpapers
 RET gene 215
 Retention, urine 644
 Reticular shadows, CXR
 738F
 Reticulocytes 322, 323F
 Retinal
 artery occlusion 562
 haemorrhage 132,
 203F, 482, 562,
 infarcts 79, 144, 202,
 203F, 386, 405,
 480, 562
 light (red) reflex 76
 vein occlusion 562
 Retinitis
 CMV 405F
 pigmentosa 312, 724
 Retinopathy 366, 562
 DM 203F
 HIV 405F, 562
 hypertensive 133,
 562F
 Retractable testis 654
 Retrograde
 pancreatography
see ERCP
 pyelogram 759
 Retroperitoneal 206
 fibrosarcomas 642
 fibrosis 643F
 Retropharyngeal
 abscess (*OHCS* 564)
 Retropubic
 prostatectomy 644
 Retrospective study
 665
 Retrovirus 376, 408-414
 Revascularization
 heart 45
 CABG 110
 legs 658
 Reverse transcriptase
 376
 Reye's syn (*OHCS* 652)
 Reynard's rule 286
 Rhabdomyolysis 307
 Rhabdovirus 376, 432
 Rheumatic fever 136
- Rheumatoid
 arthritis 548
 factor 548, 555
 nodules 30, 548, 596,
 597F
 Rheumatology *Ch.12*
 Rhinovirus 376
 Rhonchi (wheeze) 50-2
 in asthma 172-4, 820
 Rhythm (ECG) 90
 1st rib syn (*OHCS* 660)
see thoracic
 outlet, 600
 Riboflavin 321
 Ribs, cervical *see*
 thoracic outlet
 Rice water stool 426
 Richter's
 hernia 614
 syndrome 352
 Rickets 698, 699F
 Rickettsia 435
 Riedel's
 lobe 742
 thyroiditis 602
 RIF 567F
 masses 57, 606
 pain 57, 567, 610
 Right
 bundle branch
 block 96
 ECG 94
 heart failure 128
 iliac fossa *see* RIF
 shift 322
 ventricular
 hypertrophy 94
 Rights *see* Human
 Rights
 Rigidity 72, 450, 498
 Rigler's
 sign 608, 740
 triad 742
 Rigors 27, 386, 388,
see also PUO
 blind antibiotic R 382
 fever/night sweats
 27, 352-360
 Riluzole 510
 Ring
 shadows (CXR)
 154, 738
 sideroblasts 321F
 -worm 440
 Rinne's test 468
 Risk
 communication 666
 equations 675
 -factor analysis 675
 reduction 664
 Risus sardonius 424
 Rituals in medicine 23
 River blindness 443
 RNA viruses 376
 Robson staging 646
 Rockall score 253
 Rocky Mountain
 spotted fever 435
 Rodent ulcer 598, 599F
 Romano-Ward 464, 724
 Romapa's sign 438
 Romberg's test 75
 Rome II criteria, IBS 276
 Root pain 544

Rose
 Bengal drops 724
 spots 426
 thorn ulcer 274
 Ross, R 395F
 Rotavirus 376, 390
 Roth spots 38, **144**,
 386F, 562,
Rothia 447
 Rotor syndrome 724
 Rouleaux 322, 323F
 roulette 762F
 Roundworms 442
 Routine exam 84
 Roux-en-Y 624
 Rovsing's sign 62, 610
 RPN 295
 RSV 376
 Rub
 pericardial 44, 148
 pleural 51-2
 Rubber
 band ligation 634
 industrial disease
 (bladder ca) 648
Rubella (OHCS 142)
 prevention 391
 Rubeosis iridis 202
 Rumbling mid-diastolic
 murmur 44
 Runyon's law 672
 Ruptured
 aneurysm 657
 diverticulum 630
 duodenum 626
 oesophagus 621
 gallbladder 636
 viscera 610
 Ruq pain 636
 RV4 (VR4) 808

S

Sabre tibia 699F
 Sacral
 oedema 37, 128
 pad 580-
 iliac joint 552
 Saddleback fever 386
 'Saddle-nose' deformity
 728
 Safety, check lists 569
 never events 772
 Salbutamol 175, 820
 Salicylate poisoning 856
 Salivary glands 601
 enlargement 349F
Salmonella 247, 426
 Salpingitis 418 (OHCS 286)
 Salt intake, low-salt
 diet 260
 Salt-poor albumin 831
 Salutogenesis 417
 Sandfly 439F
 SaO₂ 156
 Saphena varix 653, 660
 Sarcoidosis 186
 facial palsy in 504
 Sarcomas (OHCS 699)
Sarcoptes 416F
 SARS 163, 376, 387
 SARS-COV virus 163
 Sartre 15
 Saving lives 793

SBE 144
 SBFT, normal 756F
 SBO 612, 741F
 Scabies 416F (OHCS 608)
 Scalenius syn (OHCS 606)
 Scanning speech 80, 501
 Scars, chest 38
 Schilling test 327
 Schirmer's test 724
 Schistocytes 330, 322
 Schistosomiasis 445F
 Schmidt syn 218
 Schober's test 542
 Schwannoma **466**,
 503, 518
 Schwannomatosis 518
 Sciatic
 hernias 614
 nerve 457, 506
 sciatica (OHCS 674)
 Scientific rigour 668
 Scintigraphy 752
 bone 752
 cardiac 755
 dopamine 760
 MUGA 755
 perfusion (q) 752F
 scintigram 752F
 thyroid 209, 752F
 ventilation (v) 752F
 Scissors manoeuvre 763
 Scleritis 548, 558, **562**
 Sclerodactyly 554
 Scleroderma 554
 Sclerosant 634
 Sclerosing cholangitis
 267
 Sclerosis, amyotrophic
 lateral 510
 multiple 500
 systemic 554
 Scoliosis 55, 714
 juvenile 514 (OHCS 672)
 Scotoma 77
 Scratch marks 62
 Scratch test 62
 Screening **667**, 672
 alcoholism 282
 aneurysm 657
 bowel ca 619
 breast cancer 604
 cervical (OHCS 273)
 chlamydia 417
 cholesterol 704
 colorectal cancer 619
 depression 478
 hypertension 132
 hypothyroidism 212
 lipids 704
 mammography 604
 prostate 534, 646
 TB 398
 via tumour markers
 534
 Scribner shunt 315
 Scrofula 375, 663
 Scrotal
 lumps 652
 pain 64
 Scurvy 278
 Scybala 740
 Sebaceous cysts 596
 Secret door, Corrigan's
 14

Sedation 787
 emergency, in
 violence 11
 terminal/total 7
 Segments respiratory
 53F
 SEHCAT test 281
 Seizures 494-6
 emergency R 836
 Selenium 281, 693
 Selenium homocholic
 acid 281
 Self-catheterization 777
 Semen
 cryopreservation 531
 and perpetual
 youth 711
 Semilunar folds 742
 Seminoma 652
 Sengstaken-Blakemore
 tube 254, **255**, 830
 Senile
 calcification 140
 cataract 202
 deafness 202, 468
 degeneration of
 joint 546
 CNS 492, 498
 heart valve 140,
 141F
 Sensation see Sensory
 Sensitivity 670, 674
 to antibiotics 378
 Sensory
 ataxia 75, 431, 471-2
 aura 462
 dermatomes 458
 dissociated loss
 450, 520
 examination 72-5
 glove & stocking
 anaesthesia 204
 level (radiculopathy)
 512, 527
 loss 453, 470, 471, 512,
 diabetes 204
 dissociated 450,
 520
 leprosy 428
 pernicious
 anaemia 328
 myelopathy, HTLV-1
 520
 neuropathy 471,
 506-508, 520
 Sentinel
 loops 608, 638, 639
 AXR 742
 node biopsy 594, **605**
 pile (skin tag) 632
 Septic
 arthritis 546, 541
 shock 804
 Septicaemia 382,
 582, 805
 Serene swans 540
 Seronegative arthritis
 552
 Serotonin see 5HT
 syndrome, 855
 Serpinopathies 264
Serratia 447
 Serum hepatitis 406
 Sestamibi scan 529

Sexual
 desire, low 197
 diseases 416-8
 HIV 408-415
 syphilis 431
 manifesto 408
 negotiation skills 408
 pleasure, ?q>♂ 229
 Sézary syndrome
 357F, 598
 Shadowing
 acoustic, US 750
 alveolar, CXR 129F, **738**
 bat's wing 129F
 CXR 738
 reticular, CXR 738
 'ring', CXR 738
 tramline 166
 water-dense 184
 Shakespeare vs
 Newton 16
 Shakhonovich's (OHCS
 652)
 Shaman 429
 Shawl sign 554
 Sheehan syn 224 (OHCS
 55)
 Sherlock Holmes 13,
 257, 389
 Shifting dullness see
 ascites 61
Shigella 426
 Shingles 400, 458F
 Shock 804
 anaphylactic 806
 ARDS and 178
 cardiogenic 814
 haemorrhagic 609,
 805, 830
 resuscitation 805
 toxic 420
 Short gut syndrome 582
 Shunts
 AV, L→R 28, **150**, 151F
 nephritis 295, 314
 porto-systemic
 (TIPSS) 254,
 260, 710
 pulmonary-systemic
 28, 150
 Scribner 315
 ventriculo-peritoneal
 (vp) 502
 Shy-Drager syn 499
 Sialadenitis 724
 Sialogram 601F
 Sicca syndrome 562, 724
 Sick sinus syndrome 118
 Sickle-cell
 and gallstones 636
 anaemia 334
 crises 335
 pre-op 569
 Sideroblasts 320, 321F
 Side-room lab 383
 Siderosis 262, 336
 Sieve
 surgical 13
 Sight see vision
 Sigmoid
 colon 618
 diverticulae 757F
 -oscopy 256
 volvulus 613

- SIGN guidelines on haematuria 649
 Signal intensity, MRI 735, 748
 Signs, clinical *Ch.2*
 Silastic catheters 776
 Silent
 chest 50–4, **820**
 renal disease **285F**
 stones 636
 Silhouette sign **736F**
 Silicosis 192
 Silver wiring 133, **562F**
 Simmonds' disease/
 Sheehan's syn. 224
 Simple bowel
 obstruction 612
 Singer's nodules 48
 Sinus
 anatomical definition 567
 bradycardia 92, 118
 cavernous 83
 cervical 600
 pilonidal 632
 rhythm 42, 90
 sick sinus syn 118
 tachycardia 92
 thrombosis 484
 Sinusitis **460 (OHCS 558)**
 SIRS 805
 Sister Mary Joseph
 nodule 724
 Six to five against 672
 Sjögren's syn **724**
 autoantibodies 555
 Skin
 diseases (*OHCS ch. 8*)
 discoloration 28, 32
 endocrinopathy 197
 important 598
 signs of systemic disease 564
 snips, diagnosis 443
 tags 632
 TB 708
 ulcer 662
 Skull
 fractures **486, 838**
 pepper-pot 214,
 362 step deformity 800
 x-ray **337F**
 SLA 268
 SLE 294, **556, 557**
 autoantibodies 555
 Sleep
 apnoea 194
 disorders
 children (*OHCS 392*)
 paralysis 714
 hygiene 27
 inappropriate (ie narcolepsy) 714
 Sleeping sickness 438
 Sleeplessness 27
 Sliding
 hernias 614
 scale 591, 843
 Slim, too (cachexia) 29
 Slipped disc 544, **545F**
 Slow
 acetylators 556
 viruses, CJD 710
 Slow... *continued*
 -flow retinopathy 366
 SLUD 855
 Small
 bowel
 obstruction (SBO),
 AXR **743F**
 imaging 756
 ischaemia 622
 cell lung tumour 170
 vessel vasculitis 558
 Smallpox 376, 387
 Smell 76, 503
 strange 494, 503
 Smoke inhalation 859
 Smoke-ring sign **155F**
 Smoking 48, 658
 ca lung 170
 pack-years in COPD 177
 quit 87
 ring sign **155F**
 risk-factor study 665
 sputum in 48, 154
 risk of surgery 568
 Snail
 diseases 445, 446
 meningitis 833
 vectors 445
 -track ulcers 431
 Snake bite 855
 Snellen chart *see front endpapers*
 Snow, John 427
 Social
 biophysical care 9
 context of illness 235, 661
 history 5, **20, 34, 48, 56, 64**
 inequality 10, 387
 worker 860
 SOCRATES (acronym for pain) 20, 34
 Socratic questioning 666
 Sodium 682, **686**
 homeostasis 682
 in hyperglycaemia 842
 nitroprusside 134
 too fast→CPM 686
 Sod's law **359, 666, 672**
 Soft tissue sarcoma (*OHCS 699*)
 SOL *see* Space-occupying lesion
 Solar disinfection 390
 Soluble liver antigen 268
 Somatic syndromes 560
 Somatization 661
 treatment *OHCS 641*
 Somatostatinoma 215, 276
 Somatropin 225
 Sore throat (*OHCS 564*)
 in EBV 401
 rheumatic 136
 Soul
 -making 16
 -searching 595
 your own & its nourishment 9
 Souls, Miltons to Newtons≈500:1 16
 Sounds
 breath 51–2
 heart 146, 42
 Space-occupying lesion
 cerebral 502
 MRI **749F**
 lung 170
 CXR 738
 Spasm
 bronchospasm 172–4
 colon/IBS 276
 coronary artery 111, 723
 laryngospasm 574
 masseter, *see* Trismus 424
 sphincter 632
 Spastic
 paraparesis **470, 520**
 quadriparesis 512
 Spasticity 72, 451, 470, 500
 Specialist nurses *see* nurse specialists
 Specificity 670, 674
 SPECT 496, 753
 Speech 80
 disorders & therapists 478
 Donald Duck 80
 staccato 80
 Sperm preservation 531
 Spermatc fascia **653F**
 Spermatocyte 652
 Sphenopalatine ganglion **505F**
 Spheroctysis 322, 332, **323F**
 Spider naevi 62, 260, **261F**
 Spigelian hernia 614
 Spinal
 accessory n. 76
 artery syn 512
 cord 470, 512
 compression **470, 520, 544**
 degeneration 328, 471, 712,
 hemisection 710
 TB (Pott's) 722
 tumours 722
 imaging
 cervical spine, on MRI **749F**
 lumbar spine, on AXR **742, 743F**
 in unwell pt 763
 impingement **749F**
 cervical
 spondylosis **512F, 513F**
 emergencies **545F**
 Spinocerebellar tract 450, **727F**
 Spinothalamic tracts 450, **520F, 727F**
 Spiritual models of care 9
 Spirituality 429
 Spirochaetes 430, **431F**
 Spirometry 156
 incentive 334
 spiograms **157F**
 steroid-reversibility test 177
 Splanchnic vasodilation 254
 Splash, succussion 56
 Spleen 367
 CML 352
 endocarditis 144
 examination 63
 infarction 334
 lymphoma 356
 malaria 394
 myelofibrosis 360
 palpation 60–2
 percussion of 61
 rupture 608
 sickle cell disease 334
 too big 367, 606
 Splenectomy 367, 582
 Splenomegaly 63, 367, 606
 Splinter haemorrhages 32, 36, 144
 Split hand sign 510
 SpO₂ 156
 Spondyloarthritis 552
 Spondylolisthesis 544
 Spongiform
 encephalopathy 710
 Spontaneous
 peritonitis 260
 Sporotrichosis 440
 Sport 34
 Sprue, tropical 280
 Spurling's manoeuvre 512
 Sputum 53, 156
 Squamous cell ca
 anal 633
 bladder 648
 lung 170
 oesophagus 620
 skin 598, **599F**
 St Jude valve 42
 St segment **90, 92, 103**
 criteria 94
 in exercise test 102
 reciprocal changes **97F**
 sequential changes in MI **98F, 113**
 St Vitus' dance 136 (*OHCS 758*)
 Staccato speech 80
 Staging, breast 604
 Standard deviation 765
 Standard error of mean 765
 Stapedial nerve **505F**
 Staphylococcus 144, **374F, 420**
 MRSA 420
 pneumonia 160, 162
 Stapled haemorrhoidectomy 634
 Starr-Edwards valve 42, 45
 Stars **2F, 229, 359, 673F**
 (*see also* front cover)

- Statins 109, 704
 Statistical analysis **671**
 Statistics 670, 765
 Status
 asthmaticus 820
 epilepticus 836
 non-convulsive 489
 Steatohepatitis 265
 Steatorrhoea 59, 246, 280
 Steatosis 269
 Steele-Richardson-Olszewski syn 499
 Stein-Leventhal (polycystic ovary) 222 (*OHCS* 242)
 Stem cell 499
 disorders 332
 transplant 354
 STEMI 808
 Stenosis
 cardiac valve 105, 138, 140, 142, 143
 carotid artery 453, 474, 480
 coronary artery 104, 110
 foramen magnum 520
 pyloric 626, 628
 renal artery **308**, 759F
 subclavian artery 453
 tracheal 48, 582
 Stent
 aneurysm 657F
 bile duct 250
 cancer 621
 bronchial 158
 carotid artery 476
 in TIA 480
 vs endarterectomy 659
 coronary 110
 definition 567
 double J 742
 drug-eluting 592
 endoscopic 257, 756
 MRCP 267
 endovascular 656, 657F
 GU obstruction 292, 642
 intracranial 482
 jaundice palliation 276
 large bowel 612
 carcinoma 618
 mesenteric artery portosystemic 259
 renovascular 308, 758
 svc 170
 oncology emergencies 526
 ureteric stent problems 643
 urethral 651
 Sternohyoid **601F**
 Steroids 370
 SE 371
 Stethoscope use 36–45, 50–4, 60–2
 Stevens-Johnson 724
 Stigler's law 708
 Stitches 572
 Stokes-Adams 464
 Stomach
 arterial supply 623
 endoscopy 256
 gastritis 242
 hernia 244, 245F
 surgery 624
 tumours 620
 ulcers 242
 volvulus 613
 Stomas 584
 complications 585
 types 585
 Stomatitis 238, 321F
 Stomatocytosis 332
 Stone, scissors and paper 9
 Stones, gall 636, 756
 ERCP 757F
 renal 640
 salivary gland 601
 scissors and paper 9
 Stools see faeces
 Strain pattern 92, 194
 Strangury 64, 640, 651
 Strep bovis 257
Streptococcus 144, 374F, 375, 420, 447
 CNS autoimmunity 715
 S. bovis 257, 447
 Streptokinase
 MI 808
 CI 808
 mechanism 339
 PE 828
 Stress 14, 277
 echo 755
 incontinence 650
 Stretta radiofrequency ablation 244
 Striae **217F**
 Stricture, oesophageal **241F**
 Stridor 48, 526
 Stricken or re-abled 478
 Stroke **474–480**
 causes 474, 476
 investigation 474, 476
 imaging 453F, 474, 475F, 760F
 management 474
 prevention 236, **476**
 rehabilitation 478
 symptoms/signs 453, 474
Strongyloides 442
 Struma ovarii 210
 Struthers arcade 507
 Sturge-Weber 724
 Stylomastoid faramen **505F**
 Subacute, bacterial endocarditis 144
 combined degen. of the cord 328, 471F
 Subarachnoid haemorrhage 482
 CSF in bleeds 782
 space **513F**
 Subclavian artery aneurysm 600
 cannulation, 589, 788
 steal syndrome 453
 vein anatomy **589F**
 Subconjunctival haemorrhage **563F**
 Subcutaneous nodules 597
 Subdural haemorrhage 486
 Subjectivity 5
 Subluxation 30
 Submandibular gland **601F**
 Subphrenic abscess 630
 Substance P 454
 Succussion splash 56
 Sudden death
 alcohol 282
 anaphylaxis 806
 arrhythmia 120, 146, 709, 724
 aortic aneurysm 656
 stenosis 140
 blackouts 465
 blast injury 862
 Brugada syn. 709
 carbon monoxide 858
 cardiac 120, 146, 709, 724
 cardiomyopathy 146
 Chagas' dis. 438
 choking (*OHCS* 238)
 eclampsia (*OHCS* 48)
 ecstasy 855
 embolism
 amniotic *OHCS* 89
 fat *OHCS* 736
 pulmonary 828
 epilepsy (SUDEP) 496
 fears of 496
 gunshot (*OHCS* 720)
 long QT 724
 Marfan's syn 720
 meningococcal 832
 mushroom **251F**
 myocardial infarct and VF see *endpapers*
 myocarditis 146
 phaeochromocytoma 846
 pneumothorax 824
 postpartum bleed (*OHCS* 84)
 pulmonary embolism 828
 Romano-Ward 724
 status asthmaticus 820
 epilepticus 836
 subarachnoid 482
 Wolff-Parkinson-White 120
 Sudeck's point 623
 SUDEP 496
 Suicide pact 459
 Suicide risk 850 (*OHCS* 338)
 Sulfasalicylic acid test 286
 Sumatriptan 462
 Superficial spreading melanoma 598
 Superior vena cava obstruction see SVC
 Suppositories 248, 536, 538
 Supraventricular tachycardia see SVT
 Surface area 446
 Surgery *Ch.14*
 paediatric 628, 629F
 obesity 593
 Surgical
 cricothyroidotomy 786
 debulking 502
 decompression, eyes 211
 drains 573
 embolectomy 659
 emergencies 610, 628
 emphysema in the neck 282
 language 567
 shunts 254, 526
 sieve 13
 terms 567
 Survival
 house-jobs 9
 of the fittest 373, 427
 Susceptibility to antibiotics 378
 Sutures 572
 SVC 589
 obstruction 170, 354, **526**
 saturation 105
 vena caval filter 182
 SVT 120
 or is it VT? 122
 Swallowing problems **240**, 478, 510, 516, 620
 marshmallow test 241
 testing 68, 241, 478
 Swan neck deformity 30, 540F, 548
 Sweating 27, 88, 206, 220, 230, 352–60
 see also anhidrosis and fever
 Swimmers itch 445
 Swollen legs 580
 pitting oedema **36F**
 Sydenham's chorea 136 (*OHCS* 694)
 Symbolism in care 9
 Sympathectomy 658
 Symptom control, cancer 536–8
 Symptoms *Ch.2*
 elucidating 22
 negative/positive 83
 urinary 64, 651
 Synacthen® test 218
 short 224
 Synapses **517F**
 Sync mode, defibrillator 784
 Syncitial virus see RSV
 Syncope 88, **464**
 and driving 152
 emergency 828
 Syndesmozytes 552
 Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion 578, 678, 687F

Syndrome x
 cardiac *see*
 microvascular
 angina
 metabolic 199, 205
 Synercid 420
 Synkinesis 504
 Synovial
 fluid analysis 543
 sheath pathology 596
 Syphilis 416, **431**
 tertiary 471
 Syringe
 drivers 537
 needlestick injury 412
 Syringobulbia 520
 Syringomyelia 520
 Systemic
 inflammatory
 response *syn see*
 SIRS
 lupus erythematosus,
see SLE
 sclerosis 554
 Szasz, on God 83

T

T wave 90, 92
T. gondii 405
 T₁/T₂ weighting 748
 Tabes dorsalis 431, 471
 Taboparesis **471**
 TACE 270
 Tache noire 589**F**
 Tachycardia
 broad complex 122,
 123**F**, 816, 817**F**
 narrow complex 118,
 120, 818, 819,
 sinus 92
 SVT 120
 ventricular 122
 or is it SVT? 122-3
 Tachypnoea 50-3
 neurogenic 53
 symptoms of 53
 Tactile vocal fremitus
 50-4
Taenia 444
 Tail of Spence 67**F**
 Takayasu's arteritis
 558, **726**
 Tamm-Horsfall
 proteins 362
 Tamoxifen 604
 Tamponade
 balloon 255
 cardiac 148, **814**
 Tangier disease 705
 Tap
 ascitic 260, **778**
 bloody CSF tap 782
 lumbar 782
 pleural 778
 test 46
 Tapeworm 444**F**
 Tardive dyskinesia 472
 Target
 cell 322, 323**F**, 335**F**
 -driven health care
 205, 309, 533
 lesions 564, 724
 Tarsal tunnel *syn* 507

Tarsorrhaphy 504
 TAVI 140
 Taxane drugs 604
 Tazocin 378, 382
 TB 398
 genitourinary 289
 meningitis 399, 833
 with AIDS 409
 TBM 399
 T^c-DTPA scans 753
 T-cell leukaemia 348
 Tc perfusion scan
 heart 755**F**
 Teams & team work
 x (prologue), 201,
 316, 518, 533
 stroke team/unit
 475, 478
 Tear drop cell 361**F**
^{99m}Tc-technetium 754
 Technetium scan 752-4
 Technical qualities,
 CXR 736
 Technology
 assessments,
 NICE 10
 Tectum
 pre 79**F**
 TED stockings 130
 Teeth-grinding 394
 Teicoplanin 381, 420
 Telangiectasia 261, 554,
 722, 723**F**
 Telephone numbers 667
 Temperature 30
 measurement 24
 sebsation 520, 710
 Temporal,
 arteritis (giant cell)
 460, **558**, 675
 lobe
 epilepsy 495
 lesions 503
 Temporal pacing 790
 Tenckhoff catheter 304
 Tenderness 30
 Tendon
 reflexes 72-5, 450, 545
 xanthoma 36**F**
 Tenesmus 58, 248
 Tensilon® test 516
 Tension
 headache 460
 pneumothorax 824
 CXR 763**F**
 draining 780
 Teratoma, testis 652
 Terminal
 care 7, 510, 523, 536-8
 dribbling 65
 ileum 274, 328
 sedation 7
 Terrain and the
 pathogen 417
 Territories
 cerebral artery 453**F**
 posterior cerebral
 485**F**
 cerebral veins 453**F**
 Terrorist attack 862
 Terry's nails 32, 260
 Testis
 lumps 652
 imaging 763

Testis, lump... *continued*
 torsion 654
 self exam 655
 tumours 652
 US 652**F**
 Testosterone 222, 224
 replacement 223
 Tests
 assessing death 6
 cognitive 85, 490
 logic of 243, 668, 670,
 673-4,
 lung function 156
 Tetanus 424, 425**F**
 immunization 424
 prophylaxis 425
 Tetany 692
 Tetracosactide 218
 Tetracycline 381
 Thalamus 448**F**
 stroke 474
 too big 714
 Thalassaemia 336
 Thallium scan 529
 Thenar/hypothenar **30F**
 Theophylline 174, 821
 interactions 768
 levels 766
 Therapeutics 8
 Thiamine 278
 Thiazide diuretics 304
 Thiazolidinedione (in
 combination) 200
 Thick/thin films 383,
 394, 430
 Thienopyridines 480
 Thiersch wire 632
 Thin basement
 membrane
 nephropathy 297
 Thinking 521
 about
 medicine *Ch.1*
 thinking 13
 integrative 9, 231
 reductionist or
 holistic? 197
 Third
 heart sound 42
 spacing 804
 Thoracic
 aortic dissection 88,
 106, 212 **656**
 imaging 763
 inlet, *see* outlet
 outlet 66, **506**, 589**F**,
 602, 716, 723
 cervical rib 506,
 600 (**OHCS** 660)
 neck lumps 600
 Thoracoscopy 158
 Thought, deep 16
 Threadworm 442
 Three-way catheter
 644, 776
 Thrills 37, 38, 44
 Thrombin time 340
 Thromboangiitis 658, 710
 Thrombocythaemia
 361**F**
 Thrombocytopenia 338
 Thrombocytopenic
 purpura **308**, 338
 Thrombocytosis 360

Thrombolysis
 mechanism 339
 MI 808
 stroke 475
 Thrombophilia 368
 Thrombophlebitis
 588, 660
 migrans 170, 276, **564**
 Thrombosis
 cerebral **474**, 476, 484
 coronary 112, 116
 deep venous (DVT) 580
 intracranial venous
 484
 recurrent 368, 556
 risk ↑ 369, 581
 Thrombotic
 thrombocytopenic
 purpura 308, 309**F**,
 333**F**
 Thrush (*Candida*) 418
 oral 238
 Thucydides 427
 Thumb 31
 Thunderclap headache
 484
 Thymus tumour 516
 Thyroglossal cyst 68, 600
 Thyroid
 acropachy 68, **210**, **564**
 amiodarone 212
 anatomy 603**F**
 autoantibodies 208,
 210, 555
 cancer 209**F**, 210, **602**
 children **OHCS** 182
 eye disease 211
 examination 68
 function tests 208
 gland relations 209
 Grave's disease 210
 Hashimoto's
 thyroiditis 212
 hormones 208
 hypersecretion 210
 hyposecretion 212
 lump 68, 210-2, **602**
 nodular goitre 210,
 752**F**
 physiology 209
 pregnancy **OHCS** 25
 questions 22, 210,
 212, 602,
 scintigram 752**F**
 stimulating hormone
see TSH
 status 68
 storm 844
 subclinical disease
 213
 surgery 568, 593, 602
 complications
 208-212
 symptoms 22
 tests 208
 ultrasound 603**F**
 Thyroiditis 210
 postpartum 212
 (**OHCS** 25)
 Thyrotoxicosis 210
 cardiomyopathy 146
 neonatal (**OHCS** 25)
 nodular goitre 210
 severe 844

- Thyrotropin 208
Thyroxine 208–12
TIA **480**, 659
Tibial nerve 457, 506
Tibia, sabre **699F**
Tic 472, 714
 doloureux 461
Ticarillin 378
Tick **430F**, **435F**
 -borne
 relapsing fever 430
 ricketsia 435
TICTAC 850
Tietze's syn 88, 726
Tilt tests 464
Time 14
Time bomb: aneurysm
 in the abdomen 657
 in the head 483
Timentin® 378
Tinea **440F**
Tinel's test 30, 507
Tinnitus 468
Tips 255
TIPSS 254, 260, 710
Tissue engineering 223
Tissued drips 775
TNF, ANTI-
 IBD 273, 275
 rheumatoid (RA) 549
TNM classification 527
 bladder ca 649
 breast ca 604
 lung ca 171
 oesophageal ca 621
 prostate ca 647
Toad-like face 197
Tobacco see smoking
Tobramycin 381
 levels 766
Todd's palsy 494, 708, **726**
 syndrome 708
TOE 106, 656, 763
Toes, diabetic 204
 gangrenous 662
Togaviruses 376
Tolosa-Hunt syn 77
Tomograms 158, **744**, 752
Tone 72, 74, 451, 500
Tongue
 biting 464
 black 238
 disease 238, 510
 fasciculation 511
 taste 76, 504
 protrusion test 68
Tonic-clonic seizures
 494–6
Tophi (gout) 550, **551F**
Torsade de pointes
 122, 817
Torsion of
 hydatid of Morgagni
 654
 neck 473
 testis **654**
Torticollis 473
Tortuous carotid artery
 600
Total parenteral
 nutrition 588
Toupet's op 626
Tourette's syn 714
Tourniquet test 46, 660
Toxbase 852
Toxic
 adenoma 210
 granuloma 325**F**
 multinodular goitre
 210, 602
 shock syn 420
Toxicariasis 442
Toxoplasmosis and
 prevention 404
t-PA 339, 659
TPHA 431
TPI test 431
Trachea, on CXR 736
Tracheal
 deviation 50, 52, 68,
 184, 824
 stenosis 158
 stenting 170
 tug 50, 52
Tracheostomy 582
Trachoma 375 (*OHCS* 450)
TRALI 342
TRAM flap 604
Trances 3
Transaminases 702
 AST/ALT ratio 283
Transarterial chemo-
 embolization 270
Transcending all ills 429
Transcranial magnetic
 stimulation 468
Transcutaneous
 cardiac pacing 791
Transfer factor
 co-efficient 158
Transfusion 318, 342
 inappropriate 346
 reaction 342
 -related acute lung
 injury see TRALI
Transfusional siderosis
 336
Transfusion
Translocation 257
Transient ischaemic
 attacks see TIA
Transillumination
 596, 652
Transitional cell ca 646
Transjugular shunt see
 TIPSS
Transoesophageal echo
 see TOE
Transplantation
 consent 259
 heart 130, 142
 heart-lung 167, 194
 kidney 305
 liver 259–60, **263**
 lung 190
 neural 499
 organ donation 6, 305
 live 571
 stem cell/marrow
 353
 UKT phone no 667
Trans-sphenoidal
 adenectomy
 216, **227F**, 228, 230
Transudate 184
Transurethral resection
 of prostate see
 TURP
Transvaginal us **607F**
Transverse myelitis 501
Trastuzumab 604
Traube's sign 140
Traumatic herpes 400
Travel advice 377, 391
Traveller's problems
 diarrhoea 377, 388
 fever 388
 other illnesses 388
Treadmill test 102
Treatment refused 571
Trematodes 445
Tremor 70, 472, 498
 flap/asterixis **50F**, 62,
 258, 260, **472**
Trench fever 434
Trendelenburg test
 46, 660
Trepine 358
Treponema 430, **431F**
Triage 862
Trial(s)
 N-of-one 229
 PIOPE II 753
 RCTs 670
 surgical 637
 without catheter 777
Trichiasis 428
Trichinella 442
Trichomonas **418F**
Trichophyton 440
Trichuris 442
Tricuspid valve 142
Trifascicular block 94
Trigeminal n 76–9, 83
 neuralgia 461
Triglycerides 704, 771
Triiodothyronine
 208–212
Trimethoprim 381
Triple
 assessment 604
 rhythm 42, 812
 stimulation test 224
 therapy 242
Trismus 425
Trivalent vaccine 402
Troisier's sign 62 240
 (Virchow node
 620)
Tropical dis. 388
 malabsorption 280
 myelopathy 520
 pulmonary
 eosinophilia 443
 sprue 280
 travellers 388
Tropinins 702
 discharging non-
 cardiac chest
 pain 89
 HOCM genes 146
 MI 112
 unstable angina 810
Troubling &
 troublesome
 patients 16
Trousseau's sign 692,
 293F, 715
Trypanosomiasis **438F**
TSH 208
T-spot-TB® test 398
TSST-1 420
Tsutsugamushi dis 435
TTP 308, **309F**
T-tube 582
Tubercular meningitis
 399
Tuberculomas 399
 (*OHCS* 205**F**)
Tuberculosis **398–399**
 active 398
 AIDS and 409
 arthritis (*OHCS* 696)
 bone 399 (*OHCS* 696)
 cutaneous 663
 genital (*OHCS* 274)
 genitourinary 399
 hip (*OHCS* 682)
 latent 398
 MDR-TB 409
 meningitis 399
 miliary 399
 pericarditis 399
 peritoneal 399
 prophylaxis 399
 pulmonary 399
 skin 399, 708
 spine (Pott's syn) 722
 treatment 398
Tuberosclerosis 312
 (*OHCS* 638)
Tubular
 breast cancer 604
 disease 310
 necrosis 298
Tubulopathy 305–6, 310
Tularaemia 423
Tullio phenomenon 466
Tumarkin otolithic
 catastrophes 466
Tumour lysis syndrome
 694, **526**
 hepatic, US **751F**
 markers 534–535
 necrosis factor see
 TNF, 702
 plop 146
 suppressor gene 525
Tuning fork test 468
TURP 644
TWEAK questions 283
Twoc 644, 777
Two-week rule 523, 619
TYM test 85
Typhoid 426
 immunization 391
 traveller's 388
Typhus 435
 tache noire **389F**
Typical effective
 radiation doses 733

U


- UACR & nephropathy
 202
Uc 272
Uthoff's sign 501
UIP 738
Ulcer
 anogenital 431
 aphthous **239F**
 Barrett's 708
 decubitus (*OHCS* 604)
 duodenal 242, **255F**
 gastric 242

Ulcer... *continued*
 genital 400, 416, 431
 Marjolin's 598, 662
 oral 238
 rodent 598
 skin 662
 vasculitic 558
 venous, leg 662 (*OHCS* 604)
 Ulcerative
 colitis 257F, 272
 colonoscopy image 257F
 gingivitis 726
 Ulcer-like functional dyspepsia 59
 Ulnar
 deviation 30, 548
 nerve/neuropathy 428, 456, 506-7
 ULTRA 305
 Ultrasound 750
 abdominal 756
 cardiac 106
 carotid 750F
 compression 579
 endoscopic 756
 liver mets 271F
 renal 286, 607F, 645
 testis 652F
 thyroid 603F
 transvaginal 607F
 Umbilical hernia 614, 615F
 UMN lesions 451
 with LMN 471, 510
 Uncertainty 765
 Unconscious memory 0
 Unconsciousness 800
 Uncus 840
 Undescended testis 654
 Unenhanced CT 760F
 Unexplained symptoms 25
 Universal health workers 2
 Universalizability 15
 Unstable
 angina 112, 116, 810
 detrusor 650
 Unwalking unwounded 471
 Unwounded, unwalking 471
 Upper
 GI bleeding 252, 254
 emergencies 830
 motor neurone lesions 451
 quadrant
 -anopia 503
 masses 606
 pain 57
 Uraemia 300, 304, 308
 Urate 550, 694
 crystals 551F
 gout 550
 nephropathy 306, 694
 stone 694F
 Urea 298, 300, 678
¹³C-urea breath test 243
 Ureter, duplex 758F
 Ureteric 285
 colic 285, 640

Ureteric... *continued*
 dilation 642
 stenting 643
 stones 640
 Ureterocoele 614
 Ureterogram 642
 Urethral
 discharge 64, 416-8
 strictures 651
 Urethritis 292, 416-8
 Urgency
 faecal 22, 246
 urinary 64, 651
 Urgent referral
 in possible malignancy 533
 Uric acid 550, 694
 stones 640, 694F
 Urinalysis, dipsticks, errors 287
 Urinary infection
 classification 288
 management 289
 organisms 288
 prevention 288
 risk factors 288
 signs 288
 symptoms 288
 tests 288
 Urinary catheters 776, 777F
 frequency 64
 incontinence 650
 malignancy 646, 648
 obstruction 64, 642, 644
 assessment 645
 retention post-op 644
 sediment 286
 stones 640
 symptoms 64, 651
 tract imaging 742, 758
 tumours 646, 648
 Urine 286
 bedside analysis 383
 casts 287F
 changes 64
 crystals 290
 dark 250, 719F
 low output 65, 578
 microscopy 290
 normal values 771
 obstruction 642, 644
 protein 700
 reference intervals 771
 specific gravity 287
 ward tests 286
 Urinoma 582
 Urobilinogen 251
 Urogenital assessment 64
 Urogram IV 758F
 Urology
 benign prostatic hyperplasia 644
 bladder ca 648
 calculi 640
 urinary tract obstruction 642, 645
 gynae *OHCS* 306
 haematuria 286
 prostate cancer 646
 prostatism 65
 PSA 534, 646

Urology... *continued*
 symptoms 64, 644
 urothelial ca 648
 Uropathy, obstructive 645
 Ursodeoxycholic acid 266
 URTI 422, 447
 Urticaria 406, 445 (*OHCS* 586)
 Us (ultrasound) 750
 abdominal 756
 acoustic
 enhancement 750
 impedance 750
 advantages 750
 renal 758
 A-mode/B-mode 750
 attenuation 750
 CBD dilatation 751F
 commonly imaged structures 751
 cyst, renal 758
 disadvantages 750
 renal 758
 duplex 750F
 femoral vessels 579F
 echogenicity 735
 endoscopic 750
 enhancement 750
 gallbladder 750F
 gallstones 750F
 hepatic tumour 751F
 hydrocele 751F
 impedance 750
 kidney 751F
 liver 751F
 tumour 751F
 M-mode 750
 mode (A-, B-, M-) 750
 nephrocalcinosis 751F
 reflectivity 735
 renal 751, 758F
 cyst 758F
 testis 751F
 tumour 751F
 urinary tract 758
 Usual interstitial pneumonitis 738
 Utilization behaviour 503
 Uveitis/iritis 186, 562, 563F (*OHCS* 448)
 causes
 ankylosing spondylitis 552
 Behçet's 708
 brucellosis 422
 Crohn's 274
 herpes 400
 interstitial nephritis 306
 Kawasaki *OHCS* 646
 leprosy 428
 leptospirosis 430
 Reiter's 552
 sarcoid 186
 Still's dis. *OHCS* 654
 syphilis 431
 Toxocara 442
 toxoplasmosis 404
 uc 272
 Weil's dis. 430
 Whipples dis. 730

V
 V/Q (ventilation/perfusion) 158
versus CTPA 753
 V Leiden 368
 V wave on JVP 40
 V4R (RV4) 808
 Vaccinations 391
 contraindications (*OHCS* 150)
 flu 402
 hepatitis 271 (*OHCS* 150)
 pneumococcal 160
 for travellers 377
 Vaginal (see Gynaecology chapter, *OHCS*)
 discharge 64, 418
 with proteinuria 287
 with pyuria 286
 dry 228, 724
 examination (*OHCS* 242)
 in acute renal failure 848
 in PUO 386
 fistula (recto-) 58, 274, 630
 stenosis (post-radiotherapy) 530
 STI 416, 418
 swab (HVS), Stuart's medium 416
 use in ultrasound 607, 750
 Vaginitis 418
 senile 650 (*OHCS* 256)
 Vaginitis 418
 Vaginosis 418
 Vagotomy 624F
 Vagus nerve x 76-7, 83F
 in the neck 601F
 Vale of tears 16
 Valproate 497
 interactions 768
 Valsalva manoeuvre 44
 Valve
 aortic 140
 ileocaecal 272, 612
 mitral 138
 pig 142
 pliable 142
 prosthetic 45, 142
 pulmonary 142
 surgery 142
 tricuspid 142
 Valvulae conniventes 612, 742F
 Vancomycin 381
 levels 766
 -intermediate *Staph aureus* see VISA
 -resistant enterococci see VRE
S. aureus (VRSA) 420
 Vanillyl mandelic acid see VMA
 Variant angina 722
 Variceal
 banding 255F
 bleeding 254

- Varicella 400
Varicocele 652, 653F
Varicose veins 47, 660
Vasculitis see
 Vasculitides
Vascular
 defects 338
 dementia 490
 hyperreactivity 723
 steal syndrome 304
Vasculitides **558**
 autoantibodies 555
 Behçet's 708
 Churg-Strauss
 295, 710
 endocarditis (Roth)
 144, 386F
 Goodpasture's
 295F, 714
 giant cell arteritis 558
 granulomatosis
 with polyangiitis
 (Wegener's
 granulomatosis)
 295, 728
 Henoch-Schönlein
 purpura 716
 Kawasaki disease
 558 (*OHCS* 646)
 leprosy 428
 lung 715
 microscopic
 polyangiitis 558
 neurocysticercosis
 444
 polyarteritis nodosa
 558
 polymyalgia
 rheumatica 558
 polymyositis 554
 relapsing
 polychondritis 554
 renal vasculitides 308
 SLE 556
 syphilis 431
 systemic sclerosis 554
 Takayasu's 726
 typhus 435
Vasculopathy
 diabetes 202
 renal failure 308
Vasodilators 108, 130
Vasogenic oedema 760
 cerebral, CT 761F
 MRI 749F
Vasospasm
 Buerger's syn 658, 710
 Churg-Strauss 710
 Prinzmetal angina 722
 Raynaud's 722, 723F
 in subarachnoid
 haemorrhage 482
Vasovagal attack 464
VDRL 431
Vegetarianism 236
Veins
 neck 41F, 589F
 varicose 660
Venepuncture
 problems 536
Venereal diseases
 408-419
Venesection 262,
 360, 813
Venogram, MRI 485,
 485F
Venous
 lines 774
 pulse 40
 sinus thrombosis 484
 territories, CNS 485
 thrombi 368, 580
Ventilation (v)
 scintigram 752F
Ventilation/perfusion
 see v/Q scan
Ventral spinal nerve
 513F
Ventricular
 aneurysm 116
 arrhythmias 120-4
 ectopics
 (extrasystoles) 122
 failure 128-130
 severe (LVF) 812
 fibrillation 816, 849
 hypertrophy, ECG 135
Ventricular
 Goodpasture's
 remodelling 131
 septal defect see VSD
 tachycardia see VT
Ventriculo-peritoneal
 (vP) shunt 502
Verrucas 434
Vertebral collapse 696
Vertebrobasilar
 insufficiency 453
Verticillata 712
Vertigo 35, 466
Vesicles 400F
Vestibular disease
 466, 503
Vestibulofibrosis 466
Vestibulo-ocular reflex
 803
Vf 816, 849
VGCC antibodies 516
Vibration 72-5, 450
Vibrio 426, 447
Video capsule
 endoscopy 256
Villous atrophy 280
Vincent's angina 726
Violent patients 11
VIPoma 246
Viral
 classification 376
 haemorrhagic fevers
 432
 hepatitis 406
 vaccination 271,
 377, 391
Virchow's node 62, 240
 (Troisier's sign,
 620)
Viriism 222
Virtual colonoscopy
 757
VISA 420
Visceral
 hypersensitivity **277**
 injury (*OHCS* 760)
 larval migrans 442
 leishmaniasis 439
Viscosity
 blood & plasma 366
 synovial fluid 543
Visual acuity 76, 78,
 85, 202
 disturbances 70
 fields 76, 78, 464, 503
 (*OHCS* 412),
 loss 78 (*OHCS* 598)
Vital capacity 156
Vitalograph 156
Vitamins **690**
 A 266, 281
 B₁ 281, 728
 B₁₂ 281, **328**
 C 278, 281
 D 214, 281, 300,
 306, 641
 E 281
 in MND 511
 K 280, 338, 345
Vitiligo 564, 565F
 or leprosy? 429F
VLDL 704
VMA/catecholamines
 220
Vocabulary, surgical 567
 drug abuse 385
Vocal
 bleeding 184
 fremitus 50-4
 resonance 50-4
Voiding difficulty 65
Voltage criteria 94
Volume averaging 744
Volvulus, stomach &
 colon 613
Vomiting 56, 240, 536, 613
Von Hippel-Lindau 726
Von Recklinghausen's 518
Von Willebrand 726
VRE 381, 420
VRSa 420
VSD 150
VT 100, 122, **816**
VTE risk factors 369
 Vulval
 herpes 400
 ulcers 431, 564 (*OHCS*
 268)
Vvs 660

Waist circumference
 199, 237
Waldenström's macro-
 globulinaemia 364
Waldeyer's ring 356
Walking difficulty 26,
 457, 466, 508,
 Wallenberg lateral
 medullary syn
 726, 727F
Wandering 491
War of all against all 427
Ward
 rituals 2
 rounds 23
 urine tests 286
Warfarin 344
 poisoning **345**, 854
 surgery 592
Wartenberg's sign 456
Warthin's tumour 601
Warts 434 (*OHCS* 268)
Wassermann 431
Wasting (cachexia)
 24, 29
 LMN lesion 451
Water
 balance 682
 deprivation test 233
 filtration 390
 intoxication 232, 855
 iv therapy 680
 loss see dehydration
 physiology 682
 quality 390
 requirements 680
Waterbrash 244
Waterhammer 40, 140
Waterhouse-
 Friederichsen's
 syn 728
Watershed 474
Watershed areas
 CNS/stroke 474
 gut arteries 623F
Watson, Dr 389
Watson's operation
 626
Wave forms
 arterial 41F
 cardioversion 784F
 JVP 41F
 monophasic and
 biphasic 784
 venous 41F
Weakness 27
 of legs 26, **470**
 of muscles 451, 508
 power grading 451
 proximal 514, 554
 UMN/LMN lesions 451
Web references 669
Weber's
 syndrome 728
 test (tuning fork)
 468
Web-space *Candida*
 441F
Weed-killer poison 855
2-week rule 523, 619
Wegener's*
 granulomatosis
 295, 558, 728
 autoantibodies 555
Weight
 ideal 237
 hedgehogs 446
 loss see cachexia
Weighting (of MRI) 748
Weil-Felix test 435
Weil's disease 430
Wenckebach block
 116, **119F**
Wernicke's
 area 80
 encephalopathy
 728, 800
West Nile virus 387
Wharton's duct 601F
What is life? 374
Wheeze 48, 52
 anaphylaxis 806
 asthma **172**, 176, 820
When it all goes
 wrong...
 emergencies 793
 epilepsy 496

- When it all goes wrong...
... *continued*
surgical cases 595
teamwork x
(prologue)
ward rounds 23
who to blame x
(prologue)
- Whipple's
disease 730
operation 279**F**
- Whipworm 442
- Whispering
pectoriloquy 51-2
- White cell
count **324**, 769
study, Crohn's 753
- White-out, hemithorax,
CXR 738**F**
- Whitlow 400
- Who
initiatives 409
pain ladder 539
pandemic advice 403
Safety Checklist 569
- Whooping cough 422
(*OHCS* 162)
- Why? 5
why me? 16
why now? 16
- Widal reaction 426
- Wide complex
tachycardia 816
- Wilfred Owen 427
- William's syn 143
- Willis, circle 452
- Wilms' tumour 646
(*OHCS* 133)
- Wilson's
disease 269
screening criteria 667
- Wind/flatulence 58
- Winging of scapula 456,
514, 515**F**
- Winter vomiting illness
390
- Winterbottom sign 438
- Wireless (capsule)
endoscopy 256
- Withdrawal, alcohol 282
- Wolbachia* 443
- Wolff-Parkinson-White
120, 125**F**
- Wolfram syn 232
- Work stress 14
- Worms 442-5
- Wound
dehiscence 582
infection risk 573
and obesity 593
- WPW syn 120, 125**F**
- WR 431
- Wrist drop 506, 508
- Writer's cramp 71,
473
- Writing for patients 3
- Wuchereria* 443**F**
- XYZ**
- X descent of JVP 40
- Xanthelasma 36, 38, 39,
68, 704, **705F**
- Xanthochromia 782
- Xanthomata 36**F**,
39, **704**
- XDR-TB 409
- Xenobiotics 266
- Xenografts 142
- Xerophthalmia 278
- Xerostomia **238**, 724
radiotherapy 530
- X-rays *Ch.17*
abdominal 740
chest 736
cost control (*OHCS*
780)
dose 733
exposure +Ca 733
radiodensity 735
- Y descent, JVP 41
- Yaws 430
- Yeast **441F**
- Yellow fever 388, **432**
- Yellow patient 24
- Yersinia* 247, **422**
- You won't feel a
thing **1F**
- Z-deformity 30
- Zellweger syn 730
- Zinc 693
- Zoledronic acid 691
- Zollinger-Ellison 730
- α -zone 700
- Zoonoses (disease via
animals) 387, 405,
422, 444, **446**
birds 162
influenza H5N1 **163**
plague 422
- Zoster 77, 400, 458**F**
- Zuckerkindl, organ
of 220

We thank Shahzad Arain, Timothy Crocker-Buqué, William Hunt, Amelia Lloyd, Konstantinos Kritikos, and Eleanor Zimmerman for their help with the index.

UPLOADED BY [STORMRG]

All indexes can be improved: let us know how at ohcm.index@oup.com

► These pages outline typical adult doses, and the commoner side-effects, of medications that a new house officer will be called upon to prescribe. If in any doubt, consult a drug fomulary (eg British National Formulary, *BNF*, www.bnf.org) esp if eGFR↓.

Drug	Dose and frequency	Notes
Analgesics (see p454 for more details on analgesia)		
Aspirin	300–900mg/4–6h PO, max 4g/24h	SE of NSAIDs: gastritis; bronchospasm; hypersensitivity. CI: GI ulcer/bleeding; NSAID-induced asthma; coagulopathy. Avoid aspirin in children (risks Reye's syndrome).
Diclofenac	50mg/8h PO/PR	
Ibuprofen	400mg/6h PO, max 2.4g/24h	
Paracetamol	0.5–1g/4–6h PO, max. 4g/24h	
Codeine phosphate	30–60mg/4h PO/IM, max 240mg/24h	Avoid if hepatic impairment. Patients with chronic pain (eg malignancy) may require higher doses. SE of opioids: nausea and vomiting; constipation; drowsiness; hypotension; respiratory depression, dependence. CI: Acute respiratory depression, acute alcoholism. Use carefully in head injury, as may hinder neurological assessment.
Dihydrocodeine tartrate	30mg/4–6h PO, OR 50mg/4–6h IM/sc	
Meptazinol	200mg/3–6h PO, OR 50–100mg/2–4h IM/IV	
Oxycodone	5mg/6h PO	
Pethidine	50–100mg/4h PO/IM/sc	
Tramadol	50–100mg/4h PO/IM/IV	
Morphine	5–10mg/4h PO/IM/sc	

Antibiotics (see p366–374)

Anti-emetics

Cyclizine	50mg/8h PO/IM/IV	Use 25mg/8h in elderly May cause extrapyramidal SE, especially in young adults.
Metoclopramide	10mg/8h PO/IM/IV	
Ondansetron	8mg/8h PO, or 4mg IM/IV	

Antihistamines

Chlorphenamine	10–20mg IM/IV, max 40mg/24h OR 4mg/6h PO	SE of antihistamines: Drowsiness; urinary retention; dry mouth; blurred vision; GI disturbance; arrhythmias. Drowsiness is less common with newer drugs, eg cetirizine, fexofenadine.
Cetirizine	5–10mg/24h PO	
Levocetirizine	5mg/24h PO	
Fexofenadine	120–180mg/24h PO	
Loratadine	10mg/24h PO	
Desloratadine	5mg/24h PO	

Gastric acid-reducing drugs

Cimetidine	400mg/6–12h PO	SE of H ₂ -blockers: GI disturbance; ↑LFT.
Ranitidine	150mg/12h PO	
Omeprazole	20–40mg/24h PO	SE of PPIs: GI disturbance; hypersensitivity. ► Acid-reducing drugs may mask symptoms of gastric cancer; use with care in middle-aged patients.
Esomeprazole	20–40mg/24h PO	
Lansoprazole	15–30mg/24h PO	
Pantoprazole	20–40mg/24h PO/IV	

Drug	Dose and frequency	Notes
Heparins	(see p334 for more details on anticoagulation)	
Unfractionated heparin	<i>DVT prophylaxis:</i> 5000u/12h sc	SE of heparins: bleeding; thrombocytopenia; hypersensitivity; hyperkalaemia; osteoporosis after prolonged use. CI: coagulopathy; peptic ulcer; recent cerebral bleed; recent trauma or surgery; active bleeding.
Enoxaparin (Clexane®)	<i>DVT prophylaxis:</i> 20–40mg/24h sc. <i>DVT/PE treatment:</i> 1.5mg/kg/24h sc until warfarinized. Unstable angina: use fondaparinux, see p810	
Tinzaparin	<i>DVT prophylaxis:</i> 3500u/24h sc (eg starting 2h pre-op). <i>DVT/PE treatment:</i> 175u/kg per 24h sc till warfarinized.	
Dalteparin (Fragmin®)	<i>DVT prophylaxis:</i> Start 2h pre-op 2500–5000u/24h sc. <i>DVT/PE treatment:</i> 150u/kg/d sc (18,000u/24h max). MI/STEMI, see p811.	

Hypnotics

Temazepam	10–20mg PO at night	SE: Drowsiness; dependence. Zopiclone also causes bitter taste and GI disturbances. CI: Respiratory depression; myasthenia.
Zopiclone	3.75–7.5mg PO at night	

Tranquillizers

Haloperidol	0.5–1mg IM/IV initially in elderly (2–5mg younger patients), then every 4–8h till response, max 18mg in total.	SE: Extrapyramidal effects, sedation, hypotension, anti-muscarinic effects, neuroleptic malignant syndrome. Monitor BP.
-------------	--	---

Others

Naloxone	<i>In opiate overdose:</i> 0.4–2mg IV repeated every 2–3min to a maximum of 10mg if respiratory function does not improve. <i>To reverse opiate-induced respiratory depression:</i> 100–200µg IV every 2min.	SE: Tachycardia; fibrillation. Can precipitate opiate withdrawal.
Flumazenil	<i>To reverse benzodiazepines:</i> 200µg IV over 15s, then 100µg every 60s if required, up to 1mg max.	SE: Convulsions (esp. in epileptics); nausea and vomiting; flushing. Avoid if patient has a life-threatening illness controlled by benzodiazepines (eg status epilepticus).

See also: laxatives (p248), inhalers (p175), digoxin (p116), insulin sliding scales (p591), fluids (p680), oxygent prescribing (p181).

This page intentionally left blank

►► Cardiorespiratory arrest

Ensure safety of patient and yourself. Confirm diagnosis (unconscious, apnoeic, absent carotid pulse). Call for help.

Causes MI; PE; trauma; tension pneumothorax, electrocution; shock; hypoxia; hypercapnia; hypothermia; U&E imbalance; drugs, eg digoxin.

Basic life support Shout for help. Ask someone to call the arrest team and bring the defibrillator. Note the time. Begin CPR as follows (**ABC**):

Airway: Head tilt (if no spine injury) + chin lift/jaw thrust. Clear the mouth.

Breathing: Check breathing then give 2 breaths after 1st set of compressions, each inflation ~1s long. Use specialized bag and mask system (eg Ambu® system) if available and 2 resuscitators present. Otherwise, mouth-to-mouth with valved pocket mask.

Chest compressions: Give 30 compressions to 2 breaths (30 : 2). CPR should not be interrupted except to give shocks or to intubate. Use the heel of hand with straight elbows. Centre over the lower ½ of the sternum; aim for 4cm compression at 100/min.

Advanced life support For algorithm and details, see over. Notes:

Place defibrillator paddles on chest as soon as possible and set monitor to read through the paddles if delay in attaching leads. Assess rhythm: is this VF/pulseless VT?

- In **VF/pulseless VT**, defibrillate without delay: 360J monophasic, 150–360J biphasic.
- **Asystole and electromechanical dissociation** (synonymous with pulseless electrical activity) are rhythms with a poorer prognosis than VF/VT, but potentially remediable (see BOX next page). Treatment may be life-saving.
- Obtain IV access and intubation if skilled person present, otherwise secure airway.
- Look for reversible causes of cardiac arrest, and treat accordingly.
- Check for pulse if ECG rhythm compatible with a cardiac output.
- **Reassess ECG rhythm.** Repeat defibrillation if still VF/VT. All shocks now at 360J.
- Send someone to find the patient's notes and the patient's usual doctor. These may give clues as to the cause of the arrest.
- If IV access fails, the intraosseous route (IO) is recommended for adults as well as children. Endotracheal delivery and intracardiac injection are not recommended.

When to stop attempts at resuscitation No general rule, as survival is influenced by the rhythm and the cause of the arrest. In patients without myocardial disease, do not stop until core temperature is >33°C and pH and potassium are normal. Consider stopping resuscitation attempts after 20min if there is refractory asystole or electromechanical dissociation.

After successful resuscitation:

- 12-lead ECG; CXR, U&Es, glucose, FBC, CK/troponin. ABG.
- Titrate oxygen to saturations of 94–98%, hyperoxaemia can worsen prognosis.¹
- Transfer to ICU for consideration of therapeutic hypothermia.
- Monitor vital signs.
- Whatever the outcome, explain to relatives what has happened.

When 'do not attempt resuscitate' may be a valid decision (UK DoH guidelines)

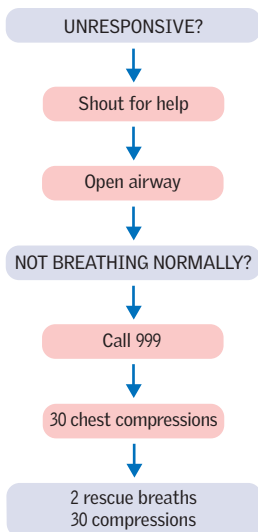
- If a patient's condition is such that resuscitation is unlikely to succeed.
- If a mentally competent patient has consistently stated or recorded the fact that he or she does not want to be resuscitated.
- If the patient has signed an advanced directive forbidding resuscitation.
- If resuscitation is not in a patient's interest as it would lead to a poor quality of life (often a great imponderable!). ► *Ideally, involve patients and relatives in the decision before the emergency. When in doubt, try to resuscitate.*

¹ Association between arterial hyperoxia following resuscitation from cardiac arrest and in-hospital mortality. Kilgannon JH, Jones AE, Shapiro NI, *et al* JAMA 2010;303(21):2165–2171.

UK Adult Basic Life-Support Algorithm 2010

The algorithm assumes that only one rescuer is present, with no equipment. (If a defibrillator is to hand, get a rhythm readout, and defibrillate, as opposite, as soon as possible.)

Adult Basic Life Support



Algorithm reproduced with the permission of the Resuscitation Council (UK), © 2010.

Send or go for help as soon as possible, according to guidelines.

Managing the airway

You open the airway by tilting the head and lifting the chin—but only do this if there is no question of spinal trauma.

Use a close-fitting mask if available, held in place by thumbs pressing downwards either side of the mouth-piece, palms against cheeks. The mask should have a one-way valve to protect you.

Chest compressions

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) involves compressive force over the lower sternum, with the heels of the hands placed one on top of the other, directing the weight of your body through your vertical, straight arms.

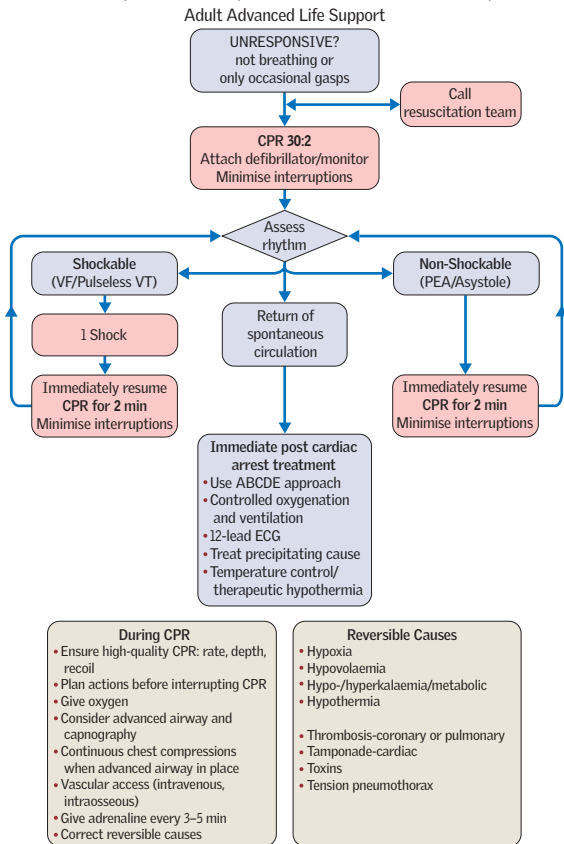
Depth of compression: 4cm

Rate of compressions: 100/min

Remember that these are guidelines only, and that the exact circumstances of the cardiorespiratory arrest will partly determine best practice. The guidelines are also more consensus based than evidence based (p644), and are likely to be adapted from time to time.

Cardiac arrest: 2010 Adult Advanced Life-Support Algorithm¹

Each step assumes the previous one has been unsuccessful.



Algorithm reproduced with the permission of the Resuscitation Council (UK), © 2010.

Do not interrupt CPR for >10s, except to defibrillate. Use IO route if IV not possible.

Resistant VF/VT consider:

- Amiodarone 300mg IV/IO (peripherally if no central access). A further 150mg may be given, followed by an infusion of 900mg over 24h (via central line).
- If amiodarone is not available, an alternative is lidocaine 1mg/kg IV; can repeat once; then give 2–4mg/min IVI.
- Seek expert advice from a cardiologist.

Asystole/PEA²: Give adrenaline 1mg immediately IV/IO access is achieved. Atropine is no longer recommended. If P waves are present the patient may respond to pacing.

Treat acidosis with good ventilation. Sodium bicarbonate may worsen intracellular acidosis and precipitate arrhythmias, so use only in arrest secondary to hyperkalaemia or tricyclic antidepressant overdose (eg 50mL of 8.4% solution by IVI).

¹ NB: adrenaline/epinephrine in large doses (eg 5mg) has theoretical haemodynamic advantages, but studies have failed to show benefit (Ballew K 1997 *BMJ* i 1462). See Baskett P 1992 *Br J Anaesthesia* 69 182.

² PEA = pulseless electrical activity = electromechanical dissociation (EMD)